

**DUE DATE SLIP****GOVT. COLLEGE, LIBRARY****KOTA (Raj.)**

Students can retain library books only for two weeks at the most.

BORROWER'S No.	DUE DTATE	SIGNATURE

# COMPTON'S PICTURED ENCYCLOPEDIA AND FACT-INDEX

*Interesting · Accurate · Up-to-date*

TO INSPIRE AMBITION,  
TO STIMULATE THE IMAGINATION, TO PROVIDE THE  
INQUIRING MIND WITH ACCURATE  
INFORMATION TOLD IN AN INTERESTING  
STYLE, AND THUS LEAD INTO  
BROADER FIELDS OF KNOWLEDGE,  
SUCH IS THE PURPOSE OF  
THIS WORK



*Volume 3*  
1956 Edition

PUBLISHED BY  
F. E. COMPTON & COMPANY + CHICAGO



1956 EDITION

COMPTON'S PICTURED ENCYCLOPEDIA

COPYRIGHT 1922, 1923, 1924, 1925,  
1926, 1927, 1928, 1929, 1930, 1931,  
1932, 1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937,  
1938, 1939, 1940, 1941, 1942, 1943,  
1944, 1945, 1946, 1947, 1948, 1949,  
1950, 1951, 1952, 1953, 1954, 1955  
BY F. E. COMPTON & COMPANY

*Imperial and International Copyright secured All rights reserved for  
all countries Translation into foreign languages, including the  
Scandinavian, specifically reserved. Printed in U.S.A.*

# *Here and There in This Volume*

AT ODD TIMES when you are just looking for "something interesting to read," without any special plan in mind, this list will help you. With this as a guide, you may visit faraway countries, watch people at their work and play, meet famous persons of ancient and modern times, review history's most brilliant incidents, explore the marvels of nature and science, play games—in short, find whatever suits your fancy of the moment. This list is not intended to serve as a table of contents, an index, or a study guide. For these purposes consult the Fact-Index and the Reference Outlines.

## Pictures You Will Enjoy

BIGGEST OF THE CACTUS FAMILY	11
RESIDENCE AND FORTRESS OF A FEUDAL NOBLE	133
THE CHRISTMAS STORY IN COLOR	291
LEARNING ABOUT COLOR BY EXPERIMENTS	397
THE SANTA MARIA SAILS TO THE NEW WORLD	418a

## For the Reading Hour

THE STORY OF A YOUNG CAMEL	50
AT WORK AND PLAY WITH THE CAMP FIRE GIRLS	54
BOYS AND GIRLS IN CHINA	267
WHEN THE CIRCUS COMES TO TOWN	310
HOW ODYSSEUS AND HIS MEN OUTWITTED THE CYCLOPS	533

## Parent and Child, School and Home

HOW TO HELP CHILDREN GROW UP	239
CHRISTMAS CUSTOMS IN THE NEW WORLD AND IN THE OLD	291
THE FINE ART OF CONVERSATION AND HOW TO MASTER IT	458
COOKING AN IMPORTANT ART OF CIVILIZATION	463

## High Lights in History's Pageant

THE STIRRING STORY OF CANADA'S PAST	95
WHEN MOATED TOWERS RULED EUROPE'S LANDS	132
CHARLEMAGNE—CONQUEROR AND EMPIRE BUILDER	186
THE STORY OF CHRISTIANITY	301
THE WAR THAT REUNITED THE NATION	330
THE GENOESE WHO FOUND THE NEW WORLD	416
WHEN CHRISTIAN FOUGHT INFIDEL FOR PALESTINE	519

## Travel Views at Home and Abroad

EGYPT'S CAPITAL FOUNDED BY ARAB CONQUERORS	15
THE RICHES OF THE GOLDEN STATE	25
CANADA—THE LAND OF THE MAPLE LEAF	65
AT THE CROSSROADS OF THE NEW WORLD	171

## HERE AND THERE IN THIS VOLUME

THE GIANT CROSSROADS OF MID-AMERICA . . . . .	231
CHINA—VAST LAND OF YESTERDAY AND TOMORROW . . . . .	257
COLOMBIA—AT THE FOOT OF THE PANAMA ISTHMUS . . . . .	387
THE TREASURE STATE OF THE ROCKIES . . . . .	401
CONNECTICUT—"THE CONSTITUTION STATE" . . . . .	437
CUBA, THE QUEEN OF THE ANTILLES . . . . .	526

### Some Famous Men and Women

ROME'S GREAT GENERAL WHO "CAME, SAW, CONQUERED" . . . . .	13
THE NEGRO SCIENTIST WHO FOUND NEW USES FOR PEANUTS . . . . .	130
SILVER-TONGUED CICERO WHOSE COURAGE COST HIM HIS LIFE . . . . .	307
CLEOPATRA, THE QUEEN WHO CONQUERED HER CONQUERORS . . . . .	342
HOW ROBERT CLIVE WON INDIA FOR ENGLAND . . . . .	351

### In the Plant and Animal World

THE FOUR-FOOTED "SHIP OF THE DESERT" . . . . .	50
CAT—ONE OF MAN'S FAVORITE PETS . . . . .	135
THE MOST USEFUL OF ALL DOMESTIC ANIMALS . . . . .	141
HOW THE TINY CORAL ANIMALS BUILD ISLANDS IN THE SEA . . . . .	476

### Marvels of Science and Invention

THE CABLES THAT BIND THE WORLD TOGETHER . . . . .	5
HOW CHEMISTRY MAKES USEFUL CHANGES IN MATTER . . . . .	209
THE SCIENCE AND USE OF COLOR . . . . .	391

### The World at Work

MINING COAL FOR HEAT, POWER, AND CHEMICALS . . . . .	361
FROM COFFEE PLANTATION TO BREAKFAST TABLE . . . . .	376
HOW COMMUNICATION HELPS US LIVE TOGETHER . . . . .	421
COPPER—THE RED METAL WITH COUNTLESS USES . . . . .	473
WHERE KING CORN YIELDS BOUNDLESS WEALTH . . . . .	480
COTTON—THE WORLD'S CHIEF FIBER . . . . .	491

### Guideposts to Literature, Art, and Music

THE HARD LIFE OF SPAIN'S GREATEST WRITER . . . . .	179
CHAUCE, THE FIRST GREAT ENGLISH POET . . . . .	200
CHOPIN, THE LYRIC POET OF THE PIANO . . . . .	290
ROBINSON CRUSOE IN FACT AND FICTION . . . . .	523

### Exploring a World of Facts

HOW TIME IS RECKONED—CURIOSITIES OF THE CALENDAR . . . . .	22
THE MAGIC CELLS THAT BUILD ALL LIVING THINGS . . . . .	159
CLIMATE—A MOLDER OF LIFE AND CUSTOMS . . . . .	348
THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH OF GOVERNMENT . . . . .	435

# HERE AND THERE IN THIS VOLUME

## Interest-Questions Answered in This Volume

- What metal was named for a mischievous goblin? 372  
 What was the first metal worked by man? 473  
 How large is a newly hatched crocodile? 515  
 How are railroad ties kept from rotting? 510  
 How do caterpillars breathe? 137  
 Why are coconut palms found in so many parts of the world? 374  
 What is the difference between organic chemistry and inorganic chemistry? 219  
 Can a cat see in the dark? 1358  
 From what tree do we obtain cork? 479  
 How does a cicada sing? 306 A cricket? 513  
 Who was the father of the English language? 200  
 Who were the Lake Poets? 381  
 In what country does everybody celebrate his birthday on New Year's Day? 267  
 Who wrote Alice's Adventures in Wonderland? 127  
 Who was the real Robinson Crusoe? 323  
 Who was the author of John Gilpin? 502  
 What great literary work was burned by a servant maid? 123  
 Describe an ideal site for a summer camp 57  
 How do hard and soft coal differ? 363  
 What causes typhoid disease? 17  
 Why are highways intended for fast traffic banked at the curves? 178  
 Which was the first permanent English settlement in America? 223a  
 What man first gave France national unity? 360  
 Why were castles built during the Middle Ages? 132  
 Who was the mull boy of the slashes? 341  
 What are some devices propagandists use to make their arguments sound plausible? 424g h  
 Why was there no October 5 in the year 1582? 22  
 Who were The Three Kings of Cologne? 386  
 What were the fabled Seven Cities of Cibola? 486  
 Why were the Moslems unable to defeat Charles Martel? 196  
 Name a great explorer who was killed by a Hawaiian warrior 462 picture  
 What king owed his throne to a girl? 193  
 What insect lives 17 years underground? 306  
 How long can a camel go without water? 52  
 Of what use is the camel's hump? 51  
 What birds lay their eggs in other birds' nests? 529  
 Why did Chinese men formerly wear queues? 264  
 What animal is most important to a circus and why? 315  
 Why is it dangerous to stay in a closed garage with an automobile engine running? 120  
 What plant has blossoms that open at night and wither in daylight? 10  
 Where did the camellia get its name? 53  
 Why is coffee roasted? 379  
 What game is called warfare in miniature? 224  
 How has the cabbage been a friend of man? 1  
 What fruit gets its name from Corinth Greece? 530  
 Why does cork float? 480  
 Name the Centaur who instructed many famous heroes 170-1  
 What was Clinton's Death? 1086  
 Tell how Odysseus and his men got past the giant Polyphemus without being seen 533  
 What sorceress changed men into beasts? 309  
 Who or what are the Gemini? 135  
 What did the sowing of a dragon's teeth have to do with the founding of a great city? 13  
 Why was Cairo built on the east bank of the Nile? 15  
 What 20 year old emperor ruled a vaster territory than had any Christian monarch before him? 189  
 What reward did John Cabot receive for finding the North American mainland? 9  
 Where and when was the first successful co-operative store opened? 459  
 Of what English king was it said He nothing common did or mean? 191  
 Why did Canute order the sea to fall back? 117  
 Where was the Battle above the Clouds? 199  
 What bird has a wingspan five feet long? 306  
 What Latin American republic owes most of its prosperity to its desert? 251  
 Where do birds catch fish for their masters? 266 picture  
 What makes the holes in Swiss cheese? 207  
 Where is the oldest existing canal? 108a  
 How can bullheads live when their ponds go dry? 139  
 What is a stalactite? 156  
 What state has the most mountain peaks? 401  
 What is the largest shellfish in the world and where is it found? 339 picture  
 What animal can eat about 85 000 times its own weight in 56 days? 138  
 Why was the English sparrow imported into the United States? 112  
 How does a chameleon change its color? 183  
 What snake can throw its poison from a distance? 373  
 Why are ants welcome on a coffee plantation? 378  
 Some cattle do not grow horns What are they called? 141a  
 What are some of the many uses of the census and why was it first taken? 167  
 Who advanced the theory that the earth revolves about the sun? 472  
 What animal can look over its shoulder with one eye and straight ahead with the other? 183  
 What is the Law of Camp Fire? 53  
 To what animals do we owe blackboard crayons? 182  
 How long does a United States copyright extend? 476  
 What is the basis of chewing gum? 227  
 When did the Chinese adopt the new calendar? 22  
 Name the states that meet at right angles to form the famous four corners 402 map

## KEY TO PRONUNCIATION

Pronunciations have been indicated in the body of this work only for words which present special difficulties. For the pronunciation of other words, consult the Fact-Index. Marked letters are sounded as in the following words. cāpe, āt, fār, fāst, whqt. fəll; mī, yēt, fērn, thēre; īce, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, būt, rude, fūll, būrn; out; ū=French u, German ū; ġem, ġo; thīn, thēn; ñ=French nasal (Jean); zh=French j (z in azure); κ=German guttural ch

CABBAGE Through the centuries the cabbage has been the friend of the common man. Its strength-giving qualities have contributed much toward man's physical well-being. When famine threatened cabbage boiled or raw sauerkraut and cabbage soup often saved the lives of entire populations. Easy and quick to grow and usually the cheapest of all vegetables on the market, the cabbage is rich in protein, carbohydrates, minerals and vitamins. It thrives best in moist and fairly cool climates. It likes a soil that is well drained and not too heavy.

The cultivated cabbage consists of a cluster of broad leaves tightly pressed one upon another to form a compact head around a central stem or core. The thick stalk extends about eight inches underground and ends in a cluster of fine roots. There are more than one hundred varieties. Some have flattened heads, some are egg-shaped, some are perfectly round. The leaves may be smooth or wrinkled, green or red. The kinds that have wrinkled leaves are often called Savoy cabbages. All these different varieties have been developed through the centuries from a single species—the wild cabbage of western European coasts.

#### The Mustard Family

The mustard family (*Cruciferae* or *Brassicaceae*) to which the cabbage belongs includes many other common vegetables. Some are varieties of cabbage and have the same wild ancestor (*Brassica oleracea*). Among these varieties are kale, cauliflower and broccoli and Brussels sprouts. Closely related species are the kohlrabi, the turnip, the rutabaga, the black mustard and the white mustard. Less closely related are the radish, the horse radish and the water cress.

#### WHAT CARE HAS DONE FOR THE CABBAGE



#### Cauliflower and Broccoli

Cauliflower forms a head of flowers instead of leaves. The flowers, white and tightly clustered, are delicious either boiled or pickled. Broccoli is a variety of cauliflower with green, loosely clustered flowers which are eaten with the tender stalks.

Brussels sprouts (named for Brussels, Belgium, the early growing center) are

crowded with tiny heads all along the stalk. The top has spreading leaves. The baby cabbages are one to two inches in diameter and are esteemed as a table d'hôte.

#### Kohlrabi and Turnip

The queer kohlrabi (*Brassica caulorapa*) starts out like a cabbage but instead of heading finally thickens its stem to form a turnip-like globe that sits right on top of the ground. Kohlrabi is eaten raw or cooked.

The turnip (*Brassica rapa*) is one of the most valuable root crops. Millions of people and cattle as well

The most nearly like the wild cabbage is the kale. It forms no heads but spreads its leaves outward from its stalk. The long curving leaves may be green, blue or varicolored, curly or almost flat. The curly leaved varieties are prized for greens. The giant of the kales is the so-called Jersey cabbage or tree cabbage that grows eight to ten feet tall in the Channel Islands. Its stout stem is used for walking sticks and cottage rafters; its leaves are used as fodder.



The ancestor of the domestic cabbage was a plant that was as the one and a half wild cabbage. It had one at the bottom. Cabbage is a descendant of the wild cabbage of the same kind as all.

eat the nourishing roots. The tender tops of early spring turnips are used for greens. The rutabaga or Swedish turnip (*Brassica napobrassica*) is grown in northern latitudes. Garden varieties are smaller than field turnips, which may weigh from 20 to 25 pounds.

Mustard is a particularly noted for the sharp pungent taste that characterizes this whole family of

## IMPORTANT RELATIVES OF THE COMMON CABBAGE



1. Icicle radishes, crisp roots with a "bite" 2. Turnips, one of the world's chief root crops. 3. Brussels sprouts, like tiny cabbages on a stalk. 4. Cauliflower, a cabbage that forms its head with flowers. 5. Kohlrabi, with its peculiar globular stem.

vegetables. Though sometimes used for salad, the black mustard (*Brassica nigra*) and the white mustard (*Brassica hirta*) are grown chiefly for their seeds, which are ground up to make the familiar powdered mustard (see Mustard).

#### Radishes and Water Cress

Radishes (*Raphanus sativus*), with their globular or elongated roots, are delicious as relishes or in salads, and the young leaves are eaten as greens. Seeds sown in early spring mature into edible roots in four to six weeks. The coarser root of the horse-radish (*Armoracia rusticana*), with its biting tang, is grated and steeped in vinegar with salt and sugar to make condiments. To subdue its extreme sharpness, it is often mixed with grated turnip. Water cress (*Nasturtium officinale*), a trailing plant whose brittle shoots take root in mud or water, has a piquant flavor that makes

it a favorite in many salads. It thrives in ditches and pools, and can be grown with little trouble in frames and other places where the ground is kept wet.

The common cabbage is eaten more extensively than all of its relatives combined. It is fortunate that such an appetizing food should be so nourishing. It is especially rich in calcium, sulphur, iron, and potassium. Also, dietitians class it with egg yolk, green peas, milk, cheese, and asparagus as a "good" source of vitamin A. They class it with asparagus, avocado, and currants as a "very good" source of vitamin C. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is also present in cabbage.

The cabbage-mustard group gets its family name (*Cruciferae*, "cross-bearers") from the fact that the flowers have four petals, which resemble a Maltese cross. Usually the flowers are small but abundant. They may be white, yellow, orange, lilac, or purple.

**CABEZA DE VACA** (*kā-bā thā dā vā kā*) **ALVAR NÚÑEZ** (1490-1557) The first white man to cross what is now the state of Texas was that extraordinary Spaniard Cabeza de Vaca. Perhaps no more fantastic bit of exploration was ever carried out in the New World.

It began with a ship wreck on an island outside Matagorda Bay in 1528. Here and on the mainland the 80 survivors were reduced to 15 by starvation and disease and were virtual prisoners of the Indians. Cabeza de Vaca alone dreamed of escape. He succeeded in 1530 but remained in the vicinity urging his former companions to accompany him in trying to find a Spanish settlement. Finally in 1534 he was joined by two Spaniards and a black slave. Then began the long trek westward. He traveled from tribe to tribe showing such honest Christian charity and zeal that he was taken for a great medicine man. Then he made his way over the hot plains, crossed the Rio Grande beyond the Pecos River and descended into the heart of Mexico. On July 23, 1536, he met Cortes in Mexico City.

Cabeza de Vaca returned to Spain the next year. In 1540 he led an expedition from the coast of South America into Paraguay through a thousand miles of mountains and jungle. But it seems that he got along well only with Indians. While governor of Paraguay he was blamed for a rebellion among his subordinates. In 1544 was sent back to Spain and imprisoned in Seville for nearly six years. His health broken, he was then dismissed with a pension from the crown.

Cabeza de Vaca means head of a cow. One of his ancestors was a shepherd who during the Moorish wars marked a spot to pass through the mountains with a cow's head. This helped to bring victory to the Christian armies in the famous battle of Las Navas de Tolosa (1212). The shepherd won noble rank and the new name.

**CABINET** The head of a nation usually gathers around himself a group of men he can trust to advise him and to help manage the details of government. Such a group came to be called a cabinet when the king of England began to meet secretly with a few of his trusted counselors in his cabinet or private office.

The word cabinet does not appear in the United States Constitution although executive departments are mentioned incidentally. It was expected that the president would appoint officers to assist him but not

that they would form an advisory body. If he wanted advice it was thought that he would go to the Senate for it. Washington however early turned to his department heads instead. At first he met with them individually but soon he began to invite some or all of them to more formal meetings. By 1793 the meetings had become fairly regular and his advisers soon became known as the President's Cabinet.

The Departments of State, Treasury and War were created by Congress in its first session in 1789. The heads of these departments together with the attorney general formed the first Cabinet. The Department of the Navy was created in 1793 and the postmaster general

was raised to the rank of a department head in 1829. In 1849 the Department of the Interior was established and in 1870 the attorney general was made head of the Department of Justice. The head of the Department of Agriculture was made a Cabinet member in 1889. A Department of Commerce and Labor was established in 1903 and divided into two departments in 1913. In 1947 a new Cabinet post was created by the National Security Act. The secretary of defense replaced the secretaries of war and navy as a member of the Cabinet. The War Department was reorganized

#### THE FIRST CABINET OF THE UNITED STATES



The four members of the first Cabinet were (left to right): Henry Knox, secretary of war; Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state; Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury; and Edmund Randolph, attorney general. An attendant stands at the door.



as the Department of the Army; the Navy Department was reorganized; and a new Department of the Air Force was formed. These three departments are headed by secretaries without Cabinet rank. In 1953 the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare was created and given Cabinet status.

The president selects the department heads. The appointments are approved by the Senate, but approval is seldom withheld. The president may dismiss any Cabinet member by asking for his resignation.

The president customarily chooses Cabinet members from different parts of the country. Often the chairman of his party is made postmaster general, since the duties of the postoffice are chiefly routine. Critics complain when a president appoints his intimate friends as department heads; but it is natural that he should want in his Cabinet people whose advice he trusts. He is sometimes criticized for not appointing specialists to the offices, but this criticism does not take into account the philosophy of the American government. For example, the people usually want the secretary of defense to represent the civilian view of military affairs. Specialized knowledge is supplied by undersecretaries and assistant secretaries. (For an account of the work of the departments, see *United States Government*.)

#### How the Cabinet Does Its Work

The Cabinet meets regularly at the White House on days appointed by the president. Special meetings are called in emergencies. The members sit at an octagonal table and flank the president. The secretary of state sits on the president's right, the secretary of the treasury on his left, and so on around to the most recently created departments. Meetings are informal and no records are kept. Questions are rarely put to a vote, as the president alone makes the final decision. Lincoln once brought before the Cabinet a proposition which he favored, and every member voted against it. He announced the vote thus: "Seven nays, one aye; the ayes have it."

The government of the United States is based upon the principle that the executive, judicial, and law-making powers should be in separate hands. Therefore no department head may be at the same time a member of Congress. A Cabinet member may, however, be invited to give information or opinions before a congressional committee.

#### The British Cabinet System

Great Britain had a Cabinet long before American independence. Its Cabinet no doubt suggested the American Cabinet, but it differs widely from the American type. The United States has a congressional government. Great Britain has a parliamentary system, sometimes called *Cabinet government*. Cabinet government has been adopted by the nations of the Commonwealth, by many European countries, and by other countries throughout the world.

Theoretically the British Cabinet advises the crown (the king or queen) as the American Cabinet advises the president. Actually, however, the Cabinet is the pivot around which the whole government revolves.

Individually the Cabinet members administer the various departments of state. Together they formulate policy on all major issues and propose legislation. They are all members of Parliament.

The prime minister (called in some countries the *premier*) is in practice the directing head of the government. In Great Britain he is formally appointed by the crown. In fact, however, he is chosen by the people, since the crown must name a party leader in the House of Commons who can command a majority of its votes. The prime minister then chooses some 50 ministers from members of the House of Commons or the House of Lords. Of these he selects some 20 or more to serve in the Cabinet. The prime minister and other Cabinet members form the *ministry*. The entire ministry is known as the *government*.

The prime minister may drop or add Cabinet posts as he wishes. He may also give one minister two or more posts. He himself may hold one or more specific Cabinet posts—nearly always he is first lord of the treasury. The most important offices after that of prime minister are secretary of state for foreign affairs; chancellor of the exchequer (who is concerned with public finance); secretary of state for home affairs; and the lord high chancellor (who is concerned with courts of justice in England, but not in Scotland).

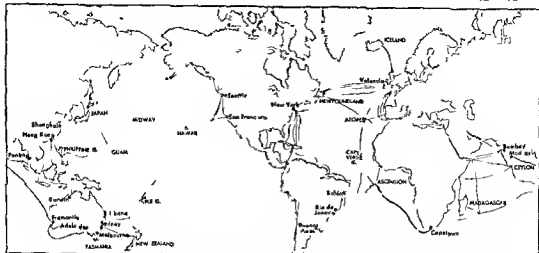
The "government" remains in office only so long as it has the support of Parliament. If the government is defeated on the voting of an important issue, one of two things may happen: (1) The entire ministry resigns and the crown asks the leader of the opposition to form a new government; (2) the prime minister calls upon the king or queen to dissolve Parliament and a new election is held. The leader of the victorious party, or coalition of parties, is then called upon to form a new government.

#### Origin of the British Cabinet

In its earliest form, the British Cabinet goes back to the Privy Council that used to meet for advising the kings of medieval England. As the council grew in size, the kings became accustomed to form an inner circle of special advisers. After the Revolution of 1688 the king was obliged to choose his special advisers from members of Parliament. George I turned over the business of presiding at meetings to Sir Robert Walpole, who thus became the first prime minister in the modern sense—that is, he was the first leader of the House of Commons to preside at Cabinet meetings. The Cabinet still meets in Walpole's house, No. 10 Downing Street, which has become famous as the official residence of Britain's prime ministers.

The traditional Privy Council of the crown still survives. It is now an honorary body and meets only at the beginning of a new reign or when the reigning sovereign announces his or her marriage. The title "privy councillor" is conferred on each Cabinet minister when he takes office and he holds this title for life. It is also given to other distinguished persons as a mark of honor.

# The CABLES that BIND the WORLD TOGETHER



Here we see the great communication web—comprising about 3,500 lines and costing approximately \$20 million dollars—that man has spun to bring the great land areas of the earth closer to one another. Every important seaport in the world is linked with this cable system. In all, about 150,000 miles of cables have been laid—enough to girdle the globe almost 15 times. Of this great mileage, about 75 per cent is owned by private cable companies.

**CABLES** In the murky depths of the oceans lie the slender armor-plated strands of copper wire that were the earliest electrical links between the world's continents. These submarine cables form a network which for many decades was the only means of swift communication from one part of the world to another. More recently, radio has come to play an important part in the transmission of messages across the seas, but the cables still carry most of the traffic.

More than 25 cables span the Atlantic Ocean, and most of them stretch along the same high plateau of the ocean bed where the first cable was laid. This is called the "Telegraph Plateau" because it is comparatively level, with the deepest point about two miles down. The ocean bottom in this area is covered with soft mud that coats the cables protectively. Like the dry land regions of the earth, much of the ocean floor has mountains, valleys, and plains. The broad plateau running from the Grand Banks of Newfoundland to southern Ireland made it possible to use much shorter and lighter cable than if it had to cross high ridges and deep valleys.

The cable routes across the Pacific Ocean are fewer than those in the Atlantic. One of the two principal cables from the New World westward to the Orient begins at San Francisco and touches at Hon-

olulu, Midway Island, Guam, and Manila, and thence to its terminus at Hong Kong. A spur extends to Tokyo from Guam. The service west of Midway Island was interrupted during the second World War when the Japanese severed the cable at Guam. The other Pacific cable of greatest importance runs from Vancouver in Canada to New Zealand and Australia.

## The Composition of an Undersea Cable

Because water is a good conductor of electricity, ocean cables must be carefully insulated to keep the electricity in the wire from escaping. They must be strong to withstand injuries from rocks, ships' anchors, and fishing trawls. The high-speed cables used today consist of a central copper wire about one-fifth of an inch in diameter which carries the electric current. Long copper strips surround the transmission wire, and the "core" thus formed is wrapped with a narrow tape made of "permalloy," a magnetic alloy of iron and nickel. This tape forms a continuous coil around the cable which offsets the tendency of the cable current to resist changes in the electric current. Since the signals that pass over the cables are formed by changes and interruptions of the current, the coil is an essential factor in modern high-speed transmission. It makes it pos-

## THE ROUGH ROAD THAT CABLES HAVE TO TRAVEL



A view through the Pacific Ocean from San Francisco to Manila in the Philippines would look something like this for the sea bottom, like the land, has its mountain peaks and its yawning chasms. The cable is strung between the highest peaks, which are islands, and loops down to the irregular ocean floor between them.

sible to send at a rate of more than 2,000 letters a minute—about four times the capacity of the old cables.

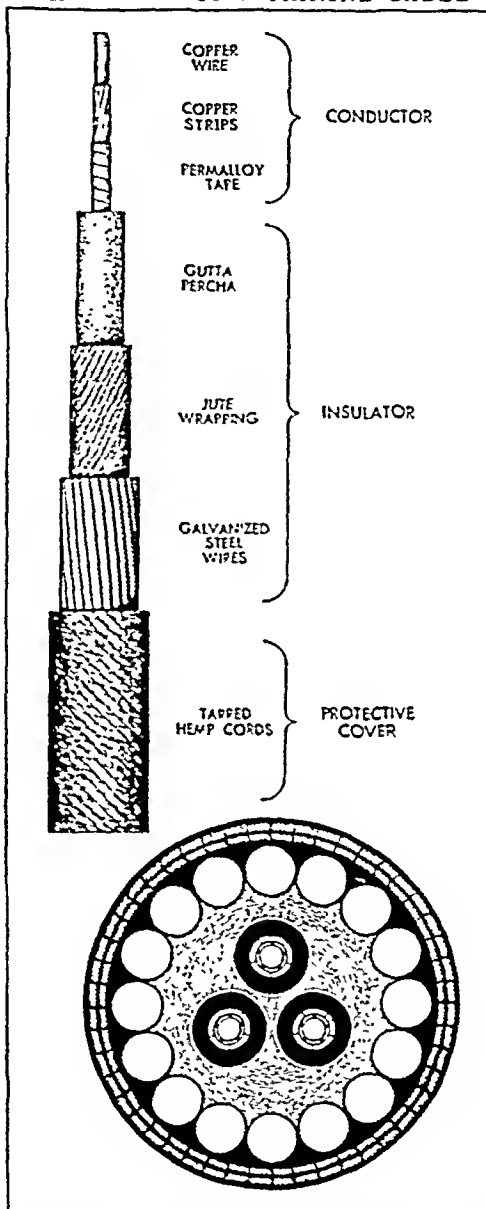
A layer of gutta-percha insulation covers the three-part metal center of the cable. Around this rubber-like substance are wound bands of jute, which in turn are covered by a protecting layer of galvanized steel wires. Then comes the outside covering—a wrapping of tarred hemp cords that keeps the cable's steel-wire armor from corroding.

A submarine cable has varying thicknesses, depending on the depth at which it lies on the ocean floor. At the greatest depths, where the cable is relatively safe from marine animals, anchors, and large rocks, it is slightly less than an inch in diameter and weighs from one to one and a half tons a mile. In shallower water, however—where it is more exposed to damage—a cable is so heavily armored that its diameter increases to as much as two or three inches and its weight rises to more than ten tons a mile. One of the cable's most persistent enemies in shallow water is the teredo or shipworm which bores through hemp or gutta-percha. To thwart it, cable makers may encase the whole cable with a covering of brass tape. The usual life span of a deep-sea cable ranges from 30 to 40 years.

#### How Messages Are Sent by Cable

When a current is sent over 2,000 miles of cable, much of its strength is dissipated by the wire's resistance and by the electrical interactions between the wire, its various coverings, and the ocean water. As a result, the signals that reach the other end are very feeble. So electronic detectors and amplifiers are used similar to those made for radio reception. At junction stations, where cables come to the surface, automatic relays also strengthen cable signals and may be used to transfer messages from one cable to another. This

#### THE PARTS OF A MARINE CABLE



In this diagram we see the elements that comprise the three parts of a deep-sea cable. Although cables differ in thickness, their construction is the same. At the top is a portion of a cable cut open in such a way as to show its various "layers." This telescoped section has only one central copper wire for transmitting messages. The cross section below—which is the actual thickness of the shore end of a cable—shows three conductor wires. This cable, therefore, can carry three times as many messages as the one above.

avoids the delay which formerly occurred when messages had to be taken down and sent out again by hand.

The common code used to transmit messages over ocean cables is an adaptation of International Morse code. For years, of course, all cable messages were sent by hand. Operators tapped the dot-and-dash electric impulses directly into the cable wire by a key similar to the old-fashioned telegraph key. To make more effective use of the high-speed cable, an automatic device was developed that took over the greater portion of the sending job. This device resembles the multiplex instruments now used in land telegraphy (see Telegraph). They make it possible to send four messages at a time in each direction, and errors in transmission are reduced about 80 per cent.

Instruments for transmitting photographs can be attached to submarine cables, and work as effectively as they do over land wires (see Telephotography).

#### How a Cable Is Laid

The task of laying a submarine cable requires a high degree of accuracy and skill on the part of the cable ship's crew. There are about 45 cable-laying ships in the world. The average cable ship carries 3,000 to 4,000 miles of cable in large tanks filled with water to prevent deterioration of the gutta-percha. A ship can lay about 200 miles a day and, if not delayed by breakdowns, will lay the main section of an Atlantic cable in ten days.

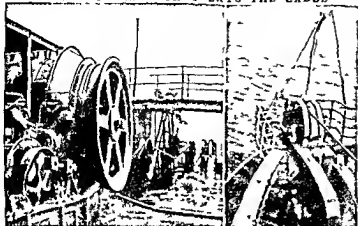
Before a new cable is laid, soundings are made of the ocean bottom along the proposed route and the exact depths are charted. This makes it possible to avoid the greatest depths, where repair work would be difficult, and it also establishes the amount of cable that will have to be laid.

During the laying operation, the coiled cable unwinds in the storage tanks below deck and passes "top-

side" to a braking drum that regulates the strain on the cable. From the drum the cable passes through a dynamometer, an instrument that registers the amount of stress continuously. Then the cable runs through a guiding contrivance at the stern and drops into the

within the next few years several short lines were in operation connecting various parts of the continent and England. The longest line was only 117 miles, so when Cyrus W. Field, an American capitalist, proposed to lay a cable from America to Ireland, a distance

#### THE MACHINERY THAT LAYS THE CABLE



The cable is drawn up from the storage tank below deck, passes several times around the braking drum at the left, and then goes through the dynamometer which measures the strain exerted on the cable. From there it runs aft to the paying out sheave, at the right, that guides the cable's descent into the sea.

sea. As it sinks to the ocean floor, the cable describes a great arc behind the ship, finally touching the bottom many miles back. In sectors of the ocean where it is advisable to do so, a cable may be "plowed under" to protect it from injury. A submarine plow is dragged behind the cable ship and in one operation cuts a trench in the ocean bed, buries the cable from six inches to two feet, and then scrapes mud over it.

While a cable is being laid, electrical tests are made periodically to guard against breaks and weaknesses in the wire. Once a day the ship exchanges messages with the shore on the progress of the work, and these messages pass through all the cable stored in the ship's tanks.

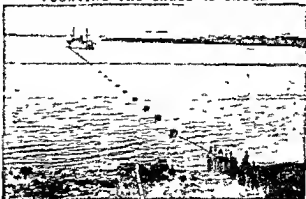
A cable ship, of course, cannot get close enough to shore to run the cable up onto the land. When the ship has approached as near land as possible, a small boat takes the heavy shore end of the cable, supported by barrel floats, to land. There it is attached to the land portion, the other end is spliced to the deep-sea part of the cable, and the operation is finished.

#### Early Cables Plagued by Difficulties

Attempts to telegraph under water were made even before the first land telegraph was generally used in 1844, and Morse, inventor of the telegraph (see Morse, Samuel F. B.), had predicted that Europe and America would one day be connected by telegraph. Nearly 25 years passed, however, before Morse's prediction was fulfilled. In 1851 a cable was laid between Dover and Calais and

soon, later Lord Kelvin. A cable was built with 340,000 miles of wire woven into strands—100,000 miles more than needed to reach to the moon. Two ships, the *Niagara* and the *Agamemnon*, were loaned by the United States and English governments, and the great enterprise was launched in 1857—the same year that saw the first telegraph line completed across the American continent. The start was made with cere-

#### FLOATING THE CABLE TO SHORE



The cable-laying ship has come in as close to the land as it can. Then the heavy shore end of the cable is floated in by means of casks. After it is fastened to the shore cable the casks are cut loose and the cable sinks to the bottom, ready to be put into operation.

mony from the coast of Ireland, but the cable broke when only 109 miles out.

Field and Bright were not discouraged, and they made a second attempt the following year. The same

## THE FIRST CABLE AND ITS MANY TROUBLES



This is an episode in the brave story of the men whose courage and persistence resulted in the laying of the first transatlantic cable. The cable broke repeatedly, but finally that famous ship *Great Eastern* accomplished the feat of binding together the Old World and the New. This picture shows the cable that had been lost the year before being fished up and a new piece spliced in.

two ships met in mid-ocean, each carrying a part of the heavy cable. The two sections were spliced together, and the ships steamed away toward the opposite shores, each unreeling its part of the cable. Twice the cable parted after a number of miles had been covered, and twice it was spliced anew, but all in vain. After a third break the effort had to be abandoned.

A storm of ridicule broke on the luckless promoters, and many of the stockholders were in favor of abandoning the enterprise. But Field's ardor prevailed, and a month later the ships once more met in mid-ocean, again spliced their cables, and proceeded cautiously on their way. Ships passed too near for the safety of the sinking cable, and floating icebergs and the antics of a whale near by gave rise to much fear and anxiety; but at last, on Aug. 5, 1858, each ship reached its harbor with the 2,000 miles of precious cable still intact and with telegraph signals still passing through it. The rejoicing was general on both sides of the water. Queen Victoria and President Buchanan exchanged congratulatory cable messages, because of the new bond of union between the two countries; and the men who had persevered in the face of such obstacles were publicly honored. Less than three months later, however, the messages grew gradually feebler and finally ceased. The wires had been burned out by the use of too strong currents, and the whole gigantic task had to be begun anew.

Although Field was undaunted by these failures, public confidence was gone. The breaking out of the Civil War in America and other causes stopped further active attempts for seven years. Meanwhile Thomson had perfected his delicate receiving instrument, and

Field was tireless in his attempts to raise new capital. Though he was desperately seasick whenever he went to sea, Field crossed the Atlantic 74 times to promote this enterprise.

At last, in 1865, Field and Thomson loaded a new cable on the *Great Eastern*, the largest ship then afloat. When half the journey had been made the cable parted and sank. The next year saw the same two men once more on the giant ship, laying a new cable. This time success crowned their efforts. The ship then turned about, and with improved grappling tackle succeeded in raising the cable that had been lost the year before. A new section was spliced on and the ship returned to shore, completing the second cable between Europe and America. Improvement in the making and laying of cables continued, and other cables were soon in operation.

#### The First Cables in the Pacific

Cable laying in the Pacific was much more difficult than in the Atlantic because of the greater distance and greater depth. The first Pacific cable was laid in 1902, connecting Vancouver, Canada, with Australia and New Zealand. It is about 8,000 miles long, and one span from Vancouver to Fanning Island is 3,600 miles. This cable system was duplicated in 1926 to meet the demands of the increasingly heavy traffic. The other Pacific cable was completed in 1903, from San Francisco to Manila, at a cost of \$12,000,000.

**CAB'OT, JOHN (1450-1499?).** In May 1497 a tiny ship, the *Mathew*, sailed from Bristol, England, with a crew of 18 men. The ship was setting out on a momentous voyage. The captain was John Cabot, an Italian born in Columbus' own city of Genoa; but

he was sailing under the flag of King Henry VII of England. Henry had unwisely refused to help Columbus when he was trying to fit out his expedition. Five years later he was delighted to give permission for Cabot's voyage.

Cabot was sure that he could reach the coast of Asia by sailing westward. Boldly he steered his small ship across the stormy Atlantic. After several weeks of peril and hardship he sighted the coast of North America on June 24, 1497. The land he discovered was probably Cape Breton Island and the nearby island "New Found Land." When Cabot returned with news of his discovery the king gave him ten pounds and the rank of admiral.

The next year, 1498, Cabot set out on a second voyage with two ships and 300 men. He intended to sail down the coast he had already found, which he believed to be the extreme northwest of Asia. He thus hoped to find Japan or Cipango as it was then called. Instead he discovered the barren shores of Labrador, which he named. Afterward he sailed as far south as Maryland. There he abandoned his search for Japan because his supplies had run dangerously low. It is thought that he died in Bristol shortly after his return from this voyage.

Cabot was the first European to reach the shores of North America since the days of the old Northmen. England later laid claim to the whole of North America on the ground that Cabot was the first discoverer to reach the mainland.

SEBASTIAN CABOT (1476? 1557?) son of John Cabot may have accompanied his father on his voyages, but he is first heard of as a map maker for Henry VIII. In 1526 he commanded a Spanish expedition to South America. Seeking a strait to the Pacific he entered the Plata, Paraná and Paraguay rivers. In his later years he returned to England and in 1552 founded the Muscovy Company to find a northeast passage to Asia. The ships sent out by this company opened up the Russian market to England.

**CACAO.** This valuable tree, native to the tropical parts of the American continent, produces the seeds from which the world's supply of chocolate and cocoa

is made. It is an evergreen, ever blooming tree ranging from 20 to 40 feet in height. The leaves are large, oval, and glossy, dark green above and red below. The flowers and fruit grow in a peculiar position, springing in numerous clusters directly from the trunk and older branches. The fruit is a pod about the size of a small cucumber, green at first and purplish yellow when ripe. It grows on a stem so short that it looks as if it were artificially attached to the tree. The hard leathery rind about half an inch thick, contains five to eight rows of white or pale purple beans—from 29 to 50 altogether

—embedded in a sweet pink pulp. These beans are the raw material of chocolate and cocoa (see Chocolate).

The principal producers are West Africa's Gold Coast, Nigeria and French West Africa, South America's Brazil, Ecuador, and Venezuela, and the West Indies' Dominican Republic. Mexican production is increasing. Scientific name *Theobroma cacao*.

**CACTUS.** The most precious thing in the desert is water, and each desert animal or plant has through ages worked out its own answer to the problem of how to survive with very little water. The cactus does this in a very interesting way. Leaves on plants which grow under ordinary conditions are very wasteful of water, taking it up from the sap and giving it out to the air in a process called transpiration. To avoid this waste of water the cactus has given up having leaves and has its stems of such form as to expose as little surface as possible to the direct rays of the sun, which make the plant give up its moisture. Also the stems are thick so as to give room for the storage of water, and protected with thick covering to keep it safely hoarded.

There are many forms of cacti (as the plural is written). The most impressive is the "giant cactus" of Arizona belonging to the genus *Cereus*. Its stems and branches are like huge spiny columns from one to two feet thick. It often grows from 40 to 50 feet high and looks like a giant candlestick. This cactus has long, tubular, very showy flowers. The fruit is egg-shaped and has a crimson pulp which the Indians use for food, they gather it with a forked stick attached to a long pole. Woodpeckers dig out their nests in the big stems.

Some cacti are in the form of very spiny globes. Those with flat stems belong to the genus *Opuntia*, a good example of which is the common "prickly pear." Of these there are many species, but they are all alike in having their stems and branches in roundish flattened sections and jointed. They have small fleshy leaves which fall off and at the base of each is left a tuft of cruel spines of two sorts, meant for the punishment of any thirsty trespasser. The prickly pear has yellow or reddish showy flowers, and a pear-shaped fruit which is delicious and satisfying to thirst. Certain species of *Opuntia* which were introduced into Australia as a pretty flowering hedge, have run wild and become "the world's greatest vegetable terror," spreading their vicious thorny plants over miles and miles of valuable grazing and farming lands.

Cacti are found native chiefly in the arid regions of America—in Arizona, New Mexico, Central America, and extending to southern South America. About a thousand species have been named, varying greatly in form and size. Many curious and beautiful varieties are

#### CACAO BEANS IN THE POD



The pod has been cut open to show how the seeds grow inside. In nature the pod is about three times this size.

prized as hothouse plants, among them the "night-blooming cereus," whose lovely waxlike blossoms open in a single night and wither at the approach of sunlight.

From the juicy stems of the cactus primitive peoples long ago learned to distill both medicines and intoxicating drinks. It was long known that were it not for the prickly spines the cactus would furnish excellent fodder for cattle, and Luther Burbank spent many years in experimentation to produce a spineless cactus.

Scientific name of giant cactus, *Cercus gignatus*; a common species of edible prickly pear is the *Opuntia engelmannii*; the globe cactus is *Echinocactus horizontalis*.

**CADILLAC** (*kă-dî-yak'*), ANTOINE DE LA MOTHE (1656?-1730). Born in Gaseony, France, of noble family, Cadillac was destined to have a stormy career. An older brother was guilty of embezzlement, and the father impoverished himself to clear the family name. Antoine was forced to become an army cadet at an early age in order to receive an education. At 21 he was promoted to the rank of lieutenant. He was almost penniless and wholly lacking in influence at court; he was homely and had an exceptionally long nose which court ladies ridiculed. And yet he impressed Louis XIV with his nimble wit, his courage, his honesty, and his swordsmanship. It has been said that Edmond Rostand's play 'Cyrano de Bergerac' was inspired in part by Cadillac.

King Louis was badly in need of such a man. French administrators in America were profiting at the expense of the home government and it was impossible to get accurate reports. So in the year 1683, Cadillac was dispatched to New France to work under Governor Frontenac as private investigator for the king. Naturally, in this role, he was not popular with the scheming administrators. Immediately, and as long as he was a power in America, his enemies were many and his friends few.

Most historians agree that Cadillac was hot-tempered, haughty, and moody. He is accused of having been overly ambitious, of missing no opportunity to amass a personal fortune. These faults were common among American pioneers. But it has never been proved that Cadillac's personal ambition interfered with his faithful services to his country.

#### His Prosperous Colony at Detroit

In 1689 he reported personally to King Louis, and returned to New France in 1690. From 1691 to 1699 he commanded an important post at Mackinac at the head of Lake Michigan, although much of his time was spent at Montreal and Quebec. His outstanding achievement was the founding of Detroit. With 50 settlers, 50 soldiers, and two priests, he arrived at the site of Detroit on July 24, 1701. The canoe trip had taken 49 days. A stockade was built, streets and lots laid out, homes erected. By the end of August the colony was snugly housed. He made peace among Indian tribes and settled them on land close to Detroit. The fur trade of the colony prospered. But Cadillac's temper and pride caused so much enmity that, in 1704, he was tried in Quebec for official misconduct.

Nothing came of this trial, however, and he returned to govern his settlement.

There, Cadillac had surrounded himself with Old World luxuries, including table silver, Venetian glassware, stoves, and damask linens. His swashbuckling soldiers wore gorgeous uniforms, plumed three-cornered hats, thigh-length boots, and silver spurs. But unlike other communities in New France, Detroit was self-supporting, and all the king had to pay was the soldiers' wages. The other administrators were extremely jealous.

#### His Transfer to Louisiana Territory

Realizing at last that they could not discredit him with Louis XIV, Cadillac's enemies tried a new tack. They suggested that he was too big for the little community of Detroit, and that he should be transferred to the Louisiana territory, which extended from the Great Lakes to the Gulf. Their efforts this time were successful, and in 1712 Cadillac was officially informed of his transfer.

Broken-hearted, he sailed to France to learn the duties required of him. He took up his administrative work in Louisiana in May 1713. He had heard much of the wealth of the great territory—of the silver and other precious metals. All he found of metals were some lead deposits in Illinois.

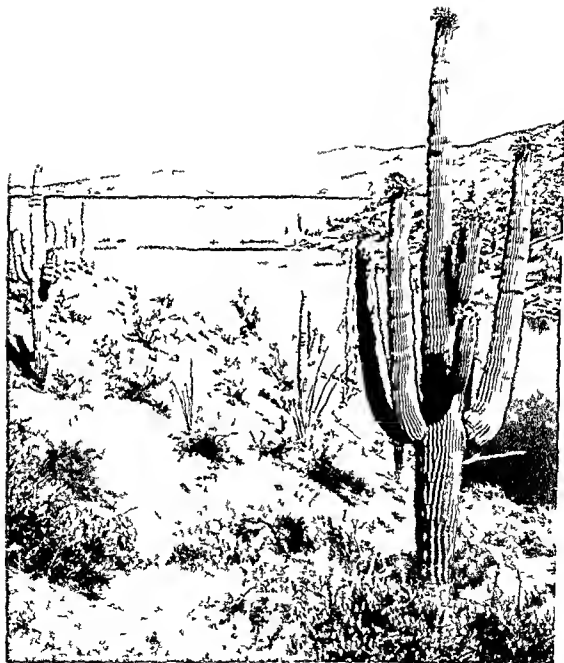
"The wretched country is good for nothing," he wrote. "The people are no better than the country—scum, refuse, ruffians who cheat the gibbet." He saw nothing of beauty in his new home on the Mississippi, just north of present-day New Orleans. He saw only squalor, snakes, and alligators. He had but 40 soldiers, unkempt and undisciplined, who looked mostly to the Indians for food. Duels were fought daily.

After writing innumerable indignant letters to France, he was recalled in 1717. He spent a short time as a prisoner in the Bastille, then retired with his wife and 13 children to a small castle near his birthplace. He died in 1730, never forgiving the people who had caused him to lose his beloved Detroit.

**CADMIUM.** In nature this important metal is usually found associated with zinc, and some of its uses are similar to those of the parent metal. The name cadmium is from the Latin *cadmia*, meaning "Cadmean earth," an ore of zinc. All cadmium is recovered as a by-product of the refining of zinc or lead.

The greatest use of cadmium is in plating steel. Cadmium plating is used for automobile and airplane parts, electrical equipment, and hardware such as screws and nails. Cadmium-plated articles are superior to zinc-plated (galvanized) pieces in several respects. Cadmium better resists corrosion of air and salt water and keeps a shiny appearance. It is deposited more quickly than zinc and it forms an even coating on intricately shaped pieces. A thin deposit of cadmium protects metal as well as a heavier coating of zinc. Since cadmium is easily attacked by mineral acids which combine with it to form poisonous salts, it is not suitable for plating food containers.

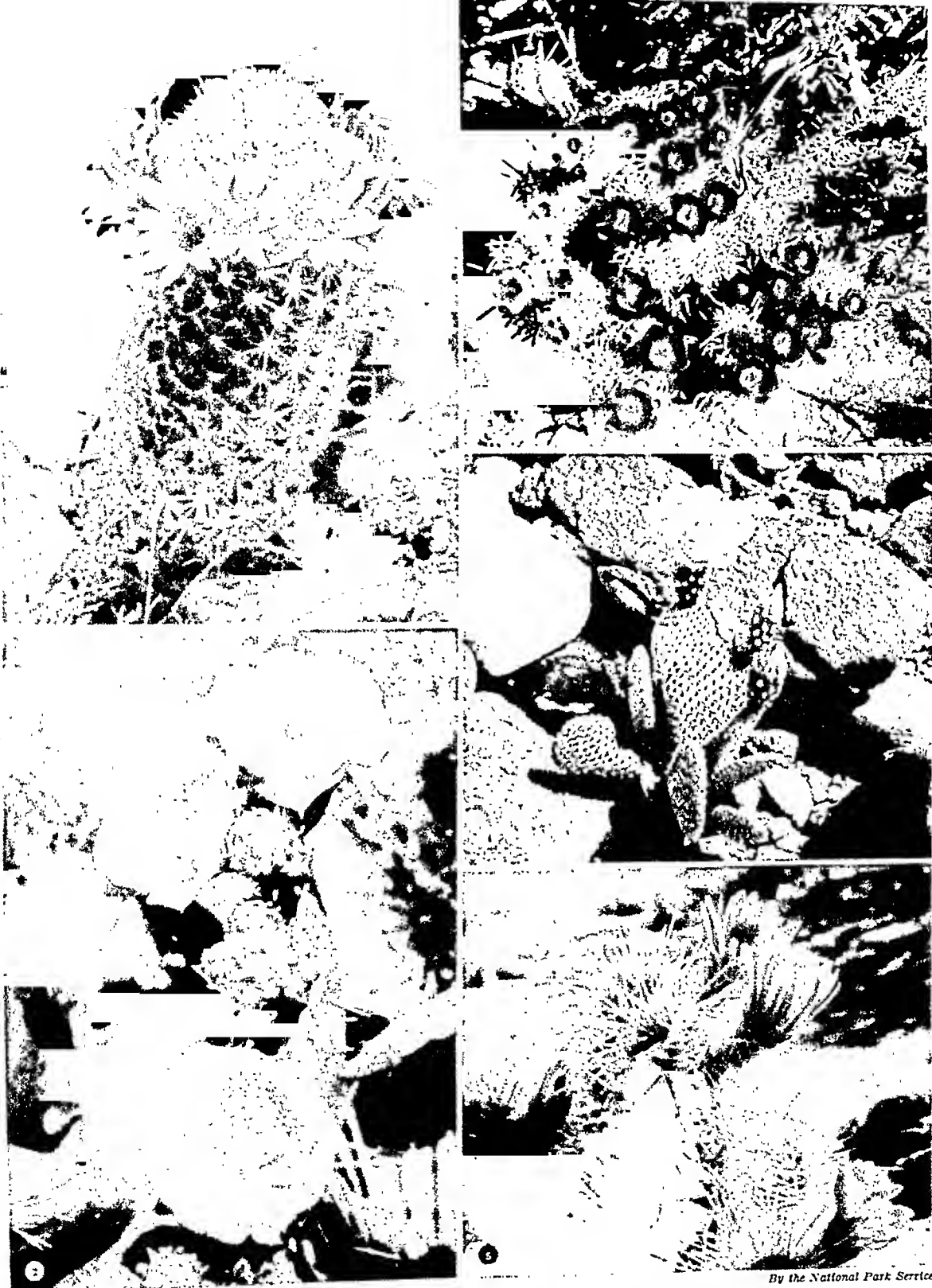
Alloys of cadmium are valuable in industry. Bearings containing more than 98 per cent of cadmium are



### BIGGEST OF THE CACTUS FAMILY

The giant saguaro cactus is a long-lived tree. Its tall branching stems store water from the cactus and so keep it alive during long periods of drought. The buds at the tips of the arms will open into beautiful white flowers. In the background is San Carlos Lake formed by the great Coolidge Dam in Arizona.





By the National Park Service

# BLOSSOMS AMONG THE THORNS

1. The fishhook or pincushion cactus (*Mammillaria microcarpa*). 2. Prickly pear cactus (*Opuntia engelmannii*). 3. Strawberry cactus (*Echinocereus stramineus*). 4. Beavertail cactus (*Opuntia basilaris*). 5. Hedgehog cactus (*Echinocereus polyacanthus*).

used in internal combustion engines because they withstand high speeds and high temperatures. The addition of a small amount of cadmium strengthens the copper of electric wires. Cadmium also enters into many alloys of low melting point used for electric fuses and other fire-control devices (see Alloy). Sometimes it is substituted for tin in solders.

Cadmium compounds have long been important. Cadmium oxide is used in the negative plates of cadmium-nickel storage batteries (see Battery). The halides, cadmium bromide and cadmium iodide, are used in photography and photoengraving. Other compounds are important as pigments. Used in ceramics, cadmium acetate gives an iridescent effect, and cadmium nitrate imparts a reddish-yellow sheen. Cadmium sulfide (cadmium yellow) is used in high-quality paints, inks, and glazes.

Metallic cadmium (chemical symbol Cd) is a lustrous silvery element discovered in 1817 by Friedrich Stromeyer. It is softer than zinc but harder than tin and has a fibrous texture. It melts at 610° F (321° C) and vaporizes at 1413° F (767° C). The United States produces nearly three fourths of the world's supply of cadmium. Other important producers are Mexico and South West Africa (See also Chemistry, Periodic Table).

**CAD'MUS** Once upon a time Zeus, the chief of the Greek gods, took upon himself the shape of a bull and carried off the maiden Europa. Her brother Cadmus, together with his mother and brothers, went to recover her. After a long vain search Cadmus consulted the Delphic oracle, who told him to give up his quest, follow a cow which he should meet, and wherever she lay down to build a city.

Cadmus met the cow and followed her to Boeotia, where she lay down near a spring. But a dragon lay in hiding near the spring and killed Cadmus' comrades. He slew the dragon and then the goddess Athena appeared and ordered him to sow the dragon's teeth like seed in the ground. Cadmus obeyed, and immediately armed men sprang up. They fought among themselves until only five remained. These became Cadmus' subjects and helped him create his new city, Thebes. A later legend says that Cadmus brought the Phœnician alphabet into Greece and so became "the father of letters."

**CAEDMON** (kăd'mŭn) (7th century A.D.) The earliest of English Christian poets, Caedmon, spent most of his life as an uneducated cowherd. The Anglo-Saxon historian Bede tells how Caedmon became a poet in his "Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation".

Leaving a banquet hall because he could not join in the verse making and singing, Caedmon lay down in the cow barn and slept. An angel appeared to him and said "Caedmon, sing something for me." He replied "I can sing nothing. Because of that I left the banquet and came out here, for I do not know how to sing anything." "But you can sing for me," the angel said. "What shall I sing?" "Sing to me of the Creation." Then Caedmon composed and sang a little hymn of nine lines in praise of the Creator.

Later the abbot of Whitby learned of his gift. With her help he became an inmate of a monastery. There he spent the rest of his life composing hymns and poems on Biblical stories. Scholars once attributed most of the Anglo-Saxon or Old English, religious verse to Caedmon. But the only work definitely known to be his is the famous hymn.

## ROME'S Great GENERAL, Who "CAME, SAW, CONQUERED"

**CAESAR**, GAIUS JULIUS (102?-44 B.C.) Doggers of assassins ended the career of the great Julius Caesar before he had finished his lifework. But what he accomplished made him one of the few men who changed the course of the world's civilization. Some historians consider him Rome's greatest genius. He was a soldier of remarkable ability, an accomplished scholar and writer, and a statesman gifted with enormous insight. He changed the chaos of an outworn system of government into the foundations of a new order. From it arose the greatest of all ancient empires. The new order also preserved the civilization which is our inheritance today.

### His Adventures with Pirates

When Caesar was a young man he was captured by pirates in the eastern Mediterranean. When they told him he must give them 20 talents for ransom or they would put him to death, he laughingly said "What! Only 20 talents? I will give you 50 talents for my life!"

While messengers were gone to Miletus for the money, Caesar joked with his captors and vowed to hang them all some day. The pirates were greatly amused at his high apirits. They had no idea that he would come back to carry out his threat. But

Caesar was a man of his word, and within a few weeks after his release the whole pirate band was captured and was put to death.

### How Caesar Won the Roman People

Hiding his serious character under a mask of light-hearted gaiety, Caesar made himself a favorite with the people of Rome. When he was overseer of public games (66 B.C.), he increased his popularity by preparing magnificent spectacles in the Circus Maximus for the pleasure-loving Romans at the cost of a crushing burden of debt for himself. The dignified Roman senators would have laughed to scorn the suggestion that this careless young fop would some day be the conqueror of the world, the most powerful man in Rome. No one realized that his smiling manner covered a shrewd penetration and purpose. He saw the rottenness of the existing government and the need of a strong central power to save Rome from decay. He felt that he himself was the one person to bring this change about. This was his determined aim and as a part of his plan he formed a political alliance with the two most powerful men in Rome, the wealthy Crassus and the popular general Pompey. As a result Caesar was elected consul in 59 B.C. After his year

of office, the senators, who were beginning to be alarmed at his power, were glad to see him sent as proconsul to Gaul, the country we now call France.

Here was Caesar's chance to prepare for the changes in Rome which he knew must come. While in Gaul he built up a well-trained army, subdued all Gaul, put down a dangerous uprising under a leader named Vercingetorix, made a successful invasion across the Rhine, and twice led his army into Britain. He did not conquer any part of Britain, but he paved the way for the Roman occupation of that island a century later. During these years of war and conquest, Caesar not only showed his ability as a great leader and organizer, but endeared himself to his soldiers so that they would follow him anywhere. He worked with them, fought with them, and endured the same hardships. When at one time his men mutinied at the appalling dangers they were called upon to face, Caesar shamed them into obedience by declaring that if all others deserted him, he would go on with the faithful Tenth Legion alone.

Crassus was now dead and Pompey, jealous of the growing power of Caesar, had veered around to the side

of the senate. Caesar was commanded to disband his army, but knowing that this would mean his political ruin he refused. Instead, he led his loyal forces across the little river Rubicon, in northern Italy, which was the southern boundary of his province, and marched against Rome. From this action, which amounted to a declaration of war against the senate, comes our expression to "cross the Rubicon," meaning to take action which will inevitably bring certain consequences.

During the five years of civil war which followed Caesar's appearance at Rome, he put down rebellions in Spain, decisively defeated Pompey at Pharsalus (in Greece), and was successful in overthrowing his opponents in Egypt, Africa, and Asia Minor. It was from Asia Minor that he sent his famous message to the senate: "I came, I saw, I conquered."

#### THE SURRENDER OF VERGINGETORIX



This brave and able Gallic chief was the deadliest foe Rome had met since the days of Hannibal. When Caesar's generalship had made further resistance hopeless, Vercingetorix rode full-armed to Caesar's camp and surrendered himself as a sacrifice for his people. Caesar brought him to Rome to grace his triumph and to suffer death at the foot of the Capitol.

Caesar was now master of all the Roman world. Recognizing that the old institutions of the republic were outworn and dead in all but name, he sought to build a new and stronger order in which the supreme power should be in the hands of one capable man. He had himself made dictator for life, took the title of "imperator," assumed the powers of all the leading offices of the state, and set on foot many far-reaching reforms. But there were still many of the old oligarchy who could not tolerate the idea of a one-man rule, even though it brought good government, and they plotted to take his life.

The senate was to hold a meeting on March 15 (called by the Romans "the ides of March"), and the plotters determined that the dictator should die on that day. Among

the conspirators was Caesar's friend Marcus Junius Brutus, a Roman of such stern virtue that he was ready to sacrifice his friend and benefactor to what he believed to be the cause of liberty. Caesar was warned by a soothsayer to "beware the ides of March," and his wife Calpurnia begged him to remain home from the senate that day; but the conspirators persuaded him to attend the meeting.

No sooner was Caesar in the senate chamber than he was surrounded by the conspirators. At a signal

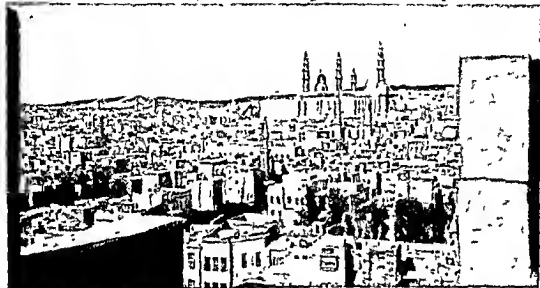
they drew their daggers and attacked him. At first Caesar tried to defend himself but the attempt was hopeless. When he saw his friend Brutus with a dagger in his hand, he gave up the struggle, saying 'Thou too, Brutus?' (*et tu Brute?*) He fell dead at the foot of Pompey's statue.

The murder of Caesar deprived Rome of perhaps its greatest statesman and soldier. His murderers who had tried to save the republic failed to achieve their aims, for 14 years later Caesar's nephew Octavian became emperor of Rome (see Augustus). The

next four emperors also belonged to the family of the Caesars, and the imperial name gained such dignity that it became a title of honor. The name survived to the first World War as the official title (Kaiser) of the German and Austrian rulers.

Julius Caesar was as able a writer as he was an administrator. In the midst of his military campaigns he found time to record the events in which he was taking part. The simple straightforward prose of his interesting history of the Gallic wars is familiar to every student of Latin.

## EGYPT'S CAPITAL, *Founded by ARAB CONQUERORS*



This picture shows a few of the many domes, minarets, and closely packed dwellings of the colorful city of Cairo, capital of Egypt. In the background the rocky and barren Mokattam hills rise 550 feet above the city.

**CAIRO** (*kī'ro*), **EGYPT**. The largest city in Africa is Cairo, the capital of Egypt. It stands at the head of the Nile delta near the point where the river begins to divide into many channels.

There was no city here in the time of the Pharaohs, nor in later Greek or Roman days. It came into existence in the 7th century A.D. after the Byzantine power in Egypt had crumbled before the Mohammedan armies advancing from Arabia. The great city of Alexandria, at the western end of the Nile delta, surrendered without a battle. The victorious general Amru wanted to make this seaport the Mohammedan capital. "Behold," he said, "a city ready made for us!" But Caliph Omar, organizer of the Moslem power, saw that the Nile floods would cut off Alexandria from the Arabian homeland. Therefore he asked Amru to build him a new city east of the river.

Amru selected a site on the right bank of the Nile above the delta. In the centuries that followed, the Mohammedans warred among themselves and the settlement was several times destroyed and rebuilt. The present city was founded in 968 by the Fatimite dy-

nasty near the earlier site. It was called El Qahira ("the victorious"), a name since altered to Cairo.

In the 13th century the great Mohammedan ruler Saladin built a citadel at Cairo and began to wall in the quarters of the diverse peoples who had settled there. The city grew and prospered and in the later Middle Ages became the center of trade between Europe and the East and one of the chief seats of Mohammedan culture. In 1517 it fell to the Turks. In 1798 it was seized by Napoleon, but British and Turkish forces drove the French out three years later, and the city was handed back to the Turks. The English, however, retained special interests in Cairo. A modern European city grew up in the 19th century between the oriental quarters and the river. The later history of Cairo is merged with that of Egypt (see Egypt).

### In the Shadow of the Pyramids

Cairo spreads east from the Nile to the low Mokattam hills, which separate it from the brown wastes of the desert. The citadel of Saladin still stands on a spur of these hills, in the southeast corner of the city. From this height we may look across the island-

studded Nile to the great Pyramids of Gizeh which loom darkly on the western horizon.

#### A Glimpse into the Old City

Below us lies the city, with its bulbous domes and graceful minarets of the Arab section, the synagogues of the Jewish quarter, and the Christian churches of the Europeans and Copts. In the foreign colony the streets are wide, the buildings modern. Consulates, theaters, hotels, cafés, and attractive shops surround a 20-acre park. A definitely European atmosphere prevails.

But the foreign colony is not Cairo. Cairo is the maze of narrow and crooked streets swarming with Arabs and Copts, Jews and Nubians, Turks and Greeks. Cairo is the blaze of white and yellow walls in the sunlight, the bazaars with the jostle and push of turbaned crowds, the nasal whining of the merchants, the singsong calls of the faithful at prayertime. It is the beggars squatting in the market place, and the open-front shops with their carpets and gaudy jewelry, their candies and rings of bread, their oranges, bananas, and dates, and their cackling hens. Cairo is the patient plodding buffaloes drawing carts, the clop-clop of heavy-burdened donkeys on dusty streets, and the rhythmic tinkle of camel bells.

#### A University, One Thousand Years Old

The El Azhar Mosque in Cairo was founded about 970 A.D., and immediately converted into a university. For centuries it has been the center of Mohammedan learning, and students come from all over the Islamic world to study here. Instruction is free. The students—some 12,000—sit on mats upon the ground in little groups about their teachers, taking notes, or swaying gently from side to side as they repeat some singsong phrase. For centuries, teaching at El Azhar was confined almost exclusively to the sacred writings of the Moslems. Recently, however, sweeping changes have been made, and courses of study include many subjects taught at our Western universities. El Azhar's library contains some 60,000 volumes, many of which

are in manuscript and very old. Other educational institutions in Cairo are Egypt's state university (Fuad University), which was founded in 1908 and reorganized in 1925 by King Fuad I along European lines; and the American University, which offers courses in Oriental studies to foreigners and natives alike. There are many native elementary schools, and a number of secondary schools and teachers' colleges.

#### STREET SCENE IN OLD CAIRO



This is the Muski, one of the market streets of the city. To this place come Bedouins of the desert to trade at the stores and bazaars and camel drivers to outfit their caravans. Although Cairo has a modern street car system, many people ride in donkey carts as their ancestors did.

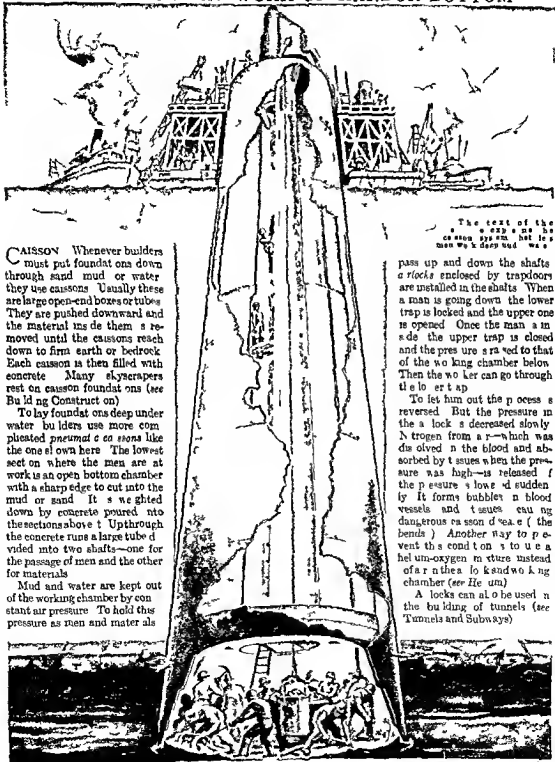
Cairo's two museums are of special interest. The Museum of Egyptian Antiquities cost more than a million dollars and houses ancient Egyptian relics. The Arab Museum and Royal Library, in addition to its ancient treasures, contains 100,000 volumes of books and manuscripts.

#### Commerce and Industries

The commerce of Cairo is extensive. Gum arabic, ivory, and hides from the Sudan, cotton and sugar from upper Egypt, rugs and shawls from Persia, tobacco from Turkey, and a great variety of European products pass through the city. Its chief industries are cotton manufacturing and sugar refining. Other products are attar of roses, wood and metal work, and ornaments of gold and silver, inlaid with ivory and pearl.

Cairo is the seat of the Egyptian government. During the second World War, it was the scene of an historic conference between Franklin Roosevelt, Winston Churchill, and Chiang Kai-shek. Population (1947 census), 2,100,506.

# "SAND HOGS" AT WORK ON HARBOR BOTTOM



**CAISSON** Whenever builders must put foundation down through sand, mud or water they use caissons. Usually these are large open-end boxes or tubes. They are pushed downward and the material inside them is removed until the caissons reach down to firm earth or bedrock. Each caisson is then filled with concrete. Many skyscrapers rest on caisson foundations (see Building Construction).

To lay foundations deep under water, builders use more complicated pneumatic caissons like the one shown here. The lowest section where the men are at work is an open bottom chamber with a sharp edge to cut into the mud or sand. It is weighted down by concrete poured into the sections above it. Up through the concrete runs a large tube divided into two shafts—one for the passage of men and the other for materials.

Mud and water are kept out of the working chamber by constant air pressure. To hold this pressure as men and material

The text of the  
caisson says that it is  
men who keep the water

pass up and down the shafts a clock enclosed by trapdoors are installed in the shafts. When a man is going down the lower trap is locked and the upper one is opened. Once the man is inside the upper trap is closed and the pressure is raised to that of the working chamber below. Then the worker can go through the lower trap.

To let him out the process is reversed. But the pressure in the lower lock is decreased slowly. Nitrogen from a tank which was dissolved in the blood and absorbed by tissues when the pressure was high—is released if the pressure is lowered suddenly. It forms bubbles in blood vessels and tissues causing dangerous caisson disease (the bends). Another way to prevent this condition is to use a helium-oxygen mixture instead of air in the lower working chamber (see Helium).

Air locks can also be used in the building of tunnels (see Tunnels and Subways).

**CALAIS** (*ká-lě*'), FRANCE. This seaport of France, on the Strait of Dover, was an outpost of English power during the time of the Hundred Years' War. It was captured by Edward III of England in 1347 after a siege of 11 months and came to be regarded as one of England's most valuable possessions. This boast was written over one of its gates:

Then shall Frenchmen Calais win,  
When iron and lead like cork shall swim.

The French, however, captured it in 1558. Its loss so saddened Queen Mary Tudor that she declared, as she lay on her deathbed, that Calais would be found graven on her heart.

Calais today has a good harbor and is connected with Dover by steamer and by a submarine telegraph. It is one of the chief ports for passengers traveling to and from England, for at Calais the English Channel narrows to only about 20 miles in width. Calais is a center of the machine-made lace industry and also produces glassware and textiles. The herring, cod, and mackerel fisheries also employ many men.

During World War I, this strategic channel port withstood German attack. In 1940 it was badly damaged by German fire, and when France was defeated it became a German base for action against England. It was often and severely bombarded by the British. Population (1946 census), 41,536.

**CALCIUM.** Nearly every drink of water you take gives you some calcium salts, for "hard" water, such as comes from wells, springs, and rivers, gets this quality from compounds of calcium and magnesium dissolved in it.

Calcium is not found free. In its many compounds it is the fifth in abundance in the list of elements. Plants need calcium compounds for growth, and a soluble form of *calcium phosphate*, called superphosphate, is a good fertilizer, since it is readily absorbed. Green vegetables, fruits, and milk are essential to the

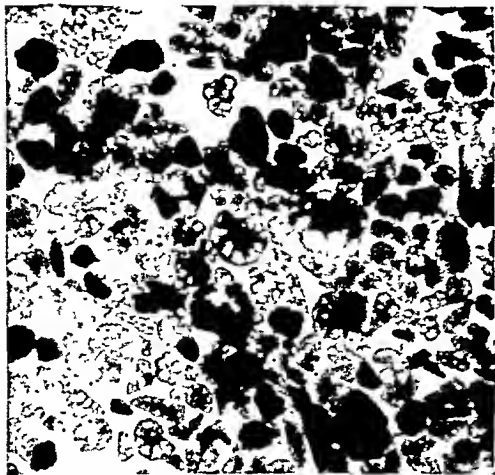
diet, especially for children, because from these foods the body gets calcium and some phosphate for bone formation. Calcium salts in the food help counteract acidity; lack of calcium helps cause rickets.

Limestone, marble, chalk, Iceland spar, coral, pearls, and eggshells are all made up mainly of calcium carbonate (see Limestone; Marble). Chalk is composed of calcium deposits which were the shells of marine protozoa (see Chalk). Calcite is a crystalline form of calcium carbonate, and Iceland spar, one of its varieties, has the power of producing double refraction of light. Carbon dioxide, present in most water, helps dissolve calcium carbonate, so that in limestone caves the evaporation of dripping water produces beautiful and fantastic stalactites and stalagmites.

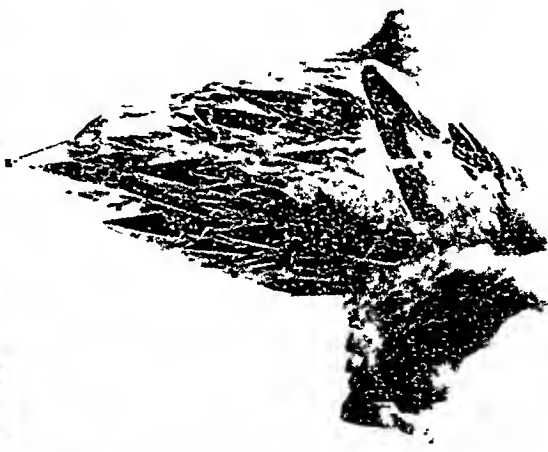
Quicklime is the oxide of calcium. When exposed to air it takes up carbon dioxide and becomes calcium carbonate. It is then said to be "air-slaked" and is useless as lime (see Lime). "Water-slaked" lime is *calcium hydroxide*. When mixed with sand and hair it forms plaster. When calcium hydroxide absorbs carbon dioxide it then becomes calcium carbonate. Since there is little carbon dioxide in the air, there is plenty of time to put the plaster on the wall before it hardens.

Gypsum and plaster of Paris are *calcium sulphate* (see Gypsum). *Calcium carbide* is made by heating limestone with coke in an electric furnace. With water, calcium carbide produces acetylene gas (see Acetylene). Calcium carbide is also used in a process of nitrogen fixation. When heated with nitrogen, a mixture of carbon and calcium cyanamide is produced which is used as a fertilizer. When treated with hot water or superheated steam ammonia results (see Ammonia; Nitrogen). *Calcium chloride*, a by-product in soda manufacture and other processes, absorbs moisture and is used to settle road dust.

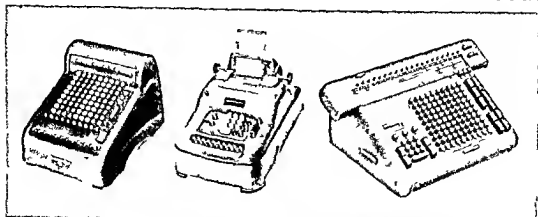
#### UNUSUAL FORMS OF CALCIUM IN FOSSILS AND A CRYSTAL



The tiny objects shown at the left are the microscopic shells of sea-dwelling protozoans called *foraminifera*. The shells consist of calcium carbonate. When the creatures died millions of years



ago, the shells drifted to the bottom and gradually formed a deposit which today is chalk. Shown at the right is a crystal of *calcite*, made up of ions of calcium carbonate.



The key-drive (left), the key-set (center), and the rotary calculators (right) are the common calculating machines used to solve the arithmetic problems of business.

## MACHINES That Solve MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS

**CALCULATING MACHINES** These amazing machines range from small desk devices for doing sums to their big brothers, the giant brains that can solve complex mathematical problems in less time than the twinkling of an eye. In size they range from small portable mechanisms such as a bomb-sight to huge electronic simulators that test proposed designs of airplanes and guided missiles.

Names such as "mechanical brains" or "thinking machines" are often applied to all kinds of calculating machines. Actually there are two distinct classes: *digital computers* and *analogue computers*. They are very unlike in construction, operation, and use.

*Digital computers* are so named because they work with digits or numbers. They might also be called arithmetic machines because the primary operations they can perform are the addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of numbers.

*Analogue computers* are so named because they often work on an analogy or model principle by using directly measurable quantities such as mechanical motions, voltages, resistances, and hydraulic forces to represent the problem to be solved.

### The Digital Class of Calculators

Examples of machines that use digital computing principles include adding machines, desk calculators, bookkeeping machines, cash registers, punched-card business machines, and giant electronic computers. The giant electronic machines, although highly publicized as mysterious and awesome thinking machines, are not hard to understand. Basically, all they can do is to add, subtract, multiply, and divide numbers. Digital computers cannot think, no matter how large or complex they are. They can perform tedious arithmetical operations much faster and more accurately than humans. For example, some electronic computers can add or subtract 16,000 numbers a second.

Many millions of the digital type of machine, varying widely in size and purpose, are now used in offices,

banks, stores, universities, and laboratories. Most of them operate on simple mechanical principles.

### How Mechanical Calculators Work

The basic part of every mechanical calculator is a set of numeral adding wheels. These wheels can be seen through the row of small windows along the front of the machine. Each wheel has the numbers 0 to 9 marked around its outside rim, and each is connected through an ingenious mechanism to the row of nine keys directly above it. This mechanism enables the No. 1 key when depressed to rotate its wheel one step; the No. 2 key to rotate the wheel two steps; and so on. If we press the No. 1 key, the wheel below would advance to '1'. When we push the No. 2 key, the wheel advances two more steps so that it now reads '3'—the sum of one and two.

A column of numbers can be added rapidly by simply entering them in the key board and reading the sum in the windows. Interlocking mechanisms between the numeral wheels provide for carry-overs automatically. To multiply on this and almost all other machines, multiplication is treated as successive additions. For example, to multiply 513 by 3, we would press the No. 5 key down three times in rapid succession, and the answer 15 would appear in the windows. Division is similarly performed as successive subtractions.

### Examples of Mechanical Calculating Machines

*Key-driven calculators*, as described above, can be operated very rapidly by skilled operators because the number wheels are operated directly from the keys. Since most business arithmetic involves only simple addition and multiplication of small numbers, machines of this type are used widely in business offices. The first commercially successful key-driven calculator, later called the *Comptometer*, was invented by Dorr E. Felt in 1885.

In *key-set machines*, the number keys are first depressed or cocked. Then a second motion—such as turning a crank or starting a drive motor—is required



to complete the machine cycle. The key-set principle is used in all machines that provide printers for automatic recording of results, since it is not feasible to drive printers directly from the keys. Adding machines of many varieties have been developed over the past 50 years and have become very popular wherever figures are handled in large volumes. About 350,000 adding machines are manufactured every year by 12 companies in the United States.

*Rotary calculators* are so named because they use a rotary drive mechanism to transfer numbers set into the keyboard into the adding-wheel unit. Because the rotary drive lends itself to high-speed repeated addition or subtraction, these machines can be used to do multiplications and divisions rapidly and automatically. The first commercially successful machine was developed by Frank S. Baldwin and Jay R. Monroe in 1911. Baldwin invented his first calculator in 1872. He worked on it for 40 years before he succeeded. He was often referred to as the "man who achieved success after 80." Rotary calculators are now made in the United States by three manufacturers.

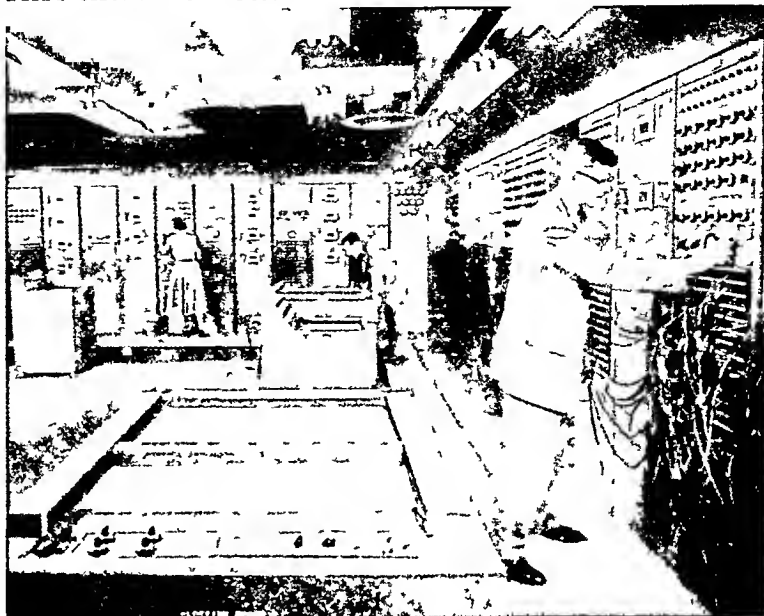
#### More Complex Business Machines

*Bookkeeping machines* are now so well known that it is hard to believe that less than 70 years ago bookkeepers had to do all their tedious figuring by hand methods. A bank clerk, William S. Burroughs, suffered a breakdown in health from overwork and decided to invent a machine that would take the drudgery out of bookkeeping. After many years he produced a successful adding-printing machine in 1891, and thus launched a revolution in the world's bookkeeping methods.

At that time, banks were the largest users of such machines. Today banks could not cope with their work without machine aids. In one recent year, United States banks handled nearly 8 billion checks, worth about 2 trillion dollars. A wide variety of bookkeeping, billing, and accounting machines are now manufactured in the United States by half a dozen companies. They perform many computations automatically.

*Cash registers* of modern design have been provided with elaborate computing mechanisms that have extended their usefulness far beyond the original purpose of insuring the honesty of clerks. The cash register was invented in 1879 by James Ritty of Dayton, Ohio, and it was made commercially successful by John H. Patterson, who founded the National

## THIS ARRAY OF MACHINERY WORKS BY ELECTRONICS



This electronic analogue computer solves problems by simulating the conditions by electrical and electronic means. In a guided missile flight problem, the plotting board in the foreground would show the flight path, while recorders in the rear show conditions of test.

Cash Register Company in 1884. Many millions of these machines are in use today in stores throughout the world (see Cash Register).

*Punched-card business machines* use calculating devices in many different ways and have been used widely to make scientific and engineering calculations. Equipment now manufactured by the International Business Machines Corporation, which reads cards electrically, had its beginnings in the work done by Herman Hollerith in the 1880's for the United States Bureau of the Census. The Remington Rand equipment, which reads cards mechanically, originated in the developments of James Powers in the 1900's—also for the Census Bureau (see Census).

#### Electronic Calculating Machines

*Electronic calculators* are being built to solve hitherto insurmountable problems in many fields of science. Defense problems in atomic energy, jet engines, aircraft design, and guided missiles, for example, created the initial demand for these machines. They are now being applied to peacetime problems also.

Electronic calculators can perform all the arithmetic functions of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division at very high speeds and thus can solve problems beyond the reach of ordinary methods. An atomic energy problem that takes two hours to solve on an electronic computer would require 4,000 weeks to work on a desk computer and 800 years with pencil and paper.

#### Inside an Electronic Computer

The machines discussed so far all employ mechanical adding wheels in their basic adding mechanisms. To speed up calculations, it was necessary to find a

THIS MACHINERY PERFORMS FROM 2,000 TO 16,000 OPERATIONS A SECOND



This IBM digital electronic calculator was put to work in April 1953. Punched cards feed the data into the machine. Magnetic drums and tapes and cathode-ray tubes are the "memory."

devices. The answers are printed on paper at the right. This machine can multiply and divide more than 2,000 times a second. It can add and subtract more than 16,000 times a second.

substitute that could count faster than the wheel. The electron tube was the answer. Circuits using electron tubes can count and add pulses at the rate of millions per second (see *Electrons and Electronics*).

It was also necessary to find a substitute for the slow keyboard to enter data into the machine. This was accomplished by recording information on punched cards, punched tapes, or magnetic tapes so that numbers and instructions may be fed into computers as rapidly as needed. Electronic calculators, when working at high speeds, need an electronic "scratch pad," or "memory," device to store important factors and partial results. This has been accomplished by storing pulses temporarily in the form of magnetized spots on magnetic drums, supersonic shock waves in mercury tanks, electronic spots on the face of cathode-ray tubes, and in miniature magnetic cores.

#### Some Outstanding Giant Calculators

Prior to World War II, work on large-scale computers was pioneered by Dr. Howard H. Aiken of Harvard University, Dr. Vannevar Bush at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Dr. Wallace J. Eckert of Columbia University, Dr. George R. Stibitz at Bell Telephone Laboratories, and the engineers of several business machine companies.

During the war, the International Business Machines Corporation and the Bell Laboratories built several large relay calculators, and IBM built and installed the famous Automatic Sequence Controlled Calculator (Mark I) at Harvard University in 1944. Meanwhile, the first giant electronic calculator was being built at the University of Pennsylvania under wartime secrecy for the United States Army's Ballistics Re-

search Laboratory. It was called the ENIAC (Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator). Demonstrated to the public in February 1946, it created great interest because it could do remarkable things and was truly a giant machine, containing 18,000 vacuum tubes.

Since the war, tremendous progress has been made. Fifty organizations in the United States and 27 in other countries have built large electronic computers. By 1953 there were 80 large-sized and about 2,000 medium-sized electronic computers in operation, the latter used primarily in conjunction with punched card machine installations. Some giant computers have been given names for easy identification. These include Remington Rand's UNIVAC (Universal Automatic Computer), the Bureau of Standards' SEAC (Standard's Eastern Automatic Computer), MIT's Whirlwind, Harvard's Mark IV, IBM's 701, and the Institute of Advance Study Computer.

#### The Analogous Class of Calculators

Devices using analogous computing principles can be seen everywhere. For example, every clock has gears that perform the process of division. The second-hand motion is divided by 60 to drive the minute hand, whose motion is again divided by 60 to drive the hour hand. Water, gas, and electric meters have a set of dials labeled 1, 10, 100, 1,000, and so on, which are connected to one another through a succession of gear trains that divide the motion of the previous dial by ten. Gasoline pumps contain a complex analogue computer that automatically multiplies the price per gallon times the number of gallons to calculate the amount of money owed.

Analogue computers are widely used in industry to control manufacturing processes and in military applications to control guns, tanks, ships, airplanes, and guided missiles. They are used in schools and laboratories to solve mathematical and engineering problems and to study and test complex control systems. Many colleges and universities are now offering courses on analogue and digital computers, and a knowledge of this field is important to young men who are planning to be engineers and scientists.

#### Examples of Analogue Computers

*The slide rule* is probably the most widely used of all computing devices. Many generations of engineering students have learned to use the "slip stick" in college. Logarithmic scales on this device make multiplication and division problems easy to solve (see Slide Rule).

*The tide predictor*, used by the United States Coast and Geodetic Survey, is an analogue computer. Data about the forces that influenced the tide at a particular port are fed into the machine. In about two hours, it produces a graph showing the rise and fall of tides at that port for the whole following year. *Network analyzers* have played an important role in the study of electric power systems. The systems to be analyzed are set up in miniature, using analogous units to represent the actual power stations, power lines, and loads. Measurements at various points on the model give the desired answers.

*The Differential Analyzer*, built at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1930, is probably the most famous of the early analogue computers. It consisted of a maze of shafts, gears, plotting tables, and devices called "wheel and disk integrators." In the late 1930's, M.I.T. started the construction of another more elaborate and accurate machine, called the Rockefeller Differential Analyzer, which solved important wartime problems. It was unveiled to the public in October 1945. Many schools and laboratories have built similar machines for their own use.

*Fire control computers*, called gun directors, are used to aim and fire guns at hostile planes (see Navy). Anyone who has tried to shoot a rifle at a moving target can imagine the complexity of a computer required to aim a gun and hit a hostile plane 40,000 feet in the air and traveling at 500 miles an hour—and from the deck of a heaving and pitching ship.

*Electronic analogue computers* were developed by many organizations after World War II to aid in developing new weapons for defense and to solve engineering design problems. The Cyclone Computer and the Typhoon Computer, built by the Radio Corporation of America, and the ANACOM built by Westinghouse Corporation are examples of large-scale installations. Equipment of this class is now being manufactured commercially by several companies.

#### What Is Ahead?

Electronic computers have opened up new vistas in scientific frontiers. Now it is possible to extend human knowledge by mathematical calculations rather than by direct experiments.

A second industrial revolution is taking place in the factory where *automation* is the byword. (See Industry, American). Many developments are now under way to alleviate the boredom of routine tasks through electronics. The field of electronic computers presents a great promise and challenge to young people today. **CALCULUS.** In nature and in science, we encounter many quantities which change as we deal with them. The amount of heat in a billet of steel begins lessening the instant the billet is poured from molten metal. The number of bacteria in a newly planted culture changes measurably every fraction of a second. So likewise does the direction of a planet's motion in space as it speeds along its orbit around the sun.

In such instances, we may want to know the *rate of change*. We may also want to know the rate as a basis for figuring the *amount* of change over a certain interval of space or time. The methods which solve these problems will determine areas or volumes embraced within curved lines or surfaces—a calculation that often cannot be made with arithmetic or algebra.

The mathematical methods which have been devised for dealing with such problems make up *calculus*. (The name, like our word "calculate," is from the Latin term meaning "pebble," from the ancient custom of using pebbles as counters in solving arithmetic problems.) A simple example will illustrate some of the fundamental ideas and terms used in calculus.

#### Calculus Uses "Functions" and "Variables"

The formula for the volume ( $V$ ) of a sphere in terms of its radius  $r$  is  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ . This formula gives a definite relation between  $V$  and  $r$  since, for any value of  $r$ , the value of  $V$  is determined. For instance, if  $r = 3$  inches, then  $V = 36\pi$  cubic inches. Thus, the value of  $V$  may be thought of as depending on  $r$ . To express this idea, we say that  $V$  is a *function* of  $r$ .

In the formula,  $r$  and  $V$  are *variables* since each may have different values. The variable to which values are assigned freely is called the *independent* variable; the variable whose values are determined by those assigned the other is called the *dependent* variable.

If a specific formula is known which expresses the relation between one variable and another, the formula is spoken of as the *function*. However, a functional relation need not be given by means of an algebraic formula; it may be given by a table of corresponding values or by a graph.

#### Notation for Writing Functions

The fact that the volume ( $V$ ) of a sphere in terms of its radius is  $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$  may be indicated by *functional notation* as  $V = f(r)$ . In general, the statement that  $y$  is a *function* of  $x$  is abbreviated to  $y = f(x)$ . The " $f$ " stands for the terms which define the relation. Thus, since  $V = f(r)$  and  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ , we may use  $f(r)$  interchangeably with  $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ .

The notation  $y = f(x)$  can be used conveniently to indicate that the values of  $y$  are to be considered which correspond to a particular value of  $x$ . For example, if  $y = x^2 - 5x + 6$ , we may write

$$y = f(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6$$

If we wish to find the value of  $y$  corresponding to  $x=2$  we may replace  $x$  by 2. Then we have

$$y=f(2)=4-10+6=0$$

Similarly, if we wish to find the volume of a sphere with a 3-inch radius we replace  $r$  by 3 in the formula  $V=f(r)=\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$  and obtain  $V=f(3)=\frac{4}{3}\pi 3^3$ , or  $36\pi$  cubic inches.

### Graphs of Functions

Functions can also be represented by graphs using a system of co-ordinates (Fig. 1).

Let  $XX'$  be a number line drawn horizontally with its positive direction to the right. Let  $YY'$  be another number line drawn perpendicular to  $XX'$  so that the point of intersection is the origin on both lines. Let the positive direction of  $YY'$  be upward. The line  $XX'$  is called the  $X$ -axis and the line  $YY'$  is called the  $Y$ -axis; the two lines together are called the co-ordinate axes. The point of intersection  $O$  of the two lines is called the origin.

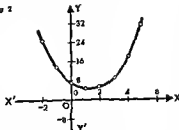
Let  $P$  be any point in the plane. From  $P$  drop a perpendicular to the  $X$ -axis and another to the  $Y$ -axis. The perpendicular to the  $X$ -axis cuts this axis at the point  $M$  which corresponds to the number  $x$  called the *abscissa* of  $P$ . The perpendicular to the  $Y$ -axis cuts this axis at a point  $N$  which corresponds to the number  $y$  called the *ordinate* of  $P$ . The numbers  $x$  and  $y$  are called the *rectangular co-ordinates* of  $P$ . To indicate that  $P$  has the co-ordinates  $x$  and  $y$  we write  $P(x, y)$ , and we refer to the point  $P$  as the point  $P(x, y)$  or more briefly the point  $(x, y)$ .

When a function  $y=f(x)$  is given by an algebraic formula for  $f(x)$ , we must first construct from the given formula a table of number pairs from which the points on the plane may be plotted. We select a convenient number of pairs and plot the corresponding points. Then a smooth curve drawn through these points is approximately the graph of the function.

The method can be illustrated by plotting the graph of  $2x^2-5x+7$ . If we say that  $y=f(x)=2x^2-5x+7$  we find for various values of  $x$  the corresponding values of the function as given in the table.

$x$	$y$
-2	25
-1	14
0	7
1	4
2	5
3	10
4	19
5	32

Fig. 2



We plot as many of these points as we need to define the curve and as can be located in the space available. Connecting them in the order of increasing

values of  $x$  by a smooth curve, we have the graph of Fig. 2.

### The Nature of Analytic Geometry

In plane geometry problems are solved by constructions and by geometrical reasonings. However a co-ordinate system as described above makes it possible to use algebraic processes (which usually are easier than geometric reasoning) for solving geometrical problems. Thus algebra and geometry are united and the resulting subject is called *analytic geometry*.

In analytic geometry certain geometric concepts such as point, distance, line, angle, and so on, as well as geometric figures such as curves are expressed by means of algebraic symbols, expressions, and equations. This creates a *geometry-algebra dictionary*. Here are a few terms from such a dictionary.

### GEOMETRY-ALGEBRA DICTIONARY

Geometry	Algebra
A point	$(x, y)$
Distance between two points	$\sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2 + (y_2-y_1)^2}$
Slope of a line segment	$\frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}$ or $\tan \theta$
Line through a given point and with a given slope	$y-y_1 = m(x-x_1)$
Line through two given points	$\frac{y-y_1}{x-x_1} = \frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}$

### Problems Attacked by Differential Calculus

Functions are studied in the various branches of elementary mathematics such as algebra and analytic geometry. These elementary divisions of mathematics, however, cannot provide satisfactory solutions for many problems that involve *rates of change*. Some problems of this sort are raised by the following questions: What is the best way of describing the speed of a car or the cooling of a hot object? How does the change of the plate current in a vacuum tube depend upon any change in the grid voltage?

In such problems the rate of change must be computed. The methods used for doing so make up the divisions of mathematics called *differential calculus*.

### The Average Rate of Change

The solution of problems such as those mentioned starts with finding the average rate of change. For instance, assume that a car starts a trip at noon and at 2:00 P.M. is 50 miles from the starting point. At 5:00 P.M. it has gone 140 miles. Obviously from 2:00 P.M. to 5:00 P.M. it traveled a distance of 140-50 miles or 90 miles. Since it did so in three hours it traveled at an average rate of  $\frac{90}{3}$  or 30 miles an hour.

The distance  $s$  from the starting point is regarded as a function of the time  $t$  denoted by the symbol  $s=f(t)$ . We find that  $f(2)=50$  and  $f(5)=140$ . The increment of  $t$  is  $\Delta t=5-2=3$  and the incre-

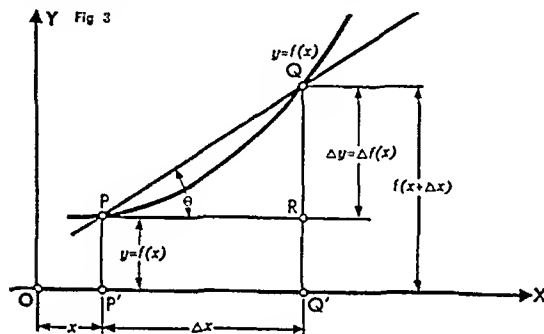
ment of  $s$  is  $\Delta s = f(2 + \Delta t) - f(2) = f(5) - f(2) = 140 - 50 = 90$ . Then:

$$\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} = \frac{90}{3} = 30 \text{ mph., the average rate}$$

This treatment of an average rate of change can be defined generally as follows: *the average rate of change of a function  $y=f(x)$  in the interval from  $x$  to  $x+\Delta x$  is defined as the ratio of the increments of  $y$  and  $x$ .* In symbols:

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta f(x)}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(x+\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x}$$

A striking geometrical interpretation of the average rate of change can be given if the graph of the function is plotted. The function  $y=f(x)$  may be represented by the graph of Fig. 3.



The increment  $\Delta x$  is given by the segment  $P'Q' = PR$ . The corresponding increment  $\Delta y = \Delta f(x)$  is given by the segment  $RQ$ . Hence the average rate of change in the interval  $P'Q'$  is given by

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{RQ}{PR} = \tan \theta \quad (\theta \text{ is angle between } PQ \text{ and the direction of the } X\text{-axis})$$

Thus  $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$  is the slope of the line  $PQ$ , and the average rate of change of the function  $y=f(x)$  in the interval from  $x$  to  $x+\Delta x$  is equal to the slope of the straight line  $PQ$ , which connects points on the graph that correspond to the values  $x$  and  $x+\Delta x$ . Such a straight line connecting two points on a curve is called a *secant* of the curve.

The average rate of change is computed very easily when the function is given by a formula. For example, to compute the average rate of change of the function  $y=f(x)=3x^2-2$ , if  $x$  changes from 1 to 3:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta x &= 3 - 1 = 2 \\ f(x) &= f(1) = 1 \\ f(x + \Delta x) &= f(1 + 2) = f(3) = 3 \cdot 9 - 2 = 25 \\ \Delta y &= \Delta f(x) = f(x + \Delta x) - f(x) = 25 - 1 = 24 \\ \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} &= \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} = \frac{24}{2} = 12 \end{aligned}$$

#### The Problem of "Instantaneous Rate"

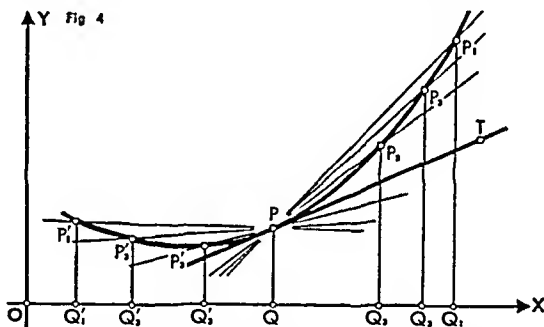
Many rate problems in practical life are not satisfactorily solved by merely computing an average

rate of change of a function. If an automobile accident happens, the driver cannot shake his responsibility by proving that he drove at an average rate of 20 miles an hour during the preceding two hours. The important question is his *instantaneous* rate of speed at the *instant* of the accident, and especially if the rate happened to have been changing.

The precise meaning of an instantaneous rate therefore needs to be established. The same approach that defined an average rate does not work as well for defining an instantaneous rate. There is no interval of time that spreads over the instant of the accident and, likewise, no corresponding distance covered by the automobile. A definition can be reached, however, by "creeping up to it" from each side; that is, if the definition can be made increasingly sharper for ever-smaller intervals of time and distance traveled and the same is done for "afterward" by assuming that the automobile could have gone on, then there will be a certain set of values which separates everything "before" from everything "after." This set of values can be called a *limit*, and it will provide the desired instantaneous rate at the moment the accident occurred.

#### Geometrical Meaning of Instantaneous Change

This "limiting set of values" can best be illustrated in geometric terms that resemble those used with Fig. 3 for the average rate of change.



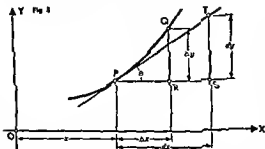
In a function given by the graph of Fig. 4, different points,  $P_1, P_2, P_3$ , and so on to the right of  $P$  are selected, and they establish the secants  $PP_1, PP_2, PP_3$ . Similarly, different points,  $P'_1, P'_2, P'_3$ , and so on to the left of  $P$  establish the secants  $PP'_1, PP'_2, PP'_3$ .

The average rate of change of the function for the segment  $QQ_1$ , for example, will be equal to the slope of the secant  $PP_1$ . Other secants define other average rates. The figure shows, however, that one line,  $PT$ , separates the secants meeting the curve to the right of  $P$  from those meeting to the left. This line is called the *tangent* of the curve at  $P$ .

The slopes of secants on either side of  $P$  approach the slope of the tangent as the defining points are taken nearer and nearer to  $P$ . Therefore we may say that the slope of the tangent at  $P$  is the *limit* of the slopes of the secants through  $P$  as the defining points approach nearer and nearer to  $P$ . If the slopes of the secants define average rates of change

on either side of  $P$  however then the slope of the tangent must be the instantaneous rate at  $P$ . We can say therefore that the instantaneous rate of change at  $P$  is equal to the slope of the tangent at  $P$ .

In order to find the slope of the tangent take a freely chosen point  $T$  on the tangent (Fig. 5)



The increments of the co-ordinates if one passes from  $P$  to  $T$  may be denoted by  $dx$  and  $dy$ . The slope (angle  $\theta$  from the horizontal) of the tangent  $PT$  therefore is  $\tan \theta = \frac{dy}{dx}$ .

It was stated above however that the instantaneous rate of change at the point  $P$  which may be denoted by  $m$  is equal to the slope of the tangent  $PT$ . We then have an expression for the value of  $m = \frac{dy}{dx}$ .

Since the instantaneous rate of change was defined as the limit (lim) of the average rate of change for the interval  $\Delta x$  as  $\Delta x$  approaches zero we also have

$$m = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$$

Therefore the derivative (or instantaneous rate of change) of a function  $y=f(x)$  at a particular point

$P$  is the value of  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$  as  $\Delta x$  approaches zero. This

value is equal to the slope of the tangent at  $P$ . If  $dx$  and  $dy$  are increments of  $x$  and  $y$  from  $P$  to a freely chosen point on the tangent then the derivative at  $P$  is given by

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{dy}{dx}$$

#### The Formula for a Derivative

To show how to find the derivative of a function which is defined by a formula consider the function  $y=f(x)=3x^2-5$

To find the derivative of this function at some particular point (for example  $x=2$ ) first find the average rate of change in the interval from  $x=2$  to  $x=2+\Delta x$ . This can be done as follows

$$\begin{aligned} f(2) &= 3(2)^2 - 5 = 3 \quad 4 - 5 = -1 \\ f(2+\Delta x) &= 3(2+\Delta x)^2 - 5 = 7 + 12\Delta x + 3(\Delta x)^2 \\ \Delta y &= f(2+\Delta x) - f(2) = 12\Delta x + 3(\Delta x)^2 \\ \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} &= 12 + 3\Delta x \end{aligned}$$

The next step is to find the limit of the average rate

of change  $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$  as  $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$ . We then have

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} (12 + 3\Delta x) = 12$$

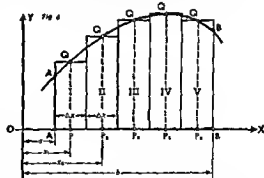
Such a computation of a derivative applies to any power function of  $x$ —that is  $x$  with any exponent thus  $x^n$ . A formula for problems in  $x^n$  is as follows (together with other important derivatives)

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d(x^n)}{dx} = nx^{n-1} \quad \frac{d \sin x}{dx} = \cos x \quad \frac{d \cos x}{dx} = -\sin x$$

#### Nature and Uses of Integral Calculus

Once the derivative of a function is known it can be used directly or in various inverse or turn about ways to yield additional knowledge. The inverse ways use a process called integration. As an operation this is the inverse of differentiation just as subtraction is the inverse of addition and division is the inverse of multiplication. All these operations together make up integral calculus.

A simple example of integral calculus is a computation of the area under a portion of a curve  $y=f(x)$ . We want the area defined by the segment  $AB$  of the curve itself the segment  $AB$  of the base or  $X$  axis and the side boundaries ( $AA$  and  $BB$ ).



Divide the base into segments of length  $\Delta x$  and upon these segments erect rectangles with heights  $P_1Q_1$ ,  $P_2Q_2$  and so on. The area of each rectangle will be its base  $\Delta x$  multiplied by the height. The sum of these areas will be

$$I + II + \dots + (P_1Q_1)\Delta x + (P_2Q_2)\Delta x + \dots \quad (1)$$

$$= f(x_1)\Delta x + f(x_2)\Delta x + \dots \quad (2)$$

This sum obviously gives an approximate value for the area  $ABBA$ . The area can be found with any desired degree of precision by taking a large enough number of segments (rectangles). The expression (2) above can be abbreviated by using symbols as follows

Here the symbol  $S$  signifies that a series of similar terms  $f(x_1)\Delta x$ ,  $f(x_2)\Delta x$  and so on— $n$  is to be added. In order to show that the area can be found as precisely as we desire by taking  $\Delta x$  small enough

we use the symbol  $dx$  instead of  $\Delta x$ , and the symbol  $\int$  (read as "the integral of") instead of  $\Sigma$

$$\text{Area } ABB'A' = \int f(x)dx$$

In order to indicate that the area bounded by the lines  $x=a$  and  $x=b$  is to be computed, we write

$$\text{Area} = \int_a^b f(x)dx$$

The right-hand member of this equation is called the *definite integral* of  $f(x)dx$  between the limits  $a$  and  $b$  (or it can be said, "from  $a$  to  $b$ ").

#### Integration as the Inverse of Differentiation

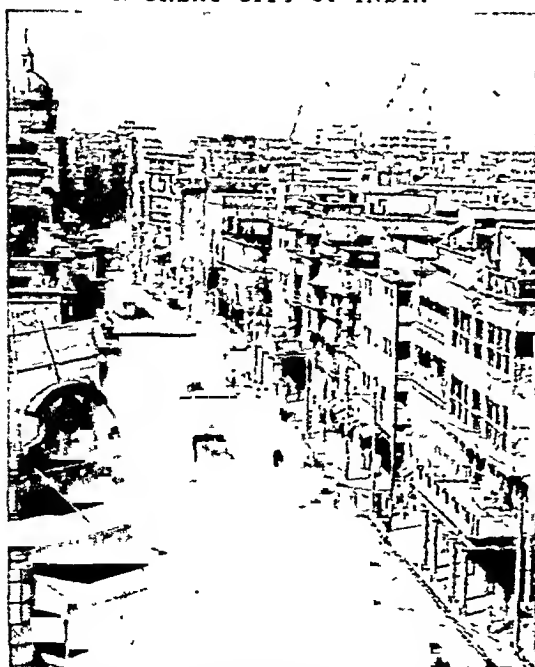
From this stage, we must find a way to obtain an *exact* value, in algebraic terms, for the definite integral. This value can be computed, because a great mathematical discovery tells us that if the  $f(x)$  in the integral is considered as a *derivative* of some other function, that other function will provide the basis for the desired answer.

This can be done readily for simple functions. If the curve which helps define the desired area, for example, is  $y=x^2$ , the integral (in part) will be

$$\int f(x)dx \text{ or } \int (x^2)dx$$

The problem now is to discover "what other function" will yield  $x^2$  as a derivative. Knowledge of differentiation tells us that "the other function"

#### A GREAT CITY OF INDIA



A great bridge reaches westward across the Hooghly River to Calcutta's large suburb, Howrah. Calcutta is India's second largest city and one of its two important ports.

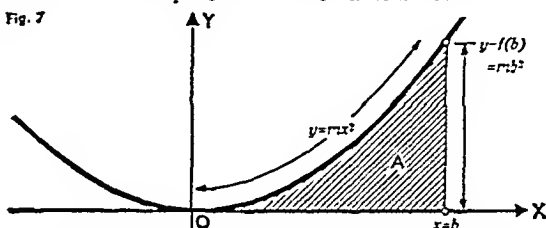
can only be  $\frac{x^3}{3}$ . (Under the rule for differentiating a power function in which  $n$  is 3, the derivative is  $\frac{3x^2}{3}$ , or  $x^2$ .) This reasoning can be "turned around" by using  $n$  for 2, 3, or any other exponent and saying that "the integral (in part) of  $x^n$  is  $\frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}$ ."

The final step in applying the result above (use of  $\frac{x^2}{3}$  for  $x^2$  in the integral) is evaluating

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx \text{ between } a \text{ and } b = \left[ \frac{x^2}{3} \right]_a^b$$

Mathematicians have proved that this can be done for a definite integral by subtracting the lesser value (at  $x=a$ ) from the greater (at  $x=b$ ). For a simple example, use the parabola  $y=mx^2$  (Fig. 7). Since the parabola cuts the co-ordinate axes ( $X$  and  $Y$ ) at their origin ( $O$ ), the value of  $a$  can be considered 0 and we need only deal with the value  $x=b$ .

Fig. 7



The area  $A$  can now be obtained immediately by substituting  $b$  for  $x$  in the partial solution  $\frac{x^2}{3}$  obtained above as follows:

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx = \int_a^b (mx^2)dx = \left[ \frac{mx^3}{3} \right]_a^b = \frac{1}{3}mb^3$$

#### The Constant of Integration

In many problems  $f(x)dx$  is given without limits. It is to be evaluated over its entire range. Evaluation depends upon this fact: the derivatives of both  $x^2+2$  and  $x^2+3$  will be  $2x$  since the derivative of any constant (such as 2 or 3) is 0. In using  $\frac{x^2}{3}$  for integrating  $x^2dx$ , the possible existence of a constant with  $\frac{x^2}{3}$  (a constant which would "disappear in differentiating") is recognized by writing  $\frac{x^2}{3}+C$ .  $C$  is called the *constant of integration*; the result, an *indefinite integral*, because its value depends in part upon whatever value the constant  $C$  may have.

**CALCUTTA, INDIA.** Its position on the Ganges River delta has made Calcutta a great clearinghouse for Asiatic trade and India's second largest city. The city spreads five miles along the east bank of the Hooghly River, the westernmost branch of the Ganges, about 80 miles upstream from the Bay of Bengal. The Hooghly, a quarter to more than three quarters of a mile wide, is navigable for ocean vessels. Calcutta is the capital of West Bengal Province (East Bengal is a province of Pakistan).

The Port of Calcutta commission controls wharves and docks along some ten miles of the banks on both sides of the river, including those of Howrah, an in-

dustrial suburb on the west bank. The terminals of the rail lines reaching Calcutta from the west lie in Howrah. The suburb (population 433 630) is connected to Calcutta by bridges.

A great park called the Maidan stretches a mile and three quarters along the city's southern river bank. Beautiful drives, botanical gardens, and sports fields are found in the park. To the east of the Maidan is Calcutta's finest residential district. The Strand, a wide roadway, runs along the city's whole river front.

Along the Esplanade, a street to the north of the Maidan, lie Government House, built between 1799 and 1804 and other government buildings. Government House was the residence of the viceroy of India until India's capital was moved to Delhi in 1912. More government buildings are found on the widening of Canning Street called Dalhousie Square. Calcutta has a large university established in 1837, and several colleges. A notable art museum exhibits many rare and beautiful relics of the past.

Calcutta has many fine buildings including the Victoria Memorial, but the houses in the poorer districts in the city and suburbs are little more than mud huts. The city's manufactures are mostly burlap made from jute grown in both East and West Bengal, and metal goods. Rail workshops also employ large numbers of workers. The chief exports are jute and jute goods, coffee, tea, grain, cotton, raw hemp, and rubber, the chief imports are cotton goods, sugar, machinery, petroleum, railroad equipment, and salt.

The city was founded on the sites of several Indian villages by Job Charnock, of the British East India Company, in 1690. The company concentrated its administrative activities in Fort William, built here in 1696. Fort William was captured and destroyed in 1757 by the Nawab of Bengal, Suraj-ud-daula. The Black Hole tragedy occurred on a hot June night when 140 Britons were forced into a cell that measured only 18 by 14 feet. The next morning only 23 remained alive. About a year later Robert Clive defeated the Nawab at Plassey (see Clive).

Clive's victory gave all Bengal to the British. In 1772 Hastings (see Hastings Warren) made Calcutta the capital of British India. The removal of the capital to Delhi was announced in 1911. (See India.) Population (1951 census), 2 548 677.

**CALDECOTT, RANDOLPH** (1846-1886) Because he had great talent and loved horses, dogs, and everything that belonged to the English countryside, Randolph Caldecott drew pictures of them as few artists have done. He was born in the old walled city of Chester in England on March 23, 1846. Randolph

and his brother attended the King's School in Chester and the school record says that Randolph Caldecott was head boy of the school.

From the time he was a small boy, Caldecott was always drawing pictures of animals and modeling them. He wanted to study art but his father disapproved. So when Randolph was 15, he went to work in a bank at Whitechurch in Shropshire and lived in an old farmhouse just outside town. He went fishing and shooting to meet the hounds, to market, and to cattle fairs. Always he carried a sketch book ready to catch notes for a picture.

After six years at Whitechurch, Caldecott was transferred to a bank in the city of Manchester, where he made the most of what a big city had to offer. He joined a club of artists and writers, studied nights at art school, and made many friends. This came easily because Randolph Caldecott had great personal charm.

His first published drawings appeared in two Manchester papers, *The Will o' the Wisp* and *The Sphinx*. Meanwhile, he was making hunting sketches for a paper called *London Society*, and carrying on his work at the bank. His bank associates told amusing stories about finding sketches of horses, dogs, and the like on old receipt slips, envelopes, and desk blotters.

In 1872 Caldecott gave up his bank work and moved to London. He studied art under various teachers and devoted the rest of his life to drawing pictures.

Henry Blackburn was editor of *London Society*, and he and Caldecott became lifelong friends. Among the many good things that grew out of this friendship

were two trips abroad. They worked together on books of travel in Brittany and the Harz Mountains of Germany. Some of Caldecott's Harz Mountain sketches were published in the *London Graphic*. Occasionally, he put himself in the picture—a tall, slim young man with whiskers.

Caldecott's drawing was free and alive. He studied the art of 'leaving out' as a science, doing nothing hastily but thinking long and seriously before putting pen to paper. He always said, 'The fewer the lines, the less error committed!'

The summers between 1872 and 1874 he spent at Farnham Royal in Buckinghamshire making draw-

ings for a book 'Old Christmas'. This book was made of chapters from Washington Irving's 'Sketchbook'. He loved the same things about old England that Washington Irving had loved a generation before and he gave them fresh life through his pictures. Later, he made illustrations for a sequel called 'Bracebridge Hall'.

Although Randolph Caldecott never had children of his own, he had scores of children as friends. He drew pictures for them and never failed to answer their letters. "I thank you very much for your grand

#### SKETCHING UNDER DIFFICULTIES



Randolph Caldecott sketched this amusing self-portrait during a hour of idleness. He loved to have children around him as he worked.



sheet of drawings," he wrote one aspiring young artist. "I hope you will go on trying and learning to draw. There are many beautiful things waiting to be drawn. Animals, flowers . . . and a few people."

It was for children that he did the work for which he will probably be longest remembered and best loved—his picture books. The 'Three Jovial Huntsmen', 'A Farmer Went Trotting upon His Grey Mare', and 'John Gilpin' were rhymes after his own heart. England in springtime seems to be on every page of 'The House That Jack Built', 'The Farmer's Boy', and the old May Day ballad, 'Come Lassies and Lads'. 'The Queen of Hearts', 'A Frog He Would a'Wooing Go', and 'Sing a Song for Sixpence' contain enough pictures of blackbird pies, jam tarts, pots of honey, and frosted cakes to make anybody's mouth water.

On March 18, 1880, Caldecott and Marian Brind were married in a small church in Kent. They went to live in a house near Sevenoaks, a house with a garden where he could indulge his love for the country. "I have a mare," he wrote a friend, "dark chestnut, who goes very well in harness and is very pleasant to ride; and a puppy, a comical young dachshund." For some time, he had been in poor health, and in 1886 he and his wife sailed for America, hoping that the warm climate of Florida might benefit him.

He promised the *London Graphic* a series of sketches on American life, and what fun he would have had doing them. But the stormy sea voyage had exhausted him too greatly. He died in St. Augustine, Fla., on Feb. 12, 1886, and was buried in Evergreen Cemetery there. In the Chester Cathedral is a tablet in his memory, and many of his original sketches are in the Manchester Art Gallery and the Print Room of the British Museum. The Caroline Miller Parker Collection of the Houghton Memorial Library of Harvard University has many of Caldecott's notebooks, first editions, personal letters, and original drawings.

**CALENDAR.** For untold centuries people have kept track of the days by the march of daylight and darkness and of the changing seasons in order to know when to plant crops and get ready for winter. Sometimes they kept the record by notching a stick or knotting a cord once every day. They also watched the changing positions of the sun and stars in the sky, the changes of the moon, and the habits of plants and animals. South American tribes expected spring when the Pleiades rose. North American Indians planted corn when oak buds were the size of a squirrel's ear. The Greek poet Hesiod warned against digging in vineyards once snails climbed the plants.

The making of an exact calendar, however, has perplexed men for ages because the divisions of time, by days, months, and years do not fit together. These inequalities are explained in the article Year.

The Sumerians of Babylonia were probably the first people to make a calendar. They used the phases of the moon, counting 12 lunar months as a year. To make up for the difference between this year and the year of the seasons, they inserted an extra month in the calendar about every four years.

The early Egyptians, the Greeks, and the Semitic peoples copied their calendars from the Babylonians. Later, the Egyptians worked out a calendar that corresponded almost exactly to the seasons. The Jews and Mohammedans, however, still use a lunar calendar.

Like the Greeks, the early Romans used a calendar based on the moon. The year was only 355 days long. The months corresponding to March, May, July, and October each had 31 days; February had 28 days; and the rest had 29. An extra month was added about every fourth year.

The high priest regulated the calendar. On the *calends*, or day of the new moon, he announced to the people the times of the *nones* (first quarter) and *ides* (full moon) for that month. We get our word *calendar* from the Latin word *kalendae*.

But the priests performed their calendar-keeping duties poorly, and by Julius Caesar's time they had summer months coming in the spring. Caesar corrected this situation in 46 B.C. He adopted the plan of the Egyptian astronomer Sosigenes to have 365-day years, with one extra day added every fourth year or "leap year." He distributed the extra ten days among the old 29-day months, making them identical with our months.

The month Quintilis was renamed July for Julius Caesar, and later Sextilis was renamed August in honor of Emperor Augustus. An old story which is often repeated tells how Emperor Augustus changed the number of days in his month from 30 to 31 so that it would be as long as Julius Caesar's. The story, however, probably has no basis in fact.

#### The Gregorian Calendar

Julius Caesar's correction of one day in four years ( $\frac{1}{4}$  day, or six hours, a year) made the calendar year longer than the year of the seasons. Thus anniversaries began coming earlier and earlier in the year. In 1582 the vernal equinox occurred on March 11 instead of the correct date March 21.

Pope Gregory XIII remedied this by directing that ten days be dropped from the calendar, and that the day after October 4, 1582, should be October 15. He also directed that three times in every 400 years the leap year arrangement should be omitted (*see* Year).

The new calendar was called the Gregorian, or New Style, calendar. It was adopted almost immediately by Roman Catholic countries, but Protestant and Eastern Orthodox countries long continued to use the Old Style, or Julian, calendar. The new calendar was not adopted in England until 1752, when it was necessary to drop 11 days. Ignorant people resented this change; they held great meetings and went about in processions crying: "Give us back our 11 days!" The Eastern Orthodox church did not accept the New Style until 1923, when 13 days were "lost." The Chinese adopted it in 1929.

Another reform which the Gregorian calendar effected was general adoption of January 1 as the beginning of the year. Until then some nations began it with December 25, others with January 1, or March 25 (as England did before 1752).

This change explains why documents of the 18th century frequently give dates in Old and New Style. For instance, George Washington was born Feb. 22, 1732, N. S., or Feb. 11, 1731, O. S., because the Old Style year began in March. Sometimes this is written Feb. 11, 1731. The Pilgrims landed at Plymouth on Dec. 11, 1620. According to Governor Bradford, they began to erect the first house on Dec. 25, 1620, O. S. In the New Style calendar this was Jan. 4, 1621.

#### Numbering the Years

Events and the lives of kings and prophets have been used by calendar makers to start their reckonings. The Greeks dated everything from the beginning of the so-called Olympic Register, a traditional list of the victors in the Olympic games. The year was 776 B. C., according to our reckoning. The Romans counted time from the founding of their city (753 B. C.). The Mohammedans reckon dates from the "Hegira" or flight of Mohammed from Mecca, in A. D. 622. Jews reckon from the creation of the world, which they place at 3761 B. C. The anticlerical French Revolutionary calendar (1793-1806) was dated from the birth of Liberty (1792) and had a ten-day week.

The Egyptians instead of dating the successive years from a single event, named each year after its most important happening. Later they numbered the years of each king's reign from his accession to the throne. Some Indian tribes named their years by pictures turning on skins the "small pot used them up again" winter, the "storm of stars" winter, and the like.

#### The Christian Era

Christian nations now date events from the birth of Christ. This practice began in the 6th century, when Dionysius Exiguus, a Roman abbot introduced it into Italy. Now scholars claim that Christ was born a few years earlier than the date used for the era.

In reckoning time before the Christian Era (marked B. C.), the longer ago an event occurred, the larger is the number of the year. For instance, the year 150 B. C. was 100 years before 50 B. C., but the year A. D. 150 (Anno Domini), or after Christ, was 100 years after A. D. 50, because we count forward. We also divide time before and after the birth of Christ into periods of 100 years, or centuries. Thus the years between the birth of Christ and A. D. 100 are in the first century, from A. D. 100 to 200 are in the 2d century, and so on. The years between 1800 and 2000 are in the 20th century. In reckoning time before the birth of Christ we count the centuries back from that event.

#### Modern Proposals for Calendar Reform

Because the Gregorian calendar has given months many groups have advocated reform. The great-

## A PERPETUAL CALENDAR AND HOW TO USE IT

### TABLE OF LETTERS

1620	A	G	E	C	B	F
1731	C	A	G	E	B	F
1822	E	C	A	G	B	F
1923	G	E	C	A	B	F

### CALENDAR OF DATES IN EACH MONTH

CALENDAR OF LATER IN EACH MONTH											
JAN											
FEB											
MAR											
APR											
MAY											
JUNE											
JULY											
AUG											
SEPT											
OCT											
NOV											
DEC											

est benefit with the least change seems to be offered by the World Calendar. This calendar proposes to keep the 12-month year, but to change the number of days in certain months so that the four quarters of the year are equal. Each quarter would begin on a Sunday and end on a Saturday, and most of the time-honored holidays would come conveniently at the beginning or end of the week.

A 13-month calendar was long favored by many. It, however, could not be divided into equal quarters, and its adoption would involve so many changes that popular acceptance would be slow.

#### The Popular Almanacs

A few generations ago, almost the only literature in countless families were almanacs. They contained calendars, lists of festivals, proverbs, bits of knowledge, homely remedies, and common superstitions. Benjamin Franklin's *Poor Richard's Almanack*, first published in 1732, is famous for its wise sayings. The United States Naval Observatory publishes a nautical almanac, giving detailed information useful to navigators. The *Almanach de Gotha*, written in French and German, with accounts of royal and noble families, was printed from 1763 to 1945. The almanac makers of 16th-century France foretold state events, like the death of Henry II, but soon were forbidden to publish such predictions. Unchecked bold prophecies and popular errors filled 17th-century English almanacs. Square blocks of wood, metal, or horn, with notches representing days, used in earlier times and called clog almanacs, are thought to be of Danish origin. The Romans had *fasti*, or tables, of the months, lawful and unlawful days, festivals and the like, which only the priests understood before they were explained to the people in 304 B.C.

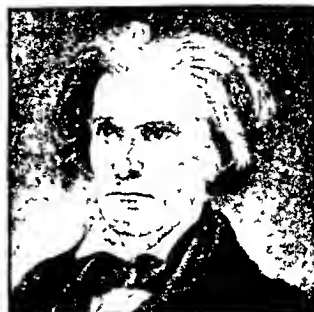
**CALGARY, ALBERTA.** Western Canada's cattle and wheat-ranching center is beautifully situated at the junction of the Bow and Elbow rivers. Rolling prairie and low hills surround it. In the distance loom the snowy peaks of the Rocky Mountains.

Calgary is the shipping and distributing point for an immense cattle-raising and wheat-growing district, and the chief supply station for the coal mines of the eastern Rockies. It is also an important railway center, since it lies near the entrance to two passes through the Rockies. The Turner Valley oil field is 40 miles distant, and there are many refineries in the city. Stockyards, meat-packing plants, flour mills, grain elevators, a large nitrogen plant, and a railway repair plant are other establishments. Hydroelectric power is supplied by the Bow River. Natural gas, piped from Turner Valley, is used for all domestic heating, as well as for industrial purposes.

In 1875 the site of Calgary was selected for a Royal Canadian Mounted Police fort. Growth began with the coming of the Canadian Pacific Railway in 1883, and the city was incorporated in 1893. It has a substantial appearance not often found in the "boom" towns of the West. This is because the early buildings were constructed largely of gray sandstone which was quarried in the neighborhood. On St. George's Island

in the Bow River is a 45-acre wooded park. In Victoria Park is held the Calgary Stampede, a rodeo which every July re-creates the romance of the old wild west. The Reader Rock Garden and the Inglewood Game-Bird Sanctuary are other points of interest. In Calgary are the Institute of Technology and Art and a branch of the Faculty of Education of the University of Alberta. Population (1951 census), 129,060.

**CALHOUN, JOHN CALDWELL** (1782-1850). Born in the same year as Daniel Webster and dying two years before that great statesman, Calhoun stood at the opposite pole of politics from Webster—the defender of the South, as Webster was of the North. He was successively member of Congress at the time of



JOHN C. CALHOUN  
Champion of States' Rights

the War of 1812, secretary of war under President Monroe, vice-president with John Quincy Adams and with Andrew Jackson, secretary of state under President Tyler, and for many years senator from South Carolina.

Calhoun was a son of the South Carolina hills. Born of Scottish parents on a frontier

farm near Abbeville, he was left fatherless when very young and received little early education. It is said that he seldom laughed and had no sense of humor. In 1800 he entered the Junior class at Yale College. He was graduated two years later with highest honors. After a brief term in his state legislature, he was elected in 1811 to Congress.

Here, with young Henry Clay, he became a leader of the "War Hawks," who were urging war with England. When their combined eloquence finally brought war in 1812, Calhoun advocated vigorous measures. When the war was over he continued to urge the use of wide national powers. He also favored a protective tariff, a national bank, and a strong army and navy.

But during the next 12 years a change took place in Calhoun's views. The ardent nationalist became the no less ardent champion of States' Rights. In 1828 the cotton-growing states of the South, especially South Carolina, were furious at what they bitterly called the "tariff of abominations," a tariff which they claimed levied tribute on the South for the benefit of manufacturing New England. Calhoun wrote a paper called the 'South Carolina Exposition', in which he urged that the protective tariff of 1828 was unconstitutional. He argued also that any state had the constitutional right to refuse obedience to the law and to declare it null and void within its limits. When South Carolina tried to put his idea of nullification into practice late in 1832, Calhoun, who was vice-president at the time, resigned to enter the Senate and lead the fight against the President's policies. The stern and resolute attitude of Jackson,

combined with a compromise tariff put forth by Henry Clay prevented an armed clash. Calhoun and Jackson became bitter enemies.

It was impossible to espouse the cause of the South and not uphold the institution of slavery. Accordingly as the years passed by Calhoun from merely tolerating slavery became its strongest defender. In order to extend slave territory Calhoun when secretary of state under Tyler negotiated a treaty for the annexation of Texas although he greatly deplored the war with Mexico which followed.

To the end of his life Calhoun was untiring in defense of his beloved South. In the debate on the Compromise of 1850 he made his last public appearance.

He was so ill that he had to be carried into the Senate Chamber and so weak that his speech had to be read by a colleague. Within less than a month he passed away. Almost his last words were the South—the poor South, God knows what will become of her now. Daniel Webster one of his chief political opponents during the 40 years of his public life said of him what no historian would deny. He was a man of undoubted genius and commanding talent. He had that indispensable basis of high character—unspotted integrity and unimpeachable honor. But his great abilities were used to bolster up an institution which was both morally and politically wrong—the institution of human slavery.

## The RICHES of the GOLDEN STATE



This scene is typical of the fertile valleys throughout much of California. Without irrigation many of these valleys would become a vast desert. The view was taken near Glendale, located in Los Angeles County in the Southwest part of the state. Notice the well ordered groves of orange and lemon. In the distance near Mount San Antonio, popularly called Old Baldy, is the highest peak in the San Gabriel Mountains.

**CALIFORNIA** The story of the Golden State began as a romance and dramatic episodes have marked its development ever since. A Spanish writer of 16th-century adventure tales, Ordóñez de Montalvo, described a fabled island called California in a book entitled *The Deeds of Esplandian*, published in 1510. He described the fabled California as an island full of pearls and gold lying to the right of the Indies, close to the terrestrial paradise. When Cortez or some other Spanish explorer discovered the land, he may have named it *California*, believing it to be the island described earlier by Montalvo.

Others believe the state is named from *caliente forno* ('hot furnace') referring to the deserts in Lower California. But it cannot be denied that the lure of California wealth has dominated the history of the state since its discovery. Pearls and gold were the lodestones that sent the Spaniards in search of Cal-

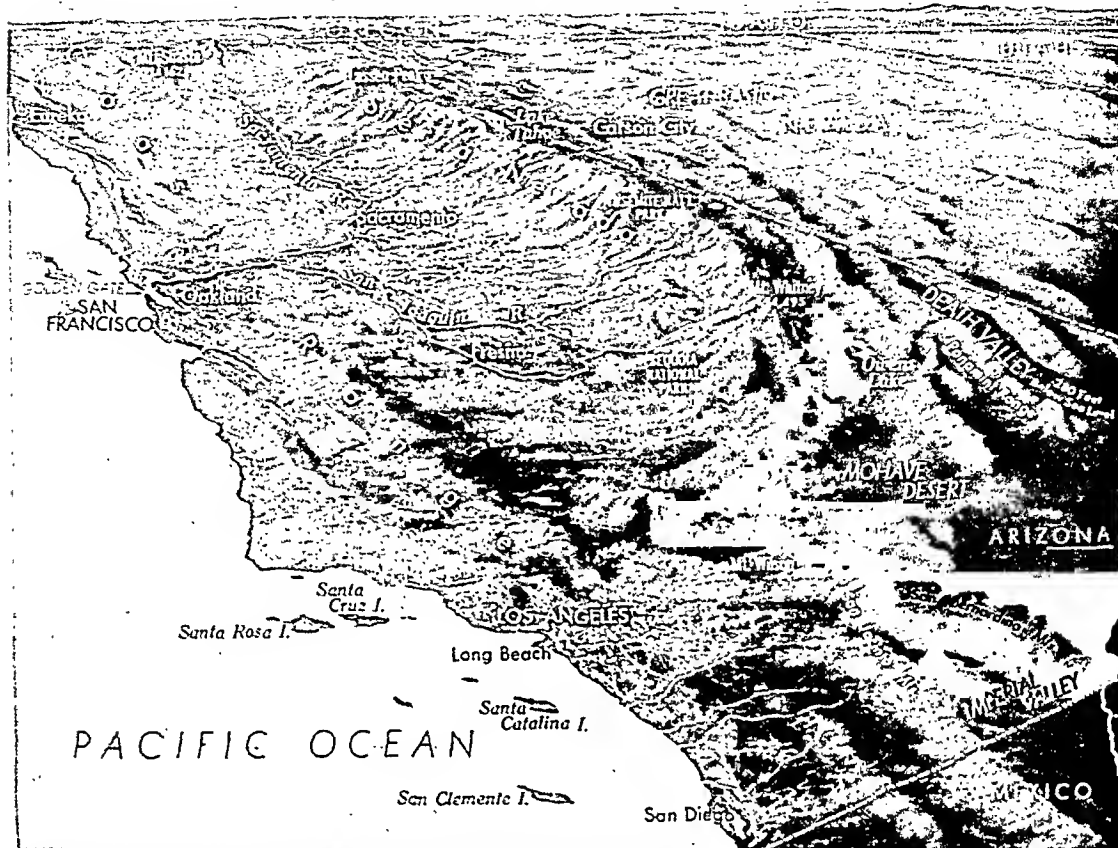
ifornia in 1542 and the discovery of gold near San Francisco about 300 years later drew the first mass immigration of Americans.

Since then the gold of sunshine, oranges and poppies and the rich opportunities in agriculture and industry have attracted ever greater streams of people to the state. Among them are tourists, businessmen and retired persons who firmly believe that this is indeed the terrestrial paradise.

### Contrasting Aspects of California

California is the second largest state in the Union and it is as varied as it is vast. It has lush fruit groves, forests with the world's tallest trees and some of the grimmest deserts. Temperatures range from searing heat matching that of the Sahara to perpetual Arctic chill on mountain tops. Rainfall varies from a drenching 100 inches a year to almost none. In many localities rivers start bravely, then creep

## A LAND OF RICHES AND ROMANCE



This relief map shows California as it would look if we were flying high above San Diego, where the first Spanish settlement was made. We would see its two great mountain ranges with the Great Valley between, drained by the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers. We would see San Francisco Bay and the Golden Gate, the only break through the Coast Ranges into the interior; Mount Whitney, the highest point in the United States, and Death Valley, the lowest point. We would see Los Angeles and the great harbor it shares with Long Beach; and in the southeast, the bleak Mohave Desert. The Imperial Valley, once equally arid, now a fabulously rich fruit and vegetable garden, is irrigated by the waters of the Colorado River.

stealthily beneath gravel beds, to appear occasionally on the surface and finally lose themselves in the salt flats. Less than 100 miles from Mount Whitney, the highest point in the United States proper (14,495 feet), is Death Valley, the lowest point in the country (282 feet below sea level).

Up and down the middle of the state runs the Great Valley with its endless pattern of factory-like ranches, where rows of lettuce may extend with machine precision for miles. Elsewhere are lovely little gemlike basins, mountain-girdled and ablaze with blossoming orchards and acres of flowers. In the north lava beds lie flung in wild disorder, black masses of rope-like rock, jagged, pocked, treacherous, in surly rebellion against the beauty of the white volcanic cones towering in the distance. And all the western coast is white with the surf of the blue Pacific.

Most of the eastern boundary is a spectacular mountain range, the Sierra Nevada, 400 miles long, and 50 to 80 miles wide (see *Sierra Nevada*). Many of the peaks along the jagged, snowy crest are more

than 14,000 feet high, vying with Mount Whitney. On the west, the low Coast Ranges slope down to the Pacific Ocean. These are parallel ridges, 2,000 to 4,000 feet high, which trend from northwest to southeast. Between them lies many a valley open to the sea at its northwest end, but mountain-locked at the other. The only break into the interior is the Golden Gate and San Francisco Bay, through which the rivers of the Great Valley empty their waters.

#### The Great Central Valley

In its vast cradle between the Coast Ranges and the Sierra Nevada this Great Valley (or Central Valley as it is also known) forms a flat, elliptical trough, 450 miles long and averaging 50 miles in width. In terms of eastern mileage it extends as far as from Chicago to Memphis, Tennessee. Its origin is linked with the mountains enclosing it. It is a great fold in the earth's crust, which sank as the mountains rose. Sand, gravel, and silt, carried down from the mountains by streams, filled in the bottom of the trough to a great depth, making the valley

*Continued on page 57*

# California Fact Summary



**CALIFORNIA (Calif):** May have been named by Cortes from a 16th century Spanish novel *The Deed of Esplandian* by Montalvo or from *caliente forno* (hot furnace) referring to deserts in Lower California. Nickname: Golden State from gold found there also: Grape State.

**Seal:** Minerva with the Golden Gate & a bear and a ship in full sail in foreground. Sierra Nevada in background motto written above this scene.  
**Motto:** Eureka (Greek for I Have Found It.)  
**Flag:** For description and illustration see Flags.  
**Flowers:** Golden poppy. Birds: California valley quail. Trees: California redwood. Song: I Love You, California—words F B Silverwood music A F Frankenstein.

## THE GOVERNMENT

**Capital:** Sacramento (since 1851)  
**Representation in Congress:** Senate—2 House of Representatives—30 Electoral votes—32  
**State Legislature:** Senators—40 term 4 yrs Assemblymen—80 term 2 yrs Regular session meets 1st Monday after Jan 1 in odd years limited to 120 calendar days Budget session 1st Monday after March 1 in even years limited to 30 calendar days  
**Constitution:** Adopted 1879 Proposed amendment may be (a) passed by two-thirds majority of legislature or by initiative action of the people and (b) ratified by a majority voting on amendment at a popular election  
**Governor:** Term 4 years May succeed himself  
**Other Executive Officers:** Lieut gov sec of state atty gen, treasurer controller all elected terms 4 yrs  
**Judiciary:** Supreme court—7 justices elected at large term 12 years District courts of appeal—4 districts divided into 7 divisions with 3 judges each judges elected term 12 years Superior courts—1 in each county judges elected term 6 years Judicial council includes 5 of justice and 10 judges appointed by him duties to speed up court's business  
**County:** 58 counties each governed by a board of supervisors—usually 5 members elected term 4 years  
**Municipal:** Mayor and council most common some have commissioners directors city managers or trustees  
**Voting Qualifications:** Age 21 residence in state 1 year in county 90 days in precinct 34 days Literacy test Voter must be of sound mind a citizen and registered



## THE PEOPLE AND THEIR LAND

**Population (1950 census):** 10,588,223 (rank among 48 states—2d) urban 80.7% rural 19.3% Density 67.5 persons per square mile (rank—19th state)  
**Extent Area:** 158,693 square miles including 1,953 square miles of water surface (2d state in size)  
**Elevation:** Highest (also highest in U S) Mount Whitney 14,495 feet lowest (also lowest dry land in U S) in Death Valley 282 feet below sea level  
**Temperature (°F):** Average—annual 59° winter 46° spring 57° summer 74° fall 61° Lowest recorded —45 (Boca Nevada County Jan 20 1937) highest recorded 134° (Greenland Ranch Inyo County July 10 1913)  
**Precipitation Average (inches):**—annual 21 winter 12 spring 5 summer less than 1 fall 4 Varies from about 100 in northwest to about 2 in southeast  
**Natural Features:** Mountains and valleys—Great Central Valley cradled by Coast ranges and Sierra Nevada. To the south connecting with Coast ranges in south separate northern and southern California. San Bernardino Mts. Death Valley Salton Sea and Imperial Valley in south. Such natural harbors as San Francisco Bay. Principal rivers Sacramento San Joaquin  
**Land Use:** Cropland 10% nonforested pasture 31% forest, 45%, other (roads parks game refuges, waste land cities etc.) 14%

CROPS	PASTURE	FOREST	OTHER

**Natural Resources:** Agricultural—diverse climate varied surface and soil. Industrial—petroleum and natural gas hydroelectric power forests and fisheries Commercial—natural ports tourist attractions

## OCCUPATIONS AND PRODUCTS

What the People Do to Earn a Living



Major Industries and Occupations 1950

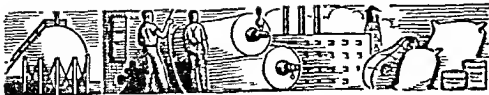
Fields of Employment	Number Employed	Percentage of Total Employed
Wholesale and retail trade	872,609	22.4
Manufacturing	763,680	19.5
Professional services (medical legal educational etc.)	378,017	9.7
Transportation communication and other public utilities	318,913	8.2
Construction	298,675	7.7
Agriculture forestry and fishery	298,119	7.6
Personal services (hotel domestic laundry etc.)	264,043	6.7
Government	248,230	6.3
Finance insurance and real estate	179,417	4.6
Business and repair services	130,260	3.3
Amusement recreation and related services	76,790	2.0
Mining	30,308	0.8
Workers not accounted for	46,218	1.2
<b>Total employed</b>	<b>3,907,278</b>	<b>100.0</b>



## TRANSPORTATION AND COMMUNICATION

**Transportation:** Railroads 7,500 miles First railroad Sacramento to Folsom 1856 Rural roads 97,700 miles Airports 150  
**Communication:** On Periodicals 395 Newspapers 748 First newspaper *Californian* Monterey 1846 Radio stations (AM and FM) 185 first station KQL Los Angeles licensed Oct 13 1921 Television stations 19 first station KTLA Los Angeles began operation Jan 22 1947 Telephones 4,653,000 Post offices 1,439

# California Fact Summary



## What the People Produce

A. Manufactured Goods (Rank among states—6th)  
Value added by manufacture\* (1952), \$6,960,932,000

Leading Industries in 1947 (with Principal Products)	Value Added by Manufacture	Rank among States
<b>FOOD AND KINDRED PRODUCTS</b>	\$851,836,000	3
Canning, preserving, and freezing; beverages; bakery products		
<b>TRANSPORTATION EQUIPMENT</b> . . .	553,718,000	2
Aircraft; motor vehicles and parts; shipbuilding and repairing		
<b>FABRICATED METAL PRODUCTS</b> . . .	291,323,000	6
Structural metal products; heating and plumbing equipment		
<b>MACHINERY (EXCEPT ELECTRICAL)</b> .	284,785,000	11
General industrial machinery; construction and mining machinery		
<b>CHEMICALS AND ALLIED PRODUCTS</b> .	280,195,000	7
Paints; vegetable and animal oils		

\*For explanation of value added by manufacture, see Census.



B. Farm Products (Rank among states—1st)  
Total cash income (1952), \$2,728,701,000

Products	Amount Produced (10-Year Average)	Rank within State*	Rank among States†
Truck crops . . . . .	3,188,000 tons	1	1
Milk . . . . .	2,706,000,000 qts.	2	5
Cattle . . . . .	663,279,000 lbs.	3	10
Grapes . . . . .	2,608,000 tons	4	1
Oranges . . . . .	48,196,000 boxes	5	1
Hay . . . . .	5,704,000 tons	6	4
Eggs . . . . .	190,000,000 doz.	7	8
Cotton lint . . . . .	584,000 bales	8	7
Potatoes . . . . .	34,039,000 bu.	9	3

\*Rank in dollar value †Rank in units produced



C. Fish (Rank among states—1st)

(Marine waters and coastal rivers, 1950), catch,  
1,338,299,000 lbs.; value, \$81,605,000

D. Minerals (Fuels, Metals, and Stone)

Annual value (1951), \$1,209,428,000  
Rank among states—3d

Minerals (1951)	Amount Produced	Value
Petroleum . . . . .	354,561,000 bbls.	\$797,760,000
Natural gas . . . . .	566,751,000,000 cu. ft.	\$2,745,000
Natural-gas liquids . . . . .	29,533,000 bbls.	\$1,451,000
Cement . . . . .	28,956,000 bbls.	77,754,000
Sand and gravel . . . . .	46,928,000 tons	41,280,000

E. Lumber (Rank among states—3d)

2,635,000,000 board feet (5-year average)

F. Trade

Trade (1948)	Sales	Rank among States
Wholesale . . . . .	\$13,502,920,000	3
Retail . . . . .	11,019,804,000	2
Service . . . . .	1,336,155,000	2

## NATIONAL PARKS\*

Kings Canyon—453,065 acres; two great canyons cut by Kings River; lakes; General Grant Tree (54).  
Lassen Volcanic—103,809 acres; lava fields, hot springs, boiling lakes in area dominated by Lassen Peak (10,453 ft.), which last erupted 1914–21 (20).  
Sequoia—385,178 acres; vast preserve of giant sequoias including General Sherman Tree, 272.4 ft. high; Mount Whitney, highest point in continental U.S., is within park; magnificent views from Moro Rock (60).  
Yosemite—757,617 acres including glacier-carved Yosemite Valley; 3 great waterfalls; groves of sequoias (46).

## STATE PARKS AND STATE MONUMENTS\*†

Anza Desert—in colorful desert of San Diego, Imperial cos.; Borrego Palm Canyon; many wild flowers (82).  
Armstrong Redwoods—forest theater seats 3,000 (34).  
Big Basin Redwoods—California's first state park, established 1902; redwoods up to 14-foot diameter (51).  
Calaveras Big Trees—giant sequoias and pine forests; winter, summer sports; near Angels Camp (40).  
Castle Crags—Sacramento River flows through park; mineral springs; trout fishing; near Dunsmuir (12).  
Columbia Historic—well-preserved buildings of "ghost town" of Mother Lode, rich gold vein; near Sonora (44).  
Cuyamaca Rancho—in San Diego County; beautiful forests and peaks of Cuyamaca Range (84).  
D. L. Bliss—at Rubicon Point on Lake Tahoe; forested mountain area provides recreational facilities (33).  
Del Norte Coast Redwoods—virgin forest and memorial groves; rhododendrons bloom in May and June (3).  
Donner Memorial—honors Donner party caught in deep snows near Truckee in 1846; Pioneer Monument (26).  
Frémont Peak—near San Juan Bautista; named for John C. Frémont; sweeping view from crest (56).  
Gold Discovery Site—here James Marshall discovered gold at Sutter's sawmill, Jan. 24, 1848, bringing on rush of 1849; Marshall Monument Park includes his statue and restored cabin; both parks at Coloma (32).  
Humboldt Redwoods—famous for "Founders' Tree," the world's tallest tree, 364 feet high (15).  
La Purisima Mission—state's largest restored mission, includes 3 buildings; near Lompoc (65).  
McArthur-Burney Falls Memorial—Burney Creek forms 125-foot falls; near Burney (13).  
Mount Diablo—good view from crest; nr. Danville (43).  
Mount San Jacinto—wilderness near Idyllwild (76).  
Mount Tamalpais—hiking trails through forest; large mountain theater where annual play is presented (42).  
Old Custom House—early 19th-century adobe structure; now houses museum of historic relics; Monterey (57).  
Palomar Mountain—forested mountain park, next to site of world's largest reflector telescope (80).  
Patrick's Point—a reserve of wild flowers; agate beach and spectacular rocky seacoast; near Trinidad (10).  
Pfeiffer Big Sur—on Big Sur River; s. of Monterey (59).  
Point Lobos Reserve—rugged seacoast area featuring rare Monterey eypress; seals; near Carmel (57).  
Prairie Creek Redwoods—mixed forest near Orick (6).  
Shasta—near Redding; gold rush "ghost town" includes courthouse, jail, general store (18).  
Sonoma Mission—Mission San Francisco de Solano founded in 1823; most northerly of missions (39).  
Vallejo Home—built 1851 by Gen. Mariano G. Vallejo, commandant of n. Calif.; at Sonoma (39).

\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map.

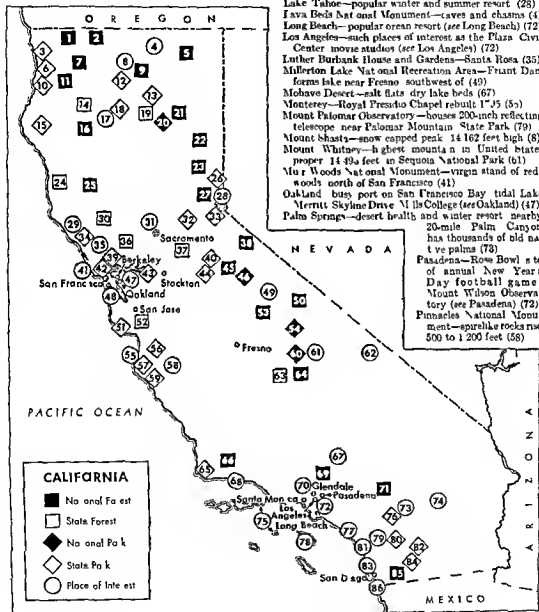
†There are 127 state parks, historical monuments, arboreta, and museums; 28 are given.

# California Fact Summary

## PLACES OF INTEREST\*

Cabrillo National Monument—Point Loma from here Juan Cabrillo first sighted what is now California (83)  
Channel Islands National Monument—unusual plant and animal life sea lion rookery elephant fossils (75)  
Coronado—popular beach resort near San Diego (86)  
Death Valley National Monument—hot barren desert lowest point in U.S. (see Death Valley) (62)  
Devils Postpile National Monument—rock columns (49)  
Dolores Mission—founded in 1776 the oldest building in San Francisco (48)

Feather River Canyon—magnificent deep gorge of North Fork of river midway between (17) and (28)  
Folsom Dam—in Central Valley Project east of (31)  
Forest Lawn Memorial Park—cemetery at Glendale in includes replicas of Michelangelo's statues (72)  
Hollywood—section of Los Angeles known as movie capital Hollywood Bowl Griffith Observatory (72)  
Joshua Tree National Monument—desert area preserves nearly extinct Joshua trees desert flowers (74)  
La Jolla—popular resort on rocky seacoast Scripps Institution of Oceanography famous marine museum (83)  
Lake Tahoe—popular winter and summer resort (28)  
Lava Beds National Monument—caves and chasms (4)  
Long Beach—popular ocean resort (see Long Beach) (72)  
Los Angeles—such places of interest as the Plaza Civic Center movie studios (see Los Angeles) (72)  
Luther Burbank House and Gardens—Santa Rosa (35)  
Millerton Lake National Recreation Area—Friant Dam forms lake near Fresno southwest of (49)  
Mohave Desert—salt flats dry lake beds (67)  
Monterey—Royal Presidio Chapel rebuilt 1795 (55)  
Mount Palomar Observatory—houses 200-inch reflecting telescope near Palomar Mountain State Park (79)  
Mount Shasta—snow capped peak 14 162 feet high (8)  
Mount Whitney—highest mountain in United States proper 14 494 feet in Sequoia National Park (61)  
Muir Woods National Monument—virgin stand of redwoods north of San Francisco (41)  
Oakland—busy port on San Francisco Bay tidal Lake Merritt Skyline Drive Mills College (see Oakland) (47)  
Palm Springs—desert health and winter resort nearby 20-mile Palm Canyon has thousands of old native palms (73)  
Pasadena—Rose Bowl site of annual New Year's Day football game Mount Wilson Observatory (see Pasadena) (72)  
Pinnacles National Monument—spirelike rocks rise 500 to 1 200 feet (58)



\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map



# California Fact Summary

Russian River Area—redwoods, sandy beaches in w. Sonoma Co.; Armstrong Redwoods State Park in area (29).  
 Sacramento—Capitol Park and the Capitol; restored Sutter's Fort, site of 1st settlement (see Sacramento) (31).  
 San Carlos Mission—Carmel; founded in 1770, rebuilt in 1880's; original paintings and statuary preserved (55).  
 San Diego—such places of interest as Balboa Park and "Old Town" (see San Diego) (83).  
 San Fernando Mission—founded in 1797, restored convent has 19 semicircular arches along main side (70).  
 San Francisco—such places as Golden Gate Bridge, Fisherman's Wharf, Chinatown (see San Francisco) (48).  
 San Gabriel Mission—now a parish church near Los Angeles; highly decorative main altar (72).  
 San Juan Capistrano Mission—famous for swallows which return each March; founded in 1776, damaged in earthquakes of 1812, 1918; now restored (77).  
 San Luis Rey Mission—Oceanside; fine architecture, composite of Spanish-Moorish and Mexican styles (81).  
 Santa Barbara—well-preserved Spanish Mission with museum; white stucco County Courthouse (68).  
 Santa Catalina Island—luxurious island resort; trips in glass-bottom boat; tours over Starlight Drive (78).  
 Shasta Dam—second highest dam in world, 602 ft., forms 46 sq. mi. reservoir; in Central Valley Project (17).  
 Stanford University—Herbert Hoover House and Hoover Library, both on the campus (48).

## NATIONAL FORESTS\*

Angeles—691,052 acres; hdqrs., Los Angeles (69).  
 Cleveland—567,103 acres; hdqrs., San Diego (85).  
 Eldorado—885,847 acres in state; total, 836,247 acres in California and Nevada; hdqrs., Placerville (27).  
 Inyo—1,781,669 acres in state; total, 1,844,017 acres in California and Nevada; hdqrs., Bishop (50).  
 Klamath—1,472,805 acres in state; total, 1,497,257 acres in California and Oregon; hdqrs., Yreka (7).  
 Lassen—1,381,737 acres; hdqrs., Susanville (21).  
 Los Padres—2,007,025 acres; hdqrs., Santa Barbara (66).  
 Mendocino—1,052,634 acres; hdqrs., Willows (25).  
 Modoc—1,958,589 acres; hdqrs., Alturas (5).  
 Plumas—1,414,039 acres; hdqrs., Quincy (22).  
 Rogue River—56,206 acres in state; total, 1,203,630 acres in Calif. and Ore.; hdqrs., Medford, Ore. (2).  
 San Bernardino—812,633 acres; hdqrs., San Bernardino (71).  
 Sequoia—1,182,589 acres; hdqrs., Porterville (64).  
 Shasta—2,133,907 acres; hdqrs., Mount Shasta (9).  
 Sierra—1,459,332 acres; hdqrs., North Fork (53).  
 Siskiyou—38,729 acres in state; total, 1,389,169 acres in Calif. and Ore.; hdqrs., Grants Pass, Ore. (1).  
 Six Rivers—1,036,785 acres; hdqrs., Eureka (11).  
 Stanislaus—1,100,709 acres; hdqrs., Sonora (45).  
 Tahoe—1,190,264 acres; hdqrs., Nevada City (23).  
 Toiyabe—695,783 acres in state; total, 3,567,563 in Calif. and Nev.; hdqrs., Reno, Nev. (38).  
 Trinity—1,202,675 acres; hdqrs., Weaverville (16).

## STATE FORESTS\*

Boggs Mountain (Lake County)—3,433 acres (30).  
 Ellen Pickett (Trinity County)—160 acres (14).  
 Jackson (Mendocino County)—52,041 acres (24).  
 Las Pasadas (Napa County)—796 acres (36).  
 Latour (Shasta County)—9,013 acres (19).  
 Loghry (Santa Clara, Santa Cruz Cos.)—68 acres (52).  
 Mtn. Home Tract (Tulare County)—4,562 acres (63).  
 Mount Zion (Amador County)—164 acres (37).

\*Numbers in parentheses\* are keyed to map.

## EDUCATION

**Public Schools:** Elementary, 3,758; secondary, 793. Compulsory school age, 8 through 16. State Board of Education consists of 10 members appointed by the governor for 4-year terms. Supt. of public instruction elected for 4-year term, acts as executive officer of state board. The 5 members of most county boards of education appointed by county boards of supervisors. Most county supts. elected for 4-year terms. City or district boards either elected or appointed by county supt. or city council. City or district supts. elected by their boards.

**Private and Parochial Schools:** 516.

**Colleges and Universities:** Colleges, 38; junior colleges, 52. State-supported schools include the University of California at Berkeley with 7 campuses elsewhere in the state; California State Polytechnic College, San Luis Obispo; 9 state colleges—Chico, Fresno, Humboldt, Los Angeles, Sacramento, San Diego, San Francisco, San José, and Long Beach; California Maritime Academy, Vallejo.

**State Schools for the Handicapped:** California School for the Blind and California School for the Deaf, Berkeley; 2 Schools for Cerebral-Palsied Children, Redwood City and Altadena; State School for the Deaf, Riverside.

**Libraries:** City and town libraries, 157; county libraries, 51, of which 7 contract for service with city or other county libraries. State library responsible for assistance in developing library service. Work headed by state librarian. Noted special libraries: Henry E. Huntington Library and Art Gallery, San Marino; Sutro Library, San Francisco.

**Outstanding Museums:** California Palace of the Legion of Honor, M. H. de Young Memorial Museum, San Francisco Museum of Art, all in San Francisco; Santa Barbara Museum of Art; Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History; E. B. Crocker Art Gallery, Sacramento; H. E. Huntington Library and Art Gallery, San Marino; Los Angeles County Museum, Southwest Museum, Los Angeles; Mills College Art Gallery, Oakland; Fine Arts Gallery of San Diego.

## CORRECTIONAL AND PENAL INSTITUTIONS

Under administration of California Youth Authority: Ben Lomond Forestry Camp, Santa Cruz; Coarsegold Forestry Camp, Coarsegold; Fricot Ranch School for Boys, San Andreas; Los Guilucos School for Girls; Santa Rosa; Fred C. Nelles School for Boys, Whittier; Paso Robles School for Boys, Paso Robles; Pine Grove Forestry Camp, Pine Grove; Preston School of Industry, Waterman; Ventura School for Girls, Ventura; Northern Reception Center & Clinic, Perkins; Southern Reception Center & Clinic, Norwalk. California State Prison, San Quentin and Soledad; California State Prison at Folsom, Repressa; California Inst. for Men, Chino; California Inst. for Women, Corona; Deuel Vocational Inst., Tracy; California Medical Facility, Terminal Island, San Pedro.

## LARGEST CITIES (1950 census)

Los Angeles (1,970,358): man-made harbor; shipbuilding, fishing, petroleum, moving-picture industries; makes tires, aircraft, women's clothing; tourist trade.  
 San Francisco (775,357): shipping; meat packing, food canning, oil refining, shipbuilding, steel, chemicals.



# California Fact Summary

Oakland (384 575) on San Francisco Bay manufactures food products automobiles and parts chemicals  
 San Diego (334 387) land locked harbor U S Navy's main Pacific coast base largest industry—aircraft  
 Long Beach (250 767) Pacific port and resort one of nation's chief petroleum producers shipbuilding  
 Sacramento (137 572) state capital fruit and vegetable canning railroad shops McClellan Air Force Base  
 Berkeley (113 805) bay city main campus of U of California pharmaceutical products ink soap engines  
 Pasadena (104 577) residential resort city Rose Bowl  
 Richmond (91 515) port oil refining automobiles  
 Glendale (95 702) air terminal aircraft motion pictures  
 San Jose (90 280) fruit ship ping and canning center  
 Fresno (91 774) fruit processing wine farm equipment  
 Burbank (78 577) air terminal a rector motion picture  
 Santa Monica (71 595) residential beach resort aircraft  
 Stockton (0 853) river port canning farm machinery

## THE PEOPLE BUILD THEIR STATE

- 1542—Juan Rodríguez Cabrillo and his pilot Bartolomé Ferrello enter what is now San Diego Bay They explore California coast in search of sea passage to Atlantic claim coastlands for Spain  
 1579—Sir Francis Drake in the *Golden Hind* visits bay 30 miles north of present San Francisco bay named for him claims surrounding area for England names it New Albion  
 1584—Francisco Gali explores California coast  
 1602—Sebastián Vizcaíno recharts coast names many places first mass celebrated in California  
 1697—Charles II of Spain grants Jesuits warrant to establish missions in California  
 1701—Father Eusebio Kino crosses Colorado River near Yuma and works with Indians of Upper California.  
 1767—Charles III orders Jesuits out of California and assigns missionary work there to Franciscans  
 1769—Father Junípero Serra head of Franciscan missionaries and Don Gaspar de Portolá establish first Spanish mission at San Diego de Alcalá July 16 first of 21 missions set up by 1823 Portolá and party sight San Francisco Bay on exploration trip  
 1770—First vineyards set out First orange trees planted with first orange grove at San Gabriel Mission 1804 and first commercial grove 1841  
 1775—Indians attack and burn San Diego Mission  
 1776—Juan Bautista de Anza brings first settlers across Sierra Nevada to establish San Francisco Presidio, March 28  
 1777—San José de Guadalupe California's first pueblo founded  
 1784—Indians destroy mission at Yuma (now in Arizona)  
 1796—First U S ship the *Otter* docks at Monterey, beginning heavy U S California trade despite Spanish law forbidding it  
 1812—Russians build Fort Ross (Ross) north of San Francisco in 1841 they sell it to John Sutter  
 1821—Mexico wins its independence from Spain  
 1822—Californians at Monterey declare their independence from Spain April 9 set up legislature November 9  
 1825—Mexico claims California as a territory  
 1831—Californians revolt against harsh Mexican governor Manuel Victoria forcing his removal  
 1833—Mexico begins to secularize missions



- 1836—Californians revolt forming free state but return to Mexican rule when concessions are granted.  
 1839—Capt. John Sutter founds present Sacramento.  
 1841—John Bidwell and John Bartleson lead first organized party of U S settlers into California group travels overland five months from Missouri  
 1844—John C. Frémont leads military expedition to California makes second visit in 1845 Mexico orders him to leave but he refuses  
 1846—American settlers rebel against Mexico seize Sonoma June 14 raising Bear Flag of short-lived California Republic Com John Sloat claims California for U S U S troops land at San Pedro July 15 entering Los Angeles August 13 First American school founded at Mission Santa Clara First settlers from around the Horn arrive in San Francisco July 31 Ill fated Donner party reaches Truckee in November but only 45 of 81 members survive winter encampment  
 1847—U S forces win battles of San Gabriel and La Mesa January 8-9 Mexican general Andreas Pico surrenders California to General Frémont and the U S  
 1848—By Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo February 2 Mexico formally cedes California to U S James W. Wadsworth discovers gold at Sutter's millrace January 24 discovery launches gold rush of 1849  
 1849—State constitution written Californians proclaim themselves a state and petition for admission to Union leads to eight-month dispute particularly over antislavery clause in Constitution Regular steamboat service begins on Sacramento River  
 1850—California admitted to Union September 9 as free state First free schools founded in San Francisco  
 1851—Santa Clara College (now U of Santa Clara) at Santa Clara and California Wesleyan College (now College of the Pacific) at Stockton are founded  
 1852—Agoston Haraszthy begins viticulture development  
 1854—Sacramento chosen state capital February 25 U S Mint begins operations at San Francisco  
 1857—First of Bret Harte's many writings on California published in *Golden Era* in San Francisco  
 1858—Butterfield stagecoaches bring first overland mail to state use southern route through Tucson Ariz  
 1861—Transcontinental telegraph links California with East coast October 24  
 1862—Drought forces Mexican cattlemen to sell land land boom revolutionizes California agriculture  
 1863—Construction of Central Pacific Railroad begins unites with Union Pacific completing transcontinental line in Utah May 10 1869  
 1867—Mark Twain as California journalist begins his career as humorist when his story *The Celebrated Jumping Frog of Calaveras County* is published  
 1868—U of California created from private school at Oakland opens 1869 moves to Berkeley 1873  
 1871—Anti-Chinese feeling develops into riots  
 1872—Opening of irrigation projects leads to development of truck gardening and similar agriculture  
 1873—Modoc War marks end of conflicts with Indians  
 1874—First oil refinery in state built near Newhall  
 1875—Luther Burbank settles at Santa Rosa beginning his revolutionary botanical experiments there and later at farm at Sebastopol from 1893 Bank of California fails leads to financial panic  
 1876—Southern Pacific Railroad completes link between San Francisco and Los Angeles September 6

# California Fact Summary

- 1879—State adopts present constitution increasing popular control of government.
- 1882—Treaty with China recognizes right of U. S., demanded by Californians, to "limit or suspend" immigration of Chinese.
- 1883—Southern Pacific Railway links California with Gulf of Mexico and the South.
- 1885—Real-estate boom reaches peak; collapses in 1887. Santa Fe Railroad completes line to California.
- 1890—State Highway Commission created. Yosemite National Park established.
- 1891—Herbert Hoover, later 31st president of U. S., enters first class at Leland Stanford Junior University at Palo Alto; after graduation, he works in engineering office in San Francisco.
- 1893—First fruit-marketing co-operatives launched.
- 1906—Earthquake and fire devastate San Francisco.
- 1907—Segregation of Japanese in public schools ends. "Gentlemen's agreement" between U. S. and Japan limits Japanese immigration.
- 1908—California's first commercial movie, 'The Count of Monte Cristo', filmed in Los Angeles. First film made in Hollywood, 1911.
- 1911—Los Angeles Harbor breakwater completed.
- 1913—The 233-mile-long Owens River Aqueduct for Southern California completed. Webb Act bans aliens from owning agricultural land; Alien Land Law supplements act in 1920.
- 1915—Expositions opened at San Francisco and San Diego to celebrate completion of Panama Canal in 1914.
- 1916—Preparedness Day bombing, July 22, at San Francisco, marks labor unrest. Thomas Mooney and Warren K. Billings convicted of crime, leading to long legal battle over case; Mooney pardoned, Billings' sentence commuted, 1939.
- 1920—New oil fields boost state's oil production.
- 1930—Census reveals California's population increased 65 per cent in decade, now sixth state in rank.
- 1931—San Francisco-Hetch Hetchy Valley Aqueduct completed.
- 1932—Los Angeles site of X Olympic Games.
- 1933—Extensive migration to California from Dust Bowl begins, increasing unemployment in state.
- 1935—San Diego begins celebration of the California-Pacific International Exposition.
- 1936—San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge completed. First commercial transpacific flight links San Francisco by air with Philippines.
- 1937—Golden Gate Bridge completed.
- 1939—San Francisco's Golden Gate International Exposition opens.
- 1941—Colorado Aqueduct serving Los Angeles and Southern California completed, largest in world.
- 1942—Japanese submarine shells coast near Ellwood. Japanese along coast evacuated and resettled. War industries bring new residents to state.
- 1944—Japanese allowed to return to coastal areas, but many choose not to do so.
- 1945—United Nations Charter drawn up at San Francisco.
- 1948—Work begins on Folsom Dam on American River. Centennial of gold rush celebrated at Coloma.
- 1950—Census shows California is 2d most populous state; population increased 53 per cent in decade.
- 1951—Central Valley Project for irrigation and power begins with release of water from Shasta Dam. Japanese Peace Conference held in San Francisco.
- 1952—State supreme court rules Alien Land Law of 1920 unconstitutional, also invalidates University of California's 1950 non-Communist loyalty oath required of teachers and employees. California's U. S. Senator Richard M. Nixon, born at Yorba Linda (1913), elected vice-president of U. S.
- 1953—Pres. Eisenhower signs bill giving California title to oil within 3 miles of its coast. Gov. Earl Warren, born at Los Angeles (1891), appointed chief justice of U. S. Supreme Court.

## CULTURE AND SCIENCE IN CALIFORNIA

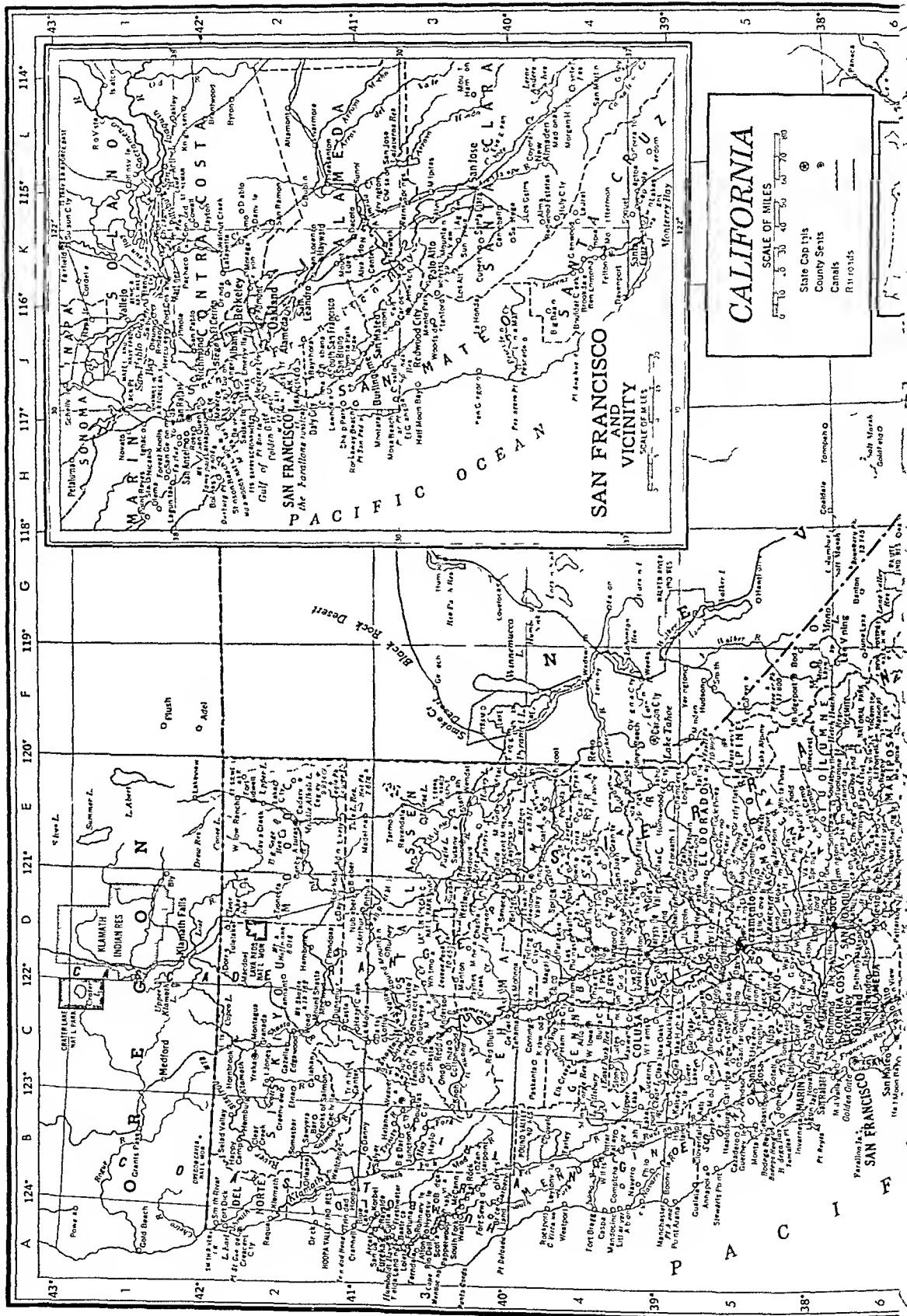


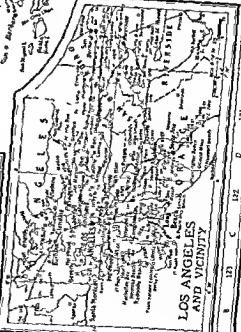
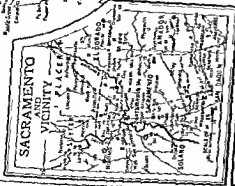
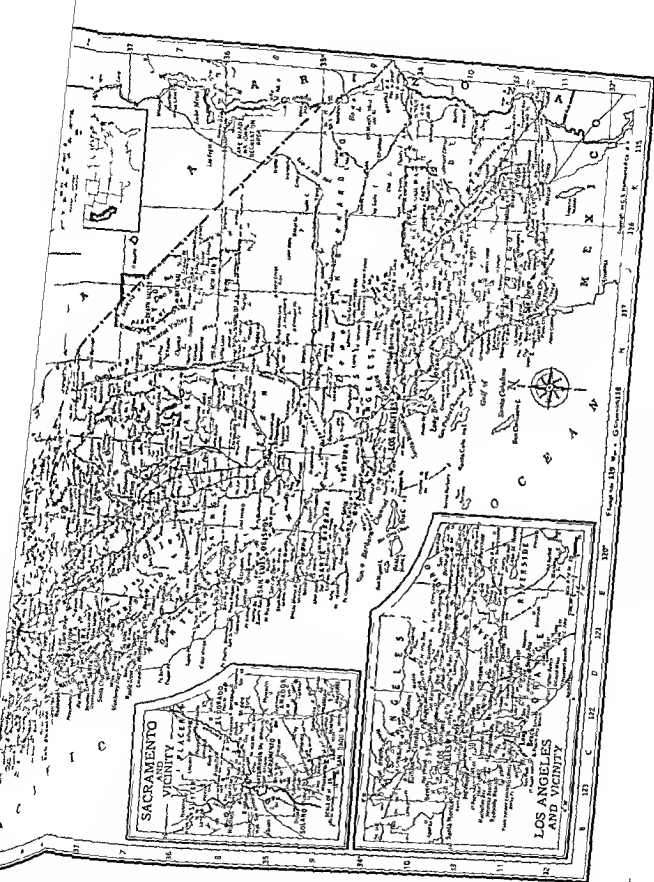
Hollywood Bowl is in a natural amphitheater in Beachwood Canyon, Hollywood. Here are heard every year the Easter Sunrise Service, "symphonies under the stars," and operas. The bowl seats 20,000 and has standing room on the runways for 10,000.



Rising from the forest are the white domes, towers, and buildings of the world-famous Mount Wilson Observatory. The two great domes house 100-inch and 60-inch telescopes. The two towers, 150 feet and 60 feet high, are for observing the sun.







Scale 1:100,000  
G. W. K. & Co. 118

# CALIFORNIA—Continued

La Verne 4,198	D 10	Modesto 17,359	D 6	Paynes Creek 35	D 3	San Juan		Tahoe City 250	E 4
Lafayette 10,500	K 2	Mojave 2,055	G 8	Penryn 500	C 8	Bautista 1,031	D 7	Tahoe Valley	E 5
Laguna Beach 6,661	G 10	Mokelumne Hill 495	E 5	Pepperwood 300	A 3	San Juan		Tarzana 10,000	B 10
Lacunitas 750	H 1	Mon Lake 20	F 5	Perkins 600	B 8	Capistrano 1,250	H 10	Taylorville 250	E 3
Lake Alpine 3	F 5	Monolith 20	G 8	Perris 1,607	F 11	San Leandro 27,342	J 2	Tecopa 150	J 8
Lake Arrowhead 667	H 9	Monrovia 20,156	D 10	Pescadero 1,000	J 4	San Lorenzo 10,570	K 2	Tehachapi 1,655	G 8
Lake City 94	E 2	Montage 579	C 2	Petaluma 10,315	H 1	San Lucas 400	E 7	Tehama 314	C 3
Lake Hughes 224	G 9	Montalvo 1,200	F 8	Philo 700	B 4	San Luis Obispo 1,150	E 8	Temecula 500	H 10
Lakeport 1,983	C 4	Monte Rio 400	H 3	Piedmont 10,132	C 2	San Marino 11,230	D 10	Temple City 25,000	G 10
Lakeside 1,500	J 11	Montebello 21,735	C 10	Pine Valley 300	J 15	San Martin 2,200	L 4	Templeton 556	E 8
Lakewood 31,000	G 8	Montecito 4,032	F 9	Pinecrest 2,220	F 7	San Mateo 41,782	J 3	Tennant 450	C 2
Lamont 2,571	G 1	Monterey 16,205	D 7	Pineridge 115	F 6	San Miguel 800	E 8	Terme 53	E 3
Lancaster 3,591	G 9	Monterey Pk. 20,395	C 10	Pinolo 1,147	J 1	San Pablo 14,476	J 1	Terra Bella 850	G 8
Larkspur 2,905	H 1	Monticello 1,144	C 5	Piru 1,500	G 9	San Pedro 74,000	C 11	Thermal 942	J 10
Las Plumas 55	D 4	Montrose 5,500	C 10	Pismo Beach 1,425	E 8	San Quentin 13,848	H 1	Thornton 1,800	B 9
Lathrop 600	D 6	Moortpark 1,144	G 9	Pittsburg 12,763	K 1	San Rafael 250	K 2	Tiburon 1,100	J 2
Laton 881	F 7	Moorpark 323	K 2	Pittville 50	D 8	San Ramon 75	J 1	Tipton 1,000	F 7
Laurel 64	K 4	Morano 200	H 10	Placerville 1,682	D 11	San Salsito 2,381	J 1	Tonawanda 1,000	C 5
Lawndale 31,000	C 11	Morgan Hill 1,627	L 4	Placentia 3,749	C 8	San Valero 6,400	F 7	Topanga 3,728	B 10
Lawndale (Colma) 297	H 2	Morro Bay 1,639	D 8	Placerville 1,200	E 6	San Antonio 45,533	D 11	Torrance 22,241	C 11
Laws 75	G 6	Moss Beach 525	I 3	Plaster City 205	K 11	San Barbara 750	C 5	Tracy 8,410	D 6
Laytonville 370	G 9	Moss Landing 1,500	K 2	Pleasant Grove 300	B 8	Santa Clara 41,913	F 9	Tranquillity 500	E 7
Le Grand 1,000	E 6	Mount Eden 1,500	K 2	Pleasanton 2,214	L 2	Santa Cruz 21,970	K 4	Tres Pinos 180	D 7
Lebec 450	F 6	Mt. Hamilton 150	K 4	Plymouth 352	C 8	Santa Clara 21,970	K 4	Trinidad 188	A 2
Lee Vining 1,100	G 7	Mt. Hermon 150	K 4	Point Arena 372	B 5	Santa Margarita 500	E 8	Trinity Center 100	C 2
Lemoore 2,153	F 7	Mt. Shasta 1,909	C 2	Point Reyes Sta. 500	F 5	Santa Maria 10,440	E 8	Troms 2,450	H 8
Lennox 25,000	C 11	Mountain Ctr. 40	J 10	Pollock Pines 850	F 5	Santa Monica 71,595	B 10	Tulare 1,025	E 4
Lenwood 220	H 10	Murphys 6,563	K 3	Pomona 35,405	D 10	Santa Paula 11,019	F 9	Tulare 12,445	F 7
Leuzadia 500	C 3	Murray 150	E 5	Pondosa 400	D 2	Santa Rosa 17,902	C 5	Tulacake 1,025	D 2
Lewiston 200	E 2	Napa 13,579	C 3	Port Chicago 3,000	K 1	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Tulumbone 1,284	E 6
Likely 240	B 8	Napa Jct. 224	J 1	Port Costa 557	J 1	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Tupman 157	F 8
Lincoln 2,410	B 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Turlock 6,235	D 11
Linden 426	D 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Tustin 1,143	D 11
Lindsay 3,060	G 7	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Twin Lakes 1,022	K 4
Little Lake 50	H 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Twin Peaks 459	H 9
Littleriver 300	B 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Ukiah 6,120	B 10
Liver Oak 1,700	L 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Upland 9,203	D 10
Livermore 4,364	L 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Upper Lake 600	C 4
Livingstone 1,502	E 6	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vacaville 3,169	D 5
Llano 30	H 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vallejo 26,035	J 1
Locke 295	B 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vallejo Center 500	C 10
Lockeford 1,000	C 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vandenberg 10,000	B 10
Lodi 13,798	C 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Venice 58,571	B 11
Loftus 200	C 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Ventura 16,534	F 9
Loleta 3,700	E 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Verduugo City 2,160	C 10
Loma Linda 400	E 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vernon 432	C 10
Loma Mar 123	J 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Victor 3,241	C 9
Lomita 10,000	C 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Victorville 3,241	H 9
Lomita Park 1,800	J 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vidal 50	F 9
Lompoc 5,520	E 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vidalia 500	D 4
Lone Pine 1,415	H 7	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vikta 1,705	H 10
Long Beach 250,707	C 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Volcano 150	E 5
Longoak 225	E 7	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Vorden 175	B 9
Lookout 25	C 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wallace 55	C 9
Loomis 350	C 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Walnut Creek 2,420	K 2
Los Alamitos 1,800	D 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Walnut Grove 1,250	B 9
Los Alamitos 500	C 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Warm Springs 600	K 3
Los Altos 11,000	K 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wasco 5,650	F 8
Los Angeles 1,970,358	C 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Waterford 1,777	E 6
Los Banos 3,868	E 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Watsonville 11,572	D 7
Los Gatos 4,007	E 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Watsonville 1,800	C 3
Los Molinos 600	D 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Weed 2,739	C 2
Los Olivos 500	E 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Welthepec 300	B 2
Lost Hills 300	F 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Weldon 195	G 8
Lotus 150	C 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wendel 395	E 3
Lower Lake 275	C 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	West 450	C 3
Lyallton 911	E 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	West Covina 4,499	D 10
Lytle 350	C 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	W. Point 1,500	E 5
Lytle Valley 933	J 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	W. Riverside 3,795	E 10
Lynwood 25,823	C 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	W. Sacramento 8,200	B 8
Madoced 200	D 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Westend 400	H 8
Madeline 60	E 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Westminster 3,131	D 11
Madern 10,497	E 7	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Westminster 1,213	K 10
Madison 720	D 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Westport 1,157	B 4
Madrone 720	L 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Westwood 3,618	D 3
Maclena 240	B 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wheatland 581	D 4
Manchester 500	B 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wheeler Ridge 250	G 8
Manhattan Beach 17,330	B 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	White Pines 425	E 5
Manteca 3,804	D 6	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Whitmore 300	D 3
Manton 100	D 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Whittier 23,820	D 11
Maricopa 800	F 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wildomar 350	H 9
Mariposa 700	F 6	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Williams 1,134	C 4
Marikleville 100	F 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Willie 2,691	B 4
Martell 200	C 9	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Willow Ranch 275	E 2
Martinez 8,268	K 1	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Willows 3,019	C 4
Marysville 7,826	D 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Willmar 8,000	C 10
Maxwell 750	C 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wilmington 30,000	C 11
Maywood 13,292	C 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Wilton 263	C 9
McArthur 398	D 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Windsor 600	G 8
McCam 1,394	B 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Winterhaven 400	L 11
McCloud 1,394	B 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Winters 1,265	D 5
McFarland 2,183	F 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Winton 496	E 6
McKittrick 124	F 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Woodbridge 850	B 9
Meadow Valley 300	K 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Woodlake 2,525	G 7
Mecca 837	K 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Woodland 9,386	B 8
Mendocino 1,250	B 4	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Woodside 2,500	G 8
Mendota 1,516	E 7	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Woodward 1,750	F 9
Mendota Park 1,557	F 12	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Yreka 3,227	C 2
Mentone 3,525	H 0	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Yuba City 7,861	D 4
Mered 15,278	E 6	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Yuba City 1,515	J 9
Michigan Bar 132	C 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Zamorra 60	C 5
Middletown 400	C 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10	Zenla 100	B 3
Middleton 700	L 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Midway City 1,421	D 11	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Milford 755	E 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Mill Valley 7,351	F 5	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Millbrae 8,972	J 2	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Mills 300	C 8	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Millville 246	C 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Millitas 13	L 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Milton 125	D 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Mineral 125	D 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Mira Loma 1,555	E 10	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		
Mission San Jose 1,080	L 3	Napa City 21,189	C 8	Porterville 6,901	F 9	Santa Susana 1,000	B 10		

\*No room on map for name.

appear dead level. The Sacramento River which rises in the northern mountains drains the upper valley. The San Joaquin whose headwaters are in the Sierra Nevada drains the south. The two rivers join east of San Francisco and find their outlet to the sea through San Francisco Bay and the Golden Gate.

On the south the westward curving Sierra Nevada and the eastward curving Coast Ranges are joined by the Tehachapi Mountains which divide northern from southern California. Southern California is a confusion of short ranges 6 000 to 9 000 feet high mountain rimmed valleys coastal plain and deserts. Cajon Pass separates San Bernardino Range extending southeast and San Gabriel Range which runs east and west and includes Mount Wilson. Farther south are the San Jacinto and Santa Ana ranges. This region includes the coastal plain where Los Angeles lies. East of the San Bernardino Mountains and south of the Sierra Nevada in an angle formed by the two ranges lies the Mohave Desert. In the southeast too are Death Valley the Salton Sea and the Imperial Valley.

Near the Oregon border on the north the Sierra Nevada meets the Cascade and Klamath mountains (see Cascade Mountains). This northern extremity of the state is a region of volcanoes hot springs boiling mud pools and extensive lava flows. Lassen Peak (10 453 feet) erupted from 1914 to 1921 after years of inactivity. Mount Shasta (14 162 feet) is the lovely glacier-encircled cone of an extinct volcano.

#### Nature • Fabulous Riches

Few lands have been so favored by nature as California. Gold and oil in lavish abundance the majestic forests of sequoias and redwoods and a soil that will grow practically anything under irrigation are among its many blessings. The climate and scenery are worth hundreds of millions of dollars every year for on them are based three of the state's big industries—moving pictures tourists and aircraft manufacture. The moving picture pioneers came to the Los Angeles area to take advantage of the varied scenery of mountain sea desert and forests and the sunny weather for outdoor camera work.

#### VARIED SCENERY OF COAST MOUNTAIN VALLEY AND DESERT



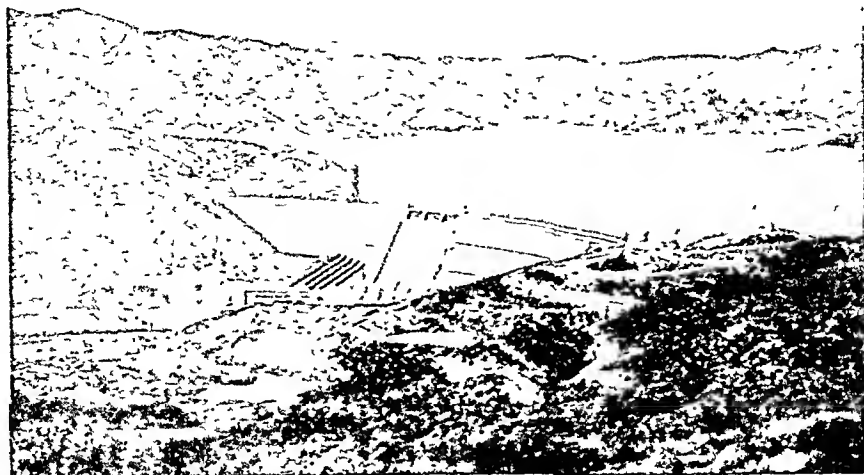
1 On Monterey peninsula south of San Francisco barren crags topped with mistletoe trees jut out into the Pacific Ocean.  
2 In Sequoia National Park is lofty 14 495 foot Mount Whitney the highest mountain peak in the United States proper.



3 Fruit and vegetables thrive in California's Great or Central Valley. In the distance are the Tehachapi Mountains.  
4 California has both the nation's highest and lowest points. In Death Valley between the two ranges is the lowest point.



## SHASTA DAM. SECOND HIGHEST IN THE WORLD



This view shows Shasta Dam before the waters of the storage reservoir had risen high enough to pour over the spillway. Snowy Mount Shasta rises in the distance. The dam backs up the waters of the Sacramento River at the north end of the valley near Redding. It is the chief unit in the vast Great Valley irrigation, flood control, and hydroelectric program known as the Central Valley Project.

And "350 flying days a year" drew the aircraft manufacturers to the same region. Nearly 5 million tourists spend about \$800 million dollars each year to enjoy the mild winters and summers of the coast and the many facilities for recreation. Superb highways make motoring a joy and help to give California the highest automobile registration of any state. People with automobiles can take a dip in the ocean in the morning and ski in the mountains in the afternoon. Residents of the interior valleys can escape the summer heat in an hour or two by driving to their cabins in the foothills.

#### Scenic Parks and Historic Memorials

Several national parks preserve for the entire nation the glories of the mountains and forests. They are Yosemite, Sequoia, Kings Canyon and Lassen Volcanic parks. The national monuments include Cabrillo, Channel Islands, Death Valley, Devils Postpile, Joshua Tree, Lava Beds, Muir Woods, and Pinnacles. (See Death Valley; National Parks; Sequoia; Yosemite National Park.) The large number of state parks set aside additional groves of redwoods and big trees, seashore, mountains, waterfalls, and canyons (see California Fact Summary).

The coast is rich in scenery and in memorials of the Spanish past—among them beautiful old missions, forts, and homes along El Camino Real (The Royal Road, usually called The King's Highway). The road runs from San Diego to Sonoma, north of San Francisco (see Roads; Southwest). Monterey, southeast of San Francisco, was the capital of Spanish California for most of the period between 1775 and 1846. Richard Henry Dana described the Monterey peninsula in his 'Two Years Before the Mast', and Robert Louis Stevenson at one time made his home here. Carmel, an artists' colony on the peninsula,

has preserved the old Spanish charm by excluding modern utilities and architecture.

#### Climate

California has many climates, conditioned by the mountain ranges and foothills, distance from the ocean, and altitude. Within a few miles there may be sharp contrasts. In general there are only two seasons, a rainy winter and a dry summer. Annual rainfall varies from about 100 inches in the northwest to 2 inches in the southeast. Some of the valleys have only 25 to 35 rainy days a year. Others have practically no rain.

The Pacific coast and the mountain slopes facing the ocean enjoy cool summers and mild winters. The northern section is drenched with frequent and dense summer fogs. Here are the great redwood forests (see Sequoia), which require considerable moisture. Sufficient snow falls in the Coast Ranges during the winter to feed the short rivers throughout the year, but on the coast snow seldom falls and destructive frosts are few. The average temperature at San Francisco is 50°F. in January and 62° in September. The southern coast has one of the most equable climates in the world. Summers are warm and rainless. Rains fall in the winter, but almost every day sees some sunshine. The temperatures at Los Angeles average from 56°F. in January to 72° in August.

The interior valleys of central and southern California, which are shut off from the coastal winds, are extremely hot and dry in summer. Midday temperatures in the San Joaquin Valley around Fresno and Bakersfield, are 100°F. to 118°. The deserts of Mohave and Death valleys are even hotter. The dryness of the air lessens to some extent the discomfort of the heat. Winters are mild, with light precipitation, averaging only 6 inches annually at Bakersfield, and 9 inches at Fresno. The northern part of the Great Valley is almost as hot, but precipitation is greater, averaging 16 inches annually at Sacramento, and 37 inches at Redding near the foot of Mount Shasta.

The Sierra Nevada barrier in the east is invaluable to the state as a source of water. There, most of the precipitation takes the form of enormous snowfalls in the winter. At Tamarack the average is 451 inches, and in one year 884 inches fell. These snows are particularly important to the residents of the hot, dry valleys immediately below, for they melt and water

the fields and orchards in the summer and provide the cities with drinking water and hydroelectric power

#### Irrigation

California's valleys are immensely productive but only when they are liberally supplied with water. Without it they are deserts. Since the snows in the Sierra Nevada and in the Cascade Mountains begin to melt in the spring, most of the water would run off by summer if it were not checked by dams and stored in reservoirs (see Dam). The Sacramento and San Joaquin, the principal rivers of the Great Valley, both have their sources in the mountains. Most of their precious waters were carried out to San Francisco Bay in early spring. The thin streams left in summer proved inadequate for irrigation.

Then in 1935 the multi-purpose Central Valley Project was started. It was a long term plan for furnishing irrigation water, providing drainage and improving river navigation. This successful project with its dams, reservoirs and intricate canal systems also controls floods and furnishes hydroelectric power.

Shasta Dam was built at the north end of the valley to harness the waters of the Sacramento River. When completed in 1943, it was the second highest dam in the world. Just below it near Redding is Keswick Dam. At the south end of the valley, Friant Dam, northeast of Fresno, controls the waters of the San Joaquin River. In 1949 work was begun on Folsom Dam, 20 miles east of Sacramento. This huge dam is on the American River, which empties into the Sacramento River.

The O'Shaughnessy Dam holding the Hetch Hetchy Reservoir on the Tuolumne River stores water for San Francisco, 160 miles away. The Owens River, in the south of the Sierra Nevada, is diverted to the Los Angeles basin through a 233 mile aqueduct. The Colorado River is an even more important source of water for the Los Angeles area and for the extreme southeastern corner of the state. A 242-mile aqueduct brings the water from Parker Dam on the Colorado River to Lake Mathews. From there pipelines and tunnels distribute it to the 48 cities which comprise the Metropolitan Water District (see Aqueduct).

The 80-mile All American Canal irrigates the Imperial Valley, replacing the old Imperial Canal which looped into Mexican territory. It taps the Colorado at Imperial Dam, 300 miles below Hoover Dam. With its 130-mile branch north to the Coachella Valley, it carries water to an additional million acres of one-time

desert land. California has about 7 million acres under irrigation, more than any other state.

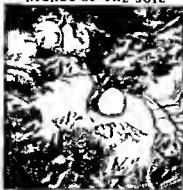
In the heart of the Imperial Valley is the Salton Sea. This was once a salt-encrusted depression known as Salton Sink. In 1905, however, the Colorado River broke loose in a wildly disastrous flood. Since the Imperial Valley is 250 feet below sea level, the river tore out of the channel leading to the Gulf of California and took the steeper and shorter course down into the valley, creating the present Salton Sea and the

New River Gorge. The Colorado was not controlled and returned to its former bed until 1907. Hoover Dam, up the river on the Nevada-Arizona boundary, now prevents such floods and conserves water for irrigation.

#### Agriculture

California's diversity of climate, topography and soil lets it grow virtually every fruit, vegetable, nut and cereal of the temperate or tropical zones. The value of its fruits and nuts far

#### RICHES OF THE SOIL



Oranges grow within a gird of snow-capped mountains in southern California, a great fruit region (top). The Sacramento River valley is one of the country's largest rice-growing regions. In these irrigated paddies (center) the young sprouts are just appearing above the water. In great laborers harvest ripe tomatoes (bottom). Near Woodland is the Great Valley famous for its huge vegetable crops.

exceeds that of any other state and accounts for about two fifths of the total value of California's farm crops. From its orchards and vineyards come most of the nation's lemons, figs, persimmons, almonds, dates, and olives; about eight or nine tenths of its grapes, apricots, avocados, English walnuts, plums, and prunes; about half of its oranges; and about two fifths of its pears and peaches. California also packs one fourth of the nation's canned fruits and vegetables and is the world's greatest exporter of canned fruits and vegetables.

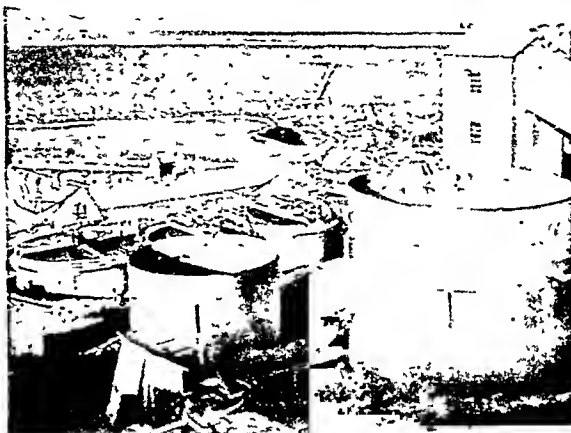
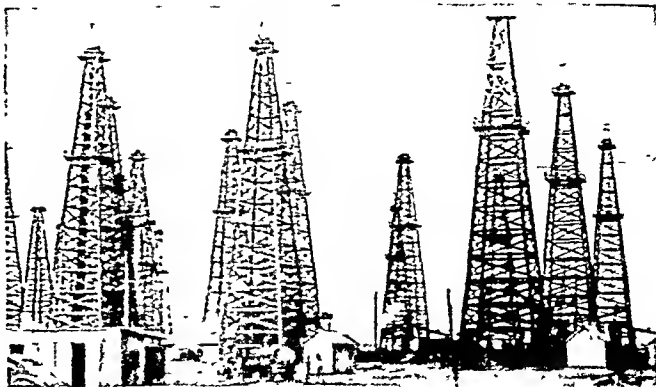
The Great Valley has about two thirds of the state's 37 million acres of farmland and accounts for one half the total value of farm products. The Los Angeles area is the center of the citrus fruit production. Other major growing regions are the valleys of the Coast Ranges and the one-time deserts of the south-east, which include the Imperial Valley and the more recently reclaimed Coachella Valley. These two valleys, with 365 growing days a year, produce great crops of dates, cantaloupes, lettuce, grapes, alfalfa, barley, and sorghum. Mountain pasture and feed from irrigated land give California important rank for livestock, wool, milk, eggs, and poultry. The state also raises much cotton, rice, potatoes, sugar beets, beans, tomatoes, lettuce, and carrots.

#### Large and Small Farms

California has two predominant types of farms. By far the greater number of farms have only from 3 to 30 acres and are cultivated intensively. Such farms are common around Los Angeles and to the southward. The small size is dictated by high land values and high costs of irrigation and cultivation. But even this size will yield a living for a family.

About two thirds of all the cultivated acreage, however, is contained within some 6,000 farms of 1,000 acres or more. These huge "factories in a field" are typical of the Great Valley. A 4,000-acre farm or ranch of this type represents a huge investment and costs many thousands of dollars annually to operate. It may be owned by a corporation and run by a manager, who employs perhaps 100 permanent laborers and 1,000 or more migrant workers during the harvests. A ranch often maintains its own packing and dehydrating plants. These valley ranches are operated with the machinelike precision of an auto-

#### OIL AND GOLD IN LAVISH ABUNDANCE



Southern California bristles with oil derricks (top). The three major basins around Los Angeles, the San Joaquin Valley, and the coast make the state second only to Texas in oil production. Gold, in which California leads the country, is mined and refined at the Garden Queen mine (bottom). In the distance lies the Mohave Desert.

mobile assembly line. Fields of wheat, barley, and alfalfa alternate with mile after mile of orchards and endless rows of vegetables. The flat expanses, uninterrupted by hill or fence, are admirably suited to mechanization. Even the airplane has become an agricultural implement, employed in rice planting and crop dusting. Much of the harvesting, however, must still be done by hand. The armies of migrant laborers move up the valley

northward as the crops mature through the summer. These workers include Filipinos, Mexicans, Chinese, and at times farmers from the Middle West. Providing adequate shelter, schools, and medical service for the migrant families is a difficult problem.

#### Specialization in Farming

To facilitate marketing and utilize trained labor and management, California farms, both large and small, are highly specialized. Certain crops are centered in definite areas. For example, most of the raisin grapes are grown around Fresno. The district around Petaluma has been called a great egg basket, specializing in a certain breed of white chicken. Turlock is the melon center; Santa Clara the center for prunes; Watsonville and Salinas for lettuce. Rice is the special crop of the Sacramento Valley, and Kern County, in the San Joaquin Valley, grows long-staple Acala cotton. It has a higher yield to the acre than any other cotton district in the world. In total cotton production California now ranks among the leading states. The delta of the San Joaquin and Sacramento rivers, once a swamp, has been diked, drained, and planted in miles of aspara-

gas celery, and other truck crops. In the foothills of the mountains cattle and sheep graze remnant of the days when California was a Spanish colony and hides, tallow, and wool were its only exports.

Each major crop has its own marketing association, to which most of the growers belong. The association operates processing plants where the product is graded and prepared for the market. It purchases supplies for its members and carries on research to improve the quality of production.

#### Minerals

The gold that started the frantic rush to San Francisco in 1849 is worth about as much today as the annual apricot crop. California still is a leading gold producing state, but much more valuable are its petroleum, natural gas, and natural gas liquids, which together produce about nine tenths of the value of the state's minerals. California is second only to Texas as the nation's source of petroleum. The oil fields lie in three basins: the San Joaquin with more than half the state's reserves; the Los Angeles area with about a third; and the coastal basin north of Los Angeles with about one sixth. The oil boom opened in the 1920's with the discovery of such fields as Huntington Beach and Signal Hill (Long Beach), although wells had been in production throughout the state since the 1860's. Output increased from 4 million barrels in 1900 to 263 million in 1923. Today the south coast region bristles with forests of oil derricks which day and night suck the black gold from the earth and even from the sea bottom off shore. After the second World War production reached an all time high of about 340 million barrels a year.

Cement is still another valuable mineral product in which the state is usually second to Pennsylvania. Practically all the world's borax comes from the Mohave Desert region which includes Searles and Owens Lakes. Potash, salt, soda, magnesium compounds, and many other chemicals are recovered from this same desert. California is also a leader in the production of mercury, sand, and gravel, tungsten, diatomite, petroleum asphalt, and natural iodine. There are deposits of chromite, manganese, and gypsum. More than 60 different minerals are produced

and in total value of mineral production the state usually ranks third or fourth in the Union.

#### Fisheries and Forests

California's fisheries lead in value and production among all the states. Marine fishing is carried on along the state's entire coast, but great sardine and tuna fisheries off the southern coast account for 85 per cent of the total value of catch. San Pedro, a part of Los Angeles, is the chief fishing port. It has its own rail connections, canning and by-product plants, and every facility for the shipment of fresh, frozen, and salted fish. San Diego, San Francisco, and Monterey are also fishing ports. North of San Francisco salmon are taken. The mountain streams offer fine trout fishing for sportsmen.

The forests do not provide enough lumber for the state's needs, and much of it must be imported to supply the saw and planing mills, furniture box, and other wood product factories. Most important of the remaining trees are the Douglas fir, ponderosa pine, true fir, redwood, and sugar pine. The redwoods, which are relatives of the giant sequoias, have decreased in commercial importance as conservation projects rescue them from the saws of the lumbermen and include them in state and national preserves. The national forest acreage is the largest in the country.

#### Manufacturing

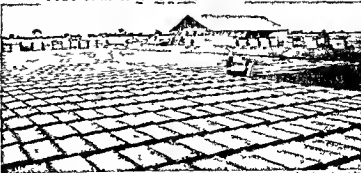
California owes its position among the ten leading manufacturing states in part to abundant oil and in part to its mountain streams which make it the greatest producer of hydroelectric power in the country. Since there is little coal, most of California's steam generated electric power is produced

#### THE GENERAL SHERMAN SEQUOIA



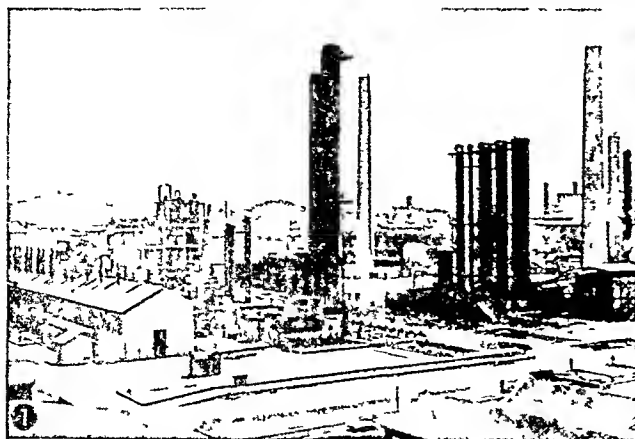
One of the largest and oldest living things on earth is the General Sherman tree in Sequoia National Park. It is 275 feet high, 36.5 feet in diameter, and 3,000 to 4,000 years old.

#### FIGS SPREAD OUT IN THE DRYING YARD



Many figs are grown near Fresno. When they are ripe they are spread out on trays to dry in the hot sun. Practically all the nation's figs come from this region.

## GROWING INDUSTRIAL POWER OF CALIFORNIA



1. Oil refineries like this one help make California a leader in the petroleum industry. 2. This worker is sterilizing and packing ripe olives, a food product in which the state leads the world. 3. This is an aircraft assembly line, showing wing construction.

with heavy fuel oil. The Los Angeles area is the largest industrial center west of Chicago (see Los Angeles).

California's huge food industry is the most important business in the state and approaches a billion dollars a year in the value of its products. California leads all other states in the canning of fruits, vegetables, fish, pickles, and sauces. More than half of all dried fruits come from California. The state also makes more than two thirds of all the wines and brandies manufactured in the United States.

The second largest industry in the state is the manufacture of transportation equipment. This group includes aircraft, motor vehicles, and ships. Southern California is the undisputed leader in the production of aircraft and equipment. The pioneer company was Douglas Aircraft, which opened its first plant at Santa Monica. Other large companies soon followed. The sunny, mild climate offers a maximum of good flying weather and is ideally suited to outdoor assembling. The automobile industry has many branch factories and assembly plants in California. Shipbuilding became important around San Francisco in the second World War (see San Francisco).

In petroleum refining the state is second to Texas. This industry is largely centered in and around Long Beach (see Long Beach), where California oil fields were first discovered and developed. (See Oakland; San Diego; Sacramento; Berkeley; Pasadena; Richmond; Glendale, San Jose; Fresno.)

The great forests of the west coastal states supply California's many sawmills and planing mills. California and Oregon are either second or third after Washington in lumber production in the nation.

Other large industries are the manufacture of metal products and machinery and newspaper publishing. Designing and making women's clothing is an expanding industry. The tourist trade and motion-picture production are also important sources of the state's income.

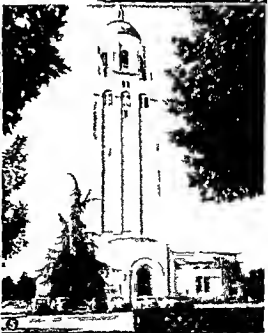
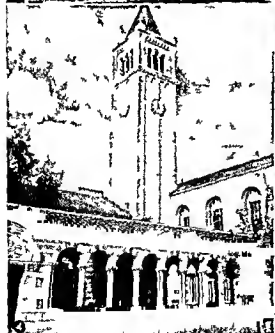
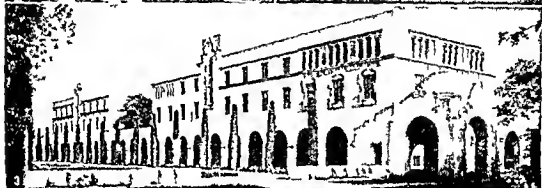
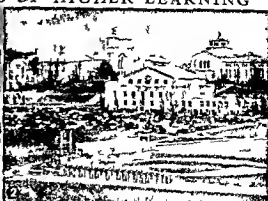
#### High Standards of Education

California is noted for its many fine public and private schools, colleges, and universities. In yearly expenditures for each pupil enrolled in public elementary and high schools, California is usually among the top-ranking states of the Union. These schools are supported by both local taxes and state aid.

The University of California at Berkeley heads the state-supported institutions of higher learning (see Berkeley). It is one of the largest schools in the world, with eight campuses at Berkeley, Los Angeles, San Francisco, Davis, Santa Barbara, Riverside, La Jolla, and Mount Hamilton. The Scripps Institution of Oceanography is at La Jolla, and the Lick Observatory, at Mount Hamilton. The university's many colleges and schools include letters and science, agriculture, engineering, pharmacy, law, medicine, nursing, public health, and social welfare.

California State Polytechnic College is at San Luis Obispo. There are nine state colleges in California (see California Fact Summary).

# LEADING INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING



1 An aerial view of the University of California campus at Berkeley. The Sather Campanile tower is in the center. 2 The University of California campus at Los Angeles. 3 The Choe Ja Arm (left) and Seeley W. Mudd (right) laboratories of the geological sciences, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena. 4 Mudd Memorial Hall of Philosophy at the University of Southern California, Los Angeles. 5 Hoover Library on War, Revolution, and Peace, Stanford University, Palo Alto.

Stanford University, at Palo Alto, is one of the largest privately endowed universities in the country, and California Institute of Technology at Pasadena is one of the nation's leading scientific schools (*see* Pasadena). Other well-known institutions include the University of Southern California (Los Angeles), Mills (Oakland), Scripps and Pomona (Claremont), Redlands, and Whittier.

Thanks to outstanding staff members and ability to finance expensive research, California's institutions of higher learning have made notable additions to human knowledge. Astronomical research is implemented by the world's two most powerful telescopes—the 200-inch reflector at Mount Palomar and the 100-inch instrument on Mount Wilson (*see* Observatory) both in southern California. The University of California contributed to the unleashing of atomic power, using the cyclotron which had originated in its laboratories. Outstanding contributions have been made to biology, medicine, and many other sciences, and aircraft development has benefited enormously from aid given by various institutions.

#### A Leader in Literature

In literature, as in education, the state has long been a leader. Many a new writer has found inspiration and the encouragement of his first successes in California. Bret Harte and Mark Twain published their earliest work in San Francisco periodicals. In the *Overland Monthly*, of which Bret Harte became editor in 1868, appeared his famous short stories 'The Luck of Roaring Camp', 'The Outcasts of Poker Flat', 'Tennessee's Partner', and others. Mark Twain's first book, 'The Celebrated Jumping Frog of Calaveras County and Other Sketches', was written

during his California residence. Joaquin Miller, poet of the west coast, made his home for 30 years in Oakland. Henry George wrote his treatise on the single tax, 'Progress and Poverty', while he was working on Sacramento and San Francisco newspapers. Helen Hunt Jackson's 'Ramona', a romance of the relations between Indians and whites, won lasting fame.

Other writers of the 19th century who did their best work in California were John Muir, Ambrose Bierce, Charles Warren Stoddard, Gertrude Atherton, and Gelett Burgess. Robert Louis Stevenson lived for a time in Monterey and in San Francisco, where he married Mrs. Osbourne. His story of the Napa Valley in 'Silverado Squatters' is one of his finest. Edwin Markham's 'The Man with the Hoe' was first published in a San Francisco newspaper.

Of the 20th-century writers, many of them associated with the literary and art colony of Carmel, the best known include Frank Norris, Jack London, Mary Austin, Harry Leon Wilson, Stewart Edward White, Wallace and Will Irwin, Charles and Kathleen Norris, Lincoln Steffens, Upton Sinclair, and Robinson Jeffers. John Steinbeck and William Saroyan are the best known of the younger writers.

#### California's People and Government

California's history is one of striking population growth. When it became a state in 1850 California numbered but 92,597 inhabitants. One hundred years later it had 10,586,223 people. It climbed from the fifth most populous state in 1940 to the second in 1950. Its increase of 3,678,836, or 53.3 per cent, was the greatest of any state during that decade.

People have flocked to California for many reasons. "Forty-niners" sought gold. Others came to invest in a growing land boom. At the turn of the century, fruitgrowing and industrial expansion swelled immigration. During World War I more factories sprang up. In the prosperous 1920's moving pictures, an oil boom, and new industries attracted more thousands. Retired people found the climate ideal. In the depression of the 1930's came Dust Bowl migrants. During World War II aircraft plants and shipyards required thousands of new workers.

California's people are as varied as they are numerous. Chinese, Japanese, and Filipinos came in such numbers that Congress restricted the immigration of Orientals (*see* Immigration). During World War II, Japanese were put in camps. Mexicans form another large group. Most of the Indians live on reservations.

The second and much-amended state constitution, in effect since 1879, leans strongly toward popular control of government. Legislative power is controlled by initiative, referendum, and recall. "Lobbying" is a felony. The governor and state senators serve four years, and assemblymen, two years. Judges of the higher courts are elected for 12-year terms.

#### A History More Thrilling Than Fiction

The history of this fortunate region is as strange and poetic as the land itself. Within 50 years of Columbus' discovery of America, the Spaniards were

#### HERE CALIFORNIA MAKES ITS LAWS



Legislators meet in the Capitol at Sacramento to write the laws that govern the state. The building is in a park landscaped with trees and shrubs from all parts of the world. The ball on top of the gold dome is 237 feet above the ground.

## MISSIONS THE FRANCISCANS BUILT ON "THE ROYAL HIGHWAY"



1. Greatest and most elaborate of the mission churches is San Juan Capistrano near San Diego. Built in 1806 it was so used by an earthquake in 1812. The church and living quarters have since been restored. 2. To see the gateway to the Santa Barbara mission built in 1786 now Franciscan headquarters for the Pacific coast. 3. A statue of Father Junipero Serra stands in the courtyard of San Fernando mission near Hollywood. 4. Mission Dolores, founded in 1776 was one of the first buildings in San Francisco.

pushing northward, lured by Indian tales of cities richer than those of Peru and Mexico and the Montalvo romance of a fabled island named California, full of gold and pearls.

Hernando de Alarcon saw a part of California when he sailed 200 miles up the Colorado River in 1540 in an attempt to contact Coronado's land expedition to the 'Seven Cities of Cibola.' Two years later Viceroy Mendoza of New Spain sent Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo up the west coast in search of a strait across North America connecting the Pacific and Atlantic oceans. On Sept. 28, 1542, Cabrillo entered beautiful San Diego Bay, the first white man to land on the California shores. He and his pilot, Bartolome Ferrel, who succeeded him after his death in 1543, charted many of the coast's important landmarks and claimed them for Spain.

Sir Francis Drake, the English sea rover, sailed his *Golden Hind* up the California coast in 1579, seeking a passage into the Atlantic. He anchored in a bay 30 miles north of San Francisco, later named Drake's Bay, and called the land New Albion because

of its white cliffs reminiscent of the white cliffs of England. According to his chaplain's account he sailed to a "fair great porte" a brass plate claiming New Albion in the name of Elizabeth I.

In 1936, 357 years later, the plate was discovered by piecemeal. It was turned over to Professor Herbert E. Bolton, historian of the University of California, who deciphered the following lettering:

Be it knowen unto all men by these presents, June 17 1579 by the grace of God and in the name of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth of England and Her successors forever I take possession of this kingdom whose king and people freely renounce their right and title in the whole land unto Her Majesty keeping now named by me as to be knowne unto all men as Nove Albion Francis Drake

This plate is now in Bancroft Library of the University of California at Berkeley.

Sebastian Vizcaino re-charted the coast in 1602 and gave many places their present names: San Diego, Santa Catalina, Santa Barbara, Monterey, Carmel, Point Conception. He sailed as far north as Cape Mendocino but, like other navigators before him, missed the narrow entrance to San Francisco Bay.



Monterey he described as a "natural port, well north of New Spain, where navigators might find refuge."

For the next century and a half, beautiful and fertile California lay isolated behind its mountains and deserts. Except for an annual visit to Monterey of a Spanish galleon on its way from Manila to New Spain, the land was undisturbed. Late in the 18th century, with the English advancing across North America, and Russian explorers in Alaska threatening to extend their fur-trading posts southward, Spain decided that Upper California must be colonized.

#### The Spanish Settlements

Two great pioneers carried out this plan—Don Gaspar de Portolá, a resourceful soldier, who had been governor of Lower California, and Father Junípero Serra, a crippled but courageous Franciscan monk. Five groups set out from Lower California, three up the coast in ships carrying food and church furnishings; two by land, bringing horses, cattle, and mules. With one ship lost at sea and half the expedition dead or suffering from scurvy or famine, they met at San Diego in July 1769. Here they founded the Presidio of San Diego and the first of Father Serra's nine missions, San Diego de Alcalá. Portolá, traveling north by land toward Monterey Bay, failed to recognize it and in November 1769 came to the southern arm of San Francisco Bay, which a scouting party under José Ortega discovered. Returning to San Diego exhausted and starving, Portolá and his men were ready to give up. Father Serra persuaded them to wait one more day for a supply ship. It arrived, and the little party was saved.

Traveling north again, Portolá came to Monterey Bay, where he built the Presidio. Father Serra, who joined him by sea, founded the mission of San Carlos Borromeo del Río Carmelo, or Carmel Mission (1770). This became Father Serra's headquarters.

In 1772 Father Serra walked the 2,000 miles from Carmel to Mexico City and back to recommend further settlements in Upper California. Juan Bautista de Anza, sent to open an overland route, brought the first settlers across deserts and the high Sierra Nevada to establish San Francisco Presidio (1776). Other settlements were made at San José (1777) and Los Angeles (1781), and pueblos grew up around these and the various missions.

Father Serra lies buried in the sanctuary of Carmel Mission beside his friend, Father Juan Crespi, who kept a diary of their expeditions, and Father Fermín Francisco de Lasuén, successor to Father Serra and founder of nine more missions.

#### California's Golden Age

The half century from the founding of the missions to the end of Spanish rule (1769–1821) was a "golden age" of California. The chain of missions extended up the coast along El Camino Real, each link a day's journey from the next one. Peaceful indeed was this road as it wound between the mountains and the ocean. Each mission with its white walls and red-tiled roof was built around a central plaza, hedged with roses, and set within silvery olive orchards, orange

groves, and waving grain fields. An arcade of stone and adobe facing a courtyard ran along in front of living rooms, granaries, and schools. The Spanish architecture of the missions and of the civilian towns (pueblos) was distinguished by heavy roofs, thick walls, and small window spaces. It warded off the heat and glare of the sun so well that it is widely used today for California homes. The missionaries selected every site with a keen eye for fertile soil and water for irrigation. They started the cultivation of fruit trees in California. Among the richest missions were San Luis Rey, founded in 1798 near Occanside and since restored as a Franciscan college, and San Luis Obispo, founded in 1772.

True to his vow of poverty, the Franciscan lived austere; a rawhide bed, a rude chair and table, and a crucifix were his only furnishings. But in the mission churches, costly images, rich brocades, mirrors, and silver candlesticks dazzled the Indians. A traveler can still see some of these at San Juan Bautista (1797), not far from Salinas.

When the Spaniards came the semicivilized Indians lived in mud-brick dwellings and followed primitive customs. The priests, or *padres*, clothed them in wool, taught them to build better homes, and to earn meat and bread by useful crafts such as leather and metal working. The missions became the backbone of the social and industrial life of Spanish California. Fiestas, or religious festivals, and berry-picking holidays lightened the drudgery. Old customs survived longest at the San Gabriel mission (1771), a half hour from Los Angeles, where a Mission Play is given every year.

Life was pleasant on the great ranchos granted to army officers and other favorites of the king or of the viceroy of New Spain. Families were large, but cattle and sheep roamed the hills and food was plentiful. Many household tasks were done on the verandas around the central *patios* or courtyards of the houses. The annual supply ship from New Spain brought tools and implements, brass and silver ornaments for church and home, silks, velvets, and brocades for church vestments and fine garments. But the colonists' wealth was in their herds. They made their own linen and woolen cloth, harnesses and saddles, soft moccasins, and the chairs and bedsteads of wood and rawhide. They ground their own corn meal and flour. They enjoyed frequent *meriendas*, or picnics. Dancing and open-handed hospitality prevailed at the annual rodeos, when livestock was rounded up and branded.

For the Indians, life was not so agreeable. Many were never wholly resigned to mission life, or to virtual slavery on the *ranchos*. Measles, pneumonia, and other European diseases killed great numbers, and caused a superstitious terror of white men. Frequent revolts were brutally suppressed by the soldiers stationed at the presidios.

#### From Mexican to American Rule

When the Mexicans won independence from Spain in 1821 and took control of California, they halted the work of the Franciscans, and in 1833 began to

secularize the missions. Seizing church lands they allowed the fields to run to weeds, and permitted 30,000 Indian converts to resume native customs.

The grip of Mexico soon weakened, however, as foreign influence grew. British ships anchored in California harbors. France and Russia also looked upon the province with interest.

As early as 1796, Ebenezer Dorr, a Boston skipper, sailed into Monterey Bay and traded with the settlers. Other Yankee captains followed him despite Spanish laws against foreign trade. They bargained for sea otter furs, wheat, wool, hides and tallow, in exchange for American goods. One such visit is vividly described in Richard Henry Dana's *Two Years Before the Mast*.

American fur trappers began to enter from the east. Jedediah Smith, one of these frontiersmen, braved blizzards and starvation in the high Sierras to scout the Cajon Pass into southern California in 1826. He explored the Sacramento Valley northward into Oregon. Joseph Walker, another trapper, discovered Yosemite Valley and the Walker Pass into San Jacinto Valley. Some of the traders and trappers married daughters of California *rancheros* and gained influence in the province. Others returning east, spread word of the rich land whose Mexican rulers were too incompetent to defend it.

Russia also had recognized the weakness of the Californians. Coming to San Francisco in 1806 to buy supplies for the fur trading post at Sitka, Alaska, Nicolai Petrovich Resanov paved the way for the establishment, six years later, of Rossiya, an outpost near the Russian River north of San Francisco. He became engaged to Concepcion Arguello, daughter of San Francisco's *comandante*, but died while enroute, Siberia to obtain the czar's consent to his marriage with a woman of another faith. When Concepcion learned of his death she entered a convent. Gertrude Atherton has told their story in her novel *'Resanov'*. Supplies for Sitka were grown or purchased at Rossiya after 1812, and a wealth of seal and sea otter furs was shipped to China. In 1841, convinced that California would soon belong to the United States, Russia sold Rossiya (now Fort Ross) to John Augustus Sutter.

Captain Sutter (1803-80) was a resourceful pioneer of Swiss parentage, who ruled like a feudal lord over 97,000 acres of land in the Sacramento Valley. He built a fort against the warlike Modoc and Klamath Indians. There, Americans coming overland found

haven after their difficult journeys (see Sacramento). This Great Immigration reached its height by 1854. Its most tragic disaster befell the Donner party, whose 45 survivors of an original 87 were rescued from blizzards in the Sierra Nevada by Sutter's guides early in 1847.

Sutter's part in Americanizing the section was not so important, however, as that of John C. Frémont (1813-90) son in law of powerful Senator Thomas Hart Benton of Missouri. Frémont had already won national fame by being the first to make a scientific survey of the Pacific coast and by writing vividly of his explorations. Frémont refused the Mexican com-

mand to leave California and prompted American settlers to proclaim at Sonoma in 1846 the short-lived Bear Flag Republic.

In that same year the United States had declared war against Mexico and in a few sharp fights the invading army under Gen. Stephen Watts Kearny took California. By the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848) the United States gained California. Two years later, it was admitted to the Union (the 31st state) as a part of the Compromise of 1850.

(See Compromise of 1850, Far West, Southwest, American.)

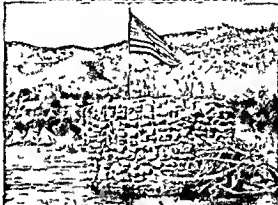
William H. Seward referred to the new state as the youthful queen of the Pacific, in robes of freedom gorgeously inland with gold. In 1847 Frémont refused to recognize the authority of General Kearny who had assumed the office of governor. Frémont was court-martialed and left the army. He continued his turbulent and ambitious career as senator from California (1850-51), as first presidential candidate of the Republican party (1856) as major general during the Civil War, as railroad builder and victim of the financial panic of 1873 and as governor of Arizona (1878-83). (See Frémont.)

#### The Brawling Days of '49

In 1841 James A. Dana had found gold in northern California. The next year Francisco Lopez, a sheepherder, had discovered gold near Los Angeles and caused a little excitement. But it was on Jan. 24, 1848, that James Marshall, a carpenter at John Sutter's sawmill, found gold in the millrace in the American River and started the famous California gold rush.

All parts of the nation shared in the excitement. Crews deserted their ships, farmers dropped their plows and merchants nailed up their stores to rush out to California. Americans came by three routes around

#### WHERE THE GOLD RUSH BEGAN



This monument in the American River at Colusa, near Sacramento, marks the site of the sawmill where James W. Marshall, an employee of Captain John A. Sutter, discovered gold in January 1848.

Cape Horn, across the plains, and across the Isthmus of Panama. The swiftest California clippers made the Cape Horn trip in three months, carrying fortune seekers able to pay dearly for fast passage, but ordinary ships took six to nine months for the voyage. Hardy pioneers traveled overland, taking with them their cattle and farm implements. Prairie schooners assembled along the Mississippi and in Kansas, organized in great caravans for protection, and lumbered over little-known trails toward the setting sun.

About 50,000 immigrants started out in the spring of 1849, eager to cross the Sierras before snow blocked the passes. Salt Lake City, just settled by the Mormons, was a half-way station on the long and dangerous journey. Countless "forty-niners," well equipped and expertly guided, made the five months' trip without mishap. But other thousands were killed by Indians or died from cholera and scurvy, thirst and hunger while crossing the parched deserts and climbing the long winding trails over the Sierras. Shallow graves and the bleaching bones of cattle marked the way. Because the Panama route was shortest and seemed easiest, it was most crowded, but hundreds died of fever while crossing the isthmus.

In San Francisco bearded, roughly-clad miners swaggered about with six-shooters and bowie knives stuck in their belts. Most of the people lived in tents and shacks, for the population jumped from 800 in 1848 to 25,000 in 1850. Fire swept the city six times in those brawling days. Prices soared. Good boots cost \$100, and a dozen eggs \$6. Everyone expected to be rich tomorrow or the day after. Gaudy gambling dens sprang up. The Vigilance Committee of prominent citizens twice drove thieves and gamblers out of town (in 1851 and 1856), and quickly ended the careers of murderers by hanging them.

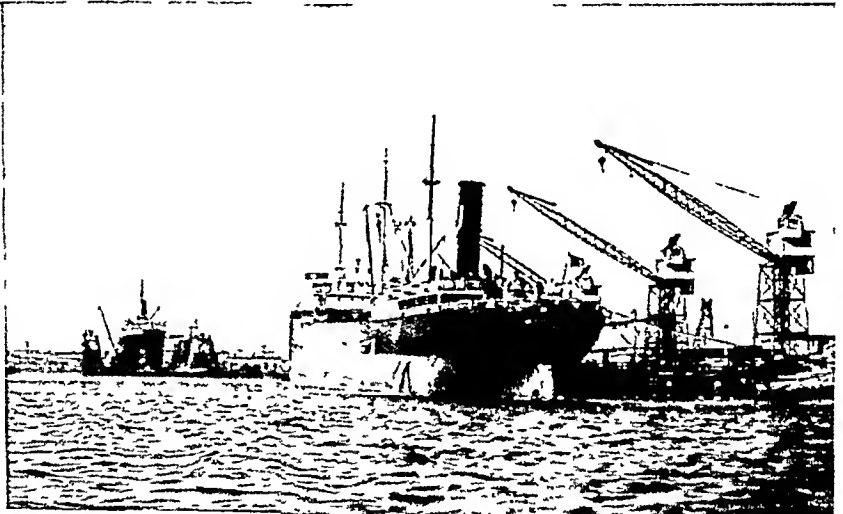
When California was admitted into the Union as a free state in 1850, it was very different from the dreamy California of the Spaniards. Stagecoach lines and the Pony Express kept it in touch with the East. Miners gathered \$65,000,000 in gold every year from 1850 to 1853. Before long the gold in the stream beds became scarce. In ten years most of the adventurers, who lacked machinery for deeper digging, had shouldered their picks and left for the Nevada silver mines, owned chiefly by San Franciscans. Others became homesteaders, or settled as "squatters" on former Spanish and Mexican ranchos. These early grants,

loosely defined, caused many disputes. John Sutter, whose lands were overrun by the gold seekers, died in poverty trying to prove his title to his property. The federal government tried to redistribute the lands justly, but many native Californians were defrauded by local officials.

Although the first telegraph line was established in 1861, the state remained isolated during the Civil War. Pro-Southern sentiment was strong; but a plot to seize army and navy posts was thwarted, and California contributed many soldiers and much gold to the Northern cause.

The Central Pacific Railroad, now the Southern Pacific, was completed in 1869, encouraging settlement on a large scale. It is a monument to the vision of Theodore Judah, civil engineer, who died in 1863 after exploring a practical route for it across the Sierra Nevada, and persuading the "Big Four" (Leland Stanford, Charles Crocker, Collis P. Huntington, and Mark Hopkins) to invest in it. After 1870, however, the railroads began to dominate the state. They controlled the legislature and owned the huge

#### A BUSY CORNER OF LOS ANGELES HARBOR



The man-made harbor of Los Angeles, built between 1910 and 1914 with federal aid, is one of the largest and busiest in the world. Its annual commerce is worth hundreds of millions of dollars in incoming bananas, tin, sugar, rubber, coffee, and outgoing oil, canned foods, aircraft, and cotton.

tracts of land granted by the government to encourage their development. High freight rates, interest, and taxes oppressed farmers and businessmen, as described in Frank Norris's novel, 'The Octopus'. A frenzy of speculation followed the opening of the Comstock silver lode in Nevada in 1872. The Bank of California failed in 1875, a panic followed, and people lost homes and farms. Dennis Kearney organized the Workingman's party, which urged a new constitution. One was adopted in 1879 and provided for control and taxation of railroads and other public utilities.

#### The Changing Scene

The 20th century has seen a great development of natural resources and industry, and enormous population increases. Southern California especially has

seen a series of spectacular booms that dwarfed the gold rush of 1849 (see Los Angeles).

Labor and racial troubles have cast a shadow over the scene. Resentment against the growing Chinese population had led to race riots in the 19th century. In the 1900's Japanese laborers poured into California and acquired farm land. Fear of the new yellow peril prompted further restrictions on immigration of Oriental races (see Immigration).

During and after the first World War anti-labor sentiment was strong. Labor unions in Los Angeles had been repressed since 1910 when 20 men were killed in the bombing of the Times building during a lockout of the paper's typographers. In 1916 Thomas J. Mooney and Warren K. Billings, labor organizers, were arrested for alleged participation in the bombing of San Francisco's preparedness day parade. Labor sympathizers throughout the country agitated for their release, but Mooney was not pardoned and Billings did not have his sentence commuted until 1939.

The depression and drought of the 1930's brought new problems with the flood of migratory farm laborers from the Dust Bowl of the Middle West. In 1937 work began on the Central Valley Project to aid agriculture by diverting surplus waters of the Sacramento in the north to the San Joaquin basin in the south.

Industrial growth during and after the second World War attracted many people creating educational housing transportation and other problems (See also chronology in California Fact Summary United States section South Pacific Region).

**CALIFORNIA LOWER.** The great Mexican peninsula called Lower California (Baja California) was discovered by white men about 1533. It is nearly the size of Florida but it has only about one tenth as many people. It is mostly a mountain ridged desert 750 miles long and from 30 to 150 miles wide enclosing the Gulf of California. The area of about 55,629 square miles is almost equally divided into a state and a territory. Mexicali, capital of the state of Baja California Norte in the north, has a population of 64,653. La Paz, capital of the territory of Baja California Sur in the south, has 13,081 inhabitants.

Mountains rich in minerals are guarded by grim deserts. Railways and good roads have been built only in the extreme north. Mines therefore are developed near ports where boats can pick up the ore. Santa Rosalia on the Gulf is the copper mining center.

Many regions go several years without rain. Crop lands are few. The most important lie in the Mexican region which is irrigated from the Colorado River and grows cotton and wheat. Valleys near the Pacific port of Ensenada produce wheat beans chilies and fruits. The peninsula's southern tip exports winter peas and tomatoes to the United States.

The fisheries off the Pacific side notably at Magdalena Bay yield big catches of tuna mackerel and sardines. The fisheries in the Gulf of California keep a large cannery busy at San José del Cabo. La Paz also on the Gulf is a world market for pearls taken from the Bay of La Paz and its vicinity.

Tijuana just below the United States border is a popular resort for Californians. Ensenada about 60 miles by road from Tijuana boasts fine beaches and excellent fishing. The first known expedition of white men to Lower California was ordered by Cortez in 1533. In 1697 the first permanent white settlement was established by Jesuit missionaries to the Indians. Population (1950 census preliminary) 287,305.

**CALORIE.** One of the units used in measuring heat is the calorie. A kilogram calorie or greater calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one kilogram of water one degree centigrade. A gram calorie or lesser calorie is the amount required to raise the temperature of one gram of water one degree. (See also Food Heat).

**CALVIN JOHN** (1509-1564). When John Calvin was a boy in France, Martin Luther revolted against the Roman Catholic church, touching off the Protestant Reformation in Europe. Calvin grew up to succeed Luther as leader of this movement. Followers of the two men known as Lutherans and Calvinists formed the major branches of Protestantism.

In his youth Calvin studied in Paris for the priesthood but as Luther's ideas spread in France he grew unsettled in his religious convictions and turned to law. When he was about 22 years of age he experienced a conversion and felt himself divinely called to forsake the Catholic church for a simpler form of Christianity. In The Institutes of the Christian Religion he stated his new religious ideas with such vigor that the book became a rallying point for Protestants all over Europe.

Because of his heretical ideas Calvin was obliged to flee France. On the advice of his friend Guillaume Farel who had a strong Protestant following in Geneva, Calvin in 1536 took up residence in the Swiss city and there he remained almost continuously until his death in 1564.

Under the iron will of Calvin Geneva became a city of God. In the social life of the community Calvin enforced the ideals of purity simplicity and devout religious faith. He was consulted in all civic as well as religious matters and Geneva owes to him its fine university and several of its thriving industries. Although his uncompromising severity led him to approve such acts as the burning of Michael Servetus a religious teacher whose views he abhorred, Calvin made Geneva one of the most influential cities in Europe.

Calvin's teachings are the basis of the Presbyterian and Reformed churches. They spread among the Huguenots of France, the Protestants of the Netherlands and Scotland and the Puritans of England. The English Calvinists unable to practice their religion at home came to the New World in the 17th century. These Pilgrims laid the foundation for Calvinism in the United States.

**CAMBRIDGE, MASS.** Although it has become one of the most important manufacturing cities of New England, the chief fame of this suburb of Boston separated from it by the Charles River is as an

historical, educational, and literary center. The site was settled as New Towne in 1630. It was planned as the capital of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, but soon Boston was chosen instead.

Harvard College was founded in Cambridge in 1636 with a General Court appropriation of £400. John Harvard, a minister of near-by Charlestown, bequeathed his library and £1,700 to the project. The college was named for him, and in 1638 the town was renamed for England's Cambridge University. Harvard was the first American college, and today it is in the first rank of universities. An association of Harvard professors in 1879 informally established Radcliffe College for women. It has long been independently administered but is still affiliated with Harvard. The Massachusetts Institute of Technology, founded in 1861 and opened in Boston in 1865, moved to its present 80-acre campus in Cambridge in 1915. Three theological seminaries also are here.

Thus Cambridge has remained a center of American cultural life. Among many famous writers, teachers, and scientists who have lived and worked here are James Russell Lowell, Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, Oliver Wendell Holmes, John Fiske, Louis Agassiz and his son Alexander, and Margaret Fuller, an ardent feminist of the 1800's. The charm of Old Cambridge, the southwest portion of the present city, lies in its historic sites, old homes, and spacious parks. Until 1923 the Washington elm stood on the Commons. Under its spreading branches George Washington assumed command of the Colonial army. Craigie House served as his first headquarters; afterward the house was Longfellow's home (for picture, see Longfellow). The three-story, gambrel-roofed Brattle Mansion, built in 1727, was Margaret Fuller's home; it now houses the Cambridge Social Union. Lowell was born and lived throughout his life in Elmwood, a three-story clapboard mansion built in 1767. Many other fine buildings and school and other museums are points of interest.

Until the beginning of the 1800's, Cambridge was occupied largely with the housing, feeding, and teaching of college students. Then the manufacture of soap, coffins, glass, carriages, ladders, and books and pamphlets began. Today most of these products as well as ink, machinery, rubber goods, candy, and wire cable are produced. Industry has reclaimed the mud flats along the Charles River and has spread to other parts of the city. In 1912 a subway to downtown Boston was opened. Cambridge's water supplies and sewage disposal, like those of other Boston suburbs, are controlled by a metropolitan commission. In 1940 Cambridge adopted the council-manager form of govern-

ment. (See also Massachusetts; Boston.) Population (1950 census), 120,740.

**CAMDEN, N. J.** Its location across the Delaware River from Philadelphia shaped Camden's growth. Its first settler, probably William Cooper, built a cabin on the Delaware River bank near the mouth of the Cooper River in 1681, the year before Philadelphia was settled. Philadelphia grew rapidly, and Cooper and others who operated ferries to the new city called the settlement Cooper's Ferries.

The settlement grew slowly, and it was not until 1773 that a descendant of Cooper platted the town and named it Camden, after the first Earl of Camden. The Revolution halted development. During the British occupation of Philadelphia, Camden served as a British outpost; several skirmishes were fought here.

By 1810 steamboats had replaced the hand-operated ferries. But Camden's real growth began in 1834 when the Camden and Amboy Railroad began operating through it between New York and Philadelphia. Many small industries preferred Camden to Philadelphia. In 1858 a factory for making steel writing pens, still one of the city's products, began operation. After the Civil War new factories rapidly filled the river bank. The Atlantic Ocean lies only 90 miles down the river and across Delaware Bay; Camden therefore became a port and shipbuilding center.

After the Delaware bank filled with factories new ones spread through the city and along the banks of the Cooper River. Today Camden's manufactures include ships, radio and television sets, canned foods, textiles, chemicals, books and magazines, and iron and steel products.

Rail-car ferries still cross the river, but in 1926 a great vehicular bridge to Philadelphia was completed. Later, rails for the Philadelphia subway trains were laid on the bridge. Many of Camden's streets are little more than narrow alleys. But the city's red and yellow brick houses and streets are kept tidy and clean. On one of the streets is preserved the house in which Walt Whitman spent his last years (see Whitman, Walt). Marshy land has been reclaimed for parks; in Pyne Poynt Park stands one of the Cooper houses, built in 1709. Camden is the seat of the College of South Jersey, affiliated with Rutgers, and a state teachers college.

Camden was incorporated as a city in 1828. It was made the county seat when Camden County was formed in 1844. The South Jersey Port Commission operates the city's port facilities. Camden's government is the commission form. (See also New Jersey.) Population (1950 census), 124,555.

## *The FOUR-FOOTED "SHIP of the DESERT"*

**CAMEL.** One of the most useful of all animals is the camel. For thousands of years it has helped men to live in the deserts of Asia and Africa. It can travel great distances over hot sands and go for days without water, carrying a man or a load of freight. So it is no wonder men call it "the ship of the desert."

Until motor cars and airplanes were invented, the camel was the only means men had for crossing the hot deserts of Asia and Africa. The camel supplies food and many valuable materials to desert dwellers. For weeks at a time they may live on thick cheesy camel's milk and on the meat of young camels.

They use fat from the hump in place of butter. They make camel's hair into tents, blankets, rugs, clothing, rope, and cord. Dried camel droppings supply fuel for cooking fires. And when the camel dies, desert dwellers use its hide for making sandals, water bottles, and many other articles.

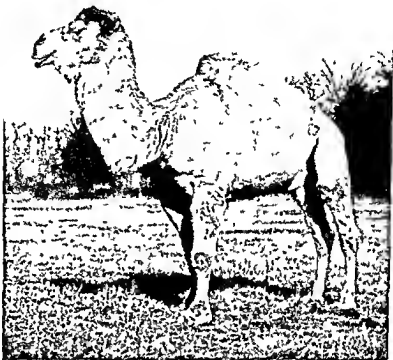
In spite of the camel's usefulness, it has no friends. It is ugly looking and ill-tempered and stupid as well. But the camel is wonderfully made for the work it has to do. No other animal can live and carry great burdens in so hot and dry a climate on such scant supplies of food and water.

The camel's most striking feature is the large hump on its back (or as in the case of one kind of camel, the Bactrian, two humps). The hump is formed of fat and muscle without any bone. If the camel has to go without food for a period of time, the fat in the hump can nourish it for several days. Its legs are so long that when it stands, its hump may be seven feet above the ground. Its knobby knees, other leg joints, and chest have pads of callus. The pads cushion the camel as it kneels in the rough sand. Each foot is split into two long, hooved toes that spread wide under its weight. Under the toes on each foot is a thick pad and these keep the camel from sinking in loose sand.

The camel's body is covered with a shaggy, sand-colored coat. The hair sheds in great handfuls, giving a perpetually frowny look. A dense fringe of hair hangs from the long, curved neck. The eyes are its only claim to beauty. They are large, brown, and melting. A long, double fringe of interlocking eyelashes protects the eyes from sand storms and the glare of the desert sun.

The camel's nostrils are slanting slits that can open wide to draw breath or close to keep out blowing sand. It has long jaws with sharp teeth. The lower jaw swings sideways as it chews its cud. (The camel is a ruminant related to cattle, sheep,

## HOW THE CAMEL IS ADAPTED FOR DESERT LIVING



The camel's legs can carry from 500 to 600 pounds more than its own weight. It can go for days without eating, taking energy from fat stored in its hump. Its long neck can reach down so it can graze on the short grass found in oases. The close-ups below show other body parts.



The camel's dark eyes are good for seeing in glaring desert sunshine. The nostrils can close to shut out blowing sand. Thick calluses on the knees prevent rubbing or cutting when it kneels. Two large toes on each foot act like snowshoes to support it on loose sand.

deer, and the other cud chews). The lips curl upward, giving it a look of haughty superiority. The upper lip is cleft in the middle like a harelip. With the two parts, as if with two fingers, it grasps and feels its food.

Many a desert dweller owes his life to his camel. Driven by thirst, he can kill the animal if necessary and obtain a gallon or more of precious water.

We often hear exaggerated stories about the camel's going without water. But it can do so for some time by storing water in its peculiar stomach. As a cud-chewing animal, the camel has three stomachs. It uses the first one to store food as it grazes and to

form it into a cud. The second supplies digestive fluids; and the third stomach digests chewed cud. The first two also have pockets in the walls for storing water and muscles to hold the pockets closed when they are filled. The muscles can open and close to let out water whenever the camel needs it.

Before starting out on a long journey, a camel driver forces the animal to drink about 15 gallons of water by giving it salt to increase its thirst. With a light load and traveling slowly, a camel can go without water for six to ten days.

#### The Camel's Dainty Appetite

After a day's travel, a camel driver gives his animal a small measure of hard dates or dry beans. If the camel forages for itself it eats any twigs, thistles, and thorny shrubs it can find.

Camels will eat almost anything. They will chew tent cloth or their own leather bridles. They consider an old mat or basket a great delicacy.

Although men have used camels for at least 4,000 years, the animals never have become fully domesticated as cattle have. Camels remain as untamed and sullen as the desert itself. One of the few things a camel can be taught to do is to kneel at its master's command. It seldom works without a protest. The uproar in a camel yard when a caravan is being loaded is deafening. The animals express their rage with peculiar bubbling bellows and by biting, kicking, and spitting. Their favorite trick is to take sly nips at their masters.

#### Only the Baby Has Any Appeal

There is just one thing a camel will love. The mother camel shows affection for her baby. She bears one calf at a time, 11 months after breeding. The infant stands about three feet tall on his long, thin legs, and he is so weak and wobbly that he can scarcely walk. But a day after birth he can follow his mother to pasture. Without her milk he would die. If the mother has to go with a caravan, the helpless baby is put into a hammock and swung from one side of a big freight camel called a nurse. The nurse may carry a quarter of a ton of other things besides—leather bags of water, bales of cloth and dates, jugs of oil, and blocks of rock salt.

The baby isn't put on his mother's back because she is too stupid to understand this. If she could not see

her baby, she might think he had been left behind. Then she would bolt for the last camping place. When the baby is on the nurse-camel, she can see him, and she follows contentedly. After the day's march she has him all to herself. She nurses him and nuzzles him with her sensitive harelip. The baby cuddles up to

her for warmth, for after the terrible heat of the day the desert nights are often cold.

In their third years, camels have grown big enough to carry heavy loads. They can keep this up for 15 or 20 years, and they can do lighter work until they are 30 years old or more. Some camels live to be 50 years old.

#### The "Ship of the Desert"

A baggage camel is expected to carry 500 to 600 pounds and travel 25 miles a day. A special breed of riding camel

trained for warfare and racing is known as the *mehari*. It can travel 75 to 120 miles a day at a steady trot of 9 to 10 miles an hour. In older times, a thoroughbred riding camel was called a *dromedary*, but now we use the word to mean any camel with one hump. The word comes from the Greek *dromas*, meaning "running."

To ride a camel, a man needs the courage and hardness of a sailor. After he climbs on its back and gives the command to rise, the animal heaves its big body up with a groan, then starts to walk, or rather to rock. This motion is due to the fact that it lifts both feet on one side at the same time, tilting its body from one side to the other. Tossing and pitching, the rider feels as though he were in a sailboat on choppy water. So violent is the motion that the camel police of Egypt bind their bodies tightly with long strips of cloth when they ride over the desert chasing lawbreakers. Motor trucks have replaced baggage camels to some extent, but the riding camel is still an important cavalry animal in desert military operations.

#### Two Kinds of Camels

There are two kinds of camels. The Arabian, or single-humped, camel is found in northern Africa, Arabia, and western Asia. The Bactrian camel with two humps is found throughout Asia.

The Bactrian camel has reddish-brown or black hair. Its body is much shorter, thicker, and heavier than the Arabian's. Its feet are more calloused and

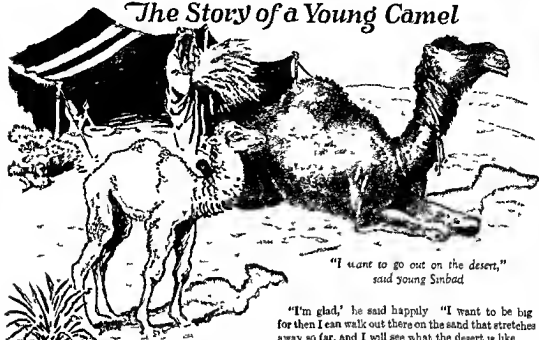
#### JUST IN FROM MANCHURIA



Two double-humped (Bactrian) camels reach the walls of Peking carrying baskets of produce from the rich fields of Manchuria. (Compare them with the single-humped Arabian camel pictured on the previous page.) The long shaggy hair of the Bactrian protects it from the bitter cold of its native Central Asia; it is also shorter and sturdier than its cousins, and its shorter legs and harder feet are well adapted to its rocky hilly country.

# What SINBAD FOUND OUT in the DESERT

## *The Story of a Young Camel*



**S**INBAD was a baby camel. He lived with his mother in the far-off land of Arabia, away across the sea. Arabia is very hot and dry. There are deserts there where the yellow sand stretches away for miles and miles. It was at the edge of one of these deserts that little Sinbad lived.

He was only a few weeks old, but he had already learned to walk on his long thin legs. At first they were so wobbly that he could scarcely stand up on them at all, but now although they still felt a little queer, he could walk about without once falling down. This made him very proud.

This morning little Sinbad stood in the sand looking contentedly off across the desert. The hot sun beat down on him, but he did not mind. He liked the sun, and he liked the sand, so he was very happy.

Not far away from him knelt his mother, blinking her eyes sleepily as she chewed her cud. She had a long neck, a small head, and a big body covered with shaggy brown hair. On her back was a great hump. Little Sinbad thought she was a wonderful creature.

"Mother," he said to her, "will I ever be as big as you are?"

"Of course you will," she told him. "You are a fine young camel and you are growing very fast."

"I'm glad," he said happily. "I want to be big for then I can walk out there on the sand that stretches away so far, and I will see what the desert is like."

The mother camel looked at him for a moment, working her lower jaw from side to side as she chewed. "Yes," she said, "I suppose you will want to get out on the desert as soon as you are old enough. But you will not find much out there to see. In the desert there is nothing green—only sand and rocks and a few prickly shrubs."

"But I want to see it anyhow," Sinbad said. "I want to go out on the desert."

"You will," his mother said. "You will cross the desert many times when you are older and carry loads on your back for our master. Sometimes our master himself will ride on your back. There he comes now," she added. "He is bringing me my breakfast."

Sinbad saw a man come out of a tent, carrying an armful of fodder. He was a tall man with a brown skin. Instead of a hat he wore a bright red and white striped turban wound about his head.

The little camel moved nearer to his mother. "Our master brings you your breakfast every morning, doesn't he?" he asked. "He is a kind master."

"Yes," answered his mother, "he is kind, but he only feeds me so that I will be strong enough to work for him. Our master could not get along without his camels to carry burdens for him across the desert. There is no other creature that can travel in the desert the way we can. We have soft pads on the



"You must always groan when  
our master puts anything  
on your back"



bottoms of our feet that spread out wide and flat when we walk and keep our feet from sinking in the deep sand. We can go without food and water, too, if we have to. And we often *do* have to, out there in the desert where no green thing grows, and where there are no streams of water."

"But what do you do when you get hungry and thirsty, mother?" little Sinbad asked.

"We are well fed and watered before we start on a journey," his mother told him, "so we do not get hungry or thirsty very soon. We can live for a while on the fat in our big humps, and we can store enough water in our stomachs to last for days and days."

"We are wonderful creatures, aren't we?" little Sinbad said.

"We are very wonderful creatures," his mother answered. "You should be proud that you are a camel."

She got slowly up, lifting herself first on her hind feet and then on her front feet, as camels always do. Now little Sinbad could see the big leathery pads that grew on his mother's knees and chest. He would have pads like that, too, he knew, when he was a little older. All camels have them so that they can rest softly when they kneel on the ground.

He stood beside his mother while she ate her breakfast. When she had finished, her master made her kneel down and put a strange looking saddle across her back. At once she began to groan so loudly that little Sinbad was frightened.

"No—o—o—o—o—o!" she groaned. "No—o—o—o—o—o!"

"Does the saddle hurt you, mother?" Sinbad asked. "No," she answered, "it does not hurt at all, but I groan just the same. You must always groan when our master puts anything on your back. No matter whether it is light or heavy, you must groan as loudly as you can."

"What for?" little Sinbad asked in surprise.

"It is the way we camels do," she answered. "Perhaps if we did not, our masters would put loads on our backs that are too heavy to carry—I do not know. But I *do* know that we always groan. You must remember this when you are old enough to travel."

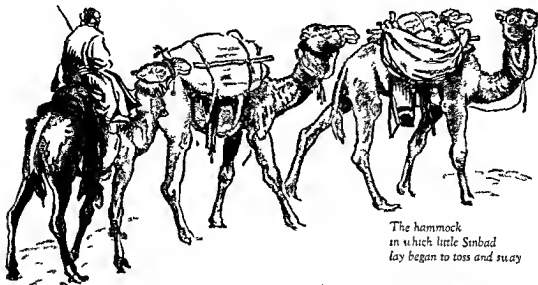
"I will," little Sinbad promised. "I will groan with all my might. But mother, why has our master put that big saddle on your back? Do you know why?"

"I suppose we are going to make a journey," his mother told him. "A journey out into the desert."

"Oh!" cried little Sinbad happily. "Then I will walk far out on the sand, as I have always wanted to!"

"No, Sinbad," she answered. "You are too young to walk far. You will have to be carried. Baby camels always have to be carried when they make a long journey."

She was about to say something more, but just then their master led up one of his biggest camels and made it kneel down. Across his back he put a saddle and on each side of this he fastened a heavy load.



*The hammock  
in which little Sinbad  
lay began to toss and sway*

When he had finished doing this he picked little Sinbad up in his arms and put him into a sort of hammock that swung from one side of the big camel's saddle.

Sinbad was surprised and frightened. He lucked and squirmed as hard as he could, but his mother called to him and tried to quiet him.

Be still, Sinbad! she said. They are not going to hurt you. You will ride in your hammock and I will walk just behind you. All baby camels ride like that.

But I'd rather ride on your back, mother, little Sinbad cried. Why can't I?

Because I must have you where I can see you all the time, she told him. Be still now and you will be all right.

So Sinbad lay still in his hammock while their master fastened a great load on his mother's back.

Maybe this will be fun after all, he thought now that he knew his mother would be close to him.

I will see the desert that I have wondered so much about.

*Goom!* their master cried suddenly. *Goom!* This was his way of saying: Get up!

Sinbad's mother and the big camel got slowly to their feet, groaning and grumbling. The hammock in which little Sinbad lay began to toss and sway for a camel has a very queer way of walking. It moves the two feet on one side of its body at the same time and then the two feet on the other side of its body at the same time so that its body rolls from side to side. But little Sinbad did not mind this; he liked the motion.

Soon they came to where there were a great many other camels with loads upon their backs. They were being formed in a long line, one camel behind another. Sinbad's big camel took his place in the line, and Sinbad's mother followed close behind.

It was all very new and strange and exciting. It was exciting to see the desert like a great ocean of sand all round him and to watch his mother plodding patiently along behind him, holding her head high and looking at him all the time with her big soft eyes. And it was exciting to hear the tinkling of the little silver bells that many of the camels wore.

For a long time they traveled on under the hot sun. When noon came the caravan stopped for a rest. Sinbad's master lifted him down from his hammock. The little camel ran quickly to his mother and greedily drank the milk that he was so hungry for.

When he had finished he walked about for a while. It was wonderful, he thought, to be out on the desert like this! He would have liked to walk on and on, but his mother was kneeling down and he did not dare to get far away from her.

The other camels were kneeling too, resting quietly until the time came to start on again. Most of them had crossed the desert many times before, and such a journey as this was nothing new to them. But to little Sinbad it was very strange.

He looked curiously at the camel drivers sitting about on the sand and talking to each other. When would they be ready to go on across the desert, he wondered.

Suddenly he saw some of them spring to their feet. Then others jumped up, and still others until all of them were running about, calling excitedly to each

other. The camels were excited, too, and the men were very careful not to get too close to them. For no one can tell when a camel may lose its temper and begin to kick and bite anyone that happens to be near it.

Little Sinbad raised his head and listened. He heard a low roaring sound that rolled across the desert, growing louder every minute. "The wind! The wind!" he heard an old camel say. "The wind is coming!"

Sinbad had heard the wind blow before, but he had never heard it roar like this! He ran as fast as he could to his mother's side. "What is it?" he cried. "What is it, mother?"

"A sand storm is coming," she told him. "You must lie down here beside me, Sinbad. Stretch your head flat on the ground! See how the other camels are doing!"

Little Sinbad at once did as he was told, for something in his mother's voice frightened him. "What is a sand storm, mother? Will it hurt me?" he asked.

"Not if you do as I tell you," she answered. "You must close your eyes. Your long eyelashes will help keep the sand out of them. And you must close your nostrils tight so that the sand will not get into your nose. Then you must lie as still as you can lie."

The hot wind came with a mighty rush and roar, and the sand beat against Sinbad's body like sharp little needles. He closed his eyes and he closed his nostrils as tight as he could; and he waited.

The camel drivers huddled behind the kneeling camels for protection. The camels lay very still, their heads flat on the ground, their eyes and nostrils closed, while great clouds of sand came sweeping in across the desert.

It seemed a very long time to little Sinbad that he lay there, trembling with fright. After a while the

storm died down and the wind stopped roaring. Then he heard his mother's voice again.

"The storm is over, Sinbad," she told him. "You can open your eyes now. You have been brave."

"Have I, mother?"

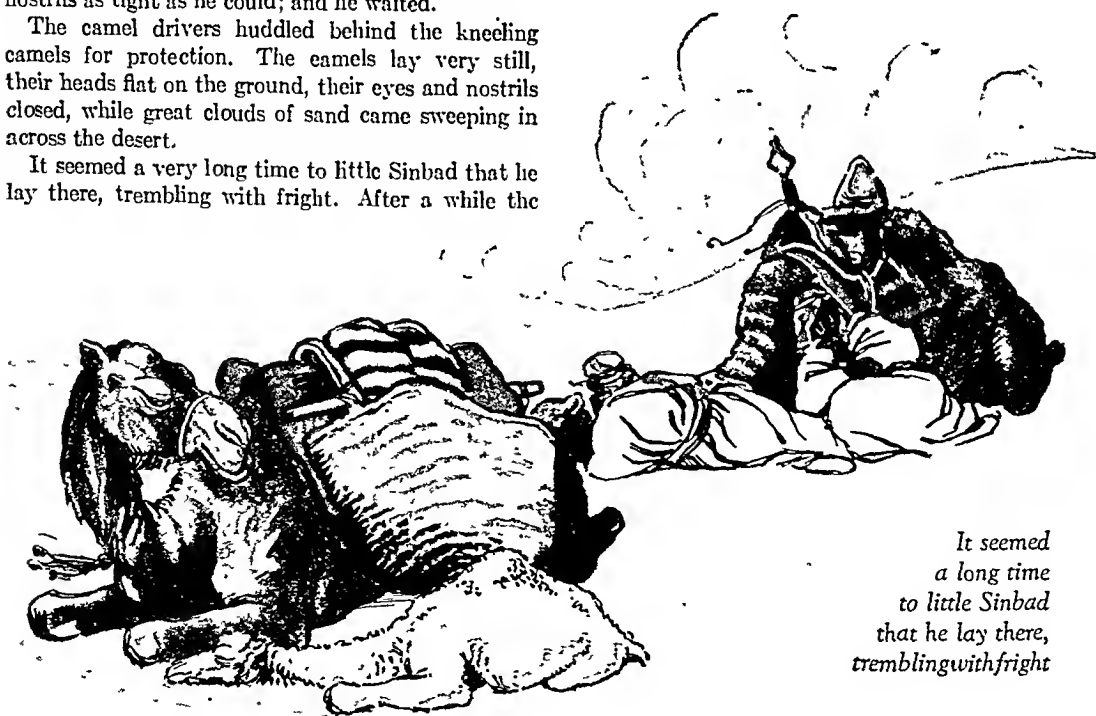
"Yes," his mother said. "Not many little camels as young as you are have gone through a sand storm like this. You did it exactly right."

"The camel drivers had to hide behind their camels to get away from the storm, didn't they, mother?" little Sinbad said.

"Yes," his mother answered, touching him with her queer soft upper lip; "but we camels didn't have to hide. It is better to be a camel than anything else when a sand storm comes. We camels belong to the desert and it belongs to us. You have good reason to be proud, little Sinbad."

The little camel thought about this for a long time. He was still thinking about it when the camels moved off again on their journey. High up in his little hammock, he looked across the desert, that stretched on and on as far as he could see. He was happier than he had ever been before.

As the camels swayed along on their way, little Sinbad thought: "I am glad that I am a camel. I am glad that I belong to the desert. I would rather be a camel than anything else in the world!"



*It seemed  
a long time  
to little Sinbad  
that he lay there,  
trembling with fright*

better able to stand rocks, snow, and ice. It can drink salt water and swim for short distances. The hair in winter may be a foot long. The camel's hair cloth we use in fine overcoats and other clothing comes from the Bactrian camels of Mongolia and northern China. The finest quality is the short silky down, next to the skin.

Scientists tell us that the first camels lived in North America millions of years ago, and many fossils have been found. They show a steady development from tiny creatures no larger than rabbits to the great beasts we know today. At some distant time one group migrated to Asia across a land bridge that once existed over the Bering Strait. Another group smaller and without humps, went into South America. The llamas, alpacas, and vicuñas are the descendants of this second group. Thereafter, camels died out in North America.

There are no records of wild camels, so the desert dwellers of Arabia must have domesticated the camel in prehistoric times. In the Bible we read that Abraham took on his journey "sheep and oxen and camels." Job had at one time 6,000, and the Amalekites possessed "camels without number as the sands by the seashore for multitude."

About 1857 the United States Army tried to introduce the camel into the deserts of Arizona and New Mexico, but with little success. Descendants of these camels are as late as 1920. Scientific name of Arabian camel, *Camelus dromedarius*; of the Bactrian camel, *Camelus bactrianus*.

**CAMELLIA.** Everyone will acknowledge that the camellia, or 'rose of Japan' is one of the loveliest flowers ever introduced into this country, but unlike the European rose, which it resembles, it has little fragrance. The camellia plant is an evergreen shrub or tree with thick dark shining leaves, and in its wild state has red flowers like those of our wild rose. Most of the cultivated forms are double or triple and vary in color from yellow and white to pink and deep red. The camellia is a native of China, India, and Japan, and was introduced to Europe in the 17th century by a Jesuit, George Joseph Hamel, from whose name the latinized word camellia is derived. It is now extensively cultivated in greenhouses in Europe and the United States, and in some places in the South the bushes grow luxuriantly in the open ground.

The camellia belongs to the tea family *Theaceae* and its closest relative is the common tea plant. There are about ten species all belonging to one genus *Camellia*. The seeds of some species are rich in oil which forms an article of commerce in the Orient.

**CAMEO.** An engraved gem or sea shell bearing a design cut in relief is called a cameo, as distinguished from an intaglio, in which the engraved object is hollowed below the surface. Cameos are most frequently made from gems composed of two or more layers of different colors. The figures are cut in relief upon one of the upper layers of color, and the under layers form the background. The stones most

used are agates, onyx, sardonyx, and chalcedony. Cameos have been used not only for personal jewelry but for adorning cups, vases, and even furniture. A great number of cameos of the Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans are preserved in museums.

**CAMERA.** If you darken a room on a bright day and admit no light except through a very small hole in the window shutter, an inverted picture of the objects in front of the hole will be formed on the back wall of the room, or on a white screen placed nearer the window. This is the simplest form of the camera obscura which in Latin means 'dark chamber', it was used several centuries ago for observing eclipses. A smaller camera obscura may be made by constructing a small box, with a pin hole in one side.

If a lens be put in the aperture, a much clearer and sharper image will be formed. If this image is allowed to fall on a plate or film covered with chemicals sensitive to the action of light, and the plate or film is properly developed and 'fixed' by other chemicals, a permanent picture is obtained, and the camera obscura becomes a photographic camera (see Photography, Motion Pictures). The image is more or less distinct according to its distance from the lens, and so it is necessary for fine work to focus the lens by moving it nearer to or farther from the back wall of the camera. This is done by making the sides of folding leather, and such cameras are called "bellows cameras."

If a mirror is put at an angle of 45 degrees inside a camera obscura, an image of the objects before the lens will be formed right side up, on a piece of ground glass above the mirror. The viewfinder, with which many photographic cameras are provided, is just a small camera obscura of this sort. The periscope is a camera obscura arranged to reflect downward (see Lens, Periscope).

The camera lucida, a simple reflecting device, when placed before the eye, projects an image of the subject on drawing paper, where it may be copied accurately. Formerly much used in microscope work, it has been supplanted by modern photographic methods. It is still used by artists and draftsmen.

**CAMOUFLAGE.** Disguising objects to deceive the enemy goes back at least to the Trojan Horse. In the first World War, it became an organized science called camouflage. Ships and land targets were screened from enemy observation with designs resembling those that conceal animals from their foes (see Protective Coloration). Coverings of branches or fabrics and confusing patterns of paint were used for this purpose. They succeeded quite well in deceiving the camera and the human eye. But in the second World War photographic filters revealed camouflage by picking out artificially colored objects from their natural setting. This forced the use of more elaborate methods. For example, the wide flat roof of an airplane factory might be made to appear like a farm by covering it with soil and actual farm buildings.

# AT WORK *and* PLAY with the CAMP FIRE GIRLS



The three girls shown here are taking part in a world friendship candle-lighting ceremony. Learning to be good citizens of the world through friendship with young people in other lands is part of the Camp Fire Girls' program.

**CAMP FIRE GIRLS.** Working together and playing together mean fun and accomplishment to almost half a million Camp Fire Girls in the United States and other countries. After school and during vacations these girls meet together in small neighborhood groups for leisure-time activities both outdoors and in.

The story of Camp Fire begins in the woods of Maine, where a family went camping each summer. Mother, father, and the children shared alike in work and play. Even dull chores were fun, because they gave every one a part in making the camp a success. And plenty of time remained for music, games, and stories.

The parents who made so much fun out of camping were Dr. and Mrs. Luther Halsey Gulick. They believed that other girls would enjoy working and playing together, not only during vacations but in the hours after school. So, with the help of other leaders, they drew up a year-round program of activities for young girls. In 1910 they founded a national organization called Camp Fire Girls to carry out this program.

Since then more than 2,000,000 girls have joined Camp Fire. There are now more than 360,000 members in the United States alone. Great Britain, El Salvador, and the Republic of the Philippines also have Camp Fire organizations.

Girls from 7 to 18 years old, of all races and religions, belong to Camp Fire. There are three age groups. Blue Birds, the juniors, are 7 to 10 years old. Camp Fire Girls are 10 to 15. Horizon Club, the senior division, includes girls from 15 to 18.

In both Blue Birds and Camp Fire Girls the unit of organization is a group of 6 to 20 girls. Each group has a member who is 18 or older. Blue Birds call this member their Leader. Camp Fire Girls call her their Guardian. Horizon Clubs have 10 to 20 girls and an Adviser, who is at least 21. All Camp Fire units have sponsors. These may be mothers or fathers of the girls or other interested grown people.

Each Camp Fire group in the United States gives itself an Indian name. "Wetomachick," meaning "friends," is an example. Members also take Indian names, such as "Wawingts," or "skillful," to represent their hopes of achievement. Camp Fire uses such names because it built much of its program on customs of the American Indians. Groups in other countries use symbols from their own national traditions.

## CEREMONY OF THE COUNCIL FIRE



Above, a Torch Bearer stands ready to light the Council Fire. At this ceremony Camp Fire Girls receive ranks and honors and welcome new members. Council Fires may be held indoors, with candles taking the place of the traditional log fire. The girls here are all wearing ceremonial gowns and headbands of khaki trimmed with leather. Camp Fire Girls may get these when they are working for Fire Maker rank.

## CAMP FIRE GIRLS HELP SANTA



These Camp Fire Girls are dressing dolls to be delivered at Christmas time to children of needy families in neighboring rural communities.

Camp Fire Girls work for honors in seven crafts—home, creative art, outdoors, scientific frontiers, business, citizenship and sports and games. Caring for a baby, baking a cake, planting a garden and designing the settings for a play are a few of the hundreds of achievements for which girls can win recognition. As they earn more and more honors they advance through four ranks—Trail Seeker, Wood Gatherer, Fire Maker, and Torch Bearer.

Blue Birds are not quite ready for the full Camp Fire program. They have group parties and games and begin to develop skills in the seven crafts. Horizon Club members, on the other hand, carry on Camp Fire activities from a more grown-up point of view. They emphasize development of personality and poise. They work to acquire self confidence in meeting adult problems.

All three divisions of Camp Fire join in a special national project each year. Sometimes, as in a "Hi Neighbor!" project, the emphasis is on learning to appreciate one's neighbors of different racial, national and religious backgrounds. Sometimes the girls concentrate on activities that will help to strengthen family ties and enrich home life. One purpose of Camp Fire, as stated in the constitution is "to perpetuate the spiritual ideals of the home."

*Blue Birds, Camp Fire Girl groups and Horizon Clubs* take part in many community projects. They cooperate in clean up and safety campaigns, help raise money for the Community Fund and sew for the Red Cross and the Needlework Guild. Girls who are old enough serve as hospital aides. All enjoy international friendships by writing to "pen pals" in many parts of the world.

Outdoor activities are as important today as they were in the days of the Gubicks. Adventure hikes, cook-outs, canoe trips, and nature study provide many good times. Camp Fire owns hundreds of camp sites where the girls spend week ends during the school year and have longer outings during the summer.

Camp Fire Girls always remember the Law of Camp Fire: Worship God, Seek Beauty, Give Service. Pur-

sue Knowledge, Be Trustworthy, Hold on to Health, Glorify Work, and Be Happy.

In large communities Camp Fire has a local executive who helps groups organize, arrange programs and settle problems. There may be a local council of interested citizens who promote Camp Fire activities. If there is no local executive or council, National Headquarters of Camp Fire in New York City, helps local groups in all their activities.

Camp Fire publishes several books to help the girls and their leaders. These include "The Blue Birds' Book", a leader's program guide, "The Book of the Camp Fire Girls" and "The Horizon Club Program Book". They may be obtained from the New York headquarters. Camp Fire publishes a monthly bulletin, *The Camp*

*Fire Girl*, with suggestions for all groups. National dues are 50 cents a year for Blue Birds and \$1 for Camp Fire Girls and Horizon Club members.

**CAMPFIRE** Manufacturers: soldiers, doctors and housewives all use products made with the fragrant substance known as camphor. About 66 per cent of all camphor used in the United States goes into the manufacture of plastics. Ten per cent goes into smokeless powder and ten per cent into drugs and ointments. The remaining 14 per cent appears chiefly in moth cakes and other insect killers, furniture polish and nail polish.

Natural camphor comes from a stately laurel tree, *Cinnamomum camphora*. Wood from the tree is cut into chips and these are steamed. Camphor comes off as vapor. The vapor condenses into crystals and oil. Heating the crystals with charcoal and quicklime produces a vapor which condenses into gum camphor.

The camphor laurel is a native of Formosa. People in other lands have not been able to grow it successfully for camphor production. From 1895 to 1945 Japan controlled Formosa and with it the world's supply of natural camphor.

Chemists began trying to make artificial (synthetic) camphor about 1900. By 1923 Germany was exporting large amounts. The United States began commercial production on a large scale in 1933 and now produces most of the camphor the country needs.

The raw materials of synthetic camphor are turpentine and hydrogen chloride gas. Refining crude turpentine by a special process produces pinene. To make camphor, pinene is sent through a series of pipes and tanks to be blended with the gas at various heats and pressures. The product emerges as camphor flakes.

Camphor is a white, crystalline, gumlike solid with the formula  $C_{15}H_{11}O$ . It is inflammable and volatile. In insecticides, camphor gives off an injurious vapor while evaporating. In pyroxylin plastics it serves as a plasticizer (see Plastics). In smokeless powder it acts as a stabilizer, slowing down deterioration of the explosive. Camphor's use in medicine is as a counter-irritant in lotions and nose drops.

## The WHERE, WHAT, and HOW of CAMPING



"There's a good place," shouts the leader. The boats put in to shore. The tents go up. Soon the fire will be blazing for the evening meal, and the young campers will add a thrilling new chapter to their book of "adventure in the wilderness."

**CAMPING.** The thrill of a camping trip is one of the keenest pleasures within our reach today. But it is a pleasure which is reserved for those who are willing to learn the simple rules that make camp life comfortable and free from trouble.

Each year sees a growing number of boys, girls, and adults finding rest, relaxation, and fun in our woods, and on our lakes, rivers, deserts, and mountains. In the vast stretches of the United States, Canada, and Mexico there are still regions where the experienced camper can find a wilderness almost equal to that faced by his pioneer ancestors. But a trip to those remote regions is not necessary. Wherever you live, there are sure to be places near at hand where you can enjoy camp life with sufficient independence and privacy to make it interesting, without the risk or expense of venturing far from civilization. Many such places have been set aside especially for campers.

### Planning Your Camping Trip

Information about districts suitable for camping can be obtained locally from chambers of commerce, automobile clubs, highway departments, county or state park commissions, and conservation bureaus; also from stores that sell camping equipment. The excellent "Recreational Map" issued by the National Park Service in Washington, D. C., is also a splendid source of information.

The type of country in which you intend to camp, the season of the year, and your own facilities will largely determine the nature of your trip—whether you go on foot, by canoe or boat, or on horseback. You may often be able to enter the camping district of your choice by automobile or bus, but the most de-

sirable camp sites are usually some distance from the main highways. In some of the national and state parks bicycle trails lead to the camp grounds.

But whatever the nature of the trip, its success will depend upon preparedness. Even those who go camping within five miles of their home must know the tricks that make life in the open easy and comfortable.

### Need for Leadership

No camping should ever be undertaken without suitable leadership. By "suitable" is meant a mature person, with good judgment, who likes boys and girls and camp life and knows the out-of-doors thoroughly from actual experience in it. Emergencies may arise on even the simplest camping trip which will demand the judgment and counsel of one more experienced than the young novice. Being a member of a camping party is like being a member of a team, and there must always be a captain to help in making plans before and during the trip, in keeping up the spirit of coöperation and good will, and in taking the responsibility for the health, comfort, and safety of the group. Accidents and even fatalities happen, especially in and on the water, usually on account of ignorance and carelessness, and that is one reason why this older leader is so necessary to keep things going smoothly and safely so that the fun and adventure of the trip will not be marred by unnecessary mishaps.

### Finding a Good Camp Ground

Next in importance to the choosing of the leader comes the question of choosing the camp site. If you plan to stay in one place, it is often possible to scout around before the trip starts and locate an ideal spot. But when you intend to move about through strange

country you must trust to luck that by four or half past four in the afternoon a good camp site will appear. A large-scale topographic map of the locality will help to indicate likely spots.

The first three essentials of a camp site are good drinking water, plenty of fuel and dry ground. A smooth place with a slight slope will let rain drain away. Storms turn many an attractive spot into a temporary marsh because the ground forms a slight hollow.

In the fall and winter choose a site that is sheltered by hills or trees against the prevailing winds. Perhaps the air will be still in the afternoon when the tents are pitched but before morning a biting breeze may make an exposed camp seem like an explorer's station at the South Pole.

During warm weather on the other hand the camp should get plenty of air. The ideal spot is on a point or rise with trees for shade in the afternoon but with morning sun to warm the camp and dry up the dew. In nearly every locality the fair winds blow from one direction; the storms from an other. Find out about this from the natives and try to have clumps of trees or a sheltering ridge on the stormy side of your camp.

Do not pitch a tent near a dead tree which might blow down in a storm. Do not set your camp near a cliff or the steep edge of a ravine over which someone may fall in the dark. If you must camp near a cliff be sure to rig up a rope railing or lay a line of brush at least ten feet back from the edge. Explore any waters in which you intend to bathe for quick sands, submerged rocks with sharp edges and snags on sunken trees.

Beware of camp sites near dry brush, stands of dry grass or piles of dead leaves. A flaming spark in this kind of material may turn into a raging and uncontrollable fire before you can run across your camp ground to put it out.

Do not camp near growths of poison ivy, poison sumac or ragweed. And remember that mosquitoes lie in wait near swamps, lush grass and stagnant water. If you are close to a town or in a much used camping area, avoid places where old tin cans, broken glass, rusty nails or decaying refuse may be lying around.

Permission to camp on private land must always be obtained from the owner, and in many government areas a permit is required to use the camp sites. Light fires or cut dead timber. The good camper not only leaves the site in better condition than when he found it but he also keeps it in excellent condition during

its use by the simple expedient of having a place for everything and keeping everything in its place.

#### Camp Equipment—Choice of Clothing

No set list of equipment will meet the needs of campers under all conditions. Horace Kephart, famous authority on camp lore, gives us the key to the problem when he says: "Ideal outfitting is to have what we want when we want it and not to be both

#### IDEAL SPOT FOR A CAMP IN HOT WEATHER



The sleeping and living quarters stand high on a point where the breeze keeps them cool and dry. A rope railing is set up near the water edge. The cooking quarters with a camp tarpaulin shelter for supplies. The tents shown here are of the umbrella type recommended by many experienced campers.

ered with anything else. His advice applies to all types of equipment—shelter, clothing, cooking utensils, tools and general camp supplies. One never failing rule is to watch the natives see what they wear and how they camp out, and then do likewise.

Camp clothing should be chosen for warmth, wear and water resistance. Novices tend to wear warm weather outfits that are too thin and flimsy and cold weather outfits that are too heavy and bulky. In summer underwear may be thin and of open texture if the outer garments are adequate to protect you against too much hot sun. The experienced camper takes sun baths in small doses. He never starts out on a long hike or canoe trip on a sunny day with shoulders and knees bare. He lets the other fellow get the heavy coat of tan and he knows that a painful sun burn is the mark of a greenhorn.

In cold weather light wool underwear next to the skin will do more to keep you comfortable than a thick overcoat and a single sweater covered with a thin windproof coat is warmer than two heavy sweaters without the coat.



Light woolen ankle socks may be used around a camp site, but for general use thick wool golf socks or stockings are desirable. Town shoes with thin soles are worthless. Shoes should have strong soles, be roomy and comfortable, with low, broad heels, and sufficiently high to give protection to the ankles. Rubber soled "sneakers" may be worn for boating and canoeing but never for traveling overland. Lightweight woolen pajamas are best for northern climates and high altitudes, and the ordinary cotton pajamas for general use.

Here is a check list of personal equipment for a three-day trip:

<i>For Each Camper</i>	<i>Extra for the Leader</i>
2 sets underwear	First-aid kit
2 shirts or top garments	Watch and whistle
1 pair of pajamas	Pencil and notebook
1 pair of overalls, knickers, bloomers, or breeches	Maps and compass
1 pair of shoes or boots and lighter pair to wear in camp	Food list, menus, recipes
2 pairs stockings	Reserve supply of matches
1 sweater or lumberjack	Ditty box (needles, thread, safety pins, elastic bands, buttons, twine, candle ends, etc.)
1 slicker and rain hat	Tools—pliers, flat file, claw hammer, assorted nails
1 bedroll or sleeping bag	Spool of 2-inch adhesive tape for mending paddles, patching leaks in canoes, tents, etc.
1 set of toilet articles	Money, in change and small bills
3 handkerchiefs and a bandanna	Field glasses
1 mess kit or equivalent	Camera
1 hatchet or one hand ax	Extra rope, paddles, etc.
1 jackknife	
1 flashlight	
1 waterproof match case	
1 swimming suit	
1 large piece of mosquito netting	

The leader may also bring bird and plant guides, and other books suited to the interests of the expedition.

#### Packing and Sleeping Equipment

For longer trips a waterproof knapsack is necessary. This may be purchased, or made and waterproofed at home. It should have carrying straps coming from a single point of suspension in the back,

should have outside pockets, and be waterproof. A rubber-coated poncho or a waterproof canvas ground cloth is absolutely essential when sleeping on the ground. It should be at least 66 by 90 inches in size, so that it may be used over as well as under the bedding. Ponchos or ground cloths may be used for making a temporary shelter, in which case they should have three one-half-inch grommets (metal eyelets) in each side, through which ropes are fastened for pegging out.

Plenty of bedding is essential and the wise camper makes up his bedroll as a series of folding envelopes in order to have as much under him as over. This makes it necessary to crawl in from the top like a caterpillar, but it is well worth the effort.

One all-wool blanket is worth two or three of the other kind. Furthermore, wool is warm even if it gets damp; whereas damp cotton is intolerable. See to it that you have plenty of bedding under you. Cold from the ground will reach you more quickly than cold from the air, and, unless your bed is on dry sand, you will find the ground nearly always cold. Layers of newspapers under the outdoor bed absorb the damp.

On longer trips, cotton ticks can be taken along and stuffed with straw, moss or dried leaves for a mattress. In planning a comfortable camp bed, do not be afraid of appearing "soft." The experienced camper knows that restless and uncomfortable nights can ruin an otherwise perfect trip.

#### Cooking and Eating Equipment

The best types of cooking and eating equipment are those consisting of a large kettle of cast aluminum inside of which all the other utensils are nested. These are sold by outfitting companies and the large mail-order houses. One or two smaller kettles fit inside the big one. Then comes the coffeepot with detachable handle, with the cups inside of it. Knives, forks, and spoons go into the free spaces. The plates fit in at the top, and a heavy straight-sided frying pan with detachable handle forms a lid over all. For short

trips, however, equipment carefully selected from the 5- and 10-cent stores will suffice.

Long-handled mixing spoons (with hole in handle), water pails with covers, a long-handled fork, and a pair of cheap cotton gloves are all useful. Also useful, but not essential, are a reflector oven, sheet steel oven, grate or grid, and Dutch oven.

Screw-top or friction-top tins lined with waxed paper are good for packing bacon, butter, coffee pickles, etc. White paraf-

#### GUESTS OF UNCLE SAM IN THE HEART OF A NATIONAL FOREST



This camp in Idaho is pitched on one of the thousands of sites reserved for campers in the national parks and forests. The small tent at the right is of the "forest ranger" type, snug and light.

finer food bags in different sizes from one to ten pounds are best for picking all dried foods. These bags and all other food containers are packed in a small duffle bag, pack sack, Adirondack pack basket, chuck box, or whatever is chosen to hold food supplies. Food for trips should never be carried in glass containers.

#### Tents and Other Conveniences

There are literally dozens of kinds of tents and shelters available. The army pup tent is the most popular on short trips. For longer trips when roomier and more secure shelter is desirable, the "umbrella" tent with sewed-in floor has proved to be one of the very best (see picture on a previous page of this article). It can be put up even faster than a pup tent, and it will stand up in winds that would blow down tents of almost any other shape. Telescoping and folding metal poles are provided for these tents, but when it would be inconvenient to carry them, they can be left at home. A center pole and two cross poles can be cut quickly at almost any camp site.

Other items to be considered are a folding candle lantern or homemade equivalent, trench shovel, small spade or large trowel, dish pan and steel wool or copper sponges for scrubbing the dishes, clothes line and clothespins.

#### Homemade Equipment

Much excellent equipment of all kinds can be made by campers themselves at little or no expense. Tents, shelters, tarps, and ground cloths can all be made and waterproofed at home. Liddies, bowls, candle holders, and makeshift lanterns can be cut out from small tin. A reflector oven can be made out of a five-gallon oil tin by cutting it in two from corner to corner and inserting wires across the inside for the baking shelf.

Excellent kettles can be made from No. 10 tins, which have been opened with a patent can opener to leave a smooth edge. Two holes are punched on opposite sides of the rim for inserting a stout wire bail. A pamphlet published for the Girl Scouts gives illustrations and directions for many of these useful gadgets, and the outfitting catalogs of both the Boy Scouts and the Girl Scouts show pictures of all sorts of camping equipment.

#### Choosing and Using a Knife

To enjoy a camping trip properly, campers must have good food. In order to cook this food, there must be a good fire. To build a good fire, the camper must have proper tinder, kindling and fuel, and that is why it is so very important to know how to use and care for the knife and ax. These tools are absolutely essential, but they are also very dangerous if used carelessly. Hence there are certain rules which must be followed in using each.

#### MAKING CAMP ON A CANOE TRIP



These canoeists are beaching their canoes and unloading their gear, ready to pitch an overnight camp. Canoe trips lead campers to matchless forest and water scenes that are sometimes impossible to reach by car or even on foot.

A knife should be plain and solid with large and small blades of good steel, and with a strong spring. It should fit well in your hand and have a smooth grip. The blades should be kept clean and sharp, which means that they must be carefully wiped after use and must never be thrust into a hot fire.

When cutting, hold the knife in the palm of the hand with thumb doubled back over the other fingers—not against the back of the blade. In straight whittling, cut away from you with a shallow, straight push and with the blade forming an angle of about 45° with the direction of the cut. Use the same place on the blade on any given stroke. If your hands are soft, pieces of adhesive tape should be put in advance on places where blisters might form. Blisters are "bad medicine." Sheath knives should always be worn on a belt behind one hip—never in front where they may stab through the sheath and into your leg when you stoop over.

Never carry an open knife.

Don't lay it down on the ground, open or unopened.

Don't carve bark, trees, furniture, public buildings, railings, posts, etc.

Don't cut knots.

Don't use a knife as a screw driver, crowbar, hammer, or can opener.

Don't whistle toward yourself.

#### Hatchets and Axes

Hatchets have short helms, or handles. Axes have longer handles. The cheaper models of both, with stained or softwood helms, heavy heads, and bad balance, are dangerous and almost worthless. Double-bitted axes should never be carried on camping trips. An excellent all-round camp ax is one made of good tool steel with a hickory helm about 24 inches long. The camp hatchet should be of equally good quality and of medium weight—from about 22 to 25 ounces.

## RIGHT AND WRONG WAY TO SPLIT A STICK OF FIREWOOD



The safe and proper way to attack the stick is shown at the left. Notice that the stick is supported in a groove in the chopping block and that the ax strikes the stick over the point of support. If you use the method shown at the right, you not only run the risk of cutting your foot, but you also strike the stick in a way less likely to split it at the first blow.

The helve is held in place in the "eye" of the head by a metal or wooden wedge, and it is of the greatest importance that the helve be firmly fastened into this eye at all times. It is extremely dangerous to use a tool with a loose head. When not in use, the hatchet should be worn in a sheath on a belt, just behind the hip, with the blade pointing toward the back. An 8-inch flat file and pocket earborundum or oil stone will keep the blade sharp and clean. When the ax is not in use the blade should be in its sheath or sunk into the chopping block. Never leave it on the ground.

#### The Art of Chopping

Among the many skills known to the competent axman, these are of special use to the camper: cutting large and small logs in two, splitting kindling, sharpening stakes or tent pegs, trimming limbs from a branch or a felled tree, and actually felling a dead or undesirable tree. To chop a large, movable log in two, a "V" is made on one side, the log is turned and another "V" made on the opposite side, the two "V's" meeting. Strokes are alternated and at an angle of approximately 45° to the length of the log. The "V" should be a little over half as wide as the log is thick. If a small log is to be severed, it should be placed on a notched chopping block or a large log with the point at which it is to be cut directly on the block, and the ax brought down on it at that point.

In splitting kindling, *never* hold up a stick lengthwise on a block in one hand and bring the ax down on top of the stick, near the exposed fingers and hand. One safe way is to hold one end of the

stick at an upward angle in the left hand and, placing the other end of the stick on the far end of the block, to deliver a sharp blow at the point where the stick rests on the block. If the stick does not split all the way through, a quick twist of the ax in the split will usually complete the job unless the stick has a crooked or knotty grain. If the stick is thick, tough, or green, it should be placed on a eroteh in the chopping block and the blow delivered in the middle of the stick, where it rests firmly in the hollow.

Stakes are made by holding one end in one hand at

#### USING A HATCHET



The girl's left hand is well out of danger. This is much safer than holding the stick upright and striking the end.

a slant of about 45° to the block, where the other end is braced in a small eroteh or against a knot. In trimming limbs from a log, it is best to start at the butt or larger end and chop toward the tip. Wood chopping is not only a science, but an art. Here are a few general rules:

1. Do nothing that will mar or destroy property.
2. Never chop until sure the arc of your swing is clear of twigs or branches.
3. Get a solid footing. Have feet parallel and braced well apart and as much out of line of direction of stroke as possible.
4. Never chop anything that is likely to slip or move while ax is in the air.
5. Never put a foot on the log to hold it down while chopping.
6. Avoid striking knots.
7. Never throw an ax at anything.
8. Never allow anyone to stand in front of, behind, or near you.
9. In using a hatchet, hold it firmly in one hand, with wrist stiff. In using an ax, the hand nearer the head of the ax slips up and down the handle as the ax rises and falls.
10. Remember that a carelessly used ax is just as dangerous as a carelessly used gun.

#### Choosing Wood for the Fire

Ability to build a good fire under *all* conditions is one of the essentials of a

good camper. Fuel is the first consideration. Although you can serve the cause of conservation by using down wood (wood lying on the ground) as much as possible any old log or branch will not serve the purpose. The hard woods—particularly hickory oak ash beech birch and hard maple—are best for broiling baking frying and wherever coals are needed. The evergreens and such soft hardwoods as poplar and sycamore are good for quick short fires. Campers do not use pitchy woods for fuel if they can help it because they are smoky and sooty. Green wood will burn best in fall or winter when the sap is out and green wood from high land burns better than the same sort from low land or along a river edge. Dry weathered roots sound top pieces from piles of driftwood and sound knots from decayed trees are good fuel.

If a live tree must be cut select one which is crooked stunted or of an undesirable species or one in a group that needs to be thinned out to make room for better growth. In other words select the worst tree available that will suit the purpose.

Tinder is the material used to start the fire. Any of the following makes good tinder: shredded bark from down trees curls snipped carefully from live birches; shavings or shaved clumps from fat pine or dry soft wood; dry split twigs from dead branches; tightly rolled clumps of dry grass; dried pine cones; dried weed tops.

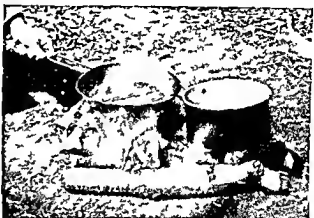
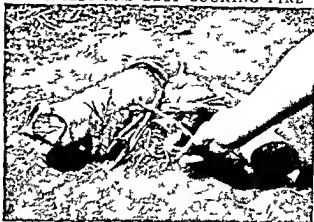
The tinder sets fire to the kindling which in turn sets fire to the larger wood. Kindling should be split into pieces small enough to catch fire quickly. All three classes of fuel should be prepared for use and roughly arranged by sizes on the windward side of the fire site. If rainy the wood pile should be kept dry by a poncho tarp or rough shed of larger sticks.

#### Types of Camp Fires

The following types of fires and their variations are the most common—the hunter's or tapper's fire the trench fire the reflector fire and the log cabin or criss cross fire. The first three are useful for cooking the third and fourth for warmth and light. The hunter's fire consists of two wet or green logs at an angle or two rows of stones with the fuel laid between. The wider end should face the wind. The cooking utensils are rested across the fire on top of the logs. An excellent variation of this fire is shown in the accompanying pictures.

The trench fire is rectangular in shape slightly narrower than the pans to be rested across it and gradually sloped from the

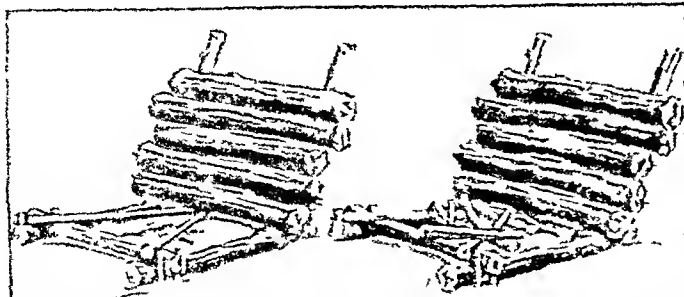
### SIMPLEST AND BEST COOKING FIRE



At the top we see how the fire is started by using two green logs. Soon a can be used as a stand. When the fire has burned down a little we add a third green log on the open side and see how pans on the coals of the fire. As shown in the picture and page 62. The bottom we see the same fire with a wooden tripod placed boiling in the fire.

wider, windward end down to a foot or so in depth at the rear. The sod and dirt are placed to one side in a neat pile and when the fire is put out both are replaced so that little trace of the fire is visible. This type of fire is less likely to spread, conserves fuel, is not so hot to work over. The deep end of the trench may be lined with rocks and covered with a flat stone

#### REFLECTOR FIRE FOR WARMING A TENT



This kind of a "fireplace" six or eight feet in front of an open tent will warm the inside in a few minutes. The back and side logs must be green wood.

or old piece of sheet iron to make a sort of stove top. If the trench is made larger, we have the barbecue pit, bean hole, or imu pit.

The reflector fire is so called because the heat is reflected from a windbreak and may be applied to a reflector oven or to heating a lean-to or open tent. The windbreak should be made as simply as possible of a large flat rock, the side of a boulder, or of an old piece of sheet iron or stove top. Failing these, it may be made by piling wet or green logs horizontally against two long stakes driven into the ground with a backward slant and supported by shorter brace poles.

The log-cabin fire is made by crisscrossing green or wet logs to the desired height and then erecting a higher teepee of dry wood inside this pen. The flame follows up this teepee and gives out light and warmth to the campfire circle.

Most campers, even those of wide experience, build far larger cooking fires than they need. The result is scorched food, burnt fingers, and smoke-filled eyes. A meal for six people can be cooked on a fire that you could cover with a Stetson hat. Get the fire going fast, let it burn down until the flames are low, bank it in close with the side logs, and then let your kettles and frying pan cover it almost completely to conserve the heat. There is an old Indian saying: "Red Man make small fire, sit close. White Man make big fire, stand far away." For cooking, it pays to try the Red Man's way.

There are many devices to hold kettles over a cooking fire. One is the *lug pole*, which consists of two crotched or split green sticks driven into the ground with a green pole across to hold the kettles. Another is the *dingle*, *wonigan stick*, or *tea stick*, which looks like a miniature well sweep (see picture on page 61).

To get a fire started on a wet day, break off dead twigs from standing trees, make a large handful of fine shavings from them, collect thin peelings of birch bark, or shred some pine cones. Then split a few sticks into pieces no bigger than a pencil and pile them on your tinder in the shelter of a stone or log. Set fire to this, and then put on two or three larger sticks

As the flame rises, blow on it from the side—gently at first, then with increasingly strong puffs. In a short time you will have a blaze hot enough to stand the addition of large wet sticks.

#### How to Put Out the Fire

Even more important than knowing how to build a fire is knowing how to put it out properly. The public is constantly being educated to the danger and terrible losses resulting from forest fires, for many of which careless campers have been responsible. Every camper must consider himself a volunteer fire warden and help to educate other campers

to the absolute necessity of making sure, first, that camp fires are built only in safe places, and, second, that every last spark or smolder of the fire is extinguished before leaving it, even if you are going to be gone only a short time.

The only safe way to extinguish fire is to throw on quantities of water, stirring up the ashes and underpart until all the sparks are out. If water is not available, the fire has to be beaten out and completely covered with sand or earth. In many places the ground

#### HOW TO BUILD AN "IMU" PIT



After the stones have been heated for an hour or more, scrape out the coals, put in the fish or fowl wrapped in leaves or clay, put back the coals, and cover with earth for three hours. This is a Hawaiian trick

is covered with a thick layer of pine needles, leaf mold, peat, or dry sod in which fire continues to smolder, even when it appears to have been extinguished on the surface. For this reason, always dig around the edges of the camp fire before assuming that it has been entirely put out.

#### Camp Sanitation

There is no way to tell whether water is safe to drink short of having it tested in a laboratory. Running water does not purify itself. The clear spring

may harbor typhoid germs. Unless the water supply can be taken from home or obtained at a nearby farmhouse where the supply has been recently tested and approved it will be necessary to purify the water on the spot. Here are three ways to purify water out on the trail:

1. Boil for 15 minutes and pour from one clean vessel to another to aerate.
2. Add Halasone tablets following directions on the bottle.
3. Add 3 drops of 3 1/4 per cent solution of iodine to a quart of water and let stand twenty minutes before drinking.

The simple trench latrine is an acceptable way of disposing of human wastes. After each use dirt is thrown back into the trench. Garbage should be buried immediately in a garbage pit. Tin cans should be put into the fire, then flattened out and buried, as should all glass and other such wastes. Dish water should be poured carefully in a spot where it will be absorbed quickly or else put in a rough stone-lined grease trap or pit which can be burned out from time to time and ultimately covered. Dishes should be washed in hot water with lots of soap and carefully rinsed in boiling water and dried. Sand, moss, grass roots and paper napkins or towels are useful in cleaning sticky or greasy dishes. The utmost care and cleanliness in the preparation, preservation and consumption of food should always be observed.

#### Personal Health

No camper should start off on a trip unless in perfect health and unless through practice walks or recent "conditioning" events he is in trim for the demands the trip will make on his energy and strength. Maintenance of the usual health habits and plenty of sleep and rest are part of the game. A trip is a leisurely excursion, not an endurance contest or a race against time or the elements. The wise camper must know how to protect himself from insect pests and poisonous things of the woods. He should be able to recognize poison ivy, poison sumac and poison oak

#### A HANDY PLACE TO WASH



It's better than stooping over a hole on the ground in this G. I. Scout's campaign. Notice how the washstand is made of a shoe and slender branches tied together.

If there are poisonous snakes in the locality, the first-aid equipment should include a Dudley kit or a similar kit using the suction cup treatment. The emery can be purchased at drug and sporting goods stores. Take care of every cut or blister to avoid any possible infection. If you get a puncture wound from a rusty nail or a barbed wire fence be sure to go immediately to a doctor for treatment. (See also First Aid.)

#### Safety Suggestions

Rules for water safety must always be fool proof. Never swim alone or when tired or overheated. Swimming in strange waters is extremely hazardous and it should never be

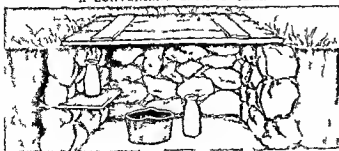
done until the bottom and adjacent surroundings are investigated carefully and unless the leader is present. It is dangerous to go out in old rafts, boats or canoes found along shore. Be careful not to overload boats of any kind and refuse to enter any boat with a person who thinks horseplay on the water is funny. Nonswimmers should wear life preservers while they are in boats or canoes. If a boat or canoe upsets do not try to swim ashore, even if you are a good swimmer. Stick to the craft until help comes or the boat can be pushed ashore. For safety on land the campers should keep together, especially in heavily wooded or hilly country. Never eat or taste unfamiliar things, handle wild animals or cut across pastures or cattle enclosures.

When campers have to hike along main traveled roads they should go in single file on the left side of

the road facing the oncoming traffic with the leader in advance of the group and an assistant bringing up the rear. At night the same formation should be kept. The leader and assistant should each carry a light and wear a broad white band around the waist in addition to the white handkerchiefs or bands which all the campers should wear tied on the ankles just above the shoe tops.

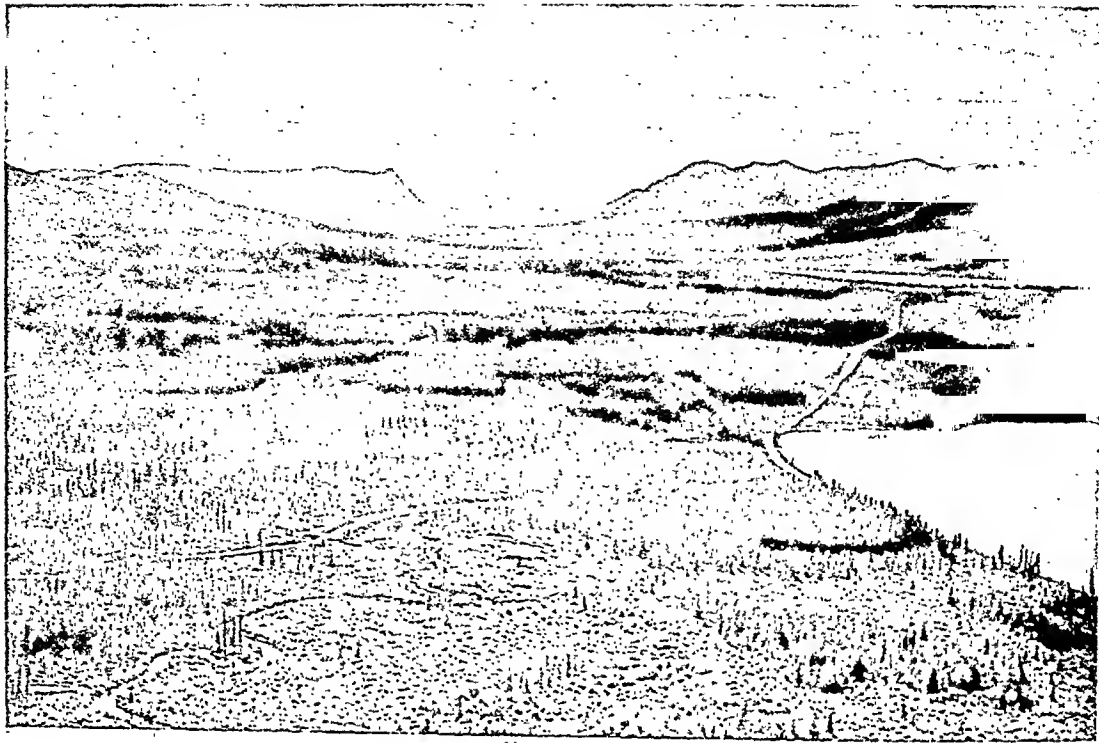
(For further information on topics related to camping, consult the article on Vacant Activities. For a choice of books, see the Camping section in the bibliography under Hobbies.)

#### A CONVENIENT CAMP CELLAR



To keep milk and other things cool, dig a pit and line it with stones as he's shown. Then add the cooler door. The one hole of going in the "cellar" is obvious, but unless you have a good many things to store it is not necessary.

## CONTRASTING VIEWS OF A GREAT NATION



Above, the Alaska Highway (formerly Alcan) winds across the lonely, empty wastes of the far Northwest. Through forests and over swampy muskeg, it twists toward the distant mountains. Far different is the scene below near Brampton, Ontario, with its cultivated fields, its greenhouses, and many farms, telling of a prosperous and long-settled population.

# CANADA, the LAND of the MAPLE LEAF



Montreal is Canada's Second Largest City and One of the Largest Inland Seaports in the World

**CANADA** From the northern border of the United States to the silent wastes of the North Pole from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific stretches the vast majestic land of Canada. With an area of 3 845 774 square miles it is the third largest country in the world. Only Russia and China have a greater area. It is larger than the United States and Alaska combined and almost as large as all of Europe. This sovereign nation in the British Commonwealth of Nations is 70 times larger than England. Yet in all its great expanse live fewer people (14 009 429) than in the state of New York. Like the beads of a necklace on a slender chain most of the cities and villages lie along the southern border. Within 200 miles of this border live nine tenths of the Canadian people. But the world significance of Canada and particularly its significance to the

**Extent** Area of Canada 3 845 774 square miles. Extent east and west about 3 550 miles north and south, excluding Arctic archipelago about 1 600 miles. Most northerly point Cape Columbia (in Great Lead) 47 1 miles from the pole. Most southerly point island point Point Pelee on Lake Erie 50 miles southeast of Detroit. Population (1931 census) 14 009 429.

**Rivers and Lakes**—St. Lawrence Ottawa Nelson Churchill Red, Saskatchewan, Athabasca, Peace, Mackenzie, St. Mary, Yukon, and Fraser rivers. Largest lakes, excluding the Great Lakes: Great Bear, Great Slave, Winnipeg, Athabasca, Reindeer, Winnipegosis, Manitoba, Nipigon, Lake of the Woods.

**Mountains**—Cordillera Range, Rocky Mountains, Selkirk Mountains, Cariboo Mountains on Pacific coast. Laurentians in Quebec. Appalachian on east coast. Highest peak, Mt. Logan (19 850 feet).

**Chief Products**—Wheat, oats, barley, hay, flax, potatoes, orchard fruits, live stock and dairy products, lumber, pulpwood, newspaper, textiles, agricultural implements, automobiles, iron and steel, chemicals, stone, petroleum and bitumens, furs, and other minerals (gold, nickel, lead, copper, silver, cobalt, zinc, asbestos, platinum, red and green uranium, titanium, petroleum, iron, furs).

**Provinces**—Maritime: Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, eastern Quebec, Ontario, Newfoundland, western Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, British Columbia, Territories: Yukon, Northwest Territories (Provisional Districts of Mackenzie, Franklin, and Keewatin).

**Ch. of C.**—Toronto (1931) census 675 754, after 1953 federation with suburbs 1 117 478. Montreal (1921) 529. Vancouver W. a. p. g. Hamilton Quebec Ottawa (cap. of) Windsor Edmonton Calgary (over 100 000) London Halifax Regina Verdun Saskatoon St. John's Victoria Saint John (over 50 000).

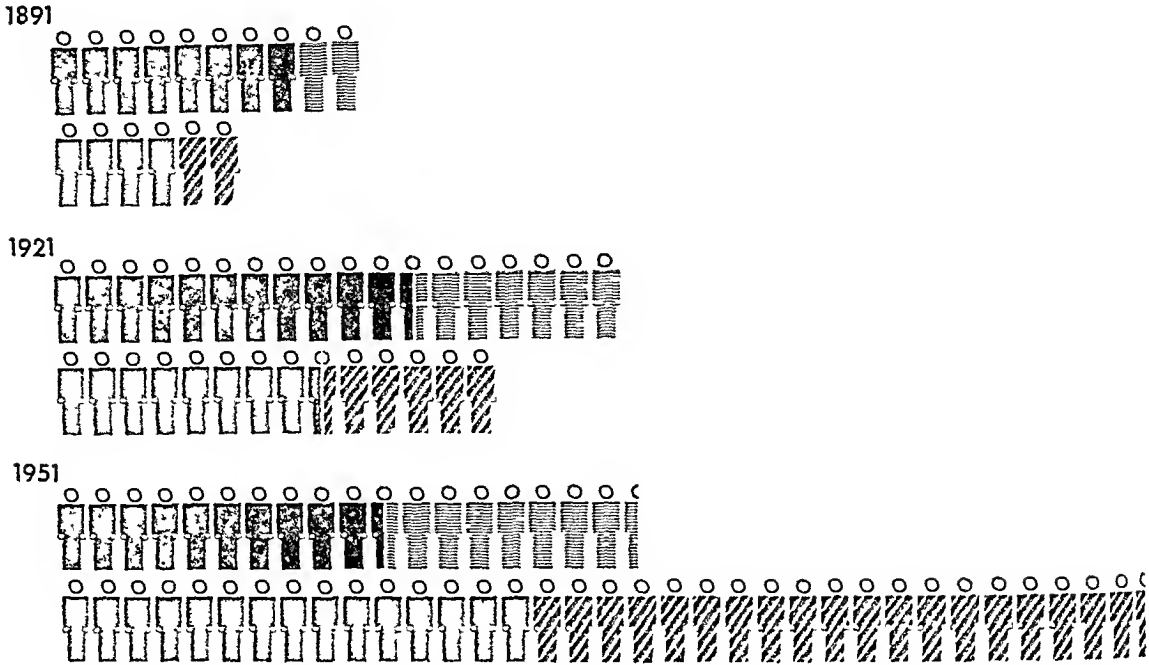
United States is far greater than its few people would indicate. This is the only one of the 22 nations in the Western Hemisphere that has kept its political ties with Europe. In the words of Winston Churchill, British statesman, it is thus a binder together of the English-speaking peoples, a magnet exercising a double attraction drawing both Great Britain and the United States towards itself and thus drawing them closer to each other.

No geographic social or racial barriers separate

Canada from its closest neighbor. The two countries speak common language, share a common historical background and way of life. Even the large French-speaking group which comprises a third of Canada's population has far closer ties with the United States than with France from which it has been separated for nearly 200 years.

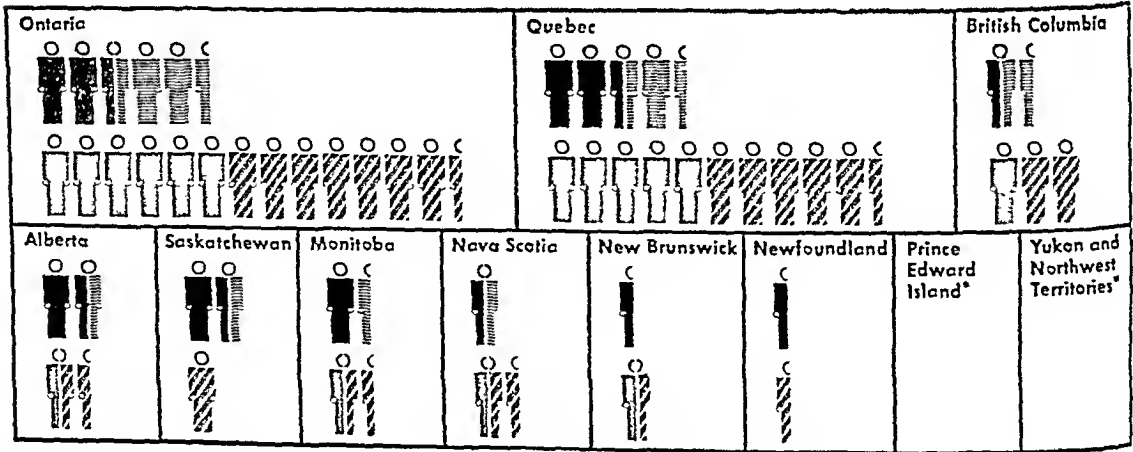


How People Made a Living in Canada 1891-1951



Each complete symbol represents 100,000 gainfully occupied

Occupations by Provinces in 1951

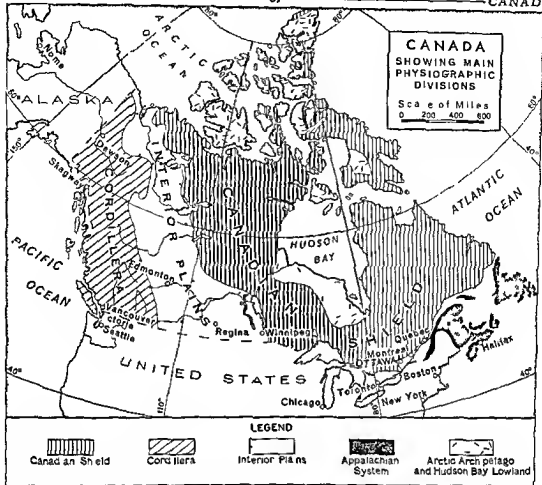


Each complete symbol represents 100,000 gainfully occupied

\*No symbol because gainfully occupied were less than 50,000

- agriculture, mining, logging, fishing, hunting
- ▨ manufacturing, construction, laborers
- ▤ trade, transportation, communication, public utilities
- ▧ service

The top chart shows that more people in Canada worked in each of the major groups of occupations in 1951 than in 1891. The number, however, declined in proportion in the extractive industries—agriculture, mining, logging, fishing, and hunting. In 1891, half of all the gainfully occupied persons were in these occupations, but by 1951 they constituted only one fifth. The percentages of workers in trade, transportation, communication, and public utilities and in manufacturing and construction increased slightly. The largest gain occurred in service occupations—clerical, personal, protective, managerial, professional, and financial. The bottom chart shows chief occupations in each province.



This map shows the physiographic divisions which split Canada into a series of parallel regions separated from one another by mountains and forests. Notice the very small area indicated with dots between the lower Great Lakes and along the St. Lawrence River where 60 per cent of Canada's people live. Contrast it with the vast expanse of the thinly populated Shield.

Across 4 000 miles of unfortified boundary the people of the two countries have migrated for generations—farmers of the western United States into the fertile lands of Alberta's Peace River country, the French farmers of Quebec to the mills of New England, the Ontario laborer to the factories of Detroit. Tourists from the United States in 1951 numbered almost 25 million—about twice the total population of Canada. They spent 258 million dollars a sum about one half the value of Canada's newspaper exports for that year. The people of the United States have invested about 8 billion dollars in the development of Canada's mines, forests and industries. Canadians have about a billion dollars invested in the United States. Two of the greatest trading nations in the world—each is the other's best customer and the flow of raw materials and manufactured goods across the boundary line is enormous.

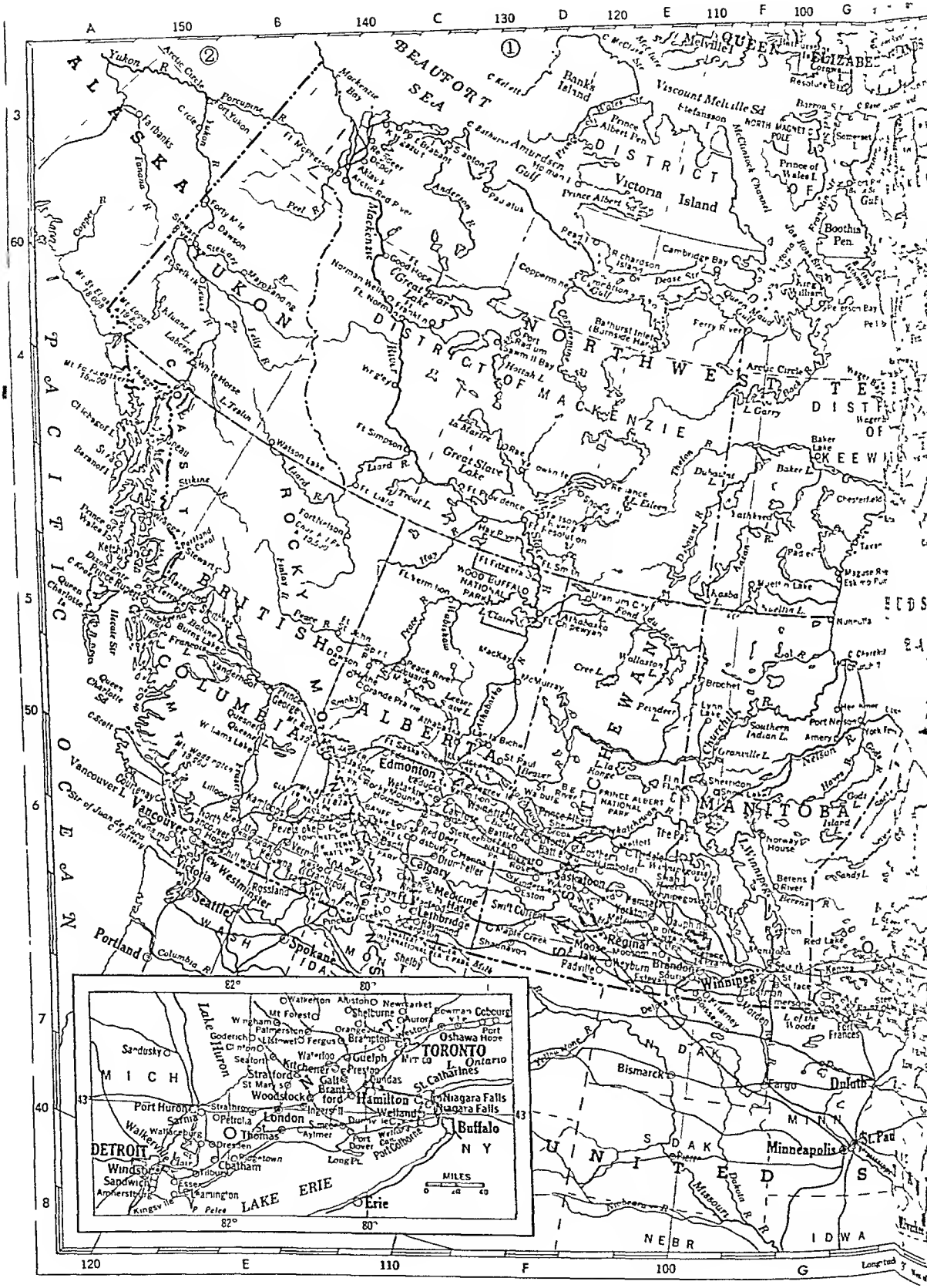
With so large a stake in each other's prosperity, so much of common interest, it is most desirable that

the two countries should understand each other. Let us look at the beautiful land that is Canada, and the people who have made it great.

#### The Natural Divisions of Canada

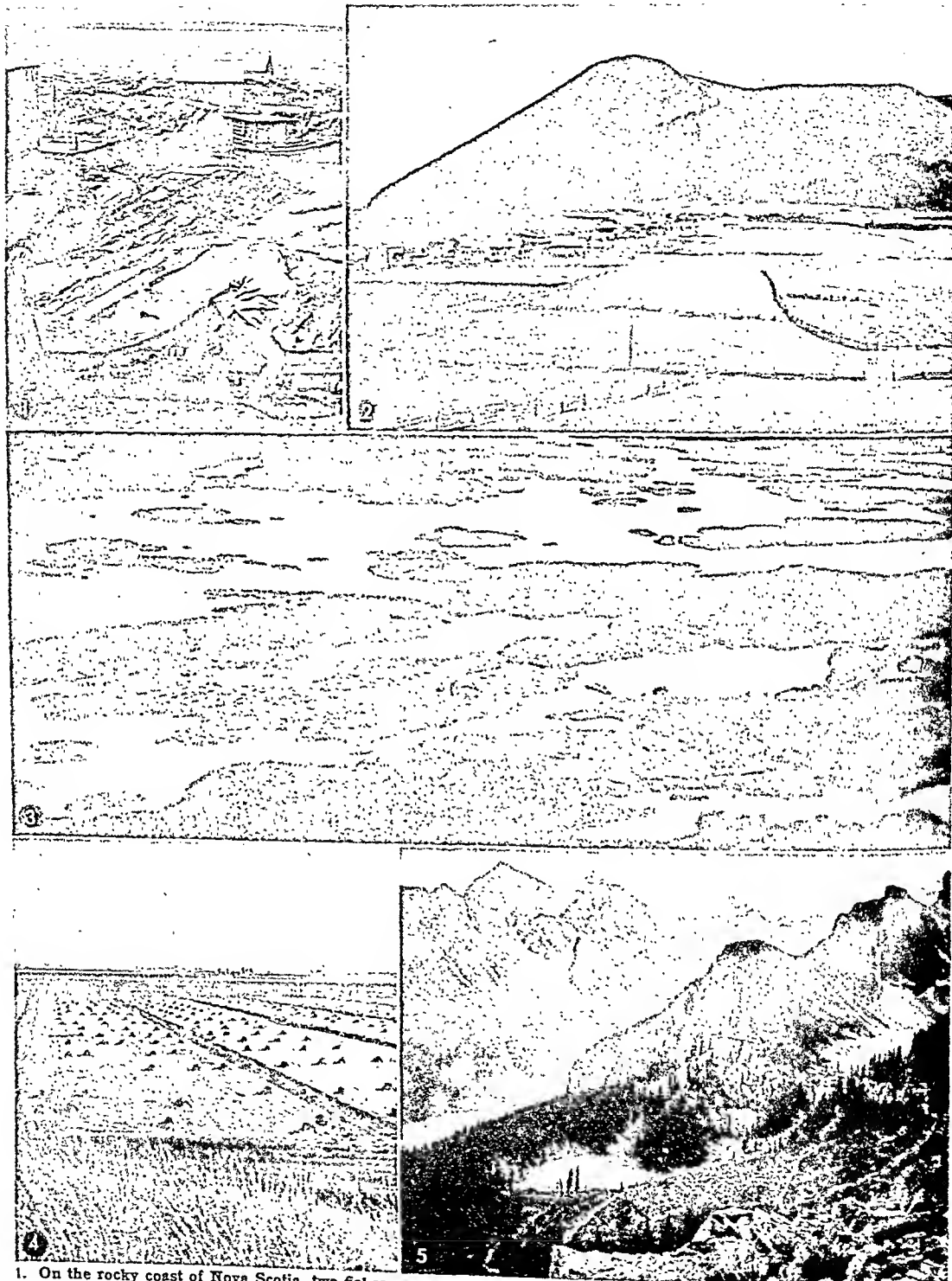
Natural barriers running north and south, divide southern Canada into a series of parallel sections, each of which is separated from the other by hundreds of miles of virtually uninhabited wilderness. Each communicates more easily with the corresponding region below the United States border than with the rest of Canada to the east or west. The map above serves to make clear this peculiar geographical alignment of the country.

On the east coast the Appalachian Mountains reach northward from New England to the Gaspé Peninsula. Their forested slopes cut off the Maritime Provinces of New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island from the heavily populated St. Lawrence River valley and Great Lakes region of Quebec and Ontario. Across the continent the Rocky Mountains reach their





## A PICTURE JOURNEY ACROSS CANADA



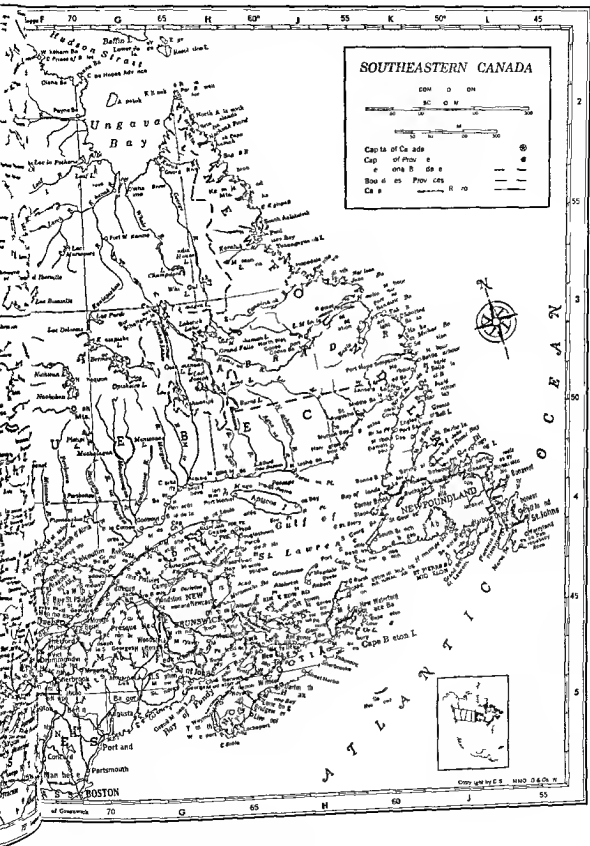
1. On the rocky coast of Nova Scotia, two fishermen prepare their nets for the sea. 2. In French-speaking Quebec the narrow "strip" farms, separated by wooden fences, run down to the common water highway, the St. Lawrence River; here the Laurentian Mountains crowd to the water's edge. 3. This air view of the forests and innumerable lakes of the Canadian Shield, in northern Ontario, makes it plain why so few people live in this area. 4. The wheat fields of Saskatchewan stretch for miles across the flat prairies. 5. A scene in the spectacular Rockies above Lake Louise; at the left is the Victoria Glacier.

## SOUTHEASTERN CANADA

[illegible]

\*Population figures for places not listed in 1951 census courtesy Canadian Official Railway Guide (Montreal). Other population figures from 1951 census. These are the latest official census figures available.







# SOUTHEASTERN CANADA — Continued

Marguerite (river), Que.	G 3	Nova Scotia		Rivière Bleue, (St. Joseph)	G 4	South Sleeper (islands),	D 2
Maricourt (lake), Que.	F 2	(province)	042,584	Que.	1,334	N.W. Terr.	
Marysville, N. B.	2,152	Nutah Lab., Newf.	75	Rivière du Loup, Que.	0,425	South Twin (island),	E 3
Massey, Ont.	937	Oba, Ont.	25		250	N.W. Terr.	
Matatchewan, Ont.	6,345	Ogoki, Ont.		Rivière Pentecôte, Que.	4,897	Souhampton, Ont.	1,700
Matane, Que.	500	Ogoki (river), Ont.		Roberval, Que.		Spotted Islands, Lab.,	
Matapédia, Que.	6,345	Okak (islands), Newf.		Rogan (river), Que.		Newf.	45
Matheson, Ont.	675	Old Factory River, Que.		Romains (river)		Springdale, Newf.	500
Mattawa, Ont.	3,097	Ontario (lake), Ont.		Rose Blanche, Newf.	050	Springer (mt.) Que.	F 4
McCormack (island),		Ontario (prov.)	4,597,542	Rossignol (lake), N. S.		Springhill, N. S.	7,138
N.W. Terr.	D 2	Opavica (lake), Que.		Rothsay, N. B.	896	Square Island, Lab.,	
McKenzie Island, Ont.	1,450	Opemiska (river), Que.		Rouyn, Que.	14,633	Newf.	K 3
	3,178	Opisketeo (lake), Que.		Rupert (river), Que.		Stephenville, Newf.	1,200
Meaford, Ont.	D 3	Orangeville, Ont.	3,249	Rupert House, Que.		Stratford, Ont.	18,785
Mealy (mts.) Newf.	J 3	Orillia, Ont.	12,110	Sable (cape), N. S.		Strathroy, Ont.	3,708
Mecatina (cape), Que.	D 3	Oshawa, Ont.	41,545	Sable (island), N. S.		Stull (lake), Ont.	B 3
Mécanic, Que.	6,164	Oskelaneo, Que.	250	Saehigo (lake), Ont.		Sturgeon (lake), Ont.	B 4
Melville (lake), Newf.	G 3	Ossokmanuan (lake),		Sackville, N. B.	2,873	Sturgeon Falls, Ont.	4,962
Menihiek (lake), Newf.	G 3	Newf.		Sackville, Lab., Newf.		Sudbury, Ont.	42,410
Messouez (lake), Que.	F 3	Ottawa (islands),		Saguenay (river), Que.		Suzluk, Que.	F 1
Michikamau (lake), Newf.	H 3	N.W. Terr.		St. Albans, Newf.	800	Sultan, Ont.	125
Michipicoten, Ont.	C 3	Ottawa (river), Ont.		St. Andrews, N. B.	1,458	Summerside, P. E. I.	
Michipicoten (isl.), Ont.	J 3	Ottawa (river), Ont.		St. Anthony, Newf.	1,380		6,547
Middle Bay, Que.	G 5	Ottawa (cap.),		St. Augustin, Que.	372	Sundridge, Ont.	634
Middleton, N. S.	1,506	Canada	202,015	St. Barbe (isls.), Newf.	J 3	Superior (lake), Ont.	
Midland, Ont.	7,206	Canada		St. Catharines, Ont.	37,084	Sussex, N. B.	3,224
Mill Lake (lake), Ont.	B 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Charles (cape), Newf.		Sutton, Que.	1,389
Milltown, N. B.	2,267	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Clair (lake), Ont.		Sutton (river), Ont.	
Milngan, Que.	60	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Clément, Que.	2,656	Sydney, N. S.	31,317
Milngan (passage), Que.	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. George, N. B.	1,263	Sydney Mines, N. S.	5,410
Minto, N. B.	850	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. George (cape), Newf.		Table (bay), Newf.	J 3
Minto (lake), Que.	F 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Georges, Newf.	750	Tadoussac, Que.	1,064
Miramichi (lake), N. B.	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Georges (bay), Newf.		Taseheron, Que.	1,900
Miscou (island), N. B.	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Ignace (island), Ont.		Thessalon, Ont.	1,595
Missinabi (river), Ont.	D 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Jean, Que.	10,305	Thurso Mines,	
Mississibi (river), Que.	F 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Jean (river), Que.			15,095
Mississini, Que.	2,298	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Jean Port Joli, Que.	900	Timakami, Ont.	500
Mississini (lake), Que.	F 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Jérôme, Que.	17,055	Timiskaming (lake)	
Mississini (river), Que.	F 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. John's (cap.),		Timiskaming Station,	
Mississini Post, Que.	H 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Newf.	52,873	Que.	2,781
Mississini (lake), Newf.	G 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Saint John, N. B.	50,770	Timmins, Ont.	27,743
Moisie, Que.	351	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. John (cape), Newf.		Tornat (mts.), Newf.	
Moisie (river), Que.	G 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. John (lake), Que.		Toronto (capital),	675,754
Moncton, N. B.	27,334	Ottawa (river), Que.		Saint John (river), N. B.		Ont.	
Mont Joli, Que.	4,938	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Joseph (lake), Ont.	2,417	Toulnoustou (river),	
Mont Laurier, Que.	4,701	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Joseph (lake), Ont.		Que.	
Mont Louis, Que.	500	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Joseph d'Alma,	7,975	Tracadie, N. B.	1,500
Mont Tremblant (park),	F 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		Que.		Trenton, Ont.	10,055
Que.		Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Lawrence, Newf.	1,451	Trenton, N. S.	3,089
Montague, P. E. I.	1,068	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Lawrence (ruif)		Trepassey, Newf.	870
Montmagny, Que.	5,814	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Lawrence (river)		Trinity, Newf.	800
Montmorency, Que.	5,817	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Leonard, N. B.	1,410	Trinity (bay), Newf.	K 4
Montreal, Que.	1,021,520	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Mary (bay), Newf.		Trois Pistoles, Que.	3,537
Moonbeam, Ont.	500	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Maurice (river), Que.		Trois-Rivières, Que.	46,074
Moose River, Ont.	D 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Michaels (bay), Newf.		Trout (lake), Ont.	
Moose Factory, Ont.	400	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Pacôme, Que.	1,197	Trout Lake, Ont.	
Moose River, Ont.	D 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Pascal, Que.	1,736	Truro, N. S.	10,750
Mooseonee, Ont.	300	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Simphon, Que.	1,103	Tunungavialuk (island),	
Mosquito (bay), Que.	E 1	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Stephen, N. B.	3,769	Newf.	
Mulgrave, N. S.	1,212	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Thomas, Ont.	18,173	Tweed, Ont.	1,562
Mushalagan (lake), Que.	G 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Anne de Beaupré,		Twillingate, Newf.	2,100
Mutton Bay, Que.	110	Ottawa (river), Que.		Que.	1,827	Two Brothers (islands),	
Nachvak (ford), Newf.	H 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		St. Marie, Que.	2,431	N.W. Terr.	
Nain, Lab., Newf.	500	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sakami (lake), Que.		Ungava (bay), Que.	
Nain, Lab., Newf.	500	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sakami (river), Que.		Upsala, Ont.	190
Nantals (lake), Que.	F 1	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sand (lake), Ont.		Val d'Or, Que.	8,085
Nakokan (lake), Que.	F 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sandwich (bay), Newf.		Valleyfield, Que.	22,414
Nastapoka (islands),	E 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sandy (lake), Ont.		Vermilion Bay, Ont.	05
N.W. Terr.	E 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sandy Lake, Ont.		Victoriaville, Que.	13,124
Nastapoka (river), Que.	E 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sarnia, Ont.	34,607	Village St. Georges,	1,316
Natashquan, Que.	435	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sault Ste. Marie, Ont.	32,452	Que.	2,657
Natashquan (lake), Que.	H 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Savant Lake, Ont.	07	Volsy (bay), Newf.	
Natashquan (river), Que.	H 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sawayan (point), Que.		Vabuk (point), Ont.	
Nedluk (lake), Que.	E 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Schefferville, Que.	1,850	Wakemham Bay, Que.	3,264
Nemiscaw, Que.	F 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Schreiber, Ont.	3,002	Walkerton, Ont.	
Neoskewskau, Que.	E 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Senneterre, Que.	1,650	Wallace, Ont.	
New Brunswick		Ottawa (river), Que.		Separation Point, Lab.,	51	Wallaceburg, Ont.	7,088
(province)		Ottawa (river), Que.		Newf.		Waswanipi, Que.	
New Glasgow, N. S.	9,933	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sept Iles (Seven		Waterloo, Ont.	11,991
New Liskeard, Ont.	4,215	Ottawa (river), Que.		Islands), Que.	1,866	Wedgeport, N. S.	1,322
New Richmond, Que.	1,000	Ottawa (river), Que.		Seul (lake), Ont.		Wenauk, Ont.	
New Waterford, N. S.		Ottawa (river), Que.		Seven Islands (Sept	1,866	Weggs (cape), Que.	
		Ottawa (river), Que.		Islands), Newf.		Welland, Ont.	15,382
Newcastle, N. B.	10,423	Ottawa (river), Que.		Severn (river), Ont.		Welland (canal), Ont.	1,304
Newfoundland	4,248	Ottawa (river), Que.		Shawinigan Falls,		West (point), Que.	
(province)		Ottawa (river), Que.		Que.	26,903	West St. Modeste,	
Newmarket, Ont.	361,416	Ottawa (river), Que.		Shediac, N. B.	2,010	Lab., Newf.	73
Niagara Falls, Ont.	22,874	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sheet Harbour, N. S.	1,500	Westville, N. S.	4,301
Nichicun (lake), Que.	F 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Shelburne, N. S.	2,040	Weymouth, N. S.	1,500
Nicolet, Que.	4,084	Ottawa (river), Que.		Shelter Bay, Que.	450	White (river), Que.	
Nipigon, Ont.	700	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sherbrooke, Que.	50,543	White River, Que.	7,267
Nipigon (lake), Ont.	C 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sherbrooke, N. S.	500	White (bay), Newf.	
Nipissing (lake), Ont.	F 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		Shipplian (island),		White Gull (lake), Que.	
Nitchequon, Que.	E 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		N. B.	6,870	White River, Ont.	401
Nominique, Que.	726	Ottawa (river), Que.		Simard (lake), Que.		Whitewater (lake), Ont.	
Noranda, Que.	9,672	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sioux, Ont.	7,269	Whitney, Ont.	247
Normandin, Que.	1,678	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sioux Louout, Ont.	2,364	Warton, Ont.	1,055
Norment, Que.	600	Ottawa (river), Que.		Smith (isl.), N.W. Terr.		Windsor, Ont.	120,049
North (cape), N. S.	J 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		Smiths Falls, Ont.	8,441	Windsor, N. S.	3,674
North (channel), Ont.	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		Smooth Rock Falls,		Windsor, N. S.	3,439
North (point), P. E. I.	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		Ont.	1,102	Wingham, Ont.	2,642
N. Autlitsvik (island),	H 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		Sorel, Que.	14,961	Winisk (lake), Ont.	
Newf.	H 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.	1,183	Winisk (river), Ont.	
N. Bay, Ont.	17,944	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	2,313
N. Belcher (islands),	D 2	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
N. Caribou (lake), Ont.	B 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
N. Twin (island),	D 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
N.W. Terr.		Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
North West River, Lab.,	H 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
Newf.	H 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
Northumberland (strait)	H 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
Notre Dame (bay), Newf.	F 4	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
Notre Dame (mt.), Que.	G 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	
Nottaway (river), Que.	E 3	Ottawa (river), Que.		South (point), Que.		Wolfeville, N. S.	

highest elevations in Canada, rising in a tremendous wall between the west coast province of British Columbia and the interior Prairie Provinces of Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba.

#### The Laurentian Plateau

An even greater barrier to east-west lines of communication is the Laurentian Plateau, or Canadian Shield, a mass of rock which splits the central part of the country like a giant wedge. This plateau, blanketed in forests and spangled with thousands of lakes, occupies two thirds of Canada's land area. It is called the Shield from its appearance when it is drawn on a map. It covers all of eastern Canada down to the St. Lawrence River. Its western border extends from the Arctic Ocean southeast along Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabaska, and Winnipeg Lakes to the Great Lakes. Its precipitous southeastern edge, known as the Laurentide Mountains, rises 6000 feet in some places (see Laurentian Plateau).

Thus we find the southern portion of Canada divided into four regions. The Maritime Provinces are very similar to New England. The Ontario peninsula and the St. Lawrence River valley of Quebec are similar to nearby Michigan, Ohio, and New York. Canada has no Middle West that corresponds to the Middle West of the United States. It has instead a great forest nearly a thousand miles wide—the forest of the Canadian Shield. Then come the prairies, which are a continuation of the plains of North Dakota and Montana. And finally there is the Pacific coast region, continuous with the state of Washington.

#### The Maritime Provinces

Like New England, the Maritime Provinces and Newfoundland have rocky coasts behind which rise the forested slopes of the Appalachians. In sheltering coves lie fishing villages, once the haunt of privateers, and still full of thrilling tales of adventure at sea. Out of Lunenburg and Halifax in the fog thick dawn slip the schooners and motor ships bound for the coastal fisheries, and the distant Grand Banks with their swarming shoals of cod and herring. Cattle graze in the tidal marshes behind protecting dikes. And up the Bay of Fundy are the beautiful valleys of Annapolis and Cornwallis, sweet with apple orchards and hay fields. Prince Edward Island is the "Garden of the Gulf," but most of the people of the Maritime Provinces earn their living from the sea. The population is largely English, Scottish, and Irish in ancestry, with a large French minority in New Brunswick.

These provinces are cut off by the sea and by the Appalachian Mountains from the rest of Canada. Their only access to Montreal is by rail or air across the "foreign" state of Maine, or by ship through the Gulf of St. Lawrence and up the St. Lawrence River. This route is closed by ice in the winter, and the all-Canadian rail lines are so long and indirect that they are little used for passenger travel.

Because of their isolation the provinces have been slow to develop industrially, but progress has been made during World War II and the postwar period. Nova Scotia has Canada's largest gypsum deposits and

is second to Alberta in coal production. At Sydney on Cape Breton Island coal is mined for miles under the ocean floor. Newfoundland has one of the world's great iron-ore fields. Extensive deposits of lead, zinc, and copper have been found in New Brunswick.

#### St. Lawrence River—Great Lakes Region

The St. Lawrence Valley is a belt of soft rocks between the hard rocks of the Shield on the northwest and the Adirondack and Appalachian mountains on the southeast. The soft rocks have weathered away, leaving a lowland with rich soil between two highland areas. At Quebec the valley is only 20 miles wide. It broadens to 70 miles at Montreal, then narrows again at the eastern end of Lake Ontario.

Most of the farmers of the St. Lawrence Valley are French Roman Catholics. Their farms are small, only a hundred acres or so, in narrow strips running back from the river toward the Laurentides on the one shore, the Appalachians on the other. Charming little villages line the river shores, each with a spotless church rising white against the blue line of hills. Travelers up and down the St. Lawrence never forget the mellow clanging of the church bells. They seem to be the voice of French Canada. Wayside shrines, outdoor bake ovens, slow plodding ox teams make this part of Canada seem like a bit of old France.

Montreal, at the head of ocean navigation on the St. Lawrence, is Canada's second largest city and one of the largest inland seaports in the world. The old-world city of Quebec, and Ottawa, capital of the nation on the Ottawa River, are also in this region.

Crowded between the southern edge of the Laurentian Plateau and the border of the United States, from the lower Great Lakes to the city of Quebec live more than half of all Canadians. In this area are 70 per cent of all the cities and more than 80 per cent of the manufacturing. Here is Toronto, Canada's largest city. This region uses almost 80 per cent of the goods imported into Canada. It produces almost half the value of the farm products of the nation.

Why is such a small part of Canada—only one per cent of its area—so predominant? The answer is that it provides the easiest living conditions. The peninsula in southeastern Ontario that juts southward between Lakes Ontario and Erie on the east and Lake Huron on the west, is a prosperous farming area. Like Michigan and New York, it has fertile orchards, vineyards and pastures, protected by moderate lake winds from severe winters and early frosts. Power from the countless rushing streams of the higher plateau on the north operates its factories, and it shares with the United States the power generated at Niagara Falls. Three of the country's four leading manufacturing cities are in this peninsula—Toronto, Hamilton, and London. Its people are for the most part British and Protestant.

#### The Western Prairies

From Toronto, the heart of Canada's industrial area, to Winnipeg on the edge of the prairies, is a longer trip than from New York to Chicago. The prairies lie west of the Plateau and extend up to the Arctic tundra.

The southern part of these plains is a flat and treeless country. Farther north, around the Peace and Hay rivers, the land becomes parklike, with clumps of evergreens and aspens interrupting its level expanse. Still farther north, the Mackenzie River valley is heavily forested. The plains slope gently downward from the border toward the Mackenzie Valley and Hudson Bay to the north and northeast.

The southern prairie wheat farms lie in great blocks a mile square. The view of waving grain in summer, or drifting snow in winter stops only at the horizon. Sharply outlined against the sky rises a grain elevator. A cluster of farm buildings, with their tall windmill, seems to have fallen by

accident onto the empty land. Far different are these from the neat little farms of the St. Lawrence, hemmed in between river shore and mountain, or the sea-sprayed pastures of the Maritime Provinces.

The Prairie Provinces are thinly populated. All three combined have fewer people than the city of Chicago. The largest city is Winnipeg, an important railroad center and grain and livestock market. Edmonton in central Alberta is an outfitting point for prospectors, trappers, and farmers of the Peace River country. Large deposits of oil, natural gas, and coal in Alberta point to a great industrial future.

#### The Pacific Coast

Canada's Pacific coast region is a spectacular upheaval of mountains. The Rockies cut across the Alberta-British Columbia border. Farther west, the

Coast Range steps directly out of the sea, forest-covered and snow peaked. Narrow, winding fiords slash far back into the mountains from the coast, and countless islands fringe the shore. In the Inland Passage between these islands and the mainland live myriads of fish. Between the Coast Range and the Rockies lies a plateau broken by numerous smaller

ranges. There is some agriculture in the Fraser, Okanagan, and other interior valleys, but not more than one tenth of British Columbia can be farmed. Fishing, fish canning, and lumbering are the chief industries of the region.

Vancouver and Victoria, near the United States border, are the leading cities. Most of

the coast, however, is too steep and wild for the development of great commercial centers.

#### The Far North

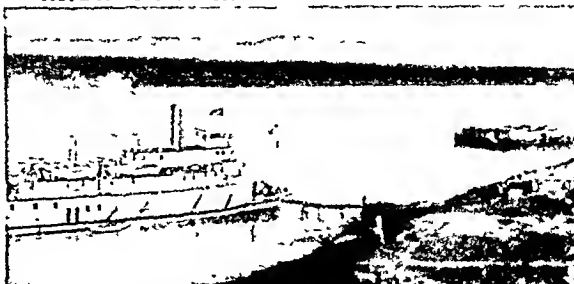
We have made a brief journey across southern Canada where most of the people live. But the greater part of the country is forest, marsh, and Arctic meadow extending to the polar seas. For three centuries this was the undisputed land of the French and Indian trappers, the Eskimo nomad, and the missionary. The trading posts of the Hudson's Bay fur company were the farthest outposts of civilization. Canoes, snowshoes, and dog sleds were the only means of transportation.

Today the airplane is opening the northland to an exciting future. The roar of motors now shatters the silence of the great forests. Lakes and rivers are

year-round landing fields for planes equipped with pontoons and skis. Mining towns and dam sites are springing up in the wilderness, their food, building materials, machinery, and the engineers and workmen, all flown in by cargo planes. Yellowknife on Great Slave Lake, over on the western edge of the Shield, burst into existence in 1938 with the discovery of gold. Up the Saguenay River in eastern Quebec the great Shipshaw Power Development includes a series of dams and storage reservoirs which generate the power for one of the world's biggest aluminum reduction plants. This is the country of which Louis Hémon wrote in his beautiful story of 'Maria Chapdelaine'. Maria would never recognize today the quiet woods where men died when they strayed from the trail.

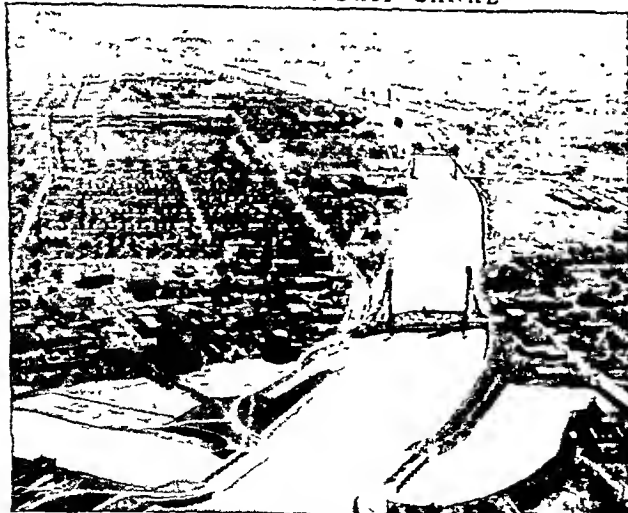
Not only is the airplane opening up the north to industrial development, but it is also destined to make this area an essential link of the global air lanes. The shortest distance between any part of the continent of Asia and the eastern or central United States

#### AKLAVIK NEAR THE ARCTIC OCEAN



A Hudson's Bay Company steamer photographed by the light of the midnight sun at Aklavik, in the Mackenzie River delta.

#### THE WELLAND SHIP CANAL



The Welland Ship Canal cuts across the isthmus between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, by-passing Niagara Falls. Seven locks lift vessels 326 feet. This view looks south across the town of Welland toward Lake Erie.

bes across northern Canada. Across here too must pass straight-line flights between the West coast of the United States and many of the great cities of northern Europe (see Aviation).

Even the farmer is beginning to discover the possibilities of the northern prairies. Federal agricultural experts declare that the Hay River valley is one of the best cereal and mixed farming regions of Canada, yet it is practically uninhabited. Toward the Arctic Circle, summer daylight is almost continuous for three months and temperatures reach 100°. Vegetables grow rapidly under such conditions and reach enormous size. At Aklavik in the Mackenzie River delta, 130 miles beyond the Arctic Circle, oats, barley, hay, garden vegetables, and cattle are being successfully raised. The winters are longer but in many places no colder than in the state of Vermont. There is less snow in the Mackenzie Valley than in the Maritime Provinces. As farmers, miners and pilots penetrate the north, misconceptions which have hindered its development are being dispelled. It may truly be called the "land of the future."

#### Waterways and Water Power

The early French voyageurs who came out of the interior with canoe loads of beaver skins appreciated the advantages of Canada's network of waterways. Its rivers and lakes are still the only avenues of transportation over thousands of square miles not yet reached by road or railroad. As a source of power for the growing industries and as a means of recreation for the vacationing workers of two nations, their value is inestimable.

The interior of Canada holds half the fresh water of the world, totaling 6 per cent of the country's area. Hudson Bay bites another 250,000 square miles out of the northern part of the continent. The coast line along the Atlantic, Pacific, and Arctic oceans, Hudson Bay, and Hudson Strait totals 17,863 miles.

Tens of thousands of lakes lie in the glacier-gouged depressions of the Shield. In one accurately mapped area of 5,300 square miles 7,500 lakes have been counted. In addition to the Great Lakes, Canada has 11 lakes each of which has 1,000 square miles or more. Great Bear Lake, Great Slave Lake, and Lake Winnipeg are each larger than the state of Massachusetts.

The St. Lawrence Great Lakes waterway reaches 2,400 miles inland, almost half way across the continent. This superb highway to the sea teems with the commerce of two nations. It gives the land locked prairies a world market for their wheat and carries to them the manufactured products of the East. The twin ports of Port Arthur and Port William, at the west end of Lake Superior, are the largest grain-shipping points in the world. At Sault Ste. Marie, between Lake Superior and Lake Huron, Canada has its own canal paralleling the one on the United States side of the St. Mary River. Canals have been built around the numerous rapids in the upper St. Lawrence. The Welland Ship Canal carries vessels around Niagara Falls. The Ottawa and other rivers tributary to the St. Lawrence have been connected with the Great

Lakes by canals. (See Canals, Great Lakes, St. Lawrence River, Sault Ste. Marie, Welland Ship Canal.)

The western interior of Canada is handicapped because most of its rivers drain away from the settled areas toward the Arctic Ocean and Hudson Bay. They are used only for local traffic among the settlements on their banks. The 2,635-mile Mackenzie River empties into the Arctic Ocean. It is the longest river in Canada and is second only to the Mississippi-Missouris system in North America (see Mackenzie River). The Churchill River and the Nelson-Saskatchewan system flow into Hudson Bay. The Yukon drains the vast Yukon Territory, a region twice as large as the British Isles (see Yukon River).

From the western mountains flow such great rivers as the Columbia and the Fraser. Giant Kenney Dam on the Nechako reverses the headwaters of the Fraser into a ten-mile tunnel through the Coastal Range to the world's greatest underground power station at Kemano, B. C. The world's largest aluminum smelter at Kitimat, B. C., began using its power in 1964.

Many parts of Canada are high above sea level. The entire Shield is elevated, and in the east as its streams flow into the St. Lawrence Valley they can be dammed to generate electric power. Canada is second only to the United States in developed water power but has utilized only about one fifth of its potential power (see Water Power). Ontario and Quebec produce about four fifths of the total. As they have no coal, their water is an important resource. One of the largest projects is the Shipshaw Development on the Saguenay River in eastern Quebec. In 1953 Canada and the United States agreed to joint construction of a huge power plant at the International Rapids section of the St. Lawrence.

#### "Our Lady of the Snows"

Rudyard Kipling gave Canada this beautiful name as a tribute to its white winters. The northern continental climate is a handicap and an advantage. The Arctic cold of the Far North discourages settlement. Elsewhere, however, the extremes of heat and cold the

#### THE GREAT SHIPSHAW POWER PROJECT



Looking up the Saguenay River, we see Shipsaw Dam No. 2 in the foreground and Dam No. 1 in the distance. The two powerhouses have a combined capacity of 1,200,000 horsepower.

rhythmic change of the seasons, help to produce a vigorous, stable, and hard-working people.

The oceans have little tempering effect on the interior of the country. On the west the Rockies cut off the moderate rain-bearing Pacific winds. As a result, the Prairie Provinces suffer great extremes of temperature. Fort Vermilion, in northern Alberta, has a recorded range of 174° F.—from -76° to 95°. In parts of Alberta and Saskatchewan semiarid conditions prevail. The east coast is swept by the cold Labrador current from the northwestern Atlantic, and by the prevailing westerly winds from across the continent. The Great Lakes moderate the weather in the southeastern part of the country.

Varying altitudes within the continent result in varying climatic conditions. The Peace River country, for example, at an elevation of 1,000 feet above sea level, is no colder than southern Alberta at 3,500 feet. Winds blowing over large land masses also affect temperatures. In the winter, warm Chinook winds blowing from the southwest across the prairies often bring a rise of 60 degrees within a few hours. Icy blasts from the North Pole, on the other hand, may drive the thermometer far below zero. Summer heat through the interior reaches 90 to 100 degrees.

Rainfall is heavy on the Pacific coast, plentiful in the east, but scanty in the western interior. The Arctic northwest has less snow than southern Quebec and the Maritime Provinces.

#### Plants and Animals of Canada

In a country as large as Canada, with its great variations of climate and physical environment, the range of plant life is very wide. The country may be divided into six plant regions, each with its typical animal life: Arctic, Transcontinental, Eastern, Great Lakes, Prairie, and Western.

The Arctic flats and the many islands that fringe the northern extremity of the continent, are treeless. The lower layers of the soil are permanently frozen, and only the surface thaws in the summer. Dwarf shrubs huddle close to the ground to escape the strong winds. Low-lying herbs with shallow roots send profuse branches over the surface. Their dense spread absorbs a maximum of the brief sunshine, and forms a protective covering of withered leaves for the seeds and wintering buds. Ferns and mosses are common. These are the "barren lands," or tundra, inhabited by musk oxen and caribou, polar bears, hares and rabbits, Arctic foxes, and wolverines.

The Transcontinental region below the Arctic area extends from the Yukon across the Hudson Bay country to the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Except in the extreme northwest where the mountains reach high altitudes, the land is generally flat and often swampy, with many shallow lakes and streams. The outstanding feature is the belt of coniferous forests found everywhere except on the mountain tops of the Yukon. Typical trees are the white and black spruce, tamarack, balsam fir, jack pine, with a few such hardwoods as the aspen, balsam poplar, and white birch. Among the many shrubs are juniper, rock cranberry,

the beautiful crimson swamp laurel, bearberry, and swamp red currant. The swamps, known as muskeg, consist of spongy, treeless areas, covered with sphagnum, or muskeg moss. In the forests dwell deer, moose, black bears, timber wolves, and the fur-bearing animals for which Canada is famous—fox, lynx, beaver, otter, marten, fisher, mink, and skunk. In the more open northern sections live herds of caribou.

The Eastern region includes eastern Ontario, Quebec, the Maritime Provinces, and Newfoundland, from the foot of James Bay southward. This is a hardwood forest zone. Some of the more important trees are yellow birch, beech, burr and red oak, white elm, sugar maple, red maple, white and black ash, and black cherry. There are also such evergreens as white and red pine, white cedar, and hemlock. Here, too, is considerable swampy open ground. Wild flowers and flowering shrubs are abundant. In the autumn this region is a flaming symphony of color. The beautiful maple is the symbol of the nation and the inspiration for a national song, 'The Maple Leaf For Ever'. In the forests live deer, moose, wolves, bears, and many of the fur-bearing animals found also farther north.

The Great Lakes region between Lakes Huron, Erie, and Ontario is recognized by botanists as a unique area, remarkable for the variety of its plant life. It contains nearly 300 species which occur nowhere else in Canada. Point Pelee, the most southerly part of Canada, has been made a national park to preserve its unusual flora. This is also a focal point for migratory birds which assemble at Point Pelee in huge numbers in the spring and fall.

The Prairie region, from the Red River Valley to the foothills of the Rocky Mountains, is for the most part treeless, except along the river valleys where cottonwoods and maples are common. In certain parts are lakes which have no outlets. They are bordered by salt marshes whose plants are typical of the seashore. Much of the prairie is dry, and its plant life is desert-like. On the plains may still be found prong-horned antelope, bison, elk, coyotes, and wolves.

The Western region extends from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific coast. Because of the variations in altitude and rainfall, vegetation is varied and extremely abundant. Here are great forests of lodgepole pine, Douglas fir, white pine, Engelmann spruce, and many others. On the mountains and in the forests are mule deer, grizzly bears, pumas, bighorn sheep, and Rocky Mountain goats.

Canada's forests, plains, and barren lands are the nesting grounds of millions of song birds; hawks; geese, ducks, and other game birds. Many species, seen in the United States only during the spring and fall migrations, make their summer homes north of the border. Canada and the United States protect these birds under the Migratory Bird treaty.

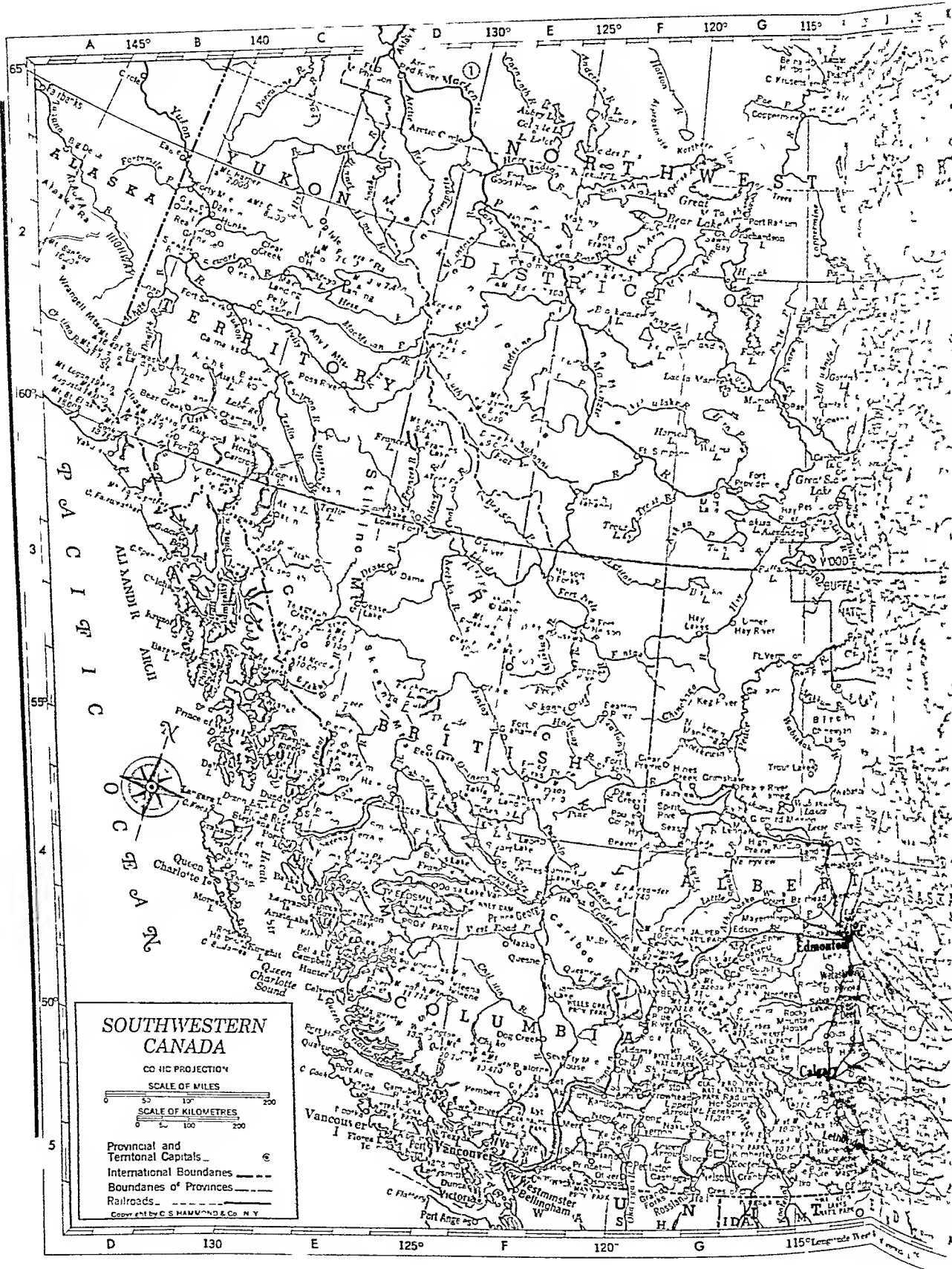
#### The People of Canada

About half of Canada's population is descended from British ancestors—English, Scottish, or Irish. Almost a third are French. The remainder are German, Ukrainian, Polish, Italian, Dutch, and Scandinavian.

**SOUTHWESTERN CANADA\***

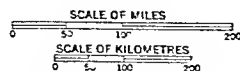
[illegible]

\*Population figures for places not listed in 1951 census courtesy of Canadian Official Railway Guide (Montreal). Other population figures from 1951 census. These are the latest official census figures available.



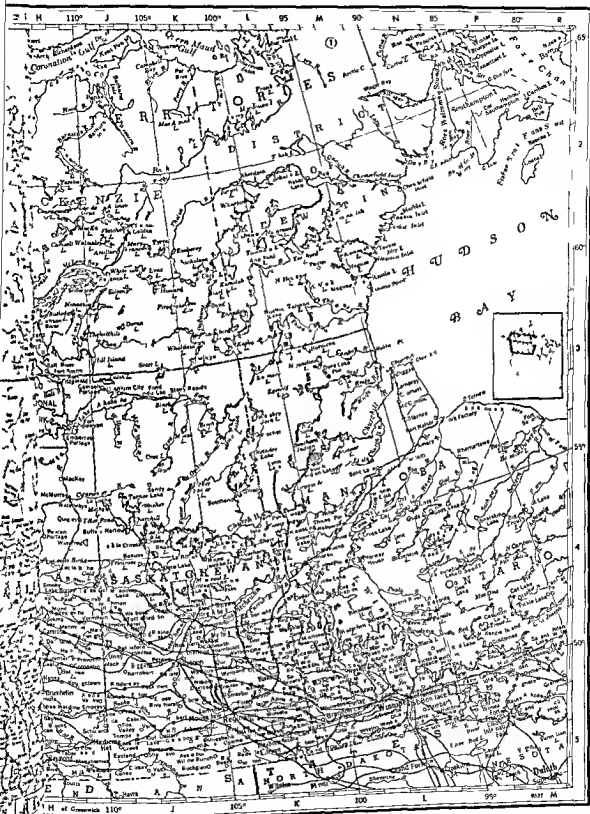
# SOUTHWESTERN CANADA

CO 11C PROJECTION



- Provincial and Territorial Capitals
- International Boundaries
- Boundaries of Provinces
- Railroads

Copyright by C. S. HAMMOND & Co. N. Y.





# SOUTHWESTERN CANADA—Continued

Leoville, Sask.	329	J 4	Nelson Forks, B. C.	F 3	Ritchurst, Sask.	218	J 4	Tchientlo (lake), B. C.	F 3
Lesser Slave (lake), Alta.	H 3	N 3	New Westminster, B. C.	F 5	Rivers Inlet, B. C.	250	L 4	Tehuk (lake), N.W.T.	L 1
Lethbridge, Alta.	22,947	H 3	Nicholson (lake), N.W.T.	K 2	Riverton, Man.	786	L 4	Telegraph Creek, B. C.	75 D 3
Liar (river)	F 3	H 3	Nicola (riv.), B. C.	F 4	Robson (mt.), Alta.		G 4	Tent Peak (mt.), Yukon	E 3
Lilloet, B. C.	469	F 4	Nipawin, Sask.	K 4	Rocky (mts.)	303	J 5	Terrace, B. C.	061 E 4
Little Bow (riv.), Alta.	H 4	F 4	Nisutlin (river), Yukon	D 2	Rocky Mountain House, Alta.	1,147	F 3	Teslin, Yukon	D 2
Little Buffalo (river), N.W. Terr.	H 2	H 2	Nokomis, Sask.	G 4			G 4	Teulon, Man.	645 L 4
Little Churchill (river), Man.	L 3	H 2	Norderg, Alta.	J 4	Roes Welcome (sound), N.W. Terr.			Theda (island), B. C.	L 2
Little Grand Rapids, Man.	L 4	L 3	Norman Wells, N.W. Terr.	E 1			N 2	Thorne (river), N.W.T.	L 2
Little Smoky (riv.), Alta.	G 4	L 4	North Battleford, Sask.	E 1	Roosevelt (mt.), B. C.	1,505	E 3	The Kuthlin (lake), N.W. Terr.	K 4
Lloydminster, Sask.	2,232	G 4	N. Henik (lake), N.W.T.	J 2	Rosau, Sask.	1,505	J 4	Thelon (river), N.W.T.	K 2
Logan (mt.), Yukon	B 2	J 4	N. Saskatchewan (riv.)	J 2	Rossland, B. C.	4,604	D 2	Thicket Portage, Man.	L 3
Lorillard (river), N.W. Terr.	N 2	B 2	N. Saskatchewan (riv.)	F 5	Rothern, Sask.	1,183	G 5	Thompson (river), B. C.	F 4
Low (cape), N.W. Terr.	G 5	N 2	N. West River, B. C.	F 5	Rouleau, Sask.	388	K 4	Three Hills, Alta.	1,026 E 3
Lower Arrow (lake), B. C.	E 3	L 2	Norway House, Man.	L 2	Russell, Man.	1,100	K 4	Thudate (lake), B. C.	E 3
Lower Post, B. C.	G 5	L 2	Nueltin L. N.W. Terr.	L 2	St. Boniface, Man.	26,312	L 5	Tisdale, Sask.	2,141 K 4
Lucania (mt.), Yukon	B 2	L 2	Nutarawit (lake), N.W.T.	L 2	Saint Elias (mt.), Yukon		L 5	Tisdale, Sask.	302 E 5
Lumsden, Sask.	479	J 4	Nuwata, N.W. Terr.	R 1	Saint James (cape), B. C.		D 4	Tompkins, Sask.	388 J 4
Luscar, Alta.	500	G 4	O'Reilly (is.), N.W.T.	L 1	Saint Martin (lake), Man.	1,407	H 4	Tornado (mt.), Alta.	G 5
Lynn Lake, Man.	2,000	K 4	Ocean Falls, B. C.	E 3	Saint Walburg, Sask.	525	J 4	Trall, B. C.	11,430 G 5
Lynn (lake), N.W. Terr.	J 2	F 4	Ogema, Sask.	F 5	Saint Rose du Lac, Man.	701	G 4	Transcona, Man.	6,752 L 5
Lytton, B. C.	312	F 4	Okaville (mt.), Yukon	D 2	Salmon Arm, B. C.	1,201	H 4	Tree (river), N.W. Terr.	H 1
MacAlpine (lake), N.W. Terr.	H 3	F 4	Okanagan (lake), B. C.	F 5	Salt River, N.W. Terr.		H 2	Trerne, Man.	589 L 5
MacKay, Alta.	H 3	H 3	Olds, Alta.	F 4	Saltcoats, Sask.	522	K 4	Trout (lake), N.W. Terr.	F 3
MacMillan (riv.), Yukon	D 2	L 1	Oliver, B. C.	1,000	Sandy Lake, Sask.		J 3	Trout Lake, Alta.	F 3
Macdougall (lake), N.W.T.	L 1	J 2	Ootsa Lake, B. C.	50	Saskatchewan (prov.)	831,729	J 4	Tulemalu (lake), N.W.T.	D 3
MacKay (lake), N.W.T.	J 2	E 2	Opposite (is.), N.W.T.	P 1	Saskatchewan (river)		K 4	Turnor (lake), Sask.	J 3
MacKenzie (mts.)	E 2	G 2	Osoyoos, B. C.	899	Saskatoon, Sask.	53,265	J 4	Turleford, Sask.	280 J 4
MacKenzie (district)	G 2	F 2	Outlook, Sask.	676	Sawmill Bay, N.W. Terr.		G 1	Tweedsmuir (pk.), B. C.	E 4
MacKenzie (river), N.W.T.	F 2	L 2	Outpost Island, N.W.T.	F 4	Schuler, Alta.	188	H 4	Tyrell (lake), N.W.T.	J 2
MacKlin, Sask.	531	F 4	Oxbow, Sask.	688	Schultz (lake), N.W.T.		J 2	Unity, Sask.	1,248 J 4
MacKung, Alta.	278	H 3	Osford House, Man.	L 3	Scott (lake), N.W. Terr.		L 2	Upper Arrow (lake), B. C.	G 4
MacRab, Alta.	1,320	H 5	Paddle, N.W. Terr.	L 2	Sekirk, Man.	6,218	G 1	Upper Foster (lake), Sask.	K 3
Magase R., N.W. Terr.	L 1	F 3	Parsnip (river), B. C.	D 3	Sekirk (mts.), B. C.		L 4	Upper Hay River, Alta.	G 3
Mahony (lake), N.W.T.	L 1	G 2	Patterson (mt.), Yukon	D 2	Selwyn (lake), N.W.T.		K 4	Umanium City, Sask.	1,900 J 3
Maldstone, Sask.	459	J 4	Peace River, Alta.	1,672	Selwyn Mill House, B.C.	25	K 4	Utkuma (lake), Alta.	G 3
Manitoba (lake), Man.	L 4	L 3	Peel (river)	H 3	Serrano, Alta.	331	M 3	Val Marie, Sask.	357 J 5
Manitoba (prov.)	776,541	L 0	Pelican Portage, Alta.	H 3	Shamattawa, Man.		J 3	Valleyview, Alta.	G 4
Manning, Alta.	L 0	G 3	Pelly, Sask.	361	Shannon, Sask.	1,625	J 3	Vancouver, B. C.	344,833 F 5
Manning (park), B. C.	F 5	F 5	Pelly (lake), N.W. Terr.	C 2	Shannon, Sask.	1,625	J 3	Vancouver (island), B. C.	E 3
Manville, Alta.	528	F 5	Pelly Crossing, Yukon	C 2	Sherridon, Man.	1,500	K 3	Vancouver (mt.), Yukon	F 4
Manyberries, Alta.	130	H 5	Pemberton, B. C.	25	Shoal Lake, Man.	721	G 4	Vanderhoof, B. C.	644 F 1
Maple Cr., Sask.	1,638	J 5	Penticton, B. C.	10,545	Shuswap (lake), B. C.		G 4	Vanderhoof (is.), N.W.T.	F 1
Marble (is.), N.W. Terr.	M 2	J 2	Perru, Sask.	389	Skanni Chief (riv.), B. C.		F 3	Vanderhoof (is.), N.W.T.	2,223 H 4
Markaret Bay, B. C.	50	E 4	Perry R., N.W. Terr.	K 1	Skanni Chief (riv.), B. C.		F 3	Vanderhoof (is.), N.W.T.	2,223 H 4
Marian (lake), N.W.T.	G 2	J 2	Peter Pond (lake), Sask.	L 4	Slavik (lake), Man.		F 4	Vernon, B. C.	7,822 G 4
Mary Frances (lake), N.W.T.	J 2	L 4	Pigeon (river), Man.	L 3	Sie Alexander (mt.), B. C.		F 4	Victoria (cap.), B. C.	51,331 F 5
Masnoir (lake), N.W.T.	F 1	L 4	Pikwetone, Man.	150	Skeena (mts.), B. C.		E 2	Victoria Beach, Man.	1,746 K 5
Mayerthorpe, Alta.	472	G 2	Pineau, B. C.	1,456	Slave (river)		H 2	Virden, Man.	1,040 H 5
May Landing, Yukon	241	C 2	Pine Falls, Man.	600	Slocan, B. C.	374	G 5	Vulcan, Alta.	1,040 H 3
McBride, B. C.	480	F 4	Pitt (island), B. C.	D 4	Smith Arm (inlet), N.W. Terr.		F 1	Wabaskaw (lakes), Alta.	G 3
McClintock, Man.	M 3	H 3	Playgreen (lake), Man.	H 3	Smith River, B. C.		E 3	Wabaskaw (river), Alta.	G 3
McCreary, Man.	365	L 4	Point (lake), N.W. Terr.	H 1	Smith (Mirror Landing), Alta.	344	H 3	Wabowden, Man.	88 L 4
McDane, B. C.	E 3	J 5	Ponoka, Alta.	2,574	Smithers, B. C.	1,204	E 4	Waddington (mt.), B. C.	1,081 M 1
McFarlane (riv.), Sask.	J 3	J 5	Ponteix, Sask.	608	Smoky (river), Alta.	491	H 2	Wadena, Sask.	1,081 M 1
McLennan, Alta.	1,074	G 3	Poulin (river), Man.	J 5	Smoky Lake, Alta.		B 2	Wager Bay, N.W. Terr.	1,996 H 4
McLeod (lake), N.W.T.	G 4	F 4	Poulin (riv.), B. C.	D 4	Snag, Yukon		H 2	Wainwright, Alta.	766 J 4
McLeod (river), Alta.	F 4	F 4	Porcupine, Man.	590	Snake (riv.), Yukon		H 2	Wakaw, Sask.	766 J 4
McLeod Lake, B. C.	F 4	F 4	Port Alberni, B. C.	7,845	Snake (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Walmley (lake), N.W.T.	100 K 4
McMurray, Alta.	621	H 3	Port Alice, B. C.	350	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Wapaweka (lake), Sask.	100 K 4
McQuesten, Yukon	O 2	E 4	Port Hardy, B. C.	175	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Wapus, Sask.	100 K 4
McFarish Arm (inlet), N.W. Terr.	G 1	F 1	Port Nelson, Man.	M 3	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Wardlaw, Alta.	75 L 4
McVicar Arm (inlet), N.W. Terr.	F 1	J 4	Port Radium, N.W.T.	E 4	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Waterhen (lake), Man.	400 H 5
Meadow Lake, Sask.	1,956	H 4	Port Simpson, B. C.	760	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Waterton Lakes (park), Man.	400 H 5
Medicine Hat, Alta.	10,364	H 4	Portage La Prairie, Man.	8,511	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Watrous, Sask.	1,223 J 4
Melbourne (is.), N.W.T.	K 1	F 3	Portland Canal (inlet), B. C.	D 3	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Watson, Sask.	718 K 4
Melfort, Sask.	2,910	K 4	Pouce Coupe, B. C.	459	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Watson Lake, Yukon	150 F 4
Melan, Man.	781	K 4	Powell River, B. C.	7,000	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Wekusko, Man.	150 F 4
Melville, Sask.	4,458	K 4	Freezeville, Sask.	746	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Wells Gray (park), B. C.	1,111 H 4
Merritt, B. C.	1,251	F 4	Preble, Sask.	585	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Westburn, Sask.	3,824 H 5
Methy (lake), Sask.	J 3	F 4	Preble, B. C.	400	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whiskey Jack (lake), Man.	K 3
Milkwa (river), Alta.	H 3	H 3	Primrose (lake), Sask.	7,149	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	White Court, Alta.	130 G 4
Milestone, Sask.	450	K 5	Prince Albert, Sask.	17,149	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	White Horse, (cap.) Yukon	2,594 C 3
Milk River, Alta.	481	H 5	Prince George, B. C.	4,703	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	White Pass, B. C.	400 H 5
Mills Lake, N.W. Terr.	G 2	G 2	Prince Rupert, B. C.	8,546	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitefish (lake), N.W.T.	L 4
Minitonas, Man.	678	K 4	Princess Royal (island), B. C.	E 4	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Minnesota, Man.	2,085	G 4	Princeton, B. C.	3,000	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Minto, Yukon	182	K 5	Prophet River, B. C.	670	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Minton, Sask.	344	H 3	Prophet River, B. C.	670	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mirror Landing (Smith), Alta.	344	H 3	Provost, Alta.	670	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mist (mt.), Alta.	G 4	H 4	Pukatawan, Man.	300	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Monareb (mt.), B. C.	E 4	F 4	Qatsino, B. C.	300	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Monmouth (is.), N.W.T.	L 1	F 4	Queen Bess (mt.), B. C.	F 4	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Montreal (is.), N.W.T.	L 1	F 4	Queen Charlotte (is.), B. C.	F 4	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Montreal Lake, Sask.	25	J 4	Queen Charlotte (str.), B. C.	E 4	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Moose (lake), Sask.	J 3	J 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Moose Jaw, Sask.	24,355	J 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Moose Lake, Man.	L 4	L 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Moose Mountain (park), Sask.	K 5	K 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mosomin, Sask.	1,235	K 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Morden, Man.	1,862	L 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Moresby (island), B. C.	D 5	D 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Morinville, Alta.	892	H 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Morris, Man.	1,193	L 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mossback, Sask.	509	J 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mt. Robson (pk.), Alta.	G 4	G 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mountain Park, Alta.	400	G 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mt. Revelstoke (park), B. C.	G 4	G 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Muncho Lake, B. C.	H 3	H 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Mundare, Alta.	596	H 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Muskwa, B. C.	D 3	D 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nahlin, B. C.	D 3	D 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nakusp, B. C.	1,750	G 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nanaimo, B. C.	7,196	F 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nanton, Alta.	934	H 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nass (river), B. C.	E 3	F 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nazko, B. C.	F 4	F 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nechako (river), B. C.	F 4	F 4	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nepawa, Man.	2,895	L 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nepawa (lake), Man.	L 3	L 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nelson, B. C.	6,772	G 5	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2
Nelson (river), Man.	L 3	L 3	Queen Maud (gulf), N.W.T.	K 1	Snare (lake), N.W. Terr.		H 2	Whitford (lake), Man.	K 2

Canada has about 156 000 Indians and 10 000 Eskimos Chinese and Japanese total 54 000 Concentrated on the west coast before the second World War the Japanese are now scattered throughout the country

The French Canadians are devout Roman Catholics bound together by close ties of religion tradition and their French heritage In many respects they have kept the beliefs and the way of life of their colonial ancestors They have changed less than their countrymen across the sea and today have little in common with them Their language their faith their schools even their own civil law are guaranteed to them under the Quebec Act of 1774 Nevertheless they are an integral part of the nation and strongly nationalistic Canada is bilingual by law and all government publications are printed in both French and English

The French Canadians were the original Canadians Samuel de Champlain founded the city of Quebec in 1608 12 years before the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock The struggling colony's hold was weak and in 1759 Quebec fell before the daring attack by the English general James Wolfe Four years later the colony was ceded by France to Britain (see French and Indian War)

From that time on the French Canadians were cut off from their mother country and there was virtually no additional immigration from France to swell their numbers Yet they have multiplied astonishingly From the 55 000 persons recorded in the census of 1754 they have increased in less than 200 years to 4319 000 They are still increasing faster than any other group in Canada Families of 10 to 14 children are typical They comprise the great majority of the population of the Province of Quebec and about two fifths of New Brunswick Of the 1 021 520 people in the city of Montreal two thirds are French

Soon after the close of the American Revolution on Canada received a large immigration from the south The United Empire Loyalists were citizens of the 13 American Colonies who remained loyal to the British government during the Revolution Between 1783 and 1784 about 40 000 of them migrated across the border to become the pioneer settlers in New Brunswick and southern Ontario Unlike the French this nucleus of British subjects was soon joined by newcomers from England Scotland and Ireland Today they number almost 7 million

The Prairie Provinces were settled in the early years of the 20th century by farmers from eastern Canada northern and central Europe and the United States Since 1913 Canada has lost almost as many people by emigration to the United States as it has gained by

immigration from abroad The population is now about three fifths urban

The Roman Catholic Church claims 43 per cent of the people Of the Protestants 20 per cent belong to the United Church and 15 per cent to the Anglican Church or Church of England

Canadian citizenship was not clearly established until Jan 1 1947 Until then Canadians had been 'British subjects On that date all native-born Canadians became Canadian citizens

#### Railroads Bind the Nation

In a country of vast distances and few people railroad building is enormously expensive Yet Canada ranks third in railroad mileage Only the United States and Russia have a larger mileage

The development of the country was impossible until lines of steel bound together its widely separated parts When the fathers of confederation in 1867 welded eastern Canada into a dominion they had to agree to complete the Intercolonial Railway from Halifax to Montreal This is still the only road wholly within Canadian territory between the Maritime Provinces and the St Lawrence Valley

British Columbia entered the Dominion in 1871 on condition that a transcontinental railroad be started to the Pacific coast within two years The last spike of the Canadian Pacific Railway was driven on Nov 7 1885 Two other transcontinental railroads followed—the Grand Trunk Pacific and the Canadian Northern The three competing roads expected immigration to fill the thinly settled prairies and provide a profitable traffic The first World War stopped both immigration and the flow of new capital The two newer roads failed to meet the payments on their

bonds and the government was forced to take over their control They were consolidated into the Canadian National system in January 1923 Only the Canadian Pacific and several short lines (less than half the total mileage) remain in private ownership

The Hudson Bay Railroad from Le Pas in Manitoba to Churchill on Hudson Bay was completed by the government in 1931 to give midwestern Canada a short route for wheat shipments to Europe The province of Ontario owns and operates the Ontario Northland Railway from North Bay to Moosonee on James Bay In Quebec the line to the iron mines at Burnt Creek is farthest north On the western prairies the end of steel is at Fort McMurray Alta

#### Modern Highway Building

Canada has about 200 000 miles of surfaced roads and another 400 000 miles of other roads providing fast and safe travel for its approximately 3 mill on motor vehicles The first transcontinental road

#### QUEBEC HANDICRAFTS



A French Canadian woman is weaving an arrow sash. In the background is a handloom still found in many French homes. Women baskets and rugs from Quebec hooked rugs, handmade lace and wood carvings are widely admired

## LAYING A CORDUROY ROAD OVER MUSKEG



The difficulties of road building in northern Canada are apparent in this picture of the Alaska Highway (formerly Alcan) under construction. After the forest has been cleared, a corduroy road is laid over the swampy, decayed vegetable matter known

as muskeg. A corduroy road is a blanket of tree trunks covered with earth and moss. Later it is surfaced with gravel. Even in summer, ice lies a few feet below the surface. In spring, melting snow and ice make a swamp on each side of the road.

known as the Trans-Canada Highway, was sanctioned in 1949. This joint federal-provincial project will, when completed, run 5,000 miles from Nova Scotia on the Atlantic coast to Vancouver on the Pacific.

Even more spectacular was the construction of the 1,523-mile Alaska Highway (formerly Alcan) between March and November 1942. This road was hewn out of the wilderness to provide a land route between Alaska and the United States. It extends southward from Fairbanks, Alaska, through White Horse, Yukon Territory, and Fort Nelson in northern British Columbia, to Dawson Creek on the Peace River, where it strikes an older road to Edmonton. A string of military airfields parallels the road. Scheduled bus lines operate over it throughout the year. In 1943 a new road was built between Peace River, Alta., and Fort Providence on Great Slave Lake.

#### Development of Air Transport

The discovery of crude oil at Fort Norman on the Mackenzie River in 1921 led to the first large-scale attempt to establish air transportation in the Far North. Canada now carries more air freight than any other country in the world—chiefly minerals, and machinery and supplies for the mines. Airplanes are used also in prospecting for new mines and in forest and fishery patrol work. The famous Royal Canadian Mounted Police today do more of their work by airplane than on horseback. The many "bush" lines of the northwest have been consolidated into the Canadian Pacific Air Lines. This airline also has international routes from Vancouver to the Orient and Australia.

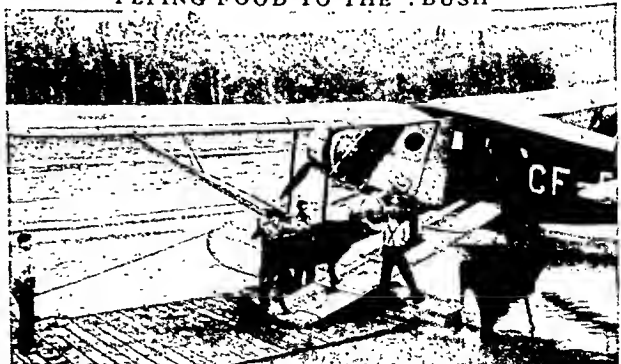
Southern Canada, with its railroads and highways, developed aviation facilities more slowly than the north. In 1938 Trans-Canada Air Lines was completed from Halifax to Vancouver and north to Edmonton. It operates coast to coast, across the Atlantic, and to the United States and the Caribbean.

During World War II Canada was the base for the British Commonwealth Air Training Plan. Thousands of pilots trained in Canada and played an important part in the war. They comprised a large body of skilled fliers for postwar commercial aviation. Canada's air lanes are also important to the United States. During the war the two countries co-operated in building airports in the Far North. Planes traveling between the United States and Europe use the airport at Gander, Nfld., under the terms of a pact giving Canada certain routes across United States territory. At Churchill, on Hudson Bay, the two countries maintain a large military airport.

#### Varied Agriculture and Farming Regions

Agriculture once employed more people than any other industry, but it is now second to manufacturing both in number of workers and in total value of output. Only a small portion of the land is used for crop production. About 550,000 square miles, less than one sixth of the area of the country, has agricultural possibilities. Considerably less than one half of this area is cultivated.

#### FLYING FOOD TO THE "BUSH"



Shoving a reluctant cow aboard an airplane requires the talents of four men. This fresh beef on the hoof will be flown to prospectors in the "bush"—the remote wilds of the Far North.

The long-settled eastern part of the country is devoted to mixed farming—cereals, cattle, dairy products, fruit, and vegetables.

The French farmer of the St. Lawrence River valley is a peasant in the finest original sense of the word—one who lives close to the land. The purpose of his life is not to get rich, but to cultivate the soil and pass on the good acres to his sons. He has

#### APPLE ORCHARDS OF NOVA SCOTIA



The beautiful and fertile Annapolis Valley in Nova Scotia is famous for its apples which it exports to such distant lands as South Africa and South America. This orchard lies along a cove which opens into the Bay of Fundy.

little concern for world markets. His large family consumes much of what the farm produces. The small surplus is sold in the near-by cities. In good times the *habitant*, as he is called, is not so prosperous as his American and English neighbors. But when depression comes he is not so poor. It is the French, with their unexcelled capacity for hard work who are pushing farther north onto the thin lands of the Shield, slowly extending the farming area of Canada.

The Scotch English farmers of Ontario and the Maritime Provinces are more specialized than the French and more dependent on export markets. Dairying and stock raising are important. They have made Canada one of the world's largest exporters of cheese. Canadian bacon and ham, eggs, butter, and evaporated milk are shipped to Great Britain in growing quantities. Fruits are exported to Great Britain, South America, and South Africa. The most extensive fruit-growing areas are the Annapolis Valley in Nova Scotia, and southeastern Ontario between the Great Lakes. Apples lead in value. Peaches and grapes, tobacco and sugar beets, maple sugar and syrup, and flax are also important products.

Across the continent in British Columbia, between the Coast Range and the Rocky

Mountains are the fertile Fraser and Okanagan valleys. They are famous for their fruits and vegetables.

On the prairies conditions are ideal for growing hard spring wheat. Marquis hybrid once used throughout Canada and the American West was developed by a Canadian botanist, Sir Charles Saunders (see Wheat). During World War I the wheat acreage expanded by 7 million acres. The small population could not consume the production and Canada became the world's largest exporter at one time supplying nearly half the world's requirements.

When crops are large and foreign markets eager to buy the Prairie farmer prospers. But in the drought years of 1934-1935 and 1936 the grain shriveled in the fields. In the years that followed European countries were raising their own wheat in preparation for war while Canadian wheat piled up in grain elevators. World War II left Great Britain the sole buyer of a surplus which in 1941 was 450 million bushels. The average income of the Saskatchewan farmer fell from \$1,614 in 1928 to \$141 in 1937. The eastern farmer can live off his land; the western farmer is at the mercy of weather and world trade. After the war Great Britain agreed to buy from Canada 140 to 160 million bushels annually during 1946-50 at a fixed price. Canada signed the International Wheat Agreement for stabilizing world wheat prices in 1949. It renewed its membership in 1953 for three years although Great Britain did not continue in the agreement.

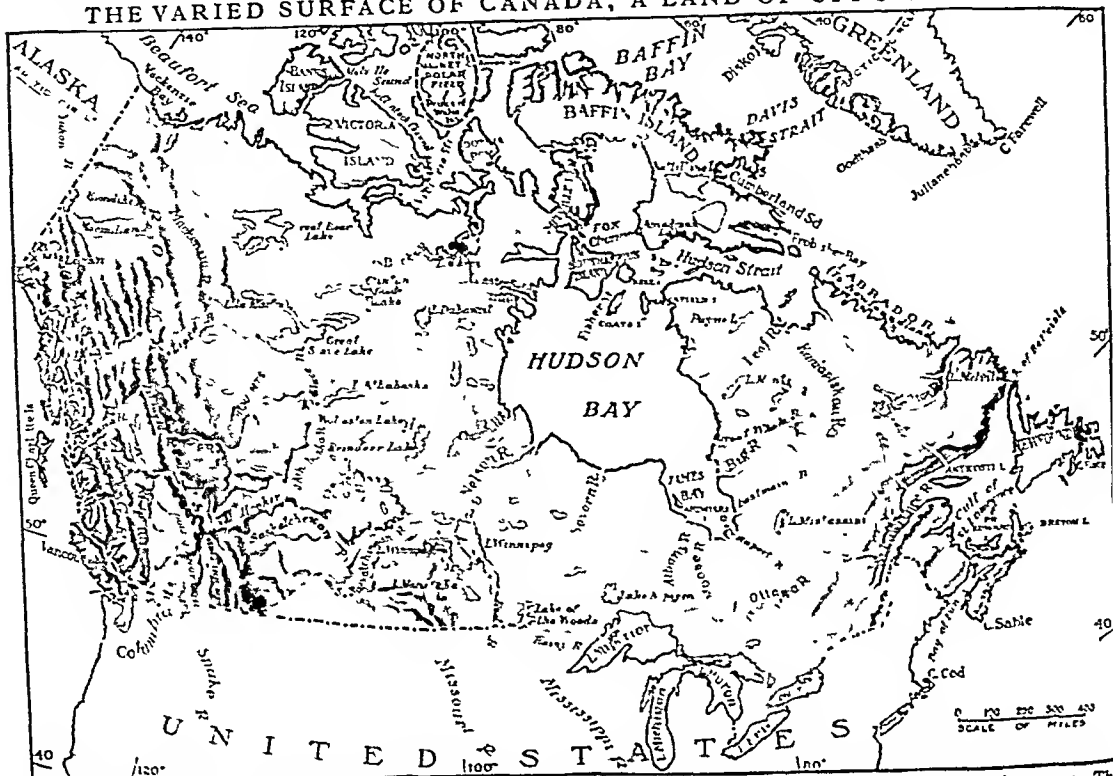
The government has urged the Prairie farmers to diversify their crops and they are now less dependent on wheat, oats and other grains. Livestock raising has increased in the Prairie Provinces.

#### CATTLE ROUND-UP IN ALBERTA



This herd of cattle is being driven across the Milk River in southern Alberta to summer pasture in the foothills of the Rocky Mountains. Alberta is one of the leading stock raising provinces in Canada.

## THE VARIED SURFACE OF CANADA, A LAND OF OPPORTUNITY



North America frays out to the north into a tangle of islands, straits, and fiords. Hudson Bay cuts deeply into the con-

continent. Bordering the Pacific Ocean are mountain ranges. The vast realm of Canada is nearly equal in area to all of Europe.

Canada has vast resources, yet it is a leader in conservation. It is spending large sums on reclamation and irrigation projects, principally in the Prairie Provinces and in British Columbia. The largest, the St. Mary-Milk River development in Alberta, will water thousands of acres. The adjacent Bow River project is another large irrigation scheme.

The Canadian agricultural co-operatives and credit unions are among the largest in the world. They operate grain elevators, purchase flour, lumber, coal, fuel oil, and all kinds of farm machinery and supplies for their members. Wheat pools were formed in 1923. The farmers delivered all their grain to the pools to be marketed by a central sales agency. The pools ran into financial difficulties during the depression years and the federal government was forced to come to their assistance. In 1935 their functions were assumed by the Canadian Wheat Board. The Board purchases wheat from the farmers at a fixed price and sells it in the international market.

#### Other Natural Resources

Canadian fisheries, furs, timber, and minerals attracted the first adventurers and settlers. They still provide employment for a large proportion of the working population and furnish the raw materials for the rapidly growing manufacturing industries.

Fisheries. The cold, shallow waters off the north Atlantic coast, with their many undersurface plateaus, or "banks," are among the world's richest fish-

ing grounds. The cod fisheries of the Grand Banks were discovered by John Cabot in 1497. Before 1502 fleets of French, Spanish, and Portuguese boats were crossing the ocean each year to fish on the Banks. At first they erected temporary shelters on the shore. There they salted and dried the catch and at the end of the summer season returned with it to Europe. When they discovered that the inshore fisheries were as plentiful as those of the deep sea and far less dangerous, they began to stay all winter. The first permanent settlements were fishing villages.

The inshore waters, controlled by the government, cover 15,000 square miles. The North Atlantic grounds, including the Bay of Fundy and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, cover 215,000 square miles. Lunenburg, center of the deep-sea fisheries, has the world's largest fleet of fishing schooners. But every coastal village of the Maritime Provinces and Newfoundland has fishing vessels, canneries, and drying sheds.

The Pacific coast has rich salmon fisheries. The fresh waters of the interior are valuable for their commercial fisheries and as an attraction to sportsmen.

The most valuable species are the Pacific salmon, the Atlantic lobsters, herring, cod, halibut, whitefish, and sardines. British Columbia leads the provinces with about 40 per cent of the value of Canadian fisheries; Nova Scotia is second with 20 per cent; Newfoundland is third with about 15 per cent; and New Brunswick is fourth with about 10 per cent.

Only a small part of the catch can be consumed at home. From 60 to 70 per cent is exported. In 1932 the United States took about three fourths. Great Britain was a prime market until dollar shortages reduced its buying power. The salmon canneries on the west coast are the most valuable of the many canning and curing plants.

**Furs** The early French fishermen also traded in furs. Their large profits soon attracted adventurers who came to the New World for quick wealth. As the Spanish overran South and Central America in search of gold, so the French traders and trappers explored the heart of North America for furs (see *Furs and Fur Trade*). Beaver pelts long served as currency and the beaver occupies a place of honor on the Canadian coat of arms. So great was the destruction of these animals that they were threatened with extinction in eastern Canada by the 20th century. The writer and lecturer Gray Owl became their champion and educated the public to protect them.

Advancing civilization has driven the fur-bearing animals far to the north and greatly reduced their numbers, but northern Canada is still one of the world's greatest sources of furs. Trapping and hunting are the chief occupations of the Indians and Eskimos. The Hudson's Bay Company has enjoyed a virtual monopoly of the northern fur trade for nearly 300 years (see *Hudson's Bay Company*). Its forts are the remotest outposts of white civilization in the far north. In the summer the trappers bring their furs by canoe to these trading posts. Many remain during the summer to work for the Company, returning with winter to the deep forests. Airplanes are now bringing furs out of the most inaccessible regions. Montreal holds the largest auctions. London and New York are the leading buyers.

# CANADA'S OLDEST INDUSTRIES



The top picture shows Indians with fur furs at a trading post at Yellowknife. They will take payment partly in cash and partly in supplies. The bottom picture shows a salmon cannery at Prince Rupert, British Columbia.

Fur farming is growing rapidly in importance. In 1921 it accounted for only 3 per cent of the total value of raw fur production in Canada. By 1938 it had increased to 43 per cent. By 1951 36 per cent. A large part of all silver fox and mink pelts produced come from fur farms. The federal Department of Agriculture maintains an experimental fur farm on Prince Edward Island.

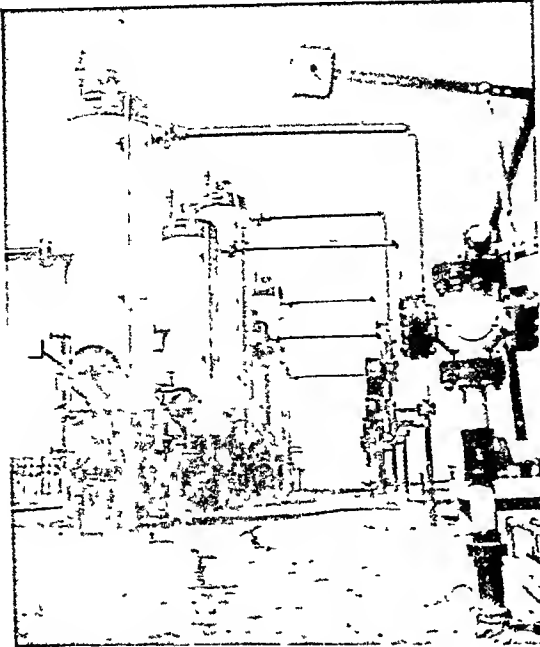
**Timber** Timber ranks with fish and furs as one of Canada's earliest resources to be developed.

Forests cover 35 per cent of the land area. Three-fourths of the trees are conifers or softwoods from which comes 95 per cent of the commercial cut. Douglas fir from British Columbia, spruce, hemlock, white pine, cedar, and balsam fir are the most valuable species. Except in the Maritime Provinces, 90 per cent of the timber lands are Crown property. As new regions are opened up, the land suitable only for forest is withdrawn from public sale and set aside by the government for timber production. The lumber companies are granted cutting rights only. The federal Forest Service maintains six forest experiment stations.

**Minerals** Canada is one of the richest nations in minerals. In 1933 it ranked first in nickel and asbestos, second in platinum, gold, and cadmium, aluminum, and perhaps uranium. Third in cobalt and silver, fourth in copper and lead. Ontario leads with one-third the value of the nation's production. In Toronto is the world's largest mining exchange.

During World War II vital minerals never mined before were developed to meet war needs. Among these were mercury, tungsten, chromium, molybdenum, and tin. Most of the smelting and refining is done in Canada. After the war many existing ore deposits had record outputs and numerous ore bodies were discovered.

## OIL PRODUCTION IN ALBERTA



The oil fields around Edmonton, Alta., opened in 1947, are among the largest in North America. By 1953 pipelines carried their oil east to Sarnia, Ont., and west to Vancouver, B. C.

The Sudbury mines of Ontario yield about 90 per cent of the world's nickel and half its platinum. A large nickel-copper-cobalt mine was opened at Lynn Lake in northern Manitoba in 1952.

Quebec produces almost all of Canada's asbestos. Gold is Canada's most valuable mineral. It comes from Ontario deposits at Porcupine, Red Lake, and Kirkland Lake; from Noranda in western Quebec; from the Flin Flon mine on the Manitoba-Saskatchewan boundary; and from Yellowstone in the Northwest Territories.

British Columbia produces most of the nation's lead and zinc, principally from the Sullivan mine at Kimberley. The largest ore smelter in the Commonwealth is at Trail. A giant lead-zinc-copper deposit was found near Bathurst in New Brunswick in 1953.

Before 1939 Canada imported most of its aluminum. At the end of World War II the reduction plant at Arvida on the Saguenay in Quebec had a capacity greater than the entire world's production. An even larger smelter began operation in 1939 at Kitimat, B. C. With plentiful hydroelectric power, Canada imports aluminum ore, processes it, and then exports most of it.

At Great Bear Lake is the world's greatest source of radium and uranium and production from this region greatly reduced their world price. This was the source of the uranium used in the United States in making the atomic bomb in 1945. A possibly even larger uranium deposit at Beaverlodge Lake in northwestern Saskatchewan was discovered in 1951.

Quebec has the largest deposit of ilmenite, the ore of titanium, at Allard Lake, 400 miles northeast of

Quebec City. A railroad from Havre St. Pierre on the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the deposits was completed in 1950. The ore is shipped to a smelter at Sorel.

Canada has experienced an oil boom since the discovery of the Leduc field near Edmonton, Alta., in 1947. Redwater, Leduc-Woodbend, Bonnie Glen, and other large fields in Alberta and Saskatchewan were later opened. A 1,126-mile pipeline carried oil from Edmonton to Superior, Wis., by 1950. It was extended 635 miles to Sarnia, Ont., in 1953. In the same year a 721-mile pipeline was completed from Edmonton to Vancouver, B. C. The oil sands at Fort McMurray on the Athabaska River in northern Alberta are the greatest known oil reserves on earth (see Alberta).

Far to the north in the District of Mackenzie is the Norman Wells oil field. It was producing about 1920, but it was brought into large-scale production during World War II when the United States Army built the 1,600-mile Canol pipeline to a new refinery at White Horse, Yukon Territory. Wells are also producing in southeastern Ontario and in New Brunswick.

Pipelines for natural gas are planned from Alberta, British Columbia, and Saskatchewan to the Pacific west coast and to eastern Canada.

Alberta, British Columbia, and Nova Scotia have large coal reserves, but they are located 1,000 to 2,000 miles from the industrial coal-using districts of Ontario and Quebec. These provinces find it cheaper to import their coal from the United States.

Great deposits of iron beneath Steep Rock Lake in northwestern Ontario were brought into production in 1944. On the Quebec-Labrador border is an iron deposit larger than the Mesabi Range. A 360-mile railroad was opened in 1954 from Seven Islands on the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Knob Lake and Burnt Creek.

## Tremendous Growth of Industry

Modern industry received its start in the early 20th century when the railroads opened up the western prairies and increased the demand for manufactured goods. World War I resulted in greater variety of products and more industrial efficiency. Many articles that had been imported were made at home. During

## PULP AT PORT ALFRED



This great mound of peeled logs at Port Alfred, Que., on the Saguenay River, will be ground into pulp to make paper. Quebec and Ontario are the leading provinces in pulp and paper production, while Canada is the foremost producing country.

and after World War II Canada made its greatest industrial progress. It is now an important industrial nation of the world. Manufacturing today exceeds agriculture in the number of people employed.

In 1939-50 the gross value of manufacturing multiplied four times. Steel production more than doubled. The chemical nonferrous metals shipbuilding petroleum and airplane industries greatly expanded.

About 80 per cent of the manufacturing is carried on in the parts of Ontario and Quebec that lie between the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence. Ontario accounts for about 50 per cent, Quebec 30 per cent. Here lives the bulk of Canada's industrial manpower. Close by are such raw materials as timber and minerals, water power, and large markets in the United States. The vicinity of Sarnia in western Ontario is called Chemical Valley for its oil refining and other chemical plants. In 1952 a large jet engine plant opened at Malton, Ont. Canada is a leading producer of military and commercial jet airplanes.

Canadian manufacturing falls into three groups. First and most valuable are those processing the raw materials of the country for export, such as pulp and paper. A second group of industries produces goods for a large domestic market. Its raw materials are unexported. Such products include textiles, rubber goods and sugar. The third group consists of branches of United States industries, such as those making trucks and automobiles, agricultural implements and electrical apparatus. They are set up in Canada in order to reach the Canadian market without paying tariffs and to export to other parts of the British Commonwealth under preferential trade agreements.

In 1950 the paper and pulp industry led in the gross value of products. Other leading industries are slaughtering and meat packing, motor vehicles, nonferrous metal smelting and refining, petroleum products, sawmills, primary iron and steel, butter and cheese, cotton yarn and cloth, and flour mills.

#### Dependence on International Trade

Canada produces far more than it can consume. The wheat crop is 1.5 times consumption, paper production

10 times, and nonferrous metal output 20 times. Canada exports more newsprint paper than any other country. The United States market absorbs about 90 per cent of the production. To the United States also goes 80 per cent of Canada's pulp and 99 per cent of its pulpwood. Canada is among the world's leading exporters of bacon and ham, butter and cheese, flour and feed products and fish. Canada however must import such essentials as rubber, tin, tropical fruits, fibers, sugar, coffee and much coal and machinery.

Canada's very existence depends on a world prepared to buy its goods and to sell it what it needs. With only one half of one per cent of the world's population, Canada ranked fifth in international trade before World War II, fourth in exports and eighth in imports. At the close of the war it was the third exporter in the world, in 1951 it ranked fourth. About one third of the country's national income is dependent on foreign trade, as compared with 8 to 10 per cent in the United States. When world markets are disturbed by depression and war, Canada suffers more severely than nations that are more nearly self-sufficient.

The United States and Great Britain are Canada's two best customers. Before World War II exports were equally divided between the two. In 1953 about 59 per cent of Canada's exports went to the United States and only 17 per cent to Great Britain. About 74 per cent of imports came from the United States and 10 per cent from Great Britain.

#### Close Relations with United States

The long unfortified boundary between Canada and its nearest neighbor symbolizes their friendly relations. Since the War of 1812 they have worked out problems through neutral commissions and boards of arbitration. In 1817 Charles Bagot, British minister to Washington, and Richard Rush, United States secretary of state, signed the Rush-Bagot Agreement demilitarizing the Great Lakes (see Great Lakes). It stipulated that no warships were to be built on the lakes. A few armed vessels enforce revenue laws. The International Joint Commission, formed in 1909, settles any controversy over boundary affairs.

### SOME NEW WAR BORN INDUSTRIES OF CANADA



Aluminum is being pressed out into tubes for aircraft construction. Bauxite ore is shipped from British Guiana to Alvida, Ont., where power from the Shipshaw dam melts it.



A workman is holding a lump of optical glass which will be made into fine lenses. This is one of the many products Canada formerly had to import.



Synthetic rubber is made at Sarnia, Ont. Here bales are being wrapped for shipment. The rubber's principal use is in tires and tubes. Much rubber is exported.



The International Boundary Commission defines, marks, and maintains the boundary line between the United States and Canada and between Alaska and Canada. Several fisheries commissions handle problems arising from common use of coastal and Great Lakes waters for salmon, halibut, and other fishing.

The Permanent Joint Board on Defense was created under threat of invasion by enemy forces in August 1940. Prime Minister William Lyon Mackenzie King and President Franklin D. Roosevelt signed the agreement binding their countries permanently in joint defense of North America. Their meeting at Ogdensburg, N. Y., scene of several bloody border raids during the War of 1812, was historic. This was the first military agreement ever signed by Canada with a country outside the British Commonwealth of Nations and the first such agreement ever signed by the United States.

Several joint economic committees work on certain common problems. One of their most interesting studies is the North Pacific Planning Project, which covers northern British Columbia, Yukon Territory, and Alaska. Its immediate object is "to gather basic information on the region and to develop . . . proposals for Canadian-United States economic co-operation in the development of resources, the improvement of standards of living, settlement, and other undertakings."

Canadian and American scientists in 1944 drew up a plan for an international Arctic Institute of North America, which is undertaking systematic polar research. "Good neighbor" relations are furthered by the joint Canada-United States Committee on Education, sponsored by the American Council on Education. Its purpose is to strengthen mutual respect and understanding.

#### Education and the Arts

Public education is similar to that in the United States, with eight years of elementary and four of secondary training (five in Ontario). It is compulsory in the lower grades, and literacy for the country as a whole is very high (95.74 per cent). Schools are under the authority of the provincial governments. They are financed by local taxing districts, assisted by provincial grants. Provision is made in each province, except Manitoba, for tax-supported Catholic schools.

Vocational and technical schools have been established with the assistance of federal grants. Seven of the provinces support universities, corresponding to the state universities in the United States. These are New Brunswick, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta,

British Columbia, Newfoundland (Memorial University), and Ontario (University of Toronto). Four other universities are supported by provincial funds—Dalhousie (Halifax), McGill (Montreal), Queen's (Kingston), and Western Ontario (London). Outstanding among the Roman Catholic French universities are St. Francis Xavier (Antigonish, N. S.), for training in co-operatives, Laval (Quebec), and Montreal. King's College, (Halifax), founded in 1789 at Windsor, is the oldest school of higher education.

Public libraries have developed in close collaboration with the schools. (For an account of Canadian libraries, see Libraries.)

The National Research Council, founded in 1924, operates scientific research laboratories for investigating industrial and defense problems. It also co-ordinates the work of other research laboratories in Canada. The Council directed the Chalk River atomic energy plant, about 95 miles northwest of Ottawa, from

1947 to 1952. A new Crown company, Atomic Energy of Canada, Ltd., now operates the project. Its program is devoted to research and to the production of isotopes for peacetime uses. Canadian scientists helped develop the atomic bomb.

The Banting Research Foundation, named for the codiscoverer of insulin, makes grants to workers in medical research (see Banting and Best).

A vigorous body of literature is developing (see Canadian Literature). The press follows the pattern of United States journalism, although on the whole it is more conservative. Tabloids have never been successful; and lurid, sensational dailies are rare. The ablest and best-known editor in the country was John W. Dafoe, associated with the *Winnipeg Free Press* 1901-44. For nearly half a century he influenced Canadian thought. It has been said of him that he was "a last rugged relic of the days of personal journalism," equal in stature to such editors as Greeley, Dana, and Watterson in the United States.

In painting, Canadians have won international recognition only since World War I. Of the earlier artists, few are important. Paul Kane (1810-71) portrayed Indian life. His work is of greater historical than artistic interest. Cornelius Krieghoff (1812-72) was called the "Hogarth of Canada," although his studies of rural life in the lower St. Lawrence are hardly comparable with those of that great artist.

After Confederation, appreciation of art was fostered by the founding of the Ontario Society of Artists (1872), forerunner of the Royal Canadian Academy, and the Montreal Art Association (1875). One

#### A PROSPECTOR FILES HIS CLAIMS



A Canadian "mountie" acts as witness as a prospector files his mining claims. Later the "mountie" will check the location and see that the prospector's interests are protected.

## A SCHOOL CAR IN NORTHERN ONTARIO



In sparsely settled northern Ontario a Canadian National railroad car serves both as transportation and as a schoolroom for the widely scattered school children.

of the first painters to gain distinction in Europe was James Wilson Morrice (1864-1924), whose work is represented in the Tate Gallery, London. The first World War saw the birth of a genuine Canadian school of painting marked by fresh originality. In Toronto, in 1920, was held the first exhibition of the Group of Seven. These young painters were Lawren Harris, A. Y. Jackson, Arthur Lismer, J. E. H. Macdonald, Frank Johnston, F. Horsman Varley and Franklin Carmichael. In the words of Arthur Lismer, the group attempts to portray not the photographic appearance of the Canadian scene, but its rhythm and grandeur. They dispense with diverting detail in order to achieve broad design and mass effects. A Montreal group, similar to the Seven in Toronto, has also gained wide recognition.

## How Canada Is Governed

Canada is a completely self governing nation. It conducts its domestic and foreign affairs through its own representatives. By the Statute of Westminster (1931) all limitations on its lawmaking powers were removed. Its constitution embodied in the British North America Act of 1867 formerly could be amended only by the British Parliament. In 1949 the Canadian House of Commons voted to discontinue submitting constitutional amendments to the English Parliament. The highest court of appeals remained the Privy Council in England until 1950 when the Supreme Court of Canada became the final tribunal. Use of the word 'dominion' was dropped in 1950. Upon becoming a nation in 1931 Canada elected to remain a member of the British Commonwealth under the sovereignty of the king who is king of Canada as well as of the United Kingdom.

Like the United States Canada is a federal union, uniting ten provinces and two territories under a strong central government. The constitution grants to the federal government all power not expressly given to the provinces.

all criminal law, the nomination and removal of provincial lieutenant-governors and the important veto on provincial legislation.

The political machinery of government is British rather than American (see Cabinet Parliament). The Crown of England appoints a governor general as his personal representative, usually for a term of five years. Theoretically the governor general is the head of the government. Actually he has no more direct control over government and legislation than the Crown has. He can do nothing except on the advice of his Canadian ministers. Unlike the president of the United States, he has no veto on legislation. As in Britain even the speech he makes at the opening of Parliament is written by the Prime Minister. In the past he served as the medium of communication between the Canadian and the British governments. Since 1927 direct communication has also been carried on between the governments through a high commissioner. The governor general's position is one of official dignity rather than power.

## GRADUATION AT THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



A graduating class marches past University College in the background. The University of Toronto, founded in 1827 as King's College, has the largest enrollment in Canada.

The reverse is true in the United States whose constitution specifies the powers of the central government and grants all others to the states. The provinces legislate on such matters as education, public works, direct taxation to raise money for provincial purposes, borrowing money on the credit of the province, guarantees of civil rights and property, administration of justice, public institutions, amendment of the provincial constitution except as regards the office of lieutenant governor, appointment and payment of provincial officers and the granting of licenses. The federal government makes laws for peace, order, and good government of Canada. "Stronger than the central government of the United States, it has control over banking, marriage, divorce, appointment of judges, the nomination and removal of provincial lieutenant-governors and the important veto on provincial legislation."

## WHERE ALL CANADA IS GOVERNED



This air view shows the great quadrangle of government buildings in Ottawa, capital of the nation, where Canada's laws are made. On a bluff high above the Ottawa River rises the main Gothic Parliament Building, which houses the Senate Chamber, the House of Commons, and the Parliamentary Library. The

Peace Tower, with its carillon of 53 bells, rises 291 feet above the Parliament Building. It is a memorial to the dead of World War I. On either side of the quadrangle are the East and West blocks housing other government offices. The long bridge in the background connects Ottawa with the city of Hull, Que.

The real head of the government is the prime minister, who is the leader of the majority party in the House of Commons. The governor-general invites him to choose a Cabinet, or ministry. He and his ministers must be members of Parliament. They remain in office only so long as they are supported by a majority in the House of Commons and must resign on a vote of want of confidence. If the Cabinet is forced to resign, the prime minister advises the governor-general to call upon the leader of the opposition party to form a new government.

#### Functions of the Cabinet

The Cabinet combines both legislative and executive duties. It introduces bills to the House, including the money bills. Without its support important bills on public matters stand little chance of passage. The Cabinet members head the various executive departments of the government, which correspond to those in the United States. The position of secretary of state is held by the minister for external affairs. Other ministries include finance, mines and resources, justice, public works, transport, pensions and national health, fisheries, agriculture, labor, trade and commerce, and postoffice. During World War II several defense ministries were created. There may also be ministers "without portfolio" (ministers without executive duties). The Canadian ministers are also members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada, a purely honorary body. Legally, however, the Cabinet is a committee of this body, and all Cabinet ministers become privy councilors for life.

The Parliament is divided into two houses. The Senate consists of 102 members, appointed for life by the governor-general on the advice of the Privy Council. Legislation passed by the House of Commons

can be voted down by the Senate, but this power is seldom used. Thus the Senate has little political influence, and its abolition has long been recommended.

The House of Commons is elected by the people for the duration of Parliament, which may not be longer than five years. As in the United States it is a representative body. Representation is proportionate to the population of each province. The present House has 262 members, but the next Parliament will have 265 seats as provided by the British North America Act of 1952.

The provincial governments are headed by a lieutenant-governor, who is appointed by the governor-general. He acts only on the advice of his provincial Cabinet, headed by a prime minister. The minister is responsible to the legislature. All legislatures are unicameral, except that of Quebec, which has two houses—a Legislative Assembly elected by the people, and a Legislative Council of 24 members appointed by the lieutenant-governor for life. Any British subject 21 years of age or over may vote if he has been a Canadian resident for one year.

#### The Canadian Court System

There are three federal courts. The Supreme Court consists of a chief justice and eight puisne, or associate, judges. It has appellate jurisdiction in both civil and criminal cases. The Exchequer Court has jurisdiction over all claims affecting the interests of the Crown and those concerning copyrights, trademarks, and patents. The Admiralty Court is a division of the Exchequer Court. It handles cases relating to shipping, navigation, trade, and commerce. Each province has a supreme court. Judges are appointed for life by the governor-general on the advice of the federal Cabinet.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CANADA

- I Location and size C-65 chart U-246 location in world map W-204 in North America map N-250 political divisions map C-63-9 air distances polar projection map A-531
- A. The provinces Alberta A-141-4 British Columbia B-312-17 Manitoba M-78-81 New Brunswick N-137-138 Newfoundland (with Labrador) N-137-40 L-76 Nova Scotia N-307-9 Ontario O-384-7 Prince Edward Island P-411-12 Quebec Q-4-8 Saskatchewan S-46-9
- B. The territories Northwest Territories (provisional districts of Mackenzie Keewatin and Franklin) N-298 Yukon Territory Y-348
- II Structure of the land C-67-75 N-247 maps C-67-86 N-245
- A. Mountains and plateaus list C-65
- 1 Appalachian system C-67 A-276 Notre Dame Mountains Q-5 map C-73
  - 2 Laurentian plateau or Canadian Shield L-137 N-265 picture C-70
  - 3 Cordillera C-6 B-313 Rockies R-173-6 pictures N-29 A-141 C-9
- B. Interior plains or western provinces C-70-6
- C. Rivers and lakes C-77 list C-65 map U-256-7
- 1 Great Lakes C-178-85
  - 2 Rivers Columbia C-415a Mackenzie M-15 pictures C-6 Peace P-102-3 Red R-88 St. Lawrence S-19-21 Yukon Y-348 picture N-255
- D. Coast line and islands C-75 C-117 N-133-40 P-411 V-437
- E. Land changes in past ages N-264-5 Ice Age I-4-7 G-184 G-54 Niagara Falls N-230
- III Climate C-77-8 N-248-253 P-103 affects plants and animals map N-265 summer and winter winds maps N-248 rainfall maps N-246 R-71
- A. Eastern oceanic N-80-8 N-139 P-411
  - B. Eastern Q-6 L-76 O-384 Great Lakes G-180
  - C. Prairie M-79 S-47 A-142
  - D. Pacific coast and mountain B-313-14
  - E. Arctic regions A-37-8 Y-348
- IV Plants and animals C-78 N-258-63 color pictures N-259-62 Arctic A-328 color pictures A-329 (caribou C-122 reindeer R-97)
- V Where and how the people live C-65 S-83 map N-245 immigration and emigration C-67-83 citizenship C-83 holidays and games F-56 L-82-4
- A. Atlantic region Newfoundland and Labrador N-139-140 L-6 Maritime Provinces C-83 (New Brunswick N-138a Nova Scotia N-308 picture C-70 Prince Edward Island P-412)
- B. St. Lawrence Valley and Ontario Peninsula C-75 Q-70 pictures C-89-91 Quebec French C-83 Q-4 M-331 Q-9-10 pictures C-83 Q-6
- C. Prairie Provinces M-78-79 S-47 A-143
- D. Rocky Mountains and Pacific coast B-313-14
- E. Indians and Eskimos I-112 E-393-7 C-83
- VI Resources and industries list C-65 products maps N-266-267 occupations pictograph C-66
- A. Forests and forest products C-78-87 L-340, N-263 map N-246 picture N-244
- 1 Eastern N-138a N-140 L-76 N-308 O-385 Q-7 pictures C-88 N-138
  - 2 Western A-143 B-314 M-79 S-47
- B. Agriculture C-84-6 N-265 products map N-257 cultivated land map A-71 irrigation I-2-3 wheat W-115-18 picture C-70
- 1 Maritime Provinces and Newfoundland N-138a N-307 P-411 N-140 picture C-85
  - 2 Quebec and Ontario Q-6-7 O-384 pictures Q-4 C-64 O-384-5 maple products M-83
  - 3 Prairie Provinces Manitoba M-78-9 Saskatchewan S-46-7 Alberta A-142-143 P-103
  - 4 British Columbia B-315 V-437
- C. Fisheries C-86-7 F-115-17 L-78-7
- 1 North Atlantic New Brunswick N-138a Newfoundland and Labrador N-139-40 L-76 Nova Scotia N-308 C-118 picture C-9 Prince Edward Island P-412 Quebec Q-4
  - 2 Inland waters Great Lakes G-184 Hudson Bay H-437 Manitoba M-79 picture M-80 Saskatchewan S-48 Alberta A-143
  - 3 Pacific British Columbia B-314 picture C-87 salmon S-28 seal S-88
- D. Furs and fur trade C-87 F-376 H-438 products map N-257 Alberta A-143 Manitoba M-79 picture M-80 Nova Scotia N-309 Labrador L-6 Prince Edward Island P-411 Saskatchewan S-47-48
- E. Minerals and mining C-87-8 L-137 A-320 N-264 list C-60 picture C-89 products map N-266 aluminum A-184 gold G-137 iron I-28-248 petroleum P-169 C-88 platinum P-316 radium and uranium C-88 R-87 U-405 N-238
- 1 Maritime Provinces and Newfoundland C-85 N-308 N-138a C-118 A-140
  - 2 Quebec and Ontario Q-7 O-385-6 aluminum pictures Q-5 C-89 asbestos A-401 cobalt C-87-2 emery E-389 nickel A-238 picture N-234
  - 3 Western provinces M-79 S-48 A-142 B-314
  - 4 Yukon Territory and Northwest Territories Y-348 N-298
- F. Water power C-77 W-89 O-385 O-428 Q-5-6 L-6 P-103 Niagara Falls N-230 picture map N-231 Shipshaw Development C-77 Q-6
- G. Manufacturing C-88-9 pictograph C-66 Alberta A-143 E-37 C-24 British Columbia B-315 V-437 V-468 Manitoba M-79 W-156 New Brunswick N-138a Newfoundland N-140 Nova Scotia N-308 H-249 Ontario O-384-5 H-243 K-47 L-307 O-428 T-134-5 W-156 S-51 pictures C-89 Prince Edward Island P-412 Quebec Q-7-8 M-381 Q-11 Saskatchewan S-48 R-96
- VII Transportation and trade C-77-83-4-89 N-140 N-303 Q-7 O-385 M-79-80 Yukon Territory Y-348
- A. Principal seaports Halifax H-248-9 picture A-309 Saint John S-18 picture N-138a Quebec Q-11 Montreal M-381 picture C-66 Vancouver V-437 picture B-316 Victoria V-468
- B. Rivers and lakes C-77 pictures C-85 N-138a Great Lakes G-178 maps G-181-183 picture O-385 St. Lawrence S-19 map S-20 (St. Lawrence Seaway Project S-20-1 R-157 C-103) Yukon Y-348 picture N-265

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CANADA

## Books for Younger Readers

- Bonner, M. G. *Canada and Her Story* (Knopf, 1950).  
 Bonner, M. G. *Made in Canada* (Knopf, 1943).  
 Brown, G. W. and others. *Story of Canada* (Heath, 1949).  
 Dickie, D. J. *Great Adventure* (Toronto, Dent, 1952).  
 Kidd, K. E. *Canadians of Long Ago* (Longmans, 1952).  
 Peck, A. M. *Pageant of Canadian History* (Longmans, 1943).  
 Ross, F. A. *Land and People of Canada* (Lippincott, 1947).  
 Thorp, L. H. *Company of Adventurers* (Little, 1946).

## Fiction and Biography

- Acker, Helen. *School Train* (Abelard, 1953).  
 Brill, E. C. *Madeleine Takes Command* (Whittlesey, 1946).  
 Cook, Lyn. *Bells on Finland Street* (Macmillan, 1951).  
 Dunham, Mabel. *Kristi's Tree* (Toronto, McClelland, 1948).  
 Hombleton, Jack. *Forest Ranger* (Longmans, 1949).  
 Hooke, H. M. *Thunder in the Mountains* (Oxford, 1948).  
 Lambert, R. S. *Adventure to the Polar Sea* (Bobbs, 1949).  
 Langstreth, T. M. *Mounty in a Jeep* (Macmillan, 1949).  
 McPhedron, Marie. *Golden North* (Macmillan, 1948).  
 Meader, S. W. *Trap-lines North* (Dodd, 1946).  
 Riley, Louise. *Mystery Horse* (Messner, 1950).  
 Scott, J. M. *Hudson of Hudson's Bay* (Schuman, 1951).  
 Syme, Ronald. *Bay of the North* (Morrow, 1950).  
 Syme, Ronald. *Champlain of the St. Lawrence* (Morrow, 1952).

## Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

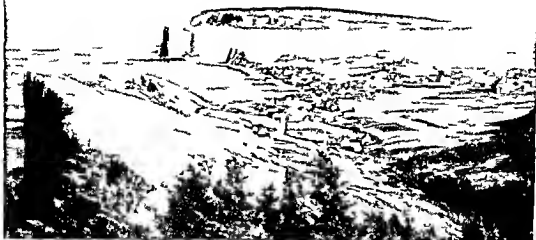
- Buchanan, D. W. *Growth of Canadian Painting* (Toronto, Collins, 1950).  
 Canada Year Book (Ottawa, King's Printer, published annually).  
 Coreless, J. M. S. *Canada; a Story of Challenge* (Cambridge Univ. Press, 1953).  
 Chafe, J. W. *Canada, Your Country* (Toronto, Ryerson Press, 1950).  
 Dawson, R. M. *Democratic Government in Canada* (Univ. of Minn. Press, 1950).  
 Dorland, A. G. *Our Canada* (Toronto, Copp, 1949).  
 Gibbon, J. M. *Romance of the Canadian Canoe* (Toronto, Ryerson Press, 1951).  
 Innis, M. E. *Changing Canada*, 2 v. (Toronto, Clarke, Irwin, 1952).  
 Jefferys, C. W. and McLean, T. W. *Picture Gallery of Canadian History*, 3v. (Toronto, Ryerson Press, 1942-45).  
 Le Bourdais, D. M. *Canada's Century* (Praeger, 1952).  
 Longstreth, T. M. *Scarlet Force* (Macmillan, 1953).  
 McInnes, G. C. *Canadian Art* (Macmillan, 1951).  
 McInnis, E. W. *Canada* (Rinehart, 1947).  
 McWilliams, M. S. *This New Canada* (Toronto, Dent, 1949).  
 Neuberger, R. L. *Royal Canadian Mounted Police* (Random, 1953).  
 Roberts, Leslie. *Canada: the Golden Hinge* (Rinehart, 1952).  
 Siegfried, André. *Canada* (Duell, 1949).  
 Witke, C. F. *History of Canada* (Appleton, 1941).

## Provinces and Regions

- Beston, Henry. *St. Lawrence* (Rinehart, 1942).  
 Bird, W. R. *This Is Nova Scotia* (Macrae Smith, 1950).  
 Bayes, F. C. *British Columbia* (Toronto, Copp, 1949).  
 Campbell, M. E. W. *Saskatchewan* (Rinehart, 1950).  
 Davies, Blodwen. *Quebec* (Greenberg, 1951).  
 Finnie, Richard. *Canada Moves North* (Macmillan, 1948).  
 Florence, Agnes. *Manitoba* (Toronto, Copp, 1949).  
 Garvin, A. B. W. *This Is Ontario* (Toronto, Ryerson Press, 1937).  
 Landon, Fred. *Lake Huron* (Bobbs, 1944).  
 Lawson, J. I. and Sweet, J. M. *This Is New Brunswick* (Toronto, Ryerson Press, 1951).  
 Mowat, Farley. *People of the Deer* (Little, 1952).  
 Ricker, M. B. *Alberta* (Toronto, Copp, 1949).  
 Roberts, Leslie. *MacKenzie* (Rinehart, 1949).  
 Wright, E. C. *Saint John River* (Toronto, McClelland, 1949).  
 (See also the bibliography for Canadian Literature.)

- C. Canals C-77, C-109, S-19, map S-20: Rideau, picture O-428; Trent H-452; Sault Sainte Marie S-49-51; Welland Ship W-90, map N-231, picture C-76
- D. Highways C-83-4: Alaska Highway C-84, R-158c, pictures C-64, 84; Pan American Highway project R-158f
- E. Railroads C-83, 101, R-61, 62, 63, P-103: Toronto T-155; Windsor W-156, picture R-68; Winnipeg W-156; Regina R-96; Calgary C-24
- F. Air transport C-76, 84, P-412, S-48, E-237, A-143: Gander Airport (Newfoundland) and Goose Bay Airport (Labrador) N-140, L-76; Arctic A-330
- VIII. Communication: ocean cables C-5, 8, N-139, map C-5; telephones T-45; wireless C-118
- IX. Principal cities, list C-65. For cities not listed below, see names in Fact-Index
- A. Alberta, list A-141: Edmonton E-237, picture A-144; Calgary C-24
- B. British Columbia, list B-312: Victoria V-468-9; Vancouver V-437, picture B-316
- C. Manitoba M-79-80, list M-78: Winnipeg W-156, picture M-78; Churchill H-437
- D. New Brunswick, list N-137: Saint John S-18
- E. Newfoundland: St. John's (Fact-Index)
- F. Nova Scotia N-307: Halifax H-248-9, picture N-309; Sydney C-118
- G. Ontario O-385, list O-384: Toronto T-154-5, picture O-385; Hamilton H-253; Kingston K-47; London L-307; Ottawa O-428-9, picture C-92; Windsor W-156; Sault Sainte Marie S-51
- H. Prince Edward Island P-412
- I. Quebec, list Q-4: Quebec Q-9-11; Montreal M-380-1, picture C-65
- J. Saskatchewan, list S-46: Regina R-96
- K. Yukon Territory: White Horse, Dawson Y-348
- X. Education and libraries C-90, L-199-203: Alberta A-143; British Columbia B-316, V-437, V-469; Manitoba M-80, W-156; New Brunswick N-138b; Newfoundland N-140; Nova Scotia N-308; Ontario O-386-7, K-47, L-307, T-155, pictures C-91, L-201; Prince Edward Island P-412; Quebec Q-8, M-381, Q-10-11; Saskatchewan S-48, R-96, picture L-202
- XI. Art and science C-90-1, O-428, T-155, W-156
- A. Literature C-105-7: Drummond D-156-7; Parker P-85-6. See also names of writers in Fact-Index
- B. Scientific research C-90: Frederick Banting and Charles Best B-53; Arctic Institute A-330
- XII. National government C-91-2: Parliament buildings, pictures C-92, O-428, L-202; administration of Yukon and Northwest Territories Y-348, N-298; Royal Canadian Mounted Police P-355b, pictures P-356, C-90; government libraries L-202
- XIII. Provincial governments C-91: Alberta A-143, 144; British Columbia B-316; New Brunswick N-138b; Nova Scotia N-308; Ontario O-386, picture O-385; Prince Edward Island P-412; Quebec Q-8; Saskatchewan S-48, 49, picture R-96
- XIV. Religion C-83: United Church of Canada C-304; dual education in Quebec Q-8
- XV. National and provincial parks N-38f-39, A-141-2, W-156, C-117-18, O-386, Q-5, color pictures N-29, Map N-38f, pictures N-38f, A-141, C-117, N-307, A-6
- XVI. History: see Reference-Outline for Canadian History

# The STIRRING STORY of CANADA'S PAST



At the mouth of the St. Lawrence where gulf and river meet, explorers found an inviting entrance to the heart of a continent. This is the village of Percé at the tip of the Gaspé Peninsula. Beyond in the gulf rise Percé Rock and Bonaventure Island.

**CANADIAN HISTORY** It is no accident that the story of the white man in North America begins in Canada. Nowhere does a coast open more inviting arms to the explorer. The broad Gulf of St. Lawrence, the St. Lawrence River and the Great Lakes lead 2,400 miles into the heart of the continent.

Perhaps because of this very highway Canada still faces eastward across the sea to Europe. It is the only country in the western hemisphere which has kept its political ties with the old world. Even more absorbing than the tale of early exploration is the story of a developing nation—the first to become an independent member of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

## The Northmen Arrive

Nearly a thousand years ago a Norse seaman died far from home in the heart of a wild and unknown country. His comrades buried him as was the custom with his weapons—his iron sword and shield. Centuries passed by. In 1931 the rusted weapons were discovered at Beardmore, Ontario near Lake Nipigon north of Lake Superior. Scientists believe the relics to be Norse weapons of the period A.D. 900 to 1000. These are the earliest evidence of the white man in North America. The Beardmore Viking and his companions probably came from Norway to Iceland and Greenland, then through Hudson Strait into Hudson Bay southward to James Bay and overland on well marked Indian trails toward Lake Superior.

From the Norse tales of adventure the sagas we know that another Viking, Leif Ericson, visited the Atlantic coast of Canada about the year 1000 (see America). The Vinland which the sagas describe can not be located with certainty. Undoubtedly these

daring sailors saw the rocky shores of Nova Scotia and the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

Their journeys were long unknown to the rest of Europe. Although they continued to visit North America for 300 years, they made no permanent settlements. Meanwhile the great expanse that was to become Canada was left to a handful of Indians and Eskimos—probably never more than 700,000.

Among the leading tribes were the Iroquois who lived on the shores of the lower Great Lakes and the Hurons on Lake Huron and Georgian Bay. Various Algonquin tribes occupied a broad belt from the Atlantic coast to the Rockies. Among these tribes were the Ojibwa or Chippewa of western Ontario and the Blackfoot of the Plains region. In the Mackenzie and Yukon river basins were the Athapascans. On the Pacific coast from Vancouver Island to Alaska lived the Haida, Tlingit, Tsimshian and numerous other tribes. (See also Indians.)

## Rediscovery and Exploration

In 1497 the continent of North America was rediscovered by John Cabot, an Italian merchant-sailor in the service of King Henry VII of England (see Cabot). John Cabot, a few years earlier, he was in search of a short route to Asia. After sighting Newfoundland he sailed to Cape Breton Island. There he raised a huge cross and the English flag, thinking he had reached Cathay (China).

He was bitterly disappointed with these bleak coasts. Where were the cities with gold-encrusted towers and silver bells the caravans bearing silks, spices and jewels that Marco Polo told about? His son Sebastian commented without interest on the fact that the cod fish were so thick in the seas they could be scooped

up in baskets. Bears waded out from shore and caught them with their claws. The Cabots called the country *Baccalaos*, the Basque word for codfish.

To Catholic Europe, which ate a great deal of fish, this was an important discovery. Although Cabot's journey failed in its effort to reach Asia, it brought fishermen and fur traders to the new lands. And most important, it was the basis of England's claim to Canada almost 300 years later.

During the next 40 years it became clear that this was not Asia. Explorers then tried to find a northern passage to the "Western Sea" which we call the Pacific Ocean. Francis I, king of France and rival of the Spanish Charles V, was not to be outdone in the race for the rich trade of the East. Spain and Portugal had already agreed to divide the whole New World between them. Francis wrote a sarcastic letter to Charles asking for evidence that "our Father Adam" had made him and the King of Portugal "his universal heirs." In 1524 Francis sent out an expedition under the Florentine navigator, Giovanni Da Verrazano. Verrazano skirted the American coast from North Carolina to Newfoundland, and named the region around the Gulf of St. Lawrence "New France." France based its claim to North America on this journey. Ten years later Francis sent Jacques Cartier, a daring sea captain of St. Malo, to America to strengthen his claims and to seek a northwest passage to China (see Cartier, Jacques). Cartier was the first explorer to press beyond the coast line into the interior. On his second voyage, in 1535, he sailed up the St. Lawrence River as far as the Indian village of Hochelaga, the site of modern Montreal. There he climbed a steep hill which he named Mont Royal, the "royal mountain." From its summit the first white man to see this land gazed far over the beautiful countryside. Probably he too was bitterly disappointed to find only poor Indian villages where he sought splendid Oriental cities. He could not look ahead 400 years to see this same river teeming with the ships of two nations bearing rich cargoes of grain, oil, and lumber. He could not know that the forest-blanketed plateau to the north hid a priceless treasure of minerals, richer by far than the spices and jewels of the East.

#### The Founding of New France

For the next 75 years France was too busy with civil wars to think of the wilderness across the sea. Then, with some peace and prosperity restored, Henry IV was able to give his attention to an enthusiastic young man named Samuel de Champlain (see Champlain, Samuel de). Just home from a voyage to Mexico, he was fired with the desire to create for France an empire as rich as Spain's. Furs were valued in Europe

almost as highly as gold and silver. Champlain was convinced that before the fur trade could be built up, permanent settlements must first be established.

In 1605, with Sieur de Monts, he founded Port Royal (the present Annapolis Royal), on the Bay of Fundy, Nova Scotia. In 1608 he founded Quebec. New France at last was on a permanent basis. With the explorers and fur traders came missionaries to win the heathen Indians for the Catholic faith. The Recollet friars arrived in 1615, the first Jesuits in 1625. Madame de la Peltrie, founder of the Ursuline Convent in Quebec in 1639, and Marie de l'Incarnation, its first Mother Superior, were noble women whose self-sacrificing service to Indian and white alike helped to soften the violence of a frontier post. Montreal was founded in 1642 by the Society of Our Lady of Montreal as a mission. Sieur de Maisonneuve was its first governor, Mademoiselle Jeanne Mance the director of its hospital.

Farmers came, too, men content to cultivate the soil instead of growing rich in the fur trade. Louis Hébert, a Parisian druggist, who arrived in 1617, was the first of the *habitants*, as the French farmers are called who continue to be today such an important element in the population of Quebec.

#### JACQUES CARTIER CLAIMS CANADA FOR FRANCE



On the shores of the Gaspé Peninsula, in July 1534, Jacques Cartier erected a great wooden cross as a symbol of France's ownership of this land. Impressed by the ceremony, the Indians looked on.

Nothing but the determination of Champlain and the missionaries saved New France during the first half century of its existence. The home country gave it little support. Champlain had allied himself with the Hurons. Their enemies, the Iroquois, were determined to wipe out the French. They murdered the missionaries, raided the small, poorly defended settlements. In the winter of 1659-60 word came to the garrison at Montreal that several war parties were planning to close in on them. Instead of waiting for the attack, Adam Dollard des Ormeaux, the young officer in command at Montreal, went out to meet them. At

the foot of the Long Sault Rapids on the Ottawa River he and his heroic band were slaughtered. But they had fought hard enough to discourage further attacks and so saved the colony.

#### FOUNDERS OF NEW FRANCE



The colony at this time was governed by the Company of New France organized by Cardinal Richelieu in 1627. This powerful group of 100 associates or partners not only enjoyed a perpetual monopoly of the fur trade, but actually owned the whole vast region of the St. Lawrence and Great Lakes. Had it not been for Champlain and the missionaries mismanagement would have destroyed the colony. In 1663 King Louis XIV made the Company surrender its rights and New France became a royal colony.

As in the home country, government was autocratic and feudal. The governor appointed by the king was the civil and military ruler. Another royal official the intendant directed justice and public finance. The third important figure was the bishop, who ruled the religious life of the colony and supervised its education and the care of the poor. New France was fortunate in having three strong men in these posts early in its history. Frontenac who arrived in 1672 was a courageous and efficient governor (see Frontenac, Count Louis de). Jean Baptiste Talon first intendant built up the population of the country by encouraging immigration and granting bounties to large families. He strengthened outlying military posts, fostered domestic industries and attempted to make the colony self-sustaining. The place of the Roman Catholic Church in the lives of modern French Canadians is due very largely to the work of the first bishop, Francois Xavier de Laval Montmorency.

Under the feudal system of France the land was owned in huge grants by the seigneurs or lords. The *habitant* was a dependent of the seigneur. He paid him fixed sums of money for the privilege of cultivating and living on the land and performed certain services. Actually the farmer was almost completely free and his obligations to the seigneur were slight. The system was retained long after New France became a British

colony, although it was abolished in the home country by the French Revolution.

The great names that march across the pages of Canadian history during this period are many and their story is told elsewhere in these books. Jean Nicolet, Radisson and Groseillers, Marquette, Joliet and La Salle were among the traders and missionaries whose deeds are equally important in the history of the United States.

#### English Rivalry in Canada

The English meanwhile were pressing their own interests in North America. Martin Frobisher, John Davis and William Baffin were seeking the North-west Passage through the polar seas about the same time that Champlain was discovering the Great Lakes (see Polar Exploration). Henry Hudson in 1610 sailed across the bay that bears his name (see Hudson Henry). Nor were the French to be permitted a monopoly of the rich fur trade. The early history of northwestern Canada is the history of The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay. The charter issued by Charles II of

England in 1670 gave them sole trading rights in all unoccupied lands which drain into Hudson Bay. The area was named Rupert's Land for Prince Rupert the organizer of the Company and a cousin of the King. It covered all of present Manitoba and Saskatchewan, most of Alberta, northern Quebec and the Northwest Territories.

Just 200 years later the Company transferred its lands to the newly created Dominion of Canada but kept its fur monopoly. (For the story of this great Company see Furs and Fur Trade, Hudson's Bay Company.)

To the south the Atlantic seaboard was filling up and the English were pushing westward. Virginia alone had many more people than all New France whose population in 1673 was only 7,000. Conflict between the French and English could hardly be avoided. It came violently



Three of the strong men of New France were Count Frontenac (top), governor for more than 20 years, whose Indian wars broke the power of the Iroquois; Bishop Laval (center), first religious leader and organizer of missions and hospitals; and Champlain (bottom), explorer and founder of the first permanent settlements.



In 1689 the first of a series of four intercolonial wars broke out (see French and Indian War). The second, Queen Anne's War, ended with the Treaty of Utrecht (1713), by which France suffered serious territorial losses. It was forced to surrender to England all claims to Acadia (Nova Scotia), Rupert's Land, and Newfoundland. Driven from Acadia, the French built powerful Fort Louisbourg on Cape Breton Island to protect the entrance to the St. Lawrence River. The English founded Halifax to offset the menace of this "pistol held at England's head."

The last of the intercolonial wars opened in 1754. One tragic episode was the exile of the Acadians from Nova Scotia, made famous by Longfellow's poem 'Evangeline' (see Acadia). With the 12-weeks' siege of Quebec (1759), French rule in North America ended. This is considered one of the decisive battles which changed the course of world history. The ancient city under the command of the Marquis de Montcalm fell before the attack of the English general, James Wolfe. Both commanders died on the field of battle. (See Montcalm; Wolfe). By the Treaty of Paris (1763) Canada was ceded to Great Britain. All that now remains of the French possessions in North America is two small fishing islands, St. Pierre and Miquelon, which lie near Newfoundland off the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

#### The Canadians Under British Rule

The new British regime was friendly and tolerant. General James Murray, the first military governor, insisted that the French be given freedom of worship and civil rights under the French civil law—rights later guaranteed by the Quebec Act of 1774. They were subject, however, to English criminal law. Murray was succeeded in 1766 by Guy Carleton. For the next 30 years Carleton guided the destiny of Canada. He has been called the "Father of British Canada" as Champlain is called the "Father of French Canada." During the long struggle of the American Revolution it was this firm-handed, despotic governor who kept Canada loyal to Great Britain. He disastrously defeated Benedict Arnold in the siege of Quebec, and the Americans made no further attempt to invade Canadian territory.

An important aftermath of the American Revolution was the influx of some 40,000 United Empire Loyalists—citizens of the American colonies who had remained loyal to King George. They settled in southern Ontario and in the Maritime Provinces, becoming the founders of English-speaking Canada.

With them they brought the tradition of representative government. Government in New France had been despotic. Under the Quebec Act there had been a Council appointed by the Crown, and an autocratic governor who could and often did ignore the advice of the Council. At the insistence of the Loyalists, the Canada Act of 1791 separated Lower and Upper Canada. Lower Canada was French; Upper Canada, west of the Ottawa River, was British. They correspond to the present Quebec and Ontario. The Act also created

#### GRANTING THE HUDSON'S BAY CHARTER



King Charles II of England (right) signs the charter giving a fur-trading monopoly to the Hudson's Bay Company, May 2, 1670. His cousin, Prince Rupert (left), was the first governor. The land included all northern Canada from Labrador to the Rockies.

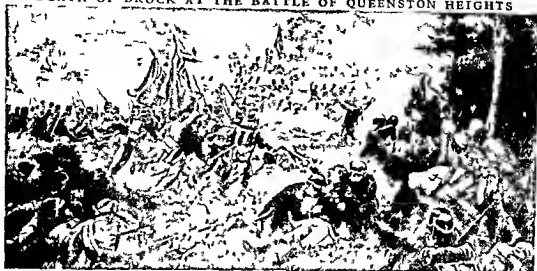
four colonies in the maritime region—Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Cape Breton Island. No government was set up for the West. Each colony had its own lieutenant-governor under a common governor-general, and a legislature of two chambers. The lower house was elective. The rights of the Roman Catholics were again guaranteed, and provision was made for the support of a Protestant clergy. Guy Carleton remained as governor of Lower Canada. John Graves Simcoe was the first governor of Upper Canada. In this enormous wilderness populated by a handful of pioneer farmers, Simcoe had to build an empire. He created counties for the election of representatives to the assembly. He established a system of courts. He planned new settlements, constructed military roads and bridges, founded the capital city of York, now known as Toronto. He even encouraged the migration of new settlers from the United States.

#### Exploration of the West

While these historic events were taking place in eastern Canada, the West was slowly being opened to settlement. In 1731 a French Canadian and his three sons had hunted for a short route to the Western Sea. Pierre de la Vérendrye explored the country around Lake of the Woods and Lake Winnipeg, and discovered the Saskatchewan River. He and his sons established a chain of trading posts in this region.

Samuel Hearne, a trader in the employ of the Hudson's Bay Company, in 1771 followed the Coppermine River to the Arctic Ocean and discovered Great Slave Lake. He was thus the first white man to reach the Arctic by an overland route. A few years later, in 1778, Captain James Cook explored the west coast of Canada from Vancouver Island to Bering Strait. He sailed through the Strait into the Arctic in search of the passage between the Pacific and Atlantic oceans, but was stopped by ice. George Vancouver charted the coast in 1792-93. Vancouver Island, Puget Sound, and other places were named by him.

## DEATH OF BROCK AT THE BATTLE OF QUEENSTON HEIGHTS



Urging his men to push on General Brock lies dying on the battle field. His brilliant leadership at Queenston Heights October 1812 repelled an invasion by American forces twice as large as his own

One of the greatest explorers of the Canadian West was Alexander Mackenzie a partner with the North West Company. In 1789 he followed the Mackenzie River, which bears his name from its source to the Arctic Ocean. In 1793 he reached the Pacific Ocean by way of the Peace River—the first European to cross the continent. After Mackenzie came David Thompson one of the greatest of all geographers. He surveyed the Columbia River and explored and mapped the prairies and mountains.

By 1811, when Thompson's work was completed, much of western and northern Canada had been explored. The only settlements however were the fortified posts of the fur traders. In 1811 Thomas Douglas, Lord Selkirk bought 100 000 acres of land in the Red River and Assiniboine valleys from the Hudson's Bay Company as a refuge for Scotch Highlanders. In spite of the hostility of the traders these farmers succeeded in establishing the first permanent settlements on the prairies which were destined to become one of the world's greatest granaries.

#### The War of 1812

Canada and the United States were bad neighbors for many years after the close of the American Revolution. On the frontier there was constant friction. Pioneers were pushing into new land. But the Indians were blocking the way westward with desperate determination to save their hunting grounds. The peaceful country of the north looked more and more desirable to the land hungry Americans. Moreover, they believed that Canada was arming the Indians. In Congress a group called the 'War Hawks' was clamoring for annexation of Canada.

The immediate excuse for the war was the seizure of American seamen by British warships, and other violations of America's neutral rights during the Napoleonic wars (see War of 1812). The first American

objective of the war was to seize Canada. This seemed easy. Its population scattered over a great area was half a million. Upper Canada which the Americans most desired, had only 90 000 people, the United States had more than seven million.

Instead of weakly surrendering however, the Canadians with the aid of British army and navy regulars, gave the United States a shock early in the war by capturing Detroit under the able leadership of Sir Isaac Brock and his Indian ally, Chief Tecumseh. Most of the fighting on the border occurred in the Niagara peninsula and most of it was indecisive. Canada succeeded in clearing the enemy from its side of the Niagara River and at the end of the war it held Fort Niagara on the American side and Fort Michilimackinac at the entrance to Lake Michigan.

In the defense of their country against an enemy of vastly superior resources, the Canadians showed great courage and ability. The struggle united the British and French and gave the people a new self-confidence.

#### Struggle for Self Government

After the War of 1812 Canada was able to give more thought to its government. The Act of 1791 which created Upper and Lower Canada provided for *representative* but not for *responsible* government. The lower house of the legislature in each province was elected by the people, but it had practically no power. All bills had to pass the upper house and the governor-general and might then be rejected by the home government.

The governor-general was appointed by the British Crown. He was advised by an Executive Council which he himself chose from the upper house of the legislature. The members of this Upper House had been appointed by the governor-general or his predecessors. The Legislative-Executive Council was there-

fore responsible to the governor-general and he to the home authorities, but no one was responsible to the people. As the governor-general was a stranger to the country, and served only for a few years, the ruling power actually fell into the hands of the few men in the Legislative-Executive Council, who held office for life. They and their friends and relatives held all the important official positions. Moreover there was no system of municipal government and so even local matters were decided by this small central body. In Upper Canada the autocratic government was ridiculed as a "Family Compact." In Lower Canada the discontent with the "Chateau Clique" was made more bitter by racial differences. The French Catholics resented being governed by a small minority of British Protestants.

Two ardent leaders of the reform movement appeared simultaneously in the two provinces—William Lyon Mackenzie in Upper Canada, and Louis Joseph Papineau in Lower Canada. Both men inflamed their followers into armed rebellion in 1837 (see Mackenzie, William Lyon; Papineau, Louis Joseph).

The uprisings were failures. The poorly organized bands of rebels were easily subdued by government troops, and the two leaders fled to the United States. The revolt did, however, direct the attention of Great Britain to the issues at stake, and hastened their reform by many years. In the meantime the Maritime Provinces were more peaceably agitating for similar reforms under the leadership of Joseph Howe in Nova Scotia, and Lemuel Allan Wilmot in New Brunswick (see New Brunswick; Nova Scotia).

In 1838 the Earl of Durham was sent to Canada to investigate the grievances of these troublesome colonies and to establish order. His "Report on the Affairs of British North America" is considered one of the greatest state papers in the English language. It outlined the plan which later resulted in the present government of Canada and laid down the principles of British colonial policy which have since prevailed.

Lord Durham recommended that responsible government be obtained by means of a cabinet which should have the support of the majority of the elective Lower House. The appointive Upper House he wished to retain as a check on the assembly. The colonial governor should act in harmony with the strongest party in the legislature, and should select his advisers from that party.

His second important recommendation was the union of Upper and Lower Canada under one government. The Act of Union was passed in 1840, becoming effective the following year and the two provinces were subsequently known as Canada West and Canada East. The Maritime Provinces remained separate. The purpose of the Union was largely to eliminate racial controversies by absorbing the French people into the English population. Durham did not understand the tremendous vitality of the French, and their determination to cling to their own ways of life. United Canada, therefore, still had many political problems to solve.

The first and most important recommendation dealing with responsible government was not put into effect until 1848. Lord Elgin, then governor-general, was a son-in-law of Lord Durham. He shared the older man's vision of Canada's destiny, but realized, as Durham did not, that the French must be given a voice in their own government. He asked Robert Baldwin and Louis Hippolyte LaFontaine jointly to form a new ministry. These were the leaders respectively of the English-speaking and the French-speaking members of Parliament (see Baldwin, Robert). The 1849 session of Parliament under their guidance was one of the greatest in the country's history. Nearly 200 bills became law. A Municipal Corporations Act gave self-government to counties, villages, and townships. The judicial system was revised. The University of Toronto was refounded as a non-sectarian school. Railroad building was promoted.

Enraged at the new liberalism, the extreme Tories rioted in Montreal in 1849 and burned the Parliament buildings. They even declared for annexation to the United States. Their violence ruined the Tory party and the new Conservative party which took its place has continued to the present day.

#### Beginnings of Confederation

The next decade saw rapid changes, a broadening outlook, and new responsibilities for the weak and divided colonies. Steamships were bringing in immigrants. Telegraphy and the cable were coming into common use. Everywhere people were on the move, exchanging ideas. Yet commercial intercourse was hindered by tariff barriers between the colonies, and different standards of currency, banking, weights and measures. The geographical barriers between them were becoming increasingly serious (see Canada). Each area had closer associations with the United States to the south than with the rest of Canada across thousands of miles of wilderness to the east and west. There were no intercolonial railroads to link the diverse elements. On the other hand the expanding American railways were drawing the trade of the Maritimes to Maine and New York, the commerce of the Red River region to Minnesota and the Middle West. Forty-niners, pushing northward after the California gold rush, discovered gold on the Fraser River in 1856, on Cariboo Lake in 1860, and began settlement of British Columbia. The threat of being absorbed piecemeal by the United States was very real.

The American Civil War (1861-64) underlined Canada's need of unity. Slavery, prohibited in Upper Canada after 1793, was abolished throughout the British Empire in 1833. For years Canada had been the destination of the "underground railway," and Canadian sympathies were with the North. But the North's blockade of Southern shipping, depriving English mill owners of cheap cotton, caused blockade-running that almost embroiled Britain and the North in war. Northern extremists revived the old cry of "manifest destiny" (that all of North America should become a part of the United States); irresponsible raids across the border, and the Maritime Provinces' open-

ness to blockade and invasion by sea, emphasized the necessity of defense (see *Civil War American*). Yet because of the lack of railroads British troops had to be transported from New Brunswick to Quebec across United States territory in Maine.

Lake railways and defense, trade depended upon uniting the provinces. The 10-year reciprocity treaty which Lord Elgin had negotiated was due to lapse in 1864. Since the United States appeared unlikely to renew it, the provinces must foster trade among themselves.

At the same time that these problems were becoming critical, a deadlock was developing in the Canadian legislature. The new Conservative Party, created after the ruin of the Tories, was led by John A. Macdonald of Canada West (see Macdonald). Sir John Alexander, and George Étienne Cartier of Canada East. Opposing them was George Brown, founder of the *Toronto Globe* and leader of the Liberals (called 'Clear Grits,' from their slogan 'Clear grit all the way through'). From 1850 to 1864 party forces in Parliament were so evenly divided that no ministry could remain long in power. In 1864, after two elections and three changes of Cabinet within three years, political progress became impossible. Despite his dislike of Macdonald, George Brown met him in friendly discussion on the floor of the House and announced his decision to overlook party differences and to cooperate with him and with Cartier. In this taking second place to Macdonald, Brown made possible the Coalition of 1864. This was the first step toward Confederation, for the Coalition was formed with the understanding that East and West Canada were to become a federal union, with a central government for common interests like defense, and provincial authority over local matters. The Maritime Provinces were to be invited to join.

To a Maritime Union conference at Charlottetown, P. E. I., in September 1864, the Coalition sent Macdonald, Cartier, Brown, Alexander Galt, and Thomas D'Arcy McGee, a former Irish nationalist who was later killed by a Fenian in Ottawa. They argued so persuasively for union of all British North America that the conference moved to Halifax and Saint John, where the plans were explained to the people.

At another conference, at Quebec, in October, delegates representing every province signed the 72 Quebec Resolutions, the plan of union underlying Canada's Constitution. Assuring each province control over local affairs, these resolutions demanded a strong national government to control defense, trade, tariffs and criminal laws, and to appoint judges and provincial lieutenant-governors. A railway was to be built between the Maritime Provinces and Canada, and another to open Red River and the Northwest to settlement and bring British Columbia into the union.

Objections from French-speaking Canada East, jealous of its independence, were overcome but Confederation was defeated in the Maritime Provinces. Depending on import duties to finance their governments, they feared national control of tariffs. Agree-

ments that each province should receive annually from the national government 80 cents for every person in its population led to the cry that the people had been 'sold for the price of a sheepskin.' Although the British government favored Confederation, the cause seemed lost at home.

#### Dominion and Expansion

Confederation was saved by a fanatic anti-British pro-Irish group the Fenians, operating from the United States whose intention was to invade Canada and use it as a base for conquering England. In 1866 border raids from Detroit to New Brunswick and renewed demands by American newspapers for annexation showed Canadians the dangers of disunity. In December Macdonald and other delegates from Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia attended the third of a series of Confederation conferences in London. In March 1867 Britain's Parliament passed the British North America Act based on the Quebec Resolutions and on July 1, 1867—since celebrated as Dominion Day—the Dominion of Canada was created.

Canada's peaceful change from colony to Dominion laid the groundwork for that remarkable association of dominions and homeland bound only by their common allegiance to the Crown known today as the British Commonwealth of Nations. Canada West and Canada East, renamed Ontario and Quebec, were given separate provincial governments. New Brunswick and Nova Scotia retained theirs. Ottawa became the capital of the Dominion government. (For an account of the form of government see Canada.)

Macdonald was chosen first Prime Minister and for the next quarter century, except for the years 1873-78, he guided the policies of the expanding nation. The first new territory to be acquired was Rupert's Land. The Hudson's Bay Company had discouraged settlement, to keep its lands for trappers and fur animals. But defending such immense territories proved too difficult, and the advancing United States threatened to annex the Canadian West. The Dominion paid the Company £300,000 (about \$1,500,000), and allowed it to keep its trading privileges and an amount of land equal to one-twentieth of the prairie lands west of Lake Winnipeg. (For present holdings and trade, see Hudson's Bay Company.)

In 1869 the only important colony between Ontario and British Columbia, established in the Red River Valley in 1811 by Lord Selkirk as a refuge for impoverished Scotch Highlanders, had a population of 12,000. Most numerous were the métis descendants of French Canadian trappers who had married Indian women. When William McDougall arrived as governor to take over the territory from the Hudson's Bay Company, he was met by armed métis led by Louis Riel, an educated but unstable half breed who opposed Dominion rule. McDougall retired across the border while Riel organized a provisional government and demanded civil and land rights which Ottawa had neglected. Opposed by settlers from Ontario, Riel hastily had one of them, Thomas Scott, executed thus causing bitter racial feeling throughout the Dominion.

Two men who understood the *métis* went to Ottawa to attempt a settlement of their grievances. These were Donald Smith (later Lord Strathcona), a Hudson's Bay Company factor, and Bishop Taché, the settlers' religious leader. As a result of their discussions the Manitoba Act of 1870 created the province of Manitoba, with a provincial government at Fort Garry (later Winnipeg). The French settlers' right to their religion and schools was recognized, but the Dominion retained control of land and natural resources. The government's determination to uphold its laws was made clear by dispatch of Canadian and British troops under Colonel (later Sir) Garnet Wolseley across 500 miles of trackless territory from Toronto to Fort Garry. Riel's forces were defeated and he went into temporary exile beyond the border.

#### Canada Reaches the Pacific

Relations between Canada and the United States were improving. British, Canadian, and American delegates met at Washington in 1871 to settle differences that had repeatedly threatened to plunge their countries into war. Macdonald, heading the Canadian delegation, withdrew Canada's claims for compensation from the United States for the Fenian raids, in the face of American claims against Britain for having built the *Alabama* and other Civil War blockade runners. (See 'Alabama' Claims.) This conference produced, in the Treaty of Washington, agreements on joint Canadian and United States use of the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence waterway and the Yukon River in Alaska, the Oregon boundary settlement, and reopening of Atlantic fisheries to the United States. Canada's reciprocal trade agreement was not renewed, but a commission fixed \$5,500,000 as the United States payment for fishing rights.

Although Britain promised loans for Canadian railways in return for Dominion concessions, Macdonald was bitterly disappointed at Canada's few benefits from the conference, and his sacrifice of Canadian interests made him unpopular. In Confederation he had achieved one of his two major goals. Moving toward the second—expansion of the Dominion from sea to sea—he became more unpopular. British Columbia joined the Dominion in 1871 on condition that the Pacific railway be built within 10 years. Completion of an Intercolonial Railway from Halifax, N.S., to the St. Lawrence had been an important condition of Confederation. The British Government guaranteed a loan of £3,000,000, and in 1873 the joining of existing railways in the Maritime Provinces and Quebec had so increased prosperity that Prince Edward Island entered the Confederation. Newfoundland, with its dependency, Labrador, did not become a province until 1949. (See Newfoundland; Labrador.)

#### Struggles to Build a Railway

But building a railway across the rock and forests of the Canadian interior from Ottawa to Winnipeg, and thence across the prairies and the Canadian Rockies, was an undertaking which many believed would never pay for itself. It took all Macdonald's skill to obtain from Parliament financial backing and huge

land grants for the railway builders. After the elections of 1872, contracts were awarded to Hugh Allan, of Montreal, and American financiers. It was discovered that these men had contributed heavily to the Conservative party's campaign funds. The "Pacific Scandal" rocked the Dominion and Macdonald's government fell. In 1873 the Liberals came into power with Alexander Mackenzie as prime minister.

Mackenzie, although industrious and persevering, lacked Macdonald's shrewdness. Concerned chiefly with administration, he lost touch with his party and the people. Yet from 1873 to 1878 he and his minister of justice, Edward Blake, accomplished much. Their General Election Law abolished property tests for membership in the House and introduced voting by ballot, a reform George Brown had demanded. Blake brought about establishment of the Canadian Supreme Court and the Court of the Exchequer.

The government, changing Macdonald's plans, began itself to build the Pacific railway section by section to Winnipeg. Progress being slow, a telegraph line and a wagon road were built to offset criticism from British Columbia. The West, troubled by lawlessness, was insecure. The government organized the North West (now called Royal Canadian) Mounted Police in 1873; and the following summer 300 "Mounties" rode westward, drove border whiskey-runners from the plains, and began the reign of law in the Northwest. White men had destroyed the buffalo herds on the great plains, and the Indians, depending on buffalo meat for food, faced starvation. The Mounted Police helped to establish the tribes on reservations where, under a Department of Indian Affairs, they were taught to support themselves by agriculture. Even the warlike Sioux became peaceful farmers.

#### Macdonald's National Policy

A serious depression handicapped the Liberal régime, and construction of the Pacific railway lagged. The Conservatives returned to power in 1878 with Macdonald's National Policy—enactment of high tariffs to protect Canadian manufacturers, rapid completion of the Pacific railway, opening of the lands west of Manitoba to settlement. These policies, aided by good harvests and a revival of the lumber trade with Great Britain and the United States, made the following years prosperous for Canada. The Dominion's territorial expansion was completed when, in 1880, Britain transferred to Canada the Arctic areas beyond the Northwest Territories. But the crowning achievement of Macdonald's second administration was the completion of the railway to British Columbia. The Canadian Pacific Railway Company was awarded a contract, including 25,000,000 acres of land; and Donald Smith (Lord Strathcona) drove the last spike in November 1885 at Craigellachie, in the Rockies.

The railway crossed the prairies none too soon. In 1870 Macdonald had neglected the *métis* demands for civil and land rights at Red River. He now repeated this mistake with *métis* who, settling in the Saskatchewan Valley, feared loss of their lands as newcomers came westward. Louis Riel returned in 1884; and in

March 1885 the métis again rebelled, aided by 20 000 dissatisfied Indians. Troops hurried west by rail captured Riel's headquarters at Batoche. Riel was rendered and was tried and hanged. But French Catholic agitation after his execution turned Quebec against the Conservatives. Macdonald's health broke and in 1891 he died.

The Conservative majority in Parliament then chose four prime ministers within five years. The ablest was Sir John Thompson, during whose term the Bering Sea controversy with the United States was settled by arbitration in 1892. Against American claims, the Bering Sea was declared open ocean and Canada was awarded \$425 000 compensation for seized vessels. The United States was upheld when open-sea hunting of fur seals with explosives or within 60 miles of the Pribilof Islands was forbidden.

From 1891 to 1896 was a stormy period. The farmers suffered from depression for tariff protection had raised the prices of manufactured goods. Immigrants came in slowly and the West remained undeveloped. Thousands of young men drawn to the prairies by the building of the rail road became discouraged and emigrated to the United States. The Conservative government was finally defeated on religious issues stirred up by Manitoba. That province in 1890 had established a system of non-sectarian schools and abolished the privileges guaranteed the French. Ottawa ordered Manitoba to restore the privileges. Manitoba argued that the Dominion constitution gave it control over education and refused. Feeling ran high and in 1896 the Liberals returned to power with a large majority.

#### Laurier and Liberalism

Wilfrid (later Sir Wilfrid) Laurier, a member of Mackenzie's 1878 Cabinet, became prime minister (see Laurier Sir Wilfrid) the first French Canadian to lead his country in this office. His 15 years as premier were years of growth and prosperity. He compromised the Manitoba quarrel by restoring religious instruction in the public schools and teaching by the bilingual system for ten or more children whose native tongue was French. He strengthened Dominion trade with Britain by lowering some tariffs and removing duties on goods needed by farmers. Canada shared in increasing world prosperity. Sir Clifford Sifton, minister of the interior, advertised the Dominion's advan-

tages to farmers and from 1896 to 1914 3 million immigrants came from Great Britain, the United States and Europe. Saskatchewan and Alberta were admitted to the Dominion in 1905 and with Manitoba these prairie provinces became the world's greatest wheat-growing region. The East found new markets for its products in the West and manufacturing grew rapidly. Laurier's government granted cash and land for construction of the Canadian Northern and Grand Trunk Pacific railways. By 1916 only the United States, Germany and Russia had more than

#### DRIVING THE LAST SPIKE IN THE CANADIAN PACIFIC



In the old photograph above, Donald Smith (who became Lord Strathcona) is shown driving the last spike in the Canadian Pacific Railway at Crangellach in the Rock at Nov. 7, 1885. After years of disheartening difficulties, Canada was at last united by a transcontinental railroad.

Canada's 40 000 miles of railways. The scattered population could not support such mileage. During the first World War all save the Canadian Pacific were nationalized in the Canadian National Railways.

#### Relations with the United States

Discovery of gold in the Klondike and the Yukon in the 1890's caused disagreement with the United States over Alaska's boundary. Arbitration in 1903 gave the United States coastal territory along British Columbia, shutting Canada from the seaports north of the Dixon Entrance. This was the last serious disagreement between the two countries. An International Joint Commission established in 1909 settling controversies over the use or diversion of waters crossing the international boundary or flowing from boundary waters has pointed one way toward world co-operation. Controversy over fishing rights was ended in 1910 and a new agreement on fur sealing reached in 1911. The United States in 1911 sought a reciprocal trade agreement with Canada, but when Laurier presented the plan to Parliament, also asking for naval vessels as a defense against the growing might of Germany, his government fell.

Dominating the Dominion's first 44 years, Macdonald and Laurier had made it a strong federal union, extending, as the motto carved in a stone of the Parliament Building at Ottawa announced, *A Mare usque ad Mare*—"From the sea even unto the sea."

#### Canada in the First World War

Robert Laird Borden was Conservative prime minister from 1911 to 1919 (*see* Borden, Robert Laird). In 1914, the first World War involved Canada with the Empire against the German-Austrian alliance. Henri Bourassa, Quebec Nationalist leader, pledged French Canadian support. The Dominion played a brilliant part in the war. Canadian Expeditionary Forces numbered more than 400,000 men overseas: Canada sent the Allies wheat, lumber, and vast amounts of munitions. Canadian troops in 1917 took strategic Vimy Ridge, and in one of the war's bloodiest battles, Oct. 9, 1918, captured Cambrai and helped win the war, in which 62,817 Canadians were killed and 127,000 wounded. One of the war's greatest disasters occurred at Halifax, when a French ship carrying nitroglycerine and gasoline collided with a Norwegian vessel. The explosion killed or injured 5,800 persons and destroyed two square miles of the port.

Early in the war Canada's military forces were recruited from volunteers. By 1917 it became necessary to adopt conscription. Violent opposition came from Quebec under the leadership of Bourassa. Laurier believed that Parliament should not adopt conscription without holding a referendum on the question. His position split the Liberal party, but events proved him to be right. The Military Service Act resulted in division and misunderstanding between the English and French which was to break out anew in the second World War 25 years later. There were serious draft riots, and in other parts of the Dominion conscription also fell short of success.

A short but severe depression caused political unrest before postwar industries revived. Laurier died in 1919, and Borden presently retired.

#### Progress Toward Self-Government

After a brief administration by Arthur Meighen, Conservative leader, William Lyon Mackenzie King, grandson of the leader of the 1837 rebellion, became the Liberals' prime minister in 1921. Automobiles, radio, and airplanes brought the provinces closer together, busses and trucks operated over extensive surfaced roads, and canal and railroad transportation increased. Combines, harvesting wheat on a large scale, lightened farm drudgery and speeded the organization of cooperative wheat-marketing pools. The Welland Ship Canal, taking lake ships past Niagara Falls, helped Canada ship its wheat, lumber, and paper to Europe. Nickel and radium mining brought new settlements in the vast interior. Peace River and northern Quebec's frontiers were opened to homesteading war veterans. Meighen was Prime Minister for another short period before the elections of 1926 returned Mackenzie King to office.

Canada had made notable progress toward self-government as a result of the events of the first World War.

Her prime minister had been a member of the Imperial War Cabinet which directed the war policy of the Empire. At an Imperial Conference, held in 1917, Borden had obtained the passage of a resolution that the Dominions "should be recognized as autonomous nations of an imperial commonwealth." At the Peace Conference of 1919, and in the League of Nations, Canada had been represented by her own delegates.

The Imperial Conference of 1926 recognized and clearly stated the now existing relations between Great Britain and the Dominions. The famous Declaration of Equality states that Great Britain and the Dominions are "autonomous Communities within the British Empire, equal in status, in no way subordinate one to another in any respect of their domestic or internal affairs, though united by a common allegiance to the Crown, and freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations." Five years later, in 1931, the British Parliament passed the Statute of Westminster, designed to give effect to the resolutions of 1926. The statute removed the last check on the Dominions' legislative powers. In 1949 the word "Dominion" was dropped by the government departments of Canada, anticipating formal legislation to abolish use of the term.

World depression during the 1930's, when the Conservative leader, Richard Bedford (later Viscount) Bennett, became Prime Minister (1930-35), interrupted foreign trade. Canadian wheat sold at its lowest price in three centuries, factories closed, the unemployed roamed the country, and dust storms on overplowed farmlands increased distress. As a defense against depression and the high Hawley-Smoot tariff of the United States, an Imperial Conference in Ottawa in 1932 drew up a series of agreements to promote trade among the Dominions. In 1936 Canada and the United States concluded the first Reciprocity Treaty in 70 years, lowering tariffs on many products.

#### The Rise of New Political Parties

In the depression that followed the first World War new political parties arose to contest the supremacy of the Liberals and the Conservatives (now called Progressive Conservatives). Most influential of several is the Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (C.C.F.), started in Saskatchewan as a loose combination of farmers, socialists, and city labor leaders. It advocates government ownership of banks, industries, and public services; planned production directed by an economic advisory board; national low-cost housing; and encouragement of all forms of co-operation. It has adherents in the other provinces, and many of its reforms have been adopted.

The radical Social Credit party has remained largely confined to Alberta, where it originated under the leadership of William Aberhart. The Labor Progressives are a rebirth of the old Communist party. In Quebec are the Quebec Nationalists and the Bloc Populaire, an extreme isolationist group.

#### The Second World War

Mackenzie King became prime minister again in 1935. Events were now leading rapidly toward a

**second World War** On Sept 10, 1939, Canada declared war on Germany. All men and women over 16 years of age were registered for war service. Military service for home defense was compulsory. Mackenzie King pledged himself not to ask for conscription for overseas duty. But in a plebiscite held in 1942 all the provinces except Quebec supported overseas conscription. Troops for the European battlefronts, however, continued to be raised by voluntary enlistments until 1944. In December of that year it became necessary to draft 16,000 men from the home defense forces to reinforce the hard pressed army overseas. Scattered riots throughout the Dominion recalled the draft riots of 1917.

#### Canadian Fighting Record

During the battle of the Atlantic, Canadian convoys carried reinforcements and supplies to England. Canada's ships aided in the evacuation of Empire troops from Dunkirk and Greece. Within a few hours of the attack on Pearl Harbor, in December 1941, Canada declared war on Japan. Japanese residents on the west coast were moved inland and troops were sent to British Columbia to repel possible invasion. Canadian troops and airplanes joined the United States in the defense of Alaska.

When the British garrison at Hong Kong was captured by the Japanese, Canada lost 1,985 men. The same number of Canadians was lost in the invasion of Sicily two years later. In the raid against German-occupied Dieppe in 1942, over half of the 5,000 Canadians who participated failed to return. The First Canadian Army, under the command of Lieut. Gen. H. D. G. Crerar, was on the left flank of the Normandy landings at Arnhem in the Netherlands. Canadian paratroops fought one of the war's bitterest engagements.

The armed forces totaled about 750,000. Canada suffered 102,934 casualties including 37,964 dead and 2,866 missing. The Royal Canadian Air Force lost 14,247, the navy, 1,911.

#### Co operation with Empire and the United States

Under the British Commonwealth Air Training Plan, air force units were sent to Canada for training. The government paid half the cost. Great Britain, Australia and New Zealand paid the rest. Up to 1945, when the program was discontinued, 224,296 men were trained, 163,797 of them Canadians. One fourth of Britain's R.A.F. fliers were Canadians.

Canada and the United States worked closely together in the defense of North America and the pro-

duction of war matériel. Prime Minister Mackenzie King and President Roosevelt in August 1940 met at Ogdensburg, N. Y., to sign an agreement creating the Permanent Joint Board on Defense. Canada made its airports available to American planes and permitted construction of the Alaska (Alcan) Highway, providing an interior route to Alaska. Joint War Production Committees and Joint Economic Committees

coordinated the resources of the two nations.

Production of Canadian industry almost tripled. Canada's armed forces needed only about 30 per cent of the huge output. The rest was sold or contributed to the other United Nations under the Mutual Aid Fund similar to the Lend Lease Act of the United States. During the war Canada gave Great Britain about \$4½ billion dollars in gifts, mutual aid and interest-free loans and canceled debts. In 1945 it loaned Britain an additional 1¼ billion dollars free of interest until the year 1961.

The war made clear Canada's growing importance as a sovereign nation. It took part in the Bretton Woods and San Francisco conferences and in the sessions of the United Nations.

#### Postwar Problems

Mackenzie King resigned from office in 1943 after nearly 25 years of service. Louis St. Laurent replaced him as prime minister and leader of the Liberal party (see King, St. Laurent). In 1949 Newfoundland entered the nation as the tenth province. That same year Canada signed the North Atlantic Treaty.

The last restrictions on its sovereignty were ended in 1949 when Canada gained the right to amend its own constitution instead of submitting it to the British Parliament. The Supreme Court of Canada also replaced the Privy Council in England as the final court of appeals in 1950.

Also in 1949, Canada and the United States agreed to pool their defense programs. Canadian forces joined the United Nations in Korea. Canada and other Commonwealth nations formulated the Colombo Plan at Colombo, Ceylon, to develop Asiatic countries. In 1951, Princess Elizabeth toured Canada. The next year, Vincent Massey became the first Canadian born governor general. Canada also informed the United States that it would construct the St. Lawrence Seaway project alone. In 1963, Prime Minister St. Laurent and President Eisenhower exchanged visits to discuss common problems. Later in the year, New York was authorized to join Canada in a power project on the St. Lawrence River.

#### CANADIAN-SCOTTISH REGIMENT IN LONDON



Canadian troops march over Westminster Bridge toward the House of Parliament in London. These men and their comrades played an important part in the winning of the second World War.



## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CANADIAN HISTORY

- I. Prehistoric times: Indians cross from Asia over Bering Strait I-89-91, 10Se (Eskimos E-396)
  - II. Discovery and early exploration C-95-95a, A-187, map A-189; the "Beardmore Viking" C-95
    - A. Later Vikings reach the New World N-294-6, C-95; Leif Ericson E-391, picture A-187
    - B. Early Indian tribes C-95, maps I-91, 106f, table I-107-S; Eastern Woodland I-99; Mackenzie-Yukon Caribou Hunters, I-94; Northwest Fishermen I-94, 106e; Eskimos E-393-7
    - C. Rediscovery by John Cabot (1497) C-95-95a, C-8-9, N-139; sights Cape Breton C-118
    - D. Search for a Northwest Passage A-190, C-95a; Henry Hudson H-437; Frobisher and Davis A-190, P-348, table P-349
    - E. Basis of French claims in North America A-190-I, C-95a; Jacques Cartier C-129-30
  - III. Founding of New France C-95a-b, A-190-1
    - A. Champlain at Port Royal and Quebec C-95a, N-308-9, C-185, pictures Q-10, C-95b
    - B. Maisonneuve founds Montreal C-95a, M-380-1
    - C. Habitants (French farmers) C-95a-b, Q-4
    - D. Government C-95b; Frontenac F-301
    - E. Mississippi and Great Lakes region explored A-191, M-307, G-185; Marquette and Joliet M-99, J-362; La Salle L-104-5; Hennepin H-334
    - F. Cadillac founds Detroit D-75, C-10
    - G. Early fur trade F-322-4; Hudson's Bay Company C-95b, H-438, M-80, picture C-96
  - IV. French and British conflict C-95b-96, chart H-369
    - A. British claims N-140, N-309; Acadia A-6
    - B. The first intercolonial wars: King William's War K-47; Queen Anne's War Q-11; King George's War K-46
    - C. The final conflict—the French and Indian War F-285, S-107, A-6; Wolfe wins Quebec W-181, M-378; Canada ceded to Britain by the Treaty of Paris (1763) C-96, S-107
  - V. A century of British rule C-96-100
    - A. American loyalists (Tories) settle in Canada C-96, N-138b, N-309, O-387, P-412, S-18
    - B. Exploring the West C-96-8, M-15, M-80
    - C. War of 1812 W-11-14, C-97, O-387, T-155
    - D. Canada-United States border treaties G-184, V-437, M-56, T-227, maps U-378, N-230
    - E. Struggle for self-government C-97-8, M-15, P-71, B-20
    - F. Effect of American Civil War C-98-9, 100, C-332
    - G. Founding the Dominion C-99, M-6, T-210
  - VI. Dominion and expansion C-99-100
    - A. British North America Act of 1867 creates the Dominion of Canada C-99
    - B. John A. Macdonald's first Conservative government (1867-73) C-99, M-6
      1. Rupert's Land purchased from Hudson's Bay Company (1869) C-99, H-438; Louis Riel and Red River Rebellion R-88, C-99-100; Manitoba becomes a province C-100, M-80
      2. Relations with the United States C-100, C-89
      3. Canada reaches the Pacific C-100; British Columbia enters the Dominion B-317
    4. Struggles to build a continental railway: scandal overthrows Conservatives C-100
  - C. Alexander Mackenzie's Liberal government (1873-78) C-100; North West (later Royal Canadian Mounted Police) C-100, R-96
  - D. Conservatives restored to power (1878)—Macdonald's policy C-100; Canadian Pacific Railway C-100 (Strathcona S-425, picture C-101); rebellion in Saskatchewan C-100; Bering Sea controversy C-101
  - E. Wilfred Laurier's long Liberal administration (1896-1911) C-101-2, L-138
    1. Immigrants settle Prairie Provinces C-101: Alberta A-144; Manitoba M-81; Saskatchewan S-49
    2. Gold discovered in Klondike and Yukon C-101; Yukon separated from Northwest Territories Y-348; Alaska boundary dispute R-222, C-101
    3. Relations with the United States C-101: reciprocal trade agreements C-101 (Laurier supports L-138, Borden opposes B-252)
  - F. Robert Borden forms a Conservative government (1911-20) C-102, B-252-3
    1. World War I C-102, B-252-3, H-439; Ypres W-223; Vimy Ridge W-226; Passchendaele W-227; Amiens W-230; Cambrai C-102
    2. Suffrage extended to women (1918) W-185
- VII. Between two World Wars C-102, chart H-369
  - A. Progress toward self-government C-102; Mackenzie King, Liberal prime minister K-44-5
  - B. The depression years C-102, S-49, A-144, K-44
  - C. New political parties C-102: socialism in Saskatchewan S-48, 49; Social Credit in Alberta A-144; social laws in British Columbia B-317
  - D. Statute of Westminster (1931) recognizes autonomy of all British Dominions C-91, C-102, B-319
  - E. Trade agreements with the United States C-102
- VIII. World War II C-102-3, W-248
  - A. Canada and United States establish Permanent Joint Board on Defense C-103, R-213, W-253
  - B. Industry expands to meet war needs C-89, C-103
  - C. Alaska (Alcan) Highway C-103, Y-348, R-158
  - D. Campaigns and leaders C-103, picture W-271: D-Day W-280; St. Lô and Falaise-Ardenne W-281, picture W-281; drive through Germany W-282, 284
- IX. The postwar period C-103, chart H-369
  - A. Federal District of Ottawa created in 1945 O-429
  - B. Bretton Woods and San Francisco Conferences—Canada joins the United Nations C-103
  - C. St. Laurent replaces Mackenzie King as prime minister and leader of Liberal party C-103, S-18
  - D. Newfoundland, together with Labrador, becomes the tenth province N-139, L-76
  - E. Last formal ties with Great Britain cut—term "dominion" dropped C-91; British Privy Council replaced by Canada's Supreme Court C-91, 103
  - F. Canadian forces fight in Korea (1950-53) C-103
  - G. Vincent Massey, first Canadian-born governor general, succeeds Alexander C-103
  - H. St. Lawrence Seaway Project approved by the United States E-287d

(For bibliography, see Canada.)

## POETRY and PROSE by CANADIAN WRITERS

**CANADIAN LITERATURE** In Canada, as in the other countries of the Americas, literature slowly catches up with history. For more than 300 years after the French and English first landed on Canadian shores, men were occupied with giant tasks. They civilized and unified a vast and rugged land, and they advanced steadily to political independence. In the meantime Canadian writing has slowly approached maturity. Today there is a distinctive Canadian literature which has many examples of beauty and originality. Some of these achieve true greatness.

With a wilderness to conquer in Canada's early days, there was little time for creating literature. Explorers traced the courses of Canadian rivers and forest trails. Missionaries went out among the Indians and sometimes they were burned at the martyr's stake. Fur trappers and traders sought valuable pelts. Soldiers built forts and later settlers cleared lands for farms. These men were making history, and the records of their adventures and achievements are rich mines of information and sources of wonder.

The journals of Cartier and Champlain tell of the powerful feelings aroused by the New World, which, Champlain wrote, was "beautiful even to perfection." The records of the Jesuit missionaries describe a land established "to the glory of God, the honor of the King, the welfare and good repute of the Mother Country." Marie de l'Incarnation, founder of the Ursuline Convent in Quebec, wrote down practical details of founding hospitals and schools in the wilderness. With these she also set down reflections of her religious faith.

These journals written in French by people born and educated in France and intended to be read in France, did not start a Canadian literature. Modern Canadian writers, however, have drawn from these rich materials. For example "The Champlain Road" (1939) a novel by Franklin Davey McDowell, and "Brebeuf and His Brethren" (1940) an epic poem by Edwin John Pratt are imaginative tales based upon facts from these records.

### The Twin Cultures of Canada

The early French Canadians had two main interests—to gain wealth and to win souls for God. They soon saw that furs could bring quick and immense profits. The roving traders and trappers did not settle in communities. Both they and the missionaries lived largely among the Indians. Thus under the French, Canada grew very slowly. When the French surrendered to the British in 1759, a new era in national growth began (see Canadian History). New Englanders moved northward, immigrants came from Britain. After the American Revolution, nearly 40,000 Loyalists migrated to British North America. They settled mainly in the maritime colonies

and in Upper and Lower Canada, now the provinces of Ontario and Quebec.

In spite of their military defeat by the British the French did not assume the role of a conquered people. They had fought valiantly with inferior forces and sent aid from France. In triumphant defeat they became political subjects of Britain but continued to develop their own French Canadian way of life. Today in the province of Quebec the French language prevails, and a distinctive French Canadian attitude far removed from Old World France can be seen. The rest of Canada is predominantly Anglo-Saxon in thought and English in language.

### Start of Canadian Literature in English

In the beginning most English speaking Canadian writers leaned heavily on what they learned from British books. Journals and letters were the popular literary forms and Canadian life and scenery the subjects. Sir Alexander MacKenzie's *Voyages from Montreal through the Continent of North America* (1789-93) and the epic of pioneer life *Roughing It in the Bush* (1852) by Mrs. Susanna Moodie are examples of this type of writing. The first real novelist John Richardson, wrote an Indian tale *Wacousta* (1852), using similar materials as a background.

The first truly notable book in Canadian literature was *The Clockmaker, or the Seyings and Doings of Samuel Slick of Shekville*, published in Halifax in 1836. The author was Thomas Chandler Haliburton, a Nova Scotia judge. With a masterly command of dialogue, Haliburton created the character of a Yankee clock peddler. Smart and aggressive Sam Slick is in sharp contrast to the indolent and naïve Nova Scotians with whom he deals. Even for today's readers he holds interest.

### CANADA'S PAST INSPIRES MODERN WRITERS



Religious workers such as these nuns who taught Indian children at Quebec, left records of their work which have inspired modern Canadian writers.

One more outstanding novel was published before the end of the 1800's—'The Golden Dog' (1877), a historical novel set in Quebec during the 1700's. It was written by the British-born William Kirby. During this time Sir Gilbert Parker's novels were immensely popular (see Parker).

#### Confederation Brings New Productivity

The British North America Act of 1867 united the provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, and Ontario. It also provided for the eventual inclusion of all British North America. With confederation came stirrings of national pride. The growing self-confidence and fresh awareness of the beauty of the land became themes for literature.

'Orion', the first collection of poems by Charles G. D. Roberts (later Sir Charles Roberts), was published in 1880. It was the "first flowering" of Canadian poetry. Later Roberts said: "When I was beginning to write I was not aware of any such thing as Canadian literature but I did dream of starting a Canadian literature and I joyously hailed the first efforts of Lampman and Carman as the beginning of it."

Roberts, Bliss Carman, Archibald Lampman, and Duncan Campbell Scott are four poets whose works mark a "golden age" in Canadian literature. Carman helped start the revolt against the popular pale and bookish poetry. Much of his own verse ('Songs of Vagabondia') glows with an outdoor healthiness.

Ontario-born Archibald Lampman was dramatically won over to the new Canadianism by Roberts' 'Orion', which he said he read "in a state of the wildest excitement." It was a call for him to be at work. In the Canadian woods he found peace and a refuge from his dull labors as a civil servant. Here also he found themes for his nature poems, such as 'Heat':

On the brook yonder not a breath  
Disturbs the spider or the midge  
The water-bugs draw close beneath  
The cool gloom of the bridge.

Duncan Campbell Scott found his subjects in the harshness of nature, in Canada's cold and snowbound winters, and in the gloom and solitude of its forests. Some of his best poetry is about Indians, whom he knew from his work in the Federal Department of Indian Affairs. In contrast to his realistic writing are his "dream" pieces, such as 'The Piper of Arll'. John Masefield called it the first poem by a living writer to touch him deeply. Scott was also a skilled short-story writer. 'In the Village of Viger' is a fine interpretation of French Canadian life.

Other poets of the period won attention by the popular appeal of their work. Isabella Valancy Crawford, in 'Malcolm's Katie', drew a good poetic image of backwoods life in Ontario. The success of William Henry Drummond's 'The Habitant' was partly due to his skill in handling French Canadian dialect. This was resented by some champions of pure French, but it effectively translated the simple life of farm and village into verse (see Drummond). The poetry of Robert W. Service has vigor, adventure, and human interest, and it has won a wide audience. Edward

Killoran Brown said of Service: "He caught a noisy, highly colored moment in our history—the Yukon gold rush—in his noisy, highly colored verse."

Nature and its wild creatures were subjects for a major Canadian contribution to literature—the animal stories of Charles G. D. Roberts and Ernest Thompson Seton. Seton, however, wrote some of his best work while living in the United States.

#### French Canadian Literature in the 1800's

Against the accusation that the French Canadians were a "people with no history," François-Xavier Garneau vindicated his people with the first volume of his 'Histoire du Canada' (1845). This notable work inspired what is now called the "Quebec School" of French Canadian literature. Another inspiration came as a result of the Crimean War. France and Britain, long at odds, joined forces; and French Canadians hailed the renewed contact with France. Under this double inspiration Octave Crémazie wrote stirring patriotic verse proclaiming French Canadian loyalty to the ideals of France. Louis-Honoré Fréchette won the Prix Montyon of the French Academy in 1880 for his poems 'Les Fleurs boréales; les oiseaux de neige' (Flowers of the north; birds of the snow). This recognition from France gave French Canadian poets new confidence. Fréchette later wrote a national epic, 'La Légende d'un peuple' (1887). It is generally pompous in style, but with many fine passages of simple description and characterization.

Léon-Pamphile Le May used the sonnet form, 14 lines long, to write of his countrymen's historic deeds, portraits, and customs. Monsignor Camille Roy said of Le May's collection of 182 sonnets: "If ever our people should lose their family, national, and religious traditions, they can all be found again in 'Les Gouttelettes' [Tiny drops]."

At 74 Philippe Aubert de Gaspé began to write his first romance 'Les Anciens Canadiens' (1863). Not ranked as a major literary work, nor even to be classed as a novel, it is nonetheless a good first-hand record of life in early French Canada.

These writers often turned to France's glorious past. The generation that followed turned to the France of their own day. In 1895 a group of young men in Montreal started a new literary movement. Influenced by the French writers Hérédia and Leconte de Lisle, they adopted a highly personal approach to experience. From the movement came two poets of genius. Before he was 19, Emile Nelligan had pointed the way to a new poetry of the heart. Albert Lozeau, a shut-in for most of his life, let his mind wander free to gather imaginary experiences in love, music, and nature. A little later came Paul Morin. His first volume of poetry, 'Le Paon d'email' (The enamel peacock) is the most brilliant though least Canadian of the group.

#### Bridging the Two Cultures

Poetry reaches only a small audience, and its translation is rarely satisfactory. Thus Canada's two language groups knew little of each other's poetry. The rise of the novel, however, helped bridge the

gap between the two literatures for most novels can be effectively translated. The first such bridge was the novel 'Marie Chapdelaine', written by the French Canadian Louis Hémon and translated into English by W. H. Blake. In this simple picture of a French Canadian farm the round of daily tasks and ordinary events are made important by deeply felt emotions. It is a regional novel with universal appeal.

As the Dominion expanded from coast to coast novels about various regions became popular. Lucy M. Montgomery placed 'Anne of Green Gables' a story of girlhood in her native Prince Edward Island. Charles W. Gordon using the name 'Ralph Connor,' caught the fervor of pioneer religious missions in his many novels. William O. Mitchell in 'Who Has Seen the Wind,' used the wind swept Saskatchewan prairies as the setting for a story of boyhood.

Some Canadian novelists sought to express life in acutely realistic narratives. One of these writers was Frederick Philip Grove. He was probably the first Canadian to try to earn his living by creative writing. His stories tend to be morbid but he persistently probed beneath the surface of life. He gave Canadian fiction a strong push in the direction of realism and philosophical analysis. 'In Search of Myself' is an account of his life as a writer.

Morley Callaghan was one of the young writers from several countries who lived in Paris after the first World War. Callaghan returned to his native Toronto and used Canadian cities for his settings but his writing shows little Canadian influence. Now that April's Here' represents him at his best.

Writing for a wider reading public Maso de la Roche won the Atlantic Monthly prize in 1927 for her novel 'Jalna'. The charming Jalna story now runs through numerous novels set in the Ontario country side, but with a strangely British atmosphere. Her drama 'Whiteoaks', from one of the Jalna novels, was a stage success in London and New York City.

The novelist who has perhaps treated Canadian topics best is Hugh MacLennan. In 'Two Solitudes' he deals with the problems and hopes of achieving French English understanding in Canada. Thomas Raddell's long familiarity with the sea gives his writing a robust freshness. He began with historical fiction ('His Majesty's Yankees') but turned to the modern scene in 'The Nymph and the Lamp'.

Three modern French Canadian authors are widely read in English translation. Roger Lemelin in his novels of Lower Town Quebec and Gabrielle Roy, in her Montreal story 'The Tin Flute', depicted city life in French Canada. In Gabrielle Roy's 'Where Nests the Water Hen', the setting is northern Manitoba, where church and home are still the central influences. Germaine Guèvremont's trilogy, 'The Outlander', is set in an isolated village on the St. Lawrence River. It pictures the influence of an outsider who comes to live among the simple villagers.

#### Modern Poetry in English

One much quoted Canadian poem came out of the first World War—John McCrae's 'In Flanders Fields'.

#### SAM SLICK SELLS A CLOCK



Thomas Chandler Haliburton's stories of Sam Slick, Yankee clock peddler, were immensely popular in the middle 1800's.

Like their American and British contemporaries the poets after the war became highly experimental individual, and sometimes obscure. Richness of feeling—revolt or passion, faith or disdain—marks all their work. Distinctively Canadian is Anne Marriott's 'The Wind Our Enemy', dealing with the prairie drought. So is Earle Birney's 'David', a narrative poem of mountaineering. Birney's war poems and his novel 'Turvey' are true expressions of a Canadian's reaction to the second World War.

Another group of poets are less concerned with expressing a conscious Canadianism in their work. For example, Leo Kennedy's vibrant emotional verse often echoes the poetry of T. S. Eliot. Francis R. Scott shows a deep feeling for social responsibility in his poems. Arthur J. M. Smith's subjects range through religion, politics and nature all treated with intensity and outstanding craftsmanship. Abraham M. Klein deals with Jewish themes past and present as in 'Hath Not a Jew'.

Following no trend and belonging to no literary group, Edwin J. Pratt stands out as a great narrative poet. He was born in Newfoundland where he knew the surge of the sea and its life. After some early poetry, he revealed his full powers in the volume 'Titans'. He rejoices in the strength of nature. In 'The Cachalot' it is the strength of a whale. In 'The Titanic', after due tribute to man's heroism, he ends with a tribute to the iceberg. His work has boisterous humor, and it abounds with sounding words that contribute to the rush of the action. His recent

narrative 'Towards the Last Spike' tells of the building of the Canadian Pacific Railroad.

#### Canadian Humor

Little humor has crept into Canadian writing, with few notable exceptions. Stephen Leacock in 'Literary Lapses' and other volumes of nonsense has fastened on the absurdities of common things. His 'Boarding House Geometry', 'A, B, and C', and similar pieces have provoked laughter in many corners of the world.

John D. Robins has satirized summer vacations in 'The Incomplete Anglers' and 'Cottage Cheese'.

Another satirist is Robertson Davies, who points wittily and forcefully at what he considers the low state of Canadian culture. His 'Diary of Samuel Marchbanks', his plays, and his novel 'Tempest-Tost', though somewhat snobbish, have a light touch and an elegant manner. Davies is the leading Canadian dramatist in a field where there is little competition.

## Representative Canadian Writers

### THE FRENCH REGIME

Cortier, Jacques (1491-1557), explorer—'Voyages de Jacques Cartier au Canada en 1534'.

Champlain, Samuel de (1567-1635), explorer—'Les Voyages de la Nouvelle-France occidentale dite Canada faits par le Sr. de Champlain depuis l'an 1603 jusqu'en l'an 1629'.

Gagnon, Ernest (1834-1915), editor—'Chansons populaires du Canada'.

Marie de l'Incarnation, vén. Mère (1599-1672)—'Lettres spirituelles et historiques'.

Relations des Jésuites.

### THE BRITISH COLONIAL PERIOD

Crémazie, Octave (1827-79), poet—'Poésies'.

Garneau, François-Xavier (1809-66), historian—'Histoire du Canada'.

Gossé, Philippe Aubert de (1786-1871), novelist—'Les Anciens Canadiens'.

Gerin-Lajoie, Antoine (1824-82), novelist—'Jean Rivard'.

Holburn, Thomas Chandler (1796-1865), humorist and historian—'The Clockmaker, or the Sayings and Doings of Samuel Slick of Slickville'; 'Historical and Statistical Account of Nova Scotia'.

Heavysege, Charles (1816-76), poet—'Saul, a Drama in Three Parts'.

Moadie, Susanna (1803-85), essayist—'Roughing It in the Bush'.

Richardson, John (1796-1852), novelist—'Wacousta'.

Sangster, Charles (1822-93), poet—'Hesperus and Other Poems'.

### WRITERS OF THE NEW DOMINION

Carman, Bliss (1861-1929), poet—'Low Tide on Grand Pré'; 'Poems'.

Crawford, Isabella Valancy (1850-87), poet—'Old Spookses Pass, Malecolm's Katie and Other Poems'; 'Collected Poems'.

Drummond, William Henry (1854-1907), poet—'The Habitant and Other French Canadian Poems'.

Fréchette, Louis-Henri (1839-1908), poet—'Feuilles Volantes'; 'La Légende d'un peuple'.

Johnson, Pauline (1862-1913), poet—'Flint and Feather'.

Kirby, William (1817-1906), novelist—'The Golden Dog'.

Lampman, Archibald (1861-99), poet—'Among the Millet'; 'Selected Poems'.

Le May, Léon-Pamphile (1837-1918), poet—'Les Gouttelettes'.

Pickthall, Marjorie (1883-1922), poet—'A Drift of Pinions'; 'The Wood-Carver's Wife'.

Roberts, Sir Charles G. D. (1860-1943), poet and nature writer—'Orion'; 'Selected Poems'; 'Kindred of the Wild'.

Saunders, Marshall (1861-1947), novelist—'Beautiful Joe'.

Scott, Duncan Campbell (1862-1947), poet and short-story writer—'Selected Poems'; 'In the Village of Viger'.

Service, Robert W. (born 1876), poet—'Songs of a Sourdough'.

Seton, Ernest Thompson (1860-1946), nature writer—'Wild Animals I Have Known'.

### THE LITERATURE OF MODERN CANADA

Birney, Eorle (born 1904), poet, short-story writer, and novelist—'The Strait of Anian'; 'Turvey'.

Bruchési, Jean (born 1901), historian—'Histoire du Canada pour tous' (translated as 'A History of Canada').

Callaghan, Marley (born 1903), novelist and short-story writer—'Now That April's Here'; 'The Loved and the Lost'.

Choquette, Robert (born 1905), poet and novelist—'A Travers les vents'; 'Les Velders'.

"Connor, Rolph" (Charles W. Gordon) (1860-1937), novelist and biographer—'Black Rock'; 'Postscript to Adventure'.

Creighton, Donald G. (born 1902), historian—'Dominion of the North'.

Davies, Robertson (born 1913), playwright, humorist, and novelist—'Eros at Breakfast'; 'Diary of Samuel Marchbanks'; 'Tempest-Tost'.

De la Roche, Mozo (born 1885), novelist and playwright—'Jalna'; 'Whiteoaks, a Play'.

Des Rochers, Alfred (born 1901), poet—'A l'Ombre de l'Orford'.

Finch, Robert (born 1900), poet—'Poems'; 'The Strength of the Hills'.

Graham, Gwethalyn (born 1913), novelist—'Earth and High Heaven'.

Grave, Frederick Philip (1872-1948), novelist, short-story writer, and biographer—'Fruits of the Earth'; 'Over Prairie Trails'; 'A Search for America'.

Guèvremont, Germaine (born 19—?), novelist—'Le Survenant'; Marie Didace' (translated as 'The Outlander').

Hardy, W. G. (born 1896), novelist—'All the Trumpets Sounded'; 'The Unfulfilled'.

Hébert, Anne (born 19—?), poet—'Les Songes en équilibre'.

Héman, Louis (1880-1913), novelist—'Maria Chapdelaine'.

Hiebert, Paul (born 1892), humorist—'Sarab Binks'.

Hutchinson, Bruce (born 1901), essayist and historian—'The Unknown Country'; 'The Fraser'.

Kennedy, Lea (born 1907), poet—'The Shrouding'.

Klein, Abraham M. (born 1909), poet and novelist—'Hath Not a Jew'; 'The Rocking Chair and Other Poems'.

Lamontagne, Blanche (born 1889), poet—'Ma Gaspésie'.

Leacock, Stephen (1869-1944), humorist—'Sunshine Sketches of a Little Town'; 'Literary Lapses'.

Lemelin Roger (born 1913) no. of : *Au Pied de la pente douce* (translated as *The Town Below*) *Les Plouffe* (translated as *The Plouffe Family*)  
 Lower A R M (born 1889) historian *Colony to Nation*  
 Lozeau Albert (1878-1924) poet—*Lauriers et feuilles d'érable*  
 MacArthur Peter (1856-1924) humorist—*In Pastures Green*  
 McCae John (1822-1918) poet—*In Flanders Fields and Other Poems*  
 MacDonald Wilson (born 1880) poet—*Out of the Wilderness*  
 McDowell Franklin Davey (born 1898) novelist—*The Champlain Road* *The Forger of Freedom*  
 MacLennan Hugh (born 1900) novelist and essayist—*Barometer Rising* *Two Solitudes*  
 Maclachlan Clement (born 1912) poet—*Les Sorcières rouges*  
 Marolt Anne (born 1913) poet—*The Wind Our Enemy*  
 Mitchell William O. (born 1914) novel and short-story writer—*Who Has Seen the Wind*  
 Montgomery Lucy M. (1844-1942) no. of : *Anne of Green Gables*

Morin Paul (born 1889) poet—*Le Faon d'écume* *Poèmes de cendre et d'or*  
 Neillgan Emile (1882-1942) poet—*Emile Neillgan et son œuvre*  
 Facey Desmond (born 1917) artist—*A Book of Canadian Stories* *Creative Writing in Canada*  
 Pratt Edwin J. (born 1883) poet—*Brebeuf and His Brethren* *Collected Poems* *Toward the Last Splice*  
 Roddall Thomas H. (born 1903) novelist and historian—*The Nymph and the Lamp* *Halifax*  
 Ringuet (Philippe Panneton) (born 1895) novelist—*30 Arpents* (translated as *Thirty Acres*)  
 Robins John O. (born 1884) humorist—*The Incomplete Angler's Cottage Cheese*  
 Roy Gabrielle (born 19—?) novelist—*Bonheur d'écarts* (translated as *The Tin Fute*) *Le petit poulx d'eau* (translated as *Where Waits the Water*)  
 Solve son Louis Goodman (born 1890) novelist—*Confessions of an Immigrant's Daughter*  
 Slater Patrick (John Mitchell) (1880-1951) novelist—*The Yellow Bree*  
 Smith Arthur J. M. (born 1907) poet and critic—*News of the Phoenix* *The Book of Canadian Poetry* (editor)

## Man-Made CANALS and Their MANY USES



Above Montreal, Canada, lies the city of Lachine. Though it passes the Lachine Canal, one of the important artificial links in the St. Lawrence waterway. The canal was built to bypass the swift Lachine rapids. No other locks pass above the bridge.

**CANALS** The artificial channels that connect natural bodies of water are called canals. Men also dig canals to drain low areas to float away sewage and to bring water to dry farmlands. Some canals carry water from storage places (reservoirs) to city water supply systems. Other canals provide a swift flow of water to make electricity at hydroelectric plants. Canals are also built as detours in rivers. These canals allow river boats to avoid waterfalls, rapids, and dams.

The most important are the navigation canals that connect or take the place of natural bodies of water.

These may either be ship or barge canals. Most ship canals are deep and wide. They can carry all but the very deepest and widest ships. Barge canals carry only shallow boats, usually flat-bottomed barges. In some navigation canals the water keeps flowing from the source to the mouth. In others the water is confined and still. Ships and boats sometimes move through canals under their own power. Sometimes they are towed by tugs or by small locomotives running on rails along the banks. In the old days the ships or boats were pulled by horses or mules trotting along the banks.

Ship canals that link oceans and seas shorten the distance between many ports by thousands of miles. This makes them important in trade between countries. In wartime these ship canals are well protected because warships, transports, and supply ships must pass through them. The Suez Canal, that links the Mediterranean and the Red seas, and the Panama Canal, that provides a "short cut" between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, are notable examples (see Panama Canal; Suez Canal).

The Kiel Canal in Germany connects the Baltic and the North seas. It saves ships a long journey around Denmark. The Baltic-White Sea Canal was built by Russia. Ships traveling between Leningrad and Archangel use it instead of making the 2,800-mile trip around the Scandinavian peninsula. The twin canals of Sault Sainte Marie, which connect Lake Superior and Lake Huron, carry more freight than any of the canals that link oceans and seas.

Water Stairways for Ships

When two natural bodies of water stand at different levels, building a canal between them presents a complicated engineering problem. To make up for the difference in level, engineers build one or more water "steps," called locks, that carry ships or boats up or down between the two levels.

A lock is an artificial water basin. It has a long rectangular shape with concrete walls and a pair of gates at each end. When a vessel is going upstream, the upper gates stay closed as the ship enters the lock at the lower water level. The downstream gates are then closed and more water is pumped into the basin. The rising water lifts the vessel to the level of the upper body of water. Then the upper gates open

and the ship passes through. For downstream passage, the process works the opposite way. The ship enters the lock from the upper level, and water is pumped from the lock until the ship is in line with the lower level. A lock may be large enough to hold two or more ships or boats.

Often the difference in levels is so great that a series of locks are needed. They may be connected to one another or may be spaced at intervals along the canal. Sometimes a series of locks are built so that ships "climb" up one side of a ridge and down the other. The Panama Canal lock system was built for this purpose. (For a diagram of how locks work, see Panama Canal.)

Straightening or deepening rivers and building locks in them where needed is called canalizing. About 24,000 miles of rivers in the United States have been canalized, and the work is still going on.

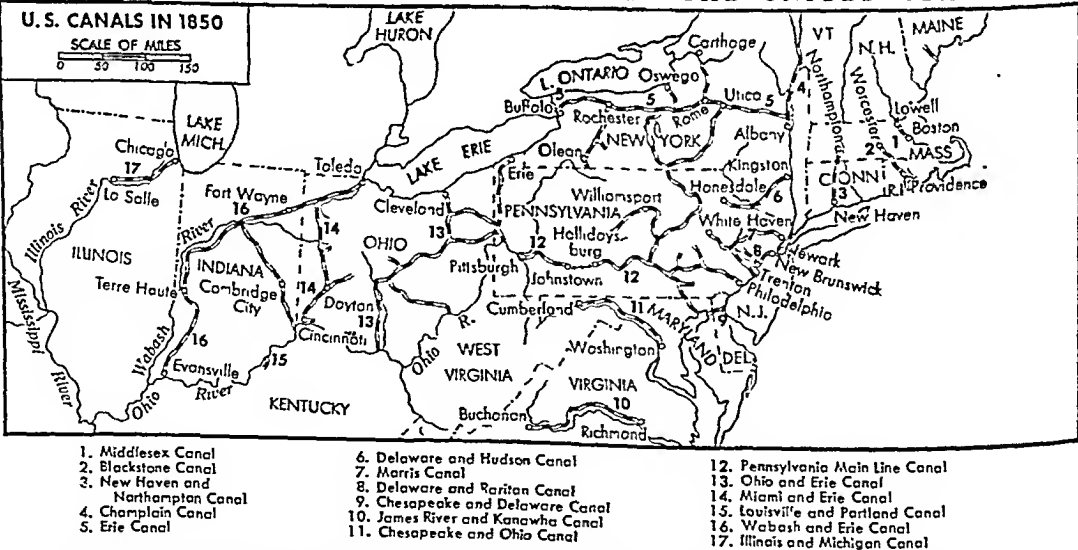
Drainage canals present special building problems. They must be dug so that they slope evenly from the area to be drained to the place where the water empties. If the canal passes through rolling country, the canal bottom and banks may have to be built even higher than the surrounding lowlands.

If the canal is dug through soft earth or sand, it gradually fills in and then, to keep it open, it must be cleaned out, or dredged. Water flowing swiftly through a canal, as in a canal that furnishes water power for making electricity, tends to "scour" the bottom and sides. This widens and deepens the canal, and the flow of water slows down.

Canals in Asia and Europe

Ancient Greek historians tell of a canal dug by the Egyptians to join the Nile River and the Red Sea, but

THE HEIGHT OF THE CANAL ERA IN THE UNITED STATES



This map shows how artificial and natural waterways combined to provide water highways across the most thickly settled portion of the United States in the middle of the 19th century. The railroads had hardly begun to extend their network westward, and wagon roads were few and poorly kept. Canals carried cargo and passengers at good speeds and cheap rates for the time. Parts of many of these canals are still in use. The Erie, for example, is part of the New York State Barge Canal.

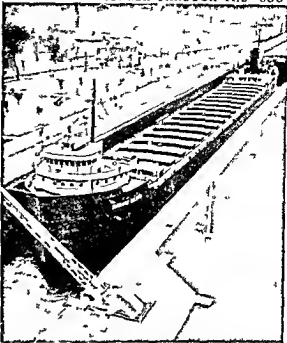
all traces of it have been covered over. Later Nile Red Sea canals were built during the early Christian Era. The best known of these was the Amr. Part of it is still used to carry fresh water from the Nile to the city of Suez on the Red Sea. Other historical records tell of the royal canal of Babylon built by King Nebuchadnezzar in Biblical times to join the Tigris and the Euphrates rivers.

The longest as well as the oldest canal still in existence is the Grand Canal of China. It connects the Peiho River and the Yangtze Kiang. It may have been started as early as the 5th century B.C. and it was finally finished about A.D. 1280 by Kubla Khan. For centuries the 1,000-mile canal was an important waterway and it also carried water for irrigation.

The Romans were road builders and engineers but they dug few canals. Modern Italy has found little use for canals. About the 8th century Charlemagne planned a system of canals to connect the Rhine, the Main and the Danube rivers.

Locks were already in use by the 1400's. The great Italian Renaissance artist and engineer Leonardo da Vinci built a series of six locks to join the canals of Venice. The pioneer of modern French canals was the Languedoc Canal or Canal du Midi. It joined rivers that flow into the Bay of Biscay on the Atlantic Ocean and those that empty into the Mediterranean Sea. The canal was finished in 1681 under the reign of Louis XIV and was the biggest engineering work undertaken in Europe up to that time. With it France began its plan of inland waterway building which has added about 3,000 miles of canals to its 4,600 miles of rivers open to boats and ships. The present Languedoc Canal is about six and a half feet deep and 148 miles long. It rises to 620 feet above sea level and has 119 locks. (See also France)

## LOCKING A FREIGHTER THROUGH THE SUEZ



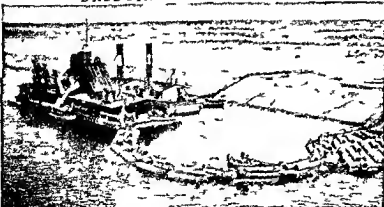
A huge Great Lakes steamship laden with iron ore passes through the McArthur locks at Suez. The two canals comprising the Suez bypass the rapids in the Saint Mary's River permitting lake ships to pass between Lake Huron and Lake Superior.

When the Industrial Revolution started in England during the late 1700's waterways were needed to carry coal and other bulky goods. For about 75 years Englishmen built many canals but railroads gradually took their place. The Manchester Ship Canal between Manchester and Liverpool is a good example of how a canal connects an inland city with the sea. This

canal the most important in Britain makes the great manufacturing city of Manchester a seaport even though it is 35 miles inland.

The canal has five sets of locks. Each set has a large and a small lock side by side. The small lock is used for small ships and boats. A swing bridge carries the old Bridgewater Canal built in 1759 over the modern Manchester waterway. This swing bridge is a steel trough 19 feet wide, 6 feet deep and 234 feet long. It can be closed off from the rest of the overhead canal and swung about on an axis so that ships can pass by in the lower canal.

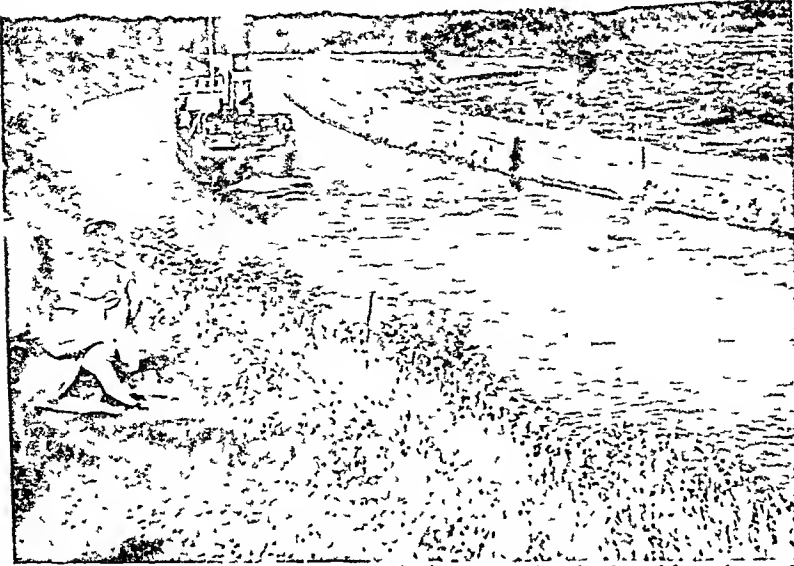
## DREDGING THE SUEZ CANAL



This floating dredge travels up and down a section of the Suez Canal pumping sand and silt from the canal bottom and depositing it on the banks. This work is needed to keep the canal from filling in. The approximately 100-mile canal runs from Port Said on the Mediterranean to the city of Suez on the Red Sea, passing through lakes and lagoons on its way.



## DETOURING AROUND RAPIDS VIA A CANAL



Here on the St. Lawrence waterway a narrow bank separates this placid canal from the rough waters of the rapids. Such canals along the river permit small steamers to travel from Lake Ontario to the Atlantic Ocean. Larger vessels can come inland only as far as Montreal.

Today much of Europe is covered with a network of inland waterways. The canals of Holland provide both drainage from the lowlands and transportation (see Netherlands). All the larger river systems in north Germany and in Russia are connected. An important Russian canal is the Volga-Don connection, which was completed in 1952. The Russians build navigation canals that also serve as water-power sources for making electricity. In western and central Asia, the Russians have linked river systems with canals so that boats can travel from the Ural Mountains to Lake Baikal in the heart of the continent. (See also Germany; Russia.)

#### The Canal Era in the United States

Canals were a great help in developing the United States. George Washington realized how much help they would be, and he headed the first company formed to build the Chesapeake and Ohio Canal. This canal was not completed until 1850, but several short ones connecting rivers were built in the early days of the United States. The first was dug at South Hadley, Mass., between 1792 and 1796.

Meanwhile the country was expanding westward, and the settlers in western New York, Pennsylvania, and Ohio were faced with the problem of transporting goods. The places to sell their farm products were Philadelphia and New York City. The settlers needed the manufactured goods from these cities also. Wagon freight was too expensive. It cost a hundred dollars to send a ton of freight from Buffalo to New York City and the trip took 20 days. The new flat-bottomed river steamships offered cheap transportation, but there were no through water routes between the

eastern cities and the western farmlands.

Canals to link the natural waterways were the answer, but they would have to be much longer than any that had ever been dug before. The cost and the engineering problems made most people think the solution impractical. DeWitt Clinton, governor of New York, thought otherwise. He proposed to dig a canal to connect the Hudson River at Troy and Albany with Lake Erie at Buffalo, 340 miles away. The Federal government would not undertake the job, so he persuaded his state to do it. The Erie Canal, begun in 1817, was completed in 1825 at a cost of more than 7 million dollars.

"Clinton's Ditch," as people scornfully called it, more than lived up to its sponsor's faith. It opened up a huge area to settlement, and it became busy with freight and passenger traffic. The western farmers prospered because of it. Land values rose, and goods could be shipped between New York City and the Great Lakes region in eight days at a fraction of the old cost. Relay teams of horses or mules pulled light passenger packet boats through the canal from Buffalo to Albany in three and a half days. Towns along the route grew fast, and New York City was started on its way to becoming the nation's largest city. The Erie Canal was enlarged several times. Finally it became the chief link in the New York State Barge Canal system (see New York).

The success of the Erie inspired more canals. One ambitious project was a combined canal and portage railway route through the mountainous country between Pittsburgh and Philadelphia. It was completed in 1834. Travel by this route was slow and expensive, and traffic was never very heavy. Some of the canals were barely finished when the new railroads began to take away their business. For about 50 years people were little interested in canals. Gradually the Federal government began canalizing rivers and building new canals. These now offer cheap transportation for bulky freight loads of such raw materials as coal and such manufactures as automobiles.

#### Some Important Canals in the United States

Among the important ship canals in the United States are the "Soo" canals at Sault Sainte Marie. These allow vessels to pass between Lake Huron and Lake Superior (see Sault Sainte Marie). The Cape Cod Canal was built in 1901-14 across the narrow

strip where Cape Cod joins the mainland of Massachusetts. Leading directly from Massachusetts Bay to Buzzards Bay it saves about 70 miles in the trip from Boston to New York City and avoids the storms and treacherous shoals of Nantucket. It was bought by the Federal government in 1928 and forms a link in the Intracoastal Waterway.

The Intracoastal Waterway is a protected inland water route along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts. It goes through various natural bodies of water and old canals such as the Chesapeake and Delaware. A vessel can travel inland along the Intracoastal Waterway about 1,500 miles down the Atlantic coast from the Delaware River to Miami, Fla., and for about 1,000 miles from Apalachicola, Fla., to Brownsville, Tex. Waterborne freight can travel this distance on barges without being transferred to ocean-going ships. Canalized rivers have turned Houston, Tex., 50 miles inland into a busy port for deep water vessels (see Houston).

The Illinois Waterway joins the Great Lakes with the Mississippi River and thus with the Gulf of Mexico. It was officially opened in 1933. It has a channel 180 to 200 feet wide and nine feet deep. From Chicago to Lockport, Ill., it uses the Chicago Sanitary and Ship Canal (sometimes called the Drainage Canal). This section was completed in 1900 to carry the water of the Chicago River into the Des Plaines River at Lockport and thence into the Illinois River. The Chicago River formerly flowed into Lake Michigan, polluting Chicago's drinking water with sewage and industrial waste. Reversing the flow of the river vastly improved both Chicago's health and its commerce (see Chicago, Illinois).

#### Canadian Canals

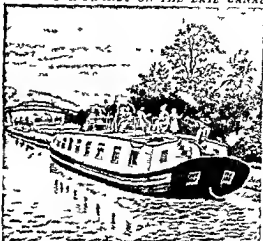
Canada's most important waterway is the St. Lawrence system of rivers and lakes stretching from the Strait of Belle Isle to the head of Lake Superior. Three important links in this system are the Canadian Sault Ste. Marie Canal, the Welland Ship Canal that connects Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, and the six canals around the rapids of the St. Lawrence River above Montreal.

The St. Lawrence Seaway, a joint United States-Canadian project, would make the St. Lawrence system open to deep-water ships. This would permit vessels to travel directly from the Atlantic Ocean to such Great Lakes ports as Chicago and Cleveland. Final acceptance of the plan has not yet been reached. (See also Great Lakes, St. Lawrence River, Welland Ship Canal.)

The Rideau-Ottawa canal system offers safe water travel between Kingston and the lower St. Lawrence by way of Ottawa and the Ottawa River. Originally it was built mainly for military use and formed a back door between the two rivers. The Rideau Canal, formed by canalizing the Rideau and Cataraqui rivers and using the Rideau lakes, was opened in 1833. It has 47 locks and is about 133 miles long.

The Trent Canal connects Georgian Bay, the eastern arm of Lake Huron, with the Bay of Quinte at the

#### PASSENGER PACKET ON THE ERIE CANAL



Towed by horses trotting along the bank, this Erie passenger boat of the mid-1800s traveled at five miles an hour. Passengers reclined on the cabin roof and went below to eat and sleep.

northeast end of Lake Ontario. It cuts out the long trip around the V-shaped peninsula of the Province of Ontario that is formed by the two lakes, but the canal carries only shallow-draft boats. The canal is actually a series of locks and channels in the chain of lakes and rivers between the two bays. One of the rivers is the Trent, from which the canal gets its name. At the Georgian Bay end there is a marine railway instead of locks. (Statistics on the world's greatest canals are in a table under Canals in the FACT-INDEX.)

**CANARY BIRD** The Canary and Madeira islands are the native haunts of the cheerful little household pet, the canary. In the wild state the member of the finch family measures about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches in length. It is dull green above with a yellow breast. Canaries became cage birds in the 16th century when they were first brought from the Canary Islands to Italy. By special breeding no less than 50 varieties have been produced, differing greatly in size, form, and plumage from the wilderness form.

The raising of roller canaries is an important industry in the Harz Mountains in Germany. In breeding this variety all attention is directed to the development of voice. Like the prima donnas of the concert stage, young rollers (only the males are gifted singers) are trained rigorously. The young bird acquires its musical repertoire by listening to melodies poured forth by a gifted master. Usually the teachers are older canaries called *campanins*. Various musical instruments are also used in the training.

The development of color and form have been the object of many breeders in Belgium, England, and Scotland. One of the most graceful breeds is the York-shire canary with its long slim body. Quite different is the plump Norwich canary, some varieties of which are crested. The lizard canary is noted for its beautifully mottled feathers. The Scotch fancy is an odd

ercescent-shaped creature, while the Belgian is a great hump-backed bird with massive shoulders. Scientific name of canary, *Scrinus canarius*. (For care and feeding of canaries, see Pets.)

**CANARY ISLANDS.** The first glimpse of the Canaries (Spanish, *Islas Canarias*) is frequently the single snow-covered peak, 12,000 feet high, which dominates the island of Tenerife. In clear weather it can be seen at sea for many miles. It is a partially extinct volcano, and the natives thought it was the dwelling place of the evil one. Drawing nearer to the islands, the boat makes its first landing at Santa Cruz, also in Tenerife, which is the Spanish capital. The white flat-roofed houses make a dazzling picture under the tropic sun, and presently we see that the trees and shrubs are those of hot climates—date palms, orange trees, bananas, and cactus. The swarthy loafers along the quay and the handsome black-eyed girls suggest southern Spain, for the Spaniards have intermarried with the original native population to such an extent that it is impossible to distinguish any of the descendants of the ancient Guanehos.

Today the Canary Islands remain as one of the few possessions of the once mighty empire of Spain. Modern commerce has made them prosperous, but they still have a dreamy Old-World charm, and everywhere there are ancient monuments and castles that recall the fierce conflicts with the Guanehos, and the time when richly laden galleons used to stop at the islands on their way from the New World to Spain. And everywhere is the same contrast, so frequent in Spanish-speaking countries, typified in the narrow streets used both by ox-carts and electric street-cars.

The Canaries comprise seven principal islands—Tenerife, Grand Canary, Palma, Hierro, Gomera, Lanzarote, and Fuerteventura—besides smaller uninhabited ones. It is thought they may be the "Fortunate Isles" or "Isles of the Blest" which were often referred to in Greek and Roman legends, and their existence was probably known to the Phoenicians and Carthaginians. They were not rediscovered, however, till the 14th and 15th centuries, being located definitely by Gadifer de la Salle and Jean de Béthencourt in July, 1402. The chief products today are potatoes, onions, cochineal, tobacco, wine, sugar, and fruits. The islands are volcanic in origin and lie about 60 miles from the northwest coast of Africa. The total area of the islands—2,894 square miles—is a little more than that of the state of Delaware; the population (1950 census, preliminary), 776,912, is more than twice as great.

**CANBERRA, AUSTRALIA.** Like the city of Washington, this capital of the Commonwealth of Australia is an artificial creation. The constitution of the Commonwealth of Australia, adopted in 1900, provided for a new capital which should be separate from the capital of any state. After nearly ten years a site in New South Wales, in southeastern Australia, was chosen as the territory within which the new city was to be erected. It includes 912 square miles, and in addition 28 square miles on Jervis Bay for a port and naval college. The capital was formally inaugurated in May 1927, when Parliament met there for the first time.

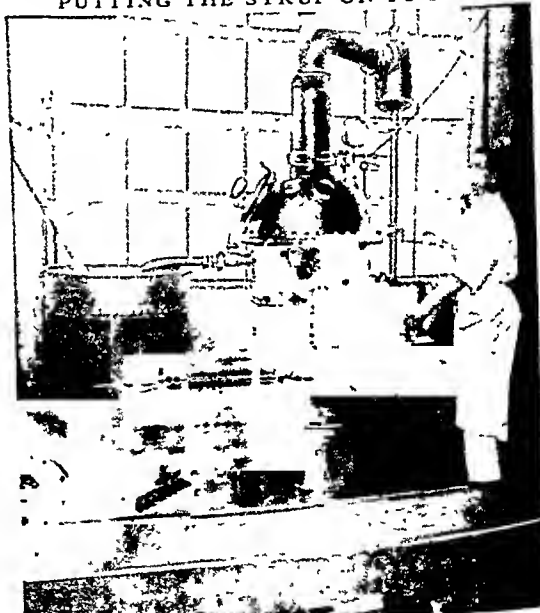
The plan accepted for the new city, in 1912, was

based upon designs submitted by Walter Burley Griffin, a Chicago architect, in a competition open to all the world. It presents a pleasing picture of hills crowned with beautiful buildings, and lowlands bordering a great artificial lake made by damming the sluggish waters of Molonglo River. Along the shores of the lake, and stretching far afield, is an area of parklands unequalled in any other city of the world. On the summit of the ridge overlooking the valley stands the capitol building, and on a minor spur, just below, the houses of parliament. The chief residential quarter lies on the southern hills behind the capitol, well back from the valley. To the right and in front of the capitol are public offices; to the left, official residences. Across the valley are university buildings and hospitals on the lower ground, with a residential suburb on the higher ground to the north.

Canberra and its environs and Jervis Bay form the Australian Capital Territory. Population of Canberra (1947 census), 15,156; of whole territory, 16,905.

**CANDY.** When the children who lived a century or so ago saw a sweetmeat that looked like our candy, the first thing they thought of was—what do you suppose? Medicine! Because in the old days, what

#### PUTTING THE SYRUP ON TO BOIL



To make the syrup used for hard candies, sugar and water are cooked at a temperature of 340 degrees and then pumped into vacuum machines.

we call candy was made only by druggists and was used almost entirely to coat little pills and disguise the bitter taste, just as we today coat pills of quinine and other bitter medicines with chocolate.

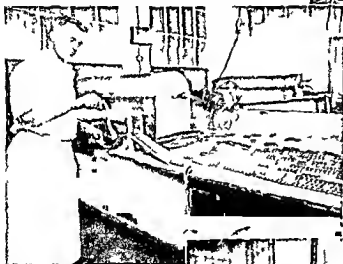
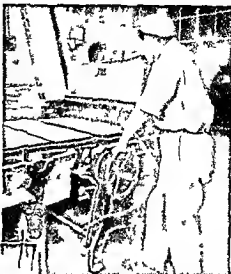
The druggists of those times also used to make candy drops containing peppermint, hoarhound, wintergreen, and other medicinal substances like those still sold in drugstores today. But all these candies

were considered as medicines rather than as pleasant things to eat. The child of that time had only honey jams cakes and similar food to satisfy his sweet tooth. The nearest thing he had to our candy was sugar candy which was made at home by dissolving sugar in water and letting it crystallize.

A little more than a hundred years ago enterprising men conceived the idea of making and selling candies for their own sake instead of as medicines and the candy industry was born. At first everything was on a small scale. Old-fashioned stick candy, molasses taffy and sugar plums—which are not plums at all but little plum-shaped bonbons—were the principal products and the makers retailed their own can-

#### HOW THINGS WORK IN A CANDY FACTORY

These flat trays shown in the top picture are filled with corn starch powder which has been sifted with the sweet oil particles by the machine. The same machine then fills these molds with candy cream which he dips into the shapes that are so familiar to us. In the next picture the workman is feeding a ribbon of soft candy into a geared machine which cuts it into those popular shaped pieces we know so well. The electric fan is cooling and drying them. That big metal case in the bottom picture is full of almonds and candy paste. As the case revolves the almonds become coated over with smooth layers of candy



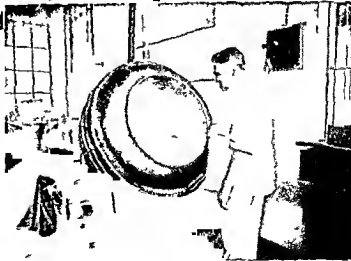
passes the filled tray on to the drying room. At the same time it takes a pile of starch trays from the drying room, picks out the bottom tray and turns it upside down on a screen where the starch is shaken off the hardened candy.

#### Hard and Soft Candies

There are two principal classes of candy: hard and soft. Most of the hard candies are made by boiling sugar water, glucose and flavoring and dumping the syrup on a marble or steel slab to cool. The nearly hard candy is then rolled and cut into

dies. Later with the invention of ingenious machinery the industry grew rapidly, especially in the United States, which is the greatest candy-eating and candy-making nation in the world.

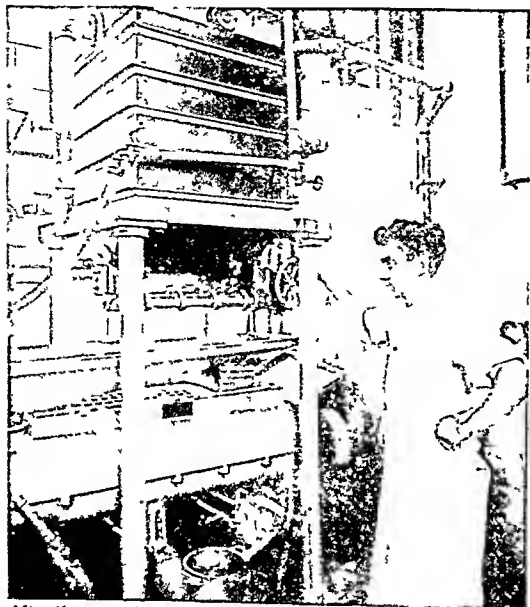
If you ever get a chance to go through a large candy factory, you will be delighted to see what a sunny, airy, shining, clean place it is, with all the workers wearing spotless aprons and caps. Nearly everything is done by machines. One of the most complicated of these passes a tray under a cascade of finely powdered corn-starch, levels the starch off, makes impressions or molds in the starch, fills the molds with cream and



balls, sticks, slabs, or squares. In making taffy the mass when it has become stiff enough is kneaded and pulled either by one of those pulling machines you have seen in the windows of large candy stores or by workers equipped with hooks. The pulling makes the mass white and porous.

Brittle candies like the familiar peanut brittle are made by merely melting sugar and glucose over a slow fire, adding nuts or other desired ingredients, and allowing the mass to cool.

#### MAKING SOFT CANDIES



After the syrup has been cooked at a temperature of 240 degrees, it is water cooled in this machine, and then cast in the proper shapes.

Soft or cream candies have *fondant* as their base, which is prepared by cooking sugar, glucose, and water to syrup, and kneading the syrup after it has cooled with long paddles until it becomes creamy and smooth. After being molded by the machine described above, the soft centers go to a coating machine, which supplies a coating of chocolate or other material.

#### How Candies Get Chocolate Coating

This machine, called an "enrober," has a moving belt which carries the centers into the machine. Here they encounter a short belt or wire mesh, through which soft chocolate is being forced from underneath, to coat the bottom of each piece. They then move on automatically to a third belt and are passed under a short section of wire netting above which is suspended a tank of chocolate coating kept warm by a steam-jacket. From the bottom of this tank a thin sheet of the chocolate flows continuously, coating the tops and sides of the creams. The surplus coating flows through the wire mesh into a pan beneath, from which it is automatically pumped again into the suspended tank. The finished chocolates then pass on to another belt, to which are attached at

intervals sheets of heavily waxed paper. As each of these is filled it is removed by an attendant and carried on a truck to a cool room to dry. Very fine grades of chocolates are still coated by hand. The process of stamping the manufacturer's name on the bottom of the pieces is accomplished by placing them while warm and soft on tins or heavy papers on which the name is embossed.

#### Keeping Candy Pure and Wholesome

Federal and state laws safeguard the purity and wholesomeness of candy manufactured for sale. Under the Federal Pure Food Act the use of arsenic and other harmful mineral colors is not allowed. If coal-tar colors are used, manufacturers are restricted to a few certified colors guaranteed to be harmless. Adulteration is prohibited, in general, though certain substitutes such as cereals may be used if they are specified on the label.

American candy makers have developed an almost endless variety of forms. The simplest kind is the gumbdrop, made from finely ground sugar mixed with gum arabic, or from sugar, corn syrup, and either cooking starch or gelatin, molded into the desired shape and sprinkled with sugar. Marshmallows are made from sugar, corn syrup, and either egg albumen or gelatin. Caramels consist of sugar, corn syrup, and flavoring, cooked with cream. Cane molasses is used in making molasses taffy.

Fruits, nuts, and flowers are candied by dipping them into a syrup which has been boiled until it is just at the point of crystallizing into sugar. Rock-candy is prepared by allowing a cooked sugar syrup to crystallize around strings stretebed through the liquid. Various confectionery products are also imported from Eastern countries, the best known of which is the delectable "Turkish delight." This is a sticky confection made of gum arabic and gelatin, flavored with orange, cinnamon, attar of roses, or the like.

**CANKERWORM.** This caterpillar travels by a looping movement of its body and is often called a measuring worm, inch worm, or looper. It kills many fruit and shade trees by eating their spring leaves.

Green, gray, brown, or black, and not quite an inch long, it is the larva of a brownish-gray moth. The male moth is an inch across the wings. The female is wingless. She must crawl up tree trunks to lay her eggs near leaf buds. The larvae hatch in April or May, eat leaves 30 or 40 days, then spin threads of silk to let themselves down to the ground. In the soil they turn into brown pupae, from which one species emerges as a moth in the fall, another species in the spring. Otherwise the two species are very much alike in appearance and habits.

Many birds eat cankerworms. Indeed, it was to fight them that the United States first imported English sparrows from England in 1850. Many trees are saved by spraying the leaves early in spring or by placing sticky bands around the trunks early in October.

**CANNA.** The canna plant, a native of warm lands throughout the world, was once noted only for its large leaves and for its reed-like stem that sometimes grew as high as 14 feet. Its small red flowers became ragged in a day, and it was planted solely for foliage.

The French gardeners turned to seed selection and cross-breeding. In 1863 they produced a bril-

## A POPULAR BORDER FOR A GARDEN



The stately canna grows best in a warm moist soil. Cannas are often planted around the edge of a garden where their large leaves and brilliant blossoms make a colorful border.

liant variety of canna which flaunted large scarlet and gold blooms above great leaves of green and bronze. Italian specialists later cultivated dwarf varieties about four feet high which became popular in the United States. The flowers of some cultivated cannas measure six inches across. In color they may be red yellow pink lemon salmon or rose. Some blossoms are shaped like orchids.

The name canna means reed in Latin. The wild plant was called Indian shot by American boys because its hard seeds served them as buckshot.

Cannas may be propagated either from seed or by dividing the rootstock and planting in pots. The plants are injured by frost and should not be set out too early. Rich warm soil with plenty of moisture is desirable. Pick the flowers as soon as they wilt to prevent the formation of seeds and the flowers will keep coming all summer. After the stalks have been cut in the fall the roots may be stored and handled like potatoes. The canna belongs to the family *Cannaaceae*. Scientific name of the canna *Canna generalis*.

**CANNING.** Foodstuffs may be preserved for years if they are properly heated and then hermetically sealed in tin lined metal cans glass jars or other containers. The word *canning* came from the use of cans as food containers. (For information on canning and other preserving processes see *Food Preservation*.)

**CANNON.** Originally cannon meant a tube or smooth cylindrical bore then the term was applied to heavy guns carried on and fired from mounts or carriages. The introduction of rifling made smooth bore cannon obsolete. (See *Artillery Firearms Machine Gun*.)

**CANOES AND CANOEING.** The canvas-covered or all wood canoes of today still closely resemble the swift-moving craft that North American Indians made principally by stretching bark or skins over light but strong cedar frames. Like their forerunners they are keelless and pointed at each end. The most popular type is about 18 feet long 30 to 34 inches wide

and weighs around 60 pounds. Aluminum canoes are considerably lighter.

Its light construction makes a canoe ideal for shallow or turbulent streams. It will float on only a few inches of water and can easily be carried over unnavigable stretches or from one body of water to another. This method of transfer is called a *portage*.

On larger inland waters and along sheltered seacoasts sailing canoes are commonly used sometimes with leeboards which serve as a keel. Since a canoe is so light and has no keel it may easily be overturned so every canoeist should be a good swimmer. For inexperienced canoeists the sponson type of boat canoe with air chambers along the gunwales from stem to stern is best.

One should step into a canoe from the side and place one foot as close as possible to the center at its widest part. The other foot should follow quickly and the body should be almost immediately brought to a crouching position with hands on each side or gunwale of the craft. The canoeist then has his balance and may move to any part with ease. Since a canoe is propelled by a paddle usually about five feet long certain positions and arrangements of loads are important. An expert usually kneels close to the first thwart or crosspiece in the stern and if waves run high he paddles from almost the center. Luggage and additional occupants should be so adjusted that whatever position the paddler may desire to take the

## AN EXACTING ART KNOWN BY INDIANS

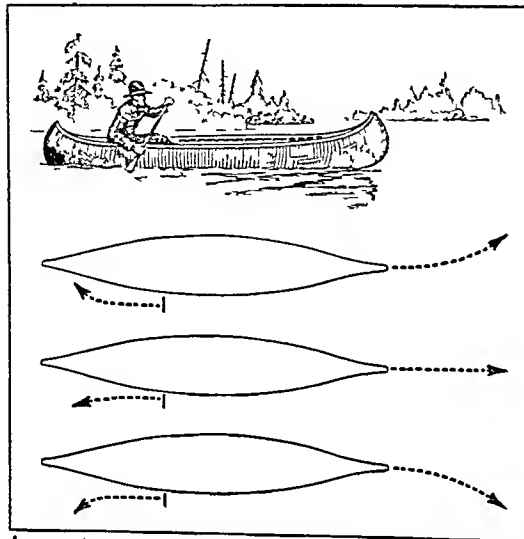


Hundreds of years before the white man came the Indians built a dry birch bark canoe. These Indians carefully at the bottom a birch tree to cover the framework of their boat.

craft will rest evenly on the water for practically its entire length. In fair weather a canoe may be paddled from either side, but in a breeze it should be propelled from the side away from the wind, which will tend to throw the bow off its course.

Most primitive peoples use the "dugout" canoe, made from a log shaped roughly on the outside with

#### HOW A PADDLE PROPELS AND STEERS



An expert canoeist can make his craft dart ahead, back, or turn; all with dexterous twists of the paddle, as the diagrams explain. A stroke straight back, followed by drawing the paddle inward, turns the bow to the left. A slight outward turn at the end of the stroke keeps the bow going straight ahead, while a stronger outward turn steers the bow to the right.

axes, while the interior is burned out. The canoe is the common craft among the natives of the South Pacific islands. Canoes 100 feet in length are not uncommon. Sometimes two are joined by poles and carry 50 or more passengers.

The birch-bark canoe of the North American Indians has never been surpassed. Although light enough to be carried by one man, it is so buoyant that it can bear a heavy load. A light but strong wood framework is covered with sheets of birch-bark sewed with fibers, and the seams are closed by heavy resinous gums. The Indians also built large canoes to carry many warriors. Today "war canoes" manned by a dozen or more paddlers are used in boys' camps.

The *kayak* of the Eskimo, usually constructed for a single occupant, is used for fishing and sealing trips. A light framework of bone or wood is covered with skins and decked over except at the center. There a circular space, or cockpit, is left for the occupant, who laces himself in tightly with a skin apron, which prevents waters from entering. Eskimos also use a large undecked boat constructed of skins, called the *oomiak* (sometimes called *umiak*), or "woman's boat," to carry many persons or large loads.

In 1865 John MacGregor, a Scotsman, invented the wooden "Rob Roy" canoe, built like the Eskimo

kayak. A Rob Roy is almost entirely decked over, with a cockpit large enough for only one occupant, who uses a long paddle with a blade at each end.

Canoe racing has been directed by the American Canoe Association since 1880. Regattas each year attract experts both in paddling and sailing. The latter sport is winning favor. Canoes with sliding seats, outrigger keels, and one or two sails, make remarkable speed. In 1909, the sail spread was limited to 90 feet. **CANTALOUPE.** This variety of muskmelon is named for Cantalupo, Italy, where it was first grown. The name is now given to the American melon (see Melons). **CANTERBURY, ENGLAND.** On a spring morning more than 1,300 years ago, when the fair land of Britain had relapsed into heathenism after its conquest by the Angles and Saxons, King Ethelbert of Kent, looking out from his city of Canterbury, saw approaching a procession of Christian monks. They bore before them a silver cross that gleamed in the sunlight and a picture of Christ painted on wood. The holy father Augustine was their leader and they had been sent from Rome by Pope Gregory the Great to carry the message of Christ to the English.

When a young man, so runs the beautiful story, thus good pope had seen English boys as slaves in the Roman market. Their blue eyes and golden hair attracted his attention, and he inquired: "Whence come these fair youths?" "From the country of the Angles," he was told. "Truly, they should be called Angels, and not Angles," he replied, "for they have angelic faces." From that day he determined to convert "Angleland," or England as we now call it, to the Christian faith; and now this little band had come to carry out this purpose in the year 597 A.D.

Ethelbert's wife, a Frankish princess, was already a Christian, so the king welcomed the monks. Before long he was won over to the new faith and baptized. His example was followed by 10,000 of his subjects. Augustine was soon made an archbishop by the pope, and from that time on Canterbury has been the center of English Christianity and the Archbishop of Canterbury has been "primate" of the Church of England.

#### Beginning of the Great Cathedral

About 500 years after the death of St. Augustine, the ancient Roman church in which he had preached was destroyed by fire. The building of a new cathedral or archbishop's church was begun by Norman architects and builders in the reign of William the Conqueror; but most of the present structure is later. It took four centuries to build, and the story of its growth into its present majestic form is the story of how faith triumphs over misfortune—for it was many times pillaged and damaged by fire, but each time rebuilt, enlarged, and made more beautiful.

Canterbury cathedral still towers proudly over the old-fashioned town "like a hen brooding over her chickens." Busy little shops nestle close to the stone gateway with its quaint ancient sculptures; but when we pass through this into the wide precincts or "close" of the cathedral, the noise of trade and traffic is shut

out, and the peace and quiet of the cloister hold sway. In this "church city" are the palace of the archbishop and the houses of the other clergy who serve in the cathedral—the dean and the canons. Here, too, is the old monastic cloister begun in the 11th century. The chapter-house or sermon house as it is now called, and the library have been restored and are now in use. All about these gray stone buildings is velvety lawn green as only English turf is green, and in the midst towers the giant cathedral—rugged, time-worn, weather beaten, yet gloriously beautiful still. Flanking the western front are two fine towers, but the eye is carried irresistibly to the center of the structure where high above all rises the cathedral's most striking feature—the Angel Tower or 'Bell Harry' with its beautiful proportions and delicate carvings, its lancet windows and soaring pinnacles.

countless worshippers ascended to it on their knees.

Chaucer in his 'Canterbury Tales' pictures such a band of pilgrims as might have been seen in his day, bent on pleasure as well as religious duty, leisurely enjoying their journey and telling stories along the road (see Chaucer, Geoffrey). We can still visit the old inn, known as Chaucer's Inn, where such a company may have been housed, and can also see the old city gate, part of a wall that surrounded the town in those medieval days, through which they may have passed.

New life, however, has entered the old city. Along the hurrying River Stour are mills, tanneries, and breweries, and a thriving trade is carried on in grain and hops. But the new has not driven out the old. The medieval houses with their overhanging gables, the 15th-century Guildhall and St. Martin's Church,

### CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL, GLORIOUS MONUMENT OF FAITH



Here is the noble mother church of England which in its beautiful walls and Gothic towers tells in stone of the faith and courage of its builders and the religious history of England for nearly a thousand years. It was built chiefly in the 12th and 13th centuries and is in the perpendicular style of Gothic.

Entering the cathedral we visit the Chapel of the Martyrdom and see the spot where Thomas Becket was slain in the 12th century (see Becket, Thomas). For three centuries after, Becket was looked upon as a martyr and a saint, and a constant stream of pilgrims flowed to Canterbury to visit his shrine. This enormously rich shrine is no longer there, but deep grooves in the stone steps show where

dating from Roman days and said to be the oldest church in England all point to bygone days. Population (1901 census preliminary), 27,778.

There was a town on the site when Julius Caesar invaded Britain in 55 B.C. The Romans named it *Duro-cornutum*. Later it was the center of the early English kingdom of Kent. It was called *Cantuaraburh* (Kent-men's town). In time, this became 'Canterbury.'



## FLOATING VILLAGES CROWD CANTON'S WATERWAYS



This narrow channel separates Canton, on the right, from Shameen, on the left. Shameen was a prosperous foreign settlement until the Communists came to power in China. The channel is crowded with houseboats, called *sampans*. Thousands of poor Cantonese spend their lives in such floating houses.

**CANTON, CHINA** Canton is the largest city in southern China. It is the capital of the province of Kwangtung, and the name Canton is a careless English way of saying Kwangtung. The Cantonese call their city Kwangchow.

The city stands at the head of a wide, fertile delta. This delta was formed by many mouths of the great river of southern China, the Si Kiang. Canton lies on the main channel, called the Canton, or Pearl, River. Its harbor is too shallow for large ocean-going vessels; but the river connects it with the great island port of Hong Kong, 80 miles to the south. Railways link it with Kowloon, on the mainland opposite Hong Kong, and with central China. The Si Kiang serves as a highway across southern China.

The Canton Delta is one of the most crowded areas in the world, with more than 3,000 persons for every square mile. The climate is tropical, and deposits of river mud have produced rich soil. It yields two crops of rice a year as well as fruits and vegetables. Land is so precious that thousands of families live in flat-bottomed houseboats—called *sampans*—on the many delta streams. Poverty has caused millions of Cantonese to emigrate. In the United States, Hawaii, the Philippines, Indo-China, and Malaya most of the Chinese are Cantonese.

The Cantonese have a saying, "Everything new originates in Canton." Many Cantonese returned to their birthplace after saving modest fortunes elsewhere and brought back ideas strange to conservative China.

Cantonese who had lived in America helped to reorganize the government. The city walls were torn down to make way for wide boulevards. Tall buildings rose on the water front, and buses and trolleys connected the city with suburbs. The older sections, however, still have streets about eight feet wide, lined with low hovels and two-story shops, hut gay with bright-painted signs. In these narrow streets people get about on foot or ride in sedan chairs carried by coolies. Coolies also transport goods in wheelbarrows or carry bundles on bamboo poles slung across their shoulders.

Arabs and Persians traded in Canton in the 4th century. In the 16th century the Portuguese came and later the Dutch. In 1757 the Chinese made Canton the sole port for foreign trade. Clipper ships from New York, Boston, and old Salem sailed to Canton by way of Cape Horn and brought back silk, ivory and jade carvings, mother-of-pearl work, fans, brassware, porcelain, and embroideries. Following the Opium War (1839-42) between Great Britain and China, Canton was made a treaty port open to foreigners. This war gave Britain possession of Hong Kong. With the rise of this great ocean port, Canton became the distributing point for southern China.

In the 1920's Canton was the center of the revolutionary movement led by Sun Yat-sen. The Japanese occupied the city 1938-45. For six months in 1949 it was the capital of Chiang Kai-shek's Nationalist government. On October 15 the Communists took the city without opposition, and the Nationalist government fled to Formosa. The Communist government seized basic industries and took over control of both foreign and domestic trade. Most of the foreign merchants and industrialists left the city. Those who remained were severely handicapped by government discrimination. Population (1947 est.), 1,413,460.

**CANTON, OHIO.** A fertile farming plain and near-by coal mines, limestone quarries, and deposits of ceramic clays have helped build Canton into a trade and industrial center of eastern Ohio. After the lake port of Cleveland, 55 miles northwest, made Lake Superior

iron ore available to Ohio mills. Canton developed many industries based upon steel. Today the city's leading manufactures are steel alloys, roller bearings, safes and bank vaults, structural steel, vacuum cleaners, cement, soap and water softeners, and gasoline and Diesel engines.

Canton was founded in 1805 and became the seat of Stark County four years later. Its first industry was a gristmill, soon after a plow factory was started. The first rail line reached the town in the 1850's and in 1854 Canton was chartered as a city.

William McKinley, the 25th president of the United States, lived in Canton and conducted his 1896 campaign for election from the city. The McKinley tomb and an art museum that houses many McKinley mementos are historical attractions. Canton has a vocational high school and the William McKinley School of Law. The Stark County Fair is held in September. Canton's slow but sound growth has made it Ohio's eighth largest city. It is governed by a mayor and council. Population (1950 census) 116,912.

**CANUTE (ka-nut)** (905? 1035) King Canute called the Great was the first Danish king of England. For a century before his reign the Danes or Northmen had been raiding the country (see Northmen). In 1013 Canute sailed to England with his father, Sweyn king of Denmark, and shared in his victorious campaigns. Sweyn died in 1014 and Canute continued the struggle. Edmund Ironside, the Saxon king, put up such strong resistance that Canute agreed in 1016 to divide the kingdom with him. Edmund died a few weeks after this treaty was made and the young Danish conqueror became king of all England.

Canute at once put to death his most powerful enemies. The rest of his long reign, 1016-35, was peaceful and orderly. The death of his elder brother gave him the throne of Denmark. Later he gained the crown of Norway as well. When he died in 1035 his empire fell apart. His son Harold ruled England until 1040 and another son, Hardknute, until 1042. Then the Danish line ended with the crowning of a Saxon king, Edward the Confessor.

A well-known story tells how Canute rebuked his flattering courtiers. He had his throne placed on the seashore and when the tide came in he ordered the sea to fall back. When the water reached his feet he turned to his courtiers and said, "Let all men know how empty and worthless is the

power of kings for there is none worthy of the name but Him whom heaven, earth and sea obey."

**CANYON** In the western part of the United States many rivers have cut deep channels with steep sides. Such a gorge is called a canyon from the Spanish word *canyon* meaning tube. Canyons usually occur in the upper courses of rivers where the current is swift and in dry regions where there is not enough rainfall to widen the channel into a broad valley with sloping sides. Some of the most notable examples are the canyons of the Rio Grande, Yellowstone and Colorado rivers. (See also Grand Canyon.)

**CAPE BRETON ISLAND, CANADA** A French explorer of the 17th century described Cape Breton Island as a very beautiful land on the coast of Acadia. The traveler still delights in its wild mountains with breath-taking views across the sea, its forests and lakes and its valleys. He also finds descendants of Scottish and French settlers keeping the language and customs of their ancestors.

The island is a part of the province of Nova Scotia, but it is separated from the main body by the narrow Strait of Canso on the south. Across Cabot Strait to the north is Newfoundland. The Atlantic Ocean lies on the east and the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the west. Its land area is 3,120 square miles. The greatest length is 110 miles, the greatest width 87 miles.

The ancient granite hills of Cape Breton are a part of the Appalachian Mountain system. They are from 1,000 to 1,500 feet high. The wildest, most rugged area at the north end of the island is preserved in the Cape Breton Highlands National Park (390 square miles). The 185-mile Cabot Trail, most spectacular highway

#### VIEWING SEA AND MOUNTAIN FROM THE CABOT TRAIL



The motor highway known as the Cabot Trail winds over forested mounts as in Cape Breton Highlands National Park. Breath-taking views of the Gulf of St. Lawrence open out, as in this scene. At many points the highway clings to the cliffs directly over the sea.

in eastern Canada, rims the park. The interior of the park is a wilderness of forest, lake, and high plateaus covered with muskeg and reindeer moss.

Another striking feature is the Bras d'Or (Arm of Gold) lakes. This is an almost landlocked arm of the Atlantic which extends through the heart of the island. With nearly a thousand miles of interior coast line, it forms one of the finest yachting courses in the world.

The deep-sea and in-shore fisheries are an important industry. The lovely Margaree Valley is the chief farming area. Cape Breton's coal deposits are the largest in eastern Canada. The field near Sydney extends far out under the Atlantic and is being worked more than three miles from shore. Sydney, the largest city (population, 1951 census, 31,317), is a steel-manufacturing center. Iron and limestone are shipped into its fine harbor from Newfoundland.

Cape Breton Island was perhaps the first land sighted by John Cabot (1497) on the coast of North America. No permanent settlement was made until the building of the Fortress of Louisbourg after the Treaty of Utrecht (1713). This base of French power in the New World was destroyed by the English in 1760. Its ruins are a national historic park.

Acadian and other French settlers and United Empire Loyalists arrived at the end of the 18th century. Early in the 19th century there was a large influx of Scottish Highlanders. More Gaelic is spoken on the island than in Scotland itself. At St. Ann is the only Gaelic college in America. The annual Gaelic Mod and Highland Gathering is a four-day festival of dancing, singing, and sports.

In 1902, a wireless station built at Glace Bay sent a message across the Atlantic to King Edward VII. The island is divided into four counties—Cape Breton, Inverness, Richmond, and Victoria. (See also Nova Scotia.) Population (1951 census), 157,696.

**CAPE COD.** This portion of Massachusetts is an L-shaped peninsula reaching out into the Atlantic Ocean. (For air view, see Massachusetts.) It is about 65 miles long from Nantucket Sound north to Cape Cod Bay and is from one to twenty miles wide. It is low and sandy, with numerous cranberry bogs. At the head of the Cape are pine and oak woods. On many of the harbors are picturesque fishing villages. Some of them have become art colonies. Provincetown, Hyannis, Chatham, and Barnstable are favorite summer resorts. In the rural districts people earn their living by raising cranberries, strawberries, and poultry.

The Cape Cod Canal was opened across the neck of the peninsula for 7.6 miles in 1914. It joins Cape Cod Bay with Buzzards Bay, saves about 70 miles in the voyage between Boston and New York, and permits vessels to avoid the shoals of Nantucket. The United States government purchased it in 1923 for 11½ million dollars as a link in the Intracoastal Waterway. In 1935 construction began on enlarging the canal to a depth of 32 feet and a width of 540 feet. Including its channel approaches, the canal is 17.4 miles long. Two highway bridges and a railroad lift bridge span the canal.

Cape Cod was discovered May 14, 1602, by an English navigator, Bartholomew Gosnold. Supposedly he gave it its name from the quantity of codfish taken off its shores. On Nov. 19, 1620, the *Mayflower* sighted its coast and two days later cast anchor in what is now the harbor of Provincetown.

**CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.** The largest province of the Union of South Africa is Cape of Good Hope, or Cape Province. Discovered by Bartholomew Diaz in 1488 (see Diaz), the Cape was first settled in 1652 by Dutch colonists led by Jan van Riebeeck. After the British gained control it remained a British colony until 1910, when the Union was formed (see South Africa, Union of).

The Cape Province lies in the southern tip of Africa between the Atlantic and Indian oceans. It has a regular coast line with many bays. Table Bay and False Bay are separated by the Cape peninsula which terminates in the Cape of Good Hope. Cape Agulhas, on the Indian Ocean, is the southernmost point of Africa. Most of the province lies on the great plateau called the high *veld*. The chief mountain range is the Drakensberg, which extends into Natal. The climate is generally dry and temperate. Agriculture and mining are the chief industries (for exports, see Capetown). Port Elizabeth and East London on the southeast coast are manufacturing centers. The great port of Capetown is both the provincial capital and the legislative capital of the Union. The province is governed by an administrator appointed by the Union's governor general. Area, 277,113 square miles; population (1951 census, preliminary), 4,420,657.

**CAPETOWN, UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.** Capetown is both the capital of Cape of Good Hope Province and the legislative capital of the Union of South Africa. One of the most beautifully situated cities in the world, it lies along the shore of Table Bay at the foot of Table Mountain, about 30 miles north of the Cape of Good Hope (for picture, see Africa).

Entering the city from the sea, one passes from the Duncan Dock area, along King's Way, into Capetown's main thoroughfare, Adderley Street. At the top of this street are the Union House of Assembly, Government House, St. George's Cathedral, and the Dutch Reformed Church. Behind the government buildings the Botanical Gardens rise toward the slopes of Table Mountain. Here are the National Art Gallery and the South African Museum of Natural History. Across the Grand Parade from City Hall is the oldest building in South Africa—the Castle—a fort built in the 17th century. In suburban Rondebosch are the prime minister's residence (Groote Schuur) and the University of Capetown.

Capetown is one of the greatest ports in the Southern Hemisphere. The principal exports are diamonds, gold, wool, hides, dried and canned fruit, wine and brandy, and rock lobster. Chief imports are automobile parts and machinery. There are many small manufacturing industries, including food products, shoes, textiles and clothing, tobacco, drugs and cosmetics, furniture, chemicals, and leather goods.

## SIGNAL HILL OVERLOOKS CAPE TOWN



The white buildings of Capetown gleam in the sun. A long break water protects the city docks from the open waters of Table Bay.

The city was founded by the Dutch in 1652. The British gained control after the Napoleonic wars. Capetown became the legislative capital when the Union was formed in 1910. In the second World War it was an important base for allied naval operations.

The climate is like that of a northern California. Rainfall is heaviest from June to August, the winter months. The population—white Europeans, Cape Coloreds and Negro Africans—451,922 (1951 census preliminary). (See also South Africa Union of )

**CAPE VERDE (sard) ISLANDS** An overseas province of Portugal. These islands lie in the Atlantic Ocean off the west coast of Africa north of the equator. They are about 320 miles from Cape Verde for which they were named. There are ten main islands and several rocky islets. The total area is 1,557 square miles. The islands are of volcanic origin, but the only volcano active today is on Fogo. The climate is hot and very dry. Rainfall averages from 5 to 11 inches a year. Farming is confined to small areas. The principal products are coffee, castor beans, tobacco, oranges, sugar cane and hides.

Other than a few thousand white Europeans, the people of the islands are either Negroes or of mixed blood (mulattoes). Praia is the capital, is on São Tiago (Santiago), the largest and most populous island. Porto Grande on São Vicente (St. Vincent) is a coaling station on the route from Europe to South America. Most of the people speak Portuguese and Portuguese money is used.

The Cape Verde Islands were discovered in 1456 by an Italian navigator in the service of Prince Henry of Portugal. Since then the islands have been in the possession of Portugal except for the brief period when Spain ruled the mother country. Total population (1950 census preliminary) 147,325.

**CAPILLARY ACTION** If you drop the corner of a towel in a bathtub of water, the water climbs up the threads and soon the whole towel is wet. If you dip one end of a lump of sugar in cocoa, in a few seconds the whole lump is soaked. Blotting paper takes up ink and lampwicks raise oil in the same way.

Men first studied the action of this force in tiny tubes little larger than a hair, and so they called it *capillary attraction* or *capillarity* from the Latin word *capillus* meaning hair. They found that when one end of a very small tube is put in a glass of water, the water will rise in the tube a little above its level in the glass. The finer the tube the greater the height to which the water will rise. This behavior is caused by the action of *surface tension* as explained in the article Liquid. Sugar salt starch sponges and the fibers of plants all have a multitude of tiny tubes and hollows that pull up water or other fluids just as the glass tube does.

Capillarity is very important in farming. Here it is the soil particles that pull the water up just as a lampwick or a towel does. The smaller the particles of dirt and the closer they are together the more freely the moisture rises. Sometimes after a summer shower the upper layer of earth is packed in a hard crust. Then the moisture absorbed by this tightly packed earth is quickly evaporated into the air and thus lost to the soil and the plant roots.

In regions where there is a great deal of rainfall in the early spring but very little through the hot summer months, farmers use *dry farming* methods. First the soil is plowed deep and fine and packed down so the moisture can come up readily around the roots of the plant. On the surface the soil is stirred and worked to make a layer of dry pulverized earth called a *mulch*. This checks the moisture and keeps it from evaporating into the air.

**CARBOLIC ACID** The chief use of carbolic acid is in the manufacture of plastics. Also called phenol, carbolic acid is a white crystalline poisonous solid. Phenolic plastics are made from carbolic acid and formaldehyde. These plastics are molded into such familiar products as telephone handsets and coffee-pot handles. Bakelite, the earliest phenolic plastic, was first used commercially in 1909. (See also Coal Tar Products, Plastics.)

Phenol is used also in antiseptic and disinfecting solutions, in dyes, perfumes, soaps, tooth powders, photographic developers and as a sensitizer of photographic plates. With nitric acid, phenol forms picric acid, used in explosives. (See Explosives.)

Natural phenol is obtained from coal tar but nearly 90 per cent of commercial phenol is made synthetically from benzene (benzol) which is itself a coal tar product. By use of benzene, phenol can also be extracted from the ammonia liquors of by-product coke plants. Most synthetic phenol is made by heating chlorinated benzene with caustic soda solution under high pressure.

The crude product is a dark colored oil when purified it forms large colorless crystals. Pure phenol has

a very corrosive action on the skin, producing white burns which are difficult to heal. A 3 per cent solution is used for washing wounds and disinfecting the hands, as that strength is sufficient to kill bacteria. Taken internally it is a strong poison.

**CARBON.** Diamonds, pencil leads, and soot—three very different substances—are all nearly pure carbon. Every living thing on earth contains carbon, and such substances as coal and petroleum, which were formed from living things, contain very high proportions of it. Anthracite, or “hard coal,” is more than 90 per cent pure carbon.

Carbon is thus one of the most important chemical elements. It exists in three forms, or *allotropes*. The diamond is a crystal of closely packed carbon atoms and is the hardest substance known. Graphite, the black substance used in lead pencils, has crystals of a different form; it is extremely soft. Lampblack, or chemically pure soot, is the amorphous form of carbon; that is, it consists of atoms loosely packed in no particular arrangement.

All three forms of carbon have important industrial uses. Nonprecious industrial diamonds are a widely used abrasive and cutting agent. Flaky, slippery graphite is an excellent dry lubricant. Large quantities of graphite are also used in the manufacture of lead pencils, crucibles, and electrodes for dry cells and arc lamps. Lampblack (also called carbon black) is obtained by burning gas or other combustibles and collecting the soot. It is used as a black pigment in ink, paint, and other substances, and as a toughening agent in rubber manufacture. (See also Diamond; Graphite.)

The element carbon unites readily with many elements, forming more than a quarter of a million known compounds. The study of carbon compounds is called *organic chemistry* because it was long thought that such substances could be produced only by living plants and animals (see Chemistry, subhead “Organic Chemistry”). Compounds of carbon and hydrogen are known as *hydrocarbons*. The long series of hydrocarbons include the liquid and gaseous fuels and such useful products as natural rubber (see Hydrocarbons). Another large group of carbon compounds is known as the *carbohydrates*. In all carbohydrates, as in water ( $H_2O$ ), one atom of oxygen is present for every two atoms of hydrogen. The carbohydrates include sugars, starches, and cellulose. With oxygen alone, carbon forms carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ) or carbon monoxide ( $CO$ ) (see Carbon Dioxide).

The chemist's symbol for carbon is C; its atomic number is 6 and its atomic weight is 12.010. The element is known to have several *isotopes* (see Atoms). Nearly 99 per cent of natural carbon is carbon 12, the common isotope, and about one per cent is carbon 13. A minute proportion of natural carbon is carbon 14, a radioactive isotope formed by the action of cosmic rays on nitrogen atoms in the air. Carbon 14 is used by archaeologists and geologists in determining the age of ancient plant and animal remains, (see Geology; for picture, see Archeology).

**CARBON DIOXIDE AND MONOXIDE.** Every animal that lives is constantly breathing forth carbon dioxide (often called “carbonic acid gas”), and every fire where carbon compounds are burned gives off this colorless, tasteless gas. Plants with green foliage, on the contrary, take up carbon dioxide from the air during the daytime, consume the carbon in it, and give back the oxygen to the air (see Leaves).

Carbon dioxide contains one atom of carbon to two atoms of oxygen, hence its chemical symbol is  $CO_2$ . It forms about  $\frac{1}{3300}$  of the earth's atmosphere. Carbon dioxide is heavier than air, and can be carried in a vessel and poured like water. Unlike oxygen, it does not support combustion, but will put out a fire. Some chemical fire extinguishers, therefore, are constructed so as to give off carbon dioxide. If the pure gas is breathed, or air containing considerable quantities of it, it will cause death through suffocation, because the lungs do not get the necessary oxygen. Under the name of “choke damp” it is one of the perils most dreaded by the miner. Dissolved in water it forms carbonic acid. “Charged” water (soda or seltzer water) is made by charging water with carbon dioxide under pressure.

Under a pressure of 600 pounds to the square inch, the gas becomes liquid. If the liquid gas is sprayed through a small jet, it evaporates rapidly, and part of the liquid solidifies into white snow. This intensely cold snow ( $-110^\circ F.$ ), made from carbon dioxide obtained from burning coke or as a by-product, notably of fermentation, is pressed into cakes, called “Dry-Ice,” or “carbice,” and used for refrigerating.

Carbon monoxide is an even more dangerous gas. It differs from carbon dioxide in containing only one atom of oxygen to one of carbon; its chemical symbol therefore is  $CO$ . It is highly poisonous, and causes death when a person remains too long in a closed bathroom with a gas heater in operation, or in a closed garage with an automobile engine running. It is present in illuminating gas and it makes the gas dangerous to breathe even in small quantities. Carbon monoxide escaping from coal stoves or furnaces sometimes kills whole families.

**CARDINAL.** Against green trees or white snow, the scarlet cardinal makes a brilliant flash of color. The loud clear whistle, *what cheer, what cheer* or the rolling carol ending in *wheat, wheat, wheat*, are sung in summer and even on sunny winter days. The female cardinal sings, unlike most female birds.

The cardinal is about  $8\frac{1}{4}$  inches long, a little smaller than a robin. It has a high crest, and thick red bill. The throat and area around the base of the bill are black. The female and young have gray-brown backs and dull red wings, tail, and crest.

The cardinals build their nest in a low bush. It is made of twigs, roots, and strips of bark and lined with grass. The two to four eggs are bluish-white spotted with brown. They hatch in 12 days. The male cares for the young after they leave the nest, while the female busies herself with the next family. He is a fussy and devoted father, hopping about in the

greatest excitement until the little birds are able to fly. Cardinals eat weed seeds, berries and a great variety of insects and larvae.

They do not migrate but spend the winter in their nesting areas. Once considered southern birds, they are slowly extending their range northward. They are now found from South Dakota to the Gulf coast east of the Great Plains. The Arizona and gray-tailed cardinals live in the Southwest. The cardinal is the state bird of Illinois, Indiana, Kentucky, North Carolina, Ohio, Virginia and West Virginia. Its scientific name is *Richmondia cardinalis*. (For pictures in color see Birds Egg.)

**CARDINALS COLLEGE** OF The importance in the Roman Catholic church of these advisers of the pope is shown by their very name.

Cardinals, which means superior or excellent (from the Latin *cardo* a hinge.) The pope usually seeks their advice on all important questions of church government. Since the year 1059 they have formed a body known as the College of Cardinals. At the death of a pope it has the important duty of choosing the new head of the church. From time to time the pope presides at a formal meeting of the cardinals called a

consistory. The general affairs of the church are discussed and important announcements of policies may be made. A greater part of the church administration also is conducted by commissions of cardinals called congregations (see Papacy). Though the cardinals rank next to the pope in importance in governing the church, this office gives them no place in the ecclesiastical hierarchy of priest, bishop, etc.

Originally the cardinals consisted of the chief priests of the churches in Rome, together with a certain number of deacons and the bishops of the seven neighboring dioceses. Even today they are distinguished as cardinal bishops, cardinal priests and cardinal deacons according to the offices which are assigned to them in the churches about Rome.

Cardinals are appointed by the pope. They hold office for life. The maximum number of 70 cardinals fixed by Pope Sixtus V in 1586 has rarely been reached. In 1946 however Pope Pius XII created 32 new cardinals filling the College for the first time since the 18th century. To stress the universality of the church, he chose them from 19 nations. In 1943 he again filled the College by vesting 24 including one from the United States, bringing its total to 4

Italy's total was 27. From the official emblem of a cardinal is a scarlet hat with 15 tassels on each side, hence the name cardinal for a certain shade of red.

A species of lobelia (*Lobelia cardinalis*) is called the cardinal flower because of its showy scarlet blossoms (for illustration in color see Flowers).

The Romans gave the name cardinal virtue to justice, prudence, temperance and fortitude because all other virtues hinge (*cardo*) on those four. Cardinal numbers 1, 2, 3 and so on tell how many

On them hinge ordinal numbers—first, second, third and so on—telling order' (see Number System).

**CARDS PLAYING** Cards for playing games of chance are of the most remote antiquity and are used in almost every country. The games played are as various as the size of the packs and the designs on the pasteboards.

Playing cards were introduced into Europe about the middle of the 14th century. Probably they were brought from Asia either by returning crusaders or through commerce with the Saracens and Moors of northern Africa. An early Italian chronicler lends support to the latter view for in an old document he says. In the year 1379 the game of cards was introduced into Viterbo (in central

Italy) coming from the land of the Saracens where it is called *nab*.

At first cards were painted by hand and were very expensive. The accounts of the French king Charles VI for the year 1393 show the payment to a painter of a sum equal to \$400 for three packs of cards in gold and various colors ornamented with different designs. Between 1420 and 1430 even before the invention of printing from movable type, the new art of block printing (engraving) was used to make playing cards. This process reduced the price and spread the use of cards. The city of Ulm in Germany became one of the chief centers of the manufacture.

It would be a dizzy chase to follow in detail the evolution of the pictured royalties on the cards and the resulting transactions. One theory holds that on the early Italian cards the four suits represented the four classes of society—nobles, peasants, clergy and citizens. The early German cards however mark the suits respectively with hearts, bells, leaves and acorns. Our familiar hearts, clubs, spades and diamonds come to us from the French.

The face or court cards of the early packs were the king, knight and valet (jack or 'knave

#### THE BRILLIANT CARDINAL



This alert looking cardinal is standing on a tree stump draped with Spanish moss. He hopes it wants a strand of the moss to use in building its nest. Notice its perky crest and heavy beak.

at times known as the court fool). The Italians substituted a queen for the knight, and this is now the usual custom. Today 52 cards usually make up the pack in America, with extra cards called "jokers" being added for use in certain games.

**CARIBBEAN SEA.** One of the great crossroads of the world for ocean shipping is the Caribbean Sea. Ships of many nations cross it as they approach or leave the Atlantic end of the Panama Canal. Other vessels traverse its deep blue waters carrying cargoes between the Caribbean ports of South and Central America or from these to the United States.

The sea, 756,000 square miles in area, is a great arm of the Atlantic Ocean between the long, sweeping crescent of the West Indies and the coasts of Central and South America. Its length from Yucatán to Trinidad is about 1,900 miles; its width from the Panama Canal to Cape Maisi, Cuba, about 800 miles. The Caribbean and its bordering lands lie wholly within the tropics. Its bed is a vast undersea mountain system whose easternmost range breaks the surface to form the West Indies chain of islands.

The climate of the Caribbean lands is generally hot and wet. Over much of the region the average temperature is about 80° F. and it varies little from month to month. East and northeast trade winds blow almost uniformly throughout the year (see Winds). These bring heavy rains to the windward mountain slopes but leave some areas on the leeward sides relatively dry. Despite the heavy rainfall, sunshine is abundant. Much of the rain falls in brief, torrential showers. Violent cyclonic storms called hurricanes develop over the Caribbean and do great damage as they swing northward (see Storms). They are frequent from August through October and make shipping hazardous during those months.

The Caribbean lands were colonized early by the Spanish, English, French, Dutch, and Danish. Attempts to enslave the warlike native Caribs failed, and so African slaves were brought in to work the colonial plantations. Today Negroes outnumber whites by as much as 20 to 1 on some islands.

In the 17th and 18th centuries pirates infested the Caribbean. The Spanish Main (north coast of South America) was a favorite haunt for preying on the richly loaded ships of the king of Spain. The word buccaneer refers particularly to these Caribbean pirates of colonial days. (See also Pirates.)

In modern times the United States has played a large part in the fortunes of the Caribbean lands. After the formulation of the Monroe Doctrine in 1823, the United States took on the responsibility of keeping order in the region and of helping its peoples to improve their condition (see Monroe Doctrine). It liberated Cuba from Spain; intervened to bring order in Haiti, the Dominican Republic, Nicaragua, and Honduras; acquired Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands; and built the Panama Canal.

Today the Caribbean is vital to the nation's two-ocean defense because it controls the Panama Canal approaches. There are bases for land, sea, and air

forces at San Juan and Culebra, Puerto Rico; Guantánamo, Cuba; Coco Solo, Canal Zone; and other points. In 1940 bases were leased from Great Britain on several Caribbean islands. (See also Central America; West Indies.)

**CARIBOU.** The wild reindeer of North America, or caribou, lacks the symmetry and grace of a true deer. The body is heavy and the legs thick and sturdy with broad hoofs. Both males and females have large irregularly branching antlers, but these are smaller and more slender in the females.

Caribou feed on grasses and lichens and also browse on twigs and brush. There are two species. The woodland caribou once lived in swampy forests from Alaska and Canada to northern Maine and Minnesota and in the Rocky Mountain region of Idaho and Wyoming. Hunters forced them north. The last band south of Canada disappeared about 1925 from Isle Royale, in Lake Superior. The Barren Ground caribou resembles its woodland relative but is smaller and paler in color. It roams the desolate Arctic barrens and tundras beyond the limit of trees. Early explorers in Alaska found herds numbering hundreds of thousands.

When alarmed, caribou break into a clumsy gallop which changes to a steady shambling trot that carries them rapidly across country. Their large spreading hoofs, with sharp cup-shaped edges, give them a firm footing on the soft hummocky surface of their summer haunts and on the ice and snow in winter.

The scientific name of the woodland caribou is *Rangifer caribou*; of the Barren Ground caribou, *Rangifer arcticus*. (See also Deer; Reindeer.)

**CARLYLE, THOMAS (1795–1881).** This author's masterpiece, 'Sartor Resartus', is one of the strangest books ever written. It purports to be part book review and part biography. Carlyle said that he patched together his book from another book, 'The History of Clothes, Their Origin and Influence', and from the life of its author, Herr Diogenes Teufelsdröckh. The Latin title means "the tailor patched" and refers to this literary patching.

Both the German professor and his book existed only in Carlyle's imagination. But in the professor's name he poured out his own soul. Teufelsdröckh's spiritual struggles, loves, and hates were Carlyle's own. The book is written in a rhapsodic, broken style that has since been called "Carlylese."

Thomas Carlyle, the eldest son of a Scottish peasant family, was born in the lowland village of Ecclefechan in 1795. He was first educated at home, then at the grammar school of Annan nearby. At the age of 14 he went to Edinburgh University; but he left in 1814 without a degree. He was too independent in spirit to get much from a university of that day.

For the next 12 years he eked out a living by writing and teaching. He became tremendously interested in German romantic literature, particularly the works of Schiller and Goethe. Much of his writing at this period dealt with this literature.

When he was still in his 20's he began to suffer from a stomach ailment, and for the rest of his long

life he was almost constantly in pain. He was by nature irritable and stubborn. The tortures of this disease made him even more ill tempered.

In 1821 he was introduced to Jane Welsh, a young Scottish lady. She and Carlyle fell in love and after five years were married. They were both somewhat hotheaded and their marriage was stormy. But they remained deeply in love all their lives.



THOMAS CARLYLE

In 1834 the Carlyles moved to London, taking the house in Chelsea where they lived until their deaths. The following year 'Sartor Resartus' was published in Boston. Miss Ralph Waldo Emerson, one of Carlyle's earliest disciples, had the book published in America because no British book publisher would accept it.

Through his friend John Stuart Mill, the English philosopher, Carlyle became interested in the French Revolution and set to work on a monumental history. After five months of difficult work he completed the first volume and left it with Mill for criticism.

While in Mill's possession, the manuscript was accidentally burned by a servant girl lighting a fire. Mill was appalled when he discovered the loss and rushed to Carlyle's house nearly frantic with grief. Carlyle did not utter a word of reproach but tried only to console his friend. After Mill had left, he said to Mrs. Carlyle, "Mill, poor fellow, is terribly cut up. We must endeavor to hide from him how very serious this business is for us."

The three volumes of 'The French Revolution' were finally published in 1837. The book was immediately successful. The days of struggle were over, and Carlyle took his place as a leading English writer. His other books followed one another at intervals of two to five years.

Carlyle was profoundly shaken by the sudden death of his wife in 1866. After this time he wrote very little. His physical strength gradually failed during those years and he died peacefully at the age of 85.

Carlyle had a few "messages" which he repeated again and again. He affirmed that work of all kinds is dignified and sacred. He thought that men must renounce personal happiness to obtain peace of mind. He believed that the world must be governed by "heroes"—strong, just men; consequently he felt that the people should put their faith in such men and not in democracy. In his own day Carlyle exerted a strong influence on other writers, but today few people read Carlyle for what he had to say. They read his books for their majestic style and revealing flashes of Carlyle's highly individual personality.

Carlyle's chief works are: 'Life of Schiller' (1823-24), 'Sartor Resartus' (1833-34), 'French Revolution' (1837), 'Heroes and Hero-Worship' (1841), 'Past and Present' (1843), 'Life and Letters of Oliver Cromwell' (1845), 'Latter Day Pamphlets' (1850), 'Frederick the Great' (1858-65).

**CARNATION.** The name "carnation" means "flesh-colored" for that was the hue of the original flower. Originally this spicy flower grew wild in the Mediterranean region. It has been cultivated there for more than 2,000 years and is still the favorite flower of the Mediterranean countries. It is also called clove pink because of its odor, but some botanists use this name only for single varieties.

Early in the 16th century, growers developed deep red and white varieties. Hundreds of others soon followed, and the carnation became one of the most popular flowers of Shakespeare's day. He speaks of "our carnations and streak'd gilliflowers" (another name for the carnation) as the "fairest flowers of the season." Many 16th century painters liked to include carnations in their portraits and interiors.

The earliest hybrids developed, the wine-red and white, are still the most popular varieties along with the original pink. We now have many hundreds of varieties. The colors run from deep red through white, and there are also yellow shades. Some varieties are striped. Blooms range in size from tiny buttons to great heads  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches across. The petals are both fringed and plain. Single carnations have five petals, but doubles have a great many, closely packed.

#### GARDEN CARNATIONS



Cultivated since the time of the ancient Greeks, the perennial border carnation has always been a favorite. Its spicy blooms are colorful and long lasting.

Most important hot-house varieties of carnations belong to the perpetual-flowering ("tree") strain. They are tall, stiff stemmed plants with large blooms. French growers started developing them in the 1840's. Today most of the carnations in florists' shops are American hybrids.

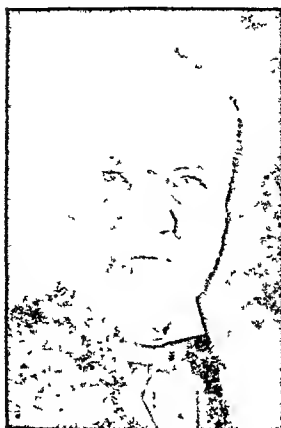
The flower-garden carnation is a very satisfactory perennial. The same range of colors is available, in both dwarf and large varieties. Many bloom the same year from seed. **sown early in the spring.** They require no unusual care, but

benefit from a rich, light soil and plenty of moisture. In regions of severe winters plants should be protected with a light mulch after the ground freezes (see Gardens). But they often survive without protection.

Scientific name of carnation *Dianthus caryophyllus*. It comprises one species of the pink genus. The solitary terminal flowers are perfumed and variously colored. They grow on a more or less erect branching stem from 2 to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet high with dusty, opposite grasslike leaves. (See Pink.)



**CARNEGIE** (*kār-nīg*), **ANDREW** (1835-1919). The history of this industrialist and philanthropist is one of the great American success stories. At 12, he was an immigrant boy earning \$1.20 a week. Fifty years later he was giving away a third of a billion



ANDREW CARNEGIE

dollars of his own money. Meanwhile he had built up one of the world's greatest steel companies.

Andrew Carnegie was born at Dunfermline near Edinburgh, Scotland. In 1848 the family came to America, settling at Allegheny, Pa. (now part of Pittsburgh). Andrew worked first as a bobbin boy in a cotton mill. Later he became secretary to the superintendent of the Pennsylvania Railroad's Pitts-

burgh division. By the outbreak of the Civil War he himself was superintendent. He had also become a financier. Saving his earnings, he bought an eighth interest in a sleeping-car company. The stock increased greatly in value when the railroads adopted sleeping cars, and young Carnegie made a great deal of money.

During the war he gave up his position to take charge of the eastern military railroads and telegraph lines for the government. After the war he foresaw that iron bridges would soon replace wooden structures. So he founded the Keystone Bridge Works, which built the first iron bridge across the Ohio River. This business led him to found the iron and steel works which brought him the bulk of his huge fortune.

By 1899, Carnegie had consolidated many of the steel works around Pittsburgh into the great Carnegie Steel Company. Two years later, at the height of his phenomenal business career, he transferred his 500-million-dollar steel interests to the new United States Steel Corporation. He then retired from business to devote his time and money to public service.

Carnegie believed that it was the solemn duty of a rich man to redistribute his wealth in the public interest. He also felt that indiscriminate giving was bad. "No person," he said, "and no community can be permanently helped except by their own coöperation."

To insure that his money would be distributed wisely, he established the

Carnegie Corporation of New York, with an endowment of \$125,000,000. The income from this fund now goes to many causes. His biggest gift for any single purpose was the fund for establishing the Carnegie public libraries. Almost as famous are the Hero Funds he set up in many countries. The largest is for the United States and Canada (including Newfoundland). Most of his fortune went to educational and scientific institutions. Many of these he founded himself.

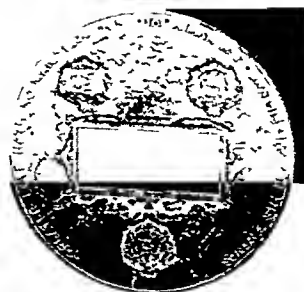
Carnegie was devoted to his mother and supported her in luxurious fashion. He did not marry until after her death when he was in his 50's. He and his wife bought a huge estate in Scotland and built a great house they called Skibo Castle. In his later years he was half-humorously known as the "Laird of Skibo." Carnegie died at "Shadowbrook," his summer home in Lenox, Mass., at the age of 83.

Following is the Carnegie Corporation's official summary of his public gifts and bequests:

Free Public Library Buildings . . . . .	\$ 43,068,835
Church organs . . . . .	4,492,669
Colleges, universities, and schools . . . . .	15,043,477
Carnegie Corporation of New York . . . . .	135,336,867
Carnegie Institution of Washington . . . . .	22,000,000
Carnegie Institute (of Pittsburgh) . . . . .	11,729,471
Carnegie Institute of Technology . . . . .	7,274,371
Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching . . . . .	15,000,000
Carnegie Hero Funds . . . . .	10,540,000
Carnegie Endowment for International Peace . . . . .	10,000,000
Church Peace Union . . . . .	2,000,000
Palace of Peace at the Hague . . . . .	1,500,000
Pan American Union Building . . . . .	850,000
Other gifts and bequests . . . . .	54,463,767

Total . . . . . \$333,299,460

#### THE CARNEGIE MEDAL



With this medal trustees of the Carnegie Hero Fund recognize heroic deeds that otherwise might go unappreciated.

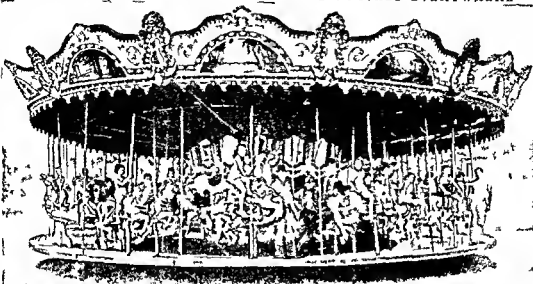
**CARNIVAL.** When the carnival comes to town, a weed-grown vacant lot blossoms overnight into an amusement park and magic wonderland. The traveling company unloads its equipment from railway cars or trucks, and soon a town of show tents and wooden booths arises. Workmen set up strong steel frames for the merry-go-round, the Ferris wheel, and rides that whirl and toss giddy, shrieking riders.

The carnival's medley of strange sights, sounds, and scents spells glamor and excitement for the children. They are fascinated by the brilliant lights and the bright colors of side-show costumes and cheap wheel-of-chance prizes. The blare of the calliope and the loud voices of barkers, the smell of hotdogs, the cotton candy, and the surging crowd pressing past the amusements on the midway add to the excitement.

#### Growth of the Modern Carnival

The modern carnival follows centuries of development. Strolling players entertained street crowds in

## THE CHILDREN'S FAVORITE RIDE IN CARNIVALS EVERYWHERE



These happy American children are enjoying a riding wooden horse that rises and falls as the merry-go-round turns to a mechanical organ. The organ tells the merry-go-round a riddle about its fate since when it was first made 300 years ago it is named a carousel.

snc ent Egypt Greece and Rome When the religious festivals of the Middle Ages brought throngs of people to European city squares and plazas shows came too Street vendors and streetmen sellers mingled with the folk while jugglers clowns acrobats singers and dancers amused them

The word carnival originally was the name given the season of merrymaking held on the three days before Lent in Roman Catholic cities (see Easter) Among the most famous are the New Orleans Mardi Gras and carnivals in Rio de Janeiro and in Brussels (Belgium) Each has a procession of gay floats and costumed marchers

Traveling carnivals are popular in the Occident and Orient alike They were especially beloved in America in small towns before motion pictures automobiles and parks gave people access to organized entertainment Carnivals continue to delight American crowds today even in cities with many rival attractions

#### The Carnies and Their Business

Carnival barkers operators and performers seem reckless romantic folk to strolling small town young

sters They speak a strange slang in which small outfits are gilles or 40-milers lemonade stands are juice joints and balloon vendors are bag men But many carnies are shrewd business men and women They survey the financial condition of a community before renting the lot or posting the colorful show bills They may obtain the sponsorship of local churches or charitable groups to gain good will and

draw crowds Carnival receipts are high in prosperous times Even small outfits may go into water quarters with a \$150,000 profit

The largest carnival firms book their shows at state fairs resorts beaches and the like They travel by rail using as many as 60 freight cars and Pullmans for their performers They may carry 500 people The smallest outfits travel by truck They may have less than a dozen attractions and be operated by fewer than 75 people Food booths and games of chance are sometimes run by separate owners on concessions

#### Origin of Merry Go Rounds and Ferris Wheels

Carnival owners frequently introduce new rides that appear dangerous and exciting

#### A TENT SHOW BARKER



This barker has gathered a curious crowd by shouting the wonders of the new show and refined exhibit in his tent show Notice that he uses a microphone

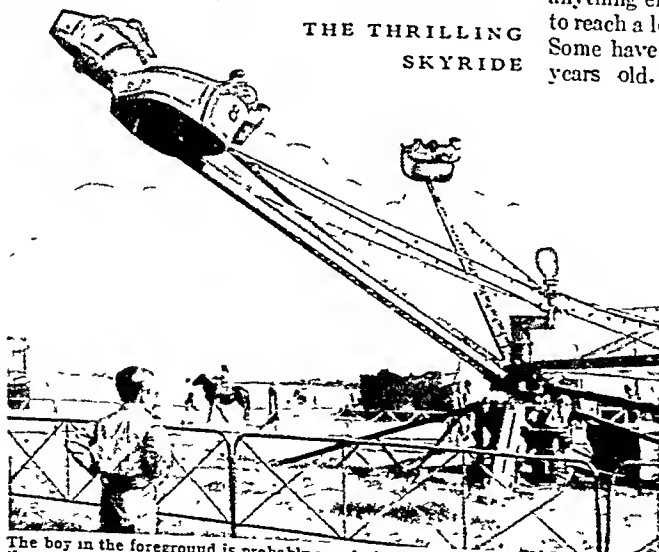
but nothing displaces the merry-go-round and the Ferris wheel as favorites. The merry-go-round goes back to the early 18th century. Its French name, *carrousel*, was that of a tournament entertainment popular in Italy and France in the 17th century. In these performances troops of costumed horsemen engaged in contests, drills, and pageants. The Place du Carrousel, between the Louvre and the Tuileries Garden in Paris, was named for a magnificent carrousel given there by Louis XIV in 1662.

Only the nobility could enjoy these spectacles and so a Parisian toy maker set hobby horses on a platform to create a make-believe carrousel. It was crudely made and the platform turned slowly with only manpower or horsepower to move it; but it delighted people from the first. (Further details of the development of the merry-go-round are uncertain or unknown.) Modern merry-go-rounds are whirled by motors; but many of them still carry prancing wooden ponies wearing the fancy harness of tournament mounts.

The first Ferris wheel was 250 feet in diameter and held a thousand riders. It was built for the World's Columbian Exposition held in Chicago in 1893. Carnival wheels are much smaller but they seem sky-high to youthful riders.

#### Shows and Games of Chance

The carnival's varied shows usually include minstrels, girl shows, freak acts, and animal or snake exhibits. A barker outside the tent ballyhoos the performance inside and calls out the dancing girls or minstrel men to parade across an outer platform. This "opening show" is a tantalizing sample, designed to start the crowd toward the ticket window. Free shows, such as a tightrope act or a fireworks display, are offered late in the evening to keep the crowd at the lot spending money.



THE THRILLING  
SKYRIDE

The boy in the foreground is probably wondering whether he would be scared in the small car whirling high overhead. Carnivals vie with one another in offering rides that appear exciting but are not actually dangerous.

#### HOW FAR AWAY THE GROUND LOOKS!



Ferris wheels delight children and adults alike. They offer the thrill of flying—and the support of strong steel girders.

Many games-of-chance entice people to risk their dimes and quarters. Shrill barkers constantly urge the customers to pick a lucky number on a whirling wheel or to toss a ball or a ring at a target. These games are built to bring profit to their operators, and the winners are few. Even the lucky folk get little for their money, since they usually carry away tawdry, useless prizes.

**CARP.** One of the most widely distributed fishes in fresh-water rivers and lakes is the common carp. It lives on the bottom, grubbing up plants, insects, and anything else it finds to eat. Carp have been known to reach a length of 4½ feet and a weight of 80 pounds. Some have been thought to be more than a hundred years old. The specimens usually caught, however, are under 10 years old, measure between 1 and 2 feet, and weigh from 2 to 10 pounds.

Although their flesh is coarse, carp are eaten by many people who have learned to cook and season them to their taste. Millions of pounds a year are shipped from the Mississippi basin and the Great Lakes to the fish markets of large eastern cities. In Europe and Asia, carp are often raised in ponds.

Carp sometimes crowd out more valuable fish by muddying the water, interfering with their feeding, and eating their eggs. They are called "rough" fish by sport fishermen. Their habit of uprooting vegetation keeps ducks away from ponds. It is difficult to get rid of them since they are able to live and breed in muddy and polluted water and to survive extreme changes in

temperature. In spring their numbers may be greatly reduced by commercial fishermen who net and spear them as they swim into shallow water to spawn. Enough slip by to produce multitudes of young. A female deposits many thousands of eggs during April, May and June. The eggs clinging in sticky clusters to aquatic plants and debris hatch out in 6 to 12 days. The young carp that manage to escape the jaws of bass and other fish develop very rapidly. Under ideal conditions they may weigh more than one-half pound before they are a year old and at the age of four they may measure 20 inches and weigh 5½ pounds.

The carp has a blunt nose and a small thick lipped mouth. Two pairs of feelers called barbels dangle from the upper lip. The wide heavy body is covered with large scales. The back is olive green in color, the sides a dusky gold and the belly a bright yellow. In addition to this so-called *scale carp* we find two other common varieties. The *mirror carp* has three or four rows of huge scales along each side of its body but is otherwise bare. The *leather carp* is entirely bare except for a few scales found occasionally on its back.

Originally the carp lived in Asia. Early in the 13th century it was introduced into Europe. Although it was not brought to the United States until 1876 it is already established in nearly all parts of the country.

The common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) also called European carp and German carp has numerous relatives making up the carp or minnow family (*Cyprinidae*). To this family belong the goldfish, shiner, chub and dace (see Dace, Goldfish). Resembling the carp in habits are the buffalo fish and the suckers (family *Catostomidae*).

**CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS.** Next to the Alps the Carpathian Range is the most important mountain barrier of Europe. Lying across south Central Europe like a great sickle it holds the broad and fertile Hungarian lowlands within its curve. The tip of the sickle points southwest across the narrow Danube Valley toward Vienna and the Alps beyond. From here the range curves gently east and south into central Rumania. There the southern extension which is often called the *Transylvanian Alps*, hooks sharply west to the Iron Gate. This is a spectacular narrow gorge cut through the mountains by the Danube River on its way to the Black Sea. Below the Iron Gate the Balkan Range swings south to form the handle of the sickle.

The Carpathians are cut by many passes. The most famous of these is the historic Pass of the Tatars in the western Ukraine. Through this pass the Golden Horde of the khans poured into Hungary in A.D. 1241 and ravaged much of Central Europe (see *Mongols*).

The inside of the Carpathian sickle is drained by the Danube. The outer slope drains to the Baltic Sea by the Oder and the Vistula and to the Black Sea by the Dniester, the Prut and the Siret.

The lower slopes on each side support dense forests of giant pines. Only grayish mosses and sly lichens cling to the rugged granite peaks which are

covered with snow for about nine months of the year. On some of the mountain tops are small sea blue salt lakes which the people call eyes of the sea. Some of these peaks are more than 8 000 feet high but in general the elevations are only from 3 000 to 5 000 feet. In the forests wild beasts—bears, wolves and lynxes—still roam and great eagles soar through the sky.

All through these mountains are great mining shafts for some of the richest mineral deposits of Europe. In this district gold and silver are found in quantities as well as copper, lead, zinc, iron, coal and petroleum. Great veins of salt underlie the upland plateaus sometimes reaching a thickness of 600 feet. Tunnels riddle these deposits for mile after mile. Mining, forestry and farming furnish occupations for many of the mountain people. Grain and vegetables are raised in the valleys and orchards cling to the steep sides of sunny slopes. (For maps of the Carpathians see Danube River, Czechoslovakia, Europe.) **CARROLL, LEWIS** (1832-1893). Through all the delightful nonsense of Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* and *Through the Looking Glass* runs a strong vein of sense. Both the sense and the nonsense came naturally to Lewis Carroll whose real name was Charles Lutwidge Dodgson. As a professor of mathematics at Oxford University he was a dry and exacting teacher. Outside the classroom his brimming sense of humor made him a beloved friend of many children.

Charles Dodgson was born Jan. 27, 1832, at Daresbury in Cheshire, England. His father was a clergyman and Charles was the eldest of 11 children. The family lived on a glebe farm (one owned by the church) outside the town. The four brothers and seven sisters had all sorts of family games, notably a train game around the garden for which Charles wrote elaborate rules. When he was 12 years old he was sent to school at nearby Rutland and two years later he entered Rugby, one of England's oldest and most famous boys' schools. There he earned good grades in classic languages and mathematics as well as a reputation for defending himself with his fists.

When he was 18 Charles entered Christ Church College, Oxford University, where he studied, worked and lived for the rest of his life. There he took his bachelor's and master's degrees, was ordained a deacon of the Church of England and taught mathematics to several generations of Oxford students. He never married. He lived in one of the college halls and his few adult friends were mainly fellow faculty members. His hobbies were mathematical puzzles and photography. He had his own darkroom and his pictures, even by today's standards, were of excellent quality. Except for a European journey that included a six weeks' stay in Russia, he traveled little.

Lewis Carroll always loved children. He gave parties for them and took them to the theater and on picnics. On one such picnic his guests were Alice Lonsa and Edith, the daughters of Dr. Henry

## ALICE HEARS A MELANCHOLY TALE



"'Once', said the Mock Turtle at last, with a deep sigh, 'I was a real turtle.'" Here he is, telling Alice and the Gryphon the sad story of his life. Sir John Tenniel's illustrations have delighted generations of Lewis Carroll's readers.

Liddell, dean of Christ Church College. On this hot summer day in a meadow along the Isis River he began to tell them the 'Alice' stories. Later he wrote them out for the children, and the manuscript tales were read and reread by many people. In 1864 'Alice's Adventures in Wonderland' was published, and 'Through the Looking Glass' in 1871. Both were illustrated by the famous cartoonist and artist Sir John Tenniel, whose drawings have remained as popular as Lewis Carroll's stories.

In 1876 he published 'The Hunting of the Snark', the amusing subtitle of which is 'An Agony in Eight

Fits'. Other important children's books written by him were 'Sylvic and Bruno' (1889), and 'Sylvic and Bruno Concluded' (1893). To these books he signed his pen name; for several other works on mathematics and logic he used his real name. His book royalties enabled him to teach fewer classes, and he spent his summers at Eastbourne on the seacoast. He died Jan. 14, 1898.

**CARROTS.** In the summer many fields seem to be dotted with huge, lacy snowflakes. The "flakes" are really the blossoms of the wild carrot. A common name for the plant is Queen Anne's lace. (See also Queen Anne's Lace; for picture in color, see Flowers.)

The carrots we eat are cultivated varieties of the same plant. Men have grown them for food since ancient times. Hollanders brought them to England during the reign of Queen Elizabeth I. A few years later women wore the feathery leaves in their head-dresses. Today carrots are grown everywhere in the United States, both on farms and in home gardens. They are eaten either raw or cooked.

If we cut a carrot across, we see the true root as a central core. Around the core is a fleshy part with food for flowers and seed. If left for the winter, the next year the stem will grow two or three feet high. This bears flowers in "umbrellas," or *umbels*.

Carrots differ widely in the shape and color of their roots. White carrots are grown chiefly for cattle, and red, orange, or yellow for table use. There are early, medium, and late varieties, and, like potatoes, carrots are found in our markets the year round. Table varieties may be sown as soon as the weather settles in spring. Stock carrots mature late, growing best during the cool weather of the fall. They require a loose soil that will allow the roots to expand, preferably a rich sandy loam. Carrots contain valuable food minerals and are rich in vitamin A (see Vitamins).

The carrot is a biennial belonging to the parsley family (*Umbelliferae*). Scientific name, *Daucus carota*.

## KIT CARSON—HERO of the OLD WEST

**CARSON** CHRISTOPHER (KIT) (1809-1868). The opening of the West gave America many notable heroes. One of the greatest of these pioneers was Kit Carson. Carson's long career spanned many activities. He was fur trapper, guide, Indian agent, and soldier. In all these, he showed himself to be a fearless man of the wilderness, with the strength of rawhide and the patient wisdom of an Indian. White men chose him as their leader; and several tribes of Indians regarded him as protector and friend.

Carson was John C. Frémont's guide and companion on the explorations that opened the Oregon country to settlement and brought California into the Union. Frémont admired Kit's knowledge of the wilderness, his instinct for finding game and passable trails, and his determination to go on when weaker men would have turned back. In his official

reports, Frémont told of Carson's strength and daring on the expeditions (see Frémont). People in the East read the reports, and Kit soon ranked with Daniel Boone as one of the nation's great pioneers.

### Boyhood in the Missouri Wilds

Kit Carson's father had come to Kentucky from South Carolina, and the boy was born Christmas Eve, 1809, in Madison County, Ky. He was the ninth of 14 children. When Kit was about a year and a half old, the family moved to Missouri (then part of the Louisiana Territory). They settled in the Boone's Lick district, an area that later became Howard County, Mo. At that time Indian raids were frequent.

Kit was the smallest boy in the family. All his brothers grew to more than six feet in height, but Kit never topped five feet six inches. Even though he was small, Kit early learned wilderness ways. He

## CARSON LEADS FREMONT OVER THE SIERRA NEVADA



On John C. Fremont's second expedition Kit Carson guided the party over the rugged Sierra Nevada in midwinter. Here Carson leads and points the way to Fremont, close behind. Fremont relied upon Carson to guide in the unexplored country.

stood guard against Indian attacks and he was an expert shot with the muzzle-loading rifle. By the time he was eight he could kill a squirrel at 50 yards. And in 30 seconds he could drop a new lead bullet down the bore, tamp it into place, spill the right quantity of powder into the pan, place the cap and be ready to fire again. Few boys in Boone's Lick learned to read and write, and Kit was not one of them.

When Kit was nine his father was killed by a falling tree limb. The boy had his freedom for a few more years. When he was 15 his mother apprenticed him to a saddler and harness maker in the nearby town of Franklin.

#### Cary Boy on the Santa Fe Trail

Kit chafed at being kept indoors over a saddler's bench. He missed the hunting and the rolling wooded land along the Missouri River. And from wagon drivers and hunters who stopped by the shop he heard tales of adventure. These men traveled with the great wagon trains that carried goods over the Santa Fe Trail. After a year Kit could stand confinement no more, so he ran away.

He asked a wagon boss for a job and was laughed at. "You're too small," the wagon boss said. "We need real men on the trail." But Kit kept begging, and finally he was made a *cary boy*, one who drove the spare mules and oxen.

Although accustomed to outdoor life, Kit had to endure greater hardship than he had ever known. As the wagon trains pushed slowly forward through desert dust, Kit suffered extreme thirst. They kept moving all day long and at night the men shared watches

On one occasion Kit helped amputate the shattered arm of an injured man. The boy grew lean and strong and he began to leave the new life.

#### Kit Becomes a Mountain Man

From Santa Fe, Kit went to Taos. He worked as a cook and errand boy and helped repair harnesses and other leather articles. Here he met an adventurous breed of men—the Rocky Mountain fur trappers called Mountain Men. They wore moccasins and buckskin suits and lived in buffalo-skin lodges on the trail. They were like Indians in their way of life.

Kit was keen to become a Mountain Man and when he was 19 he got his chance. In 1829 Ewing Young, a pioneer trapper, hired him for his trapping expedition to California. Kit soon proved himself worthy in fighting Indians and in crossing mountain streams and the parched Mojave Desert. Kit showed his bravery and endurance. He became Young's right-hand man.

He returned to Taos in 1831, and that fall he was hired by Thomas Fitzpatrick to trap for beaver in the mountains of the north. Over the next several years he became one of the leading Mountain Men. When the Blackfeet attacked his parties, Kit planned the battle tactics that defeated them. At Fort Robinson he received his only serious wound. His shoulder was shattered by an Indian bullet.

When the price of beaver pelts (pelts) dropped, Kit became chief hunter for Bent's Fort in Colorado. His job was to keep the fort supplied with meat. About 1836 he married an Arapaho Indian girl. They had one child, Adahne. Kit's wife died, and after

a time he took his daughter east to Missouri and left her to be educated in a convent. It was the first time he had been home since he ran away.

#### Mapping the Trails with Frémont

Returning west, Carson met Lieut. John C. Frémont aboard a Missouri River steamboat. Frémont had been assigned the task of mapping and describing the Western trails. He had already heard of Kit, and he hired him as guide for the first expedition, which lasted from June to October of 1842.

Kit went back to Taos, and in 1843 he married a beautiful Mexican girl named Maria Josefa Jaramillo. Later in the year he joined Frémont's second expedition at the Arkansas River. His old employer, Thomas Fitzpatrick, also went along as guide. On this trip Carson led the party across the high Sierra Nevada in midwinter. From a point near present-day Virginia City, Nev., Frémont's party crossed the mountains and descended into the Sacramento Valley of California.

In 1845 Carson again accompanied Frémont on his third expedition. The party left Bent's Fort on August 26, and by the time they reached California word came that the United States was at war with Mexico. Frémont aided the American colonists in land battles, and cooperated with the navy in capturing California for the United States. Carson served ably under Frémont. After the capture of Los Angeles, Frémont appointed Carson a lieutenant on special service and sent him east to Washington with dispatches for President Polk.

But at Socorro, N.M., Carson met an army group led by Gen. Stephen W. Kearny. Despite the fact that Carson was under orders to deliver his dispatches, Kearny forced him to guide the army back to California. The country was still alive with Mexican troops and Kit feared an ambush.

Kearny failed to heed Kit's warning, and on Dec. 6, 1846, they were attacked by Mexicans at San Pasqual, about 30 miles from San Diego, Calif. On the third night of the battle, Carson, accompanied by Lieut. E. F. Beale and a Delaware Indian scout, crept through the enemy lines and ran the whole distance to San Diego. There they enlisted help for Kearny's besieged forces.

In March 1847 Carson again was sent to Washington with dispatches. With a small party he crossed the continent in three months. In Washington Carson was acclaimed a great hero. President Polk appointed him a lieutenant in the Mounted Rifle Corps. He returned to California, and once again was sent to Washington with dispatches.

At Santa Fe he learned that the Senate had voted down his commission as lieutenant. This refusal was the result of a political feud between a large group of senators and a smaller one headed by Sen. Thomas H. Benton, Frémont's father-in-law. The senators

who voted against him wanted to spite Benton, not Carson. Carson completed his mission and returned to Taos as a private citizen.

Carson settled down with his wife to a life of ranching and farming. In the summer of 1853, aided by his Mexican herders, he drove 6,500 sheep to Sacramento, Calif., a distance of about 800 miles. He sold the sheep for \$5.50 a head and made a good profit. The next year he was appointed Indian agent at Taos for two tribes of Ute Indians. Carson could not read at all, and he could write only his own name. Yet he was an able administrator. The Indians trusted him and called him *Vi-hi-ni*—"Little Chief." Occasionally he served the army as scout in clashes with warring Apaches.

Part of Carson's success as an Indian agent was due to his simple code of honesty. Frémont had written of him, "With me Carson and truth are one." Later Gen. William T. Sherman described Carson's integrity as "simply perfect." The Indians also admired him for his love of children.

Kit had seven of his own, and he was a good friend to all the Indian children under his charge.

#### Service in the Civil War

When the Civil War broke out Carson resigned his post as Indian agent at Taos and helped organize the 1st New Mexican Volunteer Infantry regiment of the Union Army. He was elected lieutenant colonel and later rose to colonel. Such elections were customary in volunteer regiments. During his Civil War service Carson at last learned to read and write. His long experience with Indian fighting made him a brilliant tactical leader.

Kit's force operated against the Apaches and Navajos and later against the Kiowas and the Comanches. His defeat of the Navajos turned them toward ways of peace after two centuries of almost constant warfare. He won a victory at Valverde, but at Adobe Wells in northwest Texas he had to withdraw after his 400 men met a superior force of thousands of Indians. In 1865 he was given a brevet commission as brigadier general and was cited for gallantry and distinguished service. In the summer of 1866 he took command of Fort Garland in western Colorado. Ill health from an old injury forced his resignation the next year.

In 1868 the Carson family moved to Boggsville, Colo., near present-day La Junta. Kit was still very sick, but he went to Washington with a group of Utes. They had asked him to help plead their case before a grievances commission. He visited doctors in New York City and Boston, seeking relief from his illness. But they were unable to help him and Kit returned home. His wife died April 23, 1868, and Kit was taken to the army doctors at Fort Lyons for care. He died there on May 23, 1868.

KIT CARSON



Mountain Man and soldier, Carson was an American hero.

**CARSON CITY, NEV.** The smallest state capital is Carson City. It is pleasantly situated in western Nevada's Eagle Valley near the bottom of the eastern slope of the Sierra Nevada. Lake Tahoe is some 14 miles west, Reno is about 30 miles north.

State offices, federal agencies and rail workshops employ the majority of the city's workers. The surrounding area has cattle and sheep ranches, irrigated farms, and mines. The capitol begun in 1870 as a square stone structure with huge log rafters is set in a four block elm shaded park. The State Museum is housed in the Old Mint Building, a branch of the national mint from 1870 to 1893. Two miles east of the city is the Nevada State Prison. On the prison property fossil skeletons of mastodons and other prehistoric life have been found.

The site of Carson City lay on the Overland Trail over which stages and the Pony Express traveled to Sacramento and San Francisco. Calif. Abraham Curry surveyed the present site. Major William Ormsby, an early comer, proposed the name Carson City, after the famous frontier scout (see Carson). The 1839 rush to the gold find at near by Virginia City stimulated the early growth of the settlement. The population reached its peak of about 8,000 in the 1870's.

Carson City became the territorial capital in 1861 and the state capital when Nevada became a state in 1864. Here Bob Fitzsimmons defeated Jim Corbett for the heavyweight championship in 1897. Population (1950 census) 3,082. (See also Nevada.)

**CARTHAGE** About a thousand years before Christ the Phoenicians established the city of Carthage on the edge of a region in North Africa now called Tunisia. The city became the commercial center of the western Mediterranean and retained that position until overthrown by Rome.

Tradition has it that Carthage was founded by Queen Dido after

she fled from Tyre. The inhabitants she found at the site agreed to give her as much land as she could compass with a single ox hide. Dido cut the hide into thin strips and with the joined strips enclosed a large area. There according to Vergil's Aeneid Aeneas visited her (see Aeneas, Phoenicians).

Carthage lay on a bay, its Phoenician settlers were seafarers and traders. Aided by slave labor they built wharves, markets, factories and homes. Carthage grew rich and strong. Its merchant-sailors established colonies in North Africa, in Spain and on the Mediterranean islands. They traded with all the known world.

Even after Rome mastered all Italy a Carthaginian boasted, 'no Roman may even wash his hands in

the Mediterranean.' Powerful Rome however over a period of a hundred years defeated Carthage in the three Punic Wars. The first fought in Sicily (264-241 B.C.) cost Carthage Sicily and a large indemnity.

In the second Punic War (218-201 B.C.) the Carthaginian general Hannibal with his ponderous and frightening war elephants crossed Spain and climbed over the Alps, an almost unbelievable exploit, to defeat the Romans at Cannae. He failed however in his expectation of winning support from the Italians subjected by Rome. Hannibal recalled to Africa to stand off the threat of the Roman Scipio Africanus, the younger, who was storming Carthage's own walls, lost at Zama and Carthage was forced to surrender its navy and to withdraw from Spain (see Hannibal).

Carthage's power surged anew and again the Romans became fearful. Cato a Roman senator thundered it the end of every speech—no matter what the subject. *Delenda est Carthago* (Carthage must be destroyed). The third Punic War (149-146 B.C.) ended in Roman victory in spite of a heroic resistance in which Carthaginians cut off their hair to provide bow strings for the catapults. Carthage was razed.

The emperor Augustus later built a new city on the site. This became a Roman seat of government in Africa. When the Vandals overran the region Carthage was made their capital. It was destroyed again after its capture (647) by the Arabs. Today a few hamlets and ruins mark the site.

**CARTIER (Ar 154)** **JACQUES** (1491-1557) In the early 1500's Jacques Cartier attempted to find a sea passage to the East Indies through North America. He failed in this, but he discovered the St. Lawrence River and opened Canada to European settlement.

Because Cartier wrote nothing of himself, very little is known of him but that he was born in Saint-Malo, France, Dec. 31, 1491, and that he was a courageous Breton

sea captain. On the first of his voyages to North America he set sail from Saint-Malo April 20, 1534.

On May 10 he reached northern Newfoundland. He passed through the Strait of Belle Isle and explored several islands and points along the shores of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The Indians were friendly. They eagerly traded their plentiful winter catch of furs for a few beads and some hatchets. In the autumn two of them accompanied Cartier on his return voyage to France.

On May 16, 1535, Cartier sailed again from France. This time he had three vessels. He camped at a spot far up the St. Lawrence that the Indians called Stadacona, near the present site of Quebec. He took his

JACQUES CARTIER



From Saint-Malo, a Breton village in France, Cartier sailed on the voyages that won Canada for France. This portrait hangs in the town hall of Saint-Malo.



smallest ship and two ship boats farther up the river to the place where it widens into Lake St. Peter. There his ship shoaled, and Cartier continued his exploration in the ship boats and afoot. He reached the fortified Indian village of Hochelaga, on an island (now Montreal) near where the Ottawa River flows from the north into the St. Lawrence. Cartier called the island's greatest height Mont Royal. He ascended the river until stopped by the Lachine ("China") Rapids. He wintered at Stadacona, where because of hardships and poor food 25 of his 110 men died of scurvy. In the spring, with 12 captured Indians, he returned to France.

In 1541, with five ships and a party of colonists, he again sailed for the New World. Jean François de la Roque, Sieur de Roberval, was the leader of the colonists. The colony was not a success, and in 1543 Cartier again sailed to Canada to bring back de Roberval and his men. After this voyage Cartier returned to Saint-Malo, where he died Sept. 1, 1557.

**CARTWRIGHT, EDMUND (1743-1823)** The Anglican clergyman Edmund Cartwright is celebrated as one of the men who brought about the Industrial Revolution. Although he had little mechanical knowledge, he invented the power loom. Thereafter he made other inventions, including a valuable wool-combing machine, and aided Robert Fulton with his steamboat.

Cartwright was born April 24, 1743, in Nottinghamshire and entered Oxford University when only 14 years old. He won his M.A. degree in 1755 and became curate of the Brampton church. In 1779 he became rector at Goadby Marwood in Leicestershire. He married and had several children.

When Cartwright was 41 he vacationed near Richard Arkwright's spinning mills in Crompton (see Arkwright). He saw that fast-weaving power looms were needed to use the yarn produced so abundantly by Arkwright's machines. In a year Cartwright built a patentable model of a loom. Later improvements were also patented.

A factory which Cartwright set up at Doncaster, Yorkshire, failed to make money. In 1791 a building containing 400 of his looms was burned, probably by hand weavers who feared the advent of power weaving. This and other losses plunged Cartwright into debt. He moved to a small house in London, where he continued to experiment.

In recognition of his contribution to the textile industry, Parliament in 1809 awarded him 10,000 pounds. He then bought a farm near Sevenoaks, Kent, where he carried on both agricultural and mechanical experiments. He died Oct. 30, 1823. (See also Industrial Revolution, Spinning and Weaving.)

EDMUND CARTWRIGHT



His invention helped start the Industrial Revolution.

**CARUSO (kă-rŭ'zō), ENRICO (1873-1921).** One of the greatest opera singers of all time was the Italian tenor Enrico Caruso. His rich, warm voice was heard in nearly 70 operatic roles; his most famous were

ENRICO CARUSO



Caruso's magnificent voice enthralled opera lovers.

Rodolfo in Puccini's 'La Bohème' and Canio, the clown, in Leoncavallo's 'I Pagliacci'. He also enjoyed the role of Eléazar in Halévy's 'La Juive' because it required great dramatic as well as singing ability.

Caruso was born Feb. 25, 1873, in Naples, Italy. He was the 19th of 21 children. The family was poor; as a boy Caruso worked in a flour mill. He earned money for his

music lessons by copying songs for other students. He had little real training, and when he was 19 he was already touring Italy with a small opera company. In 1894 he made his official debut in Naples in 'L'Amico Francesco'. During the next few years he created the tenor roles in Giordano's 'Fedora', Cilea's 'Adriana Lecouvreur', and Franchetti's 'Germania'. His fame became international in 1902 when he scored a brilliant success with Melba at Monte Carlo and followed it with a great success at London's Covent Garden. In 1903 he made his American debut at the Metropolitan Opera House in New York City, where he sang the role of the duke in Verdi's 'Rigoletto'.

Always in demand at leading opera houses, Caruso sang in nearly every country of Europe and North and South America. His major roles were in French and Italian opera, but he learned seven languages, including Russian and Portuguese. He sang in the first radio broadcast from the Metropolitan Opera House in 1910 and was one of the first great singers to make phonograph recordings. He was talented at drawing caricatures; for a time, one of his drawings appeared in each issue of the Italian paper *La Follia*.

Caruso had two sons by the Italian soprano Ada Giocchetti. In 1918 he married Dorothy Benjamin; they had one daughter. Caruso died in Naples on Aug. 2, 1921, of pleurisy.

**CARVER, GEORGE WASHINGTON (1864?-1943).** Toward the end of the Civil War a raiding army swept through southwest Missouri and kidnaped a slave baby and his mother from the farm of their master, Moses Carver, near Diamond Grove, close to Joplin. The baby, the future George Washington Carver, was restored to Mr. Carver by a bushwhacker in exchange for a race horse, which was valued at \$300. He remained with the Carvers until he was ten years old, then went out to make his way in the world.

Too frail for work in the fields, he did house and garden work. He had a "green thumb" from the beginning and while still a child was called a "plant

doctor. Always he wanted to know things. At the age of 19 he entered high school at Minneapolis Kan. From there he went to Simpson College at Indianola Iowa and then to the Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts at Ames where he received a B.S. degree in agriculture in 1894 and an M.S. degree in 1896. He had paid for every step of his education by his own work.

His achievements brought him to the attention of Booker T. Washington. Founder of Tuskegee Institute. Carver became head of Tuskegee's department of agriculture in 1896. In his 47 years there he did notable work in chemistry and scientific agriculture. He made hundreds of useful products from peanuts, cotton, sweet potatoes, and clay (see Plant Life subhead What Men Do with Plants). He showed Southern farmers that they could diversify their crops.

Carver was also a painter and musician. In 1940 he gave his life's savings toward establishing the George Washington Carver Foundation for research in agricultural chemistry. In 1903 his birthplace near Diamond Grove (now called Diamond Mo.) was dedicated as a national monument.

**CASCADE MOUNTAINS.** The rugged magnificence of the Cascade Range extends about 600 miles from northern California through Oregon and Washington into British Columbia. The crest of the range lies from 100 to 150 miles back from the Pacific coast. The Cascades are a continuation of the Sierra Nevada with the dividing line at the Feather River, a tributary of the Sacramento (see Sierra Nevada). At their northern extremity they merge with the Canadian Rockies.

The broad mass of these mountains is composed of igneous and volcanic rocks. Magnificent forests clothe their slopes, mostly evergreens such as the tamarack, pine, cedar, and the great Douglas fir. Three rivers cut through the range to the sea—the Klamath to the south, the mighty Columbia near the middle, and the Fraser far to the north. The many cascades and rapids of the deep-gorged Columbia gave the mountains their name.

The most conspicuous peaks are Mount Rainier (14,408 ft.) and Mount Shasta (14,162 ft.). Other well-known summits are Mount Adams (12,307 ft.), Mount Hood (11,245 ft.), Mount Baker (10,750 ft.), Mount St. Helens (9,671 ft.), Mount McLoughlin (9,493 ft.), Mount Stuart (9,440 ft.), and Mount Scott (8,938 ft.). Lassen Peak in California (10,453 ft.) is the only active volcano in the United States. It was believed extinct

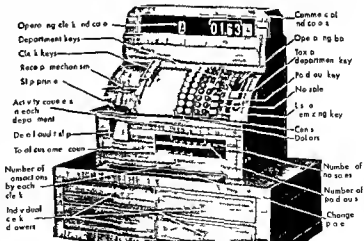
until steam and ashes erupted from it in 1914. Mount Rainier and Lassen Peak gave their names to national parks (see National Parks).

**CASHMERE.** The name *cashmere* or *kashmir* is today used for a soft wool or rayon dress goods with fine diagonal ribs. True cashmere wool, soft and silky in texture, comes from the fleece of the Cashmere goat in the Himalayan region. The beautiful hand-woven Cashmere or Indian shawls originated in the Vale of Kashmir (see also Goat, Kashmir).

**CASH REGISTER.** In millions of business establishments the cash register is used to keep a record of sales. This invaluable aid to trade was invented in 1879 by James Ritty of Dayton, Ohio. On a steamer trip he watched the device that recorded the revolutions of the propeller shaft. He saw that a similar device might be used to record sales transactions. The machine was taken over in 1884 by John H. Patterson, who formed the National Cash Register Company. Patterson greatly improved the register. Later other companies developed similar machines.

The modern cash register is both an adding machine and a printing machine. Its mechanism gives a complete record of the day's business. It registers each sale and records the total, shows how much business each clerk has done, and shows who has made a mistake, how much money has been taken in, and how many charges received on account and paid out. Transactions have been handled. It issues a

### HOW THE CASH REGISTER WORKS



Suppose you are a clerk and have just made a cash sale for \$1.63. You punch your own clerk key (in this case, A), then the amount of the sale, and finally the operating key. Your individual cash drawer will open, the sale will be recorded on the audit slip, and the slip printer will issue a receipt for the customer. The register also provides for noting from which department the sale was made, the tax added to the sale price, the number of customer transactions by each clerk, paid out, and no sales. The machine can act as an adding machine for totaling all the items in an individual sale.

dated receipt for the customer that states the amount of the sale and the clerk's initial. Each amount is also recorded on a paper tape. The internal mechanism is similar to that of a calculating machine (see Calculating Machine).

**CASPIAN SEA.** Lying on the boundary between Europe and Asia, the Caspian Sea is the largest salt lake and the greatest interior body of water in the world. Its area of nearly 170,000 square miles is more than five times that of Lake Superior. It is about 760 miles long and from 130 to 270 miles wide. Iran borders the south; Russia, the other three sides. Russia has the chief ports, notably Astrakhan, Derhent, Makhachkala, Krasnovodsk, and Baku, a great oil center on the Apsheron peninsula. Iran has the ports of Pahlevi and Bandar Shah. The narrow plain on the south leads up to the Elhurz Mountains; that on the west, to the Caucasus Mountains. The northern shore is bordered by marshy steppes, and the eastern, by swamp and desert.

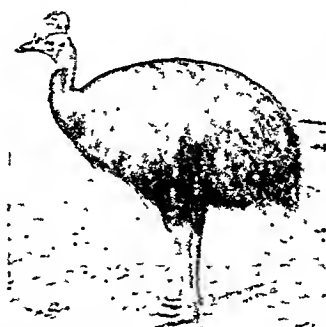
The landlocked sea is a shrunken remnant of an ocean which in earlier geologic times extended from the Black Sea to the Arctic Ocean. After it was cut off by the rise of the Caucasus Mountains on the west and the Urals to the north, it depended for water upon drainage from its tributary rivers, notably the Volga and the Ural. Today this drainage is not enough to keep it filled to sea level. The northern region is shallow, but the southern half reaches a depth of 3,224 feet.

Because the Caspian has no outlet, its level is affected by rain and drought. This fluctuating level is an index to the weather of past ages. Ruins of walls now under water indicate a former low level, hence long periods of drought. Terraces far back from the coast signify past cycles of heavy rainfall.

Numerous fresh-water as well as sea fish abound, for the Caspian is less salty than the ocean. Roach, sturgeon, salmon, carp, bream, tench, and pike are caught. The eggs of the sturgeon are salted for export as *caviar*.

Fisheries and near-by oil wells give the Caspian some importance in international trade. By way of the Volga and its canals to other rivers, cargoes from the Caspian can reach the Black Sea on the west and the Baltic and White seas far to the north.

#### A BIRD WITH MIGHTY WEAPONS



This cassowary displays huge legs and claws, his chief weapons. He also uses beak and wings in fighting.

**CASSOWARY.** In the dense forests of Australia, New Guinea, or near-by islands, lives the cassowary, a running bird that grows five feet tall. It is a relative of the emu, the ostrich, and the rhea. Like them, it is unable to fly. But it is set sharply apart from them by the nakedness and other features of its head and neck. The head is protected by a crest of bone. In some species, the crest is flattened. In others, it rises like a helmet. The neck has red, yellow, or blue lobes of flesh, called wattles.

The body is clothed with drooping feathers, brown or black and hair-like. These are double, each with two shafts of equal length, as in the

emu. The only noticeable parts of the wing are five stiff quills, used in fighting. The legs are thick and heavy, with powerful muscles in the thighs. Each foot has three toes. The long-nailed inner toe is a deadly weapon when directed by the bird's mighty kick.

The cassowary feeds mainly on fruit, bulbs, and insects. It nests on the ground in thickets. The eggs, from three to six in number, are green, with granulated surfaces. The male, usually smaller than the female, keeps the eggs warm. He stays on the nest for seven or eight weeks until the chicks are hatched. These are dull rusty brown, striped with black and white. The voices of the mature birds are strangely beastlike; they call by grunting, snorting, or hellowing.

Scientific name of cassowary genus, *Casuarius*. With the emus, it forms the order *Casuariiformes*.

## When MOATED TOWERS Ruled EUROPE'S LANDS

**CASTLE.** High above river and valley, on a rocky hilltop, the medieval castle looks far over the countryside. It is not the splendid palace of the novelists, but a strong fortress, built for war and defense.

Around its walls is a deep ditch or moat. At the outer edge of the moat is a strong fence of heavy stakes (palisade) set in the ground. The outer castle wall (called "curtain" or "bailey" wall) is of solid stone,

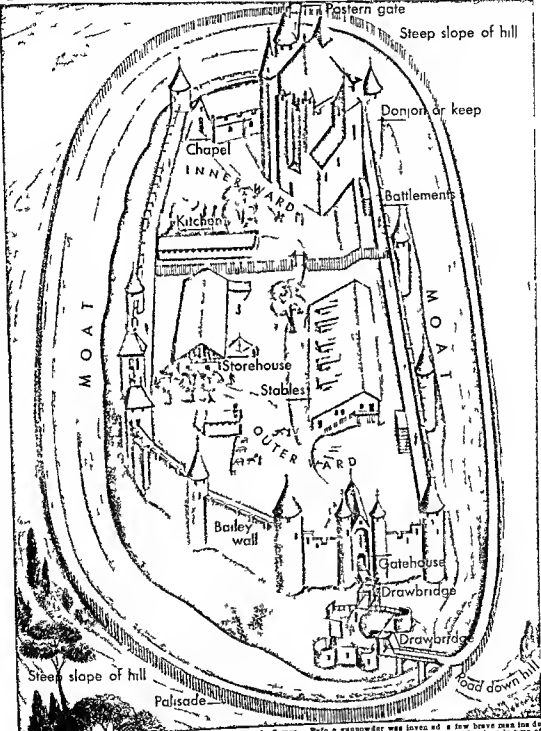


Stirling Castle was known as the "Key to Scotland," and these steep slopes have seen many a bloody battle.

5 or 6 feet thick and 16 to 20 feet high. Along the top of the wall is a parapet with open spaces. At intervals of a bow-shot, rounded towers jut out from the wall's face, with loopholes from which archers may shoot. Between two towers is the entrance to the castle enclosure.

If an enemy succeeds in crossing the drawbridges over the moat, he must hatter down a heavy wooden door between the two towers. Then he

# THE RESIDENCE AND FORTRESS OF A FEUDAL NOBLE



This is a typical castle of the days when knighthood was in flower. Before gunpowder was invented a few brave men in the donjon or keep in the inner ward dwelt the lord, his family and dependents. In the outer ward the country people took refuge in times of war bringing provisions against a siege.

must pass an iron grating called the portcullis which has been dropped in the narrow passageway to bar his passage. The entrance is indeed well guarded. And even after the portcullis has been pried up and

#### A FAMOUS CASTLE IN WALES



Carnarvon Castle is one of the strongholds erected by Edward I after conquering Wales in 1283. Most of the old bailey wall and its 13 towers still stands, a picturesque sight to the visitor.

the last barrier in the castle gate passed, the enemy finds himself only in an open courtyard.

Within the enclosure made by the bailey wall are the stables where the lord of the castle keeps his horses; here perhaps is the great brick oven in which bread is baked for the lord and all his villagers; and here too the villagers themselves seek protection from the enemy. After this outer courtyard has been cleared of its defenders, the wall dividing the first and second courtyards must be carried before the second courtyard is reached.

Here again are a number of buildings. In one, provisions are stored to enable the dwellers in the castle to withstand a siege. Next to this is a curious jug-shaped building with a large chimney at the top and smaller ones in a circle round about. This is the kitchen in which the food is cooked for the whole household. In addition there is a small church or chapel in this courtyard.

After this space has been cleared, the enemy at last arrives at the tall "keep" of the castle, or the "donjon" as the French call it. In the lower part of this building are "dungeons" for traitors and captured enemies. The walls of the keep are of stone and are eight to ten feet thick. From the loopholes in its sides peer skilled archers and crossbowmen ready to let fly their bolts and arrows at all below. A long siege will be necessary to starve out the defenders, for entrance can only be gained by a long causeway and drawbridge leading to the second story. If a siege is impractical, movable towers must be erected, battering rams used, stone-hurling machines (catapults and ballistae) employed, blazing arrows shot at the roof and windows, and tunnels dug to undermine the walls. Even when an entrance is gained, there will still be fierce fighting in the narrow passageways, in the dark halls, and on the winding

stairways in the thick walls leading from one story to another. And even when all is lost, there still remain underground passages opening into the moat and a postern gate in the rear, through which the lord and his garrison may escape to the surrounding woods and so continue the battle another day.

#### Home Comforts in the Middle Ages

Where do the lord and his family live in time of peace? Sometimes they live in the upper stories of the huge donjon, where arms and supplies are kept. Because of the thick walls and narrow windows, the rooms are usually cold and dark in spite of the great fire that roars in the fireplace at the end of the hall. Before the 12th century there were no chimneys. The smoke escaped after a time through an open window or a half-open door. More comfortable halls for residence purposes, apart from the donjon, were built at a later date, but they were still placed within the castle enclosure.

The furniture is scanty, though substantial. On the stone walls hang the weapons and embroidered tapestries. Skins are placed underfoot for the sake of warmth. Chairs and benches, tables, chests, and wardrobes stand about the hall, and at mealtime the servants place a long trestle table down the middle of the room.

About this table all are seated according to rank. Before each is placed a knife, spoon, and a drinking cup, usually of wood or horn. Forks were unknown until the end of the 13th century, and separate plates or platters were rare. So the food is eaten from a common dish with the fingers. Before and after each meal pages bring basins of water and towels for washing the hands. There are no napkins; pieces of bread are used for cleansing the fingers during the meal, then thrown under the table to the dogs.

Dinner, served during the day, is announced by a trumpet. The meal is long and hearty. Often it may have 10 or 12 courses. Much of the time the meat is boiled, but roasts are especially enjoyed—wild bear, boar, swans, and game birds spitted over an open fire, and highly seasoned with pepper, cloves, and other spices. Even the wines are sometimes peppered and honeyed. On fast days fish and eels are relished.

After the meal is over, perhaps a wandering minstrel entertains the company with his songs of brave knights and fair ladies. Or the diners engage in games of chess, backgammon, and checkers. For outdoor amusements the nobles indulge in falconry, the tournament, and the chase.

#### The Ancestor of the Castle

The stone castle, or *château*, as the French call it, grew out of a much simpler fortification. In very early times the Frankish chiefs built wooden block-houses on mounds of earth, around which they dug a broad ditch and built a palisade. This *castellum*,

or fortified camp was the ancestor of the castle. The castles erected in Anglo-Saxon England and also those first erected by the Normans were similar to the Frankish structures. Later the wooden tower was changed for one of masonry and the palisade was replaced by stone walls. When the king in France or England gained control over the nobles the feudal castles either were destroyed or were taken over by him so that they might no longer menace the peace of the country.

**CASTOR AND POLLUX** These famous demigods of Greek myth were twin sons of Zeus by a mortal mother. Pollux was renowned as a skilled boxer and Castor was famed far and wide as a tamer of horses. Sailors in storms prayed to them and they became patrons of travelers and of hospitality as well as of public games. According to one story Zeus set them among the stars after their lives on earth and the constellation of Gemini (the twins) is named for them. It is the third sign of the zodiac (see *Zodiac*).

**CASTOR BEAN** Oil extracted from the castor bean is valuable as a medicine. Large amounts of the oil are used for many other purposes. Great quantities are used in the manufacture of artificial leather. Perfumes and dyes are made from it. It is also used as a lubricant and in the manufacture of varnish, rubber, leather soap, sticky flypaper, linoleum and typewriter ink.

The castor-oil plant is of tropical origin. It is widely used in northern countries however for ornamental purposes. It will grow readily if it is given plenty of sunshine and a deep rich soil. With its beautiful large leaves it gives a tropical appearance to the garden.

The castor plant is also grown commercially in the southern United States but the highest yield of oil is secured in the tropics. There the plant grows to heights of 30 or 40 feet. In India and Brazil are the chief sources of supply. The botanical name of the castor-oil plant is *Ricinus communis*. (See also *Fats and Oils*.)

## CAT—One of MAN'S

### Favorite PETS

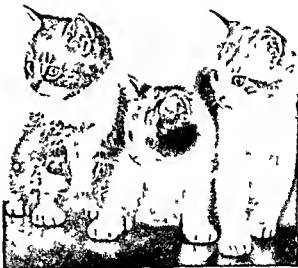
**CAT** During the California gold rush in 1849 thousands of mice and rats threatened the health and the food supplies of the miners. One day a sailing ship the *SS Ohio* docked in San Francisco with several hundred cats aboard. They had been bought in the East for ten cents apiece. The miners eagerly bought the cats and paid as much as \$50 in gold for a single cat. In a few weeks the cats had driven almost all the rats and mice from the mining camps.

Today in the United States approximately 27 million cats continue to help fight the half billion rats that destroy a billion dollars' worth of food and property each year. Without the work of these watch cats the destruction would be much greater.

Many people keep cats as pets or breed them to exhibit in cat shows. As pets, household cats are second in popularity only to dogs (see *Dogs*, *Pets*).

#### Cats Are Carnivores

The house cat is closely related to the tiger, lion and others of the large family *Felidae*. This family includes from 50 to 60 species. The scientific name



These three little kittens have tortoiseshell coats. Alert and healthy they may some day grow up and become Grand Champions in a cat show.

of the domestic cat is *Felis domesticus*. (For other relatives of the domestic cat see *Cat* in the *Fauna Index*.)

All cats are *carnivores*; that is, flesh eaters. They eat meat rather than roots or grain. Most house cats will eat grass but they do not digest it.

The cat's jaws are strong and equipped with 30 specialized teeth. The pointed *canines* and the blade-like *carnassials* are used to cut and tear tough raw meat into chunks small enough to swallow. The pieces of meat are swallowed without chewing.

The cat's tongue is rough. It is covered with horny projections. These enable the cat to lap up



### CURIOSITY—THE MARK OF ITS TRIBE

The old maxim "curiosity killed the cat" is matched by another, "every cat has nine lives." The natural inquisitiveness of cats often gets them into trouble, in spite of their alertness and sense of self-preservation. This young cat is typical of the common short-

haired cats. It has gray "tiger" markings, but its brothers and sisters may be black, white, orange, or blue (Maltese), or mixtures of these colors. This type is usually sturdier and less high-strung than the long-haired breeds and gets along better with children.

its food. They also help the cat wash itself. Cats are spotlessly clean. A hunter that lies in wait for its prey must have no odor to warn its victims.

Close inspection will show how ideally nature suited the cat for its life as a hunter. The back is long and flexible with powerful muscles. The cat can make leaps seven feet in the air. Its ability always to land on its feet is widely known. The long tail helps to balance the cat as it jumps. Perfect muscular control gives the cat a speed, grace and delicacy of movement equaled by no other animal.

All cats except the cheetah have retractable claws. They can extend them or draw them back at will. There are 18 claws, five on each forefoot and four on each hind foot. The cat's paw is almost as useful as a hand. With the forepaws the cat washes its face and ears, defends itself or plays with moving objects.

#### Why the Cat's Eyes Shine in the Dark

A cat cannot see in absolute darkness but it needs much less light to distinguish objects than any other common animal. The eyes round out greatly from the head. These convex eyes collect light from a wide angle. When a large amount of light is collected and reflected out again the eyes seem to glow.

The cat's eyes can adjust themselves to varying degrees of light. Under a bright light the pupils become narrow slits. In the dark they widen to great circles almost as large as the entire eye.

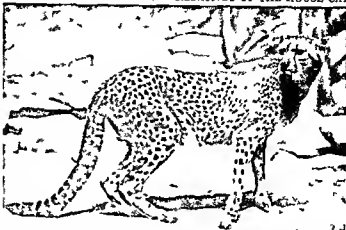
The cat's large erect ears detect sounds that escape the keenest human hearing. They are also the sharpest of direct on finders. A cat will turn its head instantly toward the source of any hidden noise.

The cat's long whiskers (vibrissae) are useful for a hunter in the dark. They are delicate sense organs with sensitive nerves at each root. They warn the cat of objects in its path. Instinct also tells the cat the value of caution for its own safety. A house cat will carefully inspect any new object brought into a room. Even a hungry cat will cautiously inspect a dish of food before eating.

#### How the Cat Purrs

In the cat's voice box or larynx are two sets of vocal cords. The lower are the true cords. The cat

#### CHEETAH AND OCELOT, WILD RELATIVES OF THE HOUSE CAT



The cheetah is the only member of the cat family whose claws will not retract. It is a very fast runner. Sportsmen of India tame and train it to hunt with them.



The ocelot is found in tropical America and the southern United States. It is not much larger than a big house cat and is sometimes kept as a pet.

uses them to produce mewing and howling sounds. Above these are prominent membranes called the false cords. When a cat is happy it relaxes the lower cords, so that they make no sound and lets the air play against the upper membranes. This sets the membranes to vibrating and produces a soft fluttering sound which is called purring. Like the house cat, some wildcats such as the tiger, lynx and puma also purr (see Tiger, Lynx, Puma).

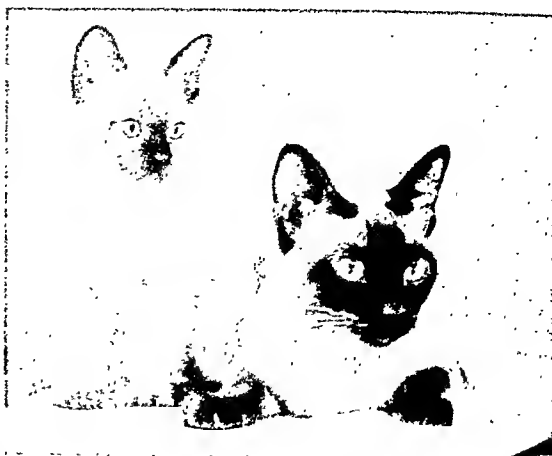
#### The American Cat Fancy

People who specialize in breeding cats and entering them in cat shows are called members of The American Cat Fancy or The Fancy. Leading cat organizations in the United States include the American Cat Association, the Cat Fanciers' Association,

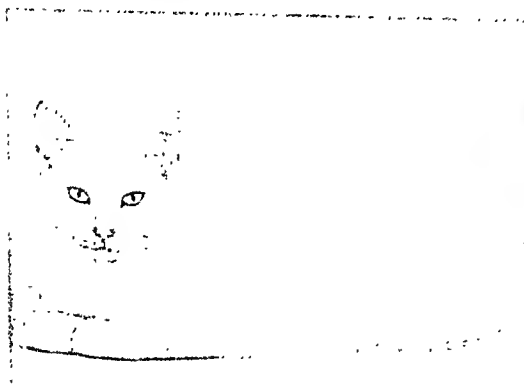




LONG-HAIRED PERSIAN



SIAMESE



DOMESTIC SHORT HAIR



HOUSEHOLD PET (Domestic Short Hair)

the Cat Fanciers' Federation, and the United Cat Federation. Cat shows are held under rules prescribed by these organizations. At these shows, cats such as the ones shown on this and on the opposite page are exhibited and prizes are awarded for the best of breed in each class.

In most cat shows four classes are recognized. These are *Kitten*, for kittens four to eight months old; *Novice*, for cats which have not yet won a first prize; *Open*, for all cats except those having won championships; *Championship*, for all cats that have won first prize in the Novice, Open, or Championship classes. Kittens compete in kitten classes only. To earn points toward a Grand Championship a male or female champion must be judged the Best Champion and the Best Opposite Sex Champion of all colors in each show. Fifteen points are usually needed for a cat to be declared a Grand Champion. This means

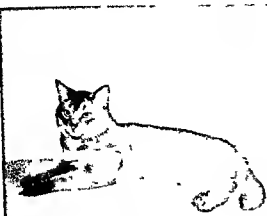
that a cat must be the Best Champion in a number of shows.

### Origins of the Recognized Breeds

The long-haired Persian may be derived from the Pallas wildcat of Asia. The Angora, a long-haired cat from Angora, Turkey, no longer exists as a separate breed. It has been interbred with the Persian until the two breeds have become one.

The Domestic Short Hair is the most widely known of all the cats. It is the result of centuries of accidental crossbreeding and may vary widely in size, build, and appearance. In cat shows the Domestic Short Hair must meet the color requirements for the class in which it is entered. Domestic Short Hairs which do not meet the color requirements for their class are entered in shows as Household Pets.

The Siamese cat was imported into the United



ABYSSINIAN



BURMESE

States about 1885 from England. It had been imported into England from Siam (Thailand) about ten years earlier. Its distinctive coloration—the dark points of the mask, tail and legs—mark the Siamese as different in appearance from all other cats. Siamese kittens are born white, the points appearing several days later.

The Burmese cat was probably originally a color variety of the Siamese. It was imported into the United States from India in 1930.

The Abyssinian is a close relative of the ancient sacred Egyptian cat. It was introduced in America in 1936. Its distinctive ticked coat resembles that of the Belgian hare.

The ancestors of the Manx cat came from the Isle of Man. It is the only cat that has no tail. Its short back and high hind legs give it a hopping gait.

The Russian Blue is seen more in England than in



RUSSIAN BLUE



MANX

## RECOGNIZED CAT BREEDS

American cat fanciers recognize the seven breeds of cats pictured on these pages. Due to its color markings, the Household Pet shown on the opposite page would not win as a Domestic Short Hair in a cat show. A complete table of cat breeds and standards will be found in the Fact Index.

the United States. There it is called a Foreign Blue. This is a breed quite distinctive from the blue domestic short hair commonly called a Maltese. Its bright blue—almost lavender—fur is thick. The coat is double, like that of the seal (see Seal).

### Maturity and Litters

A female cat matures at five to eight months; the male at nine to ten months. They may live to be 19 or 20 years of age. The average is 14 years. The female may begin to bear kittens at six months. The gestation period of the house cat is generally from 55 to 56 days. This period may vary depending upon



### "BIG CATS" OF THE ZOO AND CIRCUS

The Siberian tiger (left) and the African lion (right) can be seen at the zoo or circus. Closely related to the house cat, they are

the largest members of the cat family. Tigers differ from lions mainly in their coat coloring and in not having manes.

the breed. The gestation period of the various wildcats ranges from 55 to 69 days

Some wildcats are born with their eyes open, but the house cat is blind for several days. The number of young varies from two to seven, depending upon the species. Lions rarely have more than two or three young at a time (*see* Lion). The house cat averages four in a litter. There can be two litters a year.

### Care and Feeding of Cats

Kittens nurse from their mothers for about four weeks after birth. At the end of this time they can be fed a mixture of canned milk and water several times daily. Small amounts of canned cat food, finely ground raw meat, and milk may be given at least three times daily when the kittens' teeth are in. Kittens should not be taken from their mothers until they are eight weeks old.

At eight weeks, larger quantities of canned cat food, canned baby meat, and pieces of raw meat may be fed to them. Fish and fowl may also be added to the diet. From eight months on cats should be fed twice daily and fresh water should be available at all times. Usually a grown cat needs between three and five ounces of food for each meal.

A healthy cat has a glossy coat and a good appetite. Any cat that is suspected of being sick should be taken to a veterinary. Illness moves swiftly in cats, and few illnesses can be treated by home remedies. Inoculations given by a veterinary after kittens reach the age of six weeks can prevent cat distemper, or feline enteritis. Rabies, which is rare in cats, can also be prevented by immunization.

### The Origin of Cats

The origin of the domestic cat is very doubtful. The first civilized peoples known to keep tame cats were the Egyptians. They tamed cats 13 centuries before Christ. The Egyptian pet was probably the wild Caire cat of North Africa, a small, pale yellow animal with black feet. The Egyptians regarded the cat with superstition and treated it as a member of the family. When a cat died, it was embalmed and buried like a human being, and the members of the family went into mourning. To kill a cat was a crime punishable by death. Mummified cats are found in ruins of ancient Egypt.

Forty or fifty million years before the Egyptians kept tame cats, the ancestor of the cat family first roamed the earth. This was in the Eocene epoch of geologic time. This small, long-bodied civetlike creature, called *Miacis*, was the ancestor of all carnivores. By the Oligocene period two forms of cats appeared. One was the ancestor of the saber-toothed tiger (*see* Saber-toothed Tiger). This beast became extinct more than 25,000 years ago. The other branch was the ancestor of the true cats of today. The Oligocene cats were already highly specialized, and they have changed very little since then. The habits and physical characteristics of the cat have been fixed for 20 to 30 million years. This may explain why house cats remain the most independent of pets, with many of the instincts and actions of their wild ancestors.

The early Christians associated cats with witches, and the devil was often depicted in the form of a black cat. Superstitions about cats survive among many peoples even in civilized countries today.

**CATALPA** There are eight or ten species of this flowering tree, two of which are found in the United States and the rest in eastern Asia. The common catalpa is a native of the southern United States and is cultivated as an ornamental tree in most of our northern cities. It is also grown extensively for fence posts and railroad ties as it is quick growing and is hardy and thrives in cultivation. The clustered flowers of this species are white, slightly tinged with purple and violet in the throat; the leaves are broad and vivid green in color, covering the tree with dense luxuriant foliage. The flowers are followed by pods often a foot in length called Indian cigars by the children. The tree seldom attains a height of more than 40 feet.

The second American species is larger sometimes reaching a height of 120 feet. It is a native of southern Illinois and neighboring states. It too is planted as an ornamental shade tree.

Catalpas belong to the trumpet creeper family *Bignoniaceae*. The scientific name of the southern catalpa is *Catalpa bignonioides*. The northern tree is *Catalpa speciosa*.

**CATBIRD** The catbird is the mockingbird of the north. Like its southern relative it mimics the other birds with many musical flourishes. Its name comes from its success in imitating the plaintive mewling of a cat. It is a bird of the thickets. One usually sees it slipping quietly through the garden hedge or the heavy shrubs of roadsides and fields.

The catbird is about nine inches long. It is not showy with bright feathers but no bird of the garden is clothed with more distinction. Both male and female are blue gray, with black cap and tail and a patch of chestnut under the tail. (For picture in color, see Birds.)

The large nest of twigs, dead leaves and rootlets may be hidden in the shrubbery about the very door of the house or in swampy thickets. There are four to six eggs of deep bluish green color (for picture in color, see Egg). Catbirds eat insects and fruit, sometimes the garden berries but they prefer wild fruit if it is to be had. They are common in the greater part of temperate North America. They winter from the Southern states through Central America.

Catbirds are related to mockingbirds and thrashers. The three comprise the family *Mniotiltidae* so named because of the birds' skill in imitating other bird songs. The scientific name is *Dumetella carolinensis*.

**CATERPILLARS** The larvae or young of butterflies and moths are called caterpillars, from the Latin word *catta pilosa* meaning "hairy cat." Most people recognize the hairy kinds, but there are many caterpillars with bare skins which are popularly called worms such as the cabbage worm.

But a caterpillar is an insect in the making. Its body consists of a head followed by 12 or 13 segments like all insects, it has three pairs of permanent or true legs—one pair on each of the first three segments directly behind the head. These true legs are usually hard, jointed, and tipped with tiny claws but in a few caterpillars they are not developed. To support the rest of its long body, the caterpillar also has from two to five pairs of soft, thick *prolegs*. These disappear when the caterpillar changes into a moth or butterfly.

A caterpillar's eyes are tiny beads usually six in number on each side of the head just above the strong upper jaws. It breathes through nine porelike openings (*tracheae*) on each side of its body.

When a caterpillar hatches from the egg laid by the mother butterfly or moth it is usually very small. But it grows rapidly and soon gets too large for its skin. Thereupon the old skin splits, and the caterpillar wriggles out of it, clad in a soft new dress. It molts thus four or five times. Some caterpillars eat their old skins. The hawk moth caterpillar, one of the largest, may grow four inches long. The clothes moth caterpillar, one of the smallest seldom exceeds one-quarter of an inch. Some caterpillars live only a few days before turning into butterflies or moths, but most of them last through the warm season. A

very few may live as long as four years before they change.

The change caterpillars undergo is called *metamorphosis* (see Insects). The first step for many moth caterpillars is to build cocoons. They spin them with threads of sticky fluid that flows from an opening in the lower lip and hardens in the air (see Silk). Some of them form bags of silk that entirely enclose them. Others roll up a leaf, fastening the edges with the silk. Many of the hairy kinds pad the cocoons with their own hair. Some caterpillars, including most of those in the butterfly group, do not build



With its brisk, inquisitive manner and its varied songs the catbird is a welcome visitor in any garden. A piece of suet held in a combined rack and perch such as the one shown here will attract it and many other birds as well.

cocoons. Many moth caterpillars take shelter simply by burrowing in the ground or under a stone or fallen leaf. Butterfly caterpillars suspend themselves from leaves or twigs by their tails or spin a button of silk on a twig or leaf and hang from it by a silk girdle.

## SOME DAY IT WILL GROW WINGS

But whether protected by a cocoon or not, the caterpillar now sheds its last skin, and in place of it grows a tough flexible shell or case. When this happens it has become a *pupa*. The moth pupa is usually dull brown and mummy-like. The butterfly pupa (sometimes called a *chrysalis*) is shiny and often brilliantly colored. Inside the pupal or chrysalid case, the rudimentary wings and other organs enlarge to make the moth or butterfly. The change may be completed in a few days or it may take several months.

To grow and prepare for this period of change, caterpillars eat enormously, causing widespread damage to trees, flowers, and crops (see *Insects*). The larva of the Polyphemus moth, a species of the American silk worm, has been estimated to eat 86,000 times its own weight in its 56 days as a caterpillar.

But caterpillars are the prey of many birds and insects, especially parasites. To avoid their attacks, caterpillars have various natural protections. Some are colored to blend with their surroundings. Others have startling gaudy dots or stripes to make them look fierce or very large. A few have scent glands to give off unpleasant smells, and a very few grow poisonous nettle-like hairs.

The larvae of sawflies (order *Hymenoptera*) are also sometimes called caterpillars, but a sawfly has only one pair of eyes (See also *Butterflies and Moths*). **CATFISH.** In almost every stream and lake east of the Rockies live members of the catfish tribe. They also thrive in the Pacific states where they have been introduced. They range in size from the blue catfish that may grow six feet long and weigh 150 pounds down



This caterpillar is the larva of the beautiful *Samia cecropia* moth. The photograph shows it about twice its natural size. The knobs (*tubercles*) on its greenish-blue body are red, yellow, and blue, and end in black bristles. This gaudy appearance frightens foes. Note the thick prolegs grasping the twig.

to the hullheads that boys catch in roadside ditches. Catfishes have smooth scaleless bodies, but their dorsal and pectoral fins bear poisonous spines that may inflict severe wounds. With the long barbels that reach out from their broad jaws, they explore the muddy bottoms where they live. Almost anything they find they eat. Yet their flesh is firm and has a delicate flavor. They form the most valuable catch of the Mississippi River and its tributaries.

In the deep, swift channels of these rivers live the so-called "channel cats." The largest of these is the blue catfish, but the yellow catfish, or flat-

head catfish may reach 100 pounds. These giants are greatly outnumbered by the common channel catfish which weigh from 5 to 20 pounds.

The common bullheads rarely more than a foot long often prove to be the hardest of our fishes. They manage to live when their ponds freeze almost solid and all their neighbors die. When ponds dry up they burrow down into mud and wait for the rains.

Including the various sea catfishes more than 1 200 species are distributed over the world. Largest of all is the Danube sheatfish or wels (*Silurus glanis*). It may grow as long as 12 feet and weigh as much as 400 pounds. The scientific name of the blue catfish is *Ictalurus furcatus*, yellow catfish *Pseudorasbora*, common channel catfish *Ictalurus punctatus*, common bullhead *Ameiurus nebulosus*.

**CATHEDRAL** Early in the Middle Ages when Latin was still the language of religious and political life throughout western Europe, the church which contained the official seat or throne (*cathedra*) of the bishop was known as the *ecclesia cathedralis* or church of the seat. As time went on this term was shortened and today we call the church over which the bishop presides the cathedral.

In medieval days all western Europe was Roman Catholic and so the entire community united in the effort to build a church which should not only glorify religion but which should also be a credit to the city. The bishop's church usually was the largest, finest and most richly adorned church building in the diocese or bishop's district. This is not always true however. The Church of St. Peter's at Rome is the most glorious church in Christendom yet the seat of the pope—as bishop of Rome—is the older but less splendid basilica of St. John Lateran.

As a result of these efforts of medieval men we have today all over western Europe great gray stone cathedrals whose roofs and towers dominate

the whole countryside. In the magnificent Gothic cathedrals built mostly between the 12th and the 15th centuries the tall pointed window openings are filled with pictures in stained glass the rich and varied colors of which add to the splendor of the interior. Everywhere within and without the sculptor's art has scattered figures of men, animals and plants. Artists and sculptors have vied with one another in representing the history of mankind and of Christianity. Scenes from the Bible, figures of the saints and representations of the virtues and vices make up a kind of layman's Bible that appealed to the eye and was understood by all.

Though these glorious Gothic churches are generally counted as the noblest expressions of man's achievement in the art of building, cathedrals built in other styles of architecture are no less supreme in their way. Byzantine, Romanesque, Renaissance—all have their special beauties. (See *Architecture*.)

It took hundreds of years to construct such cathedrals. At Notre Dame in Paris, St. Mark's in Venice, Canterbury in England and Cologne in Germany a

few such as those at Amiens, Reims, Antwerp and St. Paul in London have been seriously damaged in recent wars but great advances have been made in the art of restoring these priceless monuments. Though the medieval cathedrals have never been equaled there are many fine modern examples. In Liverpool, England, a large cathedral, a Gothic structure begun in the 20th century.

Notable cathedrals in America include the Roman Catholic cathedrals of St. Patrick in New York City, Notre Dame in Montreal and the cathedral in Mexico City. The Cathedral of St. John the Divine in New York City and the National Cathedral of St. Peter and St. Paul in Washington, D. C. are Protestant Episcopal. (See also *Cathedral* in the **FACT INDEX** at the end of this volume.)

#### REIMS CATHEDRAL—A GOTHIC GEM



After severe bombardments in the first World War had severely damaged this famous cathedral, workmen restored it on foundations to roof. The spire flying buttresses and facade were repaired. The windows were replaced by new stained glass. The rebuilt cathedral was consecrated in 1937. In the second World War it escaped damage.

CATHER, WILLA (1875-1947). In such classic American novels as 'O Pioneers!' Willa Cather wrote of people she had known as a girl in Nebraska. Her friends were both native Americans and European immigrants and their children. She showed how these pioneers adapted themselves to the rugged prairie life and how they helped build western America. For her depictions of this valiant spirit, Willa Cather won wide acclaim as a novelist.

Willa Cather was born Dec. 7, 1875, in Winchester, Va. Her family had been Virginians for four generations. When Willa was eight, her father bought a ranch near Red Cloud, Neb. The child was excited by the change from a settled, eastern community to a semifrontier life. Often she would ride

to a neighbor's house and listen to the old women tell of their childhoods in Sweden or Bohemia.

There were no schools near the ranch so she studied at home. A neighbor taught her Latin, and Willa read English classics aloud to her grandmother. The pretty red-haired girl loved the outdoors. When Willa was in her teens the family moved to town. She attended Red Cloud High School and the University of Nebraska. After graduation in 1895 she worked on a Pittsburgh newspaper for six years, then taught high school for a time. On vacations she traveled to Europe and the American Southwest.

Meanwhile she contributed stories to *McClure's Magazine*. She accepted a post on the magazine, and in 1903 she became managing editor. But editing left her little time for creative writing, and in 1912 she resigned to devote full time to her own stories.

Her first novel was unsuccessful, but when she turned to frontier themes she won a wide audience. 'O Pioneers!' (1913) was followed by 'Song of the Lark' (1915) and 'My Antonia' (1918). 'One of Ours' won the Pulitzer prize in 1923. Also popular were 'Death Comes for the Archbishop' (1927), a study of Catholic missionaries in New Mexico, and 'Shadows on the Rock' (1931), a story of early Quebec.

Willa Cather never married. She lived quietly in New York City or traveled in Europe, avoiding public appearances whenever possible. She remained loyal to childhood friends and visited them often. She died in New York City on April 24, 1947.

**CATHERINE THE GREAT** (1729-1796). One of the most famous queens in history was Catherine II, empress of Russia. She was a beautiful woman and an efficient ruler, but her immoral conduct made her notorious throughout Europe.

Catherine was the eldest child of Christian August, prince of a Prussian state called Anhalt-Zerbst. She

was born at Stettin (now Szczecin, Poland) on May 2, 1729. She was christened Sophie Auguste Friedrike; her girlhood nickname was Fike.

When Fike was 15, she and her mother were invited to Russia by Empress Elizabeth, daughter of Peter the Great. The empress was looking for a wife for her 16-year-old nephew, the Grand Duke Peter, heir to the Russian throne. Fike was intelligent and gave promise of her later beauty. She was approved.

On June 28, 1744, Fike was received into the Orthodox church and renamed Catherine. The next day she became engaged to Peter, a small, delicate youth who still played with dolls and lead soldiers. They were married on Aug. 21, 1745. The marriage was unhappy. Peter remained a boy in body and mind. Catherine's first child, later Czar Paul I, was not born until 1754, nine years after the wedding. Four more children were born in later years.

The Empress Elizabeth died in January 1762 and Peter became Czar Peter III. His weak-minded ways soon made him unpopular. He offended church dignitaries and preferred the companionship of Germans to Russians. But Catherine was well liked. She had accepted Russian customs as her own. In July 1762 the army placed Peter under arrest and declared Catherine empress. Several days later Peter died after a scuffle with his guards.

As grand duchess and as empress Catherine read and studied much. Often she rose before the servants and began work. She started to write a history of Russia, made a digest of Blackstone's 'Commentaries',

and wrote several plays. Her rule was greatly influenced by such Frenchmen as Voltaire and Diderot. She admired French manners and insisted that her court adopt them.

Catherine reigned for 34 years. She increased the number of nobles and their privileges, installed a new code of laws, and extended the boundaries of her empire. She helped divide Poland among Russia, Austria, and Prussia

(see Poland). Her important agents and ministers became her favorites. One of them, Prince George Potemkin, commanded the army in the Turkish wars. Under him, Russia won the Crimean Peninsula and access to the Black Sea.

Frightened by the French Revolution's threat to all monarchies, Catherine attempted to ally the rest of Europe against France. But she was only partially successful. As she grew old, her beauty faded and she became fat. She died Nov. 17, 1796.

WILLA CATHER



Willa Cather won fame for her novels of frontier life.

CATHERINE THE GREAT



Catherine II of Russia was noted for her beauty and intelligence.

## The Most USEFUL of All DOMESTIC ANIMALS

**CATTLE** Because men get neat leather, milk, butter, cheese, glue, medicines, hair for binding plasters, and many other products from cattle they are the most valuable of all domestic animals. Cattle cattle oxen are also used as draft animals. Cattle for neat milk and pulling burdens are important in almost every country of the world. In some parts of Africa a man's wealth is counted in terms of the cattle he owns. In the United States more than 85 million cattle provide work and wealth for ranchers, farmers, dairy and leather workers, and others. In ages long past cattle roamed wild over most of the world. Men hunted them for their meat and hides. Some cattle are still wild. America's musk ox and bison are wild cattle. Men probably domesticated cattle somewhere in southwestern Asia during the early part of the New Stone Age (see Civilization, Man).

### What Cattle Are

The word cattle once meant all kinds of domestic animals. The word comes from the Latin word *capitale* which means wealth or property. Through French and English usage and adaptation the word cattle is used now only when referring to bovines.

A bovine is a cud-chewing ruminant with a four-chambered stomach, hollow horns, and an even num-



A Guernsey cow and bull pose for a photographer at a rail fence. Guernsey cows give yellow-colored milk that is rich in butterfat.

ber of toes on its hoofs (see Ruminants). Bovines belong to the family *Bovidae* and are of the genus *Bos*. European and most American cattle belong to the species *Bos taurus*. The humped cattle of Africa, India, China, and southeastern Asia, called *zebu*, belong to the species *Bos indicus*. Other humped forms are the *gaur* and the *gayal* of southern India, some of which have been domesticated, and the numerous and well-domesticated *banteng* (also spelled *bantain*, *banting*, or *tsaine*) of India, Burma, Malaya, and the Indonesian islands. Still others are the *bison* forms of Europe and America and the *yak* of Tibet in Asia. The bison (in America often incorrectly called *buffalo*) has not been domesticated, but the yak has. The true *buffalo* of southeastern Europe and Asia has been domesticated also. It is widely used for milk and meat production and as a draft animal.

One variety of the European *Bos taurus* was the now extinct *urus* (*Bos primigenius*), at one time popularly called *giant ox* or *aurochs*. (This was not the European bison, which was also called *aurochs*.) The *urus* was very large; its withers (highest point above the shoulders) often measuring as high as seven feet. Another European variety, a much smaller animal, was the *Celtic ox* (*Bos longifrons*). Most European and American breeds of today descended from one or the other of these two varieties, and some are descended from both.

Mature cattle have 32 teeth, but they do not have teeth in the front of the upper jaw. Thus a bovine grasps rooted grass in its mouth and tears the blades free by a sideways movement of its head.

A *bull* is a male and a *cow* is a female bovine. A *calf* is the young of either sex. A *bull calf* is a young male bovine, a *heifer calf* is a young female. Between one and two years a bovine is called a *yearling*. A mother cow is called a *dam*. A *steer* is a male bovine

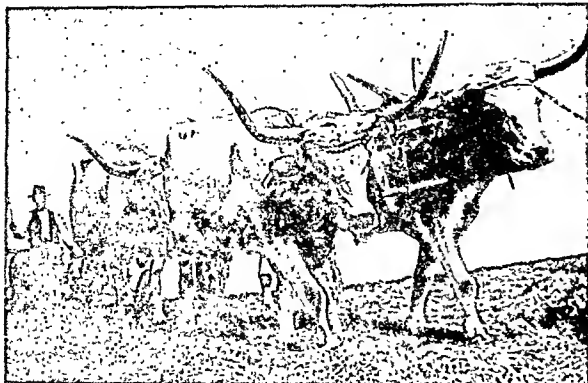
### A HEREFORD CALF



After a few months on mother's milk, this little calf will be fattened on grain, hay, and silage.



## WORKING AND WILD CATTLE



These four Bavarian cattle (left) pull a plow. Cattle, used as work animals, are called oxen. Oxen sometimes pulled the prairie schooners of the pioneers who settled the American West.



The gaur bull (right) is fierce and much larger than most domestic cattle. Gaur cows are only a little bigger than Jerseys. The gaur, or Indian bison, roam wild only in southern India.

which before it reaches maturity is made incapable of mating; a *spayed heifer* is a female bovine similarly operated on. Desexualized cattle are gentle and tractable; they also gain weight faster and produce finer-grained meat. Most male oxen are steers.

Some cattle do not grow horns; they are called *polled* cattle. Purebred cattle eligible for registration with the various breed associations must have descended from arbitrarily selected *foundation stock*. Cattle that have the characteristics of a specific breed but are not purebreds are called *grades*. Cattle having poor breed characteristics are called *scrubs*. It is a common practice to mate grade cows with purebred bulls to improve, or *upgrade*, the progeny.

The life span of cattle would be about 20 years but nearly all are sent to slaughter much earlier. Heifers are first mated when 15 to 20 months old. The gestation period of bovines is about 282 days.

#### Selective Breeding

Today's domestic cattle of Africa, Asia, and the Indonesian islands are very much like the cattle that lived in those areas 2,000 years ago. In Europe and America, however, cattlemen have produced new and superior types of cattle. They did this through *selective breeding*.

#### LEADING CATTLE-PRODUCING COUNTRIES

COUNTRY	NUMBER OF HEAD*
India.....	205,000,000†
United States.....	82,535,000
Brazil.....	45,134,000
Argentina.....	35,695,000
China.....	22,450,000
France.....	14,691,000
Germany.....	14,166,000
Australia.....	13,881,000
Union of South Africa.....	12,677,000
Mexico.....	12,459,000
United Kingdom.....	9,624,000
Canada.....	9,537,000

\*A four-year average †Includes buffaloes

Robert Bakewell, an English farmer who lived between 1725 and 1795, is credited with first applying the rules of selective breeding to cattle. He established such principles as "like begets like," "plan an ideal type," and "breed the best to the best." Later he began to use *inbreeding* (mating related cattle), saying "inbreeding produces refinement and early maturity." His method was to pick a bull of good beef quality and mate it to a cow of similar good qualities. By carrying this plan of mating through several generations of cattle, he developed fine beef-type animals that usually had young of the same characteristics. His methods, qualified by later scientific discoveries in heredity, are used by cattle breeders today (see also Biology; Heredity).

Cattle that display qualities unlike those of their parents are called *sports*, or *mutants*. German scientists, by mating varieties that showed qualities of long-ago ancestors, have been able to produce animals similar to the ancient urus.

#### Cattle in America

Because no native American *Bovidae* has been domesticated, America had to import its domestic cattle. Most of America's cattle came from Europe and so belong to the *Bos taurus* species. Since 1900, however, the species *Bos indicus*, or zebu, has been imported. (Information on the imported zebus will be found under the subhead "Beef Breeds" on a later page of this article.)

Norsemen first brought European cattle to America about the year 1000. Their colony disappeared, however, and their cattle disappeared with it. Columbus next brought European cattle to Hispaniola (Haiti) on his second voyage (1493). In 1519 or 1520 Cortez took Spanish cattle to what is now Mexico. Because of the great length of their horns, these cattle were called *Longhorns*.

The Longhorns were big, wiry, and muscular. They proved hardy foragers of the open range. They not only survived wolf and mountain-lion attacks, but thrived in semiarid country. Spanish priests drove the Longhorns to the missions they established in

## SOME WELL-KNOWN MILK CATTLE BREEDS

IRREVOCABLE  
CATTLE  
\* AUTOMATIC



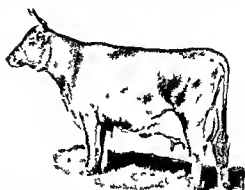
A Holstein Friesian bull is heavy in front and lean and muscular in the rear. It is colored black and white. Dairy breed bulls are fierce-tempered and dangerous. They will attack people.



Holstein Friesian cows give more milk than any of the other milk breed cows, but the milk has a small percentage of butterfat. Note the milk vein that runs forward from the udder.



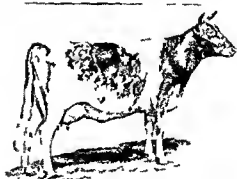
Ayrshire cows are also large milk producers. Note how large the udder or milk bag of this one is. Ayrshires are white with red markings. The Ayrshire breed was developed in Scotland.



Brown Swiss cows came originally from Switzerland. They are colored in varying shades of brown. They are large milk producers. Brown Swiss herds can be found in many parts of America.



Jerseys are small and few-colored. This one has white markings. Because of its rich milk and small size, it is a favorite of dairy farmers. It is too small to carry a Jersey along for milk and cream.



Guernseys are red and white. Like the Jersey breed, the Guernsey was also developed on an island in the English Channel. It too is small and produces milk that is rich in butterfat.

Texas, New Mexico, and California. Longhorns became the dominant western type and were so identified with Texas that they sometimes were called Texas Longhorns. Longhorns prospered in South America too. With them Brazil and Argentina have become leading exporters of beef (see Argentina, Brazil).

The Jamestown colony in Virginia got its first English cattle in 1611. As the English, Dutch, and French settled the eastern coast from Canada to Florida, they brought the cattle with them.

At that time cattle furnished some milk, but usually only during spring, summer, and fall. They

RELATION OF CATTLE NUMBERS TO HUMAN POPULATION IN THE UNITED STATES

YEAR	HUMANS	ALL CATTLE	OTHER THAN MILK COWS*	MILK COWS
1870. . . .	39,818,449	31,082,000	21,410,000	9,672,000
1880 . . .	50,155,783	43,347,000	31,593,000	11,754,000
1890 . . .	62,947,714	60,014,000	45,014,000	15,000,000
1900 . .	75,994,575	59,739,000	43,195,000	16,544,000
1910 . . .	91,972,266	58,993,000	39,543,000	19,450,000
1920 . .	105,710,620	70,400,000	48,945,000	21,455,000
1930 . . .	122,775,046	61,003,000	37,971,000	23,032,000
1940 . . .	131,669,275	68,309,000	43,369,000	24,940,000
1950. . . .	150,697,361	77,963,000	54,110,000	23,853,000

\*Figures include heifers and bulls that belong to dairy herds

The above table, taken from United States census figures, shows that dairy-cattle and beef-cattle breeders have been increasingly efficient since 1890. In that year the cattle population was about 95 per cent of the human population; in 1950, to meet dairy and beef needs, the country required a cattle population of only about 52 per cent of the human population.

usually dried up during the winter because of lack of proper foods, but the European cattle were superior in meat qualities to the Longhorns.

Texas pioneers from the United States raised the Longhorns. Their herds grew very large, and soon after Texas joined the Union (1845) they began driving cattle eastward to New Orleans and northeastward into Missouri, Illinois, and Iowa. Still later they were driven to feed on the grasses of the northern Great Plains. Until the 1870's and the arrival of railroads in the West, the drives continued. The whole great ranching country of the West prospered with Longhorn cattle. There the techniques of herding and branding were developed. Sometimes so many cattle were ready for the market that the beef could not all be sold. The rancher still prospered from the sale of cattle hides and tallow. (See also Far West.)

As the eastern seaboard became more heavily populated, pioneers pressed over the Appalachians into Tennessee, Kentucky, and Ohio. They took their eastern cattle with them. After the Civil War and with the building of railroads the westward tide of pioneers increased. Eventually the Longhorns and the eastern cattle met. The superiority of the eastern cattle was recognized by the ranchers, but at first they did not believe these eastern cattle could withstand the hard life of foraging on the range. It was found that they could, however, and in crossing the Longhorns with Eastern types the Longhorn gradually

disappeared. Only a few head of them remain in North America. (For a picture of a Longhorn, see the article on Cattle Ranching.)

### Dairy Cattle

The dairy farmer earns his principal income from the sale of milk and milk products. Other sources of income are the calves sold as veal and the old cows and bulls sold as beef. Most veal comes from the slaughter of dairy calves not needed as replacements. Few dairy cattle are permitted to die of old age.

Dairying can be combined with almost any type of agriculture. More than 76 per cent of the United States farms and ranches keep at least one milk cow, and for this reason dairy cattle are the most widely distributed of all domestic animals.

About 11 per cent of the farms within the United States are *commercial dairy farms*—that is, milk is their chief product. Since milk spoils quickly, commercial dairy farms that sell *whole milk* lie close to population centers. Such a milk producing area is called a *milkshed*. Dairy farms within the milkshed must operate under rules of sanitation imposed by the health boards of the cities and states they supply. These rules include periodic tests of the dairy cattle for disease and inspections of milking rooms and the handling and cooling of the milk.

Commercial dairy farmers beyond the milkshed gain their principal income from the sale of cream, which is the light part of whole milk and contains the butterfat. Cream is less bulky to ship and commands a higher price than milk. Commercial dairy farms still more distant from the population centers sell their milk to factories that manufacture it into butter; cheese; ice cream; condensed milk (part of water content evaporated); casein; lactose; lactic acid; dried whey; canned whole milk; and powdered whole milk, skimmed milk, and cream. These farmers engage in dairying because their farm-grown products are more profitable when converted to milk through feeding to dairy cows than when sold direct from the farm. Excess milk produced within the milkshed and cream areas is called *surplus*; surplus milk is also manufactured into milk products.

The great dairy belt of the United States extends southward from New England to central Maryland, and westward across the Mississippi to eastern Iowa

DAIRY CATTLE

BREED	PLACE OF ORIGIN	AVERAGE WEIGHT		AVERAGE PER COW MILK PRODUCTION OF REGISTERED HERDS		ONE-YEAR RECORD MILK PRODUCTION (lbs.)
		Cow	Bull	Whole Milk (lbs.)	Butterfat (%)	
Ayrshire . . . . .	British Isles	1,150	1,700			31,156
Brown Swiss . . . . .	Switzerland	1,400	1,850	9,016	4.08	29,569
Guernsey . . . . .	British Isles	1,100	1,600	9,478	3.96	26,672
Holstein-Friesian . . . . .	Netherlands	1,500	2,000	8,208	4.80	42,805
Jersey . . . . .	British Isles	1,000	1,500	11,243	3.48	23,677
				7,037	5.36	

and Minnesota. Of the states within the dairy belt Wisconsin has the largest number of dairy cows more than 3½ million. Other large milk producing states are Minnesota, New York, Iowa, Illinois, Ohio, Michigan, Pennsylvania and Indiana. Over all the United States there are about 26 million dairy cows, heifers and bulls. (See also Agriculture, Butter, Cheese, Dairying, Farm Life, Ice Cream, Milk.)

#### Dairy Breeds

Dairy cows are relatively lean, quite angular and have large udders. Dairy breeds have been developed to the conformation (shape and structure) of an ideal dairy type. Purebred dairy cattle are registered with the appropriate breed association. Many purebred bulls are used to upgrade herds of grade cows. Grade cattle are spoken of as belonging to the breed they are like.

Usually the cows that conform closely to the ideal dairy type are good milk producers, but this is not always so. Dairy breeding now depends more on milk records than on conformation. Mating a bull that has had daughters of high milk production to cows that are high producers and that are them-

selves the daughters of high producing dams is the usual method of producing better milk cattle.

#### COMPOSITION OF THE MILK OF DAIRY BREEDS

BREED	TOTAL SOLIDS		AVERAGE FAT		PROTEIN
	%		%		%
Ayrshire	13.00		4.00		3.50
Brown Swiss	13.00		4.00		3.50
Guernsey	14.50		4.96		3.75
Holstein	12.30		3.42		3.30
Jersey	14.80		5.36		3.80

(For pictures in color of these breeds see Milk.)

The Ayrshire breed originated in Ayrshire, Scotland. It is red of any shade and white, with the colors clearly defined. Some black and brindle markings are acceptable in purebred registration, but they are not desirable. Its horns curve upward and are of medium length and taper toward the tips. A mature cow weighs about 1,150 pounds. Ayrshires were first brought to the United States from Scotland in 1823. Later, some of the importers came from Canada. Herd development did not begin until the 1880s. A record one-year milk production for one Ayrshire cow was 31,156.

#### SOME OF THE WELL KNOWN BEEF BREEDS



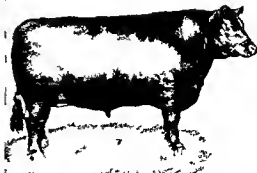
Note how squarely built this Shorthorn steer is. Both top and bottom lines are almost horizontal. This is the desired shape for beef breeds. This steer is rusty red with white markings.



Herefords are red with white markings. The Hereford is also called "Whitetail" because its face is white. More Hereford cattle are raised in America than any of the other beef breeds.

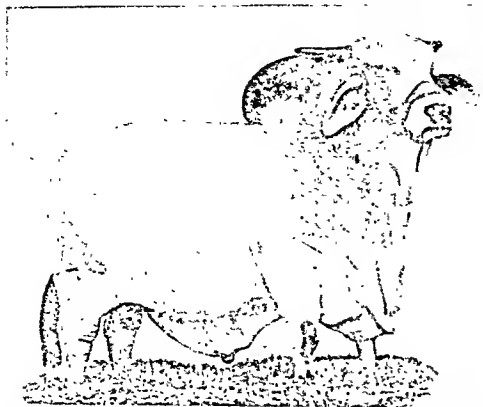


The Aberdeen Angus breed was developed in two counties of Scotland. It is black and always polled (does not grow horns). Beef breeders like to show their cattle standing in straw.

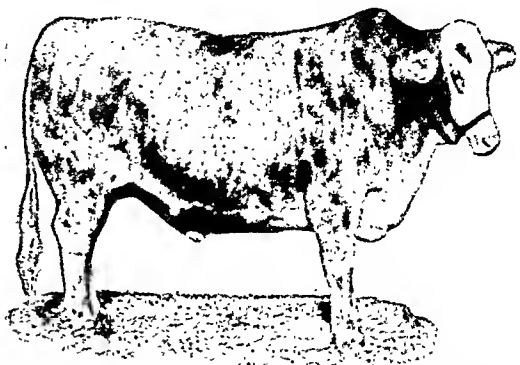


In 1904 this Aberdeen Angus steer was a prize winner. Compare it with the steer at the left. Because of the demand for smaller beef cuts, breeders have developed cattle with smaller bones.

## THE BRAHMAN AND A BRAFORD



A zebu brought to this country from India is called a Brahman. Its heritage equips it to endure heat and to resist disease and insects. The neck hump is mostly cartilage and fat.



In the United States Brahmans are crossed with other breeds to secure heat-, disease-, and insect-resistant animals. This fine cross between a Brahman and a Hereford is called a Braford.

pounds. The Ayrshire Breeders' Association, organized in 1875, has headquarters at Brandon, Vt.

The *Brown Swiss* breed originated in the valleys and on the mountain slopes of Switzerland. As a breed type it probably developed many centuries ago. The breed colors are varying shades of brown. The nose and tongue are black, and a patch of white spreads backward from the muzzle. The horns rise slightly and taper toward black tips. At maturity a Brown Swiss cow weighs about 1,500 pounds. Brown Swiss cattle were first brought to the United States in 1870. A record one-year Brown Swiss milk production for one cow was 29,569 pounds. The Brown Swiss Breeders' Association, organized in 1880, has headquarters at Beloit, Wis.

The *Guernsey* breed originated from cattle native to Brittany and Normandy, France. It was developed on the British Isle of Guernsey, near the French coast. Monks brought cattle of the two kinds to the island about the year 1000. Crossbreeding of the best of the two breeds resulted in the Guernsey. In 1824 the islanders, because they feared deterioration of their breed, forbade the importation of any other cattle to the island except for slaughter.

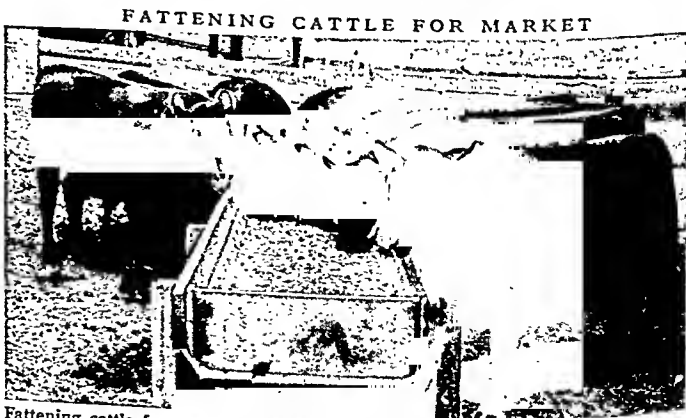
The Guernseys first brought to the United States in 1831 were a cow and a bull. By 1877 the development of Guernsey herds resulted in the founding of the American Guernsey Cattle Club. Its headquarters are at Petersburg, N. H.

The average Guernsey cow weighs about 1,100 pounds. A record one-year milk production for one Guernsey cow was 26,672 pounds. The Guernsey milk is a rich yellow color and has an average butterfat content of 4.96 per cent. One or more Guernsey cows are sometimes kept with Holstein herds to increase butterfat

content and improve the color of the milk. Guernsey beef, because its fat has a yellow color and its muscles are flat, is not popular as meat.

The *Holstein-Friesians* (usually called simply Holsteins) are the most numerous dairy cows in the United States. Their black and white markings are clearly defined. A mature cow weighs about 1,500 pounds. Its horns incline forward, curve a little inward, and taper at the tips. They are the largest milk producers of all breeds, but the butterfat percentage of total milk is less than that of other breeds. A one-year record production for a Holstein cow was 42,805 pounds.

The Holsteins originated in the Netherlands. Although some were probably brought with the first Dutch settlers of New York (about 1621), the breed did not become popular until after 1852, when a large number of Holsteins were brought to this country. Several Holstein associations were formed by breeders. In 1885 these joined to form the Holstein-Friesian Association of America. It maintains headquarters at Brattleboro, Vt.



Fattening cattle for market is called "finishing." Feed troughs like this one are kept filled with roughage (hay and silage) and grain, and the cattle are permitted to feed whenever they like. The steers above are of the Red Poll breed.

Although the *Jersey* breed is the smallest of the dairy cattle it produces the largest percentage of butterfat an average of 5.36 per cent. Dairy farmers with Holstein herds often keep one or more Jerseys to build up the butterfat content of their milk. The mature Jersey cow weighs about 1,000 pounds. Its color is a shade of fawn and it may or may not have white markings. Its horns small at the base incline forward, have an inward curving tendency and taper toward the tips. Because of its small size the Jersey eats somewhat less than cows of other breeds; consequently it is less costly to raise and maintain. A one-year record milk production for one cow was 23,677 pounds. Jersey beef brings somewhat lower prices because its fat has a yellowish color.

The Jersey is one of the oldest of the dairy breeds. It originated on the Isle of Jersey, a British island near the coast of France and the Isle of Guernsey. There are said to be more Jersey type cattle throughout the world than any other dairy breed. Because of its small size it was the preferred milk cow for voyages in the old sailing ships. As early as 1789 the Isle of Jersey forbade the importation of any cattle except for immediate slaughter. Registered Jerseys were first brought to the United States in the 1830's. The American Jersey Cattle Club, founded in 1868, has headquarters at Columbus, Ohio.

Among the other dairy breeds in the United States are the *Dutch Belted*, the *French Canadian* and the *Kerry*. The Dutch Belted has a broad white stripe about the middle of its otherwise black body. Both the French Canadian and the Kerry are small cattle; the cows weighing about 900 pounds, but their milk is produced at a small cost for feed. These breeds are mostly in eastern Canada and the northeastern part of the United States.

#### Beef Type Cattle

The beef type bovine is squarely built. The body is short, low-set, broad and deep. The legs are short and well fleshed and both top and bottom lines are almost horizontal. The beef type bovine quickly converts the food it eats to muscle and fat.

#### A DUAL-PURPOSE BREED



Dual purpose cattle produce good milkers that can also be fattened into high-quality beef carcasses. The Red Poll cow is particularly popular on general purpose farms of the Midwest.

Beef cattle are produced in almost every section of the United States and its possessions, including the Gulf coastal area from Florida to the Mexican border and the Hawaiian Islands. The 13 largest beef producing states (not necessarily in the order of production) are Texas, Iowa, Nebraska, Kansas, Illinois, Missouri, California, Oklahoma, Minnesota, Wisconsin, Ohio, Michigan and New York.

In the western regions cattle graze over a vast area, some of it leased government pasture and forage. Older cattle marketed from this area are usually fattened on grass. They are not top grades of beef and are slaughtered as soon as marketed. The younger cattle are usually sold to feedlots near the slaughtering centers of Kansas City, Mo., Omaha, Neb., Sioux City, Iowa, St. Louis, Mo., St. Paul, Minn., Fort Worth, Tex., Denver, Colo., and St. Joseph, Mo. At the feedlots they are fattened or finished on roughage (hay and silage) and grains, cottonseed cake or sugar beet pulp. A considerable number of other cattle are finished on roughage and pasture grass. The corn belt finishing operations produce the finest quality of beef. Here most of the highly desired baby beef is finished.

At birth a beef type calf weighs about 80 pounds. At six months a well fed animal weighs about 450 pounds; and at 12 months about 850 pounds. If well fed until 24 months old, the animal will weigh about 1,300 pounds. Thus in the first 12 months the weight of a good beef animal increases almost 800 pounds; but in the second 12 months (although the intake of food is much larger) it increases only about 450 pounds. Young beef is therefore less costly to produce than older beef.

Baby beef cattle sold between 8 and 18 months old range from 600 to 1,100 pounds. The age and the degree of finish control whether the cattle will be marketed as prime choice, good, medium, common or one of the lesser grades.

Better quality beef animals weigh more than animals of lower grades of the same age. There is about 100 pounds difference between animals graded common and good, and there is another difference of more than 70 pounds from the good to the choice and prime grades. Weight alone, however, is not the determining factor on quality; quality depends on the texture and shape of the meat cuts.

Higher grade cattle (choice or prime) yield a higher percentage of their live weight as salable meat (carcass) than do lower grades. High-quality beef animals yield carcasses that are 80 per cent of live weight. The poorest quality animals yield carcasses that are only 40 per cent of live weight. The average beef carcass of all grades yields 53.4 per cent of live weight (see also Meat Packing).

#### Beef Breeds

The *Aberdeen Angus* (often called simply Angus) is an all black, polled breed. It originated from native wild cattle in northern Scotland. The breed was developed in the shires (counties) of Aberdeen and Angus, probably in the middle 1700's. Angus cattle

were first brought to the United States in 1873. Some were crossed with another British breed. The majority of the resulting calves were black and almost all were polled. These crossbreeds fattened smoothly and quickly. A purebred Angus herd was started with new importations in 1878. The American Aberdeen Angus Breeders' Association, formed in 1884, has headquarters at Chicago, Ill.

The *Shorthorn* breed ranges in color from solid red and red with white markings to roan and white. It was developed principally in the English counties of Durham and York, and in the past has also been known as Durham. A branch of the breed is polled, and the name for these is *Polled Shorthorns*. Purebred Shorthorns were first brought to the United States in 1783. Starting in 1846 several Shorthorn breeders' associations were formed. In 1935 these joined to form the American Shorthorn Breeders' Association, which has headquarters at Chicago, Ill.

The *Hereford* breed originated in Herefordshire, England, from cattle common in the area and spotted cattle brought from the Netherlands about the middle of the 1700's. There are more Hereford cattle in the United States than any of the other beef types. Herefords are red with a white face. They are often called "whitefaces." A strip of white extends from the neck rearward along the back, and the underparts are white. Henry Clay imported some Herefords as early as 1817. Another herd was established in 1840. The Hereford's fast conversion of food to meat made it quickly popular.

In 1882 early Hereford breeders' associations united to form the American Hereford Association with headquarters at Kansas City, Mo. The development of Polled Herefords brought about the formation of the American Polled Hereford Association, which also has its headquarters at Kansas City. Many purebred Polled Herefords are registered with both associations.

The *Brahman* (zebu) breed is native to India. The Brahman's endure heat and resist disease and insect attacks better than other breeds. The Brahman's are large, with a hump of cartilage and fat rising above neck and withers. Most are some shade of gray, others are red. In India they are found in a variety of solid and broken colors. The Brahman's qualities have made them popular in the hot and humid Gulf Coast area from Florida to Texas. Brahman's are mated with other beef breeds to produce hybrids also able to endure heat and resist disease. Brahman's were first brought to the United States in 1849, but heavy importations were not made until the early 1900's.

At the King Ranch in Texas, Brahman-Shorthorn crosses have been developed into a new breed called *Santa Gertrudis*. The new breed carries three-eighths Brahman and five-eighths Shorthorn blood. Other crosses are the *Braford* (Brahman-Hereford) and the well-established *Brangus* (Brahman-Angus). The American Brahman Breeders' Association, organized in 1924, has headquarters at Houston, Tex. The *cattalo*, a hybrid cross between the bison and a domestic bovine, has not been commercially successful.

#### ONE WAY TO PREVENT CATTLE DISEASES



Farmers of Natal, Union of South Africa, drive cattle into a dipping vat. The chemical solution kills parasites.

Another beef breed is the all black *Galloway*. Not now popular in the United States, its ability to withstand cold has made it acceptable in the Rocky Mountain area and in Alaska.

#### The Dual-Purpose Breeds

The conformation of the dual-purpose breeds is more like the beef than the dairy breeds. They require more costly feeding to finish off as beef than the beef breeds, and as milk producers they also require more dairy feed than the dairy breeds. The advantage in keeping them lies in that they bring higher prices than the dairy breeds as beef and that their milk production usually more than pays for their keep. The dual-purpose herds of the United States are mostly centered in the north central states, on farms that are neither specifically beef finishers nor commercial dairy producers. Until sold as beef most of the dual-purpose cows provide the milk and cream needs of the farm.

The three most important dual-purpose breeds in the United States are the *Milking Shorthorn* (now considered exclusively a dairy breed by many), the *Devon*, and the *Red Poll*. All come from England. The Devon was first popular as a work ox, and it is still considered the most responsive and docile of the work oxen. America's few Devon herds are mostly in the Eastern states. The *Milking Shorthorns* are the most numerous. The breed is most popular in the Midwest.

The Red Poll developed during the first half of the 1800's from native cattle in the English counties of Norfolk and Suffolk. In 1874 English and American breeders joined in establishing a herd book. At that time the United States had only four Red Polls eligible for registration. Importations and breeding have greatly increased the number. The Red Poll Cattle Club of America organized about 1900 has headquarters at Lincoln, Neb. The Red Poll has a flesh-colored nose, usually a red and white tail switch and is otherwise red except for minor white markings on the underparts.

#### Diseases of Cattle

Tuberculosis in cattle, a bacterial disease related to human tuberculosis, is dangerous to man. It is spread in infected milk and milk products, but the organism is killed by pasteurization. Infected cattle are identified by the tuberculin test of Robert Koch (see Koch). In the United States infected cattle are destroyed and their barns thoroughly disinfected before new cattle are brought in.

Brucellosis or Bang's disease, when contracted by man, is called undulant fever. Sick animals are segregated and treated. Calves can be immunized by vaccination. At about two weeks after birth, calves are also vaccinated against colic and pneumonia, and at about two months against blackleg and anthrax (See Pasteur Vaccination).

Foot-and-mouth disease may attack any cloven hoofed animal. It causes running sores in the mouth and between the toes. Infected cattle that do not die require two or three years to recover the full flow of milk or finished weight. The disease has been eliminated in the United States and Canada by stringent livestock admission laws and by the slaughter of sick animals. Rinderpest is a contagious virus disease of the digestive tract. It is rare in the United States. Foot-and-mouth disease and rinderpest can be forestalled by vaccination.

Texas fever is caused by a microscopic parasite related to the one-celled animals that cause malaria. It destroys the blood cells (see Mosquito). The parasite is carried by ticks. The female tick, in sucking blood from an infected animal, receives the parasite and passes it through its eggs, which are laid on the ground to hatch. The hatched ticks attach

themselves to cattle and in biting transmit the parasite. Texas fever was carried north in the great cattle drives. Cattle of the north were infected when they crossed infested ground.

The discovery of the Texas fever parasite was made by Theobald Smith and F. L. Kilborne in 1889. They found that the ticks die within three or four months if they cannot attach themselves to an animal. By keeping cattle from infested fields for four or more months the ticks have been almost eliminated.

A disease control measure used by cattlemen in many parts of the world is the dipping vat. This is a sunken tank filled with a chemical solution. An inclined runway leads from one end of the tank. Cattle driven into the dipping vat drop into it so that they are completely immersed in the solution. Then they swim to the inclined runway and climb out. Dipping vats are used to kill ticks and other pests, including the itch mite that causes scabies.

#### Poisonous Plants

Cattle are poisoned and some killed by eating poisonous plants. Some of the plants poisonous to cattle are larkspur, lupines, spotted henlock, Johnson weed, Indian hemp, western sneezeweed, some of the milkweeds, corn cockle, bull nettle, bitter-sweet, black locust, castor bean, and white snakeroot.

Perhaps the most dangerous of the poisonous plants are the white and purple locoweed growing widely over the Great Plains. Cattle that eat these plants suffer loco disease (from the Spanish meaning crazy). An animal suffering loco disease is unable to coordinate its muscles, has disturbed vision and becomes nervous. Death usually follows loco poisoning.

Still another poisoning occurs when cattle eat plants growing from seleniferous soils. In themselves the plants are not poisonous, but they take up the poisonous metal selenium from the soil.

It is noteworthy that none of the poisonous plants are particularly liked by cattle. If plenty of other feed is available, cattle will not eat them. Some of the Western states have tried to eradicate locoweed and other poisonous plants, but without total success. The cattleman can best protect his animals from plant poisoning by seeing to it that the cattle have an ample supply of herbage in their grazing areas. (See also Poisonous Plants, Selenium.)

## When CATTLE Ruled the WESTERN PLAINS

**CATTLE RANCHING.** The days when cattle ranches extended over hundreds of thousands of unfenced acres are some of the most colorful in American history. Thousands of stories for books, movies, radio and television have been woven around the cowboy. He wore woolly chaps, carried a six-shooter and bitterly fought rustlers as well as land waterhole and sheep wars.

The ancestors of the millions of cattle that grazed the range were descendants of cattle brought to Mexico by the Spanish conquistadors. Because their horns swept widely they were called Longhorns. They

thrived on the scant plants and occasional waterholes of northern Mexico and Texas. American emigrants to Texas took the big wary animals for their own. At times there were so many that the meat of the slaughtered could not all be sold, the ranchers still made profits from the sale of hides and tallow.

It was on Mexican and Texan ranches long before Americans arrived in the Southwest that the system of raising cattle on the open range developed. Here too the methods of the cow country and the equipment of the cowboy were devised. From the Spanish-speaking *vagueros* or herders the Americans



in Texas were to learn the business, and they in turn were to pass it on to the cattlemen of the northern Great Plains on the last American frontier.

The article on the Far West tells how the American pioneers from the eastern and central states blazed trails westward from the Mississippi River across those Great Plains and the mountains beyond them, how they "opened up" the Indian country, and paved the way for the settlement of what had been called the "Great American Desert." But close upon the heels of the explorers and trail-makers, ahead of the farmer-settler, came the frontier cattlemen with their small herds of scrub stock, gradually moving westward as the farms closed in around them and cut off the free pasture lands.

#### The Cattlemen Move West

By the time of the Civil War most of the land east of the Mississippi had been settled upon by southern planters or northern farmers. In Ohio and Kentucky and Illinois, the farmers were raising improved stock and driving excellent beef cattle to the markets. The western edge of the border settlements was to be found in Iowa, eastern Nebraska, and Kansas. Here the pioneer farmer had stopped, but the frontier stock

stock acquired from the whites on the Atlantic seaboard.

Yet, if all the cattle then living east of the Mississippi had been driven out into the Great Plains, they would hardly have made an impression on the vast prairies and foothills drained by the Missouri and Arkansas rivers and their numerous tributaries—the region comprising today the states of Montana, North and South Dakota, Wyoming, Nebraska, eastern Colorado, western Kansas, and Oklahoma.

Gen. Luther P. Bradley, reporting to the War Department in 1868, after an extended tour of army posts in this territory, wrote this estimate and prophecy: "I believe that all the flocks and herds in the world could find ample pasturage on these unoccupied plains and the mountain slopes beyond; and the time is not far distant when the largest flocks and herds in the world will be found here, where the grass grows and ripens untouched from year to year."

#### Texas Cattle Move North

If the cattle from the east were neither numerous enough nor sufficiently accustomed to hardy independence to take advantage of this great opportunity, their half-wild cousins south of the Red River in Texas were ready for it. Already too crowded for the

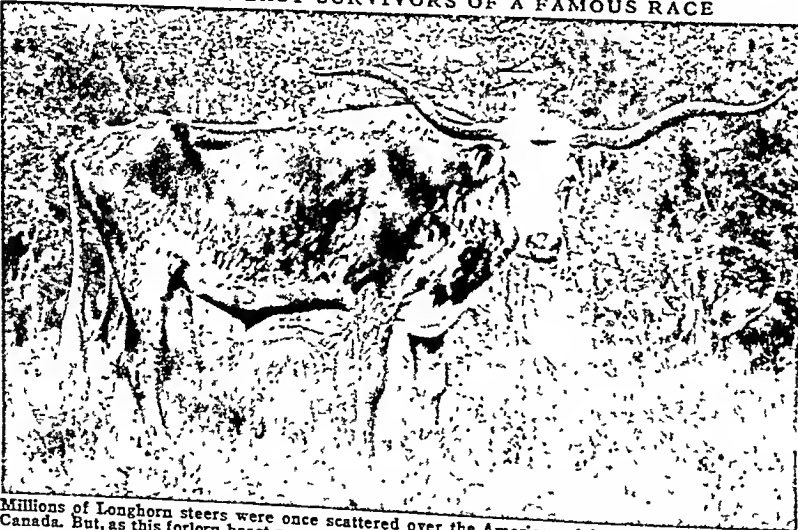
scanty grazing and infrequent watering places of their native *llanos* (plains), the longhorns had little chance to gain the flesh that would make them worth more than the mere price of a hide. For such as could be called "beef," the Texans by 1867 had found an outlet by driving them north to Abilene, Kan., then the western terminal of the Kansas Pacific Railroad. From there they were shipped to packing plants at Kansas City and Chicago.

But it was not until the later 70's that the longhorns began moving northward in large numbers. Some of the large

Texas ranches set up their own headquarters on the new ranges, drove their young steers up over the trails, turned them loose for a year or two to fatten, and then shipped them east to market. Others sold beef stock to newly established northern ranchmen, who might agree to drive the cattle up themselves or who might insist on their delivery at some appointed place in Colorado, Nebraska, or the territories of Dakota, Wyoming, or Montana.

With the cattle came also the lore of the cow camp and the range, which the Texans had learned from Mexico and which they in turn passed on to the

#### ONE OF THE LAST SURVIVORS OF A FAMOUS RACE



Millions of Longhorn steers were once scattered over the American plains from Mexico City to Canada. But, as this forlorn beast seems to realize, the breed was fit only for the hard old days of the open range. Today, the few that are left are kept as curiosities.

grower had moved on. Herds of heavy work cattle and beef animals of eastern breed were familiar sights around remote mining settlements, army posts, and stage stations of the Far West even before the Union Pacific Railroad was completed in 1869. The Mormons had taken good dairy and beef stock with them into the Great Salt Lake basin. Many immigrant trains to California and Oregon had been accompanied by small herds of Devons and Shorthorns. And before that, when the Cherokee Indians had been forcibly moved in 1838 from Georgia to what is now Oklahoma, they had brought along numbers of cattle, descended from

## SKILFUL WORK WITH A ROPE AT A CALF ROUND-UP



The rider has just thrown a small loop so nifty and timed that it has one of the running calf's two hind legs. This act of heeling calves with so few in view that the roper keeps up with the herd as he brands is an accomplishment that even in the old days of the master cow punchers was a mark of distinction. The loop is rarely whirled in such work. It is thrown with a turn of the wrist and striking the calf on the neck as little as possible.

ranchmen and riders of the northern plains. This lore became a vivid and essential part of frontier life and has left its indelible stamp on American tradition.

## Branding Cattle on the Range

With thousands of cattle belonging to many different ranches wandering at will over unfenced ranges branding was a necessity. Each owner selected a letter or sign of some sort, and this brand was stamped with a hot iron on every animal belonging to him. Where the brand was seared in the hair never grew again. A cattleman's brand was his most cherished possession; no coat of arms was ever more jealously guarded by ancient noble. He burned it into the wood of his wagons, traced it on the leather of his saddle, had it inlaid in gold or silver into the stock of his rifle or the grip of his six-shooter, and printed it at the head of his stationery. In later days it was a matter of official record, and no one else in the same district was permitted to use the same mark. To alter a brand on horse or cow so that the animal might appear to belong to someone else was the gravest crime on the range.

Each year new born calves had of course to be branded before they left their mothers; otherwise none could tell to whom they belonged. This was the reason for the spring, or calf round-up. The ranchmen of each district cooperated in this task. With their cowboys they met at some appointed place. A round-up boss or foreman was selected whose duty it was to supervise the work and maintain discipline. Then the horsemen in twos or threes moved out over the range

with orders to drive in the cattle to the round-up ground. Sometimes this took several days, and it was always an exciting business. The cattle were wild, hard to manage, and often found in rough country where riding was difficult. As each batch of cattle came in, they were sometimes driven into corrals or great circles of wooden fence. But there were few corrals on the range, so usually the cattle were guarded or "held" as the cowboys called it. The riders appointed for that job circled the herd and drove back any that attempted to break away.

Then the job of branding began. Expert ropers rode into the herd and heeled the calves that is, caught them with a loop around their hind legs and dragged them out of the herd to the fires where the branding irons were heating. A pair of wrestlers seized each calf and threw it on its side, turning loose the rope while the roper called out the brand he had noted on the calf's mother. This mark was stamped on certain ear marks, might be cut which would help later to distinguish the animal when crowded too close in a herd for the brand to be visible, and then the calf was allowed to find its way back to its mother.

It was a lively scene, as those who saw it were not likely to forget. The calves kicked and bawled, sweating men struggled with some unusually large young animal while their companions offered mocking advice. Branders ran from the fire with irons that must be used quickly before they cooled, clouds of dust from the milling herd and the galloping riders mingled

with the blue smoke of smoldering cottonwood logs. "Tenderfeet," to whom the spectacle at first might have seemed unfeeling and cruel, would have been surprised to see how rapidly the calves recovered from their experience and began nuzzling grass or nursing their mothers. Neither the disposition of the cowboys nor the interests of the cattle owners encouraged brutality in any phase of range work.

#### The Question of "Mavericks"

Inevitably, some animals evaded the spring round-up and calves grew up and separated from their mothers without a brand to tell who owned them. These were the "mavericks." The name dates back to the days immediately following the Civil War. Texans returning from the front to their neglected herds found scattered over the ranges thousands of full-grown unbranded cattle. By custom they were the property of anyone who could catch and put his mark on them. In the ensuing rush with rope and iron, a man named John Maverick surpassed all others, so much so that Texans jokingly said that the absence of a brand was a sure sign of a Maverick animal.

The rule that allowed the first-come to brand a maverick enabled many a man to accumulate a herd who started, as the saying went, "with nothing but a branding iron." No one blamed such men; the custom was old, the range was large, and a few cattle more or less made small difference to the big ranchmen. But in later years when many small settlers moved into the "cow country," scattering over the range and particularly taking up homesteads near springs and water-holes where the cattle came to drink, most of the mavericks fell to them. The big ranchers protested; laws and regulations followed restricting the branding of mavericks to the period of general round-ups, when all unbranded animals were divided among the cattle owners of each region in proportion to the number of their cows.

This attempted reform at the expense of an old custom aroused rebellion. Many disregarded it, and among these were men who, suddenly finding themselves marked as lawbreakers for a practise previously sanctioned, grew resentful and became outlaws in earnest. They "made" mavericks by driving calves away from their mothers; they altered brands; they killed the steers of the big cattle companies, buried the skins, and sold the beef; in a word, they became out and out "rustlers." Yet such was the sympathy for them on the part of the majority of other small

settlers, so vague the dividing line between the rebel and the criminal, that court convictions were hard to obtain. The cattle "barons," as the owners of the large ranches came to be called, organized private protective associations, hired their own detectives and, in some cases, employed notorious "gun-fighters" to guard their interests. Out of all this arose some of the violent "range wars," such as the famous Johnson County War in Wyoming, where United States cavalry had to intervene to put an end to pitched battles between the opposing "armies" of the cattle barons and the settlers.

#### Life on the Cattle Trail

But such episodes were in the main exceptional. The ordinary life of the range provided in itself excitement enough to satisfy the most adventurous. Partic-

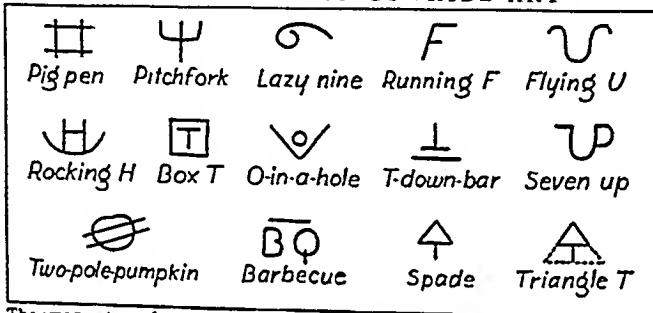
ularly was this true of the northward drives of the Texas cattle. Herds of longhorns, numbering from 2,000 to 5,000 head, were selected or "put up," as it was called. Every animal would, of course, have on its flank the brand of the owner, and in a single herd there would be as many different brands as there were owners.

But before they set out on their long dusty journey northward, another brand was added, called a "road brand," which would show that they all belonged to that particular herd which was going up the trail.

The first to leave the ranch or the round-up ground was the "chuck-wagon." This was a stoutly built canvas-topped wagon drawn by four horses, driven by the cook of the outfit. In the wagon were the food supplies, the cooking equipment, and the bedding. With the chuck-wagon went the "remuda," or "saddle band," made up of the extra horses that would be required, for each cowboy on the trail was assigned a string of four or more cow ponies. The "horse wrangler" was in charge of these horses—just the job for a young apprentice in the "cow business." Many a boy got his first taste of independence as wrangler for his father's outfit, and many a tenderfoot from the East broke into the admired company of "regular cow hands" in the same way.

Behind the chuck-wagon and the saddle band came the herd itself. Abreast of the leaders of the herd, on the "point," as it was called, rode the foreman or boss of the outfit, and across from him, on the other "point," his most experienced cowboy, the "top hand," or "segundo." As they turned in their saddles and looked back down the long line of cattle, they could see through the dust two other riders, one on

#### SOME SAMPLES OF COWHIDE ART



The imagination of western cowmen found picturesque expression in the design and names of their brands. The ones shown here are genuine registered brands, while the names given are those actually used by the men of the range. How ingenious rustlers altered the brands of cattle they stole is well illustrated by the last two figures in the lower right-hand corner.

## A TYPICAL RANCH SCENE IN NORTHERN WYOMING



Ranch work began before sunrise each day when the horse wrangler drove in the saddle horses so the punchers could catch the mounts they needed. Here we see the wrangler turn the bunch out to pasture again. Note how a cable and corral are built of out va logs.

each side of the herd. These were the swings. Behind them still further back were two more the flanks. Then bringing up the very rear were the remaining men the drags. These last had the most disagreeable job of all. They usually rode in a great cloud of dust raised by the thousands of hoofs ahead. In the drag were all the lazy, slow and lame cattle. It was tiresome business hazing these beasts forward so that they would not be separated from the rest.

When noon came the foreman on the point could see ahead of him the chuck wagon already on the spot decided upon before the start. The cattle were stopped and allowed to graze. The cook had the noon meal ready and his shout of "Come and get it!" was a welcome sound to the hungry cow boys.

After a rest of an hour or two the remuda was driven in usually to a rope corral stretched from the

wagon wheel. The riders roped and saddled fresh horses and the march was resumed. Toward sundown the herd was brought upon the bed ground selected for the night. The day's travel of 10 or 15 miles was over. As the herd came up it was allowed to spread out drink at a near by stream or water hole and then feed. After the men had eaten the first of those who had been selected to guard the herd through the night rode off to their posts leaving the campfire

where jokes and laughter and song killed lonesome.

Soon beds were unrolled and tired riders slept under the stars. Beyond in the darkness the herd rested quietly. Around them rode the lonely night guards working in four shifts of two hours each.

Often things were not so peaceful. These wild longhorns were easily stampeded. Sometimes it was a storm sometimes a wild animal sometimes hostile Indians.

## OH BURY ME NOT ON THE LONE PRAIRIE!



Many of the old cowboy songs are classics of American folk lore. They were invariably sung in plaintive falsetto. This flashlight photograph was made in a genuine cow camp and shows the rear of the grab wagon.

## AT THE END OF A ROUND-UP—COW PUNCHERS IN WORKING CLOTHES



The typical costume of the range rider is well illustrated in this photograph—high-heeled boots, spurs, and "chaps," the latter ornamented with silver-headed rivets and "conchos" (Spanish for "shells"). Observe the snug fit of the rider at the left in his saddle and the straight hang of his stirrups in contrast to the so-called English saddle "seat" of Eastern riders. The man at the right is handing over a "tally hook" on which he has made a record of the day's work. The record includes the number of cattle "cut out" in the course of the round-up, their ages, sex, and brands.

and sometimes just an unusual noise or smell, that started the stampede. Then there was trouble and danger for all. Thundering along wildly through the night, a herd might run for miles before quieting down. The whole outfit must turn out to help the night herders to head them off and round them up again. This was dangerous business, and called for nerve and reckless riding. If a cow pony stumbled, there was sure death for horse and rider beneath the thudding boofs of the maddened, night-blinded herd.

Finally, the long trail was behind, and the herd was turned loose on its new range, or loaded into cattle cars at some railway shipping point.

As time went on, and cattle from Texas were driven north in ever-increasing numbers, regular trails were used. There was the Chisholm Trail from San Antonio to Abilene, the Western Trail from central Texas to Ogallala, Neb., and still further west the Pecos Trail.

#### The Romantic Figure of the Cowboy

The little towns at the end of these trails became famous throughout the West. There were Abilene and Fort Dodge in Kansas, Sidney and Ogallala in

Nebraska, Pine Bluffs and Cheyenne in Wyoming, and away north, on the Montana ranges, Glendive and Miles City. In these cow-towns one could see the vivid and picturesque life of America's last frontier—Texas cowboys celebrating after the long drive; eastern stock buyers; cattle "kings," who counted their wealth in thousands of head; gamblers, freighters, buffalo hunters, and soldiers from near-by army posts.

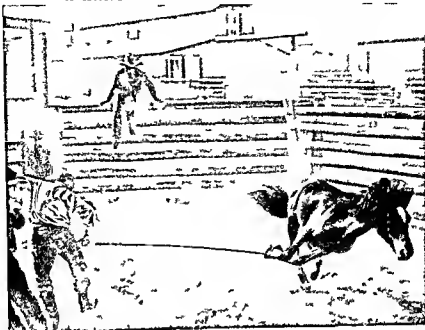
In all this interesting life of the western plains, the cowboy or "cow puncher," as he preferred to call himself, stood out as the most important figure. The man himself, the clothes he wore, and the horse he rode were all outgrowths of life on the range. The long days in the open, riding alone with the cattle, gave him self-reliance. The danger of stampeding cattle, of "bad" horses, of hostile Indians, of bitter winter blizzards, demanded nerve and courage. And finally, the whole business of driving, roping, and handling cattle required expert horsemanship.

#### The Making of a Cow-Horse

The most important possession of the cowboy, the necessary partner in every detail of his work, was

## A HARO SCHOOL FOR HORSE AND MAN

his horse. He was a tough wiry animal descended perhaps from the horses brought into the southwest by the Spaniards. He was horned out on the range and ran wild until he was two or three years old. Then he was run down and driven into the ranch corral. There his education began. He was first taught never to run on a rope by the effective method of roping and snubbing him to a post so that every time he tried to escape he would throw himself. Then he was taught to lead that is to follow at the pull of rope or rein instead of holding back.



Next he was saddled and allowed to wear himself out in the hopeless effort to throw the saddle off. And finally after a few days of such schooling a bitless bridle called a hackamore (from the Spanish *jaguma*) was slipped on his head. A blindfold passed over his eyes and the bronco buster got into the saddle. As soon as the blindfold was removed the bronco would usually rear up with sunfish swag ends and try out other varieties of bucking in his effort to get rid of his rider. To hold his job the bronco buster had to be able to stay with the majority of his mounts on this first ride for a horse that started out with the impression that it was easy to throw a man might turn into an outlaw useless for serious work.

Presently when the half broken horse learned to take a bit without hurting his mouth he was turned over to the cowboys for the finishing touches that would make him a good cow horse. He learned to obey neck reining—that is to turn at the pressure of the rein on his neck instead of at the pull on the bit as eastern horses did. He grew alert in following the twists and turns of running cattle and in bracing himself for the shock when his rider roped a steer.

## The Cowboy's Equipment

The cowboy's saddle was a heavy affair sometimes weighing 40 pounds or more. A broad cinch or

Above a wild colt is learning the folly of running on a rope. At the first the rider is trying to get the risk of his neck to prove to the horse the uselessness even of throwing himself to throw a man. As the horse falls back the rider will try to tumble clear so he can climb on the saddle again while the horse is getting up.



girth of woven cord went under the horse's belly. Sometimes particularly when heavy roping had to be done this was supplemented by a second or flank cinch. In front of the wide deep seat was a horn around which the cowboy took turns or dallies with his rope when pulling down a steer. The rider sat straight-legged, his feet in the heavy ox bow stirrups. Sometimes these stirrups were protected by heavy leather hoods or *tapaderas*.

## "STRETCHING" A YOUNG BULL FOR HIS OWN GOOD



When an animal is too big to be "wrestled" down and held still by hand, two ropers catch and stretch it out as shown in this photograph. It is here that a good "rope horse" shows his intelligence, for he must stand still and maintain a steady pull on the rope to prevent the animal from struggling. The man straddling the bull is vaccinating it against the disease called blackleg, which particularly afflicts young cattle.

The range rider's rope or "lariat" (from the Spanish *la reata*) was 20 to 40 feet of braided rawhide, horsehair, or plain hemp. Looped through a loose running knot, this rope was thrown over the heads of the cattle, or cast under their feet. A skilful cow-hand, mounted on a pony that knew his business, could bring a steer down on the dead run.

The cowboy's dress was suited to his job. He wore a woolen or cotton shirt and heavy woolen trousers. Around his neck a big handkerchief was tied to protect him from the sun, or to be pulled up around his mouth and nose when dust was thick. Pulled on over his trousers were his "chaps" (pronounced *shaps*, from the Spanish *chaparejos*). These were leggings of heavy leather for summer wear and of fur for the cold northern winters. They protected his legs from brush and cactus and frost. A high-crowned, broad-brimmed felt hat, the "sombbrero," shielded him from sun and rain. His soft-legged boots had high heels set far under the instep to hold his ankle clear of the heavy stirrup and to prevent his foot from slipping through it. Long-shanked spurs with large rowels jingled as

he rode. When occasion demanded, he carried a .45 caliber "six-shooter" in an open holster strapped to his hip by a cartridge belt.

#### The Cattle Boom—Then Trouble

Ten years after the first longhorns trailed north, the range cattle business was booming and the idea that the Great American Desert could not be used by white men had been proved false. The Indians had been pushed back into reservations; the great buffalo herds had been wiped out by hunters, and from Texas to Canada herds of cattle grazed, watched and handled by a comparatively small number of men.

There were at first big profits in the business. Great grazing grounds were open to everybody and all that was needed was a ranch house, corrals, cowboys, and—cattle. Every year thousands of longhorns came up over the trails and thousands of fattened cattle were sold at good prices. Long trains loaded with steers for market bumped along over the tracks of the Santa Fe, the Union Pacific, and the Northern Pacific. Easterners and foreigners with money to invest, hurried westward hoping to make their fortunes.

All this extension of the cattle business brought with it great dangers. By 1885 the plains everywhere were becoming crowded with herds and cattlemen were fighting among themselves for the range. Those who owned land along the streams and around the water-holes were able to keep others off their range, for cattle must get to water. When this method of controlling the range was not possible, fencing was tried, and soon lines of barbed-wire appeared.

Sheep from California and Oregon were driven in on the crowded ranges and bitter wars between sheepmen and cattlemen resulted. In the late 80's, the pioneer farmer began moving out on the range. Hardier varieties of wheat, dry-farming methods, and irrigation made agriculture possible where a few years before no one would have tried to settle. In Kansas and Nebraska farmers' fences blocked the old trails and grazing grounds became grain fields.

#### The End of the Trail

Neither the cattlemen themselves in their associations, nor the state, nor the Federal government, were able to solve the ensuing problems. The winter of 1885-86 was very severe in Kansas and Colorado and entire herds of cattle perished. The next year the Montana, Wyoming and Dakota ranges were lashed by blizzards, and when spring came around thousands of carcasses marked the end of the old range days.

There was only one way out for those who stayed in the business. Good pasture lands were bought and fenced. Alfalfa was planted and enough hay was put up to feed the weaker stock through the winter. Instead of the big herds of thousands of cattle the western rancher today has only a few hundred. Better breeds were introduced which would fatten quickly for market. The old longhorn followed the Indian and the buffalo into the land of things that had been.

In some sections the old methods of ranging cattle lingered on, and even today in scattered places in the West cattle still graze on the open range. There the cowboy can still be found. But he too, is passing, for a ranch hand who can dig ditches, build fences, run a mowing machine, and take care of a gasoline engine is far more useful than a cowboy. Younger men, who never knew the old range days have learned a little of the old time cowboy's skill. They perform today at "rodeos," as exhibitions of roping and "bronco busting" are called.

So attractive has this last frontier been to all Americans that, even after it was gone, ranchers who would take care of eastern tourists, give them horses to ride, and show them something of the ways of the "cow country," could make more money than in raising

cattle. These ranches are known as "dude ranches" for in the Old West an easterner was called a "dude." Thus passed the cow country, and the last great days of the West. But although it has gone, never to return, it lives on in the imagination of every American.

#### THE PASSING OF THE WESTERN RANGE



In this painting, Frank Hoffman, distinguished illustrator, has caught the note of sadness that marks the end of every great romance. The cowboy riding out in all his gay regalia meets an old cattleman who has already surrendered to the inevitable and turned farmer. For the first time he seems to realize that he and his work are doomed by fences and plowed fields.

**CAUCASUS MOUNTAINS** Between the Black Sea and the Caspian lies a wide neck of land called the Caucasus, or Caucasia. The Caucasus Mountains run across it from east to west and divide it into two parts. The northern Caucasus adjoins the Russian plain. The southern Caucasus, called Transcaucasus, borders on Turkey and Iran. It is divided from west to east into the Soviet republics of Georgia (capital Tiflis or Thilisi), Armenia (capital Erivan), and Azerbaidzhan (capital Baku).

The Caucasus Mountains are young, high, and rugged. Great areas lie above the snow line, and 1,400 glaciers have been counted. The main range slants from the northwest to the southeast. It is 685 miles long and 30 or more miles wide. About half way across it stands the extinct volcano Mount Elbrus, the loftiest peak in Europe (18,431 ft.). South of the main range stands the Lesser Caucasus Range. The two ranges are connected in their centers by the low Suram Mountains. In the north, the Kuma and the Terek rivers flow east to the Caspian Sea and the Kuban west to the Sea of Azov. In the south, the Kura flows past Tiflis to the Caspian Sea. The Araxes River forms part of the southern boundary.

A few high, difficult passes cross the mountains. The Georgian and Ossete military roads cross the middle of the range through the Mamison and Darel passes. A railway loops around the east end, squeezing through the narrow Gates of Derbent on the



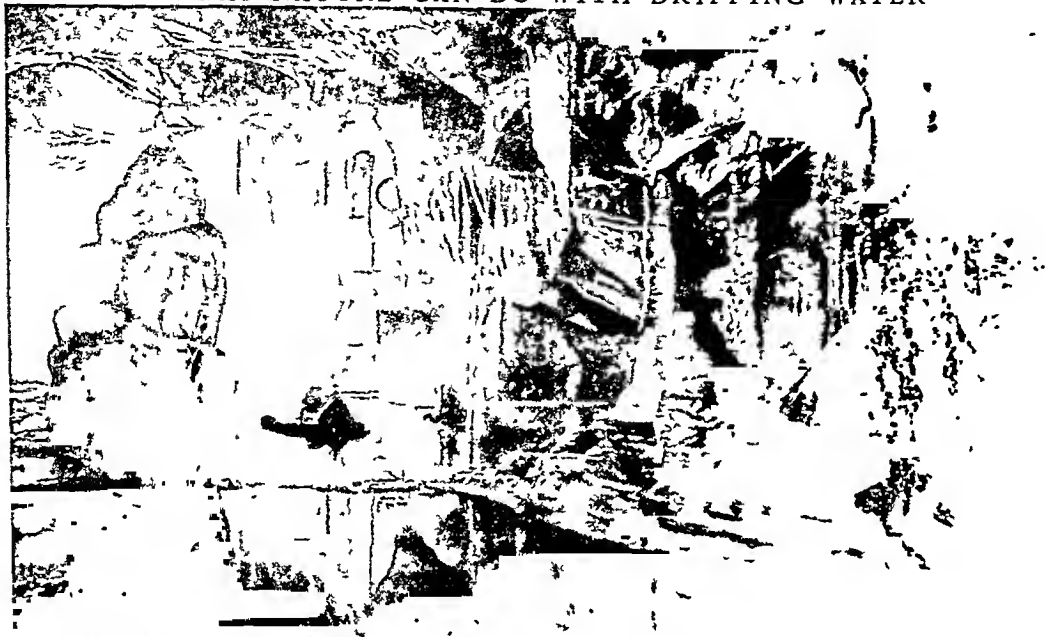
Caspian coast Two short railroads cross the western mountains to the Black Sea

The Caucasus covers an area no larger than Montana, yet it contains a wide variety of climates. In the north, dry land called a steppe stretches from the foot of the mountains. The mountains shelter the Black Sea coast from cold north winds, and the region has an almost tropical climate. Westerly winds bring rainfall of nearly one hundred inches a year. Here luxuriant forests cover the lower mountain slopes. But the lofty mountains keep rain from the hot Caspian coast and it receives less than ten inches a year

Many of them settled in the mountain fastnesses and long maintained their independence. The most warlike of all were the Georgians, in the Transcaucasus, and the Circassians, who lived on the north slopes of the mountains. In 1861, after 35 years of bitter fighting, Russia gained control of the entire Caucasus. Revolts broke out again after the Russian revolution (1917) and were put down by the Soviet government. During the second World War, Hitler made a desperate attempt to reach the rich Caucasian oil fields.

In 1795 a German ethnologist, Johann Blumenbach, coined the name Caucasian race for one of the five

### WHAT NATURE CAN DO WITH DRIPPING WATER



What a task it would be for a human architect to decorate a hall of such glittering beauty! Yet nature did it easily, using nothing but limestone and dripping water to hang those stalactites from the ceiling and to build up those stalagmites from the floor. This marvelous example of nature's handiwork is to be found in a cave near Cheddar, in Somersetshire, England.

According to Greek legend, Prometheus was chained to a rock in the Caucasus Mountains for daring to steal fire from heaven. The Argonauts sought the Golden Fleece in the fertile plain of Colchis, on the Black Sea. Today the Colchis (in Georgia) produces grapes, oranges and lemons, tobacco, tea, and tung oil. The nearby mountains supply Circassian walnut. Cotton is raised on irrigated lands in Armenia and Azerbaidzhan. Cattle are pastured in the mountains and on the northern steppes. Most of Russia's petroleum comes from the Apsheron Peninsula in Azerbaidzhan. The center of production is the great oil city, Baku. Oil is obtained also in the foothills around Maikop and Grozny. Rich manganese deposits are mined and some coal, copper, molybdenum, arsenic, and tungsten. (See also Armenia; Georgia; Russia.)

#### The Freedom-Loving Mountaineers

In prehistoric times various wandering tribes skirted the Caucasus in migrating from Asia to Europe.

great divisions of mankind. He believed that the mountaineers of the Caucasus were the most perfect type of the white race.

**CAVE.** Thousands of great caves, or caverns, lie beneath the surface of the earth. One of the largest is Mammoth Cave, in Kentucky. Its walls rise 120 feet in some places. The largest of its chambers covers one and one-half acres. Great stone pendants hang like icicles from the ceiling. Columns and cones rise from the floor. When properly lighted with electricity, these strange formations glow with color.

Mammoth Cave is a limestone cavern. Water hollowed out its many chambers. The water seeped through the topsoil, then through cracks in a layer of limestone. Below, it washed out clay deposits down to another limestone layer. The water continues to drip from the ceiling. It leaves particles of lime on the ceiling. In time, a "stalactite" is formed, hanging from the roof. The drops deposit more lime as they

## MARVELS OF NATURE'S UNDERGROUND ARCHITECTURE



The rich pointed d apery in the Throne Room of the Caverns of Luay Va upper left is a mass of ice fashioned by drops of water in Mammoth Cave, upper right, the underground Echo River leads a pool of water through ice rooms of light and shadow in the old entrance to Mammoth Cave stand the Ruins of Karnak (lower right) so called from the resemblance to the columns in the ancient temples in Egypt



splash on the floor and so a stalagmite is formed. Often stalactites and their stalagmites meet to form massive pillars and curtains of stone.

#### Two Famous National Parks

About 150 miles of passages have been explored in Mammoth Cave. Since 1936 it has been a national park. One of its curiosities is the pale sightless fish which have lost their coloring and their vision through living for generations in darkness.

Carlsbad Caverns in southeastern New Mexico are believed to be the largest in the world although they are still only partially explored. They were discovered in 1901 by Jim White, a cowboy whose curiosity was aroused by a nightly swarm of millions of bats pouring like a spiral column of smoke from the cavern mouth. This sight is still a spectacle that amazes Carlsbad visitors. In 1923 the area was made a national monument and in 1930 a national park. The tremendous size of the rooms and the beauty of the formations are unequalled (See National Parks).

Caves appear in the legends and superstitions of many peoples. The cave-palaces of the Hara Mountains in Germany are supposed to have sheltered the

Little Men and Frederick Barbarossa is said to await the end of his long sleep in a Thuringian cave (see Frederick I). Roman sibyls and nymphs lived in caves and in Greece caves were the temples of the gods and the seat of the Delphic and other famous oracles which attracted many visitors (see Delphi).

More interesting than the legends, however, is the fact that from the remotest periods of history animals and men have inhabited caves, and from the remains they left men of science have been enabled to read the early chapters in the history of human and animal life. (See Man.)

#### The Cave Dwellers of Today

Even today thousands of human beings live in caves in various parts of the Old World. In early times great numbers of tunnels and chambers were cut in the hillsides of England, Flanders, and France to serve as refuges for entire communities in time of invasion. Some of these are still so numerous as to form underground villages like the village of Troo, about 150 miles south of Paris, most of whose inhabitants still live wholly or in part underground. Some of these huge caverns in northern France were used as shelters for entire regiments during the first World War. Other such rock villages have been found in out-of-the-way places in Spain, Italy, Sicily, China, India, Egypt, and especially in Syria.

Caves always have been favorite haunts of smugglers, bandits, and other fugitives. They have even been used as tombs and places of worship. Many marvelous cave temples exist in India, and the rock-hewn tombs of Palestine and of Egypt, and the Catacombs of Rome probably owe their existence to the ancient practise of burial in hollows in rocks.

One of the grandest natural caverns is Fingal's Cave, on the island of Staffa on the west coast of Scotland, whose sides are formed of ranges of basaltic columns which are almost as regular as hewn stone. Among famous stalactitic caves are Madison's Cave, and Luray Cavern, in Virginia; Wyandotte Cave, in Indiana, and a number high above the sea in the Rock of Gibraltar, where remains of Neolithic cave dwellers have been found. Wind Cave in the Black Hills of South Dakota is noted for its size and beauty. In Iceland and Hawaii are many caves formed by the lava from volcanoes, and in France and Switzerland are huge ice caves. The Ozark region of Missouri is noted for its numerous caves, particularly Onondaga Cavern. The Cumberland Mountains in Tennessee contain some curious caverns, in one of which, at a depth of 400 feet, a river was found with a current sufficiently powerful to turn a mill. Another cave in the same state is named Big Bone Cave, from mastodon bones discovered there. Caves in northern California are also rich in animal remains.

Caves are principally formed in limestone and gypsum as the result of the solvent action of water. Lava caves appear to have been produced in many cases by the expansion of steam and gases. Sea waves sometimes hollow out caves in the cliffs along shores.

**CAVOUR** (*kā-vūr*), CAMILLO BENSO, COUNT DI (1810-1861). This shrewd practical Italian nobleman has been called the greatest statesman of the 19th

century. He did more than any other person to unite the scattered states of the Italian peninsula into a single kingdom. Mazzini inspired the Italians to demand liberty and unity; Garibaldi was their military hero, but Cavour—the skillful organizer, the realistic politician, the astute diplomat—made union a reality (see Garibaldi; Italy; Mazzini).

Count di Cavour was born at Turin, the capital of Sardinia-Piedmont, Aug. 10, 1810. He was educated for a military career and became an officer of engineers at the age of 16. But he developed liberal political ideas and resigned his commission five years later. He traveled in France and England studying political and social institutions. He also learned the latest agricultural methods, and he came to believe that political liberty for his country would be impossible without industrial prosperity.

When he returned to the family estates in north Italy, he managed them well enough to become wealthy. Meanwhile he directed his efforts toward improving Italian agriculture and building factories and railroads. He hoped that railways would tie the peninsula together. He founded the liberal newspaper *Il Risorgimento* at Turin in 1847.

At that time the small kingdoms in Italy were nearly all ruled by petty tyrants and dominated by Austria. Cavour believed that Austria could be expelled only if some Italian state became strong enough to do so and had backing from the great powers. When he became prime minister of Sardinia-Piedmont, he worked to make the nation into such a state. To gain the favor of Britain and France he sent troops to the Crimean War (see Crimea).

Shrewd diplomacy won him the friendship of Napoleon III of France and his pledge to aid Piedmont in case of war with Austria. In April 1859 the conflict began. After three months, when victory seemed assured, Napoleon suddenly signed an armistice. But the movement for union of Italy had gained too much momentum to be stopped. The next year Garibaldi, with Cavour's secret aid, conquered Naples. One state after another joined the cause, and in February 1861 the struggle was over. In March, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed king of Italy. Three months later Cavour died, worn out by his patriotic labors.

**CEDAR.** Even before the pyramids of Egypt were built, cedar was a highly prized wood. It is easily worked; it resists weather and insect pests, and the brownish color and aromatic smell are pleasing.

From those early times until now, true cedar has come from the tree called the cedar of Lebanon. This

A CEDAR OF LEBANON



This magnificent tree (*Cedrus libani*) grows on a mountainside in Syria. It is about 80 feet tall.

tree grows on the mountains of Syria to a height of 80 feet. Its thick, clumped branches often spread wider than its height. It belongs to the pine family, and like pines its needles grow in clusters, but it may have as many as 30 in a cluster. Related trees are the cedar, or "divine tree," of the Himalayas, the Atlantic cedar of North Africa, and the Cyprus cedar of Cyprus Island.

In the United States, many trees which have aromatic wood are called cedars, but most of them are cypress or juniper (see Juniper). The West Indian, Jamaica, or "cigar box" cedar belongs to the mahogany family. Cedarwood oil used in perfumes, paints, and varnishes and with oil-immersion lenses of microscopes, is obtained from the juniper called eastern red cedar. (See also individual cedars by name, as Incense cedar, in the FACT-INDEX.)

**CELEBES (Sulawesi)** The island of Celebes is one of the chief "crossroads" in the East Indies. It lies between Borneo, the Moluccas, the Philippines, and Java. Hence this Indonesian territory stands at a crossroads of sea traffic between these islands.

On it Asiatic plants and animals meet Australian types, since it is near the imaginary division (Wallace's Line) between the Asiatic and Australian regions. Geologists also consider the island a meeting place of geological forces. They believe that an old mass of hard rock stood here as an anchor when the surrounding region was wrinkled into chains of islands. This movement gave the island its odd shape, like four long arms twisting outward from a center around Mount Koruwa. Active volcanoes exist on the northern arm, Minahassa.

The southeastern slopes, which receive more than 100 inches of rain a year from monsoon winds, are covered with dense tropical forests. But some sheltered localities, such as Palu, receive only about 20 inches. Mean temperatures reach nearly 100° F at sea level, and fall to about 50° on the mountain heights.

Many lakes dot the valleys, but the rivers are mere tumbling mountain streams. The chief products are copra, coffee, gum copal, spices, rattan, and shells. Forest products include oak, teak, cedar, sandalwood, betel nut, cloves, and nutmeg. Gold, silver, petroleum, iron ore, and limestone are exported.

The natives are of mixed race and culture. The primitive Toala, who resemble Australian bushmen, live in the forest depths. The north side of Minahassa has the civilized Christian Minahassese, who are related to the Maoris of New Zealand.

Celebes, often called Sulawesi, has an area of 72 000 square miles. Population (1950 est.) 5 500 000. Largest cities are Makassar, the capital (400 000) and Manado (50 000). (See also East Indies, Indonesia.)

#### KEEPING CELERY STALKS WHITE



To blanch celery for early shipment growers place boards around the rows of plants

**CELERY.** In its wild state, celery is a tough, bitter marsh weed, found throughout northern Europe. But cultivation has changed this weed into an appetizing food. The first American crop was grown near Kalamazoo, Mich., about 1874.

Celery is grown from seed, on moist land, or with irrigation and fertilizer. Bitter flavor is avoided by keeping the plants from getting fully green. With some varieties this is done by growing the plants densely

in thick rows. Most celery is kept white, or blanched, by banking the stalks with earth or enclosing them in boards, papers, or tiles. Blanching requires from a few days to two weeks. Pascal celery is grown unblanched. Where spring frost occurs, early crops are planted in hot or cold frames. The young plants are later set out in fields. A crop matures in about four months. In warm regions seeds are planted in the open, and growth is slower.

Most seed is obtained from specially grown two-year-old plants. One ounce contains about 70 000 seeds and yields perhaps 10 000 grown plants. When ground and mixed with salt, the seed provides celery salt. California, Florida, New York, and Michigan produce about two-thirds of the American crop. Celery (*Apium graveolens*) belongs with parsley and carrots to the family Umbelliferae. One form, *celeriac*, is grown in Europe for its turniplike root.

**CELL.** Living things come in all shapes and sizes. Some towering trees have branches more than 300 feet above the forest floor. There are spiny crabs and graceful fishes. There are almost shapeless living things so small we cannot see them.

Yet in two ways all these things are alike. First, they contain the living, jellylike material called *protoplasm* (see Life). Second, this living jelly is put together in units called cells. Every living thing contains at least one cell. Many have millions or billions of cells, combined to make a body.

Cells are of all sizes. The yolk of an egg is a single huge cell. An ostrich egg contains a cell more than three inches across. The smallest cells are those of bacteria (see Bacteria). Each of these tiny plants is a single cell. Seven million of them would fit on the period at the end of this sentence.

#### One Celled Living Things

Bacteria are also the simplest cells in structure. Some of them are just little balls of protoplasm. The surface of the protoplasm is a thin, tough membrane. The protoplasm inside the membrane is called *cytoplasm*. Scattered through the cytoplasm are tiny grains, droplets of liquid, and bubbly particles. A bacterial cell covers itself with a clear, stiff cell wall, outside the membrane.

The simplest animal cells are those of tiny creatures called *amoebas* (see Amoeba). A whole amoeba is a speck of protoplasm forming a single cell. As with most animal cells, the amoeba's body has no cell wall. Its membrane is so soft that the cell can change shape easily and can "swallow" food simply by flowing around it. The cytoplasm within is bubbly, but the grainy material that is scattered through a bacterial cell is collected into a round or flattened nucleus. Clear droplets called *vacuoles* digest food and push waste material out through the membrane.

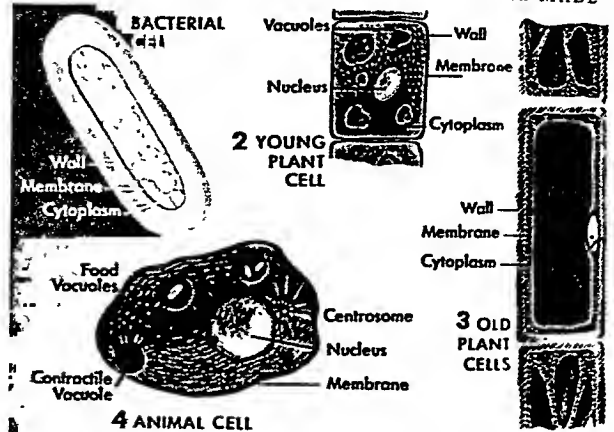
#### Cells in Large Plants and Animals

Many cells together make up the structure of a tree or the body of a dog. Most of them are so small that they must be magnified many times before they can be seen. These cells are different in some ways from those of single-celled plants and animals. A typical plant cell contains cytoplasm, a membrane, and a nucleus. The membrane is covered with a water-soaked cell wall of woody material called *cellulose* (see Cellulose). In a young plant this wall is thick, and the cytoplasm contains several vacuoles filled with *cell sap*, a clear watery fluid. As the cell grows old, its wall becomes thicker and the vacuoles join together. Often they form a single vacuole that fills most of the cell. The cytoplasm then becomes a thin layer between the vacuole or between the one big vacuole and the membrane. The nucleus lies in this layer, at one side of the cell.

Walls are not actual parts of cells since they consist of lifeless cellulose. But these cell walls give a plant stiffness, allowing it to grow large and tall. They also protect a plant from harm.

Animal cells never have cellulose walls, though they sometimes have flexible sheaths made largely of protein material. Thus they can change in size and shape and the whole animal can move about. Animals never grow as big as the largest plants, however, and most of them cannot stand such great changes of heat and moisture as plants can endure. Most ani-

#### HOW PLANT AND ANIMAL CELLS ARE MADE



A bacterial cell (1) is the simplest of all plants. More complex plant cells (2, 3) have a nucleus and vacuoles which expand as the cells grow old. A typical one-celled animal (4) digests food and expels wastes by means of vacuoles; the centrosome plays an important part in cell division.

mals need structures such as bones to support their bodies and shells or tough skin to protect them.

#### Simple and Specialized Cells

Even very simple cells, like those of bacteria, must be able to do several different things in order to live, grow, and reproduce. Some have special parts to carry on special functions. A few have "eye spots" that respond to light, and some have purplish grains that make food from lifeless material.

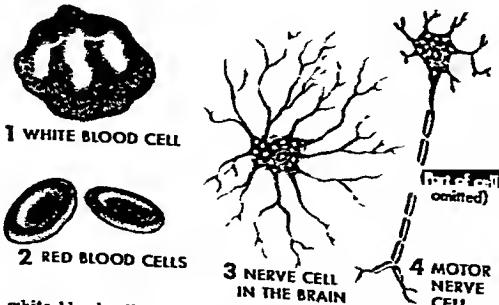
In many-celled plants and animals, however, many of the life functions are divided among different kinds of cells. In plants, some cells specialize in getting water from the ground while others build sturdy stems and still others form the cells that produce new plants. An animal such as a dog or cat has about fifty different kinds of cells. These form muscles, hair, eyes, teeth, and many other structures. None of these cells can live alone, but all of them together make up a living dog or cat.

A full-grown person probably has a million billion cells in his body. A drop of blood contains at least 5 million and a square inch of skin 6 million. The simplest of these are white blood cells; they are not very different from some types of amoebas. The most specialized are probably nerve cells. Such a cell has an irregular body containing the nucleus. Long, delicate branches run out from this. Nerve cells which reach the fingers and toes, for example, have branches three to six feet long (see Nerves).

#### How Cells Use Food and Water

Whatever its function, every cell has a membrane which holds it together. The membrane also links the cell with the outside world, for food and water to nourish and repair the cell must come through this film. It is very thin and is also *semipermeable*. This means that certain substances can pass through it but others cannot. A membrane lets useful substances into the cell while keeping out most of those that are useless or harmful. A cell gets rid of waste materials (*excretes* them) through the membrane.

#### VARIETY IN CELLS OF THE HUMAN BODY



A white blood cell (1) looks and behaves like an amoeba. Red blood cells (2) carry food and oxygen; they lack a nucleus. A brain cell (3) is delicately branched. A motor nerve cell (4) has a tremendously long extension to the muscle it controls.

Water is one of the most important materials that pass into a cell. All living things must have it for their protoplasm. It keeps membranes moist and makes the greater part of fluids such as sap, blood and lymph. The water in cell sap strengthens leaves and stems. Without enough water these droop and sometimes die.

Green plants make sugary food by combining water with the gas carbon dioxide. Hairlike cells on the roots absorb water by *osmosis* (see Liquid). The water goes up through hollow dead cells to the leaves. There other cells combine it with carbon dioxide from the air (see Plant Life). The sugary product is promptly dissolved in food sap. This passes through living cells and reaches every part of the plant.

Animals need ready-made food to keep their cells alive. Many-celled animals digest food in special organs and absorb it through cell membranes.

Living things use food in three ways. Part of it is turned into protoplasm to build up cells or to replace parts that are worn or damaged. Part is turned into nonliving structures such as cell walls, bones and scales. The rest is changed so as to release energy for the everyday work of living.

#### Energy from Food

Most plants and animals secure energy by combining food with oxygen. Plants absorb oxygen through cells of their leaves and stems. Some animals absorb it through their skins or gills.

In the human body oxygen is taken from air in the lungs. There it is combined with reddish yellow material in round flat cells of the blood. These cells, the *red corpuscles*, carry oxygen to every part of the body (see Blood). Living cells combine oxygen with food in a slow sort of burning called *oxidation*. This provides them with energy for growth, movement and other activities.

#### Cell Growth and Size

Cells grow in two ways: by using food and by storing it. Food that is used to make protoplasm builds up the living parts of the cell. Food stored in grains or droplets, however, merely makes the cell bigger. The huge egg cells of hens, ostriches and some reptiles consist of a small amount of living protoplasm and a great deal of stored-up food.

Though cells can grow rapidly, they do not keep on growing forever. The size of every cell has a natural limit. This is determined partly by the things it must do to live. Small cells, for instance, have a great deal of membrane in proportion to their size, but big ones have very little. Cells that live actively need a large membrane to absorb great quantities

of food, water and oxygen, and so the cells themselves remain small. Cells that merely remain alive need less membrane and they can become much larger. The difference is well shown by an egg whose cell is large before it begins to develop. As the cell turns to a chick, however, it forms active cells as small as those in human bodies. For similar reasons, a sluggish amoeba is several times larger than other one-celled creatures that swim about actively and prey upon creatures bigger than they are themselves.

#### How Full-Grown Cells Divide

When a healthy cell reaches full size it does not simply stop growing. It divides into new cells and when these are grown they divide again. In simple creatures such as bacteria, the cell merely pinches in two until the membrane completely surrounds each half. These become new cells—separate living things. This process is called *fission*.

Cells with nuclei divide by a more complex process called *mitosis*. In the nucleus are countless tiny grains containing genes, the particles that determine inherited characters such as size, shape and color. In mitosis these grains come together in a definite order and form a long thread. This breaks up into structures known as *chromosomes*. Each chromosome splits lengthwise, forming two new ones. These carry half of every gene that went into the old one.

Meanwhile another structure called the *centrosome* divides into two starlike *asters*. These go to opposite sides of the cell. Then a film around the nucleus disappears and fibers from each aster pull the chromosomes apart. Separate nuclei form around the chromosomes and finally the cell membrane pinches together to form two new cells.

Cells of some plants divide in this way. Others form fibers or spindles that pull the chromosomes apart. Cells which divide by *fission* probably have some comparable method

of splitting the genes. This process, however, has never been seen under a microscope by scientists. The article on Heredity tells how chromosomes and genes pass hereditary characters on from one generation to the next.

**CELLOPHANE** Thanks to the invention of cellophane, hundreds of products on the market today are put up in attractive transparent packages. These include items which soil easily, such as lamp shades, stockings, and light-colored sweaters; items which must be kept in moistureproof containers, such as cookies, potato chips and cigarettes; and items which housewives like to see before they buy, such as fruits

#### DIVISION BY MITOSIS



1. In mitosis, chromosomes form in the nucleus and the centrosome divides into starlike asters. 2. The chromosomes split and the asters pull the halves apart. 3. New nuclei form around the chromosomes and finally the whole cell divides.

vegetables, and meat. Both clear and colored varieties of cellophane are also widely used for fancy gift wrappings and to make such products as adhesive ("Scotch") tape and drinking straws.

Cellophane is a regenerated cellulose prepared from the organic substance called *viscose* (see Cellulose). The molasseslike viscose is extruded through a thin slit and solidified in an acid bath. The continuous ribbon of cellophane then travels through other baths which remove the acid and other processing chemicals. Finally, after passing through a glycerin solution which gives it flexibility, it is dried on hot rollers. Most cellophane is made moistureproof by passing it through a lacquer bath before drying. Colored cellophane is run through dye before the glycerin bath.

**CELLULOSE.** Nature makes use of cellulose as stiffening material in plants. Men make use of it in hundreds of ways and in thousands of articles. These range from wooden houses to gunpowder and from newspapers to automobile lacquer.

A great deal of cellulose is used in its unchanged, natural form. Cotton fibers are almost pure cellulose, and other vegetable fibers, such as flax and jute, are mostly cellulose. Therefore, cotton and linen fabrics, manila rope, coco matting, and a host of common products made from vegetable fibers are largely natural cellulose (see Fibers).

Cellulose is combined with the complex substance lignin in the stiff, woody parts of trees. Wood, of course, is used in its natural form, and great quantities go into the making of paper (see Paper; Wood).

Chemically, cellulose is a carbohydrate belonging to the group called *polysaccharides*. These compounds are related to the group containing table sugar (see Sugar). Cellulose has the formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ , indicating that it consists of an indefinite number of molecules linked in long chains, or *polymers*.

#### Creating New Substances from Cellulose

The cellulose chemical industries get most of their raw cellulose from paper mills. It comes in the form of thick sheets of dried pulp, pure white and fluffy. These are nearly pure cellulose, as the lignin, gums, and resin have been removed at the mill. Raw cellulose also comes as baled cotton linters from cotton mills. Linters are the short fibers that stick to the cotton seeds after ginning.

The chief task of the cellulose chemist is to change the fluffy, matted fibers of raw cellulose to a fluid form which can be spun, molded, or extruded as useful products. His task is complicated by the fact that cellulose does not dissolve in any known solvent. He therefore attacks it with chemicals that change it to soluble compounds which can be used in manufacturing processes. In certain processes, the final product is *regenerated cellulose*—cellulose that has been changed back to its original chemical form. In others, the final product is a chemical compound. The most important of these products are shown in the accompanying table.

Most regenerated cellulose is prepared by the *xanthate*, or *viscose*, process. Cellulose is first steeped

### SOME CELLULOSE PRODUCTS AND THEIR MANUFACTURE

#### REGENERATED CELLULOSE

**Cellulose xanthate.** Used in manufacture of viscose rayon; cellophane; sausage casings; sizing and waterproofing materials; cellulose sponges; bottle caps.

**Cuprammonium cellulose.** Used principally in manufacture of Bemberg rayon.

#### CELLULOSE ORGANIC ESTERS

**Cellulose acetate.** Used in manufacture of acetate rayon; plastics; safety photographic film; paints, lacquers, and varnishes; safety glass; filaments; material for sizing, finishing, and waterproofing fabrics.

**Mixed esters.** Cellulose acetate butyrate one of the most useful of these; employed as plastic molding compound and as airplane dope.

#### CELLULOSE NITRATES

**Pyroxylin** (cellulose nitrate containing 10.7 to 12.2 per cent nitrogen). Used in manufacture of Celluloid and other plastics; artificial fibers; photographic film; lacquers, paints, and resins; collodions.

**Guncotton** (cellulose nitrate containing 12.3 to 13.8 per cent nitrogen). Used in manufacture of smokeless powder; rocket and mortar propellant powders; blasting powder and other high explosives.

#### CELLULOSE ETHERS

**Methyl and ethyl cellulose.** Used in manufacture of plastics; sizing and finishing materials for textiles; collodions for medical purposes and other medicinal preparations; adhesives.

**Carboxymethyl cellulose.** Used in manufacture of plastics; waterproofing and sizing materials; drilling fluids; detergents; food preservatives; medicinal preparations.

#### OXIDIZED CELLULOSE

Used in manufacture of surgical gauze and hemostatic (blood-clotting) agents.

in sodium hydroxide, as in the mercerizing of cotton fabrics (see Mercerizing). The result is a substance called *alkali cellulose*, one of the fundamental materials of cellulose chemistry. It is further treated with carbon disulfide and yields a crumbly orange solid called *cellulose xanthate*. Dissolved in dilute sodium hydroxide, this becomes a sticky fluid called *viscose*. When viscose is run through dilute sulfuric acid, it solidifies as a clear, transparent substance that consists almost entirely of pure cellulose. Viscose products, such as rayon and cellophane, are made by this process (see Rayon; Cellophane).

In the *cuprammonium* process the cellulose is changed to a new compound by an ammonia-copper hydroxide solution. This cuprammonium cellulose is spun as Bemberg rayon yarn in an acid bath.

In other processes the final cellulose product is a compound. The principal compounds are esters, nitrates, ethers, and oxides. *Cellulose acetate*, the most important ester, is prepared by steeping cellulose in acetic acid and acetic anhydride. For spinning and other manufacturing techniques, it is dissolved in acetone. The mixed ester *cellulose acetate*

## MINIATURE GREENHOUSES OF CELLULOSE PLASTIC



Nurserymen and home gardeners use these clear plastic plant covers to protect young plants from wind and late frosts. They are made of cellulose acetate butyrate.

butyrate is similarly prepared but a mixture of acetic and butyric acids is used.

Cellulose nitrate or nitrocellulose is prepared by steeping cotton linters in nitric acid or a mixture of nitric and sulfuric acids. Nitrocellulose with a low nitrate content is called *pyroxylin*. It is a brittle solid and is treated with camphor to make Celluloid. For the manufacture of collodion and certain lacquers pyroxylin is dissolved in organic solvents (see Collodion Lacquer). Highly nitrated nitrocellulose is known as *gun cotton*. This is a basic material in the manufacture of many explosives (see Explosives).

The cellulose ethers are less subject to attack by acids and alkalis than the esters. They find a wide variety of uses. They are prepared by treating alkali cellulose with an alkyl chloride or alkyl sulfate.

Hundreds of cellulose compounds exist besides those already mentioned. Oxidized cellulose used in various ways by the medical profession is perhaps the most important of these. Many others find limited use in agriculture and industry. Still other cellulose products are known but have no commercial use as yet. So varied are the forms and compounds of cellulose that the chemistry of cellulose comprises a large and distinct branch of organic chemistry.

**CELTS** (*celts* or *kelts*). Among the peoples who inhabited Europe in very ancient times were the warlike Celts. These muscular red-haired wanderers had probably come from the distant steppes beyond the Caspian Sea. By 500 B.C. they were living in northeastern France, southwest Germany and Bohemia. The Celts, who were also called Gauls, continued to migrate in all directions.

About 400 B.C. Celtic tribes crossed the Swiss Alps into northern Italy. After capturing the fertile Po Valley region they laid siege to Rome (see Roman History). At the same time other groups of Celts pushed down into France and Spain eastward to Asia Minor and westward to the British Isles. To what is now France they gave the ancient name

of Gaul. In A.D. 43 they founded the kingdom of Galatia. St. Paul's Epistle to the Galatians in the New Testament is addressed to the descendants of these Celts. In Britain Celtic warriors overran and conquered the islands (see English History).

## Celtic Life and Religion

The Celts ruled through a loose tribal organization. Each tribe had a chief, nobles, freemen and slaves. The tribal home was usually a fortified village with fields and pastures outside. Many of these forts were built on hilltops. Often the tribes warred against each other and when one tribe overpowered several others its chief held the rank of king.

The Celts brought many new skills to the peoples they conquered. They knew how to smelt iron and forge it into useful implements. They decorated their helmets, shields and arms with artistic metal work and enameling. The Celts were also adept in such practical matters as curing hams, keeping bees and making wooden barrels.

Celtic priests were called *Druids* and their religion *Druidism*. Little is known of the Druids because their rites were never written down. Apparently their gods were similar to those of other early peoples. The Druids of Gaul were both judges and priests who sacrificed criminals to their gods. The Druids of Britain were chiefly religious teachers.

Only men of good family could become Druids. Membership was highly prized because Druids did not have to fight or pay taxes. The Druids taught that the soul was immortal, passing after death from one person to another. They deemed the mistletoe sacred, especially if grown on an oak tree. The oak was also sacred and Druids often held their rites in an oak forest. Writ in the lore of plants, animals and stars, the Druids were also magicians and astrologers. Many ancient stone monuments were once thought to have been built by Druids, but scientists now date them from pre-Celtic times (see Stone Age).

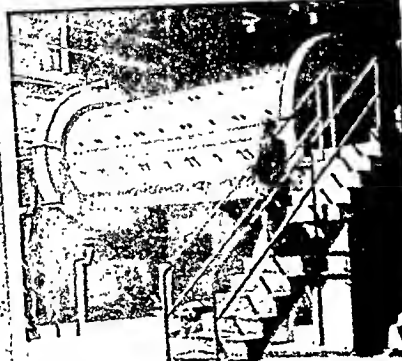
The Celtic domination of western Europe lasted only a few centuries. In the time the Romans made Italy, Gaul and much of Britain into Roman provinces. The Carthaginians overpowered the Celts in Spain and German tribes drove the Celts out of the Rhine Valley. Following the Roman conquest the Anglo-Saxon invasion wiped out most traces of Celtic culture in England. Only on the fringe of Europe did the Celts manage to keep their distinctive traits and languages—in Brittany, the Isle of Man, Wales, Ireland and the Scottish Highlands. There traces of Celtic culture still survive in folklore and in the Breton, Manx, Welsh, Erse and Gaelic languages.

The name Celtic Renaissance was given to a revival of interest in Celtic languages, literatures and history which began in the late 1800s. The revival was especially strong in Ireland, where it led to the writing of plays with Irish Celtic themes. This new interest in the past even helped the Irish struggle for independence. The Irish language (Erse or Irish Gaelic) is now an official language of Ireland (See also Ireland, Irish Literature).



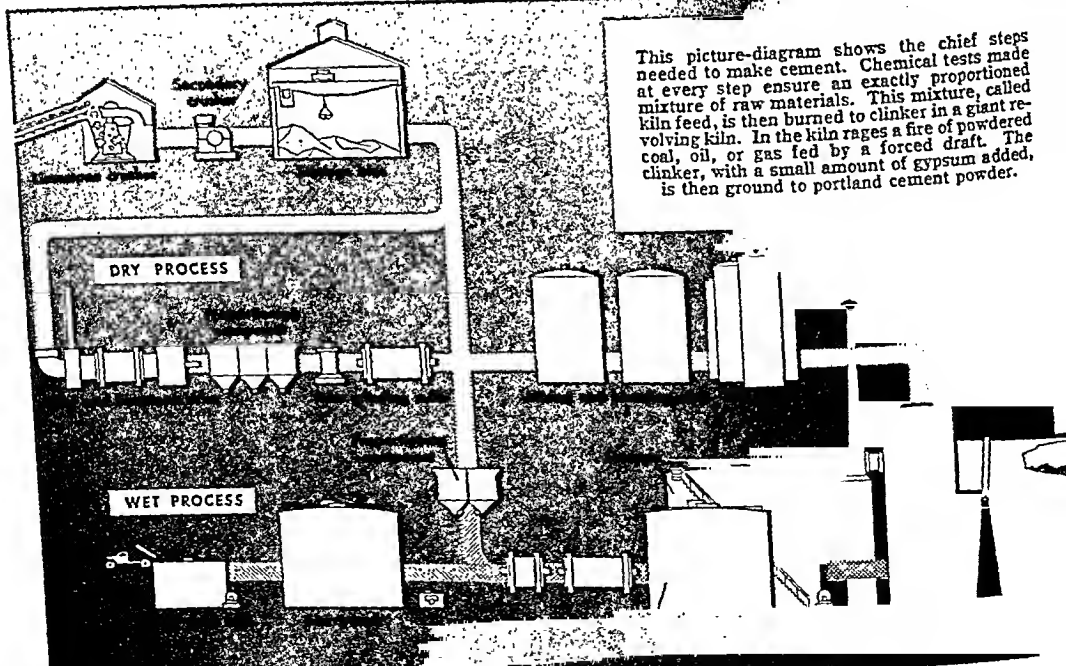
# A CEMENT PLANT AND HOW IT WORKS

A modern cement plant needs huge machines to make big rocks and clay into a powder as fine as flour. The huge tube that extends from one building to another is a kiln. It revolves slowly; through it roars a fire hot enough to melt iron.



The machine at the left breaks rocks as big as a piano into six-inch pieces. It is called a *gyratory crusher*. In the center is a *ball mill*. The steel balls in the mill do the grinding. As the mill revolves the balls are carried upward and

dropped onto the materials to crush them. Usually materials are ground first to a coarse powder in one mill and then to a fine powder in a second. At the right is the inside of a ball mill. The pounding gradually reduces the size of the balls.



This picture-diagram shows the chief steps needed to make cement. Chemical tests made at every step ensure an exactly proportioned mixture of raw materials. This mixture, called *kiln feed*, is then burned to clinker in a giant revolving kiln. In the kiln rages a fire of powdered coal, oil, or gas fed by a forced draft. The clinker, with a small amount of gypsum added, is then ground to portland cement powder.

## The POWDER That Makes ARTIFICIAL STONE

**C**EMENT Glues pastes and some plastics used to stick things together are all properly called cements. Most are termed adhesives or the word cement is joined with a descriptive word as in the term rubber cement. When the word cement is used alone generally *portland cement* is meant. Portland cement when combined with water forms a paste which binds sand, gravel and stone into a rock like mass called *concrete*.

Because concrete has so many valuable uses, portland cement has been called a magic powder. With it engineers build strong foundations and great buildings and bridges lay highways and sidewalks, line tunnels and make posts, slung sewer and water pipes and many other useful things (see *Concrete*).

### What Is Portland Cement?

Portland cement powder is a chemical mixture of calcium, silica, iron and aluminum minerals. Portland cement and water *hydrate* or react chemically to form cementing compounds of the water, calcium, silica, iron and aluminum. Hydration produces some heat.

The natural or raw materials from which portland cement is made are spoken of as *calcareous* and *argillaceous* materials. Calcareous materials are calcium compounds, usually calcium carbonate or calcite. Limestone is the calcareous material most used to make cement. Argillaceous materials are compounds of silica. Clay is the argillaceous material most used. Chalk or marl are sometimes used in place of limestone (see *Chalk*, *Limestone*) and shale or slate in place of clay (see *Clay*, *Slate*). Blast furnace slags contain both calcareous and argillaceous materials and are also used to make cement. (See also

*Aluminum*, *Calcium Chemistry*, *Iron and Steel*, *Silicon*.)

To make portland cement, calcareous and argillaceous materials are broken up, mixed in proper proportions, ground, burned and reground with a small amount of *gypsum* (called a retarder because it slows the hardening of cement). Portland cement powder is so finely ground that it can sift through a screen that has 40,000 holes to the square inch.

### The Kinds of Portland Cement

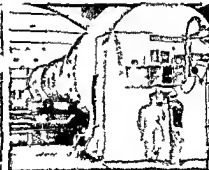
Five types of portland cement are made. Type I is used in general concrete construction. The concrete gains considerable strength in 7 days and great strength in about 28 days; it continues to gain some strength for years. Type II resists moderate exposures to sulfate-bearing waters. Type III, also called a high early strength cement, becomes strong enough for use soon after it is placed. Type IV generates only a small amount of heat in hydrating and is used to form great masses of concrete as in dams. Type V has a very high resistance to sulfate-bearing waters.

From these five types various special cements are made. *Air-entraining* cement contains soaplike resinous or fatty materials. In concrete these materials form billions of microscopic air bubbles per cubic foot. These relieve internal pressures by providing room for the expansion of water when it freezes. Air-entrained concrete also has a high resistance to surface scaling caused by the corrosive action of salts used to melt snow and ice. Many states insist on air-entrained concrete roads.

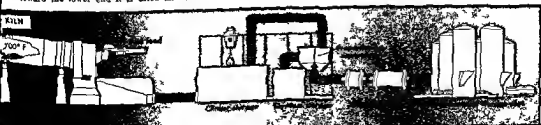
White cement is used on concrete to make guide lines on highways and streets, for light-reflecting floors



Cement kilns revolve slowly. Some are as much as 500 feet long. Kiln feed is dumped in the upper end. As it travels toward the lower end it is dried and burned to clinker.



The torrent of flame sweeping the lower end raises the temperature to 2700° F. A specially tinted viewplate permits the kiln man to see clearly into the blazing inferno.



## FROM CLINKER TO BAGGED CEMENT



From a conveyor belt an inspector lifts a handful of cooled clinker. The conveyor will carry the clinker to storage bins, from which it will be taken for grinding.

Much cement is sold in strong paper bags. Bag-filling machines automatically stop the flow of portland cement powder when 94 pounds have been poured into a bag.

and walls in industrial plants, and for building decoration. By adding color pigments before final grinding, cements can be made almost any color. Cement powder is used as a filler in some paints, and a paint for use on concrete is also made of cement powder.

#### How Portland Cement Is Made

There are both wet and dry processes for making cement. The principal difference is that in the wet process water is added to the raw materials as they are ground, while in the dry process the materials are ground dry. In the United States more than half and in Europe almost all portland cement is produced by the wet process.

The limestone is broken first into six-inch and smaller sizes in giant crushers. These chunks are next reduced to one inch or smaller in small crushers or hammer mills.

The raw materials (crushed lime and clay, as well as such crushed iron ore and silica sand as is needed) are then brought together in the right proportions. This mixture is ground finely in two stages, usually in rotating steel drums, called *mills*, partly filled with steel balls. The rotating drums carry the balls upward and drop them onto the materials to crush them. In the dry process the materials are dried either before or during grinding.

The ground materials are stored in a silo. By blending the raw materials from several silos the exact chemical composition needed is made. The blended raw materials are called *kiln feed*.

If clay is the argillaceous material used in the wet process, it is mixed with enough water to make a soupy *slurry*. Crushed limestone, other needed materials, and water are added and the slurry passed through grinding mills. The slurry is stored in great tanks, where it is kept well mixed by agitators. By blending slurries from several tanks, the exact chemical composition needed is made and called *kiln feed*.

#### The Kiln

Cement kilns are monster tubes, some as long as 500 feet and as much as 13 feet in diameter. They revolve from 20 to 80 times an hour. The kilns are mounted

at a slight slant, about a half inch per foot. The inside is lined with refractory (fire resistant) brick. Flames, fed by powdered coal, oil, or gas, roar in the lower end, heating 30 feet or more of the kiln to 2,700°F. or higher. A stack at the upper end carries off smoke and gases.

Kiln feed enters the higher end of the tube. The feed is completely dried by the heat as the revolving kiln slowly moves it down the tube toward the flames. In the hottest part of the kiln, about 25 per cent of the feed melts. The liquid mixes with solid feed and forms cement *clinkers* (in the industry collectively called "clinker") about the size of marbles. The kiln discharges the clinker, usually into air coolers.

The clinker, with a small amount of gypsum, is then ground into cement powder by mills much like those used for grinding the raw materials. Cement powder is stored in great silos to await packing and shipping.

#### How Cement Is Shipped

Cement is shipped either in multilayered paper bags or in bulk. A bag of cement weighs 94 pounds. In the early days the industry shipped cement in barrels that held 376 pounds, equal to four bags. Although little cement is now shipped in barrels, the industry has retained barrel-quantity as the unit for measuring production and sales.

Empty paper bags come to the cement plant sealed at the top. A bag is filled through a valve at its bottom. The valve closes when the filled bag is upended. Bulk cement is pumped through pipes into sealed ships, barges, trucks, or freight cars for shipment.

#### The History of Construction Cement

Primitive men used clay as a cement to stop up holes in their sapling huts. The Assyrians and Babylonians had no better cement than this for their stone buildings. The Egyptians made a mortar of partially burned gypsum. The stones of the Pyramids were cemented in place with this. The Greeks used little mortar, preferring to shape stones for their great buildings so that when placed they were fastened there by interlocking joints.

The Romans made a cement of slaked lime and volcanic ash. This is called *pozzuolana* after Pozzuoli, a town near Mount Vesuvius. Unlike mortar *pozzuolana* is a *hydraulic cement* which means it will harden under water. The Romans used it in foundations, aqueducts and many buildings, some of which still stand.

Knowledge of how to make hydraulic cement was lost during the Middle Ages. Lime mortar however was used in all parts of Europe. Hydraulic cement was rediscovered in the 1750's by John Smeaton, an English engineer. He had been commissioned to rebuild Eddystone lighthouse which was subjected to wind and wave off the Cornwall coast. Smeaton made a hydraulic cement of a limestone that contained considerable clay. Today such a limestone is called *cement rock* and the cement made of it *natural cement*. Cement rock is also used to make portland cement.

Others began to experiment with cement rock. Because the deposits varied widely in the amounts of calcium, iron, silica and aluminum they contained, the natural cements varied widely in quality.

#### The Discovery of Portland Cement

Joseph Aspdin, a bricklayer of Leeds, England, discovered and named portland cement in 1824. He called it portland because concrete made from his cement looked like stone quarried on the Isle of Portland.

For his experiments Aspdin took limestone road surfacing which had been powdered under the wheels of heavy carts. He added varying amounts of clay to the powdered limestone until he found the proportions that when burned could be ground into a uniformly strong

cement. Aspdin's contribution to cementmaking was the exact proportioning of raw materials.

Other European countries began to make portland cement. In the United States large deposits of cement rock furnished fair quality natural cements for building the Erie Canal and other projects. By 1890 the United States was producing about 10 million barrels of natural cement a year. The United States imported its first European portland cement in 1868. American manufacture of portland cement began in the 1870's.

Early cement kilns were upright. In these layers of fuel and bricks formed of pulverized limestone and clay were burned. Heat varied from one part of a furnace to another and as a consequence the portland cement varied in quality. The uniform quality of European portland cement was highly valued and increasing amounts of it were imported.

Frederick Ransome, an Englishman, patented a rotary kiln in 1835, the forerunner of the huge modern kilns. Because it operated continuously and produced clinker of uniform burning, the rotary kiln met with quick acceptance.

By 1900 the United States production of portland cement passed the production of natural cements, more than 8 million barrels of each being made in that year. By 1915 natural cement production had dwindled to fewer than one mill on barrels, while portland cement production had increased to almost 86 million barrels. Now the yearly production of portland cement in the United States is about 245 million barrels, more than one third of the world's product. On Canada makes more than 16 million barrels a year.

## The CENSUS—COUNTING America's MILLIONS

**CENSUS.** Since early times governments have taken official counts of the people in their country. Ancient Rome gave us the word census, which is Latin for estimating or assessing. But the United States was the first modern nation to adopt a legal or constitutional provision for taking a census at regular intervals. In 1789 the Constitution (Article I, Section 2) provided that an enumeration (counting) should be taken every ten years. The founding fathers adopted this provision for a practical reason. The number of delegates which any state had in the House of Representatives was based on its population. Thus changes in population had to be recorded to keep the proportion accurate. Beginning in 1790 the federal government has taken such a census every ten years.

#### Many Uses of the Census of Population

The census of population is still the basis for apportioning the 435 seats in the House of Representatives among the states (see Congress of the United States). But today this is only one of the many valuable services contributed by this census. Census takers now ask many questions concerning important aspects of American life. The answers to these questions provide material for measuring many of the changes that have taken place in the nation during the preceding ten years.

To businessmen the census reveals new markets in areas where population is increasing rapidly. To workers it shows where new job opportunities are developing. Lawmakers find it a guide to many legislative needs of the people. (For a statistical study of the population called *demography* in the United States see *Population*, see also *United States section*.)

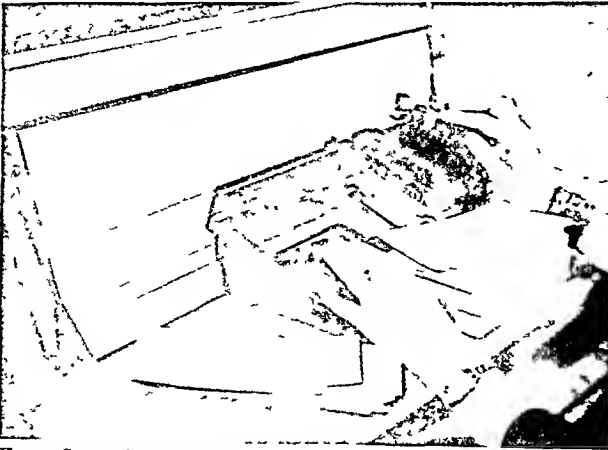
#### The American People and Their Achievements

##### What the 1950 Census Covered

The last decennial (ten year) census of population was taken in 1950. This census reported seven facts about every person in the nation—name, relationship to head of family, race, sex, age, marital status and place of birth. All persons aged 14 or over were asked about their employment and occupation. Foreign born persons were asked about their citizenship status. The census also listed where each person lived.

Every fifth person was asked an additional series of questions—where he lived the previous year (to show migration by states and changes in farm and city populations), in what country his parents were born and the extent of his schooling. Census takers asked every fifth person aged 14 or over additional questions about his job. Every 30th person who was unemployed listed his last occupation.

## PUNCHING HOLES IN CENSUS CARDS



Here a Census Bureau worker reads the report on one person. To record this information she then uses a machine which punches a series of holes in a card. Such a card is shown in the picture below.

One family out of every five was asked to tell the sources of its income. Every fifth male was asked about his military service. And every 30th person who had been married described his marital status. Women in this group were asked the number of children they had borne.

Every person is required to supply answers to census questions. An individual convicted of refusing to answer is liable to a fine and jail sentence. All replies, however, are confidential and cannot be used for purposes of taxation, investigation, or regulation. Moreover, census takers are liable to a

fine and jail sentence if they disclose any data regarding individuals.

### How Answers Are Gathered and Compiled

The immense body of census information is collected by a great army of workers. For the 1950 census the government hired some 140,000 special census takers. They covered not only all the continental United States but the nation's territories and possessions as well. They plodded from door to door in every city town, and county in the United States. Some of them used native boats and primitive canoes in the tropical islands of Puerto Rico, Hawaii, and the Virgin Islands. Others used Eskimo dog trains in the severe cold of Alaska.

Once the answers are gathered from individuals, the data are assembled in the Bureau of the Census in Washington, D. C., a division of the Department of Commerce. There the information is recorded on millions of cards—one for every person in the United States.

and its territories and possessions. This stupendous task is performed by electrically operated machines, which seem almost human. One machine punches holes in cards, reording by the position of the holes all the information about the person to whom the card is devoted. Another sorts the cards by sex, age, occupation, or any other item in the schedule. Then the tabulating machine gives the totals. Mistakes are rare, for, if an insufficiently punched card is put in the machine stops until the card is removed. This machine, it is estimated, saves nine tenths of the time and two thirds of the cost of handwork, in addi-

THIS CARD STANDS FOR ONE PERSON IN THE 1950 CENSUS

[illegible]

If all the statistical tables for a modern census report had to be compiled by hand the work would take many years. But electrical tabulating machines, working with punched cards, complete the job in a matter of months. There is one card for each man, woman, and child in the United States. The positions of the 66 punched holes in this card show all the facts gathered about one person. The holes in the first 15 columns, for example, locate the person in a definite geographic area and describe the type of community. By means of the holes machines automatically sort the cards into groups and register totals on a tabulating sheet.

tion to being more accurate. The final reports are published in many volumes illustrated with maps and charts vastly different from the slender book of 56 pages covering the first census in 1790.

In 1900 the Bureau of the Census reclassified certain population groups. It counted as 'urban' for the first time people who lived in unincorporated places having 2,500 or more inhabitants. It also listed persons living in certain suburban areas as part of the urban population. These were places with at least 2,000 inhabitants for each square mile on the fringes of cities of 50,000 or more. These groups were formerly classified as 'rural nonfarm'.

#### Other Census Bureau Activities

In addition to the ten-year (decennial) census of population the Bureau of the Census conducts supplementary censuses. Although these are scheduled for definite years Congress must authorize special funds in each case. The following are the most important.

**Census of Housing.** The first census of housing was taken in 1940. In 1949 Congress authorized a census of housing to be taken every ten years along with the census of population.

The 1950 census of housing reported 12 facts about every dwelling unit. These

included its condition, occupancy and type of sanitary and water facilities. Other questions were asked for every fifth dwelling unit. Such items included the age of the house and its type of heating equipment.

**Census of Agriculture.** The first national census of agriculture was taken in 1840. Since 1920 it has been taken every fifth year. This census reports on the inventory of farms for the year the census is taken (years ending in the figures 5 and 0). It computes production figures from the previous year (the years ending in 4 and 9). In 1950 a census of agriculture was taken by more than 65 nations under the guidance of the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) of the United Nations.

**Census of Irrigation and Drainage.** The first survey of this type was made in 1890. This census was taken in conjunction with the census of agriculture in 1910 and 1920. Since that time it has been taken along with alternate censuses of agriculture (in years ending in 0). It reports the number of irrigation enterprises and the total acres irrigated in the 17 westernmost states and in Arkansas, Florida, and Louisiana.

**Census of Manufactures.** Censuses of this type have been taken periodically since the first one in 1899. None was taken, however, between 1939 and 1947 because of World War II. Present legislation provides for such a census to be taken covering the years ending in 3 and 8.

Manufacturers are required by law to report to the Bureau of the Census. The Bureau, however, cannot publish statistics that disclose information reported by individual companies. If a company is the

only one in its industry in a state, figures for the company will be omitted from the information for the state. They will be included in returns for regions or other units that are large enough to prevent identification of the company.

The 1947 census of manufacturers covered all manufacturing plants which employed one or more persons during the census year (This excluded small sawmills).

This census compiles statistics for industries on employment, payrolls, value added by manufacture, value of shipments, cost of materials, expenditures and products manufactured. It also publishes statistics for each state and comparative figures for industries and geographic areas.

Value added by manufacture provides the best measure of the relative economic importance of manufacturing in different industries and different areas. This figure gives only the value created in the manufacturing process. It is calculated by subtracting from the total value of shipments the cost of materials, supplies, containers, fuel and contract work.

Another method of comparison is provided by "value of products shipped." This figure, however, includes duplication of values since some products pass through more than one stage of manufacture. For example, the value of products shipped from a bakery also includes the value added to the grain by previous processing in a flour mill.

**Census of Business.** A census of business was taken covering the years 1929, 1933, 1935, 1939 and 1948. Congress has scheduled a census of business for the years ending in 3 and 8. Such a census covers chiefly retail and wholesale trade, service establishments, places of amusement, hotels and construction firms. It also gathers statistics on sales, employment, payrolls and inventories.

#### POPULATION FIGURES IN COMPTON'S PICTURED ENCYCLOPEDIA

Population figures for the United States. This edition of Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia contains final population figures from the latest census (taken in 1950) for all places in the United States and its possessions. These figures are indicated by the term (1950 census). Such population figures can be found in articles on the United States, the various states and cities and in the Fact-Index. They can also be found on the back of all state maps in color. Population characteristics are also true for the 1950 census. Such characteristics may be found in the articles on the United States, the various states, immigration and other subjects.

Since 1950 some cities have had a special census. In the articles on such cities the results of both the regular and the special census are given.

Population figures for foreign nations. This edition gives the latest census figures for all nations that take a census. If the census was taken before the end of the second World War, a postwar official estimate is added. Some of the estimates, however, were for national populations only. In these cases late estimates for provinces and cities were not available. In some countries no census has ever been taken, but the best postwar official estimates available were used. In all cases the source and date of the population are indicated.

*Census of Mineral Industries.* The first separate census of mineral industries was taken in 1840. It was taken in 1940, and present legislation calls for a report on mineral industries to cover the years ending in 3 and 8.

*Census of Governments.* The first census of governments was taken in 1850, but the present methods of approach were not used until 1942. Present legislation requires this census to be taken every five years in years ending in the figures 2 and 7.

The census of governments covers more than 150,000 state and local governments. It reports on public finance (revenues, expenditures, and debts) and public-service enterprises. It also shows the number of government employees and the amount of payrolls.

*Census of Religious Bodies.* The first separate census of religious bodies was taken in 1906. It was taken in years ending in 6 through 1936.

*Reports on Foreign Trade.* The Bureau of the Census issues weekly, monthly, and annual reports on imports and exports. It also lists the vessels entering and clearing United States harbors, the amount and kind of commodities shipped, and the extent of trade with each foreign country.

The Census Bureau also conducts current surveys on population and other subjects by "sampling"—questioning a cross section of the people. The Bureau then makes estimates for the entire nation based upon this sampling. Such a procedure is followed in the Bureau's report on the nation's labor force. This shows the month-by-month volume of employment and unemployment based upon a survey of 25,000 households in various geographic regions. The Bureau also issues many special reports for other government agencies.

#### History of the Census

As far back as Babylonian times a census of agriculture was taken. Ancient China counted its people to determine the revenues and the military strength of the different provinces. Rome regularly took a census of people and of property. This was used to establish the political status of citizens and to assess their military and tax obligations to the state. In the Middle Ages attempts to take a census were rare. The most famous was the census of England taken by order of William the Conqueror and recorded in 1086 in the Domesday Book.

The census in its modern form was closely associated with the rise of democracy, since a periodic count of the population was essential to truly representative government. On the whole, the American people accepted the institution readily. From the beginning the individual reports were kept secret and the information was used only in tables. Unlike the early

censuses, these data were not used for exacting taxes and military service from the people of the United States.

The census of 1790 broke down the population total into those who were white (male and female) and those who were colored (slave and free). The white males were further classified into those above and those below 16 years of age. This first census was gathered by federal marshals at a cost of about \$44,000. The 1930 census cost about two thousand times as much.

In the United States, as in other countries, the family was the unit of the early censuses. But the United States census of

1850 introduced a revolutionary change. It made the individual the unit and added many new questions, such as age, race, birthplace, and occupation. By this time a number of states had also begun to take censuses. Though these have provided valuable information, the tendency has been to rely on the decennial count of the Federal government.

Soon after 1790 other progressive countries began taking censuses. Two-thirds of the world's people, it is estimated, have been officially counted. Canada takes a census decennially in years ending in the figure 1, as 1941. In conducting the 1950 census of the Americas, the Latin nations adopted United States methods so statistics would be comparable.

**CENTAURS** (*sen'tōrs*). In the old Greek legends, the centaurs were fabulous monsters, half man and half horse. From the waist up, they were shaped like human beings; below, they were like horses. At the feast celebrating the marriage of the king of the Lapithae, they attempted to carry off the bride. A fierce battle followed, and through the assistance of Theseus, a friend of the king, the Lapithae defeated the centaurs and rescued the bride. This battle was depicted in some of the sculptures of the famous Parthenon at Athens.

The most celebrated of the centaurs was Chiron. He was skilled in archery, medicine, and music, in which he had been instructed by Apollo. To this

A CENTAUR FAMILY AT PLAY



Perhaps you have heard it said of a good horseman that he "rides like a centaur." The simile refers to those weird mythical creatures—half man, half horse—about whom the Greeks wrote so many stories. In both ancient times and modern the centaurs have been a favorite subject of artists.

wise Centaur Apollo intrusted the charge of his own son Aesculapius, who became the patron of physicians. Many other famous heroes were Chiron's pupils, notably Jason, Hercules, and Achilles.

**CENTIPEDES** These 'hundred legged' creatures—for that is what the name means—are found in damp places all over the world, usually living under stones or timbers. Except for one large species in the South those living in the United States are small—five inches long at most—and harmless. They eat insects, and the little house centipede dines on flies and roaches.

The large and venomous species live only in tropical and subtropical regions. Some of them are 12 inches long. They live on insects, small animals and birds which they capture in their jaws. Their bite is fatal to many animals and dangerous to man.

The centipede's body is made up of segments, each bearing one pair of legs. The number of legs bearing

segments varies in different species from 15 to 173 or more. Thus centipedes may have from 30 to 346 legs. The first pair of legs, fused at the base, forms poison fangs. The young are hatched from eggs and go through a larval stage.

Centipedes are members of the class of *Myriapods*, which have many of the characteristics of insects. Most of the American species belong to the genus *Lithobius*, the large tropical species, to the genus *Scalopendra*.

**MILLIPEDES** or thousand legs are also members of the *Myriapod* class. They are generally smaller than the centipedes and differ from them in having two pairs of legs attached to most of their body segments. Thus some are equipped with more than 400 legs though others have only 26. Instead of poison fangs they have glands on the sides of their bodies which give off an offensive gas. They are usually found under stones or in other dark, moist places. Most of them feed on decaying vegetable or animal matter but some attack the roots of garden plants. Most American species belong to the genus *Fontana*.

## At the CROSSROADS of the NEW WORLD

**CENTRAL AMERICA** Six small republics and a British colony make up Central America, the narrow southern strip of North America between the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean. Taken together, they are not so large as the Pacific Coast states of California and Oregon, but they have an importance to the United States and to the world far greater than their size would indicate.

Lying wholly within the tropics with a rich soil and abundant rainfall, they are a chief source of coffee, bananas and other tropical products. The forests contain valuable woods such as mahogany, rosewood, cedar, and dyewoods. Buried under the soil are gold, silver, and other minerals. Because the forest and mineral resources have as yet been little developed the Central American countries are important sources of future wealth.

This part of the continent is especially important to the United States for another reason. Across it the United States has dug the Panama Canal, which is one of the world's busiest sea-lanes. Moreover the canal is a vital necessity for the adequate naval defense of the United States because it enables the united strength of the navy to assemble quickly in either the Atlantic Ocean or the Pacific.

### The Land and the Climate

Central America is a curving strip of land, 30 to 300 miles wide connecting Mexico with South America. It stretches over 11 degrees of latitude, nearly 1,200 miles, with its southern tip only 7 degrees north

**Extent.** Greatest length (northwest to southeast) nearly 1,200 miles; greatest width, mouth of Segovia River to Gulf of Fonseca about 300 miles; narrowest point (to Panama) 31 miles. Area estimated at about 229,000 square miles. Population about 9,900,000.

**Highlands and Waterways.** Cordilleran ranges extending entire length of region, greatest height more than 14,000 feet. High lands covering three-fourths of land area. Longest Atlantic coast river, the Segovia (on Honduras-Nicaragua border) 300 miles. Pacific coast rivers short and rapid. Largest lake, Lake Nicaragua about 150 miles by 34 miles.

**Principal Ports and Capital.**—Republics: Guatemala (Guatemala City), Honduras (Tegucigalpa), El Salvador (San Salvador), Nicaragua (Managua), Costa Rica, San José, Panama (Panama City). Crown colony British Honduras (Belize).

**Chief Exports.**—Coffee, bananas, cacao, sugar, coconuts, chicle, beaueau, indigo, woods, gold, hides and skins, mother-of-pearl shells.

**Other Products.**—Corn, beans, rice, wheat, tobacco, cotton, tropical fruits and vegetables, as well as copper from lead, manganese and other mineral resources.

**Imports.** Cotton manufactures (textiles and yarn), clothing, iron and steel products (machinery), railroad supplies, hardware, petroleum products, drugs and chemicals, wheat, flour and other food stuffs, books and slates.

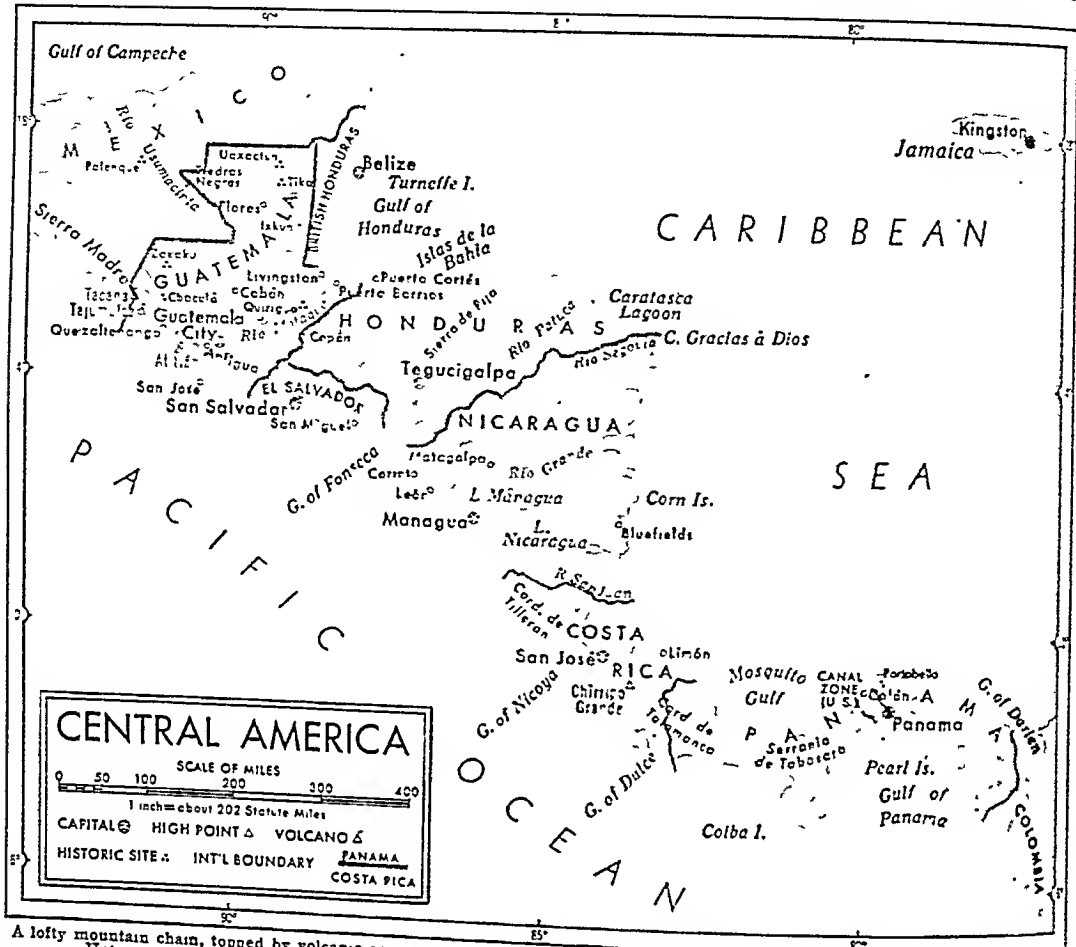
of the Equator. Its backbone is formed by the great Cordilleran mountain system which extends the length of both the American continents. The mountains lie close to the Pacific coast and their north-south sweep is broken by ridges which run from east to west. These ridges are part of the Antillean system which curves east under the Caribbean Sea and sends up peaks to form the

**Antilles Islands.** Only in Panama and Nicaragua are the highlands broken by low passes. Through the Panama pass in the Panama Canal Zone run the inter-oceanic Panama railway and canal, constructed and owned by the United States. In Nicaragua there is a great depression which contains Central America's largest lake, Nicaragua. Here also are Lake Managua and the San Juan River which flows east from Lake Nicaragua to the Caribbean Sea. Across this lowland the United States has bought the right to build a second inter-oceanic canal.

In the lowlands along the Caribbean coast there is almost no dry season. The trade winds which blow from the northeast all the year, drop their moisture as they rise to cross the mountains, bringing heavy rains even in the winter months. Some places have 80 to 200 inches of rainfall a year. The dampness and the steadily intense heat—averaging about 80 degrees the year round—cause plants to grow luxuriantly.

These eastern lowlands are heavily forested, except where they have been cleared and drained for banana plantations. Along the forest edges are great stretches





A lofty mountain chain, topped by volcanic cones, rises along the Pacific coast of Central America, with spurs running eastward. Hot, rain-drenched lowlands border the Caribbean Sea. Most of the cities are located on the drier Pacific slope.

of dense jungles with matted layers of vegetation. Alligators swarm in the rivers, and the forests have a variety of reptiles and of birds of beautiful hues. Water drips from the trees and the air is heavy like that of a hothouse. Underfoot is a slimy labyrinth of stems and roots. The white man has difficulty in living in such a climate, and even the Indian of the highlands finds it hard to endure. That is why the fruit companies have brought Negroes from the West Indies to work on the banana plantations.

West of the Caribbean lowlands the mountains rise higher and higher. Near the Pacific coast they are topped by a long line of beautiful volcanic cones. Some are more than 13,000 feet high and a number are still active. There is scarcely a city that has not suffered from earthquakes or volcanic eruptions.

The volcanoes are a blessing as well as a danger, for their lava has produced an extremely fertile and enduring soil on the slopes and in the little mountain valleys. The Pacific coast west of the mountains has a wet season and a dry season, with only about 50 inches of rainfall a year. In the highlands there are delightful coolness, moderate rain, and no mosquitoes.

Conditions are excellent for agriculture, and the climate is healthful.

It is not strange, then, that today most of the native people live in the highlands and on the Pacific coast. On the western slopes of the mountains in Guatemala, from 2,000 to 5,000 feet above sea level, are large coffee plantations. There are other coffee plantations on the plateau in Costa Rica, on the western and central uplands of Nicaragua, and throughout El Salvador. These supply the chief money crop of the four countries. The coffee, because of its mild flavor, commands a ready market, especially in Europe. On the lowlands, bananas, sugar cane, and other crops are grown, and there are large stretches of grassland where cattle ranches flourish. Every highland Indian home has its *milpa*, or cornfield, for corn is the staple food of the Indian. Notice on the map that the capitals of all the republics are in the highlands or on the Pacific coast.

#### The Peoples, Early and Modern

Between about A.D. 320 and the 10th century, a highly advanced group of Mayan Indians established a civilization in the extreme northeastern portion

## PICTURE STORY OF CENTRAL AMERICAN GEOGRAPHY



The volcanic rim of most of Central America as a peak is illustrated by the picture at the upper left. This is the crater of Mount Cerezo de la Neve in northwestern Nicaragua on the Gulf of Fonseca, where the waters of the Pacific and the Caribbean meet. At the right is a typical stretch of fertile farmland on the high plateau of Guatemala. At the bottom left is a corner of a dense jungle near the north coast of Honduras. Near the bottom right is a view of a sugar plantation.

of Central America and built splendid stone cities. They had a system of writing and an excellent calendar. They made pottery, wove fine textiles, and planted corn and other food plants. But long before Columbus landed on the coast of Central America in 1502, they had moved north into the Yucatán Peninsula (see Mayas Yucatan).

Meanwhile more primitive tribes moved into the region, probably from the south. These were the Indians that the Spanish settlers found and enslaved. The two races mingled, and hence most of the people of Central America today are of mixed Spanish and Indian blood. Such persons of mixed blood are called *mestizos*, except in Guatemala and El Salvador where they are popularly called *ladinos*. There are still large numbers of pure Indians. Sixty per cent of the population in Guatemala speak native dialects. But there are few people of pure Spanish blood except in Costa Rica. Immigration is slight and foreign colonies are small, German settlements being the largest.

Negroes were imported in colonial days as slaves and later as laborers in regions where white men found it difficult to work. Today the Negro population is found almost entirely along the Caribbean coast. Very few have moved into the interior. Consequently the Negroes have had no great opportunity for intermix-

ture with the native population, though in some of the republics they have intermingled with both whites and Indians. Honduras has the largest proportion of Negroes and mulattoes.

#### How the Indians Live

The Indians' ways of living are almost as primitive today as when the white man first came. They were converted to Christianity and the Roman Catholic church has a strong influence over them. But many cling to ancient beliefs and practices. They have also kept their various languages or dialects.

Most of them live in primitive little villages holding the land in common. The village is usually built around a square or park, at the head of which stands a large church. The houses are huts with dirt floors, thatched roofs, and adobe or wooden walls. The occupants usually sit on the dirt floor. A mat thrown on the floor serves as a bed. The same mat may be a raincoat by day. You see women at the looms weaving cloth for colorful costumes or gay blankets. Each tribal village has its special colors and designs. You may also see potters working at their wheels or silversmiths hammering out little ornaments.

In the highlands the natives grow corn, black beans, and squash. They plant corn by making holes in the earth with a pointed stick. The machete and the hoe

are their other farming tools. Ground corn mixed with water is made into flat cakes, called *tortillas*, and baked in a crude oven. This is the Indians' bread. With coffee and beans, it is the staple of their diet. They also grow other crops—rice, wheat, vegetables, sugar cane, potatoes, and cotton; and such fruits as pineapples, mangoes, and papayas. A few tribes in the swampy eastern lands live chiefly by hunting and fishing.

On market day the Indians carry their products into the nearest town to exchange them for other things. On the rough hilly roads you will see them trudging along barefoot, the men carrying sacks on their backs and the women balancing baskets of vegetables or flowers on their heads.

A large proportion of the people of mixed blood live in much the same fashion as the Indians, chiefly because they are too poor to better their living conditions.

The governments of the various republics are making a real effort to improve sanitary conditions and educate the people in health measures. They are waging a battle against hookworm, malaria, typhoid, and other infectious diseases which still cause many deaths. Some of the republics require employers of labor to provide first-aid service for their workers. A pure water supply is available in the capitals and some other cities. The results achieved by the United States in cleaning up the Canal Zone made it possible for white men to live safely in this region (see Panama Canal). Similar measures were taken by the United States fruit companies in their banana lands.

#### Worker and Owner on the Plantations

Most of the peasants—men, women, and children—work on the large plantations. At coffee picking time they move to the big neighboring estates and the villages are almost deserted. Some families have lived for generations on the plantations and have no land of their own. In former days these people were no better off than the serfs on the manors of medieval Europe. They were required to buy their supplies at the plantation store. They were always in debt to the owner and consequently were not free to leave. Today, a laborer may do different kinds of work and go and come as he pleases. But in some of the republics—Guatemala, for example—laws have been passed requiring the Indians to work a certain number of days a year for wages. A work card punched by each employer shows the number of days a man has worked.

The large plantations are owned by a few wealthy citizens or by foreigners. Huge land holdings (*latifundios*) created in colonial days are still held by the descendants of the Spanish colonists. Few plantation owners live on their estates. Most of them prefer the city, where life is more comfortable and varied. Many live in Europe and in the United States, leaving their property in the hands of managers. There are also small farms, owned by descendants of early Spanish colonists, who usually are the leading citizens of the smaller towns.

#### Town and City Life

The artisans and skilled laborers in the towns are mostly mestizos. Many of this class, which is intermediate between the Indians and the aristocracy, rise to high positions in the government or in the various professions.

The capitals and other large cities are in sharp contrast to the small towns and the Indian villages. They are clean, well laid out, modern cities. The buildings, usually white or in pastel shades, are of Spanish architecture. Because of the

frequency of earthquakes, business buildings as well as residences are rarely built more than two stories high. There are good shops, hotels, and cafés, fine public buildings, and beautiful parks. Many of the homes of the wealthy are set in grounds ablaze with gardens of tropical flowers.

#### Education and Religion

Definite attention is being given to education in all the republics. The percentage of illiteracy in most of them is high, but is decreasing. Several factors make education difficult. The variety of racial make-up is one. A scattered population and poor transportation add to the difficulty. But the chief factor is the lack of sufficient revenue to meet the cost of providing schools for all.

Education is free and children of primary school age are required to attend school, where educational facilities exist. Primary schools are planned principally for educating the poorer classes. The secondary schools aim chiefly at preparing students for college. All the republics have normal schools and every national capital has a university which provides courses in the professions, the arts, and the sciences.

There is freedom of worship in all the republics, but most of the people are Roman Catholics. The

#### JUNGLE HOME IN GUATEMALA



From forest and swamp come the building materials for this thatched hut. Its floor is the bare earth.

#### INDIAN WOMAN



From the garden around her jungle home she brings flowers to market.

church has always had great influence and still has, although it has been separated from the state

#### Industry and Resources

**Agriculture is the only extensive industry.** The introduction of the coffee plant soon after the republics became independent helped greatly to develop their commerce. Coffee is the leading source of income in all the states except Panama and Honduras. Most of it is raised on immense plantations, practically all of which are owned by Central

Americans or by German planters. A little is also raised on small farms as a cash crop.

Bananas the other large export crop, are grown chiefly by United States companies. There are large foreign-owned plantations in every state except El Salvador. Some bananas are grown along the Pacific lowlands on irrigated land, but the Caribbean coast is the great producing region. Honduras leads in shipments. The American fruit companies have built railroads, developed harbors and improved sanitary conditions in the areas they control.

Cattle ranches furnish hides and cattle for export. Nicaragua and Panama are the chief exporters. Some sugar is shipped most of it from El Salvador. Guatemala produces chiefly from the sapo-

#### LABOR CAMP ON A BANANA PLANTATION IN HONDURAS



This is typical of the houses built by the big fruit companies for the native banana workers in Honduras, Guatemala, and Nicaragua. The upper floor is divided into six rooms. The open lower floor is screened and serves as a common dining and sitting room. Cooking is done in a separate building.

dulla tree for the gum chews of other lands. Cacao, tobacco, coconuts, mother-of-pearl shell, honey, indigo and henequen are other exports from the various republics. Other agricultural products, such as corn, beans, rice, wheat, are grown chiefly for home use.

Although the lumber industry is little developed, several of the republics ship mahogany and other woods. Lumbering is the leading activity in the colony of British Honduras, which was founded by wood cutters from Jamaica. The Peruvian balsam used in perfumery and medicines comes from El Salvador. Costa Rica supplies balsam wood.

In the rugged mountains lies a wealth of minerals which has scarcely been tapped—gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc, iron, antimony, manganese, and others. Gold and silver mines are the only ones which have been developed to any great extent.

#### Foreign Trade

More than half of all Central American trade is with the United States. The republics also sell tropical raw materials to European lands. Commerce with their Latin neighbors is increasing. Small factories turn out such products as cigars and cigarettes, soap, candles, flour, shoes, cotton goods, and foundry products. There are also coffee-drying establishments, sugar mills, sawmills, tanneries, breweries, and distilleries. But most of the manufactured goods that are needed—cotton textiles, clothing, machinery, construction material for roads and railroads, gasoline, cement, fertilizer, and chemicals—are bought from other countries. From the United States come imports of canned goods, hardware, drugs, refrigerators, sewing machines, automobiles, phonographs, and radios.

There is little call for the products of the modern factory, and large-scale manufacturing

#### MAHOGANY FROM THE GREAT FORESTS



Powerful oxen haul the huge logs from the lumber camps to the railroad, which then takes them to Puerto Corido on the Gulf of Honduras.

## RAW CHEWING GUM



Chicle, the basis of chewing gum, is the dried juice of the Central American sapodilla tree. It starts to market wrapped in palm leaves.

is not likely to be introduced in the near future, both because of the limited market and also because of the lack of coal and other raw materials.

#### Transportation and Communication

Most of Central America's foreign trade, except in bananas, is carried on through Pacific ports, because the populated plateau area is nearer to the Pacific than to the Caribbean. Also, in pre-railroad days, it was easier to sail around Cape Horn from a Pacific seaport than to cross the wet,

hot eastern plain. The first railroads were the shorter Pacific routes carrying the trade of Guatemala, El Salvador, and Nicaragua. Only Costa Rica, which has a narrower eastern plain than the other nations, built its first railroad to the Caribbean coast.

Throughout great areas there are no modern means of transportation. Railroads and surfaced motor-roads are costly to build and to maintain in this rough country of mountains, jungles, and torrential downpours. Goods are carried over rough and muddy trails by donkeys, mule-drawn or ox-drawn wooden carts with solid wheels, and Indian burden bearers. All Central America has only about 2,700 miles of railroads, which is less than two-fifths of the mileage in the state of California. All the republics except Honduras have lines connecting the capitals with their seaports. Honduras has a motor highway from its capital to the north coast. Guatemala, Costa Rica, and Panama have lines connecting the east and the west coasts. The chief international line is that between El Salvador and Guatemala; no railroad yet connects all six republics. Most of the railways were built by foreign companies, especially the fruit companies, but Central American governments now own some of the mileage. Much of the track is narrow-gauge and service is slow.

Road-building is being pushed in all of the republics, especially in El Salvador, Costa Rica, and Nicaragua. With the coöperation of the United States, a motor highway is being built to link the capitals of all the republics with Mexico and the United States. This road, called the Inter-American High-

way in Central America, is part of the proposed Pan American Highway (see Roads and Streets).

Recent years have seen the development of aviation service by United States companies. Air planes carrying both passengers and freight connect all the capitals with one another, and with the United States and South America. There is good and frequent steamship service to the chief ports, but water transportation in some places is handicapped by the shallowness of the harbors. Large vessels have to be far out at sea, and land their passengers and cargoes in smaller craft.

The larger cities have telephone and telegraph services. These services are for the most part owned by the governments, but most of the cable and radio services are American-owned.

#### The Development of the Republics

Christopher Columbus sailed down the Central American coast on his last voyage in 1502, and founded a colony in Costa Rica. The Spaniard Pedro Arias de Avila conquered Costa Rica in 1513, and the remainder of the region was taken by Hernando Cortez between 1522 and 1525, after his conquest of Mexico. By 1570 all Central America, except Panama, was included in the captaincy-general of Guatemala.

When the five provinces of Guatemala colony declared their independence of Spain in 1821, there was no struggle with the mother country, for Spain already had her hands full with the revolt of her more important colonies farther south. After a brief period during which they were allied with Mexico, the Central American provinces formed a federated republic. This federation collapsed in 1838, and the five states became independent republics.

#### THE CAPITOL BUILDING AT SAN SALVADOR



The most densely populated and one of the most progressive of Central American republics is El Salvador. Its capital, San Salvador, nestles among volcanic peaks.

## ALONG THE TRAIL OF THE CONQUISTADORS

The eastern coast of Nicaragua at this time was virtually a British protectorate known as the Mosquito Coast and Belize had been occupied by British subjects since the 17th century. In 1860 Great Britain surrendered the Mosquito Coast to Nicaragua but it kept Belize which became known as British Honduras. Panama was a province of New Granada (later Colombia) until 1903 when it declared its independence (see Panama Republic).

These former Spanish colonies had great handicaps to overcome and their history is marked by unstable governments. The constitutions adopted by all the republics were similar. Each called for a president and a congress elected by popular vote. Of the five original republics however only Costa Rica with its large white population progressed peacefully. It was the first to establish popular government (see Costa Rica). In the other four republics revolutions were frequent. Dictators succeeded one another and constitutions meant little. The United States has stepped in at various times to protect its interests and those of other foreigners and to try to establish order.

The frequently disturbed condition of the republics is explained to a large extent perhaps by the organization of society. The feudal system of land holding has produced a class of wealthy land owners and an illiterate peasant class whom the wealthy exploit. There is practically no property-owning middle class, the backbone of democracy. Another handicap to stable progressive government is the character of the country. The division into rugged highlands and hot wet lowlands has resulted in a scattered population and makes transportation and communication difficult. The intermingling of races has also hampered the development of national unity. Moreover when the people gained their independence they had had little or no experience in governing themselves because officials had been sent from Spain. They had no commerce because trade had been permitted only with Spain. And later the interference of neighbors and the commercial rivalries of the great nations, especially Great Britain and the United States, caused difficulties.

## What of the Future?

Considering their condition when they gained their freedom all the republics have made progress and are continuing to do so, but it is uphill work. They have



As seen from the house of Paez, the Spanish conquest of the New World built the Panama Canal. Over the trail of the conquistadors, the Panama Canal now opens into the Atlantic. At Portobelo the gold and silver were loaded into galleons bound for Spain.

built up their foreign trade but this has depended mainly on the world demand for one product—coffee. Not only internal conditions, therefore—such as revolutions and volcanic eruptions that have laid waste plantations—but wars and economic depressions in other countries have vitally affected their welfare. Foreign capital has helped to develop the countries but their domestic financial condition is poor and they have been unable to meet interest payments on foreign loans. From time to time attempts have been made to reunite the republics in the hope that they might work together to develop the region and diversify its industries. So far however advocates of a new federation have made little headway.

The United States has important interests in Central America both economic and strategic. The relations of the Central American nations with the United States and additional aspects of their culture are discussed in the article Latin America. (See also

Latin American Literature and the separate articles on the several republics and the Panama Canal. For Reference-Outline. *see* North America; *see also* Central America in FACT-INDEX at the end of this volume).

**CENTRIFUGAL FORCE.** When you whirl a stone on the end of a string, you feel the stone trying to pull away. That pull is called *centrifugal force*, which means a force that "flies out from the center." It is created by the simple physical law that all moving objects, if left to themselves, will keep on moving in a straight line, and when we make them move in a curve, they resist the change of direction (*see* Mechanics).

The amount of this resistance depends upon three things—the weight or mass of the object, its speed, and how sharply the direction is changed. If the stone is heavy enough or you whirl it fast enough, the string will break. Whereupon the stone will fly off—not on a line directly away from the center, but at right angles to that line—in other words, at a tangent to the circle in which it was moving before the string broke.

Every day we meet dozens of other examples of centrifugal force. When an automobile makes a sharp turn, the passengers sway over in the direction in which they were going before the turn started. If the turn is made too fast the car will tip over, and it will always tip toward the outside of the curve. Highways intended for fast traffic have banked curves, sloping up toward the outside, to offset centrifugal force.

#### Balanced by Centripetal Force

The physicist, who deals with the balance of forces in nature, gives the name *centripetal* ("center-seeking") to any force that offsets centrifugal force. Thus, your own pull on the string that prevents the whirling stone from flying away is an example of centripetal force. The inward tip that the banked curve gives the turning car is another example.

In rotating machinery the centripetal force lies in the strength of the whirling metal—the force that holds it together in spite of the tendency to fly apart. Those who design fly-wheels and grinding wheels must make sure that the reserve of centripetal force is greater under all normal conditions than the centrifugal force. Large fly-wheels sometimes break apart and kill people or wreck the buildings in which they are housed because they have been driven faster than they should have been. Grinding wheels often injure workmen who run them too fast or apply too much side pressure to them.

The commonest example of making centrifugal force do useful work is found in the cream separator. A drum full of milk rotates rapidly; the skim milk, being heavier, flies to the outside of the drum while the lighter cream stays nearer the axis (*see* Dairying).

In the practise of medicine and in the study of biology and chemistry, devices called *centrifuges* are used to separate blood cells from blood serum, bacteria from liquids, and for many other purposes. In the simplest centrifuge, a test-tube full of the liquid to be

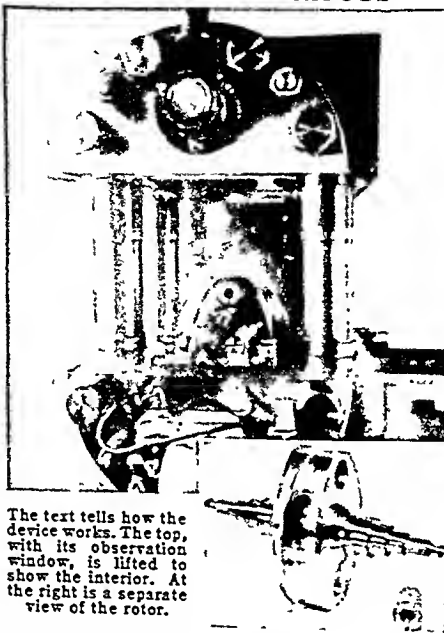
"separated" is put in a hinged holder on each end of a rotating bar or "rotor." A high-gear hand-crank or an electric motor revolves the bar, so that the test-tubes fly out horizontally and the heavier particles are driven to the bottom of the tubes. When the machine is stopped, the heavier and the lighter parts of the material remain separate long enough for the operator to collect whichever part he requires. Large centrifugal machines are used in sugar making (*see* Sugar), as hydro-extractors in laundries (*see* Laundry), and in many other industries.

A triumph of modern technology is the *ultra-centrifuge* shown on this page. Professor The Svedberg of the University of Uppsala, Sweden, received a Nobel prize in 1926 for his experiments with a device of this type. The 7-inch rotor, driven by an oil turbine, revolves in a vacuum 60,000 times or more a minute. This creates an outward-moving force 250,000 times as great as the force of gravity. This is sufficient to separate, according to their relative weight, the molecules contained in a liquid—a feat never before accomplished because the activity of molecules in liquids tends to keep them evenly mixed.

The liquid to be examined is placed in a glass container near the rim of the rotor. It is illuminated by a stroboscopic light—a glow lamp that is lighted for a tiny fraction of a second each time the whirling container passes the window in the front of the apparatus. In spite of its terrific speed, the container under this kind of lighting has the appearance of standing still and the behavior of the substances it contains may be watched through a microscope or may be photographed. The case of the machine is made of 5-inch steel to guard against injury to the operator if the rotor should fly apart.

The following formula is used in computing centrifugal force:  $F = \frac{mv^2}{r}$ , where  $m$  is the mass of the object or portion of the object exerting the force,  $v$  is its velocity, and  $r$  is the radius of the curve of its motion.

THE ULTRA-CENTRIFUGE



The text tells how the device works. The top, with its observation window, is lifted to show the interior. At the right is a separate view of the rotor.

# The HARD LIFE of SPAIN'S GREATEST WRITER

**CERVANTES SAAVEDRA** (*sér-ván-tes sá-vé-drá*)  
**MIGUEL DE (1547 1616)** There is a story that King Philip III of Spain looking out of his palace window one day saw a man reading a book by the roadside. The man was laughing so heartily that tears flowed down his cheeks. That man said the King, use either crazy or he is reading Don Quixote. Whether true or not, this story serves to give us an idea of the immediate and tremendous success that Cervantes scored with his masterpiece. Six editions were called for in the first year after the publication of the first part (1605) and translations into foreign languages were begun almost immediately. Ever since it has ranked with the most popular books ever written. It has been translated into every important language.

The career of Miguel de Cervantes was in striking contrast to the fate of his great book. It was one long struggle against poverty, debt and sheer bad luck. Little is known of his first 20 years. He was born in the town of Alcalá de Henares in the autumn of 1547, the fourth child in a family of six children. His father Rodrigo de Cervantes was a poor and obscure surgeon. There is no evidence that Miguel attended the university of his native town or any other of the towns in which he spent his youth—Valladolid, Seville and Madrid.

By the end of 1569 when he was 22, Cervantes was in Rome where for a time he served as a gentleman in waiting in the household of Cardinal Acquaviva. The following year he enlisted in the Spanish militia then on duty in Italy. From 1570 to 1575 he took part in various military activities. One of the was the battle of Lepanto (October 1571), a famous sea fight in which the allied fleets of Spain and the Italian cities destroyed the Turkish fleet. In this battle Cervantes suffered three gunshot wounds, one of which permanently crippled his left hand—for the greater glory of the right, as he jestingly said.

Captured by Pirates and Sold into Slavery  
 Four years later the ship on which Cervantes was returning on leave of absence to Spain was captured by Barbary pirates. He and his brother were carried as slaves to Algiers. When the ransom sent by their

parents proved insufficient to free both Miguel and his brother, later when an attempt at escape failed, he took all the blame that his comrades might go unpunished. The viceroy of Algiers struck by his bravery bought him from his master.

After five years of slavery, Cervantes was at last ransomed by his relatives and friends. On his return to Spain at 33, he found himself without a job. With

a maimed hand, he could not return to soldiering, and the King turned a deaf ear to his requests for an appointment, so he tried his hand at writing plays. In the next few years he turned out 20 or 30 plays as well as a pastoral romance, *Gilgamesh*. But they were all failures, more or less, and convinced Cervantes that he could never earn his bread by writing. Meanwhile his father had died, and Cervantes had married a girl who brought him a small dowry.

## In Government Service

In time his efforts to get a government post succeeded. By 1587 he was again in the service of the King, this time as an agent to collect wheat, barley and oil for the Invincible Armada, which went down to defeat the next year before the sea hawks of England (see *Armada Spanish*). In this and like capacities he served the King for several years, though he still suffered poverty because his pay was far in arrears. Tangled accounts led to financial difficulties and he was imprisoned more than once for debt.

Don Quixote was begun it seems likely while Cervantes was in jail. The law had clapped down on him in 1597 for a shortage in his accounts as tax collector caused by the failure of the banker to whom he had entrusted the money. Cervantes was held responsible and was thrown into prison for a few months when he could not pay. Apparently he was jailed again about 1603, but nothing certain is known about his life during these years until he appeared at Valladolid in 1604 with the manuscript of the first part of *Don Quixote*.

## Famous but Poor

This was published in 1605 when Cervantes was 57. Although it was hugely successful, he got little money out of it for it was pirated right and left. Through

## THE AUTHOR OF DON QUIXOTE



Cervantes was in his own words "of equal as countenance with chestnut hair, a brown nose and high, bright eyes, and a hooked nose." He further tells us that he was "as thick as a book," "bowed at the shoulders and none for light on his feet." The picture is from *Tomás de* Life (Houghton).



his last years, the fame of 'Don Quixote' resounded through all Europe. But Cervantes lived in poverty, dependent on rich patrons. He published the second part of 'Don Quixote' in 1615, and died a year later on April 23, ten days before the death of Shakespeare. (This date is according to our New Style or Gregorian calendar. According to the Old Style or Julian calendar, Shakespeare also died on April 23. By our calendar, Shakespeare died on May 3, 1616.)

In the face of all his hardships, Cervantes remained cheerful to the end. Shortly before he died, he wrote: "Good-by, pleasant fancies; good-by, merry friends, for I perceive that I am dying. My wish is to see you happy in the other life." Like Don Quixote, Cervantes himself remains a beloved figure in literature.

#### Best Editions of Don Quixote

Don Quixote de la Mancha, retold by Judge Parry, illustrated by Walter Crane (Dodd, 1911).

Don Quixote, 2v. (Dutton, n.d.) (Everyman's Library)

Don Quixote; adapted by E. G. Rich (Houghton, 1935).

Adventures of Don Quixote de la Mancha, adapted from the Motteux translation of the text by Leighton Barrett (Knopf, 1945).

First Part of the Life and Achievements of the Renowned Don Quixote de la Mancha; translated by Peter Motteux, illustrated by Salvador Dalí (Modern Library, 1946)

Don Quixote, introduction by Hirschell Brickell, illustrated by Gustave Doré (Modern Library Giants 1934).

Ingenious Gentleman, Don Quixote de la Mancha, translated with introduction and notes by Samuel Putnam, 2v. (Viking, 1949).

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

Bell, A. F. G. Cervantes (Univ. of Okla. Press, 1947).

Flores, Angel and Benardete, M. J. Cervantes Across the Centuries (Dryden, 1947).

Newcomb, Cavell. Vagabond in Velvet (Longmans, 1942).

Tomas, Mariana. Life and Misadventures of Miguel de Cervantes; translator, Warre B. Wells (Houghton, 1934, o.p.).

**CEYLON.** Beauty and richness of soil have won the name "Pearl of the Orient" for this island dominion of the British Commonwealth. Ceylon is about the size of West Virginia, having an area of more than 25,000 square miles. A channel only 22 miles at its narrowest point separates it from India.

Rolling plains cut by long, narrow ridges cover most of the island. These rise toward mountains in the south. "Adam's Peak," from which Buddha is said to have ascended to heaven, is visible from far out at sea. The tropical vegetation includes tall tree ferns, scarlet-flowering rhododendrons, towering palms, and valuable ebony and satinwood trees. Where the jungle has been cleared and the land drained, the climate is healthful. Annual rainfall varies from 40 inches in the north to 200 inches in the southwest.

Agriculture is the chief occupation, and most of the people live in small farming communities. A few factories produce leather goods, plywood, glass, paper, and chemicals. In 1949 construction was begun on a huge dam to harness the waters of the Gal Oya ("Small Rock River"). The project includes irrigation for rice and sugar plantations and electric power for small factories in the farm villages.

Ceylon ranks second among tea-producing countries and exports hundreds of millions of pounds annually. Other important agricultural products are rubber, coconut products, cinnamon, cacao, and citronella oil. The principal food of the people is rice. Much of the supply is grown on the island, but every year some rice must be imported to supplement the home crop. The farmers also raise goats and horned cattle. Trained elephants do much of the work in the forests.

The most important mineral product is graphite, from which lead pencils are made. The gem stones of Ceylon are famous and include moonstones, garnets, topazes, amethysts, sapphires, and rubies. Mica deposits are being worked. The pearl fisheries have been noted for nearly 2,000 years.

About two-thirds of the people are Sinhalese or Ceylonese, who came from northern India about 500 B.C. In their traditional costumes the men look much like the women, for they wear skirts and hold back their long hair with tortoise-shell combs. Other races include Tamils (from southern India), Moors, and Malays. A few Veddahs, supposed to be the original inhabitants, still live a primitive life in the forests. Buddhism has been the prevailing religion since the 3d century B.C., but the Hindu and Mohammedan faiths also have many followers. Christianity has made progress in recent years.

In the north of Ceylon ruined cities give evidence of a splendid ancient civilization. Excavations have brought to light great palaces and temples and extensive irrigation systems. What is called "the oldest historical tree in the world" grows at Anuradhapura, the ancient capital. It was planted in 245 B.C. as a cutting from the famous Bo tree of India, under which Gotama (Buddha) is said to have received the inspiration to found the Buddhist religion.

In Europe little was known of the island until the 16th century, when adventurous Portuguese seafarers and colonists planted settlements there. The Portuguese were driven out between 1638 and 1658 by the Dutch. The British ousted the Dutch in 1796 and annexed Ceylon to the presidency of Madras. In 1802 it was separated from India and made a crown colony of Britain. The Ceylonese were allowed to share in the government after 1931. On Feb. 4, 1948, Ceylon peacefully achieved complete self-rule as a dominion in the British Commonwealth. Population (1953 census, preliminary), 8,103,648. The capital and chief city is Colombo (population, 424,816).

**CÉZANNE, PAUL** (1839-1906). Today many critics call Paul Cézanne "the father of modern painting." But during most of his life he seemed to be a failure. Scarcely anyone liked his paintings. He sold no pictures, won no prizes, and had to be supported by his father and by Émile Zola, his boyhood friend. Only after his death was Cézanne acclaimed one of the greatest masters of the 19th century.

Cézanne was born in Aix-en-Provence, France, on Jan. 19, 1839. His father, Louis Auguste, was a hatter who became a successful banker. As a child Paul was temperamental and nervous; the slightest criti-



PAUL CÉZANNE

Here Cézanne pauses in his studio before an unfinished landscape and figure study

cism enraged him. But his family understood him and he spent happy days wandering through the Provence forests with young Zola and other friends.

He received a classical education at the Collège Bourbon and studied drawing at the Aix museum. After brief sessions at law school and in his father's bank, he went to Paris to study painting. Restless, he returned often to Aix. He worked many summers painting landscapes near his father's suburban home.

During the Franco-Prussian War in 1870 Cézanne fled to Estaque near Marseilles to avoid conscription. With him went Hortense Fiquet. In 1872 their son Paul was born. Fearing disinheritance if his father learned about the child, Cézanne postponed formal marriage until Louis Auguste died in 1896.

Hortense sat as model for many of Cézanne's portraits. This was a real ordeal for he was exasperatingly slow. After his friend Ambroise Vollard sat 115 times for a single picture, Cézanne said, "I am not entirely displeased with the shirtfront."

Homely and powerful in body, Cézanne looked like a stolid peasant. He became shy and preferred to live alone. Often in anger he slashed his paintings.

Cézanne was an old man before even fellow painters realized his worth. He had to beg salon officials to display his pictures. Undiscouraged, he painted until a week before his death on Oct. 22, 1906.

Most 20th-century painters have been influenced by Cézanne. He abandoned perspective and used overlapping planes to give objects depth. He invented a way of modeling three-dimensional forms by painting in patches of color—warm color for advancing planes, cool color for receding planes. He painted from nature but did not hesitate to distort a shape or to change its color to convey its psychological effect or to fulfill the needs of his composition. His finest works are serene but powerful expressions of forms in space with vibrant color. (See Painting.)

**CHAIN STORES** A large part of the retail business of the United States is done by vast networks of chain stores. Many stretch from coast to coast. Others serve a city or a region. A chain is simply two or

more stores centrally owned and operated. However, the Bureau of the Census classifies 11 or more stores as being more typically a chain.

About 1,500 chain store companies operate some 82,000 individual stores. This is 5 per cent of all retail stores in the United States, but they handle about 20 per cent of all retail sales. They account for a much larger part of the sales of department, variety, shoe, dry goods, grocery, automobile supply, dairy products, liquor and candy stores. Grocery chains have the largest sales of all chain stores.

The idea of a chain of stores is very old. In 200 B.C. On La Kass operated one in China. The oldest chain in America is the Hudson's Bay Company, chartered in 1670 in Canada (see Hudson's Bay Company).

Modern chain stores began in 1859 when George F. Gilman and George H. Hartford founded the Great Atlantic and Pacific Tea Company (A & P) as tea stores in New York City. This is the world's largest retail chain with about 5,000 grocery stores. Other great grocery chains are the Kroger Company and the Safeway Stores. Frank W. Woolworth began the first variety chain store in 1879 at Lancaster, Pa. He had noticed how the sign "Anything on this table 5¢" quickly sold his dry goods. Woolworth 5-and 10-cent stores number about 2,000. The S.S. Kresge Company is the next largest dime-store chain.

Other large chains are Walgreen Company (drugs), Melville Shoe Corporation (shoes), J. C. Penney Company (apparel), Western Auto Supply Company (automobile supplies) and John R. Thompson Company (restaurants). The Sears, Roebuck and Company mail-order house opened retail stores and is now the world's second largest retail organization.

Chain stores are successful because they sell large quantities of goods at lower prices by buying large amounts for less. They have a quick turnover of stock at a minimum profit per unit. Besides operating warehouses, they often manufacture their merchandise. Most chains have a cash-and-carry policy. They employ many kinds of specialists. Chain stores are clean and well equipped. They attractively display fresh stocks in wide assortments. They are located in busy shopping centers. The chains advertise effectively, dividing the cost among all the stores.

The chain system, however, has limitations too. Some customers want credit and delivery. Some find chain merchandise limited and of average quality. Others prefer the personal service of the independent storekeeper. Chains sometimes find the cost of management high and trained personnel unavailable.

#### Early Opposition to Chain Stores

The rapid growth of chain stores antagonized retailers, wholesalers and manufacturers in the 1920's. They claimed that chain stores paid insufficient taxes and took money out of town. They argued that chains did not support community enterprises. They felt that chains were monopolies and reduced opportunities for going into business. They charged that chains sold inferior merchandise, short-weighted and short-changed patrons and paid low wages. They objected to suppliers

giving chains excessive discounts and allowances. Finally, they argued that chains are unfair in using loss leaders sold below cost to attract trade.

Many states imposed special taxes on chains according to the number of stores operated. The Robinson-Patman Act of 1936 outlawed price discrimination on quantity sales. Congress also supplemented the states' fair trade laws that regulated price cutting with the Miller-Tydings Act of 1937 (declared unconstitutional in 1951) and the McGuire Act of 1952.

#### Chain Stores Important Today

Chain stores have won great public acceptance. Independent merchants still have a high business mortality, primarily because of a lack of experience and capital. They have met the competition of the chains by improving efficiency. Many have also joined *voluntary chains*, or *co-operative groups*. These merchants own their stores, but buy, advertise, and control store operations co-operatively. More commonly they affiliate with the voluntary chain of a wholesaler. The largest among food stores are the Independent Grocers' Alliance (IGA) and the Red and White Stores. Butler Brothers sponsors the Federated Stores, a large dry-goods chain; and the Ben Franklin Stores, a big variety chain. Many gasoline companies now give franchises to independent filling stations.

Today the chains have fewer but larger stores, each with greater sales. Many grocery chain stores are *supermarkets*—large self-service stores with several departments. Clarence Saunders of Memphis originated self-service in his Piggly-Wiggly stores in 1916. Air conditioning, fluorescent lights, and ample parking are common features. Shoppers select frozen foods and meats from open refrigerated cases and prepackaged products from mass displays and wheel them in carts to check-out counters. Other types of retail stores have adopted self-service. Chain stores have led in the trend toward suburban shopping centers.

Many countries, including England, France, Italy, Germany, Scandinavia, and Japan, have chain stores. Many American chains have foreign branches.

**CHALK.** In crayon form, the abundant mineral called chalk is a familiar classroom tool. Its softness and smoothness make it excellent for writing on blackboards. It also has many uses in industry.

Chalk is a limestone, made up of microscopic shells of calcium carbonate (see Limestone). These shells belonged mostly to tiny sea creatures called *foraminifera*. They died ages ago during the Cretaceous period, which is named from the Latin word for chalk, *creta* (see Geology). Their shells sank to the sea bottom and then were compressed into a soft rock. Earth disturbances later elevated this chalk. In warm seas, the process of making chalk is still going on.

Vast beds of chalk underlie areas of England, and cliffs of chalk border its south coast. Huge quantities are quarried there and in France, Belgium, and Denmark. The United States has little chalk. Deposits of slight value are found in Alabama, Texas, Kansas, and other states. Pure deposits are white or gray white; those with clay or sand are gray or buff.

High-grade blackboard crayons contain at least 95 per cent refined chalk mixed with a binding substance. Poorer grades are adulterated with clay. "Soft" crayons, often called "chalk," are molded from gypsum (see Gypsum). Colored crayons contain pigments.

Chalk that has been pulverized, washed, and filtered is called whiting. It is used to make many products, such as calcimine, putty, paints, medicines, rubber, tires, paper, ink, and tooth pastes and powders. Crude chalk is used largely in making cement (see Cement). French chalk is a form of talc (see Talc).

**CHAMBERLAIN, JOSEPH (1836-1914).** "Old Joe" Chamberlain, as his followers called him, rejected the highest office in Great Britain rather than change his ideas. During 30 years of public life he was one of the best loved and most hated men in England.

Like generations of Chamberlains before him, he was destined for a business career. When he was 18, his father, a London manufacturer, sent him to Birmingham, the family home, to manage a screw factory.

Twenty years in business gave Chamberlain a fortune on which to retire. His zeal for social reform, however, led him to politics. In 1873 he became mayor of Birmingham. As one of the first apostles of city reform, he built parks, cleared slums, and achieved municipal ownership of the gas and water supply.

In 1876 Chamberlain entered Parliament as a representative from Birmingham and a member of the radical wing of Gladstone's Liberal party. His keen, biting wit made him a formidable opponent.

He emerged as leader of the radicals. In 1880 he entered Gladstone's cabinet as president of the Board of Trade. He sponsored legislation in favor of the working classes. In 1886 he resigned from the cabinet in disagreement with the government's policy of Home Rule for Ireland. By forming the Liberal Unionist party he weakened the Liberals.

In 1888, weary of parliamentary struggles, he took a trip to the United States to negotiate a fisheries dispute. There he met Mary Endicott, daughter of President Cleveland's secretary of war, and she became the third wife of the twice-widowed statesman.

Chamberlain became a firm friend of the United States and a strong believer in imperialism. As colonial secretary (1895-1903), he was criticized for not averting the Boer War. He worked for an alliance between England, Germany, and the United States, but failed because of the kaiser's refusal to accept British naval supremacy. So convinced was Chamberlain that England must "think imperially," that in 1903 he advocated tariff reform giving preference to the colonies, as opposed to the traditional English doctrine of free trade. When his policy was not adopted, he resigned. Thus he cast away his chance to be prime minister and split the Liberal Unionist party. As a result the party suffered a crushing defeat in 1906, although Chamberlain was re-elected.

Joseph Chamberlain's sons achieved higher office than their more forceful father. Austen, Joseph's son by his first wife, became foreign secretary; Neville, his son by his second wife, became prime min-

ister. In his last years the old man relied on Austen to continue the battles he was now too weary to fight. Shortly after Birmingham had given "Old Joe" a great celebration in honor of his seventieth birthday, he suffered a stroke that kept him an invalid for the eight remaining years of his life.

SIR (JOSEPH) AUSTEN CHAMBERLAIN (1863-1937), son of Joseph and half-brother of Neville Chamberlain, was trained for politics. Of his first speech in Parliament in 1893 Gladstone said that "it must have been dear . . . to a father's heart." Austen believed, like his father in the combination of imperialism and social reform. He held many Cabinet posts and was a leader of the Conservative party. As foreign secretary, from 1924 to 1929, he sought for peace through disarmament and negotiated the Locarno Pact of 1925. For this he shared the Nobel peace prize with Charles G. Dawes of the United States (See also Chamberlain, Arthur Neville).

CHAMBERLAIN, (ARTHUR) NEVILLE (1869-1940) If you had asked Joseph Chamberlain which of his two sons was more likely to be prime minister of England, he would have answered without hesitation: Austen. Yet it was Neville Chamberlain the pro-sauc businessman, who rose to the position his brilliant father and his half-brother sought but never attained.

From the first Neville was chosen to run the family business. After his education at Rugby and at Mason College in Birmingham, his father sent him to the Bahama Islands, where he spent seven years as manager of a plantation. He returned to Birmingham in 1899 and in ten years became prosperous.

Like seven members of his family before him Neville entered politics as mayor of Birmingham. He was elected to Parliament from Birmingham in 1918 and soon rose to prominence in the Conservative party. In 1924 he became minister of health and held this position with but a single interruption until 1929. In 1931 he became chancellor of the exchequer and in this post he achieved his father's unrefreshed dream of establishing a protective tariff.

In 1937 Stanley Baldwin resigned and Neville Chamberlain, almost 70 years of age, became prime minister in one of England's most troubled periods. His critics maintained that his training as a businessman and financial expert little qualified him for the intricate problems of foreign affairs that he had to face.

Hitler, having militarized Germany, was demanding "living space" for the German people. His first objective was to bring into the German state the Germans living in Austria and in the western (Sudeten) territories of Czechoslovakia. Chamberlain believed that if Hitler and Mussolini were granted reasonable concessions they would settle down peacefully. This policy became known as "appeasement."

In September 1933 Chamberlain visited Germany for conferences with Hitler and Mussolini to try to make a peaceful settlement between Germany and Czechoslovakia. On September 29 Britain, France, Germany, and Italy signed the famous Munich pact, which ceded to Germany the Czechoslovakian Sudetenland. Chamberlain believed the agreement meant "peace in our time." Hitler, however, seized the rest of Czechoslovakia in March 1939. Public opinion then forced Chamberlain to reverse his policy.

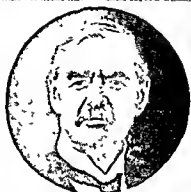
In April 1939 he pledged that England would defend the independence of Poland, Rumania, Greece and Turkey. When Germany, defying the British guarantee, invaded Poland, Chamberlain on September 3 led his country into war. As he made his historic declaration of war in the House of Commons Chamberlain in a weary and trembling voice said "Everything that I have worked for and believed in during my public life has crashed in ruins."

As war leader, Chamberlain became the target of bitter attacks. The press members of

Parliament and the people clamored for a leader who had not been identified with the appeasers. On May 10, 1940, he resigned. For a time he served in the Cabinet of his successor Winston Churchill but his health failed rapidly and on Nov. 9, 1940, he died. (See also English History.)

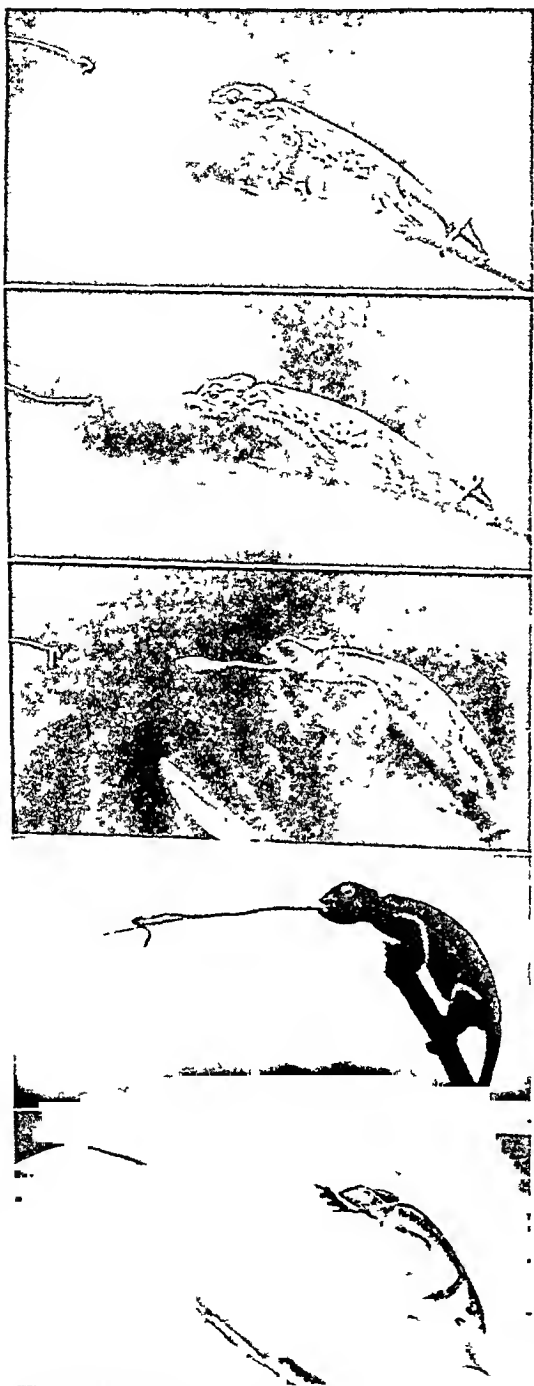
**CHAMELEON** (*la-mi'le-on*) The chameleon is the world's champion turncoat. One moment it is brilliant green, the next it may be grey black or chestnut and black, or covered with yellow spots. This is nature's way of protecting this sluggish little lizard which moves so slowly. If it did not have the power of taking on the color of its surroundings and so making itself almost invisible, it would soon be exterminated by snakes and birds which prey upon it. The color changes are accomplished by layers of cells beneath its transparent skin containing yellow, black, and red coloring matter. These cells are under the control of the nervous system, and by contracting and expanding they produce changes in coloration.

Even without this power the chameleon would be one of the most extraordinary of animals. Its great protruding eyes are entirely covered with eyelids except for a tiny round hole, and the lids move with the constantly rolling eyes. What is still more amazing, the chameleon can roll its eyes independently in any direction, so that one eye may be looking at a fly in front of it, while the other keeps watch over the animal's shoulder. As another compensation for its slowness, the chameleon has a tongue half the length of its body, which can shoot out like a flash to catch unwary insects with its sticky end.



NEVILLE CHAMBERLAIN

## HOW THE CHAMELEON CATCHES ITS MEALS



When hungry, the chameleon "lies low" with its color adjusted to its surroundings. When an insect passes by, the chameleon shoots out its long tongue, striking its prey with the skill of a trained marksman. The insect is glued to the tip of the sticky tongue and is drawn back and swallowed. A motion-picture camera caught the views above.

The true chameleons, of which there are more than 50 species, are found only in Africa and a few other parts of the Old World. The best-known species has a body about six inches long and a tail nearly as long again, with which it clings to twigs. The so-called American chameleon belongs to a quite distinct branch of the lizard family, the *Iguor-dac*. It is smaller and more active than its Old World namesake, but has the same remarkable property of changing color.

Scientific name of common chameleon, *Chameleon varians*, of American chameleon, *Anolis carolinensis*

**CHAMOIS** (*chām'i* or *shā-murā*). "Nimble as a chamois," we often say when we speak of some feat of agility, for this small goat-like antelope of the mountains of middle and southern Europe is one of the fleetest and most active of creatures. When alarmed it will flee to the most inaccessible places by a series of prodigious leaps, across chasms and up or down the face of almost perpendicular cliffs. The sole of its hoof is slightly depressed below the outer margin, thus enabling it to get a foothold on the slightest projection.

Chamois live in herds of 20 or 30 and their senses are so acute that they are among the hardest of animals to hunt. When feeding they post a sentinel, who warns of the approach of danger by stamping and making a whistling noise. Chamois-hunting used to be a favorite pursuit in the Swiss Alps, but the animal is now rare and is protected by law.

It dislikes warm weather, ascending in summer to the regions of perpetual snow and only coming down to the forests in winter. Under its coat of coarse reddish-brown hair a thick under-fur grows in the winter time. Its slender body is about three feet long, and two and a half feet high at the shoulders, with a short black tail. From the forehead rises almost vertically a pair of slender black horns six to eight inches long, which hook back at the top.

The fine soft leather known as "shammy" was originally made from chamois skin, though most of the skins now sold under that name are sheepskin.

Scientific name, *Rupicapra tragus*. The chamois is the only species of its genus and is readily distinguished from all other ruminants by its vertical backwardly hooked black horns, which are common to male and female, although smaller in the latter.

**CHAMPLAIN**, SAMUEL DE (1567-1635). The "Father of New France" was Samuel de Champlain. He founded Quebec, the first permanent French settlement in America, and kept the struggling community alive during its early years. He explored Canada as far west as Lake Huron and discovered the lake that bears his name, Lake Champlain.

This bold leader was born about 1567 in Brouage, a small French seaport on the Bay of Biscay. His father was a sea captain, and young Samuel was well trained in seamanship, navigation, and map making. In 1589 Champlain joined the forces of Henry of Navarre in the religious war between the Catholics and the Protestants (called Huguenots) of France.

Henry won the war and became King Henry IV in 1589 Champlain was engaged by Spain to command a ship sailing to the West Indies and Mexico After he returned he made a full report to Henry This was the first real information the French had about the Spanish possessions For this service Champlain was granted the title of seur

King Henry decided to establish French settlements in Canada To do so he named a patron (a responsible financier or promoter) of the selected region who agreed to establish colonies In return the patron received a monopoly of trade with the region In 1603 Champlain went as royal geographer with an expedition sent to find sites for settlements and trade Next year he returned with a group of colonists They built dwellings and a storehouse on Dochet Island near the mouth of the St. Croix River in New Brunswick The settlers lived through a fearful winter To get fresh water they had to melt snow Yes, etables froze and many men contracted scurvy In the spring they moved to a better site on Nova Scotia But no supplies came from France so they abandoned the colony in 1607 During this time Champlain explored the coast as far south as Cape Cod

In 1603 Champlain was sent as lieutenant general of another expedition He founded Quebec and made friends of the Huron Indians of the region In 1609 he went with the Hurons to fight the Iroquois in New York He discovered Lake Champlain and near it on July 30 he terrified and routed the enemy with gunfire Thereafter the Iroquois were bitter enemies

of the French (see Canadian History)

Champlain then made several exploring trips seeking rivers that might lead to the Pacific Ocean In 1615 he reached Georgian Bay and Lake Huron After 1616 he acted as leader in Quebec for a succession of patrons and visited France often seeking help

In 1627 Cardinal Richelieu formed a company to send settlers to New France This brought hope to the colony But in 1629 the British seized Quebec and held it three years Champlain waited in Europe After peace was signed he returned as governor He died Dec. 25 1635

**CHANCELLORSVILLE BATTLE** or **At Chancellorsville Va.** on May 2 and 3 1863 the Confederates gained one of their greatest victories in the Civil War The Union army though superior in numbers after three days' terrible fighting was defeated and retreated across the Rappahannock with a loss of 18,000 men

The Confederate loss was only 13,000 but it included the brave and able Stonewall Jackson who was accidentally shot by his own men and died eight days later (See Civil War American)

**CHANNEL ISLANDS** When you see the beautiful fawn-colored Jersey cows or the handsome Guernseys with their white markings think of the Channel Islands for it is to these tiny British possessions off the coast of France that we owe two of our most famous breeds of dairy cattle

The islands from which these breeds come—Jersey and Guernsey—with the addition of Alderney Sark and a few tiny islets have a total area of only 75 square miles about the size of the city of Cincinnati But every available acre is under cultivation or used for pasturage and the soil produces so abundantly in the delightfully mild climate that immense quantities of vegetables fruits flowers and dairy products are shipped to England about 100 miles away

Visiting these islands is like sailing back into the enchanted land of yesterday for few places in the world have retained so many of the customs and laws of the Middle Ages The ancient charters framed nearly a thousand years ago by the dukes of Normandy still remain largely in force and much of the land is held under the same old system of tenure that existed in feudal days One tenant for instance still owes his landlord one donkey every year and a cake made from a bushel of wheat Another is required to pay 18 eels (or the money equivalent) another a chicken with a tail at least one inch long

These and many other curious customs and rituals testify to the days when the Channel Islands were a part of ancient Normandy whose ruler William the Conqueror became master of England The farmers still speak the old Norman French and French as the official language of the courts and the local assembly The islands are in most respects self-governing and have their own copper

coinage They are administered by lieutenant governors sent from England The people have stubbornly refused to submit to a system of import duties

These sunny islands are popular tourist resorts Snow and frost are practically unknown Sailing and swimming are popular sports During the second World War the Germans occupied the islands from June 30 1940 until May 9 1945 Many islanders were sent to Germany for forced labor Population (1951 census preliminary) 102,776

#### A FAMOUS CASTLE OF THE CHANNEL ISLANDS



Elizabeth Castle at St. Helier, capital of Jersey, dates from 1551. At high tide it can be reached only by boat or once it is built on a rocky island. The castle has lived here for some years before it was pulled down.

**CHARADE** (*sha-rād'*). The charade is a guessing game based on words. A person, or a team, secretly selects a word of two or more syllables and then gives the meaning of each syllable by talk or pantomime or by acting out a scene. The people who do not know the secret word must guess the meaning. *Metaphysician*, for example, could be represented by two people meeting, one saying, "Good morning, Doctor." ("Met a physician.") Such words as *ingratiate* ("in grays she ate") are good puzzlers.

Many words can be presented in two or more scenes. Announce the word *innkeeper*, for example, as "A noun, common, singular, three syllables, two scenes." In the first scene speak and act the word *in*, making such remarks as: "What have you *in* your pocket?" "Look *in* a book." In the second scene, team members pretend to be animals, such as roaring lions, growling bears, snailing hyenas—with an animal *keeper* obviously "keeping" them. If the word still cannot be guessed, arrange a third scene to use the whole word *innkeeper* in the dialogue.

**CHARCOAL.** The porous, black, brittle substance left when wood or bones are partially burned or charred is called charcoal. It is an impure variety of carbon, which has the important property of being able to adsorb enormous quantities of gases.

Animal charcoal, or bone black, is made by heating bones in a closed vessel, thus driving off gases, water vapor, and oil. It is seen usually in coarse grains from the size of peas to pinheads and is used to destroy disagreeable odors and to remove color from liquids. For example, syrup of sugar is allowed to drip through a layer of bone black. The charcoal holds all color particles and the syrup comes out clear and free of discoloration. Another animal charcoal is obtained by burning blood.

Wood charcoal is the most important variety. Wood consists chiefly of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. When it burns in the open air, it leaves only a small quantity of white ash. If the air is partially cut off, only the volatile matter burns, leaving the carbon. The old method of making charcoal took place in charcoal pits. Billets of wood were piled on end in rows in a large conelike heap. This was covered with turf or with moistened ashes, and holes were left at the bottom for air to enter and at the top for a chimney. The wood burned slowly. When fully burned, the heap was covered and left to cool for two or three days. By this method 100 parts of wood produced about 20 parts by weight of charcoal. The modern method is to cook wood in closed oven retorts. This method produces about 30 parts by weight of charcoal and also saves by-products such as tar, wood alcohol, acetic acid, and acetone.

Pure charcoal burns without smoke and makes a hot fire. Formerly it was used as fuel in the reduction of metallic ores but has largely been replaced by coke. However, it is important in the production of silicon alloys and high chrome steel. Charring fence posts to give them a coating of charcoal protects them from decay. Charcoal is used in making gunpowder, in filtering water, curing tobacco, manufacturing glass, as an ingredient of poultry and stock feed, and as a motor fuel where gasoline is scarce.

The adsorptive power of charcoal is greatly increased by a process called *activation*. This consists of treating charcoal with carbon dioxide, nitrogen, or other gases or with metallic salts. It is heated and kept at a high temperature for some time with little air present. Activated wood charcoal is used in gas masks to adsorb poison gases and filter them from the air.

## CONQUEROR and EMPIRE BUILDER

**CHARLEMAGNE** (*shār'lēmān*), or **CHARLES THE GREAT** (742?-814; ruled 768-814). "By the sword and the cross," Charlemagne became master of western Europe and saved for us many rights and privileges that we enjoy today. When Charlemagne became joint king of the Franks in 768, western Europe was falling into decay. Except in the monasteries, people had all but forgotten education, the arts, and representative government. Boldly, Charlemagne conquered barbarians and kings and restored the roots of learning and order.

### Born to Power

Charlemagne's grandfather was Charles Martel, the warrior who crushed the Saracens (see Charles Martel). Charlemagne was the elder son of Bertrade ("Bertha Greatfoot") and Pepin the Short, first "mayor of the palace" to become king of the Franks. Although schools had

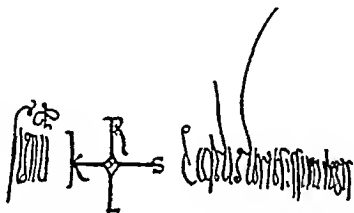
almost disappeared, historians believe that Bertrade gave the young Charlemagne some schooling and that he learned to read. Bertrade especially schooled him in piety. His devotion to the Roman Catholic church became the great driving force of his remarkable life.

### Striking Appearance and Unusual Personality

Charlemagne was tall, well over six feet, powerful, and tireless. His secretary, Eginhard, wrote that Charlemagne had fair hair and a "face laughing and merry . . . his appearance was always stately and dignified." He had a read wit, but could be stern.

His tastes were simple and moderate. He delighted in hunting, riding, and swimming. He wore the Frankish dress—linen shirt and breeches, a silk-fringed tunic hose wrapped with bands, and, in winter, a tight coat of otter or marten skins. Over all these garments "he flung a blue cloak

### CHARLEMAGNE'S SIGNATURE



Charlemagne "wrote" his signature by inserting the two small lines in the center of the monogram made for him by his clerk.

and he always had a sword girt about him."

Charlemagne's character was contradictory. In an age when the usual penalty for defeat was death, Charlemagne several times spared the lives of his defeated foes, yet in 782 at Verdun, after a Saxon uprising he ordered 4,500 Saxons beheaded. He compelled the clergy and nobles to mend their ways, but he divorced two of his four wives without cause. He forced kings and princes to kneel at his feet, yet his mother and two favorite wives often overruled him in his own household.

#### Charlemagne Begins His Reign

At the age of 26 Charlemagne, with his brother Carloman, inherited the kingdom of the Franks. In 771 Carloman died, and Charlemagne became sole ruler. At that time the northern half of Europe was still pagan and lawless. In the south, the Roman Catholic church was striving to assert its power against the Lombard kingdom in Italy. In Charlemagne's own realm the Franks were falling back into barbarian ways, neglecting education and Christianity.

Charlemagne determined to strengthen his realm and to bring order to Europe. In 772 he launched a 30 years' campaign which conquered and Christianized the powerful pagan Saxons in the north. He subdued the Avars, a huge Tatar tribe on the Danube. He compelled the rebellious Bavarian dukes to submit to him.

When he could, however, he preferred peaceful settlement to war. After the Lombard king Desiderius, seized papal lands Charlemagne offered to pay him to return them to the pope. When the treacherous Desiderius refused Charlemagne seized his kingdom in 773-774 and restored the Papal States (see Papacy).

#### Military Genius

The key to Charlemagne's amazing conquests was his ability to organize. During his reign he sent out more than 50 military expeditions. He rode as commander at the head of at least half of them.

He moved his armies over wide reaches of country with unbelievable speed, but every move was planned in advance. Before a campaign he told the counts, princes and bishops throughout his realm how many men to bring what

#### \* HOLY ROMAN EMPEROR



Durer here painted Charlemagne garbed in later rulers of the empire.

arms they were to carry, and even what to load in the supply wagons. These feats of organization and the swift marches led Napoleon later to study his tactics.

One of Charlemagne's minor campaigns has become the most famous. In 778 he led his army into Spain to battle the infidel Saracens. On its return, Basques ambushed the rear guard at Roncesvalles in northern Spain and killed "Count Roland." Roland became the great hero of medieval songs and romances (see Roland).

#### Extent of Charlemagne's Realm

By 800 Charlemagne was the undisputed ruler of western Europe. His vast realm covered what are now France, Switzerland, Belgium and Holland. It included half of present-day Italy and Germany, part of Austria and the Spanish March ("border"). The broad March reached to the Ebro River.

By thus establishing a central government over western Europe, Charlemagne restored much of the unity of the old Roman Empire and paved the way for modern Europe.

#### Pope Crowns Him Emperor

On Christmas Day in 800 while Charlemagne knelt in prayer in St. Peter's in Rome, Pope Leo III seized a golden crown from the altar and placed it on the bowed head of the king. The throng in the church

### THE GREAT MEDIEVAL EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE



Charlemagne as skillful as soldier and ruler held his sprawling empire together within natural lines of defense. The Partition of Verdun in 843 (inset map) split it into three weak kingdoms. The kingdom of Lothar (or Lothair) included modern Lorraine.



## GIVES AUDIENCE TO VASSAL REPRESENTATIVES



The dress of the representatives (right) indicates that they are from Tatar and Slav tribes on the east fringe of the empire. The presence of the Christian clergy of the Franks (left) shows the close relationship between church and state.

shouted, "To Charles the August, crowned by God, great and pacific emperor, long life and victory!"

Charlemagne is said to have been surprised by the coronation, declaring that he would not have come into the church had he known the pope's plan. However, some historians say the pope would not have dared to act without Charlemagne's knowledge.

## STRESSES NEED OF EDUCATION



Commending a studious peasant boy (left), Charlemagne chides a young noble (right) for not studying. Charlemagne warned the idler he should not count on his noble birth and wealth.

The coronation was the foundation of the Holy Roman Empire. Though Charlemagne did not use the title, he is considered the first Holy Roman emperor (see Holy Roman Empire).

## Reforms and Strengthens Government

Charlemagne had deep sympathy for the peasants and believed that government should be for benefit of the governed. When he came to the throne various local governors, called "counts," had become lax and oppressive. To reform them, he expanded the work of investigators, called *missi dominici*. He prescribed their duties in documents called *capitularies* and sent them out in teams of two—a churchman and a noble. They rode to all parts of the realm, inspecting government, administering justice, and reawakening peasants, nobility, and clergy to their civil and religious duties.

Twice a year Charlemagne summoned the chief men of the empire to discuss its affairs. In all problems he was the final arbiter, even in church issues, and he largely unified church and state.

## Revives Education and the Arts

Charlemagne was a tireless reformer. He sought to improve his people's lot in many ways. He set up money standards to encourage commerce, tried to build a Rhine-Danube canal, and urged better farming methods. He especially worked to spread education and Christianity throughout every class of people.

He revived the Palace School at Aachen, his capital. He set up other schools, opening them to peasant boys as well as nobles. It is said that he once found the poorer boys studying hard and the nobles lagging. He promised the earnest students rich rewards in later life, but sternly told the nobles: "You pretty and dainty little gentlemen... I care little for your noble birth... if you do not make haste to recover what you have lost by your neglect, you will never get favors from Charles."

Charlemagne never stopped studying. He brought an English monk, Alcuin, and other scholars to his court. He learned to read Latin and some Greek, but apparently did not master writing. At meals, instead of having jesters, he listened to men reading from learned works.

To revive church music, Charlemagne had monks sent from Rome to train his Frankish singers. To restore some appreciation of art, he brought valuable pieces from Italy. An impressive monument to his religious devotion is the cathedral at Aachen, which he built and where later he was buried.

At the death of Charlemagne in 814 only one of his three sons, Louis, was living. Louis' weak rule brought on the rise of civil wars and revolts. After his death his three quarreling sons split the empire between them by the Partition of Verdun in 843.

## CHARLES, HOLY ROMAN EMPERORS

SEVEN rulers of the Holy Roman Empire were named Charles. Charles the Great (Charlemagne) is considered the first, though he did not use the title (see Charlemagne, Holy Roman Empire). Of those who bore the title, Charles V was the most important.

**CHARLES II the Bald** (ruled 875-877) was the grandson of Charlemagne. He became king of France in 840 (as Charles I) and ruler of the Holy Roman Empire in 875.

**CHARLES III the Fat** (ruled 881-887). A great grandson of Charlemagne, Charles the Fat became king of Saxony in 876, Holy Roman emperor in 881 and king of France in 884 (as Charles II). He was deposed as emperor in 887 and died the same year.

**CHARLES IV** (born 1316, ruled 1347-1378). Charles IV was a member of the house of Luxemburg. He became king of Bohemia in 1346 and became Holy Roman emperor in 1347. He issued a Golden Bull in 1356 which settled the empire's fundamental law (see Holy Roman Empire).

**CHARLES V** (born 1500, ruled 1519-1556). At only 20 years of age, Charles V ruled nearly half the world. He became one of the most skilled of monarchs yet, at 56 he voluntarily gave up his vast realm and retired to spend his last days near a monastery in the rugged Estremadura of western Spain.

Charles was born Feb. 24, 1500, at Ghent in the Netherlands. His mother was Joanna, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; his father was Philip of Hapsburg, son of Maximilian archduke of Austria and Holy Roman emperor.

Charles was a shy and somewhat frail boy but strong-willed. He became an excellent rider and hunter. He preferred the outdoors to books but teachers and courtiers carefully schooled him for his future royal duties. Charles spoke French and always considered the Netherlands his homeland. He did not see Spain until he was 17 years old.

The first of his many crowns came to him when he was only six when he inherited the kingdoms of Castile and the Netherlands. Only ten years later, at the death of his grandfather Ferdinand, he became ruler of

Spain as Charles I, king also of Sicily and Naples and Spain's rich colonies in the New World. The next year, 1517, he sailed to Spain to establish his court at Valladolid. At 19 he inherited Austria from his grandfather Maximilian, the Holy Roman emperor.

In 1519 Charles was elected Holy Roman emperor as Charles V and was crowned in 1520. He ruled a vast territory than had any Christian monarch before him. His realm spread over Europe except in France, England and Russia and reached into the Americas.

Though Charles had been trained in warfare since early boyhood, he was always greedy for peace. Whenever possible, he settled disputes by compromise, yet he was involved in wars throughout his life.

He was a skilled leader in both land warfare and naval expeditions and was completely fearless. Once when his aides rebuked him for exposing himself to danger, he replied:

"We were short of men and I could not set a bad example."

His chief rival was Francis I of France, who claimed Charles's possessions in Italy. Three times between 1522 and 1544 Spanish armies had to defeat French forces before Francis gave up his claim.

Meanwhile, Charles was also warring against even more menacing foes—the Turks. They had poured up

CHARLES V



Amberg's painting shows the emperor's jutting Hapsburg chin.

### CHARLES V HEARS PIZARRO'S REPORT



The Spanish explorer Francisco Pizarro (left) tells of the riches he found in Peru and points to trophies he has brought back. Charles then supported Pizarro's expedition of conquest, but historians believe he knew nothing of Pizarro's cruelty.

the Danube Valley, taking his lands in Austria and Hungary. In 1532 he forced them from Austria but had to recognize their hold on Hungary. Still another threat were Mohammedan pirates, who raided his coast towns in Spain and Italy. Three times Charles fought them in their strongholds in northern Africa.

Charles, usually the victorious warrior, met complete defeat in his efforts to stop the great religious and social revolution in Germany, called the Reformation (see Reformation). There Martin Luther, a monk, led a revolt against the Roman Catholic church (see Luther). From 1521 to 1555 Charles tried to stem the rise of Protestantism; but in 1555 he had to sign the Peace of Augsburg.

In intervals of peace, he turned to statecraft to stabilize his realm. One of his favorite means was to arrange strategic royal marriages. He married Isabella of Portugal, betrothed his sister Mary to the king of Hungary, his brother Ferdinand to the king's sister, and his son Philip to Mary Tudor of England.

## CHARLES, *Kings of* ENGLAND, SCOTLAND, and IRELAND

TWO KINGS of Britain were named Charles. Both were of the house of Stuart.

CHARLES I (born 1600, ruled 1625-1649) ended his life on the scaffold. It was his unhappy lot to occupy the English throne in the days of the Puritan Revolution and at a time when new ideas of the rights of the people were coming into sharpest conflict with the old theory of the divine right of kings.

Charles was the son of James I (James VI of Scotland), first of the Stuart line. From his birth, he was a weak child. He did not learn to talk until his fifth year or to walk until his seventh. He stammered all his life. His character was a curious mixture of weakness and obstinacy. He followed the advice of his favorite ministers because he did not trust his own judgment, but once having formed an opinion he clung obstinately to it. Like his unpopular father, he lacked the skill of understanding the desires of his subjects and of winning their confidence.

In the same year that Charles succeeded to the throne (1625) he married a French princess, Henrietta Maria, the daughter of Henry IV. The marriage was unpopular in England because the queen was a zealous Roman Catholic and had been brought up in the court of an absolute monarch. Her influence with that of other advisers was largely responsible for confirming the king in the course of action that led to his war with Parliament.

The issue was primarily whether the king of England was an absolute king, like the sovereigns of continental Europe, or whether his power of levying taxes and of making laws was limited by the powers of Parliament. In addition to this, there was a quarrel about religion. Many of Charles's subjects, known as Puritans, wanted to simplify the Church of England's services by omitting many ceremonies used by Roman Catholics. Charles, on the other hand, wanted to retain as many as possible of the old ceremonies. He

He let the diverse parts of his realm largely govern themselves but made improvements where he felt needed. He was especially interested in the rule of his colonies in the Americas.

Tired by his long, tumultuous reign, and especially by his failure to halt the Reformation, Charles resigned his realm to his son Philip II and his brother Ferdinand I (see Philip, Kings of Spain). Charles kept the title of Holy Roman emperor until his death but did not use its power. He retired to a small home adjoining St. Jerome's monastery at Yuste, where he died in 1558.

CHARLES VI (born 1685, ruled 1711-1740). Charles VI became Holy Roman emperor in 1711. He was the father of Maria Theresa and last of the direct male line of the Hapsburgs (see Maria Theresa).

CHARLES VII (born 1697, ruled 1742-1745). Charles VII, duke of Bavaria, ruled the empire for only three years. He had been elected by French opposition to the Hapsburgs.

even went so far as to make people fear that he wished to restore Catholicism. So Charles was opposed both for religious and political reasons.

### Charles Quarrels with Parliament

Charles dissolved two Parliaments because the House of Commons refused to vote money he demanded unless he recognized that his ministers were responsible to Parliament. On the advice of these ministers, Charles had embarked on foreign wars that were both expensive and disastrous. To pay for them, he resorted to forced loans and other irregular devices.

When Charles called his third Parliament, in 1628, he faced tremendous hostility. This Parliament stated its major grievances in the celebrated Petition of Right, which called the king's attention to his illegal exactions and restated the limitations of the king's authority. Charles signed the petition in order to get the money he needed. Then, angry at the humiliation he had suffered, he dissolved Parliament and determined never to call another.

For 11 years—from 1629 to 1640—no Parliament met in England. During this period Charles and his ministers thought of further unpopular devices to raise money. To equip a fleet, the king demanded "ship money" from his subjects, maintaining that this was not a tax. John Hampden, a Puritan, holdly refused to pay the 20 shillings levied upon him in order to bring the matter to court. Many people applauded his courageous stand (see Hampden).

### The Long Parliament

In 1633 William Laud was made archbishop of Canterbury. Laud attempted to enforce his High Church policy in both Scotland and England. All Scotland rose in revolt when Laud attempted to impose a modified form of the English Prayer Book on the Scottish church. Unable to put down the revolt, Charles at length summoned another Parliament in 1640 but sent it home after five weeks. This is called the

**Short Parliament** When another Parliament was called in the same year it passed an act stating it could not be dissolved without its own consent. Thus Parliament became famous as the Long Parliament.

The Long Parliament began by imprisoning the king's chief minister the Earl of Strafford as well as Archbishop Laud in the Tower of London (Strafford was executed in 1641 and Laud four years later). In the Grand Remonstrance it listed Charles's faults and demanded that the king's ministers be responsible to Parliament. The document was printed and circulated throughout the country. Charles was furious and went to Parliament with an armed guard determined to arrest five of its members who led the opposition to him. His victims however had been warned of his approach and had fled. Thus legal act swiftly brought on civil war.

#### England's Civil War

Both Charles and Parliament at once began to gather troops. Those who supported Charles were called *Cavaliers*. Those who supported Parliament were known as *Roundheads* because some of them cropped

the hair close. The Roundheads controlled London. Through Parliament they also controlled the navy and had the power of raising money by taxes.

The Roundheads soon found an incomparable leader in Oliver Cromwell. The battle of Marston Moor (1644) gave Cromwell's Ironsides the north of England where the king had enjoyed his chief support. The battle of Naseby the next year completed the king's overthrow. In 1647 he sought refuge with the Scottish army which had come to the aid of Parliament. The Scots handed him over to Parliament.

Many members of Parliament wanted the king restored to his throne. To prevent this the army took a hand. In 1648 Colonel Pride with a band of troops appeared at the door of the House of Commons and barred all Charles's supporters from entering. This illegal act is known as Pride's Purge. The sitting members of the Long Parliament popularly called the

Rump—then set up a high court to try the king for treason. The trial began Jan. 20 1649. On January 27 Charles was found guilty and condemned as a tyrant, traitor, murderer and public enemy. Three days later

he was beheaded in front of his palace of Whitehall in London while an enormous crowd looked on. The Rump Parliament then proclaimed England a commonwealth (see Cromwell).

Charles met his fate with dignity and composure. So striking was his bearing that one of his foes the Puritan poet Andrew Marvell wrote

He nothing common did or mean  
Upon that memorable scene  
But bowed his stately head  
Down as upon a bed.

Charles's faults were as a ruler. As a husband and a father he was beyond reproach. (See also English History.)

**CHARLES II** (born 1630 ruled 1660-1685) was the second son of Charles I. He was 19 years old and safe in France when his father was beheaded in 1649. England then became a commonwealth (that is a republic) with Oliver Cromwell as lord protector.

The Royalists of Scotland at once proclaimed young Charles their king so he went to Scotland and in 1651 was crowned king of the Scots at Scone. In the same year he marched into England with 10,000 Scots to halt Cromwell's advance but Cromwell defeated him at Worcester and put his army to rout. For six weeks Charles wandered about a fugitive with a price of £1,000 set on his head. More than 40 persons shared his secret yet not one betrayed him. After an amazing series of

#### ILL-FATED CHARLES I OF ENGLAND



Charles I's insistence upon his divine rights brought on civil war and his own execution. This famous picture is by Van Dyck.

## CHARLES II, THE "MERRY MONARCH"



This portrait of Charles II by an unknown artist shows the king in the type of wig worn by the Cavaliers.

adventures, including his concealment in a tree, the "royal oak," he escaped to France and spent ten years more in exile.

#### The Restoration

Cromwell died in 1658, and his son Richard proved unable to carry on the government. A new Parliament was called in 1660. It acknowledged Charles II as king, thus restoring the Stuart line. There was great rejoicing when Charles returned to England.

Charles II was not an admirable person, but he was an interesting one. Decidedly selfish, he had an easy good nature and charm of manner. One of his courtiers said that "he never said a foolish thing or did a wise one." Charles's reply was that his acts were those of his ministers, but his words were his own. He was well read, a patron of the drama, of painting and architecture. He was interested in science and founded the Royal Society in 1662, with himself as first president. However, the immorality of the "merry monarch" and the license that prevailed at his court became a scandal to many more than the members of the old Puritan party.

Charles's one purpose throughout his reign was to make himself an absolute monarch like his contemporary, Louis XIV of France. This led him to try to raise a standing army, to restore Catholicism, and to secure a close alliance with Louis XIV, to whom he looked for money and troops. He followed a crooked course, bribing, flattering, and yielding to Parliament whenever opposition proved too strong; for he was fully resolved "never to set forth on his wanderings again."

During the last five years of his reign Charles attained a great degree of success in all his policies. The money he received from Louis XIV made it possible for him to rule after 1680 without calling Parliament, and thus prevented it from excluding his Catholic brother James from succession to the throne. He himself on his death bed became a member of the Roman Catholic church.

Charles married Catherine of Braganza, daughter of the king of Portugal, but left no legitimate children. One of his favorites was Nell Gwynn, an actress.

During his reign the Great Plague of London occurred (1665) and in the next year, the Great Fire. There also took place two wars with the Dutch, but Parliament finally compelled Charles to make peace with this Protestant power. (See also English History.)

## CHARLES, *Kings of* FRANCE

THE FIRST Charles to rule over the French was Charlemagne. His reign, however, belongs rather to the history of western Europe than to any one of the separate kingdoms, and he is therefore not included in the numbering of the French kings who bore the name Charles (see Charlemagne). So Charlemagne's grandson, Charles the Bald, is called Charles I of France, though he is Charles II of the Holy Roman Empire. Similarly Charles the Fat is Charles II of France and Charles III of the Holy Roman Empire (see Charles, Holy Roman Emperors).

The next French kings who bore the name Charles were Charles III, called the Simple (ruled 893-929), and Charles IV, called the Fair (ruled 1322-1328).

CHARLES V (born 1337, ruled 1364-1380) was called Charles the Wise. His reign saw the beginning of the second period of the Hundred Years' War with the English. He was not himself a good warrior because of his poor health; but with the aid of his gen-

eral Bertrand du Guesclin, he succeeded in driving the English almost completely out of France. (See Hundred Years' War.)

CHARLES VI (born 1368, ruled 1380-1422), the son of Charles V, became insane when he reached manhood. Struggles for the control of the government divided the country into two great factions. The Duke of Burgundy, uncle of the king, had the king's brother, the Duke of Orleans, assassinated. Then furious civil war burst forth between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy. The Count of Armagnac led the Orleans faction.

In the midst of this civil strife the Hundred Years' War with England was renewed. England's hero king, Henry V, was victorious in 1415 at Agincourt (see Agincourt). In 1419 the Burgundians formed an alliance with the English. The young English king married Charles's daughter and forced on the French the Treaty of Troyes (1420) by which the king of

England should succeed Charles VI when he should die. Both King Charles and King Henry died in 1422. Henry VI of England, ten months old, was acknowledged king of France. In the south, however, the French claimant Dauphin Charles (later Charles VII) retained a feeble hold. (See Hundred Years War.)

**CHARLES VII** (born 1403, ruled 1422-1461) was not able to be crowned king until seven years after the death of his father, Charles VI—and then he owed his crown to the courage, faith, and enthusiasm of a simple peasant maid, Joan of Arc. In the period before he came to the throne, he was called the Dau-

### JOAN OF ARC AT THE CORONATION OF CHARLES VII



Here we see Charles receiving the crown in Reims Cathedral while Joan of Arc gives thanks. Charles owed his throne to this inspired peasant girl from Domrémy who led the French

armies to victory against the English. Charles was of weak character. When the English later condemned Joan of Arc to be burned at the stake, her king did nothing to help her.

phin. (This name, given to the eldest son of the French king, corresponded to the English Prince of Wales.)

After a series of brilliant successes in the field over the English, Joan was able to take the Dauphin to Reims for coronation in the cathedral where his ancestors had been crowned. When Joan fell into the hands of the English, Charles made no effort to save her, and she was burned at the stake as a heretic. Her influence, however, lived after her. Before the end of Charles's reign the English were driven from all France, except Calais, and the Hundred Years' War was at an end. (*See also Joan of Arc; Hundred Years' War.*)

Charles VII was timid and irresolute and haunted by fears that plotters would kill him; yet he proved to be remarkably strong in administration. His strength came largely from his capable counselors, who made many decisions for him and carried them out in his name. By a series of reforms he gave to the crown a standing army with improved artillery—for cannon were then in use—and a permanent source of income. He also encouraged commerce and literature. At the end of his reign the king of France was in a stronger position than he had been at the end of the reign of Charles V.

CHARLES VIII (born 1470, ruled 1483-1498) was a feeble successor to his father, Louis XI, that cold, cunning Renaissance ruler who had done so much to repair the ravages of the Hundred Years' War. Charles was only 13 years old when he came to the throne. For a time he submitted to the regency of his elder sister, Anne of Beaujeu, of whom her cynical father had once said: "There is no such thing as a wise woman, but Anne is the least foolish woman in the world." Anne proved to be an able regent and soon showed the feudal princes that they must respect the power of the throne. She brought Brittany into the French kingdom by arranging the marriage of the young Charles VIII to Anne de Bretagne, duchess of Brittany.

When Charles reached the age of 21, he took over the rule of France. In contrast to his shrewd sister, he was an impractical dreamer. He planned first the conquest of Italy and then a mighty expedition against the Turks at Constantinople. At first success attended his expedition into Italy in 1494. The people of Florence drove out their rulers, the Medici, and welcomed Charles to their city. He entered Rome and even Naples speedily fell into his hands.

Charles's enemies quickly formed a league against him, and he was glad to escape in 1495 from the country he had hoped to conquer. He returned home enthusiastic about the art and learning of Italy and thus helped to hasten the spread of the Italian Renaissance in France.

CHARLES IX (born 1540, ruled 1560-1574) came to the throne in the midst of the Reformation and the fierce civil wars between the Roman Catholics and the Huguenots (Protestants). The crimes that mar-

the history of his reign were largely the work of his ambitious mother, Catherine, of the famous Medici family (*see Medici*).

Charles was only ten years old when he became king, and Catherine claimed the right to rule for him. Even when he reached manhood he was weak and hesitating and she continued to dominate him. In her desire to bring about the death of Gaspard de Coligny, the Huguenot leader, she goaded her son into giving orders that led to the Massacre of St. Bartholomew in 1572, when thousands of Huguenots, including Coligny, were killed (*see Coligny*). This crime preyed on Charles's mind and he became melancholy. He died two years later of a fever.

CHARLES X (1757-1838; ruled 1824-1830) belongs to a much later day, for he succeeded his brother Louis XVIII in 1824. He was a man of old-fashioned ideas who, even after the French Revolution, believed in the divine right of kings. His ambition was to restore the clergy to its former high position in the state, to create a powerful aristocracy, and to surround it with privileges.

In 1830 Charles dissolved the Chamber of Deputies and boldly issued a series of decrees ending the freedom of the press and completely restoring the power of the king. Two days later the republicans organized a successful revolution in Paris, which lasted only "three glorious days" (July 27-29). Charles then abdicated and fled to England, and Louis Philippe was placed on the throne.

CHARLES X OF FRANCE



Charles X, the last French king of that name, lost his throne through a foolish attempt to re-establish the old autocracy. Here we see him dressed in all his regal finery.

### CHARLES XII KING OF SWEDEN (1682-1718)

Brilliantly planned and executed battles proved Charles XII of Sweden a military genius but his stubborn insistence on war all but brought ruin to his country. He won his first victory before he was 19 years old and by the time he was 26 he had won all his great victories. In the end however he not only lost control of the Baltic Sea but most of Sweden's provinces on the Baltic's eastern and southern shores as well.



Charles the son of Charles XI was born in Stockholm June 17, 1682. As a young boy he studied and admired great military leaders particularly Alexander the Great. He liked to hunt and to play rough games. He ate simple coarse food and followed a Spartan life in order to build up his own strength and endurance. He was intelligent but self-willed and when he became king at the age of 15 he refused to be crowned by any but his own hand.

Frederick IV of Denmark, Peter the Great of Russia and Augustus II of Poland and Saxony began the Great Northern War in 1700 to wrest Sweden's Baltic provinces from the youthful king. Charles struck back at his enemies one by one. He crossed the narrow sea to Zealand and besieged Copenhagen forcing Frederick to accept the Peace of Traventhal (August 1700). Immediately he sailed across the Baltic with 15,000 men and on Nov. 30, 1700 he routed 100,000 Russians that were besieging the city of Narva. He then drove south into Poland.

During the next six years Charles fought and won many battles against Russia and Poland. He replaced Augustus on the Polish throne with a king of his own choice. He frightened Emperor Joseph I of the Holy Roman Empire into granting freedom of worship to the Lutherans of Silesia. His devotion to warfare led many people to call him the madman of the North.

#### Charles Invades Russia

Peter's soldiers continued to harass the Swedes and in 1707 Charles led his army deep into Russia. Disaster began when Peter defeated a Swedish army that was bringing supplies and reinforcements. Charles's Cossack allies failed him. When Charles tried to capture Russian supplies at Poltava about 800 miles southeast of the Baltic the Russians overwhelmed his poorly equipped soldiers (July 8, 1709).

Charles was wounded and fled with a remnant of his army into Turkey. From 1709 to 1714 he unsuccessfully urged the Turkish sultan to war on Russia. In 1713 the sultan ordered Charles to leave. For more than a year the Swedish king refused. Charles reached Stralsund on the Baltic by an overland journey in

1714. For a time he withstood a siege there. He then escaped across the Baltic to Sweden.

By this time Sweden had lost most of its outlying provinces. To regain some of its lost territory Charles raised a new army and invaded Norway (then part of Denmark). On Dec. 11, 1718, as he laid siege to Fredriksten, he was killed.

Among other Swedish kings named Charles were Charles IX, reigned 1604-11, the father of Gustavus Adolphus; Charles X, 1654-60, nephew of Gustavus; Charles XI, 1660-97, and Charles XV, 1859-72. **CHARLES THE BOLD DUKE OF BURGUNDY** (1433-1477) Charles Duke of Burgundy whose exciting story is told in Sir Walter Scott's *Quentin Durward* lived at the end of the Middle Ages. He was a little man with blue eyes, brown beard and a shock of black hair. He was strong, industrious and pious and also proud and ambitious.

Charles inherited from his father in 1476 the French duchy of Burgundy. His lands included also Franche-Comté, Luxembourg, Flanders, Artois, Brabant and the Netherlands (Belgium and Holland). His lands were divided however and he was ambitious to add Alsace and other territories to unite the northern and southern sections. Then he would have a strong state between France and the German lands over which he hoped to rule as king.

The king of France Louis XI was trying to free France of feudalism and bring all the great feudal states into one kingdom. Charles—whose power was equal to the king's—rivalled the king's hands and encouraged other nobles to resist him. Rashly the king paid a visit to Charles hoping to gain by his wits what he could not win by force of arms.

While the king was with him, alarming reports reached Charles that the citizens of Liège had revolted against him. He well knew that they had been stirred up by the shrewd and treacherous Louis. Louis was in his power but he had promised him that he should be safe while he was in Burgundian territory. He kept his word. However he forced the king to go with him on his expedition against Liège and to sit by while its walls were destroyed and its citizens suffered death or exile for trusting to Louis' promise of aid.

Charles then turned his attention eastward. He easily mastered the duchy of Lorraine but his conquests in Alsace brought him into conflict with the sturdy mountaineers of Switzerland. Charles basely slaughtered the inhabitants of the little town of Granon after its surrender on terms. In return the Swiss inflicted a severe defeat on Charles near that city (March 1, 1476). A few months later (June 21, 1476) the Swiss cut to pieces at Morat a second army raised by the haughty duke.

In January Charles received news of the revolt of the town of Nancy which he had conquered the year before. He hastened into Lorraine to put down the revolt. Once more his horsemen were no match for the intrepid Swiss pikemen who had come to Nancy's aid. The battle (Jan. 5, 1477) was short.



When it was over, Charles the Bold could not be found. Three days later, a body on the battlefield was identified as that of the duke.

Louis XI deprived Charles's daughter, Mary of Burgundy, of all her French possessions. The Netherlands passed to the House of Hapsburg when Mary married Maximilian of Austria.

The name Burgundy has not always meant the same territory. There were at different times in the Middle Ages five different kingdoms of Burgundy. Most of these included the valley of the Rhone River, which was never a part of Charles's possessions.

**CHARLES MARTEL** (688-741). By the year 732, exactly 100 years after the death of Mohammed, the flood tide of the Saracen armies had swept west from Arabia across northern Africa, had conquered Spain, and was rolling irresistibly northward through France.

The sword of Islam was striving to convert the world to Mohammedanism by the effective method of exterminating unbelievers. Sixteen years before, the Saracen hordes, sweeping northward at the eastern end of the Mediterranean, had been stayed at Constantinople, and Christendom had withstood unshaken the first great hammer blow of the Moslem power. Now the fate of Europe again hung in the balance, as the green banner of the Prophet stood before Tours, within striking distance of Paris.

The defeated leaders of southern Gaul were sending up a despairing cry for help. Suddenly out of the North a Frankish host headed by Charles, mayor of the palace for the Merovingian puppet king at Cologne, fell upon the invaders between Poitiers and Tours. A terrible battle followed. The wild riders of the desert dashed hour after hour in ceaseless charges against the solidly compacted infantry of the North. They came on like the leaping waves of the ocean, to be scattered backward like its spray. The folds of the eastern turban afforded slight protection against the huge swords wielded by the stalwart arms of the Frankish veterans, while the scimitars of Damascus glanced harmlessly from the stout helmets of steel and thick leather corselets of the Franks. Finally the Moslem chief was killed and the foe was sent flying back to the Pyrenees. Europe was again saved to Christianity and Charles had earned his title "Martel," meaning the Hammer.

Charles Martel, as conqueror and virtual ruler of the entire Frankish kingdom—though he never assumed the crown—prepared the way for his son, Pepin the Short, to gain the throne. Together they laid the foundation for the future world power of Pepin's son, Charles the Great (Charlemagne).

**CHARLESTON, S. C.** The beautiful city of Charleston occupies a mile-wide peninsula in a bay between the Ashley and Cooper rivers, a few miles from the Atlantic Ocean. Running north from the Battery (or lower water fronts) are King and Meeting streets, the main thoroughfares. Broad Street divides the old, fashionable, residential city to the south from

## AN OLD CHARLESTON MANSION



This house was built before the start of the Revolutionary War by Col. John Stuart. The painted brick wall, probably built at a later date, encloses a well-shaded lawn and garden.

the business and industrial city to the north. Water-front driveways meet in White Point Gardens at the tip of the peninsula.

In its old homes and streets lingers the flavor of the days when Charleston was the gay social, political, and economic center for the royal province of Carolina. Charleston was important in colonial times and in the Revolutionary and Civil wars. Nearby is Fort Moultrie, a battle site in the Revolution. In the harbor stands Fort Sumter, target for the first shot of the Civil War. In White Point Gardens, Stede Bonnet and his buccaneer crew were hanged in 1718. When Boston had its Tea Party, Charleston locked its tea in the Old Exchange rather than pay tax. Sir Henry Clinton used the Miles Brewton house on King Street as his headquarters during the British occupation in 1780-82. Built about 1765, it is one of the most nearly perfect Georgian houses in America. (For history, see South Carolina.)

Among the old buildings now used as museums is the Old Powder Magazine, built in 1703. Most notable is Charleston Museum, which dates from 1773. The Charleston Library Society, organized in 1748, has newspapers dating back to 1732. The county's free library is in a Classic revival mansion. The Dock Street Theater, opened in 1736, has been restored. The theater and the Gibbes Art Gallery are managed by the Carolina Art Association. In City Hall hang John Trumbull's 'Portrait of George Washington' and Samuel F. B. Morse's 'Portrait of James Monroe'.

The College of Charleston, founded in 1770, is the oldest municipal college in the country. Other educational institutions are the Medical College of the State of South Carolina and the Citadel (Military College of South Carolina).

Each spring the Azalea Festival brings thousands of visitors to Charleston and nearby gardens. Along the Ashley, the magnificent Magnolia Gardens were laid out by a clergyman planter a century ago. The formal Middleton Gardens were built about 1750 by Henry Middleton, a president of the Continental Con-

gress The shadowy Cypress Gardens have been formed about the reserve waters of an old rice plantation

A three-mile bridge over the Cooper River connects Charleston with the mainland on the east On the neck of the peninsula are railroads, industrial plants, docks, and warehouses Important industries are shipbuilding and repairing, petroleum refining, and the manufacture of fertilizers, pulp, paper, textiles, cigars, and steel and wood products The port carries on a large trade in these products and in cotton, lumber, sea food, and fruit It is the official state port and is on the Intracoastal Waterway The harbor can berth the largest ships and hundreds of vessels The United States Navy maintains a regional headquarters and shipyard on the Cooper River

Charleston has the mayor-council form of city government Population (1930 census), 70,174

**CHARLESTON, W. VA.** The capital city of West Virginia serves as hub of the Kanawha Valley The valley is cut into the Appalachian plateau in the western part of the state It is a thriving industrial area and one of the richest soft-coal and natural-gas regions in the world Charleston stretches along the north bank of the Kanawha River The Elk River, flowing into the Kanawha at this point, divides the city into east and west sections

The main industry of the Charleston area is the production of chemicals Large quantities of synthetic chemical products, such as nylon and resin plastics, are produced here and shipped elsewhere to be made into finished goods Other plants manufacture glass, steel, axes, anti-freezers, ammonia, and chlorine Served by four railroads, Charleston is an important distributing point for manufactured goods and for the extensive valley resources of coal, oil, and natural gas

Charleston's history dates from the establishment of Fort Lee in 1788 by Col. George Clendenen Its early settlers were Scotch-Irish and Germans from the Shenandoah Valley Daniel Boone lived here with his family from 1789 to 1795 He represented Kanawha County in the Virginia Assembly for one term Another pioneer of this period was "Mad Ann" Baxley, famed for her Indian dress and rifle marksmanship

Charleston became the permanent state capital in 1885 The capitol, overlooking the Kanawha River, is of Italian Renaissance architecture and was completed in 1932 Among the city's attractions are a

five-lane river-front boulevard, a large civic auditorium and Kanawha Airport Morris Harvey College and Mason College of Music and Fine Arts are located here The city has the mayor-council form of government (See also West Virginia.) Population (1930 census) 73,501

**CHARLOTTE, N. C.** Its location in the center of the fertile Piedmont Plain has made Charlotte the largest city of the two Carolinas The city is the trade center for a wide area and one of the nation's largest textile centers Cotton for its plants comes from surrounding farms and power for its looms from hydro-electric developments in the Appalachians, to the

west Cotton gins, cotton mills and hosiery factories cluster around the city's outskirts Workers cottages, all much alike stretch in long rows about these factories Other manufactures include machinery, chemicals, and furniture

Wilderness trails crossed at the point that is now Independence Square The first cabins were built here in 1748 The settlement was named for Queen Charlotte, the wife of George III America's first declaration of independence (the Mecklenburg Declaration) was signed here on May 20, 1775, by Scotch-Irish and German settlers from Virginia and Pennsylvania During a British occupation for two weeks in 1780 local patriots so harassed the enemy that Lord Cornwallis called the town "a damned hornets' nest"

At the end of the 1700's Charlotte was the scene of the nation's first gold rush The government began operating a mint here in 1836 The mines were closed after gold was discovered in California in 1848, but they were reopened briefly in the 1930's Charlotte had woolen mills as early as 1854 The city's first rail line, to the sea, began operation in 1856 During the Civil War Charlotte became an inland naval supply base for the Confederates In the last days of the war, Jefferson Davis, president of the Confederacy, held the last full meeting of the Confederate cabinet in Charlotte in April 1865 The city's real growth as a textile center began in the early 1900's

Charlotte is the seat of Queens College, for women, and the Johnson C. Smith University, for Negroes The Mint Museum, reconstructed on the plan and of the materials of the old mint, houses an art collection Charlotte was incorporated in 1768 It has the council-manager form of government (See also North Carolina.) Population (1930 census), 134,042

CITY OF THE 'OLD AND THE NEW



Charleston, S. C., is rich in historic landmarks, many dating back to colonial times. The city's great cultural harbor has made it one of the leading ports on the Atlantic

**CHÂTEAU-THIERRY** (*shā-tō' tyě-rē'*), FRANCE. The name of Château-Thierry recalls the most critical period of the first World War. Near this ancient French town, the power of Germany spent itself in a last vain drive to capture Paris during June and July, 1918. And from here the Allies began the eastward march that ended across the Rhine.

Château-Thierry lies on the River Marne, 47 miles east and slightly north of Paris. With Reims, 32 miles farther east, and Soissons, 23 miles to the north, Château-Thierry forms a great triangle commanding the railway and river approaches to Paris.

On May 27, 1918, the German army smashed into this triangle, capturing Soissons May 29 and occupying Château-Thierry two days later. To halt the advance, American troops rushed to the aid of the weary French forces. The 7th machine-gun battalion of the Third Division arrived in time to hold the Château-Thierry bridge over the Marne. When other American units reinforced the line, word was cabled to all parts of the world that the Americans had saved Paris. Later these troops took part in the counterattack which swept the Germans out of the triangle.

Château-Thierry today is a city of 7,283 people (1946 census). Its inhabitants inherit from their ancestors a faculty for repairing the ravages of war, for their little town has been sacked and destroyed about every hundred years since the 15th century. The poet La Fontaine was born here in 1621. On the

top of a near-by hill are the ruins of a castle, supposedly built by Charles Martel for the Frankish king Thierry IV, for whom the town is named.

**CHATHAM** (*chăt'ām*), WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF (1703-1778). "I know that I can save the country and that no one else can," proudly boasted William Pitt the Elder, in 1757, when England was losing battle after battle in the great Seven Years' War.

There was little in Pitt's background to warrant such a statement. He did not belong to the great noble families which had long governed England. He had studied at Eton but he had left Oxford before obtaining his degree because of his life-long enemy—gout. He had served for a time in the army. In 1735 he had entered the House of Commons from the "pocket borough" of Old Sarum, which his family owned.

In parliament Pitt won notice for his vigorous opposition to the governing clique then in power. But he received no official recognition until 1746 when he was finally named to a minor office. Even this appointment contradicted the wishes of George II whom Pitt had angered by his attacks on Hanover.

But it was the support of the people, not of the king, that finally gave Pitt the coveted office of prime minister. He had gained the public confidence during a term as paymaster by refusing to accept anything except his salary. As a result, when England suffered defeats at the beginning of the war the people demanded the "Great Commoner" so loudly that the king at last yielded.

As prime minister Pitt's fiery leadership stirred the entire government to greater activity. He appointed navy and army officers solely for their ability. He sent Gen. James Wolfe to Canada and won that land for Great Britain. He encouraged Clive in India and gave aid to England's ally on the continent, Frederick the Great of Prussia.

But before the end of the war George III, who became king in 1760, undermined Pitt's influence over the cabinet. As a result Pitt resigned a year later. Returning to his seat in the House of Commons he upheld the American colonists in their opposition to the Stamp Act and rejoiced in their resistance.

In 1766 Pitt again became prime minister, but his health failed and for critical months he left everything to subordi-

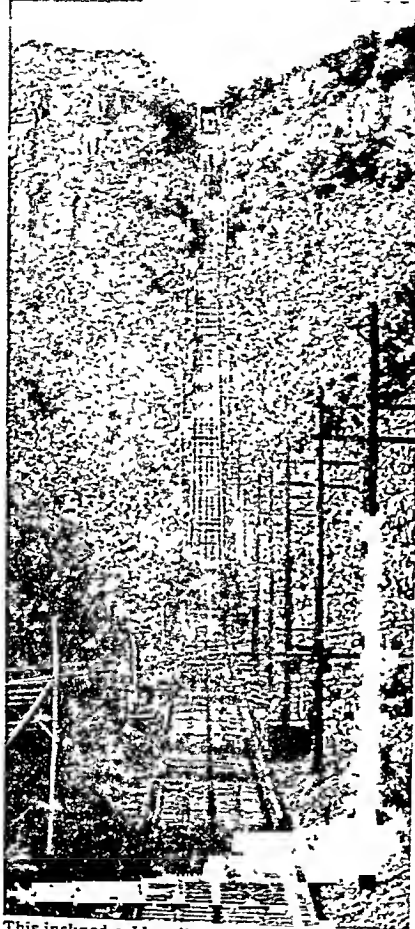
nates. Also, he lost popular support by accepting the title of Earl of Chatham, which transferred him to the House of Lords. In 1778 he made his last speech, opposing American independence. He collapsed at the end of the speech and died a few weeks later.

Chatham's younger son, also named William Pitt, won even greater fame for his statesmanship in the trying days of the French Revolution and the Napoleonic Wars. (See Pitt, William, the Younger.)

**CHATTANOOGA, TENN.** A favorable location astride natural transportation routes gave Chattanooga its start. Other natural advantages—nearby deposits of coal, iron, and clay and vast water-power resources—led to its growth as a manufacturing center.

Chattanooga lies on the Tennessee River in a gap in the Appalachians which provides a passage from the

#### A STEEP CLIMB UP LOOKOUT



This inclined cable railway, which scales Lookout Mountain, has a grade of 73 degrees at the point shown in the picture.

Atlantic coastal states to the northeastern Tennessee and Ohio valleys. Thus, when the state of Georgia in 1836 decided to build the Western and Atlantic Railroad northwest from the site of Atlanta to tap the Tennessee Valley, the route reached the spot where Chattanooga now stands. Soon a network of railroads radiated from the site. A town grew up and was incorporated as Chattanooga in 1839. In 1860, the census showed it to have 2,545 inhabitants.

Because of its strategic situation, Chattanooga and the surrounding region were the scene of heavy fighting during the Civil War (see Chattanooga, Battle of). For many years after the war, growth was slow. Then in 1913, a dam, power house, and navigation lock were completed at Hale's Bar on the Tennessee 33 miles below the city. Cheap hydroelectric power gave impetus to manufacturing, and today the city's products include steam boilers, farming and oil-well machinery, clay and metal pipe, stoves, bathroom fixtures, mill supplies, furniture, bottles, structural steel, and cotton, wool and silk textiles. One of the huge dams of the Tennessee Valley Authority development project is just north of the city.

The heart of Chattanooga is on level ground 698 feet above sea level. Two highway bridges across the Ten-

nessee and four tunnels bring national highways into the mountain-ringed city. The surrounding ridges and mountains are dominated by Lookout Mountain, some three miles south-west, which rises 2,126 feet above sea level. All the heights are heavily wooded, with parks at historic spots, and are favorite resorts for hikers and tourists. Except for a national military cemetery, the battlefield of Missionary Ridge is now a fine residential district, but the battlefield of Chickamauga, across the Georgia border, is a national military park. Among the city's educational institutions are the University of Chattanooga, established 1866, and a conservatory of music. It also supports a symphony orchestra and a Little Theater.

A Cherokee Indian trading post, called *Ross' Landing*, originally stood on the site of Chattanooga. The city's name came from *Tastanuga*, a Choctaw name given to the post office, which was established in 1838. The commonly accepted translation of the word is "crow's nest." Chattanooga has had the commission form of government since 1911. Population (1950 census), 131,041.

**CHATTANOOGA, BATTLE OF** One of the most dramatic reversals of fortune in the Civil War was the Union victory at the Battle of Chattanooga. It followed the rout of the Union army under General Rosecrans by the Confederates under General Bragg at

Chickamauga, on Sept. 20, 1863 (see Thomas, Gen. George Henry). Rosecrans' army took refuge in Chattanooga, Tenn., while Bragg occupied Missionary Ridge east of the city and Lookout Mountain to the southwest.

Roads made impassable by rain and Confederate troops cut the Union army off from its base of supplies at Bridgeport, Ala., downstream on the Tennessee River. Prospects for a retreat were not bright, because the horses were fast becoming too weak from lack of food to pull cannon and supply wagons.

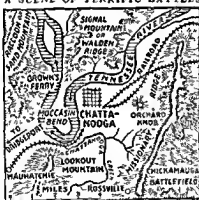
When the peril became acute, the Federal government sent Sherman with an army from Vicksburg, sent Hooker and 15,000 men from the east, and placed Grant in supreme command. Grant replaced Rosecrans with Thomas and promptly launched the operations which together make up the Battle of Chattanooga. On Oct. 27 and 28, with minor engagements at Brown's Ferry and Wauhatchie, he cleared the Tennessee River of Confederates west of Lookout Mountain and seized a direct road to Bridgeport.

#### The Noted "Battle Above the Clouds"

After capturing Orchard Knob, a hill lying west of Missionary Ridge, on Nov. 23, Grant sent Hooker on Nov. 24 to attack Lookout Mountain—a seemingly

foolhardy move, because the mountain-sides were steep and choked with vegetation. Moreover, a thick fog had gathered—which gave the battle its name. But Hooker had more than 9,000 men against fewer than 2,000 defenders, and by afternoon the lower slopes were won. Meanwhile, Sherman, according to Grant's plan, attacked the north end of Missionary Ridge and Bragg abandoned Lookout Mountain to meet him. An unsuspected gully and a stubborn defense stopped Sherman, and a wrecked bridge kept Hooker from attacking. By the afternoon of Nov. 25, Grant was facing defeat unless he could weaken

#### A SCENE OF TERRIFIC BATTLES



This map shows Chattanooga and its surroundings as they were during the Civil War. East of Missionary Ridge is the gap leading to Atlanta.

the Confederates' defense against Sherman.

He ordered Thomas to capture a line of rifle pits at the foot of the Ridge. But, this done, Thomas' men, instead of halting as ordered, followed on the heels of the Confederates to the top of the ridge. The astonished Union generals could only follow, and the equally astonished Confederates at the top broke and fled. Soon Bragg's entire army was in headlong flight.

This victory, snatched from defeat by the Union men, gave the North control of the railroads centered in Chattanooga, and left the South only one route, through Atlanta, between the east and the west. During these battles the Union army, with some 56,000 men, suffered 5,815 casualties. The Confederates, with about 41,000, lost 6,687 killed, wounded, or captured.

## CHAUCER, the First Great ENGLISH POET

**C**HAUCER (*cha'sér*), GEOFFREY (about 1340-1400). Father of the English language, Morning Star of Song, Geoffrey Chaucer yet ranks, after five centuries, among the three or four greatest English poets. He was the first to commit to lines of universal and enduring appeal a vivid interest

in nature, books, and people. Many-sided as Shakespeare, he did for English narrative what Shakespeare accomplished for drama. If he lacks the profundity of Shakespeare, he excels in playfulness of mood and simplicity of expression. Though his language often seems quaint to us, he was essentially modern. Familiarity with the language and with the literature of his contemporaries convinces the most skeptical that he is on this side of the line between the old and the new, nearer to the present than many writers born long after he died.

### The Poet's Life

Geoffrey Chaucer was born in London, probably between 1340 and 1344. He was the son of Agnes de Copton and John Chaucer, a prosperous wine merchant. The name, from *chaussier*, indicates ancestors who were shoemakers. In 1357, when he was between 13 and 17 years old, Geoffrey was a page in the household of King Edward's son Prince Lionel and his wife Elizabeth. We know this from an entry in Countess Elizabeth's household account book, which records the purchase of a suit of clothes for Geoffrey Chaucer, including a pair of red and black hose and a pair of shoes. These must have been lively days for the young page, for old records show us the Countess and her household constantly on the move from one palace or great mansion to another. We even find mention of a trip to see the lions in the Tower of London. Two years later, Chaucer was with an army that Edward III led into France during the Hundred Years' War. He was taken prisoner by the French, but was soon (1360) ransomed by the King for a sum equivalent to about \$2,400 in our money.

Of his next seven years, we know nothing certain; but there is reason to believe that he may have been studying law in London. By 1367 he was a member of the royal household with the rank of yeoman, and later, of squire, with a regular pension or salary. He

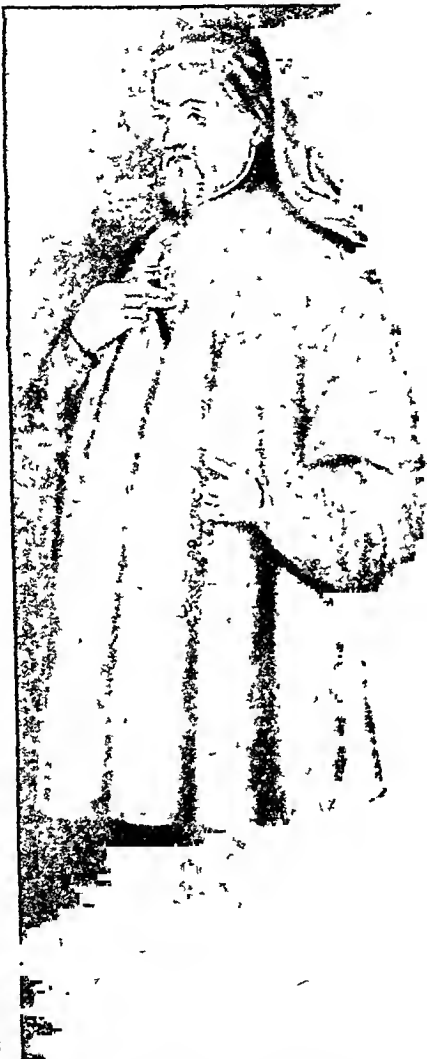
also had a wife, Philippa, who was a member of the queen's household. Thus some time in his twenties Chaucer was launched on the official career which he followed the rest of his days. For the next 30-odd years he served two kings (Edward III and Richard II) in important offices and diplomatic missions abroad. Between 1370 and 1378 he was sent on seven missions to France, Flanders, and Italy. From 1374 to 1386 he was controller of the customs in London. In 1385 he was appointed justice of the peace, and in 1386 he sat for one term in parliament. From 1389 to 1391 came a succession of onerous and responsible posts: he was made clerk of the king's works with charge of Westminster Palace, the Tower of London and other palaces and manors, he was put on a commission to survey the roads, bridges, and ditches along the Thames near London; and he was put in charge of repairs to St. George's Chapel at Windsor. A less exacting post fell to him in 1391, when he was made subforester of one of the king's parks. In this position he may have held until his death, Oct. 25, 1400.

Soldier, diplomat, justice of the peace, member of parliament, and man of affairs, Chaucer lived a full and busy life. He was born soon after the beginning of the Hundred Years' War; he lived through the terrible years of the Black Death, through John Wyclif's dramatic challenge to the established church, through the Peasants' Revolt of 1381, and through the deposition of Richard II.

### Poet of Nature

London, with its 40,000 people, was then a rural city. Garden and orchard surrounded the homes; fields and meadow were in sight of Chaucer's window; moor-

GEOFFREY CHAUCER



No contemporary portrait of Chaucer is known to exist. The painting above, in the National Portrait Gallery, London, is supposed to have been copied after a miniature, in a 15th-century manuscript, made from memory by a fellow-poet and disciple.

heath, and forest were within easy walking distance. A boy, he skated down the frozen ponds but shared with most others a dislike of the cold, and, though responsive to the beauty of stars on a frosty night, he preferred showers of April, garlands of May and melody of birds. He is the poet of dawn and spring.

He threw on literature both classic and recent. Ovid, Vergil, Livy, Boethius, Petrarch, Dante

and Jean de Meun are among the authors of whom his pages are abundantly reminiscent, some of them he transmuted into living English Literature of the past he got not infrequently by word of mouth, since printing was yet to be invented and books were scarce. Taking what he needed from others he remolded and immortalized it with narrative skill yet unsurpassed. His foremost characteristic is humor, twinkling, quietly glowing, or loudly robust.

#### Poet of Humanity

In his England of expanding trade with all nations, England under that Edward who has been called the Father of English Commerce, he met shipman, merchant, overseer, plowman. In an era of changing religious ideas, he met the members of the various clerical orders from parish priest to abbot, and he probably knew John Wyclif, who wanted to reform the church. Yet, though his sharp eye detected abuses in the church, he was not deeply concerned nor was he particularly sympathetic with reformers. In his old age he made "retractations," begging God's forgiveness for "lewd songs" written, thanking God for lives of saints he had told. By that time, however, he felt old, his thoughts no longer fired on earth. In his prime he wrote sanely, heartily,

about men as he saw them leaving the reader to draw conclusions. He knew men of law and, in that period of his life about which nothing has been revealed, he may have studied law. He knew doctors and may have studied medicine in those same hidden years. He knew inn keepers at whose inns he doubtless drank the wine they had bought from his own father. On trips to the continent he mingled with men of high

#### CHAUCER READING HIS POETRY AT THE COURT OF EDWARD III



It would be pleasant to know that such a scene as this actually took place. We have no record, however, that the King knew Chaucer in any capacity other than that of public official. This painting, by the English artist Ford Madox Brown, now hangs in the National Art Gallery at Sydney.

estate directing national and international affairs. In Italy he may have known Petrarch and Boccaccio. At home he was a friend of the poet Gower, and he must have met the historian Froissart, who was at the English court when he himself was there.

From the day when he flashes before us, a page in red and black hose, Chaucer knew the noble way and the royal way of living. From his experiences as soldier he was acquainted with hardship on the field, and, at least once, he knew the misery of imprisonment in a foreign land. Familiar with the practises of chivalry, he satirized them as dying customs.

His knowledge of men, broadened by travel, was deepened by work at home. Controller of the customs in London, he daily met all manner of folk, native and foreign, clustering about the quay. There were customs evaders even then; he called them to account. Deputy forester, he met cottagers of Somerset. Knight of the Shire for Kent, he sat

PILGRIMS ON THEIR WAY TO CANTERBURY



This lively old picture shows us a group of pilgrims such as Chaucer had in mind when he wrote his 'Canterbury Tales'. Notice the medieval walled town they are passing. The picture is from a manuscript of a later Canterbury Tale written by John Lydgate about 1430.

with parliamentarians. As clerk of the king's works in charge of repairing royal residences and state buildings, he supervised carpenters and masons. He knew all classes; he saw all with clear-eyed vision, with humorous recognition of their foibles, and with sympathetic appreciation of their fineness.

Poet of humanity, he was necessarily a poet of love. His 'Troilus and Criseyde', in some respects his supreme accomplishment, is a perennially great love story and rightly has been termed the first English novel, though it is in verse. To be the poet of love, he needed to know, and he knew, women. Queen, duchess, nun, middle-class woman, lower-class woman, woman of whatever rank, Chaucer faithfully portrayed. His ladies of high station may be somewhat conventional; but those of lower level, for example, the Wife of Bath, are vigorously realistic.

Chaucer was, it is often remarked, a lucky man. Well-born, received early into noble and royal households, favorite of kings who gave him well-paid posts, he enjoyed life, for the most part, in genial fellowship with his peers, and so passed his days in serenity of spirit. He was, perhaps, not a good manager of his purse. Though he enjoyed comfortable salaries, he seems frequently to have been in need of ready money. On diplomatic missions, though later reimbursed by the king, he sometimes exceeded his allowance for

expenses. When as clerk of the works, he carried large sums for paying off the laborers, he was robbed two or three times; once he was severely beaten.

For the 12 years (1374-86) that he was controller of the customs, Chaucer and his wife lived in a house built above Aldgate, one of the gates in the city wall. Toward the end of 1386 he may have lived in Kent,

which he was elected to represent in Parliament that year. Nothing is known about his place of residence again until December 1399, when he leased a house, less than a year before his death in the garden of Westminster Abbey. He was buried in the abbey because he lived there. In later years other men of letters were buried near him and so his tomb became the nucleus of the famous Poet's Corner.

Chaucer's Influence on the Language

Five or six centuries ago when there were no printed books and contacts between various parts of England were few, there were striking differences in the English language as spoken in different regions (see English Language).

Furthermore, the language of the Court was French, and the language of learning was Latin. Chaucer played an important part in developing the English language. First, he was the first great writer to use the native tongue instead of French or Latin. Second, he used the English of London and thus helped to establish the English of the Midland counties, rather than the Northern or the Southern dialects, as the standard form.

Chief Works and Editions

Exact dates cannot be assigned to Chaucer's various works since they were not "published" in the modern sense. The following list gives the approximate dates of composition: 'The Book of the Duchess' (1369-70); 'The House of Fame' (1372-80); 'The Parliament of Birds' (1380); 'Troilus and Criseyde' (1380-86); 'The Legend of Good Women' (1358-86); the Prologue and earlier written 'Canterbury Tales' (1387-92); later written 'Canterbury Tales' (1393-1400).

For general reading these one-volume editions are recommended: 'The Student's Chaucer', edited by W. W. Skeat (Oxford, 1929); 'Poetical Works', edited by F. N. Robinson (Houghton, 1947). The best edition is 'Complete Works', edited by W. W. Skeat, 7v. (Oxford, 1894-97). 'The Book of Troilus and Criseyde', edited by R. K. Root (Princeton Univ. Press, 1926) is the definitive text of this poem.

For high-school students there are F. E. Hill's translation of 'Canterbury Tales' into modern English verse (Hentage, 1946); and 'The Modern Reader's Chaucer', in prose by J. S. P. Tatlock and Percy MacKaye (Macmillan, 1912). For younger readers: 'Story of the Canterbury Pilgrims', by F. J. H. Darton (Lippincott, 1914); 'Tales from Chaucer', by Eleanor Farjeon (Bransford, 1930). Books about Chaucer: 'Geoffrey Chaucer of England' by M. G. Chute (Dutton, 1946) and 'Chaucer's World', compiled by Edith Rickert and edited by C. C. Olson and M. M. Crow (Col. Univ. Press, 1945).

# Chaucer's Greatest Work, the 'Canterbury Tales'

HARRY Badly a Tabard Inn in Southwark across the Thames from London was a place where pilgrims to Canterbury liked to spend the night before an early start next morning. In spring and summer it was always crowded, for the people of 14th-century Eng-

land loved to make pilgrimages to the shrines of their favorite saints and of these pleasant holiday excursions none was more popular than the one to the shrine of St. Thomas Becket at Canterbury (See Becket Thomas Canterbury Pilgrims.)

On the evening of April 16, 1387, Chaucer brings together at the Tabard

that three broadly humorous tales in succession would be marvellous moreover the company was drawing up at the Darford inn.

## The Second Day

Next morning at ten o'clock after a late start Harry called upon the Man of Law who contributed the virtuous story of Constance emphasizing constancy under misfortune. In his enthusiasm at the close of this profitable tale the Host stood up in his stirrups and cried with an oath for a story by the Parson. Upon being reproved for swearing he sulkily retorted that doubtless now they would all get a sermon. The Shipman declaring that the Parson should do no preaching broke in with a *fabliau* about a merchant's wife and a monk. Harry then turned to the Prioress who sobered the pilgrims with the miracle tale of the little clerk (choir boy) who was murdered but continued to sing after death. Feeling the need of something gay Harry now addressed Chaucer: "You have as well shaped a waist as I have," says Harry jokingly and remarks on Chaucer's fair face and his abstracted look. Chaucer then tells the tedious Tale of Sir Thopas brilliantly burlesquing the popular metrical romance but he is cut short by the Host whose ears ache from such doggerel. Protesting that he should have another chance Chaucer tries again and for two hours without interruption spins out a dull sermon in prose about Melibeus and his wife Prudence.

After wishing his wife had heard of patient Prudence the Host called upon the Monk who presented 16 examples of tragedy of men fallen from high to low estate. Beginning with Lucifer and Adam he had got as far as Croesus when Harry declared they had all had enough. It would be more joyful he said to hear of men who had climbed from poor estate to good fortune. He begged for a hunting story but the Monk was in no mood for that kind of thing let someone else continue. Sir John the Nun's Priest told with high art the beast epic of chanticlerus his hens and a fox and was commended by all the company. By this time they had arrived at Rochester.

## The Third Day

Next morning the Physician led off with the tragedy of Virginius who slew his daughter Virginia rather than surrender her to wicked Appius. At the close



The Prioress



The Clerk

Inn a famous company of pilgrims of various occupations and ranks. The Prologue tells us that there were 29 in all but then introduces 30 not counting Chaucer. There were a Knight and his young son a Squire the Knight's Yeoman (servant) a Nun or Prioress with her three priests and a Second Nun a Monk and a Friar a Merchant a Clerk (scholar) of Oxford a Sergeant of Law (lawyer) a Franklin or country gentleman. There were a group of well-to-do tradesmen—a Haberdasher a Carpenter a Dyer a Weaver and a Tapestry Maker a Cook a Shipman (sailor) a Doctor of Physic a Wife (woman) of Bath a Parson (parish priest) and his brother a Plowman. There were a Miller a Manciple (steward) a Reeve (superintendent of an estate) a Summoner (court officer) and a Pardoner (seller of indulgences). And there was Chaucer himself.

A jolly fellow with an eye to business Harry the Host offered a plan of entertainment every man and woman should tell two tales going to Canterbury and two returning. The one who told the best tale should have a supper at the expense of the others. All approved the plan saying "Mary" or "Be judge."

## The First Day

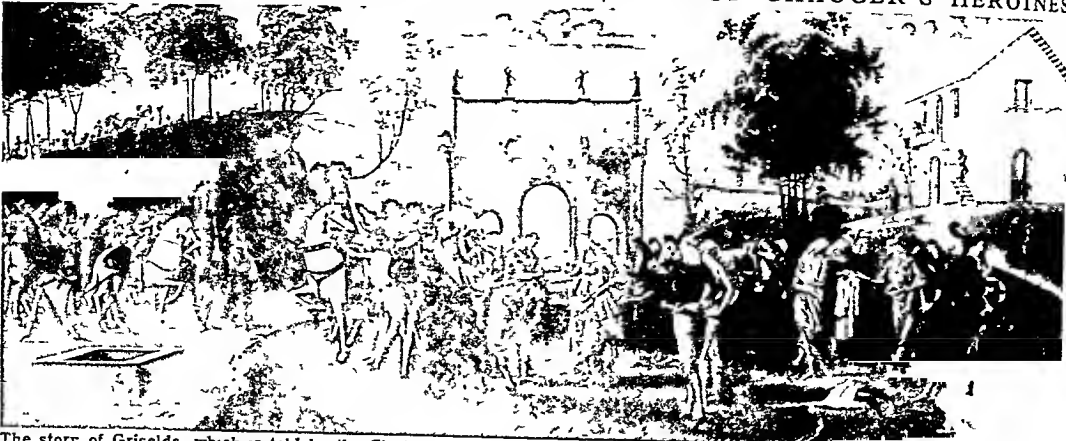
At daybreak next morning the party set out and Harry had them draw lots to determine who should begin. The shortest lot fell to the Knight who told the classical romance of Palamon and Arcite and their tragic rivalry for the love of Emily. When the knight had finished his noble tale the miller who was drowned in ale followed with a coarsely humorous *fabliau* about a reeve. The Reeve immediately got even with a *fabliau* about a miller. The Cook began a little jape about an apprentice but did not get very far. Chaucer probably recognized



And the Knight



## THE MARRIAGE OF PATIENT GRISELDA, ONE OF CHAUCER'S HEROINES



The story of Griselda, which is told by the Clerk of Oxford, was a great favorite in the Middle Ages. Its theme is the humility and obedience of Griselda, who bore submissively the cruel tests imposed by her noble husband, the Marquis of Saluces, never murmuring even when he robbed her of her children and pretended that he was taking another wife. The picture above is one of a series depicting the Griselda story, done by some unknown Italian painter of about Chaucer's time. (National Gallery, London)

Harry needed a draught of ale to cheer him, as well as a merry tale, which he asked the Pardoner to tell. "Nay!" cried the gentlefolk. "Let him tell no kind of ribaldry, but something moral to improve the mind." So the Pardoner, after refreshing himself at a near-by ale-house preached a sermon in verse on greed, exemplifying his text with the classic story of three men who killed one another for the treasure they had discovered. He and the Host fell into dispute but the Knight intervened to end their quarrel.

Alice, the Wife of Bath, after a long entertaining prologue about her marital affairs, contributed a romance or fairy tale of the days of King Arthur. For laughing at her long preamble, the Friar was reproved by the Summoner; the two had angry words, ending with each telling *fabliaux* against the other's profession. The Host established peace as the pilgrims drew near Sittingbourne.

In the afternoon the Clerk of Oxford, who had been riding along quietly, responded to Harry's request with the "virtue story" of Patient Griselda, which he said he had learned from Petrarch. Again, the Host wished his wife had heard of such patience, and the Merchant bewailed that though married only two months he had found his wife a cursed shrew; if he were free again, he would never be snared. He went on, appropriately, with the tale of old January and young May, a combined *fabliau* and fairy story.

#### The Fourth Day

After the night at Ospringe, the Squire began the oriental romance of Cambuscan, King of Tartary, his daughter Canace, the magic ring, and the flying horse. If it had been finished, this would have been one of the longest, finest tales; many writers since Chaucer have tried their hands at its completion. Praising the story, and wishing that his own son were like the Squire, a lad of discretion rather than one who played dice and took no heed of good counsel, the Franklin told a story of love and magic, of the type called a

*lai*. The Second Nun then related a "miracle tale" based on the chief events in the life of St. Cecilia. As the Nun finished, a Canon and his Yeoman dashed up on sweating horses, hurrying to overtake the pilgrims and ride with them. In answer to the Host's questions, the Yeoman revealed that his master was an alchemist, who could pave with gold and silver the road to Canterbury. Vexed that his secrets were told, the Canon fled and the Canon's Yeoman then told in rhyme a tale about the tricks of alchemists.

Here the Cook, sleepy from too much drink, was called on; but he declared he would rather sleep than drink the best gallon of wine. The Manciple called him a drunken lout and offered to take his place, contributing a *pourquoi* story, or fable: Why the crow became black. Finally the Parson, at four in the afternoon, began a prose sermon on the seven deadly sins ending the sermon and the series in sight of the cathedral spires of Canterbury.

The pilgrims had beguiled the way with instances of the chief kinds of narrative known to the Middle Ages: classic romance, oriental romance, Arthurian romance, classical tale, saint's life, miracle tale, virtue story, *fabliau*, beast epic, *exemplum*, *pourquoi* story, *lai*, fairy story, burlesque of romance, and contemporary tale; all these besides three sermons. No tale was adjudged the best; but readers may decide for themselves, as readers have done for five and a half centuries. Twenty complete tales were told; four were left incomplete. If the original plan had been followed, there would have been 120. Twenty are ample "God's plenty," to reveal Chaucer's skill in realistic description and consummate narrative, his glowing imagination, the breadth and depth of his humor.

About 90 manuscripts of the 'Canterbury Tales' exist, complete or incomplete. Of these the best is the Ellesmere Manuscript, from which the illustrations on the preceding page are taken. Caxton first printed the Tales (about 1478) but not from the best scripts, and since his time many editors have published many editions.

**CHAUTAUQUA** (*shd-ta'kwf*) Each summer men and women from all parts of the United States eagerly gather at the Chautauqua Institution for entertainment and study. This pioneer institute of adult education is beautifully situated on the wooded slopes of Lake Chautauqua in western New York State. In a single season it has attracted more than 150,000 persons. In the ten-week session, courses are given in such subjects as music, library training, education, theater, arts and crafts and physical education and there are children's classes and a summer high school. Since 1923 the School of Education of New York University has given courses there with college credit.

Symphony orchestras and opera and drama groups provide entertainment in the huge open-air theater and noted speakers lecture on varied subjects of world wide and community interest. Chautauqua is equipped with its own hotels, cottages, lodging houses, class buildings, and athletic fields. The extensive property is valued at more than \$1,000,000.

The Chautauqua Institution was originally founded to provide training for Sunday School teachers. In 1874 John Heyl Vincent, editor of the *Sunday School Journal* and later a bishop of the Methodist Episcopal church, and Lewis Miller, a manufacturer of Akron, Ohio, organized a summer class, which met at Fair Point on Lake Chautauqua. The name of the meeting place was soon changed to Chautauqua.

Chautauqua was one of the first institutions to offer summer study. Interest was so great that by 1879 instruction was being given in foreign languages and education methods and after that Chautauqua expanded rapidly, adding courses in many different fields of knowledge. In 1878, a Chautauqua Literary and Scientific Circle was established, offering a four-year home reading course directed by correspondence.

The institution chartered a School of Theology in 1881 and a Chautauqua University in 1883. The university gave instruction both in the summer assembly and by correspondence and had power to confer degrees. About 1890 university extension work, which had originated in England, was introduced. These projects all flourished for a short time, but were eventually abandoned in favor of the original plan of summer assemblies giving general cultural and teacher-training courses.

The sweeping success of Chautauqua inspired many communities to organize similar summer study meetings, but few of these have survived. More successful were the "circuits" or traveling "chautauquas" which visited small towns. They were not connected with the Chautauqua Institution, however, and their chief purpose was to provide entertainment. They presented music, lectures, and plays in tents. When introduction of the automobile, motion picture, and radio made a greater variety of entertainment available to people in small communities the traveling chautauquas rapidly declined.

An important forerunner of the Chautauqua was the "lyceum." Early in the 19th century Josiah Holbrook of

Derby Conn. a popular lecturer encouraged groups to meet for lectures and discussion. His aim was to organize an international movement for mutual instruction "each unit of which would be called a lyceum from the place where Aristotle lectured to the young men of Greece."

Although no international organization was founded, the movement spread quickly through the United States. The first lyceum was founded in Malbury Mass., in 1826 and by 1834 there were nearly 3,000 lyceums in the country. Many of them engaged such noted lecturers as Emerson, Holmes, Lowell, Thoreau and Beecher.

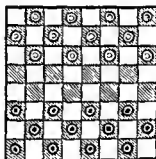
Until the Civil War when the lyceum declined, these lecture-discussion groups represented the most ambitious effort to develop the intellectual life of the nation. Modern lyceums are organized merely for entertainment.

**CHECKERS** Battles between checker men have interested young and old ever since the first crude game of draughts was played by the Egyptians—probably as early as 1600 B.C. Later the Greeks and Romans enjoyed the game and more recently there have been French, German, Polish, Dutch, Scotch, and English games of "draughts," the latter being the game called "checkers" in America.

The game is played with small round pieces of wood or bone arranged in lines of battle on a square board, divided into 64 alternating squares of black and white or black and red. Two players using a set of 12 "men" each direct the combat, which consists in an orderly advance and retreat across the battlefield. The men of one player are colored

white (or red), the other black. The object of the game is to capture your opponent's men and remove them from the board.

The forces are drawn up on the first three rows of the black squares on opposite sides of the field, as in diagram 1. Each side moves alternately, and the

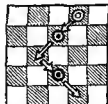


Here we see the arrangement of the "men" on a checkerboard at the beginning of a game.

men may only be moved forward diagonally, to the right or left, to the next unoccupied black square.

When the adjoining square is occupied by one of the enemy and the square next in line is vacant, the player must "jump" his man over his opponent's piece to the vacant square, and remove the enemy's man from the board. Sometimes two or more jumps can be made by a single move (see diagram 2).

When a man has penetrated to the last or "king" row of the enemy's line, it becomes a "king" (indicated by placing another checker on top of it). A king can



This shows a white "man" taking two of his opponents by jumping over them in the way indicated by the arrows.

move either forward or backward, but still only on the squares of the color being used. A player wins by either capturing all the opponent's men or blocking them so they cannot move without being taken.

**CHEESE.** Legend tells us that an Arab journeying across the desert was disappointed at noontime when he opened the calf stomach in which he had carried his milk, to find that the milk had changed to a curdy mass, floating in an almost clear liquor. But, when he tasted the curdy mass, he found it delicious. If the legend is true, the calf stomach was imperfectly dried and hence contained *rennet*, a digestive ferment which curds milk; and thus the Arab unwittingly invented cheese making.

The Arab story may be a fiction; but undoubtedly in some such way men learned, early in history, how to condense the food substance in milk into the solid, easily carried form of cheese.

All cheese making starts with coagulation of the casein, or milk protein, together with the butter fat and other solid matter. The coagulating may be accomplished by adding rennet, by letting lactic acid bacteria "sour" the milk through changing its milk sugar (lactose) to lactic acid, or by a combination of these methods. The liquid whey left after the solids are curdled is drawn off; the curd is worked over according to the kind of cheese being made; and finally the cheese is stored to ripen. Ripening is accomplished by various bacteria, molds, or both.

Variations in this general process, and in the milk used—cow's, sheep's, or goat's milk—account for the tremendous array of cheeses known to the world. The pictures on the opposite page show the general process as used in making "American" or "American cheddar" cheese, sometimes called "store cheese." This cheese is named for Cheddar, England, where the process was first standardized. Cheshire cheese is similar, except that it develops a blue-green mold.

#### Superb Food Values in Cheese

Various misunderstandings have kept many people from utilizing the fine food values of cheese, particularly the notion that cheese is indigestible. Actually it is 90 to 99 per cent digestible; the real cause of the trouble has been misuse. Cheese is a highly concentrated food; American cheese is about 24 per cent protein (more than twice the amount found weight for weight in fresh meat), and 32 per cent is butter fat. Half a pound of good American cheese contains all the protein and about half the calories of energy food needed by an adult for a day. People have lived for more than a year in perfect health on a diet of cheese, whole wheat bread, and fruit. When cheese is eaten in quantity, it should be the main reliance for protein and energy food; the rest of the meal should have plenty of "bulk" or "roughage" foods. The concentrated food value in cheese is evident when we know that 10 pounds (4.7 quarts) of whole milk are used in making one pound of American cheese.

Aside from its being such a concentrated food, cheese is especially valuable in the diet because it provides many food elements—particularly calcium

(lime) needed for bones and teeth. Almost all the food value of milk, considered a nearly perfect food is preserved in cheese, except the milk sugar, albumin, and vitamin B. Most of the vitamin A is retained.

#### Modern Ways of Making Cheese

Until 1851 all cheese made in America was produced on farms and in homes. That year a cheese factory was started in New York, and the advantages of factory methods have practically ended home manufacture. The only cheese often made in the home now is "cottage cheese," the fresh curd of soured milk, which sometimes is mixed with cream or butter. The cheeses usually found on the market include about 20 types with some 400 varieties. Conditions are right for making some cheeses only in a few places or perhaps in a single place in the world.

Wisconsin produces about half of the total United States output. Other leading producers are New York, Illinois, Missouri, Minnesota, Tennessee, Ohio, and Indiana. Production annually totals about one billion pounds, excluding cottage cheese, from 9 per cent of the milk supply. Imports average about 22 million pounds. Cheese consumption is about seven pounds a year for each person.

Process cheese has grown in popularity since it was developed in 1915. It is a blend of natural cheeses of different types or ripeness. It is ground, mixed with water and an emulsifying agent, and heated. Heating halts further ripening, thus assuring uniform quality. Process cheese has a milder flavor than raw cheese and packages conveniently. Machines can cut and package it into sandwich-size slices. Cheese spreads are process cheese with milk or other food solids added. About 600 million pounds of process cheese, cheese spreads, and related products are manufactured each year.

#### Cheeses from Abroad

Roquefort, "king of cheeses," comes from Roquefort, France. It is ewes' milk cheese, hard, milk-white, and streaked with blue-green mold. This mold, a kind of *Penicillium*, grows from powdered bread mold sifted into the curd. Holes punched in the cheeses let oxygen reach the mold. The cheeses are placed for ripening in natural and artificial caves at Roquefort. Gentle breezes blowing through the vaulted caverns keep the damp air fresh and cool. Cheese makers in neighboring regions make blue cheeses with a *Penicillium* mold, but they generally use cows' milk. Cheese manufacturers in the United States produce similar cheeses, which they call *blue* cheese or "Roquefort type" cheese.

Other countries, however, make excellent mold-ripened cheeses. Among the best known are the Italian cow's-milk *Gorgonzola* and the English *Stilton*.

All these cheeses are of the hard type, with less than 40 per cent water in the finished product. Another noted hard cheese is the round *Edam* of Holland. It is made much as American is, except that the flavor is a trifle sweeter, and the outside is colored a bright red. *Goudas* are the same cheese, made flatter. The "jumbos" of the cheese world are the huge Swiss

## SIX CHAPTERS IN THE LIFE OF A CHEESE



An American cheese starts life when a lactic acid starter, rennet and coloring matter are mixed with the milk and stirred with large paddles. When the cheese has curdled, proper by workmen cut it into cubes with wire knives. The third step is on a "chedding" or piling the curd to each side of the vat until the whey runs off. The cheddared curd then is cheddared, or piled up in a large vat as shown in the fourth picture. The process is repeated until the cheese acquires the proper body. The salted cheese is "mashed" or shredded, salted and pressed in a cloth-lined hoop for about 18 hours. The shaped cheese is then stored away to ripen. Every step is controlled by chemical and other tests and temperatures are kept exact in order to obtain the quality desired.

wheels weighing from 100 or 200 pounds to as much as a ton apiece. They were first made in the valley of the Emmentaler River Switzerland and the product was known as *Emmentaler* cheese but Wisconsin dairymen now produce great quantities of fine Swiss type' cheese. The holes in Swiss cheese come from gas generated by bacteria during the ripening process. Any departure from the proper shape and appearance of these holes is a sign of imperfect ripening. *Gruyère* cheese originally made in the Swiss town of that name is similar to *Emmentaler* except for smaller holes.

The extremely hard cheeses which must be grated for use in flavoring soups and other dishes are a specialty of the Italians. Perhaps the best known are the *Parmesan* types including the *Reggiano* originally made in north Italy. The *Romano* type is made near Rome and the extremely hard dry sharp-tasting *Caccio Cavallo*. This cheese has less than 20 per cent water content.

Perhaps the best known soft cheese is the kind

originally made in the Norman village of *Camembert*. It is made of cow's milk coagulated with rennet but the secret of making *Camembert* is the action of two kinds of bacteria working under the atmospheric conditions of Normandy to produce the rich flavor and buttery like softness of the finished product together with the 'mippy' rind. French *Brie* is somewhat similar. Dairymen in the Americas are successfully imitating this and many other foreign cheeses. Next to cottage cheese the most familiar soft cheese is *Philadelphia Cream* made of soured cream salted and worked to buttery smoothness by machinery.

A noted semi hard cheese is *Lamburgh* originally marketed in *Lamburgh*, Belgium. Bacterial ripening in proper surroundings creates the flavor and pungent ammoniacal odor. Wisconsin makes fine *Lamburgh* cheese. Similar cheeses with milder odor are *brick* and *Muenster*. All are difficult to make because they must be turned by hand during the making and salted and washed several times. *Port du Salut* also called *Trap-pist* and *Oka* and the Italian *Bell Paese* are semi hard.

**CHEMICAL WARFARE.** "Let us rule the battle by means of the elements." This motto of the United States Army's chemical corps describes the aim of chemical warfare. It embraces the use of fire, smoke, and perhaps gas against an enemy (*see Army*).

One of the most effective chemical warfare weapons is fire in the form of incendiary bombs. Many of these bombs contain jellied gasoline or magnesium and Thermit (aluminum powder and oxide of iron). The chemical ignites when the bomb explodes. Another burning agent is white phosphorus, which is released from bombs, shells, and hand grenades.

The most destructive weapon in close combat is the flame thrower. It can shoot a stream of fire 50 yards or more. The burning agent is a liquid or jellied incendiary fuel mixed with compressed nitrogen.

Chemical smoke is used chiefly as a screen to hide ships and troop movements. Colored smoke, in the form of shells or grenades, is employed for signaling and to identify friendly units from the air or ground.

#### Gases Used for Warfare

Poisonous gases may kill enemy troops or cripple their effectiveness. The gases are classified as *lung irritants*, *vesicants* (blisterers), *lachrymators* (tear gases), *sternutators* (sneeze gases), and *incendiaries* (fire-producing chemicals). The most deadly are the vesicant gases—mustard, lewisite, and nitrogen mustards—and the lung irritants, such as chlorine, phosgene, and chloropicrin.

War gases may be released from cylinders and then carried to their objective by the wind; or they are hurled at an enemy by means of bombs or shells. Airplanes may also release gas from special tanks.

#### Protection Against Poison Gas

Many war gases can be identified by their characteristic odor. These are: mustard, garlic; lewisite, geraniums; phosgene, musty hay; and chloropicrin,

flypaper. Nitrogen mustards have no odor. Gas masks give protection against most gases. The masks cover the face and guard the lungs by filtering out poisonous vapors from the air. The purifying agent in the filter is usually a mixture of soda lime impregnated with potassium permanganate, and nutshell charcoal.

Gases which attack the skin may be ward-  
ed off by wearing protective clothing. The effect of a poison gas may be counteracted by an antidote, such as British anti-lewisite (BAL). This antidote is a complex alcohol which attracts the arsenic in lewisite away from enzymes in the body. BAL is applied to the skin in ointment form or is injected hypodermically in oil.

#### History of Gas Warfare

Poisonous and asphyxiating gases were used in the days of Byzantium and by the Saracens against the Crusaders of the 13th century. During the Civil War Union forces hurled Greek fire, generating poison gas, into Charleston. In 1907 a Hague convention forbade the use of poisons and arms which would cause unnecessary suffering.

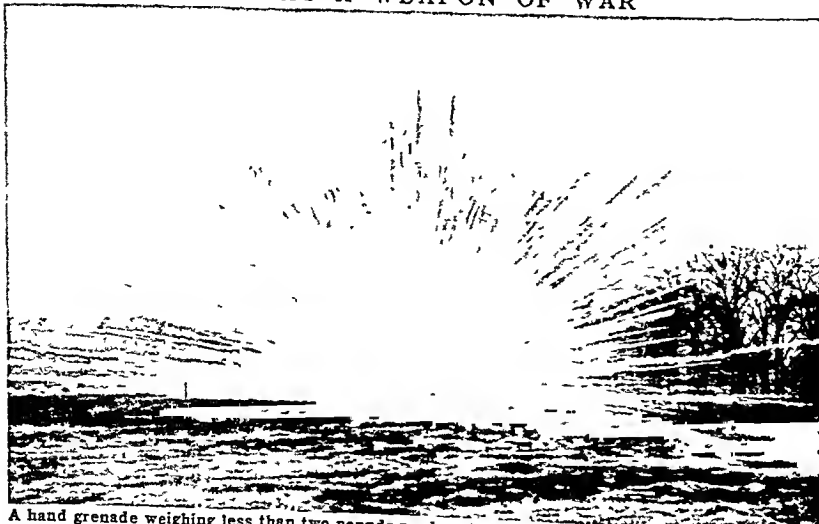
Gas warfare began in the first World War at Ypres in 1915, when the Germans released chlorine gas in cylinders. Although both sides used gas, it caused less than 10 per cent of the war casualties. The Treaty of Versailles held that the use of poison gas was against international law, and the Washington Conference on the Limitation of Armaments (1922) confirmed this stand. Both Axis and Allied nations threatened to use gas in the second World War but did not carry out their threats.

#### THE ARMY GAS MASK

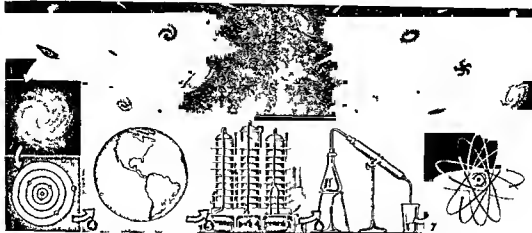


The canister on the left cheek filters out poisonous vapors. Exhaled air is expelled through the flap under the nose.

#### FIRE AS A WEAPON OF WAR



A hand grenade weighing less than two pounds produced this shower of burning white phosphorus particles. Trained soldiers can hurl such a grenade for 40 yards or more. It is used as a smoke screen and for its incendiary effect on enemy personnel and installations.



The chemist studies matter everywhere—in the entire universe (1) in galaxies (2) in our solar system (3) and in the earth as a whole (4). On earth he helps with industrial processes (5) using laboratory findings (6). He knows that every change which involves matter anywhere depends upon the properties of atoms (7).

## How CHEMISTRY Makes USEFUL CHANGES in MATTER

**CHEMISTRY** Chemistry is the science that tells us what the stuff in the world is made of and how this stuff is constructed. Chemistry also tells us how to change or convert the things in the world into new things such as rubber, nylon, and plastics and to better our living by making stronger metals, improving the soil, or destroying bacteria.

In general, chemists make their contributions by taking substances apart and putting them together in different desired combinations. Taking apart or *analysis* enables the chemist to learn what a substance is made of; then by combining the parts (*synthesis*) they may produce a substance similar to the old one or a completely new substance.

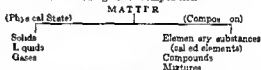
Today chemistry provides employment for a host of people in laboratories, universities, colleges, and schools, and in businesses where chemistry is used in a manufacturing process. The chemical industry is now the greatest in the United States from the economic standpoint. It now exceeds the great iron and steel industry in value of products.

The 1950 census lists more than 100,000 people employed as chemists and chemical engineers. Nearly 200,000 others are employed in manufacturing chemical products. Other thousands teach chemistry. A knowledge of chemistry is immensely helpful in a great number of occupations such as medicine, agriculture, and engineering. Every well-informed citizen should also know what chemistry can do for all of us in this scientific age.

### How Chemistry Helps Us to Understand Our World

The chemist wants to understand how our universe is put together and how he can change the substances in it to man's advantage. Chemists (together with physicists) have greatly simplified these problems by their discovery that all things in the universe can be classified as matter and energy and also that

matter and energy can be converted from one to the other (see Energy Matter). A further simplification is made by classifying matter according to its physical state or according to its composition.



A study of solids, liquids, and gases led to the conclusion that the behavior of these three forms of matter could be explained satisfactorily by assuming that matter is made of particles in motion. This moving particle theory (called the *kinetic molecular theory of matter*) explains many common phenomena such as evaporation of liquids, diffusion of gases, and crystal patterns of solids. (See also Heat.)

A study of elements has helped further in learning about the universe because chemists have found that the whole universe is made up of about 100 elements. Hence the science of chemistry involves a study of these elements and of the substances (compounds) which are formed when they combine. Chemists now know the composition of about 700,000 compounds.

### How Elements Are Made of Atoms

Today's chemists also know that elements are made of tiny building blocks called *atoms*. Some early Greek philosophers proposed that matter was made of atoms but they performed no experiments to prove this. Now we have much evidence that matter is made of atoms. Some of this evidence is as follows:

1. Chemists have discovered that every pure substance has a definite composition. This fact is called the **Law of Definite Composition**.

2. Sometimes two elements such as oxygen and hydrogen combine to form two different kinds of sub-

## NEW KNOWLEDGE FROM A LABORATORY



This research chemist is using an elaborate array of stills, as part of his efforts to discover new knowledge about a chemical problem. His findings may provide the basis for a new industry.

stances. For example, hydrogen (H) and oxygen (O) form water ( $H_2O$ ) and hydrogen peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ). In all such cases the elements combine in the ratio of whole numbers which are usually small.

Observations such as these can be explained easily if we assume that all matter is made of atoms. The atomic theory can be stated as follows.

1. Matter is made of small particles called atoms.
2. Atoms of the same elements have the same average masses, but atoms of different elements have different average masses.
3. Chemical reactions take place between atoms or groups of atoms.

We can define an *element* as a substance made of one type of atom only. For example, copper is made of copper atoms; oxygen is made of oxygen atoms.

Elements combine to form compounds and thus change properties of the original elements. For example, carbon reacts with oxygen to form carbon dioxide. This is called a *chemical change*.

#### Types of Changes in Matter

Matter can undergo three kinds of changes: chemical, physical, and nuclear. When we burn gasoline, electrolyze water, or produce rubber or plastics from petroleum we make chemical changes. In each case,

the original atoms are preserved, but the new substance has a different chemical composition from the original material. The atoms have been rearranged into new combinations.

Breaking glass, tearing cloth, boiling water, freezing water, and distilling alcohol are all examples of *physical changes*. In all these reactions the chemical composition of the substances involved remains the same. The only change is in physical form.

The phenomenon of radioactivity, the fission of uranium 235, or the fusion of hydrogen atoms (to helium atoms) with the resultant release of atomic energy are examples of *nuclear changes*. In each case the composition of the nuclei of the atoms has changed and one kind of atom is transmuted into another.

#### Tendency of Elements to Combine

Elements, like people, have a wide range of characteristics. They vary from those that are very active to those that are completely inert (unreactive). The tendency of substances to react or combine is called a *chemical property*.

In many cases atoms of the same substances combine with each other to form molecules. For example, atoms of oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen (N) and chlorine (Cl) form the molecules  $O_2$ ,  $H_2$ ,  $N_2$ , and  $Cl_2$  respectively. A few elements, such as helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon, are inert.

Atoms of most elements will react with other kinds of atoms to form compounds. Even in the combined states, atoms may still react. For example, an atom of iron (Fe) reacts with the oxygen in a water molecule ( $H_2O$ ) and robs the water of its oxygen atom. The reaction produces a molecule of rust (iron oxide,  $FeO$ ) and a molecule of hydrogen ( $H_2$ ).

#### Compounds and Mixtures

This tendency of atoms to combine with atoms of different elements makes it possible to have a great variety of new substances called *compounds*. Such substances as water, sugar, and Dry Ice are compounds. A compound is made of two or more elements that have undergone a chemical change; hence a compound is composed of two or more different kinds of atoms. The grouping of atoms needed to provide a given unit of a compound is called a *molecule*. In most cases, a molecule has chemical characteristics different from those of the atoms which make up the molecule.

A molecule can also be defined as two or more atoms in chemical combination. They may be the same or different atoms. For example, the elements hydrogen and chlorine combine to form the compound called hydrochloric acid ( $HCl$ ). Chlorine will combine with carbon to form the cleaning fluid, carbon tetrachloride ( $CCl_4$ ).

Such substances as milk, paint, and muddy water are *mixtures*. In contrast to compounds, mixtures have not undergone a chemical change. Neither do mixtures have definite composition; hence their composition cannot be shown by a fixed formula. Furthermore, they can usually be separated by physical methods such as distillation, crystallization, or solution. For example, mixed sulfur and iron filings

## SIMPLE SYMBOLS FOR CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

## SYMBOLS FROM COMMON NAMES

NAME	SYMBOL	NAME	SYMBOL	NAME	SYMBOL
Aluminum	Al	Fluorine	F	Nitrogen	N
Argon	A	Helium	He	Phosphorus	P
Beryllium	Be	Lithium	Li	Platinum	Pt
Boron	B	Magnesium	Mg	Silicon	Si
Calcium	Ca	Manganese	Mn	Sulfur	S
Carbon	C	Neon	Ne		

## SYMBOLS FROM LATIN NAMES

COMMON NAME	SYM- BOL	LATIN NAME	COMMON NAME	SYM- BOL	LATIN NAME
Antimony	Sb	Stibium	Mercury	Hg	Hydrargyrum
Copper	Cu	Cuprum	Potassium	K	Kalium
Gold	Au	Aurum	Silver	Ag	Argentum
Iron	Fe	Ferrum	Sodium	Na	Natrium
Lead	Pb	Plumbum	Tin	Sn	Stannum

These symbols are used for chemical shorthand. A list of all the elements is given on a later page.

can be separated by using a magnet to draw out the filings or by dissolving the sulfur with carbon disulfide and pouring off the solution.

## Symbols for Elements Formulas for Compounds

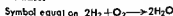
The name of an element is commonly indicated with an abbreviation called a chemical symbol. Many have already been used in this article. Some of them are the initials or first two letters of the common name of the element. Others are taken from the Latin name. Some of the common elements and their symbols are listed in a table on this page.

A symbol may not only represent the name of an element; chemists also use it to signify one atom of the element. A molecule composed of the same kind of atoms is indicated by a number which shows the number of atoms. Thus  $H_2$  is a molecule of hydrogen. The formula tells us that two atoms of hydrogen are required to make up one molecule of hydrogen. Similarly the formula for a molecule of oxygen is  $O_2$ . Since most elements (other than the inert gases) exist in the pure state as molecules rather than as atoms, the molecular formula is always very important in statements of chemical reactions. (The names and symbols for all the known elements are listed on a later page of this article.)

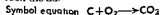
Just as chemists represent the names of elements with chemical symbols, so do they represent the names of compounds with a collection of symbols which is called a formula. For example, the formula for water is  $H_2O$ . A chemical formula shows both the number and the kind of atoms in a molecule of a compound.

Not only does the chemist use shorthand for the names of elements and the elements which enter into compounds, but he also uses symbols and formulas to indicate chemical changes (reactions). For example:

Word equation: Hydrogen reacts with oxygen to form water.



Word equation: Carbon burns in oxygen to form carbon dioxide.



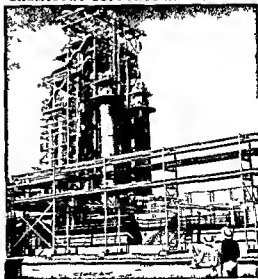
One precaution must always be kept in mind in using chemical formulas. Formulas are necessarily printed flat on a page, but compounds actually exist in three dimensions in space. For example, the compound methane (marsh gas, also called fire damp in coal mines) can be written in formula form as  $CH_4$ . This would suggest that the four H atoms are in a circle around the central C atom. Actually the H atoms are arranged at equal distances and angles which form a tetrahedron or four-surfaced pyramid (including the base) with the C atom in the center of the molecule and the H atoms at the corners. In many chemical problems (such as contriving new plastics, for example) a chemist must think of the actual shapes in space of the molecules which he intends to use in his reaction.



## Atomic Dimensions and Weights

Atoms are about 1,000 times smaller than the smallest objects that can be seen with high-powered optical microscopes. To measure such tiny objects, chemists use units that are more convenient than inches or centimeters. A common one is the Angstrom unit, written Å ( $1\text{ Å} = 0.0000001$  centimeters). Hydrogen atoms are the smallest; they are about one Angstrom unit in diameter. The largest atoms are those of the heavy alkali metals; they are about 5 Å units in diameter. (In science, sizes and weights are com-

## CHEMISTRY SUPPORTS AN INDUSTRY



This plant produces styrene, a compound used for making plastics and synthetic rubber. Styrene is among the most important raw materials which chemistry makes synthetically.



monly stated in centimeters and grams, since the metric system of measurements is universally used.)

Atoms are not only very small in size, but their weight is also very small. An atom of oxygen weighs 0.000,000,000,000,000,000,027 grams. Such a number is very awkward to use. To obtain a simpler way of expressing the weights of atoms, the chemist chooses a *standard of reference*, the weight of an oxygen atom. He takes 1/16th of this weight as his unit, and he calls it the *atomic weight unit* (a.w.u.). The weight of each kind of atom, expressed in these units, is called an *atomic weight*. For example, the atomic weight of one atom of oxygen in a.w.u.'s is 16.

Atomic weights can also be expressed in grams. However, 16 grams of oxygen is the weight of much more than one atom of oxygen. It is the weight of  $6.02 \times 10^{23}$  atoms of oxygen. Atomic weights expressed in grams are called *gram-atomic weights*. They are the weight in grams of  $6.02 \times 10^{23}$  atoms of the element. The number  $6.02 \times 10^{23}$  is called Avogadro's number. "10<sup>23</sup>" means 1 followed by 23 zeros, or a billion billion times 10,000. (See also Gas.)

#### How Elements Form Groups, or Families

The problem of learning about the things in the universe is still further simplified by classifying the elements in families, such as the halogen family, the alkali family, the nitrogen family, and so on. This was first done in 1869 for the elements then known by the Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeléev.

Today the lighter elements can be placed in a table according to their properties as follows:

Period	H							He
Period	Li	Be	B	C	N	O	F	Ne
Period	Na	Mg	Al	Si	P	S	Cl	A
Period	K	Ca						

All elements in the same vertical row have similar chemical properties. This indicates that the elements do not change properties *gradually* through the entire list from hydrogen to calcium, in keeping with gradual

increase in atomic weights. Rather, the properties change gradually through a certain number of elements, called a *period* of elements. Then they *recur*, or *repeat*, through the next period. This is like the seasons recurring, or repeating, from year to year.

At the time of Mendeléev's work, a German chemist (Meyer) also noticed this recurrence of chemical properties, and he stated his findings thus: The properties of the elements are periodic functions of the atomic weights. This statement is called the *periodic law*, and a table of elements arranged according to it is a *Periodic Table*. The diagram on the following page shows the first 20 elements so arranged. (In that diagram the last column of table at left is shown first.)

#### Atomic Structures That Determine Properties

The ability to group elements in families and periods arises from the way in which the different kinds of atoms are made up of electrified particles. At the heart of each atom is a core called a *nucleus*, which contains one or more unit quantities of positive electric charge. The number of charges varies from one in the lightest element (hydrogen) to 20 in the heaviest element (calcium) shown in the diagram as indicated by numbers on the nuclei.

We now know that the periodic law should be expressed in terms of the number of unit charges on the nucleus of an atom rather than in terms of its atomic weight. The number of charges is called the *atomic number* (see Atoms). The atomic number was first devised by Henry Moseley in 1912. He arranged the elements according to the kind of X rays they produced and numbered the elements in this order. He called these numbers the atomic numbers. Later, Ernest Rutherford showed that atomic numbers are really the positive charges in the nuclei of the atoms.

In an atom, the nucleus is surrounded by negatively charged electrons equal in number to the atomic number. The electrons are arranged in layers or shells, as shown in the diagrams on the next page.

A common and convenient way of showing electron consists of using dots around the chemical symbol for an element. The elements in the first row of eight in the diagram can be shown as follows:

O	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII
•He•	Li•	•Be•	•B•	•C•	•N•	•O•	•F•

Usually the outermost shell only is shown, since this is the shell which causes chemical activity.

#### How Electrons Provide Chemical Properties

The chemical behavior of each kind of atom is determined by the outermost shells (or in heavier atoms two shells) of electrons only. (For reasons, see Matter.) If the outermost shell has two or eight electrons all electrical forces within the atoms are satisfied. There is nothing "left over" to make the atom interact readily with other atoms, and atoms with such outer shells are chemically inert. The inert atoms among those shown are helium (two electrons), and neon and argon (eight electrons each).

Atoms with incomplete outer shells seek to attain such shells in any way they can. Therefore atoms

#### WHAT IT TAKES TO MEASURE AN ATOM



One unit of measurement, the foot, supposedly was taken from the size of a king's foot (1). For convenience, the foot is subdivided into inches (2). A powerful microscope can reveal dimensions to 1/125,000 of an inch (3); but it is still far from being powerful enough to measure an atom. For this, elaborate apparatus is needed (4), because one commonly used unit of measurement (the Angstrom unit) amounts to only about four billionths of an inch.

# WHY ELEMENTS REPEAT THEIR PROPERTIES IN A PERIODIC ORDER

GROUP 0	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII
HYDROGEN H							
HELIUM He	LITHIUM Li	BERYLLIUM Be	BOBON B	CARBON C	NITROGEN N	OXYGEN O	FLUORINE F
NEON Ne	SODIUM Na	MAGNESIUM Mg	ALUMINUM Al	SILICON Si	PHOSPHORUS P	SULFUR S	CHLORINE Cl
ARGON Ar	POTASSIUM K	CALCIUM Ca					
NOBLE GASES	ALKALI METALS	ALKALINE EARTHS					HALOGENS

This diagram shows how periodicity of chemical properties arises from electron arrangements within the atoms of the elements. In each vertical row or group, except the noble gases in Group 0, the number of outer electrons is the same.

In this diagram, atomic numbers are shown on the nuclei of the elements.

Scandium often labels the also, inner shells from the inner most outward as K, L, M, N, O and P.

that have the same number of electrons in the outer shell have similar chemical properties, since their methods of attaining complete outer shells must be much the same. Since the shells of the lighter elements gradually fill up to eight electrons and then start a new shell, we can understand why the periodic or recurring properties appear.

## How Can the Periodic Table Be Used?

The Periodic Table provides an easy way to show the division of the elements into acid forming and base-forming types. Those on the left are base-forming; those on the right are acid-forming (*see* Acids and Alkalis). Those in between can be either acid-forming or base-forming. Hence their hydroxides (compounds with OH ions) are called *amphoteric*. Examples of amphoteric hydroxides are those of beryllium—Be(OH)<sub>2</sub>—and aluminum—Al(OH)<sub>3</sub>.

The periodic arrangement also makes clear the important division of the elements into *metallic* and *nonmetallic* kinds. We usually distinguish between metals and nonmetals by their physical and chemical properties as follows:

METALS	NONMETALS
<b>Physical Properties</b>	
Metallic luster	Various appearances
High conductivity for heat and electricity	Low conductivity for heat and electricity
Ductile	Nonductile
Malleable	Nonmalleable
<b>Chemical Properties</b>	
Form basic solutions	Form acidic solutions
Form positive ions in solutions	Form negative ions in solutions

Therefore the elements in each group have similar chemical properties and constitute a chemical family. Some families have common names as shown at the bottom of the diagram. (Here only the first 20 elements are shown.)

Of the elements shown in the diagram above, lithium, beryllium, sodium, magnesium, and aluminum are metallic. The others are nonmetallic. The complete list is shown in another article, Periodic Table.

Finally, the Periodic Table groups elements into chemical families. For example, Group 0 of the elements shown above contains helium, neon, and argon. These form the family of inert elements called *noble gases*. (In many tables this group is VIII instead of 0.) In Group I are hydrogen, lithium, sodium, and potassium. Except for the gas hydrogen, these are soft, active substances which act chemically like metals in many ways. They react with water to form alkaline solutions. Because of these properties they are known as *alkali metals*. Next to them in Group II is the family of elements known as the *alkaline earths*. In Group VII are the *halogens*, fluorine and chlorine. (The word halogen comes from Greek terms meaning salt makers.) These elements are nonmetallic. Their compounds with hydrogen (H<sub>2</sub>F and HCl) dissolve in water to form acids.

Many atoms that have a greater atomic number than 20 (calcium) show complicated structures due to inner shells of electrons filling to 18 and 32 electrons. Elements having atoms of this type appear in the Periodic Table as an inserted or *transition* group (not shown here) between Groups II and III. Electron structures of some elements such as chromium, iron, and nickel give them properties that form colored solutions. The *transition elements* include the rare earth elements and the actinide series.

## Atoms Gain, Lose, or Share Electrons

Atoms that have a few electrons in the outer shell tend to lose them. This leaves them with a positive

# NAMES AND SYMBOLS OF THE ELEMENTS

ELEMENT	SYM- BOL	ATOMIC NO.	ATOMIC WT.	DENSITY	ELEMENT	SYM- BOL	ATOMIC NO.	ATOMIC WT.	DENSITY
Actinium....	Ac	89	227.	....	Molybdenum .	Mo	42	95.95	10.2
Aluminum....	Al	13	26.98	2.699	Neodymium..	Nd	60	144.27	7.05
Americium... Am	95	243.	....	....	Neon.....	Ne	10	20.183	.00084
Antimony....	Sb	51	121.76	6.62	Neptunium... Np	93	237.	....	....
Argon.....	A	18	39.944	.00166	Nickel.....	Ni	28	58.69	8.9
Arsenic.....	As	33	74.91	5.73	Niobium..... Nb	41	92.91	8.57	....
Astatine....	At	85	211.	....	Nitrogen..... N	7	14.008	.00116	....
Barium... ..	Ba	56	137.36	3.5	Osmium.....	Os	76	190.2	22.5
Berkelium ..	Bk	97	245.	....	Oxygen.....	O	8	16.0000	.00133
Beryllium....	Be	4	9.013	1.82	Palladium....	Pd	46	106.7	12.0
Bismuth.....	Bi	83	209.00	9.80	Phosphorus... P	15	30.975	1.82	....
Boron.....	B	5	10.82	2.3	Platinum..... Pt	78	195.23	21.45	....
Bromine.....	Br	35	79.916	3.12	Plutonium... Pu	94	242.	....	....
Cadmium ..	Cd	48	112.41	8.65	Polonium.... Po	84	210.	(9.24)	....
Calcium .. .	Ca	20	40.08	1.55	Potassium.... K	19	39.100	0.86	....
Californium .	Cf	98	246.	..	Praseodymium Pr	59	140.92	6.63	....
Carbon.....	C	6	12.010	2.22	Promethium.. Pm	61	145.	....	....
Cerium.....	Ce	58	140.13	6.9	Protactinium. Pa	91	231.	....	....
Cesium.....	Cs	55	132.91	1.9	Radium.....	Ra	88	226.05	5.0
Chlorine.....	Cl	17	35.457	1.51	Radon.....	Rn	86	222.	4.40
Chromium... Cr	24	52.01	7.19	....	Rhenium..... Re	75	186.31	20.	....
Cobalt.....	Co	27	58.94	8.9	Rhodium..... Rh	45	102.91	12.44	....
Copper.....	Cu	29	63.54	8.96	Rubidium.... Rb	37	85.48	1.33	....
Curium.....	Cm	96	243.	....	Ruthenium... Ru	44	101.7	12.2	....
Dysprosium.. Dy	66	162.46	(8.56)	....	Samarium.... Sm	62	150.43	7.7	....
Erbium.....	Er	68	167.2	(9.16)	Scandium.... Sc	21	44.96	2.5	....
Europium.... Eu	63	152.0	(5.24)	....	Selenium..... Se	34	78.96	4.81	....
Fluorine.....	F	9	19.00	1.14	Silicon..... Si	14	28.09	2.33	....
Francium.... Fr	87	223.0	....	....	Silver.....	Ag	47	107.880	10.49
Gadolinium.. Gd	64	156.9	(7.95)	....	Sodium..... Na	11	22.997	0.97	....
Gallium..... Ga	31	69.72	5.91	....	Strontium.... Sr	38	87.63	2.6	....
Germanium.. Ge	32	72.60	5.36	....	Sulfur.....	S	16	32.066	2.07
Gold..... .	Au	79	197.2	19.32	Tantalum.... Ta	73	180.88	16.6	....
Hafnium. ...	Hf	72	178.6	11.4	Technetium.. Tc	43	99.	11.46	....
Helium.....	He	2	4.003	.00017	Tellurium.... Te	52	127.61	6.24	....
Holmium.... Ho	67	164.94	(10.12)	....	Terbium..... Tb	65	159.2	(8.33)	....
Hydrogen.... H	1	1.0080	.00008	....	Thallium.... Tl	81	204.4	11.85	....
Indium..... In	49	114.76	7.31	....	Thorium..... Th	90	232.12	11.5	....
Iodine.....	I	53	126.91	4.93	Thulium.... Tm	69	169.4	(9.35)	....
Iridium..... Ir	77	193.1	22.5	....	Tin.....	Sn	50	118.70	7.295
Iron.....	Fe	26	55.85	7.87	Titanium.... Ti	22	47.90	4.54	....
Krypton..... Kr	36	83.80	.00349	....	Tungsten.... W	74	183.92	19.3	....
Lanthanum.. La	57	138.92	6.15	....	Uranium..... U	92	238.07	18.7	....
Lead.....	Pb	82	207.21	11.34	Vanadium.... V	23	50.95	6.0	....
Lithium..... Li	3	6.940	0.53	....	Xenon.....	Xe	54	131.3	.0055
Lutetium.... Lu	71	174.99	(9.74)	....	Ytterbium... Yb	70	173.04	(7.01)	....
Magnesium... Mg	12	24.32	1.74	....	Yttrium..... Y	39	88.92	5.51	....
Manganese... Mn	25	54.93	7.43	....	Zinc.....	Zn	30	65.38	7.133
Mercury..... Hg	80	200.61	13.55	....	Zirconium.... Zr	40	91.22	6.5	....

NOTE: This table contains the elements which are universally recognized. Discovery of elements 99 and 100 have been reported. Such discoveries are always subject to check by independent research, and the results and choice of names must be passed upon by an official reviewing authority before the elements are internationally accepted.

charge since the electrons are negative and their departure leaves a part of the atom's positive particles (protons) unneutralized. The metallic elements have atoms of this kind and for this reason are often called *electropositive elements*. Sodium is an example of this type of element. It has one outer electron, and loss of the electron can be shown diagrammatically as follows:



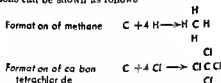
The unneutralized positive charge left in the nucleus by the loss of the electron is shown by a  $+$  sign.

Atoms with almost enough electrons to complete an outer shell of eight tend to borrow the additional ones they need. Thus they acquire a negative charge. The nonmetallic elements are of this type and are called *electronegative elements*. Chlorine is an example of this kind of element.



The most active metallic atoms are those which need to lose only one or two electrons in order to empty their outermost shell and uncover the next full shell of eight electrons. Such loss occurs because many electronegative atoms exert attractive force enough to overcome the electropositive atom's ability to hold its outside electrons. Similarly, the most active nonmetals are those needing only one or two electrons to fill an outer shell with electrons.

Atoms with four or five outer electrons usually form compounds by sharing pairs of electrons with other atoms, each atom usually contributing one electron. (For an explanation of the sharing process, see Matter.) The carbon atom, with four outer electrons, is a good example. Carbon forms compounds equally well with a positive element such as hydrogen and with a negative element such as chlorine. The reactions can be shown as follows:



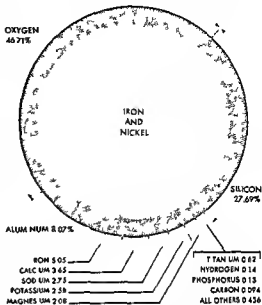
In each case, carbon shares eight electrons; hydrogen shares two, and chlorine eight.

#### How Nuclei Form Isotopes

The outer electrons determine most of the chemical properties of atoms, but differences in composition of nuclei affect the atomic weight and have slight effects on other properties. As explained in the article on Atoms, each nucleus is made up of particles called *protons* and *neutrons*. A proton has a positive electric charge equal in amount to the negative charge on an electron, and in all atoms the number of protons and electrons is always equal.

Neutrons have no charge. The number in a nucleus can vary in atoms of the same element. Such variations do not affect the electrons, the chemical properties, or the atomic number. They simply affect the

#### CORE AND CRUST OF THE EARTH



The iron and nickel heart of the earth is surrounded by molten rock. The crust has elements in the percentages shown.

atomic weight of the nucleus (and therefore of the atom). Atoms of the same element which vary only in weight are called *isotopes*. Isotopes are like identical twins or triplets who have different weights. Some examples are given in the following table:

ELEMENT	ATOMIC WEIGHTS	ELEMENT	ATOMIC WEIGHTS
Hydrogen	1 2 3	Oxygen	16 17 18
Carbon	11 12 13 14	Chlorine	35 36 37 38
Nitrogen	13 14 15	Uranium	234 235 238

#### Combining Power in Chemical Combinations

From earlier examples, it is plain that atoms can join in various number combinations. Atoms of hydrogen and oxygen combine two and one as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Carbon and oxygen combine one and two as  $\text{CO}_2$ , but hydrogen and carbon combine one and four as  $\text{CH}_4$ .

These examples suggest that hydrogen has a combining capacity of one, oxygen two, and carbon four. The combining capacity of an element has often been called its *valence* or *valence number*. The power combining capacity is determined in combinations with elements having a valence of one (univalent elements). For example, in compounds containing hydrogen, the combining capacities of some other elements are as follows:

COMPOUND	VALENCE NUMBER	NUMBER	VALENCE NUMBER
HCl	H 1 Cl 1	$\text{NH}_3$	H 1 N 3
$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	H 1 O 2	$\text{CH}_4$	H 1 C 4

The tendency of atoms to combine with each other apparently results from their tendency to form out-

side electron shells with eight electrons (except for light elements such as hydrogen and helium). As explained earlier in the article, such shells are called filled, or completed, shells. Atoms which have filled shells are in the most stable state possible.

Atoms can attain these stable configurations by either of two methods:

1. Sharing a pair of electrons; or
2. Gaining or losing electrons.

These methods can be illustrated with electron formulas as follows (e or • means one electron):

Example 1 (sharing a pair):  $H^{\bullet} + eH \rightarrow H:H$

Example 2 (gaining and losing an electron):  $Na^{\bullet} + \cdot\ddot{Cl}: \rightarrow Na^{+}:\ddot{Cl}:^{-}$

In the first example, each hydrogen atom (H), taken by itself, has only one electron. The strong tendency shown by lone electrons to form pairs leads two atoms of hydrogen to do so with their electrons. The combination is a molecule of hydrogen ( $H_2$ ).

In the second example the sodium atom loses its outermost electron to a chlorine atom which needs only one electron to complete its outer shell. The loss gives the sodium atom a stable configuration, because beneath the lost electron is a shell of eight others which becomes the outer shell. This process of loss and gain by transfer of an electron from one atom to another is called *ionization* and results in formation of ions (see Ions).

#### Meaning of Valence Numbers

The capacity of an atom to combine with others is determined by the number of electrons it gains or loses or by the number of pairs of electrons it shares. This combining capacity is also called the *valence number* of the elements.

Since many atoms react to form molecules by sharing pairs of electrons, chemists use a more precise term, *covalence*, to designate the combining capacity of elements by this process. Atoms also act to form ions by gaining or losing electrons, and chemists designate the combining capacity of elements which act in this way, by the term *electrovalence*. The electrovalence of an ion is the numerical value of the electrical charge on the ion.

Many kinds of atoms enter into compounds either by covalence or by electrovalence, depending upon surrounding conditions. Many elements also have several values of covalence and electrovalence. Examples of some of the values of a few elements and radicals (groups of elements with an electrical charge) are listed in the accompanying table.

#### Uses of Oxidation Numbers

Not only do chemists need to have a number which will indicate the combining capacity of an element; it is also necessary to have a number which will indicate an equally important property of an element—its degree, or state, of *oxidation*.

The term oxidation was originally applied to the burning, or combustion, process (union with oxygen). Such processes can be illustrated by reactions of

### EXAMPLES OF COVALENCE

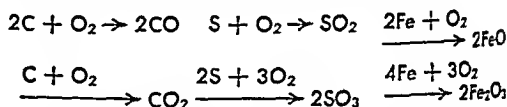
ELEMENT CONSIDERED	COMPOUND	ELEMENT CONSIDERED	COMPOUND
Hydrogen (H)	1 in $H:\ddot{O}:H$	Nitrogen (N)	3 in $H:\ddot{N}:H$ H
Oxygen (O)	2 in $H:\ddot{O}:H$	Carbon (C)	4 in $H:\ddot{C}:H$ H

### EXAMPLES OF ELECTROVALENCE

ELEMENT	CHARGE	RADICAL	CHARGE
Sodium ion, $Na^{+}$	+1	Ammonium ion, $NH_4^{+}$	+1
Calcium ion, $Ca^{++}$	+2	Hydroxyl ion, $OH^{-}$	-1
Aluminum ion, $Al^{+++}$	+3	Nitrate ion, $NO_3^{-}$	-1
Copper ions, $Cu^{+}, Cu^{++}$	+1, +2	Carbonate ion, $CO_3^{=}$	-2
Iron ions, $Fe^{++}, Fe_3^{+++}$	+2, +3	Sulfate ion, $SO_4^{=}$	-2
Chlorine ion, $Cl^{-}$	-1	Phosphate ion, $PO_4^{=}$	-3

These examples show how electrons give atoms and ions their two principal types of combining power, or valence. They show also how some atoms (copper, Cu, and iron, Fe) have more than one electrovalence.

oxygen with carbon, sulfur, or iron. In each case, the carbon, sulfur, or iron is said to be oxidized. In the reactions shown in the following example, the carbon, sulfur, and iron are oxidized to two different degrees, or states, shown one below the other.



It is now well known that many elements can be oxidized in this way to different degrees, or states. It is also true that similar reactions can occur, not only with oxygen but with many other elements. For example, carbon, sulfur, copper, and iron will burn in chlorine gas. In such cases, these elements are said to be "oxidized," even though no oxygen is involved. The reactions with oxygen are used as a pattern or type for the others. Some products of "oxidation" with chlorine are:



The term used to describe the degree of oxidation of an element is *oxidation number*, or *oxidation state*. In electrovalent compounds the oxidation number of the element is the same as the electrovalence of each ion; but for covalent compounds the oxidation number is *not* the same as the covalence. For covalent compounds the oxidation number is defined as the charge the atom would have in the molecule if it were there as an ion. The distinction is important because, among other reasons, in many compounds atoms are formed into groups called *radicals*, such as manganese oxide ( $MnO_4^{-}$ ). Within this radical, the bonds are covalent; but for the determination of the oxidation number, each atom must be considered as though it were present independently as an ion.

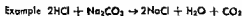
The rules for computing oxidation numbers of most elements are as follows:

- 1 The oxidation number of an uncombined element is 0
- 2 The oxidation numbers of hydrogen and oxygen are 1 and 2 respectively
- 3 The sum of the oxidation numbers of all the atoms in a molecule is 0

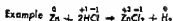
There are a few exceptions to these rules where peroxides, alkali metal hydrides, and oxygen fluoride may be involved.

Oxidation numbers provide a helpful method for classifying chemical reactions as follows:

- 1 Reactions that involve no change in oxidation number



- 2 Reactions that involve change in oxidation number for certain elements



The oxidation number for each kind of atom is written over the element symbols.

#### Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Reactions that involve a change in oxidation number are called oxidation-reduction reactions. An element is oxidized if the oxidation number has become more positive in value. For example, in the equation directly above, the oxidation number of zinc has changed from 0 to +2. The term *reduction* describes the opposite process when the oxidation number has become more negative in value. For example, in the equation directly above, the hydrogen is reduced. The oxidation number has changed from +1 to 0. Notice

#### COMPARISON OF ELECTROVALENCE COVALENCE AND OXIDATION NUMBER

COMPOUND	ELECTROVALENCE	COVALENCE	OXIDATION NUMBER
NaCl	$\text{Na}^{+} = +1$ $\text{Cl}^{-} = -1$	—	$\text{Na}^{+} = +1$ $\text{Cl}^{-} = -1$
H <sub>2</sub> O	—	H—1 O=2	H—+1 O—2
CH <sub>4</sub>	—	C—4 H=1	C—-4 H=+1
CO <sub>2</sub>	—	C—4 Cl=1	C—+4 Cl=—1
CH <sub>2</sub> Cl <sub>2</sub>	—	C—4 Cl=1 H=1	C—0 Cl=—1 H=+1
KMnO <sub>4</sub>	$\text{K}^{+} = +1$ $\text{MnO}_4^{-} = -1$	— Mn=4 O=1	$\text{K}^{+} = +1$ Mn=+7 O=—7

The first example (NaCl) shows that electrovalences and oxidation numbers have the same values. The next three examples show how covalences and oxidation numbers can differ only by absence or presence of charge. In CH<sub>4</sub> and CCl<sub>4</sub>, the strongly opposite electrovalent character of H and Cl accounts for all oxidation phenomena and C has no charge.

The compound KMnO<sub>4</sub> ionizes as the positive ion K<sup>+</sup> while the radical MnO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup> is the negative ion. This radical ion itself is held together by covalent bonds, but if the atoms are considered as though they were ions, the resulting oxidation numbers would be as shown.

too that if everything is counted through the entire equation, oxidation and reduction are equal and balance to 0.

Oxidation-reduction reactions are some of the most important reactions known. They are involved in obtaining metals from their ores (metallurgy), in combustion of fuels, in utilization of foods, in the production of an electric current in a battery, and in all electrolysis or electroplating processes.

#### Speeding Reactions by Catalysis

The rates of most reactions can be speeded up or retarded by the presence of a substance called a *catalyst*. Examples of catalysts are the coloring material (chlorophyll) in plants, vitamins in foods, enzymes in digestive juices, hormones in ductless glands, and lead tetraethyl in ethyl gasoline.

Why catalysts act as they do is not well known, but it is known that a catalyst lowers the energy needed to make substances react. We may say that it provides an easier path for the reaction, somewhat like a tunnel through a mountain.

#### Ions in Crystals, Acids, Bases, and Salts

Atoms (and groups of atoms) with electrical charges are called *ions*. Studies with X rays have shown that crystals of electrovalent compounds, such as table salt and Epsom salts, are composed of ions in fixed positions rather than of atoms or of molecules existing as groups (see *Ions Matter*).

We commonly define an *acid* as a substance that yields hydrogen ions (H<sup>+</sup>) when in solution (see *Acids*). Hydrogen. A *base* is a substance that yields hydroxyl ions (OH<sup>-</sup>) in any solution. An acid neutralizes a base to form a salt and water. For example,



Some common examples of salts are these:

- NaCl (sodium chloride, or common table salt)
- MgSO<sub>4</sub> (magnesium sulfate, or Epsom salts)
- Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (sodium carbonate, or washing soda)
- NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sodium acid carbonate, or baking soda)
- CaCO<sub>3</sub> (calcium carbonate, or limestone)
- NaNO<sub>3</sub> (sodium nitrate, or nitrate of soda)

A compound that breaks down very largely into ions is called a *strong electrolyte*. Those which ionize to a slight extent are called *weak*. Acetic acid (the acid of vinegar) and aqueous ammonia are examples of weak electrolytes. (See also *Electrolysis*.)

#### Ions in Water Solutions

When crystalline compounds such as salts are dissolved in water, the ions are separated from each other (*dissociated*) and they move about freely in the solution. This reaction occurs because water has a marked *dissolving power* for crystalline substances (see *Solutions*).

This power can be explained most simply, however, by noting how water can dissociate some covalent compounds—for example, gaseous hydrogen chloride.

The pure substance (HCl) exists at room temperature as a greenish-yellow cloud of gaseous covalent molecules. Chemists know, however, that these molecules are *polar*. This means that the electrons are

not symmetrically arranged around the H and Cl atoms. They are attracted more strongly to the Cl. This weakens the bond between the H and the Cl and also gives the molecule a positive and a negative end. This kind of a molecule is called a *polar molecule*, and the bond is called a *polar-covalent bond*.

Water molecules likewise are polar. They have a distorted electron distribution and hence have positive and negative ends. This makes it possible for water molecules to attach themselves to ions or other molecules, and *hydrate* them (that is, combine them with water). This happens, for example, when HCl is added to water (Stage 1, right). The reaction occurs because they are both polar molecules.

Another reaction also takes place, however. The oxygen atom has an unengaged pair of electrons that it can share. Furthermore, the proton  $H^+$  in HCl is attracted more by the unengaged pair of electrons in the oxygen atom of the water molecule than it is by the pair on the chlorine atom. Therefore it leaves the chlorine atom and goes to the water molecule (Stage 2). This forms  $H_3O^+$  and  $Cl^-$  ions.

The  $H_3O^+$  ion is called a *hydrated hydrogen ion*, or *hydronium ion* (meaning  $H^+$  combined with a molecule of water, thus:  $H^+H_2O$ ). The bond between the  $H^+$  and the  $H_2O$  is called a *co-ordinate-covalent bond*, because both electrons in the bond are supplied by one reactant ( $H_2O$ ). Probably most hydrates of positively charged ions are formed by this kind of bond.

Hydration occurs with other ions, especially small ones such as  $Li^+$ ,  $Be^{++}$ , and  $Al^{+++}$ . By exerting their polar character (or by using unshared pairs of elec-

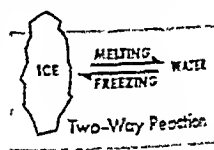
trons), water molecules can easily attach themselves to such ions by strong electrical forces. Since these forces become much stronger as the distances between the particles become shorter, the tiny  $H^+$ , a bare proton of small radius, forms hydrated ions readily.

Water molecules often remain attached to ions or molecules when a substance crystallizes. Such attached water is called *water of crystallization*, and the crystalline compound is called a *hydrate*. In formula, the water of hydration, or crystallization, is often indicated by a dot, thus (for sulfuric acid hydrate):  $H_2SO_4 \cdot H_2O$ .

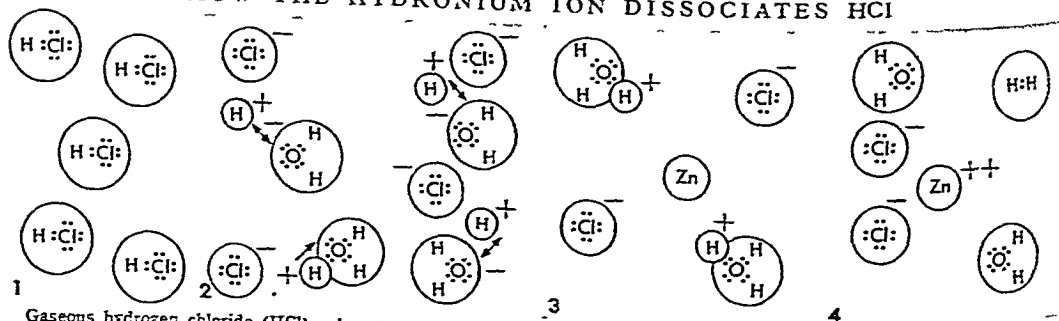
#### Equilibriums in Two-Way Reactions

Many changes, or reactions, in nature and in chemistry are "two-way," or *reversible*. A good example is such a *physical change* is what occurs when ice is floating in water. Usually some melting takes place; that is, ice turns into water. However, some water near the ice will freeze. Which process will prevail depends upon the conditions that surround the "reacting system" of water and ice.

If the system is warm enough, melting will proceed much more rapidly than freezing until all the ice has become water. If the temperature is below the freezing point, however, the rate of freezing will surpass the rate of melting until all the water (down to a certain level) has become ice. At the exact melting point of ice or the freezing point of water, the two processes will be in balance, or in *equilibrium*. But the situation will be dynamic; that is, each process will be going on. The situation is not a static condition of nothing happening. The "two-way" reactions which go on constantly in such a situation are shown in the diagram directly above. (Usually the reactions which require *more heat* or other form of energy are considered to be "moving to the right" in such diagrams. For example, melting, which requires addition of heat to the reacting system, is shown as proceeding to the right.)



#### HOW THE HYDRONIUM ION DISSOCIATES HCl



Gaseous hydrogen chloride (HCl) exists as molecules held together by covalent bonds (1). When HCl is dissolved in water ( $H_2O$ ), the molecules combine with water, then dissociate immediately into ions (2) which form positively charged hydronium ( $H_3O^+$ ) and negatively charged chlorine ( $Cl^-$ ). The chlorine atoms keep the electrons which formed the covalent bonds in the gaseous state of HCl.

An oxidation-reduction reaction occurs when atoms of zinc (Zn) are added to such a solution (3). The electrical forces involved promptly strip two electrons from the zinc atoms (oxidation number 0), leaving them as zinc ions. The hydrogen atoms gain the electrons and form gaseous hydrogen molecules ( $H_2$ ) by covalent bonds. This leaves a solution (4) of dissociated zinc chloride ( $Zn^{++}Cl_2^-$ ).

Another reversible physical reaction occurs between a liquid and its vapor. Equilibrium is attained when the vapor is at saturation pressure in a closed container (see Matter).

Many chemical reactions are likewise reversible. Among those which show important facts about equilibrium are the following:

Ammonia manufacture  $N_2 + 3H_2 \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3$

Zinc copper ions  $Zn + Cu^{++} \rightleftharpoons Zn^{++} + Cu$

Carbonic acid  $H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-$

If the conditions of these physical and chemical equilibria are disturbed by such factors as changing the temperature, increasing the pressure or adding more solute, the reacting system will adjust itself. It will dissolve more solute, melt more ice or the like to minimize the effect of the change and establish a new equilibrium. This adjustment to re-establish equilibrium is an example of what is known as the principle of Le Chatelier.

#### How a Knowledge of Equilibria Helps

There are many ways in which the knowledge of equilibria is used by chemists. Among them are the following:

**Example 1. Liquid  $\rightleftharpoons$  Vapor Equilibrium.** If the amount of vapor (called the *vapor pressure*) that is in contact with its liquid state in a closed container is determined at several different temperatures a chemist can calculate the value of the heat of vaporization of the liquid. This is the heat energy required to evaporate a gram molecular weight of the liquid.

**Example 2.  $N_2 + 3H_2 \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3$  Equilibrium.** This is an important equilibrium in industry, since ammonia is an important industrial gas. A knowledge of the effect of temperature and pressure as well as of catalysts on the reaction helps to determine the most efficient conditions for producing ammonia. For example, high pressures will shift this equilibrium to the right (toward the formation of  $NH_3$ ). This we can predict from the principle of Le Chatelier, because there are four volumes of reactants (one  $N_2$  and three  $H_2$ ) and only two volumes of product ( $2NH_3$ ).

**Example 3.  $Zn + Cu^{++} \rightleftharpoons Zn^{++} + Cu$  Equilibrium.** This equilibrium depends upon the relative electron-attracting power of zinc atoms and copper ions, and is extremely important in electrochemistry. Knowledge of it helps particularly in studies of electric cells and batteries. Principles applying to this and similar reacting systems can be studied by measuring the electromotive force of a cell or battery made of zinc and copper. All oxidation-reduction reactions involve this type of equilibrium.

**Example 4.  $H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-$  Equilibrium.** Weak acids and weak bases establish equilibria of this type. Such equilibria are important not only in chemistry but also in biology and medicine. These equilibria can be shifted by changing the concentration of the ions. For example if sodium acid carbonate ( $NaHCO_3$ ) is added to a solution of carbonic acid the concentration of acid carbonate ion ( $HCO_3^-$ ) is increased. This yields more  $HCO_3^-$  ions to collide

with  $H^+$  ions to unite with them and thus to form more undissociated  $H_2CO_3$  molecules. Hence the concentration of  $H^+$  ions is reduced and the acidity of the solution is thereby reduced. (Degree of acidity or alkalinity is often measured by 'hydrogen ion concentration' written pH as explained in the article Hydrogen.) The effect produced upon an ionic equilibrium by adding a common ion is called the *common ion effect*.

If a large excess of the salt  $NaHCO_3$  is added, the  $H^+$  concentration remains constant in spite of addition of more  $H^+$  ions to the solution. Such a solution made of a weak acid and an excess of a salt of a weak acid on a weak base is called a *buffer system*. Buffer systems are important in many places, one of them being the blood stream. Buffers keep the  $H^+$  ion concentration of the blood stream constant at a slight natural alkalinity of pH=7.4 in spite of the varying charges on the different materials carried.

#### The Fields of Chemistry

The work of the chemist in investigating different parts of nature and in synthesizing new things has made chemistry a very large field of study. Consequently chemistry has been divided into a number of fields as follows:

**Analytical chemistry.** The methods of determining the identity (kind) and quantity of elements present in a substance is called analytical chemistry. This field is divided into *qualitative analysis* or methods of identifying the kinds of elements present in a sample, and *quantitative analysis* which indicates the amount of the elements present.

Today the chemist uses many methods in doing chemical analysis. Some of the older methods are blow pipe analysis and analysis of samples by a complex scheme of separation and identification of ions by precipitation or by color. Newer methods involve the use of the spectroscope, the mass spectrograph, the X-ray tube, ultraviolet fluorescence and the atomic pile (see Radiation, Spectrum, X-rays).

**Organic chemistry.** We now know more than 600,000 compounds of carbon but only about 30,000 compounds of all the other elements. The study of this large number of carbon compounds has been organized into a field known as organic chemistry. Examples of organic compounds are gasoline, petroleum, sugar, starch, cellulose, proteins, plastics, rubber, and fabrics. (See also Organic Chemistry.)

**Inorganic chemistry.** The field of inorganic chemistry comprises the study of the compounds of all of the elements except those carbon compounds studied in organic chemistry.

**Physical chemistry.** The application of physical methods to the study of chemical problems is called physical chemistry. Included in this field are atomic and molecular structure, theory of reaction rates, mechanism of reactions, chemical equilibria, energy changes in reactions, theories of solids, liquids, gases, and solutions, electrochemistry and radioactivity. This field is a fascinating study of border line problems between chemistry and physics.



**Colloid chemistry.** This field comprises a study of the behavior of particles of matter that are larger than atoms and ordinary molecules but smaller than objects that can be seen with the best microscope. Particles in this range of subdivision (10 to 2,000 Å) have many properties unique to their size. Today this is a very important field of study. It includes such things as rubber, plastics, fabrics, viruses, chromosomes, and gases. Some of the tools used to study these particles are the ultracentrifuge, the ultramicroscope, and the electron microscope.

**Biochemistry—Physiological chemistry.** Both these fields involve the study of the chemical processes that occur in the living structure. They are of particular importance in agriculture, biology, bacteriology, and medicine.

**Electrochemistry.** This includes a study of the chemical reactions that produce an electric current and of the chemical reactions that are produced by an

electric current. It embraces many other things such as the study of the electrical conductivity of solutions and of the phenomena that occur at electrodes. There are many applications of electrochemistry. Some of these are the metallurgical processes (aluminum, sodium, magnesium, and calcium are all obtained by electrolysis); methods of chemical analysis, the production of chemicals; and the determination of equilibrium processes.

**Nuclear chemistry.** This is one of the newest fields of chemistry. It includes a study of radioactivity, the structure of the nucleus, nuclear reactions, and the use of radioactive isotopes as tracers.

**Chemical engineering.** This is a border-line field between chemistry and engineering. It comprises the engineering processes, procedures, and problems involved in producing chemicals on a pilot plant or on a large-plant scale. It is one of our most important fields of engineering today.

## Great Scientists Who Advanced Chemistry



Each of these four people made discoveries which opened great avenues of advance in chemistry. 1. Dalton established the atomic theory, the basis of 19th-century chemistry. 2. Mendeleev's work led to the Periodic Table and provided the basis for

grouping elements in families and explaining their properties. 3. Marie Curie discovered radium, one of the keys to modern electrical theories concerning matter. 4. In our time Pauling has made great advances possible by establishing modern theories

**CHEMISTRY** is one of the newest of the physical sciences. Its modern form and its powerful methods began developing about the time of the American Revolution, less than two centuries ago. All the preceding history of chemistry may be divided into three periods, which can be called (1) the period of "black magic"; (2) the period of alchemy; and (3) the period of transition, or "primitive modern," between alchemy and truly modern chemistry.

### "Black Magic"—the First Period

The period of black magic extended from prehistoric times to about the beginning of the Christian Era. Throughout this long period in history mysticism and superstition prevailed. Most men believed that natural processes were controlled by spirits; and they relied upon magic to persuade the spirits to help while they conducted practical operations. During that time very little progress was made toward understanding how the universe is made. Men did, however, develop quite an array of practical knowledge. They

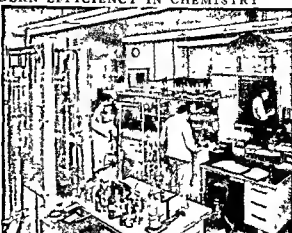
recognized some elements, such as iron, gold, and copper; and they made some progress in such arts as glassmaking, metalworking, and alloying. This was the period of the Sumerian, Babylonian, Egyptian, and Greek cultures.

During this period, ancient Greek philosophers such as Thales and Aristotle speculated on the nature of matter, but their theories had little in common with modern chemical theories. They believed that earth, air, fire, and water (some of them imagined a fifth substance called the "quintessence") were the basic elements that composed all matter. They speculated also upon the possibility of abstracting such qualities as hardness, heat or cold, and color from common materials and combining them to make rarer or more valuable substances. They knew that iron could be made from a dirty, brown earthen rock and that bronze was made by combining copper and tin. Hence it seemed possible that if yellowness, hardness, and the like could be obtained and combined in cor-

## EARLY GROPING AND MODERN EFFICIENCY IN CHEMISTRY



Modern chemistry grew out of ancient and medieval alchemy. Alchemists worked for centuries with 'trial and error' methods to produce gold from less costly materials (left), and failed.



Today chemists bring to their problems a wealth of financial support, splendid equipment and tested knowledge which has been accumulated through several centuries of research.

rect proportions, the product would be gold. Such speculations gave rise to alchemy.

#### The Long, Sterile Period of Alchemy

The span of time from about the beginning of the Christian Era to about the 17th and 18th centuries is considered the period of alchemy. The alchemists believed that they could convert metals into gold with the aid of a mystical thing called a philosopher's stone which they never found. Many discoveries of new elements and compounds were made during this period, but the alchemists discovered very little that was worth while concerning the fundamental nature of matter or of the true nature of chemical reactions. They were not able to do so because their basic theories were so far from describing what actually happens, as we understand these matters today (See also Alchemy).

In the 13th century such alchemists as Roger Bacon, Albertus Magnus, and Raymond Lully began to realize that the search for the philosopher's stone was useless. They began to feel that alchemists might better search for ways and means to help the world's work with useful new products and new methods. In the 16th century, another important leader in the new trend appeared in Theophrastus Bombastus von Hohenheim, an aggressive talented Swiss. Like many learned men of his day, he adopted a Latin name, using Paracelsus ("superior to Celsus," Celsus being a distinguished Roman physician of the 1st century A.D.).

Paracelsus insisted that the object of alchemy should be the cure of the sick rather than the fruitless search for gold. The elements, he said, were salt, sulfur, and mercury (long connected with the "elixir"), and they would give health if present in the body in the proper proportions. On this basis he practiced medicine and attracted many followers. This was the period of *iatrochemistry*, or chemistry applied to the study of medicine.

One of the first really scientific chemists was Robert Boyle. In a book called 'The Skeptical Chymist' he rejected the elements of the iatrochemists and started the list of elements which we know today. His name is also associated with the law concerning the volume and pressure of gases (see Gas). In 1661, he helped found a scientific society which later became the Royal Society of England.

#### Primitive Beginnings of Modern Chemistry

For about two centuries after Boyle, scientists continued to make useful discoveries. They made little progress in fundamental theory, however, because they were still far from understanding the true nature of matter or from knowing what actually happens in chemical reactions.

Perhaps the greatest source of confusion and defeat in these centuries was a theory of burning (combustion) called the *phlogiston* theory. It was originated by the chemists Johann Bercher and Georg Ernst Stahl. According to this theory, heat was an "essence" called phlogiston, like yellowness and hardness in the theories of the ancient philosophers. It was supposed to escape from substances during burning processes.

By this time, chemists were learning to use the "modern method" of winning knowledge, that is, testing theories with experiments (see Science). But tests did not support the existence of phlogiston.

The first clue to the truth came when an English chemist, Joseph Priestley, discovered in 1774 that a certain gas (now called oxygen) was essential to the burning process. (Oxygen was also discovered by a Swedish chemist named Scheele at about the same time.) A few years earlier another English scientist, Henry Cavendish, discovered the element hydrogen. A brilliant French chemist, Antoine Laurent Lavoisier, used the discoveries of Priestley and Cavendish to help him plan and perform a series of decisive experiments to solve the problem of the burning process. He

gave us the present accepted theory of combustion (see Lavoisier). This contribution came at the time of the American Revolution, and it is often considered the beginning of modern chemistry.

#### The Atomic Theory and Modern Chemistry

Lavoisier's results gave chemists their first sound understanding concerning the nature of chemical reactions. Another cornerstone which dealt with the nature of matter came a few years later in the *atomic theory* advanced in 1805 by an English schoolteacher, John Dalton. This theory states that matter is made of small particles called atoms and that chemical changes take place between atoms or groups of atoms.

Being equipped at last with sound views about the nature of matter and of chemical reactions, chemistry began making rapid strides. In quick succession came Joseph Louis Proust's law of definite proportions and the gas laws of Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac. In this period too came the hypothesis of Amedeo Avogadro, an Italian chemist, about the number of molecules in a volume of gas. To Dalton's theory that the atoms of a single element have the same weight, Avogadro, in 1811, added the idea that one quart (or other volume of a gas) contains the same number of molecules as an equal volume of any other gas if both are at the same temperature and pressure. His calculations also showed that if the gas is an element (as hydrogen, oxygen, and so on), the atoms unite in pairs to form molecules (written  $H_2$ ,  $O_2$ , and so on).

The scientists knew, however, that equal volumes of the different gases have unequal weights. Avogadro's hypothesis implied that this showed the relative weights of the single atoms. This has been proved to be correct, and today Avogadro's law may be stated thus: *Equal volumes of all gases under the same conditions of temperature and pressure contain the same number of molecules.*

Humphry Davy, about 1806, isolated a number of elements to add to the growing list (see Davy). Jöns Jakob Berzelius, in 1826, analyzed hundreds of compounds and published accurate tables of atomic weights. Friedrich Wöhler's synthesis of urea in 1828 proved that organic compounds could be made in the laboratory and opened a vast field of organic chemistry (see Organic Chemistry.) This began the development of the concept that organic compounds have geometrical structure. Friedrich Kekulé proposed the cyclic (ring) structure of benzene about this time. Michael Faraday formulated the laws of electrochemistry in 1834 (see Faraday).

#### Mendelée'v's Basis for Modern Theory

By the middle of the 19th century, about 60 elements were known. John A. R. Newlands, Stanislaw Cannizzaro, A. E. B. de Chancourtois, and others, had noticed that certain elements were much alike. The work of these men enabled Dmitri Mendelée'v, in 1869, to publish the first Periodic Table. This table became the foundation of theoretical chemistry (see Periodic Table.)

To this period belongs the indefatigable Robert Bunsen, teacher and inventor of the spectroscope, the

Bunsen burner, and many instruments (see Bunsen). The French chemist Louis Pasteur, one of the world's great geniuses, shed new light on the relation between chemical composition and molecular structure by his discovery of isomers (see Organic Chemistry). His work on antitoxins revolutionized biochemistry (see Pasteur).

#### Importance of Physical Chemistry

During the last quarter of the 19th century, physical chemistry became important through the work of Wilhelm Ostwald and Jacobus Van't Hoff on chemical equilibria and Svante August Arrhenius on the theory of ionization. The mathematical formulation of the relations of equilibria between the three states of matter (solid, liquid, and gas), called the "phase rule," was done by Willard Gibbs. Accurate atomic weight determinations were the work of Theodore Richards. Between 1894 and 1895, John Strutt Rayleigh and William Ramsay discovered helium and other inert gases.

After 1900 chemists began receiving invaluable aid from discoveries made in physics about the electrical nature of the atom. (See Atoms; Radioactivity; Radium.) Henry Moseley, working with X rays from the different elements, assigned atomic numbers to the elements. Max von Laue and Sir William Bragg and his son laid the basis for determining the structure of crystals by means of X rays. Francis W. Aston developed the mass spectrograph and used it to demonstrate the existence of isotopes. Later Harold C. Urey isolated an isotope of hydrogen which has become very important as a chemical tracer.

In 1896, Henri Becquerel and the Curies had discovered the phenomenon of radioactivity. This laid the basis for nuclear chemistry and physics (see Curie; Radioactivity; Radium). In 1919 Ernest Rutherford produced the first artificial transmutation of elements, and in 1934 the Joliot-Curies discovered that all elements could be made to be radioactive. By 1939 Otto Hahn, Fritz Strassmann, and Lise Meitner had established the occurrence of uranium fission. By the early 1940's nuclear reactions had been used to make radioactive isotopes of all elements from atomic number 1 to 98 inclusive. Glenn Seaborg contributed much to this latter work.

In the first 25 years of the 20th century, Rutherford's work laid the basis for the interpretation of the structure of atoms. Gilbert Lewis, Irving Langmuir, and Niels Bohr submitted the first qualitative concept of atomic structure in the period 1912-25. The more workable picture was given by the wave theory of matter (1925). In the late 1920's and early 1930's, Linus Pauling contributed much to knowledge of the nature of the chemical bond and of the relationship between structure of atoms and molecules and their properties.

From 1850 to 1950 scientists learned more about the fundamental nature of matter and of our universe than all mankind learned in the previous 50 centuries. This remarkable success demonstrates the power of the tool used by scientists—the *scientific method*.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CHEMISTRY

- I The meaning and function of chemistry how chemistry helps to understand our world C-209 how to take apart and recombine materials C-209-10 See also the Reference-Outline for Physics
- II The structure of matter M 142a d
  - A Electrons and protons A 457-8 E-316 E-293-4 M 142c-g E-344c Einstein's theory of mass-energy relations R 100
  - B Atom: A-456 70 C-209 10
  - C Molecules C-210, G-28, H-317 A 456
  - D Physical states of matter C-209
    - 1 Solids M 142b-c crystals and amorphous solids C-525
    - 2 Liquids L-262-5
    - 3 Gases and vapors M 142c G 28 30 L-265 transitions between liquids and vapors M 142
    - 4 Colloids C-384
- III Chemical behavior of matter
  - A Chemical symbols, formulas and equations C-211 atomic structures C-212
  - B Elements and their characteristics C 212 A-456
    - 1 Atomic weights and numbers C 211 A 458
    - 2 Periodic Table C-213 P 150 table P 151
    - 3 Families of elements C-212 table P 151 See also names of elements in Fact-Index
      - a Metals C-213 M 176-7 table P 151 non-metals and alkali metals A 168 alkaline earth metals A 168 alloys A 172-5
      - b Halogens C-213 C-208 table P-151
      - c Inert gases C-213 table P 151
      - d Radioactive elements R 154 R-56 U-405
    - 4 Variations isotopes P 150
  - C How metals form compounds C-210, O-424
    - 1 The meaning of valence C-215
    - 2 Electrical character of valence C-215-16 A-460
  - D Types of chemical reactions
    - 1 Uses of oxidation numbers C-216-17
    - 2 Oxidation-reduction reactions C-217 O-435
    - 3 Reactions speeded by catalysis C-217
  - E Types of compounds
    - 1 Acids alkalis (or bases) and salts C-217 A 0
      - a Typical acids hydrochloric H-459 nitric N 240 sulfuric S-448 carbonic C-119 hydrocyanic C-532 tartaric T 20
      - b Typical alkalis sodium hydroxide A 9 L-325 potassium hydroxide P 389
      - c Typical salts sodium chloride S-29 carbonate of lime C-178 L-244 nitrates N-239 sulfates S-448 cyanides C-532
    - 2 Radicals A 168, A 236
    - 3 Silicates S-180
  - F Organic chemistry O-424-424d See also the Reference-Outline for Food
    - 1 Hydrocarbons O-424-424a C-120 H 458 diagram O-424b
    - 2 Carbohydrates (sugars starches and cellulose) O-424c B-145 C-120 F 216-17 S-382 S-443
    - 3 Alcohols O-424b, A 145 C-216 glycerin G-127, esters O-424c
    - 4 Organic acids O 424c diagram O-424b
    - 5 Fats and oils O-424c, F-44 F 216 217 B-145
    - 6 Nitrogen compounds amino acids proteins, enzymes C-424c, B-145, F 216 F-422, E-388
  - G How chemicals behave in solutions S-233 5
    - 1 Dissociation and ionization I 205 M 142c-f E-301 E-315 C-217 how the hydronium ion dissociates hydrogen chloride diagrams C-218
    - 2 Hydrolysis H-460 G 127
    - 3 Electrolysis E-302 E-315 E-316
    - 4 Osmosis P 292 L-264 diagrams P 293 L-265
    - 5 Solubility I 205
  - H Chemical equilibria C-218 19
  - I Behavior of gases G 28
  - J Behavior of ions in crystals I 206 C-217, diagram S-234
  - IV The fields of chemistry C-219-20
    - A Analytical chemistry qualitative and quantitative C-219
    - B Organic chemistry O-424-424d B-145 7
    - C Inorganic chemistry C-219 20
    - D Colloid chemistry C-220 C-384-5
    - E Biochemistry and physiological chemistry C-220 B-145-7 See also the Reference-Outline for Biology and Physiology
      - 1 Plant chemistry B-146-7 P 290-5 L-151
      - 2 Animal chemistry E-389 P-422 P 238
      - 3 Bacteria and fermentation B-13 F-32 N 240
    - F Electrochemistry, nuclear chemistry, and chemical engineering C-220
  - V History of chemistry C-220

Note See also the Reference-Outline for Industry American

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CHEMISTRY

## Books for Younger Readers

- Ahrens M R and others Living Chemistry (Ginn 1949)  
Beeler H F and Brerley F M. Experiments in Chemistry (Crown 1952)  
Freeman M S and I M. Fun with Chemistry (Random 1946)  
Meyer J S. Picture Book of Molecules and Atoms (Lothrop 1947)  
Meyer, J S. Picture Book of Chemistry (Lothrop 1950)  
Morgan A. F. First Chemistry Book for Boys and Girls (Doubleday 1950)  
Morgan A. F. Getting Acquainted with Chemistry (Appleton 1942)  
Schwartz Julius. It's Fun to Know Why (Whittlesey 1952)  
Yates R F. Atomic Experiments for Boys (Harper 1954)

## Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

- Deming H G. General Chemistry (Wiley 1952)  
Forber Edward. Evolution of Chemistry (Ronald 1952)  
Fendley Alexander. Chemistry in the Service of Man (Longmans 1947)  
Garrett A S. Essentials of Chemistry (Ginn 1951)  
Jaffe Bernard. Crucibles: The Story of Chemistry (Simon & Schuster 1949)  
Jaffe Bernard. New World of Chemistry (Silver 1952)  
McPherson William and others. Chemistry at Work (Ginn 1949)  
Potter R B. Young People's Book of Atomic Energy (Dodd 1952)  
Rosen Jacob and Eastman Max. Road to Abundance (McGraw 1953)  
Sokoloff F F. Miracle Drugs (Prentice-Hall 1949)  
Taylor F S. The Alchemists: Founders of Modern Chemistry (Schuman 1949)  
Weaver E C and Foster L S. Chemistry for Our Times (McGraw 1947)

**CHERRY.** Its delicious fruit and pretty pink and white blossoms make this one of the most favored of all trees. Americans eat more than 200,000 tons of cherries every year, baked in pies or served as sauces, desserts, preserves, brandies, and liqueurs.

Ornamental cherry trees which produce no edible fruit are planted only for their beautiful spring flowers. Cherry blossom festivals attract thousands of visitors. Best known in America is the one held in Washington, D. C., in April, when the Japanese cherry trees bordering the Tidal Basin burst into clouds of delicate pink and white blooms. The Japanese have long held such festivals, and the Koreans revere the tree almost as they would a god.

The cherry belongs to the rose family. The flowers look very much like those of the wild rose. Several wild species of cherry are native to America, but the fruit-bearing kinds were developed in Asia and had spread into Europe in prehistoric times. Pits of sweet cherries have been found in the caves of Stone Age man. The edible fruits belong to two species—the sweet and the sour cherries. A third type, the Duke cherry, is a hybrid of these two species.

#### Sour and Sweet Cherries

Sour cherries thrive in moderate, rather cool climates. The largest commercial orchards are in Michigan, New York, and Wisconsin. Among the many varieties are the Richmond, Montmorency, Morello, and Chase. Most of the crop is canned or frozen.

Sweet cherries require a mild climate, without frost, extreme heat, or summer rainfall at the time of ripening. They are grown chiefly on the Pacific coast. Popular varieties include the Black Tartarian, Bing, Lambert, Napoleon, and Royal Anne.

Genuine maraschino cherries are made from the marasca cherry, grown in Yugoslavia. To make the maraschino liquor, pulp is mixed with honey. The mixture is fermented, then distilled. Most of the maraschinos on the market are imitations made from

Royal Anne cherries, grown chiefly in Washington and Oregon. The fruits are soaked in vats of sulfur dioxide for six weeks. Then they are pitted and sent to processing plants in New York and Chicago, where they are washed to remove the bleaching solution, cooked with sugar, and dyed with edible coloring matter.

#### Wild Cherries

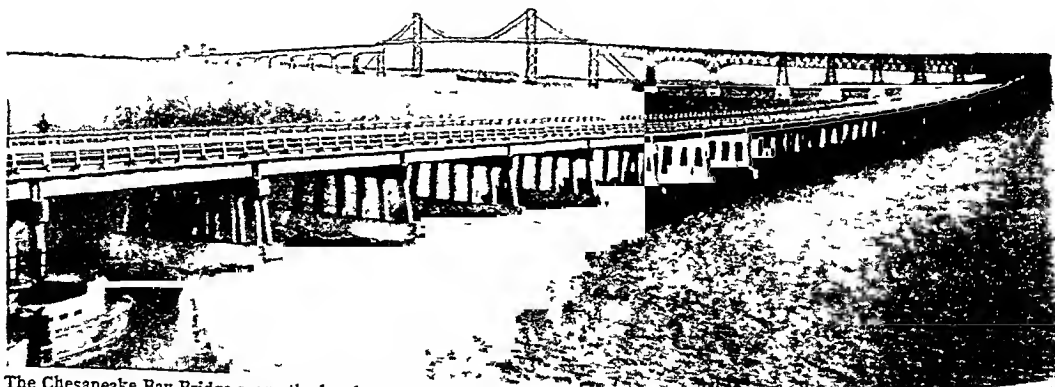
Wild black cherry trees are common in the eastern half of the United States and Canada. They grow along roadsides, fence rows, margins of thickets, and in open woods. Many birds consume the small dark fruit and help it to spread by dropping the stones where the birds perch. Black cherry is a medium-sized tree with rough, scaly black bark, smoother, reddish-brown branches, and long, narrow leaves with finely toothed edges. The heartwood is a rich reddish color with silky luster, prized for high-grade furniture and as a backing for electrotypes used in printing.

Pin, or fire, cherry occurs with aspen trees on burned-over areas of Canada and the northeastern United States. Chokecherry is a shrub or small tree found throughout the United States and much of Canada. Sand cherry is a creeping shrub of beaches and dunes.

The cherry belongs to the genus *Prunus* of the rose family. The scientific name of the sweet cherry is *Prunus avium*; sour cherry, *P. cerasus*; wild black cherry, *P. serotina*; pin, or fire, cherry, *P. pennsylvanica*; chokecherry, *P. virginiana*; sand cherry, *P. pumila*. Ground cherry is a wild flower of the nightshade family, *Solanaceae*. (For pictures in color, see Fruits)

**CHESAPEAKE BAY.** The largest inlet on the Atlantic coast of the United States, Chesapeake Bay is notable for its history, ship activity, and sea-food production. Near its mouth at Jamestown, early colonists founded the first permanent English settlement in the Americas. Along its shores at Yorktown, the colonists later won the decisive battle for independence from the British. Near the head of the bay in another war, Francis Scott Key wrote the national anthem.

### THE WORLD'S LONGEST OVER-WATER STEEL BRIDGE



The Chesapeake Bay Bridge spans the bay between Kent Island on Delmarva Peninsula to the Maryland mainland at Sandy

Point. About four miles long from one shore to the other, it is one of the world's longest bridges. Its main span is 1,600 feet.

Along the bay are the major seaports of Baltimore and Hampton Roads and at Norfolk is the world's most important naval base. This vast expanse of water is second only to New York harbor as the most active seaway in the eastern United States. It is also one of the finest fishing grounds in the world.

The bay is long and narrow. Its upper section divides Maryland in two, its lower section cuts off a piece of Virginia (see Maryland, Virginia). Ships enter the bay from the Atlantic through its 13-mile-wide mouth between Cape Charles and Cape Henry.

The bay is about 195 miles long, from 3 to 30 miles wide, and from 30 to 60 feet deep. It is deep enough for coastal and ocean-going vessels. It covers about 5,000 square miles of water. If its deeply indented shore line were stretched out, it would reach about 27,000 miles.

#### The Drowned Valley of the Susquehanna

Chesapeake Bay is a "drowned" river valley. It is actually the lower part of the Susquehanna River. This river drains into the bay at its head in the north and is navigable for only five miles. A short distance up-

stream is Conowingo Dam, one of the largest hydroelectric developments in the nation.

Along the western shore of the bay pour in broad and deep tidal rivers—the Patapsco, Severn, Patuxent, Potomac, Rappahannock, York, and James. From the eastern shore the bay receives the Elk, Sassafras, Chester, Choptank, and Nantuxoke rivers. Many other lesser estuaries also empty into the bay.

#### A Historic Bay

From the earliest days of the United States, Chesapeake Bay has figured in the nation's history. In 1607 colonists from London landed on Cape Henry. The fear of Indians caused them to sail up the James River and found Jamestown (see Jamestown). This was the first permanent English settlement in the New World. Captain John Smith of the colony explored the bay in 1608 (see Smith). He gave it the Indian name *che-se-pack*, "country on a great river."

In Jamestown also the first session of a representative government in America was held. It occurred in 1619 when the Virginia House of Burgesses met in a church. That same year the first Negro slaves were brought to Jamestown from Africa. Colonists from Virginia made the first permanent settlement in Maryland on Kent Island in 1631.

During the Revolution, Lord Cornwallis surrendered to General Washington at Yorktown in 1781 (see Revolution, American, Washington, George, Yorktown). In the War of 1812 the British used Chesapeake Bay as an invasion route and burned the White House (see War of 1812, White House). While they bombarded Fort Mifflin in Baltimore harbor in 1814, Francis Scott Key penned 'The Star-Spangled Banner' (see Key, National Songs).

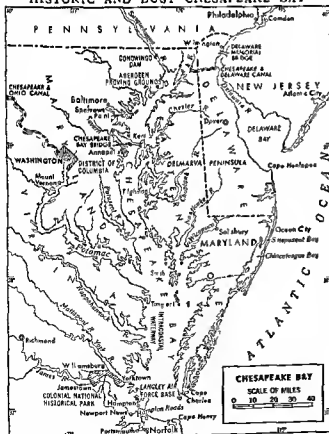
The historic duel of the ironclads, the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*, took place in Hampton Roads during the Civil War (see 'Monitor' and 'Merrimac'). It marked the end of a wooden naval ships.

#### A Tour of the Bay

In a trip down the western shore of Chesapeake Bay from its head, one first sees the Aberdeen Proving Grounds. Here the United States Army tests guns, tanks, and other heavy weapons.

Next comes Baltimore, the sixth largest city in the United States (see Baltimore). In the time of sailing ships in the 19th century, its shipbuilders turned out the speedy Baltimore clipper. Now its large harbor at the mouth of the Patapsco River handles great ocean vessels. The city is a leading port and manufacturing center of the nation. The sprawling Sparrows Point steel plant nearby uses Appalachian coal and imported iron ore.

#### HISTORIC AND BUSY CHESAPEAKE BAY



The long sliver of Chesapeake Bay cuts into the eastern coast of the United States. Its place names read like a history book—Jamestown, Fort Mifflin, and others. Its waters are busy with ocean ships and plentiful with fish.

Farther south, where the Severn River meets the bay, is Annapolis, the capital of Maryland and the site of the United States Naval Academy (*see* Annapolis; Naval Academy). Next are the wide Patuxent River and the even broader Potomac, which divides Maryland and Virginia (*see* Potomac River). On the banks of the Potomac are Mount Vernon, George Washington's home, and Washington, D. C., the nation's capital (*see* Mount Vernon; Washington, D. C.).

At Georgetown, Md., the old Chesapeake and Ohio Canal begins. Its promoters planned a 360-mile canal to connect Chesapeake Bay and the Ohio River, but they built only 185 miles of it, to Cumberland, Md. (1828-50). The 22-mile section to Seneca, Md., is in the national park system (*see* National Parks).

Down the Virginia shore is the Rappahannock River on whose banks much fighting occurred in the Civil War. The York and James rivers then create a long peninsula, one of the most historic areas in the nation. Here is Williamsburg, the colonial capital of Virginia, which has been restored (*see* Williamsburg). It, with Yorktown, Jamestown, the Colonial Parkway, and Cape Henry, forms the Colonial National Historic Park. Hampton, founded in 1610 near the tip of the peninsula, is the oldest existing English settlement in the United States. Nearby is Fort Monroe, built on the nation's oldest fortified site.

Huge Hampton Roads is where the James, Nansemond, and Elizabeth rivers flow into the southwestern part of Chesapeake Bay. This is one of the world's finest natural harbors, deep enough for the largest ships. Clustered about its 50 square miles of water are Newport News, Portsmouth, and Norfolk. These cities make up the port of Hampton Roads, one of the major port areas of the United States. It was an important supply port in both World Wars.

At Newport News is one of the world's largest shipyards. Norfolk is Virginia's second most populous city and one of the greatest naval bases in the world (*see* Norfolk). It is the operating base for the Atlantic Fleet. At Portsmouth is a big navy yard. Many naval and military establishments surround Hampton Roads, including Langley Air Force Base.

#### Delmarva Peninsula and Its Eastern Shore

The land between Chesapeake Bay on the west and the Delaware River, Delaware Bay, and the Atlantic on the east is the Delmarva Peninsula (*see* Delaware River). On it are almost all Delaware and the "Eastern Shore" consisting of parts of Maryland and Virginia (*see* Delaware). The turnip-shaped peninsula is named for the three states. It is 180 miles long and about 70 miles at its greatest width.

This low and fertile tidewater region furnishes truck crops, fruits, potatoes, poultry, and fish to the eastern seaboard. Salisbury, Md., is a center of the broiler industry; and Crisfield, Md., is called the "sea-food capital of the world." The peninsula has many shore resorts.

The Chesapeake and Delaware Canal cuts across the narrow 12-mile neck of the peninsula (*see* Canals). The canal links the Delaware River and the Elk River,

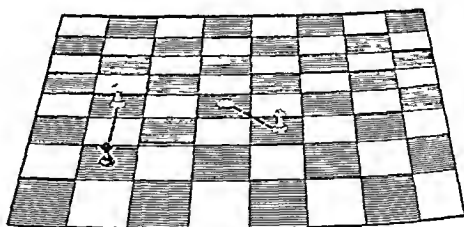
an arm of Chesapeake Bay. This deep canal is part of the Intracoastal Waterway, a sheltered water route along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts. The waterway follows the bay and from Hampton Roads connects with Albemarle Sound through either the Dismal Swamp Canal or the Albemarle and Chesapeake Canal.

The fishermen and farmers of the isolated Eastern Shore and of the islands, such as Tangier Island, Va., and Smith Island, Md., preserve many old customs. The Eastern Shore is noted for waterfowl hunting and muskrat trapping. Chesapeake Bay Bridge, completed in 1952 between Sandy Point, Md., and Kent Island Md., has made the Eastern Shore less remote.

Chesapeake Bay is one of the important commercial and sport fishing grounds of the United States for shell and fin fish. It is famous for oysters, crabs, and diamondback terrapin. Great quantities of the inedible menhaden are taken off the western shore of the bay to be made into fertilizer, soap, oil, and glue. In Hampton Roads are valuable oyster beds. Although subject to sudden squalls, the bay is one of America's best sailing and cruising waters.

**CHESS.** The game of chess is a warfare in miniature. If we accept one tradition, it was invented in India to divert men from the attractions of actual war. In chess two opposing forces—consisting on each side of the king and queen, two bishops, two knights, two rooks (or castles), and eight pawns (foot soldiers)—are drawn up in battle array. The strategy of the conflict lies in making a successful attack on the enemy's king. When one player or the other is unable to protect his king from capture on the next move he is "checkmated," and the game is over.

In the hands of masters chess becomes one of the most intricate and interesting games ever invented. Its value as mental training has often been urged. Some experts have developed such ability that they can play 10 to 14 games at the same time and with their eyes blindfolded.



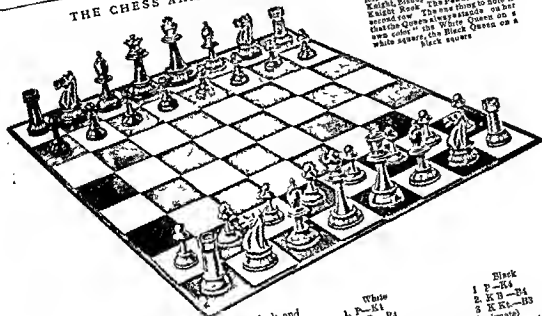
A pawn which has not left the second, or "pawn," row may move one or two squares ahead in its first move. After that it may only move one square. In capturing an opposing piece, however, the pawn moves forward one diagonal square.

Chess is probably the most ancient of all games of pure skill. Its origin is lost in the legends and traditions of the past. It was undoubtedly invented somewhere in the Far East, passing from India to Persia (Iran), and thence to Europe. The word "chess" is supposed to be derived from "shah," the Persian word for king, and "checkmate" from "shah mat," meaning "the king is dead."

The chessboard is the same as the ordinary checker-

# THE CHESS ARMIES DRAWN UP FOR BATTLE

Here is the correct position for the chess game opens. In the bottom row (the first row) are the King, Queen, Rook, Knight, Bishop, Knight, Bishop, Rook, King. The Pawns occupy the second row. The one thing to note is that the Queen always stands on her own color; the White Queen on a white square, the Black Queen on a black square.



board. It is divided into 64 alternating black and white (or red) squares, and the board is so placed that each player sits with a white (or red) square at his right hand. In setting up the pieces always



The moves of the Bishop are diagonal, but if there is nothing in the way he can go as far as he pleases. If a method of travel as you can see, keeps him always on squares of the same color

'give the queen her color', that is, always place the white queen on the proper white (or red) square and the black queen on the proper black square.

## How the Pieces are Placed

The accompanying diagram shows the position of the pieces and pawns on the chessboard at the beginning of a game. The pieces next to the king are called king's bishop (K B), king's knight (K Kt), and king's rook (K R) or castle, while those next to the queen are designated as the queen's pieces for example, queen's bishop (Q B), etc. In front of these pieces are arranged the pawns. The notation 'P-K Kt. 4' indicates that the pawn on this case the pawn in front of the king's knight moves to the fourth square in the king's knight column. The player using the white men moves first. In the next game he uses the black. his opponent the white

A simple game called 'scholar's mate' is given here

- White  
1. P-K4  
2. KB-B4  
3. Q-R5  
4. Q takes BP (check and checkmate)

- Black  
1. P-K4  
2. KB-B4  
3. K Kt-B3

This game, though won by White by methods that could easily be defeated illustrates several of the moves of chess. A pawn moves one square ahead, except on the first move when it may be advanced two squares. Pawns cannot move backwards. In making a capture, however, the pawn moves diagonally and occupies the square of the captured man. A bishop moves diagonally in any direction and for any distance so long as it keeps to the square of its own color. The knight moves one square vertically or horizontally and one square diagonally. The knight has a special privilege not accorded to the

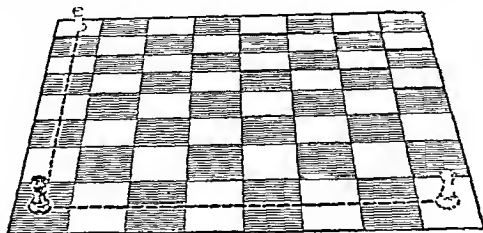


The most curious traveler of all is the Knight. From where he stands in the middle of this board, he can jump to any of the positions indicated by the dotted lines. This is described as one square ahead and one diagonal.

other pieces it can accomplish its move by jumping over any man happening to be in the way provided the move can be completed on a vacant square or on one occupied by an opposing man. The knight then captures that man. But the intervening piece is not



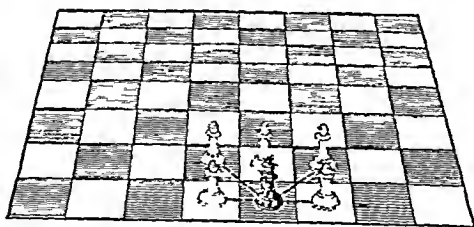
captured. Therein the chess "jump" differs from the "jump" in checkers. The rook or castle moves either vertically or horizontally any distance so long as the path is open. The queen is the most valuable of all



The Rook moves as far as he likes in straight lines; that is, lines parallel to the sides of the board.

the pieces; she can move vertically, horizontally, or diagonally, and for any distance. The king, on the other hand, is rather restricted; he can move in any direction, but to the extent of only one square. A capture is made by moving into a square occupied by an opposing piece, and all captured pieces are removed from the board.

Besides these there are certain special moves. A player may "castle" when his king row is open on either side between the king and the rook. The rook is moved up to the king and the king is "jumped" over to the other side of the rook. This cannot be done if either piece has previously been moved, if the king is in check, or if an opposing man could reach one of the intervening squares in a single move. A pawn reaching the king row of the opposing side becomes any piece (except king) that the owner of the



The King may move in any direction, but only one square at a time. He may not, however, move into a position threatened by an opposing piece.

pawn may choose. It is thus possible to have two or more pieces with queen's privileges at the same time.

To "check" the opposite player is to maneuver one piece or several pieces so that the enemy king is in danger of capture on the next move. When a king is thus threatened, the fact is customarily announced by the word "check," which notifies the opposing player that he must move his king or otherwise protect it. If a player is in check and cannot extricate his king, or capture the attacking man, or place some piece in

front of the king as a protection, he is "checkmated." The king is never actually captured, and is never permitted himself to move into check. A "stalemate" occurs when one player or the other, though not in check, cannot move any of his pieces; more specifically, when one side cannot move without bringing his king into check. This is a draw. A game is also a draw when neither player has sufficient men left on the board to checkmate the other, as, for instance, when a king and one bishop are left against a king, or a king and one or two knights against a king. "Perpetual check" occurs when a player who cannot hope for checkmate is nevertheless able to check the opponent's king, move after move, with no possibility of escape, and this also constitutes a draw.

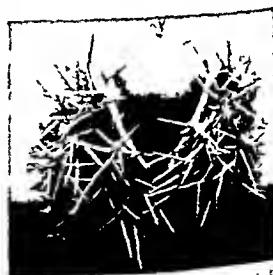
If a pawn which has not left the pawn row attempts to move two squares ahead, when such a move places it beside an opposing pawn, the opposing pawn may take the first pawn, just as if the latter had only moved one square ahead.

This is called taking a pawn "in passing" or *en passant*.

A brilliant attack will sometimes win success before either side has lost many men, but in a hard fought match the game is usually won by an accumulation of a great number of small successes which

weaken the enemy. A definite plan of attack is as a rule far better than a haphazard attempt to weaken the enemy by carrying off his pieces. A careful player always studies his opponent's moves as thoroughly as his own; not to do so is to invite disaster.

**CHESTNUT.** In the shade of majestic chestnut trees pioneer America worked and played. These beautiful trees lined the village streets of New England. From great chestnut forests came lumber for buildings, furniture, and fences. The wood was the



A chestnut burr after frost bursts it open in the fall

chief source of tannin, used for curing hides. And the sweet-flavored nuts, roasted in the fireplace on cool autumn evenings, were a great delicacy.

Today the American chestnut has been almost wiped out by the chestnut blight, a disease caused by a fungus (*Endothia parasitica*). Few living mature trees remain in the blight-infested Eastern states. The disease was first observed in 1904. Apparently it was introduced from eastern Asia. Every attempt to check its spread has failed. It attacks the bark, killing a tree in one or several seasons.

## THE CHESTNUT TREE AND ITS TREASURES



At right is shown the chestnut's columnlike trunk—usually three or four feet in diameter. The leaves shown at left are long and narrow with notched edges. Clusters of golden catkins cover the tree in early summer. Followed by pale green spiny burs which contain the two or three nuts.

There are 11 species of chestnuts native to the temperate zone of the Northern Hemisphere. The American species (*Castanea dentata*) ranges from Maine to southern Michigan and in the Appalachians south to Alabama. Average trees tower 70 to 90 feet and have a sparsely crown some 100 feet across. American Japanese (*Castanea crenata*) and Chinese (*Castanea mollissima*) chestnuts have been crossed to develop a disease-resistant hybrid. The European or Spanish (*Castanea sativa*) and the American chestnuts are now grown on the United States Pacific coast. Other American species are the chinquapin which grows in the southeastern United States and the so-called horse chestnut which is a buckeye (see Chinquapin Buckeye).

**CHEWING GUM** If the sticks of gum Americans chew in a year's time were placed end to end they would circle the earth more than 35 times. Americans chew more gum than all the rest of the earth's people together. However during two world wars American soldiers introduced the treat to the people of many lands.

The saps of cacti plants and many trees have been used for chewing since before the dawn of history. Spruce gum was a favorite in the United States before General Santa Anna, the Mexican dictator, brought some chicle to New York City about 1860 during one of his periods of exile. A New York inventor, Thomas Adams, found it an unsatisfactory substitute for rubber but he cooked some of it, broke it into small pieces and placed it on sale in a neighboring store. It sold quickly even though it had no flavor.

A Louisville, Ky. druggist John Colgan is credited with first flavoring chicle in 1880. He used an

aromatic balsam. Since then gum has been given many flavors; the most popular are peppermint, spearmint and fruit flavor. Some gum cut into pellets is candy-covered, some is medicated. Bubble gum is particularly popular with children. This is made in a variety of flavors but its interesting qualities are that it can be snapped loudly and because it contains a small amount of rubber latex blown into bubbles.

Today chewing gum is made of sugar and glucose (about 70 per cent), a gum base (28 per cent), caramel paste and flavoring extracts. The chief base is *chicle* (synthetic bases are also used). Chicle (pronounced *chik-l* or *chik-le*) is the boiled-down latex or sap of the sapodilla, a tropical evergreen mostly found in the rain forests of the Yucatán peninsula, British Honduras and Guatemala. This base is supplemented with various latexes found in South America, Malaya and the Indonesian islands. The principal supplement is *jelutong* (also called *pondianak*) which is taken from a kind of rubber tree.

Latex is obtained by gashing the trunks of trees and catching the oozing latex in canvas bags. A tree can be tapped once every four to eight years. The latex is boiled until the water content is reduced to about 35 per cent. It is then hardened and kneaded into blocks of about 25 pounds. Central American chicle collectors and boilers are called *chicklers*; there are about 20,000 of them. (For a picture of a chicle block, see Central America.)

Most of the bases are shipped to the United States. There, in air-conditioned factories, they are cleaned, filtered and mixed with other ingredients in revolving ovens which are kept at a temperature of about 250° F. The mixture has a doughlike appearance when it comes from the oven. Rolling machines flatten the dough into slabs the thickness of gum. Next the mixture is given a conditioning treatment so that the gum will retain its flavor. Finally the slabs are scored to stick sizes which are separated, individually wrapped and placed in packs of five. All these processes are done with machinery.

Chewing gum brings about muscular relaxation, probably because the chewing is imitative of eating. Some dentists warn against excessive chewing of gum; they claim that the constant bathing of teeth in the sugar and syrup contained in the gum increases tooth decay.

**CHEYENNE** Wro. Through a turbulent early history of sharper gamblers, railroad construction, vigilantes and cattle and sheep wars, Cheyenne has grown into Wyoming's capital and largest city. It lies on a 6,000-foot plain in southeastern Wyoming. The plain's westward upslope rises into the nearby Laramie Mountains.

## WYOMING'S CAPITAL CITY



This Fairchild Aerial Survey view of Cheyenne shows the great airport (top), and the business section (foreground). At the upper left is the State Capitol.

In 1867 Gen. Grenville M. Dodge, the Union Pacific's chief engineer, selected the site as a division point on the nation's first transcontinental railroad. He named it after an Algonquian Indian tribe, whose pronunciation was *shí-án'na*. The early settlers soon shortened this to *shí-én'*, the present pronunciation.

Before Fort D. A. Russell was completed (to protect construction workers from Indian attacks), rumor of land selection brought in speculators, gamblers, saloonkeepers, storekeepers, and freighters. They built a frontier town of flimsy shacks, tents, and sod houses. The rail line from Council Bluffs, Iowa, had then been completed to Julesburg, Colo., a hundred miles to the southeast. The rails reached Cheyenne in November 1867 and drove on westward. The vigilantes' harsh laws brought some order, but the sharp explosion of "six-shooters" continued as the frontier settled under the differences of rail workers, gold seekers, cattlemen, and sheepmen.

The prosperity of today's Cheyenne rests on state and federal offices, great rail workshops, an immense airplane test and repair depot, an oil refinery, a meat-packing plant, and a large wholesale and retail trade. Fort Russell, in 1930 renamed Francis E. Warren after a former Wyoming governor and United States senator, adjoins the city on the northwest. Many acres along the shores of the five lakes that lie within or border the city have been made into parks. Other points of interest include the State Capitol, designed in 1887; the Supreme Court Building, built in 1937, which houses the court, a large law library, the state historical museum and library, and several state

departments; and the red-brick Governor's Mansion erected in 1905. Cheyenne Frontier Days, an annual five-day fete that features a rodeo, is attended by thousands of visitors.

Shortly after Wyoming was made a territory in 1850, Cheyenne was made its capital; it remained the capital when the state entered the Union in 1890. The city has the commission form of government. (See also Wyoming.) Population (1950 census), 31,935.

**CHIANG KAI-SHEK** (*ch'ang' k'í' shék'*) (born 1887). A united vigorous China, free of foreign dominions—that was the lifelong dream of Gen. Chiang Kai-shek. As president and premier of the Chinese Republic and commander of its army, General Chiang strove to make that dream a reality. In his efforts, he became one of the most controversial men of his time.

Chiang was the son of a middle-class wine merchant of the village of Chikow in Chekiang province. When he was 15 years old, his mother, following the Chinese custom of that time, arranged his marriage to a girl whom young Chiang saw for the first time on his wedding day. Already determined on a military career, the young husband went to Tokyo in 1907 to study at the Military Staff College. There he became a disciple of the exiled Chinese revolutionary, Dr. Sun Yat-sen, "Father of the Chinese Republic." In 1911 Chiang returned to China and took part in the revolt which established the Chinese republic.

#### Exiled to Japan

When the republic fell into the hands of reactionaries, the young officer joined in an unsuccessful revolt in 1913, which cost him his army post; and another in 1916, which forced him into temporary exile in Japan. In 1923 Dr. Sun sent him to Moscow to study Soviet military and political institutions. On his return Chiang founded a military academy at Canton, the southern stronghold of the revolutionaries. After Dr. Sun's death in 1925, Chiang, supported by his well-trained cadets, rose to power in the Kuomintang (Nationalist party) and in 1926 took command of the Nationalist army.

General Chiang then began his conquering advance to the north of China, with Peking, capital of the new republic, as his goal. In an epic 1,200-mile march, he gained control of south and central China. In 1927 he established his capital at Nanking. Alarmed by the growth of Communism, Chiang dismissed his Soviet advisers and ruthlessly crushed the Chinese Communists. When Kuomintang officials denounced him, Chiang, in a characteristic gesture, resigned all his offices and went to Japan for a brief visit.

#### Marriage to Soong Mei-ling

Having divorced his childhood wife some years previously, Chiang proposed marriage to Soong Mei-ling, of the famous Soong family. The head of the family, Charles Jones Soong, was an American-educated Chinese who became a Christian missionary and made a fortune by publishing Bibles. From his marriage to a Chinese Christian woman came three sons and three daughters, all of whom were educated in the United States. One of the sons, T. V. Soong,

## CHINA'S NATIONALIST LEADERS



Here are Gen. Chiang Kai-shek and his wife, Meiling, when he was strong man of China. His government fell to Chinese Communists in 1949.

became China's leading financier. The eldest daughter, Soong Ai-ling, married Dr. H. H. Kung, banker and minister of finance. The second daughter, Soong Ching-ling, became the wife of Dr. Sun Yat-sen.

Meiling, a graduate of Wellesley College, was renowned for her beauty and her brilliant mind. To marry her, Chiang Kai-shek promised her mother that he would study the Christian religion. Meiling and Chiang were married in 1927. It was due largely to her that Chiang became a Methodist in 1930. As her husband's secretary and most trusted adviser, Madame Chiang became one of the world's famed women.

#### Trying to Build a United China

Soon after his marriage, Chiang resumed command of the Kuomintang army and continued his drive to the north. In 1928 his army entered Peking (Peiping) and, as chief of the Kuomintang party, Chiang became the head of the Republic of China.

China, however, was still far from unified. For years, Chiang battled insurgent regional commanders and armed Communist forces. When Japan invaded Manchuria in 1931, Chiang offered no resistance, as he believed China still too weak to risk a war. Widespread criticism of his policy forced him to resign as head of the nation, but he continued as commander of the army. In 1933 he made peace with Japan.

Chiang was playing for time. He speeded his program for unifying and strengthening China. He got a measure of accord from the Communists and with the aid of foreign advisers worked to modernize his army and air force. In 1935 he became premier and, with Madame Chiang, launched the New Life movement—a program designed to improve the lot of the

masses through education, home industries, and self help. The Chiangs hoped that, bit by bit, the program would ease the vast poverty and toil of the peasants.

#### Japanese Invasion and Second World War

When Japan again invaded China in an undeclared war July 27, 1937, the nation rallied to Chiang as its generalissimo. He saved most of China from the invaders and accomplished the gigantic task of moving industries and schools to the interior. In 1942, in the second World War, he became Allied commander in China (see World War, Second). He was elected China's president in 1943 and re-elected in 1948.

China received economic aid from the United States, but Chiang failed to push economic and political reforms. Corruption riddled his Nationalist government; funds were misused and fantastic inflation brought increasing hardship to the masses. Nationalist China was tottering. Critics of Chiang blamed the crisis on his failure to clean up political and economic practices. His supporters countered that the overwhelming problems and the armed aggression of Chinese Communists were too much for one man without strong international support.

#### Flee to Formosa, Gets American Aid

Chiang had renewed the war against the Chinese Communists in 1945 and was steadily driven back. When the Communists won control of China in 1949, Chiang escaped to Formosa, where he set up a refugee government. Madame Chiang went several times to the United States to plead for more American aid.

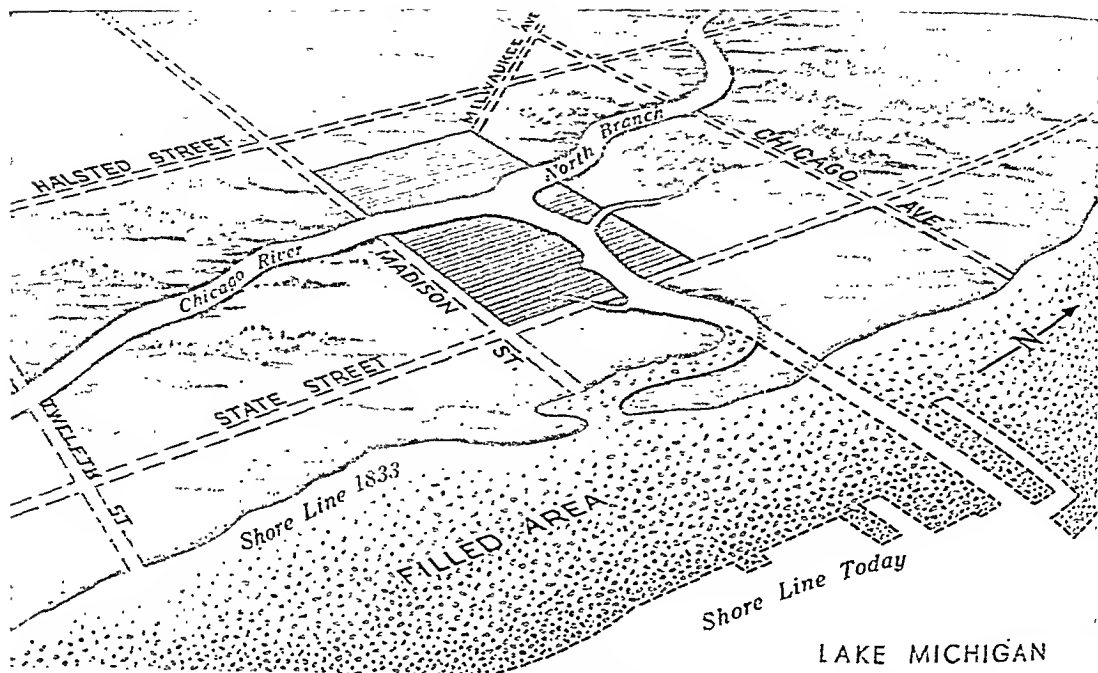
American military advisers helped train Chiang's army on Formosa, while guerrilla bands fought on the mainland. In 1954 Chiang was re-elected president and some 13,000 veterans of the Korean war—who had refused to return to Red China—joined his army.

#### REBUILDING ARMY IN EXILE



Chiang Kai-shek with cane inspects a mortar emplacement at a Nationalist military academy on Formosa. The aging general, aided by American advisers, also refitted his few naval units.

# THE GROWTH OF A GREAT CITY



LAKE MICHIGAN

Chicago was carved out of swampland and organized as a village in 1833. Its limits are shown by the dark area. Fort

Dearborn stood just to the east of the village. Broken lines indicate present streets and the straightened river channel.



Today Chicago's filled-in shore line is Grant Park, the beautiful "front yard" of the city's downtown area. The towering

mass of buildings south of the Chicago River is the Loop area, the business center of America's second largest city.

## The GIANT CROSSROADS of MID-AMERICA

**CHICAGO** One of the first white men to visit the site of Chicago was the famous French explorer René Robert Cuvier, Sieur de La Salle. La Salle's keen eyes saw more than a sluggish river idling through swampland to enter Lake Michigan. Thus he said, "will be the gate of empire, this the seat of commerce."

The story of the development of the city is as amazing as the accuracy of La Salle's prophecy. In 1830 Chicago consisted of a cluster of log cabins huddled close to Fort Dearborn. Sixty years later the city had passed the million mark in population. Today it is the second largest city in the Western Hemisphere and the sixth largest in the world.

The once-dreary swamp now contains more miles of streets than some states have roads. It has more telephones than Russia. It handles more freight and it spends more money for governmental purposes than some member countries of the United Nations. Three-fourths of the states have less people than Chicago and one-third of the states have fewer radio stations. In air blocks on Chicago a State Street more retail clothing, dry goods and department store business is transacted than in any similar area in the world. Chicago is second only to Washington, D. C. in space occupied by federal government agencies.

Chicago leads other cities in many fields. It is the world's greatest railway center, this terminus of 19 trunk lines whose combined mileage is half the entire railroad mileage in the United States. It is the world's greatest livestock market and meat-packing center, producing about one-sixth of the nation's meat output. It is the world's largest grain market, and the prices paid for wheat on the Chicago Board of Trade help fix the price of the nation's bread.

Chicago is one of the nation's great ports handling tremendous cargoes of iron ore, coal and limestones for steelmaking. It is the foremost mail-order distributing center. The Chicago metropolitan area makes more machinery and communication equipment and builds more railway equipment than any other place on the globe. Its agricultural implement industry supplies farmers all over the world.

### The Ground Plan of the City

The visitor who approaches Chicago from Lake Michigan sees a great metropolis curving along the shore for more than 29 miles. To the north stretch the pleasant north shore suburbs and Fort Sheridan and the Great Lakes Naval Training Station. To the south lie the busy manufacturing cities of northwest Indiana—Hammond, East Chicago, Whiting, Gary—belching smoke by day and flame by night.

At the heart of the city is the Chicago River. The North and South branches of the river form a gigantic "Y" with its base on the lake. Near here is a dense cluster of the city's largest buildings gathered on or near a rectangle seven blocks long and five blocks wide. This is Chicago's famous Loop girdled by a belt of elevated railways. Within this crowded

**Population** (1930 census) 3,620,962 Cook County, 4,508,792 metropolitan area 5,495,364 Growth of city 1857 4,170 1850 29,963 1880 503,185 1900 1,658,575 1920 3,396,808

**Area** Land 212.9 sq. mi. inland water 4.6 sq. mi.  
**Location** 41°50' N lat. 87°37' W long.  
**Altitude** Highest 660 ft. lowest 593 ft.  
**Transportation** Railroads 19 trunk and 17 belt and terminal water Great Lakes system and Illinois Waterway air 15 airlines Highways 8 national 13 state  
**Climate** Average temperatures—annual 50° high est monthly 75° (July) lowest monthly 25° (January)  
**Average precipitation**—annual 33 inches

district a quarter of a million people work and another million come every day to shop, transact business and "see the sights."

The stone and steel of this tower-ringed skyline is softened by tree-lined drives and parks along the lake front. Lincoln Park to the north and Jackson Park to the south are great wooded expanses while Grant and Burnham parks form a geometric green rug for the city's "front yard."

Radiating from the Loop are Chicago's three huge sprawling sections—North Side, South Side and West Side (to the east lies Lake Michigan). Each section is a subcity of about a million people containing its own residential areas, shopping districts, industrial plants, and recreation grounds.

### Crossroads of America

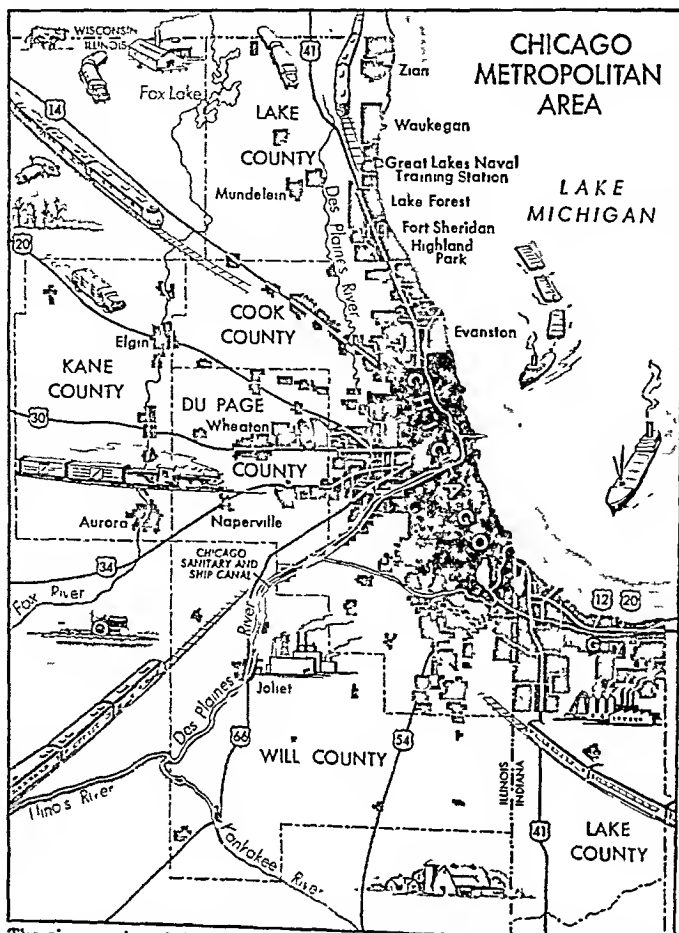
Located near the center of North America, Chicago is a gigantic center of transportation by water, rail, road and air. Five harbors at the foot of Lake Michigan make the Chicago area the second largest port on the Great Lakes. From here foreign and domestic steamship lines carry on trade with Europe by way of the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence River water route to the Atlantic. To the south and west is the Illinois Waterway connecting Chicago with the Mississippi River and the Gulf of Mexico.

Chicago also lies astride the natural land routes between East and West. Here Lake Michigan thrusts far down into the Middle West forcing highways as well as rail lines to converge at this point. As a result the city has become the nation's greatest terminus for bus, truck, and rail transportation.

Chicago's location has also made it a vital aviation center. Chicago Midway Airport is one of the busiest in the world. Airplane arrivals and departures from here average one every two minutes day and night. The city also owns huge O'Hare Field northwest of the city and Meigs Field for small aircraft at the lake front.

### A Giant of Industry

In addition to being a transportation center, Chicago is also the industrial capital of middle America. Much of the city's manufacturing is based on the abundant natural resources that lie within easy transporting distance of the city. These resources include rich deposits of iron ore and coal, numerous



The six counties of the Chicago metropolitan area are classified by the Census Bureau as a single unit for business, industrial, social, and population purposes.

oil wells, heavy stands of timber, and a fertile soil for raising food crops and livestock.

From the 12,000 industrial establishments in the Chicago metropolitan area comes an enormous supply of manufactured goods. During an average year the total value added by manufacturing in this area amounts to 5½ billion dollars. Food products alone claim 714 million of this total; printing and publishing, 498 million; fabricated metal products, 495 million; machinery, 460 million; iron and steel, 423 million; communication equipment, 416 million; and chemicals, 385 million.

#### The People of Chicago

In 1830 the frontier community of Chicago had 50 residents. During the next one hundred years it grew into a city of more than 3,300,000. Since that time the population has continued to increase, but the rate of growth has been slower than that of its neighboring suburbs. From 1940 to 1950 the city population increased only 7 per cent; during the same period the suburban population increased 17 per cent.

During the 1840's and 1850's the first large groups of immigrants settled in Chicago. They were the Irish

and Germans. Later more than 30 other national and racial groups entered Chicago. Many of these people set up their own "cities within the city." By 1930 the number of foreign-born residents reached a high of 855,777. Since that time, however, their number has steadily declined and the distinctive communities have largely disappeared. Today the largest foreign-born group are the Poles, followed by the Germans, Italians, Russians, Scandinavians, Irish, and Czechs.

The decrease in the number of foreign born was accompanied by a steady increase in the Negro population. At the end of the first World War there were about 100,000 Negroes in the city, by 1950 this number had risen to about a half million, most of them concentrated on the city's South Side.

Six counties are considered part of the Chicago metropolitan area—Cook, DuPage, Kane, Lake, and Will counties in Illinois and Lake County in adjoining Indiana. This area covers 3,482 square miles and contains an average of more than 1,500 persons per square mile.

#### Chicago Turns Its River Around

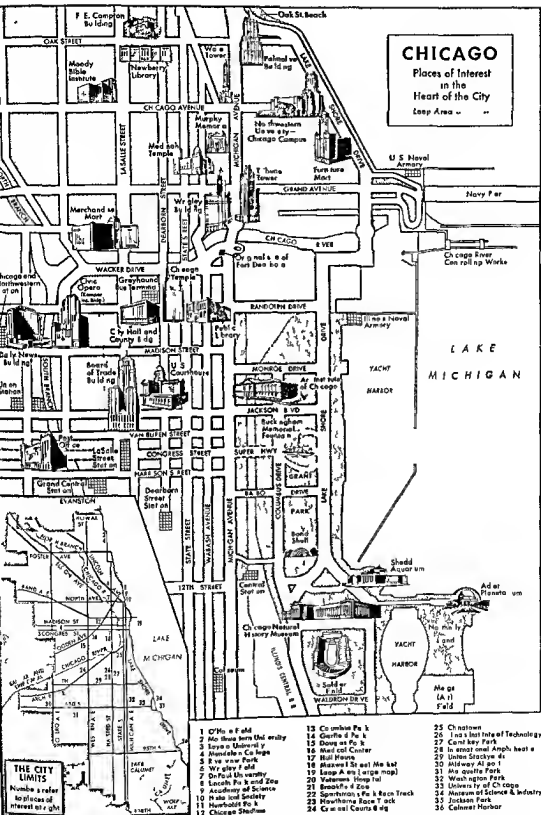
Chicago has had to meet many problems brought about by its rapid growth. One of the chief problems for many years was sewage disposal. At first Chicago emptied its sewage into the lake and drank contaminated water. The result was a high typhoid-fever rate.

After several corrective measures had failed, Chicago finally found a solution in 1890. West of the city flowed the Des Plaines River, which emptied into the Illinois and thence into the Mississippi. The bed of the Des Plaines was slightly lower than that of the Chicago River. A canal was built joining the two and promptly the Chicago River reversed itself and began to flow out of the lake instead of into it. The reversed river carried the sewage out of the city and reduced the typhoid rate to almost zero.

This system worked effectively from 1900 to 1930. Then the federal government ordered that the water diverted from Lake Michigan be reduced from 10,000 to 1,500 cubic feet a second by 1939. This decision forced the city to build treatment plants for sewage disposal. The new plants began functioning in 1939. Meanwhile, the Sanitary and Ship Canal, as it is called, became a vital link in the Illinois Waterway, completed to the Mississippi in 1933.

#### Other Problems of Growth

Traffic control has been another major problem. To relieve acute congestion in the Loop, 62 miles of freight tunnels were built 40 feet below the streets. Through them 150 electric locomotives haul goods to commercial houses and remove waste materials.





Surface traffic continued to increase so tremendously that in 1938 the city began construction of passenger subways to link up with elevated railroads in outlying districts. Automobile and truck traffic was speeded by widening main arteries of travel; many streets were limited to one-way traffic.

Further advances were made in 1952 when voters approved the construction of a West Side subway and additional superhighways into the city. The huge Congress Street Superhighway connecting the West Side with the Loop was to be completed by 1956.

More space for the growth of the central business district has been provided by permitting the construction of business buildings over railroad tracks and terminals. The Chicago Daily News Building and the great Merchandise Mart were among the first structures built over the "air rights" of railroads.

The crowding of the Loop caused smaller business districts to spring up in outlying neighborhoods. These are much like independent cities, often having their own newspapers and business associations. Some of the large Loop stores have branches in these neighborhoods. Many of these shopping centers serve

populations as large as such cities as San Francisco, Cincinnati, and Milwaukee.

#### The Far-seeing "Chicago Plan"

The development of the so-called "Windy City" has proceeded according to a bright dream of city building called the "Chicago Plan." This grew out of the great World's Fair of 1893 held in Jackson Park. The striking beauty of the Fair buildings and grounds—the work of Daniel H. Burnham and other noted architects—so impressed leading citizens that a program for Chicago's esthetic development was begun.

In keeping with the city motto—"I Will"—much of the Chicago Plan has already been accomplished. A magnificent boulevard skirts Lake Michigan nearly the length of the city. About 35 miles long, it borders Jackson and Burnham parks south of the Chicago River and Lincoln Park north of the river.

Chicago has built more than 200 miles of boulevards. A network of them links together the city parks. Others lead beyond the city to the forest preserves of Cook County; and still others join the various tracts of the preserves. Here are 1,750 acres of rivers and lakes; 1,400 acres of golf courses; and 700

### PLACES TO WHICH CHICAGOANS POINT WITH PRIDE

#### Places of Business

American Furniture Mart (opened 1924), housing show-rooms of the nation's leading home furnishers.

Calumet Harbor, one of the nation's busiest ports.

Chicago Board of Trade (organized 1848), world's largest grain exchange.

Chicago Mercantile Exchange (founded 1919), dealing in sales and future contracts for daily carloads of eggs, onions, potatoes, poultry, hutter, and apples.

Conrad Hilton Hotel (completed 1927), world's largest hotel.

Marshall Field and Company (founded 1852), one of the most famous department stores in the world.

Merchandise Mart (completed 1930), world's largest commercial building.

Midway Airport (opened 1927), one of the busiest air-fields in the world.

Midwest Stock Exchange (organized 1949 from four city exchanges), financial market of middle America.

Montgomery Ward and Company (founded 1872), world's first mail-order house.

Sears, Roebuck, and Company (organized 1886), largest mail-order organization in the world.

Union Stockyards (established 1865), world's largest unit for marketing livestock and processing meat.

#### Places of Culture

Adler Planetarium and Astronomical Museum (dedicated 1930), first in the Western Hemisphere.

Art Institute (organized 1882), housing one of the world's finest collections of paintings, sculptures, prints, and decorative arts.

Chicago Academy of Science Museum (built 1893), portraying the natural history of the Chicago region.

Chicago Historical Society Museum (opened 1932), containing materials pertaining to national and local history.

Chicago Natural History Museum (founded 1893), one of foremost museums of anthropology, ethnology, geology, zoology, and botany.

Chicago Public Library (opened 1897), having about 60 branches and many other subbranches and deposit stations.

John Crerar Library (established 1894), internationally known scientific library.

John G. Shedd Aquarium (opened 1930), containing about 10,000 living specimens of fishes, reptiles, mammals, and birds.

Museum of Science and Industry (opened 1931), containing exhibits and elaborate working models showing the application of science to industry.

Newberry Library (established 1857), world famous for collections of rare books, Americana, American Indian culture, and genealogy.

Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago (opened 1931), housing great collection of materials of the ancient civilizations of the Near East.

#### Places of Interest

Buckingham Memorial Fountain (dedicated 1927), having 45 million candle power of colored lights.

Garfield Park Conservatory (opened 1907), largest in the world under one roof.

Hull House (opened 1889), one of America's first settlement houses (see Addams).

Lincoln Park Zoo (opened 1868), attracting as many as 100,000 visitors a day.

Medical Center (built around Rush Medical College, established 1837), one of finest in the nation.

Palmolive Beacon (built 1929), having 2 billion candle power.

Soldier Field (completed 1923), one of largest stadiums in nation, with a seating capacity of 102,000.

Water Tower (built 1869), sentimental reminder of days before the great fire of 1871.

#### Places of Education

Chicago Teachers College, founded 1867.

DePaul University, founded 1898.

George Williams College, founded 1890.

Illinois Institute of Technology, founded 1940.

Loyola University, founded 1879.

Mundelein College, founded 1930.

Northwestern University, Chicago Campus, opened 1926.

Roosevelt College, founded 1945.

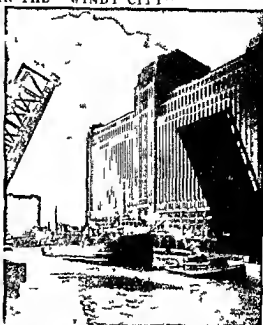
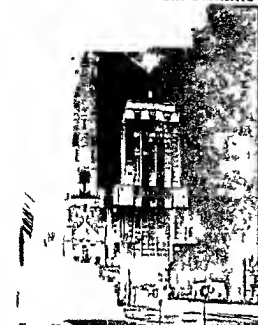
St. Francis Xavier College for Women, founded 1912.

University of Chicago, founded 1890.

University of Illinois—graduate schools, opened 1896.

Navy Pier Branch, opened 1946.

## FAMOUS LANDMARKS IN THE "WINDY CITY"



Chicagoans are proud of their old Water Tower noted survivor of the 1871 fire. To the north along Michigan Avenue is the brilliant beacon atop the Palmolive Building.

The Merchandise Mart is the largest commercial building in the world. Passing under one of the many drawbridges over the Chicago River is a lake freighter towed by a tugboat.

acres of zoological and botanical gardens. These recreation centers include about 40,000 acres. (See Parks and Playgrounds.)

A notable result of the Chicago Plan was the construction of Wacker Drive along the south bank of the river. Crumbling old business houses and factories were torn down and an unsightly commission market was moved westward. Wacker Drive was double-decked with an upper and lower level.

Chicago has jealously guarded its front yard. Grant Park from commercialization by permitting only civic enterprises to be built there. Grouped here are the Art Institute, the Goodman Memorial Theatre, Natural History Museum, Shedd Aquarium, Adler Planetarium, and Soldier Field.

#### City of Skyscrapers and Conventions

Tradition credits Chicago with being the birthplace of the skyscraper in 1884 (see Building Construction). Today the city has a magnificent array of these structures chiefly in the Loop and along Michigan Avenue. A city ordinance limits the height of buildings to 264 feet but allows higher setback towers which do not cut off light and air from adjoining structures. From the lake the array of skyscrapers looks like a huge man-made mountain range. At night gleaming lights in these soaring buildings make a skyline of unsurpassed beauty and grandeur.

The pinnacle of the city's lights is the 241 ft on-cable-power revolving beacon atop the Palmolive Building 600 feet above Michigan Avenue. It can be seen by aviators at a distance of from 150 to 500 miles.

Chicago is one of the country's greatest convention cities. Presidents nominated in political conventions here were Lincoln (1860), Grant (1868), Garfield (1880), Cleveland (1884 and 1892), Benjamin Harrison (1888), Theodore Roosevelt (1904), Taft (1908), Harding (1920), F. D. Roosevelt (1932, 1940, 1944), and Eisenhower (1952). Every year Chicago is host to about a thousand conventions and trade shows. The International Livestock Exposition held annually in the Chicago Convention Building and International Amphitheatre is of interest to all farmers and stockmen.

Soldier Field, an outdoor stadium in Grant Park, seats more than 100,000 persons, and the Chicago Stadium, on the near West Side, seats 23,000 persons in a big hall. Wrigley Field, home of the Chicago Cubs National League baseball team, seats about 38,000. Comiskey Park, home of the American League White Sox, seats about 50,000.

#### Education and Culture in Chicago

Artistically and intellectually Chicago holds high rank. In the city are many well-known institutions of higher learning (see preceding page). The city itself maintains a normal college and three junior colleges. The gigantic Medical Center built on the West Side during the 1940s and 1950s has helped to make the city a world leader in medical education and research. The multimillion-dollar project was constructed around Rush Medical College.

Chicago is also the music center of the Middle West. Theodore Thomas founded the Chicago Symphony

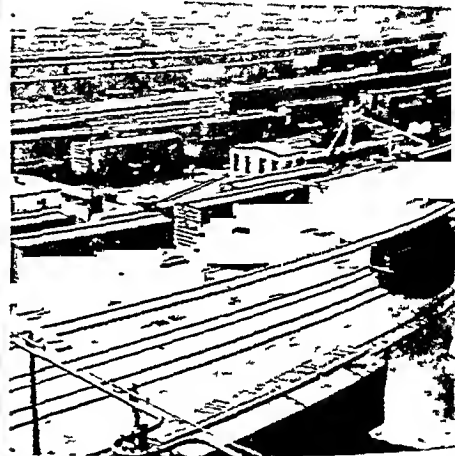
# TOURING THE LARGEST CITY IN THE MIDWEST



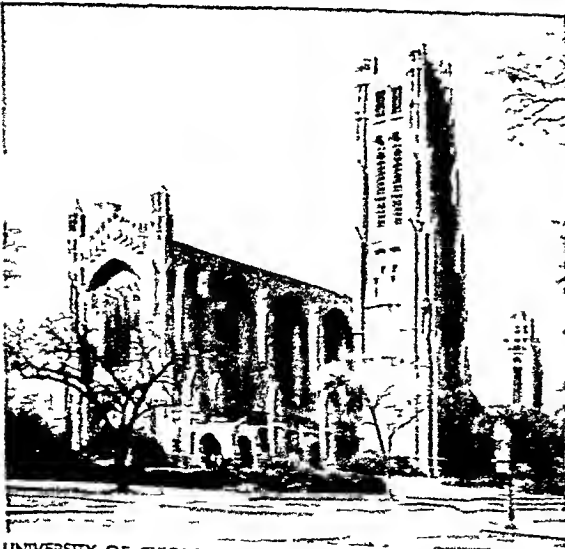
AUTOMOBILE HEADLIGHTS FLOOD MICHIGAN AVENUE



MAXWELL STREET PUSHCAFT MARKET



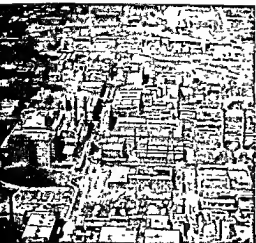
PROVISO FREIGHT YARDS



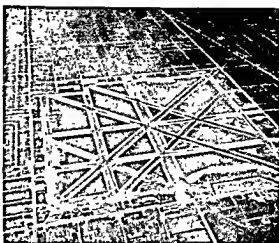
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO'S ROCKEFELER CHAPEL



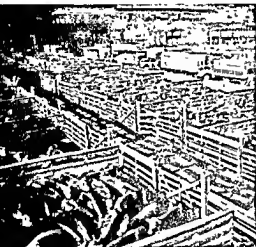
NORTH AVENUE BEACH



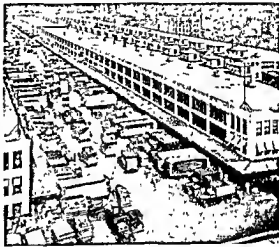
"PACKING TOWN" INDUSTRIAL AREA



SPIDER-WEB PATTERN OF MIDWAY AIRPORT



CATTLE PACKED UNION STOCKYARDS



WHOLESALE FRUIT AND VEGETABLE MARKET



GRANT PARK'S SHEDD AQUARIUM, CHICAGO NATURAL HISTORY MUSEUM, WITH SOLDIER FIELD BEHIND IT, AND BAND SHELL

phony Orchestra in 1891 and conducted it until his death in 1905. Music lovers throng Orchestra Hall to attend the series of concerts given by the orchestra during the winter and spring months. In summer, Chicagoans enjoy outdoor concerts in Grant Park and in Ravinia Park north of the city.

The city supports four daily newspapers that have a circulation of more than half a million each and more than 40 radio stations (AM and FM). After the second World War four television stations were constructed; an additional six channels were allotted the city in 1952.

**How Chicago Is Governed**

Chicago's mayor-council form of government was established by the city charter granted in 1837. The mayor is the chief executive. He is elected for a four-year term. Members of executive boards, departments, and commissions are appointed by the mayor and approved by the council.

The City Council acts as the legislative branch of government. It consists of 50 aldermen, one popularly elected from each of the city's wards. The judicial branch of the city government is the Municipal Court, composed of an elected chief justice and 36 appointed associate justices.

The city operates three major public enterprises:

1. Chicago Housing Authority builds and manages public housing projects.
2. Chicago Land Clearance Commission acquires slum areas and sells the land for redevelopment.
3. Chicago Transit Authority manages the city's transportation system.

In addition to the city government, Chicago citizens are served by five other independent government bodies, each having the power to levy taxes:

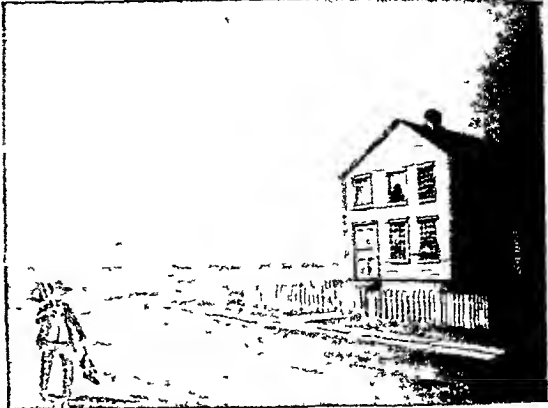
1. Board of Education administers the city school system from kindergarten through junior college.
2. Chicago Park District manages the city's parks and many miles of boulevards and lake shore. It has its own police system.
3. Sanitary District operates the disposal of sewage in the Chicago area.
4. Cook County Forest Preserve District supervises about 40,000 acres of wooded recreation areas.
5. Cook County government enforces state laws in Chicago and in 28 adjoining townships. The chief agency is the Board of Commissioners (10 of the 15 members are elected by Chicago voters).

Other county functions are conducted by the state's attorney, sheriff, coroner, assessor, clerk, and treasurer. Courts of justice include the First District Appellate Court; Superior and Circuit Courts (including Criminal Court), which have identical jurisdiction; a county court; and a probate court.

**From Discovery to Fort Dearborn Massacre**

In 1673 two French explorers, Louis Joliet (Joliet) and Father Jacques Marquette, paddled their canoes down the Chicago River to its mouth at Lake Michigan. They were the first white men to visit the site of Chicago. Six years later La Salle traveled the same route. La Salle called the place by its Indian name

**STATE STREET—THEN AND NOW**



In 1836 one of the city's pioneer builders, John Wentworth, trudged barefoot up a wide country road into Chicago.



Today that road is State Street, one of the most famous retail shopping centers in the world.

*Chicagou*, meaning "place of the skunk" or "wild onion" (another translation, "great" or "powerful").

Although many fur traders passed through the area no permanent settlement was made for a hundred years. Then about 1780 Jean Baptiste Point du Sable (also spelled de Sable or au Sables) built a cabin on the north bank of the river. Du Sable, born of French and Santo Domingan parentage, developed a large trade with the Potawatomi and other Indians of the region. In 1800, however, he sold out for \$1,200 and departed.

## CITY REBUILDS AFTER FIRE



Panic-stricken Chicagoans flee across Randolph Street Bridge toward the lake to escape the terrible fire of 1871



Board of Trade Building on La Salle Street symbolizes the modern city that arose from the ashes of the fire

Meanwhile in 1790 the Indians had signed the Treaty of Greenville (Ohio) ceding the area to the United States. In 1803-4 Fort Dearborn was built by Capt. John Whistler, grandfather of the noted painter James Whistler. The following year John Kinzie, an energetic Scotsman, took over Du Sable's old cabin and began a prosperous trade with the Indians. Soon a dozen cabins were erected in the shadow of the fort. They housed the Kinzies, a few French families, discharged soldiers, and farmers.

When the War of 1812 broke out, the American post at Mackinac, Michigan Territory, was easily captured by the British and the Indian allies. General William Hull, American commander at Detroit, then ordered the evacuation of Fort Dearborn 'provided it can be effected with a greater prospect of safety than to remain.' This provision, however, was mysteriously missing from the message received at Chicago. The uneasy garrison abandoned the post and set out for Fort Wayne, Ind., on the morning of Aug. 15, 1812. They were attacked almost at once by a Potawatomi war party. Fifty-two were killed—12 militiamen, 26 soldiers, 2 women, and 12 children. The others were captured—29 soldiers, 7 women, and 6 children—and later died in captivity or were released for ransom. The Kinzies, being friendly with the Indians, were spared. The post was burned down.

## Growth of a Frontier City

Four years later Fort Dearborn was rebuilt. Kinzie returned and some settlers arrived, but growth was slow. During the 1830's, however, there began a mushroom growth unmatched by any city in the world. The area had been cleared of Indians. A harbor had been made by cutting through a sand bar at the mouth of the river. The frontier was moving westward and thousands of Easterners arrived by wagon and by boat.

In 1837, when Chicago became a city, its future was assured. New farms were being carved out of the nearby prairie and the marvelously fertile soil was yielding large crops. Wheat from miles around began pouring into the city. Grain elevators sprang up along the river banks, and an endless procession of barges and schooners carried wheat to Buffalo. Cattle and hogs came from the prairie farms to Chicago slaughterhouses where they were packed into barrels for shipping to markets as far away as London. (See Meat Packing.)

Industries were established and surplus manufactures found eastern markets. Brigs brought lumber down the lake, and Chicago became one of the largest lumber markets in the nation. Rush Medical College was founded in 1837 and soon a city hospital followed. Free schools were established in 1841.

The Illinois and Michigan Canal was opened in 1848, connecting the Chicago River with the Des Plaines River at Joliet. The new water highway brought grain and meat to Chicago that would have gone to southern markets. By 1850 the thriving young city was handling ten times as much grain as New Orleans.

## Coming of Railroads and the Big Fire

Merchants in Chicago had argued against railroads. They wanted farmers to bring in their products in person, so that the visitors would spend their money here. When rail transportation arrived in 1849, however, it brought even greater prosperity. Chicago became a vast wholesale market destined to supply 23 states. Between 1840 and 1850 Chicago's population had risen from 4,470 to more than 29,000, and within the next decade it sprang to almost 110,000.

Although Chicago's economic structure was built on a firm foundation, its houses were set upon mud. Its

marshy site was so unhealthful that in the early 1850's the death rate was extremely high. In 1855 Chicago met the challenge and raised the level of the whole city between 12 and 14 feet, filling the marsh with sand and clay dredged from the river channel.

On Oct. 8, 1871, came the great fire. It started in a barn on De Koven Street. Three and a quarter square miles, including the entire business district, were destroyed. In the 27 hours the fire raged, 17,450 buildings were consumed, including 1,600 stores, 60 factories, and 28 hotels and public buildings. About 250 lives were lost, and the property loss was nearly 200 million dollars. Rebuilding began almost before the embers had cooled. Within two years a new city of brick and stone had arisen from the ashes.

#### Labor Troubles and Other Disasters

Rapid industrial growth led to many labor disturbances. A strike at the McCormick harvester works culminated in the Haymarket riot of May 4, 1886, in which a bomb killed seven policemen and injured many more. Four men accused of inciting the riot were hanged; three others who were sentenced to prison were pardoned in 1893 by Gov. John P. Altgeld.

Again in 1894 Chicago was the center of a nationwide strike of Pullman workers. President Cleveland sent troops into the city, over the protest of Governor Altgeld. In 1937 ten strikers were killed in a clash between workers and police at the plant of the Republic Steel Company. Other tragic episodes in the city's history were the Iroquois Theater fire in 1903, in which 596 persons lost their lives; and the sinking of the *Eastland* excursion boat in the Chicago River in 1915, with a death toll of more than 800.

#### Chicago Becomes an International City

Chicago's first world's fair was the Columbian Exposition of 1893. The fair, opening a year late, celebrated the 400th anniversary of Columbus' discovery of America. In the years following the first World War the city had its greatest growth, increasing its population more than two thirds of a million between 1920 and 1930.

During the 1920's Chicago made headlines with its gangsters' wars, gaudy funerals for hoodlums, and the clowning of its mayor. Meanwhile great achievements received little attention—skyscrapers rose in the Loop and along Michigan Avenue; parks were beautified and enlarged; and boulevards were built or extended.

In 1933-34 Chicago held its second great world's fair, the Century of Progress, commemorating its 100th anniversary as an incorporated town. The buildings were erected on land taken from Lake Michigan by filling in along the shore. The Railroad Fair of 1948-49 occupied the same ground.

The first atomic pile in history was activated at the University of Chicago, Dec. 2, 1942. Four years later Argonne National Laboratory was opened at the University of Chicago. Some installations are now in Du Page County west of the city.

In 1953 two outstanding construction projects were being built in the city. One was the 101-acre Lake Meadows housing project on a former South Side

shum area. The other was a huge Loop office building, the first Chicago skyscraper to be built in almost a quarter century. It was being erected by the Prudential Insurance Company on the "air rights" of the Illinois Central Railroad.

**CHICKADEE.** The gay, acrobatic little chickadee is one of the friendliest of birds. In the summer it lives in the woods, gathering caterpillars and moths for its young. Instead of traveling south in winter, it makes its home in orchards and in the trees of city streets. With the offer of suet or unsalted peanuts it can be persuaded to eat out of one's hand.

In its efforts to pick seeds and insects from anywhere on a tree, the chickadee seems to be equally at ease upside down or sideways. With its glossy black cap and throat, gray coat, and white vest, it could be very handsome if its constant gymnastics didn't give it a ruffled, disorderly appearance. The male and female look alike. The cheery call *chick-a-dee-dee-dee* is often abbreviated to *dee-dee-dee*. Less familiar is the song of two or three notes, which is frequently mistaken for that of the phoebe. The naturalist Henry Thoreau compared it to "the tinkling of icicles on the grass."

The chickadee nests in a hole in a tree or stump, which it lines with moss, grass, feathers, and plant down. Here it lays six to eight eggs. They are white spotted with ruddy brown. The bird defends its nest with an odd trick that startles even human intruders. It takes a breath so deep that the body swells and then suddenly exhales with a popping sound.

Chickadees belong to the titmouse family *Paridae* (see Titmouse). They vary in size from 4 to 5½ inches. The black-capped chickadee (*Parus atricapillus*) ranges throughout the northern and central United States. It is the state bird of New Hampshire (unofficial), Maine, and Massachusetts. The Carolina chickadee (*P. carolinensis*) nests in the southeastern United States, chiefly the Gulf states. It is smaller than the black-capped, and the song is higher pitched and more lively. The mountain chickadee (*P. gambeli*) and the chestnut-backed (*P. rufescens*) are western species. The Hudsonian, or Acadian, chickadee (*P. hudsonicus*) of Canada and Alaska and the chestnut-backed have brown markings instead of black.

#### THE CHEERY CALLER OF "DEE-DEE-DEE"



Resting on a small twig is this gay little black-capped chickadee. It is looking into its home, a comfortably lined hole in the gnarled limb of a tree.

## How to Help CHILDREN GROW UP

**C**HILD DEVELOPMENT Through the centuries many strange beliefs called old wives tales have grown up about children. Most of these ideas have been found to be in direct contradiction to scientific truths. If it were not for the continuing belief in these tales they could be regarded as curiosities of the past and not taken seriously.

During the past hundred years studies of children have been made on such a wide scale that they have touched every aspect of the child's life. Through these studies we have learned many basic facts about how children grow and develop. Parents and teachers who know and use the information can help children to reach maturity as well-adjusted, healthy and competent citizens. Parents who disregard the facts rear problem children to a troubled adult life.

### Basic Facts in Child Development

**The child is not a miniature adult.** Look at any child and you will see that his body is not just a small copy of an adult's body. His proportions are different and he lacks many of the features of mature people. Mentally he is different also. Until he is an adult, adult behavior can not be expected of him and he should not be judged by adult standards.

**Children both grow and develop.** Growth means increase in size. Development by contrast means a progressive series of changes in proportions, physical features and behavior. The two processes go on simultaneously. While the child is growing in stature he is also developing a mature mind and body.

**Childhood is the foundation period of life.** The foundations laid in childhood determine what a person will be in adult life, both physically and mentally. Traits acquired in early childhood—both desirable and undesirable—are likely to persist. Many parents make the mistake of thinking that undesirable traits will be outgrown and that some experience doesn't count because the child is so little. Children do not outgrow undesirable traits. On the contrary, most of them persist practically unchanged into old age, although they may then be cloaked in more mature and subtle disguises. This of course does not mean that traits can never be changed. They can be, but only when a person has a strong desire to change and knowledge of how to bring the change about.



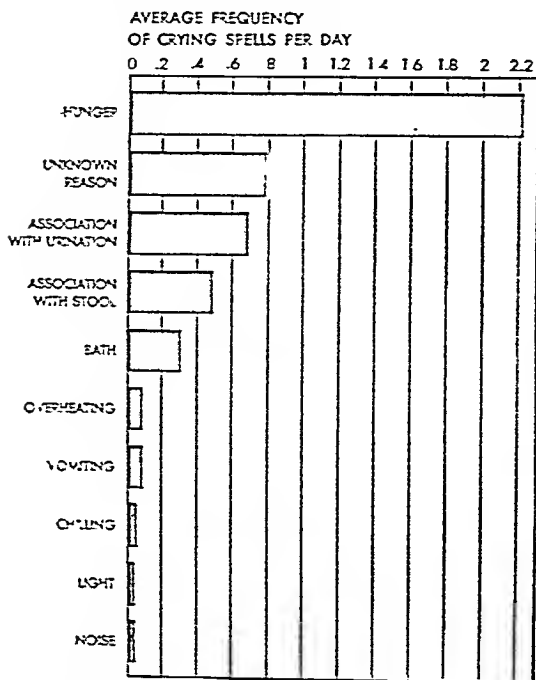
A child's relationships with his parents shape his whole life. Parenthood is an important job. It is also fun and is done best when most enjoyed.

**Each child is different.** Partly because of heredity and partly because of environment, each child is a distinct and different individual. One cannot treat all children alike and hope to get the same results.

**Development comes from maturation and learning.** Maturation is the unfolding of hereditary traits not fully developed at birth. This is nature's foundation. On it the child must build through learning the physical and mental abilities needed for successful living. Learning cannot take place until the foundations are laid. The child cannot, for example, learn to feed himself until his muscles have reached a certain stage of development and his nervous system has matured to the point where co-ordinated movements of hand and arm are possible. Any attempts to teach a child to do something before he is ready to learn it is doomed to failure. Moreover, such attempts discourage the child and make later learning at the right age difficult.

**Development is rhythmic, not regular.** Physically and mentally, the child grows and develops by fits and starts. The brain, for example, reaches nearly its mature size by the time the child is six or seven years old, but the internal development of the nerve centers is not complete until the late teens or early twenties. The developmental pattern also is rhythmic.





Hunger causes a baby to cry, on the average, about twice a day. Light or noise will make him cry only once in a hundred days.

not regular. At a given time one ability may be acquired fast while another is developing very slowly.

#### Periods of Development in Childhood

**Infancy.** From the moment of birth to the age of two weeks, the infant is making adjustments to life outside the mother's body.

**Babyhood.** From two weeks to two years, the baby is learning to control his body, thus decreasing his helpless dependency upon others.

**Early childhood** From two to six years, the child is learning to control his environment, thus further decreasing his dependency.

**Late childhood.** From six years to puberty, the child is learning to get along with people and to be a social being.

**Puberty.** From about 10 or 11 to 13 or 14 years, sexual development is taking place, bringing with it a new body, new interests, and new behavior.

**Adolescence.** From 13 or 14 years to about 21 years, the young person is adjusting to adult life and preparing for his lifework and marriage.

#### The Newborn Infant

An infant at birth is not a rosebud beauty. His body looks disproportioned, with head much too big and arms and legs much too small. His skin is likely to be wrinkled or blotched and may even have some hair on it. His head may be misshapen and his trunk has a potbellied look.

**Sense organs.** The newborn infant's sense organs look as if they were fully developed. Scientific studies have revealed, however, that he sees nothing clearly because his eye muscles are too weak to focus on

an object. He is totally color-blind because the interior of his eye is undeveloped. Sounds cannot penetrate because the inner part of the ear is clogged with mucus from the sac in which the baby developed before birth. Taste, smell, touch, and sensations of hot and cold are, by comparison, well developed, though far from their mature level of functioning. There are no indications that an infant can feel pain for several hours after birth.

**Vocalization.** An infant cries when he comes into the world. This "birth cry" inflates the lungs and starts the breathing process. During the two-week infancy period his cry may vary in intensity but there will be little change in tonal quality. It is therefore difficult to tell why he cries—whether because he is hungry, cold, thirsty, hot, soiled, tired, or in pain. In addition to crying, the infant coos, gurgles, sighs, sneezes, and hiccups.

**Physiological functions.** The infant sleeps, eats, and eliminates, but even these functions are imperfectly developed. His sleep is fitful, broken by pain or hunger every few hours. Sucking and swallowing are so undeveloped that he has difficulty in taking his food for several days or perhaps for weeks after birth. He must learn to co-ordinate his sucking with his swallowing and this takes practice.

**Activity.** The infant's body is in constant motion. Even when he is asleep he is almost never still. The most active parts are the head and arms; but because his nervous system is undeveloped, when one part of his body moves, the rest moves too. This random mass activity is very tiring. It is particularly tiring when he cries, because then he is most active. Reflex equipment is almost fully developed at birth.

**Personality.** Personality begins to form at birth. Many factors—including the type of birth experience the infant has had—combine to form his distinctive personality pattern. The amount of love and care he receives in the early days of his life is of tremendous importance in setting the foundation for his later personality.

**Prematurity.** Today, owing to modern medical methods, most prematurely born infants not only survive but have as good a chance for a normal life as have the full-term infants. For the first two or three years of their lives they may lag behind in their physical and mental development, but they do catch up and, from then on, develop like all other children. There is no scientific evidence that they are any weaker or more likely to be mentally deficient than the average run of the population. If, however, the parents believe tales about the handicaps of prematurity, the children are likely to be more nervous and will therefore make poorer social adjustments than do other children.

#### Physical Growth and Development

There is a close relationship between physical and mental growth. A bright child usually grows faster than a dull child. He is also likely to be healthier and better adjusted to life. Physical development, in turn, determines what a child can do. He cannot do

example play football or baseball until his body is strong his muscles co-ordinated and his brain sufficiently developed to permit quick thinking. Physical deficiencies such as blindness and deafness or some abnormal physical condition such as obesity will profoundly influence the child's whole pattern of behavior. The fat child for example is cut off from play with other children because he cannot move quickly. He may withdraw and develop an "I don't care" attitude or he may retaliate against his thinner playmates by criticizing and scolding them.

**Height and weight.** Children vary so greatly in rate of growth that it is possible to give only a rough pattern of height and weight increases of American children today.

A baby usually doubles his birth weight at the end of four months and trebles it at the end of one year. If he weighs seven pounds at birth, he will weigh approximately 14 pounds at four months and 21 pounds when he is a year old. During the next nine or ten years the annual increase will be from three to five pounds. At six years the child should be approximately five times his birth weight, or 35 pounds. At the beginning of puberty he should weigh between 50 and 65 pounds. Boys are usually heavier than girls.

The pattern for height closely parallels the pattern for weight. If a baby boy measures the usual 20 inches at birth when stretched to full length, he will measure at four months approximately 23 inches, and at one year 28 or 29 inches. (The average length for girls at birth is 19 inches.) From one year to puberty the annual increase is about three inches. This means that by six years of age the child's height will have doubled and at 12 he will have nearly trebled his birth measure.

**Body proportions.** The infant's body gradually changes. The face enlarges as do the facial features but at six or seven years the face is still immature. The neck grows longer so that the head no longer seems to sit on the shoulders. The shoulders broaden as does the lower part of the trunk. The arms and legs lengthen but remain spindly until adolescence. Not until physical growth is completed in late adolescence does the body have mature proportions.

**Bones and muscles.** Bones gradually harden and muscles grow stronger. Throughout childhood however the bones remain so soft that they can easily become misshapen if the child develops faulty posture, carries heavy bundles, or rides another child's puggy back. The muscles also are weak. Too much strain on them will bring on fatigue accompanied by irritability and may even impair health.

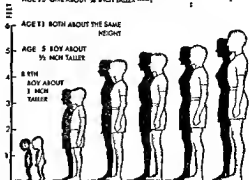
**Teeth.** Most babies have at least one tooth by the time they are six months old. From then until two and one half years of age, teeth come in one at a time until all 20 of the baby teeth have erupted. By the sixth birthday one or two of the baby teeth usually have been replaced by permanent teeth and the four six year molars have appeared behind the primary teeth. Children vary so widely in the time their teeth appear that no particular concern should be felt if

## PATTERNS OF GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

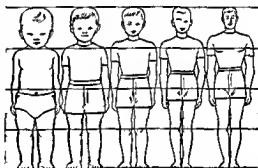
AGE 18 BOY  $7\frac{1}{2}$  TO 8 INCHES TALLER AND STILL GROWING  
GIRL HAS STOPPED

AGE 15 BOY HAS CAUGHT UP AND BEGINS TO OUTGROW GIRL

AGE 12 GIRL ABOUT  $\frac{1}{2}$  INCH TALLER



For the average child, growth comes in spurts followed by periods of slow increases in both height and weight.



Marked changes occur in body proportions during the growth period. These changes are completed during adolescence.

teeth are cut late. The eruption of baby teeth is usually accompanied by salivation, loss of appetite, chewing and irritability. Permanent teeth except in the back of the jaws come through with no appreciable discomfort. (See also Teeth.)

**Physiological functions.** Eating, sleeping and eliminating gradually become systematized with the maturing of the nervous system and with practice. By the time a child is two years old he is usually able to bite and chew so that he can eat adult food sleep through the night, and control elimination from the bowels. A year or two later elimination from the bladder is usually under control also.

**Sense organs.** As the eye muscles strengthen the eyes begin to focus and give clear vision. Throughout childhood however the eye muscles remain weak and they can become permanently damaged by continuous use of the eyes at a fixed distance. Reading with poor posture or in poor light may also be harmful. Hearing is acute during childhood but the ears are subject to temporary or permanent damage because they are so

close to the nose that mucus from the nose can clog them. Smell and taste are keen. Sensations from the skin of pain, pressure, hot, and cold are likewise keen because the child's skin is thin and the sense organs are close to the surface. A scratch or blow that would seem trivial to an adult may be really painful to the child.

**Health.** Childhood is a period of many diseases. The usual children's diseases, as well as colds, stomach upsets, earaches, infections, eye and teething troubles, and orthopedic defects, should have prompt medical attention. When a child is sick, he misses school and cannot play with his friends. He is likely, therefore, to receive extra attention or pampering at home. Frequent or prolonged illness saps his strength and retards his growth. It is also likely to damage his personality and affect his adjustments to people even after the illness is over. Good health enables a child to develop both physically and psychologically in a wholesome way. (*See also Health.*)

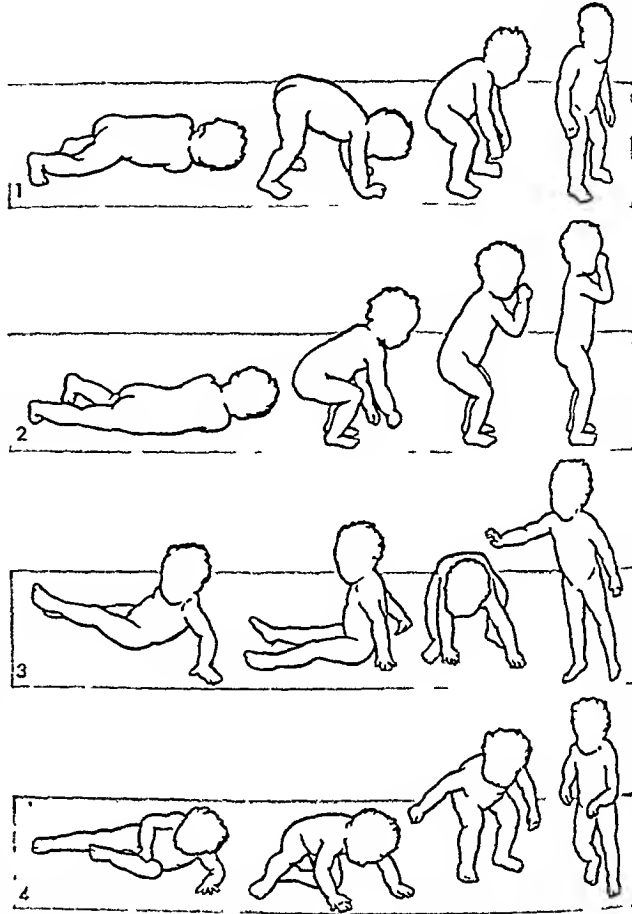
#### The Development of Bodily Activity

The newborn infant gradually overcomes his helplessness as his muscles develop and co-ordinate. Control sweeps over the body from head to foot, with the eye muscles coming under control first and the leg muscles last. This growing control is made possible by maturation of the brain centers and muscles and is perfected by practice. By the time a baby is a year old he can sit, stand with support, take a few steps when holding on, and reach for objects he wants. When he is two, he can walk, climb, jump, ride a kiddy car or tricycle, play with rather complicated toys, feed himself partially, pull off his clothes, and even put some of them on. He is no longer helpless.

Once the whole body is brought under control, the next step is to learn useful skills. Each nation has its own skills and passes them on to the children. The skills that American children are expected to acquire at different ages are listed in the section "How to Train Children for Independent Living" at the end of this article. It is essential that a child be given opportunities to learn these skills at the time his contemporaries are learning them so that he can do what other children do and fit into the school and neighborhood group. Because children's social contacts are based on play and their play is based on skills, the child who lacks the skills of his contemporaries becomes a social misfit.

Good learning requires guidance. For example, when a child is first learning to grasp, he may use his left hand in preference to his right. Unless guided in learning to use the right, he will develop left-handedness, thus making it difficult to follow the patterns of learning designed for right-handed people.

#### FOUR STAGES IN LEARNING TO STAND UP



When his bones have hardened and his muscles have strengthened, a baby learns to control his muscles so that he can get up easily and keep his balance.

ple. If, however, a child shows a strong left-hand preference that is apparently not the result of learning, changing to right-handedness is not recommended.

#### How Speech Develops

Long before a baby can talk he can let others know what he wants. His cries take on different tonal qualities so that it is fairly easy to interpret them. He also uses simple gestures, such as pointing and pushing, to indicate what he wants or does not want. Crying and gestures are useful so long as the baby cannot talk. Their use should be discouraged when he is able to convey his meanings by words.

Around the third or fourth month, coos and gurgles develop into babbling. Babbling is called "play speech" because it is not used to convey meaning. The baby amuses himself by babbling when he is alone and he gets much pleasure from listening to himself, as may be seen from the way he laughs at his sounds. Each month the baby spends more time babbling and the combinations of sounds become more varied.

Some of the babbling sounds originate with the baby through trial and error. Others are imitations of



speech and actions. They are also shorter lived and more quickly forgotten. The child cannot be expected to have the same control over his emotions that one expects in an adult. He has not lived long enough to develop emotional control nor does he realize that it is important. One should therefore not judge a child's emotions by adult standards or expect the child to express his emotions in an adult way.

As his social contacts broaden, the child comes to realize that he cannot give violent vent to emotions as he did when he was younger and still maintain the respect of other people. Then he will learn to turn his emotional energy into acceptable channels, such as games and sports. Forcing a child to suppress his emotions may play havoc with his health. Actually, no strong emotion can be suppressed for any length of time. Eventually it will break out in its full intensity and destroy the illusion of the child's good emotional control.

Common Emotions of Childhood

**Anger.** A child's anger is aroused whenever he is kept from doing something he wants to do. The thwarting may come from a person, from an obstacle in his environment, or from his own awkward act. Around the age of two he expresses his anger in violent outbursts of crying, kicking, hitting, biting, or throwing himself on the floor. Such outbursts are called "temper tantrums." When the child begins to play with other children, around the third year, he discovers that temper tantrums are considered babyish. He then learns to show his anger in more subtle forms, such as sulking, obstinacy, and contrariness.

**Fear.** Anything new and different, especially if it comes upon a child suddenly, may frighten him. He expresses his fear by running away and hiding or by crying for help. Later, instead of crying, he makes excuses for not doing things he is afraid of to avoid being called a "iraidy cat" by his playmates.

**Jealousy.** Jealousy is a combination of fear and anger. It is aroused when a child believes that the

affection he has enjoyed, especially his parents' affection, is going to a rival. A young child may try to hurt the child who, he believes, has usurped his position; he may express his jealousy by being stubborn and contrary; or he may revert to infantile behavior in the hope of winning back the attention he formerly had. Older children use more subtle forms of expression. They ridicule, tease, bully, play practical jokes, or give unpleasant names to the object of their jealousy.

**Envy.** Envy is like jealousy except that it is aroused by material possessions rather than by a person. For example, a child may envy another child his toys, his big house, or his family's car. Envy is usually expressed by complaining about one's lot in life and wishing for things others have. In young children, envy often leads to taking the possessions they envy.

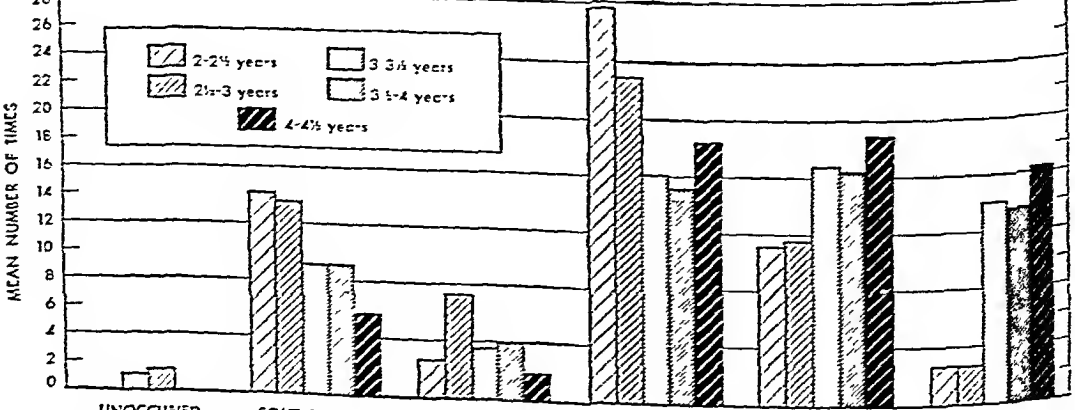
**Curiosity.** The same things that cause fear—the strange and unfamiliar—may arouse only curiosity if they do not come upon the child too suddenly, as fear objects do. When a child's curiosity is aroused, he explores by handling and examining, by asking questions, and finally by reading. Because curiosity is the driving force back of all learning, it should be encouraged and directed into useful channels.

**Love.** There is no such thing as "natural" love for mother, father, sister, brother, grandparent, uncle, or aunt. The people a child loves are those whose contacts with him have been pleasant. He will love his parents if his parents love him and show their affection. Children express their love not so much by fondling and kissing as by wanting to be with the loved one, wanting the approval of the loved one, and wanting to do things with the loved one.

Importance of Early Social Experiences

Early social experiences determine the child's attitude toward people and toward himself. His earliest social contacts are usually in the home with parents, brothers, sisters, and family friends. If these contacts have been pleasant, the child will have a

HOW YOUNG CHILDREN PLAY AT DIFFERENT AGES



The two-year-old child spends considerable time in solitary play, but his chief enjoyment is parallel play—doing what the children around him are doing, but independently. When he is three, his interest in co-operative play rises sharply.

## ALL CHILDREN WANT AND NEED PLAYMATES



The young child will play with a child of the opposite sex as happily as with a child of his own sex.



By middle childhood, girls play with girls and boys with boys. There is much secrecy among gang members.

friendly attitude toward people outside the home and will want to do things with them. If his early contacts have been unpleasant, he is likely to try to run people whenever possible. His whole attitude toward people is likely to be unfriendly if his older brothers and sisters have teased and bullied him or if his parents have neglected him or subjected him to harsh discipline. His relationship with people will be difficult too if his parents, because of their love for him, have treated him as if he could do no wrong. The child expects similar treatment outside the home and is bewildered when his naughty behavior does not bring him the attention he craves.

Normally the young child's early contacts outside the home are more often unfavorable than favorable. If his playmates are his own age, they are likely to be as self-centered as he is. The result is frequent grabbing, pushing, hair-pulling, and fighting. With older children the young child is forced to play a submissive role, doing what he is told.

Sooner or later the child's natural desire to be liked helps him to make adjustments to other children. He learns to give as well as to take, he learns to ask for what he wants instead of snatching it, and he learns he must share his possessions with others if he wants them to share their possessions with him. This learning is speeded up if parents or teachers supervise the child's play and teach him how to get along with other children.

At first a child plays with one child at a time. Gradually he learns to get along with two or three children or even with a small group. Late childhood is the 'gang age,' a time in life when having friends is the most important single thing. To insure his place in his group, the child tries to think and act as the group does, even if such behavior is contrary to what his parents would approve. He knows that if he does not conform, his place in the group will be taken by a child who does. He will then be an outcast and will have to depend upon adults or younger children for companionship.

The type of companion a child selects depends upon his age. As a baby, he will prefer the companionship of adults or older children because they will give him the attention his egocentric nature craves. Around his third birthday, he will want to play with children of about his own age. It makes no difference to him whether his companions are boys or girls or whether their skin is dark or light, so long as they can do what he can do and will not fight too much with him, he will like them.

Once he starts to school, the child's whole attitude toward his friends changes. Boys do not want to play with girls, and girls are therefore forced to seek the companionship of other girls. A friend now must be a good sport, must be able to do things as well as the rest of the group, and must not be babyish. Prejudice begins to creep in against certain children because of their skin color, racial origin, or religion.

Leaders are made, not born. The true leader has qualities of initiative, co-operativeness, ability to make decisions, and friendliness. Children who have these qualities come from homes where a friendly atmosphere prevails. They have been given independence in managing their own affairs within the limits of their abilities. They have also had opportunities for co-operative action so that when another child wins the leadership, they can be happy to be followers too. By contrast, the child whose home environment is restrictive develops a submissive pattern of behavior. Furthermore, he is likely to antagonize others by having a chip on his shoulder. Such a child will not be popular with his fellows and will not be allowed to win leadership of the group.

#### Three Different Stages of Children's Play

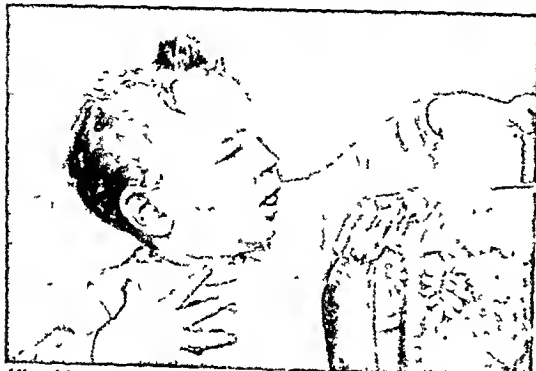
Children's play passes through different stages. The pattern is the same for all children, although they mature in different cultures.

**Exploratory play.** The baby plays with his hands, feet, hair, and any part of his body he can reach. Then he explores other people, his toys, or anything he can lay his hands on. Not much before his second

## CHILDREN'S EMOTIONS MUST HAVE OUTLETS



Fear of thunder and lightning turns quickly to curiosity if a baby feels secure in mother's arms and sees that mother is unafraid.



Allow him to satisfy his curiosity when there is no danger to him or to valuable possessions. Then he will turn to something else.



Let him win the admiration of his friends by boasting of his new clothes. He will then be less likely to "show off" in other ways.

birthday does he actually play with his toys in a constructive way. This is the beginning of "make-believe" play.

The toy age. From two to six the child spends most of his playtime with his toys. He builds with sand, blocks, or clay. He dramatizes simple little scenes duplicating life activities he is familiar with, such as playing house. Outdoors, he rides tricycles, pulls wagons, and uses slides and swings. Indoors, he may amuse himself in quiet periods by looking at picture books or television or listening to the radio.

The play age. Late childhood is called the "play age." No more time is spent on play than previously, but there is now a wider range of play activities than at any other period of life (see Play).

## Children's Interests

No two children will have identical interests. There are, however, some interests that are almost universal among American children, although they will vary in intensity. They are:

**Interest in one's body.** All children are curious about their bodies. They want to know what each part of the body does, why it is formed as it is, and what makes it function. At first, children will explore their bodies to satisfy their curiosity. If this does not bring them the answers they want, they will ask questions. All such questions should be answered truthfully and in a satisfying way.

**Interest in the origin of new life.** Most children are more interested in the origin of human life than of plant or animal life. They should be told the facts, simply and truthfully.

**Interest in sex differences.** By the time a child is two or three years old, he notices that his body differs from that of children and adults of the opposite sex and differs also from adults of his own sex. He wants to know why his body is different and what roles the different parts of male and female play in life. Parents should satisfy his curiosity by telling him the true names of body parts and functions.

**Interest in religion.** Children find it difficult to understand things they cannot see or feel. Religious teachings and stories therefore arouse more curiosity than true religious feeling. Nevertheless, because religion is an important force in life, religious teachings should be explained to the child, so far as they can be.

**Interest in mechanical devices.** The American child is surrounded by machines of different sorts. It is not surprising that he wants to find out how they work and how he can control them. Because he can rarely satisfy his curiosity by direct exploring he asks questions. The range of his interests frequently goes beyond the resources of his parents and leads him to seek his own answers in encyclopedias and other books. Reading stimulates further interest that can be satisfied only by more reading.

**Interest in clothes.** The young child finds clothes a nuisance. It takes time to put them on, they hinder his activity, and he is expected to be careful of them. When he begins to play with other children, he finds that clothes have an attention value, and he likes to have new clothes to show off. By the time he is in the first grade, he wants clothes that identify him with his friends. He is happy when he can look like his friends and utterly miserable if his clothes set him apart from his crowd. Interest in a good appearance builds up fast as childhood draws to a close and reaches a peak in adolescence.

## Intellectual Development

In the early years of childhood, intellectual development is extremely rapid, just as is the growth

of the brain. Imagination also develops very rapidly in the early years. Reasoning and association of ideas develop more slowly. Memory for specific facts develops more rapidly than memory for abstract facts.

**Intelligence tests.** Today wide use is made of intelligence tests. The results of the tests are usually expressed in terms of the *intelligence quotient* or *I Q*. (See Intelligence Tests. Individual Differences.) The *I Q* helps both parents and teachers to know what they can reasonably expect of a child in school. It also enables them to predict fairly well what he will be capable of doing in the business or professional world and so helps them to plan his education.

Nothing can increase a child's intellectual capacity significantly but many things can prevent its full development. Among these are prolonged and serious sickness, injury, malnutrition during the growth years, lack of opportunity to develop and frequent and intense emotional upsets.

**Types of Intelligence.** Intelligence is not a single trait but a combination of many different mental capacities. How these capacities are combined determines what type of intelligence an individual has.

There are three general types of intelligence: *abstract*, *concrete* or *practical*, and *social*. Abstract intelligence enables one to deal with abstract facts. This type of mental ability leads to success in school. Practical intelligence or common sense is the type that helps people to deal with commonplace everyday problems. Social intelligence helps a person to size up people and social situations and to know how to adjust to them successfully.

It is important to find out which type of intelligence a child has so that he will not receive training that will doom him to be a square peg in a round hole. There are various vocations where each type can be used to great advantage (see *Vocations*).

#### Family Relationships

Family relationships change as the child grows older. So long as he is a helpless baby his parents love him and he loves them. The baby shows his love by his pleasure at being with his parents, his utter satisfaction when his bodily needs are met and his responsiveness to fondling and cuddling. When he cries or fusses his parents do not blame him because they realize he is just a baby.

When the child gets on his feet he begins to do some things for himself and his ways of doing them are not always to his parents' liking. He also begins to assert himself and will do what he is asked only if the task strikes his fancy. If he is forced to do something against his will he puts up a stormy protest.

As the child matures, parent-child friction is likely to increase. The child seeks independence beyond his abilities to cope with problems successfully. When a child is not given the independence he craves, he is likely to feel that his parents treat him like a baby that they are fussy and nagging and that it is impossible to please them with his schoolwork, his behavior or his friends. Some parents in turn are likely to feel that the child does not try to co-operate and does

## BIG SISTER PLAYS MOTHER



Big sister is helping her busy mother and is also learning to be a good mother herself. Her brothers enjoy her attention.

not carry his load in the home. They complain that he does not appreciate the opportunities they have given him, he does not try to make the most of his abilities, and he seems to show more interest in outsiders than in his family. When such attitudes develop, it is not surprising that parent-child relationships after the early years deteriorate rapidly.

Home is a happier place for the entire family when the parents understand the normal behavior of children. Such parents realize that certain feelings and actions are normal for the child's level of development, trying and exasperating though they may be. They ask themselves why the child does what he does and they usually find that he has a reason even though it is not one an adult would accept. They realize that fault-finding does not spur the child to further effort and in any case would not be worth while if it causes the child to feel he is not loved.

**Brother-sister relationships.** Brothers and sisters are not always happy playmates. There are times of peace and harmony of congeniality in interests and co-operation in work or play, but these times are far too few in the typical family. A child never quite forgets how he was pushed into the background when a younger child arrived in the family nor has he found this child the congenial companion his parents promised him. Relationships are no better with his older brothers and sisters. They often resent him



and insist that he do just as they say as the price for being allowed to play with them. When there are both boys and girls in the family the situation is likely to be worse because most boys develop a feeling of superiority over girls and try to lord it over their sisters. Each child, moreover, invariably imagines—often quite wrongly—that his parents have favorites and that he is never the one who is favored. This feeling affects the child's attitudes and behavior both in and out of the home.

Owing to differences in ability resulting from different levels of development, brothers and sisters are far less congenial playmates than are children from different homes. Usually a child will play happily with the outsider because he is of the same age and has similar abilities and interests.

#### Self-Concept, the Core of Personality

Personality is not a specific quality of a person but a quality of his *behavior* (see *Personality*). How he behaves depends upon how he feels about himself, about other people, and about his relationships with them. These feelings make up his "self-concept"—what he thinks about himself as a person. A person's self-concept is the fundamental core of his entire personality and determines the quality of his behavior.

A child is not born with a concept of himself. He builds it up gradually over the years as a result of his experiences. How he feels about himself and about other people depends largely upon how people treat him, at first in the home, and then outside the home as well. His self-concept depends also on how his abilities measure up with the abilities of the people with whom he associates and how these people feel about his abilities as compared with their own.

Unfortunately, self-concepts are not always realistic. Far too many children see themselves as they would like to be rather than as they really are. Usually the world does not treat a child according to his own fanciful concept of his personality. Then the child becomes disappointed, resentful, and antagonistic. His attitudes are reflected in his behavior, making his relationships with people even less favorable and leading to poor adjustments.

Once a personality pattern is established it is likely to persist. As the child's social horizons broaden, his self-concept will be modified and changed to some extent, but it will remain fundamentally the same throughout his life. Studies have shown that the adult personality pattern is formed early in life around the self-concept the child developed. Because early associations are limited mainly to the home, the family is primarily responsible for the child's personality pattern.

In the process of growing up, personality defects often develop. They are shown in unsocial behavior which makes people dislike the child, and this dislike in turn makes the child unhappy and discontented. The common personality weaknesses of children lead to the following forms of unsocial behavior: selfishness; self-centeredness; showing off; fear of people; self-fear; clowning; trying to escape from unpleasant

or difficult situations by pretending to be ill; bullying and teasing; projecting the blame to others; feeling martyred and having easily hurt feelings; and feeling inferior as compared with others.

Most children show one or more of these weaknesses in personality pattern at some time. Spotting them in the beginning and helping the child to form a more wholesome self-concept is generally all that is needed to develop a happy, well-adjusted personality.

#### Influences That Shape a Child's Personality

There are certain influences in a child's life that play roles of great importance in shaping his personality. These influences are:

**The family.** The various members of a child's family may be admirable people, yet have poor relationships with the child. If the relationships are unwholesome—as when the child is overprotected or unloved—an imprint will be left upon the child's personality that time will never completely erase. If the relationships are wholesome, they will be an influence for good in his personality development.

**The cultural pattern of the group.** Every society has its own pattern of behavior for boys and girls. Within each society, also, the pattern varies somewhat for different social and economic groups. From earliest childhood, pressures from inside and outside the home are exerted to make the child conform to the group pattern. The more he conforms, the more people approve of him. For each sex there is a social ideal. A girl who would rather be a boy may try to follow the approved pattern for boys instead of the pattern for girls. Society expresses its disapproval of her behavior by labeling her a "tomboy." She soon discovers that boys do not like her, girls scorn her, and adults reprove her for her lack of "ladylike" ways. To win the approval of the group she must act like a girl whether she wants to or not.

**The child's friends.** After the child enters school he begins to spend most of his time outside the home with other children. He now tries to conform to the personality pattern admired by the group with which he identifies himself. He sees himself as his friends see him, even though this view is different from the concept his parents and other family members have of him. The self-concept he developed in his home during his early childhood days becomes strongly modified as he compares himself with other children in group popularity as well as in physical and mental abilities.

**The school.** Teachers and the general school environment exert more influence on the developing personalities of children than most people realize. A teacher who is critical, suspicious, intolerant, and rigid can play havoc with the personalities of her pupils. A better adjusted teacher, on the other hand, can do much to foster wholesome personalities.

The old-fashioned school insisted upon rigid conformity and disregarded the pupils' opinions. The modern democratic school expects the child to make the most of his abilities and respects his individuality. Such a school is far better for the development of a child's personality (see *Education*).

## How to Train Children for Independent Living

THE AIM of child training is to produce mature adults who can live independent lives. Independence comprises a number of qualities, each of which is desirable in itself. For example, an independent adult is healthy, he is economically competent and he is emotionally adjusted. The development of these desirable qualities cannot be left to chance.

Too much help, help of the wrong kind or at the wrong time, or help when it is not needed may be as

### LEARNING TAKES TIME AND PRACTICE



Self feeding is a big job for a little tot. Show him how to do it and then let him practice in his own way and at his own speed.



A cook is not made overnight. Practicing this art as play will lay the foundation for an important skill in later life.

bad or even worse than no help at all. When a child's every act is guided, he becomes dependent, fearful, and resentful toward those who do not give him the freedom other children enjoy. Too little guidance, on the other hand, dooms a child to repeated failures that make him feel inadequate.

Today's children should not be guided by the age-old principles in vogue when their grandparents were young. To be successful in adult life, the American child must learn to be resourceful, responsible, self-reliant, poised, self-confident, and even aggressive. He will not learn these qualities in a home where Mother knows best and where Children should be seen but not heard.

Because children are fun, parents are tempted to prolong each cute period of a child's life. Parents can and do take pride in new teeth, new words, school skills, social success, and athletic achievements. They should take pride also in the child's awkward attempts to think and act for himself. Each new phase is a stage in the advance to maturity and brings new joys for both parents and child.

#### When and How to Teach New Skills

Childhood is the ideal age to master skills. The child has plenty of time to learn. He is not bored as adults are by the constant repetition that learning demands. His mind and body are still plastic so that learning is relatively easy for him. And he has few already learned skills to interfere with the new ones he is trying to master.

Modern life requires that the child learn many things. The school cannot do all the teaching. It is therefore the parents' responsibility to teach him many skills before he goes to school and then to work hand in hand with the school in the difficult job of preparing the child for adult life.

Here is a brief outline of the skills that American children of today are expected to acquire at different ages and levels of development.

**Up to two years.** Control over the entire body. *Basic activities* such as walking, reaching and grasping. Improvement of these activities by faster movements and the elimination of waste motion.

**Two to six years.** Skills connected with *personal habits*, such as eating, self feeding, dressing, bathing, and toiletting. *Play skills* such as running, jumping, climbing, throwing and catching a ball, tricycling, swimming, skating, jumping rope, dancing, cutting, pasting, crayoning, painting and weaving. *Household help skills* such as dusting, setting and clearing the table, and emptying wastebaskets.

**Six to twelve years.** *School skills* such as writing, drawing, and playing a musical instrument. *Play skills* of a more complex sort needed for ball games and all forms of outdoor play. *Household help skills* that enable a child to care for himself and help others when the mother is ill or absent.

**How to teach.** The best single method of learning is through imitation. Whether the child is learning

to dress or to feed himself, to cook, sew, speak, read, do arithmetic, or play ball games, the method he uses will be the method he has observed his parents, teachers, or friends use. The method must be one he can understand and follow. It should also be a method that will prove as useful to him, as time goes on, as it was when he first learned it.

Mistakes should be corrected early so that they will not become deeply rooted habits. "Practice makes perfect" only if the practice is in the right direction. Continuous practice in the wrong direction will establish a deep-rooted habit that may prove a great handicap to the child as he grows older. The major part of guidance should therefore be in the early stages of learning.

Learning is marked by ups and downs, periods of improvement, of standing still, even of going backward. If a child is to have the incentive to put forth the effort and spend the time needed to learn, he must be praised, encouraged, and occasionally rewarded for his efforts. He must also realize that what he is learning will be useful to him.

When to teach. The starting point of good guidance is a knowledge of the particular child, his abilities and weaknesses, his likes and dislikes. Children differ so greatly that it is impossible to lay down any hard-and-fast rules about when to teach any one of the thousand things a child must learn. One rule, however, must always be followed if good results are to be obtained. This rule is that *learning must wait upon maturation*.

Here are three simple rules for determining a child's readiness to learn:

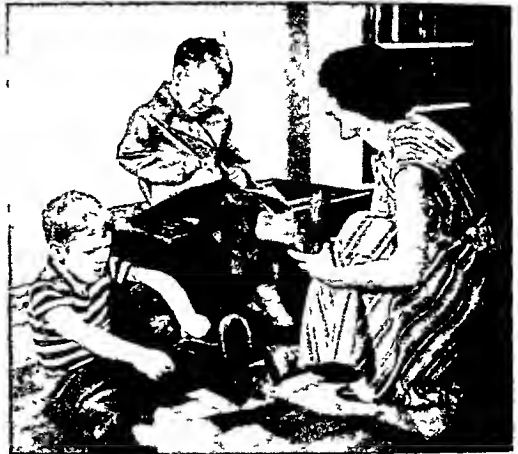
1. Readiness is revealed by *interest* in learning. A baby will be interested in learning to feed or dress himself when he is able to do so. Similarly, an older child will show an interest in learning to read, skate, or make things with hammer and nails when he is physically and mentally capable of doing so.

2. Readiness is revealed by *persistent interest*. A passing interest may come entirely from the novelty of a situation. If the child is really ready to learn, his interest will persist in spite of difficulties the learning may entail.

3. Readiness is revealed by *improvement with practice*. The child who is not ready to learn will show little or no improvement with practice and will be so discouraged that he will not want to continue the learning.

To be ready to meet the demands of adult life, every child must learn gradually to stand on his own feet, make his own decisions, and accept responsibility for his decisions and acts. Too much independence, given too suddenly, will make a child fearful and will actually result in making him overdependent. Nothing is worse for a child than to be kept dependent on his parents during the preschool years and then to be sent off to school. A child subjected to such an ordeal is likely to become a major problem. His classmates ridicule his babyish ways. He becomes fearful, hates school, and tries in every possible way to avoid going.

## READINESS TO LEARN



A child learns a lot from watching how things are done. Soon he will be ready to learn and will take over the job himself.

A child must first show his ability to handle independence successfully in small things. Each month he can be given slightly more independence than he had in the previous month. This may not seem like much to the child or to his parents, but, over a year's time, it is remarkable how much more independent the child will be. When he goes to school, he finds the adjustment relatively easy.

### How to Avoid Emotional Outbursts

Far too many children are permitted to indulge in fits of temper when they are crossed, to avoid things they are afraid of, or to work out their jealousies on innocent victims. Such behavior patterns should be checked before they take too strong a hold on the child. Here are some of the best ways to deal with emotional outbursts:

1. Keep the home environment as free from emotional tension as possible. A child who sees his parents calm and unruffled is far less likely to be emotional than is the child who has a pattern of constant emotional tension before him.

2. Avoid fatigue. Children are much more given to emotional outbursts when they are tired.

3. Encourage the child to talk about the things that upset him. Talking releases pent-up emotional energy and also helps the child to gain a clearer understanding of the things that have upset him.

4. Put yourself in the child's place. Try to imagine how you would feel if the things you do to the child were done to you. Parents and teachers frequently do or say things, quite unwittingly, that upset children and lead to emotional tension.

5. Divert the child's attention, when you see an emotional storm brewing, to something that interests him. Later, analyze the cause of the trouble and avoid a repetition of it.

6. Be sure the child has plenty of exercise. Exercise is an outlet for emotional tension. When you see a child becoming tense, suggest some active play unless he is already fatigued.

## A TEMPER OUTBURST



It is no fun to be behind bars when you want to explore the world  
If you get angry enough, someone may let you out

7 Let the child do things at his own speed. Children are slower and much less efficient than adults. If you push them, they become tense and irritable.

## Children Need a Feeling of Security

To be happy, everyone needs a reasonable amount of security. Material security is far less important than emotional security. A child who knows he is loved and has people he can turn to in time of need is likely to grow up to be a well-adjusted, successful adult, no matter how poor his home and clothes and no matter how scanty his food. The poor little rich child, by contrast, may have all the material possessions he could desire but lack what he needs most—love and interest from his parents.

To develop feelings of security, a child must realize that he has a place in the family that cannot be usurped by another child. He must feel sure of his parents' love even when they punish him. He must have a room, or at least a corner of his own, no matter how

## IN TIME OF TROUBLE



No matter how independent a child is, he cannot face the world alone. His mother should be close at hand when she is needed.

small it is. His possessions should be used by others only with his knowledge and consent. There must be reasonable stability in the pattern of his family life. When changes are unavoidable, as in the case of death, divorce, or moving to another neighborhood or community, the child should be made to feel that his status in the family and his parents' love for him remain secure.

When a child reaches the school years, he still needs the reassurance of his parents' love. The warmth of family life is especially important at the end of the day if school or play has been particularly trying. Ideally, the mother should be at home when the child returns so that he can talk over with her any experience that has pleased or disturbed him. With his feeling of security restored, he is ready to face the next day.

## How to Cultivate Self-Confidence

Self-confidence is not a hereditary trait. It must be cultivated through years of experience, and it is learned best if there is guidance.

Lack of self-confidence is not always shown in the same way. One child may be shy, fearful, and unwilling to try anything new or different. He conceals his abilities and lets opportunities pass him by. Another child may strut and boast as if he had all the confidence in the world. Such a child is likely to blunder into unfortunate situations where the really self-confident child would hesitate to involve himself, and is crushed by failure.

By contrast, the child who has a healthy self-confidence will make the most of his abilities and opportunities. He has a realistic idea of his weaknesses as well as of his strengths. He accepts his failures and learns from them as well as from his successes.

Here are some suggestions for developing real self-confidence in children:

1 Grade the things the child is expected to do according to his abilities. You can tell by the child's actions whether the task is too easy, too hard, or right for him.

2 When the child wants to do something you are sure he is incapable of doing, suggest a substitute you know he can do successfully. Do not discourage him by telling him he will fail in what he wants to do.

3 Permit the child to have some failures, but see that they are not too severe or too frequent. Occasional failures will help to make him less cocksure and enable him to assess his abilities more realistically.

4 Follow every failure with success, whenever possible, to avoid developing feelings of inadequacy.

5 Help the child to form a realistic conception of his own abilities. Children have had too little experience to know what their true abilities are.

6 You yourself must have a realistic conception of what the child can do and accept his best.

7 Never encourage the child to believe that he can do anything he wants to do if he is willing to try hard enough. Nature places limits on what one can do even when one exerts one's self to his utmost.

8. Praise the child for his efforts as well as for his achievements. Do not reserve your praise only for achievements that come up to your expectations.

#### Children Like Routine

A definite routine adds to a child's feeling of security. Unlike the adult, he is not bored and irritated by having to do things at a definite time and in a definite way. He likes to know what to do, when to do it, and how to do it. The child who has emotional difficulties is far more often one whose life is unregulated than one who has a sensible routine that fits his level of development.

The following principles must be adhered to in planning a routine for children:

1. The routine must be fitted to the child's level of development.

2. Adequate time must be allowed for each activity. Children do things more slowly than adults.

3. It is better to make several suggestions and let the child make the final choice. A child rebels when he thinks he is being forced to do something, even if he actually wants to do it.

Finally, it is a good policy to map out the day's schedule with the child when he is old enough to have some preferences. This can be done shortly after his third birthday. Each morning, let the family decide as a group what each child will do in the way of home responsibilities, play, and schoolwork. This discussion gives each child an opportunity to exercise some initiative and makes him realize that his own routine must be fitted into the group pattern.

There are certain routine activities that a child must learn to accept graciously because they contribute to the welfare of the group or to his own health. Meals must be eaten at regular times, even if they interfere with his play. He must go to bed at a time prescribed by his doctor. Home duties must be performed when they are needed, not at his convenience. His play and study must also be fitted into a time that will be convenient for all the family.

Most children are willing to accept routines if they see the reasons for them—and if allowances are occasionally made. For example, a child will rebel against his scheduled bedtime far less if, occasionally, he is permitted to stay up later than usual for something he is particularly eager to do.

#### How and When to Discipline

Discipline means *training to conform*. It is not the same as punishment. Its purpose is to train the child to do the things that society believes are right. The child must learn that rules and regulations are not senseless restrictions but are necessary to enable people to live together happily and harmoniously.

Many children break rules not because they are trying to make life difficult for their parents and teachers but because they really do not know that what they are doing is wrong. Explain each rule carefully to the child in words he can understand and emphasize the relationship of the rule to all types of similar situations. Ask the child to tell you in his own words what the rule means to him and set him straight if

#### ONE OF CHILDHOOD'S HEARTACHES



When a child is kept out of things, it makes him even more unhappy to see others having fun. He wants to belong to the group.

he has twisted its meaning. A child's memory is short. He must usually be told time and again what he is to do or not to do.

**Praise.** Praise should play a major role in discipline. It is a powerful stimulant and gives the child the necessary motivation to try to do what is expected of him. A child deserves special praise when he tries hard or makes personal sacrifices even though the results are not up to expectations. A smile, a pat on the back, or a few words of commendation are all he needs to drive him on to renewed exertion. Contrary to popular opinion, praise does not make a child lazy or self-satisfied. Instead, it makes him eager to do what is expected of him. One cannot praise a child too much for real accomplishment.

**Bribes.** A bribe is an offer of a reward given before the act is completed. A child who is bribed will do what is asked of him only so long as the bait is held before him. When the bribe is not offered, he will do as he pleases. Bribes should have no part in discipline.

**Rewards.** Occasional rewards, like praise, are important in discipline. They should not be promised ahead of time but given as a surprise after the act is completed. The best time to give them is when it is apparent that the child has been trying very hard, not just when the results are good. Any simple treat, a small gift, or special recognition such as praising him in front of others or putting his name on an honor roll will give him an incentive to forge ahead.

**Punishment.** Only when it is obvious that a child has intentionally disobeyed a rule should he be punished. If discipline has been of the type outlined above, few occasions will arise when punishment will be needed. When they do arise, the type of punishment should be carefully considered, not given in a fit of anger. Slappings and spankings are likely to make the child so antagonistic that he will cease trying.

Expecting a child to make amends for his misdeed makes sense to him as a punishment. If he has to mop

## A MEMBER OF THE FAMILY TEAM



Playing at home gives a child a feeling of self importance and of belonging. It can be fun as well as good training for the future.

up milk he intentionally throws on the floor say he is sorry when he does something he knows he should not do or replace with something of his own the possession of another that he breaks in a fit of temper he will think twice before repeating these acts

Sending a child to bed or depriving him of a meal because he was naughty has no educational value whatever. The child is likely to build up a dislike for bed and rebel against going there. When deprived of a meal he is likely to get hold of food anyway but of the wrong kind. With older children it is sometimes a good policy to deprive them of some pleasure such as going to a movie or watching television when they have been intentionally troublesome. It also helps to send them to their rooms explaining that they must stay there so long as they persist in making life difficult for other people.

#### Traits That Make for Popularity

Being popular with his friends goes a long way toward giving a child the self-confidence he needs to make the most of his abilities. Real security is achieved only when the child feels that he is accepted wherever he is—in the home in the school or on the playground.

Scientific studies show that there are certain traits that lead to popularity at every age. These traits are co-operativeness, good sportsmanship, cheerfulness, a sense of responsibility to the group, a sense of humor, willingness to look at things objectively and not to have one's feelings hurt when no offense is intended, unselfishness, maturity of behavior (for the particular age level), reasonably good manners, outgoing temperament, willingness to offer suggestions for group activities, skills that enable one to keep pace with others, and the desire to give others a good time. A child with most or all of these qualities will never find himself without friends. These qualities should be cultivated as early as possible.

A child should have permission to do what others do when they do it and accessibility to others so they

can be with him when they wish. He will have more chance of being popular if he belongs to a group with a similar background, abilities and interests. Children are likely to choose as friends those who are kind to them regardless of whether they have anything in common. The child needs guidance to learn to choose suitable companions. This of course does not mean that he should be encouraged to be snobbish or to discriminate against other children because of their race, creed or color. It means that a child frequently needs guidance in determining whether or not the child he likes has the qualities that will make for congeniality.

The child needs guidance also in learning to keep the friends he has made. Letting children fight it out results in hurt feelings and even physical injuries. In the early years the parents should be close at hand when children are playing and be ready to arbitrate should a quarrel start. Gradually the child will learn from experience how to handle his disagreements without adult help.

#### Early Training for Good Citizenship

The good citizen has a sense of responsibility to his group. He tries to add to the enjoyment of others. He recognizes the rights of others, realizing that the world was not made for him alone. He is even willing to do things he does not want to do to help others. Even a very young child can learn to do something for the people with whom he lives and to behave in a manner that will not inconvenience or hurt them.

Shortly after the child begins to walk he can learn to carry his share of the burden at home without grumbling. He may not be able to do much for other people but he can help them indirectly by doing as much as possible for himself and by not demanding too much attention. Each year he can take on more and more responsibility doing things for people in the neighborhood as well as at home and at school. Such training will prepare him for the role of a good citizen when he reaches maturity. (See Citizenship.)

#### Guiding the Child's Recreation

Left to their own devices, most children will spend their free time on recreations that require a minimum of effort. They will watch television, listen to the radio, look at comics and go to the movies. These recreations are part of the pattern of American life today. To enjoy them fully and to derive benefit from them, the child needs guidance.

There are excellent programs of music, good plays, interesting news and information about cultural subjects as well as healthy humor. The programs, however, must be carefully selected and the time spent on them should be limited.

Healthy recreation includes solitary play at home as well as games and sports outdoors with other children. A child should never become totally dependent upon others for enjoyment or so self-sufficient that he shuns companionship. A happy balance of solitary and group play should be encouraged. (See Play.)

Creative activities of all sorts, music, painting and crafts—should have an important place in the child's recreation. Such activities amuse the child

release tension and give him a sense of achievement that increases his self-confidence. Furthermore, they form the basis for adult recreation and hobbies and help the individual to appreciate the achievements of others (see Hobbies; Painting).

#### Boys and Girls Have Different Roles

Every society has clearly defined roles for members of the two sexes. Girls are expected to behave like girls and boys like boys. Because boys enjoy a superior position in our society, many girls wish they were boys and some try to act like boys in the hope of gaining the privileges that boys enjoy. Few boys wish they were girls. Instead, they feel superior and often treat girls with the contempt that accompanies feelings of superiority.

From earliest childhood, girls should be encouraged to act like girls and to recognize that the feminine role is not inferior to the masculine. Similarly, boys should be encouraged to be boys; but they should learn that treating girls as inferiors by teasing, bullying, or criticizing them is poor sportsmanship. The battle between the sexes, so common in childhood, may continue into adult life unless both boys and girls learn when they are young to have a healthy attitude toward their own sex and toward members of the opposite sex.

#### How Parents Can Co-operate with Teachers

Education is essential for success in modern life. Parents can help the child to develop a favorable attitude toward studying so that he will not end his studies at the end of the school day or when he receives his diploma at graduation. Here are some of the ways parents can co-operate with teachers to help the child do the best work he is capable of doing:

1. Give meaning to the child's lessons by relating what he is learning in school to his other activities. His study of history and geography can be associated with movies and with television and radio programs.

2. Encourage the child to read as much as possible. Practice in reading increases speed and comprehension. Reading also widens interests and enables him to learn many things he can find out in no other way.

3. Build good study habits by showing the child how to use his study time to the greatest advantage. Keep the house quiet when the child is studying.

4. Supplement the teacher's work, when necessary, by explaining anything the child did not understand in his class work. Many children are too timid to ask a teacher to repeat or clarify what she has said.

5. Help the child to form friendships among his classmates. He will be happier and will do better work if he has friends in school.

6. Encourage the child to take an active part in the school's extracurricular activities. School will be a pleasant experience for him if he feels that he is a part of it.

7. Help the child to develop good relationships with his teachers. When teacher-pupil friction arises, talk over the problem with the child and help him to see that the source of the friction is not necessarily all on one side. Then show him how he can get along

#### BEING A PAL WITH DAD



The older child wants his parents to show their love by being pals and enjoying the things he himself is capable of doing.

better with his teacher. Good teacher-pupil relationships are essential to good schoolwork and to good social adjustments with classmates.

#### Children Want and Need Affection

The child who is loved and wanted at home will make good adjustments outside the home. Such a child is far better prepared to face the problems of adult life than is the child whose outlook on life has been warped by feelings of resentment against his family.

All children want to be loved. The expression of parents' love, however, must be adjusted to the level of the child's development. A baby likes to be fondled. Before his toddler days are over, hugging and kissing embarrass him, especially before other children. By the time he is in school, he will rebuff such expressions of affection, but he still wants to be loved.

The older child wants to be loved in a different way. He wants his parents to be interested in the things that interest him and to treat him as a pal by doing things with him. Listen attentively when he tells you of his joys and sorrows. Do things with him that he thinks are fun. Constant criticism, punishments that the child feels are undeserved, or lack of interest in the things that are vitally important to him are interpreted by a child to mean that his parents do not care for him. The child responds by behaving in a manner that makes it difficult for anyone to love him. When a child is most troublesome, that is the time when he needs the most love.

**CHILD LABOR LAWS** In the early part of the 19th century many children in England and the United States worked 12 or 14 or even 16 hours a day in factories, mills and mines. They began to work as young as 5 or 6. The long hours of hard labor ruined their health and the dangerous machines crippled many. Children had worked in homes and fields from the earliest times. Child labor did not become a serious problem, however, until machine production got under way in the 19th century. A ready source of cheap labor, children were then poured into the factories (see Industrial Revolution).

When people came to realize the tragedy of these children's lives, a fight began for laws to protect boys and girls from ruthless exploitation. In England Parliament had prohibited the African slave trade, but as the poet Robert Southey wrote, "The slave-trade was mercy compared with the child trade in factories." Elizabeth Barrett Browning described these babies grown old beyond their years in her poem "The Cry of the Children." Men like Sir Robert Peel (father of the well-known statesman), Richard Oastler, John Fielden, and Lord Shaftesbury labored unstintingly to lighten the slavery of children to machines. It was a long fight. Gradually, however, improvements came about, and Britain began to make laws regulating the employment of children.

#### European Regulations

The first child labor law was passed in Britain in 1802. It limited children's work to 12 hours a day and forbade night work. The next act in 1819 forbade employment in cotton mills of children under nine. Neither act was adequately enforced. The first effective act passed in 1833 provided for state inspection and applied to both woolen and cotton mills. It limited the work of persons between 12 and 18 to 12 hours a day. The greatest advance came in 1847 when working hours of persons under 18 were limited to 10 hours a day. The British government now gives

the matter of child labor careful attention. Since 1947 the school leaving age has been 15. The law prohibits the employment of school children in industry before they are 13 and limits it after that age. The Children's Act of 1947 dealt with the whole question of child labor in a thorough and enlightened manner.

Other industrial nations followed Britain's lead. The reform movement was quickened after 1919 by the work of the International Labor Organization (now an agency of the United Nations). This organization seeks to improve labor standards through international action.

#### United States Measures

In the United States also child labor steadily increased after the introduction of machine methods. In 1910 one child in every six between the ages of 10 and 15 was employed in industry or in agriculture. After 1910 child labor began to decrease chiefly because of legislation and aroused public opinion.

In 1916 and in 1919 Congress passed national child labor laws, but the Supreme Court declared them unconstitutional. In 1924 a constitutional amendment was proposed to give Congress power to regulate the employment of children under 18 years of age. It was not ratified. In 1938 Congress passed the Fair Labor Standards Act. One of its provisions forbade interstate shipment of products made by any enterprise which employed children under 16 years or under 18 years in hazardous enterprises such as mining. The law was modified in 1949 to permit employers to hire children under 16 for certain hours in offices or in selling. The secretary of labor administers the law.

State legislation has been hindered by the reluctance of states to put their employers at a disadvantage in competing with employers in other states. Most states, however, now have a 14-year or a 16-year age minimum for children in industry, limit their labor to 48 hours a week, and prohibit their employment in dangerous or unhealthy occupations.

## The Rich DESERTS and Fertile FARMS of CHILE

**CHILE (chil-ē).** Its extraordinary shape and its wide variety of scenery, climate and resources make Chile one of the most remarkable countries of South America. On the map it appears as a long narrow strip of mountainous land edging the Pacific for more than half the length of the continent. It is so long that its head is burning with tropical sun while its feet are freezing. Its mountains rise to towering heights—the highest peaks in the Andes. Chile has some of the most magnificent mountain scenery in the Cordilleras. It has one of the most desolate desert re-

**Extent**—North to south, nearly 2,700 miles; east to west, maximum 221 miles; minimum 31 miles. Area, 2,904,399 square miles.

**Population**—(1952 census) 5,930,809, approximately 70 per cent live in the Central Valley.

**Highlands, Lowlands and Waterways**—Andes Mountains forming eastern boundary and increasing in height from 6,000 or 7,000 feet in the south to more than 20,000 feet in center; greatest height, Aconcagua on Argentine border, 22,835 feet. Coast ranges on west long, low. Valley 300 to 1,000 feet above sea level. Desert, nitrate plain in north; very few and short mountain lakes, especially in south.

**Exports**—Copper, a trade and iodine, iron ores, steel, gold, silver, sulfur, salt, wool and sheep skins, metals, beans, peas, lentils, as a barley, 1 mile wide.

**Other Products**—Wheat, potatoes, corn, rice, tobacco, lumber, imports—Machinery and vehicles, iron and steel, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100.

**Ch. of Cities**—Santiago (capital), 1,348,283. Valparaiso (218,829). Concepcion (119,857). Viña del Mar, Antofagasta, Talca, Temuco, Puerto Montt, Punta Arenas, Puerto Williams (over 25,000).

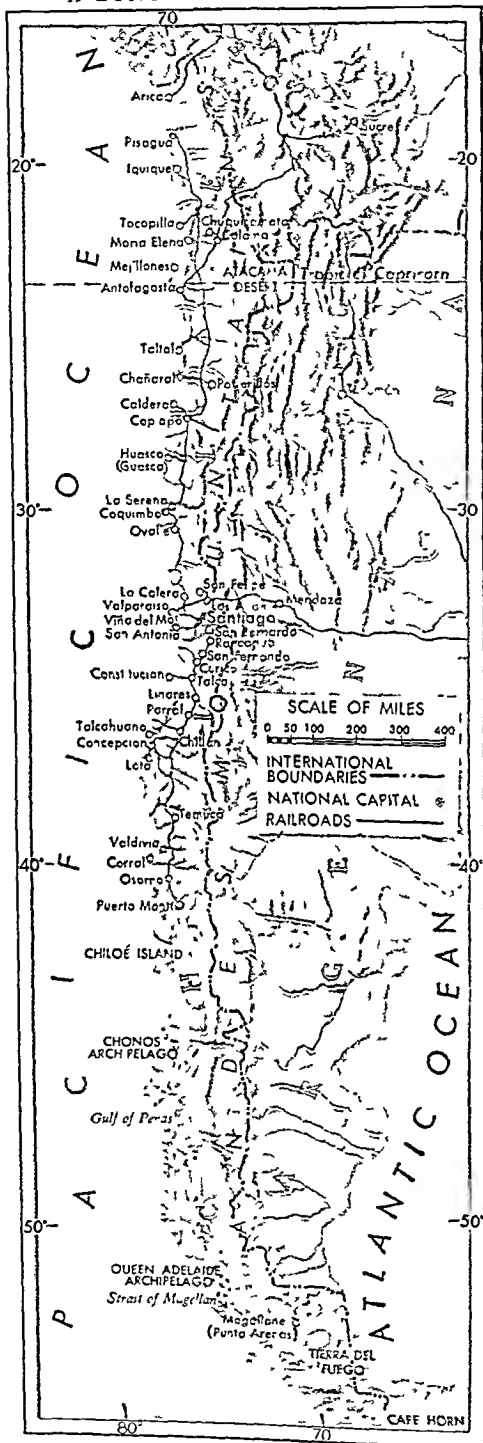
gions in South America and it has a beautiful and fertile valley where almost any plant of the middle latitudes will flourish.

In the north is a great expanse of rainless desert where not a blade of grass will grow. Yet the valuable nitrate deposits of this parched land have nourished the crops of two hemispheres and have brought Chile wealth and an important place in

world commerce. In the south on the other hand is a cold, water-soaked area of heavy forests and grazing land where rain or snow falls almost incessantly during much of the year. Here is the southernmost city on



## A LONG AND NARROW LAND



Notice how Chile is squeezed in between the high ridges of the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. For most of its great length it has Argentina for a neighbor.

the globe; and here, at the continent's end, lives one of the most primitive of peoples. Between these two inhospitable regions lies the fertile and beautiful Vale of Chile where a delightful climate, much like that of California, prevails the year round. This is the heart of the nation, its granary, and its center of population and culture.

#### The Varied Face of the Land

The republic extends from Cape Horn at the southern tip of South America to about 18° south latitude, well within the tropics—a distance of nearly 2,700 miles. If it were placed on the North American continent, it would reach from Florida's southernmost point to northern Quebec in Canada. In width it varies from 31 to 221 miles. With an area of 286,396 square miles, it is somewhat larger than Texas.

About 70 per cent of the land is mountainous. Throughout its length the Andes rise in a great massive wall, which tapers off gradually until the mountains dip into the sea at the end of the continent. Their western slopes belong to Chile, their eastern slopes to Argentina. From heights of 6,000 to 7,000 feet in the south the ranges become increasingly higher through central and northern Chile, where a number of peaks more than 20,000 feet high raise their heads. On the Chile-Argentina border is volcanic Aconcagua, crown of the Andes (see Aconcagua). There are many volcanic cones in these ranges, but most of them, like Aconcagua, are extinct. Settling of the mountains causes frequent earthquakes. In 1939 one of the most destructive quakes ever recorded shook the country from Iquique to Puerto Montt. It took tens of thousands of lives, destroyed Chillán, and badly damaged other cities.

With the great Andean barrier as its backbone, Chile faces the sea. (See Andes Mountains). Along the Pacific, the much lower Coastal Ranges rise abruptly from the ocean, which reaches great depths off the coast. From about 30° to 45° south latitude these mountains parallel the Andes, enclosing the Central Valley, or Vale of Chile. Crossed by low transverse ridges of hills, the valley runs south for about 700 miles, sinking into the sea in the neighborhood of Puerto Montt. There the coastal mountains break into fragments, forming a long chain of islands which fringe the coast for hundreds of miles. Far to the south is the large island group called Tierra del Fuego. Between the Chilean Archipelago and the Andes, the coast is frayed by many sounds and fiords. High winds blow around it and the swirling waters have tossed many a ship on the rocky shores. North of this island-strewn region, the whole coast line of Chile is remarkably regular, with no safe natural harbors. There are more than 50 ports, but at most of them large ships usually anchor well out at sea and use lighters and launches for loading and unloading both passengers and freight.

Geographically and economically the country falls into the three major regions suggested above—the mineral-producing northern desert; central Chile, containing the Central Valley, where most of the nation's food is grown; and the wet, island-strewn, sparsely settled southern third, where sheep grazing is practically the only industry.

#### Variety of Its Climates

Because of its great length and its high mountains, Chile has many different types of climate. Another major influence is the Humboldt Current from the Antarctic, which i-

carried northward from 40° south latitude to the Equator by the trade winds. Its cold waters and the still colder waters closer to shore give the coastal region remarkably low temperatures. They are also partly responsible for the lack of rain in the northern desert. The prevailing winds of this region are chilled by the water and then heated when they blow over the land. The heat enables them to hold all their moisture and hence no rain falls. The high Andes entirely shut out the winds of the interior and the trade winds from the Atlantic.

The stimulating climate of central Chile helped to produce a vigorous white people quite unlike the Indians in tropical parts of the continent who were easily subdued and enslaved by the Spaniards. The Chileans today many of whom have the blood of these early Araucan Indians in their veins are an energetic and progressive people. The Mediterranean climate of the valley suitable for varied crops and comfortable for living is the type that has produced advanced peoples the world over.

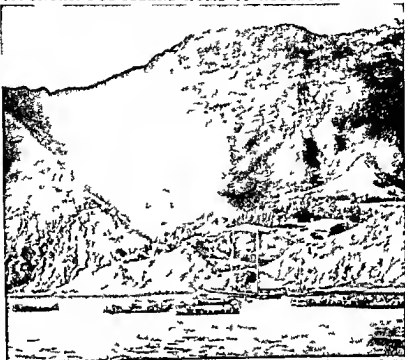
#### The Desert and Its Mineral Wealth

In the Chilean desert which covers 40 per cent of the country's area the landscape is brown and barren. The hot bright sun shines day after day upon glittering sand and bare rock. In most of the years may go by without a single shower and great clouds of dust rise from the land. Nowhere in the region is there more than ten inches of rain a year. One may travel for miles and miles and see no plant life whatever—not even a cactus. Yet this drab country is the nation's greatest source of wealth. The part called the Atacama desert contains the only large nitrate deposits and the largest reserves of copper ore in the world. Copper and nitrate or Chile saltpeter are the country's most valuable exports. The Chileans therefore owe much to their arid desert for it preserves the nitrate which rain would dissolve and carry away.

#### The Nitrate Industry

Sodium nitrate is a colorless salt which is used chiefly as a fertilizer to supply nitrogen to the soil. For half a century the nitrate trade with Europe and

### MOUNTAINOUS ISLAND HOME OF ROBINSON CRUSOE



From the Pacific coast the peaks of Más a Tierra Is and of the Juan Fernández group. On this sea wharf belong to Chile. A grand sea kirk. Robinson Crusoe spent over 100 years.

the United States made Chile one of the most prosperous nations in South America. The industry was developed chiefly by foreign capital and a heavy export tax furnished a large part of the national revenues. Chile's best customers, however, learned to make synthetic nitrogen (see Nitrogen) and after the first World War the nitrate exports fell off rapidly. In 1933 nitrate production was made a state monopoly, the export tax was removed and costs of production were cut to help the industry to recover.

The nitrate zone is a much interrupted strip about 450 miles long extending from 19° to 27° S. The deposits are that are worked in the pampa between the Coast Ranges and the Andes at heights from 4,000 to 7,500 feet. The nitrate is a cementing material in the rock. Ages ago percolating water carried it down from the mountains into the valley where it crystallized. The nitrate-bearing layers of rock are called *caliche*. They vary in depth from a few inches to many feet. The caliche is broken up by blasting and is taken to *oficinas* (factories) where the nitrate is extracted and refined and iodine is produced as a by-product. Chile supplies most of the world's iodine (see Iodine).

The workers in the nitrate region are chiefly *mercos* (people of mixed Indian and white blood) called *rotos* (ragged ones). Most of the *oficinas* are surrounded by workmen's houses and some of the larger

## SANTIAGO, CAPITAL OF CHILE

properties have stores, churches, theaters, and other community establishments. Foodstuffs, in general, are shipped in from other regions, since only in a few oases and small irrigated districts is there any agriculture. Water is piped in from melting snow fields high in the Andes.

Other products of the desert's dried-up lake beds are salt and borax. The horax "lake" is one of the largest in the world, and small quantities of the product are exported (*see* Borax).

#### Copper and Other Minerals of the Desert

The largest copper deposit in the world and the most extensive mining and smelting operations in South America are at Chuquibambilla, on a mountain about a hundred miles inland. There in the heart of the desert a United States company employs several thousand people to work the ore. The camp has the conveniences of the average North American city, with a theater, schools, hotels, athletic fields, and a health staff. There are other large copper works in central Chile. Copper and nitrate make up about three fourths of the total value of exports.

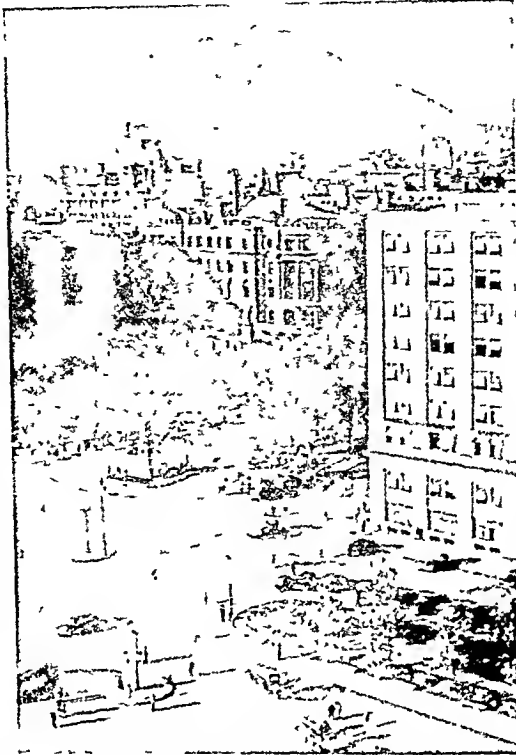
Rich iron-ore deposits are near La Serena and Huasco. Chile leads the continent in iron mining. Much of the ore is shipped to the United States. Aided by the Export-Import Bank, Chile opened its first steel mill in 1950 near Concepción. It fortified its own poor coking coal with imports from the United States. Chile also mines gold and high-grade sulphur. Silver mining, once important, has dwindled.

#### Agriculture in the Desert

Crops are grown on narrow ribbons of land that can be irrigated from the few small streams. Most of them are on the southern border of the desert. Beef or dairy cattle are raised on many farms, and alfalfa for feed is an important crop. Wheat, corn, barley, and a variety of fruits and vegetables are grown. This region, with its almost constant sunshine, is well suited for fruit drying and dried fruits are shipped along the coast. The small farms produce foods for the mining communities. Above 8,000 feet in the Andes a growth of short grass provides pasturage for sheep, goats, llamas, and alpacas.

#### Central Chile, Heart of the Nation

Central Chile has nine tenths of the people. Notice that the map has many towns from La Serena



This view shows General Bernardo O'Higgins Avenue. Santiago lies on a plain. San Cristobal hill, in the rear, towers over the city. The Andes rise in the background.

on the edge of the desert almost to Puerto Montt, some 900 miles south, and particularly in the Central Valley. In the Vale is centered the cultural, political, financial, and social life of Chile, and there is situated Santiago, its capital and chief city. There too and along the adjacent coast is grown most of the nation's food.

The long Central Valley is filled with rich alluvial soils deposited by the Andes streams. It is level except where cross ridges connect the Andes and the Coast Ranges. Here and there, streams fed by melting snows in the Andes cut their way across it to the sea. The climate is delightful. In the northern two thirds of the valley it resembles closely the climate of the Mediterranean lands, with the temperature rarely falling below freezing or rising above 77° F. Most precipitation occurs in winter (May to August). The summers are

long and rainless and the land must be irrigated for crop growing. The rainfall is explained by the prevailing winds. In summer the dry trade winds that cause desert conditions farther north influence the climate. But in winter the westerlies that make southern Chile one of the rainiest regions in the world blow farther north, bringing abundant rains to the central region. The coast, however, has summer showers, and in the southern part of the valley summer rains are frequent. In these regions there is less need for irrigation.

South of the Bío-Bío River (about 36° S.), the valley is similar to the Puget Sound-Willamette Valley of Oregon and Washington. There, in the dense forests, the Araucanian Indians defied successfully the might of the Spanish conquerors for 300 years. The area was later opened up, and Chileans and European immigrants, principally Germans, settled there. About half the land is covered with forests and there are luxuriant pastures. Here and there one sees a large lumber mill and crews of woodcutters. Crops such as barley, oats, and apples are grown without irrigation.

Less than 10 per cent of the area of Chile is suitable for crops. About 90 per cent of the cultivated land lies in the Central Valley. Yet only about 12 per cent of the valley is planted to crops. Three million or more acres have been irrigated by landowners, who are extending irrigation in cooperation with the

government. Much of the valley is dry pasture unsuitable for irrigation and is used for stock raising.

Wheat is the leading crop of central Chile and alfalfa is widely grown for stock feed. Large areas are devoted to vineyards and quantities of wine are marketed. Other crops are barley, oats, corn, beans, peas and legumes, olives, figs, citrus fruits, berries, peaches and other fruits, tobacco, potatoes and garden truck.

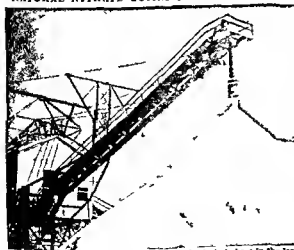
Most of the land is in large holdings. More than half of it it is said is in some five hundred of these large estates called *haciendas* or *fundos*. The wealthy owners or *patrons* usually live in the cities, most of the year leaving *administradores* to manage their land and poorly paid *inquilinos* (tenants) and *rotos* to grow the crops. Life on the haciendas is not unlike life on the great feudal estates of medieval Europe. Usually there is a strong attachment between patron and tenant.

#### Mining and Manufacturing in the Central Valley

Although agriculture is by far the largest industry in the valley there is some mining. Copper is the chief product but coal mining is increasing. Central Chile has the largest coal deposits on the continent. Chilean coal is poor for coking but is mixed with imported coking coal. Short swift rivers provide considerable hydroelectric power for industry.

The principal manufacturing centers of the country are Santiago, Valparaíso, Concepción and Valdivia.

#### NATURAL NITRATE COMES FROM THE DESERT



Looking like a mountain of snow, the natural nitrate is the chief step of refining process. In the practically rainless desert at other the nitrate-bearing rock or caliche is found. From the rock and dirt is separated the product which you see here.

A major objective of the government since the 1920's has been to encourage manufacturing and Chile is becoming self-sufficient in a number of products that can be made from domestic raw materials. Foodstuffs, wool and cotton textiles, leather, shoes, chemicals, furniture and other wood products and tobacco goods.

#### ONE OF THE WORLD'S GREAT COPPER MINES



This is the great open pit copper dig at Chuquibambilla in northern Chile. Like many other Chilean copper mines it is owned and operated by a United States company.

are among the commodities produced in its factories. The number of skilled workers is steadily increasing.

#### Southern Chile

Gray skies, heavy rains, cold winds and dark, tangled forests make southern Chile as uninviting as the northern desert. Lying in the roaring forties, it is one of the stormiest regions on earth. The strong, variable westerly winds bring excessive rainfall (300 inches in places) as they rise to cross the Andes. The snow line diminishes from about 5,000 feet to less than 2,500. Rugged land broken along the coast into thousands of islands, glowering mountain lakes and glacier-fed streams and the heavy blanket of forest give the country a wild appearance.

South of latitude 50° however, and particularly in northwestern Tierra del Fuego, the rugged land gives way to broad, wet plains. In this region, sheep raising, the chief industry of southern Chile, is carried on. Grasses are green the year round and in the cold climate the sheep grow long, thick fleeces of high quality.

The *estancias* (ranches) are very large, some of them more than two million acres in area with 20,000 or more sheep. Many are British owned. The herders, chiefly Scottish, Welsh and Irish, assisted only by their sheep dogs, tend the flocks in their migrations over the vast pasture lands. Three-quarters of Chile's sheep are raised in this region. They furnish a like proportion of the country's export of wool. There are a number of freezing plants. Mutton, sheepskins and sausage casings are also exported.

South of Puerto Montt there is little farming. Lumbering in the conifer and hardwood forests has developed slowly. Most of the timber

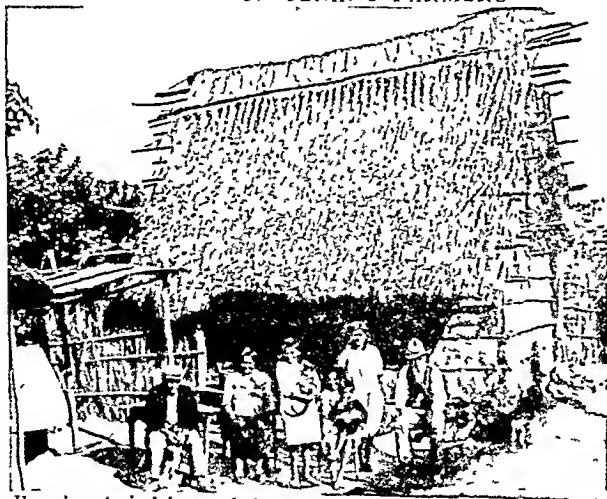
is suitable only for posts, poles, and second-rate lumber. The constant rains, and transportation difficulties over the wet, spongy ground, seriously handicap the industry. There are, however, sawmills near the coast. Lumber is exported to neighboring nations and cabinet woods and *quillay* bark (soap bark) are shipped to Europe and the United States.

In most of southern Chile the population density is less than one person to the square mile. A few remnants of early fishing and hunting Indian tribes live there in most primitive fashion. The few Yaghans, in southern Tierra del Fuego, are the southernmost people in the world. They have no weapons, almost no clothing, and live on fish. Their homes are canoes or hrush shelters. Hunting tribes of Chiloe Island and the mainland near by have mingled with immigrants and are good lumbermen and foresters.

#### Transportation and Trade

A map of Chile's transportation systems looks like a very tall ladder. The Longitudinal Railway in the interior—running from Pisagua to Puerto Montt—and the shipping lane along the coast form the up-rights. The short rail and highway routes connecting the numerous ports with the Longitudinal line and the producing centers in the interior form the rungs.

#### A FAMILY OF TENANT FARMERS



Here is a typical home of the *inquilinos*, or tenant farmers, of Chile. These people live and work on the land which belongs to the *patron*, or landlord. They are a part of a feudal system which still survives.

Chile has about 6,600 miles of railways, some electrified. The government owns about half the total mileage. Two lines cross the Andes to Bolivia, giving it access to the Chilean ports of Arica and Antofagasta. A third, linking the Pacific and Atlantic oceans, is the Transandine railway. It runs from Valparaiso to Buenos Aires, climbing nearly 10,500 feet to tunnel through the Andes. Landslides often block the road. A fourth, opened in 1948, crosses the Andes from Antofagasta to Salta, Argentina.

The sea was the earliest and is still the most serviceable highway. There is coastwise traffic between

different sections of the country and some 30 ports are visited by ships engaged in international trade. Chile's merchant marine is one of the largest in South America. The building of the Panama Canal brought the nation closer to world markets and greatly stimulated its industrial development.

Of some 31,500 miles of roads about two thirds are all-weather roads. The best highways, some of them concrete, are in the Central Valley. In rugged regions where there are only trails, goods are carried by pack animals.

Air service, under government ownership, links the chief cities. There are no railroads south of Puerto Montt, but southern Chile is served by air. Foreign companies supply regular service to other Latin American countries and to the United States and Europe.

In the total value of its foreign trade Chile is one of the leading nations of Latin America. In general it ships raw materials and receives manufactured goods in return. Nearly four-fifths of the value of all exports comes from its minerals—copper, nitrate and iodine, iron ore, gold, silver, sulphur, and sulphate of soda. The sheep-raising industry is the source of the second group in value—wool and sheepskins and fresh and frozen meats. Lentils, beans, peas, oats, barley, fruits, wine, and wood products are also exported, chiefly to neighboring countries.

The major imports are machinery, transportation equipment, iron and steel manufactures, chemicals, petroleum and its products, textiles, sugar, and other foodstuffs. Chile's dependence on imported petroleum lessened when oil was discovered on Tierra del Fuego in 1945. A pipe line for crude petroleum was opened in 1950. A large part of Chile's trade is with the United States and the United Kingdom and with other South American countries.

#### Cities and Resorts

Nineteen of the 26 cities with a population of more than 10,000 are situated in central Chile. Beautiful Santiago, the capital, lies in the northern part of the Central Valley. It is connected by rail and highway with the port of Valparaiso, 117 miles northwest. Viña del Mar, near Valparaiso, is the leading sea resort on the west coast. (See Santiago; Valparaiso)

Near the mouth of the Bío-Bío River is Concepción, the third city in size and the central gateway to the valley. It is a commercial center for a rich farming hinterland and a favorite tourist resort. Concepción is served by the port of Talcahuano, a government naval station which has one of the best natural harbors on the coast.

At the southern end of the Central Valley are Osorno and Puerto Montt, smaller commercial cities. Both are in a region of charming scenery. The volcano of Osorno, probably the most beautiful in Chile, resembles strikingly Japan's famous Fujiyama.

Antofagasta, Arica, Iquique, and lesser ports handle the trade of the northern desert region. Magallanes

(Punta Arenas), the southernmost city in the world, is a free port and the trade center for the sheep industry. Before the opening of the Panama Canal it was important as a coaling station. In December and

#### A CHILEAN "HUASO"



A striking figure in his holiday costume is this huaso, who is the "cowboy" of his country.

January it has 17 hours of daylight.

Two island possessions far out in the Pacific are of exceptional interest. The origin of the colossal stone statues on Easter Island is one of the unsolved mysteries of the world (see Easter Island). On the largest of the Juan Fernandez group Alexander Selkirk, a British sailor, lived for four years. His adventures there inspired Daniel De-

foe to write his *Robinson Crusoe* more than two centuries ago (see *Crusoe Robinson*).

#### Recreation Sports Games

Scenic beauty, mineral springs, splendid beaches and opportunities for summer and winter sports attract numbers of foreigners as well as Chileans to the many pleasure resorts. There are fine race tracks and golf courses and excellent fishing. Sking, skating and tobogganing are becoming increasingly popular. The ski fields near Chillán and near Santiago are among the best in the world.

The Chileans, hardy and vigorous, are fond of strenuous sports. Soccer is the most popular game and polo is a favorite with the wealthy. Polo teams have demonstrated their prowess at numerous international meets. Boxing, golf, tennis and bicycling also are popular. Rugby football and croquet are played mainly by the English. The Indians are adept at *chueca*, a sort of hockey played with a stone.

#### The People of Today and Yesterday

More than half of the people are mestizos of Indian and Spanish blood. From 30 to 40 per cent are of pure European descent, chiefly Spanish. There are about 100,000 Indians today, most of whom are Araucanians, and a like number of foreigners—Germans, Spanish, French, Swiss and others. Immigration has been slow, chiefly because the only attractive region for settlement is in central Chile, where most of the arable land is in the large estates.

In general the people fall into two clear-cut groups: those who own land and those who do not. The few rich landowners live in splendor on their haciendas or in their city residences. From this group come the statesmen, professional men, and the clergy. The landless group is made up in large part of the poorly

paid *inquilinos* on the great estates and the *rotos*, or laborers on the farms in the mines and in other industries. They live in thatched huts and other humble types of dwellings. The majority are agricultural workers. To them it means little whether the great mining industries that support the government prosper or decline.

The strong warlike Araucanian Indians lived in the forests of central Chile before the coming of the Incas in the 15th century and the Spaniards in the century following (see *Incas*). They successfully resisted these invaders for hundreds of years. But they were forced south of the Bío-Bío River and in 1818, when Chile became independent, they were given the right to the region called the *Fróntera*. In 1881 they were finally forced to recognize the authority of Chile and the *Fróntera* was opened to settlement.

Today, as in the past, the Araucanians live chiefly by hunting and fishing. Their dwellings, called *rucas*, are never grouped in villages. They make silver hair ornaments, huge-headed pins for fastening shawls and the silver necklaces and ornaments which are a distinctive part of the Araucanian woman's costume. Their textiles in beautifully blended colors have designs borrowed from the Incas, with squares and stepped and zigzagged lines predominating. Rugs and pottery complete the list of their handicrafts.

Their musical folklore is extraordinarily rich. The Araucanian has a song for every act of his life. There are songs for children, and choruses and ritual songs.

#### GRAPES FOR THE WINE OF CHILE



The abundant grape crop is picked by the most laborers called *peones* among the *pequeños*. These are poor children. The vineyards are mostly in the Central Valley.

which are used in religious and social ceremonies. Their music has remarkable rhythm and melody.

#### The Arts and Education

The Araucanian influence is strong in Chile's music and literature. "Araucanian rhapsodies" and "Araucanian poems" abound in the work of the composers. Many writers have made valuable contributions to the nation's literature, and its painters and sculptors are widely known through their exhibits at international exhibitions. The arts are encouraged, and promising composers, artists, and writers emerge from the department of fine arts at the national university and from Chilean conservatories.

Chile has one of the best school systems in Latin America, with kindergartens, provision for vocational training, and other features of modern education. Education is free and compulsory for all children between the ages of 7 and 15, but this law is difficult to enforce, because the people in some regions are widely scattered and funds are frequently inadequate. Consequently, a large percentage of the people still are unable to read and write.

There are a number of fine institutions for higher learning. At Santiago are the University of Chile and the Catholic University; Concepción also has a university; and Valparaíso has one of the best technical institutes in Latin America. Scholarships are given to selected students for study in North America and Europe. Children of the wealthy receive at least part of their higher education abroad.

#### History

The Spanish conquest of what is now Chile was begun in 1535 by Diego de Almagro, a lieutenant of Pizarro (see Pizarro, Francisco). He was repulsed by the Araucanian Indians, but in 1541 Pedro de Valdivia, Pizarro's quartermaster, founded Santiago, the first white settlement. Colonization was slow and costly because the Araucanians destroyed settlements almost as soon as they were built.

While Spain was busy fighting Napoleon in 1810, Chile took steps to end colonial rule. In 1818 it declared its independence as armies under Gen. José San Martín, of Argentina, and Gen. Bernardo O'Higgins, of Chile, routed the royalists. O'Higgins was the "supreme dictator" of the new nation, until he was deposed in 1823. A period of strife finally led to the adoption (1833) of a constitution providing for a centralized government. This constitution, with few changes, remained the fundamental law for 92 years.

Throughout the 19th century the country made great progress. Foreign immigration and capital doubled the population between the 1840's and the 1870's and increased the national revenue five times over. While the other republics were being torn by continual strife, Chile suffered only one serious internal disturbance. This occurred in 1891, when a civil war resulted in the quick defeat of President José Manuel Balmaceda, who had attempted to rule without congress. The United States was briefly involved when its sailors were attacked (see Harrison, Benjamin).

Disputes over revenues from nitrate deposits in the Pacific coastal desert led to the War of the Pacific (1879-83), in which Chile crushed Bolivia and Peru, and emerged the great power of western South America. Chile took Bolivia's only strip of seaboard, the province of Atacama, and Peru's provinces of Tacna (later returned to Peru), Tarapaca, and Arica (see Peru). A long-standing boundary dispute with Argentina was settled peacefully in 1902 (see Argentina). The nation completed its portion of the Transandine railway in 1910; and, as part of a bargain with Bolivia, it completed

a railway line between Tacna and La Paz in Bolivia in 1915. The collapse of the market for nitrates after the first World War was a major disaster to the nation's economy. Discontent grew. In 1920, after the Conservatives had failed to heed demands for reform, Arturo Alessandri Palma, a Liberal, became president. Under his leadership a new constitution was framed in 1925, and progressive measures were adopted, providing for higher wages, better housing, social security, and better education. His successors pursued the policy. In 1943 Chile broke with the Axis. After the war Communism increased, and Chile was the first American nation to include Communists in the cabinet. It then banned the party in 1948. In 1951 Chile got economic aid from the United States and joined it in a defense pact in 1952.

#### Government

The constitution of 1925 provides for a highly centralized government. The president and congress, made up of a senate and a chamber of deputies, are chosen by popular elections. In 1949 women got the right to vote in the national elections. The president is elected for a term of six years but is not eligible to succeed himself. The president appoints the members of the supreme and appellate courts and the chief administrators (*intendentes*) of the 24 provinces. Senators are elected for eight years, and deputies for four. The Roman Catholic church, for centuries the state religion, was disestablished by the constitution of 1925. (See also Latin America; Latin American Literature; South America. For Reference-Outline and Bibliography, see South America.)

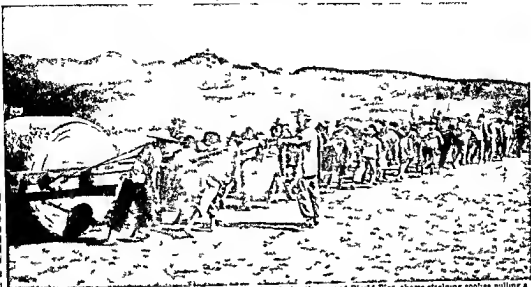
**CHIMPANZEE.** Centuries ago visitors to equatorial Africa returned with startling tales of strange brans, frightfully ugly and tremendously strong. Probably what they had seen were chimpanzees, the large anthropoid apes, which frequent practically the entire Congo basin in Africa.

A full-grown chimpanzee is about five feet tall with arms spreading about six feet. It can walk nearly erect, but usually it touches its hands to the ground in walking. The hair is short and black or brownish-black; the almost human face is marked by prominent eye-socket ridges. Hands and feet have somewhat opposable thumbs and can grasp objects. Wild chimpanzees live in families, eating fruit, nuts, and insects, and building nests in the trees. They may live from 20 to 24 years.

Scientists have always been interested in the so-called "mental processes" of chimpanzees, which are the most imitative of apes and which can be taught a variety of human-like actions, such as eating at a table with a knife and fork. Professors Kohler and Yerkes report instances of what resembles simple thinking, such as piling boxes one on another to reach a banana hung from the roof of the cage. The chimpanzee would first try each box separately, then apparently "think it out" and make the pile. These observers also report that some chimpanzees have learned the use and meaning of words, and they claim that one chimpanzee called "Cup! Cup!" when thirsty. Usual chimpanzee "speech," however, consists of mere cries indicating emotion.

Chimpanzees in captivity are often playful and affectionate, but grow morose and sullen with age. Usually they take affectionate care of their young. When removed from their native climate they are highly susceptible to pneumonia and tuberculosis. Scientific name, *Anthropopithecus niger*. (See also Ape.)

# CHINA—Vast Land of YESTERDAY and TOMORROW



Old ways and new rub shoulders in China. This photograph taken during the second World War, shows strong coolies pulling a heavy stone roller to smooth an air field for the powerful American planes that bombed Japanese held cities.

**CHINA** Through many centuries China the oldest living nation was called changeless. Its people had taken more than 3,000 years to build their unique culture. They clung to traditional ways of life and ancient loyalties. They shut the doors of the country against the outside barbarian world. New ideas spread slowly among the nearly half a billion people.

But a changing world did not leave China alone. It has been torn and impoverished by wars between conflicting modern ideas and systems.

More than a century ago Western traders broke down China's isolation and introduced the machine and its products. The Industrial Revolution had brought wealth and power to the West. But the tradition-bound Chinese had little desire to follow their neighbor Japan in imitating Western industrialism. Mass factory methods were uncongenial to the self-reliant farmers and the painstaking artisans. The dreamy scholars hated technical work. Independent businessmen had no experience with the complex ways of corporations.

**Extent**—(1) The Eighteen Provinces generally called China Proper have an estimated area of about 1,500,000 square miles and a population of 385,047,101, 1947 est. (2) China has about 1,600 miles long extending from 16° to 42° N. latitude. (3) Historic Greater China including Manchu, Inner Mongolia, Western Province, Formosa and Tibet has an area of more than 4,000,000 square miles and a population of 401,000,285.

**Natural Features**—(1) North China: The Loess Highlands, North China Plain, Shanling Mountains, Huang He (Yellow River). (2) Central China: Tsinling Shan (rising to 10,000–12,000 feet), Red Basin of Szechwan, North Yangtze Highlands, Yangtze Lowlands, Yangtze Kiang (Yangtze River). (3) South China: South Yangtze Highlands, Southwestern Highlands, Si Kiang Basin, Southeastern Coast, Si Kiang (West River).

**Climate**—Mean temperature, North China Plain from 25° F. in January to 80° F. in July; Yangtze Plain from 40° F. in January to 85° F. in July; South China from 55° F. in January to 85° F. in July. Average yearly precipitation, North China, 15 to 20 inches; Central China, 45 inches; South China, 60 to 80 inches. Winter monsoon, October to April; summer monsoon, May to August.

**Products**—(1) Agricultural: Rice, wheat, kaoliang, millet, barley, corn, oats, cotton, silk, tea, peanuts, sugar, soy beans, tobacco, sesameum, rapeseed, sweet potatoes, and other vegetables. (2) Fruit: peaches, pears, and other fruits. (3) Minerals: Coal, antimony, tungsten, manganese, iron, zinc, lead, pottery, clay, building stone, salt, soda, sulfur, iron, copper, silver. (4) Forest: Tansu of bamboo, camellia, paper. (5) Manufactured: Cotton, silk, rayon, and woolen goods, glass, iron and steel, paper, cement, chemicals, canned goods, glass, and porcelain, egg, albumen, sugar, flour, carpets, embroidery, and lace, a technical goods, soap.

**Cities**—Shanghai, 4,300,630; Peking, Communist capital (Peiping), 1,000,000; Canton, 1,400,000; Hankow, Chungking, over 1,000,000; Tientsin, Hsinchew, Chengtu, Sian, Changsha, Tsunan (over 500,000); Hangchow, Chungking, Soochow, Foochow, over 325,000; British Colony of Hong Kong, 1953 est. 2,250,000.

Political revolution began in 1911 when the Chinese nationalists overthrew the Manchu emperor. They proclaimed a republic and began the uphill task of converting a feudal nation into a unified democracy.

Then in 1937 Japan invaded seeking to make China part of a military empire. The people of Free China fought with a unity, patriotism, and competence that surprised the world. But eight years of bitter war ravaged ports, industries, railways, roads, and communication systems and brought widespread suffering and loss of life.

The Chinese Communists gained strength during the war.

With captured modern arms they pushed back the weakened and disorganized Nationalist forces. By 1950 the Communists had overwhelmed China and the Nationalist government had fled to Formosa. Conquest had been easy, but could the new rulers solve the economic problems of the nation? Would the conservative Chinese adopt Communist methods?

The map shows why China was long isolated. On the west it is closed in by high mountains and barren des-



erts. On the east the vast Pacific Ocean forms a barrier which men could not cross until modern times.

As we have seen, China was shut away, too, because of its wish to be left alone. Thousands of years ago the Chinese learned how to live comfortably together and to create things of beauty. They invented porcelain and gunpowder and paper and printing. They were the first to print books, and for a long time they had more books than all the rest of the world. At the time America was discovered they were in many ways the most civilized people on earth. Their lack of interest in the outside world was strengthened by their greatest thinker, Confucius, who taught them respect for the ways of their ancestors.

While the Chinese were shut away, the Western nations drew ahead. When they finally forced their way into China the people there were surprised to learn that the newcomers regarded them as ignorant and backward.

### The Land and the People

NO ONE KNOWS exactly how large China is, or how many people it has. The land has never been surveyed and no complete census has ever been taken. If we include all the territory that the government regards as Chinese, Greater China covers about 4 million square miles. This is larger than all Europe and almost as large as Siberia. But China's control over the territories of Tibet, Outer Mongolia, Manchuria, and Sinkiang (Chinese Turkestan) has varied (see Manchuria; Mongolia; Tibet, Turkestan). The area of "China proper" covers about 1½ million square miles, and includes the 18 provinces shown on the map on page 260.

In 1947 the Nationalist government, then in power, estimated the population of China to be 461,006,235—about one fifth of all the people in the world. This figure included 385,047,161 for China proper (the 18 Central Provinces) and 75,959,124 for the outlying provinces and territories (Manchuria, Inner Mongolia, Western Provinces, Tibet, Formosa, Jehol, and 12 municipalities).

Thus China proper has two and a half times as many people as the United States crowded into less than half the area. But the Chinese are even more badly crowded than would appear from this comparison. In the United States three-fourths of all the land is in farms or is used for grazing live stock. In China proper less than one-third of the land, at the most, is used for farming or pasture. Some estimates are much lower than this. Using this largest estimate for China's crop and pasture land, we find that there are 12

persons to be supported by every 10 acres, against one person in the United States for every 10 acres. And there seems to be little possibility of bringing much more of the land under the plow. More than half of the land can never be farmed, because it is too mountainous or too dry, or because the soil is too poor.

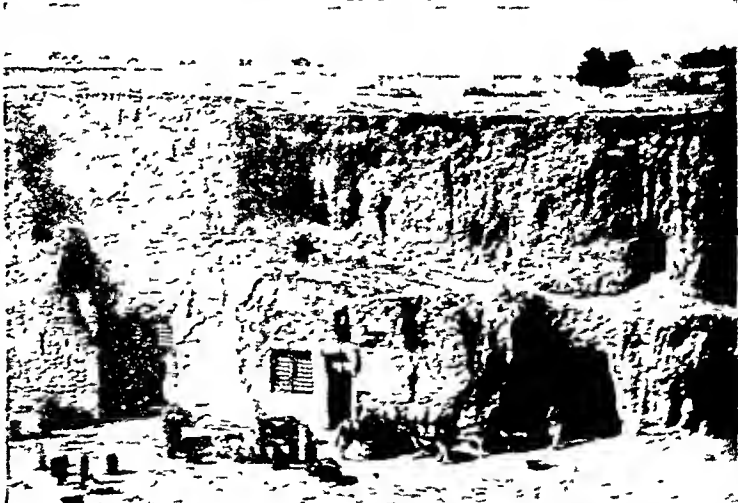
### A Land of Mountains and River Valleys

China proper is shaped almost like a palm-leaf fan. The northwestern province Kansu is its handle and the other 17 provinces spread out from it, with the rounded edge of the fan lying along the Pacific coast.

This coastline extends from about 18° to 42° north latitude—a little farther south and not quite so far north as the Atlantic coast of the United States. At its widest point China proper extends from 122° to 93° east longitude. So it is only about half as broad as the United States. The northern third of the coast is a low-lying delta plain fringed with sand banks. Hence it has few good harbors. But south of Shanghai the drowned coastline, with its numerous little islands and bays, provides many safe shelters for ships.

In describing the land, one thinks first of mountains. China is a land of rugged highlands, and only in the river plains are there any large areas of level land. The mountains run for the most part from west to east, and they become smaller as the land gradually slopes off toward the sea from the high plateau of Tibet. Some lie in ranges; others stand in isolated groups or clusters. The central mountains are a

### CAVE DWELLINGS IN THE WIND-BUILT SOIL OF NORTH CHINA



A stream has cut down through the thick layer of loess soil that covers the plains of northern China, showing the formation of this fertile crust. In such places millions of people have dug out homes, stables, and storehouses.

continuation of the Kunlun Range of the Tibet-Sinclair border. The chief range, the Tsinling (*Ch'ing*) Shan, extends almost to the coast. These high mountains, rising to more than 10,000 feet, divide China geographically into two parts, which differ greatly in climate, in the general appearance of the land, in agriculture, and in the activities of the people.



This map shows the physical nature of Greater China, a vast region which stretches one sixth of the way around the earth. Within this region, to the west, are the highest mountains in the world, the Himalayas and the Pamir Plateau, the so-called roof of the world. North of the Humaayas begins a broken

line of lower ridges and plateaus that sweeps east then north to separate fertile eastern China from the rugged desert interior. The rivers which drain east and southeast from the mountains have brought down soil and enriched their lower valleys. In these valleys live most of the Chinese people.

In the western part of north China are the Loess Highlands, so named because they are covered with wind-blown soil called loess. To the east of these is the North China Plain, east of them is the mountainous peninsula of Shantung, where the sacred mountain Tai Shan is the highest peak (see Shantung). Most of south China is a region of hills and narrow valleys called the South China Highlands. The southwest is a plateau which rises in broken steps to the heights of Tibet.

Many rivers cut through this rugged land. On them China depends for its life, for without them it could not grow enough food for its people. The three great rivers rise in the mountains of the west and flow generally eastward to the sea. Through north China flows the Hwang Ho, or Yellow River. In its lower part on the Hwang has formed a broad fertile plain—the North China Plain. The Yangtze, the greatest river in Asia, drains central China. About midway in its course from Tibet it waters the mountain-rimmed Red Basin of Szechwan (*su-chuan*), so named because its soil is colored by red sandstone. The province of Szechwan is the richest and most populous of all the provinces.

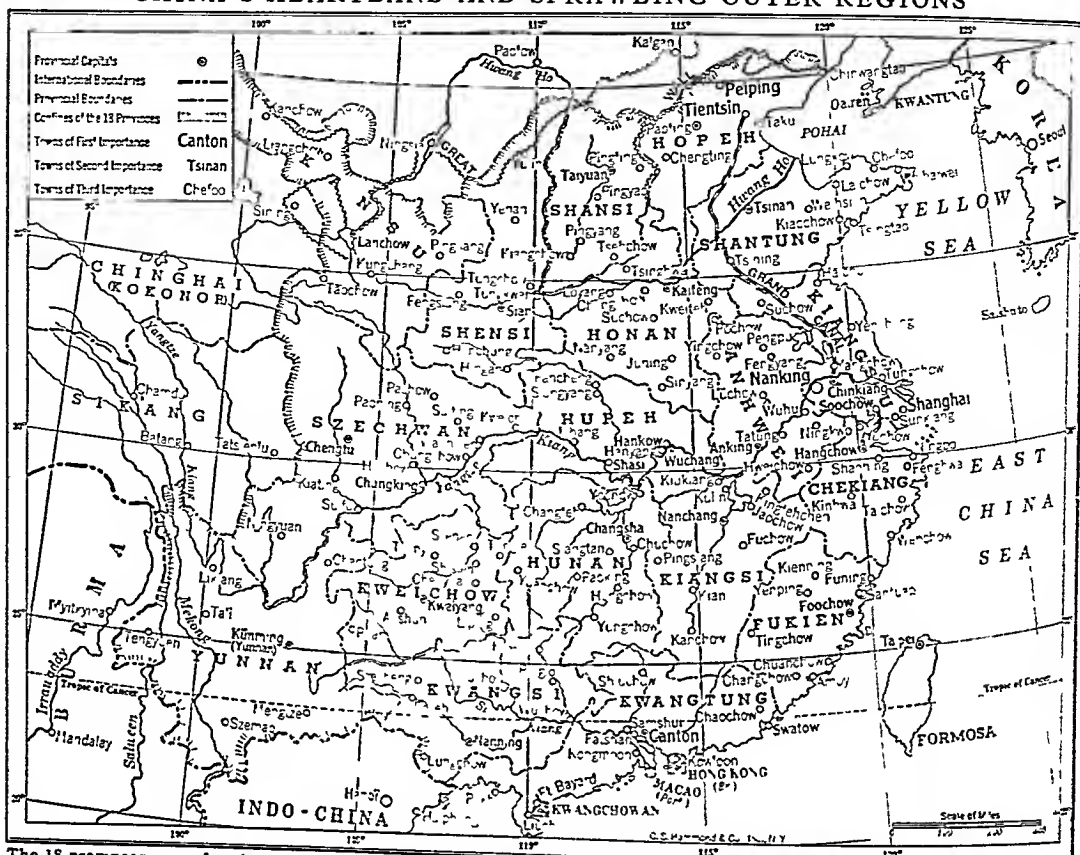
As it nears the sea, the Yangtze is bordered by broad lowlands. A much shorter river, the Si Kiang, or West River, is the chief stream of the far south. Like the Yangtze, it has built a broad rich delta near its mouth. In the valleys and plains of these rivers are crowded most of the people; for these regions have most of the level land and fertile soil for farming. (See Hwang River, Yangtze River.)

#### Wide Range of Climate

North China has short hot summers, long severe winters and scanty rainfall. The average temperature in January is under 25° and in July it is about 80°. In the south the summers are long, hot, and moist; the winters mild and the rainfall abundant. Even in January the average temperature is above 50° in the far south. An important influence on the climate is China's position in the south-east of the vast continent of Asia. The interior of Asia is one of the driest regions in the world, with extremes of heat and cold. These differences in temperature cause seasonal winds called monsoons (see Winds).

The monsoons bring heat and cold rain and drought. The winter monsoon (October to April) blows from

## CHINA'S HEARTLAND AND SPRAWLING OUTER REGIONS



The 18 provinces named in large, very black capital letters form China proper. Lighter capital letters for Chinghai and Sikiang, in the northwest but not shown, nominally belongs to China, but is largely dominated by Russia. Formosa became a province of China in 1947, but became a Nationalist refuge in 1949.

the northwest and west, bringing bitter cold to north China from the cold dry interior. The warm summer monsoon (May to August) blows from the south and southeast, laden with moisture from the ocean. It brings heavy rains (about 60 inches a year) and a long growing season to the south. As it crosses the central mountains, it loses much of its moisture, so that precipitation in the north is scanty (15 to 20 inches) and less certain. It usually brings plenty of rain to the North China Plain in July and August, but when the rains fail people starve by the million.

#### North China and Its People

The North China Plain is brown and bare, with scarcely any trees, but its loess soil is amazingly fertile, when it gets enough rain. Sometimes the Yellow River overflows when the rains come, and terrible floods ruin the crops and destroy millions of people.

The people of the north are tall and broad-shouldered, with high cheek bones. They are slow of speech, and the people of the south consider them rather dull. These northern people like to eat bread and noodles, made from the wheat they grow. But they have to sell much of their wheat to get money. So a large part of their diet consists of millet, oats, corn, and kaoliang

(a tall sorghum, pronounced *kou-ll-ang*), which are not so nourishing or so pleasant to the taste as wheat.

The cities are low and flat, with few buildings more than one story high. Peiping (Peking), the most famous of the northern cities is remarkably beautiful, with its imperial buildings, its temples, and its shrines. It has been the capital of China at various times and much of the nation's history centers around it. The chief seaport is Tientsin. Other important cities are Chefoo and Tsingtau on the Shantung peninsula. (See Peking; Shantung; Tientsin.)

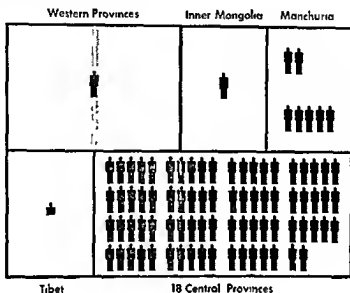
#### South China and Its People

In south China everything is softly green, with a greenness which one has to see to believe. For here the climate is warm enough to grow rice, and young rice is the clearest of greens. There are trees, too, and soft fernlike bamboos, and lakes and ponds and rivers. The cities are busy and many of them have high buildings copied from those of Western countries. The people are smaller and quicker in their movements than the northerners. They laugh and talk and lose their tempers more readily.

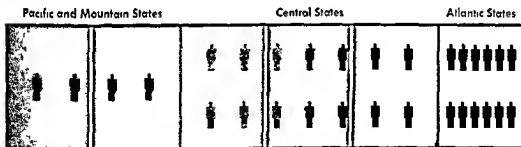
In the rich valley of the Yangtze there are more than 670 people on the average to each square mile of

# China and the United States Compared

## Area and Population of Greater China



## Area and Population of Continental United States



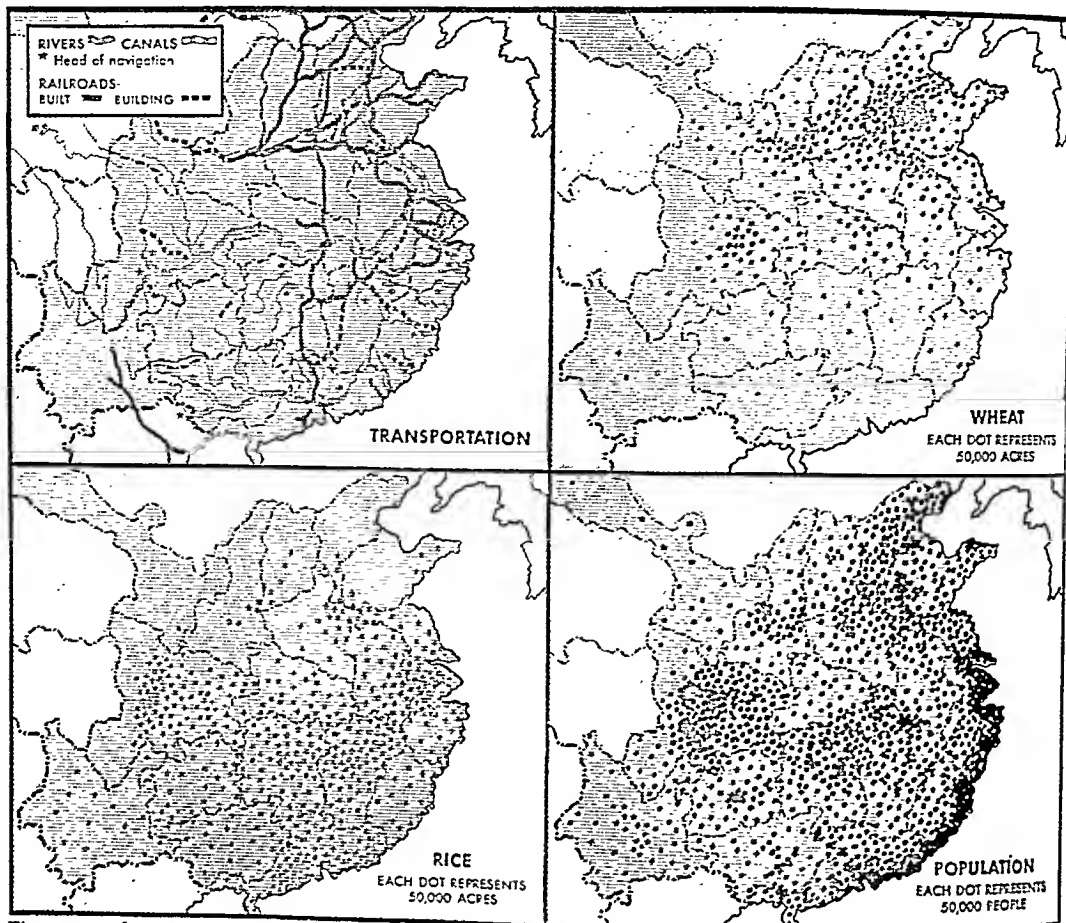
Each rectangle represents 500,000 square miles  
 Each complete symbol represents 5,000,000 people

farm land. Some parts have 2,000 or more to the square mile. No other region in the world, it is said, has so many navigable waterways. Besides the great river and its tributaries, there are more than 100,000 miles of canals. These take the place of roads, for nearly every village is on a canal. Rice and tea are the chief crops. Along or near the river are several great cities—Nanking, which has several times been the capital, Shanghai, the most important commercial city and one of the world's busiest ports, Hangchow, a beautiful city which still retains some of its ancient

Prepared for Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia  
 © International Foundation for Visual Education

historical charm, and the triple city group of Hankow, Hanyang, and Wuchang, which are 600 miles from the ocean but are reached by seagoing ships. (See articles on these cities.)

In the tropical and subtropical south, the farmers grow chiefly rice. Tea, corn, and tobacco are other important crops. Mulberry trees are cultivated for their leaves, which are used for food for the silkworms. Most of China's silk comes from the delta of the Si Kiang (West River). Near the mouth of this river stands Canton, whose enterprising people are



These maps show the chief transportation routes of China, where wheat and rice are grown, and how the people are distributed.

found doing business all over the world. Hong Kong, which belongs to Great Britain, is an island lying just off the coast near Canton. Foochow is another important city. (See articles on these cities.)

The people in various parts of China speak different dialects and differ from one another in other ways. Lack of transportation and communication has kept the folk of one region from knowing those of another. This is one reason why the Chinese have not had so strong a sense of nationalism as many other peoples and why it is hard for a government to enforce laws, change methods or institutions, or provide common schools.

#### How the People Live

THOUGH regions differ in climate, soils, resources, crops, customs, and languages, the Chinese have certain problems and qualities in common. In general, they are remarkable for their industry, patience, endurance of hardship, love of peace, honesty, and courtesy. Because there are so many to feed from every square mile of land, they are hard-working, saving, and skilful in farming. Even so, there is not enough for all, and the common people all suffer from lack of proper

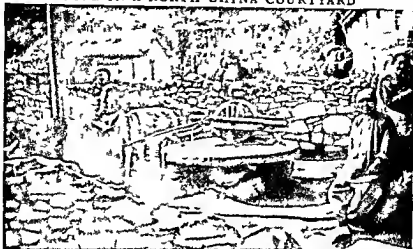
food and warm clothing. Four-fifths or more of the population are farm people. The whole family—men, women, and even little children—have to work early and late to make their tiny farms produce enough food to go around. Most families have less than four acres of land, and each farm usually consists of five or six scattered strips, like the farms of medieval Europe.

#### Life of Village and Farm

The farmhouses are generally clustered in little villages and the farmers have to walk some distance to their fields. The usual farmhouse is mud-walled, with a roof of thatch. In the north the walls are reinforced with kaoliang stalks. Houses in the south may have walls of brick or woven bamboo. Wood is scarce, and the farmers use it sparingly for roof beams, farm implements, coffins, and furniture. The floor is merely pounded earth. The tiny window opening has merely a lattice of wood covered with paper, because glass is scarce and costly.

A whole family—grandparents, parents, and children—lives in a homestead made up of several houses grouped around an open courtyard of hard beaten earth. Here the women sit spinning and mending and

## LIFE IN A NORTH CHINA COURTYARD



The courtyard, a life center of household activities. These are fortunate for they have a little donkey to aid the grail. It is seldom he is able to round up the heavy mud stones on the ground and take them to the left to be used as fuel. In the background, the old Chinese window. Notice that the woman on the left is washing clothes in the tub. It is a life center of old China.

preparing vegetables to be dried or salted for winter use. Here the children play, the old people sit in the sun, and chickens and pigs roam in search of stray bits of food. Usually a grove of trees near the homestead gives shade in summer. Beneath it may lie the family graves.

At one side of the entrance to the yard are two or three great sunken jars which hold human and animal manure for fertilizer. A pond or a small canal near by is probably shared by several homesteads for washing clothes. The women

soap the clothes with either coarse yellow soap or a large soap bean and beat them with heavy wooden paddles on a rock. Then the clothes are rinsed and beaten again. In the same pond or canal vegetables and rice are washed for cooking. Utensils are scoured out, and water is drawn for brewing tea, for washing faces and hands, and for watering seedling rice and vegetables. The men carry the water to the fields in great wooden buckets slung on a pole and spray it out skilfully in an even sheet with wooden dippers.

## TERRACES OF RICE



Far up on the mountain sides the farmers have leveled and walled off tiny plots for rice growing.

In northern farmhouses most of the scanty furniture is made of mud dried until it is very hard. The most important piece, the kang, is a bed built of brick or mud and kept warm by a small fire underneath it. During the cold winters when little farm work can be done the family spends much time sitting or lying on these beds which are spread with quilts over straw or kashang stalks. In the south the furniture is of wood and there is no need of a kang.

## Cooking and Food

The kitchen stove too is of mud or in some places broken brick. The pots which are set down into it

are of iron beaten so thin that little fuel has to be used to heat them. Fuel is commonly straw or grass because wood is scarce. Every handful of grass and every stray twig is valuable.

The women of the north cook noodles in hot water and bake flat pancakes without yeast or shortening. Both these dishes are flavored with a little chopped garlic, soy bean sauce or pickled bean curd. The southern people eat rice with some sort of vegetable heated quickly with a few drops of vegetable oil and salt and a spoonful of soy bean sauce. Both the noodles of the north and the rice of the south are eaten with chopsticks. The common people rarely have meat of any kind. Sugar is seldom used except on holidays and the ordinary shortening is rapeseed bean or peanut oil.

The better farmhouses and the houses in the towns usually have one guest room or living room in which hang a few painted scrolls or the wooden tablets bearing the names of the ancestors. When there are guests or important family celebrations the meal is served here.

## Fashions in Rural China

The women not only help in the fields and do the washing and cooking but they spin and weave and make garments for the family. Styles in clothing are the same north and south. The men wear loose baggy

## VILLAGE LAUNDRY

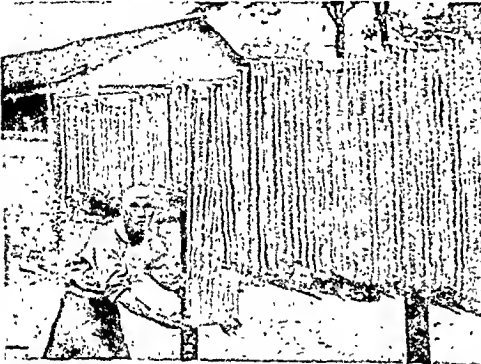


The canal is the community water supply. It is a place for laundry and meeting place.

## HARD WORK AND SCANTY LIVING



Two factory girls ride to work over a rough road near Shanghai in a one-wheel taxi—fare, a few cents an hour.



What looks like a week's laundry on the line is really a batch of fine Chinese noodles hung out to dry.



The teeth of that peculiar saw are filed in reverse, so they cut on the pull stroke instead of on the push stroke.



Many people live their whole lives aboard sampans. At the left, a little boy with a net is scooping up pieces of floating wood.

trousers and long, high-collared gowns of blue or gray cotton cloth, reaching to the ankles and open at the side seams almost to the knees. On dress occasions they may wear short black jackets over the gowns. These are cut like the gowns except that they come only two or three inches below the waist and open down the center. In winter the gowns and perhaps the trousers are padded with cotton and quilted, to make them warmer. Several layers of garments may be worn in cold weather. Those who can afford it line the outer garment with sheepskin or other fur. Women on the farms usually dress just like the men, except that instead of the long

gowns they wear jackets reaching only to the knees. Dark blue and black are the ordinary colors, but in summer even a farm woman may wear pale blue or lavender. To keep the wind from blowing their sleek black

hair, women working in the fields usually wear a square of flowered cloth over their heads tied beneath the knot of hair at the back of the neck. In summer men wear great straw hats. In winter, when a man gets ready to go to town, he puts on a small black sateen skullcap with a button on the top—a white button if he has had a death in the family, otherwise a red or black one. All the common people wear homemade cloth shoes or straw sandals woven by some member of the family or bought at the nearest village for a few cents. Leather shoes are worn only by students and merchants and the wealthy people of the cities.

## Seafaring People of the South

Along the southeast coast and up and down the rivers and canals in that region are most of the seafaring people, the fishermen, and the houseboat people who live all their lives on their sampans. In the south timber for boats is still plentiful, there are innumerable harbors for small craft, and the land is overcrowded. Consequently many have turned to the sea for a living. Fishermen in their gaily decorated junks sail out into the open sea or take shrimps, oysters, and prawns near the shore. Their catch is important, for no feast is complete without fish. The larger seagoing cargo junks carry on a considerable trade with neighboring lands. The crews on these junks and even on the modern steamships have usually begun their training in seamanship on the small fishing boats.

## The Contrasts of City Life

In the larger cities and towns, the new China rubs elbows with the old China in bewildering contrast. Some men wear European clothing. Side by side with them are well-to-do merchants of the old school clad in long silk gowns and coolies (laborers) in blue cotton trousers and short jackets. Rarely, except in remote country towns and villages, does one see the queue, or pigtail, which men were formerly obliged to wear as a mark of submission to the Manchu rulers.

Some of the women dress in Europeanlike costumes, with bobbed and waved hair, and high-heeled shoes. Others wear the new long

# CONTRASTS IN CHINA'S MYRIAD PEOPLE



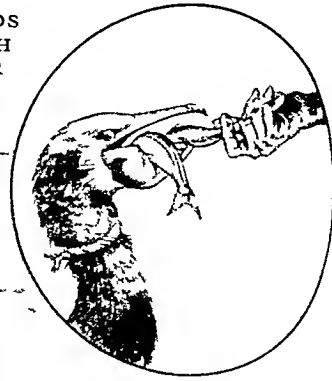
These photographs show only a few of China's many types. Despite their different appearances, many tend to cling to China's ancient traditions. Mores of Chinese remain largely unchanged in spite of revolutions, invasions, and Communist upsurge.



silk gowns, much like the men's except that they are brilliant in color, fitted to the form, and slit to the knees. Some of the women totter on tiny stumps of feet, for the old custom of foot-binding is still practised in many families, although it is forbidden by law. For centuries it was customary in most parts of China to bind the feet of little girls so tightly that the feet ceased to grow, the toes curled under, and the bones were distorted. Tiny deformed feet were considered a mark of beauty.

As you walk along the older streets, narrow and crooked, you find them lined with picturesque shops. The fronts are ornamented with gilded and elaborately carved woodwork, and decorated with banners and flags. When you hear the discordant music of a band from an upstairs room, you know that the shop is having a bargain day or an opening day. The streets are jammed with people on foot, riding in rickshaws (little two-wheeled carriages drawn by men), or in sedan chairs borne on men's shoulders. Some ride in wheelbarrows with seats. In these narrow streets there are no automobiles. But only a block away there may be a broad motor boulevard lined with trees, motion-picture houses, modern department stores, neon signs, apartment houses, and hotels several stories high. The large cities have sections that are almost entirely modern, with electric lighting, telephones, and modern factory districts as well as residential and shopping areas. These new districts are in glaring contrast to the old sec-

#### THESE BIRDS CATCH FISH FOR THEIR MASTERS



The trained Cormorants of China dive after fish and bring them back to the boat. They cannot swallow them since they wear tight "neckties." At meal time the knot is untied and they get a share of the day's catch.

tions where most of the people live in wretched, crowded tenements. Three or four families may live in one small room. The narrow streets are filthy, for all sort of refuse is thrown into them. Many of the streets are unpaved except for a single row of paving blocks down the middle, and in the rainy season they become seas of mud. In others the paving has worn out in places, leaving deep holes through which people and draft animals stumble laboriously. There are no sewers to drain off rain water and wastes, and no other sanitary facilities. The great masses of Chinese city dwellers live in quarters as filthy and smelly as were European cities of the Middle Ages. But to see only the cities is to see the smallest part of China, for China is chiefly a country of hard-working farmers and painstaking village craftsmen. In the villages you will see the old blacksmith who molds and shapes the hoe heads, the spades, the plow points, the meat cleavers, the vegetable choppers. There, too, you will see the carpenter who makes a plow or a harrow, a bed frame, a table, a bench; the tailor who shapes a garment and pads it smoothly and carefully; the turner who makes wooden tubs and buckets and baby rockers; the stonecutter who shapes the millstones to grind the meal or hull the rice. These and the farmers make up the real China.

# "FIRST GRADERS IN A VILLAGE SCHOOL



In the villages of north China many of the classes are held out of doors when the weather is fine. There is frequently only one teacher to some 200 pupils, so the older pupils have to help with the younger ones. The blackboard is fastened to a mud wall. The small pupils hold their writing pads on their knees as they sit on the ground to write the difficult Chinese characters.

## The Boys and Girls Games and Holidays

the worship of his ancestors. A son when he is old enough to earn a living contributes his earnings to the family income. He brings his bride to live in his father's household and she helps in the home.

Girls are not so welcome, especially among the poor. It is expensive to marry off a daughter for her father must provide everything she will need in her new home and she is of no use to her family after she marries or she serves her husband a mother and worships his

## WRITING WITH A BRUSH



This boy is studying in the family courtyard. Beside the flower bowls is a block of ink and a second brush.

east day. According to the old Chinese calendar a month begins with a new moon and New Year's Day comes with the second new moon after the winter solstice. It may fall therefore as early as January 20

or as late as February 20. The government has adopted the same calendar that we use but the people still cling to their old way of dividing the year and to the festivals that for thousands of years have been held on certain days of

the year.

When a baby is a month old a great feast is held. All the relatives and friends are invited and the child is given a milk name. A boy may be called Little Stupid or Vagabond or by a girl's name so that evil spirits will believe the parents care nothing about him and will leave him alone. Later when he is of school age the child receives his book name.

Boys are likely to be badly spoiled. Everyone in the household pets them and they are given everything they cry for. The lot of their sisters is quite different. Girls may not play with boys. They are taught to wait on their elders and on their brothers. In families that cling to the old ways they are more or less ignored and their happiness is not much considered.

## At Work and at Play

Both boys and girls are dressed exactly like grown-ups except that in hot weather they wear as few clothes as possible. A farm boy working in the field wears only a pair of coarse blue trousers rolled up to the knees but in cold weather he puts on one garment after another until he looks as broad as he is

## CHOPSTICKS



Warm as toast in her many coats a girl eats a sweet from a street vendor's cart.

long. Poor children wear cotton; those of wealthy families have embroidered silks and satins.

Children are taught reverence for their parents and that it is an honor to marry and have many sons. Families have often arranged marriages when the boy and girl were babies. In 1950 the Communists tried to stop this by decreeing that girls be free to choose their own husbands.

In farm families children begin to help in the fields when they are scarcely more than babies. In the cities thousands of children of poor families are apprenticed to shops and factories. The hapless youngsters work long and hard and expect little reward for their labor. More fortunate children start to school when they are six years old.

#### UMBRELLA HAT



Rain does not worry this baker boy. He shields his cakes with his hat, made of straw and oiled paper.

clay dolls, and sugar images are everywhere. Best of all are the festivals, when gaiety reigns for old and young alike. The New Year's festival is the greatest of all. Preparations go on for weeks beforehand, shops are closed for several days, and families gather for the feast, much as they do at our Christmas season. The houses are decorated with streamers and banners of bright colored paper, and all but the beggars have some little sign of gaiety, if it is only a fresh strand of red cord braided into the black hair of a child. The season is the time

#### THEY LIKE THE AMERICAN GAME



The game that American boys love is just as popular with Chinese boys who have learned how to play it. These players are pupils at an American mission school.

haps the most beautiful of Chinese ceremonies.

The Dragon Boat Festival, held on the fifth day of the fifth moon, is another exciting occasion. It is said to have arisen from the search for the body of Ch'u Yuan, a statesman who drowned himself in 295 B.C. Daring boat races are held in boats decorated to honor the Dragon, a water god. Great crowds gather to watch the races, which frequently result disastrously. On the fifteenth day of the eighth moon the Mid-Autumn Festival takes place. It is celebrated in honor of the full moon, which symbolizes concord and harmony.

Another special occasion which the children love is the Kite-Flying Festival. On the ninth day of the ninth moon all the children, and even the grownups,

#### FORTUNATE YOUNG MISSES



These smiling young misses and their tiny sister are dressed in silks and brocades, for their father was a well-to-do merchant of Peiping. They have combined the Chinese style dress with Western shoes and socks.

for paying debts and for sending food to the poor.

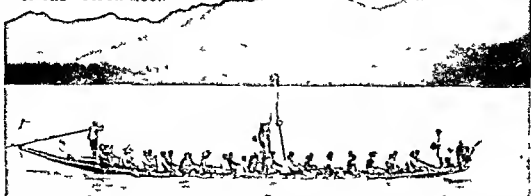
On New Year's Eve there are bonfires and firecrackers, feasts are laid before the tablets of the ancestors, and everyone stays up all night. One ceremony is the burning of the kitchen god. Chinese families keep a picture of this deity hanging over the stove. Before New Year's it is taken down and burned in the courtyard or street. Thus the god is sent to heaven where he reports on the life and action of the family. In the first hours of the New Year he is received back again and a new picture is put up. The New Year's festival ends two weeks later with the Feast of Lanterns, per-

#### WATER BABY



The life preserver on her back will save her if she falls into the water.

# THE DRAGON BOAT FESTIVAL OF THE "FIFTH MOON"



The ancient dragon boat races are somewhat like an annual regatta. Long narrow boats decked out to represent dragons are paddled swiftly through the water by crews of 20 to 30 men. At the center of each boat a drummer beats time on a drum and goes. The people eat cakes during the Dragon Boat Festival and a man in the bow of the boat pretends to throw rice into the water to attract the dragon.

go out to fly kites from the hilltops. Many boys make their own kites carefully calculating the weight and measurements. Some make beautiful octagonal kites painting the legend of the eight immortals on them and then oiling the paper. They hang whistles and organs and bells from the corners and tie gay little lanterns to the tails. They also make butterflies, dragons and other beautiful or fantastic shapes.

## Farming Methods and Products

When you greet a friend in China you ask politely: "Have you eaten?"

Food is the most pressing problem of the Chinese millions and they all depend on the labor of the patient, hard-working farm people. The farmers grow crops on every inch of their farm land except on the grave mounds which in some regions take up as much as 9 per cent of the farm area. They even terrace the hillsides in some places as high as 8,000 feet to provide more land for planting.

In spite of all the farmer can do, however, millions starve to death when droughts, floods or locusts ruin the crops. Weather is fickle in China and the Chinese as they say depend on Heaven to eat. Almost every year there is a famine in some province. Even though food may be plentiful in one part of the country, people in another part may starve because there is no way to get supplies to them.

All over China farming is more like gardening than like farming in the United States. Fields are so small that they look like truck gardens. The farmers do

all the work by hand for they could not use machines on such small and irregular patches. Tools are primitive—a hoe, a bamboo or crude iron rake, a long-handled sickle, a homemade flail. The typical Chinese farmer knows nothing about scientific seed selection and other aspects of modern scientific farming.

## Floods and Irrigation

The farmer's worst trouble is too much water or too little. Three thousand years ago the government began to build dikes and canals to control floods and irrigate the land. Today the country is crisscrossed with waterways that irrigate nearly half the cultivated land. Neighboring villages and individual farmers combine to keep the dikes and sluices in repair, dredge canals and water their crops by little streams led in channels through the fields.

Cooperation in China, says one author, finds its most striking expression in the control of water. In some regions, for example, if a canal runs through a number of villages, each village uses it in turn by agreement, the time of use by each farmer being regulated by the burning of an incense stick.

## MORE HOMES FOR THE DEAD THAN FOR THE LIVING



In these earthen mounds lie the bones of former generations. Held in great reverence, they must never be disturbed. Much farm land is thus lost and railroad building is handicapped.

Irrigation is needed especially to grow rice, which is the largest crop and the staple food in the south. The rice fields are surrounded with little mud walls so arranged that the fields can be first flooded with water and later drained (see the picture on page 263). Where the fields are above the level of the canal or stream, the water is raised by hand or by clumsy pumps. A common form of pump is an endless chain of wooden paddles that push the water up a

slanting trough. This may be worked either by a cow or a water buffalo or by a treadmill which men turn with their feet.

#### Increasing the Yield

To fertilize his fields the farmer uses human, animal, and plant wastes; ashes; bean cakes and other kinds of oil cakes (the product left from seeds after the oil has been pressed out) and canal mud. He takes the mud from the beds of streams, thereby deepening the waterways and raising his fields as he spreads it over them.

By planting two crops, and in some sections three, or even four crops a year, the Chinese produce nearly twice as much rice an acre (52 bushels) as any other farmers in the world except the Japanese. Wherever possible, they grow rice, because it yields more food to the acre than other grains.

In the wheat regions the farmer increases production by planting other crops between the rows of growing grain. Wheat, the second crop in acreage, is grown chiefly in the north. There it is sown in the spring. Farmers south of the central mountains sow winter wheat after the rice crop has been harvested and the fields have dried.

#### Crops, Old and New

Although China is one of the world's greatest producers of rice, wheat, kaoliang, millet, barley, corn, sweet potatoes, and possibly of sugar cane, it cannot make one acre of ground produce enough food for two persons. It has to buy a great deal of rice, wheat, flour, and sugar from other countries. The useful soybean is another important crop (see Soybean). Peanuts have become a large crop since a missionary half a century ago found that they would grow well in the sandy soil of the Shantung peninsula. Rape and sesame are produced for their seeds. These, like peanuts, are used as food and also furnish oil for cooking, for soap, and for lubricating purposes. Vegetables of many kinds are grown everywhere. Tobacco is grown, but there is not nearly enough to satisfy the needs of the Chinese, who are great smokers.

Large orchards are rare, but apples, peaches, pears, and apricots are grown on a small scale in many places. "The south has oranges, tangerines, bananas, litchis, and other subtropical fruits. Melons are a favorite crop, for dried melon seeds are a delicacy served with tea.

#### IRRIGATING BY FOOT-POWER



Patiently these farmers tread their water wheel, pumping the canal water up into the rice paddies. Many Chinese farmers have water buffaloes for this work. Only a few have pumps operated by oil engines.

Much land which might be used to grow food is given to the opium poppy, for opium can be marketed very profitably. It brings a good price and can be easily and cheaply transported, but by taking the place of food crops it helps to produce famines.

Tea and silk were China's special gifts to the world. China was for centuries the leading producer of tea, but it now supplies little of the tea that is shipped to Western countries. Chinese farmers grow tea in patches around their homesteads and prepare it by ancient hand methods. (See Tea.) Most of the tea crop is grown in the central uplands, on the ranges of the southern coastal provinces, and in Szechwan. The mulberry trees of the lower Yangtze Valley feed the worms that produce the finest grade of white silk. The Canton Delta is another famous producing region. Tussur silk comes from Shantung province, where wild silkworms are fed on oak leaves. But Japan, with its more modern methods, has re-

placed China as the leading silk producer (see Silk). Cotton growing is a newer industry, for it was introduced from Central Asia only some eight centuries ago. As the number of modern cotton mills in the country has grown, production of raw cotton has recently increased, until today China is among the leading cotton-growing nations.

#### Farm Animals in a Crowded Land

Have you wondered why there has been no mention of dairy products in all this discussion of Chinese farming? Most Chinese farmers raise cattle, not for milk or meat, but only for work animals. They cannot afford to have dairy herds or meat herds because it is cheaper to grow crops for food than to use the land for feeding cattle and then eat the animals and their products. Few Chinese ever taste cow's milk or butter or cheese.

Oxen, water buffaloes, donkeys, and mules are the commonest work animals. Hogs and chickens are raised because they can be fed on refuse. In the south large numbers of ducks are raised when the rice fields are flooded. Strangely enough, this land of few farm animals and no chicken ranches is the chief producer of egg products for export to bakeries in the United States. For shipment, eggs are frozen or dried; or they are shipped in bulk with the shells removed or

## A GIANT CRAZY-QUILT OF RICE PADDIES



From the air China's rice fields make a queer looking patchwork. The flooded paddies, reflecting the sun, appear like fragments of glass. The canal through the center and the dikes around the fields are also clearly visible. You can also see the villages in the distance at the left. Every day the farmers must walk from their homes in the villages to the scattered fields.

made into prepared sibiunen and yolk. Pig brains are also exported to make durable toothbrushes and hairbrushes.

## Financial Problems of the Farmer

The Chinese farmer in general sells the best of what he grows and uses the inferior products. If his crops are to be sold farther away than the next market

heavily populated regions most of the land is bare and only in the secluded yards of temples and monasteries are there wooded spots. Good forests are now found mostly in the high mountains of the northwest and in the low hills of the southeast where pine oak camphor and fir are the most abundant trees. Bamboo is grown in the Yangtze hills and elsewhere in the south

and is used for many different purposes (see Bamboo).

The cutting of the forests has meant disaster for the farmers because the forests prevented floods and kept the rain from washing good soil from the mountain sides and from carving gulleys in the farm land. In some regions the clay washed down from the mountains has spoiled the fields below and made whole valleys useless.

## Improvements in Farming

We hear much today about changing China. China is changing but it will be long before the mass of the farm people will change their ways greatly. Before

the Japanese invasion in 1937 the government was trying to improve conditions for the farmer. It had developed seeds that yield larger crops and was promoting tree planting. The outstanding institution for the promotion of agriculture was the National Agricultural Research Bureau of the Ministry of Industries. The University of Nanking was foremost in training agricultural experts. Agriculture was also taught in many colleges and in secondary schools.

## FLOWING A FLOODED FIELD



The stolid water buffalo is the chief work animal of the rice farmer. The plow made entirely of wood except for the iron edged share is light enough for the farmer to carry.

to pay taxes five or six times as high as farm taxes in the United States. Rent is another problem. Peasant tenants must pay landowners a third or even half the crop. When the Chinese Communists took over the nation in 1949 they promised to distribute the land to the peasants. But the change was slow. Both landowners and peasants resisted.

## The Tragedy of the Forests

China once had beautiful forests. Long ago however the people used up most of the trees and now there is little wood for building and for fuel. In the

### Transportation and Manufactures; Minerals and Trade

ONE IMPROVEMENT that will better conditions for the farmers is good transportation. China has about 14,000 miles of railroads and 80,000 miles of highway, with airlines linking the large cities. The rivers and the maze of canals which crisscross the plains are still the best routes of travel through much of the country. Along these waterways one sees junks with their picturesque sails and cargo rafts being rowed or poled or pulled by trackers along the bank.

The most famous waterway is the Grand Canal. This is the longest artificial waterway ever built. It was begun perhaps five centuries before our era. About A.D. 1280 it was deepened and extended to run from Hangchow, south of the Yangtze, to Tientsin, 850 miles north, for the purpose of bringing the tribute of rice from the Yangtze plain to the emperor at Peking.

Through most of China, goods are still carried over narrow trails and unpaved roads in oxcarts, on wheelbarrows, on donkeys, and more commonly, on the shoulders of men. Such methods are exceedingly costly, because the loads that can be carried are small and the distances that can be covered in a day are short. Human labor to carry loads and drive pack animals is so plentiful that China was slow to awaken to the need of better transportation.

China's first railway, ten miles long, was built in 1876 by foreigners. However, the common people, through fear that it would not please their gods, objected to it so violently that the government bought the road and abolished it.

Thereafter there was almost no railroad construction in China until the end of the century.

China's manufacturing has been carried on for thousands of years by skilled craftsmen, who were organized into guilds like those of medieval Europe. Not until the 20th century did the Industrial Revolution and the machine age get well under way.

#### China Enters the Machine Age

The Yangtze Valley is the center of the new industrialism. Its warm, moist climate is particularly well suited to the largest industry, the manufacture of cotton goods. With more than 400 million people wearing cotton clothing, mills developed rapidly. In a few decades nearly 100 mills were built in the Yangtze Valley alone. Chinese owned about two thirds of the mills, Japanese nearly a third, and the rest were British. China now has about 230 cotton mills; but hand looms still produce large quantities of goods.

There was strong opposition to the introduction of modern machinery for the ancient silk industry, but silk filatures (mills for reeling silk) gradually increased in number. Wool and rayon goods, cement, chemicals, cigarettes, matches, glass and porcelain, egg albumen, sugar, and flour are other factory products. Small factories produce many articles that can be made with cheap and simple machinery, such as flashlights, soaps, perfumes, and canned goods.

Factory wages are very low and the hours long. The Nationalist government drafted factory laws and regulations, but they were little enforced. Men, women, and even children worked seven days a week and ten or twelve hours a day. Few precautions were taken for the workers' health and safety. The Communist government, aiming to industrialize China, called on the people to speed up production. The government increased the mechanization in factories and sent students into technical schools to learn modern methods. Hundreds of Russian technicians worked with the government program.

#### Minerals and Mining

China has immense deposits of coal, both bituminous and anthracite, and coal mining is the most important mineral industry. Although there is some coal

in almost every province, much of it is not suitable for the manufacture of steel, and much is so deeply buried and so far from water transportation that mining is not practical at present. China proper normally produces about 20 million tons of coal a year and uses about 25 million.

Iron reserves are widely distributed, with the richest mines in Manchuria. The ores

of the southwest were the basis of the big expansion of the iron and steel industry during the second World War. New petroleum fields were opened in the northwest. Copper mining is an ancient industry, and China is a large consumer of silver.

There are three metals, however, in which China ranks high as a world producer—tin, antimony, and tungsten—all of them indispensable to modern industry (see Antimony; Tungsten). China normally produces most of the world's antimony and tungsten and an important share of the tin. Lead, zinc, and manganese are also mined. Pottery clays and building stone are plentiful. Other mineral products are alum, soda, salt, and gypsum.

#### China's Exports and Imports

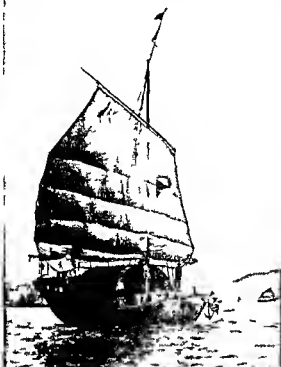
Interesting to Americans is the fact that China is the first foreign nation with which the United States traded. By the time George Washington became

#### MEN COST LESS THAN DRAFT ANIMALS



Even in the large cities most of China's freight is pushed or pulled or carried by men. This picture was taken in the heart of Shanghai.

IN SUCH VESSELS THE CHINESE BRAVE THE SEA



Junks still carry much of China's ocean trade. Their style has not changed for centuries. They are flat-bottomed with square sails and have eyes painted on the bow to ward off evil spirits.

president 15 clipper ships had arrived in Canton with cargoes of ginseng (see Ginseng) rum tobacco molasses and furs. On the return trip their holds were filled with tea silks spices cotton goods called nankeens fine porcelains and lacquer ware.

The chief products that China sends to other nations today are tea eggs and egg products hides furs and skins raw silk tung oil embroideries and laces short-fiber cotton cotton yarn peanuts and peanut oil pig bristles and oil seeds. It also ships a long list of other products including tin tungsten ore antimony musk (from the musk deer of Szechwan) and porcelains.

Long staple cotton for the textile industry is a leading import because the Chinese cotton has short fibers. Cotton piece goods are also imported. Rice wheat flour and sugar are brought in to supplement the insufficient home-grown supplies. The modernizing of China has created a large demand for iron and steel industrial machinery timber and

Work is hard but the coolies cheerfully bear the hardships of China.

materials for such projects as railroad building and telephone installation. Petroleum products paper including newsprint chemicals and dyes and tobacco are other imports. More than two-thirds of the foreign trade has normally been with the United States Great Britain Japan and Germany with the United States well in the lead.

#### Confusion In Chinese Money

A handicap to trade has been lack of a uniform currency. For centuries silver was the base for Chinese money but the Chinese themselves did not mint silver coins. Their unit was the *tael*, a high-silver unit of weight—the Chinese ounce. Transactions were figured in taels of silver but the currency used was mostly foreign silver dollars especially Mexican dollars the American trade dollar or the old Japanese yen. A 50-tael lump of silver called a *sycee-tael* was also used. The weight of the tael varied from place to place so money dealings were extremely complicated. Even after the Chinese provinces began in 1889 to coin their own dollars there was no uniformity.

In 1933 the government adopted a standard silver dollar but the rising price of silver soon forced China off the silver standard. During the civil war with the Communists Nationalist China suffered enormous inflation. The Communists in 1949 circulated paper people's currency. In 1950 they also established the silver yuan nominally 40 cents in United States money. But inflation was common.

For small transactions copper coins called cash were used for 20 centuries. They had a hole in the center so that they could be strung together. These were replaced in 1900 with a 10-cash cent. One hundred cents were supposed to be worth a dollar but the provinces flooded the country with cents 20-cash pieces and 50 cash pieces and they sank to a fraction of their supposed value. In large cities they are no longer used but they are still popular in rural sections.

#### A COOLIE GANG OPERATING A PILE DRIVER





## AN OLD-FASHIONED MARRIAGE CEREMONY



The bride is borne in an enclosed chair to the bridegroom's home. The bridal pair are then conducted to the hall, where they prostrate themselves first before the ancestral tablets and then before the bride's parents. The picture shows the bride's mother placing a rose in her hair during this ceremony.

### Social Life, Religion, and Education

SOCIETY is democratic, with no caste or class system. The family is the all-important social group. The Chinese is interested first in

his family, and second in his village, but he is only remotely concerned with the nation and its problems. "Rulers may come and rulers may go, but Chinese families will remain Chinese families," says Lin Yu-t'ang. That is just what happened in the past. The civilization that the Chinese built has lasted through 4,000 years of political change and even through conquest by foreigners, because of the strong sense of loyalty to the family and the village.

The individual must put the interest of the family ahead of his personal interest. It is a young man's duty to marry and have sons to carry on the family. The sons commonly bring their wives to their father's homestead, which the father rules as long as he lives. His leadership passes to the eldest son. Old people are greatly respected, and when they die they take their places among the ancestors who are worshiped by their descendants.

#### Ancestor Worship and Religions

The lists of ancestors which have been found in ancient tombs are among the earliest records of Chinese history. These tell us that 1,700 years before our era the ruling families were worshiping their ancestors. Ancestor worship is the reason for a great deal of Chinese resistance to change.

Of the three chief religious systems, Taoism (*dow'izm*) is the oldest. This grew out of the teachings of Lao-Tse in the 6th century B.C. Lao-Tse taught a Way—the right way of life. One follows the Way by using Li, or right relationships, with everyone. Many superstitions which have nothing to do with the

doctrines of Lao-Tse have crept into Taoism. Another belief is Confucianism, which is not so much a religion as a code of morals taught by the philosopher Confucius, or K'ung-fu-tse (*see* Confucius). It teaches right behavior toward family, friends, and government, and that there is good and the new undesirable. A third religion is Buddhism, which came from India. It teaches transmigration of souls into other bodies and the worship of many gods (*see* Buddha). These religions are now confused and most people practice a mixture of all three. There are also many Mohammedans, especially in the northwest, and a number of Christians. Communist attacks on religion stirred resentment.

#### Education, Old and New

Throughout the long history of China scholars have always been highly respected. In the days of the empire only a small group was educated, but even the poorest youngster was given the chance to qualify for schooling. Then, if he passed examination for public office, he might have become an official (*mandarin*). And many officials amassed wealth by appropriating some of the taxes they collected—a custom called "squeeze." The exhausting literary examinations were abolished in the last days of the empire. The Nationalist republic in 1928 drew up more practical civil service quizzes.

Under the republic, children of means started to school at the age of six. The republic hoped to give education to every child. But when the Sino-Japanese War broke out in 1937, only 25 per cent of Chinese children were in school. After the Communists got control of China in 1949 they worked to close missionary schools. Of course, they filled public schools with propaganda but made little change in the school system. After six years in a primary school the pupil may enter a "middle school," a vocational school, or a normal school. From these he may go to a university or a college or a technical school. About a hundred universities and colleges with courses in the arts, sciences, law, education, agriculture, technology, commerce, and medicine had been established before war broke out in 1937. In 1952 the Communists shifted the emphasis in education to technology.

The revolution in education since 1900 has been one of the most

#### BURNING JOSS STICKS



The kneeling man is about to burn sticks of incense (joss sticks) before an image of Buddha.

striking features of China's changing civilization. Formerly a Chinese scholar aimed at a knowledge of the Chinese classics of ethics and of Chinese history and government. He also strove for skill in writing the highly artificial literary language. Mathematics and the natural sciences had no place in the curriculum. The lack of interest in these sciences which are the backbone of modern Western civilization goes far to explain China's present difficulties. The missionaries were among the first to bring Western education to Chinese youth. Then large numbers of Chinese began to seek the new learning in Japanese and Western universities. The returned students helped to establish the modern type of schools.

#### Language and Writing

The Chinese spoken language is not in itself difficult, but the many different dialects create great confusion. Each word has only one syllable. Since there are only about 800 different syllables in the language, almost every word may have many different meanings. These differences of meaning are indicated partly by combining words in pairs to convey a single idea, and partly by speaking them in different tones. That is why Chinese has such a singsong effect on our ears.

The chief dialect is the official language, *Kuan Hua*, which foreigners call Mandarin. Subdialects of Mandarin are spoken all over north and west China. Most of them are enough alike so that people throughout this region can understand one another. In the southeast dialects vary so widely that people in neighboring cities may be unable to understand one another.

But though a man from Canton may not be able to understand a man from Peking, they can write to each other. For Chinese writing is the same everywhere. It

#### MOTHER AND SON



He looks important, and he is important for the dearest wish of the Chinese: a son to help him.

is a kind of picture writing and has no alphabet. Each character stands for a word, not a letter (see Writing). For instance, in the Nationalist name of China at the right the four characters read from top to bottom: *Chung* (Middle), *Hua* (Flowery), *Min* (People), *Kuo* (Republic).

中華民國

To learn to write Chinese is much harder than to learn to speak it. Scholars have to know more than 40,000 characters, but only about 2,500 are needed for reading newspapers. The popular education program called for a simpler method of writing. Mandarin was adopted as the national language and taught in the schools. Textbooks used the old characters, but were based on the ordinary speech of the people. Then James Yen, founder of the Mass Education Movement, devised a basic Chinese of 1,000 written characters in which peasants and coolies could learn to read and write.

#### Three Thousand Years of Literature

THE LITERATURE of the Chinese is remarkable for its great age. Some historical records and poems that still survive are believed to have been written as early as a thousand years before the birth of Christ. In the enormous literature that has since grown up, we find poetry, history, philosophy, collections of rites, dictionaries, encyclopedias, biographical works, gazetteers. We find many works on agriculture and on medicine—two fields in which the Chinese had progressed long before Europe knew about scientific agriculture or medicine. Until the Communist regime, however, there was little written on other natural sciences or mathematics.

The Chinese prize most highly the ancient works known as the Confucian Canon—the Five Classics and

#### A FAVORITE ANCIENT SHADOW PLAY



Hsue Tsang, a 7th-century Buddhist pilgrim, carries the sacred manuscripts he has gathered on a journey to India. He is followed by his white horse and his companions Sun Wu Kung, King of the monkeys, Chu Pei, a pig with a pig's head, and the monk Sha Wu Tsang. Shadow play figures are made of parchment, colored and varnished. They are operated behind a white gauze screen.

the Four Books. Three of the Classics are collections of ancient poems and other works said to have been collected by Confucius in the 6th century B.C.; and one he is said to have written. The Four Books are records of the lives and opinions of Confucius and his disciple Mencius. Chinese scholars know every line of these nine books by heart.

In poetry, Chinese literature is especially rich. There are old ballads and songs, odes of war and love, and verses about the sufferings of the people. Chinese poetry is delicate and suggestive, rather than forceful and sublime. It reflects, above all, pure delight in natural beauty.

The novels are of particular interest for the insight they give into the life of the periods in which they were written. The first of them were written about 600 years ago. A famous historical romance is *San Kuo Chih*, 'History of the Three Kingdoms', which rose out of old tales somewhat like our Arthurian legends.

Until well into the 20th century all the writings that the Chinese thought worthy to be called "literature" were in the classical language. Only the writers of fiction used the everyday language—the vernacular. Today, as the result of a "literary revolution" in 1917 led by the great philosopher Dr. Hu Shih, the vernacular is used for every kind of writing. Books and publishing houses have multiplied. After the Communists seized China in 1949 all writing had to follow "party line" propaganda, glorifying the land, industry, and "democratic ideas."

#### Music and the Theater

Music has played an important part in Chinese life since ancient times. The old form of the drama is really opera. Music is the soul of it and the acting is secondary. The audience has heard snatches of it from the cradle up and makes no pretense of following details of the unfolding story. When a climax is reached, and the actor pours forth his soul in a familiar song, the hearers applaud or hum in accompaniment, tapping the tempo with their feet or with folded fans. Then they slump again into half-attention, drinking tea, cracking watermelon seeds, and conversing, while attendants circulate with hot wet towels on which the spectators wipe their hands and faces.

The old Chinese theater has little scenery, although costumes are elaborate. If an actor stoops, he shows that he is going through a door. If he carries a wand tipped with white horsehair, he is a supernatural being. If he carries banners with wheels painted on them, he is riding in a chariot. Stagehands walk about quietly changing chairs and tables while the play goes on.

Under Western influence new forms of drama are developing, and plays are given in the modern manner.

In the newer playhouses the seats are like those in our own theaters, but on the back of each seat is a shelf for serving tea. Motion pictures from other lands as well as those from native studios, share the popularity of the old-time puppet shows.

#### Architecture, Painting, and Other Arts

IN SPITE of its poverty and dirt, its yellow brown dust and its bare hillsides, China abounds in strikingly grand and beautiful scenes. No people appreciate natural beauty more keenly than do the Chinese. Their painting, their poetry, the decorations on their fragile porcelain vases, their textiles, even their architecture, reflect their love and reverence for the beauty of earth and sky, of birds and flowers and trees.

#### Architecture That Fits the Landscape

China would lose much of its charm without the gay pavilions that cling to the hillsides, the many-storied pagodas with little bells tinkling on their uptilted eaves, the high-arched stone bridges, and the tiny wayside shrines.

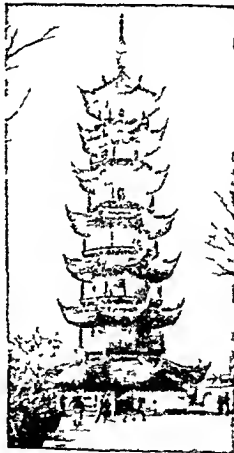
To decide upon the site of an important building or a tomb is no small matter, for it must be put up according to the laws of *feng-shui*, which means "wind and water." The forces of earth and sky, wind and water, must be favorable, and diviners are called in to find the luckiest location. An ideal site is protected on the north and is open on the south, so that the door can face in the latter direction.

Thus religious ideas, appreciation of nature, and the feeling that buildings should be in harmony with the landscape rather than dominate it, have always governed Chinese architecture. For centuries all Chinese buildings of the better class have been built on the same general plan. They stand on platforms or terraces of pounded earth, which are faced with brick or stone to form the floor. The terraces extend beyond the building on all sides, and in important structures are often built high, with a dozen steps or more, and are decorated with stone balustrades and sculptures.

Whether the walls are of brick or of wood, the framework usually is entirely of wood. Wooden pillars support wooden beams, on which rests the tiled roof with its uptilted eaves and grotesque little clay figures perched on eaves and ridgepole. One row of pillars across the front, or sometimes completely around the building, is left without wall to form an open portico or gallery. The central portion may be raised to form a second story, and a lean-to roof covers the lower portion.

The pillars and the side walls are usually painted vermilion. Pillars and beams may be carved, or they may be painted with elaborate designs in bright colors. The roofs have alternate convex and concave tiles.

PORCELAIN PAGODA



All pagodas have an odd number of stories, because odd numbers are lucky.

These are gray for ordinary buildings yellow for imperial palaces and blue or green for other special buildings. Temples pagodas and pavilions often vary from the usual rectangular shape. The Pagoda came to China with Buddhism but its style soon became distinctly Chinese. Temples palaces and even private dwellings are generally enclosed within high walls. China is a land of walls. Every city and village has its ramparts primarily for defense. City walls are usually of clay or earth faced with brick. The gates topped by watchtowers are usually opened at sunrise and closed at nightfall. China's oldest architectural monument is the Great Wall along the north and northwest boundary. Much of this was originally built by the powerful Emperor Shih Huang ti in the 3d century B.C. to keep out Tatar invaders.

#### Nature Likes Painting

Love of landscape beauty has dominated Chinese painting as it has their building. Human figures are only part of the natural scene as depicted by the artist. Many paintings are on long strips of silk or paper and are kept in rolls to be unrolled and enjoyed but by bits. There are also pictures to be hung on the wall paintings on screens and small paintings mounted in albums. Some of the finest paintings were frescoes on the walls of temples but most of these have been destroyed. More than 300 Buddhist frescoes it is said were painted by Wu Tao-tzu China's greatest painter who lived early in the 8th century.

Painting grew out of writing or calligraphy. By the time a student had learned to make the elaborate word-signs with fluency and rhythm he was an expert with the brush for the Chinese write with a brush not with a pen. Their ink is made of soot glue and oil dried in the form of a brick or stick. When it is moistened with water it is like paint and the blackest black or the faintest gray with all shades in between can be produced. Some of the best painters have worked only with these different shades of ink. When color is used water colors are applied usually to an ink foundation or outline.

A Chinese artist never copies a landscape exactly. He observes carefully and his picture is complete in his mind before he begins his swift sure strokes which cannot be corrected. His painting is an impression—an effort to convey the spirit of the scene. He never represents shadows and he suggests perspective only by range of tone.

Critics tell us that Chinese painting is among the greatest in the world. Unfortunately few works of the best masters have been preserved. Some of the finest are in American museums.

#### Sculpture a Minor Art

The Chinese do not appreciate sculpture as they do painting. Their best works are animal sculptures most of which were made in honor of the dead and have been found in ancient tombs. In 1934-35 archeologists found pieces of perfectly proportioned white marble and figures in tombs more than 3000 years old.

Most of the figure sculpture is religious. After Buddhism reached China early in the Christian Era sculptors made many religious figures first in bronze and stone later in wood. They were more interested however in showing the folding and pleating of the flowing garments than in modeling the natural lines of the body or making the faces lifelike. By the 10th century when Buddhist sculpture was at its best figures and faces were more natural. After the Sung period (960-1279) religious sculpture declined and sculptors gave their best efforts to the decoration of columns balustrades and other architectural features.

#### Pottery and Porcelain

One of the debts the world owes the Chinese is their invention of porcelain. We recognize this by calling our porcelain dishes china or chinaware. The potter's wheel was in use 4000 or more years ago but China's ancient pottery could not compare in beauty with that of the Greeks. Glazed ware appeared during the Han Dynasty (206 B.C. 220 A.D.) and from that time on wares of extraordinary beauty were produced. Porcelain was made some



In this painting of the late 17th century we see the three leaders who most deeply influenced Chinese religion and philosophy: Confucius, Lao Tzu, and Buddha.

time before the 9th century of the Christian Era. Each period had famous pottery, state and private and different centers became noted for their particular wares. They made fine porcelains for emperors and nobles heavy stoneware vessels for daily use funeral objects to be left for the dead in tombs and roof tiles. (See Pottery and Porcelain.)

#### Metal Work and Other Arts

Although it took many centuries to bring China's pottery art to its best the castings of its Bronze Age have not been surpassed in later times or in other countries. The bronze ritual vessels which archeologists have found in tombs 3500 years old are supremely beautiful. The designs on them are conventionalized forms of animals such as the dragon the cicada the

water buffalo. They combine large and bold design with delicate tracery. The Chinese have always prized their bronze work and have continued it through the ages; but the bronzes of the past thousand years cannot compare with those of ancient times.

The Chinese also worked in iron and silver and pewter, and to some extent in gold. They excelled in enamel work (*see* Enameling) and in carving ivory and jade. The Chinese prize jade as we prize diamonds and emeralds, and no other people have approached them in the art of carving this tough stone into forms of exquisite beauty. Lacquerwork is another ancient art. Over a wood or metal or papier-mâché base the

artist applies several coats of lacquer (*see* Lacquer), colored scarlet with cinnabar or yellow with gamboge, or black or brown or green. On the lacquered surface he paints, carves, or molds his decoration, perhaps enriching his work with an inlay of mother-of-pearl.

The Chinese also brought the weaving of silk and other textiles to a fine art. They made velvets and satins, and rich brocades interwoven with gold threads. Into their silks they wove exquisite designs of flowers and birds, of landscapes and scenes from life and from their legends. The beautiful silks from Chinese looms were one of the luxuries brought to wealthy Romans by the long caravan routes across Asia.

## History of the World's Oldest Living Nation

THE CHINESE story of creation says that at first all was confusion. Out of this chaos came two forces, *Yin* and *Yang* (*Yin-Yang*), which together make the circle of the whole, or everything. Yang was bright, warm, active, masculine. Yin was dark, cold, still, feminine. The symbol of these two forces—a circle divided into curved halves, one white, one black—is much used as a decorative element.



Yang and Yin make the circle of the whole.

Yang and Yin after many ages brought forth a mighty man called P'an Ku. He became the earth, and he created the sun and moon and stars. P'an Ku grew and changed until his head became the mountains, his breath the clouds, his voice thunder, his veins rivers, his skin and hair the great trees, his teeth and bones the metals hidden in the earth, his sweat the rain. The insects that crawled over him became the people. A dragon, a phoenix, and a tortoise helped P'an Ku in his work.

The dragon has a prominent place in Chinese mythology and is supposed to have wonderful powers. It came to stand as a symbol of the empire, so that the throne was known as the "dragon throne." Until the time of the Revolution in 1911 the Chinese flag was a great black dragon in a yellow field.

The Chinese say that they are made up of five different peoples. The first flag adopted after the Revolution was made up of five broad stripes—red for Chins, or Chinese, yellow for Manchus, blue for Mongols, white for Turks, black for Tibetans.

### Records of Ancient China

Whatever the origin of the people, we know that one of the world's early civilizations flourished far inland on the North China Plain. Archaeologists can trace this civilization back perhaps 3,500 years from relics left by a people who had already developed agriculture and the arts and a system of government. How much earlier it began, we do not know; but, since the discovery of the "Peking Man" in 1929, we have reason to believe that China was inhabited as early as any other part of the world (*see* Man).

The political history of China is the story of the rise and fall of dynasties, or ruling houses. Periods of foreign invasion and civil strife alternated with long periods of peace, prosperity, and cultural brilliance.

Armies were often on the march. China's boundaries widened, narrowed, and widened again.

Tradition puts the founding of the first of the dynasties, the Hsia (*shē'á*), at about 2200 B.C., but the accounts of the early rulers and their achievements were all written many centuries later and are regarded as legends rather than history. The earliest written records are the "oracle bones" from the period of the *Shang Dynasty* (about 1700–1100 B.C.). On the bones of oxen or the shells of tortoises the people wrote questions asking their gods for advice. Diviners heated the bones until cracks appeared and then decided from the cracks what the answers should be. Scholars have recently succeeded in reading these oracles and have obtained a great deal of information about Chinese life in prehistoric times.

With the *Chou Dynasty* (about 1100–250 B.C.), we begin to have more trustworthy information. This long period of eight or nine centuries was the Feudal Age of China. The land was owned by the nobles and by the rulers of the many smaller states who owed allegiance to the Chou kings. As in medieval Europe, the peasants who tilled the land were serfs. After the 6th century there was a remarkable development in art and culture. This was also the period of the great philosophers and religious leaders, Confucius, Lao-Tse, Mencius, and Mo-Ti.

### Rise of the Empire

About 250 years before the Christian Era, the state of Ch'in, or Ts'in, overthrew the Chous. Its founder Shih Huang-ti, unified the country, swept away the powers of the feudal lords, and permitted the sale of land. He built roads, extended irrigation works, and constructed a long stretch of the Great Wall. The memory of him, however, is not entirely happy, for he burned the revered Classics of Confucius because he thought the people were turning too much to the past and were criticizing his reforms. His brief dynasty, the *Ch'in* (249–207 B.C.), perhaps gave us the modern name China.

### Some of the Great Dynasties

Among the great epochs was that of the *Han Dynasty* (206 B.C.–A.D. 220), which made China, next to Rome, the most powerful state of the time. The boundaries

were extended far to the west and south. In this period the Chinese learned to make paper from the bark of the mulberry tree, hemp and rags—a thousand years before this art reached Europe. The *T'ang* was another brilliant age (A.D. 618–907) in which the first block printing seems to have been done. During the *Sung Dynasty* (A.D. 960–1279) books multiplied and some of the finest porcelains and paintings were produced. The *Sungs* were probably the first to use gunpowder for warfare, although the Chinese had used it earlier for fireworks.

#### Early Contacts with the West

During the Han rule the caravan routes to the west became great highways of trade. By the 8th century Persians and Arabs and merchants from India were coming to Canton by water. Merchants brought glass, jade, precious stones, ivory and fine woolen and linen goods. They carried away silks and furs, spices and fine porcelains and the seeds of the peach or orange and apricot to introduce these Chinese fruits to the west.

Buddhist monks and pilgrims from India had for centuries been working their way overland to China and Chinese Buddhists had traveled to India, bringing back new ideas in architecture and other arts. Moslems came in by land and by sea. Foreign navies brought new ideas and new products, but the Chinese gave far more to foreign peoples than they received. Neighboring peoples to the east and south were especially influenced. Japan, for example, copied Chinese forms of art and architecture and writing.

#### Mongol Rule and Marco Polo

Even the destructive Mongols, who in the 13th century swept over Asia and set up the largest empire the world has ever known, adopted China's culture. When they conquered China, Kublai Khan founded the *Yuan Dynasty* (1280–1367) and built his capital Cambaluc, where Peking now stands. Under Mongol rule, traders and travelers flocked in. The most celebrated of these travelers was Marco Polo, who upon his return home astonished Europeans with his tales of Cathay, as he called China. (See also *Mongols*; *Polo*; *Marco*.)

#### The Mings Overthrow the Mongols

Mongol rule lasted a little less than a century. It was overthrown by a native leader who established the *Ming Dynasty* (1368–1644). This was the last native dynasty. The name *Ming* means bright or glorious, and in its best years this was a great age. The empire expanded, population increased and order was maintained. The arts flourished and a magnificent royal city was built at Peking. But the people, now heartily tired of foreign rulers and invasions, no longer welcomed foreigners. Trade by sea was still active, but the caravan routes to the west were blocked because the nation's declining military power could not keep the barbarian tribes in check.

#### Manchus Bring China Again Under Foreign Rule

Meanwhile a new power was rising in the northeast—the Manchus (see *Manchuria*). By the middle of the 17th century (1644) they had conquered China.

Again foreign rulers sat on the dragon throne. The rule of the Manchus—they called themselves the *Ch'ing* (pure) *Dynasty*—lasted until China became a republic in 1912. In the first part of their reign the Chinese Empire reached its greatest extent. It included the outlying dependencies of Manchuria, Mongolia, Sinkiang (Chinese Turkestan) and Tibet and it received tribute from a number of neighboring states—Indo-China, Burma, Siam, Korea and others. The chief interest of this age lies in its last three-quarters of a century, when China's culture began to change as it had never changed before as a result of the coming of Europeans.

#### The Coming of the Europeans

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to come knocking at China's door in the 16th century (see *Portugal*). The Chinese did not welcome them but allowed them to settle at Macao, near the mouth of the Canton River. By the beginning of the 19th century Dutch, French, English and finally American traders had made their way to Macao and Canton. Missionaries too were allowed to settle in several cities.

Foreign trade was subject to severe restrictions and many taxes. It was restricted to Canton and all dealings had to be with a guild of Chinese merchants called the *Co-hong*. The Chinese looked upon other nations as inferior and called foreigners "barbarians" and "foreign devils." The emperor made foreign envoys *kowtow* or prostrate themselves before him. European nations resented this treatment but not to the extent of giving up trade. The West was expanding and becoming prosperous as a result of the beginnings of the Industrial Revolution and Western peoples wanted Chinese silk, tea and chinaware and they wanted to find new markets for their own products. So there was bound to be trouble.

#### The Opium War

The traffic in opium brought about a crisis. Opium smoking in China had become a national problem (see *Opium*). The government forbade its importation but the Canton officials allowed the trade to continue. Suddenly the emperor sent a commissioner to end the trade. British traders were imprisoned and their stocks of opium were destroyed. The so-called *Opium War* (1839–1842) followed, ending in humiliating defeat for the Chinese. They were forced by the Treaty of Nanking to open five ports, called *treaty ports*, for residence and trade, to cede the island of Hong Kong to Great Britain, to establish a fair tariff and abolish the *Co-hong* and to pay a large indemnity.

#### Trying Days for China

Treaties with the United States and France in 1844 provided extraterritoriality and other concessions. Friction, however, continued. In a second war, 1856–60, China was again defeated by Britain with France as an ally. In the Treaties of Tientsin, China was forced to admit foreign diplomats to Peking, to tolerate Christianity and to make other concessions.

In time there came to be 60 treaty ports where foreigners might own property and conduct business. In

certain of the treaty ports, "concessions" of territory were given to European countries in which their nationals might lease land. Foreign "settlements" were also established, notably at Shanghai, with the land under perpetual lease. Communities of foreigners gained the right of "extraterritoriality," or the right to be governed in many important matters by their own laws and officials rather than by Chinese. Foreign powers were also permitted to administer the Customs Service and to maintain gunboats on the rivers and small garrisons of troops to protect their people.

As the ring of foreign nations closed about China, they pressed home every opportunity to obtain other advantages. The slightest clash became a pretext for further humiliating the Chinese and demanding new privileges. In these aggressions the United States took no active part, but it insisted on sharing in the trade privileges thus obtained. All trade treaties contained a "most favored nation" clause, so that any advantage obtained by one nation applied to the other nations as well.

#### The Coming of the Missionaries

Christian missionaries, as well as the traders, played an important part in bringing Western influence to China. Nestorian priests from Syria made their way into China in the 7th century, according to ancient records, and they apparently had some little influence in the two centuries that followed. Before the end of the Ming Dynasty, Catholic missionaries—Jesuits, Franciscans, and Dominicans—had made some headway in spite of periodic persecutions. In the 17th century a Jesuit, Johann Adam Schall, was appointed by a Ming emperor to correct the Chinese calendar.

The first Protestant missionary, Robert Morrison, was sent out by the London Missionary Society. He arrived in 1807 but was not permitted to go beyond Canton. There he devoted himself to learning Chinese, preparing a dictionary, translating the Bible, and writing tracts.

After the Treaty of Nanking opened the treaty ports and the Treaties of Tientsin guaranteed protection to the missionaries and their converts, missionary work expanded rapidly. The missionaries' path was not a rosy one, however, for they were often misunderstood, and the Chinese feared the effect of their teachings on China's traditional institutions. Their work therefore continued throughout the century to lead to numerous riots and persecutions.

The missionaries founded the first schools on Western lines. They worked for greater freedom for women and succeeded in establishing schools for girls. They introduced public health measures, founded hospitals, and were the creators of the modern medical profession in China. They founded a number of universities and colleges, notably the University of Shanghai. Many of China's leaders and professional men and women were trained in mission schools and colleges. Thus, though the missionaries—Protestant and Catholic—converted less than one per cent of the people, they had wide influence in changing China.

One amazing result of Chinese contact with the West was the Taiping Rebellion (1848-65). This was inspired by a fanatic dazed by his strange interpretation of Christian teachings. Taiping, meaning "great peace," was to be the name of the new dynasty which the rebels hoped to establish. But before the revolt was over, the "great peace" of death had descended upon 20,000,000 Chinese citizens and had laid waste many of the fairest provinces. For a time the picturesque British officer known as "Chinese" Gordon aided in crushing the rebellion (*see* Gordon, Charles George).

#### Foreign Domination Grows

The period from 1865 to 1894 was relatively peaceful, although foreign pressure was constantly tightening. In 1894-95, however, China fought a disastrous war with Japan, and was forced to recognize the independence of Korea, which had long paid her tribute. She had to give Japan the island of Formosa (Taiwan), the Pescadores Islands, and the Liaotung peninsula of southern Manchuria; but Russia, France, and Germany at once forced Japan to give back Liaotung.

This defeat was a signal for European countries to scramble for more Chinese territory. Great Britain, Germany, France, and Russia obtained leases of districts on the coast of China. Kiaochow Bay and Tsingtao in Shantung went to Germany; Port Arthur and Dalny (Dairen) on the Liaotung peninsula, to Russia; Weihaiwei and the peninsula of Kowloon to Great Britain; the Bay of Kwangchow to France. These countries also demanded "spheres of interest"; that is, concessions to open mines and to build railroads. They also acquired rights to lend funds to the Chinese government. The debts thus incurred gave them a stronger hold on China.

#### The Open-Door Policy

It now looked as if the richest part of China would soon be carved up and divided among the nations. Great Britain and the United States were alarmed at this threat to their trade and wished to establish an "open-door policy"; that is, to keep all of China accessible to the trade of all nations. John Hay, United States secretary of state, in 1899 sent notes to the European powers suggesting that in the leased territories and spheres of influence the same tariffs, harbor dues, and railroad charges should apply to all nations. The nations assented.

#### Beginnings of the Reform Movement

But the real effort to save the country had to come from the Chinese themselves. The clash with Western ways had deeply disturbed them. They saw that the foreign concessions and settlements were oases of cleanliness, order, and safety. Even many Chinese had moved into the foreign sections of the cities to profit by Western ways of government, though they had a brooding hate of the white race for its arrogant treatment of them.

The war with Japan, moreover, had shown what could be done by an Oriental nation which had adopted Western ways. Clubs in favor of reform sprang up

One of the leaders in the reform movement was Sun Yat-sen, who had received a Western education and had been active among Chinese abroad trying to get their support in overthrowing the Manchus and establishing a republic.

The demand for change was felt in the slumberous depths of the Manchu palace, and in the summer of 1898 the air was thick with edicts intended to modernize China. They were the work of the young Emperor Kuang Hsu (*Kuang shu*) and his radical advisers. But he reckoned without his aunt, the wily Dowager

Empress Tzu-hai (*tzu shai*). Working like a spider in the dark web of Chinese politics, Tzu hsi held in her masterful hands the real power. Suddenly she struck. She dethroned and imprisoned the young emperor, executed many reformers, and abolished all reforms.

#### Boxer Rebellion and War with Japan

Sweeping up like a storm after the lightning flash of the Empress' bold stroke, fanatical bands of "Boxers" pledged themselves to oust the foreigner. "Boxer" was a name given by Westerners to an organization of secret societies that called themselves *I Ho Ch'uan*—"Patriotic Union of Fists." In 1900 the Empress issued the startling order that all foreigners should be killed. A reign of terror followed. Hundreds of missionaries and native Christians were slain. Boxers and Imperial troops besieged the foreign legations in Peking for two months. Finally an allied force of foreign troops forced their way to Peking. Eager for revenge, many of them joined in looting the palaces. The powers dictated severe terms. The Taku forts guarding the approach to Peking from the sea were razed and a heavy indemnity was imposed. The United States in 1908 returned some of its share of the indemnity to be used for Chinese education and later other nations followed its example.

While this humiliation still ranked, Japan went to war with Russia (1904) and defeated the "Great Bear." China's territory of Manchuria was the chief battlefield, and both Russia and Japan had a firm foothold in the region at its close. Moreover, the peace treaty recognized Japan's special rights in Korea (Chosen), and transferred the Liaotung peninsula to Japan.

#### China Becomes a Republic

The war vastly increased Japan's power in China. The Chinese were impressed because an Oriental nation, by adopting Western ways, had beaten a world power. Demands for change arose in China. In 1908 the

empress died. She was succeeded by a three-year-old baby Hsuan-tung, who later became Emperor Kang-tch of Manchukuo. People demonstrated against the meek Manchu reign. On Oct. 10, 1911, troops in Wu-chang mutinied. Whole provinces revolted against the Manchus. On Feb. 12, 1912, they abdicated, and China was proclaimed a republic with Dr. Sun Yat-sen as provisional president. To win northern support, he resigned in favor of General Yuan Shih kai.

The Kuomintang or Nationalist party, which had been organized by Sun Yat-sen, was suspicious of

this strong vicerey of the old monarchy. When he adopted high-handed methods in establishing the government, the Kuomintang revolted. In 1913 Yuan crushed the revolt and made himself a military dictator. By 1915 he was dreaming of making himself emperor. Widespread opposition balked this plan, and in 1916 Yuan died, presumably by his own hand.

Yuan had been

more successful in opposing Japan than in uniting his country. In 1915, when the European powers were busy fighting Japan, presented the notorious "Twenty-one Demands." These were in effect pistol-at-the-head demands for the political and economic control of China. The vigorous disapproval expressed in England and the United States encouraged Yuan Shih kai to resistance, and the demands as he accepted them were greatly modified. They did, however, strengthen Japan's hold and brought down upon her China a bitter hatred.

#### China and the First World War

In 1917 China entered the World War against the Central Powers. It contributed little except by sending to Europe labor battalions of coolies. The Chinese delegation at the Versailles Peace Conference likewise obtained little. They asked for cancellation of virtually all foreign privileges in China, and for the return of the former German properties in Shantung, which Japan had seized (*see* Shantung). The United States supported the Chinese claims in Shantung, but Japan won because of a secret treaty it had made in 1917 with Great Britain, France, and Italy. In their indignation, the Chinese declared a boycott of Japanese goods. China refused to sign the Treaty of Versailles and worked out a separate treaty with Germany.

#### Improvement in Foreign Relations

From the close of the first World War until 1931 China freed itself considerably from foreign control. At the Washington Conference of 1921-22, nine

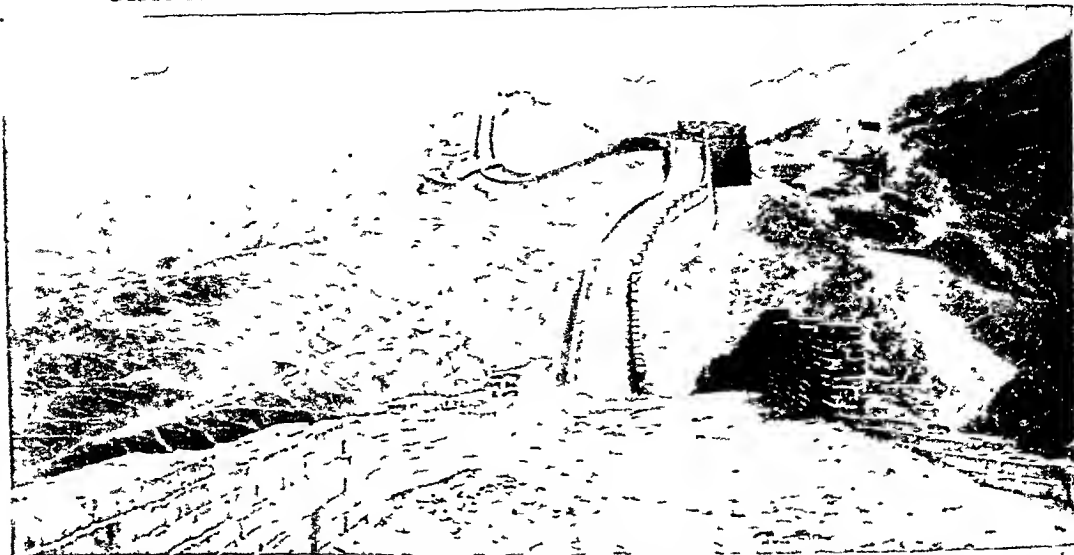
A GRACEFUL BRIDGE OVER A LOTUS LAKE



Everywhere one sees bridges, many of them designed to form circle and ellipse like this camel back bridge in the Summer Palace grounds near Peking.



## CHINA'S ANCIENT BARRIER AGAINST THE BARBARIANS



Winding for 1,500 miles over mountain and plain, the Great Wall of China is a reminder of the country's long struggle to keep outsiders from the north. Much of it was built in the third century B. C. It has since been frequently repaired and extended. Its height varies from 15 to 50 feet, and its width from 15 or 25 feet at the base to 12 feet or more at the top.

powers, including Japan, signed a "hands off" agreement—the Nine-Power Treaty—and Japan gave up her interests in Shantung. In 1929 China resumed the privilege of fixing its own tariff, which foreign nations had kept absurdly low. The government announced that extraterritoriality would be abolished, but internal troubles and difficulties with Japan prevented it from making this announcement effective. Soviet Russia relinquished many privileges, but clung to the Chinese Eastern Railway which it had built in Manchuria. Other countries, notably Great Britain, appeared willing to give up many of their special privileges as soon as the Chinese should be able to maintain order and justice themselves.

#### Confusion and War Lords

But China was in turmoil. The Kuomintang had set up a separate government at Canton with Sun Yat-sen as president, and the Peking government was becoming weaker. Squabbling *tuchuns*, or war lords, fought for control of various provinces. With the old political institutions being scrapped and the new machinery not yet worked out, with changes going on which affected every phase of the nation's life, with provinces and generals warring against one another, millions of people lost all means of getting a livelihood. Many took to banditry, as Chinese had done for ages past in times of distress.

Sun Yat-sen and the Kuomintang made little headway in gaining control. In 1925 Dr. Sun went to Peking to confer with the war lords Chang Tso-lin and Feng Yu-hsiang, who were organizing another provisional government, and there he died.

His death, however, did as much for his party as had his life. His little book *San Min Chu I*, or the "Three People's Principles," gave new enthusiasm and a definite program to the Kuomintang. The people

had trusted Sun Yat-sen in life and they worshiped him in death. Reverently each week children in Chinese schools recited his three principles—government by the people and for the people, a sufficient livelihood for all, and freedom from the control of foreign nations.

#### The Communists and Chiang Kai-shek

Some months before he died, Sun had called in Russian advisers, saying he had not got help from other powers to overthrow the war-lord government in Peking. The Russians drilled Chinese army officers in modern warfare. Dr. Sun grew to oppose Communism, but, after he died, Madame Sun became a leader in the expanding Chinese Communist movement.

The Chinese Communist party had been established in 1920-21. At first, it did not openly oppose the Kuomintang; instead, the Communists held membership in the Kuomintang and worked secretly toward the day when they could get control of it. In 1927 Russia set up the Sun Yat-sen University in Moscow to train Chinese students for Communist work in China.

As chief of the Kuomintang army, Chiang Kai-shek became China's "strong man." In 1926 he led his troops north, aiming to seize Peking. He took Nanking in 1927, and halted to "clean house" in the Kuomintang. The undercover Communist members had grown increasingly open in their scheme to wreck the party and had planned their own government for China.

In the name of the Kuomintang, the Communists had formed labor and peasant unions, incited riots, confiscated property, and seized control of central China. Their indoctrinated young followers cried, "Down with foreigners! Down with the Christian religion! Down with the teachings of Confucius!"

Chiang suddenly purged Communists from the Kuomintang, executed many leaders, and expelled the Rus-

as advisers. The Communists who escaped however controlled large armed forces and dominated several provinces. They warred intermittently on Chiang.

After Chiang took Peking which he renamed Peiping or Northern Peace in 1928, his Nationalist government nominally held the whole country. But strife continued not only with the Communists but with war lords who outwardly supported the government but continued to rule some provinces like princes.

#### Japan Seizes Manchuria

The young republic faced a far greater danger at the hands of its powerful neighbor Japan which had determined to obtain in China raw materials and markets for its industries. Japanese militarists looked upon the conquest of this vast country as the first step in their domination of the Far East. They started in Manchuria where they had firmly entrenched themselves with railways, mines and industries following their victory over Russia in 1905. When Chiang took steps to extend his authority into this region, he came into conflict

with the aims of Japan. In 1931-32 Japanese armies seized Manchuria and set up the puppet state of Manchukuo (see Manchuria).

In 1933 Japan added Jehol, a north China province to Manchukuo and marched its army south almost to the gates of Peiping. China was forced to sign a truce by which a demilitarized zone was established south of the Great Wall. By the end of 1936 Japan had extended its influence into Inner Mongolia and was seeking to separate north China from Chiang's Nationalist government in Nanking.

#### Undeclared War Begins in 1937

The crisis came on July 7, 1937. Using a minor incident as an excuse, the Japanese fired the first shots in an undeclared war at the ancient Marco Polo bridge outside Peiping. They poured troops into north China and also struck at the Shanghai region—the economic heart of the republic. Heretofore Chiang had felt that China was too weak to offer more than passive resistance but now war could no longer be avoided. The Chinese united as never before under Chiang's leadership and fought a bloody and destructive delaying campaign. By the end of 1937 the Japanese were in control of a vast region in the north. In central China they had pushed the Chinese back beyond Nanking and had captured territory as far south as Hangchow. With these gains and a naval blockade of the coast, the Japanese controlled the chief arteries of foreign trade, with the exception of Canton. But they had come to realize that their hope for a quick victory was vain.

In the spring of 1938 the Japanese fought their way inland to seize leading railway lines. Their chief setback came when the Chinese cut the dikes of the Yellow River and let great floods pour through the breaches. Japan's highly mechanized forces bogged down in the inundated country.

China's greatest industrial center, the triple city group of Hankow, Hanyang and Wuchang, fell

on October 25. Three days earlier the Japanese had taken Canton in a quick advance from the coast. Pursuing their scorched earth policy, the retreating Chinese blew up bridges and factories after evacuating as many of the inhabitants as possible.

The strategy of the Chinese after the first few months was to avoid pitched battles against forces better trained and better equipped and to keep up constant guerrilla warfare. Japan won vast areas but after each gain more troops were needed for garrison duty and for guarding lines of communication. They were able to hold only

the ports, provincial centers and railway lines. In the enormous blocks of country between the railroads, roving bands of guerrilla troops earned on their work of destruction and played havoc with Japanese communications.

The National government had fallen back to Hankow first and then to Chungking up the Yangtze river in Szechwan province. With it went a throng of refugees and many of the industrial and cultural institutions of the eastern cities. Factory equipment was freighted up the Yangtze on river boats or carried overland on the backs of sweating coolies. The old city of Chungking became an educational center where colleges and universities held classes in temporary quarters for students who had made their way through enemy lines to enroll.

Japanese control of ports and railway lines cut off China from foreign trade. Anticipating this, the Chinese had begun to improve communications to the west. They built the famous Burma Road from Kunming across the mountains to connect with a railway at Lashio and improved the ancient caravan routes through Sinkiang to provide a highway into Soviet Russia. But these routes were inadequate to supply the hard-pressed Chinese armies, so the government encouraged the building of factories and the development of mineral resources in free territory aiming to create its own war industry.

#### China Joins the United Nations

With Japan's attack on American and British territory in the Pacific in December 1941, the Sino-Japa-

#### A VACCINATION CREW AT WORK



Modern health measures for those who can be reached after a flood help to check disease. These soldiers and children are being vaccinated against cholera by Chinese medical workers who travel with a hospital bus.

## FIRST DICTATOR OF COMMUNIST CHINA AND SOME OF HIS WORK



At top is Gen. Mao Tse-tung, founder of the Chinese Communist party, who became head of Red China in 1949. At right, "people's court" sentences to death a "despotic landlord" who tried to cling to his two thirds of an acre. Mao's land distribution was ruthless.



nese conflict became part of the second World War. China joined the United Nations and Chiang Kai-shek became Allied commander in Asia, with Lieut. Gen. Joseph Stilwell, U. S. A., as chief of staff.

China remained virtually isolated. The Burma Road, last link to the sea, fell in 1942. Then only air-borne supplies, flown from India over the Himalayan "Hump," reached China until 1945, when Allied engineers built the Stilwell Road from Ledo and a pipeline from Calcutta. American-trained Chinese troops recaptured the Burma Road in 1945 and won Foochow. Chinese military action was chiefly a holding operation which kept several Japanese divisions from action elsewhere. Throughout the war the American Air Force, based in China, bombed Japanese-held cities. (See also World War, Second.)

China's courageous stand won it international prestige. Chinese delegates attended Allied councils. In 1943 the United States and Britain gave up extraterritorial rights in China, and the United States repealed its "Chinese exclusion" law (see Immigration). The United States also granted large credits and sent political and economic advisers.

#### Economic and Social Progress

Despite the war Nationalist China made some social and economic advances. Chiang and Madame Chiang Kai-shek organized a government program called the New Life movement, which included mass education. The New Life movement pushed health programs and efforts to improve stock breeds and seed selection. Co-operatives were organized to help the farmers sell their produce and buy supplies. Rural credit associations lent money to the peasant without the excessive interest rates that had kept him burdened with debt. New experimental *hsein*, or county, governments were set up to provide such welfare services as public health, education, and agricultural improvements. A National College of Rural Reconstruction trained workers to carry out these activities.

Mining and manufacturing were established in Free China. Part of the plan to fit modern industries into Chinese life was to use village industries to let

farmers work in their slack time and still cultivate their ancestral acres. The government's postwar program to build flood-control and irrigation projects and to extend highways and railways aimed to increase rural income and purchasing power.

The Chinese Communists, however, continued to block unification of the country. They elected their own officials, maintained their own army, and controlled border regions of north China, with Yenan as their capital. Chiang had to keep troops there to hold them within bounds. The Communists operated mines, industries, co-operative associations, and schools. They charged Chiang Kai-shek with using the war as an excuse to become dictator. Chiang offered to recognize the Communists as a legal party if they would join the National government and disband their army. The Communists refused, declaring they were combating the Japanese armies in northern China.

#### Postwar Problems

The collapse of Japan on Aug. 15, 1945, brought a measure of peace to strife-torn China. For the first time in eight years it was free from a foreign foe. A treaty with Russia enabled Outer Mongolia to become a nominally independent republic and restored Manchuria to Nationalist China (see Manchuria; Mongolia). The Chinese Communists soon seized control of Manchuria. Chiang's army then attacked.

The new civil war crippled China. Shattered transportation and appalling inflation blocked economic recovery. The drive against poverty and illiteracy virtually collapsed. In an effort to rehabilitate China, the United States sent Gen. George C. Marshall to unify Communist and Nationalist policies. Late in 1946 he admitted failure. But the Kuomintang did accept a few Liberals and wrote a new constitution for China. It became effective Dec. 25, 1947. The Communists rejected it. Chiang then declared open war on them.

In 1948 Chiang was elected president of Nationalist China; but his government was split by political rivalries, corruption, and bungling. Chiang "lost face" in some Western nations, and public opinion was

divided about whether to help him. Despite some economic aid from the United States, the Nationalist forces could not halt the march of the Communists.

#### China Becomes a Communist Nation

In 1949 the Red armies of Gen. Mao Tse-tung, a founder of Chinese Communism, engulfed China. On September 21, Mao proclaimed the People's Republic of China. Peking (Peiping) became the capital. The republic provided not for a president but a chairman of the Central People's Government. Mao was elected chairman. China—one fifth of the world's people—had fallen under Communism.

Chiang's Nationalist government and most of its armed forces fled to Formosa. There Chiang began to retrain his forces and put into effect a small air and naval blockade against China. Britain and a few other nations recognized Mao's regime. On Feb. 14, 1950, Mao signed a mutual defense pact with Russia. Mao declared that he would seize Formosa. After hostilities broke out in Korea, June 25, 1950, the United States sent air and naval protection to Chiang on Formosa. (For Nationalist China events, see Chiang Kai-shek, Formosa.)

Following the Communist pattern, Mao decreed that China's lands be distributed to the peasants. By 1952 many had received a plot, but they were burdened by heavy taxes and tributes to the Communist party. Some land was taken for state farms. Mao also drove to increase industrialization. Industry made some gains, but by 1952 production lagged. Mao attributed this to 'corruption' and to deviation from

Communist principles. The harsh aspects of Mao's regime met considerable resistance. This led the Communists to 'try' thousands of Chinese in 1950-51 and then kill them as counter-revolutionaries.

In November 1950 Chinese volunteer troops suddenly entered the Korean conflict. Their human sea-mass attacks at first routed the United Nations forces, and early in 1951 the Chinese drove back across the 38th parallel to Kaesong. Chinese casualties were huge, and they agreed to a truce. It began July 10, 1951. Fighting, however, continued for over two years until the truce was signed on July 27, 1953 (Asiatic time). (See also Korea.)

#### Five Year Plan, Indo-China, and Plane Incident

Red China was then the strongest military power in Asia, but Mao's chief problem was to develop the nation's resources and to gain firmer control of the Chinese people. In 1952 his premier, Chou En-lai, began a vast five-year plan to develop industry and agriculture and to train Chinese technicians. Peasants paid little heed to the farm program, and industry lagged so much that Russia's advisers took charge in 1953. By 1954 there was very little progress.

The truce in Korea enabled Red China to send supplies to Communist Vietnamese forces fighting the French in Indo-China (see Indo-China). Through the Vietnamese victories, China was able to set terms for the cease-fire in Indo-China in 1954. This success apparently led Red China to defy the democracies. Shortly after the cease-fire, Red Chinese planes shot at American planes on a rescue mission near Hainan.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF GREATER CHINA

### CHINA PROPER

#### The Land and the People

- I Location and size C-257-8 chart U-246 location in world map W-203 in Asia map A-406-7 political divisions map C-260 air distances polar projection map A-531
- II Land structure C-258-9 list C-257 map C-259
  - A Mountains C-258-9 list C-257 map C-259
  - B Rivers A-416 C-259 list C-257 map C-259
  - Hwang H-454 Yangtze Y-333
- III Climate C-259-60 list C-257 rainfall map A-412
- IV People C-260 262-9 pictures C-265 R-21 population on C-258 A-415-16 chart U-246 density map C-262 pictograph C-261 racial origins diagram R-22
  - A Food C-260 263 270 pictures C-264 267 bamboo products B-43 ginkgo G-109 sorghum S-236 trepan (sea cucumber) S-86 rice R-147
  - B Clothing children C-267-8 city C-264 266 country C-263-4
  - C Shelter C-276 277 cities C-266 river dwellings C-264 A-416 picture C-116 villages and farms C-262-3
  - D Farm life C-262-4 pictures C-263 270 271
  - E Children C-267 9 pictures C-267 268 275
  - F Customs C-262-9 274
  - G Festivals and holidays C-268-9 F-58 59 N-194
  - H Inventions paper and printing F-66 F-414c

- I Social conditions C-274 children C-267-9 labor C-268 272 village and farm C-262-4 World War II and aftermath C-284

#### V Resources and Industries

- A Agriculture C-269-71 261 284 A-416 list C-257 maps C-262 C-493 bamboo B-42 ginkgo G-109 ginseng G-109-10 hog production H-401 millet M-35 opium C-398 peanut P-104 rice C-269-70 R-147 map C-262 pictures C-263 2 0 271 silk S-185-6 soybean S-3085 tea T-28
- B Fisheries C-264 pictures C-266
- C Minerals and mining C-272 A-416 list C-257 salt S-29 tungsten T-206
- D Manufacturing C-272 S-133 H-418 H-258 H-259 S-134 F-209 N-4 rugs R-248 250
- VI Trade and transportation C-2 0-1 272-3 S-134 C-116 F-209 H-258 H-259 H-418 P-111 112 N-4 S-133 T-131 See also in Fact-Index Trade table
- VII Principal cities C-260 261 2 list C-257 Canton C-116 Foochow F-209 Hangchow H-258 Hankow H-258 Hong Kong (British Colony) H-418 Nan lung N-4 Peking (Communist capital) P-111 Shanghai S-133 Tientsin T-131
- VIII Education and the arts
  - A Education C-274-5 E-243 F-209 N-4 P-112 pictures E-243 C-267
  - B Architecture C-276 277 pictures C-276 281 232 Peking P-111 pictures P-111, 112

- C. Art C-277-8: enameling E-341, picture E-342; lacquer ware L-81; metalwork M-178-9, C-277-8; painting C-277, picture P-37c; porcelain and pottery P-394, 396a, 401, color pictures P-395, 396, picture E-342; sculpture S-82, C-277; tapestries T-13, picture T-14; wallpaper W-5; wood carving W-190b
- D. Literature C-275-6: Confucius C-433b, C-274, 275-6; folk tales S-409, list S-419-20
- E. Music and the theater C-276: ancient puppets P-439-40; ancient shadow play, picture C-275
- F. Writing C-275, 277, W-310, 310a, picture C-267
- IX. Government C-278, 279, 280-83: Communism C-282-3, 285: reform movement C-280-1; republic C-281-4; constitution of 1947 C-284, Chiang Kai-shek C-228: Mao Tse-tung and the Communist People's Republic C-285
- X. Religions C-274, R-101: Yang and Yin (the Chinese story of creation) C-278; Buddhism B-338-9: Confucianism C-433b; Taoism C-274; Christian missionaries C-280; New Year's Eve ceremony C-268

## HISTORY

- I. General C-278-85
- II. Ancient civilization C-278: census C-170
- III. Confucius C-433b
- IV. Rise of empire—the first dynasties C-278-9
- V. Early contacts with the Western World and influence on Japan C-279, J-318
- VI. Mongol invasion and rule C-279, M-345: Marco Polo at the court of Kublai Khan P-364
- VII. Mings overthrow Mongols C-279: new capital N-4
- VIII. Manchurian Dynasty (1644-1912) C-279, M-75: coming of the Europeans C-279; Christian missionaries C-280; the Opium War C-279, O-399, H-419; treaty ports and extraterritorial rights C-279-80, T-131; Taiping Rebellion C-280, G-141, H-258, N-4; war with Japan (1894-95), Korean "independence," and loss of Formosa C-280, J-320, K-65, F-242a; open-door policy C-280, M-19; Empress Tzu-hsi puts down reform movement C-280-1; Boxer Rebellion C-281, P-111, T-131; Nationalist party (Kuomintang) organized by Sun Yat-sen, revolution of 1911, China becomes a republic (1912) C-281, C-228
- IX. Japan's "Twenty-one Demands" C-281, J-321
- X. World War I, Versailles and Washington conferences C-281-2, W-240, H-267
- XI. Internal confusion and growth of Communism C-282-3
- XII. War with Japan (1937) C-283, J-321, C-229, W-252
- XIII. World War II C-283-4, W-259, 268, 290
- XIV. Results of the war C-284: extraterritorial rights abolished C-284; Chinese exclusion law repealed C-284, I-48; economic and social progress C-284; Formosa regained F-242a
- XV. Postwar problems C-284, C-229, W-299
- XVI. Communist armies engulf China—Chiang Kai-shek's government flees to Formosa C-284-5, F-242a, C-229
- XVII. Mao Tse-tung proclaims Communist People's Republic of China (September 21, 1949) C-285
- XVIII. Red Chinese forces enter Korean war C-285, K-66, U-242
- XIX. China's five-year plan and State Planning Commission C-285

HISTORIC DIVISIONS OF GREATER CHINA  
OUTSIDE THE 18 PROVINCES OF CHINA PROPER

- I. Formosa F-242-242a, maps W-205, A-406-7, C-259
  - A. Land structure and climate F-242, 242a
  - B. How the people live F-242a, pictures F-242
  - C. History F-242a: Chiang Kai-shek C-229
- II. Manchuria M-71-6, maps A-406, C-259, M-72
  - A. Land structure and climate M-71-2
  - B. People M-72: farm life M-73-4, picture M-74; industrial life M-74, pictures M-73, 76; transportation M-75, pictures C-52, M-75
  - C. History M-75-6: Russo-Japanese War R-235, Japanese control C-283, J-321; World War II and Chinese Communist invasion M-76
- III. Mongolia M-341-5, maps W-205, A-406, C-259, M-343
  - A. Land structure and climate M-341, maps C-259, M-343; the Gobi M-342, map A-411
  - B. How the people live M-342-4, pictures M-341, 342, 344: religion (Lamaism) M-344
  - C. History: Mongols M-345-6; modern M-344, 345 See also Mongols in Fact-Index
- IV. Tibet T-127-9, maps W-205, A-406, C-259
  - A. Land structure and climate T-127, maps A-411, C-259: Himalayas H-355-6, map I-54 (Mount Everest E-450, pictures A-409, E-453)
  - B. People, religion, and government T-127, 129, pictures T-128, 129, H-356: Buddhist shrine, picture A-415; Dalai Lama, picture T-127
  - C. History T-129: Chinese Communist invasion T-129
- V. Sinkiang (Chinese Turkestan) T-213, 214, maps W-205, A-406, C-259: people, picture A-404

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CHINA

## Books for Younger Readers

- Baker, M. B. Sun Yat-sen (Vanguard, 1946).  
 Chrisman, A. B. Shen of the Sea (Dutton, 1925).  
 Evernden, Margery. Secret of the Porcelain Fish (Random, 1947).  
 Handforth, Thomas. Mei Li (Doubleday, 1938).  
 Hawkes, Hester. Ning's Pony (Coward-McCann, 1953).  
 Jacobs, A. G. Chinese-American Song and Game Book (Barnes, 1944).  
 Lin, Sian-tek. Folk Tales from China (Day, 1944).  
 Muhlenweg, Fritz. Big Tiger and Christian (Pantheon, 1952).  
 Treffinger, Carolyn. Li Lun, Lad of Courage (Abingdon-Cokesbury, 1947).  
 Wiese, Kurt. You Can Write Chinese (Viking, 1945).  
 Yaukey, G. S. Land of the Chinese People (Lippincott, 1945).

## Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

- Bate, H. M. Report from Formosa (Dutton, 1952).  
 Carmann, S. V. Land of the Camel (Ronald, 1951).  
 Chiang, Yee. Chinese Childhood (Day, 1952).  
 Eberhard, Walfram. History of China (Univ. of Calif. Press, 1950).  
 Goodrich, L. C. Short History of the Chinese People (Harper, 1951).  
 Lin, Yu-t'ang, ed. Famous Chinese Short Stories (Day, 1952).  
 Marces, Frank. Report on Mao's China (Macmillan, 1953).  
 Riencaurt, Amaury de. Roof of the World; Tibet (Rinehart, 1950).  
 Seeger, Elizabeth. Pageant of Chinese History. 3d ed. (Longmans, 1947).  
 White, T. H. and Jacoby, A. W. Thunder Out of China (Sloan, 1946).  
 Yaukey, G. S. Made in China (Knopf, 1952).

**CHINCH BUG** One of the most destructive pests is the chinch bug, a tiny insect about one sixth of an inch long. It attacks only plants belonging to the grass family, particularly barley, wheat, rye,

## TWO CHINCH BUGS



Chinch bugs are both long-winged (left) and short-winged (right). The short-winged bugs are unable to fly.

oats, and corn. The adult bugs hibernates in the winter in grass clumps. In the spring they fly into the grain fields. There the female lays several hundred eggs in the ground around the plants or in leaf sheaths.

In one to two weeks or rarely, six tiny reddish nymphs (young bugs) hatch and feed by sucking the juices from the plants. They mature in 40 or 50 days, shedding their skins five times. As the small grains ripen and are cut the chinch bugs migrate to crops that are still green such as corn and sorghums. Usually they crawl to the new plants but in the South, where they mature earlier they fly. Following the migration a second generation is produced, and in the South a third generation.

The chinch bug can be controlled most effectively by growing certain immune crops, such as legumes or resistant crops such as certain varieties of corn or sorghum. Barriers of creosote or other materials placed in the migration path are effective when the bugs migrate by crawling. The scientific name of the chinch bug is *Blissus leucoplerus*.

**CHINCHILLA** A rodent native to the Andes Mountains, the chinchilla furnishes one of the rarest, most expensive and most beautiful furs of commerce. The little animal is 6 to 12 inches long exclusive of the long bushy tail, and weighs up to 22 ounces. The thick silky fur is slate blue at the root shading to silvery gray at the tip. Chinchillas live in rocky burrows at altitudes above 8,000 feet in Chile, Peru and Bolivia. They are now extremely rare, and hunting or exporting them is forbidden by law. They are thriving however, in fur farms of North and South America.

The animals mate for life. The female bears young at the age of about five months. She has two to four young in 111 days, and there are usually two litters a year. The young are born with fur and with their eyes open. In a few hours they are able to run about. They may live for 15 to 20 years.

Commercial breeding of chinchillas began in 1923 with 11 animals shipped to California. Farms today are scattered throughout the United States. The animals are being sold for breeding purposes only until their numbers are built up and there is no more danger of their becoming extinct. The National Chin-

chilla Breeders of America sell only the skins of animals that have died a natural death. There are two species *Ereomys chinchilla* and *Ereomys lanigera*. The latter is the kind being raised on farms.

Chinchilla cloth is a thick woolen, or wool and cotton cloth. It has a long nap which has been rubbed into little tufts by special machinery.

**CHINQUAPIN** (*ching'ka pin*) This Algonquin Indian name is given to several trees and shrubs and to their edible nuts. The best-known chinquapin is a dwarf chestnut which grows in the southeastern United States. Its spiny burr contains a single sweet-flavored nut. A related species native to the Pacific coast is the giant or golden leaved chinquapin. The chinquapin oak also called yellow, or chestnut oak and the dwarf chinquapin or shin oak, with an edible acorn grow in the Central states (see Oak).

The scientific name of the common chinquapin is *Castanea pumila* of the giant chinquapin, *Castanopsis chrysophylla* of the chinquapin oak *Quercus acuminata* of the dwarf chinquapin *Quercus prinoides*.

**CHIPMUNK** The lively chattering little chipmunks are easily tamed. If you offer them food and sit very still they will soon eat out of your hand. Chipmunks look like their cousins the squirrels, but they are smaller and have striped backs. The eastern chipmunk has three dark brown stripes and two light stripes. The western chipmunk has five black and four light stripes. The sides are redish brown, the under parts white. They have bushy tails about as long as their bodies. The animals vary in length from 8 to 11 inches including the tail.

## THE EASTERN CHIPMUNK



The single white stripe on each side indicates that this is an eastern chipmunk. Its call is a cluck or rapid chuck, its alarm, a shrill whistle.

Chipmunks spend most of their lives on the ground even though they can climb trees for food. Their home is a burrow under rocks or tree roots or in old logs. It contains storerooms and a nest lined with leaves. Here the female bears four to six young usually late in spring. The young are born 31 days after mating. They do not leave the nest until they are a month to six weeks old.

Chipmunks eat chiefly nuts, seeds, wild fruits and berries. They have inner cheek pouches which they stuff with food. In the autumn they lay in supplies of nuts and seeds for the winter. During the coldest months they sleep lightly in their burrows. On warm days they come out to sun themselves and eat some of their stored food.

Chipmunks belong to the squirrel family (*Sciuridae*) of rodents. They are sometimes called ground squirrels, but the name belongs more properly to a closely related animal. The eastern chipmunk (*Tamias striatus*) ranges from Canada to Georgia and west to the Great Plains. Western chipmunks belong to the genus *Eutamias*. Sixteen species range west of the Great Plains from the Yukon to Lower California. Both genera are found in the Lake Superior region.

**CHLORINE.** In its pure form and in some of its compounds, chlorine is deadly to animals and human beings. In other compounds, notably sodium chloride ( $\text{NaCl}$ ), or common salt, it is harmless and necessary to all animal life. The element presenting these contradictions is a greenish-yellow gas with an acrid, suffocating odor. It is never found free in nature, but can be obtained from salt water by *electrolysis* (running an electric current through the solution). This process yields free chlorine and sodium hydroxide (caustic soda). Chlorine gas obtained in this way is compressed to a liquid and stored in steel cylinders. In this form it is mixed in the water supply of cities to destroy disease germs; only minute quantities of chlorine are necessary. The use of chlorinated water has greatly reduced the occurrence of typhoid fever. Liquefied chlorine was the first gas used in the chemical warfare of the first World War. Commercially, large quantities of chlorine are used in making carbon tetrachloride (employed as a solvent, dry-cleaning agent, and fire-extinguisher fluid) and in the manufacture of bleaching agents.

In the bleaching process, chlorine interacts with oxygen to reduce dyes and pigments to colorless compounds. Liquefied chlorine may be used for this purpose, but chlorine compounds (which give up free chlorine in bleaching) are more commonly used. Bleaching powder, or chloride of lime, is calcium oxychloride,  $\text{CaOCl}_2$ . Dissolved in water, this yields calcium hypochlorite,  $\text{Ca}(\text{OCl})_2$ , also used for bleaching. These and other chlorine compounds are widely used in the paper and textile industries and in the manufacture of laundry bleaches.

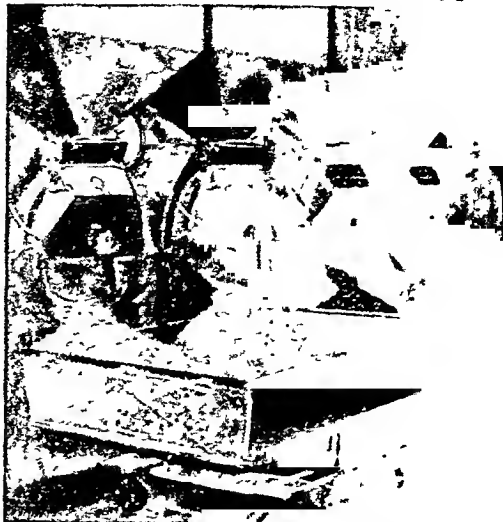
Many other compounds exist. Combined with metals, chlorine forms chlorides (such as sodium chloride), and with metal and oxygen, chlorates. These are used in such diverse industries as the manufacture of fireworks and the extraction of gold from its ores. With hydrogen, chlorine forms the useful compound hydrochloric acid (see Hydrochloric Acid).

Chlorine belongs to the very active group of elements called *halogens*. The name (from Greek *halos*, "salt") is given them because they combine directly with metals to form salts. The other members of the group are fluorine, bromine, iodine, and the artificial element astatine. Chlorine, at atmospheric pressure, turns to a brownish liquid when cooled to  $-30.3^\circ \text{F}$ . ( $-34.6^\circ \text{C}$ ). At  $-150.9^\circ \text{F}$ . ( $-101.6^\circ \text{C}$ ) it turns to a yellow crystalline solid.

**CHOCOLATE.** Of all nations of the world, the United States probably has the greatest liking for chocolate. Americans consume great quantities of chocolate in chocolate bars, chocolate-coated candies, ice cream, chocolate syrups, cakes, pies, cookies, pastries, cocoa, and dozens of other delicious products.

Chocolate is made from the seeds, or "beans," of the tropical cacao tree (see Cacao). The cacao bean fresh from the pod has a very strong bitter taste, and the process of making the product appetizing begins in the tropics. The workers clip the pods from the trees with a curved knife at the end of a

## ROASTING THE CACAO BEANS



Roasting the chocolate beans as they come from the tropics is a delicate process. Too little heat would fail to bring out the rich flavor of the chocolate and too much would spoil it.

long pole, and leave the pods on the ground to dry. The almond-shaped beans are then shelled out and heaped into piles to be *sweated* for several days. The sweating, or fermenting, removes the pulp from the outside of the beans and brings about chemical changes within the beans. After drying, which gives the beans their rich brown color, they are bagged for shipment.

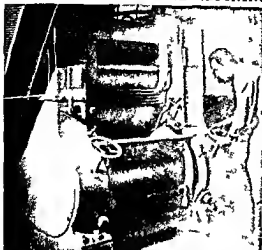
When they arrive at the factory they are put in large roasting machines. Roasting improves flavor and also dries the thin husks so that when the beans are crushed between rollers the husks come off easily. Fanning and sifting separate the husks, the germ of the seed, and the *cocoa nibs*, as the main part of the bean is called. The husks are sometimes used as fertilizer, as food for cattle, or as a substitute for coffee. The nibs are the part used for chocolate products.

The nibs are now ground between successive sets of granite stones or steel rollers. The friction melts the fat in the beans and reduces the solid part to powder. The result is a smooth, dark-brown liquid. From this point onward, further processes differ according to whether the final product is to be cocoa, baking chocolate (sweet or bitter), or milk chocolate.

For cocoa, the liquid chocolate is compressed in hydraulic presses that squeeze out about half the *cocoa butter*, as the fat is called. The resulting cakes, light brown in color, are then ground, sifted, and packaged as breakfast cocoa. The yellowish cocoa butter is cooled in bars and used in making soap and pomades. Some is set aside for use in milk chocolate. Cocoa butter has a pleasant chocolate taste and odor and does not easily become rancid.

In making dark baking chocolate, the liquid chocolate is further refined in grinding machines called

## GRINDING AND REFINING THE NIBS OF THE BEANS



After roasting the husks and seed germs are removed from the beans leaving the nibs of pure chocolate. These are ground between stones or as shown at the left between steel rollers.

The thick brown liquid resulting from grinding may go next to a machine called a conchador (right). Here for 96 to 120 hours the liquid chocolate is refined by a heavy granite roller.

**conches or longitudinals** In these a granite roller passes back and forth over a flat granite stone. Grinding in the longitudinals goes on continuously for four days and nights. Finally the refined chocolate is poured out in molds as dark bitter chocolate for baking and candymaking. For sweet dark chocolate sugar and starch are added before molding.

Milk chocolate requires other ingredients. A solution of milk and sugar is boiled down almost to a paste and the liquid chocolate is poured into this. After some drying by evaporation cocoa butter is added and the mixture is ground for five days and nights in longitudinals. It is then molded either by hand or by automatic machinery and the bars are wrapped in foil or glazed paper.

#### History of Chocolate

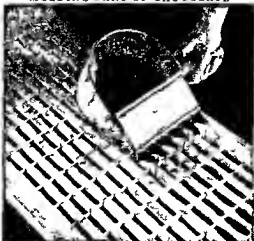
Chocolate was first enjoyed in America for the cacao tree was a native of the New World. Our word chocolate in fact comes from the Aztec word *chocolatl*. Europeans became acquainted with it in Mexico where it was a favorite beverage and Hernando Cortez demanded 300 loads of chocolate from Montezuma, emperor of the Aztecs as part of the tribute to be paid. Chocolate was introduced into England in the reign of Charles II about the same time as tea and coffee and had become a popular beverage throughout Europe by the early part of the 18th century. It was so highly esteemed that the great botanist Linnaeus gave the cacao tree the botanical name *Theobroma* meaning food of the gods.

The chocolate industry grew as better refining methods were developed and as cacao plantations were established in many tropical lands. The process of making milk chocolate developed in Switzerland about 1876 increased the popularity of chocolate products. Today the industry is a big one in the United States which absorbs nearly half the world

production of cacao beans. Other important manufacturing countries are the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, France and Germany.

Chocolate is a highly concentrated food. One pound of sweet milk chocolate contains nearly 2,500 calories, nearly twice as many as a pound of beef or a dozen eggs. About half the composition of milk chocolate is carbohydrate and about one third is fat. There is a small amount of theobromine, a stimulating alkaloid similar to the caffeine found in tea and coffee. Chocolate is an excellent emergency ration for soldiers and explorers because of its small bulk in proportion to the nourishment it contains.

#### MOLDING BARS OF CHOCOLATE



The refined chocolate mixed with sugar is finally ready to be poured out into molds. This may be done by hand as here in large factories or it may be done by automatic machinery.



**CHOPIN** (*shō'pān*), **FRÉDÉRIC FRANÇOIS** (1810-1849). Many believe that Chopin was the greatest of all composers for the piano. For a hundred years people have loved his romantic nocturnes and mazurkas, his warlike polonaises, and his graceful waltzes.

Chopin was born at Zelazowa Wola, a village near Warsaw, Poland. His father, Nicholas, was French but he had lived in Poland for many years. His mother was Polish and of noble birth. When Frédéric was born, Nicholas was tutor to the son of a Polish count and the Chopins lived in a tiny house on the count's country estate. They moved to Warsaw several months later. Here Nicholas became professor of French at the Lyceum, or high school.

The Chopin home in Warsaw usually overflowed with children. Frédéric had three sisters, and Nicholas Chopin kept a small boarding school for boys. The house was cheerful and often noisy, but the home life was cultured. The Chopins' friends were among the intellectuals and aristocrats of Warsaw.

Even as a small child, Chopin loved piano music. He began to take piano lessons when he was six. He started to compose before he knew how to write down his ideas. At eight he played in a public charity concert. His first published work, a rondo, appeared when he was 15. When he graduated from the Lyceum, at 17, he was recognized as the leading pianist of Warsaw and a talented composer.

Chopin gave two concerts in Vienna when he was 19. These received great praise. He returned to Vienna the next year, and while he was there Poland revolted against its Russian rulers. The uprising failed, and the Czar put Warsaw under harsh military rule. Chopin therefore decided to go to Paris.

Except for occasional trips, Chopin spent the rest of his life in Paris. He gave lessons and concerts, and publishers paid well for his compositions. The French loved him for his genius and his charm. Poets, musicians, wealthy Parisians, and Polish exiles were his friends. An important influence was a romantic friendship with Baroness Dudevant, better known as the novelist George Sand.

Chopin was not able to enjoy his success fully. At the age of 28 he developed tuberculosis; and his last years were spent in weakness and suffering.

Among Chopin's works are 49 mazurkas, 25 preludes, 24 études, 19 nocturnes, 13 waltzes, 11 polonaises, 4 scherzos, 4 rondos, 3 sonatas, and 2 concertos. **CHOSSEN** (*chō'sēn*). In ancient times the Korean peninsula was called Chosen; later it became Korea. When the Japanese annexed it in 1910 they restored the name of Chosen. After the peninsula was freed in 1945, the name Korea was restored (*see* Korea).

## FRÉDÉRIC FRANÇOIS CHOPIN



This is the only photograph ever taken of the great Polish composer.

**CHRISTIAN, KINGS OF DENMARK.** Ten kings of Denmark have borne the name Christian. The ninth ruler (from 1863 to 1906) is the most interesting. In 1864 he lost the duchies of Schleswig and Holstein to Prussia and Austria as a result of the "blood and iron" policy of Bismarck. But though Christian IX's kingdom was small and unimportant, members of his family occupied excellent positions. His eldest son Frederick VIII succeeded him as king of Denmark. Another son was chosen king of Greece (George I) in 1863. One daughter, Dagmar (Marie Feodorovna), became empress of Russia through marriage to the czar Alexander III. Another, Alexandra, was queen of England as the wife of Edward VII.

A grandson became king of Norway in 1905 as Haakon VII. Thus many of the sovereigns of Europe before the first World War were related to the reigning house of Denmark. Because of this, Christian IX has been called the "grandfather of Europe."

Another of this name, Christian IV (ruler 1588 to 1648), briefly championed the German Protestants in the Thirty Years' War. Christian X, who succeeded his father, Frederick VIII, in 1912, was called the "tallest monarch in Europe" (6 feet, 7 inches). His democratic rule won such prestige that the German invaders let him keep his throne in the second World War despite his refusal to collaborate. On his death in 1947, he was succeeded by his son, Frederick IX. **CHRISTIAN ENDEAVOR, YOUNG PEOPLE'S SOCIETY OF.** On Feb. 2, 1881, the Rev. Francis E. Clark, a Congregational pastor in Portland, Me., gathered about 50 young people in his parlor and organized the first society of Christian Endeavor. From this small beginning the movement has spread until it includes more than 80,000 societies in all parts of the world, with an aggregate membership of about 4,000,000.

The International Society of Christian Endeavor comprises the various societies of North America which are also organized into city, county, and district unions. The World's Christian Endeavor Union, including societies of all countries, holds a world convention every four years.

Most of the societies have a constitution that declares the purpose to be "to promote an earnest Christian life among its members, to promote their mutual acquaintance, and to make them more useful servants of God." The members bind themselves to attend every meeting of the society to which they belong, unless prevented by absolute necessity, and to take some part, however slight, in every meeting. They are to read the Bible daily and to assist the pastor in the work of the church as he shall direct. The society is interdenominational.



In this little town of Bethlehem in the hills of Palestine the Christ Child was born. The two towers of the Church of the Nativity rise at the left. The church stands on the site of the stable in the cave which was the Child's birthplace.

## CHRISTMAS CUSTOMS *in the* NEW WORLD *and in the* OLD

**CHRISTMAS** The most joyous and blessed day of the year is Christmas—December 25, when Christians all over the world celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ. Their thoughts go back to that first Christmas morning nearly 2,000 years ago, when the newborn Christ Child lay in a manger in the Holy Land. From that humble birthplace the Child brought new faith and new hope to the world. Simple shepherds and Wise Men alike knelt before the Holy Child in devoted thanks for His birth. (For the story of the birth of Christ see the article Jesus Christ.)

Today men, women and children in every Christian land crowd into churches to give their thanks. Many attend midnight services on Christmas Eve. Beautiful decorations adorn the churches and rich music swells from organ and choir. The splendor and beauty is very different from the humble stable in Bethlehem

where Christ was born, but the message He brought to the world is the same—Glory be to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.

### Christmas in the Holy Land

On Christmas Eve in Bethlehem a long procession winds through the narrow streets. At its head march the church dignitaries, priests and acolytes. Their magnificent robes gleam in the light of their candles. They carry a tiny, gilded wicker cradle in it lies a beautiful wax image of the Infant Jesus.

At the old fortresslike Church of the Nativity they pause as each worshiper stoops to enter the low door. They gather in the Roman Catholic Chapel of St. Catherine, the Latin wing of the Church of the Nativity for the celebration of midnight Mass. Pilgrims from all the world worship during the reverent yet joyous singing. The ceremony ends when the

### THE CHURCH OF THE NATIVITY



This tiny entry is all that is left of the original door, which was sealed during the Crusades to bar mounted Saracen warriors.



Ornate lamps filled with pure olive oil light the vaulted interior of the Church of the Nativity, built by Constantine in 327.

## GROTTO OF THE NATIVITY—THE BIRTHPLACE OF CHRIST

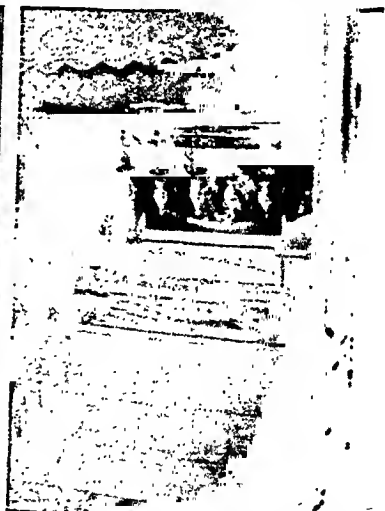


Under the Church of the Nativity is a grotto, once the cave-stable where the Christ Child is said to have been born.

A star marks the supposedly exact spot. Through a hole in the star's center, pilgrims put their hands down to the holy place.



This is the Grotto of the Nativity. The church belongs to the Orthodox Eastern faith but contains a Roman Catholic altar.



Here is the canopied Manger, raised on marble and lit by lamps on gold chains. Inside is a wax image of the Infant Jesus.

Patriarch of Jerusalem carries the image of the Christ Child to the ornate glass and marble manger in the Grotto of the Nativity under the church.

On the day before Christmas, there are all-denominational services in the nearby Field of the Shepherds and in the courtyard of the Church of the Nativity.

#### A Gala Day for American Children

Christmas is a joyous religious feast, and Americans have extended the glad spirit of the day to bring ex-

tra happiness to children. For fortunate American youngsters it is an exciting day of gifts, sparkling Christmas trees, red and white candy canes, turkey, cookies, and ice cream.

In the North people hope for a "white Christmas," when colored lights in the homes, store windows, and even the streets will glisten against fresh snow. Two loved Christmas songs herald the gay beauty of a snowy yule—'Jingle Bells' and 'I'm Dreaming of a White

## THE NATIVITY SCENE



In this manger scene Giotto shows the 'Adoration of the Kings'. The fresco is in the Capella Scrovegni in Padua, Italy.



Today in the United States, as in Europe through the centuries the manger scene—or crèche—holds reverent interest.

Christmas' The season has become increasingly commercialized by stores and other businesses, but to children there is still only the glad, friendly spirit of 'Merry Christmas to all!'

#### All Help to Make Christmas Festive

Preparations to make the yule season the cheeriest of the year begin long before Christmas Day. Right after Thanksgiving the stores begin to put on their Christmas dress of gleaming decorations. Parades with beautiful floats thread the main streets of large cities. Small towns as well as great cities line their business streets with red, green and other colored lights, giant wreaths of holly or evergreens, bells and colorful storybook figures.

Loud-speakers spread the festive music of chime and carols. On corners and in stores stand the jolly red-suited 'helpers of Santa Claus' (see Santa Claus). In residential sections the tangy freshness of fir and pine drifts from Christmas trees. Wreaths, greens, scarlet ribbons, and candles decorate homes. Colored lights sparkle like stars in trees on the lawn or on the outlines of the houses. The very air seems to tingle with eagerness and good cheer.

Schools and other groups rehearse pageants and plays to be given just before the holidays. In many schools boys and girls clean and mend their old toys for less fortunate children. Classes send letters to students in other communities or in foreign lands.

#### Charity and Good Will to the Needy

The American Christmas especially remembers the needy. Every community sees that some joy comes to its less fortunate members. Schools, churches and charitable civic groups collect food and clothing to be given to the poor. Many groups give entertainment and presents to children whose parents cannot.

In many places Christmas Eve is an outdoor community festival—a custom that may have come from the outdoor fetes of Spain and Italy. Young and old gather around a huge Christmas tree for carols. In Alhambra, Calif., is another type of community fete. Hundreds of giant evergreen trees, planted along both sides of a road, are hung with colored lights to form a "mile of Christmas trees." In the South fireworks flare on Christmas Eve and boom on Christmas Day.

#### Christmas Helps World Business

The Christmas celebration helps thousands of persons to make a living. They range from American manufacturers and farmers to glass blowers in Germany and Japan, who make ornaments for Christmas trees. Decorations, colored papers for wrapping gifts, ribbons, seals and greeting cards all represent large businesses. Christmas food is a major item in trade.

Christmas trees also provide considerable business. Once trees were cut wastefully, now the increasing practice is to cut only where crowded young evergreens need to be thinned out.

#### The Manger Scene

Most American Christmas customs were brought here by the colonists from their various homelands. An especially beautiful custom from Latin lands in the religious spirit of Christmas is the manger scene.

This is a small model of the cave-stable where the Christ Child was born, with figures of people and animals. Italians call it the *presepio*. In Spain it is the *nacimiento*, in France the *crèche*.

Nearly every Catholic church in the world also has its manger scene, or *crib*. St. Francis is said to have started the custom. On Christmas Eve in 1224 he is supposed to have set up a stable in a corner of a village church near Assisi, with real persons and an-

## CAROLING THE TIDINGS OF CHRISTMAS

imals to represent those of the first Christmas. Today the usual manger scene is a hill built of stones, covered with moss or greens. The figures of Mary and Joseph are near the cradle. In the background are the animals, shepherds, and the Wise Men. Above the hill are suspended angels, or a star, or dove.

In Catholic lands the whole family helps to build the scene, usually on a table in a corner of the living room. At twilight on Christmas Eve the children light the manger scene with candles. They relight them every night until Epiphany, or Twelfth-night, which is the twelfth day after Christmas. The scene is then put away for the next Christmas season. Many American homes follow this lovely custom.

#### Carols Herald Approach of Christmas

Traditional songs, called carols, add to the beauty and fellowship of the Christmas season. Their name in France is *noëls*; in Italy, *le pastorali*; in Germany, *Weihnachtslieder*. They probably began in the early church when, accompanied by songs of joy, Nativity plays told the story of Christ's birth.

Outdoor carol singing seems to have started in the Middle Ages when groups of people went from house to house to sing by torchlight. Through the centuries musicians wrote new carols, some sacred and others to celebrate feasting and drinking. Some of the best-loved carols are 'Silent Night, Holy Night', 'The First Nowell', 'God Rest Ye Merry, Gentlemen', and 'We Three Kings of Orient Are'.

#### Christmas Gifts Are an Ancient Custom

Giving presents is part of Christmas. The custom seems to go back to the ancient Romans, who distributed gifts during their midwinter festival. In the Bible story, the Wise Men, or Magi, brought gifts to the Christ Child the twelfth day after His birth.

In some countries, such as Italy and Spain, children do not get their presents on Christmas—they receive them on January 5, the eve of Epiphany. In several northern European countries they get them December 6, which is the feast of St. Nicholas, patron of children (see Santa Claus).

#### The Christmas Tree and Evergreens

The Christmas tree came into general use in comparatively recent times. The custom began in Germany and was first mentioned in an anonymous chronicle in 1605. There is a story, however, that Luther started the custom much earlier, putting candles on an evergreen to represent the stars on Christmas Eve.

Another story tells of St. Boniface when he was a missionary in Germany in the 8th century (see Boni-



Members of the Madison Square Boys' Club of New York City carry on English tradition as they carol for neighbors and shut-ins. Their costumes are of the days of 'A Christmas Carol'.

face, St.). He was trying to stamp out the pagan rite of sacrificing people to the oak tree. He led his followers into a forest at yule time. Showing them a fir tree, he said it pointed straight upward to the Christ Child. "Take this tree into your homes," he said, "as a sign of your new worship [Christianity]. It [the fir] lives when earth is darkest and has no stain of blood. Celebrate God's power no more in the forest with shameful rites, but in the sanctity of your homes with laughter and love."

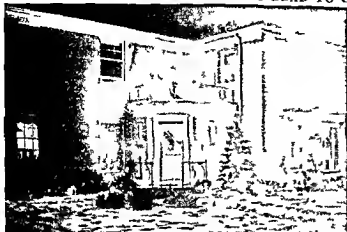
By the beginning of the 19th century nearly all Germany had adopted the Christmas tree. The custom

#### GOOD ST. NICHOLAS



In French and Dutch legends, St. Nicholas, bishop of Myra, distributes gifts. He is the forerunner of Santa Claus.

## OUTDOOR DECORATIONS LEAD TO CHEER WITHIN



Outdoor decoration of homes (left) has become so elaborate in many places. The scenes make a ne ghborly Merry Christmas



Trimming the family tree (right) is happy work. On Christmas Day it glitters with "snow" tinsel lights and little gifts

soon spread to most countries of northern Europe but is still unusual in Italy, Spain, and Latin America. The date of the first Christmas tree in the United States has been given as 1804 at Fort Dearborn in Illinois, but research has failed to substantiate it; the date now accepted is 1832 in Cambridge, Mass.

The use of evergreens for yule decorations began in northern Europe. Sweden, however, uses flowers because evergreens there symbolize death and grief. Italy, Spain, and some other nations also use flowers. Mistletoe too is a custom from northern Europe, where people once placed it over doorways as charms (see Mistletoe). The use of holly arose because its prickly leaves resembled Christ's crown of thorns and its scarlet berries suggested blood droplets.

#### Christmas Today in Northern Lands

In Scandinavian countries the yule celebration begins on Christmas Eve and ends in a Twelfth Night

party. Cakes or bread loaves baked in the shape of a boar recall ancient feasts of real boar meat. Little straw goats symbolize the old custom of saving the last sheaf of the harvest for its magic. In many places the stock get special feed and birds find sheaves of unthreshed grain put out for them.

On Christmas Eve the family gathers round its lighted Christmas tree. There may be a visit from the *Tomte* (also called *Tomtar*), who are kindly gnomes like brownies. One as an old man has a long white beard, wears a red cowl, and rings a bell; the other as an old woman carries a basket of gifts.

After games or songs comes a grand supper at 9 or 10 o'clock. The chief dish is *lutefisk*, dried fish that has been buried in ashes or soaked in lye water for days. Dessert is a rice porridge holding an almond or plum, and the one who gets it will be lucky for the next year. On Christmas Day country people go to

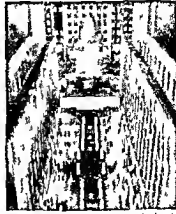
#### THE CHRISTMAS SPIRIT IN PUBLIC PLACES



In snowless Miami, Fla., a neon Santa and Christmas tree delight downtown throngs

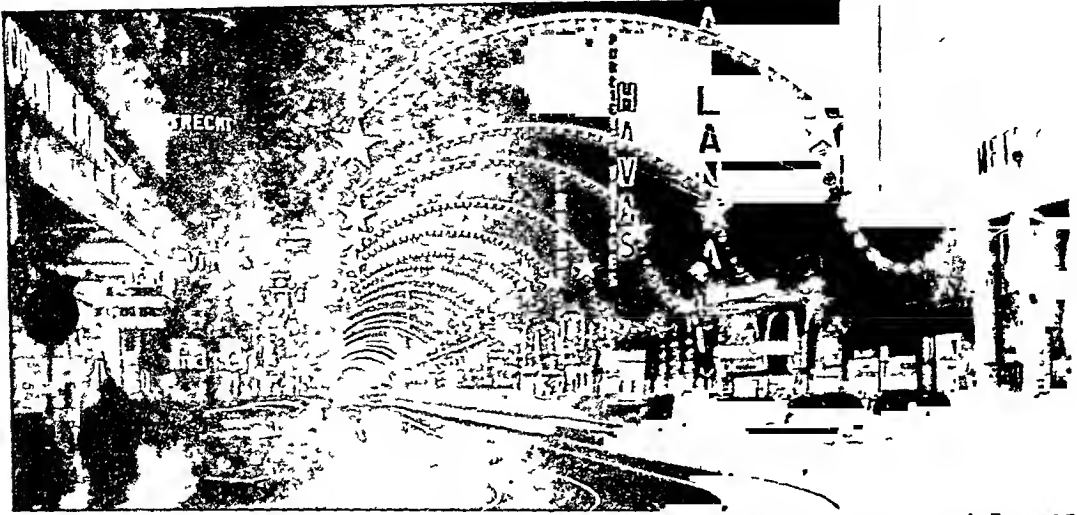


A giant tree in a huge railroad station is a friendly sight to travelers



New Yorkers admire the tree shining in Rockefeller Plaza among the skyscrapers

## BELGIANS WELCOME THE COMING OF CHRISTMAS



Great arches of colored lights and stars help bring yuletide gaiety and good will to the main streets of Brussels, Belgium.

Such extensive decoration is not as common in Europe as in the United States, where even small towns "dress up."

church while it is still dark. They rush home, for the first to arrive is said to be sure to reap his grain first in the next summer's harvest.

#### Christmas in Western Europe

Where old customs still exist, a man dressed as St. Nicholas visits German homes on December 5 and asks the children how they behaved during the year. On the feast of St. Nicholas, December 6, good children get gifts; the bad, switches. The happiest time for most German children is Christmas Eve when the whole family gathers about the tree to sing carols.

In Bavaria people representing the Holy Family give pageants on the roads; and tiny lighted trees are set over children's graves on Christmas Eve. In some places boys dressed as the Wise Men tell the Christmas story from house to house.

In Belgium and the Netherlands Christmas is almost entirely a day of church services and quiet family gatherings. In some Dutch villages the young men meet before dawn in the market place to carol. The leader holds aloft a pole with a lighted star to represent the bright star that guided the Wise Men.

The children's special day is the feast of St. Nicholas, December 6. The evening before, the kind saint calls at homes to ask about the children's behavior. The family has spread a white sheet on the floor, and his arrival is announced by a shower of sweets on it. As the children scramble for them, St. Nicholas enters, accompanied by his servant, who holds a rod in one hand for naughty children. After briefly warning or praising the children, and perhaps hearing them recite a verse, St. Nicholas promises to return.

The children then set their wooden shoes in the window or fireplace, or hang stockings, or set out baskets to receive St. Nicholas' gifts. They do not forget, however, to leave food in them for his white horse. While the children sleep, St. Nicholas comes back to cram the shoes or stockings with gifts.

France makes a great fete of yuletide. Street booths show gifts weeks before Christmas, but Christmas trees are rare. On Christmas Eve children expect either the Christ Child (*Petit Noël*) or Father Christmas (*Bonhomme Noël*) to fill their shoes with candy and toys. Grownups exchange gifts on New Year's Day. Almost every French family has a crèche.

Some village children carry a little candlelighted crèche through the streets while they carol for pennies. Many districts give Nativity plays, little changed from medieval days. People attend midnight Mass on Christmas Eve, then many make merry all night at family gatherings called *réveillons*.

#### Yuletide in Eastern Europe

In the Balkans and in other lands where the Orthodox Eastern faith prevails, Christmas is not merely the festival of Christ's birthday. The people feel that the Christ Child is actually reborn each Christmas, and they leave an empty chair for Him at the table and by the fire. Many people strew the floor with hay or straw to symbolize the Bethlehem manger. Ceremonies differ regionally, but everywhere the comment comes when someone says or chants, "Christ is born!" The others answer joyfully, "He is born indeed!"

The yule log is the center of festivities in the Balkans. The Serbs of Yugoslavia bring it in at sunset and burn it all night. On Christmas morning a neighbor enters the house. He throws a gloveful of wheat over the family and strikes the log with a shovel. As the sparks fly, he says: "May you have this year so many oxen, so many horses, so many pigs, so many beehives full of honey, so much happiness."

In Rumania families bake a special cake to represent the swaddling clothes of the Infant Christ. In the daytime from December 24 to 31, children hold processions. They carry a *steaua*, a six-pointed

wooden star high on a pole. A can lie gleams through the stars covering of colored paper and little bells tinkle around it. At night children go from house to house singing greetings (*columde*) carrying long bags to receive gifts.

#### Christmas in Italy and Spain

In Italy and Spain devout Catholics observe a one-day fast which starts at sunset on December 23. The holy season lasts until Epiphany. Nearly every home has its reproduction of the Nativity scene. In southern Italy children go about reciting Christmas poems the week before Christmas. Singers and bagpipers dressed as shepherds go from house to house asking permission to chant carols before the *presepio* on Christmas Day.

Italians and Spaniards decorate with flowers instead of evergreens and some trim olive trees with oranges for Christmas trees. In the colder parts of Italy people light a yule log (*ceppo*) on Christmas Eve. In both Spain and Italy fireworks crackle on Christmas Eve.

In Italy on Christmas Eve the children recite poems or little speeches before the *presepio*. At sunset cannon boom to signal the start of the holy festival. After prayers families break their fast with feasts of macaroni, eels, sweetmeats and usually a capon stuffed with chestnuts. They then draw presents from an Urn of Fate. Later many join processions carrying a wax image of the Holy Babe to church for midnight Mass.

The Spanish Christmas Eve *Noche Buena* (Holy Night) is more of a carnival. At night every home lights little oil lamps and illuminates the image of the Virgin with tapers. Children dance around the *nacimiento* (Nativity scene) to the music of tambourines and sing traditional joyous Nativity songs.

Young men and women dressed in their finest push through merry crowds in the streets to see the brilliantly lighted shops. At midnight bells call everyone to Mass. Afterward merry crowds fill the streets watching groups dance the lively *Jota*, the favorite Christmas dance. They stay far into Christmas morn.

Spanish children receive small gifts at the street festivals but in Italy wherever there is a yule log presents are usually given when the log is put on the fire. On Christmas Day children may get small gifts and candy, on New Year's Day relatives give them money. In Italy and Spain however the evening of January 5 is when children put out their shoes in hope of gifts. In Italy an old woman *La Befana* (the goblin) dressed in rags rides a broomstick. She is supposed to leave ashes in the shoes of bad children and gifts for the

good. In Spain it is the Three Kings or Wise Men who fill the children's shoes with gifts.

#### Christmas in Mexico

Mexicans observe Christmas chiefly as a religious feast. The celebration begins December 16 and ends on Christmas Eve. People everywhere hold *posadas* or pilgrimages to recall the experience of Mary and Joseph going from house to house in search of shelter. Each community chooses nine families; one of them makes a *posada* each night. Carrying images of Mary and Joseph, the family goes from house to house singing at the door and asking permission to enter.

Meanwhile people are holding a festival in each house. The pilgrims are refused admittance until they reach the house which contains a special altar—a different house each night. They enter that house and a mass is said. The mother of the family making the *posada* on the last night becomes the godmother and lays the image of the Christ Child on the altar.

#### STORE DISPLAYS ENCHANT YOUNG AND OLD



Store windows filled with decorations and gifts are like fairyland at Christmas time. These youngsters press cold noses to the window for a close look.



Large department stores spend months preparing spectacular aisle displays with a new theme yearly. This is in Marshall Field and Company Chicago.



between Mary and Joseph. All then attend midnight Mass and afterward go to the godmother's house for supper and a dance. People in many villages also give old plays called *pastorelas*, or pastorals.

Mexican children receive their gifts on January 6. A large, rough earthenware jar, called a *piñata*, filled with gifts, sweets, and nuts, is hung from the ceiling or from a tree in the patio. The young people, blindfolded, try to break the jar with a stick. When a lucky blow shatters it, they all snatch off their blindfolds and rush for the gifts.

#### South of the Equator

South of the equator, in Brazil, Argentina, and Peru, Christmas is the midsummer holiday. There is no snow. In Lima and elsewhere in Peru, people hold carnivals in the streets, and the air is gay with the strumming of guitars and the click of castanets. In Buenos Aires a great Christmas fair centers on a giant, electrically lighted tree in the plaza.

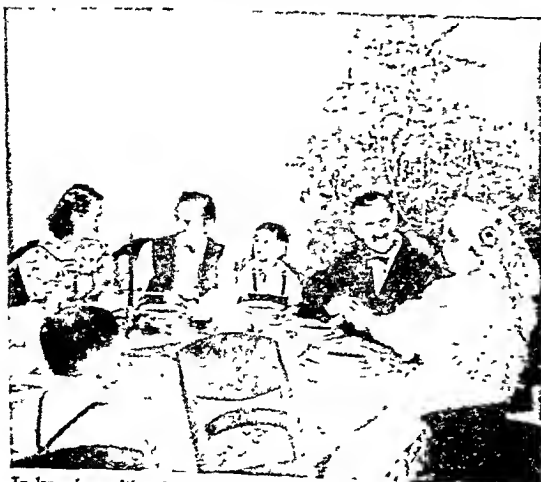
#### The Great Yuletides in "Olde England"

In no land and in no age has the celebration of Christmas been more elaborate and festive than in the England of the 16th and 17th centuries. The celebration began on Christmas Eve, or sometimes as early as December 16, and lasted until Twelfth-day. Pomp and revelry filled the royal palace, the great castles, and the manor houses. Every peasant hung mistletoe over his door and flung a yule log on his fire. Everyone kept holiday, except the bustling cooks and kitchen servants who prepared the feasts.

At the start of the Christmas season, or often as early as Halloween, a Lord of Misrule was appointed—a "grand captain of mischief" he was called by a Puritan in the days of Queen Elizabeth I. He appointed guards, and all decked themselves with ribbons and put bells on their legs. This "master of disports" managed the games and entertainments.

#### Mummers, Wassail, and Waits

Mummers, or masqueraders, roamed in gay groups, singing and dancing, or giving rude burlesque plays.



In keeping with a hospitable custom of Poland, this happy Chicago family is leaving a chair empty for an unexpected guest.

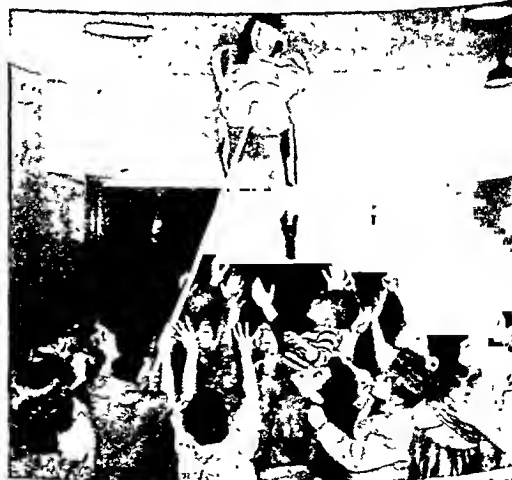
Girls usually dressed as boys, and men as women. Favorite figures for masquerade were St. George, the dragon, Hector, and Alexander the Great.

Every home, rich and poor, had its wassail bowl of hot, spiced ale or cider. In some places young farm

#### OLD CUSTOMS ARE EVER NEW



Little Hans, in West Germany, gleefully grins at what Kris Kringle left for him—in Dad's shoes, as they are bigger.



Eager Mexican children at a Chicago Catholic youth center hope the girl with the pole will break the *piñata*, holding their gifts.

## YULETIDE IN MANOR HOUSE AND CASTLE



At left four beruffled boys of Elizabethan England drag in the yule log. A young mother holds her son on it. In cap and



he is the Lord of Misrule. At right a medieval peasant leads a boar's head parade from the kitchen into the castle

men or girls went from house to house carrying a wassail bowl decorated in ribbons and garlands and inviting all to drink wassail (good health).

People sang carols all the season—religious carols morning and evening and gayer carols at merry-making. Musical groups called wassailers paraded the streets at night or sang and played in manor halls for gifts.

#### Christmas Eve in an Elizabethan Manor Hall

The pillars of the great hall its tapestried walls and all the windows gleamed with holly bay laurel and rosemary. From the ceiling and over doorways hung clumps of mistletoe heavy with berries for one was plucked for every girl kissed beneath them. Servants piled the massive oak tables with stouyns of beef capons geese little roast pigs and meat pies. There were great dishes of plumb porridge the forerunner of plum pudding symbolizing the richness of the Wise Men's gifts platters of brawn the pressed and pickled meat of the boar and fancy little currant cakes called yule babies.

As the smiling lord and his lady and their neighbors and tenants watched boys dragged in the yule log. A Christmas candle of monstrous size was lighted and placed on the high table to burn through all the 12 nights.

At the first flicker of the candle the feasting and merry-making began with carols and wassailing. One of the favorite games was snapdragon in which the players tried to snatch a raisin from a bowl of blazing sparks with their fingers.

Here he comes with flaming bowl  
Don't he mean to take his toll  
Snap! Snap! Dragon  
Take care you don't take too much  
Be not greedy in your clutch  
Snap! Snap! Dragon!  
With his blue and lapping tongue  
Many of you will be stung  
Snap! Snap! Dragon!

As midnight neared the chimes rang out and we sang the joyous tidings of the Christ Child's coming. Then all the merry-makers trooped to a midnight church service. The woodsy fragrance of evergreens filled the church. On early Christmas morning every one attended another church service. This was followed by breakfast in the manor hall.

#### The Great Christmas Feast

By 11 o'clock all were ready for the ceremonious Christmas dinner. Heralded by trumpets and minstrel music the Lord of Misrule entered the hall. Behind him marched the head servants and sewer holding high a silver platter. It held the most important dish of the feast a boar's head garlanded with rosemary and bay with an apple or lemon in its mouth. Torchbearers accompanied the sewer fol-

#### CHRISTMAS IN OLD NORWAY



Peasants tied bundles of oats to sticks lifting them over the houses. They believed that the oats helped ward off evil.

loved by a stately procession of nobles, knights, and ladies. Moving toward the great table, they chanted:

The boar's head, I understand,  
Is the chief service in this land;  
Look wherever it is to be found  
Servito cum cantico.

Amid the singing, the sewer set the platter before his lord. The fairest lady of the company then carried high another platter bearing a peacock. The proud bird had been skinned, stuffed with spices and sweet herbs, roasted, and then sewed into its own skin, with all the brilliant plumage still on. The fair lady had the honor of serving it.

After these ceremonies, servants brought the was-sail bowl to fill the mugs. Following the many toasts, the long feast began, lasting into the night.

#### Boxing Day and Twelfth-day

In the church calendar the day after Christmas is St. Stephen's Day. It is commonly known in England, however, as Boxing Day, due to the custom of giving Christmas boxes of money to servants, tradesmen, and others who serve the public. The custom originated with the ancient Romans.

In the old English Christmas season, Epiphany, or Twelfth-day, was also a day for presents. In memory of the Magi the English ruler presented gold, frankincense, and myrrh at the altar; and the people exchanged gifts. A feature of Twelfth-day was a huge cake containing a bean. Whoever got the piece with the bean was king for the day, with the envied title of "King of the Bean."

Yuletide celebrations reached their height about the time of Shakespeare. Under the Puritan regime they were banned. When Charles II came to the throne many of the old customs were revived and still exist, but the celebration of a 12-day-long festival has passed. Only Boxing Day and Christmas Day are

observed. On Christmas Eve the children expect a visit from Father Christmas.

#### Christmas in the American Colonies

Colonial New England did not celebrate Christmas. The stern Puritan colonists believed that such festivities were wholly pagan and forbade them by law. A Massachusetts law enacted in 1659 read: "Whoever shall be found observing any such day as Christmas or the like, either by forebearing of labor, feasting, or in any other way . . . shall be subject to a fine of five shillings." The Puritan influence was so strong that not until the middle of the 19th century did Christmas generally become a day of festivity and gift-giving in the United States.

The fun-loving Dutch colonists of New Amsterdam, however, celebrated Christmas as their chief holiday. They brought the old customs from their homeland, especially the Christmas stocking and observance of the feast day of St. Nicholas.

In the Southern colonies the planters celebrated the yuletide with feasting, singing, and dancing. On many plantations slaves were given a holiday as long as the great yule log burned.

#### The Origin of December 25 as Christmas

The exact date of Christ's birth is not known. For the first two centuries, while Christians were being persecuted for their new faith, the Christian church did not celebrate Christmas. Soon after A.D. 200, however, Christmas was being observed, but on various dates—especially January 6, March 25, and December 25. By the middle of the 4th century the church in the West (the Roman Catholic church) was celebrating Christmas on December 25. Later various branches of the Orthodox Eastern church also accepted December 25 for observing Christ's birthday.

In England the festival came to be called *Christ's Masse* (Christ's Mass) because a special Mass was

#### AMERICAN YOUNGSTERS PRESENT OLD ENGLISH MUMMERS' PLAY



Here at the Pine Mountain Settlement School in Kentucky, "St. George," right, holding high a wooden sword, has "slain"

the dragon. It lies on the floor. Everyone seems to have enjoyed the battle. The boys helped make their own costumes.

and that day. The French name *Aoel* the Spanish *atañad* and the Italian *Natale* mean birthday. Germans call the season *Weihnachten* 'holy nights'.

**Many Customs Even Older Than Christianity**  
Many of the customs now associated with Christmas go back thousands of years when the people of Europe worshiped pagan gods. They celebrated the winter solstice December 21 or 22 as the birthday of the sun—heralding the beginning of longer days. The early Christian church took the ancient festival and gave new meaning to it—the religious meaning of Christianity—and made it a holy season. Many of the customs can be traced back to the again midwinter festival of the Teutonic people of northern Europe. It was their gayest time of the year. They called the month *Yule* or *Jol* from which comes the word 'jolly'. Closed in by winters of bitter cold and long nights they rejoiced when the year's darkest day passed for they knew the sun would again grow stronger and the days longer.

#### The Yule Log and Boar's Head

Two of their great festival customs were bringing in the yule log and the procession of the boar's head. The great yule log was brought in on Christmas Eve and was lighted with a brand kept from the log of the year before. Its ashes saved through the year were supposed to guard the house from fire and lightning. They were also thought to have power to heal wounds and to make animals and fields fertile.

The boar's head procession goes back to when the Romans believed the hog harbored the spirit which made corn grow. At yule time they sacrificed a boar to the 'corn spirit' to bring good crops; then ate the meat. In Scandinavia today the boar is represented by little cakes or bread loaves baked in the shape of a pig. In medieval England a boar's head was brought

#### ANCESTOR OF THE CHRISTMAS CARD



This is said to be the first Christmas greeting card. It was printed in England in 1842 and is now in the British Museum.

into every Christmas banquet. The custom is still carried on at Queen's College, Oxford.

#### Christmas in Art and Literature

Down through the centuries Christmas has inspired great paintings, poems and stories. The Nativity scene has been the favorite subject of master painters such as Fra Angelico, Giotto and Sandro Botticelli. Albrecht Dürer portrayed it in one of his memorable engravings. A superb example of the inspiration that Christmas has given to poets is John Milton's *On the Morning of Christ's Nativity*. One of the best-loved Christmas stories is Charles Dickens' *A Christmas Carol*.

The carefully selected bibliography that follows lists many stories, songs and plays for celebrating the Christmas season in school and at home.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CHRISTMAS

##### Christmas in Story

- Alden R. M. *Why the Chimes Rang* (Bobbs 1945)  
 Aldrich B. S. *Journey into Christmas* (Appleton 1949)  
 Assoc. for Childhood Education. Literature Committee. *Told under the Christmas Tree* (Macmillan 1948)  
 Becker M. L. ed. *Home Book of Christmas* (Dodd 1941)  
 Brock E. L. *Birds Christmas Tree* (Knopf 1946)  
 Brown M. W. *Christmas in the Barn* (Crowell 1954)  
 Carroll G. H. *Christmas without Johnny* (Macmillan 1950)  
 Corder G. D. *Ethan the Shepherd Boy* (Harcourt-Cokesbury 1948)  
 Chambers M. C. M. *The Three Kings* (Oxford 1946)  
 Cooke Alister. *Christmas Eve* (Knopf 1952)  
 Cousins Margaret. *Uncle Edgar and the Reluctant Saint* (Farrar Straus 1945)  
 Daugherty Alice comp. *Christmas: A Book of Stories Old and New* (Viking 1950)  
 Dechen Charles. *Christmas Stories* (World Pub. Co. 1946)  
 Frost F. M. *Sleigh Bells for Wundy Foot* (Whitlsey 1943)  
 Goudge Elizabeth. *The Well of the Star* (Coward 1941)  
 Gunnerson Gunnar. *The Good Shepherd* (Bobbs 1940)  
 Harquet Paul. *One Red Rose for Christmas* (Longmans 1950)  
 Jackson J. H. *Christmas Flower* (Harcourt 1951)  
 Jewett S. O. *Betty Lewister's Christmas* (Houghton 1904)  
 Jones J. M. O. *A Little Child, the Christmas Miracle Told in Bible Verses* (Viking 1946)  
 Kelly E. P. *The Christmas Nightingale* (Macmillan 1932)  
 Lathrop D. P. *An Angel in the Woods* (Macmillan 1947)  
 Lebaron Rosale. *Man Who Sold Christmas* (Longmans 1951)

#### YANKS BRING SANTA TO WAR WAIFS



Wherever American forces go they make friends with the children. Here Marines give a Christmas party for tiny Koreans.

- Lohan, Robert, ed. *Christmas Tales for Reading Aloud* (Dave, 1946).
- Lovelace, Maud. *Trees Kneel at Christmas* (Crowell, 1951).
- Menotti, G. C. *Amahl and the Night Visitors* (McGraw, 1952).
- Milhoux, Katherine. *Snow over Bethlehem* (Scribner, 1945).
- Posselt, Eric, ed. *World's Greatest Christmas Stories* (Pren-tice-Hall, 1949).
- Roehrenbeck, W. J., ed. *Christmastide; a Catholic Treasury for Young and Old* (Daye, 1948).
- Saver, J. L. *Light at Tern Rock* (Viking, 1951).
- Sawyer, Ruth. *Long Christmas* (Viking, 1941).
- Sowyer, Ruth. *The Christmas Anna Angel* (Viking, 1944).
- Sawyer, Ruth. *This Way to Christmas* (Harper, 1937).
- Shining Tree and Other Christmas Stories* (Knopf, 1940).
- Singmaster, Elsie. *Stories to Read at Christmas* (Houghton, 1940).
- Stifter, Adolbert. *Rock Crystal; a Christmas Tale* (Pantheon, 1945).
- Tazewell, Charles. *The Littlest Angel* (Children's Press, 1946).
- Tazewell, Charles. *The Small One; a Story for Those Who Like Christmas and Small Donkeys* (Winston, 1947).
- Thorne-Thomsen, Gudrun. *The Sky Bed; a Norwegian Christmas* (Scribner, 1944).
- Tudor, Tasha. *Snow Before Christmas* (Oxford, 1941).
- Vance, Morguerite. *While Shepherds Watched* (Dutton, 1946).
- Van Dyke, Henry. *Story of the Other Wise Man* (Grosset, 1942).
- Wagenknecht, E. C., ed. *Fireside Book of Yuletide Tales* (Bobbs, 1948).
- Wiggin, K., D. S. *The Birds' Christmas Carol* (Houghton, 1941).
- Yates, Elizabeth. *Once in the Year* (Coward, 1947).

#### Christmas Customs

- Auld, W. M. *Christmas Traditions* (Macmillan, 1931).
- Becker, M. L., ed. *Home Book of Christmas* (Dodd, 1941).
- Christian Herald. *Fifty Years of Christmas; an Anthology of Stories, Poems, and Short Pieces from the Christian Herald* (Rinehart, 1951).
- Count, E. W. *4000 Years of Christmas* (Schuman, 1948).
- Crippen, T. G. *Christmas and Christmas Lore* (Blackie, 1936).
- Heller, Ruth. *Christmas, Its Carols, Customs and Legends* (Hall & McCreary, 1948).
- Holtes, A. C. *1001 Christmas Facts and Fancies* (De La Mare, 1944).
- Pouli, H. E. *The Story of the Christmas Tree* (Houghton, 1944).
- Petersham, M. F. and Miska. *The Christ Child* (Doubleday, 1931).
- Schouffler, R. H., ed. *Christmas* (Dodd, 1907).
- Sechrist, E. H., comp. *Christmas Everywhere* (Macrae Smith, 1936).
- Weiser, F. X. *Christmas Book* (Harcourt, 1952).

#### Christmas in Poetry and Song

- Brewton, S. W. and J. E., eds. *Christmas Bells Are Ringing* (Macmillan, 1951).
- Campbell, Vivian, ed. *A Christmas Anthology of Poetry and Painting* (Womans Press, 1947).
- Eaton, A. T., comp. *The Animals' Christmas* (Viking, 1944).
- Frost, F. M. *Christmas in the Woods* (Harper, 1942).
- Frost, F. M. *Christmas Is Shaped Like Stars* (Crowell, 1948).
- Heath, M. R., comp. *Margaret Tarrant's Christmas Garland* (Hale, 1942).
- Moore, C. C. *The Night Before Christmas* (Grosset, 1944).
- O'Horan, Pádraig. *Gabriel Was a Troubadour; Poems of the Nativity* (Morehouse, 1948).
- Preuss, Theodore, comp. and arr. *Christmas in Song* (Ruhank, 1947).
- Smith, Irene, comp. *Santa Claus Book* (Watts, 1948).
- Then, J. N. *Christmas* (Bruce, 1934).
- Wagner, Franz, ed. *Trapp-Family Book of Christmas Songs* (Pantheon, 1950).
- Wheeler, Opal. *Sing for Christmas* (Dutton, 1943).

#### Christmas Plays and Pageants

- Benét, S. V. *A Child Is Born* (W. H. Baker, 1951).
- Clark, H. M. *Three Wise Men Ride By* (Banner Play Bureau, 1947).
- Donovan, A. D. *In the Shepherds' Field* (Samuel French, 1944).
- Dykes Beachy, E. B. *In Christmas Carol Land* (Baker, 1948).
- Faw, M. H., ed. *Big Book of Christmas Entertainment* (Beckley-Cardy, 1941).
- French, F. F. *The Birth of the Song, "Silent Night"; An Original Historical Radio Drama for School Public Address Systems* (W. H. Baker, 1950).
- Ham, A. M. *The Vision at Chartres* (J. Fischer, 1941).
- Jones, J. M. O. *Pageant Text for a Little Child, the Christmas Story Told in Bible Verses* (Viking, 1946).
- Milhoux, Katherine. *The First Christmas Crib* (Scribner, 1944).
- Moser, Morion. *Christmas Bells* (Heuer Pub. Co., 1946).
- Plays (Periodical). *Christmas Plays for Young Actors* (Play, 1950).
- Roberts, H. M. *The Littlest Angel* (Banner Play Bureau, 1951).
- Ryerson, Florence. *Star Song* (French, 1944).
- Sonford, A. P. and Schouffler, R. H., eds. *Christmas Plays* (Dodd, 1932).
- Shannon, M. B. *The Promised One, a Pageant of the First Christmas* (Row, 1943).

**CHROMIUM.** This silvery white metal, discovered in 1797, remained largely a laboratory curiosity for more than a century. Small quantities were employed to harden steel alloys, and its many compounds found some use in several industries. But not one person in ten thousand knew about its true merits. Then, between 1915 and 1930, came its spectacular rise to a place beside iron, copper, aluminum, tin, lead, and nickel, as one of the leading industrial metals.

The long delay in its use was due to its high resistance to heat and chemicals. Extracting it from its ores by methods formerly used was both costly and difficult. But it is this same unyielding character which makes it so useful today.

Because of its toughness and resistance to corrosion, chromium might be called the "guardian metal." As little as 10 per cent of it mixed with iron or steel protects these from corrosion, producing the famous "stainless and rustless" alloys out of which thousands of articles are now made, from kitchen knives, surgeons' instruments, and watch cases to automobile radiators and roofing (see *Alloys*). Chromium plating has largely replaced nickel plating because of its superior hardness and resistance to chemical action. Ball bearings of chrome steel have been known to sustain a pressure of more than a million pounds to the square inch. Heat-resisting chromium alloys are employed for high-temperature chemical apparatus, and the chief chromium ore, called *chromite*, is used to make bricks for lining furnaces.

Chromium was named from the Greek word *chromos*, meaning color, because of the striking variety of hues it gives to its compounds. Chromium is one of the chief ingredients in mineral and metallic colors, being largely responsible for the color of many gems, such as the emerald, ruby, serpentine, alexandrite, chrome garnet, and some sapphires (see *Jewelry*), while the chromates of barium, lead, and zinc give us the pigments lemon chrome, chrome yellow, chrome red,

chrome orange, zinc yellow, and zinc green. Another pigment, chrome green, is much used in the manufacture of green glass.

Chrome alum and chromic acid find a wide application in tanning and dyeing processes. Potassium bichromate (also called "dichromate") has a remarkable effect on gelatinous solutions with which it is mixed. When the latter are dried and exposed to light they become insoluble in water. This phenomenon is applied to the manufacture of waterproof glues and in photography and photoengraving. Care must be taken in handling chromites, for they are poisonous. If they enter the blood through cracks in the skin chromate poisoning destroys red corpuscles.

Chromium is extracted from chromite which contains iron and oxygen. The United States leads in consumption, largely through imports. California and Oregon mine some chromite. Chief producers are Russia, South Africa, Turkey, Southern Rhodesia, the Philippines, Cuba, Yugoslavia, and New Caledonia.

**CHRYSANTHEMUM** When the summer flowers have disappeared and the cold winds of autumn blow the bright-colored chrysanthemum shows forth in all its glory. In favorable seasons it continues to bloom well on toward Christmas.

This varied flower, symmetrical or ragged prism or bi-ovate, straight or curled less than an inch to eight inches in diameter, streaked spotted or single-hued, ranging in color from white or yellow to lavender or deep red, is one of the most popular flowers in the world, ranking fourth in importance in the United States as a commercial flower. Because

of its easy cultivation the chrysanthemum can be used to advantage by amateur gardeners and is widely employed as a border plant, its propagation being secured by means of cuttings. The small pompons and the immense "show" flowers are little grown out of doors for they require more care than the medium-sized ones and if left to themselves out of doors would speedily lose the special features that make them valuable. Yellow and white are the prevailing colors the name itself meaning "golden flower." All varieties are either scentless or have a slightly disagreeable odor.

Although hundreds of different varieties, wild and cultivated are now found in all countries of temperate climate in the Northern Hemisphere the original home of the chrysanthemum was in China. From China it was introduced into Japan 2,000 years ago, and thence in the 14th century after the War of the Chrysanthemums which lasted 68 years the flower was adopted as the heraldic emblem of the imperial household. Today it vies with the cherry blossom in popularity among the Japanese. It was brought to Europe in 1764 and later to America everywhere gaining popularity quickly. The more showy varieties of mums are of comparatively recent origin, the result of skilled selection and cultivation.

The chrysanthemum belongs to the family Compositae. *Chrysanthemum indicum* and *Chrysanthemum morifolium* of Asia are the parent species of the Chinese and Japanese chrysanthemums of greenhouses and gardens. Other garden favorites are feverfew (*C. parthenium*) and marguerite (*C. frutescens*).

## The STORY of CHRISTIANITY

**CHURCH, CHRISTIAN** The most powerful single influence in all history has been Christianity. This influence has shown itself not only in the religious beliefs and spiritual ideals of the human race, but in the march of political events and institutions as well. In recognition of that fact, we divide history into the time before Christ (B.C.) and the time after Christ (A.D.), for *Anno Domini*, "Year of Our Lord."

Yet Christianity did not take the world by storm. At the time of the death of Jesus its founder, his immediate followers numbered scarcely a hundred persons. For several years after the crucifixion, the disciples remained at Jerusalem preaching and making converts with great success. The new faith met so much hostility from Jewish leaders in the capital city, that the followers of Jesus withdrew to Samaria, Damascus and Antioch. In these places there were many Jews among whom Peter and his fellow apostles labored. (See Apostles.)

Up to this time the new faith had been spread only among the Jews. A new convert, Saul of Tarsus, afterwards the Apostle Paul, did most to admit the Gentiles (non-Jewish people) to the privileges of the new religion. During more than 30 years of unceasing activity, Paul established many churches in Asia Minor and Greece. (See Paul, Saint.)

At the close of the first century there were Christians everywhere in Asia Minor. By A.D. 150 the Roman Empire was studded with churches, a few existing even as far east as Arabia, Persia, and India. A hundred years later we hear of missionaries along the Rhine on the Danubian frontier, and in Britain.

Teaching as it did, a doctrine of humility and brotherhood, Christianity won most of its early converts among the poor and the oppressed. When its adherents became so numerous that their refusal to worship the emperor and observe other pagan rites and customs seriously disturbed the political authorities of the Roman Empire, efforts were made to suppress them.

### Persecutions of the Early Christians

Despite the tidings of "peace on earth, good-will to men" which Christianity brought to the world, the Christians suffered terrible persecution for nearly three centuries. Sometimes furious mobs in the large cities attacked the followers of the new faith. In addition to these occasional outbreaks were the systematized efforts of the Roman government to crush the Christians, beginning with the persecutions under Nero in 64 and Domitian in 95. Only Gaul and Britain seem to have escaped. The persecution beginning in 303 under Diocletian was the last and the most severe.

Following his abdication in 305, it was directed principally against Christians in the East. They were imprisoned, lost their privileges as Roman citizens, were thrown to animals in the arena, stretched on racks, and burned during public demonstrations. Following the close of this persecution in 311, Galerius, the ruler in the East, issued an edict permitting Christians to worship as they pleased. In 313, Emperor Constantine through the Edict of Milan proclaimed the principle of religious toleration by giving every person freedom to practise the religion he preferred, and in 324 established Christianity as the state religion.

#### Nicene Creed Adopted

To settle questions of doctrine Constantine called together in 325 the first general or ecumenical council at Nicaea, representing the entire Christian church. At this council the Arian heresy, which denied the divinity of Christ, was condemned and the Nicene creed was adopted. This became the basis of all church doctrine from that time forward. All who departed from that creed were regarded as heretics.

While Christianity was conquering the world, its followers were grouping themselves into societies or churches. The worshipers met in private houses, where they sang hymns, listened to readings from the scriptures, and commemorated the Last Supper of the Savior with his disciples. Certain officers, called "presbyters" or elders, were chosen to conduct the services and instruct the converts. The chief presbyter received the name of "overseer" or bishop. Each church, in addition, had one or more "deacons," who visited those who were ill and relieved the wants of the poor. Thus every Christian community formed a little brotherhood of earnest men and women, united by a common faith and a common belief in their mission of spreading the gospel of Christ.

As the number of converts increased and the Christian communities gained in size and strength, important changes took place. To fulfill its mission as a world-wide institution, the Church had to wage unceasing warfare against all the forces of paganism. Hence there arose, in time, a system of church government modeled on that of the empire.

#### Organization of the Medieval Church

At the head was the pope—the bishop of Rome, who claimed to be the successor of St. Peter and as such to have supreme authority in matters of faith.

The people in the Church were divided into two great classes, the *laity*, or ordinary members, and the *clergy*, or officers. The latter were distinguished by shaving the crown of the head (*tonsure*) and by their distinctive dress. They were required to take a vow not to marry, known as the vow of *celibacy*. They enjoyed the *benefit of clergy*, the privilege of trial by a church court. There were two classes of the clergy, the *regular clergy* (monks and friars), who lived according to the rules (*regule*), and the *secular clergy*, those who lived in the world as bishops and parish priests. (See Monks and Monasticism.)

Among the principal duties of the clergy was the administration of the sacraments. These sacraments were seven in number: *baptism*; *confirmation*; the *holy eucharist* or Lord's Supper; *penance*, which included confession to a priest; *marriage*; *extreme unction* or the anointing with oil of those about to die; and *holy orders*, by which laymen were raised

to the priesthood. After the Reformation, some Protestant denominations rejected various of these sacraments, most of them retaining only baptism and the Lord's Supper.

*Indulgences*, remitting temporal punishment for sins, were granted by the Church as rewards for good works. Offenders could be disciplined by *excommunication* or *anathema*, which cut them off from the privilege of the sacraments and perhaps even from any association with the faithful. Whole cities or countries might be deprived of the usual services of religion by the *interdict*. Persons fleeing from justice or persecution might take refuge in a church or its precincts and claim the right of *sanctuary*, or protection against arrest and violence.

The bishop was usually the most powerful figure in his locality. His church or *cathedral* was situated in the principal city of the diocese. The cathedral "chapter," consisting of members of the clergy called "canons," assisted the bishop.

Most of the monasteries kept up "annals" or "chronicles" in which the important events of each year were set down. They also taught selected youths to read and write, so that there might always be learned men to carry on the work of the Church; these were the only schools at that time. The church organizations also cared for the poor and the sick, maintaining the only hospitals and almshouses of the period.

#### The Great Schism of 1054

As the Church grew in power and influence, it was troubled by many disputes, within and without. There was constant friction on questions of church government with the eastern branch, headed by the patriarch of Constantinople, which refused to recognize the supremacy which the pope claimed over the entire church. This resulted in the great split or schism in 1054 of the Roman church and the Orthodox Eastern or Greek church. A number of national churches grew up within the Orthodox Eastern church, such as the churches in Russia, Greece, Serbia, Rumania, and Bulgaria. These have existed for centuries as self-governing organizations united only by common ties of faith and dogma. They have been greatly affected by the far-reaching political change of recent decades.

After the schism of 1054, disputes arose within the Roman church on questions of faith, abuses of power and succession to the papacy. These made necessary the summoning of church councils. Among the most important of these were the Lateran Council (1215) and the councils of Pisa (1409), Constance (1414-18) and Basel (1431-49).

These disputes came to a climax in the 16th century in the great upheaval known as the Reformation which was not only a revolt against the Roman Catholic church as an organization but against many of its religious doctrines as well (see Luther, Martin Reformation). Out of this dramatic religious revolution grew Protestantism, with its many divergent groups and denominations.

#### Growth of Protestantism

In Switzerland, the Reformation was headed by Ulrich Zwingli, who won many converts, especially in the cities (see Zwingli, Ulrich). John Calvin, a French priest who left the church, carried on the work of Zwingli in Geneva and clarified and organized Protestant doctrine. Calvinism, from which modern Presbyterianism is derived, became a great force in Geneva and elsewhere, particularly in Scotland. In France

the Huguenots, who took their organization and form of belief from Calvin, gained a strong foothold (*See* Calvin, Huguenots)

The reform movement in England took a different course than it did in Continental Europe. In fact, it began as a diplomatic rather than a doctrinal dispute. When the pope refused to annul one of the marriages of Henry VIII, the king persuaded Parliament to pass acts freeing the English church from the power of the pope (*see* Henry, Kings of England)

By the Act of Supremacy of 1534, the king became "supreme head" of the new national church. This remained Catholic, however, in theology and forms of worship and did not become really Protestant until the publication of the Prayer Books of 1549 and 1552 during the reign of Edward VI. Under Mary Tudor, Protestantism was checked and the English church was reunited to the Church of Rome (*see* Mary, Queens of England). Queen Elizabeth I restored the reformed church, and by the Act of Supremacy of 1559 she was made the supreme governor of the church. An Act of Uniformity again established Protestant forms of worship, and the doctrine of the Church of England was formulated in the Thirty-nine Articles (1576), which still remain the official statement of faith (*See* Elizabeth I)

#### Rise of New Denominations

Many Englishmen however desired more radical reforms, which would do away with all observances not based directly on the scriptures. These "puritans" as they were called, soon broke up into groups which differed not only in doctrine but in form of church government (*see* Puritans). Among them were the Baptist and the Congregational churches and the Society of Friends or Quakers (*see* Quakers, Fox, George). Presbyterianism (the form of church government set forth by Calvin at Geneva) was brought to Scotland by John Knox (*see* Knox). Methodism followed the economic and spiritual unrest in England during the 18th century (*see* Wesley)

After the first quarter of the 17th century the American Colonies became the scene of some of the most significant chapters in the story of Christianity. Catholic missionaries in their zeal for evangelizing traversed vast unexplored areas of the New World and blazed the trail not only for their faith but also for trade and commerce (*see* Canada). The 13 American Colonies were settled in large part by various dissenting groups from England and other European countries who desired freedom to worship in their own way (*see* American Colonies, 'Mayflower', Plymouth, Mass)

By the middle of the 18th century Congregationalism was the prevailing type of church government in the Puritan colonies. The Church of England had made beginnings in Virginia early in the 17th century, and after the Revolutionary War the churches of this faith developed into the independent body called the Protestant Episcopal church. Before the middle of the century, colonial churches had been formed by Baptists, Dutch Reformed,

Friends, German Lutherans, Swedish Lutherans, Mennonites, Moravians, and others. Presbyterianism was brought to America by Scotch Irish emigrants in the first quarter of the 18th century

#### Religious Liberty Established

Although many of these pioneers had fled their native lands to escape intolerance they were not themselves always tolerant. As a result the principles of religious liberty and separation of church and state were made important issues in the colonies by the zeal and courage of such outspoken leaders as Roger Williams (*see* Williams, Hutchinson). Many decades passed before full religious liberty was established together with separation of church and state. These are fundamental principles in the American theory of government and are guaranteed by the Constitution.

One of the noteworthy first experiments in religious freedom was the founding of Maryland by Lord Baltimore in 1634. Though he was an ardent Roman Catholic as were also his two sons who carried out the plans set forth by their father, they welcomed all Christian religious groups and granted liberty of worship. As the frontiers were pushed back, Catholicism expanded its work, and by 1850 practically every large city in the United States was the center of a diocese.

As a result of many separatist movements the Christian church in America is now divided into some 200 groups. In addition to faiths transplanted from European soil there are many distinctively American bodies such as the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Mormons) organized in 1830 and the Church of Christ Scientist organized in Boston in 1852 (*see* Mormons, Eddy). Each of the Baptist, Lutheran, Methodist and Presbyterian denominations has ten or more types of worship distinctively American in their origin. Other organizations with large memberships are the Protestant Episcopal, Disciples of Christ, Congregational Churches of Christ and United Brethren. (For these and other denominations, *see* Adventists, Baptists, etc., in the FACT INDEX)

#### The Story of Missions

Missionary zeal has always animated virtually all the branches of the Christian church. Amid the religious tumults of the centuries which followed the Reformation the Roman Catholic faith was extended by widespread missionary agencies. In the 17th century the Roman Catholic church created the Congregation for the Propagation of the Faith which systematized Catholic missions and established the faith in every quarter of the globe.

The zeal, energy, and devotion which animated Protestant missions is well exemplified in the adventurous journey of David Livingstone into the heart of Africa (*see* Livingstone). Long before his work however, Protestant missions had been organized. In the 17th century the English Quakers had a definite missionary program, and in 1701, British Protestant missions were officially centralized in the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in foreign parts. In the 18th century, missionaries had gone from Halle, Ger-



many, to the British and Danish colonies in India. By 1732 the Moravians had numerous missionaries in distant parts of the world. The most effective period of Protestant world missions began with the work of William Carey in 1793. As a result of his efforts in India, most of the large Protestant denominations formulated world programs of evangelization. The London Missionary Society was formed in 1807; and, soon after this, the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions (1810), an interdenominational society, had its beginnings. All the large denominations now have world-wide missionary programs.

#### Efforts to Attain Unity

Among the recent important phases in the growth of the Christian church is the effort to bring about a union of the great Protestant church organizations on a common ground of church doctrine and government. The Federal Council of Churches of Christ in America is the coöperative agency for several Protestant groups. In the opinion of some churchmen it is desirable to seek a world-wide church union without uniformity. In Canada the Congregational, Methodist, and Presbyterian churches effected a plan of union under the name United Church of Canada (1925). In the United States the Christian church and the Congregational united in 1931, and various branches of Methodism merged in 1939. In other countries, especially in mission fields, efforts are also being made to bring about unity.

#### Moral Effects of Christianity

Throughout its history, Christianity has been not simply a set of beliefs, or a system of church organization, or a beautiful and impressive ritual of worship. Christianity has always been a moral force working for the betterment of mankind. The old classical religions made few moral demands upon their worshippers. The individual who was pious and reverent toward the gods might be a monster of wickedness in his relations with his fellow men. Christianity taught men to love God and also to love their neighbors.

The moral effects of Christianity are written large in the history of Western civilization. Manners were softened and refined by the stress laid upon such virtues as humanity, tenderness, and gentleness. Even more vital contributions of Christianity to civilization lie in its social teachings. The belief in the fatherhood of God also implied belief in the brotherhood of man, resulting in practical effort to relieve the lot of the poor, the sick, and the down-trodden, and transforming the ethical standards of the world.

The emphasis in Christian doctrine upon the value and dignity of the individual, and upon his personal moral responsibility, was a powerful factor in the development of democratic ideas and ideals.

**CHURCHILL, WINSTON LEONARD SPENCER** (born 1874). Once called "a genius without judgment," Winston Churchill rose through a stormy career to become England's leader in the second World War and one of the greatest prime ministers in British history.

Vigor, adventure, and prestige were Churchill's birthright. He was born Nov. 30, 1874, at Blenheim Palace, in the magnificent 21,000-acre estate of the dukes of Marlborough. His father, Lord Randolph Churchill, was the third son of the seventh duke; and his mother had been Jenny Jerome, a New York society beauty. When Winston was born, his father was chancellor of the exchequer for Queen Victoria. As Winston grew to boyhood, his grandfather became viceroy of Ireland and his father served as viceregal secretary. So Winston spent his early years in Dublin, then attended elementary schools in England.

#### The Redheaded Schoolboy of Harrow

At 12 he entered the army class at Harrow. A chunky explosive little redhead, Winston stayed in the lowest grades "three times longer than any one else." This did not shake his confidence in the least, and in later life he said, "By being so long in the lowest form (grades) I gained an immense advantage over the clever boys. They all went on to learn Latin and Greek and splendid things like that. But I was taught English. Thus I got into my bones the structure of the ordinary English sentence—which is a noble thing." When he was 16, he entered Sandhurst, historic British military college. There he excelled in studies of tactics and fortifications, and graduated 8th in a class of 150.

In March 1895 he became a sub-lieutenant in the 4th (Queen's Own) Hussars, a distinguished cavalry regiment. With characteristic vigor he also began to write. He spent his first leave of three months as correspondent in Cuba for the *London Daily Graphic*, meanwhile blithely serving as military observer with the Spanish forces.

#### The Soldier Reads the Classics

He joined a Punjab Infantry regiment in India in 1897. Between duties he devoured the works of Gibbon, Darwin, Plato, Aristotle, Schopenhauer, and Macaulay. From Gibbon especially, Churchill learned much of the sonorous, rich style which was to make him the

outstanding orator of his day. In 1898 he joined the British army in the Sudan, in time for the battle of Khartoum. After being decorated for bravery, he wrote two lively books, 'The Malakand Field Force' (1898) and 'The River War' (1899).

Churchill's return to England in 1899 changed his career. Disliking his low army salary, he determined to enter politics. But when he "stood" for Parliament, the workingmen of the district voted against him as "a brash young Tory." Churchill was undaunted.

CHURCHILL—BOER WAR HERO



This is the youthful Winston Churchill as he appeared shortly after his famed escape from the hands of the Boers.

At the outbreak of the Boer War in South Africa in 1899 he obtained an assignment from the *Morning Post* as war correspondent. The rules of war forbidding correspondents to carry arms or take part in combat had not yet been established. So Churchill rode into the thick of firing at Spionkop, Vaal Krantz and other battles. In one engagement he was captured by Louis Botha and imprisoned along with other captured officers in a school building in Pretoria. He made his escape in an extraordinarily bold manner and eventually reached the British lines 300 miles away.

Upon his triumphant return to England Churchill made up for an old defeat as he was to do so often in his turbulent life. The same workmen who had rejected him in 1899 now in 1900 elected him to Parliament as a hero. Before he took office he zestfully toured Canada and the United States lecturing on his Boer War experiences.

#### Churchill Enters Politics

In his first term in Parliament Churchill soon showed that he was to be a stormy petrel in politics. Though elected as a Conservative he showed little awe of any party leader. His friends said his politics varied with his convictions. His enemies countered that his politics varied with the trends in votes. He soon changed from Conservative to Liberal leading the chief of the Conservatives to call him "once a young man of promise, now a young man of promises." In 1906 he was returned to Parliament as a Liberal member from Manchester.

Even Churchill's foes could not deny that he was a prodigious worker. His enormous energy earned him through a succession of offices. At 30 he became undersecretary of state for the colonies (1906-8). Two years later he entered the Cabinet as president of the board of trade (1908-10). In this post and as secretary of state for home affairs (1910-11) he worked vigorously for social legislation and spoke out boldly for home rule for Ireland.

#### Prepares the Navy for First World War

When England feared war with Germany after the Agadir incident in July 1911 Churchill was made first lord of the admiralty. He was ordered to put the fleet into a state of instant and constant readiness for war in case we are attacked by Germany. From that moment Churchill drove at high speed to reorganize the navy—knowing over admirals like Napoleon to build a vigorous staff obtaining 15-inch guns and fast battleships and developing the Royal Naval Air Service forerunner of the R.A.F. When the first World War broke out three years later Churchill's efficient navy became England's first powerful weapon against Germany.

But in 1915 Churchill again rammed into failure. As a war adviser he led a small group in advocating an attack on the Gallipoli peninsula in an attempt

to knock Turkey out of the war. Lack of sufficient forces turned the campaign into a disastrous failure (see World War First). Churchill resigned his post under sharp criticism. He then went to France as a lieutenant colonel. But wartime England needed his ability to drive things through and so in 1917 he became minister of munitions.

#### The Wilderness Years

The years between the first and second World Wars found Churchill gradually slipping from power. True,

he remained in Parliament and held several posts—secretary of war and armaments 1918-21, undersecretary for colonies 1921-22, chancellor of the exchequer 1924-29, and lord rector of Edinburgh university 1923-32. But no momentous crisis arose to whip his enthusiasm or talents. In quiet politics entirely he said then we are not for the faint chance. I shall one day be prime minister. He filled his restless time with

#### BRITAIN'S INSPIRING LEADER



At the top we see Churchill as Great Britain's Prime Minister in the second World War. Below he is inspecting a damaged area of London after one of the many German air raids.

travel painting under the name of Charles Martin, lecturing in the United States and finishing his six-volume *Life of Marlborough*. His writing earned him as much as \$100,000 a year.

England exhausted by war only called him a war-monger when he raised his voice in Parliament after the Lausanne Disarmament Conference in 1932, crying, "Britain's hour of weakness is Europe's hour of danger. Political rivals dismissed it as 'another of Winston's epigrams.' But from the moment that Hitler rose to power in Germany in 1933 Churchill

again a Conservative, saw the challenge. With his old-time vigor, he gathered data on Germany's rearmament and tried to waken England. In 1938, when he learned that Prime Minister Chamberlain had sacrificed Czechoslovakia to appease Hitler, Churchill thundered, "You chose dishonor, and you will have war!"

#### Becomes Prime Minister and War Leader

War came. Chamberlain at once appointed Churchill to his old post as first lord of the admiralty. Nine months later, May 10, 1940, Chamberlain was forced to resign as prime minister in favor of Churchill.

At the moment Churchill took office, the armed might of Germany was sweeping Europe. Yet Churchill stood firm before the British people and declared, "I have nothing to offer but blood, toil, tears, and sweat" and then promised "to wage war against a monstrous tyranny, never surpassed in the dark, lamentable catalogue of human crime." His thundering defiance and courage heartened all England. His chunky figure, with two fingers raised in the "V for Victory" sign, became a symbol of dogged John Bull.

As the war progressed, Churchill won world recognition as strategist and statesman. Before the United States entered the war, he obtained American destroyers and lend-lease aid and met with President Franklin D. Roosevelt in 1941 to draw up the Atlantic Charter. When the United States, Russia, and China became allies, he helped plan the overall strategy of the war.

During the war, Labor and Conservative parties co-operated in a coalition government. After the war this broke up, and Labor won the general election of 1945. Churchill entered Commons as "leader of His Majesty's loyal opposition." He continued to speak dramatically. Speaking at Fulton, Mo., March 5, 1946, he declared: "From Stettin in the Baltic to Trieste in the Adriatic an iron curtain has descended over the Continent." The words "iron curtain" became the accepted term for Russia's rigid censorship over its police-state satellites. The first volume of his six-volume history, 'The Sec-

ond World War', came out in 1948; the last, in 1953. In 1951 Churchill, nearly 77, again became prime minister. He won high honors in 1953 when Queen Elizabeth II knighted him, and he was given the Nobel prize for literature. He sought international discussions on Russia and Red China. In 1955 he resigned as prime minister. Anthony Eden succeeded him. (See English Literature; World War, Second.)

**CICADA** (*si-kā'dā*). Seventeen years of slumber in the ground, five weeks of joyous life in the light of the sun, and then death—that is a cicada's life story, if it is one of the long-lived species. No insect is known to live longer, except perhaps the termite queen. The *nymphs*—as the cicada's young are called—drop from the tree twigs where they have hatched

from eggs. They burrow into the ground, attach themselves to rootlets, and remain there motionless, sucking the sap, for 17 years. Then a mysterious instinct calls them out into the light. They climb the trunk of a tree, their skins split open, and out come the mature cicadas, to make the air resound for their few weeks of life with their shrill ear-piercing song.

Only the males can make this noise, which led an ancient Greek to say, "Happy are the cicadas' lives, for they have voiceless wives." The noise-making apparatus is the most complicated musical organ in nature. It consists of little drumlike plates at the base of the abdomen, which are vibrated rapidly by tireless muscles.

The females do immense damage to forests and orchards by cutting row upon row of egg pockets in twigs, causing twigs and leaves to fall off. One female lays from 200 to 600 eggs.

Of the 800 species of cicada, more than 100 are found in America north

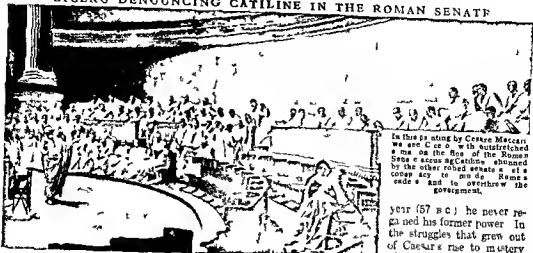
of Mexico. The 17-year cicada (which in the South matures in 13 years) is peculiar to the United States. The commonest cicada is the black and green harvest fly, which matures in two years. Since there are two broods of this species, harvest flies appear every year. Of the longer-lived species there are 30

#### AFTER SEVENTEEN YEARS UNDERGROUND



The cicada nymphs after their long imprisonment tunnel up to the surface, leaving holes like those in the upper picture. Each one climbs a tree, bursts its shell, and the mature insect crawls out as shown at the lower left. At the right is a cicada drying its wings in preparation for its first flight.

## CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE IN THE ROMAN SENATE



In this painting by Cesare Maccari we see Cicero with outstretched arms on the floor of the Roman Senate accusing Catiline, shunned by the other robed senators, of a cover story to murder Rome's leaders and to overthrow the government.

year (57 B.C.) he never regained his former power. In the struggles that grew out of Caesar's rise to mastery of the Roman world Cicero

played no great part. Once only after Caesar's assassination did he again take the center of the stage. He was at the head of the republican party; he denounced Mark Antony in the famous set of speeches called his Philippics. Because of these Antony when he came to power had Cicero put to death.

More of Cicero's writings have survived than of any other Latin author. In his hundreds of letters to friends, including nearly all the famous people of his day, we get an intimate picture of Roman life. We read also of his many-sided character of the man—great statesman, collector of books and paintings, country squire, and devoted father telling anecdotes of his only son and his darling little daughter. We also have about 50 of the speeches which made Cicero famous as perhaps the most forceful orator and masterful stylist to use the Latin language. His philosophical essays are still read by scholars for their grace and urbanity.

**CINCINNATI, OHIO** For centuries the Indians used the site of Cincinnati as a favorite place for crossing the Ohio River. In 160 years, the men changed it from a few small settlements into one of the great industrial cities of the United States.

Cincinnati became Ohio's second largest city chiefly due to its favorable location. The city is on the north bank of the Ohio River, midway between its source at Pittsburgh and its mouth at Cairo, Ill.

After 1811, when the first steamboat chugged down the Ohio, Cincinnati became one of America's greatest inland ports. The city grew so rapidly into a busy metropolis during the middle 1800's that Longfellow called it the "Queen City of the West."

Today Cincinnati is a leading transportation center. Light railroads operate 20 trunk lines into and out of the city. It is served by seven federal highways and by three transcontinental air lines. It has two large airports: Lunken Airport in the valley of the Little Miami River and the Greater Cincinnati Airport across the Ohio in Boone County, Ky. Barge lines go as far as Pittsburgh and New Orleans.

Rich farming lands and coal resources near by also helped make Cincinnati outstanding in manufacturing.

broods (17 of the 17 year and 13 of the 13 year) all accurately mapped so that it is known just where and when the next brood will appear. The 1 year cicada is often incorrectly called the 17 year locust. True locusts are grasshoppers (see Grasshopper).

The periodical cicadas usually green, marked with red and black, in 2 inches long or more with 4 wings a wide head a 3 jointed beak prominent compound eyes 3 simple eyes or ocelli and an abdomen of 6 segments. Scientific name of 17 year cicada *Tibicen septendecim* 13-year *Tibicen tridecim* harvest fly *Tibicen laniator*.

**CICERO** MARCUS TULLIUS (106-43 B.C.) A tall, slight man with fury in his eyes took his place in the Roman Senate on Nov. 8, 63 B.C. It was the silver-tongued Cicero whose eloquence and statesmanship had raised him to the highest office in the Roman republic—the consulship. Only the day before he had escaped death at the hands of conspirators plotting to overthrow the government.

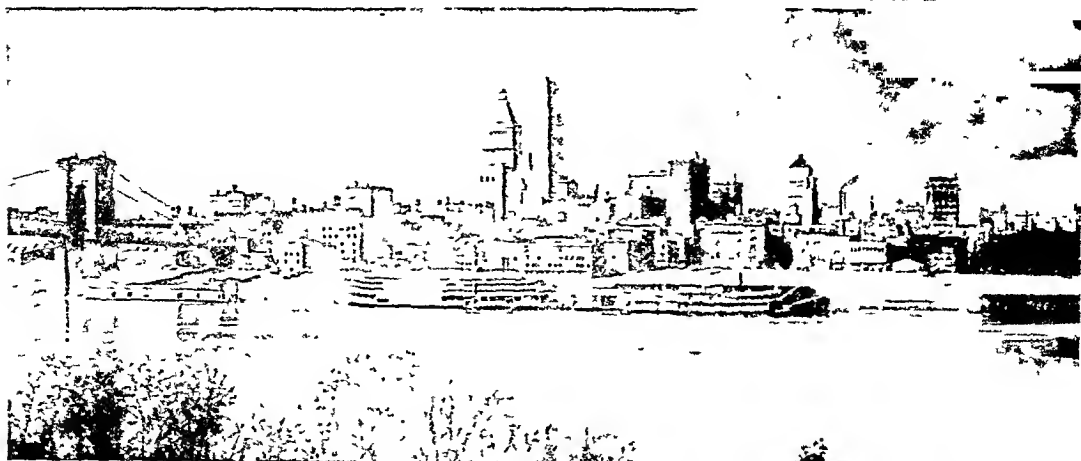
A man of great stature stalked in. His pallid cheeks betrayed the guilty fear that lurked under his insolent bearing. Cicero turned upon him with accusing finger. Then in the most famous of his "Orations against Catiline," he exclaimed in passionate denunciation:

How long, O Catiline, will you abuse our patience? To what lengths will your unbridled audacity carry you? Do you not see that your conspiracy is known to all here? Long ago, Catiline, you ought to have been led forth to execution.

Unabashed, Catiline tried to reply but cries of "Traitor!" drowned his words. He rushed out of the Senate but was later overtaken and slain.

Cicero was now at the height of his power, but his hot eloquence had earned the Senate too far. Some of Catiline's band had been put to death by a simple order of the Senate, a stretch of power for which Cicero was held responsible and the father of his country, as he had been called, was banished. Though the people welcomed his return the following

## A NORTHERN CITY WHICH FACES DIXIE LAND



Cincinnati's industrial and business districts are seen from the Kentucky side of the Ohio River. The city gained importance in pioneer days from the heavy river traffic. Later it became a great railroad, trade, and factory center.

The city was the leading hog-packing center of the nation (it was nicknamed "Porkopolis") until the invention of refrigerator cars enabled cities farther west to ship meat products to the East. Today the Cincinnati metropolitan area (Hamilton County, Ohio, and Campbell and Kenton counties, Ky.) has about 1,700 manufacturing plants. Leading products include foods and beverages, chemicals and soaps, fabricated metals, machine tools, and printing and publishing.

Cincinnati is also a busy commercial center. It carries on a large volume of trade within its limits and with many other cities. It is a distributing center not only for east-west trade but also for the growing north-south traffic. The city is linked with the South by five bridges which cross the Ohio River to Covington and Newport on the Kentucky side.

#### A City of Hills

The factory and business districts of Cincinnati lie in a basin near the river. Dominating the basin is the 48-story Carew Tower, with its hotel, offices, and department stores. The tall, bronze Tyler Davidson Fountain, cast in Munich in 1871, gives an Old World touch to Fountain Square. To the west, near Mill Creek, is the massive Union Terminal, an excellent example of modern railroad station architecture.

From the business section the land rises in a series of low terraces, 50 to 150 feet above the river. Arching behind these plateaus are hills, 300 to 500 feet above the river level. Residential areas spread around and over the hillsides. Some of the hills have been made into beautiful parks. The most attractive are Eden, Alms, and Ault parks.

#### A Cultural and Educational Center

Cincinnati is noted for its development of music, art, and education. Its symphony orchestra is one of the nation's finest. The Zoological Garden is the setting for light and grand operas during the summer. A May music festival, held every two years, singing societies founded by the Germans, and its College of Music help give the city its reputation as a musical center.

On Mount Adams, in Eden Park, is the Cincinnati Museum of Art and its associated Art Academy. Near the park are the famous Rookwood Potteries, which produce handmade artwares. The Taft Museum is city-owned. The building was erected in 1820 and presented to the city in 1932. It houses a notable art collection, including the work of Frank Duveneck, who was a resident of the city. Here William Howard Taft was formally notified of his election as president of the United States in 1908.

Educational institutions in the city are the municipally supported University of Cincinnati, founded in 1870; Xavier University, maintained by the Jesuits. Mount St. Mary of the West; and the Ohio Mechanics Institute. The Hebrew Union College is the oldest and largest rabbinical seminary in the nation.

#### Early History of the City

In 1788 Benjamin Stites and a party of 26 men, women, and children drifted in flatboats down the Ohio from Limestone, Ky. One mile west of the mouth of the Little Miami River they founded a settlement which they named Columbia. Six weeks later Robert Patterson and a group of men built a village a few miles downstream which they called Losantiville.

The next year, 1789, the settlers completed and garrisoned Fort Washington to guard against attacks by unfriendly Indians. When General St. Clair arrived as governor of the Northwest Territory in 1790, he renamed the place Cincinnati in honor of the society of that name (see *Cincinnatus*). The town became an outfitting point for pioneers going west.

From 1845 to 1900 Cincinnati was the southern terminus of the Miami and Eastern Canal from Toledo on Lake Erie. In 1869 the city built its own railroad, the Cincinnati Southern to Chattanooga. This is the only municipally owned railroad line in the country.

City-manager government was adopted in 1924. Nine men, elected by proportional representation, appoint one of their number as mayor and hire a city manager. Population (1950 census), 503,995.

**CINCINNATUS** IUCIUS QUINTIUS (born about 519 B.C.) Rome was in danger. An army of Aequians from the mountains to the east had marched into Roman lands and was burning and plundering the countryside. The defending army was encircled and apparently doomed. In desperation the Senate turned to Lucius Quintius called Cincinnatus (meaning "curly haired"). To this patrician or nobleman came messengers with the news that he was appointed dictator—supreme ruler for as long as the crisis should last. They found him quietly plowing his fields.

Immediately Cincinnatus left his farm and hurried to Rome. He led a new army in an all night march to the camp of the Aequians and in a single battle (458 B.C.) defeated them decisively. Soon after the victory he laid down his power and returned contentedly to his farm. Only once, almost 20 years later, did he return to public life—again at the summons of his country, this time to oppose the usurpation of power by a Roman knight Spurius Maelius.

At the close of the Revolutionary War George Washington and other officers formed the Society of the Cincinnatus, named for Cincinnatus whose example they followed in returning to civilian life. Lord Byron called Washington "the Cincinnatus of the West."

**CIRCE** (*sē'sē*) In Greek mythology, a power as dire as that of witches belonged to a woman of rare beauty, Circe, who was said to be the daughter of the sun god Helios and an ocean nymph, Perse. By means of drugs and spells she could turn men into swine and other beasts. Perhaps the stories told about her magic were meant to teach that men are oftentimes changed into beasts by yielding to base temptation. From her name has come the word *Circian*, used to describe anything that leads by subtlety and charm to moral degradation.

Circe dwelt on an island, *Æeas*, on the coast of Italy to which she had been banished by her father for murdering her husband, the Prince of Colchis. How Odysseus (*Ulysses*) and his companions were blown to her shores and what befell them there is one of the classic stories of ancient literature as it was told by Homer in his epic poem, the *Odyssey*. (See *Homer, Odysseus*.)

#### Homer's Story of Odysseus and Circe

According to Homer's story, jealousy and greed brought disaster upon the companions of Odysseus when they were already in sight of Ithaca, their native land for which they had so longed during their ten years of fighting before Troy. To assure them a speedy homeward voyage, Aeolus, god of the winds, had given Odysseus all the contrary winds bound in a bag. Then he sent the gentle West Wind to waft the travel-worn adventurers to their island home.

For nine days Odysseus held the sheet while the ship drove steadily on. When they were almost home—in sight of the beacon fires of Ithaca—he fell asleep. His men had been eyeing the mysterious bag. "Look!" they muttered, "we are returning empty handed while Odysseus has much goodly spoil. And now Aeolus has

given him this bag of wealth. Let us open it and see how much gold and silver it contains."

So they cut the bag open and instantly the winds rushed out in a furious storm that drove them back to the island of Aeolus. Begone! blustered Aeolus. It is clear the gods hate you.

Heart-sick, they put out to sea again and were driven by contrary winds to a beautiful island. Seeing smoke curling up from a wooded hill, Odysseus sent his kinsman Eurylochus with half his men to discover who lived there.

In the wood they found a marble palace, guarded by tame lions and wolves who fawned upon them like dogs. Within sat a lovely fair-haired lady weaving at her loom and singing sweetly. It was Circe. With kind words and a warm smile of welcome, she invited the strangers into her palace.

The others went in, but Eurylochus, fearing trickery, stayed outside. Within the shining doorway Circe feasted the men on cheese and barley meal and yellow honey with mead and slyly mixed drugs with the fool to make them forget their own country. When they had eaten, the sorceress smote her guests with a wand and lo! they turned into swine. They had the bristles, the shape and the voice of swine, but their minds were unchanged. Thus they could realize how low they had fallen. Their grunting sounded almost like sobbing as Circe scornfully drove them into pigsties and flung them acorns to eat.

#### How Odysseus Fared Against the Wiles of Circe

Eurylochus, horror-stricken at the sight, fled to Odysseus with the dreadful news of what had happened to his men. Odysseus whipped out his sword and strode alone through the charmed wood to the palace of Circe. The enchantress welcomed him and gave him the magic drug in a cup of gold. He drank deeply of the potion. Circe smote him with her wand and bade him join his comrades, but he did not turn into an animal. Circe fell on her knees, thinking Odysseus a god, for no mortal had ever before withstood her sorceries. But Odysseus was protected against her magic by the white flower of the *moly*, a plant sacred to the deities. Hermes (Mercury), the messenger god who wore winged sandals, had overtaken Odysseus on the way and given him the flower.

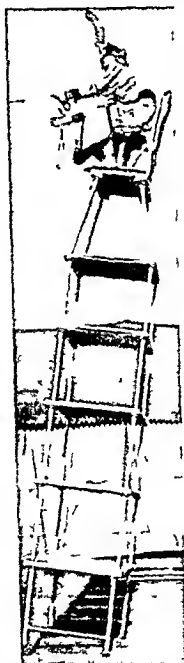
Circe now turned her arts to the service of Odysseus. She changed his comrades back into men and treated them with so much kindness that they dwelt there for a year in luxury and pleasure. The only thing she refused them was to let them go.

At last, because Odysseus became sad with longing to see his wife Penelope and his son Telemachus, Circe consented to let him depart. But first she made him visit the land of the dead, from which no mortal had returned. After hearing prophecies that were to be fulfilled, he came back in safety. Thereupon Circe filled his galleys with bread and meat, warned him of dangers that lay ahead and told him how to avoid them. And finally, standing on the shore with her nymphs, she bade him a sad farewell.

# WHEN *the* CIRCUS Comes to TOWN



When the circus comes to town, young and old hurry out to the lot where the "big top" is pitched. Before the main gate opens for the real performance, the people crowd into the side shows or visit the animals in the circus menagerie.



**CIRCUS.** It's always Circus Day somewhere or other. In winter, when our big circuses are supposedly sleeping—though they really are not—the circuses of Europe are doing their biggest business. That is very gratifying to circus performers, for they can leave America after the long summer and fall season and hurry to the continental cities. There they perform in what might be called stationary circuses housed in buildings, such as the Mills Circus in London or the *Cirque d'Hiver* in Paris. Even in America today the children can see the clowns, the trapeze artists, and the animals perform the year round, since television has brought the circus to the home-receiver screen.

The circus under the "big top" is distinctly an American invention, though of European descent. With all its Americanism, it has certain features which continue, year after year, to link it to ancient history. For the circus is one of the oldest amusements. Even 2,000 years ago, the circus was so old that the Romans did not know when it began.

## The Circus of Ancient Days

The Roman circus was an open-air structure for chariot races and other amusements. The largest and oldest was the Circus Maximus (biggest circus). This was in a long, narrow valley, with seats built on the sloping sides of the hills. For several centuries the

seats were of wood and had to be rebuilt frequently. Julius Caesar rebuilt it partly in stone, making it large enough to hold 150,000 spectators. Later emperors improved it, until in the time of Constantine, 16 centuries ago, it is said to have held 385,000 people. Chariot races, which are still a feature of our modern circus, were the main events, with feats of horsemanship, tumbling, and rope dancing in the intervals. So fond were the Romans of this amusement that they had several great circuses in or near Rome. As their legions conquered Asia Minor and North Africa and Spain and France, the Romans who went to live in the conquered provinces built other circuses. The ruins of some of these are still standing.

That is how the love of the circus spread. When Rome declined under the assaults of warring northern tribes, the old circuses became a thing of the past. The circus instinct remained, in wandering troupes of performers, in horse fairs, in street-corner entertainments by roaming beggars who found that a captive bear or trained pig or performing dog would gain them more money than mere requests for alms. Thus the spirit



Eager boys sometimes get a chance to see a tumbler or a clown acrobat practising his act in the open air outside the tent.

was kept alive until at the end of the 18th century an English cavalryman, Maj Philip Astley, founded the modern circus in London. His first programs included only feats of horsemanship, but he soon added acrobatic acts and even a clown. Astley's show was a tremendous success and soon he had many imitators.

#### Beginnings in America

One of these was John Bill Ricketts, who went to the United States and settled in Philadelphia. There he operated a circus like Astley's—that is, a show held inside a building in which horsemanship was featured. Perhaps it is due to the Astley influence that Europe still likes its circuses in permanent buildings, although there are a few big shows which travel in the summer like the American circus.

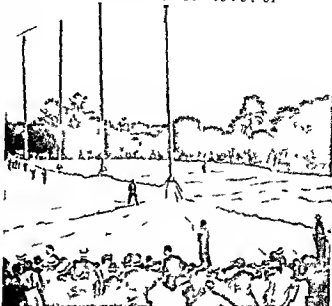
John Bill Ricketts won the friendship of George Washington, who attended his show and recommended it. The resulting popularity caused other showmen to appear in New York, Boston, and even in Washington. However, progress was slow for a time. In the first place, there were few cities then with a population large enough to support a permanent circus. In the second place, the United States apparently needed something more thrilling and unusual than horses. This came in 1815 when Hackalah Bailey, a farmer of what is now Somers, N. Y., bought an African elephant

from his brother, a ship captain who had brought it to America. The elephant was named Old Bet and she might well be called the mother of the American circus. Because of her, a whole tribe of circus men came into being and American circus history has ever since centered largely about the elephant. A big show is often ranked not by the number of its railroad

cars, its people, its performers, or by the size of its tent, but by the number of its elephants.

Hackalah Bailey made a small fortune by tramping around the country with Old Bet. People would often line the road at night in the hope of seeing the gray hulk of the immense beast as she shuffled past in the darkness. Old Hackalah, being a canny Yankee, all ways traveled from town to town during the darkest

#### HOW THE BIG TOP IS PUT UP



Great poles fit through openings in the tremendous spread of canvas. The cables that hold the poles steady are stretched in all directions and fastened to stout stakes. Then the tent is hoisted into position and its sides are guyed and staked.

hours otherwise in those shrewd and penny-saving days his patrons would get a free look. Old Bet was such a mint for him that when she died he built a monument to her which still stands at Somers and with his profits he built a hotel which he called the Elephant House. Of course as his success grew Bailey had acquired other attractions—as well as many competitors. Every adventurous young man around Somers wanted to be in the circus business. They came from all walks of life. One was a robber. Another was a farmer's son. Another was a butcher.

There was also a young clerk who had a flair for extravagant language. With him everything was the biggest thing on earth. He knew how to use exaggeration in such a way as to get the interest of newspapers and through this he finally became known as the greatest showman in history. His name was Phineas T. Barnum. You have seen his picture many times, when the fences and barns and billboards of the countryside have been covered with the posters announcing the coming of the Ringling Bros.

and Barnum & Bailey Combined Circus, the Biggest Show on Earth. (See Barnum Phineas T.)

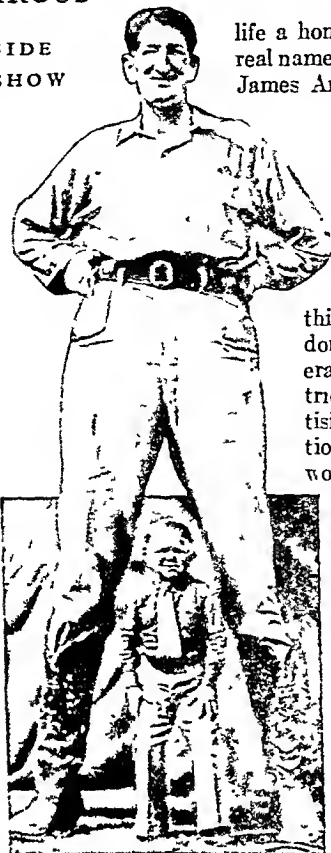
#### Rise of Barnum and the Ringlings

The truth is Barnum was a better advertiser than he was a showman for he ran in and out of several fortunes. However, he was so good at publicity that the best circus brains in the country were eager to be his partners. One of them was a man who had started



The true voice of the circus is the word that comes from the call of a easy throat.



SIDE  
SHOW

Among the "freaks" in the side show are the giant, 8 feet 6 inches in height, and the midget, 29 inches.

life a homeless orphan. His real name is said to have been James Anthony McGinness, but when he went into the circus business, he took the name of Bailey. Thus, Barnum & Bailey should really have been Barnum & McGinness; but this would not have done at all, since alliteration is one of the pet tricks of circus advertising. Every description must have several words beginning with the same letter—like "Pounds of Ponderous Pachyderms," or "Death-Defying Demons in Daring Deeds of Dexterity!"

An elephant gave Barnum & Bailey its greatest reputation. The biggest elephant then in captivity, he had been bought from the London Zoo by Barnum and renamed Jumbo.

Jumbo got such wide publicity that, even though he has been dead more than 50 years, his name still lives as a word for anything remarkable for bigness.

While Barnum & Bailey was rising to fame, seven brothers in McGregor, Ia., saw their first circus, a small affair carried on a river boat, and decided that they wanted to become circus men. Their name was Rüngeling, and they were the sons of August Rüngeling, a Bavarian harness maker. Their first shows were held in their father's barn in Baraboo, Wis., to which the family had moved. The admission price was two pins. Gradually they improved until their show was worth ten pins a performance and at last a penny. Unlike most boys' shows, this was not a mere matter of a few days' fun; the brothers were in deadly earnest about it. And no matter how much the oldsters laughed, the youngsters kept at it. One could play a cornet, another a violin. Another could sing. A fourth thought he was a dialect comedian. By saving their pennies, they bought a goat, then a pony, then a horse or two, and their admission price rose to ten cents. At last five of them took to the road with a sort of vaudeville show. When they had made sufficient money, they changed to a horse-drawn circus. After a time they changed their name to Ringling. As the years

passed, they absorbed the Barnum & Bailey Circus, as well as many others. At one time, John Ringling owned every big show in America. All the Ringling brothers now are dead and the circus is run by a corporation mainly owned by relatives.

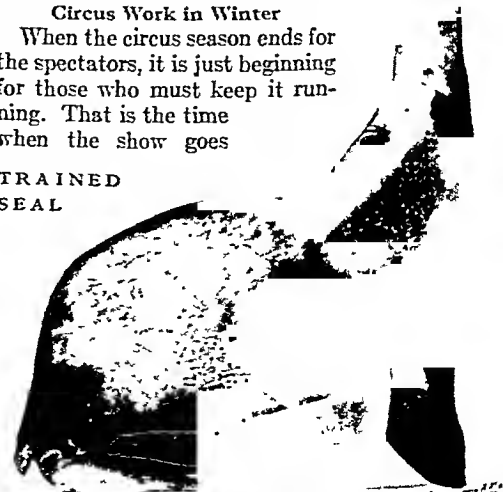
## We Visit a Modern Circus

And now, suppose we take a trip to the circus itself. After all, the best way to know a thing is to see it.

As most of us think of it, a circus merely "comes to town," arriving mysteriously, in the gray of morning from some unknown point, setting up its tents, giving its shows, and then departing, as it came, in darkness. Everything moves so smoothly that it seems to work by magic; perhaps it is this seeming magic which has given the American circus much of its lure. There are a few boys who have not counted as one of their greatest experiences the morning they got up to "see the circus come to town." And no matter how old or how young the watcher may be, there is one thing he always looks for. The show may have promised hundreds of performers. It may have promised five rings and three stages, and even a "grand, glittering and gorgeous street spectacle three miles long"—although this hardly can happen since only the smaller shows can give parades today, because of traffic problems. But no matter what the billboards may have promised, the early morning watchers keep their eyes on the big cars which house the elephants, and they count the big animals as they come out. If a show has a lot of elephants, it is a big show. But no one thinks of the tremendous planning, the immense amount of work and energy, necessary to bring a show like the Ringling Bros and Barnum & Bailey Circus into town.

## Circus Work in Winter

When the circus season ends for the spectators, it is just beginning for those who must keep it running. That is the time when the show goes

TRAINED  
SEAL

Because they can be taught to juggle, because they walk comically and bark noisily, sea lions are always circus favorites.

## THE PRETTY LADY ON THE ELEPHANT



When the grand march is held the big tent among the gorgeous ladies is as big as you can find the Queen of Sheba. Cleopatra, Marie Antoinette and a host of beautiful actresses and vaudeville stars like the one

into winter quarters which may be in any locality where conditions suit the owners. The Ringling show winters in Sarasota, Fla., while another show owned by the same corporation spends the winter months in Venice, Calif., on the other side of the continent.

Winter is a season of intense activity. The performers have scattered. Some have gone to Europe. Others run chicken ranches and filling stations. Others go into unit shows in picture houses or into motion picture work. Many clowns add to their earnings by appearing in big department stores at Christmas shopping time. Only the animal tapers, the horse trainers, the executive staff and the skilled workmen remain at winter quarters. For them there is much work.

The railroad cars which transport the show must be repaired and repainted. Big circuses own all their rolling stock except the engines. A small railroad show has about 30 flat cars, stock cars and sleepers. The largest has about a hundred 70-foot cars. Every show wagon must be gone over every day; repaired every freight wagon made ready for a season of pounding about the country often mounting to a total of 17,000 miles. New tents must be made. Sometimes these are purchased from tent companies and sometimes they are made on the grounds. When one considers that

the main tent or big top of the Ringling show covers more than three acres of ground, one can realize the tremendous job of making such a tent. In addition there are the side-show tents, the dressing tents, the horse tents and the tents for the cookhouse and blacksmith shops, all of which must be renewed at least every other season. Then there are the costumes.

All winter long in a great building seamstresses are at work making the costumes. There are rhinestones by the bushel, brilliants by the thousand, pounds of spangles by the thousand and gross—but none of the tinsel which most persons associate with the circus. Tinsel is for Christmas, not for circuses; it is too fragile. Only materials of the strongest type, which means the finest—can stand the hard usage of a circus season. Therefore the velvets, the satins, the plushes and silks and serges and broadcloths which you see in a circus performance are the most costly on the market, purchased as much for wearing qualities as for show. The spangled blankets worn by the elephants and camels and horses are of extra thick velvet and may cost hundreds of dollars apiece.

Every tent stake must be repainted and resharpened every tent pole examined for defects. All harness must be gone over. Meanwhile in the animal houses all performing animals must continue their schooling lest they forget their lessons from one season to the next.

## Getting Ready for The Road

March is a busy month. Not only are the final touches being given to the equipment, but last minute arrangements are being made by the executive staff for taking to the road in April. All winter scouts have been touring Europe in search of novel acts for the circus changes from year to year, although the framework remains.

## —AND JOCKO FOR CONTRAST



No yearling would be complete without an airing of a clump on a young elephant.

the same. In a circus there is as much excitement over a new and thrilling act as there is in a home when a new baby arrives.

Now the press agents are writing their material for the newspapers. Posters are being printed and stacked in the various advertising cars. Big shows often send three advertising cars ahead of the show, a week apart. These carry posters by the ton, and crews of bill-posters, lithograph men, and bannertackers, who cover every available bit of space within miles of the show place. Added to these men are contractors who buy food for the people and the animals, lease the show-grounds, pay the license fees, and attend to half a hundred other details which must be arranged beforehand. Where, for instance, would the elephants get their water if a contracting agent had not made arrangements for it to be supplied from a fire plug? With one circus carrying more than 40 elephants these days, the small boy's job of carrying water to the "ponderous pachyderms" ended long ago. But the small boy has his job, nevertheless.

Every show carries what is known as a "punk boss." He is the man who hires boys, or "punks," as the circus people call them, and has them on hand for work when the show arrives. They help carry canvas, seat planks, and other materials, and they receive free admission tickets as wages. The regular workmen put up the show. These are the "razor-backs" who unload the train, the "skimmers" or teamsters, the "pony punks" and "led stock men" who look after any animals which can be haltered, the "bull" or elephant men (all elephants, male or female, are "bulls" in a circus), the animal attendants, the canvassmen, the pole men, the seat and plank men, and "roughnecks" or general laborers. Performers do not help put up the show. Their job is to superintend the setting of their own rigging by "property men."

But, first, to get to a town, a show must have a route. Planning this is another part of the March activity. A show cannot profitably make more than a 100-mile journey in a night; hence the general agent and the general manager who route the show must be geniuses at geography. They also are alert to business and farm conditions throughout the country and have studied the weather for various sections over a period of many years. Hence they know what average of weather to expect, they know whether a community is prosperous or poor, and they know exactly by which railroads to get into a town and by which to leave. A show train is dispatched on a railroad as a "circus

special" with its own schedule. Ahead of the train travels the "twenty-four-hour man." He got his name because he is supposed to precede the show by twenty-four hours. He deserves it because he often works day and night. It is his duty to check on every thing done by the hundred or more men who have gone before him; he must see that food and feed are waiting, that unloading conditions will allow the circus to get to the lot as soon as possible.

#### The Circus Gets to Town

So now the circus is in town. And with the tents erected, the gates open "twice daily, rain or shine." But to reach them we must pass the ticket wagons, the "juice joints" or lemonade stands, and the "kid show" or side show. There's a line of customers in front of the various ticket wagons. The ticket sellers handle money with both hands, seeming to throw all currency on the floor. They are really tossing it into wicker baskets; they must work so fast that there is no time for them to place it in drawers. People are in such a hurry to get to the circus that they annually leave hundreds of thousands of dollars in change behind them at the ticket wagon. But the

police system of the big circus is so efficient that a person rarely loses the money he is left behind.

Here are the vendors who sell pop and cotton candy. Or there was pink lemonade, but pure food laws helped end that plus, of course, the story of how pink lemonade started. The story is that a "juice joint" vendor accidentally colored a barrel with the dye from his performer's wife's red tights. It made such a hit that pink lemonade was a circus custom for years.

And now, the side show—the side show-w-w-w! Don't be sorry for the freaks. Many of them look upon themselves as normal and the rest of us as monstrosities. Nearly all of them are there because they truly like their life, realizing that it gives them more comfort and money than

anything else they could do. Every circus is besieged by applications from freaks of all kinds. However, the most remarkable "queer and unusual pee-pul" sometimes come to the show quite by accident. A few years ago, one of the bigger shows was without a giant. In El Paso, a tremendous youth, nearly eight feet tall, wandered upon the lot and asked if he could have a free ticket to the side show. He said an "amateur freak" should be allowed to meet the professional ones without charge. The side-show manager, alert to business, backed the young fellow against a property wagon and sent a workman aloft to lower a tape measure. The

#### HIS MAJESTY—THE CLOWN



Hot and hard-working in his grease paint and fantastic costume, the beloved circus clown "carries the show" between the bigger acts.

## HEROES OF THE HIGH TRAPEZE

vector's height was 7 feet 10 inches.

But I'm still growing," he said. "I'll be taller than that."

And you'll be with the circus, the manager answered. Let's talk business.

Thus instead of merely going to the show, the giant joined it and is still happy over his bargain.

Now let's go into the big show. There are four gateways and through them in the biggest circus more than 20

000 persons a day may flood. Often a circus plays to a greater population than that of the entire county in which it shows, drawing people from as far away as a hundred miles. More than 20 million persons a year travel through the gates of our circuses, thus making the business one of the biggest amusement enterprises in the United States.

Through these gates go profits or losses which run annually into the millions for there are about 30 shows on the road today. This is fewer than in the most crowded days, but the big ones are now bigger than ever. Most circuses are motorized shows traveling in trucks and trailers. Some date back to mud show days before the advent of the automobile when road shows traveled by team and wagon. At least one circus name is 100 years old, while others run from 25 to 50, having piled up fortunes for various owners. The profits of the biggest shows often run to more than a million dollars for a season.

Among the Circus Animals

Well here we are through the gates and into the menagerie. Wild beasts and horses were the chief attractions of the old Roman circuses. The same is true today. More than any other agent the circus has given our young people a knowledge of zoology by taking exhibits of wild life into villages and hamlets. It brought the first giraffe, the first hippopotamus, and the first rhinoceros to America.



A lifelong training goes into the really dangerous work that these flying acrobats do with their trapezes high up under the roof of the tent. They rank among the aristocrats of the circus.

Circuses get the animals from many sources. Captains of tramp steamers touching at jungle ports often make money on the side by bringing in animals. The Hagenbeck Brothers of Germany for many years supplied circuses and menageries as well as zoos all over the world. Today there are many other dealers in wild animals.

Many circus animals are costly. A tiger may cost \$1,500 or more. Good circus elephants bring from \$3,000 to \$10,000 and are worth every cent of it since the whole circus centers about the elephant. No

human agency for instance can test a weak bridge so quickly or so efficiently as a wise herd queen or leader who merely presses one foot on the structure and knows at once whether it is strong enough. The elephants haul material to the circus grounds and haul it back at night. When a wagon gets stuck in mud and horses fail to budge it, the working bulls can push it out with their great heads. In the morning they put the wagons in place on the circus lot. At night they push them out and place them in readiness for teams to haul to the railroad yards. If a switch engine is not handy they can move a railroad car. And of course they are the center of attraction in the menagerie.

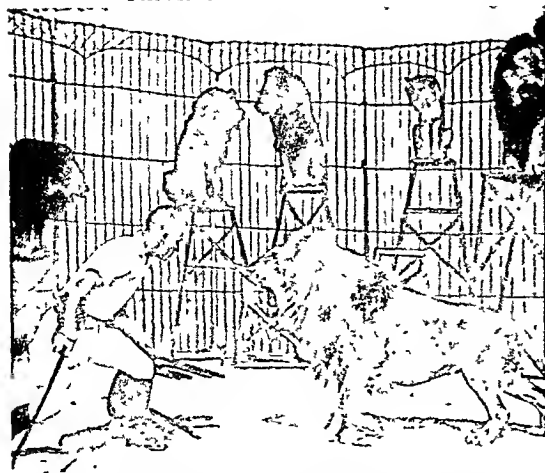
Elephants are the only wild animals that stay with a circus because they love it. No ordinary means can hold an elephant

## THE LEADING LADY



The star equestrienne and her high school horse are at the very top of the circus world.

## TAMING THE "BIG CATS"



The lion tamer is one of the specialty headliners of the modern circus. He performs such thrilling feats as directing a large mixed group of lions and tigers in the same cage. His best defense is a plain chair held with the legs toward the animal's face.

which wants to get away. These animals like to be with people, and they like the candy, apples, peanuts, popcorn, and other treats that come to them daily.

## Inside the Big Tent

As we go into the big tent a whistle sounds. "Tournament," the opening spectacle, is just beginning. That whistle will sound many times during the show, for a circus runs by the whistle of the director. It is the main spring of the performance, just as the band is the clock of the circus. A workman on the lot can always tell the time of day by the music the band is playing. He knows that certain musical numbers are for certain acts and that these acts are due at a definite time.

If you want to see a circus properly, do not try to watch all the rings and stages but center your attention on one place. You will see everything. The purpose of having several rings and stages is not to present a wider variety of acts but to give everyone in the tent a chance to see well. Some of the big tents are nearly two blocks long, so there must be some duplication. Thus three riding acts go on at one time, two or three aerial acts, and so on.

Everyone thinks of the clowns as a leading circus feature. Strangely enough, however, the clowns are important to the circus largely as a "cover-up." They flood into the arena and take the attention of the audience from the fact that the rings and stages are being made ready for other acts. In former years, a circus was built about a chief clown who cracked jokes and sang. That time is past, due to the largeness of present-day shows. Now the clown is usually just a living cartoon exaggerating everyday manners and customs. No longer is a clown paid \$1,000 a week. Their salaries now run from \$75 to \$500 a week.

## Aristocrats of Circus Life

Now we have gone through the tent and reached what is known as the "back door," where performers

await the whistle for their act. There is a well-defined social scale among the members of the circus. Contortionists form the lowest rung of the ladder; horse-back riders, members of flying acts, and star wire walkers are at the top. Salaries for these sometimes run as high as \$1,000 a week.

More and more the American circus is coming to depend on Europe for its performers. Few American boys and girls are willing to undergo the strict discipline and rigid training necessary to the making of a good performer. A true circus "kinker" must be trained from babyhood; it is nothing for a three- or four-year-old circus baby to be able to turn flip-flaps and somersaults. Circus performance is largely a matter of tradition, with boys and girls growing up to take the place of their elders. As a result the American performer is giving way to acts imported from countries where the old family discipline is maintained.

## How Circus People Live and Work

All performers except the stars do more than one act. They are usually employed under contracts which call for them to be "generally useful." and some appear in as many as seven or eight different routines. A girl, for instance, may "ride manège," which means the handling of "high-school" (highly trained) horses, and also "dress" the elephant act. The latter means that she seems to train the elephants, while the real work is done by male attendants working with her. Another girl may be on a flying ladder in one act, in a tumbling number in the next and on a perch, or tall pole, in another.

The performers dress together in a great tent, divided into halves for men and women. Trunks are set in long lines, with a clothes hanger and a pail of water before each trunk. The performers sleep in specially constructed railroad cars, going to hotels only when the show halts on Sundays. They eat in a great tent known as the cookhouse. Even the stars eat here, and the food is excellent. In the biggest shows more than six thousand meals a day are served. The stars may have individual tents or they may have dressing rooms fitted up in wagons.

On trains the stars have state rooms with many conveniences. When Lillian Leitzel, an aerialist known as the queen of the circus, was alive, her train quarters were large enough to include a baby grand piano. Every big show carries its doctor and nurse, and at least one has a hospital car equipped for major surgical operations.

Many popular notions about the circus have no foundation. It never splits up, one part going to one town and the rest to another. It does not take money out of a town, because it draws persons from miles around who spend part of their day shopping. Its elephants do not hate persons who feed them chewing tobacco, because they like a certain amount of it. Circus people do not kidnap boys and girls; it is harder for a child to join a circus than to become president of a bank. It does not carry thieves and cut-throats but has its own police department to watch out for bad characters. Finally, it does not leave town

## BEHIND THE SCENES WITH THE CIRCUS PEOPLE



The harness makers (left) are busy from dawn to dark repairing and cleaning all the equipment needed by the circus animals.



In the dressing tent (right) each performer's trunk does duty as a dressing table, clothes closet and chest for all belongings.

as soon as the night performance is over but starts away from town before the evening show well to tell.

## A Marvel of Efficiency

The big show in fact begins to leave at dusk along a path marked by torches to what is known as the loading run. First the cookhouse is loaded as soon as dinner is over—dinner begins at 4:30 P.M. Then the horse tents are packed. As soon as the performers finish with rigging and properties the circus is loaded and sent away. By the time the opening tournaime starts around the hippodrome track of the big show the menagerie tent is being lowered and long before the various cages have been started away. The elephants are the last menagerie animals to leave the lot departing as soon as the act in the big top is finished. By the time the big show is over one complete train known as the Flying Squadron already has been loaded and often is on the way to the next town.

This is why the circus seems to appear and depart so magically. It is a marvel of efficiency. In addition circus people understand the value of co-operation in a way that would be difficult to match. They are clannish and aloof toward outsiders but among themselves the principles of give-and-take and of the helping hand are universal rules.

## The Cousins of the Circus

Small relatives of the big circuses are the numerous dog and pony shows traveling menageries and troupes of acrobats that used to tour the countryside in wagons and now travel by automobile trucks and trailers. They seek out county fairs where they hope to find ready-made audiences without having to pay advertising costs. Larger and more impressive cousins of the big general circuses have been the Wild West shows such as the famous one started by Buffalo Bill in 1883 (see Buffalo Bill). He undertook to dramatize American frontier life by acting out battles with Indians, cavalry charges, adventures of Pony Express riders and stagecoach holdups. He mixed in exhibitions of skill in shooting, roping, riding outlaw horses and other work typical of the old buffalo-hunting and cattle-raising days. His show and a few others that grew up in imitation of it won tremendous success in Europe as well as in all parts of America.



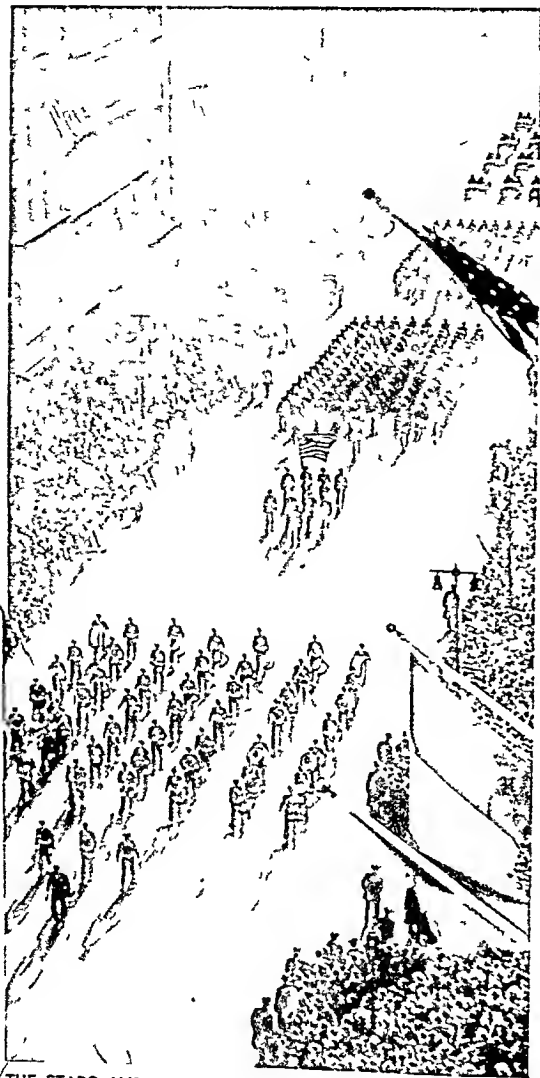
Waiting at the back door of the big tent for the whistle that calls them on are jugglers, strong men and circus Cossacks.



The circus dining room is the cook tent where the whole army of circus people assembles three times a day to eat.

Rodeo shows came later. These were derived from such local celebrations as Cheyenne's famous Frontier Days in which men who actually worked on the range competed for riding and roping prizes. As the popularity of these contests grew and prizes increased professional contestants began traveling from contest to contest. The professionals finally assembled into touring shows which now visit eastern America and European cities.

Among the many books about circuses are *Big Top* by Fred Braden, *The Ringlings* by A. F. Harlow and *Under the Big Top* by Courtney Ryley Cooper (out of print).



THE STARS AND STRIPES IN AN ARMY PARADE

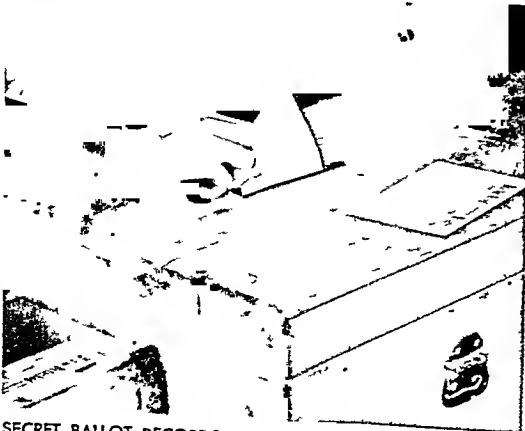
## GOOD CITIZENSHIP *in Everyday Living*

**CITIZENSHIP.** An army parade is coming down the street. Talking, laughing, and moving around, crowds of people line the sidewalks to catch the first glimpse of the soldiers. Suddenly there is a hush. Coming into view is the flag of the United States of America. Everyone stands a little straighter. Men remove their hats, and both men and women place their right hands over their hearts. The loud talking and arm waving stop as the Stars and Stripes pass in review.

*The soldiers in the parade are acting as good citizens by serving in the armed forces of their country. The people watching the parade are also acting as good citizens when they honor the Stars and Stripes. Showing respect for the flag shows respect for the nation it represents—the United States of America.*

It is election day. For several weeks people have been wearing campaign buttons which show the names of their favorite candidates. Everyone has been listening to speeches on radio and television and reading about the campaign in the newspapers. On the morning of election day adults vote and perhaps drive some elderly people to the polls.

*Being able to cast a free, secret ballot is one of the greatest privileges granted to citizens. Every good citizen takes pride in voting to show his choice. This helps make democracy work.*



SECRET BALLOT RECORDS A VOTER'S CHOICE



PARENTS AND CHILDREN PLAN A VACATION



JUNIOR RED CROSS MEMBERS PACK A GIFT BOX



STUDENT COUNCIL HOLDING A MEETING

A family is planning its vacation. They are grouped around a table looking at maps, atlases, and the encyclopedia. They are all eager to help plan their vacation. Father and mother lead the discussion and each one takes part in the planning.

*The members of this family are being good citizens in allowing each one to say what he thinks. Respecting the rights and opinions of others is the core of good citizenship.*

The Junior Red Cross is beginning to collect toys, writing materials, soap, toothpaste, and other items for its gift boxes. Every boy and girl in school brings in as many of these things as he can. The articles are then packed in boxes and sent as gifts to poor children in a foreign country.

*Giving help to those who need it is one mark of good citizenship. The good citizen is always a friendly, sympathetic person who shares with others.*

The students in a grade school are discussing ways of keeping the playground clean and safe. Each boy and girl is learning his duty to the school and to other children. They decide to have a special committee of students for each week to take charge of the cleanup and safety campaign.

*Students who help make safety plans for their community and then work to carry out these plans are practicing the finest type of citizenship.*

These scenes show only five ways in which a person can be a good citizen. In actual day-to-day life there are hundreds of ways of being a good citizen. Such a person can always be recognized by what he does, what he thinks, and how he feels toward his fellow men, his community, and his nation.

#### What Is Citizenship?

All nations have citizens. In each nation there are laws and customs which give special rights to citi-

zens and demand from them certain duties. For example, a citizen may become a government official, may have special property rights, and may have a voice in the government through his vote. At the same time, citizens must pay their share of taxes and may be required to serve in the armed forces of their country. The rights and duties together are called *citizenship*. Almost everyone regards citizenship in his country as a wonderful privilege. Citizens are proud of their nation and the part it has played in the history of the world.

Some nations give more privileges to their citizens than do others. Some nations demand more duties of their citizens than do others. In every free nation, such as the United States and Canada, the citizens themselves are the real rulers. Their governments can do only those things which the people authorize. Thus the government may be strong or weak, just or unjust, fair or unfair, depending upon the interest and desires of its citizens.

#### Pathways to Good Citizenship

Every thoughtful person will agree that there can be a big difference between citizenship and good citizenship. The famous American author Mark Twain once pointed out the importance of this difference in a free nation. He said: "What keeps a republic on its legs is good citizenship."

There is no single, easy road to good citizenship, but rather a whole series of pathways. Each individual must go his own way. In general, however, the first and most important ideas of good citizenship come from the home, the school, and the church.

Citizenship begins in the home. Here is the first and best place for every youngster to learn to share to help others, and to do his part. From father,



mother, and older brother and sister, small children learn their first lessons in truthfulness, honesty, and sympathy. The love and training that a youngster receives in a good home help him throughout his life.

All studies show that child problems and problem children come most often from homes that lack love and care. Love of fellow man and respect for the rights of others are best learned in day-to-day family life. The family in which all members enjoy life together usually gets along well with others.

Every boy and girl in America must attend school. This provides the second source of good citizenship. It is in the school that one learns to take pride in the achievements and sacrifices of his countrymen. In school one also learns to understand the meaning of and appreciate the great documents of the United States—the Declaration of Independence; the Constitution; the Bill of Rights, or first ten amendments to the Constitution. (The growth of the "American way" is traced in the Reference-Outline for American Heritage.)

In addition to its classroom teaching, the school presents a wide range of participation activities such as student council, athletics, dramatics, music, and interest clubs. In such activities, pupils learn to share, to co-operate, and to respect one another. Many schools also give vocational guidance and training. With this help young people can find out and train for the types of jobs which best suit them. Thus they can later contribute to the economic life of the community and the nation.

## A FAMILY VISITS THE NATION'S CAPITAL



Citizenship is learned in day-to-day family living. This family is visiting the National Archives Building where important government documents are kept in Washington, D. C.

The third foundation of good citizenship is the church. Every church helps develop character and basic goodness in its members. All creeds provide sound guides for desirable social behavior. A person who practices the principles taught in his church discovers that the teachings aid him in his daily life by setting a high standard for conduct.

The boys and girls who make good use of these three pathways—the home, the school, and the church—are taking important steps toward becoming good citizens. In most communities a fourth pathway is provided by the many organizations which sponsor citizenship training. By taking advantage of these opportunities young people gain valuable experience

## TWO PATHWAYS TO

## GOOD CITIZENSHIP



A person who follows the principles taught in his church is well on the way toward becoming a good citizen.



School traffic patrols not only promote safety but they also help develop good citizenship.

for becoming the adult citizens of tomorrow. At the end of this article is a list of some of these activities and programs.

From these different pathways come not just one type of citizen but many millions of well meaning people of different views, beliefs, and opinions. There are majorities and minorities in almost every aspect of life—in politics, in education, in social life, and in religion. Every citizen is a member of a minority group in some instances and a majority group in others. Throughout the history of the nation all such groups have made their share of sacrifices as well as their share of contributions for the common good. This has always been one of the great strengths of the United States.

The future of every free society depends entirely upon its citizens. If the society is to grow and improve itself, each citizen must know all his responsibilities and do all his duties. These responsibilities and duties fall into three general classes—social, economic, and political.

#### Being a Good Citizen Socially

TO MAINTAIN life all human beings must have food, shelter, and clothing. In addition to these basic needs, there are many human wants such as friendship and prestige. Almost all wants are social in origin, action, or result—that is, they need the help and co-operation of other people. Good social citizenship depends upon ability to work and play in social groups. The American poet Robert Frost summed up social relationships when he wrote:

"Men work together," I told him from the heart,  
"Whether they work together or apart."

Throughout the ages many people have tried to define good social behavior. Some of their ideas have become part of today's "rules" for good conduct. These are not rules in the usual sense but rather standards of behavior, acceptable customs, or codes of ethics. An example would be the Golden Rule, which many different peoples have stated in various ways but always to mean "Do unto others as you would have them do unto you." These rules agree with and support fundamental laws, customs, and religious beliefs. The understanding of these rules is one mark of a well balanced personality.

The good citizen socially is considerate of others of their needs, wants, and rights. He recognizes that people have different national backgrounds, religions, and customs and he respects the differences. He need not agree with all that other people believe but he respects their beliefs. In a very real sense good citizenship requires a willingness to respect people of all races, creeds, and national origins.

In social groups the good citizen sometimes acts as a leader and sometimes as a follower. He may serve the group by defending his point of view at times, by compromising at other times, and by sometimes accepting the opinion of others.

The good citizen preserves and helps to develop basic social institutions. This means that he supports

his home, his church, his community, and his nation. He may see weaknesses in local government, in the school system, or in some other institution. If so, he does not withdraw from the institution but instead actively tries to improve it.

Good citizens exhibit honorable behavior. They are faithful to the customs and laws of society. Their example strengthens all the social groups in which they live. They stand up for what is right and take action against what is wrong.

The good citizen is also a friendly person. He knows how to get along well with people. He is loyal to his friends and sympathetic toward all mankind. He is pleasant to talk to and quick to help others when he can. Friendship and personal associations are very important to everyone. The citizen who does his part is always respected by his fellow men.

These qualities and attitudes make a good citizen socially. Such people are highly important in a democracy because they make society human and warm. This is a way of life that stands in sharp contrast to the heartless tyrannical societies found in some other parts of the world.

#### Being a Good Citizen Economically

ONE of the foundations of a democratic society is economic freedom. This is the freedom to produce, to distribute, and to consume acceptable types of goods and services. In a system of free enterprise, citizens have certain economic responsibilities. The following rules for good economic conduct are therefore important to good citizenship.

The good citizen must provide for himself and for others during his working life. He therefore makes the most of his opportunities to enlarge his abilities and advance the economic welfare of his country. He recognizes that a good education will help him in his chosen work. (See also Vocations.)

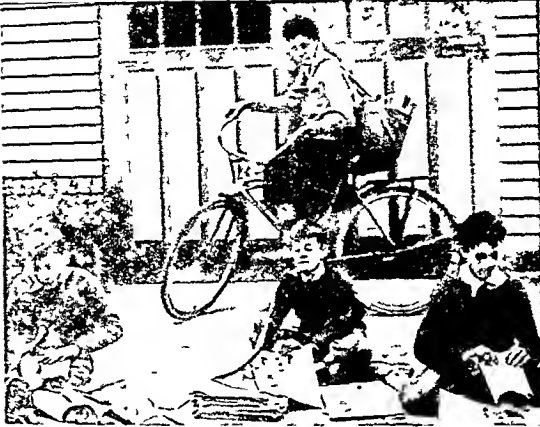
The good citizen enjoys his work. He knows the needs of his society for goods and services and he finds satisfaction in helping to supply them. By his work

#### GOOD CITIZENSHIP CAN BE FUN



The good social citizen enjoys the company of others. This quartet is entertaining other teenagers at a summer camp.

## CITIZENSHIP IN THE WORLD OF BUSINESS



Economic citizenship begins as soon as a person is old enough to handle his own money. Newsboys (left) earn money by deliver-



ing papers. By paying taxes (right), adults help meet the cost of services provided by the local, state, and national governments.

he makes a definite contribution to himself, his family, and society.

Being a good citizen also means making and carrying out economic plans for the wise use of his income. He learns how to budget his money and to provide for his future economic security. He pays his debts on time and does not waste money. (*See also Thrift; Home Economics.*)

Citizenship requires that each person help protect the rights of others to work and to enjoy their earnings. This may sometimes mean taking an active part in opposing illegal or questionable business and labor activities. It may at other times mean encouraging desirable business and labor practices. Thus to be a good citizen economically means producing efficiently, consuming wisely, and protecting the legal economic activities of other citizens. (*See Labor.*)

#### Being a Good Citizen Politically

THE government of a democratic society is built upon the political activities of its citizens. Only in a democracy are politics and civic life so very important. Making government serve its citizens is a job for all. This can be done by following a few rules for good political citizenship.

To take an active part in American political life it is necessary to understand the governmental problems of the times. The person who does not understand such problems may be misled by slogans and by personal prejudices. The good citizen reads newspapers and follows the news on radio and television. He also reads widely on the important long-range issues, such as world peace, public education, and conservation. When he learns all he can about current problems he decides what is wrong and what is right. He then makes his decisions known to the political leaders of his community, state, and nation. This helps to create an active, intelligent public opinion.

The good citizen takes an active part in politics, especially at the local level. He attends political meetings as often as possible and participates in the

discussion of issues. It is at the local level that candidates for public office are proposed and delegates to political conventions are chosen. Only an active, well-informed citizenry can keep politics clean and useful.

Every citizen should be a registered and thoughtful voter. He should cast a ballot in each local, state, and national election. Millions of eligible people do not vote. This "negative vote" may permit the election of candidates and the approval of decisions that are not in the best interest of the citizen or his government. No citizen can support good government and able public servants by failing to vote. A democracy expects its citizens to make their choice known by the ballot.

The good citizen is willing to serve his government in any capacity that he can. During the early days of the republic men such as Washington, Hamilton, Jefferson, and Madison took time from their private lives to work for the government. Since that time many of the finest men in the nation have served in political offices. The need for capable public servants is still very great today, and every good citizen should be willing to serve in public office when he can be useful to his fellow citizens.

The good citizen keeps up an active interest in politics between elections. Many people work hard to help win an election and then pay little attention to the official life of their elected leaders. Everyone has a duty to keep his congressman, governor, and other political officeholders informed of his wishes. A good public servant is responsive to opinions received in person and through letters, telegrams, and telephone calls.

Perhaps the most important guide to good citizenship is to be politically alert and aware of what is going on in the community, the nation, and the world. Over the entrance to the Nebraska State Capitol appears a sentence that expresses the fundamental political duty of the good citizen. It is: "The Salvation of the State is Watchfulness in the Citizen."

## GOOD CITIZENS HELP MAKE GOOD GOVERNMENT



Good citizens write to their congressman to give their opinions about important issues (left). The congressman (right) then knows what the people he represents want him to do.

Sometimes the privilege of voting is confused with the rights of citizenship. To be eligible to vote a person must be a citizen of a state and of the United States. Each state defines exactly who can vote in that state by setting minimum requirements for age and residence. In each state the voter must register and identify himself at the polls. Thus while all voters must be citizens, not all citizens may be qualified to vote at election time. The requirements for voting in each state are given in the Fact Book in each state article.

### The Citizen and National Defense

The responsibility for the defense of the United States is shared by all its people. The cornerstone of that defense is the individual citizen who must always be prepared to help his nation in any way he can.

Alexander Hamilton, one of America's first great statesmen, once wrote: "Those who enjoy the fruits of democracy must be willing to bear arms in its defense." This statement has special meaning during the middle of the 20th century when the United States has to provide constantly for national defense. Since the beginning of World War II it has been necessary to maintain a large army, navy, and air force, as well as a widespread civil defense program. Long after the end of World War II, large numbers of American troops, ships, and planes had to be retained in Europe, Japan, and in the Pacific to defend against possible attack. From 1950 to 1953 more than a million and a half American citizens had to fight in Korea to hold back Communist aggression.

Millions of other Americans at home contributed their abilities, energies, and money to the support of the national defense. Their contributions were made in many different ways. Every community offers opportunities to serve the nation. Each citizen should find a way to do his part.

The good citizen begins to help with national defense when he understands his country's problems in

relation to other nations. He should study the workings of the United States Department of State, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, and the United Nations. He should know the role of the armed services in peace and war.

In addition, every able-bodied citizen should prepare himself for duty in a crisis. Thousands of young men and women enroll in the reserve units of the armed forces. Others develop skills which may be used in vital industries or in civilian defense. Then when danger threatens the

Selective Service System determines who will serve in the armed forces and sometimes in what branch. The authority to draft young men into the armed services lies in the Congress. This power to provide for the nation on defense was granted by the people through the Constitution.

In time of war there are many individual responsibilities for a citizen in a free society. He must keep all military secrets with which he is entrusted. He must conserve vital war materials, donate blood if possible, buy his share of war (or defense) bonds, and co-operate with civilian defense organizations such as the Ground Observer Corps.

War is a trying experience for any nation. It requires the attention and activity of all its people. The United States has remained strong and free because free men and women have always been willing to come to its defense.

### The Rights of American Citizenship

Every American has reason to be grateful to the courageous group of men who adopted the Declaration of Independence July 4, 1776. The second sentence of that Declaration established the cornerstone of civil rights now enjoyed by every citizen. We hold these truths to be self-evident that all men are created equal that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness. These rights were later guaranteed to every citizen by the United States Constitution and by each state constitution.

Civil rights may be classified into three major groups: personal rights, the legal rights to justice and property rights. It is of the utmost importance that every citizen stand up for his civil rights and respect the rights of others. Without these rights there is no free democratic society.

#### Personal Rights and Freedom

The most fundamental civil right is that of being free. Freedom means more than just not being a slave.

It means many things—the right to choose a job, to move about the country at will, to choose a wife or husband, and to pursue happiness in any peaceful way.

A second great personal right is religious liberty. The 1st amendment to the Constitution states that "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof." Thus each American is free to belong to any one (or none) of the 250 different religious groups in the United States.

A third important right is freedom of speech and of the press (including radio and television). Congress is forbidden to pass any laws which would prevent speaking, writing, or broadcasting freely on any subject desired. The only legal restriction on this right forbids lies about another person or the communication of illegal or indecent material.

Freedom of assembly and petition is a fourth personal freedom. This means that citizens have the right to hold meetings, to form political parties, conduct campaigns, and publicly petition the government for new laws or the repeal of existing laws.

The right to keep and bear arms is a fifth freedom granted to Americans as "necessary to the security of a free State." This right to own firearms, however, is subject to certain local safety laws such as prohibiting the carrying of concealed weapons without a license to do so. (See also Firearms.)

#### The Right to Justice

When a citizen is accused of a crime he is protected by a whole body of legal guarantees and safeguards. One of the most important is: no citizen can be convicted of treason unless two witnesses of the same treasonable act appear against him or he confesses in open court. Totalitarian governments often destroy minority groups by accusing them of treason merely because they disagree with the party in power.

Another technique of dictators is to imprison people for long periods without bringing them to trial. In the United States the citizen can be protected from this practice by obtaining a writ of habeas corpus. (See also Habeas Corpus.)

A third right to justice prohibits Congress or state legislatures from passing laws which declare a person guilty of a crime without a trial. Such laws are called *bills of attainder*.

A fourth right prohibits *ex post facto* ("after the fact") laws. This means that a person cannot be accused of a crime if the act was committed before such an offense was declared to be a crime.

Regulation of search and seizure is a fifth protection for the citizen. No police officer can enter a home to search it or to seize evidence unless he carries a legal search warrant granted by a judge.

A sixth protection is against excessive bail. The judge must set a reasonable bail for the accused to

#### READY TO DEFEND THEIR NATION



In time of danger every citizen must come to the defense of his country. These men are taking the oath required of all members of the armed forces.

guarantee his appearance in court. This gives the accused a chance to prepare a defense while free on bail.

A seventh right to justice prohibits excessive fines and cruel or unusual punishment. This protects the citizen against the tortures used in some modern police states.

Another right that an accused person has in the United States is the guarantee of a fair trial. This right—perhaps the greatest protection of all—involves a number of safeguards. It means the right to a *grand jury* hearing (see Jury). It means that no accused person or his spouse may be forced to give testimony which might help to convict him (5th amendment to the Constitution). It means that in certain cases the accused may ask for a new trial or appeal his conviction to a higher court.

An accused person has the right to a trial by an impartial jury consisting of members of his own community, or, if this will not produce a fair trial, he may have it moved to another locality.

In America, a trial must be publicly announced. The accused has a right to confront his accusers. He has the right to summon defense witnesses by court *subpoenas* (orders to appear in court). Furthermore he has a right to obtain legal advice even if he cannot afford to pay for a lawyer to defend him. (See also Courts of Justice.)

#### Right to Ownership of Property

The third group of civil rights enjoyed by American citizens deals with the ownership of property. Every citizen has the right to own and use property. This property cannot be decreased in value by an act of the government "without due process of law"—that is, according to legal procedures and established customs.

Sometimes the government may condemn property to make way for streets, highways, parks, or public buildings. In these cases the owner must receive a fair market price for his property. If he desires he may

## UNITED STATES CITIZENS BY CHOICE



The federal judge (at the right) is administering the oath of allegiance to the United States required of all naturalized citizens.

a. a court to set a fair valuation on the property (See also United States Constitution)

#### Legal Basis of Citizenship

EVERY nation provides ways and means by which a person becomes a citizen of that nation. In the

United States citizenship is defined in the 14th amendment to the Constitution. Section 1 of this amendment begins "All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside."

Residents of the United States who are not citizens by birth or naturalization are called *aliens*. Aliens are entitled to the protection of the laws and the use of the courts. They usually have the right to own property, to engage in business and to attend free public schools. Aliens may not vote or hold public office or be employed as government officials. In many states aliens cannot acquire licenses to engage in certain professions. The United States government protects its citizens while they are abroad but not its alien residents. In addition, aliens may be deported to the country of their origin if they commit certain crimes or work against the welfare of the United States.

#### Citizenship by Birth

There are two basic theories for determining citizenship by birth. One theory is the law of blood relationship (*jus sanguinis*). Under this theory the citizenship of a child is determined solely by the citizenship of the male parent. For example if the father is an Italian citizen, his children are citizens of Italy no matter where they are born. In ancient and medieval times this method of determining citizenship was common.

If the principle of blood relationship had been followed in the United States there would never have been any American citizens except Indians. From the

Jamestown settlers of 1607 down to the present day all immigrants to the United States would have retained the citizenship of their native lands and this citizenship would have been handed on to the children in each generation. Recognizing this fact the United States government adopted another basis for citizenship called "law of place" (*jus soli*). Under this principle citizenship is determined by the place of birth without regard to the citizenship of the parents. In modern times this method has been widely adopted by many countries.

The United States extends citizenship to everyone born in the United States except the children of parents not subject to the jurisdiction of the government, such as foreign diplomats. Children born to Americans living abroad are also American citizens if one parent is a citizen who has lived in the United States or its outlying possessions at least ten years, five of which were after the age of 16. In all cases the child must live in the United States or its possessions for a period of five years between the ages of 13 and 21. This is to provide for education and language development to fit the child for American citizenship.

#### Citizenship by Naturalization

Obtaining citizenship by naturalization is open to all aliens who qualify under the laws passed by Congress. (For the details of how individuals may become citizens see Naturalization.)

Several times the United States has used a process of collective naturalization through the treaty making power of the president and the Senate. Such was the case when the territories of Louisiana, Florida, Texas, Alaska, and Hawaii were annexed to the Union. Each time citizenship was conferred upon the whole body of inhabitants within the territory. Congress has also conferred citizenship upon those inhabitants of the Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico who wanted it. The others are called *nationals*. During World War II and again from 1930 to 1933 many aliens serving in the armed forces of the United States were granted citizenship without the regularly required waiting period.

#### Giving Up Citizenship

Until after the Civil War no citizen of the United States could give up his citizenship. Then in 1868 Congress recognized the right of *expatriation* or giving up of citizenship. This permits an American citizen to renounce his citizenship by swearing allegiance to a foreign government. Expatriation is not permitted in wartime.

Naturalized American citizens lose citizenship if they return to their native land for as long as two years or if they live in any foreign country for five years. Exceptions are allowed only if the person makes special arrangements with the Department of State (See Passport). Citizenship may also be for-

feited if a person votes in a foreign election or serves in the armed forces of a foreign nation.

#### History of Citizenship

In ancient Athens citizenship was granted only to a favored few classes of people. It was the citizens who advanced art and learning and served as government officials. Most labor was done by slaves, freed slaves, and resident aliens. Later the Roman government broadened the base of citizenship and also granted limited citizenship to thousands of conquered peoples. At the height of the Roman Empire the proudest boast a man could make was "I am a Roman citizen" (*Civis Romanus sum*).

As modern nations developed, governments granted citizenship status to more and more of their people. In America, citizenship received its first official recognition July 4, 1776, when the Continental Congress voted that "all persons abiding in any of the United Colonies and deriving protection from laws of the same owe allegiance to said laws and are members of such colonies." Later the Articles of Confederation (1781-89) provided that the "free inhabitants" of each state "shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of the free citizens in the several states."

The United States Constitution accepted the fact of citizenship but did not define the term. In the Dred Scott Decision in 1857 the United States Supreme Court ruled: "Every person, and every class and description of persons who were at the time of the adoption of the Constitution recognized as citizens in the several states, became also citizens of the new political body." This court decision excluded Negro slaves from citizenship until the passage of the Civil Rights Act of 1866. The 14th amendment, adopted two years later, established the citizenship of Negroes beyond repeal by a future Congress. Women received full political citizenship through the 19th amendment, ratified in 1920. Indians born within the United States have enjoyed full citizenship since 1924. All legislation dealing with natural-born citizens was codified by Congress in 1940. Immigration and naturalization laws were similarly acted upon in 1952.

#### Training Good Citizens

THE following is a list of some of the activities and programs

sponsored by various organizations to promote good citizenship.

**Youth and Government.** Sponsored by the Y.M.C.A. Provides guidance and training for political and moral leadership in public affairs.

**Boy's State and Boy's Nation.** Sponsored by the Amer-

ican Legion. Boy's State is an annual convention held in each state to study governmental problems. Boy's Nation is an annual meeting of two boys from each state to study the operations of the federal government. It is held in Washington, D. C.

**Girl's State and Girl's Nation.** Sponsored by the American Legion Auxiliary. Provides the same opportunities for political science training as that offered by Boy's State and Boy's Nation (see above).

**Boys and Girls County Government.** Sponsored by the American Legion. High schools elect one student to each county office. One day each year the elected students work with regular county officials at the county seat.

Other activities providing citizenship training for American youth are sponsored by the American Junior Red Cross, Boy Scouts of America, Camp Fire Girls, Future Homemakers of America, Future Farmers of America, Girl Scouts of America, 4-H Club's Extension Service, and the National Jewish Welfare Board. (See Juvenile Organizations and individual organizations in the FACT-INDEX.)

There are also many local and national programs in citizenship work aimed at giving general improvement to citizenship education in schools as well as in adult life. One such program is the Citizenship Education Project developed at Teachers College, Columbia University. It emphasizes the importance of the basic ideals that have guided the growth of the United States. Among other notable programs in citizenship education are those developed in the public schools of Detroit and Nebraska.

One of the most important of the national programs is the National Conference on Citizenship, sponsored by the National Education Association and the United States Department of Justice. Its aim is to aid various organizations concerned with the development of future citizens.

#### LEARNING THE MACHINERY OF GOVERNMENT



In this "Hi-Y" citizenship program the candidate for "governor" is giving a campaign speech to the members of the "legislature" and other qualified "voters."

## THE FOUR FREEDOMS



FREEDOM OF SPEECH



FREEDOM OF WORSHIP



FREEDOM FROM WANT



FREEDOM FROM FEAR

Four priceless rewards of good citizenship in a free country were defined by President Franklin D. Roosevelt in 1941 as essential human freedoms. These are illustrated in the paintings by Norman Rockwell.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CITIZENSHIP

## BASIC CONCEPTS

## OF DEMOCRACY AND CITIZENSHIP

- I The heritage of Western civilization Greek reason sets men free W 209-10 influence of Christianity W 210-11 C-301 2 R 88 Magna Carta V-41 English Bill of Rights B-145 French Declaration of the Rights of Man F 293 American Declaration of Independence D-32 United States Constitution U-341 Human Rights and Freedoms (United Nations)

U 242 243 See also the Reference-Outline for Individual Freedom

- II The American background see the Reference-Outline for American Heritage and United States History
- III The meaning of citizenship C-319

## CITIZENSHIP IN EVERYDAY LIFE

- I Pathways to good citizenship p C-319-319b
- A Family life F 16-20 on the farm F 21-32
- B Meaning and purpose of education E-238-10



- C. Influence of religion C-304, J-354
- D. Marriage customs and problems M-100-101b
- II. Being a good citizen socially, economically, and politically C-319b-d. See also the Reference-Outlines for Sociology, Economics, and Political Science
  - A. Importance of choosing a vocation V-499-515. See also the Reference-Outlines for Vocations and Industry, American
  - B. Obligation to exercise voting privilege E-288-9, B-36-7, S-442-3
- III. How good citizenship is encouraged
  - A. For young people J-368a-b; Y.M.C.A. Y-342; Y.W.C.A. Y-343; Boy Scouts B-273; Girl Scouts G-113; Camp Fire Girls C-54; 4-H Clubs F-252; Future Farmers of America F-326a; Junior Red Cross R-87a
  - B. For the general welfare F-248-51, P-368-9; Red Cross R-87a; Salvation Army S-33; social settlements S-219; aid to blind and deaf B-206-7, D-25; Parent-Teacher Associations P-80
  - C. For community protection: fire and police departments F-85, P-352; health service H-308, H-300 (hospitals H-429); public housing H-432e
  - D. Patriotic societies, service organizations, and lodges P-98; American Legion A-223. See also names of organizations in Fact-Index
- IV. The ideals good citizens live by
  - A. Worth of persons—individual differences, personality, and character development I-113-14, P-159a-160; American Negroes N-107. See also the Reference-Outline for Races of Mankind
  - B. Individual freedom I-115-20
  - C. Government by laws G-144, U-341, U-356
  - D. Sense of justice C-199, J-365, J-368
  - E. Capacity for self-government D-63-7
  - F. Civic participation: political parties P-357; elections E-288; state and municipal governments S-384b, M-450, town meetings T-159, picture U-263 (by television, pictures C-424f)
  - G. Flogs, songs, and flowers symbolize political sovereignty F-119-38, N-40-43, S-384. See also Fact Summary in each state article
- V. Good citizens are alert and informed: see the Reference-Outline for History (Current Events)
- VI. The citizen and national defense C-319d: Army A-378; Navy N-80; Marine Corps M-96; Air Force A-79; Coast Guard C-371; National Guard and organized reserves A-383; blood donations B-207-S
- VII. Rights of American citizenship C-319d-f
- VIII. Legal basis of citizenship: by birth C-319f; by naturalization C-319f, N-43; by giving up citizenship (expatriation) C-319f-20

#### HISTORY OF CITIZENSHIP IN THE UNITED STATES

- I. General C-320. See also the Reference-Outlines for American Heritage and United States History
  - A. American Colonies A-192-217
  - B. Pioneer life P-261-71; Far West F-37-43
  - C. Civil War and Reconstruction Period C-330-7, R-85-7; 14th Amendment U-354-5
  - D. Industrial America and increase in immigration U-381-2: where the people came from and how the population has grown, charts U-311, I-47; quota laws after World War I I-47-S
- II. The American people and their achievements U-310-36, outline U-336-9

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CITIZENSHIP

##### Books for Younger Readers

- Association for Childhood Education. Told Under the Stars and Stripes (Macmillan, 1950).
- Fisher, D. C. A Fair World for All (Whittlesey, 1952).
- Gordon, Dorothy. You and Democracy (Dutton, 1951).
- Granberg, W. J. Johnny Gets out the Vote (Aladdin, 1952).
- Hartman, Gertrude. Making of a Democracy (Day, 1941).
- Halisher, Desider and Beckel, Graham. Capitol Hill (the Story of Congress) (Schuman, 1952).
- Holland, Janice. They Built a City (the Story of Washington, D. C.) (Scribner, 1953).
- Lawson, Robert. Watchwords of Liberty; a Pageant of American Quotations (Little, 1943).
- Leaf, Munra. Fair Play (Lippincott, 1939).
- McFee, Inez. How Our Government Is Run (Crowell, 1946).
- Petersham, Maud and Miska. American ABC (Macmillan, 1941).
- Turner, Mina. Town Meeting Means Me (Houghton, 1951).
- Wagner, R. H. and Green, I. E. Put Democracy to Work (Schuman, 1952).
- Witty, P. A. and Kahler, J. H. You and the Constitution of the United States (Children's Press, 1948).

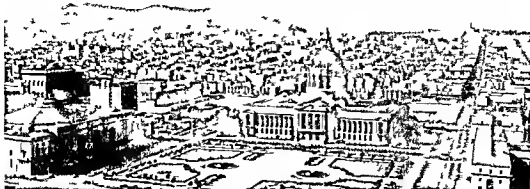
##### Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

- American Association of School Administrators. Educating for American Citizenship (The Association, 1954).
- Bailey, H. M. and others. Your American Government (Longmans, 1951).
- Bailey, S. K. and Samuel, H. D. Congress at Work (Holt, 1952).
- Bard, Harry and Monokee, H. S. Active Citizenship (Winston, 1951).
- Beard, C. A. The Republic (Viking, 1943).
- Biddle, W. W. Cultivation of Community Leaders; Up from the Grass Roots (Harper, 1953).
- Brewer, J. M. Wellsprings of Democracy; Guidance for Local Societies (Philosophical Lib., 1952).
- Childs, R. S. Civic Victories; the Story of an Unfinished Revolution (Harper, 1953).
- Comfort, George, Knopp, R. H., and Shull, C. W. Your Government (Harper, 1951).
- Davies, A. P. Man's Vast Future (Farrar, Straus, 1951).
- Findley, B. A. and E. B. Your Rugged Constitution (Stanford Univ. Press, 1950).
- Hughes, R. O. Building Citizenship (Allyn, 1952).
- Keller, J. G. Government Is Your Business (Doubleday, 1951).
- Margon, J. E. American Citizens Handbook (National Education Association, 1951).
- Poston, R. W. Democracy Is You (Harper, 1953).
- Roosevelt, Eleanor and De Witt, W. A. UN: Today and Tomorrow (Harper, 1953).

**CITRON.** The true citron (*Citrus medica*) used in fruitcakes and Christmas puddings grows on a small evergreen tree about ten feet high, usually in the same regions that produce lemons and oranges. Citron is really one of the "citrus fruits," which include the lemon, orange, and grapefruit. The fruit looks very much like a great rough lemon, five or six inches long. The center has a thick whitish flesh, while the skin is relatively thin and very fragrant. The Chinese sometimes use it as a house plant because of this fragrance. The dried rind when candied is the part used by the housewife. In the United States the citron is grown in both Florida and California.

Besides the true citron there is a small, round, solid, and almost flavorless watermelon that goes by the name of "citron." It grows in temperate regions and is used for making preserves.

## GREAT CITIES—*Their HISTORIES and Their PROBLEMS*



It is a far cry from the ancient isolated city states of Greece from the medieval cities with their unpaved, unlighted streets and open drains from the simple village of Ameri can colon days even from the sums of unplanned modern cities to exam-

ples of modern city planning such as that of San Francisco Civic Center. More and more cities in all parts of the world are being replanned and rebuilt so that they will be more beautiful and more adapted to the needs of contemporary life.

**CITY** When we speak of a city we usually mean an organized community with a considerable number of people occupying a limited area, with resulting congestion and crowding. The term city, however, is used in more than one sense. In England it is an honorary title given through traditional usage or by royal charter to communities of some pre-eminence, such as Episcopal sees and great industrial centers. Other communities no matter how large are called towns. In the United States the word city frequently refers to the form of government and not to the number of people. Requirements for city charters—that is, the plan of government granted by the state legislatures—differ in various states. Often a population of 10,000 is required before a town may become a city.

At the start of the 19th century only a small percentage of the American people lived in cities. Today more than half of the population lives in cities. This rapid movement of population from the country to the city was caused by the Industrial Revolution as a result of the discovery of steam power and its application to manufacturing, transportation and agriculture. With labor-saving machinery one man could do as much work on the farm as 15 men with hand tools. (See also Agriculture.)

### Growth of Factories Builds Cities

What became of the 14 men whose work was no longer needed? Obviously some of them helped to manufacture the machinery that had displaced them from the farm. When furniture, clothing and other necessities were made by hand, people could manufacture them in small towns and in the country, but after the discovery of steam power and the invention of machinery it was much more economical to build a large factory where one steam plant could furnish power for many machines. Those who worked in the factory, of course had to live near it, and when the factories got so large that they employed 25,000 people, it meant that 25,000 people and their families had to live often

in crowded areas within a short distance of the factory. Thus the growth of great modern cities began.

Three factors determined the selection of factory sites and thus indirectly the location of cities: nearness to fuel, that the expense of hauling it to the factory might be saved; nearness to the source of the raw material for manufacturing; and cheap and adequate transportation facilities. Hence most of the great American cities grew up on ocean harbors, on the Great Lakes, on large rivers and at railroad centers. It was economic forces and not the problem of securing proper living conditions for the inhabitants that largely determined the sites for cities.

As cities became large and congested, people were faced with a vast array of new and difficult problems. So long as they lived in rural communities the problems of health, fire and police protection, recreation and transportation were relatively simple. But the large city brought a whole new set of problems. Noisy factories emitted clouds of smoke and gas. A single case of contagious disease might endanger the lives of thousands. Bad water was a menace to the whole community. A single building on fire might bring down thousands more. Criminals could rob and steal with less fear of detection. These serious problems required the best imagination, the most scientific skill and the most profound wisdom. Often the very persons who were victims of these conditions were indifferent to their existence.

### Problems Bring Changes in Governments

The old type of government that existed in American cities was ill-adapted to cope with the growing needs and in many cases graft and corruption among public officials and politicians were making matters worse. Gradually, however, people began to awaken to the tragedies of city life and to see how they could work to make the city both a safe and a beautiful place in which to live. Students of municipal problems and safety engineers began to formulate construc-

tive plans. These new ideas led to changes in the charters of city governments in many American cities. Old and cumbersome forms of government were modified; new plans, such as the commissioner and business manager form of organization, were adopted; and a strong "home rule" movement began to take form, especially among the larger and more progressive cities. (See Municipal Government.)

#### Safeguarding Public Health

Methods of safeguarding public health were instituted: caring for contagious diseases, establishing hospitals, providing pure water supplies, disposing of sewage in a sanitary manner, and abating smoke and noise nuisances. Housing conditions were studied with a view to avoiding crowding and obtaining light, wholesome air, and comfort. Parks and public playgrounds were established to provide opportunities for healthful outdoor life for children. (See Building Construction; Games; Health Department; Hospitals; Housing; Parks and Playgrounds; Play; Shelter; Smoke; Water Supply.)

The problem of transportation within cities and their environs, which depends in part on the physical conditions of a city site and the number of inhabitants, has received years of careful study. In the larger cities all practical ways of getting residents quickly from one point to another are used. In New York City, for example, the suburban railroad, and the subway, elevated, and motor-bus systems carry the largest number of passengers, while the ferries carry millions each year between Manhattan Island and the New Jersey and Long Island shores. In Chicago, where distances are great, the backbone of transportation is a vast street railway system, augmented by elevateds, motor buses, and subways. (See Buses; Street Railways; Tunnels and Subways.)

#### Traffic Lights Keep Automobiles Moving

In all modern cities wide streets and boulevards carry millions of rapidly moving motor cars. As a result much study has been devoted in recent years to the best ways of controlling traffic. In addition to traffic officers, electrically operated stop-and-go signs aid in controlling traffic with as little delay as possible. In one widely used system, called "principal progressive," traffic proceeds for a certain time along a principal street and then is halted to permit entry of motor cars from side streets and passage of pedestrians. Another system, the "co-ordinated flexible progressive" method, allows traffic to move without interruption in four directions at a given number of miles per hour throughout the entire system.

Many kinds of pavement are used on the streets of the modern city, for different conditions as well as costs are best met by a variety of material. Safety and durability may be the deciding factors, as in a manufacturing district; or they may be safety and freedom from noise and dust, as in a residential section. Among common types of pavement are macadam, asphalt, brick, stone blocks, wood blocks, and concrete. (See Roads and Streets.) City streets are generally lighted by electricity or gas. (See Electric Light and Power; Gas, Manufactured; Lamps; Lighting.)

The modern city usually disposes of its sewage through an extensive system of great underground pipes (see Sewerage). In addition, it collects and disposes of refuse, namely, garbage, or food wastes; rubbish, or material of no further use; and ashes from houses and industries. These are usually collected separately, but occasionally they are mixed. Sometimes a city finds that it is profitable to use some of the refuse for filling in low places, for making new land on lake fronts, or for other purposes; but few cities now salvage waste products, because of the heavy costs involved in handling and sorting. They are usually disposed of completely by burning them in great incinerators.

#### City Planning Movements

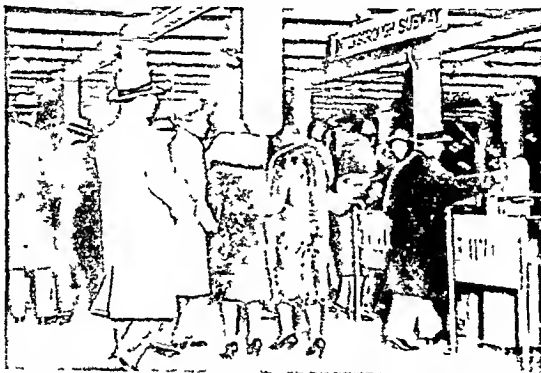
One of the most fruitful means for the improvement of the modern city has been the city planning movement. Most cities have grown up as chance directed, although a few have benefited by early planning, notably Washington, D.C., Buffalo, Detroit, and Canberra, the capital of Australia.

Although the history of city planning certainly goes back to the cities of the ancient world, the movement did not become an important factor in modern centers of population until the middle of the 19th century. Then economic conditions brought about a rapid growth in both European and American cities. Plans were proposed for the future development of Paris in 1853, and a few years later there was much activity in city planning throughout Germany, Italy, and Sweden. In the United States, the movement is principally the outgrowth of the genius of Daniel H. Burnham, who designed the remarkably beautiful and noteworthy group of buildings for the World's Columbian Exposition held at Chicago in 1893.

#### How Zoning Plan Aids Cities

An important division of the city planning movement is city zoning. Experts mark out areas which are to be used solely for certain designated purposes, such as business, residence, schools, police and fire

#### HAVE YOUR FARE READY



This is an entrance to New York City's subway. Dropping a coin in the box releases a turnstile to let the passenger through. Subway and elevated trains travel 20 to 25 miles an hour.

## MAKING ROOM TO LIVE IN A CROWDED CITY



This picture by Fairchild Aerial Survey shows Parkchester, a huge development in the Bronx, New York City. It houses 35,000 people on 130 acres. Skidmore planning has provided good light and air for all and generous ground space for recreation.

department stores, wholesale and warehouse buildings, industrial plants for light and heavy manufacturing and produce markets. Zoning also affects the style of architecture, for example in New York the startlingly beautiful tower and setback types of skyscrapers were designed to meet the regulations of the zoning resolution (see Architecture). Since buildings are planned and grouped in relation to their size and uses, provision may be made for adequate light and fresh air and a display of the beauties of building design. Furthermore owners of property know for what purposes it may be used and they can thus plan wisely for its development. Zoning is also an important feature in the safety program of a community.

Another aspect of city planning is the grouping of public buildings in a civic center. Ordinarily it includes the city hall, courthouse, public library, art museum, churches, high schools and perhaps university or college buildings. In large cities principal public buildings may form one group and other units may be designated for education, art and

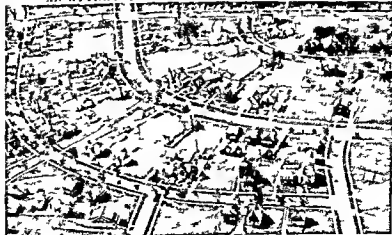
community centers. Noteworthy among American municipalities with civic centers built or planned are Springfield (Mass.), Cleveland, Camden, Toledo, Denver, San Francisco and Pasadena.

City planning guides not only building activity but also transportation. This aspect includes the designing and placing of wharves and stations so that the movement of goods and people may be accomplished as efficiently as possible. It also has to do with the location, width, kind and design of streets with the planning of public drives and boulevard systems and with the selection of sites for playgrounds and parks. Special legal measures have been formulated whereby under certain conditions a community may condemn land needed for its plans for health and beautification with compensation to the owners.

Some cities own and operate certain public utilities such as

gas, water, light and power, telephones and transportation. This is called municipal ownership and whether or not it succeeds depends upon conditions in each locality, the efficiency and intelligence of the local government and other factors. As to the relative merits of municipal and private ownership of a community's utilities, there is conflict of opinion among experts on the subject and it is doubtless too early to pass final judgment on the question. (See Public Utilities.)

## AN ATTRACTIVE ARRANGEMENT FOR A SUBURB



If the cost of land is not great, houses can be given generous space, as we see in this air view of a development in Forest Hill, New York. Curving avenues with interrupted cross streets keep fast motor traffic out of the community. This provides quiet and safety.

The city has become the home of art and culture, entertainment, and education. Such advantages have stimulated people to noble endeavor. Many cities have been transformed into communities of great beauty, with opportunities for self-improvement and civic advancement. Thoughtful people try to express through community activities their hopes and aspirations for the more abundant life. (The population movements to American cities and suburbs are discussed in the article *Population*.)

#### Ancient Cities Were Really States

For the beginning of the story of the city we must go far back in ancient times. We find that as early civilizations developed, the deeply rooted human feeling for companionship, protection, and the advancement of other common interests, such as trade, led to the building first of villages and small towns and then of cities. So it was in Babylonia and Egypt. The city of those days was not unlike the city of today in its chief features: streets, houses, business structures, and public buildings. The modern city, of course, does not have the strong surrounding wall for defense—an outstanding part of the early community.

In ancient Greece, the city was an independent unit, for ancient Greece never became a nation. Sometimes one city would extend its power over several other Greek cities and rule them as its subjects, as did Athens and Sparta; and sometimes cities would form loose federations for defense. (See *Athens*; *Greece*; *Sparta*.) In a similar way, the city-state Rome gradually conquered other city-states of Italy and then built up a vast empire, stretching from the British Isles on the west to Mesopotamia on the south. (See *Roman History*.)

After the downfall of the Roman Empire, the cities of Europe, which had been encouraged by the Romans, declined with the Germanic invasions. Then in the 11th century, as manufacturing and trade increased, they again became important. Many new towns and cities arose in this period. Some grew up about the remains of Roman communities. Others started with

a group of merchants who gained permission to establish a community from some lord. Still others grew up about monasteries or the sites of great fairs. These communities rapidly became centers of commercial, industrial, and social life. At first, they were generally ruled and exploited by the nobility.

#### Battles Between Cities Ended Feudalism

The struggles between the cities, or towns, as they were then called, and their lords formed one of the important chapters in medieval history and helped to break up the feudal system. Community of interest developed in town life and fostered a spirit of independence which asserted itself in stubborn and continuous efforts of the townsmen to win greater measures of freedom. (See *Feudalism*; *Middle Ages*.)

Privileges were nearly always gained at the cost of long and bitter struggles. The upper classes of medieval society resented the rise of the townsmen, who usually had been members of the serf, or peasant, class. At first the townsmen were glad to get a few favors from the officials who governed them. Then they won greater freedom—for example, when societies of craftsmen, or guilds, by united action secured special privileges; or when the lord, who sought funds for some vast enterprise, such as a crusade, became indebted to them for help (see *Guilds*). Sometimes the lord would join the townsmen to oppose his ruler; and on the other hand, a king would grant favors to the townsmen in order to thwart some ambitious noble.

Between the 11th and 13th centuries, most of the important towns of Europe won charters granting them self-government. Some of them gained complete independence. Certain city-states, such as Venice, Genoa, and Florence, are notable for being centers not only of culture and learning but also of powerful commercial interests established in extensive territories. Likewise, the Hanseatic League of northern Germany became so powerful that it even declared war to protect its interests (see *Hanseatic League*). With the rise of powerful centralized governments, cities lost their former independence and became parts of the nations.

## How MAN Won CIVILIZED Ways of LIVING

**CIVILIZATION.** Today in most countries people depend a great deal upon each other for meeting their many needs. We get food from farmers, ranchers, fruitgrowers, and others. Town and city workers produce manufactured goods and provide many services. Doctors, teachers, and other professional people do their part; and actors, artists, and writers help by making life more pleasurable and richer.

We call this interdependent way of living *civilization*. The word comes from the Latin *civis*, meaning "citizen." Therefore, it means that a civilized person is a member of an organized community.

Today most peoples of European descent and many others do much of their work with power-driven machinery. Hence this use of power might seem to be an essential feature of civilized life. Two hundred

years ago, however, nobody had such machinery. Men did their work with their own strength and with help from work animals, water wheels, and perhaps the wind. Yet they too divided the work between farmers, craftsmen, merchants, and others. They had churches, schools, and governments. They lived by depending on each other and thus they were civilized.

Some of these ways of civilized living can be traced back to about 3000 B.C. Before this, men had taken several thousand years to develop the foundations for civilized living, such as learning to grow food and to make good homes and tools. The greatest achievements in the advance from the earliest ways of living are shown in pictures on later pages.

It might seem that in order to live better men would have made these advances quite generally

around the world. Scientists are sure, however, that this did not happen. The foundations of civilization were developed in relatively few locations in response to special conditions. Civilization itself arose in even fewer localities in response to still more special conditions. Elsewhere men continued to live by hunting and gathering wild plant food as mankind had done since the beginning of time. Apparently this lack of change was the result of primitive belief that every thing in nature was controlled by good and evil spirits. Thus the secret of getting along lay in winning favor from the spirits with magic ceremonies and sacrifices (see Magic). Such beliefs would largely prevent attempts to develop any improvements in a way of life.

The advances from primitive hunting to civilization seem to have been made largely by men of the Mediterranean region who first lived in northern Africa. A separate article on Man tells how a change of climate at the end of the Ice Age turned what had been a pleasant grassland into the present Sahara. By 10,000 B.C. increasing dryness was driving these people to seek new homes wherever they could find a reliable water supply.

Some entered Europe through Spain and Italy. There they managed to live much as they always had so they achieved no progress. Others moved eastward and there they encountered the special conditions which forced them to develop new ways of living.

#### Forerunners of Civilization

These conditions existed along a belt of land called the Fertile Crescent which began in Egypt where the Nile River brought water from mountains far to the south. It extended along the Mediterranean coast through mountainous Palestine and Syria and then turned east along the southern slopes of the mountains of Asia Minor. These mountains caught moisture enough from the winds (especially in winter) to maintain rivers through otherwise dry land. By far the greatest of these rivers were the Tigris and the Euphrates which flowed southeastward from the Asia Minor mountains across the newly made Arabian Desert to the Persian Gulf. (See Mesopotamia.)

Throughout this Crescent men had to stay near the rivers for water. Therefore they had to learn how to live in fixed localities. Relics from many sites along the Crescent show that by 5000 B.C. men had learned how to build good homes and get their food by growing crops and keeping domesticated animals. They learned too how to make baskets and pottery and how to spin thread and weave cloth.

They also learned to make improved stone tools by polishing the stone to get sharp edges and smooth sides. Hence this level of culture has often been called *neolithic* to distinguish it from the cruder hunting life during which man used tools made by chipping stone (see Stone Age). Other terms are *barbarism* for the neolithic level and *savagery* for the hunting life.

All this progress enabled people to live in village settlements and to meet simple needs for food, shelter,

#### FIRST STEPS TOWARD BETTER LIVING



When man learned to make fire, he made his first major advance toward civilized living. Fire was a great help to him in cool climates and it frightened away dangerous animals. It also enabled him to have the advantage of cooked food.



Another great advance was learning how to chip flint and other stones into knives, borers, spear points and other implements. With stone-tipped weapons men could kill large animals and stone tools enabled women to prepare animal skins for garments.



In some localities men learned how to bake clay into pottery. Pots could be used for boiling food and storing it for use in times of scarcity. This is one of the great advances which took men from savagery to the level of barbarism.

and clothing. This, however, was not enough to bring about the development of interdependence to a level that could be called civilization. For this agriculture and other food production had to be developed to a level which would enable a portion of the population to produce food for all. Then those who were not needed to help produce food could give their time to making better tools and other articles, trading with other people acting as planners and leaders and in time keeping written records which preserved and enlarged knowledge.

#### Irrigation—The Key to Civilization

Only special conditions could give rise to such a development. Dry lands would not be productive enough to yield a large surplus of food. Well watered land would be covered with thick, tough grass and brush or would have dense forests. In such regions,

## THREE CORNERSTONES OF CIVILIZATION



When men learned to produce food by growing crops and keeping domesticated animals, farmers working under favorable circumstances could produce a surplus to support other workers. These workers could in turn make things to improve living.



Even the best stone tools had only limited value for cultivating soil or cutting and shaping wood. When men learned to smelt metals from ore, as these Africans are doing, they could have far better tools and do much more to improve living.



This North American Indian is making a record by painting symbols on a hide. Wherever men advanced beyond this level of writing to the ability to preserve thoughts and knowledge, they won the last victory needed to become civilized.

men who had nothing better than stone tools could only clear small patches for support of their villages. They could hardly advance to making metal tools, for this would require a surplus of food to support workers skilled in such manufacture.

A surplus could be produced, however, along the margins of great rivers such as the Nile in Africa, the Tigris and the Euphrates in southwest Asia, and the Indus in the northwest part of the Indian peninsula. During most of the year, the dry climate of these regions would prevent dense growth on the land. Each river would flood when snow melted or seasonal rain fell on the mountainous headwaters. After each flood the land would be soft enough to be worked with simple tools; and after seed was planted water could be supplied by irrigation. Under such circumstances development of agriculture and crafts could

proceed together, until interdependence had been built up to a civilized level.

## The First Civilizations

Between 4000 and 3000 B.C., men along each of these rivers gradually advanced toward civilization. Each culture had characteristics suited to its region; but all the cultures had some characteristics in common because of their dependence upon irrigation.

To be successful, a civilization based upon irrigation must have organization and government. All early civilizations seem to have progressed from an earlier tribal faith in magic to a state religion (see *Magic*). Craftsmen and (as trade arose) merchants were gathered into cities. The controlling power for each city and the surrounding irrigated area was the temple and its priesthood. If a king or ruler was named, he might serve as high priest or he might be considered a god. (Such an organization is called a *theocratic state*.)

In order to keep records of payments, expenditures, and materials and supplies in storage, each culture developed a system of writing and some form of arithmetic (see *Writing*). They also devised calendars to keep track of the seasons (see *Calendar*).

At first, writing consisted largely of symbols needed for record keeping; but gradually men developed ability to make records of knowledge, thoughts, and literature. Whenever this advance was made in a country or region, it is considered as the birth of history for that region. (See also *History*.) In all the civilizations mentioned, this advance came within a century or two of 3000 B.C.

## Civilization in China and America

The end of the Ice Age gave rise to civilized living in China, particularly along the Hwang Ho in the north (see *China*). This civilization had some contact with those farther west; but the enormous distance between them prevented any considerable exchange of cultural ideas until modern times.

Early in the Christian Era, the Mayan Indians of Central America developed a civilized culture. They had to clear away forests to produce food; but the warm climate produced a crop in only a few months of the year. In the remaining months, the farmers could do other work (see *Mayas*). At a much later time, the Inca Indians developed a civilized culture in the high mountains of Peru. This culture used irrigation, like the early ones in Egypt and Asia (see *Incas*).

## Civilization in Egypt and Mesopotamia

Of all the early civilizations, the ones which contributed most to Europe were those of Egypt and Mesopotamia. By the dawn of history, about 3000 B.C., all the Egyptians were united under the rule of one king, his nobles, and a strong priesthood. Within a few centuries they brought irrigation to a state of perfection. Above all, they were great builders. Many of their pyramids and temples still stand, thousands of years after they were built. Their portrait statues are among the greatest ever produced. (See also *Egypt, Ancient*; *Pyramids*.)

In the Tigris-Euphrates Valley (Mesopotamia), as in Egypt the earliest civilization developed near the mouths of the rivers (see Mesopotamia). The final development from neolithic ways was made by a people called Sumerians. They are believed to have invented wheeled transport and the potter's wheel and to have led in developing metalworking. From them these arts spread in time over much of Asia and Europe. It seems probable also that they led in developing massive architecture.

After several centuries of rule the Sumerians were conquered by Semitic neighbors but the conquerors continued to practice Sumerian ways. The later history of the Semites may be divided into three periods: first, the Babylonian, Assyrian, and Chaldean (3000 B.C. - 500 B.C.), second, that which began with the adventures of the seagoing Phoenicians and ended with the destruction of Carthage by Rome just before the Christian Era, and third, the story of the Jews in Palestine.

The peoples of Mesopotamia made many and varied contributions to the development of science, trade, and art. These are discussed in the article on Babylon and Assyria. Egyptian and Mesopotamian cultures were blended by a seafaring people called the Minoans, who had their principal cities on the island of Crete. They spread civilized culture throughout the islands and coasts of the Aegean sea. (See also Aegean Civilization.)

Various neighbors of the Egyptians and Mesopotamians also made contributions to the growth of civilization. Among them were the Phoenicians, who were great sailors and colonizers. Their trading colonies, founded after 1000 B.C., extended along the Mediterranean as far as Spain. They made great progress in writing, and some scholars believe that the modern alphabets of Europe come from theirs. (See also Phoenicians.)

Another small people, the Hebrews, dwelt side by side with the Phoenicians. Though they perished as a nation and were scattered all over the earth, they lived on as a great spiritual force through the religion which they gave to the world. The Hebrews wrote one of the finest pieces of literature, the Old Testament. Jesus Christ, the founder of Christianity, was born a Jew. (See Jews.)

#### Appearance of the Indo-Europeans

By 1500 B.C. a fairly continuous block of civilized peoples extended from the Aegean Sea and north-eastern Africa to beyond the Persian Gulf. About this time a new group of peoples speaking related Indo-European, or Aryan, languages pushed from the northern grasslands into southern and western Europe, the Near East, and India. Their early home was probably from south Russia to the Caspian Sea, and different branches began to drift apart well before 2000 B.C. All spoke kindred languages—Celtic, Teutonic, Slavic, Latin, Greek, Armenian, Persian, and Sanskrit being among the chief subfamilies. It is now believed that these peoples were racially very much mixed. They were grouped in clans and tribes,

possessed horses, cattle and sheep, and practiced a simple agriculture. They had plows and wheeled wagons. Some of them had learned the use of iron. Their coming covered many centuries and was partly a filtering in of small groups and occasionally a mass movement with conquests of people in the settled regions. Nearly everywhere their languages supplanted the earlier tongues.

One of their groups founded the great Persian Empire which was to master all western Asia and which formed a model for the Macedonian Empire, and indirectly for the Roman. The Persians also contributed through their religion, Zoroastrianism, certain ideas which were adopted by the Jews and later taken over by Christianity. (See Persian History.)

The islands and coast around the Aegean Sea were the home of a flourishing civilization for at least a thousand years before the coming of the Greeks. This culture, which has been called 'Minoan' after Minos, the lawgiver and friend of Zeus, seems to have reached its height in Crete (probably about 3000-1500 B.C.). (See Aegean Civilization.)

Meantime other civilizations had been developing in China and India, but they were so far off that they had little influence on the path of Western progress. Today, however, when contact has been established across the oceans, the art of China and Japan and the religious thought of India are getting increasing attention. (See China, India, Japan.)

#### Greek Culture Inspires the World

The Greeks appear about 1500 B.C. as one of the wandering Indo-European peoples who were gradually moving southward and coming into contact with the Aegean civilization. Their progress from Barbarism occupied many centuries, and with the growth of their culture a new age was born.

By the 5th century B.C., when Greek culture had reached its highest development, men generally had learned to live permanently on the land and to subsist on its crops. They had learned seafaring, trading, and soldiering, and had devised complex systems of government. They had founded great religions—Brahmanism and Buddhism in India, Zoroastrianism in Persia, Confucianism in China, and Judaism, the religion of the Hebrews. They had learned to use coins in trade and had made great inventions—writing, the use of bronze and iron seagoing ships, iron swords. The horse had been tamed, and craftsmanship was highly developed. It remained for the Greeks to produce a philosophy so deep and broad that it ruled man's thinking for a thousand years, to produce an art which is still man's greatest inspiration in the world of beauty, to develop a literature of unsurpassed magnificence, to create the studies of science and history by collecting and systematizing facts, and to develop the idea of democratic government. Though the Greeks learned many of the fundamentals of life from the earlier civilizations, they added something unique to man's heritage. The Greek freedom of mind is an ideal toward which man is still struggling. (See Greece.)



Greece and the other civilized regions of the eastern Mediterranean finally came under the political domination of the Romans, who had developed differences in character and culture. The Greeks were men of imagination and speculation; the Romans, builders and doers. One great contribution of Rome to later times was its development of law. Both specific rules and theories entered into the law of the Christian church and the Holy Roman Empire and have descendants in the law of today. Christianity spread through the empire and eventually to all Western Europe. (See Roman History.)

#### How the Arabs Preserved Culture

Through the so-called Dark Ages (375-800) which followed the decline of Rome, it was the Arabs who preserved the cultures of Greece and Rome. By their wide conquests Islam spread in a century and a quarter from the Indus to the Atlantic and Spain, and from the borders of China to upper Egypt. The intellectual life of the Arab world spread through the regions which the spirit of Greece had once dominated. The Arab conqueror contributed chiefly a religion, a language, and a fondness for poetry; from other civilizations they borrowed and preserved principles of government, law, science, philosophy, agriculture, commerce, and art. The Arab mind took up with fresh vigor the development of positive knowledge, which the Greeks had begun. India was another source of inspiration to them, particularly in mathematical science. Our "Arabic" numerals in their earliest form came from India (see Number System). Algebra was practically the creation of the Arabs; they developed spherical trigonometry, extended the knowledge of physics, and made great progress in astronomy and medicine. The manufacture of paper was learned by them from the Chinese and passed on by them to the Europeans. There grew up in the Moslem world, out of what were originally religious schools, a series of great universities which drew students from East and West. In Spain, Moorish universities became headquarters for a culture that was based on that of Greece, colored by other influences. (See Arabia and the Arabs; Education.)

Meanwhile Western Europe was going through the period of evolution which we call the Middle Ages (see Middle Ages). A new system of government and new ways of living developed (see Feudalism). Christianity gradually replaced old heathen beliefs, and contact with the East through the Crusades resulted in the revival of learning and the arts which we call the Renaissance (see Crusades; Renaissance).

About 500 years ago there were four epoch-making events which changed the whole course of civilization and led the way for the modern period. The invention of gunpowder revolutionized warfare. The invention of the compass opened the sea to exploration. The invention of the printing press enabled the multiplication of writings. The discovery that the earth goes around the sun, instead of the sun around the earth, changed men's ideas about the universe. (See Astronomy; Compass; Gunpowder; Printing.)

Even with these advances, life went on much as it had before. Nearly everything was still made laboriously by hand. Travel on foot, by horse, or sailing ships was as slow as it had been for thousands of years. It was not until about 100 years ago that the last stage of Civilization was begun by a series of inventions that multiplied the power of men over nature in ways that had hardly even been dreamed of.

#### The Beginning of the Modern Era

First came the steam engine, which not only revolutionized industry by furnishing power for newly invented machinery (see Industrial Revolution) but created a new era in travel and transportation by making possible the steamship and the railroad. Then came electricity, useful for power as well as for the telegraph, radio, and many other things. These inventions do not mean that there is any more genius in our time, for each new invention is based on something learned before. The bow and arrow and pottery rank relatively higher as inventions than automobiles or radio, because early man had nothing to build on.

In modern times we find that there is the same kind of differences in cultures and the same kind of influence of one upon the other that were noticeable in the early civilizations. We can distinguish the great divisions of Western, Chinese, and Indian civilizations and see that each differs from the others.

#### Contributions from Many Lands

The peculiarity of Western civilization is that it is adventurous, inventive, and individualistic. It has succeeded in going all over the world, but not in making everybody become like the West. Within the West are many different cultures which have had and will continue to have influence on one another. In Russia, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, and in parts of Germany and Hungary live the Slavs. Their languages and many of their customs are similar. Long before anyone thought of the Russian Revolution and Communism, all Slavs had a crude form of communism, that is, a system by which people owned and did things together. The Slavs are very musical, but a good deal of their music is in the minor key. Life has been hard for them, and they take starvation and injustice as something to be endured.

For the Latin peoples, such as the Italians, French, and Spanish, the struggle for existence has not been so difficult. There has been more gaiety and beauty in their lives, and some of their most valuable contributions to the world have been in the realm of the fine arts—painting, sculpture, literature, architecture, and music. Both France and Italy, however, have also produced some of the world's greatest scientists. To the Spanish and the Portuguese credit is due for their leadership in the great age of discovery.

The Teutons seem to be less imaginative but to work with a more steady effort than the Latins. The development of printing, a few great artists, and leadership in the Protestant revolt are among Germany's early contributions. It became a leader in many branches of science, and science as applied to industry was highly developed in the German technical schools.

The Germans attained great efficiency in government and in business methods. They made notable contributions to literature, as well, and led in the development of modern music.

The Scandinavians have never been great in numbers, but they early conquered the sea and enlarged the outlook of medieval Europe (see Northerners). Many of the officers and sailors on ships all over the world are Scandinavians. They have also reached a high level of government and social culture at home (see Scandinavia).

The British are a mixture of several peoples. They have done more to settle distant parts of the earth than anyone else and have carried their culture with them. They showed great ability in governing more backward people. England was the first nation to be formed in Western Europe. Its Magna Carta, which contains a forerunner of parliamentary government, is among the most famous of government documents. Late in the 18th century scientific discoveries and inventions of labor-saving machinery in England marked the beginning of the Industrial Revolution, which gave rise to a new stage. In the arts, particularly in literature, the world has received a valuable heritage from the English.

When the British came to America they found a rich and underpopulated country to which they had to apply different methods from those used in Europe. Thus American culture got its start. Many streams of immigration have come from cultures other than the English, but most of them have been molded into the Anglo-Saxon pattern. The people of the United States belong to Western civilization but have worked out a culture of their own from a combination of European cultures.

One of the most characteristic phases of modern civilizations is the development of national government with the emphasis on patriotism. The nation works for the benefit of all, and in return patriotism is expected. At the same time, the nations are trying to bring about international co-operation.

**CIVIL SERVICE** During a Congressional debate in 1831 a New York senator, William L. Marcy, used the phrase "to the victor belong the spoils." This saying accurately described the spoils system of appointing government workers. Each time a new administration came to power thousands of public servants were discharged and their places filled by members of the victorious political party. These wholesale changes were made with little or no regard to the employees' ability or job experience. As a result the efficiency of government service was often very low.

The situation reached a climax in 1881 when President James A. Garfield was shot and killed by a disappointed office seeker. An aroused public demanded an end to the evils of the spoils system. Carl Schurz and others organized the National Civil Service Reform League. New York passed the first state civil service law, requiring its employees to take a competitive examination. Congress, which had nullified an earlier reform bill by withholding necessary funds,

finally took corrective action by passing the Civil Service Act in 1883. This law, sponsored by Senator George Pendleton of Ohio, is the basis of the civil service system in effect today.

The Pendleton Act created a *Civil Service Commission* of three members appointed by the president with the consent of the Senate. Its chief job was to establish a merit system of appointment to certain public offices—that is, employees would obtain government jobs on the basis of demonstrated fitness without regard to politics, race, or religion. The first law provided competitive examinations for 13,000 government clerks. Since that time the number of positions covered by civil service has steadily increased. Today more than 90 per cent of all federal employees receive and hold their jobs under civil service. (Excluded are all policy-making positions.) About half the states and most of the larger cities have their own civil service systems. Canada has a merit system of government employment founded in 1908.

The heart of the civil service system is the *classified service*, which is organized into five major classes of jobs—professional, subprofessional, clerical, administrative and fiscal custodial, and clerical mechanical. Each of these classes is subdivided into grades with established salary schedules and promotion opportunities. Classified workers are protected from ordinary political influence and can be removed only for cause. They are also provided with retirement allowances.

*Unclassified* workers do not have this civil service status. They are temporary employees who are hired as needed. Such workers do not take merit examinations and may be dismissed at any time.

Civil service employees may join professional groups affiliated with labor unions but they cannot strike. Their political activities are limited by the Hatch acts of 1939-40 (see Political Parties). Members of political groups advocating the overthrow of the government are barred from federal employment.

Civil service employees work in Washington, D. C., and in field services at home and abroad. Examinations are held in more than 700 cities in every state and territory. Information regarding examinations may be obtained at any first- or second-class post office or from the Civil Service Commission, Washington, D. C.

**CIVIL WAR** Of all the wars fought by men probably the cruellest are civil wars in which two or more factions within a nation fight for control of the government. A civil war is more organized than a local rebellion or insurrection. In such a war opposing forces have the status of separate states, each with its own territory and its own armies.

One of the earliest civil wars took place in England. It was a conflict between the Puritans and the Cavaliers, 1642-49 (see English History). Other major civil wars have been fought in the United States, 1861-65; Russia, 1918-20; Spain, 1936-39; and China, beginning in 1946. (See also Civil War, American; China, Russia, Spain.)



The Climax of the Civil War Was the Union's Repulse of Gen. George E. Pickett's Charge at Gettysburg

## *The WAR That REUNITED the NATION*

**CIVIL WAR, AMERICAN.** At 4 30 A.M. on April 12, 1861, Confederate artillery in Charleston, S. C., opened fire on Fort Sumter, which was held by the United States Army. The bombardment set off a savage four-year war between two great geographic sections of the United States. One section was the North—23 Northern and Western states that supported the federal government. The other section was the South—11 Southern states that had seceded (withdrawn) from the Union and formed an independent government called the Confederate States of America. The struggle between these two combatants is the American Civil War, also known as the War Between the States or the War of the Rebellion.

The war aims of both sides were simple. At the beginning the North fought only to preserve the Union. The South fought to win recognition as an independent nation. After 1862 the long-troublesome slavery problem became an additional issue of vast importance. A Northern victory would mean ultimate freedom for slaves; a Southern victory would insure the protection of slavery in all Confederate states.

### *The Basic Issue of States' Rights*

The Civil War came as a climax to a long series of quarrels between the North and South over the interpretation of the United States Constitution. In general, the North favored a loose interpretation that would grant the federal government expanded powers. The South objected to this centralization of authority and wanted to reserve all undefined powers to the individual states (*see States' Rights*).

This difference of opinion sprang primarily from economic considerations. The North, as well as the

West, wanted internal improvements sponsored by the federal government—roads, railroads, and canals. The South, however, had little desire for these projects. Another source of conflict was the opening of public lands in the West. The distribution of such lands in small lots speeded the development of this section; but it was opposed in the South because it aided the free farmer rather than the slaveholding plantation owner. A similar quarrel developed over the tariff. A high tariff protected the Northern manufacturer. The South wanted a low tariff in order to trade its cotton and other products for cheap foreign goods.

One issue, however, overshadowed all others—the right of the federal government to prohibit slavery in the Western territories. Such legislation would severely limit the number of slave states in the Union. At the same time the number of free states would keep multiplying. Many Southerners feared that a government increasingly dominated by free states might eventually endanger existing slaveholdings. Thus the South strongly opposed all efforts to block the expansion of slavery. If the federal government did succeed in exercising this power many Southern political leaders threatened *secession* as a means of protecting states' rights.

### *The Slavery System in the South*

The doctrine of states' rights might not have assumed such great importance had it not been related to the more basic issue of Negro slave labor. Slavery was introduced into Virginia with the first importation of Negroes in 1619 and gradually spread to all the colonies. It flourished most, however, in the

Southern colonies where slaves could be used profitably as field hands in the cultivation of tobacco, rice and indigo. When the American Revolution broke out three fourths of the Negroes lived south of the Mason and Dixon's Line.

After the war slavery became more and more unpopular. By 1804 seven of the northernmost states had abolished slavery and emancipation (the freeing of slaves) was common even in Virginia, Maryland and Delaware.

Just as slavery seemed to be dying out it was revived by an agricultural rebirth in the South. A new demand for cotton and the introduction of improved machinery such as the cotton gin transformed the Southern states into the greatest cotton growing region in the world (see Cotton). Cotton production jumped from 175,000 bales in 1810 to 3,841,000 bales in 1860. To achieve this tremendous increase required a whole army of new workers, chiefly Negro slaves. Within 50 years the number of slaves rose from about 1,190,000 to almost 4,000,000, valued at about \$2,000,000,000.

#### Abolitionists and Their Work

At the same time that slavery became highly profitable in the South, a wave of democratic reform swept the North and West. There were new demands for political equality as well as for social and economic advances. The goals were free public education, rights for women, better wages and working conditions for laborers, and more humane treatment for criminals and the insane.

This crusading ardor soon led to an all-out attack on the slavery system in the South. It charged that such an institution nullified the greatest human right—that of being a free person. Reformers now called for the complete abolition of slavery.

The first Abolitionist to gain national attention was William Lloyd Garrison of Boston in 1831 (see Garrison). Within a few years Abolitionist news-

papers, orators and societies sprang up throughout the North. Some of the Abolitionists even denounced the federal Constitution because it legalized and condoned slavery. Such a radical was Wendell Phillips, one of New England's ablest orators. In 1836 he gave up his law practice because his conscience would not allow him to take the oath to support the Constitution.

About the same time James G. Birney of Ohio, a former slaveholder in Kentucky, began gathering all antislavery forces into one political unit, the Liberty party. Under this label he ran for president in 1840 and again in 1844. Other notable Abolitionists were John Greenleaf Whittier, the Quaker poet; Theodore Parker, a Unitarian preacher from Boston, called the "terrible pastor of Abolition"; and James Russell Lowell, who denounced slavery in prose and verse (see Lowell, James Russell Whittier).

Despite their noisy campaign the Abolitionists remained a small minority. They were generally condemned by their neighbors and were often the victims of ruthless persecution. Some antislavery printing offices were mobbed and burned. One Abolitionist editor, Elijah Lovejoy of Alton, Ill., was murdered when a mob attacked his press.

Many of the Abolitionists had no firsthand knowledge of slavery and their criticisms were often wide of the mark. Southerners who might have doubted the wisdom of slavery now began to defend it with great earnestness. They said it was not a necessary evil but a righteous and benevolent institution. They compared it with the wage-slave system of the North and claimed that the slaves were better cared for than the free factory workers. Southern preachers proclaimed that slavery was sanctioned in the Bible. Differences over the slavery issue prompted some Southern churches to break away from the parent group and form sectional denominations.

In the House of Representatives Southerners fought back in 1836 by requiring all antislavery petitions to be tabled without reading or discussion. John Quincy Adams, then ex-president and now a member of the House, finally won repeal of the rule in 1844 (see Adams, John Quincy).

#### The Fight over Expansion of Slavery

More and more Northerners became convinced that slavery should not be allowed to spread to new territories. At the same time Southerners were becoming equally determined to create new slave states. For 40 years this issue created an ever widening breach between the South and the rest of the nation. The slave states had long been a separate section economically. Now they began to regard themselves as a separate social and political unit as well.

The first clear evidence of political sectionalism came in 1819

#### VIOLENCE BEFORE THE CIVIL WAR



In 1859 John Brown's raid on the Harpers Ferry arsenal was blocked by Marines who surrounded the raiders in an enginehouse and forced their surrender.

when Missouri asked to be admitted to the Union as a slave state. After months of wrangling Congress finally passed the Missouri Compromise (see Clay, Henry; Missouri Compromise).

This measure preserved an uneasy peace for almost a generation. Then in 1848 the acquisition of a great block of territory from Mexico seemed to open new opportunities for the spread of slavery (see Mexican War). For a time the North and South were on the verge of war, but finally both parties agreed to accept the Compromise of 1850 (see Compromise of 1850). The most disputed provision in the agreement was a law requiring the return of fugitive slaves. Many antislavery people openly flouted this law. They set up "underground railroads" with "stations" where runaway slaves might hide, receive food, and be directed to the next stop on the way to Canada and freedom. Some Northern states passed "personal liberty laws," in an effort to prevent enforcement of this fugitive slave act.

In 1854 President Pierce requested three American ministers in Europe to meet at Ostend, Belgium, to study the problem of uprisings in Cuba. On October 9 the Ostend Manifesto was issued by the three ministers—James Buchanan, John Y. Mason, and Pierre Soulé. This document urged that Spain should sell Cuba to the United States and if this plan failed, then the island should be taken by force. President Pierce's administration rejected this crude attempt to add new slave territory to the Union.

The differences of opinion over slavery became sharper when Senator Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois persuaded Congress to repeal the Missouri Compromise in 1854 (see Douglas). His new measure, the Kansas-Nebraska Act, led to the first armed conflict between North and South—the fighting for control of Kansas (see Kansas-Nebraska Act). Three years later the tension between the two regions was heightened by the Dred Scott Decision, which held that Congress had no right to prohibit slavery in federal territories (see Dred Scott Decision).

In the North and West many people now began to accept the fact that slavery was morally wrong and that a start should be made toward its extinction. The moderate point of view was best expressed by a tall, gaunt lawyer from Illinois, Abraham Lincoln (see Lincoln-Douglas Debates). Extremists such as John Brown wanted direct action. In 1859 Brown led a futile raid on Harpers Ferry, planning to start a Negro insurrection in the South (see Brown).

Meanwhile, a new political party, the Republican, had been formed in 1854 to combat the extension of



No president-elect ever entered the national capital with less fanfare than was accorded Abraham Lincoln. Because of assassination threats Lincoln left the special train on which he had been traveling and slipped quietly into the city with Col. W. H. Lamon. There he was met by Elihu B. Washburne (behind him).

slavery (see Political Parties). This party gained strength so rapidly that Southern leaders threatened to secede from the Union if the "Black Republicans" came to power. When the new party did win the elections of 1860 and Lincoln was chosen president, the Southern states, led by South Carolina (Dec. 20, 1860) carried out their threat. By February 1861, six other states of the lower South—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas—had seceded. (See also Confederate States of America; Davis, Jefferson; Stephens.)

#### Efforts to Save the Union

Many efforts were made to preserve the Union and to prevent bloodshed. The outgoing president, James Buchanan, was devoted to the Union but he believed that the Constitution forbade his taking any action against the South. For several weeks Lincoln also followed a "wait-and-see" course.

In Congress, earnest men sought to find a solution. A Senate committee, headed by John J. Crittenden of Kentucky, prepared an amendment to the Constitution. It provided that the Missouri Compromise line would be extended to the Pacific Ocean and that Congress would be prohibited from interfering with slav-

ery in territories below this line of 36°30' It also provided that the federal government would pay for slaves who escaped to the North The proposal died, however, when President-elect Lincoln refused his support because it left open the way for the expansion of slavery

Another effort for peace was made by the Virginia legislature, which called a conference of the states at Washington, D C, February 4 Seven slave and 14 free states sent representatives The conference recommended various concessions to the South Congress ignored these suggestions however and instead passed an amendment to the Constitution of 1861 which provided that Congress should never interfere with slavery in the states It was not ratified by the necessary number of states and was forgotten when the fighting began

#### The War Begins at Fort Sumter

When Lincoln became president he took care to avoid all threats of force but he promised to protect "the property and places" in the South belonging to the federal government One of those places was Fort Sumter in South Carolina Disregarding Lincoln's vow Charleston land batteries opened fire on the fort April 12, 1861 The small federal garrison surrendered the next day The Civil War had begun (See also Fort Sumter)

Until the bombardment of Fort Sumter many people in the North and South had been determined to prevent war Some Northerners had argued to "let the erring sisters go in peace" Many Southerners had opposed secession, and in some of the rebelling states the decision to leave the Union was made only after a close popular vote The attack on Fort Sumter however, ended all hope of peace Lincoln at once called upon the loyal states to furnish 75 000 state militia, and Confederate President Davis asked for 100 000 volunteers from the Southern states Both sections were eager for battle Virginia North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas now joined the Confederacy The four border states—Maryland, Delaware Kentucky, and Missouri—stayed with the North In Virginia, some of the western counties broke away from the "Old Dominion" and set up a separate government which joined the Union as the state of West Virginia in 1863

#### Comparison of Rival Forces

In the division of the nation's resources the North fared far better than the South Only 11 states left the Union and 23 (21 with West Virginia) remained loyal The population of the loyal states was about 23 000 000 that of the seceding states, less than 10 000 000, of whom more than a third were slaves.

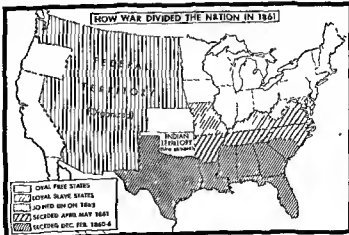
The wealth of the North was estimated at more than twice that of the South (excluding slave property) The North had every type of industry, including about 90 per cent of the total manufacturing of the nation and most of its mineral resources The South was chiefly agricultural with a heavy dependence upon cotton production

The North had more than twice as many miles of railroads as the South It also possessed the means of maintaining effective railroad operation whereas the South did not This was highly important because the Civil War was the first great conflict in which railroads furnished the chief means of transportation On the seas the North retained most of the United States Navy and most of the privately owned merchant vessels The two main assets of the South were (1) its armies fought on interior lines thus lessening transportation and communication problems, and (2) it had expert military leaders notably in the East

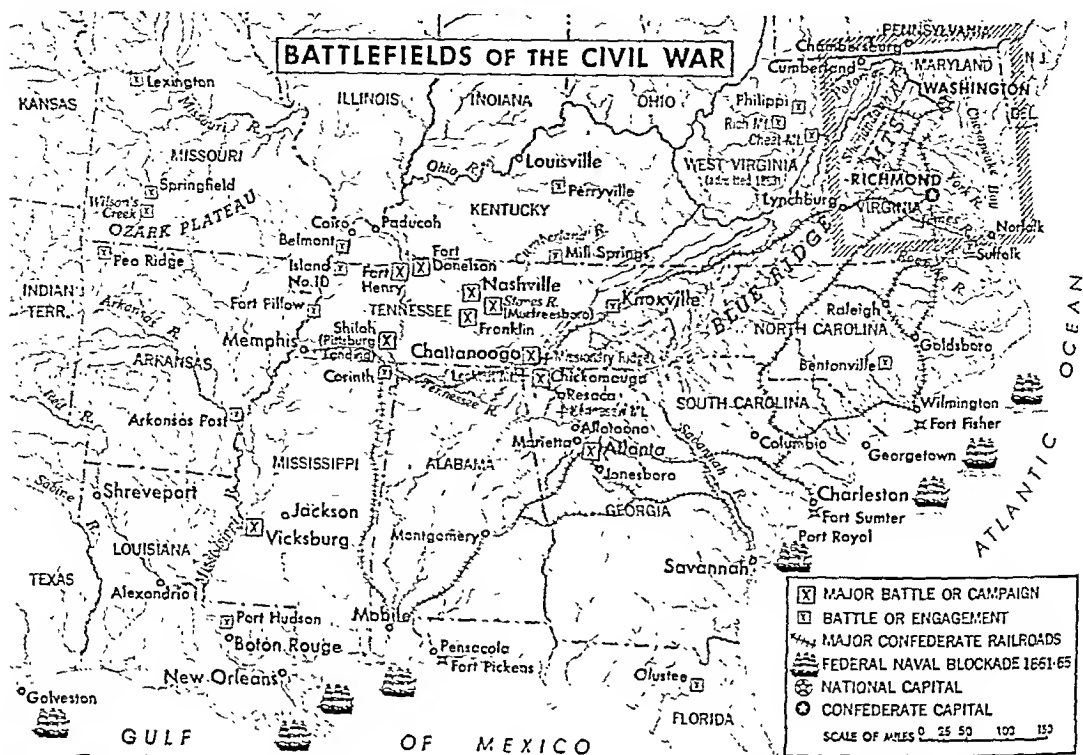
In the beginning both sides tried to raise troops only on a volunteer basis but they soon found it necessary to adopt a military draft The South resorted to conscription in 1862 and the North the following year Both sides also had great difficulty in equipping their troops It was many months before Northern factories were producing enough goods for the Union armies The South with little industrial resources had to import much of its equipment from Europe, running it through the naval blockades imposed by Union vessels throughout the war

#### The First Year of War

During 1861 both sides hastened to create field armies The first major battle came July 21, 1861, when overconfident Union forces under Gen Irvin McDowell were routed at Bull Run (Manassas) by Confederate troops commanded by Gen Joseph E Johnston and Pierre Beauregard (see Bull Run) This battle showed that the war could not be fought



The Confederate States of America consisted of 11 states, 7 original members (dark tone) and 4 states that seceded after the fall of Fort Sumter (medium tone) Four border states (light tone) held slaves but remained in the Union (shown in white) West Virginia became the 24th loyal state in 1863



without well-trained soldiers. It also indicated that the conflict would probably last a long time.

Throughout the remainder of 1861 the fighting was concentrated in the border states. Federal successes under Gen. George B. McClellan in what is now West Virginia helped keep that territory in the Union (see McClellan). Missouri remained loyal due chiefly to the efforts of Capt. Nathaniel Lyon, Gen. John C. Frémont, and the Blair family (see Frémont). In Kentucky, Governor Beriah Magoffin attempted to keep that state neutral but without success. Union troops occupied most of Kentucky throughout the war although a rump convention did pass an ordinance of secession late in 1862.

By the end of 1861 two major battlefronts had developed. One was in the East where Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania suffered the bulk of the fighting. The other front was in the West, at first along the Mississippi River and then later around Chattanooga, Tenn., and in northern Georgia.

#### The War in the East, 1862

On the Eastern front each side tried to capture the opposing capital. General McClellan, the first Union commander here, was a great drillmaster but a timid warrior. He was repeatedly outmaneuvered by the Confederate commander, Gen. Robert E. Lee, who proved to be one of the greatest military leaders of all time (see Lee, Robert E.).

In the spring of 1862 McClellan brought his Army of the Potomac by water as far as Fortress Monroe, Va. He planned to take Richmond by moving up the

narrow peninsula between the York and James rivers. McDowell's troops, held at Fredericksburg in defense of Washington, were to be held in reserve. The campaign got off to a slow start. The Army of the Potomac was delayed a month besieging weakly held Yorktown and then was halted again at the battle of Fair Oaks (Seven Pines), May 31-June 1. When McClellan was almost ready to attack Richmond, McDowell was ordered away to the Shenandoah Valley.

In the Shenandoah Valley Confederate Gen. "Stonewall" Jackson had routed Northern troops in a lightning advance on Harpers Ferry. From this point his "foot cavalry" seemed to threaten Washington itself (see Jackson, Thomas J.). Jackson then slipped away and hurried his men by train to Richmond. Here Lee had sent Gen. J. E. B. Stuart on a cavalry raid which brilliantly encircled McClellan's forces (see Stuart, James E. B.). Lee then took the offensive. He drove McClellan back in the Seven Days battles, ending at Malvern Hill, July 1, 1862.

Alarmed by Union failures, President Lincoln placed Gen. Henry W. Halleck in command of all Federal armies. Halleck ordered McClellan to abandon his Peninsular Campaign and to unite with the Union forces in northern Virginia, then led by Gen. John Pope. Before Pope could be reinforced, Jackson's corps and Lee's other corps under Gen. James Longstreet routed the Federals in the second battle of Bull Run, August 28-30.

Lee now crossed the Potomac to invade Maryland. He wanted to transfer the fighting to Northern soil



The map at the left shows the major battle areas and strategic points in the Civil War. The map at the right is an enlargement of the eastern front scene of the bloodiest fighting. In the climactic year of 1863 Union armies knifed deep into the South to open the Mississippi River and to win control of all the Chancellorsville area. At the same time Lee's chief Northern thrust was turned back at Gettysburg. These victories doomed the Confederacy. Contributing to the Union triumph was the naval blockade of major Southern ports and the weaknesses of the Confederate railroads.

and at the same time to influence the coming Congressional elections against Lincoln. To protect his rear Lee sent Jackson to capture Harpers Ferry. Meanwhile McClellan, who had succeeded Pope accidentally obtained a copy of Lee's general orders. He advanced to meet Lee along Antietam Creek at Sharpsburg. While McClellan hesitated for a whole day Jackson with three divisions made a forced march up from Harpers Ferry. When the Union troops finally did attack on September 17 they met most of Lee's reunited forces. Late that afternoon Gen. A. P. Hill's division arrived from Harpers Ferry just in time to prevent a possible decisive Union victory (see Antietam).

#### From Antietam to Gettysburg

The Union victory at Antietam slight though it was gave President Lincoln the opportunity to issue the Emancipation Proclamation. This decreed the freedom of all slaves in territory still in rebellion on Jan. 1, 1863 (see Emancipation Proclamation). The president took this momentous step to introduce a new moral aim in the war and to prevent foreign intervention.

Then Lincoln began a long search for a general to cope with the brilliant Lee. McClellan was relieved because he had the slows as Lincoln phrased it. He was replaced by Gen. Ambrose Burnside who led the Army of the Potomac to a disastrous defeat at Fredericksburg, Va. Dec. 12, 1862 (see Fredericksburg). The next choice Gen. Fighting Joe Hooker fared little better at Chancellorsville, May 2-3, 1863, although the death of Jackson here was a severe blow to the Confederacy (see Chancellorsville). Now Lee

again invaded the North advancing into Pennsylvania. At Gettysburg, July 1-3, 1863, Lee suffered his first stinging defeat, but the North failed to follow up the advantage. The hesitant Union leader was Gen. George G. Meade, who had relieved Hooker just before the battle (see also Gettysburg, Hancock, Winfield S. Meade).

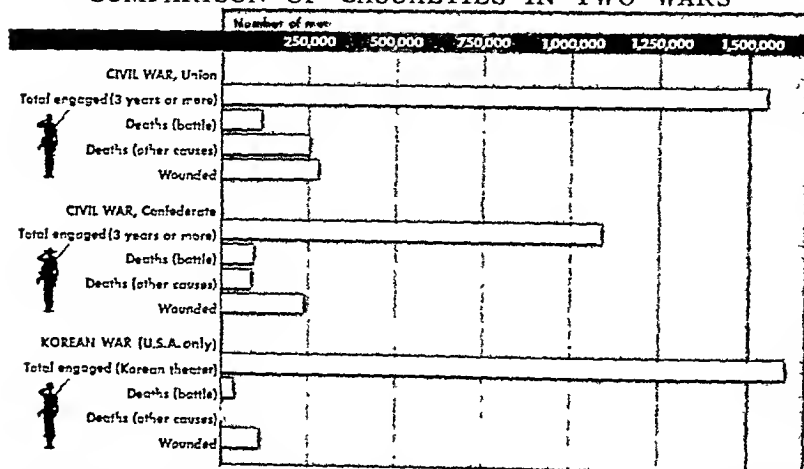
#### Campaigns in the West 1862-64

Throughout the war the Federal forces were more successful in the West. In February 1862 Gen. Ulysses S. Grant advanced into Tennessee (see Grant). He captured Fort Henry on the Tennessee River with the aid of Commo A. H. Foote and his gunboats, then crossed to the Cumberland to take Fort Donelson. After a desperate battle at Shiloh, April 6-7, 1862, he cut the Confederate railway communication with the East at Corinth, Miss. (see Shiloh). In this battle the able Southern general Albert S. Johnston was mortally wounded. While Shiloh was being fought, General Pope's men and Foote's gunboats seized Island Number 10, an important Confederate fort on the Mississippi River. A few weeks later Commo David G. Farragut ran his fleet past the batteries at the mouth of the Mississippi River paving the way for the occupation of New Orleans by Union forces on May 1, 1862 (see Farragut).

It was not until more than a year later, however, that the Mississippi was completely opened. On July 4, 1863, as Lee was retreating from his disastrous defeat at Gettysburg, Vicksburg fell to General Grant after a desperate siege (see Vicksburg). Five



## COMPARISON OF CASUALTIES IN TWO WARS



In the Korean fighting casualties were far fewer than for either side in the Civil War, largely because of: (1) the greatly increased number of service and supply troops; and (2) the great advances in medical science which reduced sharply deaths from wounds and from disease.

days later Port Hudson, the last Confederate river fort, surrendered.

To the East, Confederate Gen. John H. Morgan led a raiding party into Kentucky in July 1862. The following summer he swept into Indiana and Ohio before his force was defeated and captured. Other raiders under Gen. Nathan B. Forrest destroyed Federal stores and lines of communication in Tennessee. The Southern Army of Tennessee under Gen. Braxton Bragg invaded Kentucky in September 1862 but was turned back by Gen. D. C. Buell's Union army at Perryville on October 8.

Bragg withdrew to central Tennessee, pursued by the Union army now commanded by Gen. W. S. Rosecrans. At Murfreesboro (Stones River) he was defeated again, December 31-January 2, and retreated to Chattanooga. Six months later Bragg gave up Chattanooga without a struggle. He was then reinforced by Longstreet's corps from Virginia. At Chickamauga, Ga., Sept. 19-20, 1863, the combined Confederate forces lashed back at the Union troops. The battle might have been a major Federal disaster but for the firm stand taken by Gen. George H. Thomas and his men (see Thomas).

Thomas now replaced Rosecrans, and Grant was brought from Vicksburg to take supreme command of the Union forces in the West. In fighting around Chattanooga, November 23-25, the main Confederate army in the West was driven from Tennessee (see Chattanooga, Battle of). Under Gen. Joseph Johnston and later Gen. J. B. Hood the Confederates retreated toward Atlanta fighting a series of delaying actions. In direct command of this Union drive was Grant's ablest lieutenant, Gen. William T. Sherman (see Sherman).

## The Final Phase, 1864-65

In March 1864, Grant became commander in chief of all Federal armies and moved his headquarters to Virginia. Seeing that the long fighting had severely weakened Lee's forces, Grant began a relentless cam-

paign of increased attrition. He forced bloody but inconclusive battles at the Wilderness, May 5-6; Spotsylvania, May 8-12; and Cold Harbor, June 1-3. He then circled Richmond and laid siege to the important railroad junction of Petersburg, Va.

In July 1864, Lee sent Gen. Jubal Early raiding in Shenandoah Valley, hoping to repeat Jackson's successes of 1862. Early, however, was routed by Gen. Philip Sheridan's cavalry who then ravaged the valley, destroying Confederate food supplies (see Sheridan).

In Georgia, Sherman's Army of the West had captured Atlanta, Sept. 2, 1864, and then marched on to the sea, leaving behind a swath of waste and destruction 60 miles wide. Sherman reached Savannah December 20. Meanwhile Confederate General Hood, attempting a counterattack in Tennessee, was decisively defeated at Franklin November 30 and at Nashville December 15-16.

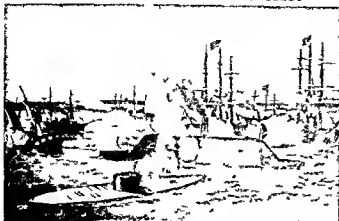
From Savannah, Sherman turned northward to join forces with Grant. This pincer movement against Lee proved unnecessary, however. A Federal victory at Five Forks, Va., April 1, 1865, forced Lee to abandon both Petersburg and Richmond and flee westward. Finally, with his army depleted and his supplies exhausted, Lee surrendered to Grant at Appomattox Court House, Va., April 9. Sherman took the surrender of Joseph Johnston's army in North Carolina April 26. On May 4 Gen. Richard Taylor surrendered the Confederate forces in Mississippi and Alabama. Three weeks later Gen. Kirby Smith surrendered the trans-Mississippi forces in Texas. The war was over.

The War at Sea

Early in the war President Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of the entire Southern coast line, and by pressing all kinds of ships into use, severely curtailed Confederate shipping (see Blockade). Southern efforts to break the blockade were in vain. The chief hope, the *Merrimac* (Virginia), could get no better than a draw in its famous battle with the *Monitor* in 1862 (see 'Monitor' and 'Merrimac').

Several commerce destroyers were built in England for the Confederacy. They did much damage to Northern shipping but they could not raise the blockade. Gradually the Union tightened its grip on the seas by capturing the Southern ports through which blockade runners smuggled supplies. New Orleans fell first, in 1862. In 1864 Farragut's warships took Mobile harbor. The next year Fort Fisher, guarding Wilmington's harbor, was stormed by Comdr. David Porter's fleet co-operating with land forces under

## THE FIRST BATTLE BETWEEN IRONCLADS



A battle at Hampton Roads in 1862 revolutionized naval warfare. The Confederate ironclad *Merrimack* renamed the *Virginia* began destroying the wooden Union fleet until driven off by the Federal Monitor (foreground). Another gunboat encased in iron.

Gen. A. H. Terry (see Porter, David D.) A little more than a month later Sherman's capture of Charleston sealed off the last major port.

## Foreign Affairs During the War

At the beginning of the war the South counted heavily on foreign intervention. It believed that European nations, particularly England, must have Southern cotton for their industries and that if necessary they would fight the North to get it. In 1861 the Confederacy dispatched two agents to England and France but Federal warships took them off a British ship as prisoners of war. This incident nearly involved the United States and Great Britain in war (see Trent Affair).

The Union protested to Great Britain about the commerce destroyers which the British government permitted to be built in local shipyards. The most famous of these vessels was the *Alabama*, commanded by Capt. Raphael Semmes (see Alabama Claims). Other difficulties arose from the enforcement of the Federal blockade. Fortunately neither Britain nor the United

States wanted war, and when British workingmen learned that the Union was fighting for the cause of free labor their sympathies were all with the North. England found other sources of supply for cotton and profited from trade as a neutral.

France, however, was openly hostile to the United States. Napoleon III even sponsored an expedition to Mexico aimed at making that republic a satellite state of France. The puppet Mexican emperor, Archduke Maximilian of Austria, was executed for his trouble in 1867. (See also Mexico.)

## War on the Home Front

One of the big problems on the home front was the large group of Northerners who opposed the war. These "copperheads," as they were called, organized secret societies such as the Golden Circle. They sought to embarrass the government by discouraging enlistments, opposing the draft, and even helping Confederate prisoners to escape. Copperheads became influential in the Democratic party and in the elections of 1862 scored important victories in Illinois, Indiana, and Iowa.

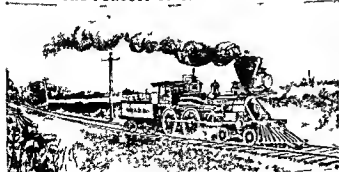
In 1864 the peace-at-any-price element wrote the Democratic platform calling for an immediate end to the war. They nominated General McClellan for the presidential candidate but he came out openly for winning the war. President Lincoln was renominated by the Republicans under the label of Union party. Although the popular vote was close, Lincoln carried all but three states—New Jersey, Delaware, and Kentucky. Voting for the first time was Nevada, admitted as a state Oct. 31, 1864. Much of Lincoln's success was due to Sherman's timely victories in Georgia.

To the great misfortune of both North and South, President Lincoln served but six weeks of his second term. He was shot by John Wilkes Booth April 14, 1865, and died the following day, less than a week after Lee's surrender.

The victory of the Federal forces established that no state could secede from the Union or even nullify a national law. The war paved the way for the adoption of the 13th Amendment, which forbade the use of slave labor in the United States (see United States Constitution).

After the war the United States faced grave problems of readjustment and reconstruction. The economic, social, and political outgrowths of the war are discussed in Reconstruction Period. (See also United States History.)

## THE PURSUIT OF THE GENERAL



In a daring raid in 1862, 22 Union soldiers captured the Confederate engine the *General*. They were finally caught by pursuers in the engine *Texas* (far left).

**CLAMS AND MUSSELS.** Along the Atlantic coast of North America clams are eaten by more people than any other shellfish, probably because they can be gathered along the beaches by amateurs as well as by commercial fishermen. When the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, the Indians taught them to dig clams in the sand flats. Many a time this lesson kept a Pilgrim family from going hungry. A favorite picnic of shore towns today is the clambake. The clams, along with corn, potatoes, and fish or chicken, are roasted in a hole in the beach, lined with hot stones and packed with freshly gathered seaweed.

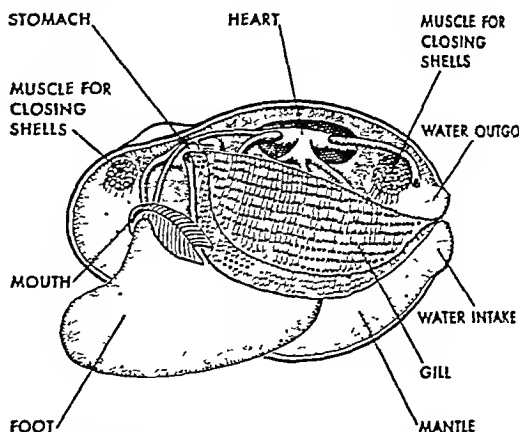
Clams are mollusks of the bivalve group; that is, they have two shells connected by a muscular hinge (see Mollusks). Two kinds of clams comprise most of the production along the Atlantic coast. The soft-shell, or long-neck, clam (*Mya arenaria*) is the only true clam to a New Englander. The hard-shell, or littleneck, clam (*Venus mercenaria*) is known by the Indian name *quahog* or *quahaug*. Soft-shell clams are found from Cape Cod north to the Arctic Ocean; hard-shell clams from the Cape south and along the Gulf coast.

#### Soft-Shell and Hard-Shell Clams

Soft-shell clams live buried in the mud or sand of tidal flats. When the tide covers the flats the clam extends its siphon up to the surface of the sand. The siphon consists of a pair of tubes lying side by side. Water laden with oxygen and minute food particles is drawn into one tube; water carrying carbon dioxide and waste products is forced out from the other tube. Through the siphon also the eggs and sperms are expelled into the water. When the tide ebbs, the clam withdraws its siphon. This causes a spurt of water which reveals its position to clam diggers.

Hard-shell clams have shorter siphons and live on bottoms where they are constantly underwater. They burrow only deep enough to cover the shell. Both

#### ANATOMY OF A FRESH-WATER CLAM



Fresh-water clams lack the siphon of the marine clams. Both kinds have a digging foot, and the internal organs are similar.

kinds have a fleshy, wedge-shaped foot with which they burrow and move from place to place.

The eggs and sperms of the hard- and soft-shell clams are discharged into the water where fertilization takes place. Within 10 or 12 hours a free-swimming larva hatches from an egg. The larva is about 1/300 of an inch long. In three to six days it sinks to the bottom. There it spins a thread called a byssus and anchors itself to a stone, shell, or bit of seaweed. It is now about the size of a grain of sand and the shell is very thin. When the shell is about one-quarter inch long the clam begins to burrow into the sand. Finally the gland in the foot which secretes the byssus thread is absorbed, and the mature clam never again leaves its burrow unless it is disturbed. Few clams in their early defenseless stages escape being eaten by other forms of marine life. Clams reach a marketable size of two and a half inches in about two years.

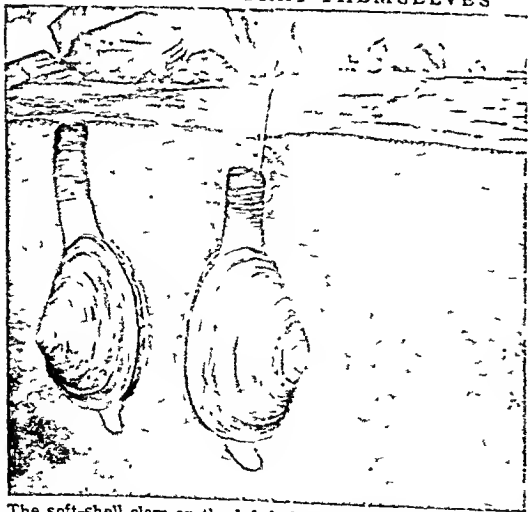
Commercial fishermen take soft-shell clams by digging with special hand diggers. Hard-shell clams, in the large beds off the Gulf coast of Florida, are taken by dredges to which a rakelike digging apparatus is attached. Indian money called "wampum" was made from the hard shell of the quahog. The dark purple spot at the hinge was the part used. The shell was rubbed on a stone until only a purple bead remained.

Important salt-water commercial clams on the Pacific coast are the littleneck clam (*Paphia staminea*), the butter clam (*Saxidomus nuttalli*), and the razor clam (*Siliqua patula*). The razor clam, found from the Sea of Okhotsk to Monterey, has a long, elliptical shell with a sharp edge. The United States catch of clams is marketed fresh and as canned clams or clam chowder. Large quantities are also used as fish bait.

#### Fresh-Water Clams and Salt-Water Mussels

Fresh-water clams and salt-water mussels belong to another, but closely related, group. They differ from the hard- and soft-shell clams in several ways. They have imperfectly developed siphons. The inner shell is pearly instead of porcelainlike. The gills are formed in a different manner. The eggs are fertilized in the

#### HOW CLAMS BETRAY THEMSELVES



The soft-shell clam on the left is in normal position. The one on the right is drawing in its siphon. The resulting waterspout reveals its location to clam diggers.

## THE WORLD'S LARGEST SHELLFISH



The giant tridacna clam of the South Pacific and Indian oceans has been known to trap unwary pearl divers in its huge shell.

gills where the larvae hatch. After the larvae of fresh water clams are expelled into the water they attach themselves to the fins or gills of fishes where they complete their development. Salt-water mussels sink to the bottom where they attach themselves by the byssus to rocks or other mussels. Unlike adult hard and soft-shell clams they retain the byssus.

One kind of mussel (*Mytilus edulis*) is a popular food in Europe. The fresh water clams of the Mississippi River are commercially important as the source of shells from which 'pearl' buttons are made (see Buttons). True pearls are sometimes found in these clams.

The geoduck, or goneduck (*Glycymeris generosa*) is a great clam found in Puget Sound. It may measure three feet from shell tip to siphon tip. The giant tridacna clam (*Tridacna gigas*) of the coral islands in the East Indies and the Pacific Ocean is the largest shell fish known. Some specimens weigh 400 pounds or more and are said to live as long as a hundred years.

Clams and mussels belong to the class *Pelecypoda* (batchet foot) of the phylum *Mollusca* (see Mollusks). Soft-shell clams belong to the family *Myioidae*; hard shell clams to the family *Veneridae*; razor clams to the family *Solenidae*, all of which are in the order *Telodermacea*. Fresh water clams belong to the family *Unionidae*; salt-water mussels to the family *Mytilidae*, both of which are in the order *Pranodermacea*.

CLARK, GEORGE ROGERS (1752-1818). The vast region now occupied by the five states of Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin was won for the United States by the vision and daring of one man, George Rogers Clark.

When the American Revolution broke out, Clark knew, as did the British, that in the wild country west of the Allegheny Moun-



tains victory depended largely upon which side the Indians took. The British were stirring the Indians up to attack the American settlements. Clark knew the only way to prevent this was to drive the British from their posts. He therefore raised a force of about 175 men and in the summer of 1778 brought under the American flag three important British posts—Kaskaskia and Cahokia, on the Mississippi River near St. Louis and Vincennes on the Wabash River.

## A Desperate Venture

While Clark was wintering at Kaskaskia after inducing the chief tribes of the western country to sign a treaty of peace, he learned that a British expedition under Henry Hamilton, lieutenant governor at Detroit, had retaken Vincennes. Clark decided that he could beat Hamilton only by catching him off guard with a surprise winter attack before fresh troops could reach him in the spring. On Feb. 7, 1779, he set out on this desperate venture.

For much of the march of 180 miles, the men had to wade through icy swamps and rivers holding their rifles above their heads. Toward the end they ran out of food. On February 23, Clark and 180 men reached the Wabash. That night they surrounded Fort Sackville, the British post at Vincennes, and opened a deadly fire with their long Kentucky rifles. Next day Hamilton, deceived into thinking the American force larger than it was, surrendered. Thereafter the British only had men enough in the west to hold the Great Lakes region and the Americans were able to claim all this western land when the Revolution ended (see Revolution, American).

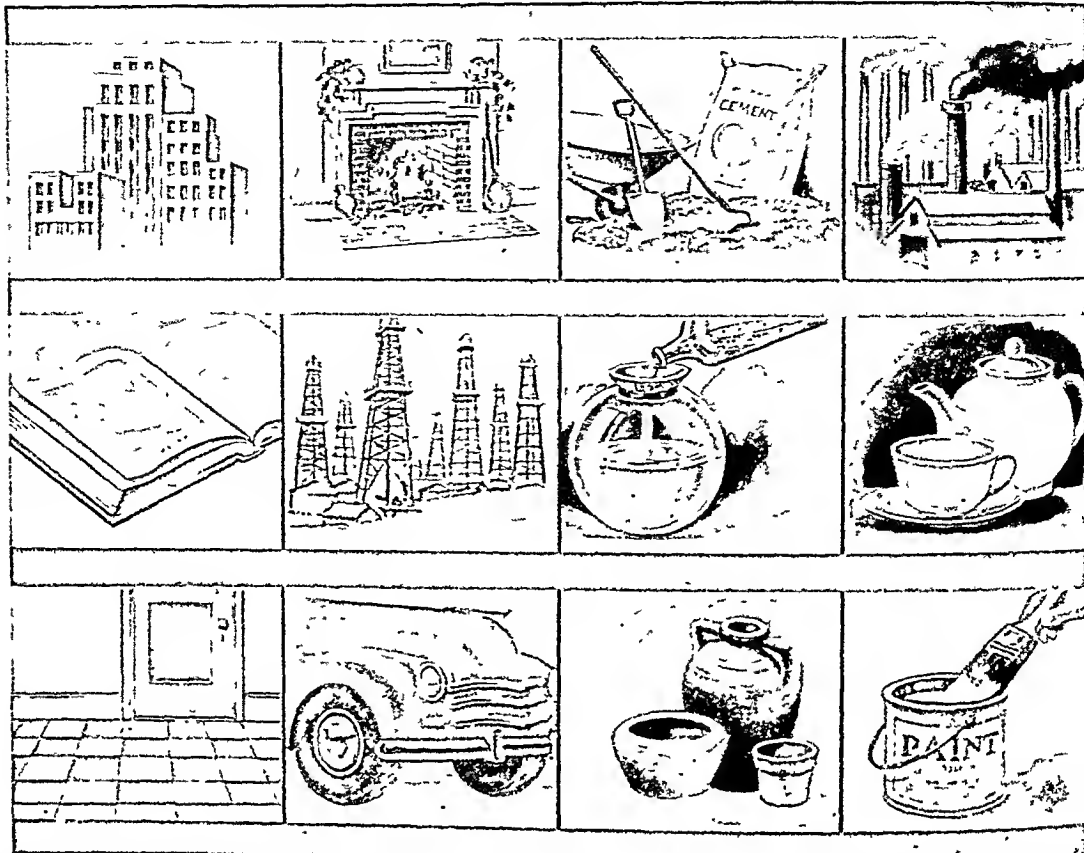
## Clark's Early Life and Later Career

Clark was born on a Virginia plantation Nov. 19, 1752. At the age of 22 he was a surveyor in the Kentucky country, then a part of Virginia. He gained military experience in Lord Dunmore's War of 1774 against the Indians (see Sever). After the Revolution broke out, he persuaded Patrick Henry, governor of Virginia, to let him raise a force and try out his plan, though he was only a youth of 25. After the war, Virginia made him a brigadier general and gave him a grant of land, but never paid nearly \$20,000 due him for the expenses of his troops and his own pay. For a time he served as land commissioner but lost this position as the result of intrigue.

Clark spent his declining years in poverty on his land at Clarksville, Ind., aided only by \$400 a year which Virginia granted him for life in 1812. He died Feb. 13, 1818, in his sister's home at Locust Grove, near Louisville, Ky., where he is buried. A splendid building was erected in Vincennes in 1931 as a memorial to him. The William Clark of the Lewis and Clark Expedition was his younger brother (see Lewis and Clark Expedition).

CLAY. In prehistoric times men found that clay could be molded and then baked hard. Thus they learned to make pottery vessels to hold food and drink. They used clay also to daub the walls of their huts, later they made bricks from clay. Clay is still one of our most useful raw materials. Portland cement

## COMMON CLAY HAS MANY IMPORTANT USES



These pictures suggest the leading uses for clay products. Top row: In building materials, various clays enter into common and face brick, drain pipe, roofing tile, terra cotta, plaster, and cement. Special fire and stoneware clays furnish linings for industrial ovens and furnaces. Middle row: Good paper is filled and glazed with china clay. Oil wells use clay in rotary

drilling. Various oils are filtered and decolorized with bentonite and fuller's earth. Chinaware is made of china clay, or kaolin. Bottom row: China clay supplies us with high-grade tile. Rubber products such as tires may also use china clay. Pottery and stoneware are made of ball, fire, and stoneware clays. Paint is filled and extended with china clay.

has clay in its composition. Bricks and drain pipes are clay mixtures which have been baked in great heat. Pottery, from the heaviest mixing bowls to the most fragile porcelain tea service, is made of clay. Clay is also used for glazing paper, in making insecticides, and for clarifying food products, wines, vinegar, and cider.

#### Composition and Properties of Clay

The properties that early man discovered in clay and that make it so useful today arise from the fact that clay is composed of small particles, many of which can be seen only with an ultramicroscope. The smallest particles are colloidal; they can hold a film of water, firmly bound or adsorbed on the surface, by electrical attraction (see Colloids). This water acts as a lubricant which enables the particles to slip easily past one another; hence wet clay is plastic. Baking drives off water; the particles adhere to one another; and the baked object becomes hard and watertight. The jelly-like surface of the colloidal particles absorbs dyes and grease, a quality which makes clay useful in laundries. Water causes clay to expand, and certain types are used in stopping leaks in engineering works. A certain amount of clay is neces-

sary in good soil, because it prevents water from draining completely away (see Soil).

We all know the biblical story of the captive Israelites in Egypt who were forced to make bricks without straw. Dr. E. G. Acheson, a distinguished American inventor, wondered if straw did make a difference in the quality of bricks. He boiled some straw, mixed the resulting liquid with clay and found that the plasticity was greatly increased. The active agent was tannin, and clay treated with tannin is called "Egyptianized clay."

#### Formation and Varieties

Clay is an earthy substance formed by the decomposition of certain rocks. Pure clay consists chiefly of silica and aluminas, but most clays contain impurities which give the different kinds their distinctive qualities. It is one of the most widely distributed of all materials. During the Ice Age glaciers accumulated vast quantities of clay, and when they melted they left large deposits. Many deposits stayed where the glaciers left them; others were carried by streams and rivers to continental edges or to river deltas. When beds of clay are solidified by pressure and heat beneath other sediments they form the rock known as shale. Ground-up shale mixed with water becomes clay again. Slate is a laminated variety of rock formed by the great compression of shale.

Pottery is made chiefly from ball clay and kaolin or china clay, both of which are fine highly plastic and nearly white when burned. Ball clay is found in Kentucky, New Jersey and Tennessee. Kaolin derived its name from the Chinese word kao-ling (lofty hill) the name of a hill in China from which deposits were first taken. The United States mines about half the kaolin in use chiefly in the southeastern states but extensive deposits also occur in England, France and Germany. Brick clays include almost any impure clay that can be made into bricks. A mixture containing a large percentage of lime makes cream colored brick while one containing considerable iron burns red. Many bricks are made from ground up shale. Burning brick requires a clay that contains a high percentage of lime, iron and an alkali, in order that it may glaze well in burning. Bentonite used largely in steel mills in oil well drilling and in laundries has a higher colloidal content than most other clays. It occurs in many states but is mined chiefly in Wyoming and South Dakota. Adobe clay has been used since ancient times for making sun-dried brick.

**CLAY, HENRY (1777-1852)** For 40 years Henry Clay exercised a leadership in the politics of the United States that has seldom been equaled. He was a man of charming personal traits, powerful emotional oratory, and brilliant statesmanship, and he was greatly loved and honored by hundreds of thousands of his fellow countrymen. But like his great contemporaries Calhoun and Webster, he failed to gain the presidency and repeatedly saw that prize go to men of lesser powers. In part the explanation of this lies in the honesty and patriotism of his policies which created enemies which less prominent men escaped.

Clay was born on a frontier farm in the western part of Virginia, in a low swampy neighborhood called "the Slashes." He attended school irregularly in a one-room log-cabin schoolhouse, and helped his widowed mother between times by plowing the fields and carrying to the mill the harvested grain. In after-days he was often called the "mill boy of the slashes." Encouraged by his stepfather, he studied law and was admitted to the bar when 20 years of age. Shortly afterward he removed to Kentucky, where his great gifts of leadership and eloquence soon won for him a place in the Kentucky Legislature. After two years of brilliant service he was chosen to fill a vacancy in the United States Senate (in 1806), and although he had not yet reached the legal age of 30 he was permitted to take his seat. In 1811 he was elected to Congress, and on the very first day of the session was chosen Speaker of the House. With the exception of one term which he refused, he remained representative and Speaker for the next 14 years.

Throughout his political career Clay took an active part in the measures of the day. He advocated a protective tariff and favored a policy of "internal improvements"—that is, road making, canal building, and the like, by the national government—on a wide scale throughout the country. Thus he called "the

American system." In the beginning of his career he especially distinguished himself by his energy in bringing about war with England. Ably supported by John C. Calhoun, the two "war hawks," as they were called, by their combined eloquence persuaded a reluctant Congress and President to a declaration of hostilities against Great Britain in 1812. At the end of a rather inglorious war Clay was chosen one of the commissioners who drafted the treaty of Ghent. By a curious turn of fortune the conflict so zealously advocated by Clay, brought forth as its chief hero General Andrew Jackson, the man who later on was to prove the chief obstacle between Clay and the White House.

An unfortunate circumstance connected with Clay's first candidacy for the presidency reflected unhappily on the rest of his public life. In the election of 1824 he was one of four candidates, none of whom received a majority of votes. In such an emergency the choice



**HENRY CLAY**  
Great Orator and Political Leader

of president rests with the House of Representatives. Clay stood fourth on the list and, in accordance with the Constitution, was dropped from the list of candidates. Crawford, another candidate had been stricken with paralysis. The choice therefore lay between John Quincy Adams and Andrew Jackson, the two remaining candidates. Clay used his influence in favor of Adams who was elected. When Adams appointed Clay to be his secretary of state the charge of "bargain and corruption" was at once raised by Jackson's friends. In fact there was no shred of evidence on which it could rest. But eccentric John Randolph of Virginia spoke

openly in Congress of "the coalition of the Puritan with the black leg", and referred to Clay as "thus being, so brilliant yet so corrupt, which, like a rotten mackerel by moonlight, shined and stunk." Clay immediately challenged Randolph to a duel. After ineffective shots by both, Randolph fired his pistol in the air with the remark, "I do not fire at you, Mr. Clay." Thus ended what Benton called "the last high toned duel I have witnessed." The "bargain charge," in spite of its injustice, followed Clay to the grave.

In 1832 and in 1844, Clay was again a candidate for the presidency but was defeated, first by General Jackson and then by James K. Polk. This third defeat, by a man whom Clay had ridiculed, was not very gracefully received. In 1840 and in 1848 Clay had sought the presidency but was defeated in the Whig party convention, first by General Harrison and then by General Zachary Taylor.

In addition to 12 years in the House of Representatives, Clay served for almost 20 years in the Senate. It was here that he earned the name of the Great Pacificator by finding solutions for numerous controversies between North and South.

Three times Clay was able by his compromises to bring about concessions which while satisfying neither North nor South delayed the inevitable struggle. In 1820 while still Speaker of the House of Representatives he played an important part in the Missouri Compromise. In 1833 when South Carolina attempted to nullify the tariff and threatened to secede from the Union, he stepped into the breach with the compromise tariff of 1833. And in 1850, at the most severe crisis the country had yet faced, he again came forward as the author of the Compromise of 1850, which delayed the Civil War for a decade.

Much of Clay's success in compromising differences was doubtless due to his personal charm and magnetism. Anecdotes were told in which his charm of manner and personality were extravagantly praised. His voice was likened to the pipe of an organ with a thousand variations, and under the spell of his eloquence vast crowds laughed or wept as he wished.

Clay died in June 1852, two years after his distinguished contemporary Calhoun. Five months later Daniel Webster died, and the "Great Trio of Oratory," as the three were called, passed into history.

**CLEM'ATIS.** Among all climbing plants there is none more attractive than the clematis, with its white or purple blossoms. When it has gone to seed it is more attractive still. Its gray silky tufts of seed clusters look like wreaths of leaf smoke puffing over the vine. When they are ripe the wind catches the long slender plumes, and they carry the seeds far and wide.

One largely cultivated variety is the white clematis, or virgin's bower, which is covered with sprays of fragrant white blossoms. The well-known blue clematis, with its handsome large purplish blossoms, came originally from Japan. It needs a rich soil.

The clematis is a genus of the crowfoot family (*Ranunculaceae*). About 20 to 150 known varieties grow in the United States. The flower clusters are generally blue or white. Scientific name of virgin's bower, *Clematis virginiana*; blue clematis, *Clematis florida*.

**CLEMENCEAU** (*klû-mân-sô*), GEORGES BENJAMIN EUGENE (1841-1929). "The man who saved France in the hour of her deadliest peril!" Georges Clemenceau was a white-haired old man of 77 when he won this acclaim. He did so by accepting the position of prime minister in 1917, when France seemed about to lose the first World War, and holding the country in the fight until victory came the next year.

Clemenceau was born in Brittany Sept. 28, 1841. He studied medicine, but was imprisoned before he was 20 for shouting "Long live the Republic!" in Paris during a celebration in honor of Emperor Napoleon III.

Upon being released he came to the United States. He practised medicine in New York City, then taught French in a girls' school at Stamford, Conn. There he married Mary Plummer, but they were divorced.

In 1869 warning of a political crisis drew him back to Paris, and he plunged into a public career. He was elected mayor of Montmartre during the Franco-Prussian War, and to the General Assembly in 1871. Thereafter a long and stormy political career earned him the nickname "Tiger." He supported his political positions with flaming editorials in his paper *La Justice*, and fought seven duels before he was forty.

In 1893 mention of his name in the Panama Canal scandals lost him political favor, even though he proved himself blameless. But in 1896-97 the famous case of Capt. Alfred Dreyfus of the French army gave him a new passport to power. Dreyfus had been convicted of selling military secrets to Germany and condemned to life imprisonment on Devil's Island in French Guiana. He came of a wealthy Jewish family, and at the time anti-Semitism was strong in France. Hence many thought that he was the victim of a conspiracy. The novelist Émile Zola wrote for Clemenceau's

journal, *L'Aurore*, a famous article 'J'Accuse' (I Accuse). The case was reopened and in 1906 these two won their fight for vindication of Dreyfus.

This success brought Clemenceau a new political career. *L'Homme Libre* (The Free Man) his newspaper, was suppressed in September 1914; but it reappeared two days later as *L'Homme Enchaîné* (The Man in Chains). Three years later came the call to save France.

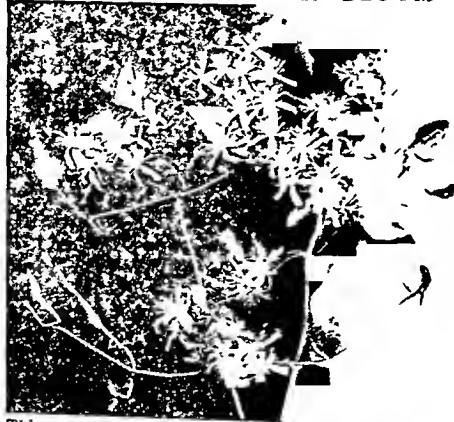
An anarchist fired two bullets into Clemenceau on Feb. 10, 1919, but he recovered in three weeks and continued to preside at the

peace conference. In 1922, at the age of 81, he toured the United States to urge cooperation with Europe. He died in 1929.

**CLEOPA'TRA** (69-30 B.C.). Many legends cluster about this fascinating queen of Egypt. Because she captured the hearts of two of the greatest men of her day, and brought one of them to ruin, Cleopatra has gone down in history as a heartless, scheming siren. But she had many other qualities. One historian says of her, "She was not especially beautiful, but she had a wonderful voice and the seductiveness which attracts men; and she was intensely alive, tireless, and quite fearless . . . Apart from her attractions she was highly educated, interested in literary studies, and conversant with many languages."

Cleopatra was part Macedonian and part Greek, not Egyptian. Upon the death of her father, Ptolemy XI, she became, at the age of 17, joint ruler with her

WHITE CLEMATIS IN BLOOM



This spray of white clematis in bloom suggests the delicate appeal of the flowers.

ten year-old brother Ptolemy XII Three years later she was driven from the country by an uprising in the interests of her brother and his advisers

At this time Egypt was an independent ally of Rome Shortly after Cleopatra's flight Julius Caesar reached Egypt in pursuit of his enemy Pompey (see Caesar Julius Pompey the Great) When Cleopatra heard that Caesar was with her brother at the palace in Alexandria she bribed a boatman to take her to the Roman general Captivated by her charm the 52-year-old warrior was easily persuaded to help her regain her throne A brief war followed and Ptolemy XII was slain Caesar restored Cleopatra's throne making her youngest brother joint ruler as Ptolemy XIII

Cleopatra bore Caesar a son called by the Alexandrians Caesarion (Little Caesar) Cleopatra followed Caesar to Rome and remained until he was assassinated Soon after Caesar's death Ptolemy XIII was slain perhaps at Cleopatra's instigation and the queen set her son by her side as Ptolemy Caesar

After Caesar's death Mark Antony and Octavian had become joint rulers of the Roman Empire Antony sent for Cleopatra to come to him at Tarsus and she came on the charge that she had a deed to him She went not as a penitent but as a proud queen She sailed up the river Cydnus in her barge with her attendants clad in the robes of the goddess Aphrodite Antony was fascinated by her He forgot the charge against her and followed her to Alexandria

A gay winter of extravagant festivities followed At the end of the winter however Antony returned to Rome and to strengthen his alliance with Octavian married Octavian's sister Octavia Meantime Cleopatra had borne him a twin son and daughter Finally turning of Octavia Antony returned to Alexandria and married Cleopatra according to Egyptian law

## CLEOPATRA APPEARS BEFORE CAESAR



As Caesar sits at his desk in the palace at Alexandria a boatman enters carrying a woman on his shoulder. The rag is flung open and before astonished gaze of the Roman guests at stands the young queen, Cleopatra, triumphant at the success of her daring trick. The painting is by Jean Leou Gosselin.

Now Octavian fearing that Caesarion would prove a menace to his power persuaded the Senate to make war on Antony In a battle at Actium in 31 B.C. Antony and Cleopatra were disastrously routed The queen fled to Alexandria with her ships followed by Antony Greeted as he reached the city by the false news that Cleopatra was dead Antony killed himself by thrusting a sword into his breast

For the last time Cleopatra tried her powers of fascination in a vain attempt to charm Octavian Then learning that he intended to lead her in chains in his triumphal process on through the streets of Rome she killed herself—tradition says by the sting of an asp which she ordered brought to her in a basket of figs Caesarion (Ptolemy XIV) was murdered by Octavian a short time after Cleopatra's death

## The STORY of CLEVELAND'S Two ADMINISTRATIONS

CLEVELAND GROVER (1837-1908) My ancestry Mr Cleveland once said was made up of God fearing industrious men and good women who did their duty as best they could and thus is all I know or care to know about them since there could be no better or gun than such as these

Born at Caldwell N.J. Stephen Grover Cleveland was the fifth of nine children of a Presbyterian minister His father's salary rarely exceeded \$600 a year When young Grover was four years of age (he dropped the name Stephen when a boy) the family removed to Fayetteville N.Y. and subsequently to Clinton in the same state. He was reared in a home where the atmosphere was kindly and Christian and all the children received a fair education

When Cleveland was just ready to enter Hamilton College his father died and it became necessary for the young man to seek employment to help support the family He borrowed \$25 from a neighbor and started out to seek his fortune in the West But he got no farther than Buffalo for there an uncle persuaded him to remain procuring for him a position as clerk in a law office

He studied law with the same diligence and perseverance which marked all his activities and in 1859 was admitted to the bar When the Civil War came and he was unable to enlist because of the necessity of supporting his mother and sisters he borrowed money in order to hire a substitute

Cleveland's political life began with his appointment



ment as assistant district attorney in 1863. In 1870 he was elected sheriff. While serving in this office he himself sprung the trap which hanged a convicted criminal rather than hand over that unpleasant task to a deputy. "Public office is public trust"—an expression attributed to Cleveland in one of his presidential campaigns—well describes his attitude towards every public position that he ever held.

His public career advanced a stage when, in 1881, he was elected mayor of Buffalo on the Democratic ticket. Good men of both parties looked to Cleveland to bring order out of chaos in the city's affairs, and they were not disappointed. He put the business of the city on a footing of efficiency.

Then, in 1882, Cleveland was elected governor of New York by an overwhelming vote. In this office he pursued the same fearless energetic course which had marked his career in Buffalo. He vetoed so many bills which he regarded as bad that he won for himself the nickname of "the veto governor." Although the baser elements of his party were offended by his policy, he won a large following among the better and more intelligent classes.

#### Rapid Rise to the Presidency

Cleveland had been elected governor before his term as mayor was finished. Before his term of office as governor had expired he was elected president of the United States. Nominated in 1884 by the Democrats, with Thomas A. Hendricks of Indiana as candidate for vice-president, Cleveland's Republican opponent was James G. Blaine, one of the most brilliant and popular leaders of that triumphant party. A bitter campaign followed, in which the personal character of each candidate was viciously assailed. When Cleveland's campaign managers asked him how they should make answer to a minor scandal which had been dragged out of his past, he answered, "Tell the truth." The vote was exceedingly close, but through the support of independent voters (called "Mugwumps"), Cleveland won.

Cleveland's first term as president (1885-1889) was marked by the same notable independence which he had displayed as mayor and as governor. From the first he showed a disposition to take the entire responsibility for the administration on his own shoulders. He defied the Senate's demand for certain documents, declaring that the president was not subject to its orders in such matters. He used the veto with such frequency that he became known as "the veto president." It is said that he vetoed more bills than all the presidents who had preceded him put together. Most of these were private pension measures which, after personal investigation, Cleveland decided were not founded on merit.

On the question of the application of the Civil Service Law (passed in 1882) President Cleveland found himself between two fires. His "Mugwump" supporters were advocates of civil service reform, but on the other hand the Democrats were hungry for the spoils of office after their 24 years' exclusion. Cleve-

land completely satisfied neither section of his followers. He refused to make a wholesale removal of Republican office-holders, yet he did make enough changes to dissatisfy the reformers. History will credit him, however, with materially advancing the cause of civil service reform.

In 1888 Cleveland was a candidate for reelection, but was defeated by the Republican candidate, Benjamin Harrison. This result was in part caused by the revolt of certain elements of his own party and the lukewarmness of the "Mugwumps"; it was chiefly due, however, to the bitter opposition of the manufacturing interests to Cleveland's tariff policy (*see below*). Following his defeat Cleveland retired to New York City, and for the next four years quietly practiced law. In 1892 he was again nominated over the opposition of the Democratic leaders of his own state. This time he triumphantly defeated President Harrison by a vote in the electoral college of 277 against 145.

This surprising result was chiefly due to the tariff question. On principle Cleveland disbelieved in a protective tariff. The growth of a large surplus in the United States treasury showed, moreover, that the tariff rates at that time were higher than was needed to provide revenue for the government. Cleveland believed that such a surplus could only lead to reckless extravagance in national expenditures. Accordingly he had urged tariff reduction, and in 1887 had broken all precedents by devoting to this subject his entire annual message to Congress. A revenue tariff, called the Mills bill, had then passed the House, but it was so amended by the Senate that the House refused to accept it. The tariff thus became the leading issue in the election of 1888, and the main cause of Cleveland's defeat. Since then the Republicans had used their victory to further increase tariff rates in the McKinley tariff of 1890.

#### Difficulties of his Second Administration

Cleveland's second election to the presidency, in 1892, with Adlai E. Stevenson of Illinois as vice-president, clearly showed that the country disapproved of the Republican tariff policy. Nevertheless in his second administration Cleveland was little more successful in securing from a Democratic Senate a "tariff for revenue only" than he had been in his first term from a Republican Senate. Indeed, he was so dissatisfied with the Wilson-Gorman bill, as it was finally passed, that he styled it an example of "party perfidy and dishonor," and allowed it to become a law without his signature. The next year the Supreme Court still further increased popular discontent by declaring the income-tax provision unconstitutional.

Altogether Cleveland's second administration (1893-1897) was a stormy one. Almost at its beginning, speculation, extravagance, the prospect of a change in the tariff, and uncertainty as to the currency combined to produce the Panic of 1893. Scores of banks failed, and hundreds of firms became bankrupt; factories were closed, thousands of workmen were discharged, hard times came, and labor difficulties arose.

The chief cause of the trouble was the Silver or Currency question. By 1893 the market value of silver had fallen so greatly through increased produc-

tion that a silver dollar was actually worth in gold only 56 cents. President Cleveland sought to remedy this trust on by practically abandoning the double standard of money (bimetallism) and placing the country on the single or gold standard. To this end he forced Congress to repeal a law which required the Treasury to purchase a certain quantity of silver each month. He also induced it to authorize the sale of bonds for additional gold so that the Treasury would always be able to give gold in exchange for the silver and paper currency which remained in circulation. These measures were sound and statesmanlike but they were bitterly opposed by radical members of his own party who sympathized with the free silver principles of the Populists or People's party which was then strong in the West.

#### Labor Troubles and Important Legislation

Serious labor difficulties also occurred in both of Cleveland's administrations. In 1886 a memorable

riot took place in Haymarket Square, Chicago, in which bombs thrown by anarchists instantly killed seven policemen and wounded sixty more. Following the panic of 1893 discontent was widespread and strikes and riots increased in number and violence. As the result of a strike by employees of the Pullman Company in 1894 railways were tied up all over the country property was wrecked or burned and many men were injured and killed. Order was finally restored only when Cleveland with his customary directness and courage sent troops to Chicago to protect the mails and federal property.

Important legislation in Cleveland's administration included the creation of a Department of Agriculture from the old Agricultural Bureau and an Interstate Commerce Commission to regulate railroads



GROVER CLEVELAND

American republic to admit boundary claims which to many seemed unjust. For a time war seemed imminent but in the end Great Britain consented to arbitrate. The award was mostly favorable to Great Britain but Cleveland's action at this grave time is now considered a great service to the nation.

#### In Retirement

After he left the presidency Cleveland resided at Princeton, N. J. Here with his children and wife (he had married Frances Folsom during his first term) he lived until his death in 1908. He was buried in a beautiful memorial tower erected in his honor at Princeton University.

During retirement he served as university lecturer and trustee. He took an interest in students and helped many poor boys through college. He was fond of children and enjoyed doing things for them. His favorite recreation was fishing.

Slow in forming a judgment, steadfast in holding it, he steered his course with a far-seeing eye and a steady hand. His career emphasized the truth of his remark, 'I have tried so hard to do right.'

#### CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATIONS

1885-1889

Civil Service Reform Aided

Many Private Pension Bills Vetoed

Haymarket Riot in Chicago (1886)

Interstate Commerce Act Establishes Government Regulation of Railroads (1887)

Anti-Polygamy Law against Mormons Passed (1887)

New Chinese Exclusion Act (1888)

Tariff for Revenue Only Defeated (1888)

Agricultural Bureau becomes

Department of Agriculture (1889)

1893-1897

Hawaiian Annexation Treaty Withdrawn (1893)

Panic of 1893

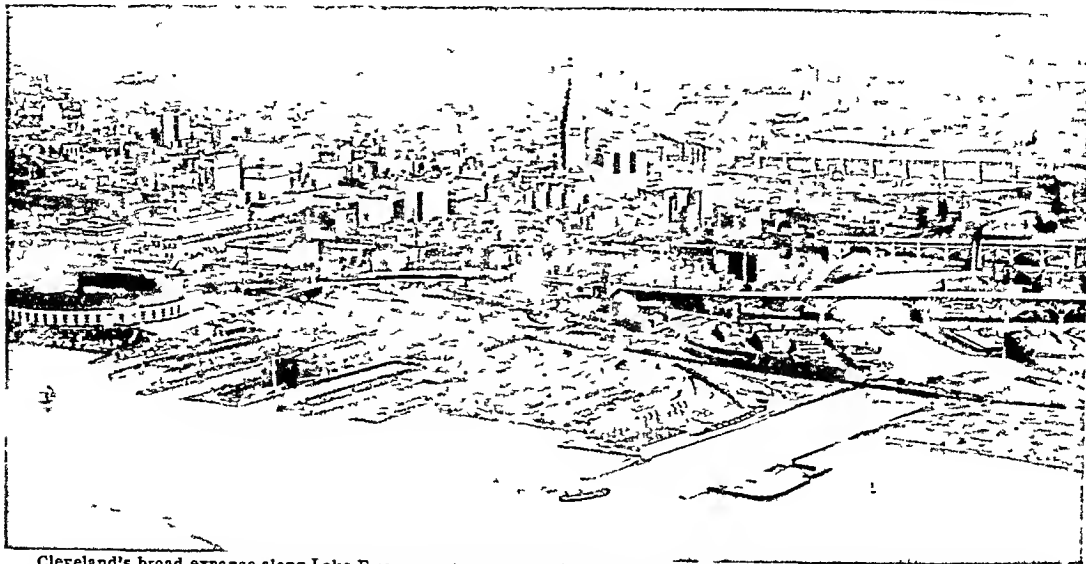
Silver Purchase Act Repealed and Gold Standard Supported

Chicago World's Fair (1893)

Great Railroad Strike Put Down (1894)

Controversy with Great Britain over Venezuela (1895)

# CLEVELAND, GIANT *of* INDUSTRY *and* TRADE



Cleveland's broad expanse along Lake Erie presents an impressive view from the air. In the foreground are port facilities for lake steamers. Other docks lie along the Cuyahoga River at the right. From the heart of the downtown district rises the lofty Terminal Tower, Cleveland's tallest building. In the right background is the High Level Bridge across the Cuyahoga River Valley, flanked by much of Cleveland's industry. At the left are the Mall and the Public Square.

**CLEVELAND, OHIO.** The seventh city in size in the United States and the fifth in manufacturing owes its growth to its location and varied industries. On the south shore of Lake Erie, Cleveland is well situated for trade and manufacturing. It stands between the rich coal fields of Ohio, West Virginia, and Pennsylvania and the iron mines of the Lake Superior region. This advantageous site helps make Cleveland the world's largest ore market and a leading steel-making center.

The city proper extends along the lake front for 14 miles, and spreads out like a fan on both sides of the winding Cuyahoga River. The river's mouth forms a good harbor, protected by a breakwater six miles long. Some ten miles of docks extend along the river front. In the river valley are many of Cleveland's mills, factories, warehouses, and oil refineries. A panoramic view of this industrial section can be seen from the High Level Bridge. It spans the Cuyahoga Valley, 96 feet above the river.

Cleveland is served by seven main railroads and by many Great Lakes vessels. These bring in iron ore, coal, petroleum, food, and many other raw materials. They carry away hundreds of different products made in the city. Its diversified industries make more than two billion dollars' worth of goods every year. Leading items are iron and steel and their products, machinery, tools, refined oil, motor vehicle bodies and parts, clothing and textiles, electrical parts, aluminum, paint, varnish, chemicals, plastics, storage batteries, and food products.

## Pleasant Streets and Modern Buildings

Cleveland was laid out with streets of unusual width, so well shaded that it was known as "Forest

City." The business center radiates from the Public Square, which is dominated by the Terminal Tower group of buildings, built at a cost exceeding \$200,000,000. Terminal Tower is 708 feet high, the tallest structure outside New York City. Near the square is a landscaped Mall. Around the Mall are grouped a number of public buildings. These include the City Hall, Board of Education, Public Library, County Courthouse, and Federal Building. The Public Auditorium seats about 12,500 people. On the lake shore is the Municipal Auditorium, seating nearly 80,000.

Cleveland's most famous street is Euclid Avenue. Extending eastward from Public Square, it is now largely given over to business establishments. During the 19th century the city's industrial leaders built their mansions and gardens along this tree-lined street in a section referred to as "Millionaire's Row." Off Euclid, on East 86th Street, is the Play House, noted for its stage productions and its dramatic school. Farther east, Euclid Avenue spreads out to form University Circle, the cultural and educational center of the city. Here are Western Reserve University and University Hospitals; Case Institute of Technology; and Severance Hall, beautiful home of the Cleveland Orchestra. The white Georgian marble Cleveland Museum of Art is off the Circle in Wade Park. The School of Art is near by.

Cleveland has one of the finest systems of parks and boulevards in the country. Rockefeller Park contains the famed series of cultural gardens which honor the city's many nationality groups. Cleveland's Metropolitan Park System controls 13,500 acres in a grouping of parks or "reserves" which will some day form a half-circle around Greater Cleveland. This system

serves the city proper and the 23 cities and 45 villages which have developed around it. The largest of these are Lakewood, Cleveland Heights, East Cleveland and Shaker Heights. Many of them have lovely residential areas where Cleveland commuters live.

Cleveland has an excellent system of public schools and a famous library system, one of the finest in the nation. The city owns the extensive transit system, a small electric light plant, a garbage disposal plant and the waterworks. An unlimited supply of pure water is brought in from Lake Erie by tunnels and a crib system with intakes four miles from shore. Cleveland Airport is one of the largest municipally owned airports in the world, covering 1,040 acres. The National Air Races are usually held here each September. Advanced research in aeronautics is carried on at the airport in the \$38,000,000 laboratory of the National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics. Another important research center is the General Electric Lighting Research Laboratory at Nela Park.

#### Rapid Growth Since 1827

In 1796 Moses Cleaveland stopped at a small Lake Erie trading post and laid out a town which he named after himself. He and his party had been sent by the Connecticut Land Company to survey its territory in the Western Reserve (see Connecticut). The real development of the town began in 1827 when the northern section of the Ohio and Erie Canal was completed

between Cleveland and Akron. This made Cleveland the Lake Erie outlet for the rich mineral and agricultural products of inland Ohio. In the 1850's the city's growth was again speeded by the coming of railroads which helped increase trade and manufacturing.

Cleveland was incorporated as a city in 1836, an event celebrated by the Great Lakes Exposition in 1936-37. The city manager-council form of government was started in 1924 and abandoned in 1931. The old system of a mayor and council was restored.

Among the city's noted men have been President Garfield, John Hay, McKinley's secretary of state, Marcus A. Hanna, political leader, John D. Rockefeller, founder of Cleveland's great petroleum refineries, Tom L. Johnson, a progressive mayor who worked for city ownership of utilities, and Newton D. Baker, secretary of war during the first World War. Population (1950 census) 914,609.

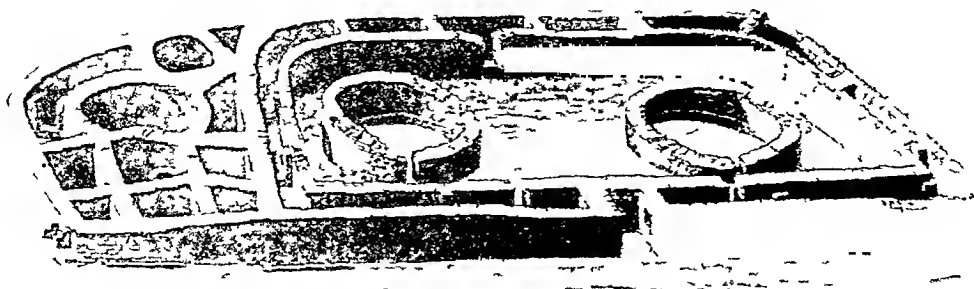
**CLIFF DWELLERS** In the canyons and cliffs of Arizona, New Mexico and southern Colorado and Utah stand the ruins of apartment houses built centuries ago. The builders, popularly called Cliff Dwellers, were ancestors of the modern Pueblo Indians.

They tamed the crops and irrigated the dry soil. They made beautiful pottery and turquoise set ornaments. They wove cotton fabrics, feather cloth, and baskets. They made molates for grinding corn, and other stone implements. But farmers may not be good at

#### A COMMUNITY HOUSE ONCE INHABITED BY THE CLIFF DWELLERS



**Spruce Tree House** in Mesa Verde National Park. Colorado once housed 500 people in its 114 rooms. The round structures are the remains of kivas or ceremonial chambers. A study of the tree rings in the roof beams shows that this house was built between A.D. 1230 and 1274. Other dwellings in the park area date back to 1000. Some were occupied for 200 years. A 24-year drought that began in 1274 may have caused the people to abandon this region for one better supplied with water.



In Mesa Verde National Park are many cliff dwellings placed in recesses in the canyon walls. On the tableland overlooking one of these structures there were discovered in 1915 the ruins of a building which is thought to be a Sun Temple. The picture shows a restoration of the temple.

fighting; so they became the prey of the more warlike savages about them. To protect themselves and their stores of food, they built these fortress-homes high up in the rock walls bordering the scanty streams.

In some places the Cliff Dwellers dug niches in the soft stone to form the rear rooms and used an overhanging rock as a ready-made roof; more often, they built their houses on a ledge fitting them against the flat sides of cliffs. They made the walls of carefully selected flat stones, laid in adobe mortar, and sometimes they plastered the entire wall inside and out with the same material. The only means of approach to many of these primitive fortresses were wooden ladders or hand and toe holds pecked in the

cliffs. In the fertile canyon bottoms the Cliff Dwellers planted corn, beans, and squash with digging sticks and built check dams to catch water for their fields.

Archeologists who have studied the ruins say the prehistoric Anasazi culture of the Southwest reached its peak in the era of the Cliff Dwellers. Among the most famous cliff ruins are those in Mesa Verde Park in southwestern Colorado; in the De Chelly, Del Muerto, and Monument canyons and in the Navajo National Monument north of the Hopi pueblos in northeastern Arizona; and along the San Juan River in Utah. Similar ruins exist on Beaver Creek of the Verde River in southern Arizona, and in the western Sierra Madre Mountains of Mexico.

## CLIMATE—A Molder of LIFE and CUSTOMS

**C**LIMATE. By far the most important external influence upon life on the earth's surface is climate. It is the dominating factor in determining the animal and plant life of every region. In large measure, it determines where men live and how they get their food, clothing, and shelter. In short, it has controlled in the past and continues to control to a very great extent the development of our entire civilization.

No wonder, then, that the first thing we do when we begin to study a country and its people is to find out the kind of climate they have. But before we can understand the climate in a single region, we must know something about the elements that make up climate in general. (See also *Weather*.)

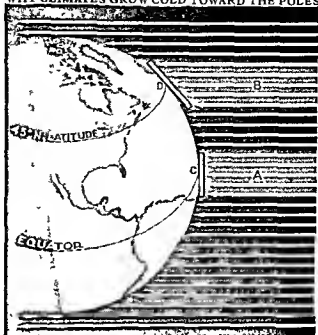
### The Sun and Climate

All the factors that enter into climate come from the sun's heat, modified by the motions of the earth. This heat acts in four ways. First, it warms the land, the water, and the atmosphere. Second, it draws moisture into the atmosphere from the waters of the earth, and thus makes rainfall possible. Third, by heating the atmosphere it causes differences in air pressure,

and these differences give rise to winds that carry heat or cold, moisture or dryness, to many regions which otherwise would have different climates. Fourth, the sun's heat and the winds together produce ocean currents, some of them warm streams that bring heat to cold regions and some that carry cooling waters into warm regions.

Because the surface of the earth is curved, the direct heating effect of the sun is greatest at the Equator and least at the poles. The diagram on the next page shows how the sun's rays strike the earth at right angles at the Equator, while in a temperate zone they strike the earth obliquely, or slantingly. Because of this slant, a given area in a temperate zone receives fewer rays than the same area would receive in the tropics. This means that it receives less heat. The word "climate" itself gets its meaning from this fact. The ancient Greeks coined it from their word *klimē*, meaning "to incline," because they had correctly observed that an important cause of differences in climate was the different inclination or slant of the sun's rays at different regions of the earth.

## WHY CLIMATES GROW COLD TOWARD THE POLES



The evenly-spaced arrows in this diagram represent the rays of the sun. Let us suppose that the five arrows marked A and the five arrows marked B are beams of sunlight each five miles wide. As they approach the earth these beams have the same heating power. When A strikes the earth squarely over the Equator, it gives all its heat to an area, C, which is only about 5 miles square. But when beam B strikes at D, on the 45th parallel, it spreads its heat over an area about 5 miles wide and 7 miles long. Thus heat A is concentrated on 25 square miles, while heat B is spread over 35 square miles. In other words, a square foot of earth at D receives only five sevenths as much heat as a square foot at C. This leaves out of account the greater loss of heat by beam B in its passage through the atmosphere, as the text explains. The earth is shown here in the position of autumn, but the general principle governing the heating effect of slanting rays holds good for all seasons.

Not only do slanting rays scatter their heat over a larger area of the earth's surface, but also they lose more of their heat in passing through the atmosphere. A ray that reaches the earth at the 45th parallel, for example, must pass through about 20 per cent more air, because of its slant, than one which strikes the earth at the Equator. Air absorbs heat so the more air the rays pass through, the less heat reaches the earth's surface. Furthermore, as the slanting rays strike atmosphere, water, or earth more of their heat is reflected away into outer space.

The factors just described control the yearly average of heat energy received at any one place. But the angle or slant of the sun's rays at any point on the earth's surface varies 47° between mid-summer and mid-winter, because of the tilt of the earth on its axis as it revolves about the sun (see Earth). The amount of solar energy (insolation) received by any region depends, then, upon the combined effect of distance from the Equator (latitude) and the seasonal factor. This combination gives the region what is called its *solar climate*, or climate as it would be if it were determined by the sun's heat alone. The zones of solar climate are the tropical or equatorial zone, the two temperate zones, and the two polar or frigid zones. The divisions are marked by the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, and the Arctic and Antarctic circles.

Many influences, however, modify solar climate to produce the actual *physical climates* which we find around the earth. *Important of these influences, or controls, are water, land, and altitude.*

## How the Oceans Stabilize Climates

The water of the oceans modifies solar climate by virtue of its stabilizing effect upon temperature. When the sun heats down on the oceans, much of the heat energy is consumed in warming the water and evaporating some of it, hence the air temperature over the ocean does not rise as much as it would otherwise. When, for any reason, less heat is received from the sun, moisture condenses from the air, and this process releases heat. The water also gives off heat, and so the air temperature does not fall to any great extent. Hence, ocean or marine climates do not change much when the sun shifts its position with the seasons. The western coast of the United States enjoys an even climate the year around because the Pacific Ocean prevents any great seasonal changes.

The most striking example of how ocean currents modify solar climate is provided by the *Gulf Stream*. It gives a moderate climate to parts of northwestern Europe which otherwise would have a climate like that

The most

of Labrador (see Gulf Stream). January temperatures in the British Isles, for example, are about 20° F. higher than they would be if solar climate were the only factor. This warming effect is carried around the north end of Norway and keeps the sea open in winter, and the winds carry the warmth inland over France and Germany. In summer, the effect is reversed, and these lands are spared the fierce heat and dryness which often afflict the interior of the United States.

## Changeable Continental Climates

Land can absorb only about six-tenths as much heat as water can. Therefore, when the sun heats down on the land in summer, less heat is absorbed by the rocks and soil and more by the air above them, with the result that the temperature over the land rises. When winter comes, the land does not have so much stored-up heat to give out again as the ocean has, and so the air above it grows colder. Large land areas in the temperate zone therefore have hot summers and cold winters. Such a climate is called *continental*. Russia and the central United States are examples.

These variations of temperature also affect the winds and the moisture supply. The best example is

the *monsoon* climate of Asia, east and south of central Siberia (see Winds). The American Gulf states have a combination of monsoon and continental climate.

Finally, the *altitude* of land—that is, its height above sea level—affects its climate; for air grows less dense with altitude, and cannot absorb so much heat as at sea level. If other conditions are equal, a 300-foot increase in altitude lowers the air temperature 1° F. Also, as the temperature drops, the air is less able to hold water vapor. Therefore, if a moist wind is forced upward by a mountain range, the moisture may be squeezed out or precipitated.

In a region with a typical *mountain climate*, the air is cool and dry in summer, yet the direct rays of the sun are more intense than at sea level because there is less absorption of heat by the atmosphere. Winters are usually warmer than in neighboring lowlands, because the cold air flows down into the valleys and the warm air rises. The side of the mountains toward the prevailing winds collects most of the rain; on the other side the mountains often create *rain shadows*, that is, areas in which rain is extremely rare.

#### Physical Temperature Belts

In order to trace actual, or physical, temperature belts upon the earth, geographers must first decide what limits to use. Usually they use limits within which important plants will grow. One system defines the *tropical* belt as containing all places where the coldest month has an average temperature of at least 68° F. or 20° C. This is the lowest suitable temperature for the date palm. The *subtropical* belts extend to the regions where the average temperature is 68° F. for from four to eleven months a year. The more delicate tropical plants cannot live in this belt.

The *temperate* belts include all localities beyond the subtropics which have an average temperature of 50° F. for one to four months. The belts of *frigid* or *polar* climate cover portions of the earth which do not have an average temperature of 50° F. for even one month. Here cereals will not ripen and trees will not grow. Temperature belts may also be differentiated in terms of latitude. The *low latitudes* extend from 0° (the equator) to about 30° both north and south; the *middle latitudes* from 30° to 60° in both the Northern and the Southern hemispheres; and *high latitudes*, from about the 60° to the poles.

The greatest extremes of temperature ever recorded under standard observing conditions were a heat of 136.4° F. at Azizia in the Libyan Desert, on Sept. 13, 1922, and a cold of 94° F. below zero at Verkhoyansk, Siberia, on Feb. 5 and 7, 1892.

#### Physical Moisture Belts

The surface of the earth may be divided into moisture belts, which correspond roughly to the belts of planetary winds. This correspondence occurs because both the planetary winds and the moisture conditions have the same causes. The winds arise because differences of temperature create differences in atmospheric pressure; moisture conditions are affected at the same time because air which becomes warm

tends to absorb moisture, while air which is cooling tends to precipitate moisture (see Rainfall).

Wherever the sun is directly overhead in the equatorial zone, warm moist air is continually forced upward and cooled. Moisture condenses from the cooling air, and rain falls in heavy steaming showers. From each side of the rainy belt the trade winds are flowing in. These winds get warmer as they come and *absorb* moisture; hence any region over which they blow receives little rain.

This whole system of winds shifts with the seasons, so that regions within the equatorial zone, such as the Amazon and Congo river basins, usually have wet seasons when the belt of rising air is moving north or south over them, and drier seasons when the trade winds are blowing over them.

#### Temperature-Moisture Climate Belts

Beyond the belts of the trade winds are the belts of the horse latitudes (see Winds). Here the air is descending and getting warmer. It therefore absorbs moisture; and hence regions lying in the horse latitudes tend to be dry. The Sahara, Arabia, and parts of Mexico are examples.

At the northern and southern edges of these belts, the land comes under the drying influence of the trade winds in summer, but in winter it has the temperate-climate type of weather. Hence, summers tend to be dry and winters moist. Such a climate is called *Mediterranean*, because the best known example of it is found around the Mediterranean Sea.

In the belts of the westerly winds, regions may be either moist or dry. If a region gets westerly winds, and cyclonic storms which draw considerable moisture from other quarters, the region will enjoy good rainfall. The eastern United States is an example. If the winds lose their moisture on mountain ranges, as they do along the Pacific Coast of North America, the regions east of the mountains will be semi-arid or even desert, as in the American Southwest.

The polar regions are deserts, both because they receive little heat from the sun, and because they receive very little moisture. Most of the moisture brought from the surrounding seas by the prevailing winds is precipitated as snow by the cold, before the winds can get far inland.

These great differences in moisture supply, ranging from humid or wet to arid or dry, result in characteristic differences in plant life. If it is combined with a warm enough temperature and suitable soil, a humid climate produces a *forest*. When the rainfall is between 20 and 40 inches a year in the middle latitudes, tall grasses are dominant, trees grow only along streams, and the region is called a *prairie*. On a *steppe* the rainfall averages less than 20 inches and the grass is short. In tropical areas where there is a distinct dry season, *savannas* bear tall, coarse grass and, in places, scattered scrubby trees or thorn bushes. In the driest regions, called *deserts*, bunch grass may spring up where one of the rare rains fall, but most of the land is barren. (See also Deserts; Grasslands.)

The timeliness of moisture is an important factor. A few good rains in the growing season can produce grass while tremendous blankets of snow in winter without summer rain may result in nothing but desert. The rate of evaporation and the character and slope of the land are also important. If the soil does not hold water and run-off is rapid, vegetation may be sparse or even lacking in spite of good rains.

Beginning with W. P. Köppen, 20th-century geographers have usually divided the land areas of the world into *climate regions*, each of which is suited to a certain type of vegetation. Some classifications list more than 30 climate regions. A simple classification might list the regions as four main groups with their sub-groups as follows:

1. Equatorial—rain forest, tropical jungle, tropical scrub and desert.
2. Subtropical—rain forest, dry forest, savanna and desert.
3. Temperate—deciduous forest, evergreen forest or *taiga*, prairie or steppe and desert.
4. Polar—tundra and polar desert.

#### Advantages of Living in a Temperate Climate

One of the most fruitful results of studying the influence of climate on human society is the link established between temperate climates and the progress of civilization. In this respect the great advantage of a temperate climate is that it compels people to work but does not require too much work. In polar or hot desert climates the land is so unfruitful and animal life so scarce that people must work very hard all the time to get a bare living. In most tropical climates food is naturally so abundant and so little shelter and clothing are required that people tend to remain indolent and unprogressive. But in temperate regions people have to work fairly hard to produce what they need from the soil hard enough to develop energetic habits but they have leisure time in which to apply that energy to improving themselves and their environment beyond the strict requirements of a bare living. This alone is enough to explain why most of mankind's progress has been made by peoples who lived in temperate climates.

Of the different kinds of temperate climate a stormy or changeable one seems to be the most stimulating. When Ellsworth Huntington studied factory workers in Pennsylvania and Connecticut he found that they worked better after a storm than during continuous pleasant weather. The factory management did not make them work harder; they did so because they felt more like working. From many such studies Huntington concludes that the best or *optimum* climate for the white race is a most changeable one with average temperatures of 42° F. in winter and 64° F. in summer. Southeastern New England has such a climate, so does much of northwestern Europe.

#### Changes and Cycles in Climate

We often hear of severe, old-fashioned winters which suggests that the climate has become much

milder in our times. The Weather Bureau records reveal no sharp change, but scientists are discovering that small changes do occur in cycles or periods in different parts of the world.

In 1890 the Austrian scientist Eduard Brückner published evidence that climate the world over varies slightly between dry warm and cool wet conditions and back again every 35½ years. Recent peaks of the cool wet periods occurred in Europe in 1810, 1845, 1880 and 1915. The European climate is largely marine, in areas of pronounced continental climate the cycles seem to be reversed.

Since the heat received from the sun seems to underlie all weather and climate, scientists naturally suspect that this heat might undergo periodic changes and thus cause such cycles as Brückner suggests. Intensive studies are being made, therefore, based upon measurements of the solar constant. This is the amount of heat that would be received by an area one centimeter square (about 1/6th of a square inch) in one minute if the atmosphere were not present and if the area were held squarely across the sun's rays. Tests prove that the heat so received will raise the temperature of one gram of water 1.93° C.

In 1933 the Smithsonian Institution announced the possibility that a 23-year cycle may exist; it seems to be related to periodic changes in sunspots.

#### Small Heat Changes Have Big Effect

Our knowledge of climatic cycles can grow only slowly for information concerning them is extremely difficult to obtain. The solar constant is a small unit and delicate measurements are needed to detect any changes. Moreover, the insolation of a region differs widely from its solar constant and allowances must be made for these differences. Yet these difficulties must be overcome because most cycles it is believed result from changes of less than half a degree centigrade in the average annual temperature. As an example of the influence of small changes, scientists estimate that lowering the average annual temperature by 5° C. would bring on another ice age.

There can be no question, however, that more or less regular changes in climate have occurred in past ages. Evidence for shorter cycles ranging from a few years to a few centuries in length is found in annual tree rings in the trunks or clay layers left by lakes and glaciers every year and in the varying amounts of water in fresh water lakes (see Drought). The greatest cycles which run over thousands or scores of thousands of years seem to have caused the succession of ice ages and interglacial periods (see Ice Age).

**CLIVE ROBERT LORD (1725-1774)** The real founder of Great Britain's former empire in India was Robert Clive, a great soldier and a fine administrator. He was born in Shropshire, England, of a well-to-do county family. At school he was idle and unruly. When he was 18 years old he went to India as a writer or clerk in the employ of the East India Company. His post was at Madras, a trade center



## CLIVE OF INDIA



The chief founder of Britain's former empire in India was Robert Clive. Beginning as a clerk in the East India Company, he became both a great general and a statesman

on the east coast of southern India. The young man was lonely and bored and spent much time in the governor's library in systematic study, making up for his wasted years at school.

At this period there were many disputed claims to the thrones of the Indian states because of the decline of the once powerful Mogul empire (*see* India). The French and British each wanted rulers that were friendly to them. In 1746 the French took Madras. Clive escaped from the town and joined the East India Company's military forces. Peace was soon made, however, and the young man had to go back to his clerkship. Five years later his great opportunity came. The French and the British were again in arms, and Clive went back to the army with the rank of captain.

With a few hundred soldiers, part Europeans and part Sepoys (Indian troops), Clive marched inland from Madras and took the fort of Arcot. For some weeks he held out against a host of Indians who laid siege to the fort. When his enemies finally withdrew, he followed them and defeated them in battle. In the end the French and their allies were forced to give up and leave the rich coastal district, the Carnatic, to a native ruler (nawab) who favored the English.

After ten years in India, Clive married and returned to England in 1753. There he was elected a member of Parliament. The siege of Arcot had given him a great military reputation, and in 1756 the East India Company recalled him to Madras with the rank of lieutenant colonel. Clive had scarcely reached the

port when he heard of the outrage known as the Black Hole of Calcutta.

#### The Black Hole of Calcutta

Calcutta was the rich trade center of Bengal, in northeast India, where the British were established. The Indian rulers of Bengal were friendly to the English until Siraj-ud-daula succeeded his uncle as nawab. Siraj-ud-daula captured the old fort of Calcutta and plundered it on June 20, 1756. Many of the English were able to escape in ships. The 146 who remained were imprisoned throughout a stifling hot night in one small room. The next morning only 23 came out alive from the "black hole."

Clive, taking his men by sea, reached Calcutta and routed the Nawab's forces. The next year, at the battle of Plassey (1757) he defeated the enormous army of Suraj-ud-daula, who fled from the field on a camel. Clive then entered into secret negotiations that put the Nawab's commander in chief, Mir Jafar, on the throne of Bengal instead of Siraj-ud-daula.

The grateful Mir Jafar took Clive through the rich treasury, filled with rupees, gold and silver plate, and jewels, and begged him, as representative of the East India Company, to take what he wanted. For his personal share Clive took an amount equal to £235,000 and a quitrent, or annuity, from the lands in Bengal amounting to £30,000 a year.

After years of incessant activity, Clive's health gave way. He returned to England in 1760 and was received as a conqueror. He was again elected to Parliament, and in 1762 he was made Baron Clive of Plassey in the Irish peerage as a reward for his services.

In 1765, when affairs in India were very critical, Clive returned for the third and last time, with the double title of governor of Bengal and commander in chief of the army. He consolidated the East India Company's rule over Bengal, the Carnatic, and other Indian states, reformed the administration, and reorganized the armed forces. He tried also to end the evils of private trading, which had been carried on by the Company's employees. This effort was not successful and was resented by employees who had reaped rewards much less princely than Clive's own suddenly acquired fortune.

When Clive returned home in 1767, he had to defend in Parliament the wealth he had amassed. Against men who were far more corrupt than himself he boldly and frankly defended his acts, and when telling Parliament how Mir Jafar had invited him to take all he wanted, he said: "At this moment I stand astonished at my own moderation." In the end he was vindicated, and Parliament passed a motion declaring that "Robert, Lord Clive, did render great and meritorious service to his country."

The bad effect of the climate of India together with the bitter attacks upon him so affected Clive's health and mind that he committed suicide in 1774. He had a host of admirers as well as many bitter enemies. In India his military successes and leadership were responsible for a remarkable expansion of British influence.

# CLOTHING—One of OUR GREATEST NEEDS

**CLOTHING** People need clothing more than they need anything else except food and shelter. They need it to keep them warm in cold weather and to shield them from the sun in hot weather. They need it as a protection against rain, wind, and snow. They need it as a covering to keep their skin from being bruised and cut.

For some kinds of work and play, clothes give special protection. Football players, for example, wear padded uniforms and helmets. Firemen in action wear waterproof helmets, coats, and boots. Welders wear hoods and goggles as protection against sparks.

Clothing is important for appearance as well as for protection. People in every land and in every kind of civilization adorn themselves with clothing and ornaments. They differ only in their idea of what is suitable and attractive. A native girl in Africa may wear little clothing to dress up, but she puts on many strings of beads, wide armlets, and earrings so big they pull her ears out of shape. An American girl wears a party dress and simple jewelry to a dance. But both girls feel well dressed.

Clothing has other important uses. Some kinds like the policeman's uniform call attention to the wearer's occupation. Clothing combined with insignia may show the wearer's rank, as it does in the army and navy. Costumes may have religious meaning both among civilized and among primitive people.

## People Need Many Kinds of Clothes

The pictures on this page show some of the reasons why people need many kinds of clothes. Those who live in a climate where the weather changes with the seasons need more variety than those who live where the weather is always warm or always cold.

People who live in an industrial country usually have more clothes than those who live in a land with



1 SUN



2 SNOW



3 RANK

## DRESSING FOR DIFFERENT ACTIVITIES AND FOR THE WEATHER



4 SCHOOL



5 PLAY



6 WORK



7 PARTIES

These pictures show why people need many kinds of clothes. 1. On the beach they want the sun to tan their skin. 2. In winter they need protection against cold and snow. 3. In the army they wear their officer's clothes with waterproof garments. 4. Clothes for school are simple. 5. For play and sports clothes a lot of freedom for running and swinging of arms. 6. Work clothes must be sturdy and strong. 7. Party clothes are designed to make people look attractive.

DRESSING FOR HOT  
AND COLD CLIMATES

1 The clothing of the Arab shown above protects him from the hot sun and wind-blown sand of the desert. 2 This African boy is wearing little more than his beads. But he is comfortable in the hot land where he lives. 3 Furs and leather boots keep the Eskimos warm during their cold Arctic winters.

few factories. Clothing is cheaper and more plentiful in the manufacturing countries. Styles change from year to year, and people often buy new clothes before their old ones wear out. They become used to having special clothes for different occupations and occasions. An American boy may have several outfits for school, a uniform for baseball or the school band, camp clothes, and work clothes, as well as a best suit. A boy in Greece, a country with few factories, may feel well off if he has two outfits, one for everyday wear and one for special occasions.

## Weather, Climate, and Clothes

Warm-weather clothes are made of porous, lightweight material. They may be looser, shorter in the sleeves, and more open at the neck than winter garments. They are designed to let air reach the skin, because air cools the body by evaporating perspiration. In cold weather, people put on more layers of clothes, with a topcoat of closely woven cloth, fur, or leather for outdoor wear. The coat keeps out the cold air and the warmth of the body is held between the layers of clothes. Aside from these differences, summer and winter clothes are much alike in temperate climates.

But in hot and cold lands, climate may set the style. The African boy pictured above wears almost no clothing. Climate and custom have made his scanty costume proper and fashionable. His skin is dark and does not need much protection from sun. He is cool because air is in constant contact with his skin.

The Arab in the same picture illustrates another style set by climate. He is well bundled up, though the

daytime heat in his country may be intense. He needs the protection of clothing against the fierce sun and wind-driven sands of the desert. He needs it, too, against the bitter cold of desert nights.

The Eskimo shows how an Arctic climate can set a style of dress. This little girl is wearing a typical winter outfit of the Eskimos. Her fur hood, fur coat and mittens, and seal-skin boots keep out the cold air and hold in the heat generated by her body.

## What Is Clothing Made Of?

Since clothing has to serve many purposes, it must be made of many materials. The pictures on the next page show important sources of these

Cloth is the favorite material for most garments. It is soft and flexible and conforms to the shape of the body. It can be thin or thick, light in weight or heavy. It can be dyed in a variety of colors. It can be made for beauty or for durability.

Hairlike *fibers* are the raw materials of cloth. *Spinning* fibers (drawing them out and twisting them) produces yarn or thread. *Weaving* or *knitting* yarn produces cloth. Thread is used for sewing the cloth into garments. The fuzzy white part of the cotton plant (the boll) is a mass of fibers. So

## DUTCH DRESS IN HOLLAND, MICH.



Styles in dress are much alike in Europe and America. But for festivals many people like to wear the styles of their ancestors. The people of Holland, Mich., wear the old Dutch costumes for their tulip festival every spring.

# ANIMALS AND PLANTS PROVIDE CLOTHING MATERIALS



COTTON



RUBBER



RUBBER TREES



WESTERN HEMLOCK (Rayon)



CATTLE (Leather)



SHEEP (Wool)



FLAX (Linen)



FLAX PLANT



WATER

COAL



FOX (Fur)



FISHER (Fur)



MARTEN (Fur)

Raw materials for clothing come from many different plants and animals. Plants provide fibers for spinning and weaving. Sheep and cattle supply wool. The hides of cattle and sheep are used for leather. Furs are the skins of many kinds of animals. Air, water, coal, and wood are used to make synthetic fibers such as nylon and rayon.

## THESE ANIMALS PROVIDE COSTLY CLOTHING MATERIALS



Silkworms (left), chiefly in far-off Japan, supply our silk, spinning the fine intrans filaments around themselves to make their cocoons. Unreeling the filaments and twisting them into silk yarn for weaving requires careful handwork. Silk, therefore, is an expensive fabric. Some of our finest wool comes from Cashmere goats, like those shown above (right). These goats are native to Kashmir (formerly Cashmere), India. They are rare, and so wool from their soft coats is expensive.

is the woolly coat of the sheep. The long woody stem of the flax plant contains the fibers that make linen yarn and thread.

Rayon and nylon are *synthetic* fibers, that is, they do not occur naturally but are made by man. The source of rayon is wood pulp or cotton linters. Most of the wood is western hemlock but some is southern pine. Nylon is made by a long series of chemical processes from coal, air, and water.

#### Luxurious Cloth from Rarer Fibers

Silk cloth is strong and beautiful. The fiber is a long lustrous *filament* which the silkworm spins around himself to make his cocoon. Farmers who raise silkworms have to give them a great deal of careful attention so that they will be healthy and spin strong filaments. Workers unwind the filaments and twist them into thread and yarn. This is a long, tiresome process. Since producing silk yarn requires so much work, silk cloth is expensive.

Not all wool comes from sheep. A type called mohair comes from angora goats. Cashmere goats provide a fine soft wool. Unusually warm, strong wool comes from llamas, alpacas, and vicuñas—animals that resemble goats.

#### Clothes from Leather, Rubber, and Fur

For some kinds of clothing, cloth is not so good as other materials. Leather is best for shoes. It can stand hard wear and is comfortable. It is also good for gloves, windproof coats, and belts. The raw materials of leather are the skins of cattle and other animals. They are treated by a chemical process called *tanning* to become strong and pliable.

Rubber is used for waterproof garments. The source of rubber is a milky liquid known as *latex*. This liquid flows from rubber trees when the bark is cut. Workers gather latex and ship it to rubber factories. There it is converted into the material we recognize as rubber. There are also rubber substitutes, made en-

tirely of chemicals. Both natural rubber and the substitutes go into rubbers, galoshes, raincoats, garters, and rubber soles and heels for shoes.

The animals pictured on the preceding page as sources of fur provide costly coats and fur pieces. Fishers and martens are rare today, but fur farmers raise many foxes. Other animals which provide fur include rabbits, muskrats, minks, beavers, sheep, raccoons, and opossums. (Pictures of these animals appear in articles on the individual animals.)

#### Hats for Protection and Ornament

The leading materials for hats are felt for winter and straw for summer. Felt is a kind of fabric made of wool, cotton, or fur fibers matted together. Straw is fiber from the stalks and leaves of various plants. Workers braid straw fibers and then sew the braid into hat shapes. Or they weave the fibers into hat shapes. Some hats which look like straw are made of synthetic fibers.

Men and boys wear hats chiefly for protection. Girls and women like hats for their appearance as well. They use straw, felt, and many other materials and a great variety of ornaments.

#### Many Workers Produce Our Clothing

MAKING clothes is a long series of different kinds of work that begins on farms and ranches, in forests and mines. Everything we wear originates in the world of nature. Workers raise crops or take natural products from their environment. They ship them to other workers. The second group carries out the next step in making the products into clothes and in turn ships them to other workers. At the end of the chain of workers and processes, the clothes appear in retail stores, ready to be bought and worn.

The farmer is the most important of the people who raise materials for clothes. He tills the soil

to produce plant crops and tends animals for their products. He may work alone or have other people help him as hired hands.

Not all the farmer's helpers are people. Horses are still important farm and ranch workers in some places. Dogs are important helpers to people who raise sheep, especially if their flocks are large. An old saying declares, "There is never a good flock without a good shepherd, and never a good shepherd without a good sheep dog." Sheep dogs round up, guide, and protect sheep. A good dog can handle as many as 1,200 sheep if the land is not too rough.

Farmers and ranchers raise cotton, wool, flax, and silk—all the natural fibers for cloth. They raise the cattle whose skins make leather. Plantation owners—a kind of farmer—cultivate the rubber trees that yield latex. For farmers raise many of the animals whose pelts go into fur coats and other furs. Some of the trees that supply pulpwood for rayon are cultivated as a farm crop.

Some workers obtain natural products for clothing without raising them. These workers include fur trappers who catch wild animals, lumberjacks who chop down forest trees for pulpwood, and miners who go down into the earth for coal.

Chemists invented the synthetic fibers as well as the rubber substitutes. That is why a chemist stands next to the farmer on the chart of clothing workers. In addition to inventing new materials, chemists create dyes, starches, and chemicals which make clothing materials look better and wear longer.

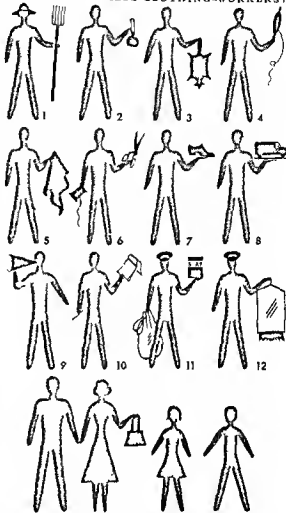
#### Producing Finished Materials for Clothing

More than a million people in the United States work to make cloth from fibers. They are usually called textile workers. Some of them clean wool, cotton, flax, and silk fibers and prepare them for spinning. Others operate machines that spin fibers into yarn. Many workers run looms and knitting machines to weave or knit the yarn into cloth. Others dye yarn or cloth to give it color. Some operate machines that shrink cloth or add a finish for beauty or durability.

In addition to the people who work with the clothing materials, there are clerks and stenographers who do the office work necessary to run textile factories. There are mechanics to look after the machines. Executives do the planning and carry the responsibility.

Workers in tanning factories treat animal skins to make them into leather. Those in rubber factories make finished rubber from latex or crude rubber, or they manufacture rubber substitutes. Workers in fur factories process and dye furs to make them suitable for clothing. Every factory has its people who work directly with the clothing materials, and, in addition, its office force and executives.

### DO YOU KNOW THESE CLOTHING-WORKERS?



These sketches show some of the people who work to supply us with clothes and to keep them clean. 1 Farmer 2 Chemist 3 Fur farmer and trapper 4 Spinner 5 Weaver 6 Garmentmaker 7 Shoemaker 8 Transportation worker 9 Dyer 10 Dry cleaner 11 Leundry worker 12 Dry cleaner. This article explains the tasks of these and other clothing workers. At the bottom are a mother and father who pay for the clothes and a son and daughter who can help care for them.

Each type of processing worker uses products that other workers make. Such products include machines, tools, chemicals and boxes and paper for wrapping shipments. The people who make these products can be called clothing workers too.

#### Over a Million Garmentmakers

After the raw materials have been converted into cloth, leather, rubber, and fur, workers make these finished materials into clothing.

There are almost as many garmentmakers in the United States as there are textile workers. Chief among them are the cutters and sewers. Cutters use either shears or cutting machines. The machines can

## WHO GETS THE MONEY WE PAY FOR OUR CLOTHES ?

Cost of a boy's suit  
\$40.00



The people  
who raise the sheep \$4.36 (10.9%)



The workers  
who make the wool  
into cloth \$6.76 (16.9%)



The workers  
who make the suit \$12.88 (32.2%)



The people  
who sell the suit \$16.00 (40%)

The money we pay to a store clerk for a garment actually goes to many people. This chart suggests how it is divided in normal peacetime years. The figures at all levels include costs such as overhead and advertising.

cut through many layers of cloth at once. A skilled operator can cut out garments enough to keep about 75 sewing-machine operators busy.

Other garmentworkers include designers, pattern-makers, pressers, office workers, and executives. In addition, there are shoemakers and hatmakers.

### Many Other People Help to Provide Clothes

Clothing could not be made and sold the way it is today without transportation workers. They run the trucks, trains, and ships that carry the raw materials from farms to textile and other factories. They transport the finished materials to garment factories. Finally, they take the finished garments to retail stores.

Advertising accompanies many stages in making clothes. Producers of yarn, textiles, dyes, chemicals, and machinery advertise to others in the industry. Garment factories advertise their products to at-

tract retail buyers. Retail stores advertise their stocks of clothing to attract the public. Writers and artists who create this advertising are important clothing workers.

The clerk who sells clothing in a retail store is the last worker in the chain which began on farm or ranch, in forest or mine. He or she is the only clothing worker most people see. They pay this clerk for their clothes. But the store has bought the clothing from a garment factory. The garment factory bought the cloth from a textile factory, and so on, back to the farm or other source of the raw materials. The price of the clothing includes payment to all the workers in the chain for services and materials.

Payment for clothing usually does not end when a garment is bought. As long as it is worn it must be kept clean and in good repair. Every community has workers who provide cleaning and repair services. Some of them run laundries and dry-cleaning establishments. Others are tailors, dressmakers, shoe repairmen, and hat cleaners.

### Where Materials Are Produced and Made into Clothes

THE PEOPLE of the United States raise or make many materials needed for clothes.

But they do not raise enough in some cases and have to import the rest from other countries. A few materials are not produced in the United States, and the entire supply is imported.

Farmers in the warm South and West grow enough cotton to supply the country's needs and to sell some abroad. Textile factories, however, import especially fine cotton from Egypt. Ranchers in the grazing states of the West produce most of the wool grown in the United States. In addition, farmers in many parts of the country raise sheep for wool along with other farm crops. But the United States imports about three-fourths of its wool, chiefly from Australia, Argentina, and New Zealand. Only one state—Oregon—grows flax for its fiber, although several other states grow flax for its seed. The United States buys most of its linen from Belgium and Ireland.

The United States leads the world in making rayon and nylon. The largest plants are in Tennessee, Virginia, and North Carolina. These factories are near the source of some of the raw materials (southern pines and cotton linters). They are also close to big knitting mills in the South.

Japan and China, countries where labor is cheap, supply most of the silk used in the United States. Farmers in this country, chiefly in Texas, raise enough goats to supply the demand for mohair. But the other rare wools come from distant lands—cashmere from India, and llama, alpaca, and vicuña wool from South America, mainly Peru.

### Clothing Materials Other Than Cloth

Ranchers of Texas and the Rocky Mountain states and farmers of the corn belt raise most of the cattle that supply leather. Other animals whose skins are used for leather include horses, sheep, goats

pyg, snakes, and alligators. The United States imports about half the skins it uses for leather.

The rubber tree is a plant of the tropics. The chief producing areas are in Malaya and Indonesia. The chief rubber-manufacturing center of the United States is Akron, Ohio.

Since fur makes cold-weather clothing, it would be natural to expect the leading fur-producing state to be a northern one. Instead Louisiana leads. People in that state trap several million muskrats every year. Fur farmers in the North raise foxes and minks. Trappers in Alaska and some states catch various kinds of fur bearers. The United States also imports many furs.

The United States buys most of its straw and straw hats in other countries. Panama hats come from Ecuador, not Panama. Milan straw comes from Italy. Mexico and Central America supply cheaper kinds of straw.













#### Where Cloth and Clothes Are Made

Most factories for making clothing materials are in the Eastern states. New Englanders took the lead in colonial times in building small spinning and weaving factories in which the workers used hand methods. They kept the lead when power-driven machinery was introduced into factories. New England had many swift rivers and waterfalls to provide water power. Coal was not far away. There were plenty of people to work in the factories. And rich Yankee traders supplied the money needed to build factories.

New England remained the chief area for making textiles until the 20th century. Then owners began moving cotton mills south to be near the cotton fields, cheap labor, and cheap electric power. Today the South is far ahead of New England in making cotton cloth. New England, however, still leads in making wool cloth.

The chart on this page shows that the East leads in making clothes as well as in making cloth. The first clothing factories were established during the Civil War in New York City.

#### WHERE OUR CLOTHES ARE MADE

<b>HOSIERY</b>		NORTH CAROLINA PENNSYLVANIA TENNESSEE
<b>KNIT UNDERWEAR</b>		PENNSYLVANIA NORTH CAROLINA GEORGIA
<b>KNIT OUTERWEAR</b>		NEW YORK PENNSYLVANIA MASSACHUSETTS
<b>MEN'S FELT HATS</b>		CONNECTICUT PENNSYLVANIA NEW YORK
<b>MILLINERY (women's hats)</b>		NEW YORK ILLINOIS CALIFORNIA
<b>FOOTWEAR (except rubber)</b>		MASSACHUSETTS NEW YORK MISSOURI
<b>RUBBER FOOTWEAR</b>		MASSACHUSETTS CONNECTICUT RHODE ISLAND
<b>MEN'S SHIRTS AND NIGHTWEAR</b>		PENNSYLVANIA NEW YORK MARYLAND
<b>MEN'S AND BOYS' SUITS AND COATS</b>		NEW YORK PENNSYLVANIA ILLINOIS
<b>WOMEN'S AND CHILDREN'S UNDERWEAR</b>		NEW YORK PENNSYLVANIA NEW JERSEY
<b>CHILDREN'S DRESSES AND COATS</b>		NEW YORK PENNSYLVANIA NEW JERSEY
<b>FUR GOODS</b>		NEW YORK ILLINOIS PENNSYLVANIA

#### WOMEN'S DRESSES, SUITS, AND COATS

ILLINOIS

CALIFORNIA

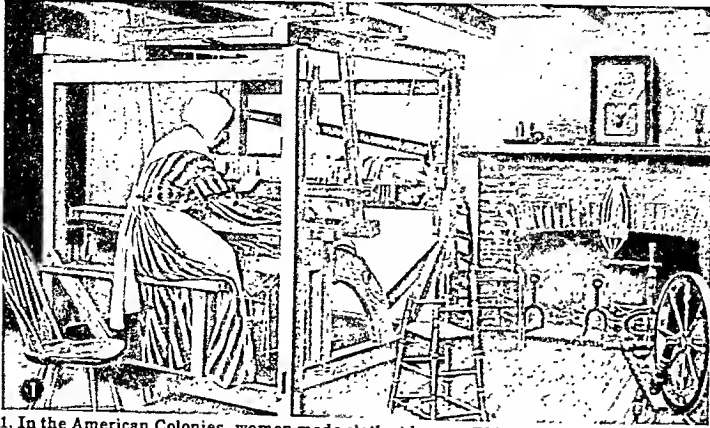
NEW YORK



This chart shows which states make different kinds of clothes. Types of clothing are shown at the left. On the right, here indicate the three states that lead in making each type. They also indicate the value of the amount manufactured.



## GETTING CLOTHING MATERIALS LONG AGO



1. In the American Colonies, women made cloth at home. This picture shows a woman weaving at a hand loom. A spinning wheel stands at the right.



2. After about 1800, peddlers drove through the country, selling dress goods and other articles to housewives on farms and in villages.

## TWO OLD-TIME TAILOR SHOPS



1. During the period of the American Revolution, tailors still sewed by hand. They worked in small shops or at home. 2. A hundred years later, sewing machines were coming into use. This picture shows an early model run by means of a small pedal.



Conditions were favorable for the industry to develop there. Immigrants who would work for low wages were pouring into the city. The textile mills of New England were nearby. The area was thickly populated, providing a market for clothing.

As the nation grew, people built garment factories in other places. Today almost all the largest cities have clothing factories of some kind. But New York City still dominates the garment industry.

## Development of Clothing through the Ages

THE complicated industries that supply us with clothes

developed gradually. The first clothing was probably nothing but animal skins scraped and treated to make them clean, soft, and strong. When people learned to spin and weave, they made crude clothing of cloth, using wool or wild flax.

Skill in weaving developed to a high point long before our era. Prehistoric Egyptians made fine linen. Cotton was used in India and silk in China in ancient times to make beautiful fabrics. But only the rich could afford fashionable clothing made of fine materials. The poor wore simple, coarsely woven clothes.

During the Middle Ages clothmaking became a thriving business. Although most clothing was made at home, there were tailors and dressmakers who held fairs at which they sold ready-made clothes to those who

could afford to buy. The poorer people either made their own simple clothes or else bought the cast-off clothing of the rich from secondhand dealers.

Between the Middle Ages and the Industrial Revolution which introduced power-driven machinery there were improvements in hand methods. These made it possible for more people to have more clothes. But the situation had not changed basically when the colonists came to America.

#### Getting Clothes in the Colonies

The first colonists had only the clothes they brought with them from the homeland. Friendly Indians taught them how to make fur caps and robes from the skins of wild animals and how to make buckskin garments from deer hides.

The colonists had brought flaxseed, hempseed and sheep with them to the New World. (Hemp is a plant with coarse stringlike fibers in its stalk. It is no longer used for cloth.) They tended their sheep carefully. As soon as they had cleared enough land they planted their seed. Presently they had crops of

flax, hemp and wool for spinning. The men built spinning wheels and looms. The women spun, wove cloth and made clothes for the entire family.

Shoemaking was a household task at first. Presently skilled shoemakers came to the colonies from Europe. Some set themselves up as traveling shoemakers, going from home to home in towns and rural areas making shoes to order. Others established small shops in villages and towns.

It is believed that the colonists built their first textile factory at Rowley Mass. about 1638. The early factories were small establishments where skilled craftsmen operated hand looms. Soon the colonists could buy small amounts of cloth made of flax, wool or hemp raised at home or of cotton imported from the West Indies.

Country people continued to make most of their own cloth long after the Revolution, though peddlers traveled the country roads selling cloth and many other kinds of merchandise. People in the growing towns got their clothing in various ways. There were

#### FOUR WAYS OF MAKING CLOTHES TODAY



1 Many men and women make some of their clothes at home, using a sewing machine run by electricity like the one shown here. 2 Most clothes are made in factories. The picture taken on the right shows many people working together to make clothes.



3 Above is a dressmaking shop. Such shops make women's clothes to order. Women who are hard to fit or want the latest styles may go to these shops. 4 Men's suits like the one shown here are made clothes to order for men.

## CARING FOR CLOTHES IS EASY BUT IMPORTANT



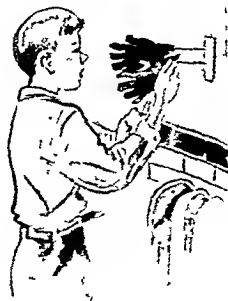
1



2



3



4

1. This girl is putting trees in her shoes before putting them away in a shoe bag. Shoe trees prevent shoes from losing their shape.  
 2. 3. The boy and girl shown here have learned that two of the best aids to good grooming are the clothesbrush and the coat hanger.  
 4. This boy's wool gloves will not be damp when he wants to wear them again. Hanging damp gloves up in such a way that the air can get inside allows them to dry thoroughly before the next wearing.

dealers in secondhand clothes and small tailor shops. Some women did their own spinning and weaving, just as their country cousins did. Others bought material at stores and made clothes for their families. Tailors and dressmakers went from home to home sewing for the well to do, boarding with the families for whom they sewed. Wealthy people imported fine fabrics and ready-made clothes from Europe.

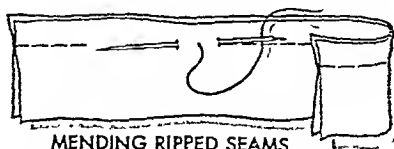
After the American Revolution, machinery began to affect the production of clothing materials (see Industrial Revolution). Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin in 1793. This made it easier to clean cotton, and Southerners began to plant cotton instead of tobacco on their big plantations. New Englanders began to build spinning and weaving machines like those in England. They put up factories in which to use them. The first machines were run by water power. Presently steam replaced water power. Late in the 19th century electricity began to replace steam.

The sewing machine was invented at about the time that factory-made clothing materials became plentiful. After establishment of the first garment factories during the Civil War, the business of making clothes in factories grew steadily. Today, although dressmakers and tailors still make clothing, and many people make some of their clothes at home, factories supply most people with all or most of their clothes. (See also Garment Industry.)

#### Taking Care of Clothes

Good clothing deserves good care. A simple but important kind of care is the kind clothing receives when it is taken off and put away until the next wearing. Coats, dresses, trousers, blouses, and skirts keep their shape better if they are hung up on well-shaped clothes hangers when they are taken off. And careful hanging may eliminate unsightly wrinkles and creases before the next wearing.

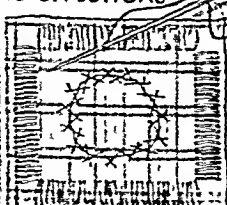
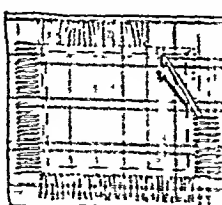
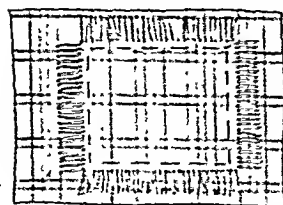
#### A FEW REPAIRS THAT WILL MAKE CLOTHES LAST LONGER



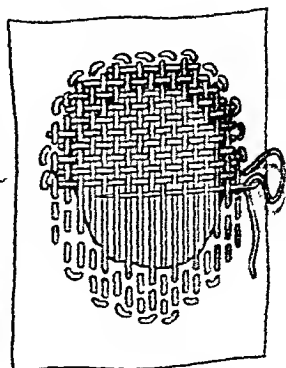
MENDING RIPPED SEAMS



SEWING ON BUTTONS



MAKING A TAILOR'S PATCH



PLAIN DARNING

Top, left, a rip in machine sewing can be mended by hand. Tie the threads of the machine stitching on the wrong side to prevent further ripping. Then backstitch the ripped part, with the right side up (see Sewing). The next two pictures show a good way to replace a torn-off button. A small, doubled-over piece of fabric stitched under the button on the wrong side gives strength. Bottom, left, to make a tailor's patch, first fringe a piece of material larger than the hole and haste it in place. Second, with a fine crochet hook pull the fringe through to the wrong side. Third, secure the fringe on the wrong side with invisible stitches and catch stitch the edge of the hole to the patch. Right, a good darn begins well back from the hole.

Brushing wool garments removes hair dandruff and lint. If garments are brushed before they are put away they will be fresh for the next wearing. Then a last minute rush to get dressed will not mean an untidy appearance.

Frequent laundering and dry cleaning of clothes are necessary to an attractive appearance. They also lengthen the life of clothing. Dirt allowed to remain in fabric tends to shorten its life.

Care of clothing includes care of shoes. Use of shoe trees, especially when shoes are damp, prevents loss of shape. Cleaning and polishing shoes keeps them looking well and makes them last longer. Clean ing

and polishing shoes help them to remain comfortable too by softening the leather.

#### Can Mending Be Fun?

Mending can be fun—to girls who like to sew. But to most people it is a chore worth doing only because of the results achieved.

Small jobs like sewing up ripped seams and replacing buttons are worth doing on any wearable garment. Major repairs require more consideration. A tear in a wool skirt, for example, can be neatly mended with a tailor's patch as illustrated on the opposite page. Such a patch requires skill and patience. One must be sure the skirt is worth the work involved.

## REFERENCE OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CLOTHING

I Clothing used to suit occupation, weather, and climate C-353

II Clothing materials C-354

A Fibers C-354 F 62 T 98 cotton C-491 wool W 192 A 176 G-129 L-285 flax F 140 rayon R 79 nylon N-317 silk S-181

B Leather L-147-50

C Rubber R-240 synthetic rubber R-244-6

D Furs and fur-bearing animals F-321 beaver B 92 chinchilla C-289 ermine E-392 fox F-253

Hudson seal H-473 leopard L-170 lynx L-355

marten M 104 mink M 275 mole M-332 muskrat M-473 nutria R 176 opossum O-399 otter O-429 rabbit R-18 raccoon R 19 sable M 104

seal S-83 skunk S-193 squirrel S-350 wolf W 180 See also in Fact Index Furs table

III Fabric C-356a fabrics F-4 textures T 98 loom pictures R 251 knitting K 57 cotton C-496 wool W 192 linen L-254 silk S-184 felt F 50 bleaching B-205 dyeing D-165

IV The garment industry C-356a G 22-25 shoes S-162 stockings S-397 hats and caps H 231 gloves G 126 buttons B-369 laces L-77

V Making clothes at home S-110 needles N 107 thread T 124 pins P 257 sewing machine S-115 A Basic stitches S-111 buttonholes S-114 B Design in clothes D 143

VI Caring for clothes C-356/357 removing spots H-411 cleaning L-135 mending diagram C-356/

VII History of clothing C-356f

A Animal skins bark fiber and leaves C-366d M-66 American Indians I 101 104b 106b 106d

B Spinning and weaving S-313

1 Primitive methods B 73 B-76 M-66 F-4

2 Ancient Egypt T 103 E-232 L-204 Peru T 104 S-263 I-50 Greece and Rome T 101

3 Middle Ages and Renaissance T 105 G 27

4 Early American Indians I 106 colonists A 211

5 Industrial Revolution I 131 4 F-4 savans tors A-3 1 C 130 C-515 H 269 W 132

C Textile making in the United States T 100 I 134

D Dress D 144-7

1 Primitive M 66 pictures M-64 65

2 Ancient civilizations pictures Babylonia and Assyria B 7 9 Egypt E-28 285 Greece G 198 199 Rome R 180 181 187 188

3 Middle Ages and Renaissance pictures M 236-238 C-187 C-193 C-200 201 E-332

H-337 338 339 L-55 56 M 107 R 102

4 Early American Indians I 101 104b 106 106b 106d colonies A 211 pictures W 21 23 A 132 201 207 U-370 371 U-341

5 Present-day pictures Afghanistan A 32

Africa A-40 45 M 394 S-243 C-434b Arabia

A 246 Bavaria B-83 Borneo B 254 255

Bulgaria B 349 Central America L-117

C 222-222b China C 257 263 8 273 274

283 Eskimos E-393 (text and pictures)

France F 263 Greece G 19 2 Iceland I 11

India I 52 56 57 59 60 61 63 Iran

R 250 Italy I 265 271 Japan J 299-306 320

323 color picture J 316 Java J-305 Lapland

L-102 Mexico M 195 Netherlands N 116

No way N-300 Philippines P 198 (text)

Poland P-312 Portugal P 379 Rumania

R 254 Russia R-263 269 271 272 Samoa

P 12 Scotland S-63a South Africa S-243

Spain S-260 262 264 C 266

S 161 L-110 Spain S-314 315 317 Sweden

S-462 Switzerland S-479 Turkey T 217

Yugoslavia Y 346

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CLOTHING

### Books for Younger Readers

Baty E C. Man I a Wen er (Viking 194 )

Boyle L F and others. Our Clothing (Lippincott 1952)

Brakow E M. Pella's New Suit (Harper 1929)

Japo Frank. Nothing to Wear but Clothes (Allan 1953)

Kaenz, Maika. See and Sew (Lippincott 1943)

Foley Josephine. Cotton Industry (Longmans 1943)

Foley Josephine M F and Maika. Story Book of Clothes (Winston 1933)

Foley Josephine M F and Maika. Story Book of Cotton (Story Book of Cotton 1939)

Foley Josephine M F and Maika. Story Book of Wool (Winston 1939)

### Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

Baxter L F and Latzke Alpha. Today's Clothing (Lippincott 1949)

Bendure Zelma and Pfeiffer G B. American Fabrics (Macmillan 1951)

Conroy Sylvia. How You Look and Dress (McGraw 1949)

Denny G G. Fabrics (Lippincott 1953)

Evans Mary. Costumes Throughout the Ages (Lippincott 1950)

Munroe E A. Clothing Construction (Houghton 1953)

Shaw Dorothy. Men Too Wear Clothes (Lippincott 1950)

Taylor L D. Know Your Fabrics (Wiley 1951)

Tonous H N. Design Your Own Dress Patterns (Bennett 1951)

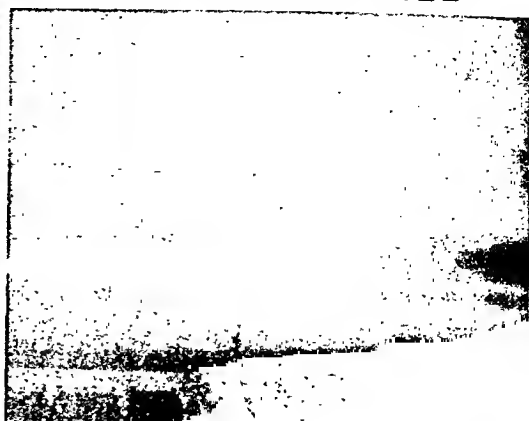
Wegate L S. Textile Fabrics and Their Selection (Prentice-Hall 1949)

(See also Bibliography for Home Economics and Management Industry of Revolution)

# COMMON CLOUDS AND WHAT THEY TELL



CIRRUS



CIRROSTRATUS, with hole



ALTOCUMULUS



STRATUS



CUMULUS



CUMULONIMBUS

Cirrus and cirrostratus often warn of storms a day or two ahead, while altocumulus and stratus may immediately precede

bad weather. A fair-weather cumulus cloud sometimes turns to an anvil-shaped cumulonimbus, trailing streamers of rain.

**CLOUDS** White clouds drifting in a blue summer sky call to nearly everyone's imagination. When you watch them a moment or two they seem to take on familiar shapes such as the images of men or animals. This fantasy has entertained people of all times. Even Shakespeare remarked it. In one scene from *Hamlet* the young prince of Denmark muses: "Do you see yonder cloud that's almost in shape of a camel?"

For ages also men have gazed at the clouds with more serious interest. For the ever-changing clouds in the sky tell us a "weather story." Most of us can read some of it. We know that small white woolly clouds in a blue sky promise fine weather. When a sky is gray and ugly looking we expect rain or snow. We all know what to expect from a thundercloud. But we can tell much more, if we know what clouds are and why they look different at different times.

First of all, we have clouds because the atmosphere contains water. If the water is vaporized we cannot see it and the sky looks blue. But the ability to hold vapor depends upon temperature (see Evaporation). Hence any chilling of the air may cause some of its water vapor to condense into droplets or even form crystals of snow or ice. If a mass of droplets trails along the ground, we call it *fog*; if it rises high enough to be seen from below, we call it a *cloud*.

A cloud looks white as long as it is thin enough to reflect or diffuse sunlight. It becomes gray or black when it becomes dense enough to absorb sunlight. But then it can hardly hold more water. If the temperature falls a bit, some of the moisture falls as rain or snow.

#### Different Kinds of Clouds

The shapes, heights, and appearances of clouds give us many other hints about the weather. The "fair-weather" combination of white, woolly clouds in a blue sky occurs when most of the air can hold all its moisture as vapor. But here and there, over some lake or river, the sun's rays cause a strong updraft of moisture-laden air. At perhaps 1,500 feet above the ground, some of the moisture is condensed into white cloud, and the updraft may carry the cloud several miles high. Then we see the towering, billowy mass of a *cumulus*, or "wool-pack" cloud. If it turns gray or black, it is getting all the water it can hold, and it may become a thundercloud (see Storms).

In contrast, some change of atmospheric conditions may form a cloud over a wide area. This usually happens at a certain level, as, for example, where cold air cuts under warm moisture-laden air (see Weather). Therefore the cloud which results usually lies in a rather definite layer, and it is called a *stratus* cloud. A storm from a *stratus* cloud may last a day or more, because usually the cloud is widespread.

At levels of 20,000 feet or higher, water usually is formed into ice crystals. These crystals make feathery wisps of clouds, either scattered or grouped in streamers called "horsetails" or in a scalelike pattern called a "mackerel sky." Because of their great height, cirrus clouds show a pink glow before dawn

and after sunset. They also cause halos around the sun and the moon.

**Cirrus clouds** are usually formed of material obtained from other clouds. Streamers of cirrus often can be seen shredding away from the top of a tall cumulus cloud. Since they travel on high winds at high levels far ahead of their parent cloud masses, they mean "other clouds coming." What weather the other clouds will bring depends upon their character.

#### Scientific Classification of Clouds

To describe clouds scientists use the names already explained either singly or combined and three other terms: *fractus*, *nimbus*, and *alto*. The term *fractus* means broken. A *fractostratus* or *fractocumulus* cloud is a mass torn from either parent type. The word *nimbus* formerly meant any cloud which gives rain. But this told nothing about the kind of cloud, so now scientists speak of *nimbostratus* or *cumulonimbus* clouds. The *cumulonimbus* is the thundercloud.

The term *alto* means high and it is used for middle-level clouds at elevations between 6,000 and 20,000 feet. A *stratus* cloud in this level is called *altostratus*. Since ordinary cumulus clouds may reach from the low to the high level, the term *altocumulus* is used for small masses of cumulus at middle levels. Such masses usually occur in patterns often as rolls across the sky or as rippled flaky masses. The combination terms *cirrostratus* and *stratocumulus* mean respectively cirrus or cumulus material which is widespread enough to form a layer.

**CLOVER** The clover plants and the bees help one another to live. The clovers furnish tempting sweets for the bees, and in return the bees carry pollen from flower to flower for the clovers. Men learned this when they transplanted red clover from Europe to Australia. It grew and blossomed, but no seed formed. Scientists soon found the trouble. The red clover's special friend, the bumblebee, had been left behind, and it is this bee, with its long neck, that sips the nectar in the deep "cups" of the red clover blossoms. Other bees, not being attracted, did not spread the red clover pollen.

Clovers are wonder workers for the farmer. They provide splendid forage for cows, and a field may give two or more cuttings a year, if clover hay. Clover also enriches the soil in many ways.

The long roots reach deeply into the soil and do not draw only upon the top layer, as do many shallow-rooted crops. Some kinds, such as alfalfa, can reach water where other crops or grasses might die. Most important of all, clovers are legumes and, like other plants of this type, they shelter nitrogen-fixing bacteria on their roots (see Nitrogen). These bacteria make nitrogenous food from the air for the clover, and, if the clover is plowed into the ground, it leaves this food for other plants. Hence planting clover and plowing it under improves a field greatly for later crops.

Although sweet clover is not a true clover, like alfalfa, it belongs to the legumes, and it has nectar which attracts bees. It grows on soil where clover would perish, and its long roots carry nitrogen-fixing bacteria some 20 feet into the ground.

More than 400 species of clover have been listed. They grow at their best in the temperate regions of Europe and America. The common red clover is one

of the oldest varieties cultivated. The mammoth red clover is an improved variety of the common red. Alsike, or Swedish, clover grows on land too wet for red clover and is a good crop for the honeybees. The white, or Dutch, clover grows in pasture lands and grass plots everywhere. Crimson, or scarlet, clover is used for hay, pasture, and as a cover crop in orchards. Florists also grow the plant. Berseem, an Egyptian clover, has been introduced into the United States to grow in the alkaline soil of the Southwest. Button clover is a valuable winter cover and pasture crop, used in rotation with summer row crops in the South.

An important relative of the true clovers is lespedeza, which is grown as a pasture and hay crop in the southern part of the United States. The principal varieties are Japan clover and Korean lespedeza. Bur clover is a pasture plant related to alfalfa.

The true clovers belong to a genus of the bean family (*Leguminosae*) called *Trifolium* because the leaves are divided into three leaflets. The flowers—red, white, crimson, or yellow—grow in heads or clusters. The sweet clovers have butterfly-shaped blossoms

like those of the sweet pea. They may be either white or yellow. The leaves are three-parted. The dried foliage has a pleasant fragrance, and branches of it are sometimes hung in closets. The sweet clovers belong to the genus *Melilotus*. Button clover belongs to the genus *Medicago*.

**CLOVES.** The spice that looks like a nail is the dried, unopened flower bud of the clove tree. The tree is an evergreen related to the myrtle. It grows in the East and West Indies. At first the buds are a pale color, which gradually turns to green and later to a bright red, when they are collected. They dry to a dark brown. Cloves are about half an inch long, with a knob at one end which contains the unopened petals. Their general shape, that of a nail with its head, gave them their name, from the French word *clou*, meaning "nail."

The buds are used as flavorings. Oil of cloves, obtained by distillation in water, is used as a drug, especially as a toothache remedy. It is also used in soaps, perfumes, and ointments. Synthetic vanilla is made from eugenol, an ingredient of clove oil.

Cloves were an important item in the spice trade of the Middle Ages. They grew originally in a small group of islands called the Moluccas, or Spice Islands. The Dutch cultivated the tree in Amboina, and the French transplanted it to Zanzibar and the neighboring island of Pemba, where three fourths of the world's supply is grown today. Some cloves are also exported from the West Indies. The scientific name of the clove tree is *Eugenia caryophyllata*.

**CLOVIS** (465-511). One day this king of the early Franks was engaged in a battle with a neighboring tribe of Teutons. His warriors were being driven from the field. The gods Woden and Thor seemed to have failed him. Suddenly Clovis remembered that his wife, Clotilda, had long been urging him to become a Christian. Raising his eyes to heaven, he cried: "Oh, Christ Jesus, I beseech thee for aid! If thou wilt grant me victory over mine enemies, I will believe in thee and be baptized in thy name!"

With this he rallied his men and gained a great victory, and on Christmas Day of the same year (496) the king and 3,000 of his followers were baptized. But Clovis remained at heart the same savage warrior he had been before, and, when the monks told him the story of Christ's crucifixion, he clutched his battle ax and cried: "If I had been there with my Franks I would have revenged His wrongs!"

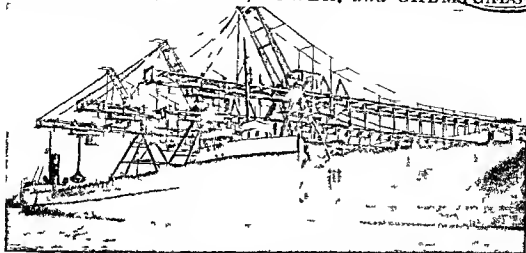
When Clovis at the age of 16 became king of one tribe of the Franks, these ancestors of the modern French nation were a scattered and disunited people with a number of kings. When he died, 30 years later, he had united all the Franks into a single powerful nation under his own rule. He overthrew the Roman power in Gaul in a battle near Soissons in 486, and before his death he had won for his people a kingdom which reached from the Rhine on the north and east almost to the Pyrenees Mountains on the south. So complete was the Frankish conquest that this land ever since has been called France, from their name.

#### HOW CLOVER ENRICHES SOIL



In the lumps, called nodules, on clover roots, live colonies of bacteria. These take nitrogen from the air and convert it into nitrates, a natural fertilizer which enriches the soil.

# Mining COAL for HEAT, POWER, and CHEMICALS



Heavy overhead machinery is lifting out a cargo of coal from a Great Lakes barge at Duluth, Minn. In a few hours the barge will be unladen. All summer long these barges bring coal from Lake Erie to the power plants, railroads and factories and for winter heating throughout the Northwest. Part of the winter supply is left in huge piles like the one behind the ship.

**COAL** One of our most precious minerals is coal. Nearly half the energy we use for heat and power comes from it. It heats buildings, runs trains, melts iron ore and makes electricity. And coal furnishes thousands of chemical products such as dyes, perfumes, medicines and synthetic fibers.

Coal has two great advantages. The cost is low and the supply is almost limitless. Some geologists estimate that the United States has enough coal for the next thousand years. There will be enough even to supply liquid fuel and lubricants by special processes if the supply of petroleum is ever used up.

But the work of getting coal out of the ground remains a difficult and dirty job. It is dangerous as well. Coal mining machinery has helped make the work easier, but men must still go down hundreds of feet below the surface to get the coal. There they work in constant danger from cave-ins and explosions. Every year more than a thousand men die in coal mine accidents.

## How Coal Was Made Long Ago

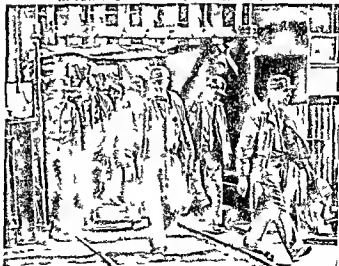
MEN must dig in next to reach coal because as coal

formed it was pushed deep under ground. The material for it came from plants and coalmaking always started when a forest lay down a thick deposit of dead trees, branches and leaves. This material was covered with rock and buried for millions of years before it became coal.

All this happened many times in many places. But one age gave us most of the coal we use today. A common name for it is the Coal Age. In Europe geologists call it the Carboniferous period. American geologists divide the age into two periods, the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian. Most of the coal in North America began to form in the Pennsylvanian period.

The Coal Age was a time of warm, moist climate. Much of the land was low and swampy. From it rose dense forests of strange-looking trees, ferns and

## AFTER A DAY'S WORK MINING COAL



These men have done a day's work far below the ground, and an elevator cage has brought them to the top of the mine shaft. They are wearing their safety hats and shoes with three nails on each toe. The tracks are for the cage carrying coal.



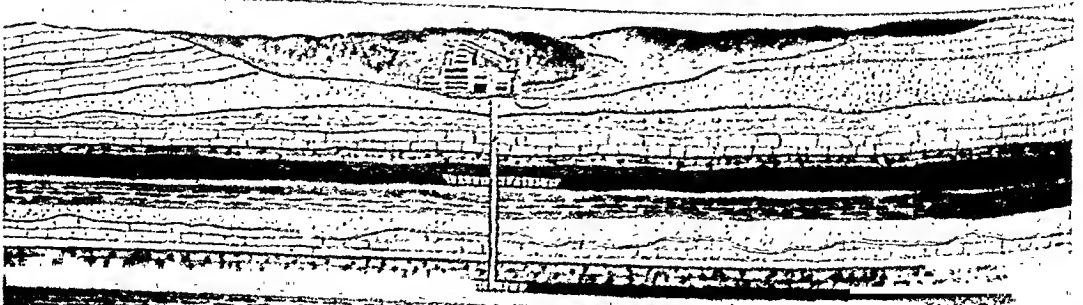
## HOW COAL WAS LAID DOWN LONG AGES AGO



During the Coal Age, strange-looking plants and animals grew in swampy forests. Giant insects buzzed through rushes, ferns, and tall trees. Huge ancestors of modern salamanders hunted for food in the muddy water and rested on half-sunken logs. As the plants died, their remains fell to the bottom of the swamp, making a thick deposit. The picture below shows what happened next to start turning this plant deposit into coal. American geologists call these times the Pennsylvanian period of earth history.



From time to time some of the land started sinking and lowered the dead plant material deep below water. (Much of it had rotted away, but plenty of black carbon was left. Meanwhile, rivers washed gravel, sand, and mud from surrounding higher land and laid them in thick beds over the carbon. If the land sank low enough, a shallow sea flowed in and added marine deposits. Gradually the deposits changed to rock, and the tremendous weight of rock pressing upon the carbon helped to change it gradually into coal.



After a coal deposit had been formed, the land might have risen again above sea level and grown a new forest. Then it might have sunk once more, and another deposit of coal would be made. In places such as Pennsylvania, this happened many times. Later the land remained steady and coalmaking stopped. Today the deposits may lie in veins far below the surface, and miners must dig shafts through the overlying rock to reach them. In other places the rock has been worn away and the coal is near the surface.

rushes. We know what these plants looked like because they left fossil imprints in the rock layers next to the coal. Giant insects buzzed through the air and amphibious animals crept through the bog.

As the plant life died it fell beneath the swamp water. The pictures show how great layers of mud, sand and marine deposits gradually formed over the plant matter and helped it to turn into coal.

The matter first turned into a spongy *peat*. This is a kind of coal-to-be. Later the peat turned to *lignite*. Lignite is a low-grade coal, brown in color. Finally age-long pressure from the overlying rock produced *bituminous* (soft) coal. This is black and is much harder than lignite.

The hardest coal is *anthracite*. This was formed when the rocks of the region were wrinkled into folds and broken by faults. The tremendous pressure and heat from these processes were added to the weight of the overlying rock and hardened the coal deposit.

Peat has little fixed carbon, lignite has about 67 per cent. Bituminous coal has about 83 per cent, and anthracite more than 90 per cent. The quantity of fixed carbon determines how much heat the coal will give when it is burned.

#### Coal Fields of the United States

Coal is found on every continent, but more than a third of the world's supply is in the United States. Thirty-six of the 48 states have some coal, and it is plentiful in 23 states.

The United States has four great coal fields: The Appalachian field lies in parts of Pennsylvania, Virginia, West Virginia, eastern Kentucky, Tennessee and Alabama. The Illinois field is in central and southern Illinois, western Indiana and western Kentucky. The Midcontinent field includes deposits from Iowa to Texas. The fourth field in Colorado, Utah and Wyoming is the least developed. Colorado and Washington have important deposits.

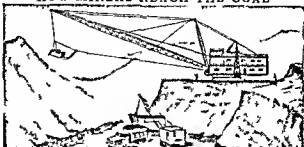
Most of the coal in these regions is bituminous. The largest anthracite field in Pennsylvania covers only 494 square miles. Other anthracite fields are in Colorado, Washington and Arkansas. The leading coal states are Pennsylvania, West Virginia, Illinois and Kentucky.

#### How Men Take Coal from the Earth

Coal lies at various depths below the earth's surface.

The seams may run fairly level or they may be highly convoluted. The pictures on this page show various coal deposits and how the miners reach them to dig the coal.

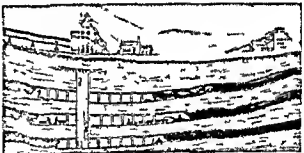
#### HOW MINERS REACH THE COAL



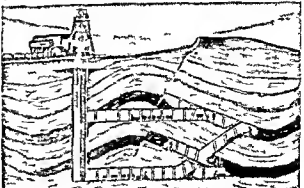
When coal lies close to the surface, mine men use open-pit, or strip, mining methods. Here a huge machine works a scoop on a drag, on to it, p away earth and recovers the coal. A powerful shovel loads coal on a truck.



If coal seams lie close to the edge of a hill, mine men reach them by drilling an incline with a level on it. If the incline must angle gradually to meet an inclined seam, this approach is called slope mining.

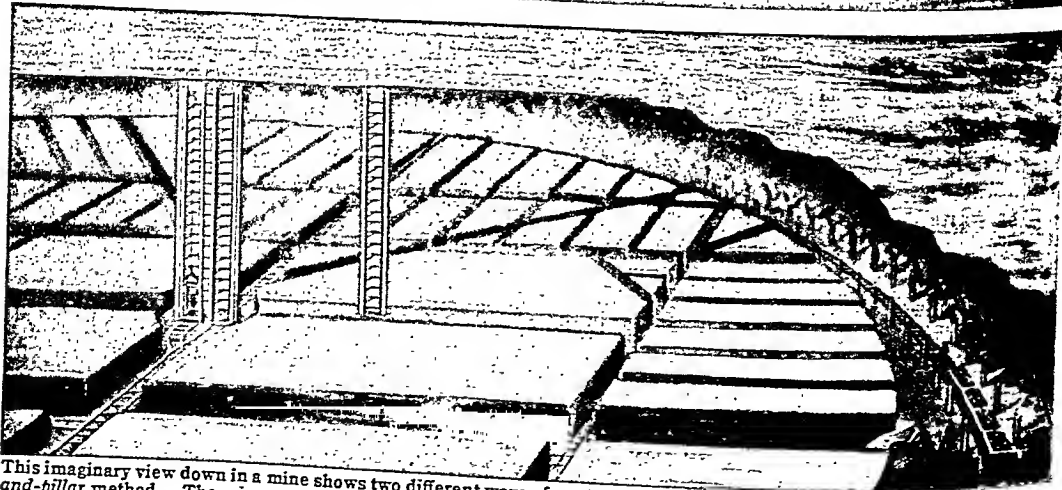
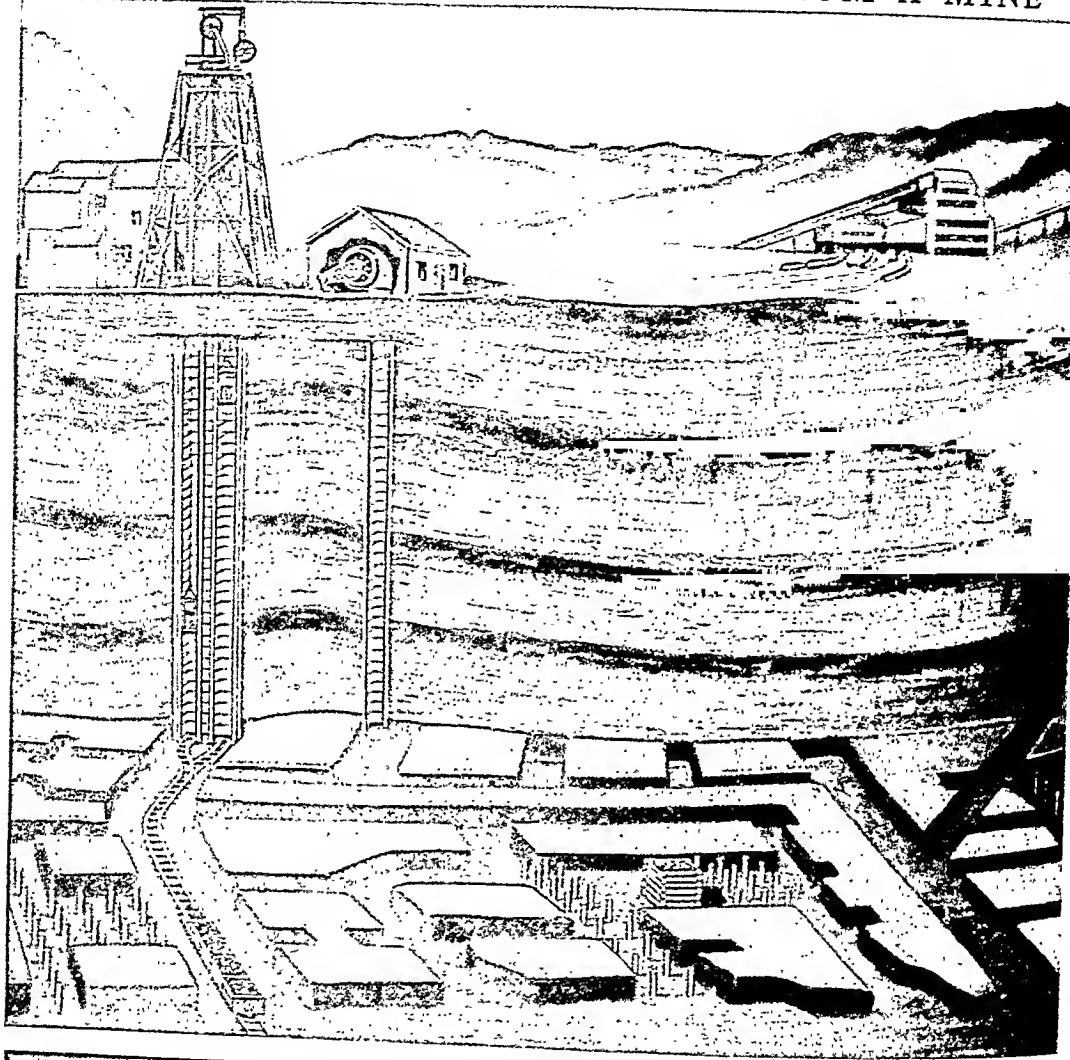


Shafts are used to reach deep seams. If turn more coal usually lies in the level seams or veins. It can be reached by pulley or passage (galleries) cut out on the shaft. The coal is loaded on cars that roll to the elevator.



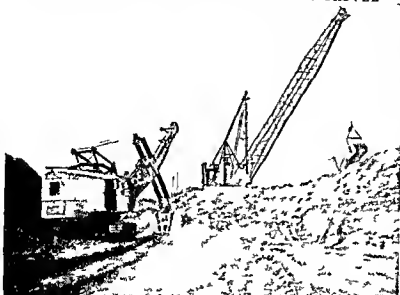
Anthracite (hard coal) was made in places where the rock was folded and tremendous heat and pressure had deformed the coal. The seams are too deep or broken and miners must dig galleries at various angles from the shaft to get the coal. Small buxies carry coal to the larger cars.

## TWO WAYS OF GETTING COAL FROM A MINE



This imaginary view down in a mine shows two different ways of getting out coal. The upper cutaway view shows the *room-and-pillar* method. The miners work out from the shaft, digging "rooms" in the coal. They leave wooden props and pillars of coal behind to hold up the roofs of the openings. In *longwall* mining (lower level) the miners cut passages to the outer limits of the company's coal. Then they work inward, taking out all the coal. They use props where they work, but let the roof collapse behind them.

## OPEN CUT MINING BY DRAGLINE AND SHOVEL



At an Indiana open cut mine a walking dragline digs off the overburden of earth and rock and a power shovel digs out the coal. The dragline's boom is 150 feet long and rock in its bucket. The lateral boom is 150 feet long.

The simplest method is *strip* or *open-cut* mining. It is used where the coal lies close to the surface. Huge digging machines strip off the overburden of earth and rock from the coal. Then the coal is blasted and dug out with power shovels.

The other methods require driving a shaft to reach the coal seam. Miners must work underground and send coal to the surface by ear.

Where a shaft can be driven straight into the side of a mine like a tunnel the method is called *drift* mining. *Slope* mining is used where the shaft must go down at an angle to meet a tilted seam. *Shaft* mining sends the shaft straight down to the coal seam.

#### Room and Pillar and Longwall Mining

The picture on the opposite page shows two different methods of working under a shaft. The *room-and-pillar* method is used most frequently for seams that are four feet thick or more. The miners drive long tunnels called *entries* away from the bottom of the shaft. These serve as roads for hauling the coal back to the shaft. The men work off these entries into *rooms* to take out the coal. In time the entries and connecting passages make a pattern much like city blocks. The miners use timber posts to help support the roofs of passages and rooms. They also leave pillars of coal at regular intervals. When a mine has been nearly all worked out by this method, some coal pillars may be taken out to get the coal in them.

In the *longwall* method long entries are driven to the limits of the mine. Then the miners work back to the shaft along the whole face of the seam. As mining progresses the mined-out area comes more and more to resemble a semicircle. This method takes out

all the coal but the roof must be supported entirely by timbers. As they near the shaft the miners pull out the timbers in the worked-out area and let the roof cave in behind them.

#### A Miner's Working Day

The miner gets up early in the morning and eats a big breakfast. His wife packs a lunch ready for him to carry below. He has no regular lunch hour. He eats whenever his work allows him some free time.

Coming to work he goes to the wash house and changes to his working clothes. At the lamp house he receives a light to wear on his hat. He straps storage batteries for the lamp on his belt or back.

Now he goes to the *tipple* (at a bituminous coal mine) or the *breaker* (at an anthracite mine). The building stands on top of the shaft. Here also coal taken from the mine is unloaded from the cars and sorted. He enters an elevator car called a *cage* that takes him swiftly down to the working area. This may be from 100 to 3,000 feet below ground in the United States mines. In Belgium mines are sometimes three-quarters of a mile deep.

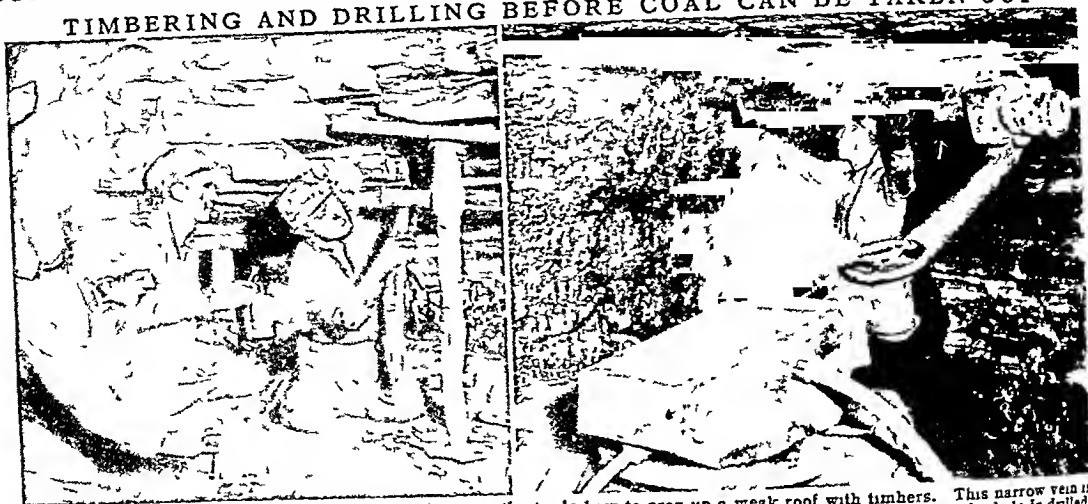
At the bottom of the shaft the miner gets a metal identification check. He turns this in at the end of the day to show that he has left the mine. If a check is missing, a searching party must be sent out to find the lost miner. From the shaft bottom he rides to where he will work for the day in a low slung coal car pulled by an engine. The cars are called *trips*. They carry the miner to his work and back and carry coal out to the shaft. When men ride in them the cars are called *man trips*. Each string of trips has a motorman and a trip rider who works like a brakeman on a railroad. Other men have railroadlike jobs as well. Among them are tracklayers, road cleaners, and switchmen.

#### Working at the Coal Face

Each place where coal is being taken out is called a *face*. Work is directed by a foreman called the *face boss*. At each face the miners work with electrically powered cutting and loading machines. These machines may have been brought to the face on the tracks used by the trips or they may have their own caterpillar tracks.

Two men operate each machine. First they place the cutting machine against the face. It has a chain

## TIMBERING AND DRILLING BEFORE COAL CAN BE TAKEN OUT



A veteran British miner (left) shows young men learning the trade how to prop up a weak roof with timbers. This narrow vein is typical of British coal mines. An American miner (right) is drilling a blasting hole deep into the coal face. When the hole is drilled, he will insert an explosive along with a fuse or detonator. Then from a safe distance he will detonate the fuse.

with knifelike blades moving parallel to the floor. The machine cuts wide gashes into the face, about six to nine feet deep. Then miners drill holes into the coal and stuff explosives deep into the face.

In some mines there are special workers, called *shot firers*, who do nothing but fire these explosives. In some mines, also, shots are fired only when the other miners have left the mine. Then miners on the following shift load the coal brought down. When the miners are present, they retreat to a safe distance. Sometimes compressed air or carbon dioxide is used for blasting. Both of these are safer than explosives because they require no fuse or electric spark. The released pressure of the gases does the work.

## MECHANIZED CUTTING RELIEVES PICK AND SHOVEL WORK



This large electric cutting machine saws deep gashes into the coal face. Then an explosive charge tumbles the coal in great chunks to the floor. The miner near the face is shoveling away coal chips brought out by the cutting knives. This machine runs on tracks to the face. Others may run on caterpillar treads.

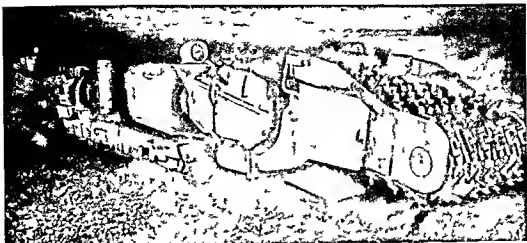
The blast throws lumps of coal to the floor. This coal is loaded into cars and taken to the shaft to be hoisted to the surface. No miner handles the coal after blasting. In most mines a loading machine sweeps the coal onto a conveyer belt. Some mines have a completely mechanized system for picking up coal at the face and hauling it all the way to the shaft and up to the surface. Usually, however, the conveyer belt loads small cars called *buggies*. These take the coal to the trips in the entries. Sometimes the trips run all the way to the face.

When the miner's work day is done, he rides back on the trip to the bottom of the shaft. He turns in his check and rides the cage to the surface. There he returns his lamp and batteries to the lamp house, where the batteries will be recharged. He cleans up and changes clothes at the wash house, and returns home.

## Sorting and Cleaning the Coal

From the shaft the coal goes to the tipple or breaker. First it is weighed. If any rock remains in the coal it must be washed out or picked out by hand. Then the coal is screened into different sizes. Large pieces must be broken up. Anthracite regularly requires breaking, hence the building is called

## A MECHANICAL MINER WHICH DOES THE WORK



The continuous miner combines all operations usually done by blasting, cutting, loading and conveying. Curb do tapped bits tear the coal from the face and conveyers carry it back to the surface. The machine can handle two tons of coal a minute.

'breaker' instead of a tippie. The coal is washed with water or blown with air to recover some of the fine coal powder. Then the coal is loaded into rail road cars for shipment.

#### Sizes and Kinds of Coal

Coal is sold according to sizes. Broken is the largest anthracite size block or lump the largest bituminous. Then for both types come egg stove nut pea buckwheat rice (buckwheat No 2) barley (buckwheat No 3) and screenings. Larger sizes are commonly used in hand fired furnaces medium in automatic stokers and the smallest in blower fired boilers.

Run-of-mine coal widely used in industrial plants is sold at the mine without sifting. Pocahontas is a trade name for a semibituminous smokeless coal mined chiefly in West Virginia. Ruer coal—coal washed away from the mines by flood waters—is dug up by dredges from the Susquehanna, Schuylkill and Lehigh rivers of the Pennsylvania coal fields. Cannel coal is named for its bright candlelike flame. One of the largest supplies is in West Virginia.

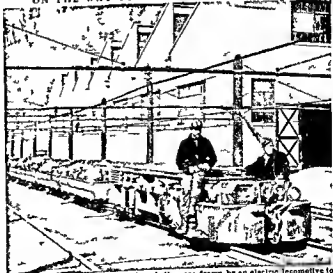
#### Preventing Accidents

Mine operators and miners maintain ceaseless vigilance to prevent accidents. The accident rate has fallen considerably since modern safety methods were developed. But no amount of care can eliminate all the hazards. One man is killed for about every million tons of coal mined or for about every million man hours worked. About 45 men are hurt for every million man hours worked.

The greatest danger is from rock or coal falling from the overhead strata or roof. The miner frequently tests the roof by tapping it with a heavy object. A long loud vibration means that the roof is unsafe. To secure the roof the miner supports it with timbers or roof bolts. The bolts are long rods that extend three or four feet into the strata and tie the thin layers together. In many mines timbermen do nothing but erect timbers or place roof bolts.

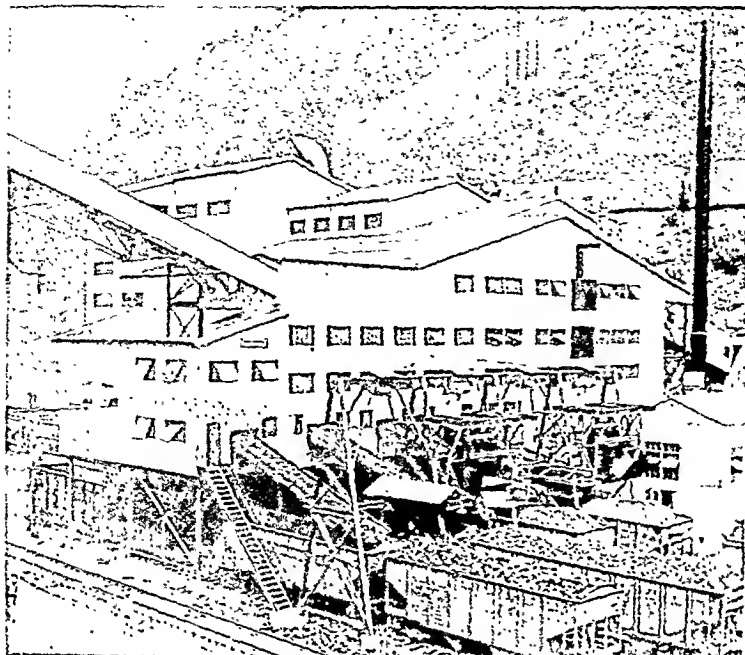
Hauling coal from its loading point to railroad cars on the surface causes the second greatest number of accidents. Increasing use of conveyers instead of

#### ON THE WAY TO THE TIPPIE OR BREAKER



After cars or skips are loaded with coal they are drawn by an electric locomotive to the tippie or breaker for cleaning and sorting. At the throttle is the motorman. Alongside him is the fireman. The bulldog on back is a machine shop.

## COAL POURS FROM THE TIPPLE TO WAITING CARS



At this bituminous coal-mine tipple, coal is cleaned and sorted. (The building is called a breaker at anthracite mines.) The various classes of coal are then poured down chutes into railroad cars to be transported to distributors or consumers.

individual cars is tending to reduce injuries from this cause. The general widespread use of machinery has also brought with it certain hazards. Moving cumbersome pieces of equipment in confined spaces sometimes results in unavoidable accidents. So does the use of explosives for blasting coal away from the face. But use of compressed air instead of explosives is tending to reduce such accidents.

## Safeguards against Gas and Dust

When coal was formed, most of the gases from decomposing matter were squeezed out. But methane is entrapped in the coal itself. It has no odor and is highly explosive. Guarding against methane consists chiefly of drawing fresh air through the mine. The quantity of air varies from 50,000 to 500,000 cubic feet of air a minute, depending upon the size of the mine.

Nearly all mines have a separate ventilating shaft. A fan either pushes air down the ventilating shaft or draws it up the main shaft. To prevent air currents from being diverted, abandoned areas are sealed by a brattice. Temporary brattices are made of wood and canvas; permanent ones are of tile, brick, or concrete. To detect accumulations of methane, a fire boss tests the air before a shift goes to work. He uses a flame safety lamp or an electrical detector.

Concentrated coal dust around a flame or spark will start an explosion; and only a little dust in the air beyond will continue the flame. To eliminate this hazard, water is sprayed on the coal when loaded and again at transfer points. The mine surfaces are rock-dusted with ground limestone. This dilutes the coal dust and prevents the spread of flame.

Safety inspections are made constantly. The mine examiner, employed by the mining company, works full time to prevent accidents. The mine manager is also responsible for safe working conditions. State inspectors make regular visits and have legal power to see that unsafe conditions are corrected.

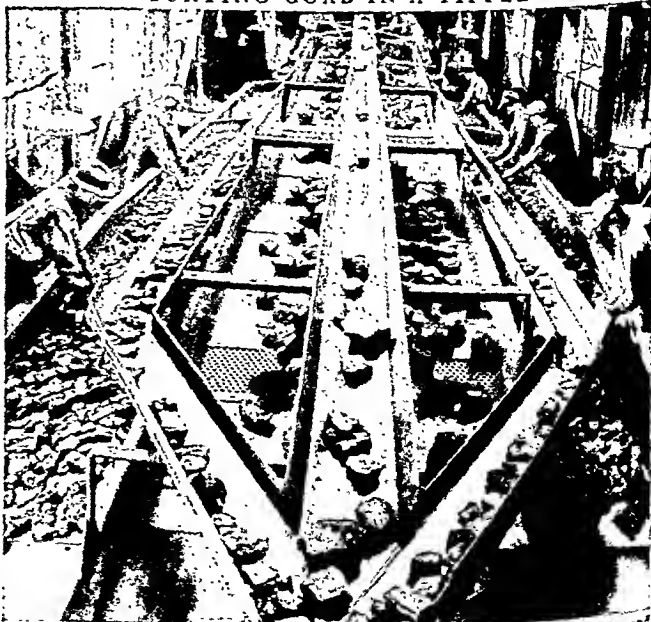
## Social and Economic History of Coal Mining

THE USE of coal for heating grew up in England

and elsewhere at about the same time the American colonies were being settled. Many English

mines were troubled by flooding, and the demand for efficient pumps brought the invention of the steam engine, about the time of the American Revolution (see Steam Engine). Steam engines needed coal for fuel, and

## SORTING COAL IN A TIPPLE



Coal directly from the face is called "run-of-the-mine" coal. Slate, shale, and other rock must be removed, and the coal must be sorted by size into different groups. The men along the sides of the chutes are both cleaning and sorting

## ROCK-DUSTING TO PREVENT EXPLOSIONS

coal mining became a major industry (See also Industrial Revolution)

In the early days of this growth the work was done entirely by hand under terrible working conditions. In England men crouched in the narrow seams digging the coal away from the walls with hand picks. Women and children dragged the coal to the surface in baskets, crawling on their knees in the low entries. At the tipple children sorted the coal from the rock. All worked under these appalling conditions 12 to 14 hours a day six days a week.

A similar situation prevailed in the United States. Additional evils crept in because the mines were in isolated districts far from the big cities. The mine owner or operator completely dominated the little town. He owned the miner's home and the store where the miner's wife traded. Sometimes he paid the miner in "scrip," good only for rent and for trade at the company store. During slack seasons the miner went in debt to the operator, and years passed before he could free himself.

## Gradual Improvement in Conditions

In the half-century before the first World War coal mining was one of the fastest growing industries in the country. Production doubled every eight or nine years. Working conditions for the miners also improved gradually.

Part of the gain came from a general advance throughout all industry. Many of the abuses had come about as part of the national growth and westward expansion. Not much thought was given the fate of workers in coal mining or any other industry. After 1900, however, most of the pioneer work had been accomplished and the American public began taking action to end abuses. Employer's liability laws, safety movements and legislation cut down the accident toll. Better roads and new means of communication such as telephones and motion pictures helped to break down the isolation of many mining districts. Coal miners benefited somewhat from the general advance, and the miners aided their own cause by collective action.

## Growth of Unions

From the start of the industry miners banded together to fight for betterment. The first national association of coal miners was formed in 1861. Although it was soon dissolved, operators in Pennsylvania were still opposed by the "Molly Maguires," a secret brotherhood of Irish miners. Both



These men are spraying a finely powdered rock dust along the roof, walls, and floor of a coal tunnel to settle the highly explosive coal dust. Only a little coal dust is the way enough to cause an explosion as it set off by a spark from an electric motor or an unguarded flame from a testing lamp.

sides used violence in their quarrels and the Federal government broke up the brotherhood in 1877.

Miners began to gain strength with the formation of the United Mine Workers of America (UMW) in the late 1880's. The union won its first collective bargaining agreement in 1898 with bituminous operators.

## CORRECT SAFETY GEAR



A miner is wearing steel reinforced shoes, a safety helmet, and forced air glasses. He is carrying a safety lamp to test for bad air.

Anthracite miners won a similar agreement after a bitter strike in 1902. President Theodore Roosevelt helped establish methods of negotiation that still exist today in labor disputes (see Roosevelt Theodore).

## Setback and Recovery

After 1900 population growth slowed down. At the same time other fuels began competing with coal. Increased efficiency in the use of coal itself slowed the demand. After the first World War the number of miners and the capacity of mines were in excess of normal requirements. Coal prices declined and cutthroat competition prevailed. As prices went down wages suffered for they accounted for 60 percent of the cost of mining. Between 1921 and 1929 more than 3,000 mines were abandoned and 200,000 men lost their jobs. An awkward factor was the so-called captive mine—one operated by a large consumer such as a steel company to meet its own coal needs.

For many years Congress struggled with the problem of devising legislation which would help restore normal profitable operation without opening the way to monopolistic practices. In 1937 it passed the



Bituminous Coal Act, which outlawed unfair competitive practices, established collective bargaining on an industry-wide basis, and provided for establishing fair minimum prices.

At this same time, the UMW rose rapidly to new power as a collective bargaining agent under the leadership of John L. Lewis (see Lewis, John L.). One effective bargaining device was the policy of "no contract, no work," sometimes taken when an existing contract between operators and the union expired and no new one had been agreed upon.

During and after the second World War, this heightened bargaining power transformed the economic position of the miners. From 1939 to 1949, the average weekly pay of miners tripled. The miners won *portal-to-portal* pay—that is, pay for time spent in traveling from the wash house to the coal face and return, as well as actual work at the coal face. This travel time often meant a half-hour each way. They also won a benefit fund, supported by a royalty paid for every ton of coal mined. From this fund accident benefits and old-age pensions were paid. The miners also drew social security benefits.

Congress tacitly acknowledged the rise of union power by allowing the Bituminous Coal Act to expire in 1943. But the government and the public were also reminded from time to time that the union could paralyze the nation by industry-wide strikes. In 1946 the government seized the mines under its unexpired war powers to forestall such a strike. When the union

struck despite an injunction forbidding interference with government operation, it was fined \$700,000 and Lewis was fined \$10,000. In 1948, defiance of an injunction obtained under the Taft-Hartley act brought fines of \$1,400,000 and \$20,000 respectively. But after a strike in 1950 no fines were imposed.

The court ruled that the UMW had not defied a federal injunction. A new contract brought increased benefits to the miners.

**COAL-TAR PRODUCTS.** One of the favorite raw materials of the research chemist is coal tar. Coal tar is a black gummy substance, a by-product in the manufacture of illuminating gas and coke. It is a mixture of exceedingly complex organic substances out of which a chemist seems able to dig almost anything he wishes, from a disinfectant to a grease-spot remover, from a dye to a perfume, from drugs and fertilizers to explosives. The tar yields only about a dozen primary substances, but from these the chemist builds up thousands of new compounds. The United States coal-tar industry is a recent development.

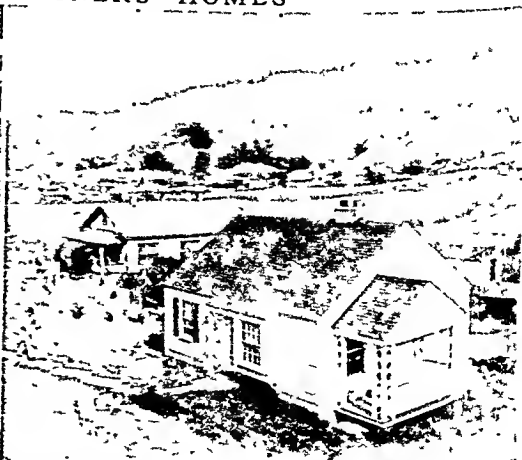
German chemists pioneered in this field and had almost a monopoly of it until the first World War. Cutting off imports from Germany gave the American industry its start.

Coal tar is distilled in huge cylindrical iron stills capable of holding 20 tons of tar. The first *fraction*, that is, the part having the lowest boiling point, is made up of the light oils and naphthas, including benzol, toluol, and xylol. From benzol is made the



Where the mine does not provide a wash house, the miner cleans up at home. He leaves his dirty clothes by the kitchen door before scrubbing up.

### BAD AND GOOD IN MINERS' HOMES



Although much progress has been made in providing miners with clean and pleasant homes, there still remain many squalid houses (left) in mining towns. Unpainted shacks with outdoor privies stand starkly against the scarred hillside. At right, trim cottages with neat gardens show that miners and mine owners are eager to work together to raise living standards.

pure benzene, from which in turn are made aniline and its related dyes (*see Dyes*) Toluol is the source of benzaldehyde, a synthetic perfume called oil of bitter almonds and used for scenting soap Another product of toluol is benzoic acid Its salt, sodium benzoate, is used as a food preservative TNT, a powerful explosive, is a product of toluol (*see Explosives*) So is saccharin, hundreds of times sweeter than sugar and sometimes used as a substitute for it Xylol is the source of numerous dyes From benzene and toluene medicinal preparations are made, including antiseptics, antipyretics, and hypnotics The chemical formulas of benzene ( $C_6H_6$ ), toluene ( $C_7H_8$ ), and xylene ( $C_8H_{10}$ ) indicate their kinship

The next fraction, which boils at a higher temperature than the first, contains carboic oils (*see Carboic Acid*) From carboic acid (also called phenol) are made dyes, picric acid, and the salicylic acid which is used as an antiseptic, as a treatment in rheumatism, and as a base for hypnotics and for anodyne drugs such as aspirin Another substance from phenol is synthetic coumarin This tastes so much like vanilla extract that it is used as a substitute Cresols, which are chemically similar to phenol, are also in this fraction They can be used as disinfectants even without purifying, lysol' and 'creolin' are commercial names for cresols

The next fraction contains naphthalene creosote oils, and quinoline Naphthalene is used to make dyes—indigo, buttercup yellow, scarlet pink, and green It is also the source of many medicines But it is best known in the form of moth balls Creosote oils are used to preserve wood (*see Creosote*) Quinoline is an antiseptic and it also yields many dyes

Anthracene oil, the next fraction, is the source of alizarin dyes, especially important in printing cotton textiles After the anthracene has been distilled, there remains in the still only a black sticky pitch If a soft pitch is desired, some of the anthracene is left with it in the still Pitch is used in making roofing paper, wood preservatives, and paints, in binding coal dust together to make briquettes for fuel and in paving materials

By the Bergius process tar is *hydrogenated* at high temperatures and high pressures with a catalytic agent, and converted into a petroleum like substance from which fuel oils and spirits are obtained by distillation (*see Hydrogen*)

From phenol, cresol, naphthalene, and other coal-tar products the modern industrial chemist makes many useful plastic materials including Bakelite (a trade name), formica, micarta, and many others (*See also Plastics*)

**COAST GUARD, UNITED STATES** *Semper paratus*—"always prepared"—is the appropriate motto of this military branch of the government It is primarily the nation's police power on the high seas and on navigable waters of the United States, but its range of duties has been extensively enlarged to include a far more varied scope of activity The highly trained personnel and excellent equipment are devoted

not only to law enforcement but also to a long list of collateral services

It enforces federal laws relating to customs and the prevention of smuggling. It polices harbors and enforces the regulations pertaining to navigation and merchant shipping, immigration, quarantine, and neutrality It maintains aids to navigation (*see Lighthouses and Lightships*) It protects the fisheries, certain game and bird reservations, and the fur seals of Alaska (*see Seal*)

Among its other duties are saving life and property at sea (*see Lifesaving Service*) flood and hurricane relief, and caring for shipwrecked property It destroys derelicts (abandoned ships) and other obstructions to navigation It conducts the international service of ice observation and ice patrol in the North Atlantic (*see Icebergs*) It carries medical aid to vessels at sea In cooperation with the Weather Bureau, it stations vessels far at sea to provide weather information for transoceanic air routes It collects and transmits reports of floods, hurricanes, storms, and other weather conditions It operates the coastal communications system, compiles statistics of marine disasters and makes oceanographic investigations

In peacetime the Coast Guard operates as a service in the Treasury Department In time of war, however or when the president directs the Guard is transferred to the Navy Department and acts as part of the Navy, continuing its usual routine as far as it is able The chief officer of the service is the commandant who is appointed by the president

Besides its shore establishments the Coast Guard has a fleet made up of cruising and patrol cutters and special duty vessels including icebreakers buoy tenders ocean and harbor tug and freighters The aviation wing comprises air stations and planes

#### Personnel of the Coast Guard

Officers are trained at the Coast Guard Academy at New London, Conn Candidates must be single, 17 to 22 years old The scholastic requirements are similar to those of engineering colleges The four years' course, leading to a B.S. degree, is basically science and engineering A nation-wide competitive examination is held annually, the number of appointments made is decided by the Treasury Department and depends upon the needs of the service Cadet graduates are commissioned as ensigns in the Coast Guard Promotion and pay parallel those of the corresponding ranks in the Army and Navy (*see Army*)

The Coast Guard Reserve is made up of officers and enlisted men between the ages of 17 and 55 A Women's Reserve, the SPARS, served during the second World War until demobilized in 1945 It was reactivated in 1951 The Coast Guard Auxiliary is a volunteer nonmilitary organization which is composed of owners of motorboats and yachts

#### Long History of Service

The Coast Guard dates from 1790 when Congress established the Revenue Marine (later called Revenue Cutter Service) to prevent smuggling This was the only sea force of the new nation as the Continen-

tal Navy had been disbanded. In 1915 the Revenue Cutter Service was combined with the Lifesaving Service as the Coast Guard. In 1939 it took over the work of the Bureau of Lighthouses, which had been established in 1789 as the Lighthouse Service.

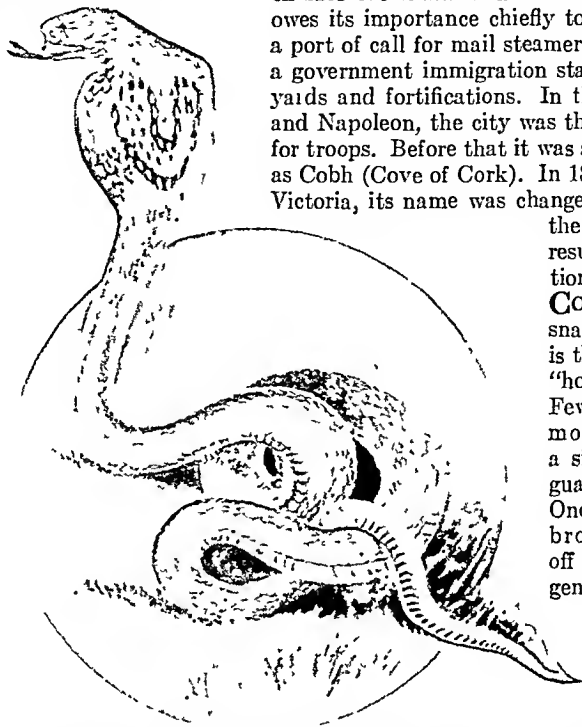
In national defense, the Coast Guard has a long record of service. During the dispute with France in 1798 and 1799, the Revenue Cutter Service captured French privateers. In the first World War it convoyed troop and supply ships through the submarine-infested Atlantic. Again in the second World War it performed this hazardous duty. In addition, Coast Guardsmen manned many of the landing craft used in the invasions in Europe and in the Japanese-held islands of the Pacific (see World War, Second).

**COBALT.** When the early chemists worked with metals they were often bothered by a substance that occurred with copper and iron and was very hard to separate. They called this substance "cobalt" because it plagued them like kobolds—mischievous gnomes of German tales.

Georg Brandt, a Swedish chemist, first succeeded in reducing cobalt from its ore in 1735. This silvery white element is slightly harder than iron or nickel, to which it is closely allied. It is magnetic and resists corrosion. It forms valuable alloys used in permanent magnets for radio speakers and radar equipment, in jet-engine parts, and in high-speed machine tools (see Alloys). It is a binder for cemented carbides for cutting hard materials. Its salts are driers for paints and varnishes. An invisible ink from chloride of cobalt darkens when it is heated. Cobalt oxides bond porcelain enamel to steel. Cobalt yellow, green, and blue are fine pigments for glazing pottery, for glass, and for enamelware. A deep-blue pigment, *smalt*, is made by fusing silica, potash, and cobalt. Cobalt is important as a catalyst in chemical processes. Radioactive cobalt, made in atomic furnaces, is used to treat cancer.

The chief ores are *smaltite* and *cobaltite*. The Belgian Congo produces about three fourths of the world's cobalt. Other producers include Northern Rhodesia, the United States (Pennsylvania and Idaho), French Morocco, and Canada (at Cobalt, Ontario).

DANGER—KEEP  
CLEAR!



This India cobra is tense and alert. It holds its head high. With its flaring hood opened wide and forked tongue flickering in and out, it weaves gently from side to side as it watches the motions of some man or animal.

**COBH** (*kóv* or *kób*), IRELAND. In Cork harbor, on Ireland's south coast, Great Island rises abruptly from the water (see Cork). Built like an amphitheater on the island's steep southern end is the city of Cobh (Queenstown), its handsome streets rising like terraces one above the other. Because of its mild climate the island is a favorite resort, but the city owes its importance chiefly to its fine harbor. It is a port of call for mail steamers, a naval station, and a government immigration station, with large dockyards and fortifications. In the wars with America and Napoleon, the city was the port of embarkation for troops. Before that it was a fishing village known as Cobh (Cove of Cork). In 1849, in honor of Queen Victoria, its name was changed to Queenstown, but

the old name was officially resumed in 1920. Population (1951 census), 5,711.

**CO'BRA.** Of all poisonous snakes, the most feared is the *cobra de capello*, the "hooded terror" of India. Few creatures, indeed, are more terrifying than a six-foot cobra standing guard in a jungle path. One third of its yellowish-brown body is raised off the ground and sways gently from side to side with hypnotic rhythm. The creature's ugly head with its glaring eyes, darting

tongue, and hissing breath, is almost surrounded by the hood, a great spoon-shaped expansion of the

neck. The awesome appearance of the cobra fits its nature, for it is one of the deadliest of snakes.

Because of its imposing appearance the Indian cobra and its relatives in other parts of Asia and Africa have been worshiped since the beginning of history. In the ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics the figure of the cobra with expanded hood occurs constantly. Even today the many pious Hindus can hardly be induced to kill these dangerous creatures, which are very numerous. Cobras are responsible for a large part of the 20,000 deaths annually due to snake bites in the Indian peninsula.

The cobra feeds on insects, lizards, frogs, and small mammals, and frequently enters human dwellings in search of mice and rats. While it does not seek quarrels, it will not go to great trouble in avoiding them. Once aroused it becomes vicious and aggressive.

Yet with all its dangers, the cobra is the favorite of snake charmers in India, who in many cases do not trouble to extract its poison fangs. These street performers make a show of "charming" the serpent with music of a native pipe. The snake sways as if

it were dancing to the music. The cobra is only following the motions of the snake charmer; however, for snakes show no interest whatever in music.

The curious hood of the cobra is formed by the ribs of the neck, which the snake can raise and expand at will stretching out the folds of loose skin. The common Indian cobra (*Naja tripudians*) displays on the back of its hood a black and white mark which resembles in shape a pair of spectacles.

The king cobra or *hamadryad*, is a much larger snake, sometimes 13 feet long. Though rarer than the common cobra, it is equally dangerous. Its bite has been known to kill an elephant in three hours. It feeds principally on other snakes.

The African cobra (*Naja haje*) is one of several snakes to which the name asp has been applied. It infests almost all parts of Africa. One of its relatives known to the Boers of South Africa as the ring-hals has the peculiar habit of spitting its venom to a distance of several feet.

Cobras usually live in pairs near the water. The female lays about 20 soft-shelled eggs in a

nest of dried leaves under decayed logs and moss-grown stones. The eggs are hatched by the sun. One of the cobra's most feared enemies is the mongoose (see Mongooses).

**COCHINEAL** (*kōch-i-nel*). A natural dyestuff called cochineal crimson or scarlet in color is made from the bodies of the cochineal insects (*Coccus cacti*) which are about 1/20th of an inch long. They are native to Mexico and South and Central America where they feed principally on the *nopal* cactus but have been widely cultivated elsewhere. The coloring matter known as carmine acid is present only in the females which are about 200 times as numerous as the males.

Cochineal dye is now produced chiefly in the Canary Islands and Peru. The insects are brushed off the cactus plants just before the egg-laying season and are killed in boiling water, steam, hot ovens or by exposure to the sun. The bodies which look like tiny fluted grains are then dried and ground to a powder. About 70,000 of them make a pound of dye.

Cochineal has been largely replaced today by artificial coal tar dyes. It is still used, however, in coloring foodstuffs, candies, certain medicines and cosmetics because it is not poisonous. Combined with alum it is the basis of the pigment called carmine lake. The cochineal insect belongs to the family *Coccidae* (see Scale Insects).

**COCKROACH**. The cockroach is one of our most obnoxious household pests. It eats nearly all human foods and injures many other articles such as books which it attacks for the glue and sizing used in the

manufacture of the bindings. It spreads disease and is a serious menace to public health since it seeks out bakeries, restaurant kitchens, hospitals and food factories of all kinds. Its offensive odor clings to everything it touches. The only favorable thing that can be said about the cockroach is that it destroys bedbugs.

Cockroaches thrive in damp warm places near steam and water pipes in walls and baseboards and

#### LIFE HISTORY OF THE CROTON BUG



The Croton bug, or German roach, is one of the commonest species found in dwellings. It was so named because it was found in great numbers around water pipes connected with the Croton aqueduct which serves New York City. It is light brown with two dark bands on the casting of the head. Pictures a to d show the first four stages of development: e, adult male with wings spread; f, adult female with wings spread; g, egg case enlarged. All are natural size except the egg case.

under floors. They lie hidden in the daytime coming out to feast only in the dark. Thus they may enter a house and increase greatly in numbers before a housewife finds out they are there. Their broad flat bodies permit them to crawl about in narrow cracks and along pipes. They can run very swiftly on their long powerful legs. The male cockroach has wings but not all species are able to fly; the female has only small wings or none. The eggs of cockroaches are enclosed in leathery capsules (*oothecae*) which protect them from moisture. Each capsule carries from 16 to 56 eggs according to the species.

This unpleasant pest has one of the oldest pedigrees among living creatures. Cockroaches were among the earliest forms of insect life to appear on earth. During the Coal Age of the earth's history long before birds and mammals had developed they were probably the most numerous of all insects. As their many fossil remains show they have changed but little in the millions of years since.

Nearly a thousand species are known, most of them natives of tropical countries. They vary greatly in size, some tropical species being several inches long. The native species of the northern United States are found in fields and woods under logs, stones and rubbish. The commonest household offenders—the German cockroach or Croton bug and the Oriental cockroach—have been brought in on ships and are especially prevalent in seaports. One of the most effective means of exterminating cockroaches is to dust the places they frequent with sodium fluoride. Pyrethrum powder, borax, sulphur and phosphorus

paste are also used. Cracks in floors, baseboards, and around pipes should be filled with putty, plastic wood, or other material to prevent cockroaches from entering the home.

Cockroaches belong to the order *Orthoptera*, meaning "straight wings," and to the family *Blattidae*. They are relatives of the grasshoppers, locusts, and crickets, though they look more like beetles. Scientific name of Croton bug, *Blattella germanica*; of the Oriental cockroach, *Blattia orientalis*; of the American cockroach, *Periplaneta americana*; of the common wood cockroach, *Parcoblatta pennsylvanica*.

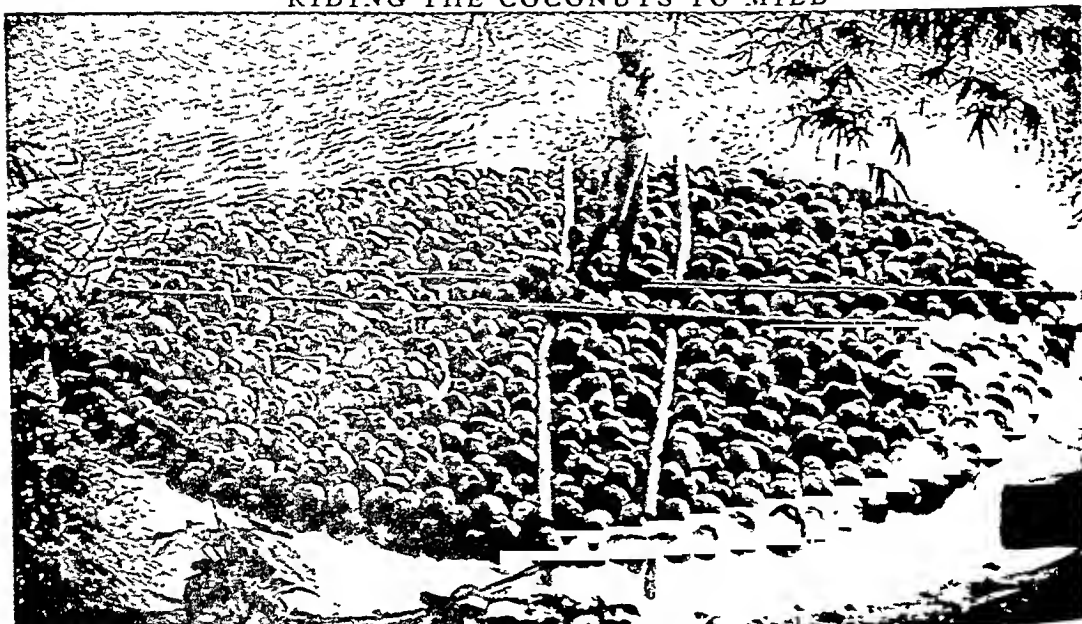
**COCOA.** The dried and powdered seed-kernels of the cacao tree; as a beverage, cocoa is made more digestible than chocolate by the removal of part of the

civilization of many of those remote islands.

The coconut palm is one of the tallest and most ornamental of the palms. Its smooth straight trunk attains a height of 100 feet and is crowned with a cluster of long branched leaves. The fruits or coconuts mature in bunches of from 10 to 20. As they grow they are oblong masses 12 to 18 inches in length and 6 to 8 inches in diameter. A tough fibrous husk incloses the nut, whose hard shell is lined with the food-material, within which again is the so-called coconut milk.

A coconut plantation, when once established, insures its owner a good living for the rest of his life. The

### RIDING THE COCONUTS TO MILL



In the Philippine Islands coconuts are sometimes made up into a raft for floating to the mill. The raft is held together with a framework of sticks and cords, and the nuts are protected from the action of the water by their fibrous husks and hard shells.

cocoa butter, or fat, contained in the cacao "beans." (See Cacao; Chocolate.)

**COCONUT PALM.** One of the first plants to appear in a newly formed tropical island is the stately and graceful coconut palm. The seed, which is the coconut (also spelled cocoanut) of commerce, is securely protected from the action of sea water by its thick fibrous husk and hard shell. It is thus peculiarly adapted for distribution by ocean waves and currents, and may be carried over a thousand miles from the parent plant to grow on some distant shore.

This fact accounts for its wide distribution. Originally native to certain islands of the Indian Ocean or of tropical America, it is now found on most tropical shores in the East and West Indies, and particularly in the tropical islands of the Pacific Ocean. These beautiful trees lend distinction and attractiveness to the islands. To the cultivation of the coconut is largely due the increasing commerce and rising

coconut palm is easily grown from seed. After the first two years the trees require practically no attention. They begin to bear about the sixth year, and from then on each matures from 50 to 60 nuts a year. The bearing period lasts from 70 to 80 years.

No tree known to man has a higher commercial value than the coconut palm. It is also the most useful of all trees to the natives of the regions in which it grows. The fresh meat of the nuts furnishes a nourishing food, and the milky juice forms a pleasant and refreshing drink. The terminal bud furnishes the palm "cabbage" used as a salad vegetable in the tropics. The trunk yields timber, the leaves are used in making baskets and fans and in thatching the roofs of houses; and the husk yields the *coir* fiber which is made into mats, ropes, and brushes. (For illustrations in color, see Pacific Ocean.)

The most important article of commerce produced by the coconut is the *copra* or dried nut meat. This

## GATHERING COCONUTS IN THE PHILIPPINES



Green half-grown coconuts are best for eating. Someone has to climb the trees and pick them or else cut them down with a

long handled knife as these Filipino boys are doing. The fully ripe coconuts fall to the ground and are gathered to make copra.

contains from 50 to 65 per cent of coconut oil which has been used as a food in the Far East since the dawn of history. In Western countries the oil is largely used in making soaps, candles and lubricants. The fats of coconut oil are so much like milk fats that they are used extensively to manufacture nut margarine a substitute for butter. The scientific name of the coconut palm is *Cocos nucifera*. (See also Copra Oleomargarine.)

**COD** One of the world's most important food fishes is the cod. It is a salt-water fish found in the colder parts of the North Atlantic and Pacific oceans. The Grand Banks of Newfoundland have been an important source of cod for European and North American countries for several hundred years. So important were the cod fisheries of early New England that a pine carving of a codfish was authorized by the Massachusetts legislature in 1784. It now hangs opposite the speaker's chair in the Statehouse

The Atlantic cod caught today usually are from 2 to 4 feet long and weigh from 10 to 35 pounds but there are records of specimens 6 feet long weighing 200 pounds. The body is speckled and a white line runs the length of the sides.

## AN IMPORTANT FOOD FISH



The codfish has a pale line running the length of its body. It is a heavy fish with large head and projecting upper jaw.

Spawning takes place along the New England coast from October to June. The female lays an enormous number of eggs. As many as 8 million have been found in a single fish. The newly laid eggs and the young have countless enemies. Pollock are very destructive of young cod. Cod in turn feed on herring, lobsters, and many other forms of sea life.

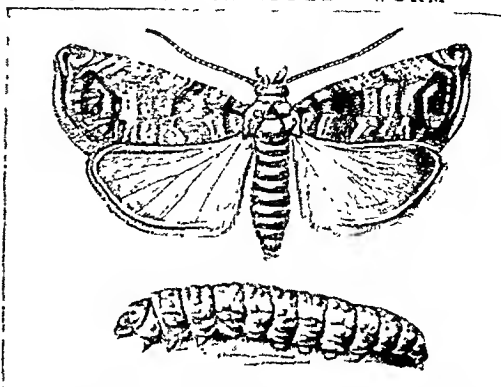
Cod are usually taken at depths of 48 to 240 feet, but they are known to inhabit much deeper water. The fish are unloaded from a dory into a mother ship, where they are immediately cleaned and packed in salt. The livers are set aside for their valuable oil. Most of the United States catch is now filleted and sold either fresh or frozen, but large quantities are also sold dried. New England scrod is a young cod weighing 1½ to 2½ pounds.

Codfish belong to the family *Gadidae*, to which pollock, haddock, ling, and cusk also belong. The scientific name of the Atlantic cod is *Gadus morrhua*; of the Pacific cod, *Gadus macrocephalus*; of the Pacific tomcod, *Microgadus proximus*. The West coast cods have little commercial importance.

**CODLING MOTH.** One of the worst insect enemies against which the fruitgrower has to fight is a little gray moth with brown markings. The harmless-looking insect produces the white caterpillar often found in the heart of an apple. Year after year this caterpillar has destroyed much of the apple crop in the United States. Its appetite has cost the country as much as 30 million dollars a year.

The codling moth lays its eggs in the appleblossoms. These hatch out into tiny *larvae*, or caterpillars. As the apple forms at the base of the blossom they eat their way into its center. Many of the apples that are infested with larvae drop off the tree before they are ripe. The larvae then eat their way out

THIS IS THE APPLE "WORM"



How often have you bitten into an apple and found a little white "worm"? You may find this insect also in the pear. Here is a greatly enlarged picture of one of the adult caterpillars and its parent, the codling moth.

and spin about themselves cocoons of fine silk threads, attached underneath the bark of apple trees. While they are in this stage (*pupa* stage), large numbers of them are eaten by woodpeckers. When the pupae change to moths, they come out of their cocoons and fly to appleblossoms to lay their eggs for the next brood.

To kill the moth larvae, orchardists spray the trees with Paris green solution or lead arsenate just as the blossoms fall. DDT has also proved effective in controlling the pests. The scientific name of the codling moth is *Carpocapsa pomonella*.

**CODY, WILLIAM FREDERICK** (1846-1917). A noted American army scout and frontiersman, Cody, better known as Buffalo Bill, later became famous for his Wild West Show. (See Buffalo Bill.)

## From COFFEE PLANTATION to BREAKFAST TABLE

**C**OFFEE. Toward the end of the 3d century after Christ, some monks, fleeing from persecution, found refuge in the highlands of Abyssinia, across the Red Sea from Arabia. There they supported themselves by tilling the soil and raising flocks. One night one of the good fathers whose turn it was to watch the goats and sheep came running to the monastery, pale and trembling.

"The animals are bewitched," he panted. "They gambol and play as if it were a spring morning."

"Peace, my son; you have been dreaming," the prior reassured him. "Rest here and I will go to the fold."

The prior too found the animals frisking and romping in the moonlight instead of sleeping as they should. Night after night this continued, in spite of prayers and exorcisms. By observing what plants the animals browsed on, the prior at last convinced himself that the sleeplessness was due to the leaves and fruit of a certain unfamiliar shrub which grew there in profusion. Picking some of the ripe cherrylike fruits, he chewed the seeds and found that he too felt an

unusual exhilaration and was wakeful that night.

Thus coffee was discovered, according to one of the many legends current among the Arabs. However fanciful the story may be, the fact remains that Abyssinia and Arabia were the original homes of the coffee shrub. We also know that by the 15th century pilgrims to Mecca used to drink an infusion of the roasted coffee bean to prevent drowsiness during the long religious services of the Mohammedan faith.

### How the World Learned to Drink Coffee

From Arabia the practice passed to Constantinople, and thence to Venice, and to England, France, and other European countries, largely through the example of the Turkish ambassadors. Coffeehouses sprang up and soon became the favorite resorts of people of fashion, political leaders, artists, and men of letters. From the associations thus formed our modern clubs developed. The first coffeehouse in London was established in 1652, and within 20 years such places had come to play so important a part in the social and political life of the day that Charles II attempted to repress them on the ground that they were "semina-

# HOW A CUP OF COFFEE STARTS IN BRAZIL



1. Clustered flowers of white turn into ripe cherrylike berries of dark red. 2. Pickers strip off low berries onto a canvas and reach high ones by ladder. 3. Raked through a washing trough, the ripe berries sink and pass out through a sluice. 4. With frequent turnings, the berries are dried by sun and wind. 5. After being bulled and graded, the green coffee beans (in 132 pound bags) are loaded on ships and carried to distant markets where they are blended and roasted.



ries of sedition." In Paris, too, many coffee houses were set up. How important they became is shown by the fact that one of our common names for a restaurant (*café*) is the French word for "coffee" or "coffee house."

More coffee is consumed in the United States than in any other country in the world, though the Scandinavian countries use slightly more in proportion to population. The United States takes from 65 to 75 per cent of the world's export crop, using more than

To visit a coffee plantation, we must go farther south than the United States, for the plant needs a warm climate where the temperature never falls below 60 degrees. Neither will our visit take us to lowlands, for coffee thrives best 800 to 5,000 feet above the sea, where the soil is rich with red iron rust or with the gray soil of volcanic rocks. The air must be fresh and dry, and the land hilly, so that drainage will be easy. If you look at a map of Brazil, you will find that the great coffee-producing states of São Paulo

### A COFFEE PLANTATION IN BRAZIL



Set in among rolling red hills covered with the glistening green of myriad rows of coffee trees, are the white buildings of this typical plantation in the state of São Paulo, Brazil, richest coffee-growing district in the world. Spacious drying grounds and long *serra* houses stretch away from the "fazenda," as the residence of the planter is called, around which cluster the laborers' quarters. Whole families join in the work of harvesting, which lasts as a rule from April to August. The bushes are stripped of all berries; green, ripe, and withered are all put into the same bag and sorted later.

18 pounds—the equivalent of approximately 750 cups—a year per person.

Until the end of the 17th century all the coffee of commerce came from Arabia, being shipped from Mocha (or Mokha), once the capital of the province of Yemen. Thus we get the name Mocha, which is still applied to all Arabian coffee as well as to coffee resembling the Arabian in color and taste. Coffee cultivation thence spread to the island of Java, in the East Indies, and finally throughout the tropics of both hemispheres.

#### How One Coffee Tree Supplied the New World

The vast plantations of Brazil and the West Indies, which grow nearly three fourths of the world's coffee, are said to be the offspring of a single coffee tree. A few plants, brought from the Dutch plantations in Java, were presented to the King of France. These he sent to the West Indies to be planted. The voyage was long and tempestuous, and one by one the plants died, until only one was left. Water became scarce, and the faithful officer to whom the mission had been entrusted divided his scanty allowance with the plant, which lived and became the parent tree for the plantations of the New World.

and Rio de Janeiro lie in the uplands near the coast just within the tropics. The chief coffee-growing regions, after Brazil, are Colombia, Venezuela, Central America, Mexico, Arabia, parts of Africa, and India, East Indies (Indonesia), West Indies, and the Pacific Islands, especially Hawaii and the Philippines.

As we approach a *fazenda* or coffee orchard the wind sweeps out a great wave of fragrance like that of white honeysuckle, but far sweeter. So completely is the dark shiny foliage covered with the starry jasmine-like flowers that it looks as though a shower of snow had fallen on the slender trees. There is a great fluttering and buzzing of gorgeous butterflies, bees, and locusts; and myriads of brilliant humming-birds dart about the trumpet-shaped flowers. As we come nearer we notice armies of ants, marching and countermarching between their nests and the trees. They are very useful in keeping in check the insect pests that ravage the coffee plants.

The wild varieties of coffee grow 20 feet or more in height, but the cultivated trees are kept trimmed to 6 or 10 feet, so that the berries may be picked more readily. The cherry-like berries change from green to light yellow, then to scarlet, and last of all to a deep

crimson or black. When they are ripe, the skin shrivels like an overripe cranberry. The sweet yellow pulp covers a pair of oval seeds, lying with their grooved and flattened faces together—the familiar coffee beans. Sometimes there is only one seed, called from its shape a pea berry, these are separated from the others, and bring a higher price in the market.

The chief blooming season in Brazil comes in the South American springtime months, between September and November. The cherries take from six to seven months to mature, so the harvesters are busy in the orchards from late April or early May to August. In Colombia and Central America, the pickers pluck the ripe berries one by one, but in Brazil they strip the ripe green and dried fruit from the branches in one swift motion.

The harvest is swept up, sifted, and dumped into long tanks of gently flowing water. Dirt and stones drop to the bottom, dried fruit floats on top, and ripe and unripe fruit are carried along at different levels, and deposited separately on the great drying floors. Here the hot sun beats down on them for from 15 to 21 days—the greener berries taking longer to dry out than the riper ones. Mechanical driers are used on some plantations. When dry, the husks, the tough white parchment hull beneath, and, finally, the debate covering called the silver skin, are removed mechanically. This is the dry method of curing, by which the bulk of Brazilian coffee is prepared.

In the wet curing, the berries go through a depulping machine after being washed. They soak in water a day or two until they ferment. Then they are dried and the parchment and silver skin removed.

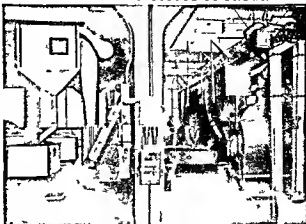
The crop averages from one to five pounds of this green or raw coffee from each tree. The age of the tree and the fertility of the soil affect the yield.

#### HOW A TESTER SELECTS BLENDS YOU WILL LIKE



After examining the roasted sample in the tray and tasting the "draw" in the cup, the coffee tester knows how best to blend it with other kinds to suit particular tastes.

#### TURNING GREEN COFFEE TO BROWN



In the roasters of the right green coffee beans are tanned in a revolving cylinder over a fire, coming out brown and pleasantly flavored. Then strong drafts of air suck them up through pipes, leaving behind any small stones that escaped previous siftings. From the top of the ceiling (left), the beans are drawn off onto conveyors.

Packed into bags weighing 132 pounds each, the coffee starts on its voyage to the seaport and the ships that will carry it to the markets of the world.

At a wholesale establishment experts roast and grind samples of each coffee lot. Next, sitting at revolving tables, they pour boiling water over a measured quantity of each and smell and taste these "draws." According to taste they then specify how the different kinds of coffee are to be combined to produce the wholesaler's standard blend.

Finally the correct amounts of each kind of coffee are mixed and roasted over fire in huge revolving cylinders. Roasting develops the aromatic oils that give coffee its distinctive taste. Flavor is improved if raw coffee is aged one to four years. Once it is roasted it should be used as soon as possible, since roasted coffee loses flavor with age.

Powdered coffee which dissolves instantly in boiling water is made by evaporating a strong brew of coffee in a partial vacuum. A crystalline coffee soluble in cold water is made by spraying a coffee concentrate on a continuous steel belt in a high vacuum.

#### National Tastes in Coffee

Americans like their coffee a clear rich brown, usually with cream and sugar added. The French are fond of *café au lait*, which is hot milk and strong coffee in about equal proportions. In the Orient, the usual practice is to grind the beans as fine as flour. This makes a thick black beverage, which is drunk grounds and all. In Sumatra a coffee-tea is prepared from the roasted leaves of the coffee plant.

The pure food laws of the United States demand that coffee be pure, but in Europe adulteration is general. Indeed, many prefer the addition of roasted chicory root which gives a dark rich color to the drink. Some prefer coffee substitutes made from grain, or coffee with the stimulant *caffeine* removed. This is

done by swelling and softening the bean with steam and ammonia, then removing the caffeine with chloroform, before the bean is roasted. Chemically, caffeine is identical with the *thein* of tea. It is found in coffee in amounts ranging from one per cent to about two per cent, while the percentages of thein present in tea are twice as great. These two stimulants, combined with the tannic acid present in the tea and coffee, are responsible for the physiological effects of the beverages.

#### Many Varieties of Coffee

Though there are many species of coffee, most of the trees of the world belong to *Coffea arabica*, or Arabian coffee. *Coffea liberica* and *Coffea robusta* are also grown on a small scale. Coffee beans, even of the same species, vary widely in size, shape, color, and taste. These differences are due to the altitude, climate, and soil in which they are grown, and somewhat to the age of the tree. Among important varieties imported into the United States are the Colombian *Bogota* and *Bucaramanga*. The Guatemalas of Central America depend for quality on altitude. The desirable higher-grown beans are for the most part exported to Europe. *Costa Ricas* go to England, and *Nicaraguans* and *Salvadorean* are used by home and European markets. *Javas*, so valuable formerly, were destroyed by a pest. *Sumatras* of highest quality are identical with old "government" *Javas*; they are large beans, yellow to brown, very rich and thick. *Americans*, medium to large bean, green to waxy green, are highly flavored.

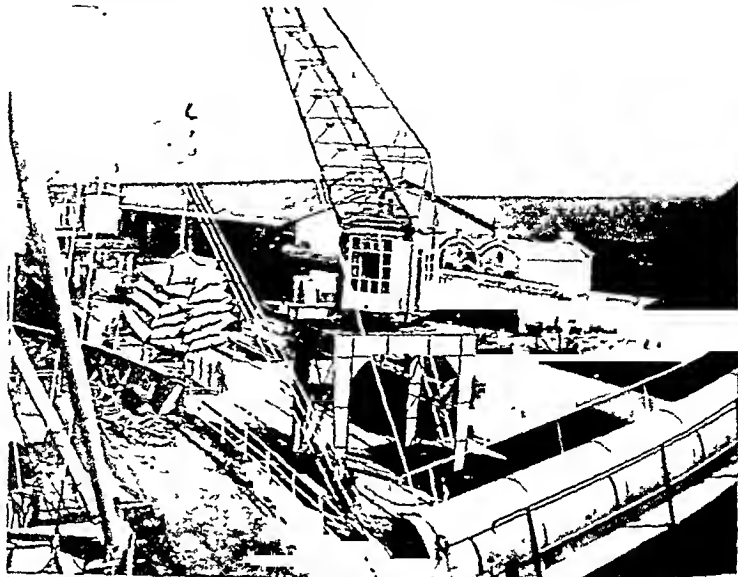
*Mocha* is small, poor looking, very sharp and pungent. *Abyssinians* or *Harars*, similar to *Mochas*, are often used as *Mochas* in blending. *Rios* (Brazil) are green to yellow, low grade, rank flavored. *Santos* (Brazil) one of the most popular coffees, are small to large, green to yellow, sweet and mild in flavor; some approach *Rios* in character. *Venezuelas* or *Maracaibos*, green to yellow, range from thin to very strong in the cup. *Hawaiians*, *Haitis*, *Porto Ricos*, and *San Domingos* are grown chiefly for home use.

**COKE.** The hard, brittle, porous residue left when coal is heated in a closed oven, is called coke. It has a steel-gray glint, and rings with a metallic sound when struck. Coke, being mostly carbon, is clean fuel, burning with an intense heat without smoke. For these reasons it is a good fuel for household fires, as well as for smelting ores, especially iron. Coke has become of great importance in the manufacture of synthetic ammonia by pressure methods, only air and water being mixed with the coke.

In the production of coke the coal is screened, sorted by size, and placed in coke ovens—all by machinery. In "beehive" ovens, named for their shape, all the vapors and gas are wasted, and the coke has only 60 to 65 per cent of the heating value of the coal consumed. About 90 per cent of American coke is made in "by-product" ovens, in which gas, tar, ammonia, and oils are salvaged. As many as

107 million tons of coal a year have been consumed in producing about 74½ million tons of coke. Some of this coke is produced by manufacturers of cooking and illuminating gas. The steel industry uses more than 80 per cent of the coke produced; only about 5 per cent is burned to heat residences. Miscellaneous industrial uses consume the remainder.

#### THE WORLD'S GREATEST COFFEE SHIPPING PORT



Santos is the port through which the huge plantations of São Paulo send their coffee to the markets of the world. Brought here by a railroad network said to be the best run and best paying in South America, bags of coffee are stowed in the holds of waiting vessels at the rate of thousands an hour, either by cranes, or through chutes, like the one at the right. The town, which is on an island only a few feet above sea level, has passed Rio de Janeiro in the amount of its exports and is now the world's greatest coffee port.

Petroleum coke, obtained as a by-product in gasoline refining, is the purest form of industrial carbon available in large quantities. It is used for fuel, for making electric light carbons and electrodes in metal refining furnaces, as a reducing agent in lead and zinc smelting, and in the manufacture of paints.

**COLBERT** (*kôl-bêr*), JEAN BAPTISTE (1619-1683). To Colbert, her greatest financial statesman, France still looks back with gratitude for his efforts to correct abuses which eventually led to the French Revolution. When he was called by Louis XIV to take charge of the finances of the country, he brought to his task an experience gained by his work for Cardinal Mazarin. He had brought order out of chaos in the financial affairs of that statesman, and for his services had been recommended to the king. According to report Mazarin on his death-bed had said to Louis XIV: "I owe you everything, but I pay my debt to your majesty by giving you Colbert." Colbert fully justified this recommendation.

When he took charge of the treasury in 1664, the expenses of the government were each year exceeding its income. Within a year he was able to restore the balance, and even increase the income several million dollars above expenses. Best of all, he did this with-

out increasing the burden of taxation. He discovered that officials were stealing great sums from the revenues. These men were arrested and forced to give up their ill-gotten gains, and a new system of bookkeeping was introduced to check such abuses.

Colbert also encouraged manufacturing, both by establishing new industries and by seeing that the older ones produced high quality goods which would sell readily in foreign markets. Roads were improved and canals built, so that commerce might be aided. And finally, science and learning were encouraged by the establishment of the French Academy of Sciences, the building of an observatory, and the support of a periodical magazine, which is still published, devoted to the reviews of new books.

But Colbert could not curb the military ambitions of the extravagant king. Before his death he was hated by his countrymen, because he had been compelled to increase taxes in order to meet the expenses of Louis XIV's reckless wars and the enormous cost of the vast new palace at Versailles. When Colbert died he felt that his work had been in vain and that France was on the verge of ruin.

**GOLD STORAGE.** The storage of food in seasons of plenty has long been practiced. However it was not until mechanical methods of refrigeration were adapted to commercial use that large stores could be kept successfully for an extended length of time (see Refrigeration). The cold storage industry then quickly developed and grew until it became one of the major industries in the distribution of food.

It enables people who live in cities and towns, whether near or far from sources of supply, to have a fresh and varied diet all the year round. Refrigerator trucks, cars, and ships bring fresh fruits, meats, and other perishable foods from all over the world to terminal warehouses where they are stored under just the right conditions of cold and humidity to keep them fresh until grocers and other dealers need them.

In this way immense supplies of food are held from seasons of surplus production until seasons of scant production. Producers profit from longer marketing periods, increased demand, and the higher prices in seasons of smaller production and consumers benefit from larger supplies and lower prices during seasons of least production. In the United States both federal and state laws regulate the length of time that foods may be kept in cold storage.

An outstanding recent development in the field of cold storage is the refrigerated locker plant and the home freezer where families can store food supplies that they have grown at home or purchased wholesale. Local products are thus made available over a longer period. The lockers are rented and small charges are made for various additional services. These include butchering, chilling, cutting, grinding, curing, and smoking meat, dressing, drawing, and chilling poultry, wrapping and quick freezing these products as well as fruits and vegetables. Most of these plants are privately owned, but some are co-operatives.

**COLERIDGE, SAMUEL TAYLOR (1772-1834)** "Stop, you young thief!" An angry gentleman in a crowded London street was storming at a pale innocent-looking little lad, whose bare head, long blue coat, and yellow stockings marked him as a pupil of Christ's Hospital, the famous charity school. The boy's outstretched arms fell and his dreamy eyes flashed with a strange light. "Ah," he sighed, as if rudely awakened out of a delicious dream, "I thought I was Leander swimming the Hellespont. I did not mean to touch your pocket, sir."

The little bluecoat was Samuel Taylor Coleridge, and the result of this strange incident was that the old gentleman bought for him a subscription to a circulating library. So the little dreamer went on reading and acting out what he had read, and living in his own world of strange and beautiful fancies. Back in Devonshire in western England—before his father died and he was sent to school in the great city—he used to roam about the fields near his native village of Ottery St. Mary and slash off the tops of weeds as he went, imagining himself St. George slaying the Dragon. At the age of five, when most children are just beginning to spell out their first picture-books, he had already read the Bible, 'The Arabian Nights', and 'Robinson Crusoe'.

At Christ's Hospital he was a brilliant student, and at Cambridge University which he entered at the age of 18 he won several prizes for scholarship. But he got into debt, ran away to London, and enlisted in the army under an assumed name. After a few months his friends secured his discharge and he returned to the university, but he left it later without obtaining his degree.

During these early years Coleridge became fired with the ideals of the French Revolution. With his friend Robert Southey he planned to go to America and found a "pantisocracy" or ideal commonwealth where farming and literature were to be combined, and no one was to work more than two hours a day. As a start they married two sisters and then found they had no money to go further with the project.

Coleridge's natural disposition to day-dreaming, increased by the use of opium which he started taking to relieve the pains of neuralgia, was the weakness that wrecked his life and made his work a mere fragment of what it might have been. Indeed had it not been for the help of friends, he could not have got along at all. On the other hand it is to this same imaginative power that we owe his unsurpassed dream poems—'The Rime of the Ancient Mariner', 'Christabel', and 'Kubla Khan'—which take us into the world of the supernatural where shines "the light that never was on land or sea."

Among Coleridge's other intimate friends were Charles Lamb the essayist and the poet Wordsworth. On account of their residence in the beautiful northern lake district and the similarity of the poetical ideals they expressed, Coleridge, Wordsworth, and Southey were known as the "Lake Poets."

In spite of his frailties, the personal influence of Coleridge was very great, and in his last years he was visited by many noted men who listened spellbound to his marvelous talk. "He is the only wonderful man I ever met," said Wordsworth. "He talked on forever," said Hazlitt, "and you wished him to talk on forever." Carlyle called him "a king of men" in spite of his failures; and Lamb said humorously that he was "an archangel a little damaged."

Today it is for the few great poems written in his earlier years that Coleridge is chiefly remembered. Of his poetry it has been well said, "All that he did excellently might be bound up in 20 pages, but it should be bound in pure gold."

Though we think of Coleridge chiefly as a poet, he wrote more prose than poetry. His 'Biographia Literaria' (1817) gives a profound analysis of the nature of poetry and the principles of criticism. His 'Lectures on Shakespeare' (1849) show that he was one of the greatest of Shakespearean critics.

'Aids to Reflection' (1825) is the most famous of his many philosophical and religious works.

**COLIGNY** (*kō-lē-nyē*'), GASPARD DE (1519-1572). In the midst of the political intrigue which marked the religious wars in France during the last half of the 16th century, stands out the figure of Gaspard de Coligny, Admiral of France. While so many of the leaders of both parties—Catholics and Huguenots alike—were using the bitter spirit of religious controversy for their personal advantage, Admiral Coligny, head of the Protestant cause in France, won the respect of both sides by his unselfish devotion to what he believed were the true interests of his native land.

His straightforward policies were destined to cost him his life. Born of a noble family in Chatillon-sur-Loing, two years after Luther began his Reformation, Coligny from his youth had a brilliant military career which won for him the title of admiral in 1552. Through the influence of his brother, Francis d'Andelot, he became a Huguenot, exchanging letters with Calvin and using his power to protect the members of the new faith.

After the tragic death of King Henry II in a tournament in 1559, Coligny placed himself with the Prince of Condé in the forefront of the Huguenot party, and demanded religious toleration from the government. Despite his efforts to obtain a peaceful settlement of the religious troubles, civil war broke out; and after Condé had been killed at the battle of Jarnac, in 1569, Coligny was left chief leader of the Protestant armies.

After gaining a victory at Arnay-le-Duc, he brought about a truce and returned to the court, where he rapidly gained the favor of the young king, Charles IX.

Catherine de Medici, the queen mother, saw in the friendship between Coligny and her son a menace to her ambitions. This sinister woman wanted to keep in her own hands the power she had wielded ever since King Henry's death, and Coligny, with his wise powerful counsel, stood in her way.

On Aug. 22, 1572, Coligny was wounded by the shot of an assassin, hired by Catherine and members of the Guise family, leaders of the court intrigue. King Charles at first swore to avenge the attempt on Coligny's life, but the next day Catherine and her favorites so worked upon the fears and prejudices of the young king that he consented to Coligny's death, crying in his desperate mood: "If you must kill him, then let all the Huguenots in France be killed, so none may be left to reproach me."

Catherine asked nothing more. Most of the leading Huguenots of France were even then in Paris, drawn there by the wedding a week before of their leader, King Henry of Navarre (later Henry IV of France), with the king's sister. Secret plans were laid at once, and on the night of August 24, the feast of St. Bartholomew, at a given signal the massacre of the Huguenots began.

Coligny was among the first to die. The wounded man was attacked in his house by a group led by Duke Henry of Guise. A German named Besme plunged a sword through his breast and threw his body out the window. Before St. Bartholomew's terrible night had passed, thousands of Huguenots had shared the fate of their leader. The massacre spread to other parts of France, lasting into the month of September. Though estimates differ as to the total number of victims, it is generally believed that more than 20,000 were killed before the fanatical fury had abated. It was reported that the Pope had caused a *Te Deum* to be sung in St. Peter's in honor of the event, but this is not historically true.

Coligny sent three unsuccessful colonies of Huguenots to the New World—the first in 1552 to Brazil; the second to South Carolina, which first settled Port Royal, in 1562; and the third to Florida, where a promising settlement was made at Fort Caroline, on the St. Johns River, in 1564. This, however, was exterminated—"not as Frenchmen, but as heretics"—by a Spanish expedition the next year.



GASPARD DE COLIGNY  
Huguenot leader of France

**COLLEGE.** In current American usage the term "college" usually means an institution of higher education, giving instruction of a general rather than a professional character, where, after a regular course of study, the degree of Bachelor of Arts, or some equivalent degree, is granted. Professional schools admitting undergraduates are also called colleges, as are the normal schools or teachers colleges. But a typical college gives mainly a broad or "liberal" education.

The American college has no exact counterpart in the educational systems of Europe or Great Britain.

Its scope is somewhat equivalent to the upper division of the French *lycée* or German *gymnasium* plus the lower division of the continental universities.

The ordinary college course covers four years. The first year is called freshman; the second, sophomore; the third, junior, and the fourth, senior. These same names are also applied to corresponding classes and to individual students. At some colleges the school year is divided into two parts of 18 weeks each, called semesters, at other colleges, into four parts of about 12 weeks each, including a summer session, called quarters or terms.

#### Junior Colleges

The junior college is an institution which gives a two-year course beyond the standard of the high school. In some cases the curriculum is preparatory to further college work, in others it may be an independent unit suited for high-school graduates who desire to extend their education without taking a full course of four years.

Many small colleges whose facilities were too inadequate for a four-year course have been transformed into junior colleges, others have been set up in connection with high schools, and even some universities have developed separate units of junior grade. The junior college movement was inspired in part by the need of solving the problem of overcrowded universities. It meets the demands of many young people, who desire some higher education but are not seeking a degree, and offers others an opportunity of beginning their college career on a more economical scale without leaving their home district.

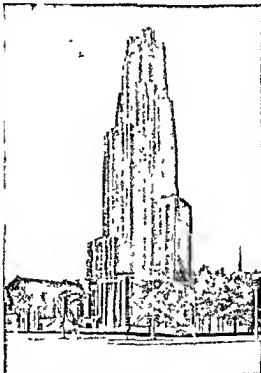
The curriculum of the early American college emphasized classical and mathematical studies. Its training prepared one chiefly for the ministry or scholarly pursuits. Courses in "natural history" and "natural philosophy," introduced early in the 19th century, were first incorporated as required subjects. Modern languages and social and economic subjects were also added. During the middle of the 19th century the importance of allowing the student some freedom of choice began to be recognized and was strongly advocated at Union and Brown. The "elective system" later became a feature of practically all colleges, chiefly through the influence of the late President Eliot of Harvard University.

There are still a few colleges which offer prescribed studies only in science, literature, and arts on the principle that a cultural background is essential to a well-educated person and prepares him to do better in whatever work he will later elect. In the strictly vocational institution, on the other hand, the student may follow his interests virtually from the very beginning of his college career. A third type of college, the most numerous, gives prescribed general courses for the first two years and pre-vocational elective courses during the junior and senior years.

Every college sets up certain requirements to be met by students seeking admission. Sometimes all that is required is the completion of a four-year course in a public high school or in some other accredited secondary school. Other colleges state just what studies students must have pursued during their high-school course. Some colleges require, in addition to graduation from an accredited secondary school, an examination in certain subjects. Some also employ psychological tests (see Intelligence Tests), and some accept only candidates ranking in the upper half, or even higher, in their class in secondary school.

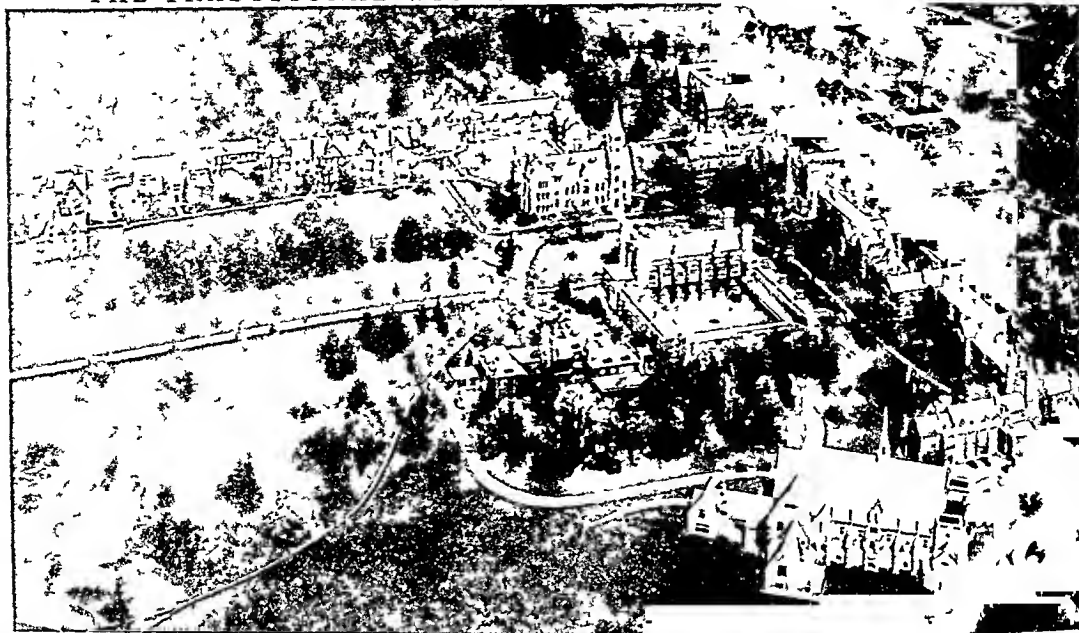
The accrediting or classifying of colleges is carried out by various national or regional associations, such as the American Association of Junior Colleges, the North Central Association of Colleges and Secondary

THE "CATHEDRAL OF LEARNING"



Many city educational institutions located where land for expansion is unavailable or too costly, are going "up in the air," as the University of Pittsburgh is doing here.

## THE TRADITIONAL WIDESPREAD SETTING OF A COLLEGE



Contrasting with the "vertical" college shown on a previous page is this widespread group of buildings of Bryn Mawr College for women at Bryn Mawr, near Philadelphia. The charming open space, called the "campus," from the Latin for "field," is typical of most colleges, and is made possible because either the college is located where land values are low, obtained its site many years ago, when values were low, or obtained the land by public grant. In fact, this open setting is so interwoven with American college life and tradition that college activities outside of studies are called "campus life."

Schools, or similar associations for the Southern states, New England states. To be approved or accredited, the college must have satisfactory entrance and graduation requirements, a sound and scholarly curriculum, a well-trained faculty of sufficient size in relation to the number of students, and buildings, equipment, library, and annual income adequate for an efficient educational program. (See also Education; School; Universities and Colleges)

Since the term "college" literally means simply a partnership or fraternity, from the Latin noun *collegium*, it may have somewhat general uses, such as electoral college, college of cardinals, and college of justice. For several hundred years after about 1450, the term was often used for merely any group of persons. Thus Shakespeare in 'Much Ado About Nothing' wrote "A college of wit-crackers . . ."

In England and Ireland, the name is reserved for separate, incorporated, self-governing educational institutions, which together form a university.

Many American institutions of learning, in the course of their development, have added professional courses given in separate departments or "schools" (for example, engineering, law, medicine, and dentistry); the original, or "founder's" college, which had a classical curriculum, retains its name often as the "College of Liberal Arts." A few American colleges have professional schools, but usually a college and the added schools form a university.

**COLLO'DION.** If you ever applied liquid "new skin" over a scratch or cut, you made use of one form of

collodion. Collodion is obtained by treating cellulose from cotton with nitric and sulphuric acid, then dissolving the resulting nitrocellulose in a mixture of ether and alcohol. In the past, collodion was widely used for photographic film or to form the chemically treated film on glass photographic plates, but less inflammable cellulose products are tending to replace it (see Cellulose). Its flexibility and the degree to which its contracts are fixed by varying the portions of the alcohol and ether mixture, or by mixing in Canada balsam and castor oil. The product obtained with this mixture is not ideal for surgical use, even though it is highly flexible, since it does not contract over the wound to keep the edges drawn together and sealed.

**COLLOIDS.** Salt and white of egg are familiar examples of two extremely different sorts of things. Salt is a crystalline material, with little shining faces on its particles which show the regular way that the atoms inside each crystal are arranged (see Crystals). White of egg is one of the class of substances that scientists call colloids, which means merely that they are like glue. Glue is made of gelatin, which is one of these colloids. Another is starch paste. Emulsions like those used in medicine belong to the colloid group. Rubber and chewing gum are also partly colloidal. Even living matter or protoplasm is a colloid (see Protoplasm). There are many other colloidal materials, so that scientists have developed during the last 30 years or so an important branch of science called colloid chemistry, which has wide industrial application, as well as being important to physiological science.

The essential thing about all colloids is that they consist of tiny particles of one substance scattered through another substance. An emulsion of oil in water, for example, consists of a vast number of tiny oil droplets scattered through water. Stiff salad dressings made by beating oil into a watery mixture of egg with vinegar or lemon juice also are colloids. If you look at a thin film of this mixture under a powerful microscope you will see that it too consists of a multitude of tiny oil droplets separated by a network of watery films like the wax of a honeycomb.

The fine particles in a colloid are called its *dispersed phase*, the substance in which the particles are scattered is the *dispersion medium*. Colloids may be classified as solid, liquid, or gaseous. In most colloids the medium is liquid. If the dispersed particles are also liquid, the mixture is called an *emulsion colloid* or an *emulsoid*. Milk and cream are emulsion colloids containing droplets of liquid butter fat scattered in a watery medium.

#### How "Sols" and "Gels" Differ

Liquid emulsions are generally called *sols*, stiffer ones are called *gels*. The same colloid may change from the sol condition to the gel condition or back again, as a mixture of gelatin and water does when it stiffens to a gel on cooling or softens to a sol on heating. Fruit jellies are emulsion colloids usually stiffened by a substance called pectin which is contained in many fruits. Some colloids, such as white of egg, may harden or lose their colloidal character altogether when heated or when treated with chemicals. This is called *coagulation*. Some forces or chemicals act on the other hand, to conserve or increase the dispersion of the particles in a colloid. This is called *peptization*.

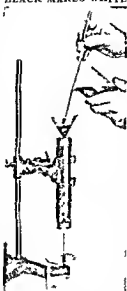
If the dispersion medium of a colloid is liquid with dispersed solid particles the mixture is called a *suspension colloid* or a *suspensoid*. Liquid India ink is such a colloid consisting of tiny particles of solid carbon (lampblack) suspended in a watery solution. These also are called *sols*. Particles of metallic gold suspended in water make a series of such sols having beautiful colors of red, yellow, or blue, depending upon the average size of the gold particles. Similar colloids containing silver are used in medicine as disinfectants. The particles of many such metallic colloids are too small to be seen through ordinary microscopes but may be made visible by an optical instrument, called the ultramicroscope used to observe the light sent out sidewise from a brightly illuminated colloidal particle as dust motes become visible in a beam of sunlight.

It is possible to make colloids consisting of gas particles in a liquid medium. Foam and soap-suds are

examples. Colloids may consist, too, of liquid or solid particles in a gaseous medium, fog being an example of one type and smoke or dusty air of the other one. A few colloids are known in which the dispersion medium is solid, one being the suspension of gold particles in glass which makes one kind of ruby glass. Bread may be regarded as a colloid of gas particles dispersed in a solid medium.

Scientists believe that the many unusual physical and chemical properties of colloids are due chiefly to the fact that they possess large amounts of internal surface, between the dispersed particles and the dispersion medium. It is for this reason that the

#### BLACK MAKES WHITE



A black and red dye solution is being poured through a cylinder containing powdered charcoal. It comes out white. The colloidal nature of the charcoal produces the change.

force of surface tension (see Physics, Water) comes prominently into play. This force acting in the thin watery films between the oil droplets is what makes salad dressings stiff. It is the surface force also which enables thin films of soap to worm their way underneath dirt particles stuck to the skin and pry these loose so that they are washed away. Similar forces control the spreading of paint on painted surfaces, the process of flotation used to concentrate minerals (see Mines and Mining) and even the action of the substances used in cosmetics such as rouge to make the color stick to the skin.

#### What "Adsorption" Means

Some finely divided powders, as for example diatomaceous earth, are able to take color out of liquids such as lubricating oil or vinegar if these liquids are filtered through the powder. What happens is that the atoms of the colored substance in the liquid stick fast to the surfaces of the solid particles by an adhesion closely related to other surface forces. This is called *adsorption* and is believed to be of importance in determining the properties of colloids. Gas atoms may be adsorbed, that is why

finely powdered charcoal in gas masks can remove poison gases from air breathed through these devices. A granular material much used to adsorb colors or gases in this way is called *silica gel*. This is a colloidal mixture of silica with water (see Silica).

**COLOGNE, GERMANY** Its location on the busy Rhine River has brought both good and bad fortune to Cologne one of the oldest cities of Germany. The ancient city stands on the easily traveled flat lands where the lower Rhine widens on its way to the sea. A network of railroads, fleets of river craft, and even some seagoing vessels make Cologne one of the greatest transportation centers in Europe.

Thus hub position, however led to almost complete destruction of the city during the second World War. The Allies smashed it with more than 160 mass air raids, dropping more than 50,000 tons of bombs and



following with artillery bombardment. Over two thirds of the city fell in ruins.

#### Cologne Rebuilds

Engineers at once set to restoring transportation facilities. They built new bridges to join the old section of the city with its industrial suburbs. One of the new spans is now called the Patton Bridge in honor of Gen. George S. Patton, commander of the American Third Army in the second World War (see Patton).

Today more than a dozen railways link Cologne with the rest of Germany and with foreign countries. Trains clatter over the railway bridges at the rate of about one a minute.

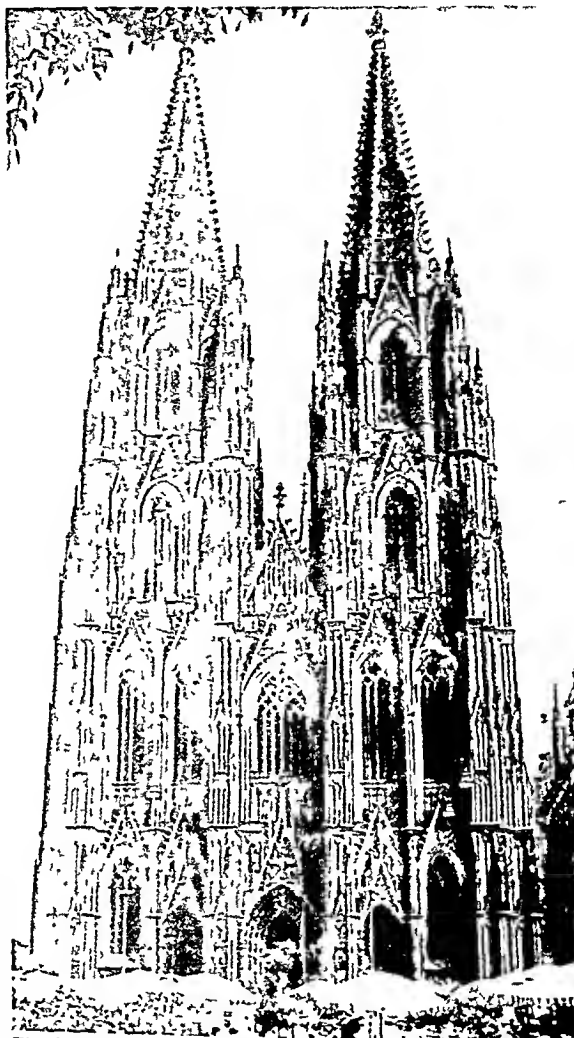
Barges and lighters crowd the noisy river port. Grain and brown coal are the chief cargoes in the river trade. Since the second World War Cologne has attracted many new industries. The most important is the manufacture of electrical goods. Another large industry is the production of chemicals, which includes making Eau de Cologne, the famed toilet water (see Perfumes). Engineering and shipbuilding are major industries. Cologne also produces automobiles, textiles, rubber, asbestos, clothing, machinery, and glassware.

#### Great Gothic Cathedral of Cologne

The greatest treasure of Cologne is the city's magnificent Gothic cathedral, one of the most superb architectural achievements in all Europe. The Allies carefully spared it from bombing during the second World War. It did not suffer a direct hit, although many stones from the vault crashed down because of vibrations from buildings bombed nearby.

With its delicate soaring spires and stone lacework of slender pinnacles, the cathedral gives the effect of being a "hymn in stone." Work on the great church began about 1250 and was not completed until 1880. The heaviest of the cathedral's seven bells, "St. Peter's bell" (25 tons), was cast in 1923 to replace

### COLOGNE'S "HYMN IN STONE"



This is Cologne's superb Gothic cathedral. The Allies deliberately spared it from bombing in the second World War. People so enjoy gazing up at its tall spires that they gather at tables at its base.

the "Emperor's bell," melted for arms in 1917.

A gold reliquary in the cathedral is said to contain the bones of the "Three Kings of Cologne," the three Wise Men who came from the East to pay homage to the infant Christ. Legend says the bones were brought from Palestine to Constantinople and from there to Milan. Frederick Barbarossa seized them from there and sent them to the archbishop of Cologne.

#### Romans Founded City

Invading Roman legions built a military outpost on the present site of Cologne in 38 B.C. Then in A.D. 50 it became a colony by order of Emperor Claudius. He called it *Colonia Agrippina* in honor of his wife who had been born there. Modern Germans call the city *Köln*.

In the Middle Ages Cologne became a leader in the Hanseatic League, an organization of merchant cities (see Hanseatic League). It dominated the region as a free imperial city, and its Rhine position gave it commercial advantage.

Silks and spices from the Orient came over the Alps from the Mediter-

anean to be shipped down the Rhine to northern markets. To handle their trade by sea, the merchants of Cologne owned docks in London. Weights and measures used by Cologne became standard for the Rhine region and for even the Netherlands.

In the 17th century Cologne began to lose commercial prestige as new trade routes developed. The French took the city in 1794, and it went under the rule of Prussia in 1815. Development of the Ruhr Valley in the 19th century again made Cologne a great center of manufacturing and transportation.

In the first World War Cologne suffered almost no damage. From 1918 to 1926 it was occupied by British troops. At the outbreak of the second World War it was a mighty industrial city, the fourth largest in Germany, with a population of 772,000. Population (1950 census), 594,941.

## At the FOOT of the PANAMA ISTHMUS

**COLOMBIA** Its commanding position *at the foot of the Isthmus of Panama* gives Colombia an advantage in world trade over its *entire* American neighbors. The Panama Canal is about 300 miles from the ports of *Barranquilla* and *Cartagena* on the Caribbean and about 350 miles from *Buenaventura* on the Pacific side. Lying wholly within the tropics its surface ribbed with gigantic mountain ranges Colombia has had formidable disadvantages of nature to overcome. Its capital *Bogotá* was at first the

means of transportation. With rich natural resources and an orderly government it is taking an increasingly important part in international affairs.

Colombia is the fourth largest country in South America with an area estimated at 439,828 square miles. Venezuela and Brazil bound it on the east. Peru and Ecuador on the south.

Narrow plains fringe the coasts. Behind them loom one after the other three great arms of the Andes rising, the western third of the country from north to south. For hundreds

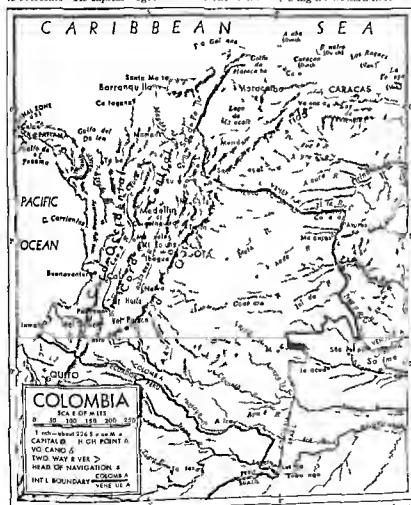
of miles east of these mountains stretch the level grasslands of the upper Orinoco basin and the jungles of the upper Amazon Valley.

This eastern two thirds of Colombia is so remote from civilization so hot and disease ridden that it is thinly populated and almost entirely undeveloped.

Most of Colombia's people live on the high plateaus and in the valleys of the western mountains. Here they find a healthful stimulating climate as well as fertile land for farming.

Colombia's three parallel mountain ranges are called the *Cordillera Occidental*, *Central* and *Oriental*. They come together in the south near the border of Ecuador. The Sierra de Perijó on the Venezuela border is a spur of the *Cordillera Oriental*.

Between the eastern and the central *Cordillera* lies a deep valley drained by the Magdalena River, the longest stream in the country. It flows north for 1,000 miles,



It is at the foot of the Isthmus of Panama. Colombia looks out over two oceans. From lofty mountains on the coast plains on the ocean side the land slopes down to the steamy jungles of the interior. Notice how the mountains divide into three parallel ranges with rivers between them.

most inaccessible cities in the world. But this energetic and progressive nation was not to be discouraged by mountains, swamps, and jungles. It simply flew over them for Colombia was the first Latin American country to adopt the airplane as a regular

emptying into the Caribbean Sea near Barranquilla. For about 700 miles from its mouth, it is navigable for large river steamers. Between the central and the western ranges the Cauca River flows north for 600 miles to join the Magdalena. Parts of this stream

also are navigable. These two rivers are the chief arteries of trade and commerce, providing an outlet to the sea for the mountain-girt interior. Most of the railway lines are short links between river ports and upland cities. A new railway up the Magdalena was begun in 1953 with the aid of a World Bank loan. Numerous highways have been built, but many places are still reached by trails or cableways across canyons. Airlines supply fast transportation, reaching Bogotá from the Caribbean in 2½ hours. The river and rail trip takes from 4 to 15 days.

#### From Rain Forest to Cool Plateau

Vegetation on Colombian lowlands varies from tropical rain forest to the coarse grasses and scattered trees of the savanna, depending upon the rainfall. The arid eastern Guajira Peninsula has the cacti and thorn bushes of the desert. In the rain forests orchids grow wild and the trees swarm with insects, brilliantly colored birds, and monkeys. Though these forests produce rubber, tannin, tagua nuts, medicinal roots and herbs, and fine cabinet woods, transportation difficulties have hampered their development. Bananas are the chief crop of the coastal lowlands. Some cotton, sugar cane, and tropical fruits are raised.

At higher levels, in the mountain valleys and on terraced slopes, appear the small farms where tropical and semitropical crops are grown. More coffee is raised here than in any other country in the world except Brazil. It is the leading commercial crop and the chief export. Other crops include cotton, sugar, tobacco, cacao, and fique, a fiber similar to sisal.

Still higher, at 5,000 to 9,000 feet, are the cool, moist plateaus with fields of corn, wheat, barley, beans, and potatoes. One fourth of Colombia is grazing land, but the cattle are of inferior breeds.

In 1951 the census showed that Colombia had a population of 11,266,075. About three fourths of the people are farmers. Only about 2 per cent of the land is farmed, but new roads are gradually opening more. Most of the highland farmers are *mestizos*, of mixed white and Indian blood. The pure-blood Indians live mostly in the wilds east of the mountains. On the coasts are many Negroes, descendants of slaves brought in by the Spaniards. The total of white natives is variously estimated at from 10 to 35 per cent. The national language is Spanish; the religion, Roman Catholic.

#### Mining and Manufacturing

Petroleum is the most important of the many minerals. Near the Venezuela border in the north is the great Barco oil field. Other fields have been developed in the Magdalena Valley. Colombia is one of the world's largest producers of platinum. Gold, silver, and the world's finest emeralds have been mined here since the days of the Spanish conquest. Coal reserves are large but inaccessible.

Manufacturing began to grow after the government established a National Economic Council in 1935. The chief products include textiles, cigars, cigarettes, cement, flour, sugar, chocolate, beer, and leather goods. Many villages make clothing and hats by hand.

Few manufactures are exported. Imports include machinery and metal products. Increased manufacturing was one of the chief goals of the economic commission set up in 1949 by Colombia and the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank).

#### Bogotá, Famous Center of Culture

Bogotá, the capital and largest city (population, 645,255, 1951 census), lies on a plateau 8,660 feet high in the eastern Cordillera. Although it is only five degrees north of the equator, its altitude gives it a chill, damp climate. The city was founded in 1538 on the site of the ancient Chibcha Indian capital, named Bacatá. It still has the appearance of a Spanish city, with large plazas and narrow cobblestone streets overhung by balconies. Many old residences, however, are being demolished to make room for public buildings of extremely modernistic architecture.

To the capital come not only the political leaders of the country, but its students, artists, and writers. It has contributed generously to the literature of the continent (see *Latin American Literature*) and well earns the name "Athens of South America." Here are the National University, founded in 1572, a teachers college, medical school, academy of fine arts, a national observatory, a natural history museum, and a large botanical garden. Many newspapers and periodicals are published here and distributed over the country by air. Bogotá is also the trade and commercial center for a wide highland area.

#### Other Important Cities

Medellín (355,000), in the Central Cordillera above the Cauca Valley, is the second largest city and the chief manufacturing, mining, and coffee center. Barranquilla (279,000) is the chief seaport. Freight coming down the Magdalena River used to be transhipped here by rail to Puerto Colombia, 18 miles away, where it was loaded on ocean vessels. But in 1936 dredging operations opened the river mouth to ocean traffic. Cali (259,100), the distributing point for western Colombia, is connected by rail with the Pacific coast port of Buenaventura (23,000).

Cartagena (125,600) on the Caribbean was founded in 1533 and has changed but little since the days when it controlled the priceless commerce of the Spanish Main. In its spacious harbor, protected by massive fortified walls, assembled the galleons to be loaded with the treasure that came overland from Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador. So rich a prize was repeatedly raided by pirates and buccaneers. Sir Francis Drake captured it in 1585. Today the city is the terminus of oil pipelines, with modern facilities for refining and shipping petroleum. The Dique Canal connects it with the Magdalena River.

#### From Spanish Rule to Independence

The first white visitor to the coast of Colombia was Alonso de Ojeda in 1499. Colonists soon arrived and after the founding of Bogotá in 1538, this region, under the name of New Granada, became the center of Spanish rule in the New World (see *South America*). Revolution against Spanish oppression began in 1810 and in 1821 Simón Bolívar, "the Liberator," formed

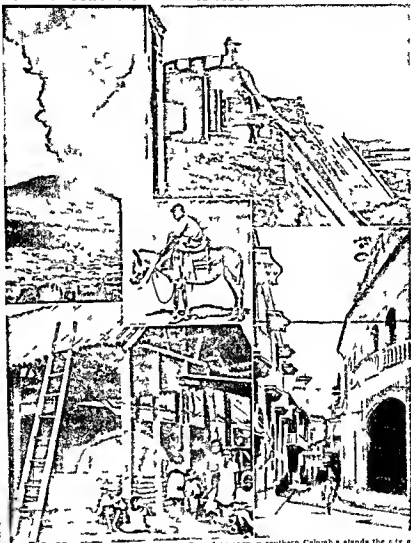
the Republic of Colombia including what are now Venezuela and Panama. Soon after the province of Quito (Ecuador) was added. But there were too many discordant elements and the unwieldy republic broke up in 1830. Colombia was then reconstructed as the Republic of New Granada and took its present name the Republic of Colombia in 1886. Frequent civil wars drained the strength of the country and disputes over boundaries with neighboring states kept affairs unsettled. When in 1903 Panama seceded, all feeling sprang up against the United States because it had aided the rebels. The issue was settled by paying to Colombia \$9,500,000 as indemnity for the Canal Zone.

Colombia is a highly centralized democracy. The president, senators and representatives are popularly elected. Provincial governors are appointed by the president. Education is free but not compulsory. Colombia has been hindered by slow development of its vast natural resources. Aided by the World Bank in 1918 to extend roads, build factories and more schools and improve housing. (For Reference: Outline and Bibliography see South America.)

**COLONIES** The tendency of peoples to establish colonies beyond the boundaries of their homeland has had an enormous influence on history. It has distributed the knowledge and culture of the more enterprising portions of mankind. It has led to the discovery and development of new lands and enriched the world with new resources. It has helped to civilize backward races and has brought distant civilizations into touch with one another.

It has also caused the bloodiest wars of conquest and the destruction of peoples who stood in the path

## ON THE COASTS AND IN THE MOUNTAINS OF COLOMBIA



Upper left, at the foot of the ever-smoking Parícut volcano in southern Colombia stands the city of Popayán, famous center of leather goods. Upper right, ruins of the ancient Inca city of Cuzco. Middle left, a young man at Cartagena. Middle right, a young man at Cartagena. Lower left, a young man at Cartagena. Lower right, an old street in Cartagena where ancient and modern buildings meet the outdoor oven.

of spreading empires. It has excited bitter rivalries among those contending for colonies. Into our time it continued to obstruct the path to world peace.

### Colonies in Ancient Days

Ancient Egypt, Babylonia and other powerful states of antiquity conquered many foreign peoples ruled over them and collected tribute. But this was not true colonization for there was no emigration of the victors into the conquered lands and the rule was purely military. Among the earliest true colonizers in historic times were the Phoenicians. These people

were not warlike or powerful in a military way. They were seafaring merchants, with headquarters at Sidon and Tyre on the Syrian coast, and the colonies they planted among the islands and along the shores of the Mediterranean were trading posts. One of these, Carthage, outgrew its parent cities and became an independent military power (see Carthage; Phoenicians).

The early Greek colonization of Asia Minor and the Aegean Islands was of still another character. It was not directed by any political or commercial plan at home. The colonists were simply emigrants of Greek stock, driven from Greece by enemies or poverty, and seeking new homes. They built cities and organized city-states, similar to those they had left behind. The ties of language and culture and trade remained strong among them, but with few exceptions they were politically independent and often at war with one another (see Greece).

The Romans introduced into the Western world the idea of dependent colonies, as we now understand them. With the expansion of their domain by conquest, colonization was methodically planned and carried out. First, the other Latin peoples were organized as colonial "allies," with some measure of self-rule. Later, as the population of Rome grew, groups of Roman citizens and particularly of old soldiers were offered land elsewhere. Each settlement usually began as a sort of city-camp established by the government, with magistrates to enforce the law among the settlers and a garrison to protect them in their trade and farming. Many of these colonies grew into great centers of wealth and culture. Those in the outlying parts of the empire—Syria, Africa, Spain, Gaul, Britain—served as headquarters for governing the barbarian peoples whose lands had been organized into provinces under Roman rule. (See Roman History.)

#### Colonies in Modern Times

For centuries after the Roman Empire dissolved, there was not in Europe any state sufficiently well protected at home to venture upon colonial enterprises. Between the 7th and the 15th centuries, the Arabs were the world's great colonizers (see Arabia and the Arabs). Then, as the nations of Europe took shape and sought wealth in trade, came the period of exploration. The discovery of North and South America and of the route around Africa to the East Indies started a period of colonial expansion which has since occupied a large share of world history. Portugal, Spain, France, the Netherlands, and England vied with one another in laying claim to trade and territory in the New World, in Asia, in Africa, and in the Pacific Ocean. Later, Germany, Belgium, Japan, and Italy entered the contest. The story of these colonial enterprises and rivalries and their outcome can be best traced through the articles on the continents and the countries concerned and through the study-outlines that accompany those articles. (See also America; American Colonies; East Indies.)

It is interesting to observe that nearly all the colonies founded in the New World later asserted them-

selves as independent nations. But the European nations held all their colonies in other continents until after the second World War, except for the short-lived Boer republics (see South Africa).

#### Motive for Seeking Colonies

Ambitious rulers have from time to time undertaken colonial conquests chiefly for glory and proof of power. But more practical motives lie behind most enterprises of this kind. The principal motives have been the following:

- (1) To obtain control of the trade already existing between the territory seized and the rest of the world.
- (2) To increase the conquering nation's food supply from the fields of the conquered.
- (3) To get possession of precious metals and gems or of undeveloped raw materials, either for home industries or to sell to other people.
- (4) To secure a market among the people of the colony for the products of the conquerors.
- (5) To provide an outlet in the conquered land for the surplus population of the conquering nation.
- (6) To take advantage of the "cheap labor" of native populations.
- (7) To establish naval and military stations at points believed to be of strategic importance in protecting trade routes or defeating an enemy in future wars.
- (8) To recruit soldiers among the conquered peoples.

#### The Evolution of a Colony

Colonies have not always been acquired by forcible seizure. Nations have sometimes extended their control over a region gradually. The first step is to enter into *exclusive trade treaties* with the native ruler or to obtain a small *concession* of land for business purposes. The second step is to establish a *protectorate* under which the invading nation guarantees to shield the native state from its enemies and consequently obtains control over its foreign relations. In the third and final step the invading nation consolidates its interests by taking control of internal affairs as well.

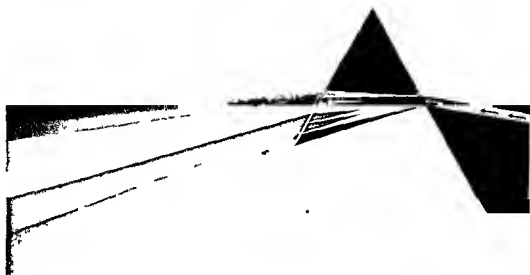
On the other hand, a colony may attain a great measure of self-rule after it has been established. This has happened in the case of the British dominions.

Each dominion is virtually independent (autonomous), being bound to the other parts of the empire only through a sort of common agreement called "allegiance to the crown"—an agreement which gains its strength more from mutual traditions and interests than from law or force. The Irish Free State (Gaelic *Eire*) disavowed even this formal allegiance in 1937 (see Ireland). But the present British colonies are closely controlled. Final authority rests in officials accountable only to the British home government.

In popular usage all the foreign possessions of a nation are loosely grouped as its "colonies." But a colony is strictly speaking, a settlement originally made by emigrants from the mother country. When the social and ordinary commercial life of a possession remains chiefly in the hands of the native population, it may more properly be called a *dependency*. Thus, Puerto Rico is often classed as a dependency of the United States.

Before the second World War two-fifths of the world's land area with a third of its population was occupied by colonies, dependencies, or dominions. After the war Italy and Japan lost their empires, and the spread of nationalism shook other colonial systems. Britain freed India in 1947 and Burma in 1948. Revolts forced France to grant autonomy to part of Indo-China, and Indonesian rebellions compelled the Netherlands to free the East Indies in 1949.

## The SCIENCE and USE of COLOR



This picture gives the foundation of a color science. It shows what happens when a beam of sunlight passes through a glass prism. The beam is divided into all the colors of the rainbow, proving that white light is made up of these colors. Only the chief colors are shown here: Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, and Violet. In reality, these blend gradually into each other, forming many intermediate hues such as Red-Orange, Blue-Green, and Blue-Violet. The entire spread of colors is called the Spectrum. Of course, beams of light passing through rough glass or clear water are not visible from the sides. But in these diagrams they are represented as visible to make the picture clearer.

**COLOR** The world around us talks to us constantly in the language of color. Our eyes read this language just as our ears listen to the language of sound. Sometimes it brings us messages of beauty alone. Sometimes it gives us information.

Think of the many things that colors help us to recognize—animals and plants, foods, clothes, automobiles, and houses, books and magazines, postage stamps and jewels. Soldiers, sailors, policemen and postmen are known by the colors of their uniforms, and colored flags mark the possessions of nations.

Colors are widely used for signals. All over the world red means danger and green safety. We know also that color greatly influences us in our buying. We have our favorite colors. Manufacturers of clothes, dishes, wallpaper, furniture and automobiles must offer a wide choice of colors if they intend to please everyone.

Walk through the shopping center of a city and notice how colors emphasize store names and window displays. See how the neon signs cut through the other lights with their sharp red-orange glare. Color

is not always used to please our eyes. A harsh effect may attract more attention. Most colored advertisements in magazines as well as on billboards are planned chiefly to attract attention.

But the deepest influence that color can have upon us is through its power to create beauty. For thousands of years men have been trying to make beautiful things with stains, dyes and paints. They have decorated their homes and public buildings with colors. They have applied colored designs to the things they use, such as pottery, baskets, cloth and rugs. Above all, they have expressed their feelings in painted pictures. To study the arts in which color has played a part, the reader should turn to the articles on Architecture, Furnishings, Interior Decoration, Pottery and Porcelain, Glass, Basket Rugs and Carpets, Textiles and Painting.

### Elementary Views of Color

To understand the uses of color we must know something about color itself. Let us approach it first from the point of view of our common experience. What is color? We see it in two forms. We see colored

objects and we see colored *lights*. We know that the blue light from the sky is not the same as the blue paint with which an artist pictures the sky. And we know that the six "rainbow colors" in a paint box are not made of the same stuff as the real rainbow.

For convenience we can give the name *pigment colors* to any colors we see on a leaf, a fruit, or a rock, on paper or cloth, in a paint box or an ink bottle. And we can call the colors that come from the sun, from the sky, or from lamps the *colors of light*. We shall see later on that light is the real cause of all colors, but for the time being let us keep the two kinds of colors separate in our minds.

The picture on the preceding page shows what happens when a narrow beam of sunlight shines through a glass prism. Read the text under that picture. The reflection of the sun from the bevel-edge of a mirror will show the same division of light into the rainbow colors. You can see these colors also when a bright light shines on a soap bubble or when a film of oil or gasoline spreads on the surface of a pool of water. They are called the *spectrum colors*. But we use pigment colors much more than we do the colors of light. So we shall study those first.

#### Primaries, Secondaries, and Neutrals

We must begin with some of the words used to identify and describe colors. The diagram on this page shows us what are commonly known as the *primary* and *secondary* colors. A primary color is one that cannot be made from mixtures of other colors. A secondary color is one that can be made by a mixture of equal amounts of two primaries.

The diagram shows us also that a mixture of all three primary pigments makes black. When this mixture turns out a muddy gray or brown, as often happens, it is because the paints are either thin or of unequal color strength. Three strong well-matched paints will give a good black, and the fact that brilliant colors can cancel one another in this manner is an important point to remember. When colors do this we say that they "neutralize" each other. A *neutral* pigment is one that shows no "color" in the ordinary sense of the word. Black, white, and gray are neutrals.

#### Intermediate, Complementary, and Tertiary Colors

With the aid of our diagram, let us now study the results of other combinations. What happens if we mix

a primary with a *neighboring* secondary—for example, blue with green? We can answer that by arithmetic. We know that the green is already half blue. When we add blue to it, the mixture will be two-thirds blue, and we get the *intermediate* color called blue-green. With yellow and green we get yellow-green. In the same way we can produce an intermediate color between each primary and secondary. Now suppose we

mix a primary with the secondary *opposite* to it in our diagram—for example, red with green. What will that give us? We can read the answer in the diagram. It will give us black, for green contains blue and yellow, and we have already learned that red, blue, and yellow together make black. For the same reason yellow and purple will neutralize each other and make black. So will blue and orange.

Any two pigments that neutralize each other in a mixture are called a *complementary pair*, and each one is the *complementary* of the other. They need not give a solid black. They are complementaries also if they produce a truly neutral gray.

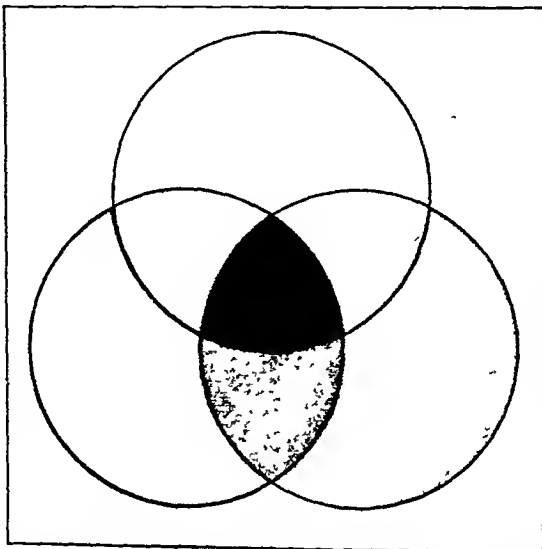
The last mixture we have to consider is that of two secondaries—for example, green and orange. Here, too, we have all three primaries represented, *but not in equal proportions*. For green is half blue and half yellow, while orange is half red and half yellow. So the mixture will be one-quarter blue, one-quarter red, but *one-half* yellow. It will therefore be only partly neutralized, and the surplus of yellow will give us a yellowish-brown of the kind commonly called dark olive. This and the other partly neutralized colors that can be obtained by mixtures of two secondaries are called *tertiary* colors.

#### A Convenient Color Ring

To mix colors from primaries is a useful way of studying color principles. But in practice, paints, dyes, and inks are rarely made in this way. They are prepared from chemicals that have in themselves the desired colors. One reason for this is that colors obtained by mixing pigments tend to lack brightness. Another reason is that violets and deep reds cannot be made from the common primaries.

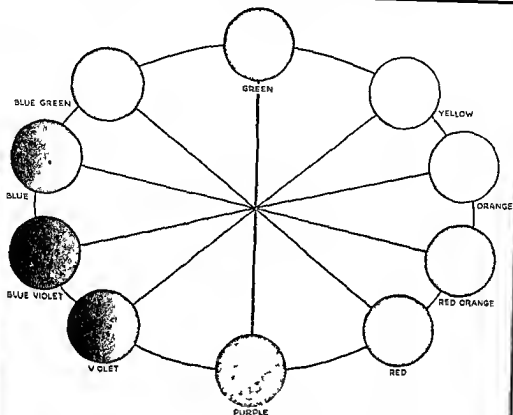
A useful arrangement of ten colors is represented in the color ring on the opposite page. Of the ten, only the orange and blue-violet are mixtures of inks. Each of the others is printed with a separate ink. We can see there the difference between purple and violet.

#### THE TRADITIONAL PRIMARY COLORS



The outer parts of the three circles show the Blue, Yellow, and Red pigment colors, long recognized as "primaries" in art texts. Where two circles overlap, the "secondaries" are formed—Green, Orange, and Purple. The Black in the middle shows the mixture of all three primaries. On a later page we will see a more scientific division of primary and secondary colors.

# A CHART OF IMPORTANT COLOR FACTS



In the color ring above the 10 fundamental colors most distinctly recognized by the eye are arranged in the order of the spectrum, with purple at one end of the spectrum and red at the other. The pairs connected by crosses are approximately complementary. At the left are the cool colors and at the right the warm colors separated by the two colors of medium character, green and purple.

INTENSITY	HUE	VALUE

Here are examples of the three elements that define a color. The three colors in the middle differ in the fundamental character of hue. At the right we see a single hue (red orange) in three different values: first normal, second a bit of high value produced by adding white, third a shade or low value produced by adding black. At the left we see a single hue (blue) gradually lowered in intensity by the addition of gray, but without any change in value (see test on next page).



the two colors most often confused. The ring also shows the important complementary pairs and indicates the colors that are called "warm" and "cool."

#### The Meaning of Hue, Value, and Intensity

When we try to describe a definite color in ordinary words, we have trouble making clear its exact appearance. A "red dress" may be anything from a bright crimson to a reddish-brown. A "blue necktie" may be a full rich blue or a light blue or a gray blue. For greater accuracy, color experts have distinguished three qualities that every color possesses—*hue*, *value*, and *intensity*. Sometimes these are spoken of as "the three dimensions of a color."

The *hue* of a color is its basic color identity. We define its hue when we call it violet, blue, green, yellow, orange, red, purple, or any intermediate such as blue-violet, blue-green, red-orange, red-purple, and so on. But names like brown, olive, pink, steel-blue are not names of hues, for these colors are only basic colors more or less neutralized. If we merely make a color lighter, darker, or grayer, we do not change its hue. To change one hue into another, we must alter its fundamental nature, as in making blue into green by adding yellow.

The *value* of a color means its lightness or darkness. Sometimes this is called its "brightness" as compared to white. We can readily see that the normal brightness of pure hues varies greatly. Yellow is brighter to the eye than blue; and orange is brighter than red. But that is not the important point here. Whatever may be the normal brightness of any hue, we can increase it by adding white or decrease it by adding black. This does not change the hue. In other words, adding black or white to a red-orange pigment, for instance, does not change its "red-angeness." The lighter or higher value produced by adding white is called a "tint" of the color, and the darker or lower value produced by adding black is called a "shade." Occasionally we hear color values described as "tones."

Value, brightness, or tone is the only quality that distinguishes neutral pigments from one another. We have been mentioning white, black, and gray as if they were three distinct neutral elements. In reality they form a single "scale of values" with black at one end, ranging gradually through the dark grays, medium gray and light grays to pure white at the other end of the scale. This scale is a convenient measuring rod for the relative value or brightness of hues. For example, we can describe the value of a certain blue by saying that it matches medium gray.

The *intensity*, or *chroma*, of a color is its degree of purity, its freedom from neutralizing factors. A color entirely free from neutral elements is called "saturated." Our discussion of value showed that the value of a color is changed by adding white or black. This will, of course, also change the intensity. A pink made by adding white to red is brighter than the original red, but less intense because its proportion of pure color is smaller. But we can also change the intensity of a color *without changing its value*. We do

this by mixing with it a gray of the same value or brightness as that of the color. The more gray we add, the lower becomes the intensity of the mixture, but the value remains constant.

Examples of differences in hue, value, and intensity will be found, pictured in color, on the preceding page. A method of color notation by which the value and intensity of any hue can be designated by numbers is known as the Munsell color system. It has been widely used for such purposes as ordering cloth or dyes of exact colors by telegraph or cable.

#### How Many Colors Are There?

With suitable instruments physicists are able to detect thousands of variations in the colors of the spectrum. But the human eye has no such power. If you examine the color ring on the preceding page and imagine from two to four intermediate hues between each of those pictured there, you will have in mind virtually the whole range of pure colors which the ordinary person can distinguish—about 40. The colors we see around us are mostly variations in value and intensity of the fundamental hues. It is rare indeed to find a color in its full strength. The greenest leaf looks grayish beside a sample of green paint. And the paint itself seems to lose some of its color when we use it, for the texture of wood and cloth and paper tends to throw shadows into the most brilliant pigments, dyes, and inks, or to thin them out with transparent whites or grays.

Is white a color? Is black a color? Is gray a color? These are catch questions. If we use the word "color" in the sense of "hue," then white, black, and gray are not colors. But the neutrals are colors in the broad sense of the word, as when we say that the colors of the American flag are red, white, and blue. Some authorities call the hues "chromatic colors" and the neutrals "achromatic colors."

#### Principles of Color Harmony

What colors go well together? Before answering that question, we must understand that there are no rules for creating beautiful color compositions. The subject and arrangement of pictures, the pattern of designs, their size, purpose, and place of display, all have an influence on the result. But a knowledge of the fundamentals of color harmony will save the art student from many a mistake. He should learn them and experiment with them, just as the student of music learns and practises with keys and chords. And all of us may apply them to combinations of color in clothing, in furnishings, and in home decorations.

There are two general laws of harmony: (1) The colors used must be related to one another in some definite way; (2) One color must dominate; equal competition between colors for our attention must be avoided.

Simple color harmonies usually fall into one of the following groups:

**A Single Color with Neutrals:** A real discord is impossible when a single color is used with white, black, or gray. But we must observe the rule against giving the color and the neutral equal prominence in the design. A warm color on the red side (see illustration of color ring) is generally

## DISCORD AND HARMONY WITH THE SAME DESIGN



To get a free impression of each design in turn, cover the other two. At the left we see discord. The chief fault is that the yellow of the background and the magenta red of the middle figure are near complementary hues of equal intensity and nearly equal areas (see text). So also are the purple and the yellow in the upper left hand corner. Furthermore there are various shades of red and blue which resemble the central red and blue

without matching them. The middle panel is a harmony with strong contrasts. The blue-green background (complementary to the red-orange) has been lightened and grayed. The other colors are lights and shades in related groups. At the right is a harmony with soft contrasts. No intense colors are used. When some complementary colors are present they are soled in general or most any grayed colors will harmonize fairly well.

most effective with black or dark greys; a cool color on the blue side is most effective with white or light gray.

Tints, Shades and Intensities of the Same Hue. With combinations of these also discord is impossible. To be effective however the arrangement must bring out contrast between light and dark values or between different intensities. A dominating role may be given to one of the values by letting it occupy a larger area.

Harmony of Adjacent or Analogous Colors. Colors that lie side by side in the color ring are easy to combine harmoniously because they have some one color in common. Yellow for instance is the common factor of green, yellow and orange. Another set of adjacent or analogous colors is blue, blue-green and green. Blue and green alone might clash but with the blue-green to unite or blend them harmony can be established. In selecting hues for one of these family groups it is safer not to go beyond the colors that lie with them at an angle of 90 degrees on the ring. One of the colors should of course be dominant.

Harmony of Complementaries. If we use complementary pairs of colors at full intensity and in equal areas the effect is extremely unpleasant. But if we partly neutralize one of them or give it a much smaller space than the other, then richness and strengthens its opposite and forms one of the best of harmonies. We may use with a given color the hues on each side of its true complementary for example violet with orange and yellow-green. This is called a harmony with split complementaries.

Triads. Any three colors each of which is approximately the same distance apart from the other two on the color ring form what is called a triad. The three primary pigments—blue, yellow and red—form the most conspicuous triad of all. Striking color effects can be obtained with a group of this kind, but there is danger of crude and disagreeable contrasts. To avoid this two of them may be partly neutralized or else given a blending red with small additions of the third color or one may be neutralized and another confined to a small area leaving the third dominant.

Almost any combination of colors can be given the appearance of harmony if all the hues are sufficiently neutralized. For many years this method of avoiding discord was the fashionable solution to all color problems that arose in selecting clothes, furnishings and

decorations. What was called 'good taste' was opposed to any vivid or strongly contrasting colors. But modern taste is disposed to take advantage of the gay effect of bright colors and to study methods for using them harmoniously.

## Color Science for the More Advanced Student

We have been looking at color from the point of view of ordinary experience and to some extent from the point of view of the artist. But the more advanced student will want to go more deeply into the scientific principles of color. These principles particularly in recent years have been interpreted, extended and applied in the service of industry—the manufacture of dyes and printing inks, of materials for color photography and photoengraving, of stage lighting equipment and advertising displays.

Approaching the subject from this point of view we emphasize at the outset one fundamental fact. *Color is a quality of light and does not exist apart from light.* All our color sensations are caused by light rays entering our eyes. These light rays have to come originally from some glowing substance like the sun, a flame or an electric lamp. All other objects are seen by reflected light and the colors which they show exist in the light and not in the object.

Let us be sure that we understand exactly what this means. Men used to believe that light was something like a clear stream of water which picked up color from the objects it touched and so became stained or dyed as it were. Most of us have some such idea. We would say that the color of a red rose in some way comes out of the rose. The fact is that the red rose does not add anything whatever to the light that falls upon it and which is in turn reflected to our eyes. On the contrary, it *subtracts* something from that light. This process of subtraction or *absorption* as it is

called, is the key to everything that follows. Let us see exactly how it works.

The picture of the spectrum that heads this article shows how sunlight is made up of a mixture of colored rays—violet, blue, green, yellow, orange, red, and hues intermediate between these six. These sunlight colors represent the "raw materials" from which all the other colors in the world are derived. No star, no flame, no artificial light sends out any color which is not also found in sunlight. Therefore, when we speak of the colors of light we mean those in sunlight or in the diffused sunlight we call daylight.

The article on Light explains that light consists of waves of energy, and that these waves vary in length, the shortest being the violet waves and the longest the red waves (*see also* Radiation; Spectrum). All the student needs to know here, however, is that various substances have a tendency, depending upon their chemical structure, to absorb certain wave-lengths of light and to reflect or transmit the others. The absorbed waves are turned into heat or some other form of energy. White substances reflect all wave-lengths of light equally and black substances absorb all or nearly all of them.

#### Experiments with Colored Lights

Let us make some simple experiments to illustrate absorption. We begin with a beam of white light from a high-power tungsten lamp (Fig. 1 on the opposite page). This beam contains the colors of the spectrum—violet, blue, green, yellow, orange, and red. We shine it through a piece of red-orange glass, and a beam of red-orange light comes out the other side. What has happened to our white light? We can answer best with the aid of the following diagram:

VIOLET	BLUE	GREEN	YELLOW	ORANGE	RED
--------	------	-------	--------	--------	-----

The white area shows the part of the light that passed through the glass and gave us our red-orange beam—a mixture of yellow, orange, and red. The shaded area shows the part that was absorbed—a mixture of violet, blue, and green, represented in Fig. 1 by the blue-green square. We prove these facts in Fig. 2. We point a beam of blue-green light and a beam of red-orange light at a white surface. Where the two meet, we get white light again.

From our diagram, then, we can define red-orange as *white minus blue-green*. And conversely we can define blue-green as *white minus red-orange*. Modern color science uses "absorption diagrams" like the one above to define all colors. Here, for example, is a diagram for a brilliant yellow, which equals *white minus blue-violet*:

VIOLET	BLUE	GREEN	YELLOW	ORANGE	RED
--------	------	-------	--------	--------	-----

Fig. 3 on the opposite page proves the correctness of this diagram by showing that yellow light plus blue-violet light equals white light.

An important question may arise at this point.

Why is yellow represented as a mixture of green, yellow, orange, and red? Why not the yellow alone? Because virtually all the colors we ever see are mixtures of this kind, which usually have the appearance of the brightest color in the mixture. If a colored glass or a pigment absorbed from white light all the rays except the pure yellow, or the pure red-orange, or the pure blue-green, the results would be extremely feeble colors which could hardly be detected. That is why it is incorrect to say that a yellow object is one which reflects only yellow light, or a red object one which reflects only red light, as is often done in popular writing about colors. A color can be much more definitely determined by what it absorbs from white light than by what it reflects or transmits.

The absorption method of defining colors enables us also to figure out in advance the results of color combinations. For instance, if we compare our diagram for red-orange with our diagram for yellow, we see that yellow contains the same colors as red-orange, with *green added*. Therefore a red-orange light plus a green light ought to give us a yellow light. Fig. 4 in the place of experiments shows that this is correct.

Let us now make an experiment first and see whether, from what we already know, we can draw a diagram of the result afterward. We shall combine a red-orange light and a blue-violet light (Fig. 5). We get the color called "magenta," a kind of purplish-red. To make a diagram of this color we must determine what part of white light is missing from it. From our previous diagrams we know that red-orange light contains yellow, orange, and red, and that blue-violet light is a blend of blue and violet. When we mix the two, therefore, we are uniting all the colors of white light, *except green*. So we can draw our diagram for magenta as follows:

VIOLET	BLUE	GREEN	YELLOW	ORANGE	RED
--------	------	-------	--------	--------	-----

Fig. 6 illustrates how white light may be divided into three parts. First we send the light through a yellow glass. From our diagram for yellow and from Fig. 3, we know that this removes the blue-violet light. Then we send the yellow light through a blue-green glass. From our definition of blue-green, we know that this will remove red-orange. What have we left? Fig. 4 showed us that yellow is a combination of red-orange and green. Therefore, with the red-orange removed from the yellow light, green remains.

#### Experiments with Pigments

A pigment and a light of the same color send the same kind of rays to our eyes, and the same absorption diagram can be used for the light *transmitted* through a red-orange glass and for the light *reflected* from a spot of red-orange pigment. But when we mix pigments, we get very different results from those obtained when we mix lights. Compare, for example, the mixture of red-orange and green pigments in Fig. 7 with the mixture of red-orange and green lights in Fig. 4. A little reasoning will explain this difference.

# LEARNING ABOUT COLOR BY EXPERIMENTS



FIG 1



FIG 2



FIG 3



FIG 4



FIG 5



FIG 6



FIG 7



FIG 8



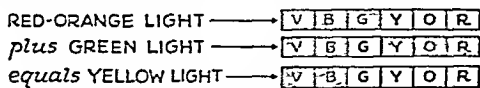
FIG 9



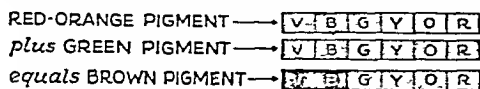
FIG 10

Some of the most important principles of color are illustrated by these experiments. Studying the difference between the direct color of light and the indirect color of pigments. The test and diagram on the opposite page explain the significance of each figure in turn.

Remember that when light is added to light, we are combining rays that are in themselves original and positive sources of color, and the result is a color closer to white light than either of the originals. To represent the results we add the white areas of our diagrams in this way:



This illustrates the principle that *when we mix lights, the result is the sum of the colors that each light contains.* Now let us make diagrams of the pigment mixture:



The active quality of a pigment is its absorbing power—not its reflecting power. And when we mix two pigments, we are adding the absorbing powers of each. *In the mixture, each pigment continues to subtract from white light the colors that it subtracted when it was alone.* Thus, our mixture of red-orange and green subtracts all the colors of the spectrum. The result, in theory, ought to be black. But no pigments absorb light perfectly. They tend to reflect a little of all the colors. In this case, however, each of the original pigments absorbs violet and blue. This gives us in the mixture a double absorption at the blue end, indicated in the diagram by solid black. The remainder, therefore, is the kind of darkened yellow we call brown.

Fig. 8 shows how yellow pigment (minus violet and blue) mixed with blue (minus orange and red) yields a yellowish-green. The common saying that “mixing blue and yellow makes green” would be more scientific if changed to “mixing blue and yellow leaves green.”

When we mix yellow pigment with red pigment (Fig. 9) we get orange, the color that lies between yellow and red in the spectrum. The green light rays are absorbed by the red, and the blue rays are absorbed by both the yellow and the red.

If we take green and yellow out of white light, the blue and red rays that remain blend to give us purple.

Fig. 10 on the preceding page shows this taking place. The red pigment absorbs green light and the blue pigment absorbs yellow light.

The results of mixing pigments must not be confused with those obtained by experiments with so-called “color wheels.” A color wheel is a disk upon which cards of various colors are placed side by side and which can be revolved rapidly to get the effect of the color combinations upon the eye. What the observer sees are mixtures of light rays reflected from the pigments on the cards. He does not get the effect of pigment mixtures.

### Primary and Secondary Colors of Light

For many technical purposes—for example, color photography and photoengraving—white light is treated as if it were composed of three colors only—blue-violet, yellow-green, and red-orange. These are called the *primary colors of light*, and virtually all colors that reach our eyes, directly or by reflection, may be analyzed and described in terms of these three. They are illustrated by the diagram on this page. Examine this diagram, read the text under it, and

note the following color relations:

Each primary and its opposite secondary—for example, blue-violet and yellow—form a complementary pair.

Each color in a pair is defined as white light from which the other color has been absorbed. For example, magenta is defined as white light minus yellow-green.

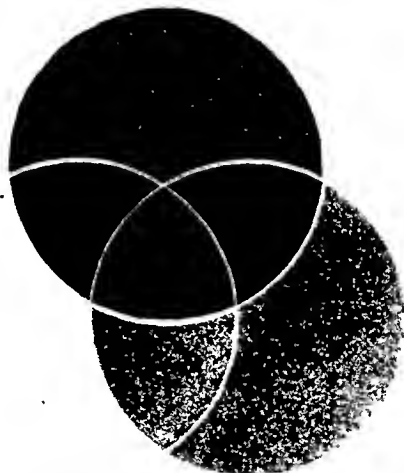
When combined in the form of lights, the two colors in a complementary pair produce white light. But when combined as pigment colors, they produce black, for in that case we are adding together their absorbing powers.

This leads us to the most important relation of all. The secondaries of light—namely, blue-green, yellow, and magenta—are regarded by color scientists as the *true primary pigment colors*, instead of the traditional blue, yellow, and red illustrated earlier in this article. And the primaries of light—blue-violet, yellow-green, and red-orange—become in turn the secondary pigment colors.

This color scheme unites in one scientifically related group, the colors of light and the pigment colors, and it has become the accepted classification in many industries.

For instance, in color-photography and photoengraving, the pictures made by means of colored rays entering the camera lens must be reproduced in turn by means of dyes or printing inks. Therefore the relations between light rays and pigments must be very accurately determined. The illustration on the opposite page shows how yellow, magenta, and blue-green inks printed over one another reproduce the

### THE PRIMARY COLORS OF LIGHT



The circles represent beams of the three primary colors of light—Blue-Violet, Yellow-Green, and Red-Orange—shining upon a white surface. Where two light beams overlap, we have the secondary colors of light—Blue-Green, Yellow, and Magenta. And where all three shine together, we have white light. But this order is exactly reversed if we consider these colors as pigments primaries and the three inside colors become the pigment secondaries (see text). When we read the diagram in that way it tells us, for example, that a mixture of Blue-Green and Magenta pigments will produce a Blue-Violet secondary.

# STEPS IN PRINTING A PICTURE IN COLORS

FOUR PLATES ARE USED AT THE TOP WE SEE EACH PLATE PRINTED SEPARATELY



1 The Yellow Plate

Actual printing begins below with an impression from the yellow ink plate

2 The Black Plate

Next the black ink plate is printed on top of the yellow producing the color

3 The Red Magenta Plate

The red ink plate now adds its part of the picture to the yellow black

4 The Blue Green Plate

Next the blue ink plate is printed over yellow black red and the job is done



5 Yellow Plate Alone

6 Black on Yellow

7 Red on Black Yellow

8 The Finished Picture

To make the four printing plates the photoengraver photographs the artist's drawing four times. One negative is made with a clear lens for the black and one each with gels in the filters colored blue violet yellow green and red-orange (the primary colors of light). The positive plates are then prepared like ordinary half-tone engravings (see Photoengraving). Because the blue violet filter absorbs yellow its negative shows

blank areas wherever yellow forms all or part of a color in the original drawing. The positive printed through blank places in that negative is a record of those yellow areas and is printed in yellow ink. The negative photographed through the green filter makes the magenta plate and the negative produced with the red-orange filter makes the blue-green plate. All but the very darkest areas are etched out of the black plate

many different colors of a poster design, and the text under the illustration explains how the printing plates are prepared with the aid of blue-violet, yellow-green, and red-orange color filters—the true complementaries respectively of yellow, magenta, and blue-green. (See also Photoengraving, Photography.)

Like the color photographer and photoengraver, the theatrical scene painter and the costume designer are interested in the relations of colored lights and pigments. They must know how the pigment colors in their materials will look under the stage lights. Many of the amazing effects we see on the modern stage are simple applications of the principles we have been studying. For example, a figure appearing in magenta costume and mask against a black background can be made to disappear entirely by switching the lights from white to yellow-green. A yellow costume will change to a bright red under a magenta light. Scores of other color effects can be worked out by a study of the light-absorbing properties of pigments.

#### The Psychology of Color

Stage effects suggest another important aspect of color. We know that certain colors in themselves, apart from any question of discord or harmony, exercise an influence upon our emotions. Many of these are traced to the direct action of colors on the nerves of the eye. People in hospitals, for instance, rest more quietly and go to sleep more easily in rooms with blue walls than in rooms with green, yellow, or red walls. In general, red is an exciting color. That is perhaps why red is so widely used as a danger signal.

The power of colors to stir our feelings is also strikingly demonstrated by the famous *clavilux* or "color organ" invented by Thomas Wilfred, which has won popular success all over the world. The instrument, played by pressing keys, throws on a screen in a dark hall any desired succession or combination of colored lights. In skilful hands it creates moods and emotions similar to those induced by fine music.

Other psychological effects of color are directly related to optical principles. In the dark a red light will seem nearer to us than it really is, and a blue light will seem farther away. The eye adjusts its focus in a different way for the long-wave red rays and the short-wave blue rays. This may explain the impressions of artists who call the reds "advancing colors" and the blues "retreating colors."

#### After-Images Show Complementary Colors

One of the most interesting and important reactions of the eye to colors can be illustrated by a simple experiment. In the middle of a sheet of white paper make a red spot about an inch square. Hold this in front of your eyes in a strong light and look intently at the center of the spot for about 30 seconds. Now remove the paper with the red spot and look steadily at a sheet of white paper. Almost immediately you will see the image of a spot of the same size and shape as the red spot, but its color will be blue-green. This is called an *after-image*. It is nothing but a reaction of the eye nerves. They grow tired of the red sensation

and set up in its place the one sensation which will neutralize it—namely, blue-green, the complementary of red. If you gaze at a blue-green spot, the after-image will be red; a violet spot will give a yellow after-image; an orange spot, a blue after-image. Each after-image is always the complementary of the other. For this reason, the psychologist defines a complementary pair of colors as *two colors either of which has the other for its after-image*. A white background is not necessary to the appearance of after-images. They can be seen against gray or black backgrounds, or even by simply closing the eyes.

By means of this experiment we can understand why complementary colors of equal prominence in a design cannot harmonize. The original colors and the after-images are in conflict and set up unpleasant vibrations of the optic nerve.

The experiment shows also why green trees often seem to cast purple shadows. In the neutral gray of the shadow the eye sees the after-image of the green. The famous "impressionist" painters of the 19th century were the first to depict deliberately in their paintings color reactions of this kind.

Psychologists have developed color theories based on eye reactions. These differ in some details from both the working principles of artists and the color science of physicists. Many psychologists distinguish for example, *four primary color sensations*—blue, green, yellow, and red. They believe that we recognize all other colors through mixed sensations made up of various proportions of those four.

#### Colors as Symbols and as Social Factors

Color plays an interesting rôle in the history of customs. Crimson was the imperial color of the ancients, just as yellow is today the imperial color in the Far East. Among English-speaking people yellow often stands for deceit and cowardice, blue for wisdom and honesty, and red for courage. In the political field, red is used as the symbol of violence and revolt.

The great dye industries of the world continually try to develop new pigments to satisfy the popular taste for variety in color (see Dyes). Manufacturers of textiles vie with one another in introducing new shades in modern designs (see Textiles; Fabrics). Fashion makers and dress designers urge that color should be made to express the personality of the wearer (see Dress). In a hundred directions we find people at work on color problems—scientific, industrial, and artistic. A knowledge of color fundamentals opens our eyes to many points of interest that we would otherwise miss entirely in this field.

#### Books about Color

- Bond, Fred. *Color—How to See and Use It* (Camera Club, 1954).  
 Sutanabhy, J. H. *Principles of Color and Color Mixing* (McGraw, 1947).  
 Cheskin, Louis. *Colors, What They Can Do for You* (Livingston, 1947).  
 Evans, R. M. *Introduction to Color* (Wiley, 1948).  
 Luckiesh, Matthew. *Color and Colors* (Van Nostrand, 1935).

## The TREASURE STATE of the ROCKIES



Colorado's mountains are a double source of wealth. They hold a great store of mineral riches and attract millions of tourists who

come to enjoy their magnificent scenery. Inland Pass across the Continental Divide near Dillon is an example of their beauty.

**COLORADO** Gold and silver were the magnets which drew settlers to Colorado. In 1858 gold was discovered in the plains near the present site of Denver. On May 6 1859 John Gregory found rich gold deposits near what is now Central City.

News of these discoveries spread rapidly across the nation. Thousands of fortune seekers headed toward the gold fields on foot with mules and in ox-drawn covered wagons. On the wagons they wrote "Pikes Peak or bust!" This was the first of several gold rushes which occurred as late as 1891 when silver as well as gold was found at Cripple Creek.

After each gold rush many miners and farmers settled the region. By 1861 the people of the mountain country obtained their first self government when Congress created the Territory of Colorado. In 1876 a hundred years after the signing of the Declaration of Independence Colorado became a state. The timing gave it the nickname "Centennial State."

### The Highest State in the Union

With an average elevation of 6 800 feet above sea level, Colorado is the highest state in the Union. This is because about half of its area lies within the Rocky Mountains. These mountains have 52 peaks in Colo-

rado rising more than 14 000 feet above sea level. This is more than half of all the highest peaks in the United States and Alaska. Even the lowest portion of the state east of the mountains lies about a mile above sea level. The lowest passes across the mountains lie much higher and many passes have elevations of from 10 000 to 12 000 feet.

These high elevations have had profound influence upon the development of the region and of the entire Far West. The best routes for reaching the Pacific coast lie north and south of Colorado. As a result few people settled in the state until the days of the gold rushes. The difficult job of building railroads through the mountains also had to wait until the development of mines offered prospects of revenue sufficient to repay high construction costs.

### The Lay of the Land

Colorado is composed of three main geographic regions. In the east the high plains of the Great Plains region ascend from the Kansas Nebraska border to the Front Range of the Rocky Mountains nearly half way across the state. The mountains lie in a sprawling mass extending roughly from the northwest corner of the state to the south center and southwest



THE RUGGED MOUNTAINS AND HIGH PLAINS OF COLORADO



The Front Range of the Rocky Mountains runs north and south across the middle of Colorado, cutting the state in two. From it, high prairies slope down eastward to Kansas. Behind it to the west is the watershed of the nation, the Continental Divide (shown in white broken line). The mountains extend into parts of Wyoming, Utah, and New Mexico. In the southwest is the famous "four corners" where Colorado, Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico meet at right angles—the only such meeting of states in the nation.

In the west, the mountains descend to the high plateaus of the Basin and Plateau region.

In the Rocky Mountains is the Continental Divide, usually known as the Great Divide. It zigzags from north to south, west of the state's center. This divide separates the waters flowing to the Gulf of Mexico from those going to the Pacific Ocean. From it the South Platte and the Arkansas rivers flow east, others flow southeast, and the Rio Grande flows south and southeast. All drain through the Mississippi or directly into the Gulf of Mexico, and thus form part of the Atlantic coast drainage. West of the Divide, the land drains through the Colorado and its northern branch, the Green, to the Gulf of California and the Pacific. Some rivers of the Colorado system have cut deep canyons whose walls show magnificent red-brown hues. From these, the state received its name Colorado (Spanish for "reddish-colored").

#### Climate and Distribution of Population

The climate of the state varies greatly from one part to another, due mainly to elevation. In and near the mountains, the air is light, cool, and exhilarating, attracting tourists and health seekers. Through-

out the state, the average summer temperature is about 65° F., and there are many sunny days. The average yearly rainfall is only 17 inches.

The state west of the Divide is lightly populated. It has many small towns and few small cities. The plateaus are mostly desert except for strips of farm land, usually irrigated, along many of the rivers. The largest cities are along the Front Range, and on the irrigated lands of the eastern plains.

#### Natural Parks and Noted Scenic Areas

Lying near the Continental Divide are Colorado's great natural parks. These are huge plateaus, partly wooded but chiefly grasslands, and usually surrounded by mountains. The largest of these, San Luis, in the southern part of the state, has an area almost equal to that of Massachusetts.

Colorado is also noted for scenic centers. The largest of these is Rocky Mountain National Park, an area of lovely valleys, brooks, and lakes. It is rimmed by towering ranges and impressive peaks, conspicuous among them being Longs Peak. At the park's eastern limit is the village of Estes Park, once the home of Enos Mills, writer and naturalist.

Continued on page 411

# Colorado Fact Summary



**COLORADO** (Colo) Spanish word meaning red or reddish-colored name was first applied to Colorado River and later to the state

**Nickname** Centennial State admitted in Union 18 6 100 years after signing of Declaration of Independence. Sometimes called Switzerland of America because of its natural beauty

**Seal** Shield bears miner's pick and hammer surmounted by three mountains. Above is a band with words Union and Constitution entwined about Roman fasces. Crest shows symbolic all-seeing eye of God.

**Motto** Nil Sine Numine (Nothing without the Deity)

**Flag** For description and illustration see Flags

**Flower** Rocky Mountain Columbine & red Lark hunting Tree Blue spruce Song Where the Columbines Grow words and music by Arthur J. Fynn

## THE GOVERNMENT

**Capital** Denver (since 1876)

**Representative in Congress** Senate 2

**House of Representatives** 4 Electoral votes 6

**General Assembly** Senators 30 term 4 years Representatives 65 term 2 years

**Convenes** first Wednesday after first Tuesday in January annually. No limit to regular or special sessions

**Constitution** Adopted 1876 Proposed amendment must be (a) passed by a two-thirds majority of both legislative houses or by initiative action of the people and (b) ratified by a majority voting on amendment

**Governor** Term 2 years May succeed himself

**Other Executive Officers** Lieutenant governor secretary of state attorney general treasurer auditor all elected terms 2 years

**Judiciary** Supreme court 7 justices elected at large term 10 years District courts—15 32 judges elected term 6 years County courts—1 in each county judges elected term 4 years

**County** 63 counties each governed by a board of 3 county commissioners boards elected term 4 years officers elected term 2 years

**Municipal** Mayor and council plan most common some cities have commissioners or city managers

**Voting Qualification** Age 21 residence in state 1 year in county 90 days in district 15 days



## THE PEOPLE AND THEIR LAND

**Population** (1950 census) 1 320 099 (rank among 48 states—34th) urban 62.7% rural 37.3% Density 12.8 persons per square mile (rank—39th state)

**Extent** Area 104 247 square miles including 320 square miles of water surface (7th state in size)

**Elevation** Highest Mount Elbert 14 431 ft near Twin Lakes lowest Arkansas River near Kansas line 3 350 ft

**Temperature** (°F) Average—annual 45 winter 25° spring 44 summer 65 fall 47° Lowest recorded —60 (Taylor Park Gunnison County Feb 1 1951) highest recorded 118 (Bennett July 11 1888)

**Precipitation** Average (inches)—annual 17 winter 3 spring 5 summer 5 fall 4 Varies from about 8 in southwest corner to about 30 in north central

**Natural Features** Rocky Mountains divide state through center. On east side land slopes gently through and plains toward Kansas and Nebraska on west plateaus descend step by step to Utah border. Rivers of eastern slope Arkansas North Platte South Platte Republican and Rio Grande. Rivers of western slope Colorado Gunnison San Juan White and Yampa

**Land Use** Cropland 15% nonforested pasture 50% forest 29% other (roads parks game refuges waste-land cities etc) 6%

**CROPS** **PASTURE** **FOREST** **OTHER**

**Natural Resources** Agricultural wide variety of fertile soils rich in minerals mountains rivers streams make extensive irrigation possible Industrial—abundant coal supply other minerals and water power promote manufacturing rich petroleum deposits Commercial—climate and scenery attract vacationists

**Occupations and Products**

**What the People Do to Earn a Living**

**Major Industries and Occupations 1950**

**Fields of Employment** **Number Employed** **Percentage of Total Employed**

Wholesale and retail trade 100 431 21.0

Agriculture forestry and fishery 72 467 15.2

Manufacturing 53 779 12.2

Professional services (medical legal educational etc) 50 975 10.7

Transportation communication and other public utilities 45 000 9.4

Construction 38 089 8.0

Personal services (hotel domestic laundering etc) 29 600 6.2

Government 26 555 5.6

Finance insurance and real estate 16 947 3.6

Business and repair services 15 146 3.2

Mining 10 704 2.2

Amusement recreation and related services 5 715 1.2

Workers not accounted for 7 088 1.5

Total employed 4 6644 100.0

**Transportation and Communication**

**Transportation** Railroads 4 200 miles First railroad Denver to Cheyenne Wyo 18 0 Rural roads 72 000 miles Airports 105

**Communication** Periodical 67 Newspapers 187 First newspaper Rocky Mountain News Denver 1859 Radio stations (AM and FM) 35 first station on KJZ Denver licensed March 10 1922 Televisions stations 6 first station KFEL Denver began operation on July 18 1952 Telephones 516 000 Post offices 547

**Transportation and Communication**

**Transportation** Railroads 4 200 miles First railroad Denver to Cheyenne Wyo 18 0 Rural roads 72 000 miles Airports 105

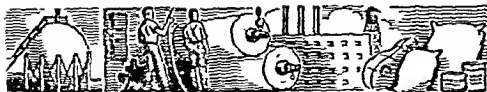
**Communication** Periodical 67 Newspapers 187 First newspaper Rocky Mountain News Denver 1859 Radio stations (AM and FM) 35 first station on KJZ Denver licensed March 10 1922 Televisions stations 6 first station KFEL Denver began operation on July 18 1952 Telephones 516 000 Post offices 547

**Transportation and Communication**

**Transportation** Railroads 4 200 miles First railroad Denver to Cheyenne Wyo 18 0 Rural roads 72 000 miles Airports 105

**Communication** Periodical 67 Newspapers 187 First newspaper Rocky Mountain News Denver 1859 Radio stations (AM and FM) 35 first station on KJZ Denver licensed March 10 1922 Televisions stations 6 first station KFEL Denver began operation on July 18 1952 Telephones 516 000 Post offices 547

# Colorado Fact Summary



## What the People Produce

### A. Manufactured Goods (Rank among states—34th) Value added by manufacture\* (1952), \$397,461,000

Leading Industries in 1947 (with Principal Products)	Value Added by Manufacture	Rank among States
<b>FOOD AND KINDRED PRODUCTS</b> .. Beet sugar; meat packing; bakery products; grain-mill products	\$92,675,000	24
<b>PRIMARY METAL INDUSTRIES</b> ..... Blast furnace, steel mill and iron and steel foundry products	37,395,000	20
<b>MACHINERY (EXCEPT ELECTRICAL)</b> Construction and mining machin- ery; special-industry machinery	22,550,000	28
<b>PRINTING AND PUBLISHING</b> ..... Newspapers; commercial printing	22,386,000	28
<b>STONE, CLAY, AND GLASS PRODUCTS</b> Structural clay products; con- crete and plaster products	11,966,000	30
<b>RUBBER PRODUCTS</b> .....	..... †	..

\*For explanation of value added by manufacture, see Census.

†Figure withheld by the Bureau of the Census.



### B. Farm Products (Rank among states—18th) Total cash income (1952), \$607,666,000

Products	Amount Produced (10-Year Average)	Rank within State*	Rank among States†
Cattle .....	463,709,000 lbs.	1	15
Wheat.....	35,996,000 bu.	2	10
Hay.....	2,238,000 tons	3	19
Milk.....	480,000,000 qts.	4	32
Sheep and lambs.	104,233,000 lbs.	5	5
Potatoes.....	17,313,000 bu.	6	9
Sugar beets.....	1,882,000 tons	7	2
Corn.....	15,145,000 bu.	8	28

\*Rank in dollar value †Rank in units produced



### C. Minerals (Fuels, Metals, and Stone) Annual value (1951), \$179,434,000 Rank among states—18th

Minerals (1951)	Amount Produced	Value
Petroleum.....	27,823,000 bbls.	\$70,670,000
Molybdenum*.....	.....	.....
Coal.....	4,103,000 tons	21,165,000
Zinc.....	56,000 tons	20,280,000
Lead.....	30,000 tons	10,496,000
Sand and gravel...	6,917,000 tons	4,452,000

\*Molybdenum ranks 2d in value; exact figure not available.

### D. Trade

Trade (1948)	Sales	Rank among States
Wholesale.....	\$1,659,829,000	29
Retail.....	1,257,093,000	31
Service.....	123,257,000	28

## EDUCATION

**Public Schools:** Elementary, 1,268; secondary, 257. Compulsory school age, 8 through 16. State Board of Education elected; 5 members, one from each of 4 congressional districts, and one from state at large; 6-year terms. Commissioner of education appointed by State Board of Education; term, at pleasure of Board. County superintendents; 2-year terms. District boards of education elected; 3 to 5 members; 3- or 6-year terms.

**Private and Parochial Schools:** 112.

**Colleges and Universities (accredited):** Colleges, 10; junior colleges, 7. State-supported schools are Univ. of Colo., Boulder; Colo. School of Mines, Golden; Colo. Agriculture and Mechanical, Fort Collins; Colo. State College of Education, Greeley; Adams State College, Alamosa; Western State College, Gunnison; junior colleges (Lamar, Mesa at Grand Junction, Pueblo, Sterling, Trinidad, Fort Lewis A and M College at Hesperus, Colorado Woman's College, Denver.)

**Special State Schools:** State Home and Training School for Mental Defectives, Grand Junction and Ridge; Home for Dependent and Neglected Children, Denver; School for Deaf and Blind, Colorado Springs.

**Libraries:** City and town public libraries, 108; independent county libraries, 20. State Library, Dept. of Education, aids in developing library service; work headed by deputy state librarian. Noted special libraries: Bibliographical Center for Research, Rocky Mountain Region and State Historical Society, both at Denver.

**Outstanding Museums:** University of Colorado Museum, Boulder; Colorado Springs Fine Arts Center, Colorado Springs; Denver Museum of Natural History, Denver Art Museum, Colorado State Museum, all in Denver; Bent's Fort Museum, La Junta; State Museum, Fort Garland.

## CORRECTIONAL AND PENAL INSTITUTIONS

Industrial School for Boys, Golden; Industrial School for Girls, Mt. Morrison; State Reformatory, Buena Vista; State Penitentiary, Canon City.

## NATIONAL PARKS\*

**Mesa Verde**—51,018 acres of canyons and mesa lands; well-preserved prehistoric cliff dwellings, pueblos, and Basket Maker relics; Cliff Palace most spectacular (42).  
**Rocky Mountain**—254,736 acres lying on both sides of Continental Divide; majestic mountain range contains 65 peaks over 10,000 feet; Longs Peak (14,255 feet); hundreds of mountain streams and lakes (6).

## LARGEST CITIES (1950 census)

**Denver** (415,786): state capital; financial, industrial, and railroad center of Rocky Mountain area; stockyards, meat packing; beet-sugar refineries; mining, allied industries; petroleum refineries; educational center.  
**Pueblo** (63,635): manufacturing and wholesale-trade center; iron and steel products; ordnance depot.  
**Colorado Springs** (45,472): resort city below Pikes Peak; ore refining; coal mining; clay products.  
**Greeley** (20,354): agricultural center; beet sugar.  
**Boulder** (19,999): resort center; University of Colorado.  
**Englewood** (16,869): retail center and suburb of Denver.  
**Fort Collins** (14,937): beet sugar, cement, welders.  
**Grand Junction** (14,504): agricultural and mining center.

\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map.



# Colorado Fact Summary

## STATE FOREST\*

Colorado State Forest  
(Jackson & Larimer  
Counties)—70 881  
acres (1)

## NATIONAL FORESTS\*

Arapaho—1 102 974  
acres hdqrs Idaho  
Springs (15)

Grand Mesa—679 810  
acres hdqrs Grand  
Junction (20)

Gunnison—1 562 644  
acres hdqrs Gunnis-  
son (26)

Monte La Sal—26 674  
acres in state total  
1 339 449 acres Colo  
and Utah hdqrs,  
Price Utah (29)

Pike—1 268 825 acres  
hdqrs Colorado  
Springs (19)

Rio Grande—1 882 825  
acres hdqrs, Monte  
Vista (38)

Roosevelt—1 035 143  
acres hdqrs Fort  
Collins (2)

Route—1 068 630 acres  
hdqrs Steamboat  
Springs (4)

San Isabel—1 287 447  
acres hdqrs Pueblo  
(33)

San Juan—2 086 474  
acres hdqrs Durango (37)

Uncompahgre—1 051 902 acres hdqrs Delta (30)

White River—2 090 100 acres hdqrs Glenwood Springs  
(11)

## PLACES OF INTEREST\*

Arapahoe Glacier—one of largest active glaciers in Rock-  
ies supplies water for city of Boulder (10)

Aspen—scenic winter sports center long ski run (91)

Black Canyon of the Gunnison Natl Monument—10  
mi gorge near Montrose amazing rock formations (25)

Boulder—health resort University of Colorado (9)

Bridal Veil Falls—mountain stream cascades 365 feet  
down sheer cliff near Telluride (34)

Cave of the Winds—near Manitou Springs Williams  
Canyon wall hollowed out by underground waters (24)

Central City—once a gold rush boom town old opera  
house restored used for annual play festival (11)

Chimney—largest molybdenum mine in the world (15)

Colorado National Monument—near Grand Junction  
giant sandstone shafts many canyons and caves (22)

Cripple Creek—site of famous old mining camp (27)

Deaver—many places of interest (see Denver) (13)

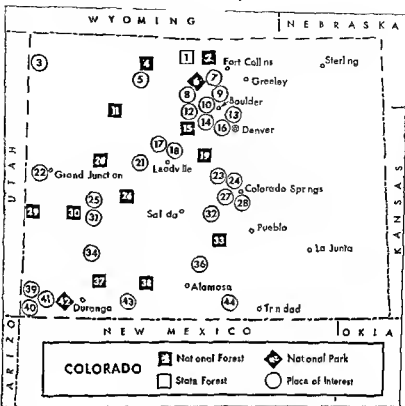
Dinosaur National Monument—in Utah and Colo rich  
fossil beds reached from Jensen Utah (3)

Estes Park—gateway to Rocky Mt Natl Park (7)

Four Corners—in southwest corner only spot in U S  
where 4 states meet—Colo Utah Ariz N Mex (40)

Garden of the Gods—weird red sandstone formations in  
lovely area near Colorado Springs (24)

Gilman—one of largest zinc mines in the world (17)



Grand Lake—large glacial lake and resort area (8)  
Great Sand Dunes National Monument—desert of ever  
shifting dunes 33 miles northeast of Alamosa (38)  
Gunnison Diversion Tunnel—tunnel 6 miles  
long 7 miles east of Montrose (31)  
Hovenweep National Monument—4 groups of prehis-  
toric ruins in Colorado and Utah 2 in Colorado  
located 3 mi s west of Cortez (30)  
Leadville—one of highest cities in U S (almost two mi  
above sea level) in rich mining region (18)  
Lookout Mountain—rock tomb of Buffalo Bill Cody at  
summit Cody Memorial Museum near Golden (16)  
Moffat Tunnel—61 mi tunnel under James P. Alloua  
tunnel distance Denver to Salt Lake City 176 mi (12)  
Monument Lake—hunting fishing near Trinidad (44)  
Mount of the Holy Cross—huge cross formed by snow  
filled crevices on mountainside near Glenwood (1)  
Pagosa Springs—hot mineral medicinal springs (43)  
Park of the Red Rocks—natural theater nr Denver (13)  
Petrified Forest—Florissant red sandstone trees (23)  
Pikes Peak—Colorado Springs famous landmark cog  
railway and highway ascend to Summit House (21)  
Royal Gorge—canyon of Arkansas R. spanned by world's  
highest suspension bridge near Canon City (37)  
Shadow Mountain National Recreation Area—reservoirs  
of Colorado-Big Thompson Project north of (8)  
Steamboat Springs—hunting fishing winter sports (5)  
Will Rogers Shrine of the Sun—on Cheyenne Mt (28)  
Yucca House National Monument—prehistoric Indian  
village mostly buried in earth mounds near Cortez (41)

\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map

# Colorado Fact Summary

## THE PEOPLE BUILD THEIR STATE

- 1541—Coronado, returning to Mexico from fruitless search for rich Indian cities, probably crosses what is now southeast Colorado.
- 1706—Juan de Ulibarri takes formal possession of area for Spain.
- 1720—Pedro de Villasur of New Mexico leads unsuccessful expedition against French traders reported to be in the region.
- 1739—Paul and Pierre Mallet, Frenchmen, cross southeastern Colorado en route to New Mexico.
- 1762—France cedes to Spain all claims west of Mississippi River; France secretly regains possession in 1800
- 1765—Juan Maria Rivera hunts gold in Colorado.
- 1776—Friar Silvestre Vélez de Escalante and Friar Francisco Domínguez cross western Colorado in search of route from New Mexico to California.
- 1799—French explorer Jean de la Maisonveuve visits present site of Denver.
- 1803—Louisiana Purchase makes eastern part of Colorado American territory. Trappers (mountain men) begin to enter region.
- 1806—Zebulon Pike leads exploring party up Arkansas River; discovers peak later named for him. Pike goes too far west; Spaniards arrest him in 1807.
- 1819—Treaty with Spain gives U. S. part of present Colorado north of Arkansas River and east of Continental Divide.
- 1820—Stephen H. Long and party of scientists explore much of what is now Colorado.
- 1821—Western Colorado becomes part of Mexico as Mexico becomes independent of Spain.
- 1828—William Bent and partners begin to build Bent's Fort, now La Junta, finishing it in 1832. Fort becomes center for such famous scouts as Jim Bridger and Kit Carson. Fort is abandoned, 1852; Bent builds new one at Fort Lyon.
- 1836—Texas claims part of Colorado region from Mexico; issue becomes one of causes of Mexican War. Louis Vasques and Andrew Sublette build post for Rocky Mountain Fur Company near site of Denver; post captured and looted by Arapaboes in 1842.
- 1840—Cheyenne, Arapaho, Kiowa, and Comanche Indians meet in council on Arkansas River; form Four Nation Alliance to fight white settlers.
- 1842—First of three major expeditions led by John C. Frémont crosses Colorado; last coming in 1853.
- 1848—By Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, ending Mexican War, Mexico cedes western Colorado to U. S. Western Colorado region incorporated into New Mexico and Utah territories; eastern part belonged to Nebraska and Kansas territories.
- 1851—First permanent white settlement in Colorado made at San Luis.
- 1852—Fort Massachusetts, first U. S. military post in area, established in San Luis Valley, but is soon abandoned for Fort Garland nearby. Gold discovered near mouth of Clear Creek.
- 1854—Ute Indians attack Fort Pueblo, killing most of settlers there.
- 1855—Indians attack Spanish colony at Guadalupe but are defeated.
- 1858—Gold discovered on South Platte River near present site of Denver; state constitution drafted but is not approved. Settlers organize movement to form Jefferson Territory; unrecognized "territorial government" exists until 1861.



- 1859—Thousands of prospectors swarm into Colorado in Pikes Peak gold rush. J. H. Gregory discovers gold vein near present Central City. Pikes Peak Express begins stage service from Leavenworth, Kan., to Denver.
- 1861—Congress creates Colorado Territory, February 28, along present boundaries of state; capital, Colorado City; governor, William Gilpin. Arapahoe and Cheyenne Indians by treaty cede most of their territory in Colorado. University of Colorado authorized; opens at Boulder, 1877.
- 1862—First oil in territory discovered near Florence. Golden becomes territorial capital.
- 1863—Telegraph links Denver and the East.
- 1864—U. S. troops attack Arapaho and Cheyenne Indians at Sand Creek. Colorado Seminary, now Denver University, founded.
- 1866—President Andrew Johnson vetoes Colorado statehood measure passed by Congress.
- 1867—Denver named permanent capital of territory.
- 1868—Cheyenne Indians defeated on Arickaree River at battle of Beecher Island, virtually ending Indian war. Utes assigned to southwestern Colorado, but soon white settlers clamor for admission to area. Utes cede mineral-rich San Juan district, 1873. First smelter in Colorado built at Blackhawk.
- 1870—Denver and Pacific Railway links Denver with Cheyenne, Wyo., and Union Pacific Railway. Union Colony, co-operative agricultural settlement, established by Nathan C. Meeker at Greeley, named for Horace Greeley, project's sponsor.
- 1872—Denver and Rio Grande Railway completed to Pueblo.
- 1874—Southern Cheyennes surrender; resettled in Oklahoma. Colorado College founded, Colorado Springs.
- 1875—Constitutional convention meets at Denver.
- 1876—Colorado admitted to the Union, August 1; capital, Denver; governor, John L. Routt.
- 1877—Lead and silver boom begins at Leadville.
- 1879—Utes attack settlers at White River Agency; are defeated and removed to Utah, 1881.
- 1891—Gold discovered at Cripple Creek.
- 1896—State Capitol building in Denver finished.
- 1899—Sugar-beet culture introduced from Germany. First sugar-beet factory built at Grand Junction. Denver's pioneering Juvenile Court established.
- 1906—U. S. Mint at Denver begins operations. Mesa Verde National Park created.
- 1909—Gunnison Diversion Tunnel opened for irrigation of Uncompaggre Valley.
- 1910—Initiative, referendum, direct primary adopted.
- 1914—Mine strike at Ludlow leads to passage of progressive labor laws, 1915.
- 1915—Rocky Mountain National Park created.
- 1927—Moffat Tunnel under Continental Divide opens.
- 1934—Dotsero cutoff through Moffat Tunnel puts Denver on direct transcontinental rail route.
- 1937—Colorado-Big Thompson irrigation project authorized.
- 1947—Alva B. Adams Transmountain Tunnel for water opened from Grand Lake to Big Thompson River.
- 1948—New State Department of Education created.
- 1949—Goethe Bicentennial celebrated at Aspen.
- 1951—Work begins on atomic plant on Rocky Flats south of Boulder. State regulates rain making.
- 1952—Colorado Valley Highway, four-lane road between Denver and Colorado Springs, opens.
- 1953—Denver-Boulder Turnpike, a toll road, completed.

## COLORADO

COUNTIES			Andres	19 N 6	Cahoon	375 L 4	Doyleville	105 F 8	Gilcrest	490 H 2
Adams	40 234	L 3	Antimas	2 500 D 8	Camro	100 C 4	Drake	70 J 2	Gill	375 K 2
Alamosa	10 531 H 7	Anthracite		E 3	Campion	J 2	Dunton	O 7	Glisan	300 G 3
Arapahoe	52 125 L 7	Antlers	150 D 3	Campo	266 O 8	Dupont	400 K 3	Glade Park	250 B 3	
Archuleta	3 300 E 8	Anton	50 N 3	Canfield	65 J 2	Durango	7 459 D 8	Glade Haven	40 H 2	
Baca	7 964 O 6	Antonito	1 253 H 8	Canon City	6 345 J 6	Eda	1 015 O 6	Glendevue	15 H 1	
Bent	6 775 N 7	Arapahoe	1 783 P 5	Canon		Engle	445 F 8	Greenleaf	5 H 4	
Boulder	48 290 J 2	Arbores	108 E 8	Carleton		Earl		Greenwood		
Chaffee	7 168 G 2	Arlington	25 N 3	Carbondale	441 E 4	East Canon	761 J 6	Hopkins	2 412 E 4	
Cherokee	3 458 O 5	Armed		Carlton	n 5 P 4	Eastlake	194 K 3	Golden	5 238 J 3	
Clear Creek	3 259 H 3	Arroyo		Cascade	95 K 1	Eaton	1 276 K 2	Goldfield	81 J 5	
Concepcion	10 171 G 6	Arriba	367 N 4	Castle Rock	741 K 4	Eckert		Good Pasture	48 K 6	
Costilla	6 067 J 8	Arroyo	350 B 6	Cedar		Edgewater	2 540 J 3	Gordon	30 N 2	
Crowley	5 252 M 6	Artesia	291 B 2	Cedarbridge	574 D 5	Edison	15 L 5	Gould	150 G 2	
Custer	1 573 J 6	Arvada	2 359 J 3	Cedarwood	85 K 7	Edler		Gowanda	12 K 2	
Delta	17 365 D 5	Aspen	916 F 4	Center	3 024 G 7	Edwards		Granada	551 P 2	
Denver	415 766 A 3	Association Camp	J 2	Central City	371 J 3	Egnar	35 B 7	Granby	463 H 6	
Dolores	1 966 K 7	Atwood	200 N 1	Chama		Elba	25 N 3	Grand Junction		
Douglas	3 507 K 4	Anik	566 K 3	Chaw	174 N 6	Elbert	200 L 4		14 504 C 4	
East	4 464 F 3	Aurora	11 471 F 3	Cherry Hills		Eldora		Grand Lake	309 H 2	
El Paso	74 253 K 5	Avon	60 F 3	Village	750 K 3	Elizabeth	253 K 4	Grand Mesa		
Elbert	4 477 L 4	Avondale	15 L 6	Chryenne		Elk Springs	35 C 2	Grand Valley	296 D 4	
Fremont	13 366 J 5	Axial		D 2	Wells	1 184 P 5		Geanite	73 O 4	
Gafield	11 625 C 3	Ayer	7 M 7	Chimney Rock	100 E 8	Elwell	40 K 2	Graft	25 H 2	
Gilpin	6 650 H 3	Bailly	75 H 4	Chivington		Empire	275 H 3	Greely	20 354 H 4	
Grand	3 963 G 2	Barrel	9 L 6	Chromo	200 F 6	Englewood	16 869 K 3	Green Mountain		
Gunnison	6 716 E 6	Barnevillie	36 L 2	Clamaroo	150 D 6	Ene	937 K 3	Falls	106 K 5	
Hinsdale	263 E 7	Barre Lake	100 K 6	Clark		Escalante Forks		Greenhorn	20 K 7	
Huerfano	10 549 K 7	Barlett	30 P 8	Clarksville	4 P 2			Greenland	76 K 4	
Jackson	1 976 G 1	Basalt	177 E 4	Clifton	990 O 4	Ertes Park	1 617 E 2	Greenwood	2 J 6	
Jefferson	66 687 J 8	Battle Creek	18 E 1	Climax	739 O 4	Eureka	662 K 2	Greystone	2 E 1	
Kiowa	3 003 O 6	Bayfield	833 D 8	Coal Creek	195 J 8	Evans	806 J 4	Guffey	90 H 3	
Kit Carson	8 600 O 4	Bedrock	15 B 6	Coaldale	130 H 8	Evergreen	476 H 4	Gulnare	200 K 6	
La Plata	14 830 D 8	Beechre Island	30 P 3	Coalmoat	26 P 1	Fowler	300 K 6	Gunnison	2 770 E 6	
Lake	6 150 O 4	Bellvue	300 J 1	Coledale	214 K 6	Falco		Gypsum	345 F 3	
Larimer	43 554 H 1	Bennett	272 L 3	Colbran	237 O 4	Falls	26 C 7	Hishas Peak		
Las Animas	23 900 L 8	Berthoud	867 J 2	Colosa	125 D 6	Pall Creek	129 J 7	Hale	240 P 3	
Lincoln	8 909 M 1	Berthoud Pass	H 3	Colorado		Farista	22 K 3	Hamilton	23 D 2	
Logan	17 187 N 1	Bethune	71 F 4	Springs	45 472 K 6	Farmers Spur	22 K 3	Hardin	L 2	
Mesa	39 974 B 5	Brulash		Colombiana		Farr		Harmony	16 J 2	
Mineral	696 F 7	Big Bend	30 O 8	Cogo	38 H 4	Federal		Harrsburg	6 N 8	
Monte	6 946 C 1	Black Forest	10 K 4	Cogges		Helights	173 K 3	Hartman	181 P 6	
Montezuma	9 991 B 8	Black Hawk	166 J 6	Cope	145 O 2	Fresno	297 K 2	Hartel	66 H 4	
Montrose	16 270 O 6	Blanca	376 E 6	Copper Spur	35 F 2	Frisco	30 O 6	Hastings	500 K 6	
Morone	18 074 M 2	Blende	675 K 6	Cornish	146 L 2	Fitzsimons	6 000 K 3	Hasty	O 8	
Otero	23 276 M 7	Blme Mountain	4 B 2	Cortes	2 650 B 6	Flagler	793 N 4	Haswell	163 N 6	
Ouray	2 103 D 6	Bonanza	61 G 6	Cory		Fleming	377 O 1	Haxton	1 008 O 1	
Park	1 870 H 4	Boncarbo	97 K 8	Coutepari	210 H 5	Florence	2 773 J 6	Haybo	150 F 2	
Phillips	4 024 P 1	Bond	125 F 3	Cowdroy		Floresant	53 J 6	Hayden	767 E 2	
Pitkin	1 548 F 4	Bond		Craig	3 040 D 2	Fonda	9 L 4	Hebron	40 K 1	
Prowers	14 836 P 6	Bond	463 L 6	Crawford	170 D 5	Forde	26 M 5	Henderson	100 L 3	
Pueblo	80 185 K 6	Boulder	10 999 J 2	Creede	503 E 7	Fort Collins		Hanford	60 K 8	
Rio Blanco	4 719 C 3	Bountiful	100 O 8	Crested Butte	730 E 6		14 937 J 1	Hesperona	6 C 6	
Rio Grande	12 632 O 2	Bovina	21 N 4	Crestone	72 H 7	Fort Garland		Higbee	6 M 7	
Routt	6 940 E 1	Bowie	250 D 5	Cripple Creek	653 J 5	Fort Lupton	1 907 H 2	Hill Top	10 K 4	
Saguache	5 664 O 6	Bovero	36 N 5	Critchell	75 J 4	Fort Morgan	5 312 M 2	Hillrose	190 N 2	
San Juan	1 471 D 7	Bracewell	5 K 2	Crook	39 O 1	Fountain		Hillside	20 H 6	
San Miguel	2 693 C 6	Brandon	50 L 6	Cross Mountain	18 B 2	Fountain	713 E 5	Hoehne	506 L 6	
Sedgwick	5 095 P 1	Branson	157 M 8	Crowley	372 J 6	Fowler	1 025 L 6	Holly	1 236 P 6	
Summit	1 135 G 3	Breakenridge	296 C 4	Cuharsa Camps		Forxton		Holyoke	1 553 P 1	
Teller	2 751 J 5	Breed	29 H 5	Dacomo	253 K 2	Franktown	25 K 4	Honolake	250 G 7	
Washington	7 520 N 3	Breen	C 8	Dalley	90 O 1	Fraser	400 H 3	Hopper	103 H 7	
Weid	67 504 L 1	Briggs	69 C 4	De Beque	253 C 4	Frederick	599 H 2	Hot Sulphur		
Yuma	10 827 P 2	Brigsdale	200 L 1	De Nova		Freeman	100 G 7	Springs	263 H 2	
CITIES AND TOWNS			Brighton	4 338 K 3	Devers	4 J 4	Freshwater		Hotchkiss	715 D 3
Abarr	8 O 3	Brookside	250 P 6	Deer Trail	471 M 3	(Guffey)	20 H 5	Howard	210 H 6	
Ackman	B 7	Brookvale	175 H 6	Del Norte	2 046 O 7	Frisco	67 C 3	Howardsville	20 E 2	
Adams City	800 K 3	Brush	245 J 6	Delacarta	239 K 6	Fruita	1 453 B 4	Hoyt	250 L 7	
Aduna	M 2	Buckere	37 J 1	Delid	35 M 7	Fruitvale	2 275 B 4	Hughes	365 A 3	
Agate	134 M 4	Buckingham	36 L 1	Delta	4 097 D 5	Galata	90 K 1	Hugo	943 N 4	
Agulias	1 033 K 8	Buena Vista	783 G 5	DENVER		Oalton	3 40 J 3	Husted	30 K 4	
Akron	1 605 N 2	Buffalo Creek	50 J 3	Deora	415 786 K 3	Garda		Ilye	O 2	
Alamosa	6 354 H 8	Buford	30 M 4	Derby	2 840 K 3	Gardner City	104 L 1	Hydrate	72 J 2	
Albionpark	100 J 2	Burlington	2 247 F 3	Devine	116 L 6	Gardner	200 J 7	Hygiene	200 J 2	
Allison	105 G 4	Burns	200 F 3	Dillon	180 H 3	Garfield	100 O 5	Idaho Springs		
Alma	149 G 1	Byers	200 F 3	Divide	50 J 8	Gary	6 M 2			
Almont	P 5	Caddoa	32 O 8	Dolores	729 C 3	Gateway	250 B 5	Idalia	74 P 3	
Amherst	101 P 8	Cabone	103 B 7	Dotsero	6 E 3	Genoa	257 N 4	Ignacio	526 D 6	
Amity				Dove Creek	702 A 7	Georgetown	329 H 3	Iliff	235 N 1	

A 109° B 30° C 108° D 30° E 107° F 30° G 106° H

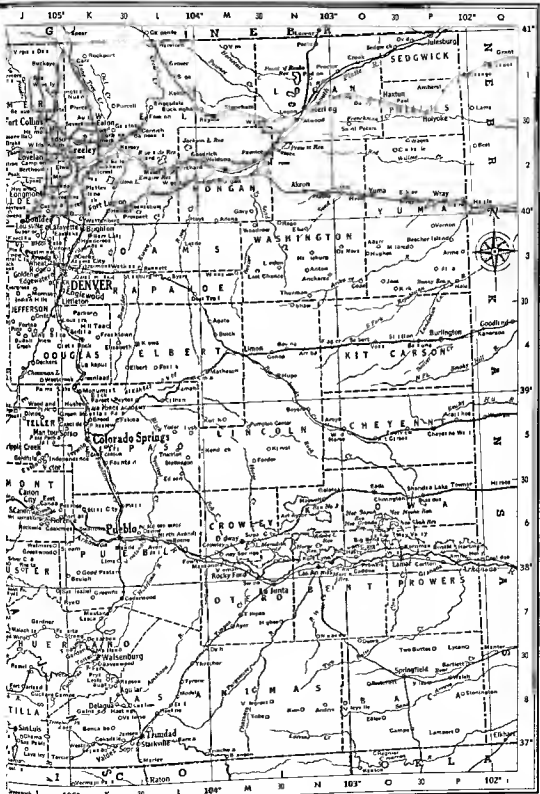
# COLORADO

SCALE IN MILES  
0 5 10 20 40

State Capitals    County Seats    Canals    Railroads



A 109° B 30° C 108° D 30° E 107° F 30° G 106° West H





# COLORADO—Continued

Independence	20	K 5	Malta	25	G 4	Padroni	153	N 1	Roggen	150	L 2	Thatcher		L 7
Indian Hills	300	J 3	Manassa	832	H 8	Pagoda		E 2	Romco	404	G 8	Thurman	10	N 3
Iola	50	E 6	Mancoas	785	C 8	Pagosa Jct		E 8	Rosedale	57	*K 2	Tiffany	200	D 8
Ione	100	K 2	Manitou			Pagosa			Rosita	20	J 6	Tiger	8	G 3
Irondale	325	K 3	Manitou Springs	2,580	J 5	Palsade	1,379	E 8	Routt	50	E 2	Timmath	177	J 2
Ironton	6	*D 7	Manzanola	543	M 6	Palmside	861	C 4	Rowena	3	J 2	Timpas	50	M 7
Ivywild	2,849	K 5	Marble	8	E 4	Palmer Lake	263	J 4	Ruedi	25	F 4	Tioga	250	K 7
Jamestown	118	J 2	Marshall Pass	S	G 6	Pando	17	G 4	Rugby		K 8	Tobe		M 8
Jansen	1,500	K 8	Marvel	110	C 8	Paoli	91	P 1	Rush	18	L 5	Tolland	10	H 3
Jaroso	250	H 8	Marvine	25	D 2	Paonia	1,257	D 5	Russell	43	J 7	Toltec	180	K 7
Jefferson	75	H 4	Masonville		J 2	Paradox	50	B 6	Rye	166	K 7	Toponas	250	F 2
Joos	109	O 3	Massadonna	3	B 2	Parikdale	20	H 6	Saguache	1,024	G 6	Towaoc		B 8
Johnstown	897	K 2	Masters		L 2	Parker	132	K 4	Saint Elmo		G 5	Towner	150	P 6
Julesburg	1,951	P 1	Matheson	100	M 4	Parlin	50	F 6	Saint Peters	200	O 2	Trail Ridge		H 2
Juniper Springs	6	D 2	May Valley	20	O 6	Parsball	81	G 2	Salida	4,553	H 6	Trimble		
Karval	90	N 5	Maybell	106	C 2	Pawnee		M 2	Sams	15	D 6	Springs	30	D 8
Kearns		E 8	McClave	125	O 6	Peagreen	10	C 5	San Acacio	135	H 8	Trinchera	90	M 8
Keenesburg	432	L 2	McClure			Peckham	40	K 2	San Isabel	25	K 7	Trinidad	12,204	L 8
Kelun	50	J 2	Ranch	25	F 4	Peezy	232	N 1	San Luis	1,239	J 8	Trontville	16	F 4
Kendrick	14	M 5	McCoy		F 3	Penrose	90	K 6	San Pablo		J 8	Truckton	20	L 5
Keota	21	L 1	McElmo	50	B 8	Peyton		K 4	Sanford	666	H 8	Trump	25	H 5
Kersey	304	L 2	McGregor	25	E 2	Phillipsburg	360	F 2	Sapinero	30	E 6	Tungsten	6	H 3
Kum	475	N 8	McPhee	30	C 7	Piedra		E 8	Sargents	135	F 6	Twin Lakes	60	G 4
King's Canyon		G 1	Mead	186	K 2	Pierce	372	K 1	San Pit	20	D 7	Two Buttes	121	P 7
Kiowa	173	L 4	Meeker	1,658	D 2	Pikeview	300	K 5	Sedalia		K 4	Tyrene	50	L 8
Kirk	125	P 3	Meredith	25	F 4	Pine	75	J 4	Sedgwick	332	O 1	Utravan	700	B 6
Kit Carson	379	O 5	Merino	209	N 2	Pine River Dam		E 8	Segundo	300	K 8	Ute	9	C 6
Kokomo	53	G 4	Mesa	300	C 4	Pinecliffe	25	J 3	Seibert	346	O 4	Utleyville		B 8
Koraman	75	O 6	Mesa Verde			Pinon	65	K 6	Severance	108	K 1	Valdez	700	K 5
Kremmling	623	G 2	Nat'l Park	106	C 8	Pitkin	152	F 5	Shaffers Cross.	40	J 4	Vallorso	90	K 8
Kutch	3	M 5	Mesita		H 8	Placerville	50	D 6	Shaw	4	N 3	Vanadium	2	O 7
La Garita		G 7	Messier	25	N 2	Plainview	100	J 3	Shawnee		H 4	Vernon		P 3
La Jara	912	H 6	Mildred	3	O 3	Plateau City	20	D 4	Sheephorn		G 3	Victor	654	J 8
La Junta	7,712	M 7	Milliken	510	K 2	Platner	49	N 2	Sheridan	1,715	*K 3	Vilas	132	P 8
La Salle	797	K 2	Miner	150	F 2	Platteville	570	K 2	Sheridan Lake	100	P 6	Villa Grove	200	G 6
La Saucos		H 5	Mineral Hot			Poncha Sprs.	114	G 6	Sidney		F 2	Villegreen	150	M 8
La Veta	701	J 8	Springs	10	G 6	Portland	205	K 6	Silca	3	J 4	Vim	6	M 1
Lafayette	2,090	K 3	Minutia	509	G 3	Portland	16	D 6	Siloam	16	K 6	Vineland	200	E 6
Laird	155	P 2	Model	300	L 8	Powderhorn	90	E 6	Silt	361	D 4	Virginia Dale	100	J 1
Lake City	141	E 6	Moffat	109	H 6	Price Creek	2	C 2	Silver Cliff	217	J 6	Vona	209	O 4
Lake George	30	J 5	Mogote	150	G 8	Pritchett	286	O 8	Silver Plume	136	H 3	Vroman		M 6
Lakeside	46	*J 3	Molina		D 4	Proctor	40	N 1	Silverton	1,375	D 7	Wages	35	P 2
Lamar	6,829	O 6	Monarch	13	G 5	Prospect	62	L 2	Sinla	424	M 4	Wagon		
Lamport		O 8	Monte Vista	3,272	G 7	Prospect			Skyway		C 4	Wheel Gap		F 7
Laporte	500	J 1	Montezuma	48	H 3	Heights	50	*J 6	Slater	15	E 1	Walden	696	G 1
Larkspur	200	K 4	Montrose	4,964	D 6	Provers	36	O 6	Sligo		L 1	Walsenburg	5,586	K 7
Lark Animas	3,223	N 6	Monument	126	K 4	Pryor	25	K 8	Snowmass	200	E 4	Walsh	897	P 8
Lascar		K 7	Morley	300	L 8	Pueblo	63,655	K 6	Snyder	250	M 2	Ward	10	H 2
Last Chance	25	M 3	Morrison	306	J 3	Pumpkin Center		M 5	Somerset		E 5	Watkins	85	K 3
Lavalley		J 8	Mosca	130	H 7	Purcell	30	K 1	Sopris	1,330	K 8	Wattenberg		K 2
Lawson	200	H 3	Mount Harris	700	E 2	Radium	20	F 3	South Canon			Waunita Hot		
Lay		D 2	Mountain			Ragged Mountain		E 4		1,588	J 6	Springs	80	G 6
Lazear	100	D 5	View	878	*J 3	Rago		N 3	South Fork		F 7	Waverly	20	J 1
Leader	67	L 3	Mustang	10	K 7	Ramah	142	L 4	Spicer	10	F 2	Weldona	300	M 2
Leadville	4,081	G 4	Nathrop		H 5	Rand	30	G 2	Spikebuck		H 5	Wellington	541	K 1
Lebanon	150	C 8	Naturita	500	B 6	Rangely	808	B 2	Springfield	2,041	O 8	Westchile	390	H 6
Leonard	10	C 6	Nederland	266	H 3	Rapson	50	K 8	Starkville	1,000	L 8	Westcrest		J 4
Lester	19	K 8	Nevadaville	6	*H 3	Ravenwood		K 7	State Bridge	2	F 3	Westminster	1,656	J 3
Lewis	50	B 7	New Castle	483	E 3	Raymer (New			Steamboat			Weston	500	K 8
Lime	22	K 6	New Raymer	130	M 1	Raymer)	130	M 1	Springs	1,913	F 2	Wetmore	100	J 6
Limon	1,471	M 4	Nmaview	2	N 7	Read		D 5	Stellwagon	2	L 5	Wheat Ridge	7,000	J 3
Lindon	29	N 3	Niwot	160	J 2	Recon			Sterling	7,534	N 1	Whitewater	150	C 5
Littleton	3,378	K 3	North Avondale	22	L 6	(Kokomo)	53	G 4	Stone City	75	K 6	Wiggins	400	L 2
Livermore	150	J 1	North Creede		F 7	Red Feather			Stoneham	75	M 1	Wild Horse	60	N 5
Log Cabin		N 1	Northdale	50	B 7	Lakes	93	H 1	Stoner	2	C 7	Wilds	25	J 2
Loma	400	B 4	Nortonville	25	G 8	Red Wing	16	J 7	Stonington	44	P 8	Wiley	417	O 6
Longmont	8,099	J 2	Norwood	294	C 6	Redcliff	556	G 4	Strasburg	520	L 3	Willard	29	M 1
Longs Peak	7	J 2	Nucia	457	B 6	Redmesa		C 8	Stratton	720	O 4	Williamsburg	65	J 6
Longview		J 4	Nunn	162	K 1	Redstone	50	E 4	Strong	20	K 7	Willow Creek		E 2
Louisville	1,978	J 3	Oak Creek	1,488	F 2	Redvale	70	B 6	Sugar City	527	M 6	Windsor	1,548	J 3
Louviers	250	K 4	Oak Grove	35	C 6	Rex		J 1	Sugar Loaf	6	J 2	Winnview		M 2
Loveland	6,773	J 2	Ohio	40	F 5	Rico	212	C 7	Summitville	4	G 8	Winter Park	100	H 3
Loyd	82	D 2	Olathe	810	D 5	Ridgway	209	D 6	Superior	134	J 3	Woodland Park	50	F 3
Lucerne	100	K 2	Olney Springs	279	M 6	Riffe	1,525	D 3	Swallow	29	C 1			
Ludlow	200	L 8	Ophir	2	D 7	Riland	25	E 3	Swinck	336	M 7	Woodrow		M 3
Lycan	6	P 7	Orchard	956	L 2	Rio Blanco	3	C 3	Tabernash	260	H 3	Woody Creek	7	F 4
Lyons	689	J 2	Ordway	1,290	M 6	Roach		G 1	Tacoma	17	D 7	Wray	2,195	P 2
Mack	185	B 4	Ortiz		H 8	Rockport	2	K 1	Telluride	1,101	D 7	Yampa	421	F 7
Maher		D 5	Otis	532	O 2	Rockvale	380	J 6	Tennessee Pass	25	G 4	Yellow Jacket	30	L 8
Maitland		K 7	Oura	1,089	D 6	Rockwood	15	D 8	Tercio	110	J 8	Yoder		O 2
Malachite		J 7	Oxford	664	P 1	Rocky Ford			Texas Creek	25	H 6	Yuma	1,905	O 2
					D 8		4,087	M 6						

\*No room on map for name.

West of the Rocky Mountain National Park lies Shadow Mountain National Recreation Area. It features Shadow Mountain Lake and Granby Reservoir, two units of the Colorado-Big Thompson Project for irrigation and power.

Another national park, Mesa Verde, contains well preserved homes and relics of the Cliff Dwellers. They were Indians who built elaborate community homes high up on the sides of cliffs to escape their enemies (see Cliff Dwellers).

Other scenic wonders are mountain ranges—the eastern Front Range, the central Park and Sawatch ranges, San Geronimo in the south and San Juan in the southwest. The highest peak is Mount Elbert (14,331 feet).

In the Front Range is the spectacular Royal Gorge, west of Canon City. The world's highest suspension bridge spans the canyon 1,053 feet above the Arkansas River. Another gorge is the Black Canyon of the Gunnison, a national monument. Other monuments preserve varied attractions from dinosaur relics to sand dunes (see Colorado Fact Summary, National Parks).

An interesting natural park area is the Garden of the Gods near Colorado Springs. This 'garden' has many strange and beautifully colored rock formations carved by the weather. Among them are twin pinnacles called the Dutch Wedding and a huge mushroomlike boulder named Balanced Rock.

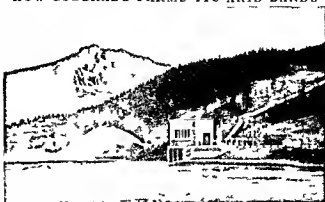
**Prosperous Farms through Irrigation**  
Agriculture is by far Colorado's major source of wealth. The wide range of soils, temperature and rainfall permits a great variety of crops. Wheat, the leading field crop, is grown principally in the eastern plains area. Hay is produced throughout the state, but mainly in the north and northwest sections.

Sugar beets and potatoes are grown chiefly on irrigated farms. In average years, Colorado is second only to California in sugar beet output and yields about one fifth of the nation's crop.

Cattle raising is the largest single source of agricultural income. Milk, sheep and hogs are also among the important farm products. Colorado raises fruit chiefly peaches and apples and a variety of truck crops of high quality.

Because of light rainfall and its uneven distribution throughout the year, Colorado has made notable use of irrigation projects. Today the state has about 3 million acres of irrigated land or

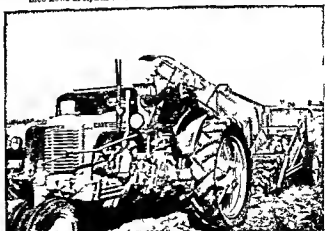
## HOW COLORADO FARMS ITS ARID LANDS



In Colorado's dry climate irrigation is vital for many crops. The Colorado-Big Thompson Project diverts water from the western slope of the Rockies into a tunnel under the Continental Divide to irrigate land on the eastern slope.



Irrigation water reaches a farm in a concrete-lined ditch. The precious water then flows in siphon tubes into the furrows and to the thirsty plants.



Sugar beets are the largest crop grown under irrigation in the state. This machine, drawn by a tractor, picks up and loads the sugar beets into a truck.

COLORADO'S MOST NOTED MOUNTAIN



Pikes Peak is an isolated mountain offering a superb view. The road to its summit is the state's second highest highway.

11 per cent of the national total. The state also has nearly 20,000 miles of irrigation canals.

Most of the state's large irrigation systems are on or near the South Platte and Arkansas rivers in the eastern plains section. In the plains region, irrigation helps cattle and sheep growers as well as vegetable farmers. Many irrigated districts are scattered through the central and western parts of the state.

The federal Bureau of Reclamation has built three of Colorado's greatest irrigation systems. In the Uncompahgre project in the west central part of the state, the six-mile Gunnison Tunnel east of Montrose draws water from the Gunnison River for use in the Uncompahgre Valley. Also in west central Colorado a dam near Grand Junction diverts water from the Colorado River into a 55-mile irrigation canal in the Grand Valley project. Most spectacular of the tunnels that carry water from the wet western slope of the Rockies to the drier eastern slope is the 13-mile Alva B. Adams Tunnel of the Colorado-Big Thompson Project in northern Colorado. (See Colorado River.)

Colorado's farms average about 833 acres, ranging from small truck gardens to huge livestock ranches of 1,000 acres and larger. In all, the state has more than 45,000 farms; about half are 180 acres or more. In Colorado's sugar-beet fields and on its vegetable farms, the owners require extra labor to harvest their crops. This labor is supplied largely by migrant workers of Russian, Italian, or Mexican extraction.

#### Manufacturing Enterprises and Cities

Colorado ranks 34th among the states in manufacturing. Some of its industries are important to the

entire nation. The most valuable of these is beet-sugar refining. In this Colorado is the leading state. Large sugar refineries are located in Denver and around Greeley, the center of the sugar-beet growing district.

Another large industry is the manufacture of iron and steel. Huge steelworks and rolling mills have made Pueblo the state's leading steel center. One of the largest rubber plants in the United States is in Denver.

The largest city in Colorado is Denver. It is also the state capital and a financial and industrial center (see Denver). Pueblo, the second largest city, is a manufacturing and trading center. It lies at the western fringe of the Great Plains.

Colorado Springs, the third city in size, is a beautiful health and recreational resort at the foot of Pikes Peak. Other major cities are Greeley, Boulder, Englewood, Fort Collins, Grand Junction, and Trinidad. Grand Junction is near the Utah border. The other five cities lie at or near the eastern face of the Rocky Mountains.

#### Coal Leads Gold and Silver among Minerals

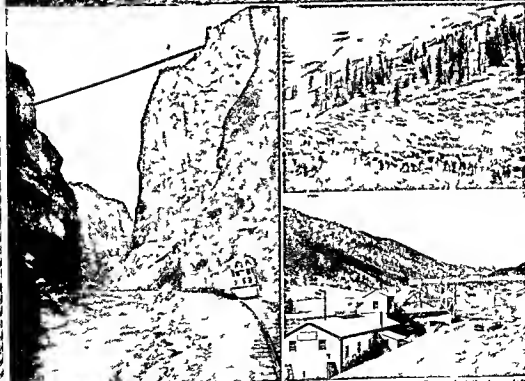
Colorado has more than 250 minerals. Historically, gold and silver have been the greatest sources of the state's income from minerals. Now, however, petroleum, molybdenum, coal, and zinc are the top minerals.

The state's petroleum comes chiefly from Rangley field in the northwest and from the Denver-Julesburg area. Colorado has the nation's largest oil-shale reserves, about 270 billion barrels. The United States Bureau of Mines operates an experimental refinery at Rifle. Colorado leads all states in molybdenum with the world's largest molybdenum mine at Climax. Coal is found on both sides of the Rockies. The state has the nation's greatest bituminous coal reserves, some 300 billion tons. Eagle, San Miguel, and Lake counties lead in zinc output. Almost all the uranium mined in the nation comes from deposits extending from southwestern Colorado into adjoining states. Vanadium production of the United States centers in the Colorado-Utah region. Other important minerals of Colorado are lead, sand and gravel, stone, and copper.

#### Development of Transportation

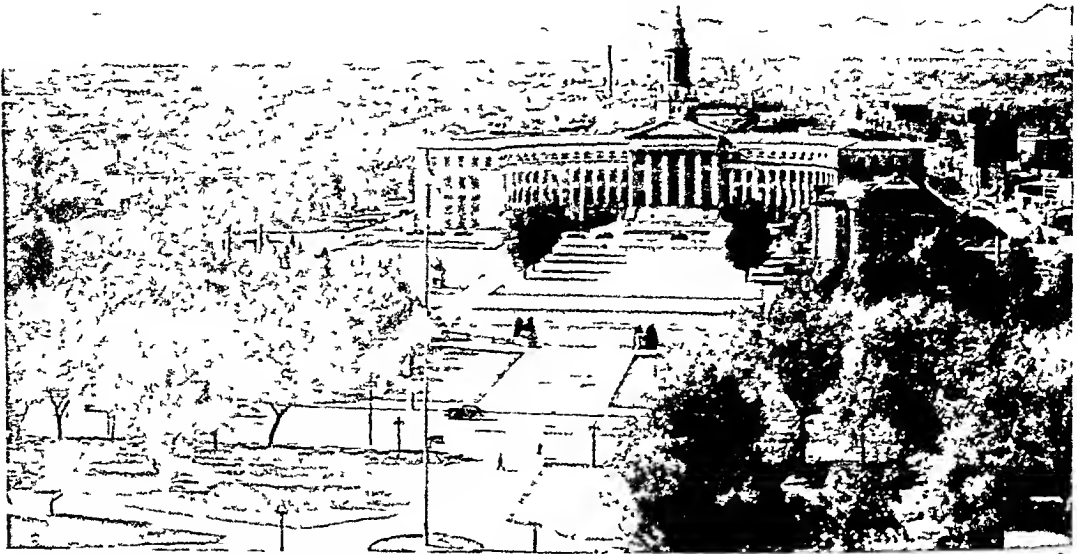
Horseback and covered wagon supplied the first transportation link with the East. Then in 1859 the Pikes Peak gold rush brought a stagecoach line between Leavenworth, Kan., and Denver. In 1870, a railroad linked Denver with Cheyenne, Wyo., on the new Union Pacific. The Santa Fe reached Pueblo from Kansas City in 1876. A line also had been built from Denver south to Pueblo, then west to Canon City.

Penetration of the mountainous western half of the state came as various finds of gold and silver provided incentive and means. The main route ran up the Arkansas River from Pueblo to the Continental Divide at Tennessee Pass, thence down the Colorado River valley to Utah. Narrow-gauge lines served the southwest and many mining centers. A route via Salida, Gunnison, and Grand Junction was open to Salt Lake



Only 14 miles from the heart of Denver the front range of the Rocky Mountains shrugs its rugged peaks from the plains. Pictured at the lower left is the Beartooth Zephyr racing along the Arkansas River through spectacular Royal Gorge. More than a thousand feet above a highway bridge spans the gorge. Sheep range in the high mountain meadows and mining is a among the leading industries.

DENVER THE "QUEEN CITY" AT THE FOOT OF THE ROCKIES



Denver's handsome City and County Building faces the State Capitol across the broad, formal lawns of the Civic Center Park.

A graceful clock tower houses the Speer Memorial Chimes. On the fourth floor of the building is the Denver Art Museum.

City in 1883. The Dotsero cutoff, completed in 1934 west from Denver to the old line at Dotsero, saved 176 miles of travel. It used the 6.1-mile Moffat Tunnel under the Continental Divide, finished in 1927.

The state's highway system includes 29 passes through the mountains. The Colorado Valley Highway, a four-lane superhighway between Denver and Colorado Springs, was completed in 1952. The Denver-Boulder Turnpike, a toll road, was opened in 1953.

#### Early History of the State

In 1541 Coronado entered the Colorado area (see Coronado). The United States acquired the eastern part through the Louisiana Purchase in 1803 (see Louisiana Purchase). Zebulon M. Pike discovered Pikes Peak in 1806. Major S. H. Long and Capt. John C. Frémont, guided by Kit Carson, also explored the

region (see Frémont; Carson). The western part was added in 1848 as a result of the Mexican War (see Mexican War).

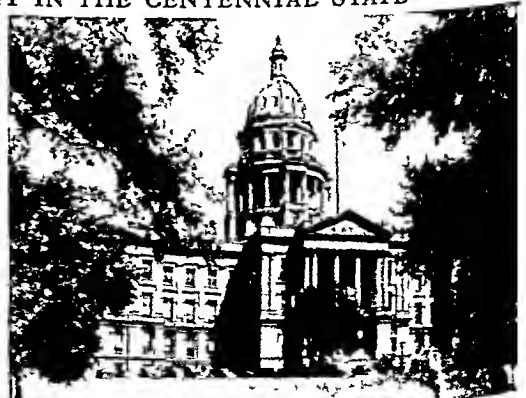
The mountains dampened interest until the discovery of gold in 1858. This led to settlement, organization as a territory, and finally to admission as a state. Thereafter the state experienced booms following discoveries of gold or silver, significant developments in agriculture and industry, and civic advances.

As mining camps gave way to towns and women and children joined the settlements, the state advanced rapidly in educational facilities. Colorado adopted woman suffrage in 1893 and the initiative and referendum in 1910. (See also Education section and chronology in Colorado Fact Summary; United State-sections "Great Plains" and "Rocky Mountains.")

#### EDUCATION AND GOVERNMENT IN THE CENTENNIAL STATE



Norlin Library of the University of Colorado located at Boulder is done in an interesting adaptation of Italian rural architecture.



The State Capitol at Denver is built of Colorado granite. Its gilded dome offers a fine view of the city and nearby mountains.

**COLORADO RIVER** The once wild Colorado is now a useful river. As it flowed through mountains and deserts in the southwestern United States it carved deep gorges, flooded the land and earned a reputation of evil. The world famous Grand Canyon is its handiwork. Flood-swollen when mountain snows melted in spring, the river was a sluggish stream in late summer.

Man, however, has tamed the Colorado. High dams, large reservoirs and long canals harness the river. Hoover Dam is the world's highest dam and second largest concrete dam in volume. It feeds back Lake Mead, which has the greatest capacity of any reservoir. The Colorado River Aqueduct, the world's longest, carries water to Los Angeles.

**Mountain Rimmed Basin of Plateaus and Deserts**

The Colorado begins in the Rocky Mountains in Colorado and flows southwest 1,400 miles to the Gulf of California in Mexico. Its 1,369 miles in the United States makes it the nation's fifth longest river. It falls about 10,000 feet in its course. Of its 9 million potential horsepower, one-fifth has been developed (see Water Power).

This huge drainage basin covers 242,000 square miles, or one-twelfth of the United States and another 3,000 square miles in Mexico. The Colorado and its tributaries drain southwestern Wyoming and western Colorado parts of Utah, Nevada, New Mexico and southern California, and almost all Arizona (see articles on each state and United States section on Western Basins and Plateaus).

In the northern three-quarters of the watershed are high plateaus with deep canyons. Bordering them on the west, north and east are the Rockies. The rest of the basin is a low desert with some mountains (see Deserts). In general, the basin is arid.

The Colorado is useless for transportation. The canyons and rapids of the upper basin are practically impassable, and the periodic high tides barge at its mouth hinder navigation (see Tide).

The 1½ million people of the basin are in a few mining and farming areas. Thus, one per cent of the nation's population lives in 8 per cent of its area. The largest cities are Phoenix and Tucson, Arizona, and Las Vegas, Nevada, all in the south. Three-fourths of the basin is federal land devoted to national forests and parks and Indian reservations.

Agriculture employs the most people, but mining produces the most wealth. Livestock raising is the main agricultural activity. Crops are grown mainly by irrigation (see Irrigation). Many minerals are found, chiefly copper, gold and silver in the south, and coal, oil and natural gas in the north. The climate and scenery draw many tourists to the area.

#### A 1,500-Mile Trip down the River

Many small streams cascade down the western slope of the Continental Divide in Rocky Mountain National Park in Colorado to form the Colorado River. The young river is immediately put to work. A dam holds it back in Granby Reservoir, a part of the unusual Colorado-Big Thompson project. Pumps lift

#### A TRIP DOWN THE WILD COLORADO



Here the Colorado and its chief tributary, the Green River, meet in Utah, unrelentingly wearing away their high-walled canyons.



Like a sculptor's chisel, the powerful Colorado has carved the fantastic Grand Canyon for more than 200 miles of its course.



Where the Colorado flows between Arizona and Nevada, high Hoover Dam holds the river back to form the great Lake Mead.

The turbulent Colorado River has carved a winding course in the arid Southwest. High in the Rocky Mountains of northwestern Colorado, mountain streams join to form this the fifth longest river in the nation. In the upper basin are lofty plateaus, with the Rockies on three sides. The rushing river has gouged out deep gorges with unbelievable Grand Canyon as its masterpiece. The lower part of the vast basin is desert land. Here engineers have raised a series of dams to check the river, among them Hoover Dam, one of the world's greatest engineering feats.



water from the reservoir into Shadow Mountain Lake from which it flows into Grand Lake. Here is the Shadow Mountain National Recreation Area. The 13-mile Alva B. Adams Tunnel then carries the water through the Divide to the eastern slope. Lakes and other tunnels connect this, the world's longest irrigation tunnel, with the Big Thompson River to provide power and irrigation. The Colorado thus waters the South Platte Valley as far east as Nebraska.

Below Granby Reservoir, the Colorado receives the Blue River, held back upstream by Green Mountain Dam. At Grand Junction, Colo., the Colorado meets the Gunnison. In southeastern Utah the Dolores and Green rivers join it. The 730-mile Green River, the largest tributary, is longer than the Colorado above

their junction. It rises in the Wind River Range in Wyoming. Above the junction with the Green, the Colorado was once called the Grand River.

In Glen Canyon the San Juan River merges with the Colorado. The river enters Arizona through majestic Marble Gorge. Here is Lees Ferry, the dividing line between the upper and lower basins.

Where the Little Colorado River pours into the Colorado, the river swings west through spectacular Grand Canyon (see Grand Canyon). Along its banks are Grand Canyon National Park and National Monument (see National Parks). Next to them is Lake Mead Recreation Area, a major tourist attraction. Lake Mead, 115 miles long, is on the Arizona-Nevada border. The Virgin River enters the lake through one

its arms Hoover Dam (once known as Boulder Dam) creates this vast lake which stores more than a two-year normal flow of the Colorado (see Dam)

This dam is the key structure for development of the lower Colorado. The Bureau of Reclamation finished it in 1936. A great engineering feat the dam controls floods and provides a stable water supply for southern California and southwestern Arizona. It is one of the largest power plants in the world. It also catches the tremendous load of salt carried by the river.

The Colorado turns south and separates Arizona from Nevada, California and Mexico. Farther south are Lake Mohave and Davis Dam, completed in 1949 for power and control of the discharge from Lake Mead.

Along the Arizona-California line is Havasu Lake and below the confluence of the Bill Williams and Colorado rivers stands Parker Dam, built in 1938. The dam supplies power and irrigation water and diverts water through the 242-mile Colorado River Aqueduct and the 71-mile San Diego Aqueduct to cities in California (see Aqueducts, Los Angeles). Downstream in California is the Palo Verde Valley irrigation district.

Just before the Gila joins the Colorado is Imperial Dam. Completed in 1938, it diverts water into Imperial Valley in southern California and to the Gila and Yuma projects in southwestern Arizona. Laguna Dam, built in 1909, controls Imperial Dam's tailwater.

Imperial Valley is a fertile savor below the river's level in the Colorado Desert. Ages ago it lay beneath the Gulf of California, but the river's delta cut it off from the gulf. The Imperial or Alamo Canal, completed in 1901 through Mexico, tapped the Colorado for the valley. In 1900 the river flooded the valley and converted a prehistoric sink into Salton Sea. It took two years to control the break. Hoover Dam now gives protection from floods.

The 80-mile All-American Canal, the nation's greatest irrigation ditch, carries water from Imperial Dam to the valley to make it a rich fruit and vegetable area. A branch of the 130-mile Coachella Canal supplies water to Coachella Valley northwest of Imperial Valley (see California).

The Gila River merges with the Colorado above Yuma. On this tributary is Coolidge Dam, and on its branch the Salt River are Stewart Mountain, Mormon Flat, Horse Mesa, and Roosevelt dams. Bartlett Dam is on Verde River, feeding into the Salt.

The Colorado then enters Mexico. Here Morelos Dam, completed in 1960, irrigates Sonoran Desert. The river crosses its large delta through Hardy River and empties into the Gulf of California.

#### Explored Early in the Nation's History

One of the early explorations of white men in North America was that of Colorado River. Spanish conquistadors came from Mexico and found the Indians using irrigation. Francisco de Ulloa reached the Colorado from the Gulf of California in 1539, but did not recognize it as a river. In 1540 Hernando de Alarcón was the first white man to discover and sail up the river. In the same year García López de Cárdenas of

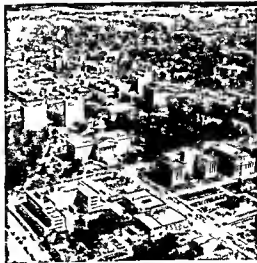
Coronado's party discovered the Grand Canyon (see Coronado). In 1776 Fathers Silvestre Vélez de Escalante and Francisco Atanasio Domínguez crossed the river in Glen Canyon. Also in 1776 Father Francisco Garcés named the river *Colorado* (Spanish for red) for its red mud. In 1857 Lieut. Joseph C. Ives navigated the Colorado from its mouth to Black Canyon. Major John Wesley Powell made the first trip through the Grand Canyon.

The division of the water among the seven states in the basin has been a difficult problem. In 1922 these states agreed to the Colorado River Compact for apportionment of the water between the upper and lower basins. The upper basin states divided their quota among themselves in 1949. The Mexican Water Treaty, ratified in 1945, guarantees Mexico a water supply from the Colorado. The International Boundary and Water Commission administers the treaty. **COLUMBIA**, S. C., South Carolina's capital. Columbia was established because the small farmers of the Piedmont (the higher country) wanted the seat of government removed from Charleston to the center of the state. The low-country planters reluctantly agreed, and in 1786 a site on the Congaree River was selected. The legislators named the town Columbia.

By 1795 the townsmen had built churches and established a newspaper and an academy. In 1801 the legislature chartered the present University of South Carolina as South Carolina College. Cotton manufacture still the city's main industry began in 1809.

During the Civil War, Columbia served the Confederates as a refugee center and manufactured munitions and currency. In February 1865 General Sherman's Union Army took the city, and about three quarters of it was destroyed by fire. Only after Wade Hampton

#### SOUTH CAROLINA'S CHIEF CITY



This Fairchild air view shows how the dome of Statehouse, the Capitol Building, dominates Columbia. Capital of South Carolina since 1786, Columbia is also the state's largest city.



was elected governor, in 1876, did economic recovery begin. Columbia is the headquarters for all state departments and for most of the federal agencies acting within the state. Besides the state university, it is the seat of a Lutheran seminary, a Bible college, a city college, and two colleges for Negroes. The capitol, called the State House, was begun in 1855. Two consecutive state fairs are held in October, the first for whites and the second for Negroes. The house in which Woodrow Wilson lived between the ages of 13 and 17 has been made a museum. Fort Jackson, an army post, lies five miles east of the city.

Columbia was incorporated as a town in 1805 and chartered a city in 1854. Its manufactures include cotton textiles, cottonseed oil, and ceramics. The council-manager form of government was established in 1950. (See also South Carolina.) Population (1950 census), 86,914.

**COLUMBIA RIVER.** The Pacific Northwest's greatest resource is the Columbia River and its tributaries. It is the largest source of hydroelectric power in North America. Its waters irrigate and make fertile vast areas of semidesert land. Grand Coulee Dam in north central Washington is the largest man-made structure on earth. Many other dams, from Bonneville on the Columbia's lower course in Oregon to Hungry Horse on a tributary in Montana, harness this great river for service throughout its basin.

The Columbia River rises in Columbia Lake in the Selkirk Mountains of southeastern British Columbia. It flows for 1,038 miles to the Pacific Ocean just below Cape Disappointment, in Oregon. About 460 miles are in Canada. The drainage basin of 259,000 square miles includes nearly the whole of Washington, Oregon, and Idaho, Montana west of the Rockies; and

parts of Wyoming, Utah, Nevada, and British Columbia. (For drainage basin map, see United States.)

Through the Cascade Mountains it slashes a deep and spectacular gorge. For about 330 miles on the Oregon side, from Pendleton to Astoria, runs the magnificent Columbia River Highway. At Mitchell's Point the road passes through a 385-foot tunnel, lighted by five openings which afford a glorious view of the river. The Evergreen Highway on the Washington side is also a scenic road of great beauty.

The largest tributary is the Snake River (1,038 miles long), which joins the Columbia from the east near the Oregon border. The second largest is Clark Fork-Pend Oreille (505 miles), entering above the Canadian border. The Yakima, Kootenay, Willamette, and Deschutes are other important tributaries.

At the mouth of the Columbia, jetties force the river to cut a channel through a sand bar. Deepening of the lower river and of the Willamette permits ocean vessels to reach Portland, 113 miles inland. Upstream 155 miles is the Bonneville Dam, completed in 1937 for navigation and power at a cost of \$40,000,000. It is famous for its fish ladders which permit salmon to travel upstream to their spawning grounds. (For pictures, see Dam; United States.) A canal lock at Bonneville enables ocean vessels to reach the city of The Dalles, 188 miles from the ocean. Above the dam are falls and rapids; but barges can ascend the Columbia and Snake rivers to Lewiston, Idaho.

#### Hydroelectric Power and Irrigation

The Columbia River discharges nearly 160 million acre-feet of water a year. Much of the water falls 1,290 feet from the Canadian border to tidewater. The potential water power is 40 million horsepower. This is about one third of the

potential water power of the entire United States. The whole basin depends on water power for industrial development, for it has no coal or oil. The Atomic Energy Commission's plutonium plant at Hanford, Wash., and new aluminum and other electrochemical and electrometallurgical industries have grown up in the valley to use this power. The Bonneville Power Administration distributes the electricity generated by several dams and power plants, including Grand Coulee (see Electric Light and Power).

The peak flow of the river comes in summer, usually in June, from melting mountain snow. Summer floods are not uncommon. One of the worst, in June

#### MARTIN FALLS IN THE UPPER COULEE



The walls of the Upper Coulee are usually dry, but in the early summer excess water draining from the plateau above pours over the edge of the Coulee, forming many beautiful waterfalls.

## HARNESSING THE WATERS OF THE COLUMBIA RIVER



This profile view shows the dam on the main stream built to harness the mighty Columbia River for electric power, irrigation, flood control, and flood control. Many others are proposed or under construction on the Snake and other tributaries and beyond the range of this map is the Henry Horse Dam in northwestern Montana.

1948 almost completely destroyed the town of Vanport, Ore., near Portland. In winter with the river's sources frozen, the flow is at its lowest. The high summer flow provides surplus water for irrigation and for power to pump water into irrigation canals. Most of the land now under irrigation lies on the Snake River plain of southern Idaho (70 per cent) and in the Yakima Valley of Washington, the Deschutes and Willamette valleys of central Oregon, and the Bitterroot Valley of western Montana.

#### Grand Coulee Dam

Grand Coulee Dam, completed in 1937 at a cost of \$183,000,000, is 5,977 miles upstream in northeastern Washington. It is the world's largest dam and the world's greatest single source of hydroelectric power (see Dam). The reservoir behind the dam, known as Franklin D. Roosevelt Lake, extends 151 miles to the Canadian border and has an area of 85,600 acres. The National Park Service administers its 600-mile shoreline as a National Recreational Area.

The dam was built to generate power and to supply water for irrigation to the Grand Coulee, a curious feature of the lava plateau south of the dam. During the last Ice Age, glaciers blocked the normal flow of the river below the dam site two or more times and forced the water to flow southward over the plateau.

There it cut a wide gorge, called the Grand Coulee. Two huge waterfalls formed the Upper and the Lower Coulees. These Coulees lie 280 feet above the level of the present dam and reservoir. Until the 1830s they were dry and the surrounding country arid.

In order to irrigate more than a million acres of the land on the plateau, the Upper Coulee is dammed at either end. Water is pumped 280 feet up through a tunnel in the granite walls of the canyon through which the present Columbia flows. The water then goes through a canal into a 27,000-acre equalizing reservoir which floods the Upper Coulee. In 1952 water began to flow from the reservoir through 4,000 miles of canals to irrigate the land.

The various dams, locks, canals, and power plants throughout the Columbia basin are being constructed by the United States Bureau of Reclamation, which is concerned with irrigation and the Army Corps of Engineers, concerned with navigation. Congress has considered various proposals to entrust the long-range development of the entire basin to a single body, the Columbia Valley Administration, similar to the Tennessee Valley Authority.

#### Discovery of the Columbia

A Spaniard and Capt. Bruno Hezeta sighted the estuary of the Columbia in 1775 but did not enter it.

## WILD AND GARDEN COLUMBINES

In 1792, Capt. Robert Gray, the Yankee skipper of the ship *Columbia*, crossed the treacherous sand bar at the mouth of the river—the first man to accomplish this. In honor of his ship he changed the river's name from "Oregon" to "Columbia." Later, Sacagawea, the "Bird Woman," led Lewis and Clark to this river, and they explored it in 1805-6.

**COLUMBINE.** Some nature lover thought the petals of this dainty flower looked like tiny doves. He named it columbine, from the Latin word *colombinus*, meaning "dovetlike." It prefers rocky ledges and woodlands where the soil is thin. The blossom hangs head downward, and the slender

stem arches with its weight. The slightest breeze sets the delicate plant bowing and nodding.

The blossom is one to two inches long. The five petals curve backward into a hollow tube tapering to a slender round-tipped spur. The five flaring sepals are colored like the petals. The long stamens and



The wild red and yellow columbine has graceful hanging flowers. Notice the backward-curving hollow tubes which hold the nectar, and the tasseled stamens and pistils. A cultivated beauty is pictured at the right.



pistils form a golden tassel that extends beyond the tips of the petals. The stem is one to two feet high. The leaves are light green above and whitish underneath, dividing into three or more rounded lobes. The nectar is in the spurs of the petals. Only the long-tongued bumblebee and the humming bird can reach it. Some of the smaller bees rip open the ends of the spurs.

The common American columbine is scarlet on the outside and yellow inside. It occurs throughout the eastern half of the United States and Canada. (For illustration in color, see *Flowers*.) On the west coast is a similar species but it grows over

three feet high and has fewer blossoms. The Rocky Mountains, from Montana to Mexico are the home of the blue columbine, the state flower of Colorado. The white columbine, sometimes tinted

with blue, grows in the mountains of the Northwest. The cultivated hybrids are favorites in rock gardens.

The columbines form a genus (*Aquilegia*) of the Crowfoot family (*Ranunculaceae*). Scientific name of the common American columbine, *Aquilegia canadensis*; blue columbine, *Aquilegia caerulea*. There are about 50 species in the northern hemisphere; about 30 are native to North America.

## The GENOESE WHO FOUND the NEW WORLD

**COLUMBUS, CHRISTOPHER (1451-1506).** On the morning of Oct. 12, 1492, Christopher Columbus stepped ashore in America. It was one of the most important landings in history. Until then, Europeans knew nothing of America. But from that day on, America became a part of the civilized world.

Columbus' history-making voyage from Spain to America was unusual in two ways. For one, Columbus was not the first white man to see America. About 500 years earlier, small groups of Northmen made brief visits to the American coast. But nothing came of their stay, and later Europeans did not know of them. Columbus made his voyage just as though no white man had ever seen America before.

Another unusual feature was that the discovery was an accident. Columbus was seeking a western sea route from Europe to Asia. When he sighted America, he believed that he had reached his goal. And to the day he died he still believed that he had reached Asia. Although Columbus was mistaken, he still ranks as a great discoverer. Only his magnificent seamanship and powerful leadership could have made possible

the long voyage over the unknown ocean that men called the "Sea of Darkness."

### Early Life of Columbus

The father of Columbus was Domenico Colombo, a wool weaver. He had his own business in the port city of Genoa, Italy. There Cristoforo was born in late summer or early autumn of 1451. (English-speaking peoples have since changed the Italian form of his name to Christopher Columbus.) The boy had little or no schooling. He and his younger brother Bartholomew helped their father by carding raw wool.

Christopher grew up to be a tall, strongly built young man with red hair and a ruddy complexion. He was quiet and deeply religious; and he was quick to learn from experience. He worked for his father until he was 22, but he probably went to sea many times before then. As other Genoese boys did, he doubtless went out with the sardine fishing fleets, and he may have sailed along the coast or over to Corsica on business for his father. Genoese traders often owned their own coastal schooners, and Columbus' father may have had one of these. He made at least one trip to

the North African coast. On these longer voyages he learned the elements of seamanship.

#### Portugal and a New Life

In 1476 Columbus sailed as a common seaman aboard Genoese merchantman bound for Lisbon. England and Flanders. Many Mediterranean nations were at war and so the ship traveled in convoy. Off the south coast of Portugal the convoy was attacked and Columbus' ship went down. He swam ashore and made his way to Lisbon. Genoese friends took him in and later found him a berth on a ship bound for Iceland. On his return he settled in Lisbon.

At this time Portugal was the world's greatest seafaring nation. A half century before Portuguese explorers began making important voyages of discovery under the sponsorship of Prince Henry the Navigator (the Navigator). Many natives of Genoa prospered in Lisbon and Columbus saw his chance to become a sea captain under the Portuguese flag.

But first he had to educate himself. He learned to speak and read Portuguese and Castilian (the official language of Spain) and mastered Latin so he could read scholarly books on geography. He learned as much navigation as was known at that time.

To earn his living he became a chart maker. He also made at least one voyage as agent for a Genoese merchant in Lisbon. In 1479 he married Donna Felipa Perestrello whose father had been one of Prince Henry's captains. They had one son, Diego. Felipa's high social rank enabled Columbus to meet important officials. She gave him her father's collection of charts and documents and from these Columbus gained more knowledge of Portuguese discoveries and plans. In 1481 he entered the service of King John II of Portugal and voyaged to the Gold Coast of Africa.

#### Lands to the West

The wealth of Asia had been trickling into Europe for more than 200 years and Europeans were eager for more of it. But goods had to come by a perilous overland route which made them scarce and expensive. Ships could carry goods more cheaply and in greater quantity. To reach India, China, Japan and the East Indies the Portuguese were already probing for an eastern sea route around Africa. Another possibility was a western sea route across the Atlantic and be-

yond. All educated men knew that the world was spherical and that Asia lay west of Europe. The question was how far?

Columbus thought he knew the answer. But his studies led him to accept two errors: that the earth's circumference was much smaller than it is and that the land mass of Asia extended much farther than it does. He drew his calculations from scraps of evidence in such sources as the Bible, the writings of Marco Polo and Pierre d'Ailly's *Imago Mundi* (Picture of the World). He took the information that supported his belief and rejected everything else.

Other men had made similar calculations but none had figured so optimistically. Supporting Columbus' views were a number of sailors' yarns about lands sighted in the Atlantic Ocean. More concrete evidences were pieces of carved wood and unknown types of cane and beans found drifting beyond the Azores. Columbus was sure that nothing but a few already

#### YOUNG COLUMBUS DREAMS OF FARAWAY PLACES



From a high place one looks at the Genoa harbor. Young Christopher Columbus could see the lateen-rigged coastal schooners below. Here he may have sat looking out to sea and dreaming of the time when he could command a ship on the blue Mediterranean and perhaps on the unknown seas beyond.

known islands lay between Europe and Asia. He was determined to prove that Asia could be reached by sailing about 3,000 miles west.

#### Columbus Seeks a Backer

In 1484 Columbus applied for ships and men from King John II of Portugal. The king's committee decided that his plan was unsound and the application was refused. Meanwhile Columbus' wife had died. Taking his son Diego, he journeyed to Spain to seek backers. He left Diego in the care of the Franciscan friars at the monastery of La Rábida.

In Spain Columbus made a number of influential friends who helped him present his plan to King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella. At the time they were busy conducting a war against the Moors in Granada, but

## COLUMBUS PRESENTS HIS PLAN TO THE ROYAL COUNCIL



In 1486 Columbus, aided by Father Diego de Deza, presented his plan for sailing west to Asia before a committee appointed by Ferdinand and Isabella. The committee, headed by Father Hernando de Talavera, the queen's confessor, met at St. Stephen's College at the University of Salamanca. Both sides argued over the distance to Asia, but the committee could not reach a decision. Here Columbus sits discouraged after the hearing, knowing that the committee is against him.

they appointed a commission to examine Columbus' proposal. The commission postponed making a decision and Columbus was left waiting, although he was placed on the royal payroll. In Cordova Columbus took Beatriz Enríquez de Harana as his common-law wife. They later had one son Ferdinand (Fernando).

King John invited Columbus to return to Portugal. But during the second review of his plan, Diaz returned from discovering the Cape of Good Hope at the southern tip of Africa (see Diaz). This meant that a route to India was open, and the Portuguese were no longer interested in an unproved western route. Columbus returned to Spain to try again.

Finally after the fall of Granada in January 1492, the Spanish sovereigns agreed to finance the expedition. They promised to make Columbus Admiral of the Ocean Sea and viceroy of all islands and continents if he should succeed.

The harbor town of Palos had offended the Spanish rulers, and as a penalty they ordered the town to furnish two ships for the expedition. These were the *Niña* and the *Pinta*. A third ship, the *Santa María*, was chartered. Columbus commanded this vessel himself; he selected two Palos captains to lead the other ships. The crews were recruited in Palos.

#### The Momentous First Voyage

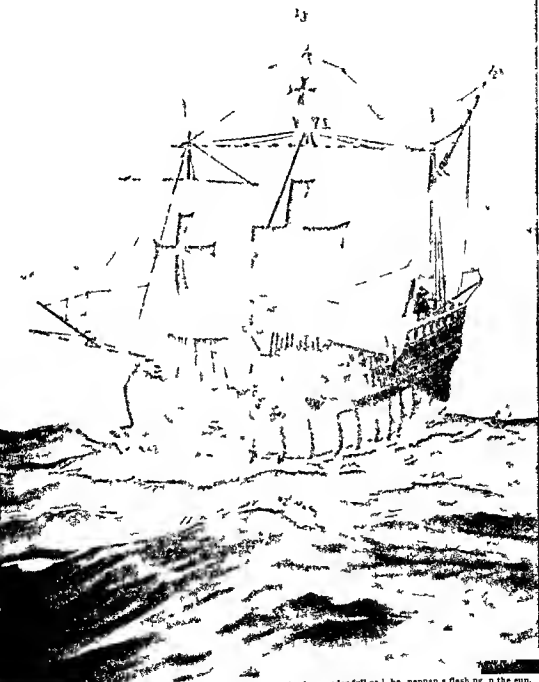
At dawn on Aug 3, 1492, the three ships hoisted anchor in the Palos harbor and got underway. Only three days out of Palos the *Pinta* lost its rudder, and

the *Niña's* lateen rig proved unsuitable. Columbus had planned only to load fresh provisions and water at the Canary Islands. But he stayed to install a new rudder on the *Pinta* and square rigging on the *Niña*. On September 9 they left the Canaries and spread their sails. Steady trade winds from the northeast drove them on their course. With proper setting of sail and rudder they were carried due west.

As they sailed westward Columbus kept two records of progress. One was the distance he thought they had actually traveled; the other was a much shorter estimate that he showed the crew. This was to quiet their fears at being so far from home. But the false record was nearer to the actual mileage than Columbus' secret estimates. Columbus' mistakes were common to the times. His navigation instruments were crude; and like most captains, he had little practice in their use.

For the most part the passage was smooth and the winds were steady. But as the days passed the men could not see how they could sail home against wind that had blown them steadily west. About midway in the voyage the seamen noted that the compass varied to the west of true north. They were familiar with the easterly variation experienced in the Mediterranean, but this change was new and fearful (see Compass). A falling meteor and the thick-growing plants of the Sargasso Sea increased their fear.

## THE SANTA MARÍA SAILS TO THE NEW WORLD



Columbus flagship was the 600 on San a Maria. He e she s uds along under full sail he pennant s flesh ng n the sun. The N no and the P no follow on the horizon. No comp e dev phion of the San a Ma a ex s s and ea he re ook ruc tions dfe. This p t u e by Paul Strege to ows lose y the la est ees ches of naval his orious n Spe n and Eng and

On October 8 and 9 the men were ready to rebel. Columbus had to agree to turn back if land was not sighted within three days.

On October 11 the *Pinta* fished up a piece of bamboo, a pole, a board, and a stick that seemed to have been shaped by tools. At 10 o'clock that night Columbus himself thought he saw lights. At 2:00 A.M. on October 12, Rodrigo de Triana, a seaman aboard the *Pinta*, cried loudly the first sight of the New World. The voyage from the Canaries had taken 33 days.

#### Landfall in the New World

The little Spanish fleet had sailed among the Bahama Islands. The first land sighted Columbus named San Salvador (now called Watlings Island). Its Indian name was Guanahani. The ships' boats were put over the side and Columbus, accompanied by officers and crewmen, landed. With them they carried the royal banners of Ferdinand and Isabella. They were met by a band of curious but peaceful natives. The Spaniards knelt on the sand and gave thanks to God for the safe and successful voyage. Then, while the natives watched, Columbus took possession of the island in the name of the king and queen of Spain. The crewmen, now delighted with the discovery, begged Columbus' forgiveness for their disobedience.

The natives were friendly and helpful. Columbus, believing San Salvador to be an island of the Indies, called them Indians. At once the men began trading with the Indians, offering hawks' bells and glass beads for the Indians' ornaments.

Sailing on, Columbus stopped at islands he named Santa María de la Concepción (now Rum Cay),

Fernandina (Long Island), and Isabela (Crooked Island). He then sailed south to the north coast of Cuba. He named this island Juana for the Spanish prince.

Everywhere he asked the Indians where gold could be found. On Dec. 6, 1492, he reached the north coast of Hispaniola. Previously he had found small trinkets of gold, but here the natives told of a gold mine in the interior of the island. Early Christmas morning the *Santa Maria* went aground off Cap Haitien. Before it could be worked off, its bottom was so badly torn that the ship had to be abandoned. From its timber Columbus built a small fort, La Navidad. The sailors, excited by stories of gold, begged to be left as colonists. Columbus selected 39 to stay.

#### Triumphant Return to Spain

On Jan. 16, 1493, the *Niña* and the *Pinta* began the return voyage. They carried gold, bright-feathered, colored parrots, other strange animals and plants, some Indian cloth and ornaments, and several Indians. A stormy eastward passage separated the two ships and did much damage. Columbus, on the *Niña*, was forced to put in at Lisbon for refitting. The *Pinta* made port at the Spanish town of Bayona, to the north of Portugal. In Lisbon, Columbus was welcomed by King John. With repairs completed, Columbus sailed. At midday of March 15, 1493, the *Niña* dropped anchor in Palos harbor. The *Pinta* made port later the same day.

The court was at Barcelona, and the Spanish king and queen welcomed Columbus there. To the court Columbus took six of the Indians, the gold, and some of the plants and animals. The sovereigns rose to greet Columbus and seated him at their right. All honors

#### COLUMBUS RETURNS TO SPAIN IN TRIUMPH



Before the royal court at Barcelona, Columbus presents his New World treasures—gold ornaments, trinkets, crude weapons, flowers, plants, and Indians clad in barbaric trappings. These were undeniable proofs of the new lands that lay across what men once called the "Sea of Darkness." This was Columbus' greatest hour. Never again did he receive such acclaim and respect.

and titles promised him were confirmed. This was the height of Columbus' glory.

Columbus made three more trips to the New World 1493-96, 1498-1500, and 1502-4. On the second he commanded 17 ships and about 1,200 men, many of whom became colonists on Hispaniola.

At Hispaniola, Columbus found La Navidad burned and the 39 seamen slain. A new colony was started. The colonizers quarreled, and their harsh measures made the Indians unfriendly. On this voyage Columbus explored the coasts of Jamaica and the southern coasts of Cuba and Hispaniola.

On the third voyage Columbus first sighted Trinidad and explored some of the northeastern shore of South America and the Leeward Islands. Some disgruntled colonists had returned to Spain and aired their dissatisfactions before the court. A new governor was sent to

replace Columbus. He arrested Columbus and returned him to Spain in chains. Isabella and Ferdinand ordered Columbus released and restored his titles. But they forbade his landing on Hispaniola on his fourth voyage, unless he needed supplies for his return trip.

The purpose of the fourth voyage was to discover a strait that would permit passage to Asia. In this Columbus failed. He explored the east coast of Central America but lost two of his ships. The two remaining were in such poor condition that Columbus ran them aground on Jamaica in June 1503. There he and his men waited for help. Messengers sent by canoe to Hispaniola finally brought rescue ships in June 1504 and Columbus returned to Spain.

#### Columbus' Last Years

Columbus was broken in health and spirit. He was not received at court. But he did not suffer hardship. He had brought back considerable gold from his last voyage, and his share of gold from Hispaniola continued to be paid him. He felt badly used, however, by King Ferdinand's failure to restore to him the viceroyalty of Hispaniola. To the day of his death, May 20, 1506, he begged the king to restore him privileges and honors.

About 1541 the bodies of Columbus and his son Diego were removed from Seville to the Cathedral of Santo Domingo on the island of Hispaniola. In 1795 the Duke of Veragua, Columbus' descendant, took to Havana a box believed to contain the bones of Columbus. In 1899 this was removed to Seville. But in 1877, in the Cathedral of Santo Domingo, another box bearing the Admiral's name had been found. Today most Latin Americans believe that the box taken to Seville contained the remains of Diego. So both the Old World and the New claim the bones of Columbus.

**COLUMBUS, OHIO** Ohio had been a state since 1803, but it had no permanent capital. In 1812 the Ohio General Assembly decided to place the capital near the state's center. It chose a site on the east bank

of the Scioto River, near its junction with the Olentangy, and named the new town Columbus. This has grown to be the third city of the state and one of its chief industrial centers.

At the intersection of High and Broad streets, the principal thoroughfares, stands the Statehouse, a Greek Revival building of native limestone, completed in 1861. At the entrance of the ten-acre grounds stands a memorial to President McKinley. Near by is a monument to Ohio soldiers and statesmen.

Two blocks to the west, the winding Scioto forms an oxbow. Here is the civic center, completed between 1928 and 1936. Its buildings include the Ohio State Office Building, the City

Hall, the United States Post Office, and the Safety Building, which houses the police and fire department headquarters, the city prison, and the municipal courts. Near by is the Le Veque-Lincoln Tower.

Ohio State University has a 400-acre campus on the Olentangy River. Its College of Education supervises the University School, a widely known laboratory school. At the main campus entrance is the Library and Museum of the Ohio State Archaeological and Historical Society. Its exhibits record the human and natural history of Ohio from prehistoric times. The Battelle Memorial Institute conducts research in metallurgy, fuels, and allied fields. The Columbus Gallery of Fine Arts has a collection of works by George Bellows, Columbus' most noted artist.

At Columbus are the Ohio State Penitentiary and state institutions for the deaf, the blind, and the feeble-minded. Fort Hayes is headquarters for a military area of the United States Army and the Ohio National Guard. East of the city is the Columbus General Distribution Depot of the Army, occupying 223 acres, and Port Columbus, the municipal airport.

Nearness to fuel and limestone, rich farms, and five railroads make Columbus a leading industrial and commercial center. Chief manufactures include airplanes, railroad cars, and automobile parts, mining, road, and oil-well machinery, iron and steel products, shoes, oilcloth, packed meat, and glass products.

In 1797 Lucas Sullivan, a Virginia surveyor, established a settlement on the west bank of the Scioto. This town, Franklinton, was later absorbed by Columbus.

Columbus was incorporated as a borough in 1816 and as a city in 1834. The Ohio and Erie Canal (1831) and the first railroad (1850) stimulated the city's growth. Population (1950 census) 375,901.

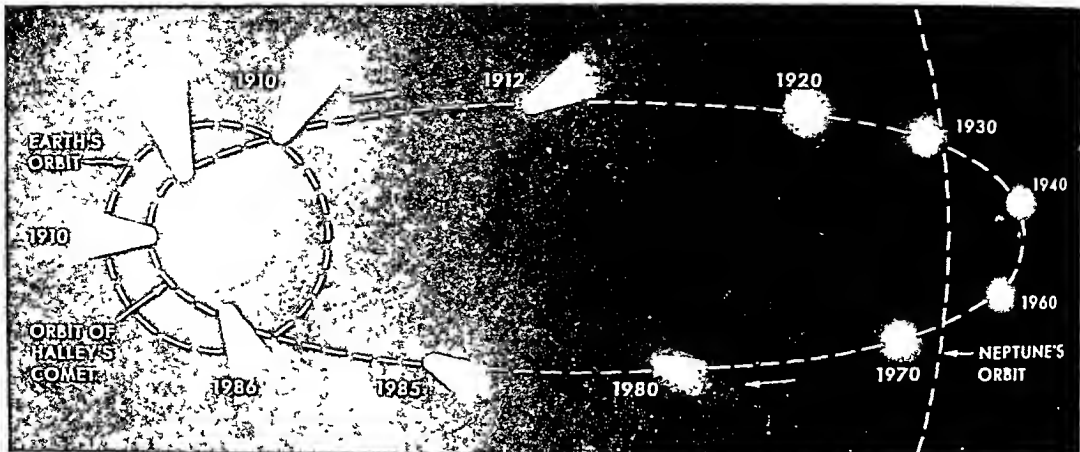
#### CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS



No authentic portrait of Columbus exists. This is how Daniel Huntington imagined he looked.



## HOW HALLEY'S COMET MOVES IN ITS ORBIT



Halley's comet was last seen in 1910, but undoubtedly it will be seen again in 1986. This picture shows why. The comet moves along its oval orbit around the sun. This path is inside the earth's orbit at one point, and beyond the orbit of the planet Neptune at the other extreme. The comet moves swiftly as it approaches the sun, but it slows down in the outer portion of its orbit. Notice how the tail begins to form as the comet approaches the sun and how it disappears as the comet travels away.

**COMET.** Until modern times, the appearance of a comet sent people into shivers of fear. They thought that it was a warning of war, plague, or other disaster. Today few people have such superstitious fears, because we know that comets are as natural as the sun, the moon, and the stars.

A comet has a bright head and, when it comes near the sun, a glowing tail. The head itself may range from 30,000 to 150,000 miles in diameter. The head contains solid matter, from bits as fine as dust to pieces weighing many tons, and also gases. But the solid matter is small compared to the volume of a comet. Small stars shine through a comet without loss of brilliance; and comets are actually invisible against the face of the sun.

Whenever comets approach the sun, they encounter pressure from the sun's light. This pressure drives gases and particles out from the head in a tail, which may be many millions of miles long.

#### The Motions of Comets

Comets move through space in orbits influenced by the attraction of the sun and other stars. Those which pass near enough for us to see probably fall into orbits around the sun. Some orbits, however, reach so far into outer space that we cannot tell when the comet will return. When we can predict the return, we call the comet *periodic*.

This periodic motion was discovered in 1704, when the astronomer Edmund Halley (1656-1742) predicted that a bright comet seen in 1682 would return about every 75 years. It has done so, down to its latest appearance in 1910. Notable earlier appearances were in 1066, when William of Normandy conquered England, and in 451, when Attila the Hun and his hordes were defeated by the combined forces of Romans and Visigoths under Aëtius in the battle of Châlons. Historians have traced its regular appearance as far back as 204 B.C. The picture above shows that it will most likely appear again in 1986.

Uninformed people fear disaster if a comet should strike the earth or sweep its tail through the atmosphere. But in 1910 the earth passed through the tail of Halley's comet without harm. A comet's head is scarcely more dangerous. History has no record of any comet damage done to the earth.

When a comet passes near a planet, the planet's pull changes the orbit, and the amount of change gives a clue to the comet's weight. A comet's head is often broken up by the attraction of the sun or a planet. Then the head becomes merely a swarm of meteors traveling in the old orbit (see *Meteors* and *Meteorites*). Comets may also lose their tails. Then they show only the glowing envelope, called a *coma*, around the bright part, or *nucleus*, of the head. Comets never recover matter lost from the head or tail.

Almost every year several comets which have huge orbits are sighted for the first time. Watching for these "new" comets is a favorite hobby of amateur astronomers, and professional astronomers rely largely upon amateurs for this work. The total number of observed comets is about 1,000. Astronomers learn the composition of comets by examining their light with spectroscopes (see *Spectrum*). This light comes partly from reflected sunlight and partly from a glow emitted by gas molecules.

Our word "comet" comes from the ancient Greek name *kometes*, meaning "long-haired." Comets may be named for the discoverer or the year of discovery. Letters after a given year show the order of discovery within the year; Roman numerals mean the order in which comets approach the sun.

**COMMERCE.** All over the world people and nations sell their surplus goods and buy what they cannot produce themselves. This exchange of commodities is called commerce or trade. The term commerce comes from the Latin words *com* ("with") and *merc* ("merchandise"). (See also *Trade*; *International Trade*.)

# How COMMUNICATION Helps Us Live Together



Here an American government official makes a speech that may affect the lives of people everywhere. Radio and telegraph send his words to foreign capitals. Within the United States television and radio bring his speech directly to eager and excited listeners. Soon newspapers and newsreels carry the message. Bringing people the news is one of the most vital uses of communication.

**COMMUNICATION** As you walk down the street you may see a friend and say Hello. A little farther on you may hear a cry for help. Both the friendly greeting and the call for help are messages from one person to another. All such transfers of ideas between people are *communication*.

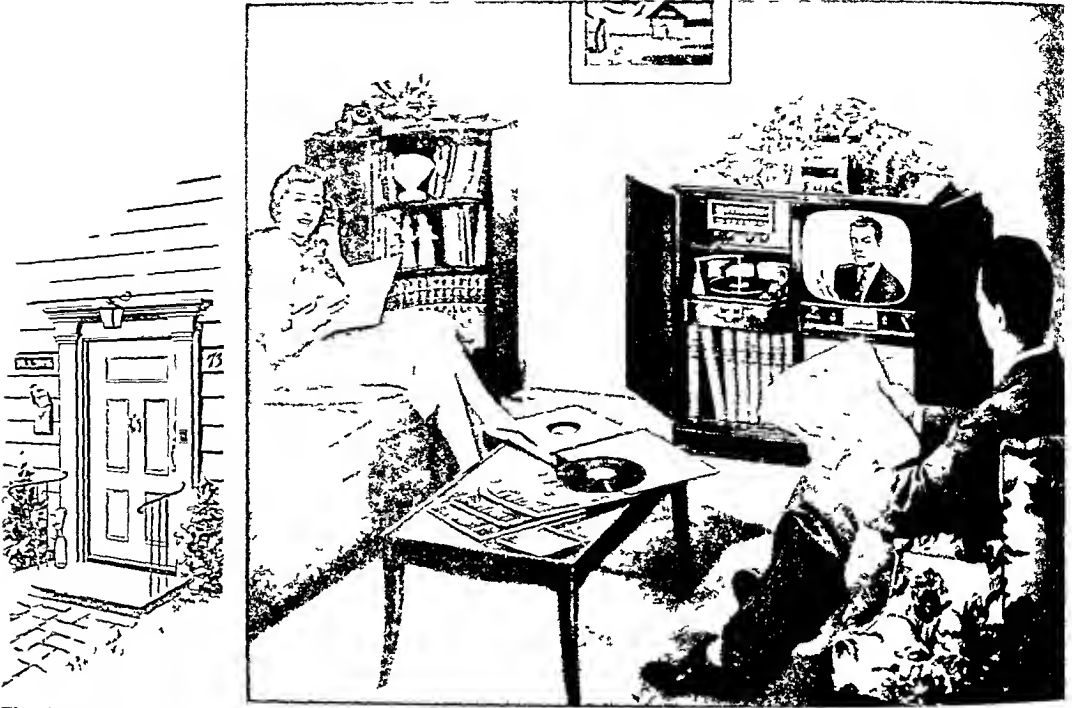
Speaking is only one of the many ways we can communicate. We can also put words down on paper and send them to another person by mail or telegraph. Printed words in books and newspapers can reach thousands or millions of people. Another form of communication is the picture. With a picture an artist or photographer can show others what he has seen or imag-

ined. Even a wave of the hand in greeting is a communication. So is a train whistle or a stop sign.

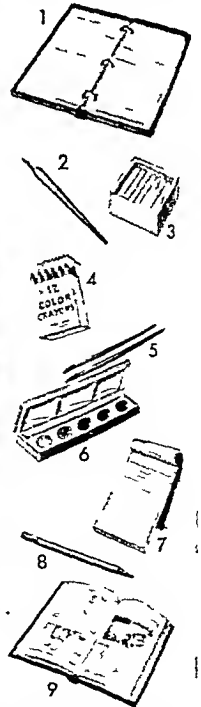
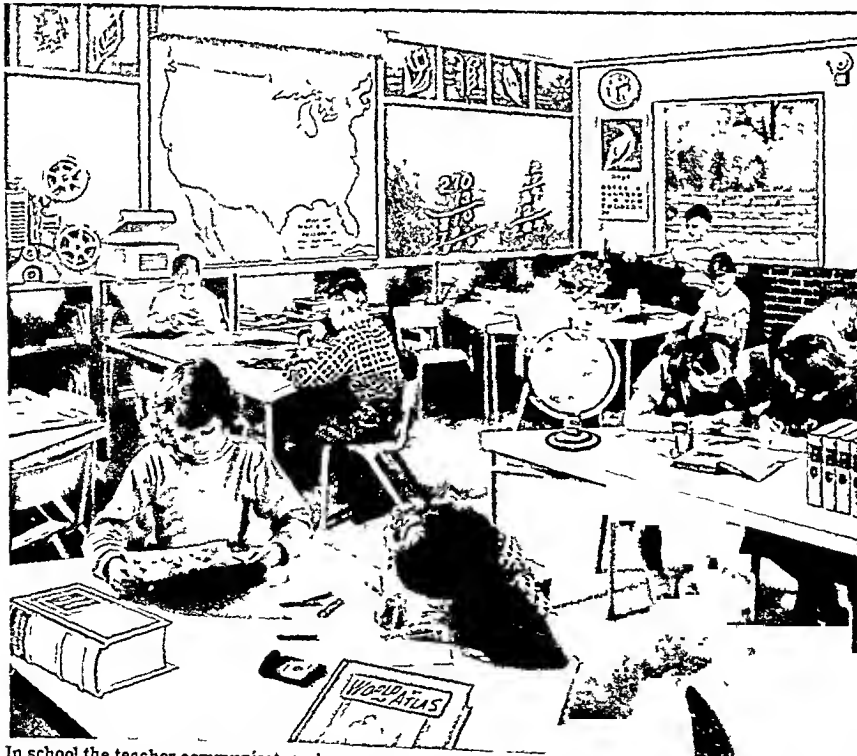
All these different ways suggest how often we use communication. It is one of the most important things in our lives and we need it just as we need food, clothing, shelter and transportation. Communication is necessary for living together in communities.

The close connection between communication and living together in communities is emphasized by the words themselves. Both of them came into the English language from the Latin word *communis* meaning in common or shared. In order to live in a community we must share goods and services with each

# COMMUNICATION IN THE HOME AND IN THE SCHOOL



The pictures on these two pages show some of the many communication methods a family will use every day. At home, for example, members of the family communicate with each other and with outsiders constantly. How many methods are shown in this picture of a front doorway and living room? Does the family have any other methods it can use in other rooms of the house?

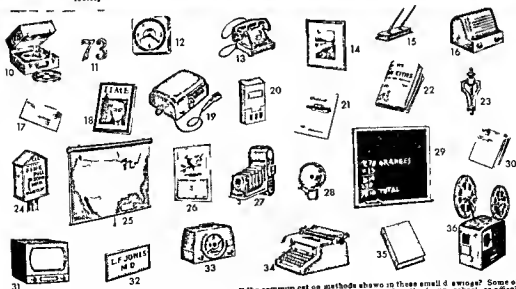


In school the teacher communicates whenever she conducts a class. The pupils in turn recite, write compositions, and make various kinds of pictures to show what they are learning. All these activities are forms of communication. How many communication methods are being used in this picture? Do teachers and pupils use other methods not shown in this picture?

# COMMUNICATION IN DAILY WORK

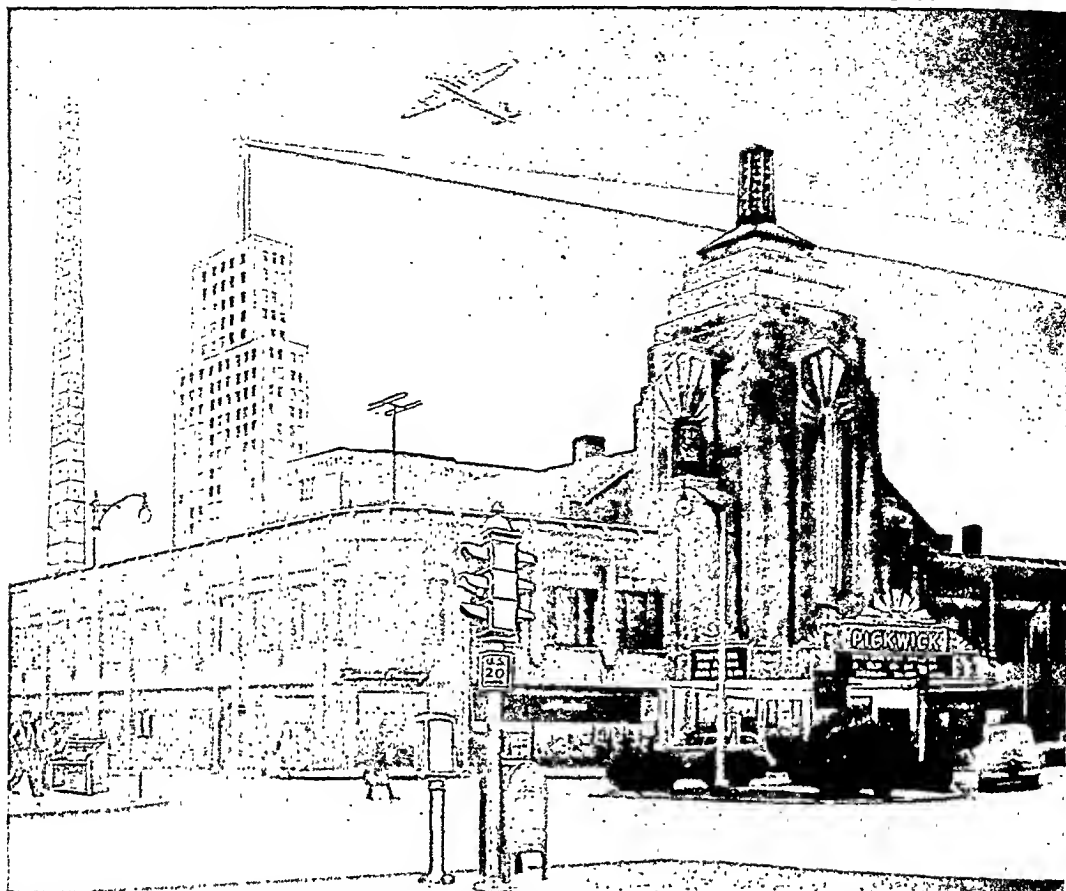


The manager of a small factory exchanges messages with customers, gives orders to factory workers, and keeps many kinds of business records. His secretary helps him in all this work. These activities make the manager's office a common cat on center for all factory work. How many different communication methods are being used in this picture?



Here is a kind of communication quiz game. Can you name all the communication methods shown in these small drawings? Some of them show plainly in the background, but others do not. Can you tell where they could be used in the home, school or office? (Names of the methods are given in a box on a later page of this article.)

## COMMUNICATION METHODS AT WORK OUTDOORS



Almost any street intersection near the center of a town shows many examples of communication methods. At this corner, for example, the methods include a radio tower, an airplane beacon guiding a mail plane, a public-address system on top of the theater building, store window and theater signs, road signs and traffic signals, and police call boxes and mailboxes. Others can be seen if you look closely. All these means of communication help people to live and work together in a community.

other. But as we share these things, we must also exchange facts and ideas, make plans, and come to agreements on how to run our community.

#### Why Communication Is Important

The word "communication" thus covers all the ways we have of telling things to each other or to the world at large. Modern methods have speeded up communication, and today people living in communities and even out in the country depend on this speed. One of the swift methods we use most often is the telephone. Without it, much of our community life would be slowed down. People would have to use slow and roundabout ways to exchange ideas, unless they could talk face to face. If a fire broke out, someone would have to drive or run for blocks or even miles to notify the firemen. The same dangerous delay would occur in meeting any similar sudden need.

If only one method, the telephone, is so important, think of what help we get from all modern methods, taken together. This account tells some ways that one family uses communication throughout the day (the italicized words are communication activities):

At breakfast the Jones family *listens* to the weather report on the radio. They *discuss plans* for seeing a movie the next evening. Before Tom Jones leaves for school, his mother *writes* a note to his teacher, explaining his absence the previous day. Tom *calls* his friend Jim and the two walk to school. On their way they see a sign on the billboard advertising a new play at the Little Theater.

Mr. Jones glances at the morning newspaper before leaving for work. Mrs. Jones makes out her grocery list, then telephones the grocer. When her morning's work is done, she mails an anniversary card to a friend and later continues writing her speech for the Women's Club forum.

At his office Mr. Jones reads his mail and dictates replies to his secretary. He telephones the factory he represents and wires several customers about their orders. To one overseas customer he sends a radiogram. He studies business reports, and several times he scans the stock market ticker tape.

In geography class Tom studies the Mississippi River in his textbook and recites when the teacher calls on him. On a map he traces the river's course; and he makes a graph showing the river's yearly rise and fall. In the afternoon Tom's class goes to the assembly hall and listens to a speaker tell of his trip to the Far East. The speaker shows slides of his journey.

After school Tom and Jim practise sending and receiving Morse code for their Boy Scout test. During the evening Tom

writes a composition for his English class. Mr. Jones develops photographic negatives and prints pictures in his darkroom, and Mrs. Jones watches a television program. Before going to bed, the family has to listen to a radio news report.

#### People Who Give Us Communication Service

These examples include many ways of communicating over a distance with one or many people. Every such method needs a number of people to make it work. Some of these people we see or hear daily. Postmen, telephone operators and radio announcers are among them. Other communications are provided by people we usually do not see. Among these are sign painters, photographers and printers. Working with all these people are business helpers—clerks, bookkeepers and messengers. All do their share in providing communication.

The daily newspaper shows how many different workers may be needed to provide one kind of communication. Reporters and photographers gather the news in words and pictures. In the editorial offices editors rearrange the news and copywriters turn the news facts into articles. Linotype operators set the articles in linotype slugs and engravers make half-tone engravings from the photographs. Make-up men gather the type and engravings into page form, and stereotypers make plates of these for the presses. Pressmen supervise the giant presses that produce thousands of copies of the newspaper. Circulation truck drivers speed the papers to newsboys at stands or home delivery depots. Added to this list of workers are those in such departments as business advertising and special features.

Every business or social organization requires its own special communication workers. Truck dispatchers, stenographers, traffic policemen and club secretaries are only a few examples. No census has ever been taken of all people who provide communication, but they probably number several million.

#### How Communication and Communities Grew Together

The connection between communication and living together in modern communities can be shown by tracing their development. For hundreds of thousands of years men lived only in small groups. At first, about the only way they could communicate was by talking face to face. Learning to write helped more people to live and work together, and communities expanded. People could exchange long written messages and they could keep accurate records. Learned men could write down what they knew for others to study.

Printing enabled men to make many copies of books and papers, but they could not send or distribute them any faster than before. Speed of communication still depended on how fast a horse or a sailing ship could carry

#### COMMUNICATION WORKERS IN THE COMMUNITY



TELEPHONE  
LINEMAN

SWITCHBOARD  
OPERATORS

America's  
best hat

LINE  
TYPE  
OPERATOR

JOURNALIST

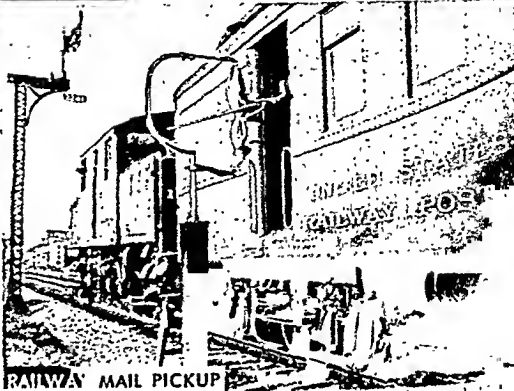
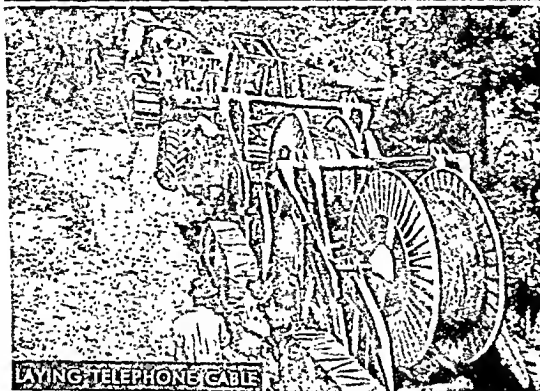
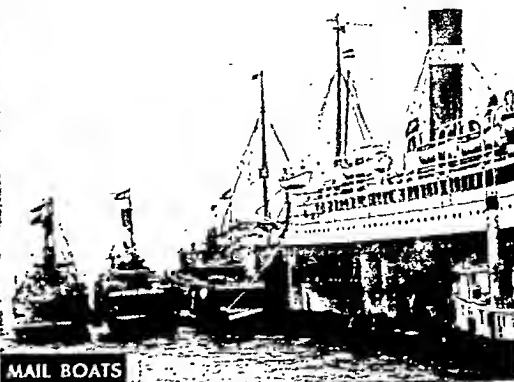
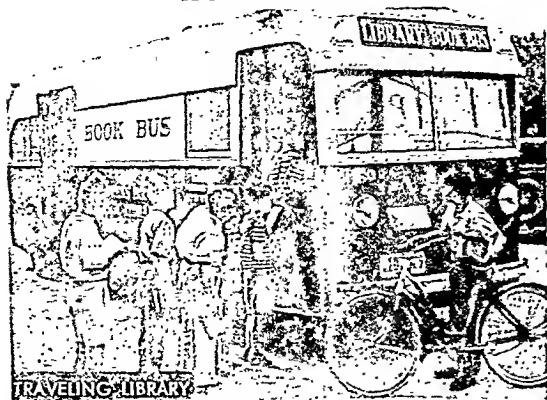
MAILMAN

BILLPOSTER

RADIO  
BROADCASTER

These men and women are part of the vast army of workers who provide modern communication. Each one, as a member of a large business or government, is such that he is to exchange facts and ideas or keeps us informed of important news even a

## HOW TRANSPORTATION HELPS COMMUNICATION



DISTRIBUTING NEWSPAPERS

These pictures show how communication depends on transportation. Ships, airplanes, trains and motor vehicles carry written or printed messages from place to place. Motor vehicles, such as the tractors used in laying telephone cables, help build communication systems and keep them running. Communication service speeds up when men find better transportation methods.

a message. When the first trains and steamships came into use, people could send messages somewhat faster. But the men who planned the movements of ships and trains needed a way to send messages *ahead* of these vehicles in order to control them along the route. Until the way to do this was found, growth of both communication and transportation lagged.

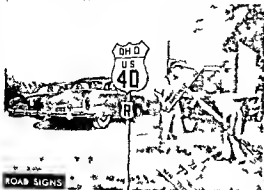
When inventors learned to harness electricity for sending messages, communication and transportation services leaped forward. For example, with the telegraph, railroad men could control trains from station

to station. The telephone and radio helped other transportation methods grow. Today communication and transportation serve each other in many ways, as the pictures on these pages show.

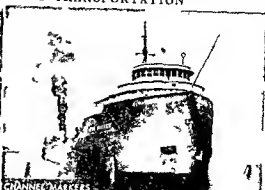
#### How Communication Spreads Entertainment

Men have used communication in every age to help in working and in living together. But they have also used communication to help in simply enjoying life. Among age-old examples are singing, plays, and recitations of folk tales, poems, and accounts of heroic deeds. Today great industries are engaged in this

## HOW COMMUNICATION HELPS TRANSPORTATION



ROAD SIGNS



CHANNEL MARKERS



RAILROAD SEMAPHORES



AIRPORT CONTROL TOWER



NAVAL RADIO-TELEPHONE



POLICE RADIO-TELEPHONE



TRAIN TELEPHONE

Men who d... e... guide ships... a... and... ch... need some... to... commu... on... they... on their way. The... ammu... a... on... be... ad... signs... meant... the... ke... e... semapho... e... signs... he... show... his... pop... on... e... o... s... he... O... may... he... a... v... e... message... a... ed... by... ed... e... phone... he... e... he... d... y... who... e... go... how... age... the... e...

form of communication. Among them are motion pictures, radio, television, and a considerable part of book and magazine publishing.

As a rule, communication for entertainment does not seek to impart information or arrange for action of any kind. Rather, it seeks to impart the entertainment, emotions and feelings of joy or sorrow, excitement and thrills, laughter or even terror. If the entertainer succeeds, thousands or millions of people can enjoy at second hand experiences and moods which they never could create for themselves. Millions can

thrill to the voice of a great singer on the radio, in a sound movie, or on a phonograph, even though they cannot sing a note themselves.

A great author can provide entertainment for people all over the world, and even through many centuries. Fine paintings and sculpture can illustrate the maker's mood and give pleasure as long as they endure, and some measure of enjoyment can be conveyed more widely by printed reproductions. Communicating entertainment is one of mankind's greatest means for achieving happier lives.



## How Communication Advanced through the Ages

TODAY a rich array of communication methods serves our needs. Some of them were developed gradually through the ages; others sprang directly from the work of ingenious inventors. Accounts of how the most important methods came into use are given in such articles as Alphabet, Photography, and Television. (See also the Reference-Outline at the end of this article and the entry *Communication* in the *FACT-INDEX* at the end of this volume.)

Individual methods, however, form only part of the story of communication. None of them would have been developed—or if developed, they would not have been used—unless men felt a need for them at the time. As civilization advanced, growing needs were met by new communication methods. In turn, once the new methods appeared they often helped speed up the course of progress. Thus communication grew as part of civilization from earliest times until the present.

### How Early Man Met Communication Needs

PROBABLY from the very beginning men have lived in groups. These primitive men sought each other's company for protection against danger, for help in gathering food, and for companionship. Living together at once produced a need for *language*. We have a good idea of how language developed because scientists have studied this process among primitive societies that still exist in isolated places, particularly on Pacific islands.

In the beginning their language probably consisted only of chattering noises and cries accompanied by

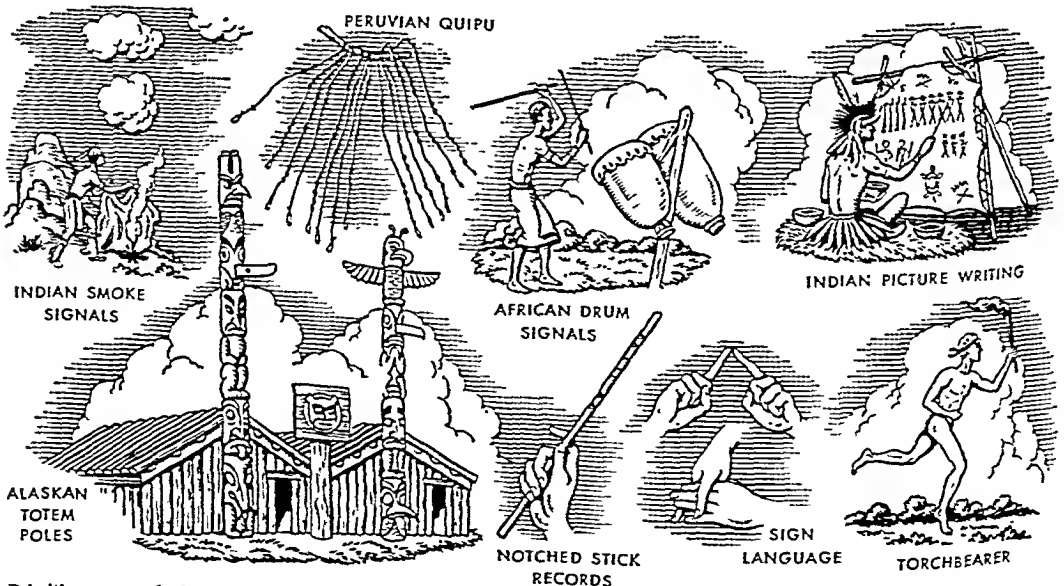
gestures. At first they made a whole set of connected sounds to describe one idea, and an entirely different set of sounds to express another idea. Gradually they learned that if the thought "tree" appeared in each idea, the thought "tree" should be expressed by the same sound. Thus they began to develop individual *words* later than they did whole sentences.

Primitive men also thought about more than just the needs of daily living. They sometimes expressed these thoughts and feelings through dancing and through *art*. They painted figures of animals on the walls of their caves, often in color. These were largely for magical or religious purposes, perhaps to insure good hunting. But the extra effort to make the paintings artistic showed that these primitive men had a need to communicate through self-expression. (See also *Language; Man*.)

### New Methods for Growing Needs

Through the centuries communities grew in size and number. People worked together as farmers, herders, and fishermen. They traded with each other for things they could not get by themselves. As new communication needs arose, men gradually worked out new methods to meet them. The swiftest runners were selected to carry word-of-mouth messages over long distances. With meanings arranged in advance, men sent *signal messages* by smoke puffs, fire beacons, or drumbeats (see *Signaling*). The American Indians worked out a sign language, useful for simple communication between tribes who spoke different languages. Seafaring peoples lit bonfires on shore for guiding ship-

## PRIMITIVE MEN DEVELOPED SPECIAL COMMUNICATION METHODS



Primitive men worked out many communication methods to solve special problems. They sent messages over long distances by smoke signals or drums. A runner with a torch aroused people in an emergency. Men kept records on totem poles or notched sticks, or knotted strings, or by drawing little pictures. Men who spoke different languages talked to each other with hand signs.

at night. These were the first lighthouses. Even in ancient times they grew into such mammoth structures as the Pharos at Alexandria, Egypt.

Simple means of recording began early. Families and clans arose in the community, and each had some mark of identification which members used as a kind of signature. This was often a seal or design pressed into wet clay. At first most general ways of recording were merely aids to memory such as we now use when we tie a string around our finger. The Peruvian Indians actually used a whole set of knotted strings called a *quipu* (see Incas). Notched sticks and scratches on stone, shells, and clay shards were also used for recording.

Such records were also used to keep track of time. The beginnings of a *calendar* in many places around the world showed that primitive people were able to record the length of seasons and the movement of heavenly bodies. Undoubtedly they did this in centuries before the first calendars appeared (see Calendar).

### The First Writings

To identify their scratches and notches, men began making little pictures. These sketches crude but easily recognized, were strung together to form the first written communications. Out of different versions finally came standard pictures, called *pictographs* which everyone in the community could understand. Pictograph writing was used by nearly all primitive peoples. Curiously, the same pictures for certain words arose in widely separated places. The Indians of southern Alaska used a pictograph of a man with outspread arms to mean "nothing." This same picture was

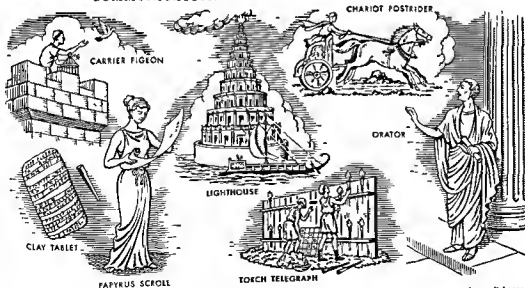
drawn by the Mayas of Yucatan, in Central America, and in a similar form by the ancient Egyptians.

From the pictographs came *ideographs*. These were simplified pictures, easier to write. Sometimes the ideographs combined two or more pictures into a single idea. For example, the Chinese ideograph for "wife" combines the pictures for "woman" and "broom." When men began to use ideographs for sounds alone, the way was open for an alphabet of single letters. How this came into being is told in the article on Alphabet. Alphabets made signaling easier since all that had to be prearranged was a signal for each letter. The Greeks worked out a good system of torch signaling shown in the freeze below. They set their alphabet down in five rows, five letters in a row. Then the number of torches in one rack indicated the row, and the number of torches in a second rack showed the right letter within the row.

For their first writing materials men used whatever was at hand—flat stones, metal, wood, bark, or animal hides. Stone and metal still serve today for carrying lasting inscriptions. For less important writing, too other materials came into use very early. The Babylonians wrote on soft clay tablets, then hardened them by baking. The Egyptians pressed the stalks of the *papyrus* plant into sheets for writing surfaces (see Papyrus Plant). They pasted the sheets end to end to form rolls or scrolls.

The Greeks and Romans used papyrus, they also wrote on wax-coated wood tablets. Some centuries before the birth of Christ, the Greeks began to use *parchment*, a smooth and pliable surface made from the skins of sheep and goats. The Romans used both papy-

## COMMUNICATION METHODS IN ANCIENT TIMES



In ancient times men devised new ways to meet communication needs. They sent messages by carrier pigeon or by swift horses and chariot. They wrote on soft clay tablets or on papyrus. They built giant lighthouses, such as the Pharos at Alexandria, Egypt. The Greeks worked out a torch telegraph system, described in the article. Roman orators perfected the art of public speaking.

rus and parchment in sheets rather than in rolls. Bound together, these sheets became the first *books*. The Chinese had been making *paper* since ancient times, but its manufacture was not known in Europe until after the 8th century. (See also Paper; Writing.)

#### Literature and Libraries

Men began early to practise and to admire skillful use of words in speech and writing. The ancient Greeks had poets and playwrights whose works live today. They told exciting stories of gods and heroes; tragic tales of men caught in the web of fate; and humorous fables of animals with the power of speech and reason. The Romans had great orators who spoke stirring of statecraft and war. Greek and Roman philosophers and historians left important records of the life and thought of their times. The Reference-Outline in the Language and Literature article lists topics for discussions of how literature developed in many places around the world.

Almost from the beginning of the art of writing, men collected written records. How these collections grew into the great libraries of the ancient and modern world is told in the article on Libraries.

#### Speed of Communication Becomes Vital

By the time the Romans had developed their parchment books, they also excelled in many other ways of living. One of their foremost achievements was building good roads across Italy and establishing protected sea lanes to their far-flung colonies.

Riding on horseback or in horse-drawn chariots, messengers raced from city to city carrying letters. Sail-and-oar galleys pushed across sea lanes bringing messages to foreign possessions. Even these methods

were sometimes too slow. Julius Caesar sent messages from his military headquarters back to Rome by *carrier pigeon*. When the Roman Empire fell and its roads were allowed to crumble, swift overland communication across Europe virtually ceased for hundreds of years.

#### Printing Quickens the Course of History

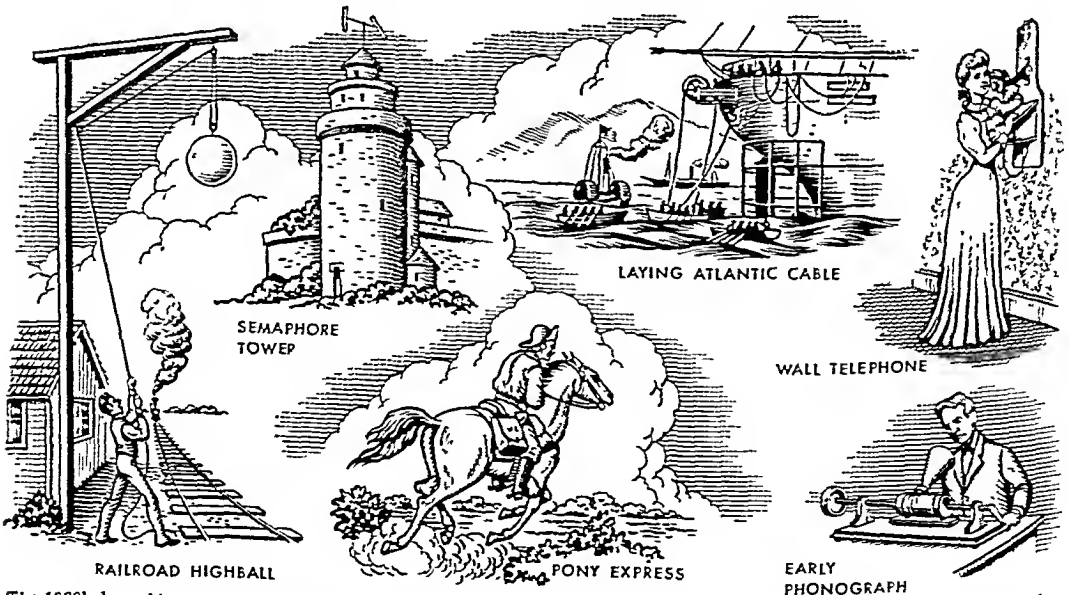
THE REBIRTH of Greek and Roman learning, now called the Renaissance, began in the 1300's. After centuries of almost complete oblivion the words of ancient philosophers and historians brought renewed understandings of man and his life on earth. From this stimulation sprang expressions of new ideas.

But old and new thoughts had to remain confined in hand-copied manuscripts until Gutenberg in the 1400's made *printing* from movable type practical. Now printers could turn out thousands of copies swiftly and cheaply. The technique of *engraving* enabled pictures to accompany the printed words. Men everywhere could read what others had written and history blazed forth on a new era of progress (see Renaissance).

Printed books on geography and travel inspired Columbus to plan a voyage across the unknown Atlantic. Books helped lead other Renaissance men to great achievements in science and government. The printed Bible made possible the Protestant Reformation. (See also Books; Gutenberg; Printing.)

The Renaissance brought forth other aids to communication—usable *maps* of the known world and accurate *drawings* with correct perspective. It was also a time of magnificent art production. Men were

### EXAMPLES OF 19TH-CENTURY PROGRESS



The 1800's brought many new communication methods. A series of towers could relay signal messages across France within a day. The Pony Express carried letters across the western United States. The Atlantic cable linked America with Europe. Early station agents hoisted a ball to give an "all-clear," or "highball," signal to trains. The telephone and phonograph came late in the century.

esger to express themselves and they communicated thoughts and feelings in great paintings sculpture and architecture

The closing years of the Renaissance saw the development of postal systems in many European countries. Before then even in Persia about 500 m.c. riders carried messages along a regular route but this use was reserved mainly for kings and governments. The American Colonies had their first post office in 1639 (See also Post Office Stamp and Stamp Collecting)

#### Effects of the Industrial Revolution

Machines were still largely unknown. The next great advance in communication came when men learned to harness the power of steam and to invent machines for using it.

The new era began in the 1700's. By 1770 it had upset so many ways of living and working that historians call it the Industrial Revolution. Steam power helped bring about this revolution. As an aid to communication steam ran the printing presses. It also drove the new trains and steamships that carried messages more swiftly and dependably than the older coaches and sailing vessels (see Transportation).

Older methods still had their uses. In Napoleon's time engineers built a series of relay towers across France. Men stationed in the towers worked semaphore arms and relayed the messages from tower to tower. Even well into the 1800's relay teams of horseback riders called the Pony Express carried letters across the American wilderness.

As we have seen good transportation systems depend upon communication for their control. The first such control was provided by the telegraph. It was adopted by the railroads soon after its invention in the 1830's (see Telegraph). The following decades saw the laying of telegraphic cables along ocean bottoms (see Cables). With it ships in foreign ports could receive orders from home offices.

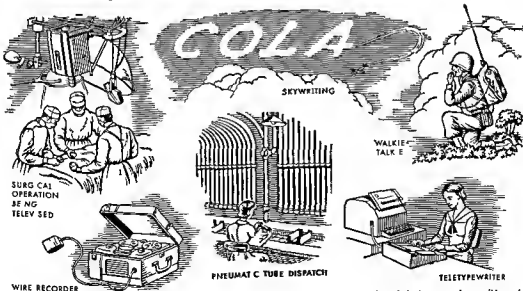
Inventors during the Industrial Revolution produced another invaluable aid to communication—photography. The camera could instantly record what the photographer saw and the picture could often serve better than words for reporting the scene to others (see Photography). Photography later led to photoengraving. This enabled printers to reproduce all sorts of pictures in their books, magazines and newspapers (see Photoengraving and Photolithography).

#### Electricity—Servant of Modern Communication

The telegraph was the first of a long series of inventions that use electricity for communication. In the 1800's inventors learned to put electricity to work. The results brought even swifter progress than had the beginnings of steam power about a century before. These pioneers in electrical research are discussed in the article Electricity subhead The Men Who Discovered Electricity's Secrets and in separate biographies.

Electricity now makes possible such communication methods as the telephone, radio, television and the phonograph and other recording machines. It provides power for printing presses, typesetting machines, and other devices to turn out printed matter.

### MEN STILL SEEK NEW WAYS TO COMMUNICATE



These examples suggest many common ways for new ways to answer messages. Electricity and electronics make possible such devices as the walkie-talkie (two-way portable radio), teletypewriter, wire recorder, and television with its many special uses. Pneumatic tubes serve many common uses on ships and in offices as the spectacular method of skywriting.

Transportation methods that carry written and printed messages depend upon electricity for direct power or for aid in engine operation. Electricity also provides all kinds of communication controls for transportation—for example, railroad signals, street traffic lights, and air-plane beacons.

The telegraph continues in use for railway communication; and the telephone and radio offer similar service to other forms of transportation. Airplanes especially depend on radio for guidance in flight and in landing (see Airplane; Aviation). Linked with the ability of radar to "see" objects for miles around, radio aids to air and sea navigation now make such transportation safe and dependable.

#### Future Progress of Communication

The limit of communication development has by no means been reached; and some day people may regard present methods as old-fashioned. Already color television promises new reality to television audiences (see Television). For keeping permanent records, microfilm is rapidly supplanting bulky libraries

and files (see Microfilm). Wire and tape recordings now carry sounds that once had to be put on large disc records (see Phonograph).

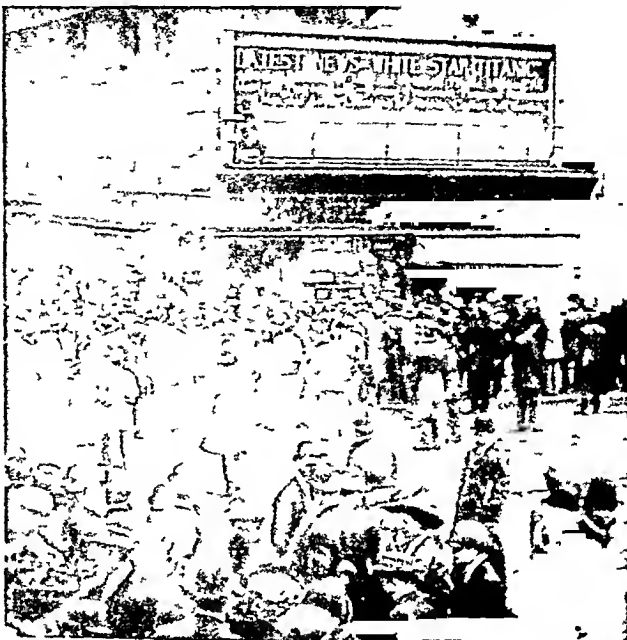
Beyond these examples of new methods already in use, scientists are experimenting in other fields. Photo-

typesetting may some day replace present mechanical methods (see Linotype). The home television receiver may be adapted to turn out facsimile newspapers on rolls of sensitized paper. The use of infrared radiation ("black light") holds great promise for a number of communication developments (see Infrared Radiation).

Scientists are also experimenting with modulation of visible light waves for sending messages, using techniques somewhat similar to present methods of modulating radio waves. The whole electromagnetic spectrum is being studied for similar communication

uses (see Radiation). For swifter and cheaper printing, electronic transfer of ink from printing plates to paper may supplant present direct-contact methods. (See also Electrons and Electronics.)

#### POSTED BULLETINS BROUGHT LATE NEWS



Before the days of radio, newspapers posted bulletins in front of their offices. These offered hour-by-hour developments of important news events. This bulletin tells of the sinking of the steamer *Titanic* in 1912.

## Modern Problems in Communication

THE FIRST Amendment to the Constitution of the United States guarantees freedom of speech and of the press. This freedom has been extended to all forms of communication; but certain practical limitations have also been imposed. For example, laws against slander and libel forbid circulation of falsehoods. Postal regulations prohibit using the mails to defraud. Food and drug laws prevent manufacturers from offering misleading or deceptive information on labels or in advertising.

In these ways and in many others, freedom of communication in the United States is kept within bounds. In other democracies, similar freedom prevails. But in totalitarian countries, all forms of communication are usually under state control. Dictators thus try to prevent any communication activity which may threaten their rule.

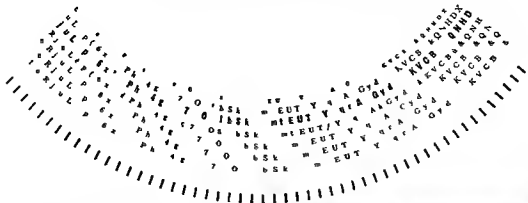
#### Government Regulation of Communication

The Post Office Department is the only general communication carrier in the United States under public

ownership. Telephone and telegraph systems and radio and television networks are owned by private corporations. But since these systems serve the public, their operations are closely supervised by the Federal Communications Commission, established in 1934. This is an independent government agency that regulates interstate and foreign commerce by wire (telephone and telegraph) and radio and television. Its control extends to private corporations and to state and local governments. One of its important functions is to assign radio and television frequencies to all transmitting stations, except to stations operated by the Federal government itself. Frequencies for Federal government use are assigned by the president.

The United States is a member of the Universal Postal Union which unifies postal rates and services in nearly every nation around the globe (see Post Office). As a member of the United Nations, the United States also subscribes to the rulings of the International Telecommunication Union. This United

## SETTING TYPE BY PHOTOGRAPHY



The characters above form part of a disk (called a *rotor*) which carries several fonts of type. For typesetting the disk whirles at high speed. Whenever a key is struck on the machine at the right a light flashes at the right instant to create an image of the desired character. Lenses and a moving mirror then record the image on a photographic surface at the correct place to form a line of type character by character.

Nations committee sets up regulations for international wire and radio service

#### Censorship and Self Regulation

In wartime the government assumes the power of censorship over all communication that might injure or otherwise affect the war effort. Military censors outside the United States review all news dispatches written by war correspondents and all letters written by members of the armed forces. Other censors watch international mail and cables and radiotelephone and short wave communications.

State and local governments have certain censorship powers especially over motion pictures and printed matter. Motion picture review boards are authorized to ban all or part of a movie if they judge it unsuitable. Local police enforce ordinances that prohibit the sale of books and magazines considered objectionable. These agencies seldom need to act because motion picture radio and television producers and book magazine and newspaper publishers have themselves agreed upon standards and codes of morality for their products. (See also *Motion Pictures Radio section Social Problems Created by Radio*.)

These standards can grow and change. Today thinking people make their judgments of a book, movie or play in the light of the author's purpose. If the author is sincere and serious in his depictions people are inclined to accept what they might object to in a work of less serious nature. Another basis for judgment is whether the work is intended for mature audiences. If it is directed at young and impressionable minds it must be held to stricter standards.

#### Propaganda—What Is It?

The development of modern communication has emphasized the problem of propaganda. The press, the radio, the public platform and the mails are used by governments and politicians by business and labor



An operator uses the keyboard on this machine almost like a typewriter to set type from the matrix shown above. The type will be arranged exactly as it is to be printed. When the operator has finished the machine furnishes a photographic surface from which an engraving of the type can be made.

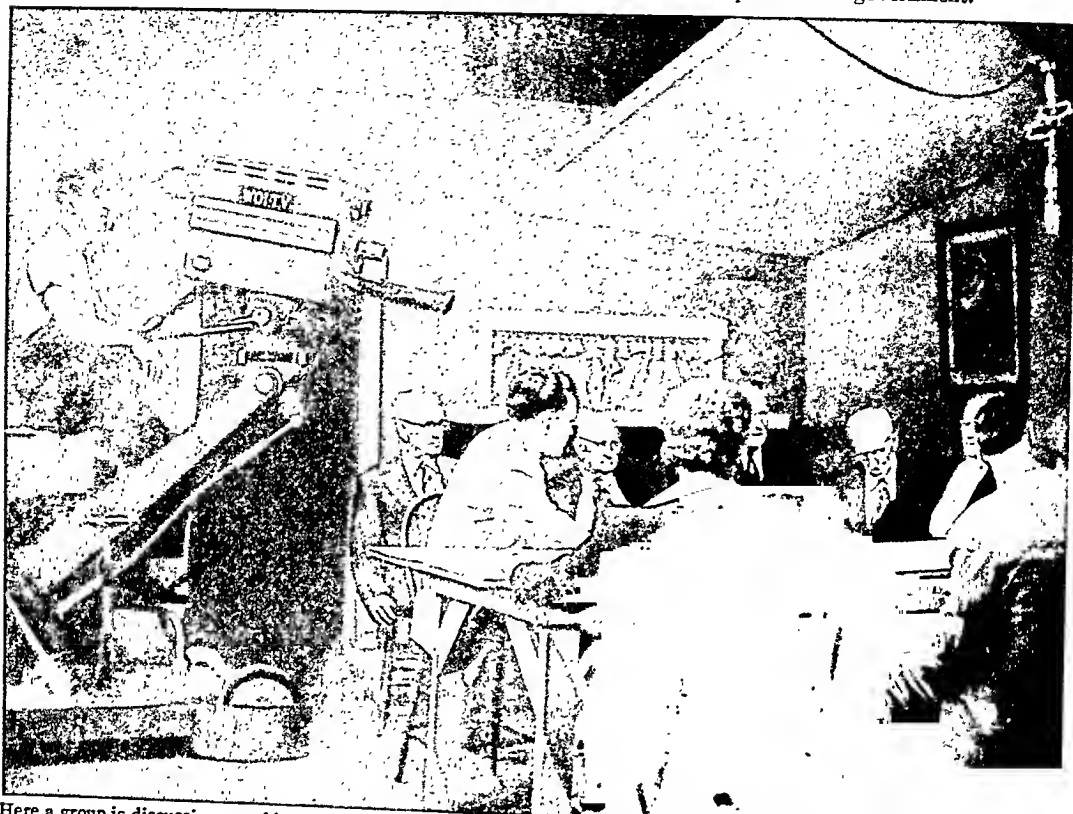
interests—by promoters of all sorts of causes—to influence the feelings, opinions and actions of the public.

Propaganda enters the school, the church, the home, the theater and it influences all of us to some extent. It may win success for a health campaign or it may bring about a revolution. It is used to promote both war and peace, to stir up hatred and to gain sympathy for human suffering. In the form of advertising it may help to persuade us to accept the new products of science or it may promote the sale of quack remedies.

The word propaganda literally means the propagation of a doctrine. In a popular use the word suggests the kind of argument or appeal which is intended to lead toward a goal more or less concealed or disguised from the reader or listener. To argue that a certain law will benefit the majority when it is actually intended to give advantages to a minority group is propaganda in this popular sense. However the word may be defined the fact remains that propaganda

## TOWN MEETINGS BY TELEVISION

Television developed social and political usefulness when station WOI of the Iowa State College at Ames, Iowa, started showing town meetings for small communities. The service created much greater citizen interest in solving problems. Schools often have children watch and listen as an experience in government.



Here a group is discussing a problem of importance to the community in town meeting. Meanwhile, an operator from station

WOI is picking up the scene and the talk with his camera and microphone for transmission from the telecasting station.



These townspeople have dropped into a store to watch the meeting and to hear the arguments, using the store's television set. Thus the whole town can know what is decided and why.



The broadcast done, station WOI's portable equipment moves on to do a telecast for some other community. Station specialists, of course, precede it to make the necessary arrangements.

is a strong force whether it is employed either for good or for evil

#### Governments and Propaganda

Modern governments have departments which issue official propaganda. They also watch foreign propaganda within their borders. The first and second World Wars proved the effectiveness of propaganda in wartime and the belligerents planned their campaigns of press and radio as carefully as they did their military strategy.

In totalitarian countries propaganda is a state monopoly. No criticism is permitted and no opponent can raise his voice. However, totalitarians freely invade democratic countries with their own propaganda and protest loudly when they are not allowed to speak. Democratic governments must counteract these skillfully presented antidemocratic doctrines.

The United States government as a check on organized foreign propaganda in 1938 enacted a law requiring every person acting as a publicity agent for a foreign government, political party or other foreign organization to register with the Department of State. To check on the propaganda which is brought to bear upon members of Congress in order to influence legislation the Regulation of Lobbying Act was passed in 1946. This forced lobbyists to register and to account to the government for the sources of their income and the spending of their funds.

As a positive answer to antidemocratic propaganda the United States began broadcasting Voice of America programs after the second World War. These programs were sponsored by the State Department. The privately sponsored Radio Free Europe offered the same type of programs.

#### Recognizing Propaganda

A great help in forming intelligent judgments upon printed material is ability to recognize the devices frequently used by propagandists to influence opinion. They may be grouped as follows:

**Name calling** arouses our hate and fear by giving names to individuals, groups, ideas or policies which the propagandist wishes us to reject or condemn. In the democratic United States dictator and fascist are name calling words. Politicians often apply such words to leaders of the opposition.

**Glittering generalities** is the reverse of name calling. It is the uncritical use of virtue words—such as freedom, justice, honor—to win us to a cause. Politicians often appeal to patriotism to win support even though patriotism may not be involved.

By the device called **transfer** the propagandist carries over to his cause the authority, sanction and prestige of something we respect. For example, he may get a church or a university to sanction his program. Symbols—the flag, the cross, Uncle Sam, John Bull—are constantly used for this purpose.

The **testimonial device** consists in having some respected person say that an idea, program, product or person is good.

The **plain folks device** is a familiar trick by which the advocate of a cause identifies it and himself

#### TRANSLATING AT THE UNITED NATIONS



At the United Nations General Assembly delegates from many nations meet even though they do not understand each other's languages. Interpreters send translations of the proceedings through telephone headsets to delegates who require them.

with ordinary or plain people. Almost any American political speech contains examples.

**Card stacking** consists in presenting a barrage of evidence from only one viewpoint. It selects facts or falsehoods, logical or illogical statements which make the best or the worst case for a cause.

#### Propaganda and Semantics

Understanding propaganda and its effect on judgment and thought is part of a larger study of a subject called *semantics*, or the science of meanings. The name comes from the Greek word *semanthikos*—significant meaning. Students of semantics begin with the dictionary definitions of words but go on to analyze changes in the way people use words especially when the new meanings have added power to sway feelings or to influence thinking. They learn to tell the difference between a *report*—a factual statement—and a *judgment*—an opinion or conclusion. They study loaded words which arouse emotions. They learn

#### KEY TO PICTURES ON C 422 AND C 422a

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Notebook             | 19 Dictaphone          |
| 2 Pen                  | 20 Mailbox             |
| 3 Chalk                | 21 Advertisement       |
| 4 Crayon               | 22 Newspaper           |
| 5 Brushes              | 23 Door knocker        |
| 6 Paintbox             | 24 Fire alarm box      |
| 7 Paper                | 25 Map                 |
| 8 Pencil               | 26 Calendar            |
| 9 Encyclopedia         | 27 Camera              |
| 10 Record player       | 28 Bell                |
| 11 House number        | 29 Blackboard          |
| 12 Clock               | 30 File records        |
| 13 Telephone           | 31 Television receiver |
| 14 Picture             | 32 Sign                |
| 15 Pen and pencil set  | 33 Radio               |
| 16 Interoffice speaker | 34 Typewriter          |
| 17 Letter              | 35 Book                |
| 18 Magazine            | 36 Movie projector     |



to detect *slanting* especially in news reports. Slanting is a process similar to propaganda card stacking. Facts, true in themselves, are selected to support one point of view; facts which might weaken that point of view are omitted. The study of semantics thus

leads to an understanding of the power words have to affect or even permanently alter relationships between people and nations. As a scientific study, semantics was first proposed in the 1920's by Alfred Korzybski, a Polish-American teacher and writer.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF COMMUNICATION

### WHAT COMMUNICATION MEANS IN OUR LIVES

- I. How communication helps us in our daily living C-421-422b, U-327, pictures C-422, 422a, 422b
  - A. Provides news and entertainment C-422b, 422c, 422d, 423: newspapers N-186, pictures N-191; magazines M-29; radio R-44; motion pictures M-107; television T-50
  - B. Regulates traffic C-321, S-10-11, P-354, color pictures P-352, 353, pictures C-423
  - C. Gets help to save life and property C-422b: fire alarms F-83, color pictures F-82; calling the police P-355b, picture P-355a; aids Red Cross in disasters R-87a
  - D. Brings the world to farms and isolated communities T-39, F-23, R-47
- II. Helps in the world's work and in shaping world affairs C-422b-d, pictures C-421, 424d, 424e
  - A. Gives world-wide exchange of news C-424e, N-190-2, R-44, T-45, T-50, pictures N-191
  - B. Helps in shaping public opinion and decisions C-424e: influences political thinking P-357, pictures P-358, 359, R-214, T-199
  - C. Helps in gaining and preserving knowledge C-422e, 424a, 424b, C-325: libraries L-180
  - D. Speeds planning and agreements T-39, pictures C-422a, R-212, 213, W-255, 298, U-240a, 240b
- III. How communication and transportation help each other, pictures C-422d, 423. See also the Reference-Outline for Transportation
- IV. Communication in the United States U-324, 327. See also the Fact Summary in each state article
- V. Communication in other lands: see in Fact-Index names of continents and countries with *subhead* communication

### HOW COMMUNICATION IMPROVED THROUGH THE AGES

- I. Communication begins with speech, pictures, and signs C-424
  - A. Origin and growth of language C-424, C-325, L-98b, diagram L-98a
  - B. Use of signs, signals, and pictures: early signaling methods S-177, T-36; American Indians C-424, I-106e, picture C-326; cave men drawings M-64, C-424a, color picture M-67, pictures D-137, M-63, 64; calendars and other early records C-424a, C-22 (Incas I-50, Aztecs, picture A-543)
- II. Writing and the alphabet bring improvement C-424a, W-310-310a, A-176-9
  - A. Sign and symbol (*ideographic*) writing
    1. Cuneiform and hieroglyphics C-529, H-355, pictures W-310a. See also the Reference-Outline for Ancient History
    2. Aztec and Mayan signs and numbers A-543, M-144, pictures W-310a
    3. Early writing materials B-231-2, C-424a-b: paper P-68a; papyrus P-68a, P-72, E-285, 286; pen P-114; ink I-150

- B. Early ways of recording numbers N-312-312a: quipus of the Incas I-50
- C. The alphabet simplifies writing A-176-9: spread by Phoenician traders P-205
- D. Writing preserves and spreads knowledge C-424a-b, C-326
  1. Copying books by hand B-231-8
  2. Collected knowledge made available in early libraries: ancient L-180-1; Greek and Alexandrian L-181, A-150; Roman L-181; in the Middle Ages L-181-2
- E. Writing gives rise to literature L-98b, C-424b. See also the Reference-Outline for Language and Literature
- III. Early ways of gaining speed C-424b, pictures C-424a: pigeons P-254; roads R-160; postal systems P-385; signaling T-36, S-177, B-118
- IV. Spreading knowledge and influencing thought by spoken word and dramatic action C-424b. See also the Reference-Outline for Language and Literature, section National Literatures
- V. Modern communication begins with printing C-424b, P-414c, T-229-30, B-238-9: Gutenberg G-235; influence on education E-240; libraries L-182
- VI. Industrial Revolution brings railroad and steamship carriers C-424c. See also the Reference-Outline for Industrial Revolution
- VII. Rise of postal systems C-424c, P-386: in American Colonies P-386-7, pictures T-170f, A-214; postage stamps S-366-7; air mail P-385
- VIII. Improvements in picture communication C-424c: engraving and etching E-385-8; lithography I-276; photoengraving and photolithography P-210a-211; photography P-225-7 (microfilming M-230-1); motion pictures M-431-3
- IX. Modern electrical methods conquer distance C-424c
  - A. Telegraphy T-36-9: Morse, the inventor M-345; underwater cables C-5-8; telephotography I-203, T-45
  - B. Telephones T-39-45: Bell B-121: Pupin P-438
  - C. Sound recorders and reproducers: phonograph P-206-8, picture E-236; dictating machine D-87-8; dictograph D-89; wire recorder P-208; motion-picture sound track M-421-2, picture M-411
  - D. Radio R-33-51
    1. Inventors: Marconi M-93; Hertz R-29, R-42-3; De Forest D-46
    2. How radio works R-33-44, 45
    3. News and entertainment broadcasts R-44-49
  - E. Television T-50-5, R-51

### COMMUNICATION IN THE MODERN WORLD

- I. Principal methods used today C-421-3
  - A. Far widespread communication, pictures N-191
    1. Modern printing and engraving P-413-414: the typewriter T-231
    2. Newspapers and magazines N-186-92, M-29-31

- 3 Books and libraries R 231.9 L-180 204  
Braille for the blind B 206.7  
4 Radio broadcasting R-44.9 television  
T-50.3  
5 Advertising A 23.7 electric signs L-314

- B For person to person communication letters  
L-171-4 conversation C-458-61 telegraph T 36  
telephone T-39 radiotelephone T-44  
C Modern record keeping see in Fact-Index  
Communication subhead records

## II Communication for general information and agreement upon action

- A In production and business activity weather  
reporting W 82 stock exchange trading  
S-383-400 boards of trade B 213-14

- B For political action national conventions pictures  
P-358 359 town meetings T-159 pictures  
U 263 C-424f for international agreements  
(Cairo and Tehran Conferences pictures N 19)  
R 122 W 298 United Nations pictures L 210s  
210s W 299)

## III Communicating feeling and understanding with the arts A-400s-p

- A Language and literature see the Reference-  
Outline for Language and Literature  
B Visual arts see the Reference-Outline for  
Architecture Painting and Sculpture  
C Musical, rhythmic and combination arts M-158  
69 ballet B 28-29d dancing D 14-14a (folk  
dancing F 192a d) drama D 129-35 opera  
Q-388-98 orchestra Q-402.6 See also the  
Reference-Outline for Music

## IV Modern problems of regulation and control C-424d

- A Expense and convenience of service may lead  
to granting and regulating monopolies P-430  
M-359  
B Government regulation of communication  
C-424d-e Federal Communications Commission  
R-205 R-42 49-50 Post Office Department  
P-388 public utilities P-430-1 radio R-42  
49-50 telegraph T-39 television T-54a d  
foreign governments C-424e R-48-9  
C Censorship C-424e motion pictures M-431  
press C-424e radio R-49-50  
D Propaganda C-424g newspapers N-189 radio  
R-48-9 50-1 advertising A 25 Voice of America  
R-51, R-271 picture R-46

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR COMMUNICATION

### Books for Younger Readers

- Bandick Jeanna *Electronics for Young People* (McGraw  
1947)  
Bandick Jeanna and Robert *Television Works Like This*  
(McGraw 1949)  
Denman Frank *Television the Magic Window* (Macmillan  
1955)  
Flobery J J *Behind the Microphone* (Lippincott 1944)  
Lant H B *I Work on a Newspaper* (Macmillan 1945)  
McSpadden J W *How They Carry the Mail* (Cadmus  
1941)  
McSpadden J W *How They Sent the News* (Dodd 1936)  
Meyer J S *Picture Book of Radio and Television* (Lothrop  
1951)  
Rogers Frances and Beard Alice *Heels Wheels and Wire*  
(Lippincott 1951)  
Schlot G W Jr *Adventures of a Letter* (Scribner 1949)  
Schneider Herman and Noy *Your Telephone and How It  
Works* (Whitelsey 1952)

Shapen K B *Mr Bell Invents the Telephone* (Random  
1955)

Tyer K S *Modern Radio* (Harcourt 1944)

Webster H H *World's Messengers* (Houghton 1938)

White F W *News on the Air* (Harcourt 1947)

Yates B F *Boys Book of Communications* (Harper 1947)

### Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

- Bragance W N *Speech* (Appleton 1952)  
Commission on Freedom of the Press *A Free and Responsible  
Press* (Univ of Chicago Press 1947)  
Dunlop O E *Radar* (Harper 1948)  
Dunlop O E *Understanding Television* (Greenberg 1948)  
Ede Charles ed *Art of the Book* (Studio 1951)  
Fwbank H L and Lawton S P *Broadcasting Radio and  
Television* (Harper 1942)  
Flobery J J *Makes Way for the Mail* (Lippincott 1939)  
Flobery J J *Television on Story* (Lippincott 1951)  
Hogben L T *From Cave Painting to Comic Strip* (Crown  
1949)  
McMurtre D C *The Book* (Oxford 1943)  
Pe M A *Story of Language* (Lippincott 1949)  
Stevenson O J *Talking Wire* (Vanguard 1947)  
Sewart K N and Tebbel John *Makers of Modern Journal-  
ism* (Prentice-Hall 1952)  
Stokely James *Electrons in Action* (McGraw 1946)  
Tyler K S *Telecasting and Color* (Harcourt 1946)  
(See also bibliography for Transportation)

**COMMUNISM** To most people of today the word communism means the doctrines internal life and external activities of Soviet Russia together with the activities of their collaborators in other countries. This is a great change from the older meaning of the word—a change which the Soviet Communists themselves acknowledge.

Originally the word meant 'owning or holding in common'. American Indians did this when they held a hunting ground for the whole tribe. This practice has been widespread among primitive peoples since the early days of mankind. It has also appeared regularly among more advanced peoples.

Early Christian teaching condemned wealth, exalted poverty and preached renunciation of the goods of this world. Possessions were for the good of all. Throughout the Middle Ages monastic communities practiced communism to a greater or lesser degree. Many sectarian religious communities, largely of German and Russian origin, have practiced and still practice communist living in their agricultural settlements. Communities where goods would be held in common were advocated and founded by Robert Owen of England, Charles François Fourier of France and others (see Socialism).

### The Famous Communist Manifesto of 1848

Up to this time communist experiments had been on a voluntary basis. A new note was struck when two young Socialists, Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, issued their 'Communist Manifesto' in 1848. They called the Manifesto 'communist', not socialist, in order to dissociate themselves from the teachings of Owen and Fourier. Marx and Engels also called for a revolution, to be led by the industrial working class (which they called the *proletariat*) to establish their version of communism.

The Communist Manifesto proclaimed the philosophy called *economic determinism*. This teaches that

history is shaped (determined) by methods of production and exchange. Marx saw social development as a process of evolution from lower to higher forms of society. Feudalism, for instance, was a step forward from the slave state of antiquity. Capitalism was an advance from feudalism.

But, the Manifesto maintained, capitalism must in time give way to the higher form of socialism, or Communism. Capitalism, in Marx's opinion, was marked by inevitable class struggle between the owning class (the *bourgeoisie*) and the hired working class (the *proletariat*). He held that the owning class exploits the working class by appropriating the difference between the value of what the workers produce and what they receive as wages.

The Manifesto called for the proletariat to become the ruling class. In so doing, it used a phrase which has since become famous—"the dictatorship of the proletariat." The Manifesto ended with an open call to violent upheaval:

"The Communists . . . openly declare that their ends can be attained only by the forcible overthrow of all existing social conditions . . . let the ruling classes tremble at a Communist revolution."

#### The Communist Break from Socialism

Marx and his early followers helped organize in 1864 the International Workingmen's Association ("First International"). It could not agree on long-range policy, and it broke up ten years later. In 1889, six years after the death of Marx, his followers took part in forming the Second or Socialist International. This organization continued in existence until the outbreak of the first World War in 1914.

The trend in European socialist parties in later years was, in the main, away from violence and toward moderation. The condition of the workers as regards food and clothing, housing, and opportunities for education and recreation was improving, not deteriorating, as Marx had predicted. Consequently, socialists were inclined to work for more advantageous social legislation and to put off the idea of violent revolution to an indefinite future.

One group, however, in the Socialist Second International (the world organization of socialist parties, created in 1889) adhered to Marx's more extreme philosophy. Outstanding in this group was the Russian revolutionary, Nikolai Lenin. He emphasized the need for a strictly disciplined revolutionary party.

Lenin's uncompromising attitude helped to split the Russian Social Democratic party into two groups. Lenin's followers were known as Bolsheviks (from the Russian word *bolshinstvo*, meaning majority). His opponents were Mensheviks (from the Russian word *menshinstvo*, meaning minority). This was because Lenin's supporters were in a slight majority at a party congress where the split took place.

#### Lenin's Version of Communism

The first World War and the fall of the czar in March 1917 gave Lenin his chance. Returning to Russia from his exile in Switzerland, Lenin led a second revolution to victory in November 1917. Out

of this second revolution came the Soviet government. This came to be dominated entirely by the Bolshevik party, which changed its name to Communist in 1918.

Lenin believed that there must be a rigid dictatorship of the proletariat, as a transitional stage between the old capitalist order (which was to be destroyed) and the new Communist order. This was the theoretical justification for the absolute dictatorship exercised by the Communist party. Lenin also believed that Communism could not exist indefinitely in Russia, in a state of peace with the "capitalist" world. He wrote:

"It is inconceivable that the Soviet Republic should continue to exist for a long period side by side with imperialist states. Ultimately one or the other must conquer. Meanwhile a number of terrible clashes between the Soviet Republic and the bourgeois states are inevitable."

Lenin therefore attached great importance to creating a strong international organization of Communist parties. A Third Communist International (often called the Comintern) was formed in Moscow in March 1919. It was supposed to function as a kind of general staff of the world revolution, and permanent headquarters were set up in Moscow. A second and larger congress was held in Moscow July-August 1920. Here a detailed program of action was worked out and twenty-one conditions of admission to the newly formed Communist parties were laid down. These conditions were designed to exclude all moderate socialists from membership and to insure strict discipline in Communist parties. The twelfth condition calls for "iron discipline, with a party central committee which will be a powerful, authoritative organ with wide powers"; the thirteenth demands "systematic purges to clear the party of petty-bourgeois elements." Communists were required to follow, instantly and without question, every shift in Communist policy; that is, they must adhere to "the party line."

This organization was built up avowedly for the promotion of violent revolution. This is evident from the following excerpts from the twenty-one conditions for admission to the party:

"3. The class struggle in almost every country of Europe is entering the phase of civil war. Under such conditions the Communists can have no confidence in bourgeois laws. They should create everywhere a parallel illegal apparatus which at the decisive moment should be of assistance to the party to do its duty toward the revolution. In every country where, in consequence of martial law or other exceptional laws, the Communists are unable to carry on their work legally, a combination of legal and illegal work is absolutely necessary.

"4. Persistent and systematic propaganda must be carried on in the army, where Communist groups should be formed in every military organization.

"6. Every party desirous of affiliating to the Third International should renounce not only avowed social patriotism, but also the falsehood and hypocrisy of social pacifism. It should systematically demonstrate to the workers that without a revolutionary overthrow of capitalism no international arbitration, no talk of disarmament, no democratic reorganization of the League of Nations will be capable of saving mankind from new imperialist wars."

The Comintern was utilized more and more to serve the interests of Soviet foreign policy. When the Soviet government, alarmed by Hitler's rise to power,

sought allies in the West and joined the League of Nations in 1934 a new strategy the so-called Popular Front, was prescribed for Communist parties in foreign countries. Instead of attacking Social Democracy, Communists were instructed to work in political cooperation not only with socialists, but also with liberal and radical groups.

In 1943 in the second World War, the Comintern dissolved itself. This was interpreted as a gesture by Stalin toward closer cooperation with the United States and Great Britain. But all Communist parties remained devoted to the interests of Soviet Russia.

#### Communism Expands after the War

Russia's victories in the war and its diplomatic triumphs greatly spread the sway of Communism. Communist governments were imposed on every nation of eastern Europe except Greece (see Europe). Russia dominated them behind an "iron curtain" of censorship.

When a "cold war" arose between Russia and the democracies in 1947 Communists set up a new international organization. This was the Communist Information Bureau (Cominform). It was composed of Communist representatives of France, Italy and eastern Europe. One of its chief purposes was to direct propaganda against the United States. It also aimed to cripple the European Recovery Plan by inciting riots and strikes, especially in France and Italy.

Communism increased in Asia. Chinese Communists who had fought the Nationalist government almost continuously since 1927, won control of China in 1949. By 1950 large areas of French Indo-China had fallen under the domination of native Communists.

In 1950 the state-controlled press of Soviet Russia indicated that the world's Communist parties had between 25 and 26 million members. The largest was the Russian party, with about 7 million members.

The United States has been a target of Communist activity ever since the Comintern was founded. The American Communist party has never had more than 100,000 members and usually far fewer. It has never made a notable showing in elections. But Stalin himself told American delegates to the Comintern "I consider the Communist party of the United States one of the parties to which history has given decisive tasks from the viewpoint of the world revolutionary movement. . . . You must forge real revolutionary cadres and leaders of the proletariat who will be capable of leading the millions of American workers toward the revolutionary class war."

Beginning in 1949 the United States investigated "undercover" activities of American Communists and convicted 11 party leaders. In 1953 President Eisenhower tightened security rules for federal employees.

#### Definitions of Modern (Soviet) Communism

In defining Communism it is important to note that the Russian Soviet system bears no resemblance to the experiments in communal living and sharing of possessions undertaken by religious and philosophical groups. Soviet Communism might be defined as a one-party dictatorship combined with state and ownership of factories, mines, railways, banks, and

farms (see Russia). International Communism has as its ultimate goal the establishment in other countries of conditions similar to those existing in Russia. (See also Asia, Eisenhower, Europe, World History.)

#### Terms Associated with Communism

**Collectivism** is a term widely used in two senses: (1) as a designation for the programs of nonrevolutionary social reform; and (2) as a broad expression, opposed to individualism, to cover all doctrines and trends leading toward greater social control over human affairs.

**Anarchism** teaches that justice and order can spring only from the free association of individuals without fixed laws or government supervision. Thus anarchists oppose both socialism and capitalism. The founder of the modern anarchist movement was Pierre Joseph Proudhon (1809-65) who proposed through education to prepare men to live without government. Another philosophical anarchist was Tolstoy (see Tolstoy). The founder of violent anarchism ( nihilism ) was Michael Bakunin (1814-76).

**Syndicalism** is partly socialist, partly anarchistic. It proposes to bring revolution through a general strike by all trade unions. Each industry is to be seized and operated by its workers. The state is to be merely a federation of worker-owned industries. Syndicalism has appeared chiefly in France and Spain. In 1952 Argentina's Chaco province adopted syndicalism. In the United States the International Workers of the World (I.W.W.) active from 1903 to 1924 was syndicalist.

**Guild socialism**, popular in England from 1900 to 1925, was a nonrevolutionary form of syndicalism.

**COMPASS, MAGNETIC.** Since earliest times men have found directions from objects in the sky. They have used the sun, the North Star, and the moon. But these objects are not the best direction givers. They change their places in the sky from hour to hour. Often they are hidden by clouds or storms.

But nature has given us a direction finder that works at all times and in all places. Put a piece of magnetized iron on a splinter of wood and float it in a bowl of water. The wood will swing around until the magnetized iron is pointing north and south.

Once men learned how to use iron in this way, they had the handy device we call the magnetic compass.

It was especially helpful to sailors. They had been afraid to leave sight of land and sail across unknown seas until they had a good direction finder to guide them.

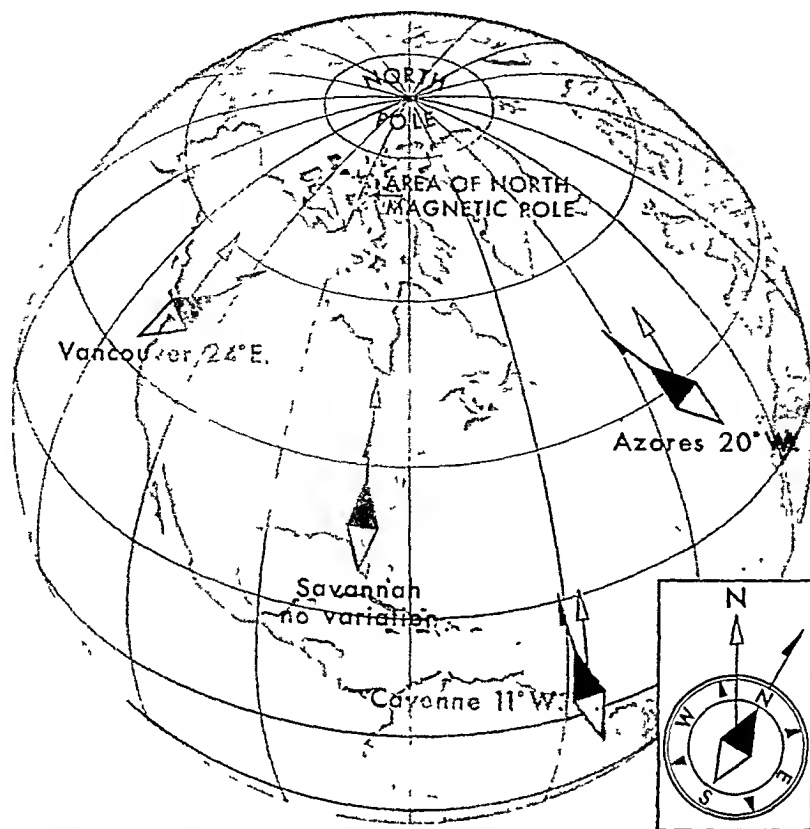
Nature provided the first magnetized iron in the form of a piece of magnetic iron ore called a lodestone. We do not know when men first learned that a lodestone showed directions, but a form of "floating" compass was in use in Europe by the 12th century. With it, mariners could sail boldly to new lands be-

#### AN EARLY COMPASS



This is how a compass of the 12th century may have looked. A magnetized iron needle was held up by wooden buoys in a bowl of water. The arrow-shaped head of the needle pointed north.

## HOW MAGNETIC COMPASSES SHOW NORTH



The needle of the magnetic compass indicates the general direction of north, but in most parts of the world it points somewhat east or west of true north. In the picture above, single-headed arrows show compass headings; double-headed arrows show true north. The angle between them is the variation for that area. The inset diagram shows a simplified compass card.

yond the oceans. The magnetic compass helped Magellan and Columbus make their historic voyages of discovery and aided men in opening new trade routes.

#### How a Compass Shows Directions

A Boy Scout's pocket compass works on the same principle as the first crude compass. Instead of a lodestone and a wood splinter, it has a magnetized needle that swings freely on a pivot to indicate north. Larger compasses have two or more parallel needles attached to the under side of a disk called a *compass card*.

The magnetic compass works because the earth itself is a huge magnet. Connecting its magnetic poles are somewhat irregular *lines of force*, like those of a bar magnet (see Magnet). The earth's magnetic poles are oval areas about 1,000 miles from the geographic poles. There the lines of force are vertical—straight down into the earth. Some distance from the magnetic poles, the lines of force are more or less parallel to the earth's surface.

The compass needle simply aligns itself with these lines of force. In a few places, where lines of force happen to lie along meridians, the compass points to

true north. Everywhere else it points east or west of true north. The difference in degrees between true north and "magnetic" north is called *variation* by mariners and *declination* by surveyors. The "compass rose" pictured in the article Navigation shows how variation is indicated on navigational charts.

The magnetic compass is useless in polar areas because lines of force are nearly vertical there. In these areas the sun and stars must be used to tell directions. Large deposits of iron ore in other regions may also make the magnetic compass useless. Lines of force set up by such deposits may affect the compass needle more than the earth's magnetism.

A compass card usually has two sets of direction pointers. The first set consists of 32 *points*. The four principal, or *cardinal*, points (north, east, south, and west) are marked on an inner circle as N, E, S, and

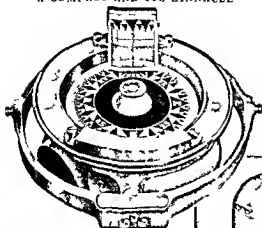
W. Between these lie the *intercardinal* points such as northeast (NE). Further division gives such points as north-northeast (NNE). A final division is indicated by the word *by*, as north by east (N by E). Naming all the points of the compass in their order is called "boxing the compass." The 32 points in clockwise order from north are as follows:  
N, N by E, NNE, NE by N, NE, NE by E, ENE, E by N, E, E by S, ESE, SE by E, SE, SE by S, SSE, S by E, S, S by W, SSW, SW by S, SW, SW by W, WSW, W by S, W, W by N, WNW, NW by W, NW, NW by N, NNW, N by W.

Surveyors, navigators, and others need more exact indications of direction than these, and so they use degrees. The compass card has 360 degrees marked on an outer circle. North is 0° (or 360°), east 90°, south 180°, and west 270°.

#### Magnetic Compasses Aboard Ship

Today most large ships steer by gyrocompass but they carry a magnetic compass as well (see Gyrocompass). Navigators use it to check the accuracy of the gyrocompass and for steering if the gyrocompass fails. The magnetic compass is usually carried in a stand called a *binnacle*. The binnacle holds a compass bowl with gimbals rings that keep the bowl level when the ship rolls. The compass card with its needles is mounted on a pivot in the center of the bowl.

## A COMPASS AND ITS BINNACLE



Above we see a compass bowl with its card. The reflector enlarges the numbers for easy visibility. At the right, we see the hood lifted to show how the glass (called a binnacle) supports the bowl. The hood shields a light that illuminates the card at night. The numbered magnets (1) compensate the compass. The fore and aft magnets (2) and the athwartship magnets (3) offset the ship's permanent magnetism. The quadrantal spheres (3A and 3B) and the Flinders bar (4) cancel temporary magnetism picked up as the ship travels. The backing magnet (5) compensates for shifts of magnetic force when the ship rolls.

On the forward inside edge of the compass bowl is a vertical line called a "lubber's line." This marks the "dead ahead" point of the ship. To steer, the helmsman watches the mark for his course (such as 70°) on the compass card, keeping it always opposite the lubber's line.

## Effects of Ship's Magnetism

Magnetic compasses aboard ship are affected by the magnetic force of the ship itself. A steel ship is a huge magnet, drawing its magnetism from the earth during construction. Its north-seeking pole is on the part that pointed north when the ship was built. If a ship faced northeast in the shipyard, its north-seeking pole is on its port bow. The effect of this magnetism is called *deviation*. Variation and deviation together pull the compass away from true north by an amount called "compass error."

The navigator can remove most of the deviation by "compensating the compass." To do this, he takes his ship to a "range." Here he lines up the ship with markers that indicate the four cardinal directions. Then he "swings ship"—that is, he pivots the ship so that the bow points to each of the markers in turn. As the ship pivots, he removes the deviation on each heading by placing counter-acting magnets in the binnacle. These offset the deviation by attracting the compass in an opposite direction.

**COMPASS PLANTS** The ordinary position of a leaf is approximately horizontal. But in regions of intense sunlight and dry air certain plants, such as the Australian eucalyptus, have come to turn their leaves edgewise to escape the drying heat of the midday sun. To obtain the needed light, the leaf turns its flat surface to the morning and evening rays. As a result the leaves point either north or south, two of the four cardinal directions, and so such plants are called compass plants. The rosehedges of the prairie and the prickly lettuce of waste ground are among the most common of the compass plants of America.

**COMPROMISE OF 1850** At the close of the Mexican War in 1848, the United States owned vast stretches of territory without local government. All the land now included in the states of New Mexico, Arizona, and California was still unsettled. But in 1848 gold was discovered in California. Thousands of people, chiefly from the Northern states, rushed to the gold fields. In a few months some 80,000 adventurers had settled in the new mining region.

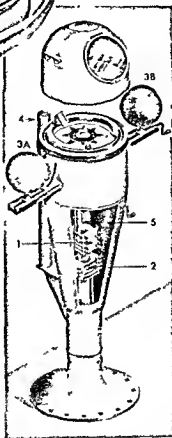
To maintain order and administer justice in these settlements, an established government was needed. California asked to be admitted to the Union as a "free state"—one which would not permit slavery. But the United States had entered the war with Mexico largely to satisfy the South, since the South wanted new territory which could be divided into slave states. If Congress granted California's request, it would run counter to Southern interest.

Throughout the South protest meetings were held. Senator Toombs of Georgia declared in Congress, "I avow in the presence of the living God that if you seek to drive us from California, I am for disunion." The Northern states were equally insistent that slavery should not be extended.

All but one Northern state legislature demanded that Congress should ban slavery in the new territory.

Civil war seemed inevitable when Henry Clay offered a compromise. Other points were in dispute, and Clay proposed that each side yield something. The North should allow New Mexico and Utah to organize as territories with no mention of slavery and give the South a stronger fugitive slave law. The South should accept California as a free state and allow prohibition of slave trade in the District of Columbia.

All spring and summer of the year 1850 the fight over these measures was waged on the floors of Con-



gress. The aged Webster supported Clay. He had been opposed to the war with Mexico, but that was a thing of the past and his aim was to preserve the Union. In his famous Seventh of March speech he declared that slave labor could never be profitable in New Mexico and the North would be losing nothing by granting this concession. It was not necessary to exclude it by law of Congress; it was already excluded by "the law of nature." The antislavery sympathizers of the North felt that Webster had become a traitor to the cause of liberty. Their condemnation is shown in the poem 'Ichabod', by the Abolitionist poet, Whittier:

From those great eyes  
The soul has fled  
When faith is lost, when honor dies,  
The man is dead.  
Then, pay the reverence of old days  
To his dead fame.  
Walk backward, with averted gaze,  
And hide the shame.

After a fight of eight months Webster and Clay secured the passage of the laws which are known as the Compromise of 1850. This measure did not prove, as Webster had hoped, "a finality that would give peace to a country long distracted by the quarrel over slavery." It merely postponed the inevitable Civil War for another ten years. This ill-fated compromise was the last service rendered by Webster and Clay to their country, for both died in 1852.

**CONCORD, MASS.** About 20 miles northwest of the city of Boston lies the beautiful little town of Concord, famed for its historical and literary associations. It is more than 300 years old, having been settled in 1635. Its fine old homes and quiet elm-shaded streets reflect the dignity and charm of colonial days. Hundreds of tourists visit Concord, for here was fought one of the opening battles of the War for Independence (see Lexington and Concord, Battle of). Here also may be seen the homes of a group of famous American authors.

In the Old Manse, built by the Rev. William Emerson in 1766, Ralph Waldo Emerson wrote some of his best works. Nathaniel Hawthorne added to its fame by his 'Mosses from an Old Manse'. Near Emerson's later home on Lexington Road stands Orchard House, the home of the Alcotts, where Louisa M. Alcott wrote her famous stories and where her father, A. Bronson Alcott, lived while he conducted (1879-88) the Concord School of Philosophy in a building nearby.

The happy family life depicted in 'Little Women' refers to an earlier residence in a little house close by, known to them as the Hillside. Hawthorne later obtained possession of it and renamed it Wayside. Meg's Dovecote in 'Little Women' is the Alcott cottage on Main Street, in which the family lived when they first came to Concord. On the same street is another house which the wandering family occupied for a time and which later became the home of Henry D. Thoreau, the famous author of 'Walden'. All these literary friends—Emerson, Thoreau, Hawthorne, and the Alcotts—now lie in the beautiful Sleepy Hollow Cemetery, on the outskirts of the village. Population (1950 census), 2,299.

**CONCORD, N. H.** From the center of Concord rises New Hampshire's green-domed granite Statehouse. Other government buildings rise about it from wide green lawns. The business district surrounds this area.

Concord, situated amid fertile fields and profitable granite quarries, lies on the west bank of the Merrimack River about 75 miles northwest of Boston, Mass. It is a transportation and financial center. Employment is offered in railroad shops, in printing, and in manufacturing electrical equipment, leather goods, and silverware. State institutions border the city. Nearby are Bear Brook State Park, St. Paul's School for boys, and the birthplace of Mary Baker Eddy, founder of the Christian Science movement. The former home (now a museum) of Franklin Pierce, 14th president of the United States, and the Historical Society building are within the city.

Settled as Rumford in 1727, the site was renamed Concord in 1762. It was made the state capital in 1803. The Statehouse, built in 1819, was remodeled in 1866; an annex was added in 1911. Population (1950 census), 27,988.

#### BRITISH RETREAT FROM CONCORD



On the morning of April 19, 1775, American minutemen, standing at Concord Bridge, "... fired the shot heard round the world." The redcoats fired first, then retreated under American fire. The patriots firing from roadside cover made the retreat costly.

## The ARTIFICIAL STONE of the CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY

**CONCRETE** The artificial stone called *concrete* is one of the most widely used building materials. It is relatively cheap, long-lasting and can be molded to any needed shape. It can be made porous or watertight, heavy or light, and will harden to a stone-like substance even under water. It is made into sidewalks, roads, bridges, dams, buildings of all kinds, dry docks, and many other useful things.

Concrete is a mixture of *aggregates* (sand, gravel, crushed stone, slag, and similar materials), *cement*, and *water*. The cement most used in concretes is *portland cement* (for manufacture and types see *Cement*). The water and cement form a paste that coats each piece of aggregate and fills all spaces between them. The paste hardens, bonding the whole into a hard mass.

### Aggregates

There are both *fine* and *coarse aggregates*. Fine aggregates are particles that measure  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch or smaller in the largest measurement; coarse aggregate pieces range from  $\frac{1}{4}$  to 6 inches and larger. No piece of coarse aggregate should be more than one-fifth the thickness of the finished concrete. Aggregates and water must be clean and free of organic matter.

Ordinary concrete weighs about 150 pounds per cubic foot. Lightweight concretes can be made by adding materials that cause swelling or by using lightweight aggregates such as *inders*, *pumice*, or *expanded clay*, *mica*, *shale*, *slag*, or *slate*.

### Mixing Concrete

For home use in sidewalks, walls, and basement floors, the usual mixture is 1 2 3 (1 part cement, 2 parts sand, and 3 parts stone or gravel). These are thoroughly blended together either by hand with a shovel or in a mechanical mixer. Then only enough water is added to make the mixture stiffly plastic.

For small home repairs, the dry ingredients of a suitable mixture can be bought already blended. To make it ready for use, it is only necessary to add water and mix. For large jobs, concrete can be mixed at the building site or purchased *ready mixed*. The latter is prepared at a central plant and carried to the building site in trucks that agitate it to keep it plastic. Another concrete is *transit mixed*; the dry ingredients for this are put in a mixer mounted on a truck. As the truck travels, they are blended and water added. Water



The first prestressed concrete bridge begun in America was Walnut Lane Bridge in Philadelphia. Construction began in 1949. The bridge, completed in late 1950, was dedicated in 1951.

may be kept from the mix until the truck is near or reaches the building site.

### Placing and Finishing Concrete

A properly mixed concrete will not pour. It must be *placed*. It is placed into forms which determine the shape the casting is to take. Forms may be made of lumber, plywood, or metal. They must be oiled or moistened to prevent the hardened concrete from sticking to them. A spade or other tool is worked up and down in the concrete shortly after it is placed to remove entrapped air. The concrete is then *compacted* by tamping the surface or by the use of mechanical vibrators.

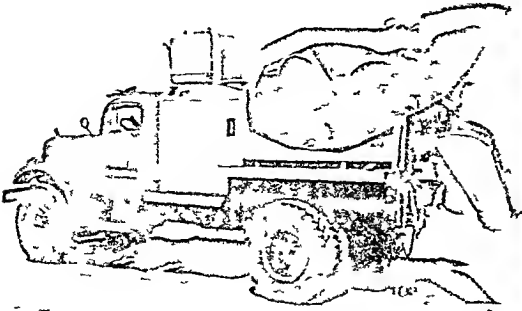
Excess concrete is removed by *screeding*—advancing a straightedge (such as a 2 by 4) along the top of the form with a sawing motion. A relatively smooth non-skid surface is achieved by *floating*—smoothing and grading by gently working the exposed concrete with a light metal wood or cork tool having a flat surface called a *float*. Smoother surfaces are made by working with a steel trowel—*troweling*. A rough non-skid surface is given by *brooming*—brushing the almost hard concrete with a hair- or wire-bristled brush.

### The Strengths of Concrete

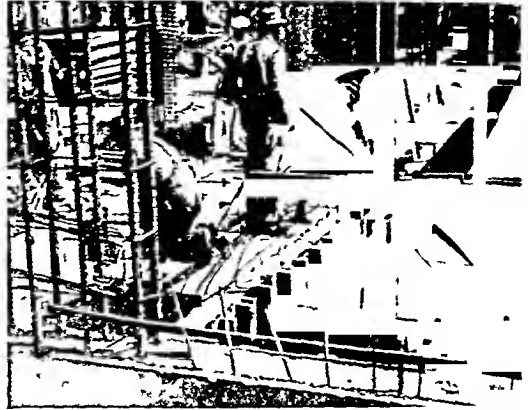
The chief cause of poor strength in concrete is the use of too much water in the mix. For ordinary con-



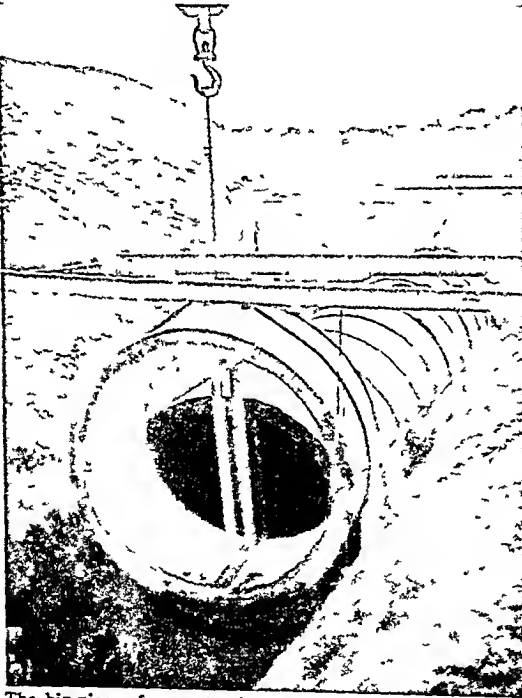
## TWO PRINCIPAL WAYS OF USING CONCRETE



A side of this truck-mounted mixer has been cut away to show how aggregates, cement, and water are mixed as the truck travels. Such concrete hardens into position at the building site.



The ends of reinforcing steel rods rise above sections of concrete walls that have hardened in place. The workmen are readying the surfaces for placing the next higher sections.



The big piece of concrete pipe being lowered into position at Wright Field, Dayton, Ohio, was made in a factory and brought to the field. Such concrete is called "precast."

crete the proportion of water is six gallons (less if the sand is wet) to one bag (94 pounds) of cement. This makes a stiffly plastic concrete that in the *slump test* (the fall of concrete placed in a cone of prescribed size when the cone is removed) slumps but does not lose its cone shape. A too-wet mix is sloppy; in it the heavier aggregates sink to the bottom and the cement paste leaches out.

To attain the greatest possible strength, concrete must be properly *cured*. In curing, concrete should be kept wet for three or more days. In winter, freshly

placed concrete must not be permitted to freeze. Concrete generates some heat as it hardens. In mildly freezing weather, sand, straw, or tarpaulins thrown over the concrete will keep in sufficient heat to prevent freezing. In severe cold, concrete is kept warm with stoves called *salamanders*, with warm-air blowers, or with steam.

Concrete's greatest strength is under pressure (*compression*). *Shearing* or *tension* forces tend to crack and break it. Shearing and tension strengths can be increased by *reinforcing* or by *prestressing*.

Concrete is reinforced by placing it about steel rods or wire. Thus the reinforced concrete has the natural strengths of both steel and concrete. Concrete is prestressed by placing it about mechanically stretched steel rods or wires. The stretch of the steel is maintained after the casting has hardened either by the bond between steel and concrete or by anchoring the ends of the steel to the ends of the casting. Still another way is to stretch steel through holes in already hardened concrete. The stretched steel in attempting to resume its natural length, keeps the concrete under great pressure from both ends. This pressure prevents it from cracking and breaking under great shearing and tension forces.

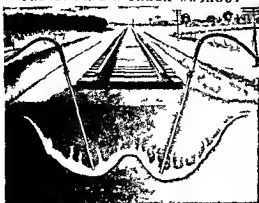
#### Some Uses of Concrete

*Precast concrete* is made in several standard pieces cast at factories. These include doorsills, lintels, beams, blocks, bricks, tile, pipe, and decorative pieces (For a picture of especially fine decorative precast concrete, see Baha'u'llah.)

In *tilt-up* construction, walls are cast flat and tilted up into position after they have hardened. *Terrazzo* is a highly polished concrete used in floors. It contains colored aggregates, usually crushed marble. After it has hardened, a special machine grinds off a thin layer of the concrete, thus exposing a surface of colored stones. This surface is then polished until it gleams.

*Grout* is a fluid mixture of cement and water to which fine sand is often added. Pressure grouting—

## PREVENTING A TRACK WASHOUT



A concrete made of cement and water, to which sand is sometimes added is called grout. Forced in a position by air or by hydraulic pressure it binds the stones into a firm subgrade.

forming the grout by either a rammer or hydraulic pressure is used to firm oil well casings to stabilize a watery subgrade of railroad tracks and to strengthen masonry walls and dam foundations that have become weakened. Gravity grouting used to bond pieces of track ballast is done by pouring grout over ballast stones.

*Soil cement* is a concrete used in constructing lightly traveled roads, airport runways and irrigation canal linings. Its aggregate is the earth found at the construction site. This is broken up, pulverized and thoroughly blended with cement. Water is then mixed in and the whole is compacted. Soil cement is usually surfaced with bituminous (black top) materials.

*Asbestos cement* is a lightweight concrete used for precast slung sheathing interior linings, insulating boards and interior decorative pieces. Asbestos cement can be sawed like wood.

Next to building construction, roadmaking provides the greatest use for concrete. As a road surface, concrete offers both a low maintenance cost and a long life. Worn concrete can be resurfaced with bituminous materials or with a layer of new concrete.

The Portland Cement Association supported by most cement manufacturing companies develops new and improved cement-using products and methods. It carries on a nationwide program of education on the best ways of using cement and concrete. Its findings are made available to all users of cement. (For pictures and uses of concrete see also Architecture, Bridge Building, Construction, Caisson, Dam, Roads and Streets.)

**CONDOR.** The mighty condors are the largest of vultures and among the largest of birds. Full grown they have a wingspread of from 8 to 11 feet and a body 3 feet long. One genus lives in the high Andes of Peru and Chile above all other animal and plant life; another genus lives in the Sierra Madre of California. To prevent the California condor from disappearing, a special condor reservation is maintained in Los Padres National Forest.

These giant birds have all the unpleasant habits of the vulture group, but when flying they are among the most majestic of creatures. When the condors, says Charles Darwin, are wheeling in a flock round and round any spot, their flight is beautiful. Near Lima I watched several for nearly an hour without once taking off my eyes. They moved in large curves de-

## A MODERN USE OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION



This modern house is built over a concrete slab as wide and long as the house. The precast cinder blocks that form walls are not

only self-insulating against heat and cold but present a pleasing appearance. They can also be painted in any desired color.

scending and ascending without giving a single flap." On the ground, however, they are clumsy, and to lift their heavy bodies they require a long running take-off. For this reason they prefer to perch on high cliffs from which they can swoop off easily.

Fewer than a hundred individuals of the California condor exist today. Although it is rigidly protected by state and federal law, advancing civilization has doomed it to extinction. Like all the vultures, it lives on carrion. With wild animals greatly reduced in number, the condor finds it increasingly difficult to obtain a food supply adequate to its great size. Moreover, it lays only one or two eggs in a season. The eggs take about seven weeks to hatch, and the young develop very slowly. They fly when they are about a year old but remain with the parents for three years. The nest is simply a bed of leaves in a cave or under an overhanging ledge of rock in the most inaccessible mountain heights.

Condors are the heaviest flying birds, weighing up to 25 pounds, and only the wandering albatross has a greater wingspread. They are grayish-black, and the wing feathers are edged with white. White patches on the forepart of the underwing are conspicuous as the bird soars overhead. The head and neck are bare of feathers, and the skin is wrinkled and reddish-orange in color. The male Andean condor has a large red comb and wattled neck. The birds have powerful beaks but the huge claws are not formed for gripping and cannot carry prey. The scientific name of the California condor is *Gymnogyps californianus*; of the Andean, or South American, condor, *Vultur gryphus*. **CONEY ISLAND.** From Memorial Day until mid-September Coney Island is thronged with millions of New Yorkers seeking amusement and relief from the city's heat. Here a long, broad boardwalk looks out over a beach that is protected from sea erosion by jetties and breakwaters. Boats, subways, buses, and private cars bring fun seekers to the spot.

The shoreward side of the boardwalk is lined with food and drink stands. In back of these are restaurants, dance halls, and two large amusement parks. These last have roller coasters, chute-the-clutes, air-

## BIRD OF THE MOUNTAIN HEIGHTS



This habitat group in the Chicago Natural History Museum shows a pair of California condors outside their nest on a lofty mountain ledge. The egg is incubated by both birds.

plane spins, merry-go-rounds, Ferris wheels, crack-the-whip, a parachute drop, and many other kinds of thrill and fun rides.

Coney Island is a peninsula that hooks westward from Long Island's southern shore. It lies within Brooklyn. At one time Coney Island Creek, a tidal channel now filled in, separated Coney Island from Long Island. Because of the large number of rabbits it once harbored, the Dutch settlers probably called it *Konijn Eiland* (Rabbit Island).

The eastern tip of the peninsula is occupied by the residential area called Sea Gate; the western portion is populous Brighton Beach. All was once called Coney Island, but now only the amusement area and the residential district adjoining it on the north are called by the old name.

Coney Island started as a resort for the wealthy with the building of a hotel in 1829 in what is now Sea Gate. Over succeeding years a pavilion, bathhouse, and more hotels were added. Since the 1870's new highways, rail lines, and the subway have brought millions of the less wealthy to the resort.

## CONEY ISLAND BEACH ON A HOT DAY



When summer's moist heat closes down on New York City, thousands seek relief at the beaches. One of the most popular is at

Coney Island. Behind the beach lie the boardwalk, refreshment stands, and entertainment facilities of many kinds.

## The RISE and FALL of the CONFEDERACY

**CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA** Between Dec 20 1860 and Feb 1 1861 seven southern states declared their withdrawal (secession) from the United States. Three days later at Montgomery Ala they organized a separate and independent government called the Confederate States of America. The states that set up this government were South Carolina Mississippi Florida Alabama Georgia Louisiana and Texas. Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was elected president and Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia was chosen vice-president (see Davis Stephens).

The movement for independence was based on the claimed right of any state to secede from the Union. The preamble of the new Confederate constitution declared that each state was acting in its sovereign and independent character. This right had been asserted at earlier periods in American history (see States Rights). Never before however had the issue been charged with the emotional factor of the abolition of Negro slavery. The constitution of the Confederate States reflected the then prevailing belief in the South that slavery was the only practicable status for the large Negro population of that section. It forbade any legislation impairing the institution of slavery although it did prohibit foreign slave trade.

The remainder of the constitution was largely based on that of the Union from which the states of the lower South were withdrawing. Among the modifications were a six year term for the president who could not succeed himself. The president was given the right to veto separate items of appropriation bills. Congress was prohibited from passing any law that related to more than one subject. It was also forbidden to adopt a protective tariff on imports.

### The Three Branches of Government

The legislative branch of the government was the Confederate Congress, consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives. Its work was lessened by adopting all United States statutes consistent with the Confederate constitution. On the other hand it had to deal with the difficult problems of war. Within the Congress there were no recognized party divisions. Members tended to fall into administration and anti-administration groups on personal grounds.

The judicial system of the Confederacy consisted chiefly of district courts located in the old federal judicial districts. The ill-defined jurisdiction of circuit courts was abolished (a step followed half a century later by the United States). Provision was made for a supreme court but it was never organized because of bitter controversies in Congress over its jurisdiction and powers.

The executive branch consisted of Departments of State Treasury War Navy Justice and the Post Office. The heads of these departments made up the President's Cabinet. Fourteen men held Cabinet offices. In order of their terms of service they were secretary of state, Robert Toombs, R. M. T. Hunter and J. P. Benjamin, secretary of the treasury

G. G. Memminger, G. A. Trenholm, secretary of war, L. P. Walker, J. P. Benjamin, G. W. Randolph, James A. Seddon, John G. Breckinridge, secretary of the navy, Stephen R. Mallory, attorney general, J. P. Benjamin, Thomas Bragg, Thomas H. Watts and George Davis, postmaster general, John H. Reagan.

### Four More States Join the Confederacy

The election of Abraham Lincoln as president of the United States had touched off the series of secessions. By the time Lincoln took office four months later the seceding states had taken possession of most of the forts and other public property of the United States lying within their borders. In Charleston Harbor however Fort Sumter still garrisoned United States troops. The Montgomery government ordered its forces at Charleston to fire on and reduce Fort Sumter. The bombardment began on April 12 1861 the fort was surrendered on April 14. On April 15 President Lincoln called for troops to be used against the seceding states. Two days later Virginia caught between two warring nations and forced to a choice took its first step toward secession. It was followed in turn by Arkansas North Carolina and finally (on June 24) by Tennessee.

The four additional states joined the Confederacy. Upon Virginia's invitation the capital of the new nation was moved to Richmond in May and June 1861. The number of stars in the Confederate flag originally seven was increased to 13 in recognition of member states plus Kentucky and Missouri. Neither of these two states seceded although both sent representatives to the Confederate Congress.

The war which began in 1861 continued for almost four years (see Civil War American). The 11 Confederate States had a total population of about 9 million of whom some 3½ million were slaves. The 23 states remaining in the Union had a population of about 23 million. The difference in resources was even greater than the difference in population. Most of the industrial power of the nation was in the Union States which had the further advantage of overwhelming naval strength. This sea power was effectively used to blockade Southern ports.

Some advantages did lie with the Confederacy. It stood on the defensive not seeking to conquer the Union States but only to resist efforts to occupy the South. It operated on interior lines so that even though its railroads were less in extent and in capacity than those of the North it was able to shift troops from one theater of action to another. It had the handicap of its own emphasis on the rights and independence of its individual states. Several states asserted these rights at such times and in such ways as to weaken the general effort of the Confederacy.

### First Three Years of the War

In the beginning of the struggle both sides relied on short-term volunteers—the Union for 90 days the Confederates for one year. During the first 12 months of the war despite the dramatic victory of

## CONFEDERATE CONGRESS IN SESSION

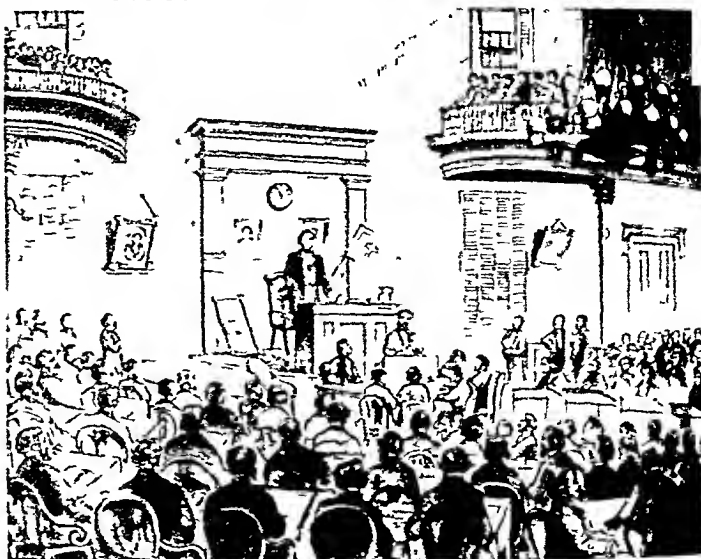
the first battle of Manassas, or Bull Run, things went badly for the Confederacy. Missouri was lost to the South as was northern Arkansas, more than half of Tennessee, and important positions on the seacoasts. A Union fleet held the mouth of the Mississippi River and threatened New Orleans. In this state of affairs, the Confederacy adopted conscription, a course soon followed by the Congress of the United States.

The second year of the war opened with the loss of New Orleans and Memphis and with a Union army in sight of Richmond. The course of events was reversed, however, when Stonewall Jackson's brilliant campaign freed the Shenandoah Valley and Robert E. Lee took command of the newly named Army of Northern Virginia. Lee drove George B. McClellan from Richmond and, in a series of brilliant victories, threatened Washington and crossed the Potomac into Maryland. Meanwhile in the west, Gen. Braxton Bragg drove his Army of the Tennessee into Kentucky, almost to the Ohio River. He was compelled to withdraw, however, after the battle of Perryville (Oct. 8, 1862). Earlier Lee had to leave Maryland after the battle at Sharpsburg, or Antietam, on September 16 and 17.

The battle of Antietam was enough of a Union victory to warrant President Lincoln's issuing his preliminary Emancipation Proclamation (see Emancipation Proclamation). It was to become effective on Jan. 1, 1863, and was to apply only to slaves in states still resisting Union arms at that time. More important it served to make the war a crusade against slavery as well as a conflict to preserve the Union. It thereby effectively ended any possibility of foreign intervention on the Confederate side.

During the remaining years the tide of war slowly turned against the Confederates. Lee's invasion of Pennsylvania ended in defeat at Gettysburg. The North gained control of the Mississippi River, cutting off the western South from the remainder of the Confederacy. The railroad lines connecting the central South with the eastern section were cut. In the Shenandoah Valley and elsewhere Union forces deliberately destroyed the South's facilities for producing war supplies.

The Southern government had started out with high hope of foreign support, particularly from Great Britain and France. To create an artificial scarcity of cotton abroad, the Confederate government prohibited its export in the early days of the war. Later they could not get it out in sufficient quantities because of the effective blockade. The Confederate States never gained diplomatic recognition as a na-



The first legislative body of the Confederacy was the Provisional Congress, which convened during 1861. Here the

president of the Congress, Howell Cobb of Georgia, presides over a session in the first capital at Montgomery, Ala.

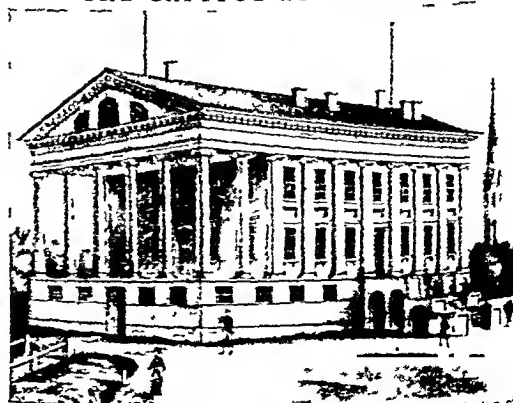
tion, much less foreign intervention. Europe's chief contribution was in the form of navy cruisers (of which the *Alabama* was the best known). These warships did much to disrupt Union sea-borne commerce.

The Confederacy was never able to solve its financial problem. As a result the successive issues of Confederate paper money lost more and more purchasing power until they finally became of no value. Estimates of the amount of money printed by the Confederate government range between one and two billion dollars. To this should be added perhaps another half billion dollars of notes and fractional currency ("shinplasters") issued by states, banks, railroads, and other business organizations.

#### The End of the Confederacy

Late in 1864 it became apparent that the Confederacy had no chance to win the war. The fall of At-

#### THE CAPITOL AT RICHMOND



In the spring of 1861 the capital of the Confederate States of America was moved from Montgomery, Ala., to Richmond, Va.

## THE DEATHBLOW TO THE CONFEDERACY



The Confederacy ended April 9 1865 when the South's general in chief Lee (left seated) surrendered to the Union's General Grant (center seated) at Appomattox Court House Va

lanta was followed by the rout of Gen. John B. Hood's Army of the Tennessee and the virtually unopposed march of Gen. William T. Sherman to Savannah. Unsuccessful attempts were made to negotiate a peace with President Lincoln at Hampton Roads (Feb. 8 1865). Three days later President Davis appointed Robert E. Lee to the position of general in chief. In another six days Wilmington last Confederate port open to blockade runners was closed by the fall of Fort Fisher.

Petersburg Va. fell on April 2 1865 and Richmond had to be evacuated. Lee fought on for another week then surrendered at Appomattox Court House on April 9. There was still scattered fighting in the Carolinas in Texas and on the high seas. For all practical purposes however the Confederate States of America came to its end with Lee's surrender.

The Confederate States had to accept the reconstruction terms imposed upon them by the federal government. After fulfilling these terms each state was allowed to take its place in the Union on an equal footing with the other states. Politically the period of reconstruction was completed in 1877. Economically the effects of the war lasted much longer. (This period is discussed in the article Reconstruction Period see also Johnson Andrew.)

**CONFUCIUS** (*Kon-fu shus*) (551? 478 B.C.) One day about 500 years before Christ the Chinese philosopher Confucius and his disciples passed a graveyard where a woman was weeping at a new male grave. They asked the woman why she wept. She answered: My husband's father was killed here by a tiger and my husband also and now my son has met the same fate. When they asked her why she did not leave so fatal a spot she answered that in this place there was no oppressive government. Remember this my chil-

dren said Confucius oppressive government is fiercer and more feared than a tiger.

In such teaching and with such wise sayings Confucius spent his life trying to bring men to a right mode of living and a respect for the teachings of the wise men of old. He always said of himself that he was a transmitter not a maker. He collected and edited the poetry the music and the historical writings of the days still older than his own which he considered the golden age.

Confucius had no claim to being more than a man. Yet when he died he was revered almost as a god. Temples were erected in his honor in every city of China. His grave is visited yearly by many pilgrims and his teachings are deeply respected.

Though Confucianism is commonly called a religion it is rather a system of ethics or good conduct. Confucius did not talk of God but of goodness. He did not teach about any god saving simply: Respect the gods but have as little to do with them as possible. His entire attention was centered on making men better in the life and his *analects* are wise sayings similar to the Proverbs in the Bible. He taught men to be honest upright faithful and obedient to those in authority. His most famous rule of conduct is the negative golden rule which says: What ye would not that others should do unto you do ye not unto them. Every Chinese particularly the educated knows scores of these sayings by heart.

Confucius is the Latinized form of this philosopher's Chinese name which was *Kung-fu-tse* meaning the master kung. He was born in what is now the province of Shantung of a noble family. His father was poor and died when the boy was three years old. He was reared by his mother and proved a model son. When he was only six people noted his fondness for setting out sacrifices and for ceremony. He married when he was 19 years old. After his marriage he worked for the governor of his district first as a keeper of stores and then as an overseer of parks and livestock. At the age of 22 he began his life work as a teacher by establishing a school. He accepted valuable aid from some of his students but he also taught those who could afford to pay only a small fee. He would not keep a student who would not earnestly try to learn or one who had little ability. When his mother died he was so stricken with grief that he spent 27 months mourning in solitude.

After some years of teaching and travel he settled in Shantung and there spent 15 years. When he was 52 years old he was rewarded by an appointment as governor of a province. He performed his task so well that a neighboring governor became jealous and plotted his overthrow. Confucius then went into voluntary exile and wandered about for 13 years. He failed and discouraged. He returned to his native state in his 69th year and died three years later. He had one son and two daughters. To lay thousands of Chinese claim descent from them. The followers of his teaching number more than 300 million and they are found not only in China but all over the world.

## LIVING in the HOT, RAINY Basin of the CONGO RIVER

CONGO RIVER. Every second of the day and night Africa's great Congo River pours 1,200,000 cubic feet of water into the Atlantic Ocean. Its vast stream has bitten deeply into the ocean floor, and the brown of its silt-filled waters can be seen 30 miles out at sea. Only the flood of South America's Amazon River is greater. The Congo and its headstreams curve 3,000 miles into the heart of Africa. Its many tributaries reach out fanlike many thousands of miles more. They drain the huge Congo basin's 1,600,000 square miles, an area equal to more than half the continental United States.

The huge basin spreads north and south from the equator and east from the Atlantic Ocean two thirds of the way across Africa. The equatorial portion receives the sun's hottest and most direct rays (see Climate). Therefore every day of the year has hot summer weather.

For some distance on each side of the equator, the basin receives heavy rainfall, up to 90 inches a year. Moisture and heat make plants and trees grow swiftly, and *tropical rain forests* cover much of the land. The southern part of the basin is high, rolling land. It receives much less rainfall than the equatorial portion, and the land is covered with tall, waving grass. Trees rise along the banks of small, wandering streams. Millions of animals feed here on grass or tree leaves—buffaloes, antelopes, zebras, giraffes, and gazelles. Lions, leopards, and other beasts of prey sink through the tall grasses hunting grass-eating animals for food.

### How People Live in the Forest

IN THE rain forests of the Congo basin, many trees grow until their lowest branches are 60 feet above the ground. Small trees grow close together under the big ones. And under these, bushes and tree ferns grow as high as a house. A matted undergrowth of still smaller plants crowds the ground. Big and little vines twist and turn through this as if to tie it all together. The sun is shut out, and noon is no brighter than twilight in more open land.

The forest teems with animal life. Wild pigs grunt and elephants trumpet. Snakes slither over the ground, up trees, and lie along branches. Gray parrots scream at chattering monkeys. A crocodile climbs a sandy river shoal to sun itself, and out in the stream a



The picture shows an African boy fishing in the mighty Congo River. His knife and fishhook were made by the village blacksmith. His bait can come from a village trading station. He wears only a breechcloth because it is always hot in the Congo basin.

hippopotamus' wide back looms darkly just above the surface. Millions of mosquitoes and gnats form trailing clouds. Among the insects is the dread tsetse fly. Its bite causes a disease called *nagana* in cattle and sleeping sickness in humans. People cannot raise cattle in the region.

Travel through the vegetation-choked rain forest is difficult. Here and there men have cut paths with big knives and axes. They sometimes follow trails trampled down by elephants and other animals. Travel over the rivers is easier. The native people glide along the Congo in dugout canoes, and steamboats carry passengers and freight.

### The People of the Congo Basin

Millions of people live in the Congo basin. Most of them are Negroes. A few thousands are white people. The Europeans came only after Stanley first explored the Congo's course in the 1870's (see Stanley). The whites are government, mining, and plantation officials, traders, and missionaries. Most of the basin lies within the Belgian Congo, a colony of Belgium (see Belgian Congo).

Among the Negroes, some, called *Négrillos* are Pygmies. They grow only as tall as a 12-year-old American boy. Instead of planting gardens, they get their food by hunting and fishing and by gathering wild fruits and edible plants. They make crude shelters of bark, but they stay in one place only a short time. They live deep in the forest (see Pygmy).

Most of the people of the Congo basin are Bantu Negroes. The word "Bantu" can mean just one person or many persons. The Bantu are divided into many tribes and speak many languages. The languages are very much alike. Because they live in a hot climate, they wear few clothes and construct few houses. One tribe may build round houses of grass

## TRAVELING AND HUNTING IN THE CONGO BASIN



Porters (left) carry a Belgian Congo official and his equipment. He travels in a region where there are no roads. In front of him, a porter holds aloft a Belgian flag. A Congo hunter



(right) draws his bow for a shot at an antelope. He is a hunter for one of the villages. The hunters bring in most of the meat eaten by the Congo people.

and poles and another will construct square houses of palm leaves, poles and reeds. Each tribe uses the material found in its section.

#### How the Bantu People Live

Most of the Bantu live in villages along the river banks. A typical village has about 25 houses and a working shelter for craftsmen, usually a roofed-over space without walls. The villagers use parts of the surrounding land for garden patches.

Each patch will grow food for only two or three years. In that time the heavy rains wash the plant food from the uncovered soil. When all the land has been worked over the villagers move to a new site.

To start a new village the men of the tribe first clear the site. They chop out brush and small trees and kill the big ones by burning brush around their trunks. In the moist heat a dead tree quickly rots and falls. In the garden patches the men cut some of the saplings off at the height of their eyes. The women train bean vines on these poles.

To build a house the men cut four saplings with V-shaped crotches at the top. These are the corner

posts. They lay long poles from one V to another and lash the roof poles to them. The roof slopes to a point over the center of the house. To make walls the men line the sides with reeds and small poles and tie them in place with vines. Then the women plaster the walls with clay from the river bank. The women and children weave roof mats of long narrow palm leaves. These too are lashed in place with vines. The palm leaves permit cooling air to circulate through the house,

yet they shed the Congo basin's heaviest rain.

The house has a doorway but no door or window. Its bare earthen floor is covered with palm mats. The Bantu use their houses only for sleeping and for a shelter against rain.

#### The Garden Patches

Women and girls cultivate the garden patches. In them they plant cassava (also called manioc), corn, yams, peanuts and beans. Some villages raise bananas, rice, millet, sugar cane, tobacco and cotton. In the hot moist air plants grow quickly. As soon as one crop is harvested another is planted in the same ground. The villagers also raise chickens and goats.

But elephants, wild pigs, antelopes and other forest

#### CURING ANTELOPE MEAT



These hunters cut their game into small pieces and smoke it over a fire before taking it back to the village. Meat spoils quickly in the hot moist air of the Congo.



and grassland animals like to eat garden plants too. Men guard the garden at night.

#### The Work of the Men and Boys

The men are hunters, fishermen, and craftsmen. The boys learn these arts from them. The village blacksmith knows how to make iron from iron ore. He can fashion iron into hoes and rakes for garden tools. He makes razors, arrowheads, and spear points. He also is skilled in pounding decorative rings from copper and brass for arms, legs, necks, and noses. Men make canoes by burning out the center of big logs. They weave baskets and other articles of raffia and wicker, and carve combs, figures, masks, and statuettes of ivory and wood. Some pound the soft inner bark of certain trees to make cloth. All the men know how to weave fishing and hunting nets of vines.

The hunting nets are set deep in the forest or grassland. Then men and boys drive monkeys and other small game into them. Most of the fish nets are of the dip variety.

The men hunt with guns, bows and arrows, and spears. Favorite game are wild pigs, antelopes, monkeys, buffaloes, hippopotamuses, and elephants. They use snares and pits to trap game. An elephant pit is dug deep and large, then covered over with a light floor of poles, earth, and underbrush. When an elephant steps on this, the floor breaks and drops the animal into the pit. Hunting trips often last a week or more. The meat of the kill is smoked to prevent it from spoiling.

The men and boys also hunt for palm-nut trees. The nuts grow in great bunches. These are cut down and carried back to the village. There oil is tramped out of the husks under the villagers' bare feet. Palm oil is used by the village women as butter and for cooking. The very hard palm nuts are saved. The men load these into canoes and journey to a trading post, where they trade them for such things as cloth, brass, copper, guns, shells, and salt. The men also cut down timber and sell it to the river-boat captains for fuel.

#### Evening in the Village

Supper is the Bantu's principal meal. For it the women and girls bring fresh vegetables, bananas, and other produce from the garden. A favorite dish is made of chicken, cassava dough, and green peppers cooked in palm oil.

The children play many games with tops and strings. They have running, swimming, and canoe races, and they test their skill at climbing trees and wrestling. Many

of their games grow out of the dangers of forest and grassland living. In these the children play they are hunting, fishing, fighting another tribe, or that a leopard has stolen into the village and run off with a child.

Evenings are busy, happy times. The villagers visit with one another. The women may fashion pots and dishes of clay and bake them in the fire; or they may pound flour for tomorrow's meals from corn and cassava roots in the hollowed end of a log.

On some evenings the village orchestra may give a concert. The musicians play several instruments. Among them is a stringed bow of wood. To play it the musician grips one end between his teeth and hums while he picks at the strings. Women play a special flute by blowing into it through their noses. Other instruments are ordinary flutes, wooden gongs, m-rimbabas, and drums. The Bantu make many kinds of drums. With a big one they beat out messages in code. The message is relayed by the drums from one village to another until it is received at its destination.

Sometimes the villagers hold a dance. Congo life has many reasons for joy or lament. A dance may celebrate the birth of a new baby, a victory over an enemy tribe, or mourn the death of one of the villagers. Dancing begins in the evening, and it may continue until the sun rises. Village chiefs and witch doctors usually are very fine dancers; sometimes one will dance while everyone else watches.

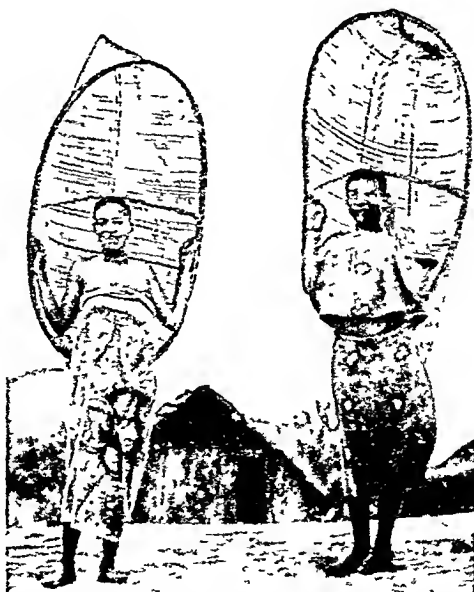
#### The Village Chief and the Witch Doctor

A village chief or headman directs the villagers in their work and play. A witch doctor is the religious leader of the village. The villagers think he can heal the sick with incantations, dances, or magic. They believe he can save one person from the evil wishes of another. He makes little bags of fish bones, colored strings, and other things and sells them to the villagers as a protection against evil. And he conducts the initiation of boys into manhood (see Magic).

For the initiation he takes boys away from the village. To see their mothers or sisters during the tests would cause the boys to fail. They are taught tribal secrets that only men may know. They endure trials and hardship. At the end of a two- or three-week period, the boys who have satisfactorily completed their tests are accepted as men in the tribe.

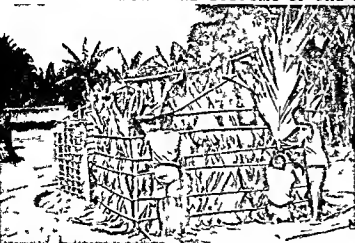
**Working for the White Men**  
White men hire the Bantu men as porters for caravans.

#### BANTU FISHING NETS



These village women carry two newly made fish nets. They have woven them of vines. Notice that they wear dresses of cloth, bought at a white man's trading station.

## WORK AND CUSTOMS OF THE BANTU



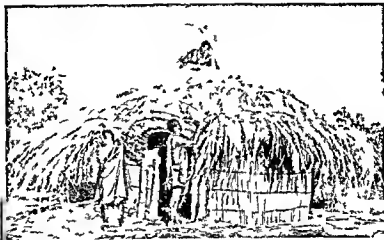
These men are building a house wall of palm leaves (left) and straw thatch. The bare poles show the construction before leaves are tacked to the walls. The woman



(right) is bringing a basket of wood to the village for the evening campfire. Notice how the woman balances the basket supports and steadies the heavy load.



The design of the tattooed ridges shown on the face of the woman (left) is peculiar to her tribe. The ridges are formed by passing dirt into shallow cuts. These fetter and then heal.



leaving the ridges. The men (right) are thatching the roof of a house with grass. They made the walls of reeds. The village lies in the rolling grasslands.

The porters carry 60-pound loads to forest or grassland places that cannot be reached by boat or truck. In the southern part of the Belgian Congo white men have opened mines from which they take diamonds, copper, cobalt, radium, and uranium. Village men are hired to work the mines. Plantation officials hire the village men to plant and grow such produce as coffee, cacao, sugar cane, oil palms, and rubber. The villagers also are hired as steamer hands, truck drivers, servants, and factory and railroad workers. Some are trained to operate radios and telegraph instruments.

There are few schools in the Belgian Congo. Most of these are conducted by Catholic and Protestant missionaries. Bantu students often return to their villages and start schools of the same kind as theirs.

Some are encouraged to continue in school. They become health workers, chemists, doctors, nurses, and clergymen.

#### The Course of the Congo

The Congo River rises as two headstreams, the Luapula and the Lualaba. The Luapula, the easternmost rises in a Northern Rhodesian swamp fed by the Chamber River. It flows northwest to Lake Mweru. It emerges from the lake's northern end as the Luvua and flows northwest. The western headstream, the Lualaba, drains the rich mining area of southern Belgian Congo. It flows directly north to the meeting with the Luvua. At the meeting, the half-mile-wide Congo is 100 feet above sea level.

The Congo flows 450 miles north interrupted by a 180-mile stretch of rapids to the first of the seven

Stanley Falls. In this distance it descends only 200 feet. But in the next 60 miles Stanley Falls drop sharply another 200 feet and swing the river in a north-westerly direction across the equator. At the lower end of the falls lies the river port of Stanleyville. Up to this point the river is known as the Upper Congo.

From Stanleyville to the place where it again crosses the equator, the Congo follows a flattened half circle. It then takes a southwest direction past Léopoldville, the capital of the Belgian Congo, to the sea. The course from Stanleyville to Léopoldville measures 980 miles. In all this distance the river drops only 500 feet. In the 200 miles before it reaches Léopoldville, the Congo is four to nine miles wide, and just above the capital it widens into Stanley Pool, about 20 miles long and 14 miles wide. In this 200 miles lie the largest of the river's 4,000 islands.

Léopoldville is situated 800 feet above sea level just east of the western rim of the Central African Plateau, here called the Crystal Mountains. The river cuts through these mountains and drops in a series of falls and rapids to Matadi, 215 miles away. Matadi, Belgian Congo's main ocean port, stands at the head of the Congo estuary, 95 miles from the sea. The estuary empties the Congo's vast stream into

A WOOD CARVER AT WORK



This artist cuts a design in the side of a drum. When he has finished, animal skin will be drawn taut over the ends of the drum.

the ocean through a seven-mile-wide mouth.

Some 6,000 miles of the Congo and its tributaries are navigable by shallow-draft, stern-wheel river steamers. Rail lines have been constructed to portage passengers and freight around rapids and falls between Matadi and Léopoldville, around Stanley Falls, and around the 180-mile stretch of rapids in the Upper Congo. The principal navigable tributaries are the Kasai, Lomela, Lomami, and Ubangi.

Natural Resources and Industry

Much of the wealth of the Congo basin lies in its mineral deposits. In a huge southern area called Katanga, ores of uranium (used in atomic bombs), radium, copper, zinc, manganese, and other minerals are mined.

Gold and silver are found in the mountainous north-east region. In the southwest, along the upper Kasai River, a large part of the world's supplies of industrial diamonds are mined. The most important coal mines lie near the western shore of Lake Tanganyika.

The basin's industrial development is devoted mainly to smelting minerals and processing forest and agricultural products. The processing industries include palm-oil pressing and refining plants, cotton gins, textile mills, rubber and sugar refineries, and tobacco and furniture factories.

A HUNTING DANCE AND A GIRLS' GAME



The dancer (left) wears a wooden antelope head. He dances to the throbbing rhythm of tom-toms to bring luck to his next hunt. The girls (right) are playing a game like "Musical Chairs,"



using corn cobs instead of chairs. The cobs are passed from hand to hand. The player who does not have a cob in her hand at a sudden signal must drop out of the game.

## The LEGISLATIVE BRANCH of GOVERNMENT

**CONGRESS OF THE UNITED STATES** In January of each year 531 men and women assemble in the nation's capital to represent the people of all the states. These men and women are the members of Congress—96 in the Senate and 435 in the House of Representatives. They have been elected by the voters to make the laws of the United States.

The authority for Congress is found in Article 1, Section 1 of the Constitution. It states that all legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

The establishment of two legislative bodies was the first resolution adopted by the Constitutional Convention. The members of the Convention wanted to achieve a balance between the large states and the small states. First they favored the large states by deciding that House representation should be based on population. Then they allotted two senators to each state regardless of population thus giving small states equal voting power with large ones. The establishment of two chambers also enabled one body to check the actions of the other thereby lessening the danger of rash legislation.

### Membership in the House and Senate

A member of the House of Representatives or lower house must be at least 25 years of age and seven years a citizen. Each member is elected for a term of two years and the entire membership comes up for re-election the first week of November in even-numbered years.

Each state has one seat in the House with 367 additional seats apportioned among the states according to their population. Membership in the House grew from 59 to 435 as the population of the nation increased. In 1930 however Congress fixed the total number at 435 subject to reapportionment after each ten year census. Most representatives are elected from a particular district although some are chosen at large in a state-wide election.

A member of the Senate or upper house must be at least 30 years old and a citizen for nine years. He is elected for six years. Terms are staggered to bring up one third of the

members (32) for re-election every two years. Since the 17th Amendment passed in 1913 senators have been elected by popular vote. Prior to that they were chosen by the state legislatures.

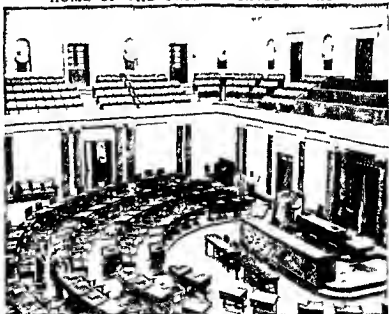
Until 1955 senators and representatives alike were paid \$12,500 a year plus \$2,500 yearly for expenses. In 1955 their salaries were raised to \$22,500 and the expense allowance was dropped.

The Constitution requires Congress to assemble at least once in every year. This is the regular session. Special sessions may be called by the president whenever he desires. Congress adjourns all sessions regular or special at its own discretion. When Congress assembles for its first regular session following the two-year elections a new Congress is said to exist. Since the first Congress of 1789-90 each new Congress has been numbered consecutively. (For the proper forms of address in writing to a congressman see Address in the FACT INDEX.)

### The Powers of Congress

The legislative powers of the two chambers are equal except in the cases specified by the Constitution. Only the House can originate bills for raising revenue although the Senate may propose amendments. To the Senate alone is given the power to ratify treaties which must be approved by a two-thirds vote. The Senate must also approve appointments to important

### HOME OF THE UNITED STATES SENATE



The Senate Chamber is in the north wing of the Capitol. Democrats sit on the left side of the room. Republicans on the right. Newspapermen occupy the section of the gallery directly behind the vice-president's desk. The remaining seats in the gallery are for

visitors. Since 1944 the committee on rules and administration has prohibited the taking of all types of pictures inside the chamber while the Senate is in session. (For a picture of the House Chamber during a joint session see United States Government.)

offices made by the President. The House has the power of impeaching federal officers, but after it has made an accusation the Senate sits as a court of justice to try the case (*see* Impeachment).

Many of the powers of Congress are carefully enumerated in the Constitution (*see* United States Constitution). Its remaining powers stem from two so-called elastic clauses. The first clause grants Congress the power to "provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States." The second allows Congress "to make all laws necessary and proper for carrying into execution" all its specified powers as well as the powers vested in the executive and judicial branches of the government. These clauses give Congress control over many areas of responsibility that could not be foreseen when the Constitution was written in 1787.

#### Leadership and Rules of Procedure

The vice-president presides over the Senate. The House chooses its own chairman, called the *speaker*, from among its members. He is usually the recognized leader of the majority party in the House. Each chamber also has its *floor leaders* of both the majority and minority parties, who try to keep their party machines in smooth running order and "line up" the members when some measure requires their support. The floor leaders are assisted by members called *whips*, who bring in absent legislators when an important measure comes up for vote.

Each branch of Congress has its own rules of procedure. Because it is so large, the House restricts speeches to one hour. The Senate allows unlimited debate, ruling only that a senator may not speak twice in a day on the same subject. Sometimes a minority group of senators holds the floor for days or even weeks to prevent a bill from coming to a vote. This method of defeating a bill is called *filibustering*. It can be stopped only by a vote of *cloture* supported by two thirds of the membership.

#### Committees Do Much Work

Any member of the House or Senate may introduce a bill into the chamber of which he is a member. The bill is then referred to the *standing committee* which

### STANDING COMMITTEES OF CONGRESS

#### Committees Common to Both Houses

Appropriation	Interior and Insular Affairs
Armed Services	Interstate and Foreign Commerce
Banking and Currency	Judiciary
District of Columbia	Post Office and Civil Service
Government Operations	Public Works

#### Other Senate Committees

Agriculture and Forestry	Foreign Relations
Finance	Labor and Public Welfare

#### Rules and Administration

#### Other House Committees

Agriculture	Rules
Ways and Means	House Administration
Foreign Affairs	Merchant Marine and Fisheries
Education and Labor	Un-American Activities
	Veterans' Affairs

deals with its particular subject. The committee considers the merits of each bill and then votes on the action to be taken. It may report the bill favorably or unfavorably to the chamber. It may amend the bill or rewrite it completely. Often the committee votes to "lay the bill on the table." In effect, this action "kills" the measure unless the chamber votes to overrule the committee and consider the bill. Of the 15,000 different bills usually introduced during the lifetime of a Congress only about one seventh are enacted into laws.

The Senate has 15 standing committees; the House, 19 (*see* table at top of page). Memberships vary from 13 to 45 with each party generally represented in proportion to its strength in the chamber.

One of the most powerful committees is the Rules group in the House. This committee controls the order in which bills are acted upon by the House and also limits the time for debate. Another important group is the House Ways and Means Committee which introduces all tax bills. The Senate Foreign Relations Committee reflects the special powers over foreign affairs granted the upper house.

In addition to its standing committees, which are permanent, each chamber has its *special*, or *select*, committees. These dissolve when they have served their purpose. Special committees are often appointed to make inquiries or conduct investigations.

A third type is the *joint committee*. These are permanent groups which include members of both Senate and House, such as the Joint Committee on Atomic Energy. *Subcommittees* are smaller groups within a committee appointed for a definite task.

A committee may summon experts to give advice or request Cabinet members to appear and give opinions and answer questions. Representatives of manufacturers' associations, labor unions, farmers' organizations, reform groups, and other bodies are often admitted to argue for or against measures in which they have a special interest. These organizations

### PARTY STRENGTH IN CONGRESS

	SENATE		HOUSE	
	Dem.	Rep.	Dem.	Rep.
83d 1953-54.....	47	48	212	221
82d 1951-52.....	49	47	235	199
81st 1949-50.....	54	42	263	171
80th 1947-48.....	45	51	188	246

Note.—Totals do not include congressmen elected in special elections, those from minor parties, or vacant seats.

# HOW A BILL BECOMES A LAW IN THE UNITED STATES



A Congressman has drafted a bill. He drops it into the hopper attached to the Clerk's desk.



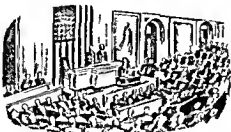
The Parliament introduces the bill to a committee. The Chief Clerk numbers it and reports that night.



The committee hears the bill. It is amended and reports back to the House.



Its title and number are added to the proper Calendar. In due time it is brought before the House.



The Chief Clerk reads the bill on the House. Debate begins. Amendments are offered. A vote is taken and the bill is passed.



Two clerks from the House convey (message) the bill to the floor of the Senate.



A Senate committee draws up amendments. The Senate debates and accepts the revised bill.



The bill is messaged back to the House. The House approves some Senate amendments. Rejected ones are rejected.



Remaining differences are adjusted by a conference committee. Both Houses vote to accept the result.



The bill is enrolled (printed on parchment paper). The Speaker signs it then the President of the Senate.



The enrolled bill is carried to the White House. The President signs it and makes the bill a law.



The Secretary of State orders the new act published. The State Department preserves the signed bill.

That original sent in the Senate go through a similar procedure. Most legislative bodies require three readings of every bill. The procedure originated in the British Parliament where it was introduced to prevent hasty and ill-considered

lawmaking. In the United States Congress the first reading (when the bill is introduced) is by title only. For the second reading (shown above) it is read in full. The third reading (given before voting) is again by title only.

NUMBER OF REPRESENTATIVES  
FROM EACH STATE

Alabama.....	9	Nevada.....	1
Arizona.....	2	New Hampshire..	2
Arkansas.....	6	New Jersey.....	14
California.....	30	New Mexico.....	2
Colorado.....	4	New York.....	43
Connecticut.....	6	North Carolina .	12
Delaware.....	1	North Dakota ...	2
Florida.....	8	Ohio.....	23
Georgia.....	10	Oklahoma.....	6
Idaho.....	2	Oregon.....	4
Illinois.....	25	Pennsylvania .	30
Indiana.....	11	Rhode Island .	2
Iowa.....	8	South Carolina .	6
Kansas.....	6	South Dakota .	2
Kentucky.....	8	Tennessee.....	9
Louisiana.....	8	Texas.....	22
Maine.....	3	Utah.....	2
Maryland.....	7	Vermont.....	1
Massachusetts	14	Virginia.....	10
Michigan.....	18	Washington.....	7
Minnesota.....	9	West Virginia .	6
Mississippi.....	6	Wisconsin.....	10
Missouri.....	11	Wyoming.....	1
Montana.....	2		
Nebraska.....	4	Total.....	435

are sometimes called *special interest*, or *pressure groups*. They often maintain agencies in Washington to impress their views upon Congress. Such agencies are called *lobbies* because their members once swarmed in the lobbies of Congress to talk to the legislators. All such agencies must be formally registered as lobbyists.

Two other types of committees are also used in Congress. The entire House or Senate may meet as a *committee of the whole* to debate a bill informally. When the members of a single party have a secret meeting it is called a *caucus*. *Caucuses* are held to appoint party floor leaders, to nominate a speaker, or to discuss policy or legislation.

#### How Laws Are Passed

When a committee returns a bill to its chamber, the measure is put on a *calendar* which is simply a list of bills in order. At the proper time, the bill comes up for action. Its merits are debated and amendments, if any, are proposed and voted on. The bill as amended is now ready for a vote. A majority of all the members of the chamber—a *quorum*—must be present when a vote is taken. Usually the vote is counted by “ayes” and “noes” or by standing. When a *roll call* is asked for, the vote of each member is recorded. If two members, one for and one against a bill, are absent, they may have their votes counted as a “pair.”

When a bill has been passed in one chamber, it goes to the other chamber where the same procedure is followed. If changes are made in the second chamber, the bill is returned to the first to be considered again. If the two chambers fail to agree, a *conference committee*, made up of members from both chambers, attempts to resolve the differences.

When a bill or a *joint resolution* has been passed by both chambers it goes to the president. If he signs it, the measure becomes a law. If he vetoes it the measure may still become a law if both chambers pass it a second time by a two-thirds vote (*see Veto*). A *concurrent resolution* is an expression of feeling and is not signed by the president.

All speeches and proceedings in Congress are reported in the ‘Congressional Record’. Often a member gets “leave to print” material or *extended remarks* in the ‘Congressional Record’ which have not been read or spoken on the floor of Congress. (*See also United States Government.*)

**CONJUNCTION.** Compared with the enormous number of nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs in the English language, there are very few conjunctions. Nevertheless conjunctions are exceedingly useful words, and they save us a great deal of time. Suppose we want to say that John, Frank, and Mary each has a sled. If there were no conjunctions, we could not make this statement clear without saying “John has a sled, Frank has a sled, Mary has a sled.” But by the use of the little word *and* we are able to avoid all this repetition and make a single statement convey our meaning.

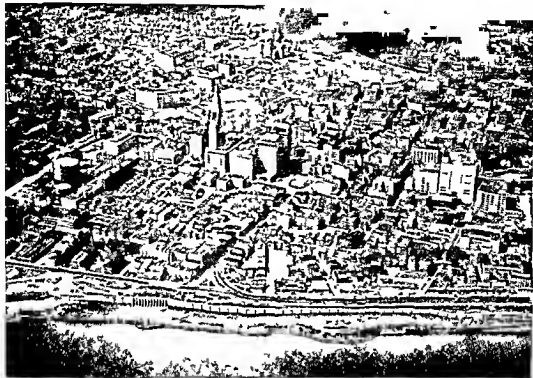
Conjunctions then are words which connect. They get their name from a Latin word meaning “to join with” or “connect.” They may connect single words or entire phrases, clauses, and sentences. Those that connect elements of the same grammatical value or rank are called *co-ordinate* conjunctions. Those that connect clauses of different grammatical rank are called *subordinate* conjunctions; many of these are adverbs used as conjunctions, and so are also called *conjunctive adverbs* (*see Adverb*).

Besides merely connecting, conjunctions are used to express various relations. Co-ordinate conjunctions may denote addition (*also, and, moreover*); separation or choice (*either, or, neither, whether*); opposition (*but, however, whereas, yet*); result or effect (*so, therefore, thus, hence*). Subordinate conjunctions may denote time (*when, after, while*); place (*where, whence*); cause (*because, for, as*); condition or supposition (*if, though, unless*); purpose or result (*lest, that, in order that*); comparison (*than, so, as*).

Many conjunctions are used in pairs: *either—or, both—and, though—yet, not only—but also*. These are called *correlative* conjunctions.

One of the most common mistakes is the use of *like* to introduce a clause. *Like* is not a conjunction, and should never be followed by a subject and predicate. It is correct to say “He looks like a strong boy,” but not “He looks *like he is* strong.” In the second sentence the conjunctive phrase *as if* should be used instead of *like*. *Like* should always be followed by a noun or other substantive.

Conjunctions are important aids to clear expression. Unless a writer masters these small “thought carriers” he will never achieve a lucid and logical style. They play a great part in legal documents, and many a lawsuit has turned upon a single “but.”



Dominating Hartford is Travelers Tower, New England's tallest structure. In the background is the State Capitol. Hartford is Connecticut's largest city and an important insurance and industrial center.

## CONNECTICUT—The "CONSTITUTION STATE"

**CONNECTICUT** (*ah-nik'-et*) More than 300 years ago the leaders of a colony in southern New England adopted the Fundamental Orders of Connecticut. This was one of the first documents of government written by the American colonists themselves. For this reason Connecticut became known as the Constitution State.

Another nickname the Nutmeg State comes from a humorous story about the shrewdness of some of the early Yankee traders. It was said they made and sold wooden nutmegs as genuine, thus making a very nice profit. The real name of the state comes from the Connecticut River. The Indians called this stream *Quonehtacut* meaning "long river."

Connecticut is the southernmost of the New England states. In area it is 46th among the states in the Union. Only two other states, Rhode Island and Delaware, are smaller. Although small in area, Connecticut ranks 23th in population and is one of the most densely populated states. The great majority of its people live in towns and cities rather than on farms, and about 45 per cent of its working population is engaged in manufacturing.

### Manufacturing—the Main Industry

Connecticut's high standing in manufacturing is due to several factors. With swift rivers to provide water

power, industry got an early start. The state's inventive and industrious people had the ability to succeed in ventures requiring both manual skill and business enterprise. Both raw materials and markets for finished goods were within easy reach.

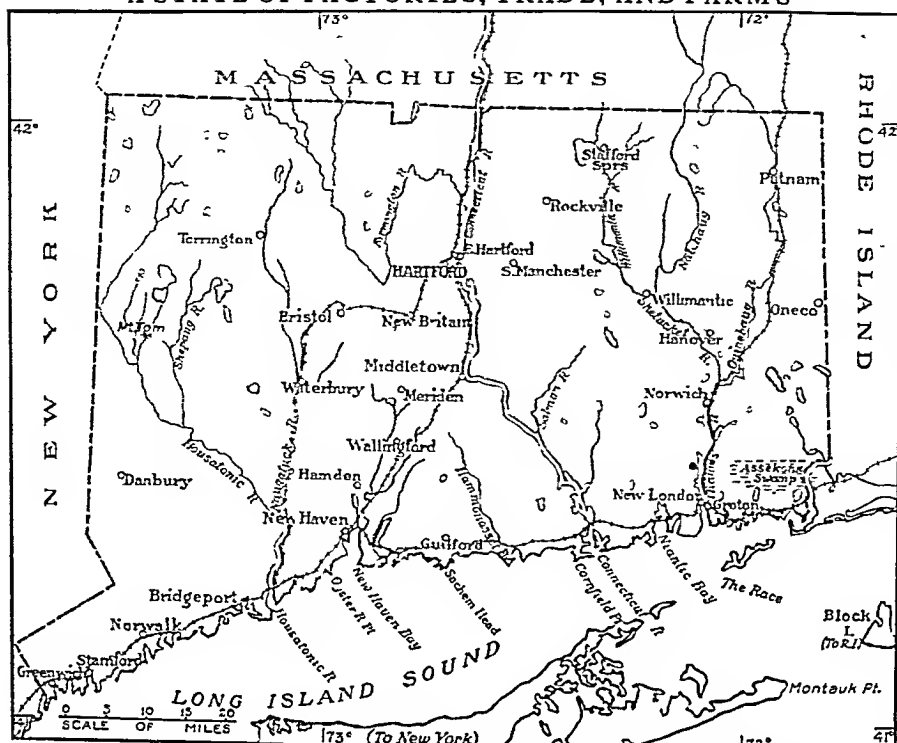
Even in colonial times its location was excellent for trading. Along Long Island Sound, many sheltered harbors attracted coastwise and Atlantic shipping. Nearby was the fast-growing region around New York City, a great market for Connecticut manufactures. As railroads grew, the level coast land of Connecticut gave easy access to all of New England. Later rail lines running westward through New York State linked Connecticut with the entire nation.

Today Connecticut factories lead in manufacturing ball and roller bearings, office and store machines, electrical apparatus and appliances, and men's felt hats. It ranks high in the production of small hardware, silverware and plated ware. These industries have been among Connecticut's specialties for a long time. Many forerunners of present industries began before the American Revolution.

As early as 1739 London hatters were already objecting to the competition of Connecticut-made felt hats. Brass buttons and iron nails were made before the middle of the 18th century, and during the next



## A STATE OF FACTORIES, TRADE, AND FARMS



Historic Connecticut was once an English colony made up of many farm settlements. It is still noted for its many fine dairy, fruit, and truck farms. But its industrial growth since 1750 has made it one of the great manufacturing states in the Union. Today its cities, located mainly along the rivers and Long Island Sound, make everything from pins to office machines. These they sell all over the nation.

three decades silk, woolen, and paper mills were set up. In the American Revolution, Connecticut mines and foundries were important. An iron mine near Salisbury was the chief source of ore for cannon, cannon balls, and chains. The chains were used to block the passage of British ships up the Hudson River.

After the war, new industries sprang up. Between 1804 and 1810, cotton textile mills were put up at Vernon, Pomfret, and Jewett City. In 1812 a woolen mill at Middletown was the first to use steam engines instead of water wheels. After that year Connecticut rapidly became a leading manufacturing state.

Hartford, the capital, is the largest city in the state. Along with New Haven, Bridgeport, and Waterbury, it is a manufacturing center, producing a wide variety of goods (see articles on these cities). Stamford is called the "lock city"; New Britain, the "hardware city"; Meriden, the "silver city"; Danbury, the "hat city"; Manchester, the "silk city"; and Willimantic, the "thread city." At Groton the world's first atomic-powered submarine was launched in 1954.

The Merritt and Wilbur Cross parkways go through or within a few miles of the state's largest cities. These express roads stretch from the New York line in southwest Connecticut almost to Massachusetts.

#### Land and Climate

Connecticut is almost rectangular in shape. It is bounded by Massachusetts on the north, Rhode Island

on the east, New York on the west, and Long Island Sound on the south. Across this narrow sound is Long Island, New York.

Away from the coast, Connecticut is covered with rolling and forested hills. Ranges of these hills extend from north to south across the state. In the northwest corner is the beautiful section of low mountains called the Litchfield Hills. Near the middle of the state are the lowlands of the Connecticut River valley, separating the eastern from the western uplands. Along the Sound is a low coastal plain.

Connecticut has three main river systems. Crossing

the state from north to south is the Connecticut River. The valley is famous for its beauty and fertile soil. Here the first settlers made their homes, near the site of Hartford. To the east, the Thames River and its tributaries flow southward through low hills.

The western upland section is drained by the Housatonic and Naugatuck rivers. It has many rugged hills covered with timber. In the northwest corner, where the Connecticut-Massachusetts boundary crosses Mount Frissell, is the state's highest point, 2,380 feet.

The state's coast on the Sound has several good natural harbors. The principal one is at New London, seat of the United States Coast Guard Academy. The best water route to the interior is on the Connecticut River. It is navigable from its mouth on the sound to Hartford, 50 miles distant by water. To aid navigation the Federal government has made extensive improvements in the river's channel.

Connecticut's average temperature throughout the year is about 49°F. Its summer average is about 65°, and its winter average is approximately 28°. The annual precipitation is about 45 inches, equally distributed among the four seasons. Both temperature and rainfall are suitable to the growing of good pastures, orchards and vineyards, and field crops.

#### Farm and Fishery Products

Among the most valuable of Connecticut's agricultural products are milk, tobacco, eggs, hay.

*Continued on page 447*

# Connecticut Fact Summary



**CONNECTICUT (Conn.)** Name first applied to river then to state from Indian word *Quonehtacut* long river  
 Nickname Constitution State  
 Fundamental Orders drawn up in 1639 established pattern for federal and state constitutions Sometimes called Nutmeg State

Seal Three fruited grapevines supported by stakes state motto on outspread ribbon below

Motto Qui Transtulit Sustinet (He Who Transplanted Still Sustains)

Flag For description and illustration see Flags  
 Flower Mountain laurel Bird American robin Tree White oak Song None official

## THE GOVERNMENT

Capital Hartford (since 1665 jointly with New Haven 1701 1875)

Representation in Congress Senate 2 House of Representatives 6 Electoral votes 8

General Assembly Senators 36 term 2 years Representatives 279 term 2 years Convenes Wednesday after first Monday in January in odd numbered years Session limited to 1 Wednesday after the first Monday in June No limit to special session

Constitution Adopted 1818 Proposed amendment must be (a) passed by a majority vote in the house of representatives approved at next assembly by two-thirds vote in each house and (b) ratified by a majority voting on amendment in special town meetings

Governor Term 4 years May succeed himself

Other Executive Officers Lieutenant governor secretary of state treasurer comptroller attorney general all elected terms 4 years

Judiciary Supreme court—5 justices Superior courts—20 judges All judges nominated by the governor and appointed by General Assembly for 8-year terms

County 8 counties each governed by 3 county commissioners appointed by General Assembly term 4 years

Municipal Mayor-council plan most common Voting Qualifications Age 21 residence in state 1 year in town 6 months Literacy test required



## THE PEOPLE AND THEIR LAND

Population (1950 census) 2,007,280 (rank among 48 states—28th) urban 77.6% rural 22.4% Density 409.7 persons per square mile (rank—4th state)

Extent Area 5,009 square miles including 110 square miles of water surface (46th state in size)

Elevation Highest Mount Frissell on state's northern boundary 2,380 feet lowest sea level

Temperature (°F) Average—annual 49° winter 28° spring 47° summer 88° fall 52° Lowest recorded -32° (Falls Village Feb. 16 1943) highest recorded 105° (Waterbury July 23 1926)

Precipitation on Average (inches)—annual 45 winter 11 spring 11 summer 12 fall 11 Varies from about 49 in northwest to about 42 in east central

Natural Features Sand beaches and natural harbors are along Coastal Plain on Long Island Sound Connecticut River and its valley lowlands divide state into two nearly equal sections western highlands—Berkeley Norfolk Litchfield hills and deep narrow valleys drained by Housatonic and Naugatuck rivers eastern highlands low wooded hills and Thames River valley Principal rivers Connecticut Farmington Housatonic Naugatuck Thames

Land Use Cropland 12% nonforested pasture 9% forest 60% other (roads parks game refuges waste-land cities etc.) 19%

CROPS	PASTURE	FOREST	OTHER

Natural Resources *Agricultural*—fertile soil in valleys carefully utilized highlands suitable for dairy farming *Industrial*—ample water and hydroelectric power *Commercial*—excellent geographic location in highly populated area furnishing ready market for dairy poultry, and industrial products

## OCCUPATIONS AND PRODUCTS

What the People Do to Earn a Living



Major Industries and Occupations 1950

Fields of Employment	Number Employed	Percentage of Total Employed
Manufacturing	557,513	4.5
Wholesale and retail trade	159,777	16.8
Professional services (medical legal education etc.)	73,783	8.9
Construction	48,572	5.9
Transportation communication and other public utilities	43,956	5.3
Personal services (hotel domestic laundry etc.)	41,977	5.1
Finance insurance and real estate	38,376	4.6
Government	28,145	3.4
Agriculture forestry and fishery	24,939	3.0
Business and repair services	19,565	2.4
Amusement recreation and related services	6,050	0.7
Mining	537	0.1
Workers not accounted for	10,627	1.3
Total employed	827,807	100.0

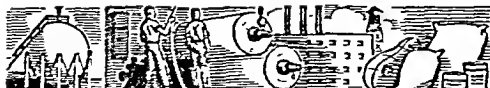


## TRANSPORTATION AND COMMUNICATION

Transportation Railroads 800 miles First railroad Boston to Rhode Island state line 1837 Rural roads 10,300 miles Airports 25

Communication Periodicals 6 Newspapers 87 First newspaper *New London Summary* *New London* 1758 Radio stations (AM and FM) 36 first station on WCJ New Haven licensed Sept. 29 1921 Television stations 5 first station on WNHC-TV New Haven began operation June 18 1948 Telephones 918,100 Post offices 285

# Connecticut Fact Summary



## What the People Produce

### A. Manufactured Goods (Rank among states—12th) Value added by manufacture\* (1952), \$2,790,887,000

Leading Industries in 1947 (with Principal Products)	Value Added by Manufacture	Rank among States
<b>MACHINERY (EXCEPT ELECTRICAL).</b> Ball bearings and roller bearings; office and store machines; metal- working machinery	\$387,391,000	8
<b>FABRICATED METAL PRODUCTS</b> ... Cutlery, hand tools, and hardware; metal stamping and coating; heat- ing and plumbing equipment	244,454,000	7
<b>MISCELLANEOUS MANUFACTURES</b> .. Silverware and plated ware; nee- dles, pins, fasteners; small firearms	177,471,000	4
<b>TEXTILE MILL PRODUCTS</b> .... Hats (except cloth and millinery); cotton and rayon broad-woven fab- rics; woolen and worsted fabrics	175,270,000	10
<b>ELECTRICAL MACHINERY</b> .... Industrial apparatus; appliances	165,361,000	8

\*For explanation of value added by manufacture, see Census.



### B. Farm Products (Rank among states—41st) Total cash income (1952), \$176,518,000

Products	Amount Produced (10-Year Average)	Rank within State*	Rank among States†
Milk.....	320,000,000 qts.	1	35
Tobacco.....	23,688,000 lbs.	2	11
Eggs.....	40,000,000 doz.	3	30
Chickens.....	53,069,000 lbs.	4	28
Hay.....	457,000 tons	5	41
Potatoes.....	3,440,000 bu.	6	24
Cattle.....	26,796,000 lbs.	7	45

\*Rank in dollar value †Rank in units produced



### C. Fish (Rank among states—23d) (Marine waters and coastal rivers, 1950), catch, 20,226,000 lbs.; value, \$2,114,000 D. Minerals (Fuels, Metals, and Stone) Annual value (1951), \$6,299,000 Rank among states—45th

Minerals (1951)	Amount Produced	Value
Stone.....	2,278,000 tons	\$3,360,000
Sand and gravel.....	3,108,000 tons	1,761,000

### E. Trade

Trade (1948)	Sales	Rank among States
Wholesale .....	\$1,375,708,000	30
Retail .....	1,975,035,000	21
Service.....	171,035,000	21

## EDUCATION

Public Schools: Elementary, 699; sec-  
ondary, 129. Compulsory school age,  
7 through 15. State Board of Educa-  
tion composed of 9 members ap-  
pointed by governor for 6-yr. terms.  
Commissioner of education appoint-  
ed by state board for indefinite  
term. Town boards of education  
have 3 to 12 members elected for 3-yr. terms. Town  
and city supts. elected by local boards for 3-yr. terms.  
Private and Parochial Schools: 212.



Colleges and Universities (accredited): Colleges, 23;  
junior colleges, 6. State-supported schools include:  
Univ. of Conn., Storrs (branches—Hartford, Stam-  
ford, Waterbury); teachers colleges—Danbury, New  
Britain, New Haven, Willimantic.

Special State Schools: Mystic Oral School, Groton; Con-  
necticut Institute of the Blind, Hartford; State Train-  
ing School and Hospital, Mansfield; Home and Hospi-  
tal for Crippled Children, Newington; Training School,  
Southbury; The Seaside, Waterford; American School  
for the Deaf, W. Hartford; 13 vocational schools.

Libraries: City and town public libraries, 199. Bureau  
of Libraries, Dept. of Education, responsible for aid  
in developing school and public library service; staff  
includes consultants for both. Noted special libraries:  
Hartford Medical Society; Yale Univ., New Haven;  
Watkinson Collection, Trinity College, Hartford.

Outstanding Museums: Morgan Memorial Museum,  
Wadsworth Atheneum, both at Hartford; Marine Mu-  
seum, Mystic; Peabody Museum of Natural History,  
Yale University Art Gallery, both at New Haven;  
Lyman Allyn Museum, New London.

## CORRECTIONAL AND PENAL INSTITUTIONS

Long Lane School for Girls, Middletown; Connecticut  
School for Boys, Meriden; Connecticut Reformatory,  
Cheshire; Connecticut State Farm and Prison for  
Women, Niantic; State Prison, Wethersfield.

## STATE PARKS\*†

Black Rock—Sand Dam Pond; Mattatuck Trail (20).  
Dennis Hill Area—1,610 ft.; laurel woods; nr. Norfolk (5).  
Devil's Hopyard—wild ravine; near East Haddam (31).  
Fort Shantok—historic spot near Montville, associated  
with Mohegan Indians; Shantok Burying Ground (32).  
Gillette Castle—secret panels, hidden rooms in house  
(1919) of actor William Gillette; nr. East Haddam (34).  
Hammonasset Beach—large beach near Madison (44).  
Housatonic Meadows—trout fishing on Housatonic R. (8).  
Hurd—brook in hemlock gorge near Middle Haddam;  
dinosaur footprints on sandstone (29).  
Indian Well—outing area; near Shelton (38).  
Kent Falls—on Appalachian Trail near Cornwall (13).  
Lake Waramaug—near Kent; wooded surroundings (18).  
Macedonia Brook—largest state park; near Kent (12).  
Mashamoquet Brook—near Pomfret; includes Wolf Den  
where Israel Putnam supposedly captured a wolf (11).  
Rocky Neck—beach on L. I. Sound near Niantic (46).  
Sherwood Island—popular bathing beach at Westport (52).  
Sleeping Giant—5 hills of Mount Carmel Range in shape  
of sleeping giant; near Mount Carmel (35).  
Squantz Pond—bathing, picnicking near Danbury (30).  
West Peak—1,007-foot trap rock; near Meriden (24).  
Wharton Brook—on Quinnipiac Trail nr. New Haven (35).

\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map.  
†There are 57 state park areas; 19 are given here.

# Connecticut Fact Summary

## LARGEST CITIES (1950 census)

**Hartford (177,397)** state capital insurance and manufacturing center transportation hub

**New Haven (164,443)** once joint capital with Hartford Yale U fire arms toys tools

**Bridgeport (158,709)** industrial city manufacturing munitions aircraft electrical machinery and hardware

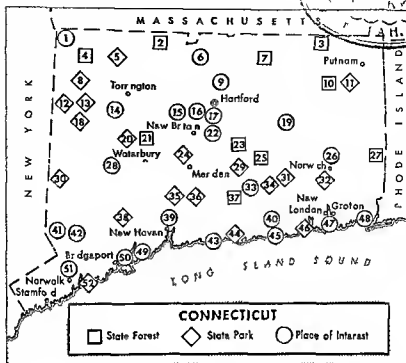
**Waterbury (104,477)** center of brass and watch making industries

**Stamford (74,293)** residential city makes locks and hardware

**New Britain (73,726)** hardware metal products machine tools electrical appliances

**Norwalk (49,460)** makes boats pumps hardware electrical goods

**West Hartford (44,402)** residential suburb of Hartford Noah Webster's birthplace



## STATE FORESTS\*

- Cockaponset (Middlesex County)—14,544 acres (37)
- Housatonic (Litchfield County)—9,142 acres (4)
- Mattatuck (Litchfield County)—4,358 acres (21)
- Moshomans (Middlesex County)—7,300 acres (23)
- Natchaug (Windham County)—9,355 acres (10)
- Nipmuck (Tolland County)—8,384 acres (3)
- Pachaug (New London County)—21,861 acres (27)
- Salmon River (New London County)—8,983 acres (25)
- Shempanet (Tolland County)—6,019 acres (7)
- Tunxis (Hartford County)—8,071 acres (2)

## PLACES OF INTEREST\*

- Bear Mt.—A high point in state (2,355 ft.) skiing (1)
- Bridgeport—P. T. Barnum's home includes Barnum Institute of Science and History Seaside Park a gift to the city from the showman (see Bridgeport) (50)
- Elizabeth Park—about 500 varieties of roses in natural setting Rose Festival each June W. Hartford (16)
- Essex—shipyard where first warship of U. S. Navy *Oliver Cromwell* was built in 1775 (40)
- Farmington Museum—Farmington 17th century salt-box house one of oldest in state china silver (15)
- Glebe House—restored 18th-century house with secret passage leading to hill tunnel in Woodbury (28)
- Groton—U. S. Navy submarine base first atomic-powered submarine launched 1954 Fort Griswold where about 800 British under Benedict Arnold massacred most of garrison of 150 colonial militia men 1781 (47)
- Gulford—old village with varied collection of colonial homes Whitfield House stone house built 1640 (43)
- Hartford—Charter Oak Memorial Mark Twain House old and new capitol (see Hartford) (17)

- Israel Putnam Memorial Camp Ground—Redding where state troops spent the bitter winter of 1778-79 (42)
- Litchfield—first law school in U. S. (1784) many fine old homes including Tapping Reeve house (14)
- Merritt and Wilbur Cross Parkways—expressways New York to Milford and Milford almost to Mass. (49)
- Monotonome Memorial—honors Narragansett Indian chief captured here and executed near Norwich (\*6)
- Mystic—early shipbuilding center and seaport Mystic Art Gallery Marine Historical Museum west of (48)
- Nathan Hale Schoolhouse—East Haddam country school where the famous colonial patriot once taught (33)
- Newgate Prison—underground dungeons copper mines used during Revolutionary War near E. Granby (6)
- New Haven—Yale University East Rock Park many places of historic interest (see New Haven) (39)
- New London—whaling city of 1800's Whaling Museum Old Town Mill (first built in 1660) Connecticut College U. S. Coast Guard Academy New London Lighthouse first in state (1760) Ocean Beach Park (47)
- Old Saybrook—original site of Yale University historic houses taverns churches (45)
- Old Stone Lighthouse—now a museum Stonington (48)
- Ridgefield—site of Revolutionary War battle in 1777 (41)
- Sachem's Head—rocky promontory on Long Island Sound near Guilford battle of Pequot War 1637 (43)
- Webb House—colonial house in Wethersfield where in 1781 Washington planned Yorktown campaign (22)
- Wheelock House—at Columbia seat of Eleazar Wheelock's early Indian School which moved to Hanover N. H. and became Dartmouth College (19)
- Windsor—examples of 17th century architecture (9)
- Yankee Doodle House (Site of)—remains of Norwalk home of Colonel Fitch whose troops according to tradition inspired the song Yankee Doodle (51)

\*Numbers in parentheses are keyed to map.  
†There are 26 state forests; the ten largest are listed.

# Connecticut Fact Summary

## THE PEOPLE BUILD THEIR STATE



- 1614—Adrian Block, a Dutebman, explores Connecticut coast and lower Connecticut River.
- 1631—Earl of Warwick grants patent to Plymouth Company to colonize Connecticut region.
- 1632—Edward Winslow of Plymouth Colony explores the region.
- 1633—Jacob van Curler buys from Indians land at site of present Hartford; with other Dutch settlers builds Fort Good Hope; fort abandoned, 1653. Lieut. William Holmes of Plymouth Colony establishes post on site of present Wind-or.
- 1635—English from Massachusetts Bay Colony migrate to Connecticut, settling at the River Towns of Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield. John Winthrop, Jr., builds fort at Saybrook.
- 1636—General court of settlers' provisional government holds its first meeting. First church opens at Hartford. Reprisals taken against Indians after killing of John Oldham off Block Island: Pequot Indians in turn attack settlers through winter of 1636-37; in May 1637, settlers join in war against Pequots, finally defeating them, July 13.
- 1637—English make peace treaty with Mohegan and Narragansett Indians.
- 1638—Theophilus Eaton and Rev. John Davenport establish settlement at Quinnipiac (New Haven) Fundamental Orders to govern River Towns drafted.
- 1639—Fundamental Orders adopted by Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford, January 14, making an assembly, the General Court, supreme authority in Colony. Document is often regarded as the first written constitution in history to result in an established government. First assembly meets at Hartford in May. Colony at New Haven establishes a separate civil government in June.
- 1642—First free public school opens in New Haven.
- 1643—New Haven Colony includes Milford, Guilford, Stamford, Branford, and Southhold, Long Island.
- 1644—Saybrook becomes part of Connecticut Colony.
- 1650—Roger Ludlow compiles a body of laws (Ludlow's Code) for Connecticut.
- 1659—Property qualifications imposed for suffrage.
- 1661—Colonists petition king for royal charter.
- 1662—King Charles II grants royal charter to Connecticut, May 1, combining New Haven Colony with Connecticut Colony; New Haven protests but finally agrees in 1664. Charter defines boundaries as Massachusetts on north, Narragansett Bay on east, Long Island Sound on south, and westward to Pacific. Eastern and southern boundaries occasion long dispute with Rhode Island and New York.
- 1664—John Colt builds first ship in New London; Connecticut shipyards later become famous.
- 1665—Hartford made capital of Connecticut Colony.
- 1666—County governments established in the Colony.
- 1675—Colonists block attempt by Sir Edmund Andros to land troops at Saybrook to enforce New York's claims on Connecticut. Connecticut colonists join in King Philip's War against the Wampanoags, finally ending conflicts with the Indians.
- 1687—Sir Edmund Andros, governor of Dominion of New England (formed in 1686 of seven New England colonies), demands surrender of Connecticut charter; document safely hidden in Charter Oak. Connecticut is annexed to Dominion of New England.
- 1689—Connecticut's protests against annexation succeed: Colony resumes its charter government.
- 1701—Collegiate School founded at Branford; moves to New Haven, 1716; renamed Yale College, 1718. New Haven is made joint capital with Hartford, assembly meeting alternately in each city.
- 1708—General Court adopts Saybrook Platform, allowing sects other than the established Congregational church.
- 1753—Susquehanna Company organized at Windham for purpose of colonizing Wyoming Valley (in present Pennsylvania); first settlement made, 1762.
- 1769—Settlers from Connecticut and previous settlers in Pennsylvania clash in first of "Yankee-Pennamite Wars" over claims to land in Wyoming Valley; dispute settled by adjudication, 1782.
- 1775—Connecticut colonists join American Revolution after battle of Lexington, organizing six regiments; numerous skirmishes with British in Connecticut until 1781. Danbury, New Haven, Fairfield, New London, Norwalk plundered and burned by British.
- 1776—Government reorganized as state based on charter of 1662.
- 1786—Connecticut cedes to U. S. its western lands, except for Western Reserve in present Ohio.
- 1788—Connecticut is fifth state to ratify U. S. Constitution, January 9. First woolen mill in New England founded at Hartford.
- 1792—Union Bank of New London and Hartford Bank of Hartford, first banks in state, are established.
- 1794—Eli Whitney begins manufacture of cotton gins at New Haven factory. First successful cotton mill in state opened at Hilliardsville.
- 1795—State sells most of Western Reserve lands to Connecticut Land Company for \$1,200,000; money used to establish state school fund. Mutual Assurance Company of the City of Norwich incorporated; state begins as insurance center.
- 1798—Eli Whitney establishes firearms factory at Whitneyville; pioneers in assembly-line technique.
- 1801—First American cigars made at South Windsor, leads to tobacco growing in Connecticut Valley.
- 1812—Embargo forces Connecticut to manufacture many products formerly imported; opposes war with England, refusing use of state militia; joins in Hartford Convention of 1814, protesting war.
- 1818—State adopts new constitution which disestablishes Congregational church as state church.
- 1844—New York and New Haven Railroad chartered; completed across state, 1848; becomes New York, New Haven and Hartford Railroad, 1872.
- 1845—State adopts universal manhood suffrage.
- 1848—Assembly passes act freeing all slaves.
- 1875—Hartford becomes sole state capital.
- 1878—World's first commercial telephone exchange established in New Haven.
- 1880—Boundary dispute with New York finally settled.
- 1881—Conn. Agricultural College founded at Storrs.
- 1910—U. S. Coast Guard Academy moves to New London from Arundel Cove, Md.
- 1917—U. S. Navy builds submarine base at Groton.
- 1947—State adopts Fair Employment Practices Act.
- 1950—Assembly refuses to adopt proposed state government reorganization plan.
- 1951—Home Rule Act permits cities, towns, and boroughs to amend charters without legislative action.
- 1954—The *Nautilus*, world's first submarine with an atomic engine, launched at Groton.

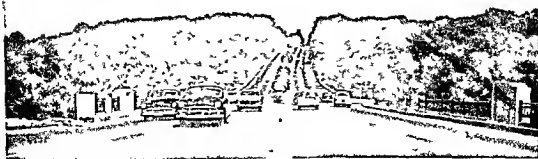
## CONNECTICUT

## COUNTIES

COUNTIES			Barnstable			Berkshire			Bristol			Butler			Dartmouth			Essex			Hampden			Hampshire			Middlesex			Norfolk			Plymouth			Suffolk			Worcester		
Fairfield	504 342	B 3	Brookfield Ctr	B 3	Durham Ctr	E 3	G lead	70	F 2	Kent Furnace	B 2																														
Hartford	539 661	E 1	Brookfield Jet	B 3	Essexville	265	F 1	Gidman	400	G 2	Killingly																														
Litchfield	98 572	C 1	Brooklyn	†2 652	H 1	E Berlin	1 000	E 2	Glasgo	H 2	(Dayville) 1 105	H 1																													
Middlesex	67 332	E 3	Brooksville	500	D 2	E Brooklyn	1 002	H 1	Glastonbury		Killingworth	†677	E 3																												
New Haven	545 784	D 2	Buckingham	350	E 3	E Canaan	800	B 1		†8 818	E 2	Lake de	B 2																												
New London	144 821	G 2	Burlington	†1 846	D 1	E Glastonbury			Glenbrook		Lakeville	B 1																													
Tolland	44 709	F 1	Burnside		E 1	E Granby	†1 327	E 1	Glenville	976	A 4	Lebanon	†1 654	G 2																											
Windham	61 750	H 1	Burrville	289	C 1	E Haddam	†2 554	F 3	Goshen	†940	C 1	Lebanon Station	G 2																												
			Byram	3 000	A 4	E Hampton			Granby	†2 693	D 1	Leeds Island	E 3																												
			Campbell		F 1		†4 000	E 2	Greenfield Hill		B 4	Lime Rock	186	B 1																											
			Campville		C 2	E Hartford			Greens Farms	500	B 4	Litchfield	1 174	C 2																											
			Canaan	1 189	B 1		†29 933	E 1	Greenville		G 2	Long Hill	C 4																												
			Cannondale	300	B 4	E Hartland	400	D 1	Greenwich	†40 835	A 4	Long Ridge	A 3																												
			Cantonbury	†1 321	H 2	E Haven	†12 212	D 3	Greystones	150	C 2	Lords Pt	400	H 3																											
			Canton	†3 013	D 1	E Kent		B 2	Groffins		E 1	Lyman Viaduct	4	F 2																											
			Canton Ctr	300	D 1	E Killingly	800	H 1	Grosvener Dale			Lyne	†857	F 3																											
			Centerbrook	487	F 3	E Litchfield	60	G 1		800	H 1	Madison	†3 078	E 3																											
			Central Village			E Lyme	†3 870	G 3	Groton	7 036	G 3	Manchester																													
				800	H 2	E Morris		C 2	Groton Long Pt		G 3		†34 116	E 1																											
			Chapln	†712	G 1	F Norwalk	5 000	B 4	Crovo Beach		E 3	Manchester																													
			Ashford	†945	G 1	Cheebire	†6 295	D 2	E River	450	E 3	Green		E 1																											
			Aspetuck		B 4	Chester	†19 0	F 3	F Thompson	200	H 1	Manafeld	†10 008	F 1																											
			Attwoodville	35	G 1	Chesterfield	129	G 3	E Wallingford	200	D 3	Manafeld Ctr	600	G 1																											
			Avon	†3 171	D 1	Chestnut Hill		G 2	E Wallington	50	F 1	Manafeld Depot	F 1																												
			Bakersville		C 1	Clarke Corner	78	G 1	E Windsor	†4 359	E 1	Marble Dale	150	B 2																											
			Ballouville		H 1	Clarke Falls	200	H 3	E Windsor Hill			Marion	308	D 2																											
			Balt o	1 345	G 2	Clinton	†465	E 3		671	E 1	Marlborough	†901	F 3																											
			Bantam	940	B 2	Clintonville	350	D 3	E Woodstock	2 5	H 1	Manspeeg	G 2																												
			Barkhamsted	†946	D 1	Cobalt	800	F 2	Eastford	†595	G 1	Mechan cville	H 1																												
			Beach Park	500	E 3	Colchester	1 522	F 2	Easton	†2 165	B 4	Melrose	E 1																												
			Beacon Falls			Colebrook	†592	C 1	Ellington	†3 099	F 1	Meriden	44 089	D 2																											
				†2 067	C 3	Collinsville	2 078	D 1	Elbott		G 1	Merron	125	F 1																											
			Beckleya	100	E 2	Columba	†1 327	F 2	Enawood	6 000	D 2	Mianus	A 4																												
			Berksh to Jet		B 3	Cooper		B 3	Enfield	†15 464	E 1	Middle Haddam	E 2																												
			Berlin	†7 470	E 2	Cornwall	†596	B 1	Essex	†3 491	F 3	Middlebury																													
			Bethany	†1 318	C 3	Cornwall Bridge		B 1	Fabyan	425	H 1	Middlefield	†3 318	C 2																											
			Bethel	†5 104	B 3	Cot Cob	6 800	A 4	Fa field	†30 489	B 4	Middlefield	†1 933	E 2																											
			Bethlehem	†1 015	C 2	Coventry	†4 043	F 1	Fels Village	640	B 1	Middletown																													
			Black Hall		F 3	Coventry (S			Fermington			Middleton																													
			Black Point			Coventry)	1 617	F 1		†7 025	D 2	Milton	†96 370	C 4																											
			Beach Club 100	G 3		Crenbury	3 000	B 4	Farmington			Milton Flan	125	A 3																											
			Bloomfield	†3 746	E 1	Crescent Beach		G 3	Stat on		D 2	Middale	1 200	D 2																											
			Boardmans			Cromwell	†4 246	E 2	Fenwick	15	F 2	Middleton		G 3																											
			Br dge	75	B 2	Croytal Lake	550	F 1	Fitchville	300	G 2	Milton	200	C 1																											
			Bolton	†1 279	F 1	Danbury	22 067	B 3	Flanders		B 1	Minortown	100	C 2																											
			Botford		C 3	Danielson	4 554	H 1	Florida		B 3	Mohagan	G 3																												
			Branchville	300	B 3	Dar en	†11 767	B 4	Forestville	6 000	D 2	Montrose	†2 892	C 3																											
			Bransford	2 552	D 3	Dayville			Franklin	†727	G 2	Montwese	D 3																												
			Bridgeport	153 709	C 4	(Killingly)	1 105	H 1	Gales Ferry	300	G 3	Montville	†4 766	G 3																											
			Br dewater	†639	B 2	Deep River	†2 570	F 3	Gardner Lake		G 2	Moodus	1 400	F 2																											
			Br stol	35 961	D 2	Derby	10 259	C 3	Gay lordville	200	B 2	Moonup	2 909	H 2																											
			Broad Brook	2 140	E 1	Devon		C 4	Georgetown		B 4	Morr a	†799	C 2																											
			Brookfield	†1 684	B 3	Durham	†1 804	E 3	Gidmeeeve		E 2	Kent	†1 392	B 2																											

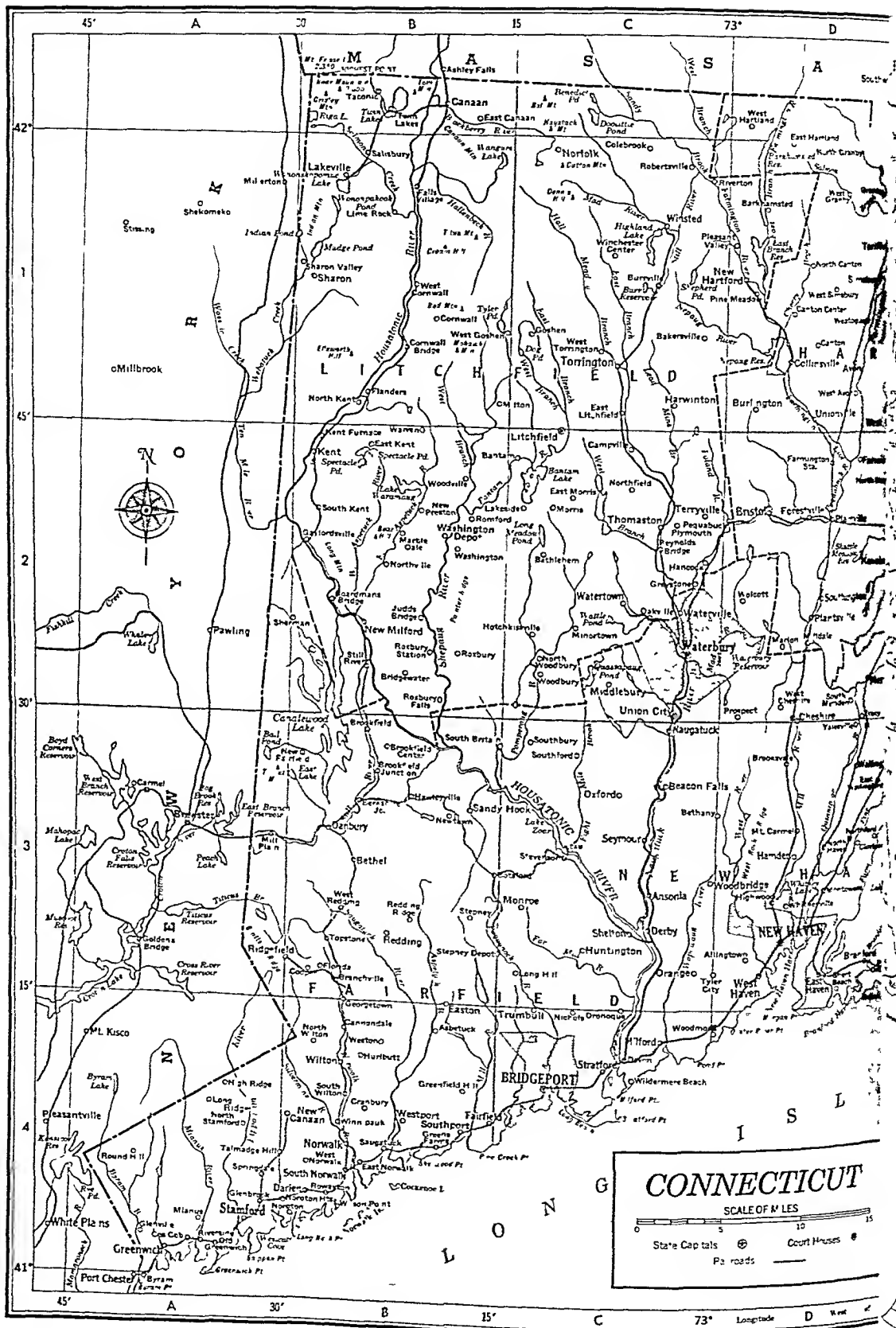
<sup>†</sup>Population of towns in

MERRITT PARKWAY—GATEWAY TO NEW ENGLAND



The magnificent Merritt Parkway climbs the rolling tree-covered hills of Connecticut near Stamford. It is called the Main Street

of the state. This express highway and the Wilbur Cross Park way extend from the New York line almost to Massachusetts.

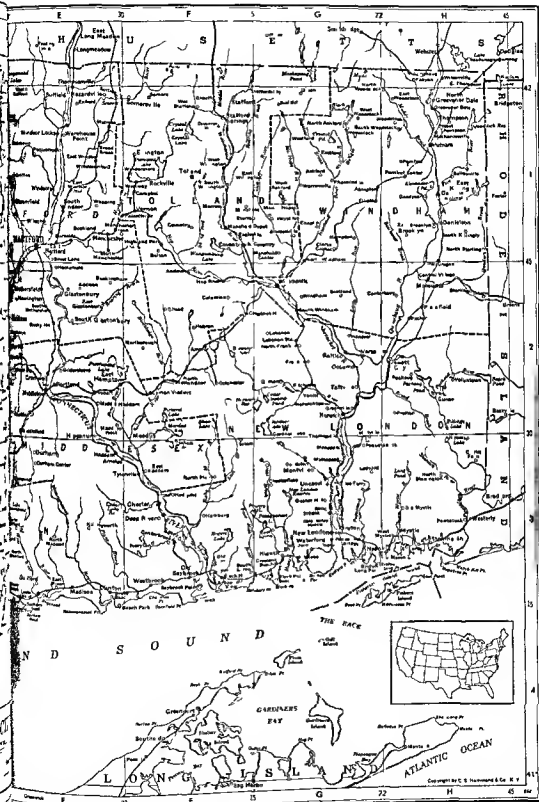


**CONNECTICUT**

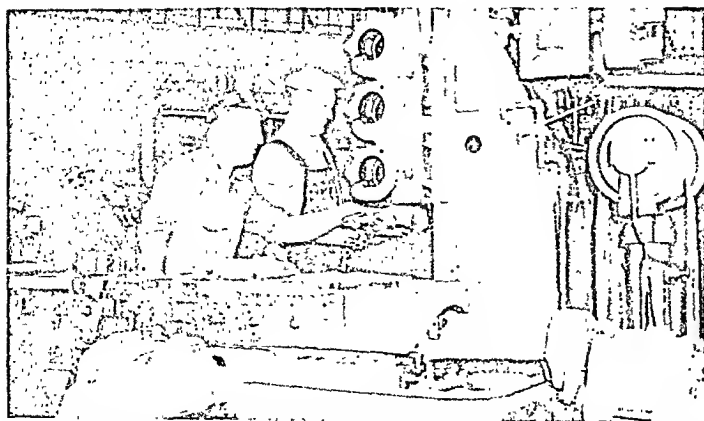
SCALE OF MILES

0 5 10 15

State Capitals    Court Houses    Pa. roads







The manufacturing of the state is built around the metal trades. Important is the production of machines that make machines (left).

Since the days of the American Revolution, Connecticut has been known as the Arsenal of the Nation for its firearms industry (right).

## CONNECTICUT—Continued

Mt. Hope 50 G 1	Norwich 23,429 G 2	Round Hill 600 A 4	Sterling †1,298 H 2	W. Cheshire 1,000 D 2
Mystic 2,206 H 3	Norwichtown 2,916 G 2	Rowayton 3,200 B 4	Stevenson 200 C 3	W. Cornwall B 1
Naugatuck 17,455 C 3	Oakdale 150 G 3	Roxbury †740 B 2	Still River 200 B 2	W. Goshen B 1
New Britain 73,726 E 2	Oakville 5,100 C 2	Roxbury Falls B 2	Stonington 1,739 H 3	W. Granby D 1
New Canaan †8,001 B 4	Oecum G 2	Roxbury Sta. B 2	Stony Creek 1,800 E 3	W. Hartford
New Fairfield †1,236 B 3	Old Greenwich 5,348 A 4	Sachem Head E 3	Storrs F 1	†44,402 D 1
New Hartford †2,395 C 1	Old Lyme †2,141 F 3	Salem †618 F 3	Stratford †33,428 C 4	W. Hartland 196 D 1
New Haven 164,443 D 3	Old Mystic 600 H 3	Salisbury †3,132 B 1	Suffield †4,895 E 1	W. Haven †32,010 D 3
New London 30,551 G 3	Old Saybrook †2,490 F 3	Sandy Hook 1,600 B 3	Taeonie 150 B 1	W. Mystic 2,362 H 3
New Milford †5,799 B 2	Oneco 450 H 2	Saugatuck 1,500 B 4	Taftville 3,598 G 2	W. Norwalk 724 B 4
New Preston 500 B 2	Orange †3,032 C 3	Saybrook Pt. 250 F 3	Talcottville 568 F 1	W. Redding 1,000 B 3
Newington †0,110 E 2	Oreutts 150 F 1	Scitico 125 E 1	Talmadge Hill A 4	W. Simsbury 300 D 1
Newtown 782 B 3	Oronoque 650 C 4	Scotland †513 G 2	Tariffville 800 D 1	W. Stafford 312 F 1
Niantic 1,746 G 3	Oxford †2,037 C 3	Seymour †7,832 C 3	Terryville 6,500 C 2	W. Suffield 1,800 E 1
Nichols 1,171 C 4	Pachaug 75 H 2	Sharon †1,889 B 1	Thamesville 5,518 G 2	W. Thompson H 1
Noank 1,149 G 3	Packer 63 H 2	Sharon Valley 174 B 1	Thomaston †4,896 C 2	W. Torrington
Norfolk †1,572 C 1	Pawcatuck 5,269 H 3	Shelton 12,694 C 3	Thompson †5,585 H 1	240 C 1
Noroton 3,000 B 4	Pequabuck 600 C 2	Sherman †549 B 2	Thompsonville	W. Willington 100 F 1
Noroton Hts. 3,918 B 4	Phoenixville G 1	Short Beach D 3	Tolland †1,659 F 1	W. Woodstock 100 G 1
N. Ashford G 1	Pine Meadow 425 D 1	Silver Lane E 1	Topstone B 3	Westbrook †1,549 F 3
N. Branford †2,017 E 3	Pine Orchard 1,500 D 3	Simsbury †4,822 D 1	Torrington 27,820 C 1	Westfield 1,250 E 2
N. Canton 250 D 1	Plainfield †8,071 H 2	Somers †2,631 F 1	Tracy D 2	Westford G 1
N. Franklin 735 G 2	Plainville †9,994 D 2	Somersville 750 F 1	Trumbull †8,641 C 4	Weston †1,988 B 4
N. Granby 650 D 1	Plainsville 1,536 D 2	Sound View 100 F 3	Twin Lakes B 1	Westport †11,667 B 4
N. Grosvenor Dale 2,232 H 1	Pleasant Valley 325 C 1	S. Britain 400 B 3	Tyler City D 3	Westway F 1
N. Guilford 1,000 E 3	Plymouth †0,771 C 2	S. Coventry 1,617 F 1	Tylerville F 3	Wethersfield
N. Haven †9,444 D 3	Pomfret †2,018 H 1	S. Glastonbury E 2	Uncasville G 3	Whitneyville †12,533 E 2
N. Kent B 1	Pomfret Ctr. 675 H 1	S. Kent 108 B 2	Union †261 G 1	D 3
N. Madison E 3	Poquetanuck G 3	S. Killingly 250 H 1	Union City 5,000 C 2	Wildermere C 4
N. Newington D 2	Poquonock 1,200 E 1	S. Lyme 150 F 3	Unionville 2,197 D 1	Beach 3,500 G 2
N. Plain F 3	Poquonock Bridge 4,050 G 3	S. Manchester E 1	Vernon †10,115 F 1	Willimantic 13,586 E 1
N. Stamford A 4	Portland †5,186 E 2	S. Meriden 1,600 D 2	Versailles G 2	Wilson Pt. 200 B 4
N. Sterling H 1	Preston †1,775 H 2	S. Norwalk 18,000 B 4	Voluntown †825 H 2	Wilsonville 385 H 1
N. Stonington †1,367 H 3	Prospect †1,896 D 2	S. Wethersfield 200 E 2	Wallingford 11,994 D 3	Wilton †4,558 B 4
N. Westchester 100 F 2	Putnam 8,181 H 1	S. Willington F 1	Wapping 1,000 E 1	Winchester Ctr. C 1
N. Wilton B 4	Quaker Hill 1,260 G 3	S. Wilton B 4	Warehouse Pt. 1,283 E 1	Windsor †11,833 E 1
N. Windham 300 G 1	Quinebaug 400 H 1	S. Windham 450 G 2	Warren †437 B 2	Windsor Locks †5,221 E 1
N. Woodbury C 2	Rainbow E 1	S. Windsor †4,066 E 1	Warrenville G 1	Windsorville †5,221 E 1
N. Woodstock G 1	Redding †2,037 B 3	S. Woodstock G 1	Washington †2,227 B 2	Winnipauk 3,600 B 4
Northfield C 2	Redding Ridge B 3	Southbury †3,828 C 3	Watertown †10,699 C 2	Winsted 8,781 C 1
Northford 500 D 3	Reynolds 600 C 2	Southington †13,061 D 2	Waterbury 104,477 C 2	Wolcott †3,553 D 2
Northville 150 B 2	Ridgefield †4,356 A 3	Southport 3,000 B 4	Waterford (Jordan Village) G 3	Woodbridge †2,522 D 3
Norwalk 49,460 B 4	Riverside 2,000 A 4	Springdale 5,280 A 4	Watertown †10,699 C 2	Woodbury †2,564 C 2
	Romford 30 B 2	Stafford †6,471 F 1	Waterville †10,699 C 2	Woodmont 5,000 C 4
		Staffordville 1,000 G 1	Wentogre 800 D 1	Woodstock †2,271 H 1
		Stepney 74,293 A 4	W. Ashford G 1	Woodstock Valley G 1
		Stepney Depot 3,000 B 3	W. Avon D 1	Yantic 800 G 2

†Population of township

chickens potatoes cattle corn apples and truck crops The uplands are best adapted to the raising of dairy cattle and of orchards and vineyards—apples peaches pears and grapes The lowland farms produce tobacco particularly high-quality leaf for cigar wrappers These farms also yield garden vegetables which are marketed in nearby towns and cities

Connecticut has important fisheries Oysters flounders and lobsters are the most valuable sea foods Other important fishery products are scup or porgy shad butterfish cod and sea herring

#### Minerals and Forests

Early manufacturing in Connecticut depended upon its mineral resources In 1705 copper deposits were discovered near present Granby in the north central part of the state Here the Old Granby copper mine yielded the ore from which the first copper coins minted in America were made The mine was abandoned after it became unprofitable Later it was used as a prison during the Revolutionary War and as a state prison until 1877

In the northwestern part of the state near Salisbury there were deposits of high-quality iron ore Farmers and small factories used ore to make hand wrought nails in colonial times During the Revolu-

tionary War the ore was used in manufacturing cables anchors kettles and cannon The enterprise ended in the 19th century through depletion and competition from the Pennsylvania industry

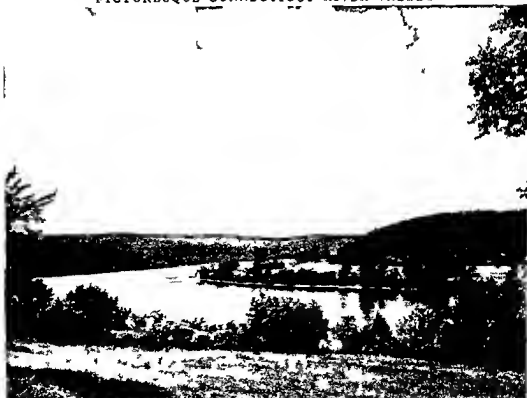
Connecticut still mines some brick clay building stone feldspar limestone for lime quartz peat and sand and gravel Because the state lacks such important minerals as coal and petroleum and has only small deposits of metallic ores the total value of its mineral production is relatively small

Although large tracts have been cleared the state still has some valuable forest land On this land are such trees as hickory oak butternut beech birch maple ash and elm Nearly all the once common chestnut trees have been killed by the chestnut blight caused by a parasite fungus on the bark Since 1890 the state has been producing much less than one percent yearly of the nation's lumber

#### A Year Round Playground

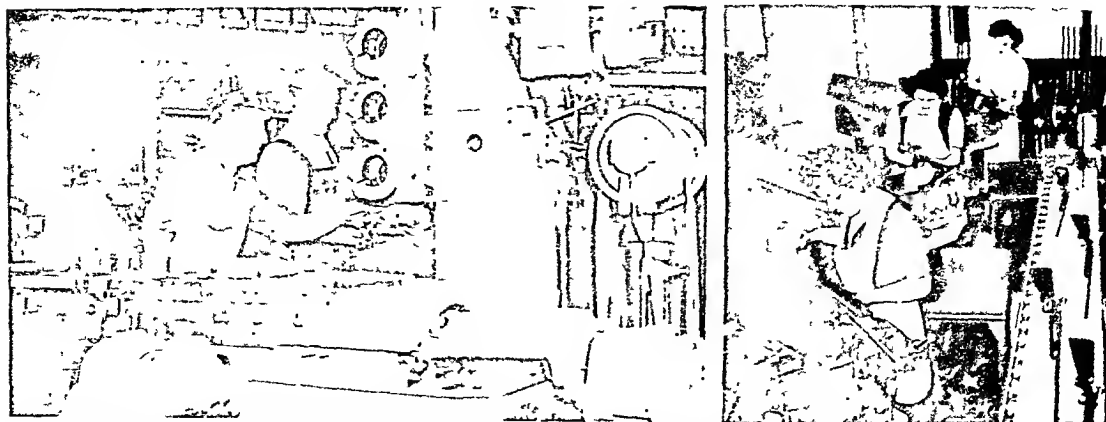
Connecticut is a popular recreation state for its own residents and also for many out-of-staters The reason for its vacation time popularity is the great variety of its attractions They are all within easy reach in this small state with fine highways For the tourist there is a range of sights from busy

### PICTURESQUE CONNECTICUT RIVER VALLEY



The broad Connecticut River winds its way among pleasant forest clad hills near Haddam. In this beautiful and fertile

valley are fine farms and busy cities. The river is the largest in New England and divides the state from north to south.



The manufacturing of the state is built around the metal trades. Important is the production of machines that make machines (left).

Since the days of the American Revolution, Connecticut has been known as the Arsenal of the Nation for its firearms industry (right).

## CONNECTICUT—Continued

Mt. Hope 50	G 1	Norwich 23,429	G 2	Round Hill 600	A 4	Sterling †1,298	H 2	W. Cheshire 1,000	D 2
Mystic 2,266	H 3	Norwichtown		Rowayton 3,200	B 4	Stevenson 200	C 3	W. Cornwall	B 1
Naugatuck 17,455	C 3	2,916	G 2	Roxbury †740	B 2	Stull River 200	B 2	W. Goshen	B 1
New Britain		Oakdale 150	G 3	Roxbury Falls	B 2	Stonington 1,739	H 3	W. Granby	D 1
73,726	E 2	Oakville 5,100	C 2	Roxbury Sta.	B 2	Stony Creek 1,800	E 3	W. Hartford	
New Canaan		Occum	G 2	Sachem Head	E 3	Storrs	F 1	†44,402	D 1
†8,001	B 4	Old Greenwich		Salem †618	F 3	Stratford †33,428	C 4	W. Hartland 196	D 1
New Fairfield		5,348	A 4	Salisbury †3,132	B 1	Suffield †4,895	E 1	W. Haven †32,010	D 3
†1,236	B 3	Old Lyme †2,141	F 3	Sandy Hook 1,600	B 3	Taconic 150	B 1	W. Mystic 2,362	H 3
New Hartford		Old Mystic 600	H 3	Saugatuck 1,500	B 4	Taftville 3,598	G 2	W. Norwalk 724	B 4
†2,395	C 1	Old Saybrook		Savbrook Pt 250	F 3	Talcottville 568	F 1	W. Redding 1,000	B 3
New Haven		†2,499	F 3	Scitico 125	E 1	Talmadge Hill	A 4	W. Simsbury 300	D 1
164,443	D 3	Oneco 450	H 2	Scotland †313	G 2	Tariffville 800	D 1	W. Stafford 312	F 1
New London		Orange †3,032	C 3	Seymour †7,832	C 3	Terryville 6,500	C 2	W. Suffield 1,800	E 1
30,551	G 3	Orcutt 150	F 1	Sharon †1,889	B 1	Thamesville 5,518	G 2	W. Thompson	H 1
New Milford		Oronoque 650	C 4	Sharon Valley		Thomaston †4,896	C 2	W. Torrington	
†5,799	B 2	Oxford †2,037	C 3	Shelton 174	B 1	Thompson †5,585	H 1	210	C 1
New Preston 500	B 2	Pachaug 75	H 2	Sherman †549	B 2	Thompsonville		W. Willington 100	F 1
Newington †9,110	E 2	Packer 63	H 2	Short Beach	D 3	9,633	E 1	W. Woodstock 100	G 1
Newtown 782	B 3	Pawcatuck 5,269	H 3	Silver Lane	E 1	Tolland †1,659	F 1	Westbrook †1,549	F 3
Niantic 1,746	G 3	Pequabuck 600	C 2	Simsbury †4,822	D 1	Topstone	B 3	Westfield 1,250	E 2
Nichols 1,171	C 4	Phoenixville	G 1	Somers †2,631	F 1	Torrington 27,820	C 1	Westford	G 1
Noank 1,149	G 3	Pine Meadow 425	D 1	Somersville 750	F 1	Tracy	D 2	Weston †1,988	B 4
Norfolk †1,572	C 1	Pine Orchard 1,500	D 3	Sound View 100	F 3	Trumbull †8,641	C 4	Westport †11,667	B 4
Noroton 3,000	B 4	Plainfield †8,071	H 2	S. Britain 400	B 3	Twin Lakes	B 1	Westway	F 1
Noroton Hts.		Plainville †9,994	D 2	S. Coventry 1,617	F 1	Tyler City	D 3	Wethersfield	
3,918	B 4	Plantville 1,536	D 2	S. Glastonbury	E 2	Tylerville	F 3	†12,533	E 2
N. Ashford	G 1	Pleasant Valley		S. Kent 108	B 2	Uncasville	G 3	Whitneyville	D 3
N. Branford		325	C 1	S. Killingly 250	H 1	Union †261	G 1	Wildermere	
†2,017	L 3	Plymouth †6,771	C 2	S. Lyme 150	F 3	Union City 5,000	C 2	Beach	C 4
N. Canton 250	D 1	Pomfret †2,018	H 1	S. Manchester	E 1	Unionville 2,197	D 1	Willmantic 13,586	G 2
N. Franklin 735	G 2	Pomfret Ctr. 675	H 1	S. Meriden 1,600	D 2	Vernon †10,115	F 1	Wilson 3,500	E 1
N. Granby 650	D 1	Poquetanuck	G 3	S. Norwalk 18,000	B 4	Versailles	G 2	Wilson Pt. 200	B 4
N. Gro-venor		Poquonock 1,200	E 1	S. Wethersfield		Voluntown †825	H 2	Wilsonville 385	H 1
Dale 2,232	H 1	Poquonock		200	E 2	Wallingford		Wilton †4,558	B 4
N. Guilford 1,000	E 3	Bridge 4,050	G 3	S. Willington	F 1	11,994	D 3	Winchester Ctr.	C 1
N. Haven †9,444	D 3	Portland †5,186	E 2	S. Wilton	B 4	Wapping 1,000	E 1	Windermere 95	F 1
N. Kent	B 1	Preston †1,775	H 2	S. Windham 450	G 2	Warehouse Pt.		Windham †15,884	G 2
N. Madison	E 3	Prospect †1,896	D 2	S. Windsor †4,066	E 1	Warren 1,283	E 1	Windsor †11,833	E 1
N. Newington	D 2	Putnam 8,181	H 1	S. Woodstock	G 1	Warrenville	B 2	Windsor Locks	
N. Plain	F 3	Quaker Hill 1,260	G 3	Southbury †3,828	C 3	Washington †2,227	B 2	†5,221	E 1
N. Stamford	A 4	Quinebaug 400	H 1	Southford	C 3	700	B 2	Windorville	E 1
N. Sterling	H 1	Rainbow	E 1	Southington		104,477	C 2	Winnipauk 3,600	B 4
N. Stonington		Redding †2,037	B 3	†13,061	D 2	Waterbury		Winsted 8,781	C 1
†1,367	H 3	Redding Ridge		Southport 3,000	B 4	104,477	C 2	Wolcott †3,553	D 2
N. Westchester		Reynolds		Springdale 5,280	A 4	Waterford		Woodbridge	
100	F 2	Bridge 600	C 2	Stafford †6,471	F 1	(Jordan Village)	G 3	†2,822	D 3
N. Wilton	B 4	Ridgefield †4,356	A 3	Stafford		Watertown		Woodbury †2,564	G 2
N. Windham 300	G 1	Riverside 2,000	A 4	Stafford		†10,699	C 2	Woodmont 5,000	C 4
N. Woodbury	C 2	Riverton 220	D 1	Springs 3,396	F 1	Waterville	C 2	Woodstock †2,271	H 1
N. Woodstock	G 1	Robertsville 130	C 1	Staffordville 1,000	G 1	Wauregan 1,002	H 2	Woodstock	
Northfield	C 2	Rockfall 2,000	E 2	Stamford 74,293	A 4	Weatogue 800	D 1	Valley	G 1
Northford 800	D 3	Rockville 8,016	F 1	Stepney	B 3	W. Ashford	G 1	Woodville	B 2
Northville 150	B 2	Rocky Hill †5,108	E 2	Stepney Depot		W. Avon	D 1	Yalesville 1,122	D 3
Norwalk 49,460	B 4	Romford 30	B 2	3,000	B 3			Yantic 800	G 2

†Population of township

chickens, potatoes, cattle, corn, apples, and truck crops. The uplands are best adapted to the raising of dairy cattle and of orchards and vineyards—apples, peaches, pears, and grapes. The lowland farms produce tobacco, particularly high quality leaf for cigar wrappers. These farms also yield garden vegetables which are marketed in nearby towns and cities.

Connecticut has important fisheries. Oysters, flounders, and lobsters are the most valuable sea foods. Other important fishery products are scup, or porgy, shad, butterfish, cod, and sea herring.

#### Minerals and Forests

Early manufacturing in Connecticut depended upon its mineral resources. In 1705 copper deposits were discovered near present Granby, in the north central part of the state. Here the Old Granby copper mine yielded the ore from which the first copper coins minted in America were made. The mine was abandoned after it became unprofitable. Later, it was used as a prison during the Revolutionary War and as a state prison until 1827.

In the northwestern part of the state near Salisbury, there were deposits of high-quality iron ore. Farmers and small factories used ore to make hand-wrought nails in colonial times. During the Revolu-

tionary War, the ore was used in manufacturing cables, anchors, kettles, and cannon. The enterprise died in the 19th century through depletion and competition from the Pennsylvania industry.

Connecticut still mines some brick clay, building stone, feldspar, limestone for lime, quartz, peat, and sand and gravel. Because the state lacks such important minerals as coal and petroleum and has only small deposits of metallic ores, the total value of its mineral production is relatively small.

Although large tracts have been cleared, the state still has some valuable forest land. On this land are such trees as hickory, oak, butternut, beech, birch, maple, ash and elm. Nearly all the once common chestnut trees have been killed by the chestnut blight caused by a parasitic fungus on the bark. Since 1890 the state has been producing much less than one per cent yearly of the nation's lumber.

#### A Year Round Playground

Connecticut is a popular recreation state for its own residents and also for many out-of-staters. The reason for its vacation time popularity is the great variety of its attractions. They are all within easy reach in this small state with fine highways. For the tourist there is a range of sights from busy,

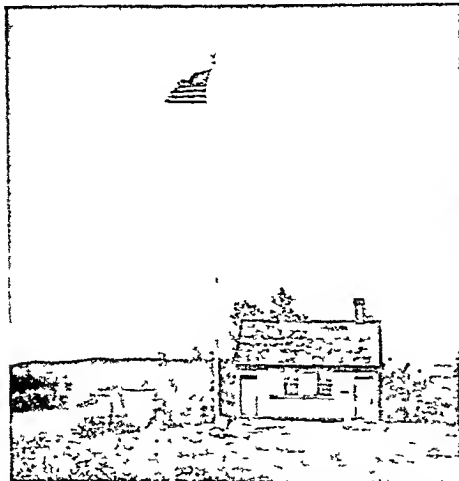
### PICTURESQUE CONNECTICUT RIVER VALLEY



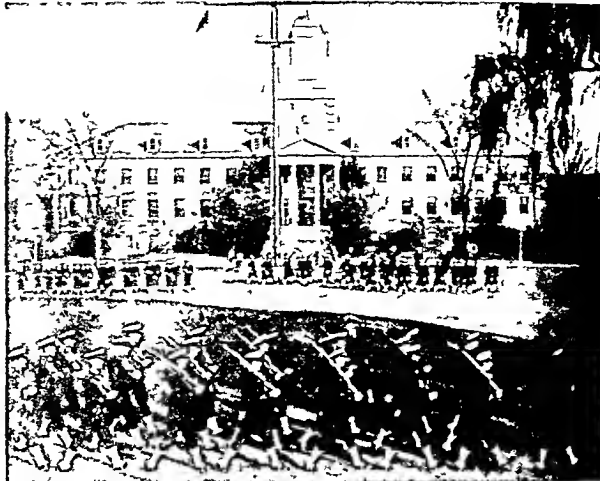
The broad Connecticut River winds its way among pleasant forest-clad hills near Haddam. In this beautiful and fertile

valley are fine farms and busy cities. The river is the largest in New England and divides the state from north to south.

## A LONG AND NOTABLE HISTORY IN EDUCATION



On a rise of ground at East Haddam overlooking the Connecticut River is the first school in which Nathan Hale taught, 1773-74. Hale was born at Coventry, Conn., and studied at Yale College.



At New London is the United States Coast Guard Academy, the "Annapolis" of the Coast Guard service. Here future officers snappily execute their platoon drills in front of Hamilton Hall.

interesting industrial centers to peaceful colonial villages, little changed from their early days.

At Hartford is the Old State House, the work of the noted colonial architect Charles Bulfinch. Gillette Castle at East Haddam was the unique home of the famous actor William Gillette. Here too is the schoolhouse where the patriot Nathan Hale taught. At New London is the United States Coast Guard Academy. The Israel Putnam Memorial Camp Ground near Danbury is a Revolutionary War battlefield. The complete list of places of interest is long.

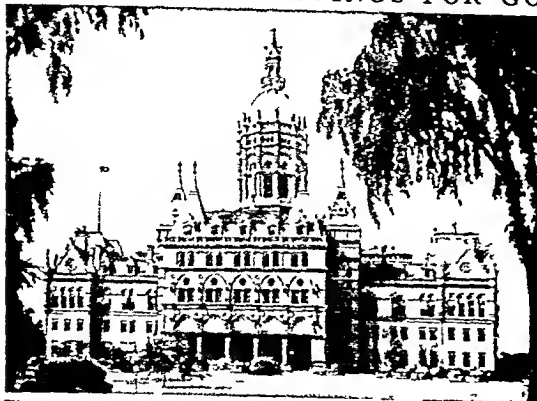
The history-minded are transported back centuries in time as they view the many well-preserved colonial homes in the state. Among the more notable are the Old Whitfield House at Guilford, the Webb House in Wethersfield, and the Glebe House at Woodbury. At the Marine Historical Museum at Mystic, sea-and-sail enthusiasts find relics of the days when whaling was a leading occupation of New Englanders.

There is much of interest for sportsmen and outdoor lovers in all seasons. The scenic forested hills and valleys invite hiking and horseback riding. On the many streams, inland lakes, and Long Island Sound are varied fresh- and salt-water sports in summer. They range from swimming and fishing to yachting. Splendid beaches stretch for miles and there are many resorts. In winter the hills and waters attract skiers and skaters. Thousands of acres have been set aside for the public in state parks and state forests. (See also Connecticut Fact Summary for state parks, state forests, and other places of interest.)

#### The People of Connecticut

The first settlers who organized the Connecticut colony were from Massachusetts and therefore were of English origin. They cleared the land, built homes, and set up farms. In the late 1700's and early 1800's they erected the first small mills and factories. After the potato famines of 1846-47 in Ireland, many

#### PUBLIC BUILDINGS FOR GOVERNMENT AND EDUCATION



The state laws are made in this impressive building. The Capitol stands on a landscaped knoll in Capitol Park in Hartford.



At Storrs is the University of Connecticut. Shown above is its Wilbur L. Cross Library, named for a governor of the state.

## CONNECTICUT'S OLDEST AND MOST FAMOUS UNIVERSITY



These halls are part of Yale University, chartered in 1701 the third oldest university in the nation. This row of buildings is half of one side of a quadrangle enclosing the lawn shown. Other

groups of the university's buildings are scattered throughout New Haven. Through the Phoenix Gateway in the tower is the Green—the old public ground around which the city grew.

Irish came to Connecticut where they worked as mill hands or as farmers. In the late 1800s many German immigrants arrived. French and English Canadians came in large numbers. After 1900 many Scandinavians, Italians and Poles settled in the state.

Connecticut's population thus changed from one almost entirely of British ancestry to one representing almost every European nation and Canada. People of foreign birth made up an increasing part of its population until 1920 when the trend began to decline.

In the 1630s nearly all Connecticut's settlers were of the Puritan faith. Today the largest denominations in the state are Roman Catholic, Jewish, Congregationalist and Protestant Episcopal.

#### Early Fostering of Education

Soon after the founding of the Connecticut and New Haven colonies, the settlers organized public schools similar to the English grammar schools. The Connecticut code of 1650 required all parents to educate their children. It also provided that every township with 50 householders had to have a teacher supported by the people of the community.

In 1672 the general court, the chief governmental body, gave each county 600 acres of land for school purposes. In 1795 the general assembly gave the proceeds from the sale of western lands to education.

At the present time Connecticut has fine systems of public and parochial education. The public system enrolls about 80 per cent of all children attending elementary and secondary schools in the state.

Within the state there are several well known institutions of higher education. These include Yale University at New Haven (founded in 1701), the University of Connecticut at Storrs, Wesleyan University at Middletown, and four state teachers colleges.

#### Connecticut's History

In 1633 a Dutch party from New Netherland founded the first settlement along the Connecticut River at a

place which later became Hartford. The same year John Oldham of Massachusetts explored the river valley and brought back an encouraging report. In 1635 settlers from three Massachusetts towns established Wethersfield, Windsor and Hartford. In 1636 the Rev. Thomas Hooker and Rev. Samuel Stone organized a Massachusetts party of about a hundred men, women and children. This party made its way south along the Connecticut River to the almost abandoned towns of the earlier Dutch colonists.

The settlers bought their land from friendly Indian chiefs. From these chiefs they received a piece of turf and a twig in token of the transfer of the land and its products. The new and tiny settlements, however, were threatened by enemy tribes. In 1637 the Pequots went on the warpath. The settlers' army surprised their fort at night, set fire to it and wiped out the tribe, thus ending attacks by these Indians.

In 1639 the colonists found they were outside the chartered jurisdiction of Massachusetts. Therefore they formed a set of laws entitled the Fundamental Orders of Connecticut. This document is often called the first written constitution of history. The preamble proclaimed that the people, not the English crown, were the foundation of authority. The 11 orders provided for a general assembly of deputies and for the election of a governor and magistrates. They set forth laws for elections, courts, powers of officials and taxes. They omitted, however, a religious test for citizenship. No citizen had to be a church member as required in Massachusetts.

In 1662 John Winthrop Jr. then governor succeeded in obtaining a royal charter from Charles II. This charter established Connecticut as an independent colony under its own constitution. It also defined the colony's boundaries as Narragansett Bay on the east, Massachusetts on the north, Long Island Sound on the south, and the South Sea (Pacific

## CONNECTICUT'S FAMOUS CHARTER OAK



When the English governor came to revoke the charter of the state in 1687, the document was said to have been hidden in this tree in Hartford. The Charter Oak was blown down in 1856.

Ocean) on the west. These boundaries included New Haven, which was absorbed much against its will. In 1665 Hartford became the capital. It shared this honor with New Haven from 1701 to 1875, when Hartford became the sole capital of the state.

#### Defense of the Charter

For years, Connecticut engaged in disputes over rights granted in its 1662 charter. When Edmund Andros was appointed governor of the New England

colonies he was ordered to replace their charters with new ones more favorable to the English crown.

For this purpose Governor Andros came to Hartford Oct. 31, 1687. The story is that one night he and Governor Treat were discussing the surrender of the charter. While doing so, the candles were put out and the document was removed from the table where it lay. It was said to have been hidden in a hollow oak tree which later became famous as the Charter Oak. Although Andros failed to seize the charter, he dissolved the Connecticut government.

After the English Revolution of 1688, Connecticut's charter was again recognized as valid. When the colonists declared their independence in 1776, the 1662 charter became substantially the state constitution. It was replaced in 1818 by a new constitution, under which the state is still governed.

Since early colonial days, Connecticut has had a town system of government. According to its 1818 constitution, each town in existence before that year has two representatives in the lower house of the general assembly. A town incorporated later than that year has representation depending on population.

#### A Boundary Error

The northern boundary of Connecticut has a small rectangular indentation where territory belonging to Massachusetts breaks the straight line. This irregularity was caused by two surveyors who lived more than 300 years ago.

In 1642 there was a dispute over whether Springfield was in Connecticut or in Massachusetts. The latter colony sent out the surveyors Woodward and Saffery to fix the southern boundary. They began by setting a point on this boundary in the extreme east.

### GUILFORD RETAINS THE CHARM OF EARLY NEW ENGLAND



Here is stately Congregational Church framed by the elms on the broad village Green in Guilford. The church was built in

1829 in classical Greek Revival style. Many authentic old homes still stand in this quaint village of the early colonial period.

They then took a boat around Cape Cod and up the Connecticut River. They found a place which they believed was the same latitude as the eastern point they had previously located. Actually it was eight miles too far south. Connecticut protested the line and a long dispute followed. Connecticut finally recovered all but this little rectangle, and Massachusetts did not finally abandon the old line until 1826.

Under the charter of 1662, Connecticut was to extend westward to the Pacific Ocean. As a result Connecticut claimed a large part of the present state of Pennsylvania and a vast strip of land farther west. For years Connecticut actually governed the Wyoming Valley of Pennsylvania, where an Indian massacre of whites occurred July 3, 1778.

After the Revolutionary War, Connecticut agreed to give up all land west of its present boundary in exchange for a reserve tract in what is now north-eastern Ohio. This tract, estimated at 3,500,000 acres, became known as the Western Reserve. About 500,000 acres were sold to pay benefits to persons whose homes the British had destroyed. Proceeds from the sale of the remainder went to the school fund.

#### Connecticut in American Wars

Connecticut suffered little in comparison with the other colonies in the early colonial wars and in the Revolution. Troops were freely furnished to the Continental cause, however, and Connecticut played an active part. Jonathan Trumbull, governor of the colony at the outbreak of the Revolution, was the only governor in the colonies who was not asked to resign, and he became a close friend of Washington.

The little commonwealth as a commercial state did not welcome the War of 1812, but it gave men and supplies liberally. William A. Buckingham, governor at the outbreak of the Civil War, established a record for promptness and zeal in that conflict. Connecticut's vast industrial capacity made it a great arsenal of democracy in the first and second World Wars. (See also chronology in Connecticut Fact Summary, United States, section 'New England'.)

**CONRAD JOSEPH (1857-1924)** In a charming home in Poland a little boy of 11 put his finger on the map of Africa one day in 1868 and exclaimed, "When I grow up I shall go there!"

Six years later this lad and his tutor were in Switzerland watching English engineers build the St. Gotthard Tunnel. His tutor urged him to give up his idea of going to sea and to heed his family's wishes and become a lawyer.

Young Teodor Josef Konrad Korzeniowski listened in despair. Then one of the English engineers passed by, smiled with "a friendly gleam of big sound shiny teeth," and Josef knew that he would sail the Englishman a sea in spite of all tutors.

He went to sea in a French ship at 17. In 1878 he entered the British merchant marine. He knew very little English, but he learned quickly and soon began to think and to talk more clearly in English than in Polish. At the age of 32, while recovering from a fever, he began to write a book.

This book, 'Almayer's Folly', was not published until the writer was 38. It was the first flash of the genius with which the Polish sailor, later Joseph Conrad, English sea captain, was to fascinate the world. Soon after he left the sea, married, and settled in the peaceful English countryside at Kent. Here he wrote the tales that bring all the beauty and mystery of the sea and the strangeness of the East to untraveled readers. Strength and reality run through his writings. The English language sings with a fresh beauty under his foreign pen.

Conrad was a moody but kind-hearted man. He was born in the Ukraine, Dec. 3, 1857, and died in England Aug. 3, 1924. His father was a Polish revolutionist who died when the boy was only 11.

Conrad's best-known books are 'Almayer's Folly', 'The Nigger of the Narcissus', 'Lord Jim', 'Youth', 'Nostromo', 'The Mirror of the Sea', 'The Secret Agent', 'Under Western Eyes', 'Chance', 'Victory', and 'The Rover'. 'Typhoon' and 'Falk' are among the most famous of his shorter stories.

## CONSERVATION—The WISE USE of NATURAL RESOURCES

**CONSERVATION** The wise use of natural resources is called conservation. Soil, water, forests and grasslands, wildlife and minerals are natural resources. Conservation prevents their waste and makes sure of a supply for the future.

Nearly everything we need for comfortable living today comes from one of the natural resources. We cannot live five days without water. Our food comes from soil. On the grasslands live the animals that produce our meat, wool and leather. From forests come the lumber for our houses and furniture, and pulp for paper. Forests and grasslands are also important because they hold water in the ground and prevent soil from

washing away. We use minerals to heat our homes, cook our food, and run our automobiles. Fish, birds, and wild animals all play a part in the balance of nature (see Nature Study).

#### CONSERVATION PLEDGE

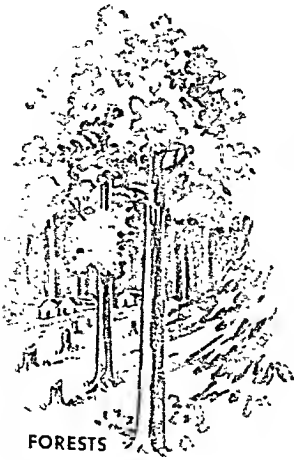
I give my pledge as an American to defend from waste, to work for wise use and good management of my country's natural resources—its soil and minerals, its forests, waters, and wildlife.

Over broad grasslands wandered great herds of buffalo. The soil was deep and fertile. Swift-running streams and deep lakes held a wealth of fish.

In their struggle to get food, clothing, and shelter the settlers chopped and burned down most of the eastern forests. As they moved westward they plowed

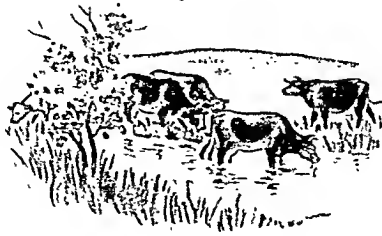


## HOW WE DEPEND ON NATURAL RESOURCES



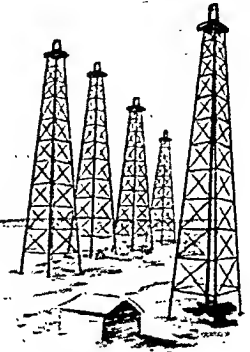
## FORESTS

Lumber  
Furniture  
Paper  
Rayon



## GRASSLANDS

Cattle—Milk, Leather  
Sheep—Wool  
Hogs



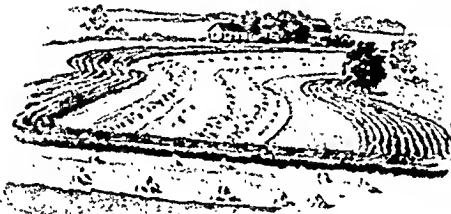
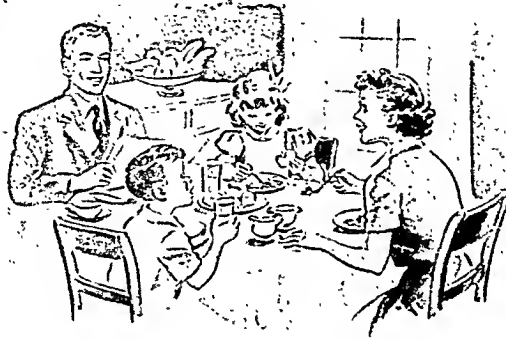
## MINERALS

Natural Gas  
Coal  
Oil—Gasoline



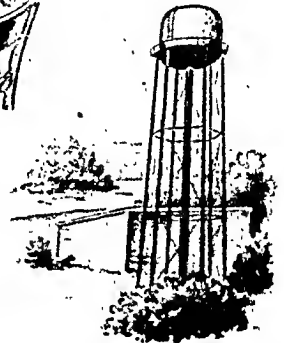
## WILDLIFE

Animals  
Birds  
Fish



## SOIL

Vegetables  
Fruits  
Grain—Cereals, Flour  
Chickens—Eggs



## WATER

Fire Protection  
Drinking Water  
Cooking  
Laundry

This drawing shows that our food, much of our clothing, and countless other things depend on natural resources. How many things in your home and schoolroom can you list that come from soil, water, forests, grasslands, and minerals? Birds are wildlife. How are they useful? Do you think we can destroy our natural resources and continue to live in comfort?

up the grasslands to plant corn and wheat. Their growing cities dumped sewage and waste materials from factories into the lakes and streams.

But forests and grasses were needed to hold soil in place and to keep rain water from running to sea. When they were gone, less water was stored in the ground, because the plant cover that acts as a blotter was gone. When winter snow melted many rivers had floods. In the summer, with little rain, wells ran dry, and crops died in the fields. Dust storms blew the topsoil away. Animals and birds that once lived in the forests and on the prairies became scarce; some kinds vanished forever. Fish died in unclean waters.

At last people began to see that *their very existence depends upon using these resources wisely*. They began to understand that natural resources depend on one another and on people and that people depend on natural resources. They began to understand too that individuals have no right to destroy natural resources for their own profit. The lumber company that chops down all the trees of an entire state without replanting for the future; the industrial plant that poisons a river with its wastes; the farmer who neglects his own farm and so damages his neighbors' land are injuring not only themselves but their whole community. The campers whose care-

lessness starts a forest fire the automobile driver who wastes his gasoline the picnickers who tear up armfuls of wild flowers the hunter who kills more than the legal limit—all are destroying natural resources. *Conservation in fact is the responsibility of everyone.* In many cases it must be enforced by law to prevent waste and destruction.

Conservation pays well in making a community a more beautiful place in which to live. Wherever the land is misused the countryside is unattractive. Vacant lots covered with weeds and trash bare roadsides and streams used as garbage dumps are ugly. We do not like to look at them or to linger near them. The recreational value of conservation is another of its important aspects. As our cities grow more and more crowded people need places to visit on their vacations and week ends. They need more city parks and county forest preserves more national parks more highways bordered by trees and flowers and sparkling streams

#### AN EXPERIMENT WITH RUNOFF



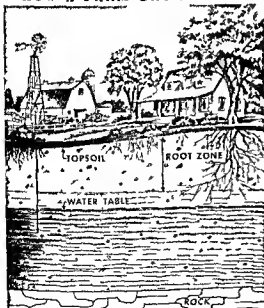
In these two tipped up boxes are earth planted with grass and bare earth. The dishes below the boxes catch the water and soil that run off when water is poured over the boxes. Which box will hold back the most water? Which will let the most water and soil run off? This experiment can also be made out of doors with larger boxes exposed to the rain.

The study of conservation should start with one's own surroundings. City people as well as country people can observe erosion—the silent thief that steals away our topsoil. Most vacant lots suffer from some erosion. The wearing away of soil shows at the end of drain pipes or where a building has been removed. A bare road cut ridged with gullies and washing slippery mud over the highway during a rain is an example of erosion. A road cut planted with bushes will leave the road clean after a rain.

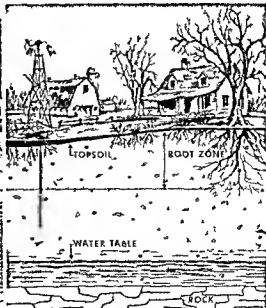
A fresh excavation for a new building is a good place to study topsoil and subsoil. In a visit to the city water works one may learn where the water comes from, how it is used and in what quantity and what measures are

taken to protect its source. Here are some questions everyone should ask himself: Are the rivers, lakes and streams of the community kept clean and fresh? How is the city's sewage and trash disposed of? What do the factories do with their waste materials such

#### HOW A FARM GROWS POOR BY DESTROYING PLANT COVER



When plant cover is removed from the soil serious things begin to happen. The soil no longer holds rain water. It runs downhill carrying the topsoil with it. The ground water table sinks so



low that roots cannot reach it. Wells have to be sunk deeper. When there is little rain, wells run dry and crops die in the fields. The farm may become so poor that it has to be abandoned.

## RECLAIMING WASTELAND



This field was useless as cropland or pasture. Erosion by wind and water was ready to set in. The owner planted pine seedlings, and almost from the start erosion was checked.



Nine years after the seedlings were planted, as shown in the first picture, the field bore a healthy stand of pine. Now the owner periodically cuts selected trees and sells them for pulpwood.

as oil and chemicals? In the country, is the land well covered with grasses, shrubs, or trees? Is there a layer of dried grass, leaves, and twigs on the ground? Does the ground feel soft and springy underfoot? Are there gullies in the fields and pastures? Are the stream banks washing away? Are the streams muddy or clear? Are tin cans and other trash being thrown into the stream?

## The Water Table and Watershed

All of us use water. Our homes must have it for drinking, cooking and washing. Cities must have it for fire protection. Industries use it to produce

electricity and for an endless variety of manufacturing processes. When we think of water we usually think of rain, rivers, and the ocean. We seldom think of the vast underground storage supply known as the *water table* (see Water). It is vitally important. Wells are sunk to the water table. Plant roots draw moisture from it. Springs and streams come from it where it comes to the surface.

The area drained by a region's rivers and streams is called the *watershed*. Such an area slopes toward a common land trough. Some rain runs off (drains) over the ground surface. The runoff becomes a brook. Brooks flow into streams, streams join to form rivers.

A good watershed conserves water. It has a high water table, clear streams, and a generous cover of trees, grasses, and other plants. Plants help to form a part of the topsoil called *humus*. Humus consists of decaying leaves, bacteria, dead insects, and other animal remains. It provides some of the food for new plant life. Together with a network of roots, it acts as a blotter, soaking up rain. Plants break the force of falling rain and scatter the drops over leaves and branches. Some of the water returns to the air by evaporation. Part of the water is used by the plants and breathed out into the air again through the leaves by transpiration (see Plant Life, Trees).

The rest of the water sinks into the earth through countless tiny channels made by roots, earthworms, and burrowing animals and insects. The level at which the earth is permanently saturated is the water table. In a healthy watershed, this level is close to the surface throughout the year. During long, heavy rains the soil may not be able to soak up all the water. Some of it runs off the surface, but in a good watershed, it moves slowly. Deep snow also melts slowly and gradually soaks in.

A poor watershed is formed when all the trees have been cut down or burned off. Grasses and other plants have been stripped off by fire, over-grazing by livestock, or bad farming practices. Marshes and ponds have been drained to make more farm land.

## BAD AND GOOD FORESTRY

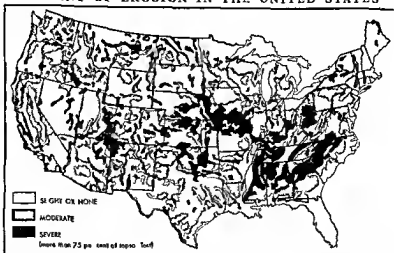


Here unplanned logging, followed by fire, has destroyed not only the trees but the blanket of topsoil that once covered the forest floor. Rain water has dug out a deep ditch, or gully.



This picture shows good lumbering practice. Selected trees are cut from time to time, leaving the others to reach full height and to supply seeds for new growth. Erosion is impossible here.

## EXTENT OF EROSION IN THE UNITED STATES



The map above shows that erosion has badly damaged about 350 million acres of crop and grazing land—equal to the combined areas of Illinois, Iowa, Missouri, Kansas, Nebraska, and Wyoming. Nearly three times that much land is partly eroded. The chart below shows that as the topsoil, which contains plant food is carried away, crop yields grow smaller.

Now when it rains there are no leaves and branches to break the force of the falling water. The blotter of roots and humus is gone. Mud is produced and closes the channels by which water moves downward. If the land is level the water stands in stagnant puddles. If the land is sloping the water races downhill into the rivers.

The watershed suffers destructive floods in the spring when heavy rains and melting snows over flow the rivers. In the summer time when crops and livestock need water the streams springs and wells run dry for little or no water has sunk into the underground reservoirs. Plants with shallow roots die because they can not reach the lowered water table. There are fewer refreshing summer showers plants are not breathing moisture into the air through their leaves.

## Soil and Erosion

The streams in this mistreated watershed are no longer clear but a dark brown muddy color. They are heavy with silt. For racing water does more than gallop off the land. It also carries soil along with it.

Wherever we find a land stripped of its plant cover we find that the soil is going too by erosion. The word

comes from two Latin words meaning "gnawing away." The article on Soil explains just what soil is, how long it takes nature to make just one inch of it (500 to 1,000 years) and how important it is to life. Topsoil is perhaps the most valuable of all our possessions. It is that blanket of rich earth and humus seldom more than a foot deep which makes plants grow. Underneath the topsoil is a sterile material called subsoil. When the topsoil is blown or washed away plant life sickens and dies. The people who live in the region grow poor and finally move away.

No Erosion		
Partly Eroded		
Badly Eroded		

Each Ear Represents Five Bushels

## HOW EROSION MAY BE STOPPED

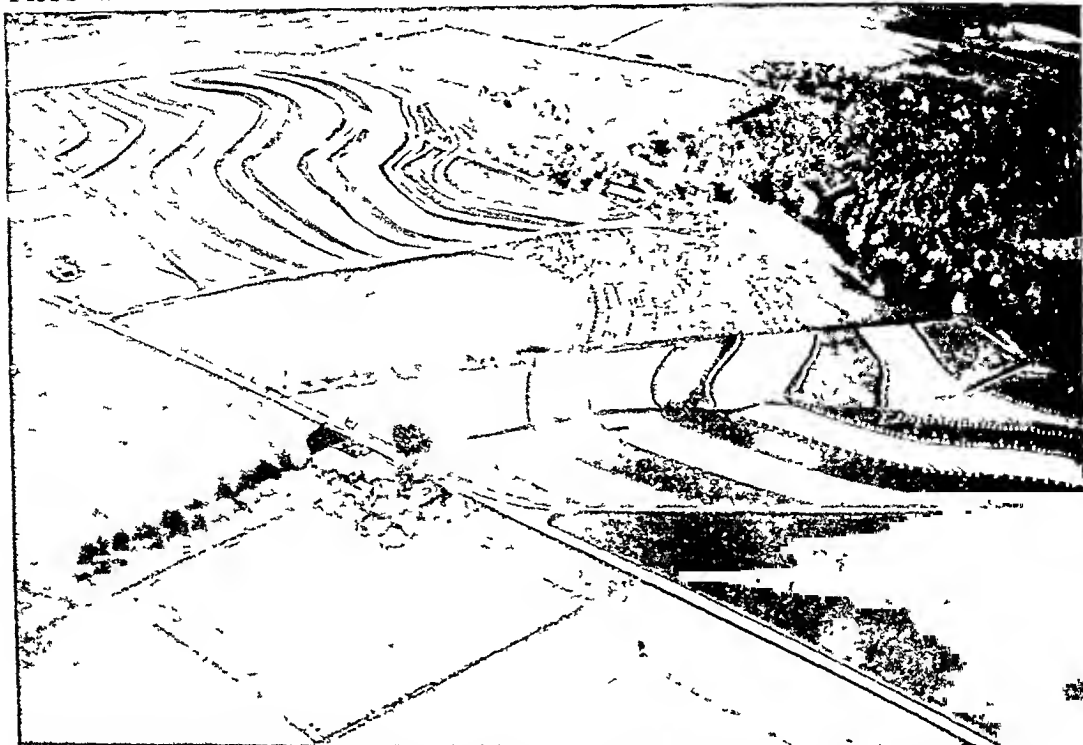


Soil erodes on is not hopeless if something is done about it in time. As shown in these two pictures. The first shows an eroded field with a deep gully forming at the bottom of the hill. The



second shows the same field two years later. The gully has been planted with locust trees. The roots of the trees and fallen leaves hold moisture and prevent further washing away of soil.

## THIS WELL-PLANNED FARM WILL PRODUCE FOOD FOR GENERATIONS



This air view shows how wise farmers plant their crops to follow the curve of a hill, instead of running them up and down the hill. The light colored strips are row crops, such as corn or wheat. The dark strips are close growing "cover" crops, such as alfalfa or soybeans. This kind of planting is called "contour strip cropping." The row of trees, lower left, is a windbreak to protect the farm buildings and near-by fields. At the upper right is a wood lot.

It is estimated that erosion has severely damaged about 280 million acres of the grazing and cropland in the United States—equal to the combined areas of Illinois, Iowa, Missouri, Kansas, Nebraska, and Wyoming. Another 775 million acres have eroded to some extent. We now have left about 460 million acres of land suitable for crops.

Erosion is caused by two different agents—wind and water. Dust storms are the evidence of *wind erosion*. Soil unprotected by plant cover simply blows away. On May 11, 1934, a great dust storm carried away an estimated 300 million tons of topsoil from the Great Plains states. On the basis of 1,000 tons of topsoil to cover one acre seven inches deep, that meant the equivalent of 7,500 forty-acre farms taken out of crop production in a single day.

There are several kinds of water erosion. *Sheet erosion* is the wasting away of level land in thin layers. It may go on for years without being noticed. But each year the land produces smaller crops. Finally on some slight rise of ground, a patch of subsoil shows through. Then the land is about finished as a food producer.

*Splash erosion* is the washing away of soil by the direct battering of rain. Small channels dug in the soil by runoff are called *rill erosion*. The little rills run together and form a network of larger rills. Then gulches develop. *Gully erosion* is the last stage,

and when this occurs the land is on its way to becoming a desert.

Gullying progresses at high speed in certain types of soil. In southwest Georgia is a famous gully called Providence Cave. In places it is 200 feet deep, with arms reaching in all directions. It began about the year 1890 from water dripping off the eaves of a barn. Since then it has destroyed 3,000 acres of farmland and swallowed the barn, a schoolhouse, a church, and roads. It is still reaching like an octopus toward other remaining farms.

#### Soil Fertility and Erosion

Erosion carries off good topsoil, thus reducing the fertility of the soil. This is because plant foods are in the upper levels of the soil. The loss of one inch of topsoil will reduce production of corn by four or five bushels to the acre. Moreover, plants on thin soil suffer from so-called "deficiency diseases"; that is, they lack certain vitamins and minerals. Such plants do not provide fully nourishing food for human beings and livestock.

Experts claim that we need at least two and a half acres of productive land to clothe each person and provide him with a minimum diet. As told earlier in the article, the United States has left about 460 million acres of good land. This averages about three acres for each person. The entire world is believed to have about 4 billion acres of productive land to

supply the needs of nearly 3 billion people. This amounts to less than two acres a person. The United States can still care for its own people but it is being called upon more and more to help the rest of the world.

#### How Soil Conservation Works

The United States had no national program of soil conservation until business depression and drought came in the 1930s. In 1933 the Soil Erosion Service (soon renamed the Soil Conservation Service) was created as an emergency measure and made a major division of the United States Department of Agriculture.

Demonstration projects were set up in all parts of the country. In 1937 the different states began to pass laws permitting farmers to organize their own soil conservation districts. By Jan. 1, 1961 there were more than 2,300 such districts. Each farm fits into a district-wide plan. Farmers often work in groups helping each other apply good land use measures. The Soil Conservation Service and other federal and state agencies provide technical advice.

This program promotes good land use measures by farmers all over the country. It emphasizes that covering the ground with plants is one of the most important of all factors in conservation because it holds rain water where it falls and prevents the blowing and washing away of soil. Gullies can be healed in many cases by new plants. They provide a tangle of leaves and stems that traps and holds in place part of the soil carried by runoff. Grass, legumes, shrubs and trees are planted in gullies for this purpose.

#### HOW TO HOLD RAIN WATER IN DRY REGIONS



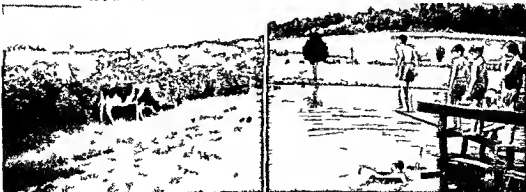
In dry areas where the soil is so hard and dry, the water is held in the soil and a small amount of water is enough to grow a crop. The water is held in the soil and a small amount of water is enough to grow a crop.

A spectacular gully healer widely used in the South is kudzu. It is a vine from the Orient which grows very rapidly. It is not uncommon for gullies ten feet deep to become filled with a five years' growth of soil caught by the kudzu. Kudzu provides good forage for livestock for its rich proteins.

Another way to heal gullies is to build dams of brush across them at regular intervals. Then soil and water running down the gully are caught behind the dams and held in place. The following practices prevent erosion from starting.

Contouring. Plowing, planting and cultivating sloping fields around hill sides with curving furrows.

#### HOW THE FARMER CAN HELP CONSERVATION



All the soil is held in place by the barbed wire and the water is held in the soil and a small amount of water is enough to grow a crop. The water is held in the soil and a small amount of water is enough to grow a crop.

## NO SWIMMING, NO FISHING HERE



A once beautiful woodland stream has been turned into an ugly garbage dump. No fish can live in its dirty waters. No birds can nest among the tin cans on its shores. No swimming, no picnicking permitted.

horizontal to the hill, instead of furrows running straight uphill and downhill. The curved furrows catch rainfall and allow much of it to soak into the ground. They also catch soil washing from above.

**Strip cropping.** Planting strips of close-growing plants—such as grass or clover—between alternate strips of clean-tilled row crops, such as corn. The strips of close-growing plants hold water and keep it from eroding the cultivated strip below. These strips are planted on the contour.

**Terracing.** On long slopes a low ridge thrown along the outer side of the slope catches soil and rain water and slows down runoff.

**Listing.** In dry regions a special list plow can be used to throw a ridge of dirt to each side, creating a trough, or furrow, about 18 inches wide and 7 inches deep. Crops are planted in the bottom of the furrow. In *basin listing*, a dam of dirt is thrown across the trough at right angles, every  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 20 feet.

**Shelter belts.** On the treeless plains belts of trees break the force of winds across a field and reduce wind erosion.

**Deep tillage.** Instead of turning over the earth with a moldboard plow, a deep-tillage plow breaks the earth below the surface, but leaves the surface vegetation, or trash from the previous crop, to act as a cover. This is also called *stubble mulching*.

**Crop rotation.** Planting different crops each year on a piece of land keeps the soil productive. One crop helps the next. For example, nitrogen, needed for plant growth, is added to the soil by *legumes* such as clover, alfalfa, and cowpeas. These plants can take nitrogen from the air and store it through their roots in the soil.

In a year or two, the plants can be plowed under. This is called *green manuring*. After the roots have rotted, other plants can use the nitrogen for growth. This helps plants, such as corn, cotton, and potatoes,

that cannot store nitrogen. Rotations are used with strip cropping by shifting the close-growing strips and the tilled strips at fixed periods. Thus the same plan that stops erosion improves the soil.

**Cover crops.** Land is kept covered winter and summer with either a growing crop or the residue, such as cornstalks, from the crop previously grown. When cover crops are plowed under for green-manuring purposes, the plant foods added to the soil increase its fertility and improve its water-holding capacity.

**Fertilization** is the use of manure or other fertilizer to replace plant food taken out of the soil by crop production.

### Wildlife Conservation

Wildlife conservation goes hand in hand with soil and water conservation. Song and game birds, fish, fur-

bearing animals, and big game animals are as much a product of the land as are trees and grain fields. But wild animals, like human beings, must have food, water, and places to make their homes. Destroying the forests, marshes, ponds, and grasslands destroys their food and water supply and the places in which they live. Only a remnant of the original game supply of the United States now remains. The passenger pigeon, Carolina parakeet, great auk, Labrador duck, Pallas' cormorant, and heath hen are extinct. Birds near the vanishing point include the whooping crane, ivory-billed woodpecker, and California condor. The number of moose, caribou, wild sheep and goats, grizzly and Alaskan brown bears grows smaller every year. Most wildlife is protected by law today from overhunting and overfishing. But if we continue to destroy their natural homes, they cannot survive.

The government has established numerous national wildlife reservations and game refuges. Many of these are administered by the Fish and Wildlife Service. All the national parks and monuments are wildlife refuges. Individuals, however, can do more than government bureaus in restoring wildlife to the countryside simply by providing birds, fish, and animals with natural breeding places.

Hedgerows confine livestock within fields just as effectively as wire fences and provide nesting places for many birds and cover for small animals. The multiflora (meaning "many flowers") rose is being used widely for this purpose. It grows rapidly and makes a very effective fence. Its flowers add beauty to the countryside in the summer, and many birds and animals like the fruit.

Brush piles scattered through a wood lot provide retreats for cottontails, weasels, mink, and woodchuck. Marshes seldom make good croplands, but they provide homes for muskrats and certain birds. (For a discussion of the importance of marshes and the dan-

## LET US FOLLOW THE RAIN FROM FOREST TO SEA



The drawing at the left shows a falling rain on a forest. Some of it flows off the surface. Some soaks into the ground. Finally it reaches the sea on the right. The sun dries it up the air by evaporation and it falls again as rain or snow. The center picture shows how man can save water and make it work for him. When there is a dam and snow falls on the mountains the land should be kept in forests. A dam across the river makes a lake and a reservoir. The dam prevents floods downstream and saves the water for later use. A power plant at the dam uses the force of the flowing water to generate electricity for farms and cities.

ger of unwise drainage (see Birds section on Protecting and Conserving Our Birds.)

A farm pond serves many purposes. Its water is at hand for fire protection and to provide an emergency water supply for livestock. Fish can be raised in the pond (see Fish Culture). Ducks and other water birds may nest on its borders. It is a swimming pool in the summer and a skating rink in the winter. Some farmers make money from ponds by renting automobile parking space to picnickers.

#### The Problem of Water Pollution

Clean water is essential to life. Yet many water ways are used as dumps for raw sewage, garbage and industrial wastes. Water pollution comes from three major sources. First our cities, towns and villages dump untreated sewage and garbage into the nearest streams. Second industries discharge wastes consisting of acids, chemicals, greases, oils and animal and vegetable matter. Such materials poison drinking

water and endanger public health. They destroy commercial fisheries. They prevent fishing, boating, bathing and other recreational uses of the poisoned waterways.

Good progress is being made in correcting these abuses. In 1948 a Division of Water Pollution Control was set up in the federal Public Health Service. It is stimulating a broad national program for the prevention and control of pollution. Many states have passed water control laws providing that municipalities and industries may be ordered to build sewage and waste treatment plants. Progressive industries are engaging in research on the recovery and re-use of waste by products. Often such by products more than pay for the cost of recovery. One manufacturer of strawboard collects enough methane from wood pulp liquor which was formerly emptied into the river to furnish not only light and power for his plant but also a profitable surplus.



A third source of water pollution is *siltation*. Streams flowing through eroded land carry soil, or silt, suspended in their waters. A heavy load of silt indirectly kills fish because it reduces the amount of oxygen in the water. Wherever the flowing water slows down, the silt is deposited. Reservoirs behind dams soon fill with silt unless the watershed above the dam is protected against erosion.

#### Conservation of Minerals

Soil, water, forests, grasslands, and wildlife are the renewable natural resources. Minerals, once exhausted, can never be replaced. The United States has a priceless heritage in its great stores of coal, oil, natural gas, and minerals that were deposited ages ago. Until Congress passed the Mineral Leasing Act (1920), discovery of these resources on public lands led to their transfer to private individuals, who sometimes developed them by wasteful methods. Government regulation now helps private enterprise to develop these resources with less waste.

For years coal had been mined as though it were inexhaustible—about one ton wasted for each ton mined. Now it is being mined more economically. By use of water power instead of coal to generate electricity wherever possible, the coal supply may last indefinitely. (See also Coal; Water Power.)

Natural gas and petroleum were once carelessly wasted. In the earlier days, natural gas was allowed to escape into the air because there was no way to use it. Various state and federal measures and co-operation within the oil industry are combating overproduction and waste (see Gas, Natural). Atomic energy is a new source of power which may some day replace all the minerals used for fuel.

The salvaging of waste metals, once called "junk," has been dignified with a new term, "secondary production." This has grown to be an important business.

Conservation in the United States began as a movement to save the vanishing forests but soon broadened to include other resources. Gifford Pinchot, forestry expert and later governor of Pennsylvania, was a leader in conservation work. He strongly influenced President Theodore Roosevelt, who established the National Conservation Commission. Under this commission, 234 million acres of government-owned timber, coal, oil, and phosphate lands were set apart as public lands, never to be sold to private interests. In 1935 another 197 million acres of unreserved public land were withdrawn from sale and set aside for the public.

Under President Franklin D. Roosevelt, reforestation and erosion control were undertaken by the Civilian Conservation Corps and the Soil Conservation Service. Abandoned and submarginal farms were taken over; many were reforested and set aside as game reserves. Conservation of natural resources was one of the major aims of the Tennessee Valley Authority. The repurchase of forest land has been hastened. The Taylor Grazing Act (1934) controls grazing of livestock on public lands to prevent overgrazing and soil deterioration. The Bureau of Land Management

#### HELPING THE AGED STAY WELL



Here a visiting health department nurse is giving medical aid to an elderly woman in her home. Care of the aged is an important part of the work of conserving human resources.

in the federal Department of the Interior is concerned primarily with co-ordinating the conservation activities of all the government's various branches.

#### Conserving Human Resources

A nation must conserve its human resources as well as its natural resources. The physical and mental health, energy, and time of its people are a country's most valuable assets. To conserve these assets the national, state, and local governments spend millions of dollars annually. Many of the services they provide, such as pure drinking water and sewage and garbage disposal, are so common that we rarely consider the part they play in conserving human resources.

#### CHECKUPS MAINTAIN GOOD HEALTH



This optometrist is examining the boy's eyes with instruments that measure ability to see. Periodic checkups on eyes, teeth, and the whole body do much to conserve good health.

To protect health, governments at all levels have laws, ordinances, and regulations that establish disease-control action. A person suffering from a disease spread by human contact may be kept apart from other people. Special hospitalization as in leprosy, or quarantine, as in some childhood diseases, provide both treatment for the patient and protection for others. Vaccination as in smallpox or inoculation, as in tetanus are frequently required to protect people from specific maladies. Farm animals may be destroyed when they have such diseases as tuberculosis or hog cholera which may be transmitted to humans. Schools often conduct medical and dental examinations to conserve children's health and prevent the spread of infectious diseases. (See also Health, Sewerage, Water Supply)

Agencies under the Department of Health, Education and Welfare as well as state, county, and municipal health departments constantly work to treat diseases and prevent their spread. These agencies often provide hospitals for the care of patients with physical and mental disorders. The Armed Forces and the Veterans' Administration provide similar aid to present or former members of the armed services. (See also Health Department, United States Government)

Many semipublic agencies are devoted to the work of conserving human health. Among these are the foundations organized to combat such diseases as infantile paralysis, cancer, heart ailments, rheumatic fever, and others. They conduct research in disease processes and may offer special care and treatment. Mental health organizations take similar action in their field.

In wartime and when disaster strikes, the American Red Cross provides a host of medical and other aids (see Red Cross). The National Safety Council conducts a broad program of safety education to protect people from accidents at home, on the streets and highways, and at school or work (see Safety). The

#### INDUSTRIAL SAFETY DEVICES AT WORK



The worker (right) is showing the inspector how a portion of his grinding wheel flew off and cracked the transparent guard. Thanks to the guard, the worker himself was not injured.

Red Cross also maintains a special program of water safety instruction. Fire and police departments are ready to act in emergencies that menace human health (see Fire Department, Police)

#### Conserving Time and Energy

Time and energy are valuable human resources. To conserve them, the modern business and industrial world makes use of countless timesaving and labor-saving machines, devices, and methods. Time and motion studies help workers conserve energy and promote production. Machines now do the work of many men (see Work and Fatigue). Psychological tests enable people to choose the kind of work for which they are fitted (see Intelligence Tests, Personality). Homemakers today can avail themselves of many appliances that save time and strength, home furnishings that are easy to keep clean and foods that require little preparation (see Food Preservation, Home Economics and Management)

Many physically handicapped people are able to perform a wide variety of jobs sometimes more skillfully than workers without handicaps. Today their human resources are being used in many different fields. With proper vocational training and psychological counseling, handicapped people can often learn to become economically useful and socially well adjusted. (See also Deaf, Education of, Blind)

Increasing attention is being given the problem of conserving the human resources of elderly people. Employers are learning to adjust time and production schedules for older workers, and their health is the subject of a special medical field, called *geriatrics*. (See also Leisure)

#### Conservation Organizations

The following nongovernmental organizations are concerned with various aspects of conservation. All publish books, magazines, pamphlets, all engage in educational and research work, all have films available to schools and clubs.

**AMERICAN FORESTRY ASSOCIATION**, 919 17th St., N. W., Washington 6, D. C. *American Forests* published monthly. Founded in 1875, it was largely responsible for creation of U. S. Forest Service and Civilian Conservation Corps.

**AMERICAN NATURE ASSOCIATION**, 1214 16th St., N. W., Washington 6, D. C. *Nature Magazine* published during school year.

**CONSERVATION FOUNDATION**, 30 East 40th St., New York City. Sponsors research and education related to the interdependence of natural resources and their wise management.

**EMERGENCY CONSERVATION COMMITTEE**, 767 Lexington Ave., New York City. Largely responsible for the creation of Olympic National Park. Maintains the Hawk Mountain (Pennsylvania) sanctuary for hawks.

**FRIENDS OF THE LAND**, 1368 North High Street, Columbus 1, Ohio. Established in 1940 "for the conservation of soil, rain and man", *The Land* quarterly magazine, *The Land Letter* quarterly news bulletin.

GARDEN CLUB OF AMERICA, Conservation and Roadside Committee, 15 East 58th St., New York 22.

ISAAK WALTON LEAGUE OF AMERICA, 31 N. State St., Chicago 2, Ill. Promotes the conservation of fish, woods, water, and wildlife; encourages the establishment of game preserves, reclamation of polluted streams; organizes Junior Leagues to interest children in conservation. *Outdoor America* published ten times a year.

NATIONAL AUDUBON SOCIETY, 1130 Fifth Ave., New York 28. For description of the work of the Society, see Audubon.

NATIONAL PARKS ASSOCIATION, 1214 16th St. N.W., Washington 6, D. C. Publishes quarterly *National Parks Magazine*. Established 1919 to "promote the preservation of primeval conditions in the national parks and in certain national monuments, and to maintain the high standards of the national parks . . . to preserve wilderness country and its virgin forests, plant life and wildlife . . . in the nation."

NATIONAL ROADSIDE COUNCIL, 119 East 19th St. New York 3. Is concerned with the preservation of roadside beauty.

NATIONAL WILD FLOWER PRESERVATION SOCIETY, 3740 Oliver St. N.W., Washington, D. C. (See also Flowers.)

NATIONAL WILDLIFE FEDERATION, 3308 14th St. N.W., Washington, D. C. Publishes monthly *Conservation News Letter* on pending legislation; wildlife conservation stamps.

NATURE CONSERVANCY (formerly the Ecologists Union), 1214 16th St. N.W., Washington 6, D. C. Devoted to the preservation of nature reserves—forests, prairies, marshes, deserts, and other natural features not now preserved.

WILDERNESS SOCIETY, 1840 Mintwood Place N.W., Washington 9, D. C. *The Living Wilderness* published quarterly. Works for the preservation of forests and wilderness areas on private lands not under government protection.

## REFERENCE-OUTLINE FOR STUDY OF CONSERVATION

### CONSERVATION OF NATURAL RESOURCES

- I. The five natural resources C-451: water W-60-4, C-452b-c; soil S-226-31; forests and grasslands F-236-41, G-163b-170; wildlife C-452f-453; minerals C-454
  - A. The wise use of natural resources C-451
  - B. All living things are interdependent—the natural resources depend on one another and on man, and man depends on natural resources C-452-452a, E-220, B-191-2, N-63
- II. Water—all life requires water C-452b, W-60: animals A-250b-c; plants P-292
  - A. The water, or hydrologic, cycle W-61-2, E-181, F-143, picture C-453
  - B. The watershed and water table C-452b, W-62, D-154
  - C. Pollution problem C-453-4, picture C-452f: sewage disposal S-110
  - D. Control of water supplies by dams and irrigation D-6-11b, I-249-53
  - E. Dangers of artificial drainage B-194
- III. Soil—food comes from the soil S-226-31. See also the Reference-Outline for Agriculture
- IV. How plants hold water in the ground and prevent soil erosion C-452b, F-145-6; grasses G-167, D-154; trees F-236, T-179
- V. What happens when the land is stripped of plants C-452, 452c, F-236, pictures C-452a
  - A. Lowered water table C-452b-c
  - B. Floods F-143-6
  - C. Drought D-152-5
  - D. Erosion C-452c-d, D-154, E-181, F-146, pictures E-219, L-97, U-317: fertility and erosion C-452d-e, chart C-452c
  - E. Deforestation F-237-8, 238-9, 239a, T-179, pictures C-452b
  - F. Overgrazing by livestock: in forests F-239; on grasslands D-154, G-170
- VI. How to prevent erosion and conserve water resources C-452e-f, L-93-7, A-69
  - A. Putting the land to the use for which it is best suited L-93-7

- B. Good farming practices C-452e-f, picture C-452d
  1. Restoring plant cover: in gullies C-452, pictures C-452c, U-317; on overgrazed range land, pictures E-217; on embankments, picture E-219
  2. Contouring and strip cropping C-452-f, D-154, pictures A-69, C-452d, L-97
  3. Crop rotation C-452f, F-25: role of nitrogen-fixing plants in rotation N-240-1, A-151
  4. Use of fertilizers C-452f, F-55, picture S-231
  5. Shelter belts C-452f, F-241
  6. Farm ponds C-453, F-112, picture C-452e
- C. Protection of forests:
  1. Reforestation F-239, pictures F-239a
  2. Selective logging F-239, L-342, picture E-219
  3. Control of stock grazing F-239
  4. Utilization of wood wastes L-350
  5. Prevention of loss by fire and insects F-237-9
- VII. Wildlife conservation C-452f-453, B-191, E-216-18, N-63
  - A. Birds B-190-6, E-216, pictures B-195, E-221: ducks D-161; laws B-194, 195, D-161, P-76, Q-1
  - B. Fish F-110-12: oysters O-439; salmon S-29
  - C. Fur-bearing animals F-326
    1. Humane trapping T-176-7
    2. Restoration of muskrat marshes in Manitoba M-79, picture M-80
  - D. Other animals: alligators A-171; beaver B-92; bison B-200; seal S-89-90; whale W-114
  - E. Protective organizations C-454a-b, B-195
    1. Federal Fish and Wildlife Service U-363-4
    2. Ducks Unlimited D-161
    3. National Audubon Society A-471
    4. Defenders of Furbearers T-176-7
    5. Humane societies H-443
  - F. Sanctuaries and game refuges A-471, B-195, F-163, N-21: foreign game preserves N-39
  - G. Good farm practices C-452f-453: multiflora rose hedge, picture C-452e

VIII Minerals—the nonrenewable resource C-451 petroleum P-181 natural gas G-33 water power can serve coal W-67 70 new sources of power A-470 F-315, P-403

IX Regional planning L-96 picture C-453 Tennessee Valley Authority T-69-70 proposed Columbia Valley Administration C-4155 Missouri Basin Interagency Committee M-326 foreign planning L-96

X Population and food supply C-452a-c L-95

## CONSERVATION OF HUMAN RESOURCES

- I Conserving health and strength C-454-454a  
A Promoting good health H-300-7 physical education and athletics P-227 8 A-439-50 parks and playgrounds F-86a-d mental hygiene M-172 3 See also the Reference-Outlines for Physiology, Health and Medicine and for Food
- B Preventing poor health and disease H-300-307 public health H-308-10 first and F-94-8 medicine M-164-5 antiseptics and antitoxins A-265-8 A-268-9 serum therapy 8-103-4
- C Preventing accidents S-3-12 See also the Reference-Outline for Safety Education
- II Conserving abilities C-454a education E-238-63 vocations V-499-515 See also the Reference-Outlines for Education and Vocations
- III Providing for social security S-218-18a See also the Reference-Outline for Sociology
- IV Providing new leisure in daily living L-158-61 hobbies H-387-401 See also the Reference-Outline for Vacation Activities

## HISTORY OF CONSERVATION

- I In the United States C-454 B-191-5 F-240-1 L-92  
A Mistakes of the settlers C-451 2 L-94-5  
B Theodore Roosevelt administration R-224  
C Taft administration T-3-4  
D Franklin D. Roosevelt administration C-454 Civilian Conservation Corps R-205 F-241 N-38c Soil Conservation Service C-452c A-69  
E Government agencies interested in conservation: Department of the Interior U-362-4 Department of Agriculture U-364-5 Tennessee Valley Authority T-69 70  
F Nongovernment agencies C-454a b National Audubon Society A-471
- II Conservation in other lands  
A Ancient Incas practiced conservation principles picture J-51  
B Good forestry practices in Germany B-203  
C Countries which failed to conserve natural resources China F-239a Mexico M-199

## BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CONSERVATION

### Books for Younger Readers

- Boschma, Rhoda. All in the Family (Appleton 1951)  
Bough, G. O. Water Appears and Disappears (Row 1943)  
Brüer, M. S. Your Forests (Lippincott 1945)  
Graham, E. H. and Van Dersol, W. R. Wildlife for America: the Story of Wildlife Conservation (Oxford 1951)  
Green, Ivah. Partners with Nature (Intern. Textbook Co. 1953)  
Hafstad, M. R. and G. E. Use without Waste (Webster 1944)

- Lathrop, D. P. Let Them Live (Macmillan 1951)  
Noring, J. S. Pogo's Farm Adventures (Holt 1948)  
Parker, B. M. Saving Our Wildlife: Earth, a Great Storehouse. Plant and Animal Partnerships. Soil, Water (Row 1941-461)  
Van Dersol, W. B. and Graham, E. H. Land Renewed: The Story of Soil Conservation (Oxford 1946)

### Books for Advanced Students and Teachers

- American Association of School Administrators. Conservation Education in American Schools (29th Yearbook) (The Association 1950)  
Beard, W. F. Teaching Conservation (Amer. Forestry Assoc. 1945)  
Bennett, H. H. Elements of Soil Conservation (McGraw 1947)  
Blett, B. O. and Yeo, J. W. Growing Up (Heath 1951)  
Carhart, A. H. Water—or Your Life (Lippincott 1951)  
Carter, V. G. Man on the Landscape (National Wildlife Federation 1949)  
Chase, Stuart. Proper Study of Mankind (Harper 1945)  
Chase, Stuart. Roads to Agreement (Harper 1951)  
Coyle, G. L. Group Work with American Youth (Harper 1945)  
Frank, Bernard and Netboy, Anthony. Water, Land and People (Knopf 1950)  
Gabrielson, N. Wildlife Conservation (Macmillan 1941)  
Gabrielson, N. Wildlife Management (Macmillan 1951)  
Gilbert, M. B. Best Years of Your Life (Little 1953)  
Keller, A. V. Life and Growth (Appleton 1938)  
Leonard, Aldo. A Sand County Almanac (Oxford 1949)  
Leon, Ralph, ed. Most of the World: The Peoples of Africa, Latin America and the East Today (Columbia Univ. Press 1949)  
National Audubon Society. Teachers Guide to Nature Study and Conservation (The Society 1949)  
Osborn, H. Fairfield. Our Plundered Planet (Grossart 1951)  
Rauschenbush, Stephan, ed. The Future of Our Natural Resources. American Academy of Political and Social Science. Annals May 1952  
Seers, F. B. Deserts on the March (Univ. of Okla. Press 1947)  
Shepard, Ward. Food or Famine: The Challenge of Erosion (Macmillan 1945)  
Smith, G. H. Conservation of Natural Resources (Wiley 1950)  
Twentieth Century Fund. America's Needs and Resources (The Fund 1947)  
U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Grass (1945 Yearbook). Trees (1949 Yearbook). Crops in Peace and War (1950-51 Yearbook) (Dept. of Agr.)  
U.S. Presidents Water Resources Policy Committee. A Water Policy for the American People: Ten Rivers in America's Future (Supt. of Doc. 1950)  
Vogt, William. Road to Survival (Sloans 1948)  
Whitaker, J. R. and Ackerman, E. A. American Resources: Their Management and Conservation (Harcourt 1951)

**CONSTABLE, JOHN (1776-1837)** Early in the 19th century most English painters believed that "a good picture like a good fiddle should be brown." John Constable believed that nature should be shown in its own colors. He invented a technique to make this possible. Instead of using flat colors he painted with thick daubs and flecks of many hues. He is said to have used a thousand greens to create the natural beauty of his trees and meadows. To suggest the high lights of sunshine he used dashes of light-colored pigment known as "Constable's snow."

England was slow to appreciate him. He painted portraits to earn money, while his landscapes remained unsold. France, however, acclaimed his revolutionary method. His Hay Wain, shown at the

Paris Salon of 1824, inspired the French romantic leader Eugène Delacroix to repaint part of his own 'Massacre at Chios'. Constable's technique helped lead the way to the French Impressionism movement in painting.

Constable was born in the village of East Bergholt, the son of a prosperous miller. In his boyhood he roamed the Suffolk countryside. "These scenes," he said, "made me a painter." At 22, after two years as a clerk in his father's business, he went to London to study painting at the Royal Academy. In 1811 he fell in love with Maria Bicknell. Her family did not approve of the match, and they did not marry until 1816. Maria died in 1828, leaving Constable with seven children, the youngest less than a year old. In 1829 the Royal Academy elected him a member.

Constable's best-known works include 'The Leaping Horse', 'Dedham Mill', and 'Salisbury Cathedral'. **CONSTANTINE THE GREAT**, ROMAN EMPEROR (A.D. 280?-337). Two important events marked the reign of Constantine the Great, the first Christian emperor of Rome. He made Christianity a lawful religion; and he founded the city of Constantinople, the brilliant capital of the Eastern Roman Empire.

Flavius Valerius Constantinus was born in the Roman province of Moesia (later Serbia) about A.D. 280. His father, Constantius, was a member of an important Roman family. His mother, Helena, was the daughter of an innkeeper. In 293 the emperor Diocletian made Constantius *caesar* (emperor) of Gaul and Britain. Young Constantine was kept at the court of Galerius, the eastern emperor, virtually as a hostage. He escaped in 305 and joined his father. Constantius died the next year and the army hailed Constantine as *caesar*.

For five years Constantine contented himself with ruling Gaul. Then he invaded Italy, making straight for Rome. When he reached the Tiber River, he wrote, he saw in the afternoon sky a bright cross. On it were the words *Hoc signo vinces!* ("In this sign conquer!"). He dreamed that night that Christ bade him take the cross for his standard. The next morning (Oct. 28, 312), Maxentius, emperor of Rome, came out of the city with his army and met Constantine at the Milvian Bridge. Constantine swept the enemy into the Tiber, and Maxentius was drowned. Constantine then entered Rome as sole master of the western half of the empire. To commemorate his victory he erected the triumphal Arch of Constantine. In 313 he issued the famous Edict of Milan. This gave the Christians the right to practice their religion openly.

#### Constantine Calls a Church Council

By 323 Constantine had brought the entire Roman world under his own rule. He then gave his attention to a quarrel that threatened to split the Christian church into two camps. Arius, a priest of Alexandria, Egypt, maintained that Christ was not the equal of the Father but was created by Him. Athanasius, leader of the bishops in the west, claimed that the Father and Son, though distinct, are equal, and of the same substance. To settle the matter, Constan-

tine called together in 325 a world-wide (ecumenical) council of bishops at Nicaea, in Asia Minor. He himself presided. An overwhelmingly majority condemned the Arian view as heresy. The Council drew up the Nicene Creed, which is still accepted as the basic doctrine of most Christian churches.

#### The Founding of Constantinople

Constantine next moved his seat of government from Rome to the east. He did this to secure better protection from Asiatic foes. He realized also that the Roman Empire drew its strength from the productive lands of the east rather than from Italy. For his capital he chose the ancient Greek city of Byzantium on the Bosphorus. He enlarged and enriched the city at enormous expense. In 330 it was dedicated as "New Rome"; but it was generally called Constantinople, "the city of Constantine." Within a century and a half, the western, Latin-speaking part of the empire was overwhelmed by Germanic barbarians. The eastern or Byzantine Empire, with its capital at Constantinople (now Istanbul) survived for more than a thousand years (see Byzantine Empire; Istanbul).

Constantine ruled as a despot, surrounded by oriental pomp. He admitted bishops to his council; and his laws concerning the treatment of slaves and prisoners show the influence of Christian teachings. However, he put to death his oldest son, Crispus, and his second wife, Fausta. Not until his last illness did he fully accept Christianity. Then he cried, "Let there be no ambiguity!" and asked for baptism. Laying aside his purple imperial robes, he died in the white robe of a Christian neophyte. Before his death he divided the empire among his three remaining sons.

#### The Donation of Constantine

In the 8th century the church came into possession of a document that purported to be a decree of Constantine. It stated that the emperor, in gratitude for his conversion by Pope Sylvester, turned over to the pope and his successors the rule of the western empire. For centuries the popes based their claim to temporal power on this "donation." In the 15th century it was proved to be a forgery.

**CONSTANTINOPLE**. This former capital of Turkey occupies a strategic position on the European shore of the Bosphorus, where it opens into the Sea of Marmara. In 1930, by order of Kemal Atatürk, Istanbul was made the official name of the city (see Istanbul).

**CONSTELLATIONS**. For untold thousands of years men have traced the outlines of familiar things among the stars. These patterns in the night sky are called *constellations*, from Latin terms meaning "together" and "stars."

Many of the constellations have names that are very old. The Sumerian shepherds and farmers of Mesopotamia 7,000 years ago may have called the Bull, the Ram, the Lion, and many other constellations by the same names we use. Students of history are sure these names started in Mesopotamia because the choice of animals suggests this. If the names had first been used in Egypt, there ought to be a hippopotamus or elephant among the stars. If they had started in

ancient India there should be a tiger or crocodile  
(See also Astronomy Zodiac)

The later people of Mesopotamia took over the old Sumerian names for the constellations and still later the Greeks adopted them. The Greeks added many names of heroes and demigods to the list of constellations. The Romans used the Greek list but translated the names into Latin. To this day the official names of all the constellations are the Latin ones.

About A.D. 150 the famous astronomer Ptolemy listed 48 constellations known to him in his book, the *Almagest* (see Ptolemy). His list of constellations did not cover the entire sky. There were blank spaces between constellations and there were no constellations at all for the southernmost stars because these could not be seen from the Mediterranean region. In later centuries astronomers added constellations to Ptolemy's list to fill in the blanks. Some of these later constellations are named for scientific instruments such as the Sextant, the Compasses, and the Microscope. Others bear the names of birds and beasts in tropical regions (the Giraffe, the Chameleon, the Toucan). Today 88 constellations are recognized by astronomers.

#### Importance of the Constellations

Everyone will find it valuable to know the principal constellations which can be seen from where he lives. It is always pleasant to recognize them. Frequently it is useful as well for we can tell time and find directions at night by the stars. The article on Astronomy tells how to do this with the northern stars. Once a person knows all the principal constellations he can do so with any of them.

Some of the constellations are good likenesses but most are not. It is easy to make out the hunter Orion with upraised arm and studded belt. Cygnus the Swan really looks like a long-necked bird with a long outstretched in flight. It takes little imagination to see the spreading horns and narrow face of Taurus the Bull. However, Ursa Major (the Great Bear) does not look like a bear because bears do not have long tails. So the Big Dipper is probably a better name for the seven brightest stars of this constellation. Scorpius makes a fair scorpion but Sagittarius nearby looks little like an archer. It makes an excellent teapot, however, and in late summer it can be seen pouring tea on the scorpion's tail.

To most people a constellation is a group of bright stars but to an astronomer it is a definite area in the sky. Thus every star no matter how dim lies in one constellation or another just as any point in the United States is in some one state. The boundaries of the constellations used to be very irregular and had many curved lines. In 1928 astronomers straightened them out so that the outline of any constellation includes only straight lines running north and south or east and west. Astronomers use the constellation names to identify most bright stars and all variable stars so it was important to make the boundaries clear and precise. (For maps showing the constellations and their monthly positions see Star.)

**CONSTITUTIONS** Every civilized nation every state in the Union and almost every formal organization or club is controlled by a set of fundamental laws and principles known as a constitution. This sets forth the form of government, the powers and duties of its officers, and the rights and responsibilities of its people or members.

Most constitutions are written documents especially prepared and officially adopted on a certain date. A notable exception is the unwritten constitution of Great Britain. This nation is governed by a body of legislative acts, judicial decisions, and political precedents that have been established over a long period of time. In actual practice governments with written documents are also controlled by a body of laws, decisions, and customs that have grown up around the original constitution.

#### Constitutions of Nations and States

When a new nation is formed it usually draws up a written constitution. The constitutions of the United States and the nations that grew out of the two World Wars were formed in this way. Some nations have adopted new constitutions after revolutions which took place because there was no legal means of changing unsatisfactory governments. Other nations have acquired their constitutions by grant of their rulers. Through pressure or fear of revolution the rulers agreed to limited powers and government according to specified procedures and principles.

In the United States all the original 13 colonies drew up written state constitutions during the Revolutionary War period. Since that time every territory applying for statehood has had to submit its proposed constitution to Congress for approval.

Constitutions must undergo change to meet new conditions. Some changes occur through custom and usage or through interpretations made by courts. Other changes are made by amendment. Flexible constitutions are easily amended; rigid constitutions are amended only by special convention or other elaborate methods. In determining the meaning of a constitution the document may be interpreted *loosely* or *strictly*. Loose interpretation recognizes implied and resultant powers; strict interpretation denies all powers not specifically enumerated.

#### Constitutions for Organizations

Preparing a new constitution requires much study and consideration. The following principles should prove useful in constructing a constitution for any type of group.

1 The constitution should be written. This may prevent many needless misunderstandings.

2 It should fit the needs of the specific group for which it is intended. Few constitutions can be successfully borrowed from another organization.

3 It should be as simple as possible and include only items of a permanent nature.

4 The constitution should grant equal rights to all the members of the organization.

5 It should include definite workable provisions for amending with a reasonable amount of difficulty.

## The Fine Art of CONVERSATION and HOW to MASTER IT

CONVERSATION. Four thousand years ago, school-boys in Egypt were copying maxims on conversation from a book called 'The Instructions of Ptah-Hotep', preserved today in the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris. It is spoken of as "the oldest book in the world," for it was composed sometime between 3000 and 2500 B.C., by a high official of the Egyptian government. So we know that long, long ago people realized the importance of conversation, and that studying the technique of conversation is nothing new.

Talking has been one of man's chief occupations and one of his most significant activities. History has been made at conferences; chance remarks have founded lifelong friendships; and from conversation has come inspiration for great achievements. Conversation is the means by which we draw near to one another with sympathy and pleasure; it is the basis of our social activities. It is no wonder then that those adept at conversation have always had an advantage in life.

A person's character and tastes are revealed by his conversation. That is the meaning of the old fairy tale about the two sisters. When one spoke, jewels fell from her lips; when the other spoke, toads jumped from her mouth. How well you know the sort of girl Alice was from her talks with the creatures in Wonderland! And so it is with peoples. The more civilized a nation is, the higher the level of its conversation.

### Some Famous Masters of the Art

The ancient Greeks excelled in conversation, and the greatest talker of them all was the philosopher Socrates, who taught his followers to think by conversing with them. His most famous pupil, Plato, recorded some of his supposed conversations, and we can read them in 'The Dialogues' of Plato. In many classrooms today, Socrates' method of teaching is used, with a conversation about books or places or events taking the place of the stiff recitation.

In London in the 17th century, the coffee houses were centers of intelligent and witty conversation, particularly Will's Coffee House in Covent Garden, where the poet Dryden and his friends gathered. This reputation of the London coffee houses was carried on in the succeeding age by Dr. Samuel Johnson and his companions. These included such distinguished men as Goldsmith, poet and author of 'The Vicar of Wake-

field'; Edmund Burke, the statesman; Sir Joshua Reynolds, the portrait painter; David Garrick, the actor; and Sheridan, the dramatist. Of the men and women who live in fame today chiefly because of their unusual ability as conversationists, Dr. Johnson is the most widely known. Few read Johnson's books now, but all who read at all know about his remarkable

talk as it is recorded in Boswell's 'Life of Johnson'. (See Johnson, Samuel.)

However, conversation is generally considered to have reached its zenith in 18th-century France. At the houses of various talented women in Paris, leaders in art, science, philosophy, politics, and literature assembled regularly for dinners, suppers, or receptions and engaged in brilliant conversation. The hostesses, instead of dominating the conversation, encouraged their guests to talk freely—which is the art of every good conversationist. These salons, as the gatherings were called from the French word for drawing-room, exercised great influence on the political and literary history of the time.

### Talk and Conversation

Much has been written on the art of conversation, and it is interesting to see how much alike the thoughts about it have been through the centuries. Nearly all commentators have stressed the difference between great talkers and great conversationists. Irrepressible talkers kill conversation and exhaust a company. Macaulay, the historian, is often mentioned as an example of one who never learned the important art of listening. The poet Coleridge was another man who sometimes monopolized talk. There is a story that he once buttonholed a friend and began talking with his eyes closed, as was his custom. The friend, having to leave, quietly snipped off the button with his knife, only to return hours later and find Coleridge still talking.

In addition to lecturers like Macaulay and monologists like Coleridge, there is another overtalkative type—the rambler who remembers all and tells all, only forgetting what he started out to say. The perfect example is Miss Bates in Jane Austen's 'Emma'. Mrs. Nickleby in Dickens' 'Nicholas Nickleby' is another whose thoughts jump aimlessly about like grasshoppers. "Parrot-talkers" have a stock of tried remarks for all occasions. Two centuries ago, Swift wrote a satire made up of remarks guaranteed to have been in use for a hundred years or longer. Even today, many are still

*A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver.*—PROVERBS OF SOLOMON.

*The most profitable and most natural exercise of our mind is conversation. To me it is a more agreeable occupation than any other in life.*—MONTAIGNE.

*Wise, cultivated, genial conversation is the last flower of civilization.*—EMERSON.

*Talk, which is the harmonious speech of two or more, is by far the most accessible of pleasures. It costs nothing in money; it is all profit; it completes our education, founds and fosters our friendships, and can be enjoyed at any age and in almost any state of health.*—R. L. STEVENSON.

*Conversation is our solace, our inspiration, and our most rational pleasure.*—AGNES REPPLIER.

*Talk often, but never long; in that case, if you do not please, at least you are sure not to tire your hearers.*—CHESTERFIELD.

*A single conversation across the table with a wise man is better than ten years' study of books.*—LONGFELLOW.

using some of these expressions, such as "Every one as they like, as the good woman said, when she kissed her cow", "The sight of you is good for sore eyes", and "I love tea, but it does not love me". A collection of more modern hand-me-downs of talk can be found in "Are You a Bromide?" by Gelett Burgess among them "The world is such a little place after all", and "Now that you have found the way, do come often."

Some young people and older ones too go to the opposite extreme. They try too hard to say things in a different way, and their talk sounds forced. There are the schoolboys in "Stalky & Co." "I wasn't goin' to damp his giddy ardor," McTurk says. "Keep your hair on! We mustn't make a fuss about the bizna." Stalky advises. We feel sure that these youths will outgrow their over eagerness to be original!

"Overtoppers" might be a good name for those who must outdo any story or statement. Children begin by boasting that their houses are larger, their fathers more important than those of their playmates. They are quick to say, "That's nothing. I can jump twenty feet" or "I've been to the circus five times." As they get older, they may, a little less rudely leave off "That's nothing" without losing the overtopping habit. "Yes, I'm sure that was interesting," they say hastily as you finish your story, then add "but you ought to hear what happened to me on my vacation." If you tell a joke they must tell a funnier one.

#### What Makes a Good Talker

The best talkers of all ages appear to have had a lively affection for and a warm interest in their fellow creatures, a curiosity about the world in general (not a petty curiosity about people's affairs), some powers of observation and reflection, respect for their own opinions and tolerance for those of others, and tact, which comes from ready sympathy and quick thinking. And they talked for the fun of it, not to show off their knowledge.

A fund of information the talker needs, of course. But you can get interesting topics to talk about by watching ants or listening to children at play, as well as by reading newspapers and books. Finding out a great deal about one thing is helpful, because a person

#### A CONVERSATION AT THE CHESHIRE CHEESE



Doctor Johnson, who is shown in this old print talking to Boswell (facing him) and Goldsmith, was one of the most brilliant talkers on record. In fact, his conversation as recorded by Boswell, is better than anything he ever wrote.

usually talks well about a subject he knows. That is why having a hobby may make one a better talker.

#### Humor

To be an interesting talker, you also need the ability to see the humor in everyday incidents and to tell about them in a way that will amuse others. Amusing things occur around you constantly—in the street, the bus, the yard, the school-room, you have only to observe them to have diverting stories to

tell. In biographies and elsewhere in your reading, you will come across anecdotes that may enliven conversation. But remember that the champion joke-teller is a pest. Jokes help to season conversation, but like any seasoning they are not good for a steady diet.

Kindliness is the basis of the most pleasing humor. Sarcasm, the kind of humor that bites, had best be avoided. It was good nature that led Thackeray to make a very witty remark to a political opponent in an election. "May the best man win!" his rival said. "Oh I hope not," Thackeray replied. The wit that it is wisest for all of us to cultivate is the wit for which Mlle de Lespauasse, a famous French hostess is remembered—that of saying to each person what was suited to him.

There you have the secret of a good conversationist's success. He thinks about his hearers. He has a warm heart as well as a clear head. Instead of parading himself, he tries to build a bridge of friendliness between himself and others. Such a person may lack the brilliance to become a famous talker, but he will be popular in any circle.

To get others to talk well is a high art. A C Benson tells in his essay on "Conversation" how his mother did this. When she was with people, she showed them at once that she cared what they thought and wanted to know what they were really like. "People became suddenly interested in themselves," her son adds "because of the charm of finding themselves so interesting to her." This kind of social unselfishness is at bottom good breeding. Courtesy is the basis of good conversation, as it is of all attractive behavior.

#### Important Factors in Conversation

"He laughed like the screech of a rusty hinge," James Whitcomb Riley said of one of the "Nine Little



Goblins" when he wanted to indicate how frightful the creature was. Most people are repelled at once by a harsh, loud, or shrill voice, just as they are charmed by a gentle, low-pitched, mellow one.

Lazy jaws that open only far enough to let out a few stifled sounds cause some of the blurry voices you hear. Straight, tight lips give the voice a flat, metallic sound. It is easy to learn to round the lips in speaking and so to avoid such cramping of the vowels as "fer yer," "jist," and "wuz."

A good voice must have the help of good speech, whose twin handmaidens are clear enunciation and correct pronunciation. Poor enunciation—jumbling words together, racing them off the lips, or drawling them out boresomely—suggests lack of self-respect and thought for one's listeners. "Cantcher," "M gonna see'uh moom pitcher," "C'lina," "runnin'," and "pepperation" (for preparation) are instances of the slovenly enunciation that mar conversation.

#### Are You Sure of Your Pronunciations?

Pronunciation is settled by usage and recorded in dictionaries. It is well to check up now and then on old words as well as to look up new ones and any words you hear given a different pronunciation from your own. Even common mispronunciations like "longjeray" for *lingerie* and "radiator" for *radiator* are not excusable.

One of the best ways to improve your conversation is to be accurate in word use. Interesting, effective talkers avoid such common errors as "party" for one person, "aggravating" for provoking, and "balance" for rest or remainder. The worst word-abusers, though, are those who work a few words so hard that they cease to have any meaning left. How many times a day do you use "awful," "nice," "grand," and "terrible"? Do you ever think what the words really mean? A slang expression that just fits an occasion and is not stale may enliven talk, but we suspect a dull or sleepy mind when someone habitually responds, like a mechanical doll, with "Yeah?"; "You're telling me!"; "So what?"; "That's swell"; or "Okey doke." Increase your vocabulary, and you will not be tempted to use hackneyed and tasteless expressions. Reading, listening to people who talk well, and noting down and looking up new words will give you a command of speech that will serve you well. And so will observance of the rules for good English. Conspicuous grammatical mistakes are to a speaker's personality what dirt spots are to a shirt or dress. (See *Grammar*; *Slang*.)

#### What to Talk About

"What shall I talk about?" is a question that perplexes many. The best rule is to think about the possible interests of the person or persons with you and not fret about the topic. Or speak of something that interests you. Concern yourself with making your companion feel comfortable; the subject does not matter much. A good way to get a conversation started is to think back to what your companion was talking about or doing when you saw him or her last, and take that as your lead. "Did you enjoy the trip to Minnehaha Falls?" "Have you finished your airplane model?"

Once a conversation is launched, it is give and take. Each person talks a little, then listens as another takes his turn. You may not care about building airplane models, but you can get pleasure from a friend's enthusiasm as he tells of constructing one. Presently a subject you both like will come up, and your exchange of ideas will kindle new thoughts. And you can always learn something that will entertain or profit you if you get another to talk his best.

#### Courtesies and Bad Manners

The highest courtesy we can pay a speaker is to listen attentively and respond politely. A compliment that always pleases is to ask a person to continue after an interruption—"What were you going to say?" "Won't you finish your story now?" Other conversational courtesies are these: changing the subject if it appears not to interest others or they have tired of it; avoiding any exchange of looks or mention of a subject that may embarrass someone present; readiness to laugh at others' jests; and speaking to any one who seems to be left out of the talk.

"Aw, you never," or "I don't believe it," you may have heard an ill-mannered boy say after a story was finished. Rude, we all agree. But so is correcting a speaker for some small inaccuracy. "It took us five hours to get there," a hiker says. "No, you mean five and a half," a comrade prompts him, though the precise time does not matter. Another discourtesy is asking questions people may not want to answer: "What did that cost?" "Doesn't your father live at home?" "What grade did you make?"

#### How to Differ Without Quarreling

Differences of opinion help to make conversation lively, but quarrelsomeness is ill-bred; and even quietly arguing your point too long is poor taste. Taking offense at a person who holds a different opinion from yours is childish. In his 'Autobiography', Benjamin Franklin tells how he improved his contacts by learning to be tolerant of others' opinions:

When another asserted something that I thought an error, I denied myself the pleasure of contradicting him abruptly . . . and in answering I began by observing that in certain cases or circumstances his opinion would be right, but in the present case there appeared or seemed to me some difference. I soon found the advantage of this change in my manner.

#### Talk with Strangers

In a story by Ruth Suckow called 'The Little Girl from Town', there is an account of the way in which some boys and girls on a farm made a strange little girl from the city feel at home.

"Do you want to come into the yard, Patricia. You do, don't you?" Leone (the eldest) asked coaxingly.

Patricia went soberly with her. . . .

"Do you want to see our dolls, Patricia?"

So far Patricia had been consenting but silent. . . . "I'll bet you have nice dolls at home, haven't you, Patricia . . . lots nicer dolls than we have?"

Patricia spoke for the first time. "I have fifteen dolls."

Then her hosts began asking about the dolls' names; the ice was broken, and everyone had a good time.

Cultivate this attitude of good will toward new acquaintances, and you can outgrow shyness. Think of meeting a stranger as a chance to have a good time,

to make a friend, and to be one. Look with a smile directly into the other's eyes when you are introduced, and shake hands with a firm, friendly clasp. This good start will give you confidence. Don't feel that you must be in a hurry to say something (you may politely wait for an older person to open the conversation), but don't hold back, hoping to think of something important to say. Say what comes into your mind, its naturalness may put you both at ease. Above all, don't drop your head or gaze at the floor as if you had something to be ashamed of. Hold your head and chest up, and you will feel more assurance.

#### Small Talk

When friends have but a few minutes together, when strangers meet, when a group first assembles, the conversation is of the light, shifting kind which we call "small talk." For example, when two friends meet:

Where have you been lately? I missed you at the Omega dance."

That makes me feel worse now to have been there. I was at my cousin's in Danville. I hear you've been chosen for the Washington High debating team. Congratulations!"

And so on. When two without a common background meet, they are likely to take a cue from what is happening at the moment. At a picnic, described in *Little Women*, Amy and Grace were thrown together. One of the boys rode up on a horse "to display his equestrian skill before the young ladies."

"Don't you love to ride?" asked Grace of Amy. "I rode upon it my sister Meg used to ride—but we don't keep any horses now except Ellen Tree," added Amy, laughing. "Tell me about Ellen Tree, is it a donkey?" asked Grace, curiously.

In such conversations, talk flits from one topic to another without anyone's caring what direction it takes. It may be very delightful, nevertheless, and produce an atmosphere of warmth and good feeling.

#### Business Conversations

Unlike a social conversation the primary purpose of a business interview is not entertainment. But the same principles apply to both. All you know about conversation will help you when you seek a position, for instance, or try to make a sale.

Before an interview, go over the facts you may need to use. Imagine the questions you may be asked and have clear, decisive answers ready. Think about the needs of the person you are to see. If possible, find out something about him, so that you may know better how to suit your remarks to him. If the prospective employer or buyer shows signs of boredom, switch to another subject or leave. In any event, do not stay

too long. For, as the visitor, it is your place to make the move to go. Whether the interview has been successful or not, let the parting be pleasant—"Thank you for seeing me, good-by" or something else that is courteous and good tempered.

#### At the Telephone

When one has given his name over the telephone, it is pleasant to be greeted by a voice with a welcome in it, not with a flat, impatient "Yes?" The caller is the one to end the conversation, except when a man calls a girl, then he lets her give some indication that she has nothing more to say, such as "I'll see you Friday then," before he says "Good by."

Avoid making calls at meal times. If you find that you have called during dinner say you will

call later. Never begin with "Who is this?" Ask for the person you want, or you can say, "Is this Marion?" Only the very inexperienced say, "Guess who this is." (Other useful suggestions about conversation will be found in the article *Etiquette*.)

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CONVERSATION

- Becker, Mortimer. *Speaking for All Occasions* (Prentice-Hall 1949).  
 Bonnell, L. L., ed. *Book of Great Conversations* (Garden City 1932).  
 Fletcher, R. F. *Art of Clear Thinking* (Harper 1951).  
 Lee, J. J. *How to Talk with People* (Harper 1952).  
 Wright, Milton. *Art of Conversation and How to Apply Its Technique* (Garden City 1948).

**COOK, CAPT. JAMES (1723-1779)** The English navigator Capt. James Cook was the ideal type of bold explorer. Caring little for reward, he started out on his long voyages prompted by a love of adventure and a curiosity about distant lands and their people. He brought to his task a knowledge of mathematics and marine surveying. He was also a practical physician who kept his sailors free from the dreaded scurvy by feeding them sauerkraut. His men loved him for his kindness and admired him for his courage.

James Cook was born at Marton, a village in Yorkshire, England, in 1723. His father was a farmer. James was apprenticed at 12 to a haberdasher and later to a shipowner. In 1755, having risen to be a mate, he joined the royal navy. Four years later, as master of the ship *Mercury*, he took part in expeditions against the French in the St. Lawrence River. His skill in sounding surveying, and charting this river won for him the post of marine surveyor of the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador. He published books of sailing directions that showed remarkable abilities. He also won a reputation as astronomer.

and mathematician by his account of a solar eclipse off the coast of North America.

In 1768 Cook was put in command of the *Endeavour*, of 370 tons, to observe a transit of the planet Venus in the South Pacific. He spent six months circumnavigating and mapping the coasts of New Zealand, but was unable to explore the interior because of the hostility of the natives. From New Zealand he proceeded to the east coast of Australia. This coast proved much more inviting than the west coast, which had been visited earlier by Dutch navigators (see Australia). Cook named the east coast New South Wales because he thought it resembled the south coast of Wales in Britain. The naturalists who accompanied him named a bay, near the present site of Sydney, Botany Bay, because of the richness of its vegetation. After exploring the coast of New Guinea, Cook returned to England in 1771.

Cook's second voyage (1772-75) was undertaken to prove or disprove the common belief that there was a great continent in the southern Pacific Ocean, to the southeast of Australia. He crossed the Antarctic Circle—he was the first European to do this—but did not go far enough south to discover the real Antarctic continent, which was not reached until long after his day. From west to east he explored the entire far southern Pacific, mapping known islands and discovering several new ones. The maps he made of this

region differ little in their main outlines from those in use today. When he returned to England, he was awarded the Copley medal for his success in preventing scurvy, which up to this time had caused a heavy loss of life on prolonged voyages.

At 48 Cook was still eager for adventure. In 1776 he set out on his third voyage to settle the old question of a possible sea-passage across America or around it to the north—the so-called Northwest Passage. On this voyage he came upon the Hawaiian Islands, which had been discovered earlier by the Spanish but later forgotten. Cook named the group the Sandwich Islands in honor of the Earl of Sandwich, first lord of the Admiralty.

Cook made extensive explorations of the northwest coast of North America, seeking an inlet. Beyond Bering Strait he found ice stretching as far as the eye could reach. Forced to turn back, he returned to Hawaii to winter. He had won the friendship of the natives by his usual wise and kind treatment. Trouble arose, however, when one of the ship's boats was stolen. Cook took a band of mariners ashore to recover the boat. A scuffle followed in which he was killed.

Cook had surveyed a greater length of coast line than any other man and had remade the map of the Pacific. His explorations gave to Great Britain the lands now occupied by two self-governing members of the Commonwealth—Australia and New Zealand.

#### CAPTAIN COOK, LAST OF THE GREAT EXPLORERS



At the left, we see Captain Cook with one of the many maps he made on his voyages. When he had finished charting the South Pacific Ocean, the map of the world was virtually complete. The picture above shows the bold explorer a moment before his death. He had landed with some of his men in one of the bays of the island of Hawaii to recover a boat that had been stolen the night before. A fight began, and when Captain Cook turned to signal his ship for reinforcements he was stabbed in the back by a Hawaiian warrior.

## COOKING, an Important ART of CIVILIZATION



Since they had no metal pots, Indians boiled water for cooking by dropping hot stones into a skin and put as you see this Blackfoot woman do so. This is a photograph of a mode of the American Museum of Natural History.

**COOKING** The art of cooking is almost as old as human hunger. As soon as men had fire the accident of leaving a haunch of meat near the blaze must have taught them how much better meat tastes when cooked.

Even primitive peoples such as the American Indians knew almost every form of cooking that we use today. The only ways of cooking are by roasting, broiling, baking, frying, boiling, or steaming, steaming, parching, and drying, or a combination of some of these. The Indians knew all these except perhaps frying. But of course since they had no metal, the cooking utensils and their means of controlling fire were much cruder than we have today.

### How the Indians Cooked

We often speak of roasting meat when we should say baking. Properly speaking, when you roast meat you hang a thick piece of it before an open fire. Broiled meat is cut in strips or slices and held over the open fire on either a spit or a grid. The Indians put small pieces of meat on the end of sticks and stuck one end of the stick into the ground while the meat dangled on the other end over the fire, or they slid the meat along to the middle of the stick and thrust both ends into the ground, one on each side of the fire. They also made grids of wood much like the iron grids we use today when we go camping.

Baking means cooking food in an oven by indirect heat from its walls. If you have ever attended a clam bake you know one method of baking used by the Indians. There were several variations, but in general they dug a pit lined it with stones and built a fire in it. When the fire died down they raked out the ashes. Then they wrapped the food in leaves or corn husks, placed it on the hot stones, perhaps added more hot stones, and then covered the top of the pit with

more leaves and earth or with old matting to hold in the heat. Sometimes they poured in water to make steam. When they opened the pit they found the food deliciously baked in its own steamy juice.

Another very good idea of the Indians for baking food can be used today when you are camping. They wrapped up fish or meat or any kind of food in leaves or cornhusks, then smeared it all over with clay and placed it in hot embers or ashes. When it was cooked they carefully broke off the clay and leaves, and there was the well cooked food, with none of its flavory nourishing juices lost.

When we speak of frying, we mean cooking in a pan containing more or less fat. The nearest that primitive people came to frying was to place food on a flat stone over a fire. The result was more like parching or baking.

### Boiling Without Metal Pots

Of course the Indians had a hard time boiling food because they had no metal pots. Some tribes dug a small hole in the earth, lined it with a buffalo skin, or the stomach of a buffalo, put water and meat in the kettle, thus formed, and dropped in hot stones until the water had boiled long enough to cook the meat. Others made a tripod of logs, hung the buffalo stomach down like a kettle over the fire, and managed to boil food before the tripe itself became too tender to withstand the fire. Other Indians made kettles of birch bark or pine bark, or of big gourds, or clay, and dropped in hot stones.

The Zuni Indians steamed food by making a sieve of yucca fibers or sticks and setting it over a pot of boiling water. Some of the pottery made by the Indians was of clay that became so hard that it could be set directly on the fire. Such pots are still made and used for cooking in certain pueblos today.

Parched corn was much used by the Indians when traveling. Some tribes parched it in pots over the fire, stirring it to prevent burning. Others held it in baskets over the embers; they had to be very deft to parch the corn without burning the basket.

Many primitive peoples are adept at drying foods. Jerked meat and pemmican, made from dried meat pounded and mixed with fat and sometimes with pounded choke-cherries, were staples among the Plains Indians.

How very hard the Indians had to work in order to cook their food with these primitive pots and baskets! They must have felt that cooking was very necessary and important, to spend such effort on it.

#### Importance of Cooking

They were quite right. Cooking not only makes our food taste better, but it causes changes in the food which make it digest better. Also, the heat kills bacteria and parasites which might harm us. While a certain amount of raw food is good for us, our health and our pleasure at mealtime depend on the very important art of cooking.

Primitive peoples were used to monotony in their foods as well as a low standard in their preparation. But cooks today are expected to provide us with a wide variety of attractive and wholesome dishes. To make their task easier, they have at their command fine modern stoves, toasters, refrigerators, fireless cookers, roasters, knives, choppers, and other equipment in an almost endless array. In the market they find many varieties of foods brought from distant parts of the earth. Science aids them with information about the nature of the various foods and what happens to them in the processes of cooking. Schools teach them how to add to foods the many values we expect.

The home cook deals with foods in a number of ways not expected of the professional cook and so has opportunities for adding more of these values. She must plan menus which will nourish her family and at the same time humor their likes and dislikes; she usually must buy the foodstuffs herself and see that they are wholesome and properly priced; she must know how to prepare various pleasing dishes and how to serve them so that the family enjoys the hours spent at the table. The professional cook, on the other hand, usually is concerned only with the actual cooking of foods in large quantities; specialists do the planning, the buying, and the serving.

#### What a Cook Must Know

To cook well, the home cook must have training. She must know something of the chemistry of foods, what happens to them when they are cooked, and how to control her cooking. She must be exact and deft in handling batters and doughs, in paring, mashing, basting, and so on. She must know the importance and methods of measuring ingredients accurately. And she must know good food when she sees it, smells it, and tastes it. No one can cook well whose eyes and palate cannot tell the difference between light, fluffy mashed potato and a soggy, lumpy mass; between a

dainty, tender cake and a heavy one; between an egg gently fried and one turned into leather.

A good cook must not only be expert in planning, cooking, and serving foods; she must also know how to care for foods properly, to keep them fresh and clean. A good cook understands that bacteria and mold spores, which are always in the air, settle upon exposed foods. She knows that these micro-organisms thrive in moist, dark, and warm places and that food therefore will keep better in places that are cold, light, and dry. She keeps her kitchen, her cooking equipment, and herself spotless so that there will be no breeding places for bacteria and molds that might be passed on to foods. She knows that disease germs may be carried to our foods by the water in which they were grown or washed, and that poisonous sprays are used on many fruits and vegetables to keep down insect pests. Hence she is careful to wash fruits and vegetables thoroughly, especially if they are to be eaten raw. She is also careful to protect foods from flies and roaches and other germ-carrying pests.

#### Providing Variety

Probably the easiest task of the home cook is to provide variety. Refrigerator cars or fast freights and ships bring us pineapples, oranges, bananas, grapes, berries, meats, milk, butter, eggs, asparagus, lettuce, and hosts of other delicious and perishable foods throughout the year. Beef may be had far from the cattle range, and fish far from the sea. With the great variety of climate in the United States, no food is for a long period "out of season"; and in any case most fruits and vegetables and many other foods may be bought in cans or in dried form.

All these many foods may be cooked in varied ways. Meat may be broiled, baked, roasted, fried in deep fat, or stewed. Vegetables may appear in salads, soups, garnishes, or special dishes. Milk may be used as a simple or fancy beverage, or in cream soup, ice-cream, sauces, and junket. Ingenious cooks have compiled thousands of recipes for enjoyable dishes.

#### Planning Attractive and Well-Balanced Meals

Menu planning is just as important as cooking. Foods properly combined are more interesting and offer a better balanced diet. We enjoy contrast in foods—contrast in texture, temperature, color, and flavor. For example, we like to eat crisp salad with a smooth, mashed vegetable; crunchy toast with soft-boiled egg. We like hot meat with cold salad or sherbet, or ice-cream with hot chocolate sauce. We like red tomato on green lettuce, orange-colored carrot with pale chopped cabbage, white frosting on brown cake, a red cherry on white pudding, yellow peaches with green grapes. We like the bland with the pungent, lemon juice squeezed on baked fish, fruit sauce on bland pudding, fruit with cereal, apple sauce with pork, cream cheese with bar-le-duc. To build a good menu you must genuinely enjoy and appreciate good food.

Variety in food is valuable not only because it adds enjoyment to meals but because, by eating a wide variety of foods, we are more likely to get all the

various vitamins and other food elements necessary for health and growth. We must have proteins, fats, starches, sugar, minerals, and the vitamins in sufficient amounts, and our menu must supply us with enough calories to maintain our energies (see Food). A well balanced menu of well cooked food makes us want to eat a bit of everything on the table and so

we get all the food elements necessary for good health. If only one or two dishes attract us, we become finicky eaters and do not eat well balanced meals.

Food must be cooked so that its nutritional value is not destroyed. Meat for instance, should be cooked at a low enough temperature to make it tender. The tough fibers of cereals must be softened by long and thorough cooking so that they may be completely digested. Vegetables must be cooked so as to retain their valuable minerals and vitamins. If these are thrown out in the cooking water, considerable food value will be lost.

Making food attractive is just as vital as cooking it to retain its food values. The roast should send out a delicious smell, the baked fish should be done to just the right shade of brown, sprinkled with parsley, and bedecked with a garnish of lemon or radishes. The time of year and the weather should be considered. In hot weather we shudder at roast pork and baked macaroni, but enjoy cold jellied consommé, cold meats, crisp fruit and vegetable salads and iced desserts and drinks. Dishes do not need to be "all fussed up" in order to look attractive. A dab of whipped cream in the soup, a bit of jelly on the pudding, a cherry on the ice cream, a flick of paprika, chopped parsley, or grated cheese in the right spot, will add attractive appearance and zest to simple dishes at small cost of time or money.

#### Keeping Down Food Costs

Cost is something that most home cooks have to think about in preparing a meal. A cook who shops cleverly and makes intelligent use of leftovers can keep down food costs. She need not buy a fancy cut of meat for soups or stews or for meat loaves or other chopped meat dishes. Apples not pretty enough to put into the fruit dish in the center of the table may be

good enough for sauce or salad. If vegetables are fresh and well grown, they need not be perfect in shape to be used in soups and salads. A home-cooked meal costs less so we think than the same meal in a restaurant. This is because no allowance is made for paying the housewife for the time she spends in cooking, setting the table or washing the dishes. In

any case, whether or not it is cheaper a home-cooked meal "hits the spot" because the one who prepares it usually takes the trouble to provide something we specially like on the day we happen to want it. **Cooking Proteins**

When we cook meat, we must think of its protein content, its tough connective tissue, and its juices. Since protein toughens in high temperature, meat should be cooked with low heat except for a brief moment of searing if that is

required. The connective tissue in tougher cuts must be cooked a long time. The cook must consider what she is trying to do with meat and adjust her methods accordingly. If she is preparing a roast for the oven, she should first sear it in a high temperature for a short time, thus closing the outlets through which juice may escape. Thin loin steaks may require no more cooking than searing in a pan or over an open fire. In making soup, however, we wish to have the meat juices seep out into the liquid. Therefore we put the meat to cook in cold water, bring it to a boil slowly, and let it simmer a long time.

Eggs, milk and cheese are other protein foods like meat and they, too, react badly to high temperatures. Eggs toughen and curdle, cheese becomes stringy, milk scorches very easily, since it contains sugar as well as protein.

#### How to Cook Vegetables

Vegetables should be cooked so as to preserve their attractive colors, fresh flavors and food values. Such vegetables as can be digested raw are best used in salads.

When vegetables are cooked in a large quantity of water, the minerals and vitamins pass into the water. The more the water and the longer the cooking, the greater the loss. Vitamin C is destroyed by long cooking. The basic rule for cooking vegetables, ev-

#### HOW SCIENCE HAS HELPED THE MODERN COOK



Contrast this century and well planned kitchen with that of the Blackfoot Inn as cook on a previous page. Here electric light provides clean, convenient heat. Glass brick walls and enameled surfaces spread light everywhere and are readily washed. Cardboard drawers and working space are generous. A thermostat for regulating oven heat takes the guesswork out of roasting and baking.

cept when making soup, is to cook them in as little water and for as short a time as possible. Baking vegetables, either in their skins or in casseroles, preserves all their values.

To a few vegetables this basic rule does not apply. Cabbage and other strong-flavored vegetables should be cooked in a large amount of water, boiling rapidly, without a lid. If a lid is used, the volatile oils which contain the bitter flavor are condensed on it, drip back into the kettle, and, in cabbage, cause a second chemical change which is harmful to digestion. Cabbage has achieved its bad name simply through poor cooking.

The well-equipped cook is versatile and resourceful. She should be prepared to turn out special dishes, such as bland or liquid foods for invalids or people on a special diet. She should know how to prepare food for infants, which demands special treatment. She should also learn some good dishes for camp cooking. Most families welcome an occasional foreign dish, such as a Swedish fish salad, a platter of Italian spaghetti or ravioli, or French pastry.

#### Inventions That Make Cooking Easy

Inventors have given the modern cook all sorts of good equipment, such as double-boilers which protect easily scorched or curdled foods from ungentle cooking; fireless cookers which save fuel; electrical devices which turn ovens on and off at desired temperatures.

The cook may sit at the dining table and prepare toast, waffles, or coffee with electric devices. She may save hours of boiling tough meat or soups by using a pressure cooker, the lid of which keeps the food in the kettle cooking under pressure and thus raises the temperature far above the usual 212 degrees Fahrenheit at which water boils at sea level.

A few modern devices are not time savers but rather incentives to spend more time in making elaborate dishes. It takes time to use special cutters to make vegetable curlicues, pastry bags for decorating cakes, and fancy molds for gelatin. Such utensils are chiefly desirable when preparing a "party" meal.

When buying kitchen equipment, the cook must consider her own special needs, and whether the article will really save time and effort and help her prepare food according to the rules of good cookery.

Naturally the wide subject of cookery, involving the use of various devices and the knowledge of preparation, nutritional values, prices, and combinations of foods, cannot be mastered in a day or two. Yet the people of today are entitled to benefit by all that science and industry and agriculture have to offer for making our meals interesting, safe, wholesome, varied, and delightful. The home cook who masters her art makes her work more interesting and satisfying, and safeguards and pleases her family.

## PRESIDENT COOLIDGE, *a SILENT MAN of ACTION*

COOLIDGE, CALVIN (1872-1933). Seven times in the history of the United States a vice-president has succeeded to the presidency upon the death of his chief. One of the men so called to that high office was Calvin Coolidge, who, after the death of President Harding, became the 30th president.

Coolidge's career had been one of almost uninterrupted public service. Born July 4, 1872, on a farm at Plymouth, Vt., he was graduated *cum laude* at Amherst College in 1895, and while there won a prize in a contest open to all the college students of the United States upon the subject of the causes of the American Revolution. He studied law with a firm of lawyers at Northampton, Mass., and was admitted to the bar at the age of 25. He held several local public offices. In 1905 he married Grace Anne Goodhue of Burlington, Vt. They had two sons, John and Calvin. Calvin died at 16 while his father was president. With characteristic economy, down to the



CALVIN COOLIDGE

time of his elevation to the vice-presidency Mr. and Mrs. Coolidge with their two children continued to reside in half of an unpretentious house in Northampton.

There was something about Coolidge that attracted the confidence and regard of the public, and he was elected to a long succession of offices in Massachusetts. He was mayor of Northampton, state senator, lieutenant governor, and twice governor. During all this time he continued to be an unassuming, taciturn public servant, one who said little but worked hard, shunned rather than sought publicity, and lived up to his own homely adage: "Let men in public office substitute the light that comes from the midnight oil for the limelight."

In his first term as governor he became nationally known for the firm way he handled a strike by the Boston police. After most of the police had left their posts, he summoned the state guard, declaring: "There is no right to strike against the public safety by

anybody anywhere any time' This occurred in a period of great unrest when communistic propaganda caused uneasiness and Governor Coolidge a courageous stand caught the popular fancy. He was re-elected governor and in 1920 was nominated for the vice-presidency by the Republicans as the running mate of Warren G. Harding.

As vice-president Coolidge continued to be self-effacing and silent. His inaugural address was the shortest on record containing less than 500 words. By invitation of President Harding he sat in cabinet meetings and thus acquired a knowledge of national affairs and how they were conducted. This knowledge was presently to prove of great assistance both to him and to the country.

#### Dramatic Inauguration

In the middle of the night of Aug. 2-3, 1923 there came to the Plymouth Vt. homewhere the vice-president and his family were visiting Calvin's father John Coolidge the startling information that President Harding had died in San Francisco. By the light of an oil lamp and in the presence of a few persons Calvin Coolidge took the oath of office from his father who was a notary public and announced that he would continue his predecessor's policies and retain his cabinet.

The task before him was not an easy one. Obedience to the leadership of a president who has attained his place through death is usually yielded grudgingly and furthermore the public presently became aware of certain scandals connected with his predecessor's administration. The revelations of the Teapot Dome and Elk Hills oil leases brought about the resignations of two cabinet members Coolidge had inherited from the Harding régime and the conviction of a third cabinet secretary. The oil lands were restored to the nation.

In various matters Congress showed itself unsympathetic to the president's leadership rejecting some measures which he favored and enacting others he opposed. The Senate long delayed action upon his recommendation that the United States join the World Court. It was not until January 1926 that a final vote was obtained and then the adherence of the nation was hedged about with reservations that proved unacceptable to other nations. Coolidge continued however his quiet but unyielding insistence on the policies he believed to be vitally important. Foremost among these policies was economy in

governmental expenditures. In this he succeeded to such an extent that the public debt was reduced at an average rate of a billion dollars a year while at the same time federal taxation was lowered despite the passage of a Soldiers' Bonus bill over his veto.

#### His Popularity Grows

In the course of his administration President Coolidge became increasingly popular with the American people. Even his negative qualities such as his silence and his economy came to be regarded as virtues. So in 1924 at the national convention of the Republicans in Cleveland he was nominated for the presidency with slight opposition. Charles G. Dawes of Illinois, former director of the budget, was the nominee for the vice-presidency.

At the Democratic convention held in New York City a bitter fight developed between the followers of ex-Secretary of the

Treasury McAdoo, dry and Protestant, and Governor Alfred E. Smith of New York, wet and Roman Catholic. Finally on the 103rd ballot the convention nominated for president John W. Davis of West Virginia, a former ambassador to England, and Gov. Charles W. Bryan of Nebraska, brother of William Jennings Bryan, for the vice-presidency. Groups of insurgents put forward Senator Robert M. La Follette of Wisconsin and Senator Burton K. Wheeler of Montana as the candidates of a new Progressive party.

In the election Coolidge received 382 electoral votes to 136 for Davis and a popular plurality of over seven millions. La Follette received only 13 electoral votes.

Few periods in United States history have been so quiet as the last four years of Coolidge's presidency.

Domestic affairs moved smoothly although there was an increasing opposition to prohibition. Unprecedented interest developed in aviation partly as a result of a deliberate campaign designed to make Americans air-minded. The around the world flight of three United States army airplanes that of Lindbergh across the Atlantic that of Byrd to the North Pole and various other feats by daring aviators attracted universal attention.

A momentous event in foreign relations had been the passage in 1924 of an immigration bill drastically limiting immigration and excluding aliens ineligible to citizenship. The latter provision was aimed at the Japanese and caused much ill feeling in Japan. President Coolidge criticized it as unnecessary and

### COOLIDGE'S ADMINISTRATIONS

1923-1929

Public Debt and Income Tax greatly reduced

Prosecution of Teapot Dome Oil Scandals

Bill reducing Immigration passed (1924)

Soldiers' Bonus Bill passed over Presidential Veto (1924)

Senate votes adherence to the World Court but with reservations unacceptable to Court (1926)

Agreements reached for funding of Foreign Debts due United States (1926)

McNary Haugen Bill for Farm Relief vetoed by President (1927)

Moraines sent to Nicaragua (1927)

Coolidge Naval Dismantment Conference at Geneva fails (1927)

Mississippi Flood drives 700,000 from their homes (1927)

Kellogg Briand Treaty (Pact of Paris' denouncing war) signed (1928)

Relations with Mexico improved



offensive to a friendly people, but he signed the bill. There was much friction with Mexico over oil and land laws which threatened the interests of Americans, but President Coolidge's appointment of Dwight W. Morrow as ambassador did much to restore harmonious relationships between the United States and Mexico.

President Coolidge found it necessary to send marines to Nicaragua to restore peace and preserve American rights. The killing and wounding of a number of the marines brought a storm of criticism on the administration, both at home and abroad.

Though unable to secure adherence to the World Court, President Coolidge continued his efforts in behalf of international good will. He invited the leading naval powers to a conference at Geneva in the summer of 1927, hoping to extend the battleship ratio, agreed to at the Washington Conference, to smaller naval craft. Only Great Britain and Japan accepted, and an agreement was not reached.

#### Arranged Pact of Paris

The administration later scored a genuine international triumph in the negotiation of the Kellogg-Briand multilateral treaty. By this nearly all the nations pledged themselves to renounce war as an instrument of international policy. Representatives of 15 nations signed this epochal document ("the Pact of Paris") at Paris on Aug. 27, 1928, and other nations gave their adherence later.

During these years, the question of farm relief continued to be one of the most difficult problems of the government. Some branches of agriculture enjoyed prosperity, but the industry as a whole languished. Various relief measures were proposed. The one that attracted the most attention was embodied in the McNary-Haugen bill, a feature of which was designed to enable the farmer to maintain prices at home by marketing surpluses abroad at whatever they would bring. President Coolidge vetoed the bill as economically unsound.

The country as a whole, however, enjoyed unusual prosperity, and this tended to heighten Coolidge's influence and popularity. As the time for a new election approached there was considerable agitation to renominate him for another term. But on Aug. 2, 1927, the fourth anniversary of his accession to the presidency, he dramatically announced: "I do not choose to run for president in 1928." He stood by this declaration, and unobtrusively but effectively threw his influence to the support of the candidacy of Herbert Hoover.

#### JAMES FENIMORE COOPER



His thrilling tales of forest and sea, of Indians, pioneers, and hardy seamen, make him a favorite author of the American boy.

At the end of his term as president, Coolidge returned to his home in Northampton, Mass., with a notable record of sound and efficient administration. He resumed the practice of law, became a director of

a great insurance organization, and contributed articles regularly to magazines and newspapers.

COOPER, JAMES FENIMORE (1789-1851). The first American novelist to achieve world-wide fame was James Fenimore Cooper. His stories were translated into foreign languages as soon as they came from the press. R. L. Stevenson called him "Cooper of the wood and wave," because he wrote about Indians and pioneers in the forest, and about sailors on the high seas.

Cooper was born at Burlington, N. J., in 1789. When he was a year old the family moved to a large estate on the shores of Otsego Lake, N. Y. Here the father, William Cooper, laid out the village of Cooperstown. The region was still a wilderness. Every day Indians came to trade at the settlement.

In 1803 Cooper went to Yale. He neglected his studies to spend most of his time out of doors, and was expelled after three years. He went to sea for five years, first as a merchant sailor, then as a midshipman in the navy. In 1811 he married and went to live at his wife's home in Westchester County, N. Y. In 1833, after spending years traveling abroad, he settled on his estate in Cooperstown.

Cooper's first novel, 'Precaution' (1820), was a story of English society life. It was a complete failure. The next year he turned to the American scene and won instant popularity with 'The Spy'. Harvey Birch, the hero, is one of Cooper's immortal characters. In 1823 Cooper wrote 'The Pioneers', the first of five 'Leatherstocking Tales'. The intrepid scout Leatherstocking (sometimes called Natty Bumppo or Hawkeye) figures in all these stories. Cooper described him as "a philosopher of the wilderness, simple-minded, faithful, utterly without fear, and yet prudent." Another famous character is Long Tom Coffin, hero of the superb sea story 'The Pilot'. With 'The Last of the Mohicans' Cooper reached the height of his fame. The "last Mohican" is the noble Uncas. Cooper's style was rather careless; but his swift-moving narrative is still hard to surpass.

The historical novels in the 'Leatherstocking' series should be read in this order: 'The Deerslayer' (1841), 'The Pathfinder' (1840), 'The Last of the Mohicans' (1826), 'The Pioneers' (1823), and 'The Prairie' (1827). The most popular sea stories are 'The Pilot' (1823) and 'The Red Rover' (1825). 'The Spy' (1821) is about Revolutionary times.

## COÖPERATIVES and How They HAVE GROWN

**COOPERATIVE SOCIETIES** When people join together to buy goods for their own use they form a consumers' cooperative society or association. When workers organize to sell what they produce they have a producers' cooperative society. When farmers join together to sell what they raise they have a marketing cooperative association. If they buy farm supplies such as seed, feed, and fertilizer they have a farm purchasing cooperative association.

Today cooperatives of all sorts have organizations in 45 countries and the organizations report having 180,000,000 members. This world-wide movement grew everywhere from much the same desire. The members wanted to adjust the difference in price between producers and consumers with the greatest advantage to themselves. Members of producer cooperatives wanted to get a good price for their markets and share in the profits after the expenses of marketing were paid. Members of consumer cooperatives wanted to reduce the cost of what they bought either directly or by sharing in the profits after paying the full market price.

### Simple Examples of Cooperatives

Each type of cooperative can be illustrated with a simple example. Suppose some consumers want to cut the cost of their food by opening a grocery store. Usually a number of persons get together and discuss the need of such a store before they take any action. If enough people want to start a business they usually form a corporation under state or federal laws. They sell shares of stock to raise capital and each member becomes part owner of the store. He has a single vote no matter how many shares he buys. The members elect officers and hire a manager to do the buying and selling for the group. The store sells groceries at the same prices that other stores do. But profits are paid back to members in proportion to their purchases. These payments are called *patronage refunds*.

A common type of marketing cooperative is formed by farmers to market their products. Dairy cooperatives exist almost everywhere in the United States to sell milk and dairy products to consumers. After the cooperative has paid all expenses, including the market rate for farmer's milk, it divides its profits among the members.

Workers sometimes form producers' cooperatives to market things they make in their own factories. These cooperatives have never been very successful. There are almost none of them in the United States.

### Distinguishing Features of a Cooperative

So far we have seen little to distinguish either type of cooperative from an ordinary business corporation. People do not have to form a cooperative in order to share in the profits of a store. Many department stores and chains of stores offer their stock through stock exchanges. Anyone who so desires can share in the profits by buying stock. Likewise, anyone who thinks that marketing milk is a profitable business can buy stock in a dairy company.

A cooperative can be distinguished, however, from a privately owned business by certain features. These were adopted by the first successful consumers' cooperative. They are called the *Rochdale principles*.

### The Rochdale Store and Its Principles

The first successful consumers' cooperative was started in Rochdale, England, in 1844. Twenty-eight poor weavers saved \$140 for the purpose and they formed the Rochdale Society of Equitable Pioneers. They adopted principles which proved successful, and have served as guides for cooperatives ever since. The important principles are:

- 1 Each member has only one vote regardless of how many shares he owns. Anyone who wishes may join.
- 2 Goods and services are sold at market prices. After all expenses for running the business have been paid, the profits are returned to the members in proportion to their purchases in the form of a patronage refund.
- 3 Return on invested capital is limited.

Another Rochdale practice which is generally followed is to sell for cash. This avoids many losses from bad credit. Most cooperative associations also carry on a continuous program of education. Religious and political neutrality is generally observed.

The most important distinguishing feature is the first principle about voting. In a private company, owners vote according to the amount of stock they own. If one man owns a majority of all the stock, he has complete control. In a cooperative, each member has an equal voice.

### Advantages and Weaknesses of Cooperatives

This ownership principle prevents many abuses which grew up when large-scale business corporations were taking shape in the 19th century. When control can be secured by purchasing stock, strong financial interests could consolidate many companies, build monopolies, and then operate to obtain the interest profit with little regard for other interests. A cooperative must always be run for the benefit of all its members because each of them has an equal vote in the management.

On the other hand, a cooperative must be run as efficiently as a private business. If the members mistakenly force the management into unwise policies such as pricing consumer goods too low or failing to give satisfactory service in marketing the members' products, the cooperative will fail. Good management and good business judgment are as important in a cooperative as in any other enterprise.

### Marketing Associations

The greatest use of cooperative associations in the United States today is made by farmers. In the *marketing cooperatives*, farmers join together to market what they grow. Many of these groups began in pioneer days when farmers worked together in driving their livestock to city markets. Others grew up later to give the farmer a better return from marketing his produce.

Marketing cooperatives aim to sell the products of its members at prices that will give the farmer

as good an income as possible. They operate on several different plans, but almost always the coöperative acts as the sales agent of the farmer. As they grow, marketing coöperatives often take over the preparation, packing, grading, shipping, advertising, and wholesaling of their products.

Within the past 20 years, farm supply *purchasing* coöperatives have grown rapidly. They buy seed, fertilizer, petroleum products, farm machines, and other equipment and supplies for their members.

More than 19,000 farmer-owned and farmer-controlled coöperative associations and mutual companies now operate in the United States. Of this number, 10,150 are engaged in marketing and purchasing farm production supplies. There are also 4,400 mutual irrigation companies, 1,900 mutual insurance companies, 2,000 farmers' mutual telephone companies, 1,000 rural electric coöperatives, and 600 coöperative frozen-locker plants.

About two-thirds of America's six million farmers belong to one or more coöperative associations. In 1944-45 the 10,150 farmer coöperative marketing and purchasing associations had an estimated membership of 4,505,000. In that year marketing coöperatives did an estimated business of \$4,835,000,000, while farmer purchasing coöperatives sold their members \$1,095,000,000 worth of goods and services.

Coöperatives market approximately 57 per cent of the oranges, 40 per cent of the grapefruit, and 95 per cent of the lemons sold as fresh fruit in the United States. They market more than a third of the wheat crop, a third of the nation's butter, half of the city milk supply, and large quantities of cotton, tobacco, nuts, and other crops.

#### Consumers' Coöperatives

*Consumers' coöperatives* have grown rapidly in the United States, and their total membership is now estimated at about 5,000,000. This includes the members of credit unions as well as the members of retail stores and service groups. In recent years consumers' coöperatives did about one per cent of the total average retail business of the country.

Grocery stores, meat markets, general stores, and gasoline stations are the most common types of consumer coöperative stores in the United States. But almost every kind of goods is sold by some coöperative. There are coöperative bakeries, restaurants, ice and coal dealers, and stores selling books and school supplies. Electric light and power associations, telephone companies, hospitals, laundries, housing associations, publishing houses, and funeral associations are found in the list of coöperatives.

The coöperative principle has also entered the field of finance. Small-loan banks, called *credit unions*, are a rapidly growing type of coöperative activity (see Banks and Banking). *Mutual insurance* companies are among the strongest and oldest companies in that line of business.

Many independent businessmen have organized "retailer coöperatives" to purchase supplies for their grocery and drug stores with the advantage of large-

scale buying power. The benefits go to the store owners, enabling them to compete more effectively with the large chain stores.

#### Wholesale Organizations

Often a number of coöperative associations maintain their own wholesale or central purchasing agency. Such wholesale organizations operate in much the same way as the coöperative retail stores, selling to members and returning savings to the member coöperatives. Some go a step farther and process some of the goods they sell in their stores. Some own factories, oil wells, canning plants, mines, and farms.

A good example in the United States is Consumers Coöperative Association of Kansas City, Mo. It is owned by nearly 1,500 affiliated local organizations, and these in turn are owned and controlled by some 250,000 members, mostly farmers. Since much of its business is in petroleum production, the coöperative has built three refineries and purchased pipe lines to carry the oil from 946 wells it also owns. Many farmer members of Consumers Coöperative Association grow vegetables, so the association has a canning plant in Scottsbluff, Neb. Many of the local associations sell groceries, so the wholesale association stocks and sells groceries of all kinds, some of them bearing the "Co-op" brand. Electrical appliances, roofing, farm machinery, and other items are handled.

Another good example is the Coöperative Wholesale Society of England. It has 150 factories and makes hosiery, corsets, shoes, shirts, furniture, motors, bicycles, china, bottles, drugs, and chemicals. It owns dairies that produce butter and cheese. It operates flour mills, printing shops, canneries, automobile works, bakeries, oil refineries, and sawmills. It owns thousands of acres of farm lands in England and Canada, and great tea plantations in India and Ceylon.

The English and Scottish wholesale societies together are the greatest single importers of tea, grain, butter, sugar, and dried fruits in the world. They are Canada's best customer for wheat, and they operate the largest flour mills in Great Britain. The English society has its own fishing fleet and sends its own steamships all over the world.

Among the biggest wholesale organizations supplying the retail consumers' associations are Midland Coöperative Wholesale, Minneapolis, Minn.; Central Coöperative Wholesale, Superior, Wis.; and Eastern Coöperative Wholesale, New York City. To obtain the advantage of large-scale buying, some of the regional wholesales have combined to form national organizations. These purchase directly from manufacturers.

#### "Self-Help" Coöperatives

In times of business stress, unemployed men and women may form "self-help" coöperatives. Some organizations are trading posts. The members bring in articles to trade with one another and with non-members. Others are labor exchanges where members trade services. A dentist may repair a cobbler's teeth, and the cobbler repairs the dentist's shoes.

Still others trade the labor of the group for some commodity. They may all pick fruits or vegetables

for a share of the crop. Occasionally, simple manufacturing for use or for sale is carried on.

#### National Organizations

The National Council of Farmer Cooperatives represents marketing and farm supply purchasing cooperatives through its headquarters in Washington, DC. The American Institute of Cooperation in Washington is the educational organization for farmer cooperation in the United States.

The Coöperative League of the United States of America, Chicago, Ill., serves as a clearinghouse of information for consumers' cooperatives. It is affiliated with the International Coöperative Alliance, which has membership in all parts of the world.

#### Early American Cooperatives

There are many recorded examples of farmer coöperation in the United States in the early 19th century. A cooperative dairy association was organized in Connecticut in 1810. A group of Ohio livestock producers made joint shipments to market in 1820. Farmer mutual fire insurance companies can be found back in 1830, and mutual irrigation companies were founded by the Mormons in 1847. A cooperative cheese factory was established in New York State in 1851.

Among the notable early attempts at cooperation in the United States were associations of laborers in the Sovereigns of Industry and industrial workers in the Knights of Labor. The growth of cooperatives in the United States has been greatly influenced by organized farmers. In 1867 there were 400 marketing and purchasing cooperatives in the United States. Patrons of Husbandry, or National Grange—also known as the Grangers—and the Farmers' Alliance promoted cooperatives on a national scale. By 1890 there were a thousand active farmers' cooperative associations. The Farmers Educational and Coöperative Union of America, often known as the Farmers Union, founded in 1901, and the American Farm Bureau Federation, started in 1919, have supported and organized coöperatives.

#### Coöperative Societies in Europe

Large as the figures for the United States appear, they are small compared with coöperative activities in other lands. In Great Britain, the mother of the cooperative society, more than 8,000,000 persons belong to consumers' societies. The membership includes 20 per cent of the population and represents more than half the families of the nation. The annual retail trade of these societies is about 30 per cent of the total for the country.

Denmark is a leader in agricultural coöperation. More than half the total business of the country is carried on by cooperative societies and 20 per cent of the goods consumed are sold by coöperative stores. Finland, Iceland, Switzerland, and Sweden have powerful organizations. Swedish cooperatives attracted world wide interest when they broke monopolies in flour milling, rubber goods, and electric bulb manufacturing. The cooperatives acquired factories and manufactured these goods for themselves. Prices fell drastically. This success won many new members,

and these societies control 20 per cent of the wholesale and retail trade of Sweden.

French cooperatives were severely hurt by the second World War but they are being revived. Soviet Russia has cooperatives but they are closely controlled by the state. Many American coöperative leaders do not consider them genuine cooperative organizations. The cooperatives in Italy and Germany suffered greatly during the Fascist and Nazi régimes but many of them are being rebuilt. The International Coöperative Alliance and the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations are aiding in the reorganization.

China, Japan, and India have many cooperative organizations. The postwar Allied military government encouraged their spread in Japan.

#### Arguments about Government Aid

Businessmen often object to government encouragement of cooperatives by legislation, such as the Capper Volstead Act, and exemptions of farmer cooperatives from certain taxes by the Federal Revenue Act of 1926. They accuse the Agricultural Extension Service, the Tennessee Valley Authority, the Farm Credit Administration, and other government agencies of having unduly sided cooperative enterprises. The National Tax Equality Association charges that "by law and Treasury rulings cooperatives escape payment of all or nearly all federal income taxes."

Leaders in the cooperative group reply that the non-profit nature of their operation justifies their tax position. They furthermore claim that the savings made by cooperatives do not actually belong to the cooperative at all but are rather the property and therefore the income of cooperative members. It is these members who individually pay the income taxes on that money.

Coöperative leaders point out that the government aids other business in suitable ways just as it aids cooperative associations. They call attention to the work of the Federal Reserve System, the Reconstruction Finance Corporation, the Bureau of Standards, the Department of Commerce, the United States Weather Bureau and the protective tariff as some government aids to business.

Finally, cooperative leaders maintain that coöperatives cannot influence prices unduly or unfairly. A coöperative must buy supplies, buy or rent land, warehouses, factories, or stores just like a private business. It must pay its workers just like any business. The only possible difference is in the amount added to prices for profit. Many private businesses operate on a very small margin of profit and sometimes undersell cooperatives. According to this view, the real test between coöperatives and private business lies in the efficiency of management, and efficient management is desirable in everybody's interest.

#### Education Vital to the Coöperative Movement

The success of the coöperative movement depends on popular understanding as well as wide leadership and efficient management. Therefore education is a vital part of the coöperative movement. Coöperative

societies usually fail when their members do not fully understand their purpose.

One reason the Danish coöperatives have proved so successful is the educational program of the Danish folk schools. In England, Sweden, Finland, and every country in which they are active, the coöperative societies are closely related to the program of adult education.

**COOT.** This slate-colored water bird is about 15 inches long. Also called the mud hen, it is found in shallow reedy ponds and sluggish streams. The American coot is found in all parts of North America; it is migratory in the North, but resident in the South. In South America there are about six other species. The common coot of the Old World, found in Europe, Asia, and northern Africa, is black with a white bar across the wings, and a peculiar white bald spot on the forehead, which has given it the name "bald coot." Coots differ from rails chiefly in having toes edged with a scalloped membrane. (See Rail and Coot.)

**COPENHAGEN, DENMARK.** At the gateway to the Baltic, on the easternmost shore of the island of Zealand stands Copenhagen, capital of Denmark. Twenty miles away, across The Sound, lies the coast of Sweden. In front of the city, and forming a protective wall for its harbor, stretches the small island of Amager. Because of its key position and the excellence of its harbor, Copenhagen has long been one of the great commercial ports of northern Europe.

From the city go out large quantities of the butter, eggs, and bacon produced in Denmark for foreign markets. Here also is an area set aside as a free port where goods from one foreign country may be transhipped to another without payment of duty.

The famous Copenhagen porcelain has won a world-wide reputation for its exquisite glaze and beautiful decorations, but most of Copenhagen's manufacturing industries are devoted to making goods for home consumption. The most important of these are bicycles, Diesel engines, ships, beer, and beet sugar.

Much of the charm of Copenhagen springs from its shining cleanliness and its casual mixture of the old and the new. Narrow, twisting streets open out upon wide handsome boulevards, and 16th- and 17th-century buildings, bristling with steeples, spires, and domes, stand next to modern structures of steel and concrete. The most beautiful of the boulevards is the famous Lange Linie (Long Line), which runs along The Sound. Off this drive is Amalienborg Square, in which stand the four royal palaces.

The business and commercial life of Copenhagen is centered in a section called Stroget. Here are many of the city's shops, office buildings, theaters, and museums. The places of amusement are always well filled with happy crowds. Bicycles swarm about the city to such an extent that it is easy to believe the claim that every third person owns one. Along many of the Stroget streets are flower, vegetable, and fish stands tended by shrewd country women in long, full skirts, aprons, and starched poke bonnets.

The three outstanding figures in Copenhagen's cultural history are Albert Thorvaldsen, the sculptor; Hans Christian Andersen, the beloved teller of fairy tales; and Bishop Nikolai Grundtvig, the founder of the system of folk schools. The Copenhagen University, founded in 1479, is free to all students.

The city developed from a 12th-century fishing village. Its name means "merchant's haven," but because of its strategic position its history has been stormy. In 1770 the city withstood bombardment by the combined English, Dutch, and Swedish fleets. During the battle of Copenhagen, in 1801, the Danish fleet was destroyed in the harbor by the British, in order to prevent its falling into the hands of Napoleon. In 1807 the British fleet again sailed in, shelled the city, and destroyed many of its buildings.

From 1940 to 1945 Copenhagen was occupied by the Germans. Although some of the factories were bombed by the Allies during this period of German occupation and even more were destroyed by the sabotage of the Danish "underground," the city was left in better condition than most places that had been under Nazi rule. Not long after its liberation in May 1945, it was sending food to the starving countries of Europe and going its orderly way toward normal living. Population (1950 census), 768,105.

**COPERNICUS, NICOLAUS (1473-1543).** Often considered the founder of modern astronomy, Nicolaus Copernicus was born in Torun, Poland, the son of a Polish merchant and his German wife. The boy was reared by his uncle, a wealthy Catholic bishop, who sent him to the University of Cracow to study mathematics. In 1497 the 25-year-old Copernicus was appointed canon of the cathedral of Frauenburg. Though never ordained, he held this position until his death.

During the next few years he traveled in Italy, studying law at Bologna and medicine at Padua. In 1500 he lectured on astronomy in Rome. He returned to his uncle's castle near Frauenburg in 1507. As attending physician to the old man, Copernicus had little freedom but spent as much time as he could studying the stars.

His study convinced him that the earth rotated on its axis and that the earth and planets revolved around the sun. This was contrary to the Ptolemaic theory then generally believed (see Astronomy; Ptolemy). After his uncle's death in 1512, Copernicus devoted himself with greater energy to astronomy. In 1530 he finished his great book, 'Concerning the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres'. In this work he advanced many arguments to show that his theory explained the apparent motions of the heavenly bodies as well as the Ptolemaic theory and that, moreover, it was more logical. The Copernican theory was in opposition to the teachings of the Roman Catholic church and the book was not published for 13 years. Copernicus received the first copy as he lay on his deathbed. The book stirred up men's minds and opened the way to a truly scientific approach to astronomy. Such men as Galileo and Kepler were profoundly influenced by it (see Galileo; Kepler).

## COPPER—The Red METAL with Countless USES

**COPPER** The wires that deliver electricity for power and carry telephone messages are made of copper. So are the wires in electric motors and generators, and in radio and television sets. Copper is used because, aside from costly silver, it is the best of all metals for conducting electricity.

Copper is shaped and coated with tin to make cooking vessels. When alloyed with zinc it makes brass, and brass is used in countless ways. In most homes it is likely to be present in the works of the alarm clock, in some water faucets, in small screws, and in the eyelets of shoes.

Copper was the first metal man used for tools and implements, probably because copper like gold and silver, is sometimes found in a pure state and can be beaten into shape even when cold. The Egyptians and the Sumerians of Mesopotamia may have used copper as early as 5,000 years before Christ. It was in common use before the dawn of history. The metal was named for the island of Cyprus where the Romans obtained their supply. It was first called *cuprum*, then *cuprum*, and finally in English *copper*.

American Indians made copper beads and tools long before the white men came. Bronze, an alloy of copper and tin, was used so generally in early history that one period is known as the Bronze Age (see *Bronze*). Brass was used in Roman times. Copper and bronze were man's most important metals until he learned to make steel by smelting iron with carbon.

### The World's Leading Copper Producers

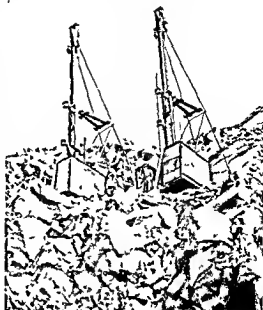
The United States usually produces about one-third of the world's supply of copper ore. Chile is second, with from one-seventh to one-fifth of the supply. Its mines are said to cost least of any to operate. Next come Canada, Rhodesia, the Belgian Congo, Soviet Russia, and Peru. Less important producing regions are Yugoslavia, Japan, Mexico, Spain, Germany, Norway, Cyprus, Sweden, Turkey, and Australia.

Many producing regions ship the ore elsewhere, or smelt it without refining. Considerable amounts of South American, Canadian, and Mexican ore and unrefined copper are made into finished metal in the United States. In normal years Germany, France, and Belgium are important refiners.

The first copper obtained in the United States was mined at Simsbury, Conn., as early as 1709. Large-scale mining began in 1845, in the Michigan deposits near Lake Superior. Today Arizona, Utah, and Montana produce about three-fourths of the ore mined in the United States. Nevada, Michigan, and New Mexico provide most of the remainder. From 40 per cent to more than half the copper now used in the United States is reclaimed, or *secondary*, metal. Consumption varies from less than half a million tons to more than one million tons a year.

### Important Uses of Copper

For cooking utensils, copper must be coated with tin to prevent the formation of harmful compounds. Copper is easily worked and ductile. It can be cold



Three tall derrick cranes work in an open pit copper mine near Sudbury, Ontario. The heavy bits are raised to the top by cable and then dropped, pulverizing the rock below. Repeated blows drill a deep hole from which dynamite is exploded to blast loose the ore. Power shovels then scoop up the loose rocks.

rolled down to one-thousandth inch in thickness and by cold drawing its length can be increased 5,000 times. Hence it is ideal for making wire. It has pleasing color and luster, it takes a high polish, and forms alloys readily with almost all metals (see *Alloys*). It melts at 1,053.1° C (1,931.6° F).

Thin plates of copper are used for engraving and etching, and in strong rollers for calico printing. As an electrodeposit it makes plates and type pages for printing (see *Electrotyping*). It makes an excellent roofing material. When exposed to wind, rain, and snow, it acquires a beautiful shade of green, called *verdigris*. This protects it against further corrosion. Chemical compounds of copper are used as sprays to kill insects and fungi.

### Copper Is Found in Many Forms

Nature has distributed copper widely. It is found in many soils, in mineral waters, ores, and in food stuffs, both animal and vegetable. Native copper is usually found near the surface, where the ore has been exposed to the elements. Great deposits of such copper have been found in the Keweenaw Peninsula of Michigan, sometimes in masses of 400 tons.

The large copper mines of the United States are models of efficiency. The famous Red Jacket shaft of the Calumet and Hecla mine in northern Michigan has a shaft about 15 by 25 feet, walled with brick and cement and extending nearly a mile below the

surface of the ground. It is divided into six smaller shafts, two for the double-decked hoists that carry men and materials, two for the nine-ton self-dumping "skips" or buckets that bring up the ore, and two for the large cylindrical steel bailers that empty the water out of the mine.

The hoists travel even faster than the elevators in skyscrapers. At different levels they pass horizontal tunnels in which men are digging out the ore. Each tunnel has little railway tracks over which electric cars haul the ore and its own system of water pipes and hydrants with fire hose and extinguishers, electric alarms, and telephones.

At the tunnels' ends, miners loosen the rock with powerful pneumatic drills. A ventilating system constantly forces air from the surface into the mine. At the bottom of this deep shaft the temperature would be around 90° F. if it were not cooled artificially.

Sometimes large copper deposits are near enough the surface to permit open-pit mining. In this method, power shovels scoop up as much as nine cubic yards of ore at a time and dump it into cars which carry it directly to the mills. Mining of this type has been successful at Bingham, Utah; Ely, Nev.; Chuquibambilla, in Chile; Katanga, in Africa; and at Rio Tinto, in Spain.

#### Refining Copper by the Dry Process

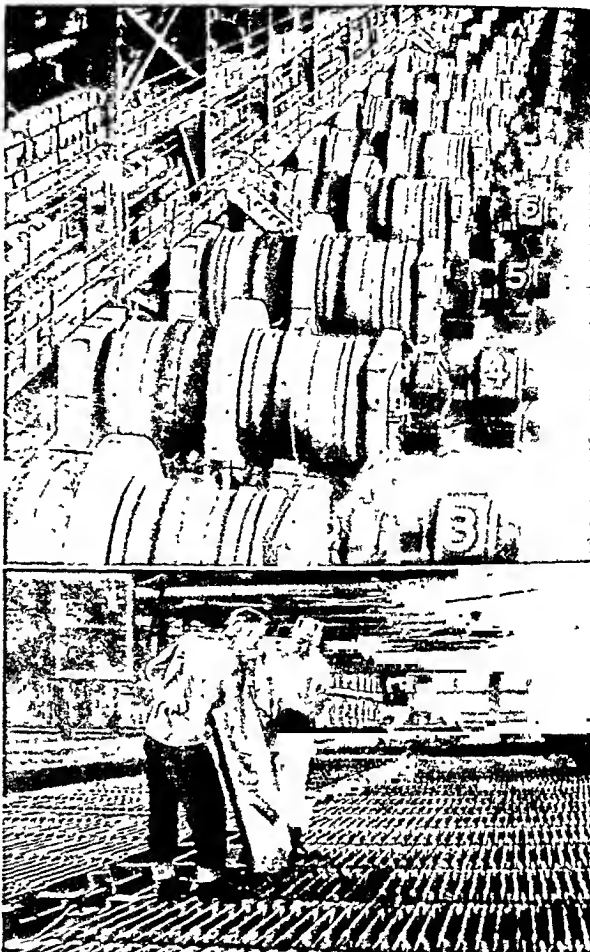
Copper is separated from its ores either by a *dry* or *wet* process. In the dry process (also called pyrometallurgical, from "pyro" for heat), the ore is first reduced to a fine powder called *concentrate*. This is done in several steps. Large pieces are reduced in a jaw crusher, and pebblelike pieces in a roll crusher. Screens sort out finer material at each step, and jigging tables sort out particles which are fine enough to be used for smelting.

Most of the crushed ore then passes through a desliming cone. Here worthless earthy material is dissolved in water and discarded. Again fine particles which are rich in metal are sorted out by a device called a Wilfley table. The rest is reduced to sandlike grains in a ball mill and treated further by a *flotation* process.

In this process, the grains are mixed with oil, and the mixture is pumped into a stream of rising water. Oil clings to the metal-bearing grains and the water carries them up. Nonmetallic earthy particles sink. The valuable particles so obtained go with the previously obtained concentrate to be smelted.

The first step in smelting is getting rid of sulphur in a roasting furnace. The furnace has several layers called "hearth." Hollow iron arms (sweepers) brush the ore around each hearth, then drop it to the next one. The arms are cooled by water inside. During this process, most of the sulphur is burned out and furnishes much of the heat by its burning.

#### REFINING COPPER ORE



Crushed copper ore is ground fine in powerful mills (top picture). When operating with a full load of ore, each mill weighs one hundred tons. The bottom picture shows a section of a huge tank house where refined copper is produced by electrolysis.

Roasted ore is fed continuously into a *reverberatory* furnace. Here it lies on the bottom, and a hot fire is maintained over it by blowing in coal dust and air. The melted product flows out as slag (waste) and *matte*. Matte is copper with slight impurities.

Matte is refined further in a converter. This works like the Bessemer converter. A blast of air is blown through the molten matte from the bottom, and most of the remaining impurities are burned out. The molten matte is then cooled and shaped in molds.

#### Refining by the Wet Process

In the wet process, the copper is dissolved from the ores by acids, or is converted into a water-soluble salt by roasting with a reagent. The solvent is usually sulphuric acid, hydrochloric acid, or ammonia. The acid solution containing the copper is run into tanks and the copper is precipitated by means of metallic iron or by electrolytic methods. The precipitate is refined directly or smelted with matte. The method used depends on the copper content.

The blister copper produced in the converter is often refined again before being cast into ingots. This is done in a furnace similar to but smaller than the reverberatory furnace. Pulverized coal is the usual fuel. Copper from the converter is charged into the furnace and the end of an iron pipe carrying air under pressure of 16 pounds to the square inch is depressed below the surface of the bath. The air oxidizes out the remaining iron and sulphur the iron forms a slag rich in copper which is returned to the converter. The sulphur passes away with the furnace gases. In this process part of the copper oxidizes and dissolves in the bath. Carbon from poles of "green" wood forced beneath the surface reduces the oxide back to metallic copper. It is then cast into ingots of about 500 pounds each.

#### Making Electrolytic Copper

A final refining by electrolysis (see Electrolysis) produces copper almost entirely free from impurities sometimes 99.98 per cent pure. This process also recovers the gold and silver in the ore. These metals are precipitated in the electrolytic bath and collect as sludge in the bottom of the tank where they are recovered for refining.

Copper may be cast at the refinery into square cakes or slabs for rolling purposes or into circular cakes for large seamless cylindrical products such as tanks and hot-water heaters. Other forms are round billets for seamless copper tubing and bars for making wire (see Wire). It is cast as ingots if the copper is to be remelted in crucibles for making copper castings or for making alloys such as brass, bronze or nickel silver.

The ingots are usually about ten inches long and weigh 16 to 22 pounds. They are made with one or two notches so they can be broken easily to fit into the crucibles. Small ingots are hard to handle and so ingot bars are often cast instead. A bar consisting of three ingots 32 inches long weighs 70 to 80 pounds. Copper bars for making wire are rolled out into rods  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch in diameter. For trolley wire many such rods are brazed together with silver solder into lengths of as much as a mile weighing from 1,600 to 3,350 pounds. Cables and strands for power transmission are made by intricate machines which wind a number of wires around a central core.

#### The Commonest of Copper Alloys

Brass the most common copper alloy contains from 55 to 70 per cent copper. The remainder is zinc with perhaps lead or other material. It has many uses both practical and ornamental (see Brass).

Other alloys of copper are important industrially. Aluminum bronze (copper 90 per cent aluminum 10 per cent) is a malleable very tenacious material with a golden color. It is much used in jewelry working. German silver (copper 50 per cent zinc 25 per cent nickel 25 per cent) has many uses to take the place of silver. Unless properly coated however to prevent oxidation, it may form harmful compounds. It takes a high polish and is harder than silver. For certain mechanical parts which receive hard and con-

stant usage German silver is made still harder by the addition of aluminum.

Monel metal (made from ores whose natural contents are nickel 68 to 70 per cent iron 1.5 per cent, the rest copper) is silver white in color. Strong and tough it is highly resistant to corrosion and with stands all but the strongest acids and alkalis. Hence it is used for ship propellers, valves, pumps and chemical equipment (See Alloys, Bronze, Nickel).

#### Chemical Compounds of Copper

The chief copper ores are the sulphide *chalcocite* chem. cal. symbol  $\text{Cu}_2\text{S}$  and the copper bearing pyrite *chalcopryite*  $\text{CuFeS}_2$ . Other copper ores are *covellite*  $\text{CuS}$ , *bornite*  $\text{Cu}_5\text{FeS}_4$ , *enargite*  $\text{Cu}_3\text{As}_2\text{S}_4$ , *cuprite*  $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$  and *malachite*  $\text{Cu}_2(\text{OH})_2(\text{CO}_3)$ . About half the world's copper comes from *chalcocite*. *Chalcopryite* yields about 25 per cent native copper of Michigan more than 5 per cent. The remainder comes mostly from the oxide ores. (See Minerals).

The two most important oxides are cuprous oxide ( $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$ ) found in nature as the mineral *cuprite* and used in testing for diabetes with Fehling's famous solution, and cupric oxide ( $\text{CuO}$ ). Both oxides are used in dyeing paper, calico and glass. Cupric chloride ( $\text{CuCl}_2$ ) is a powerful disinfectant and is used in calico printing. There is also a salt, cuprous chloride ( $\text{CuCl}$ ). Two sulphides are known. Cuprous sulphide ( $\text{Cu}_2\text{S}$ ) occurs in nature as *chalcocite* and cupric sulphide ( $\text{CuS}$ ) is found as *covellite*. This is the most nearly insoluble copper salt used in laboratories.

Copper (or cupric) sulphate ( $\text{CuSO}_4$ ) is the most widely used copper compound. It forms brilliant blue crystals. The anhydrous powder is sometimes used as a dye for alcohol and other liquids. Copper sulphate is used in electroplating, calico printing and as a germicide and fungicide.

**COPPERHEAD** In woods, fields and marshes lives the poisonous copperhead snake. It may be known by its broad flat head of polished copper color and its light brown body about three feet long with conspicuous red brown markings shaped like an hourglass or dumbbell. The eyes have vertical elliptical pupils. The snake will not attack if it is left undisturbed. Copperheads are found in the United States east of the Mississippi River and from central Kansas south through Texas. Other popular names for it are red adder, red viper, copper belly and pilot snake.

Copperheads feed on frogs, small birds and rodents. They sleep by day and hunt at night. In the winter they hibernate under rocks or in holes. About a dozen young are born in the late summer. They are born alive enclosed in a membrane from which they soon escape. The tail at first is sulfur yellow.

Copperheads belong to the family of pit vipers *Crotalidae*. The scientific name is *Agkistrodon moker* (See also Rattlesnake Snakes).

**COPRA** Coconut oil the most important of vegetable oils is pressed from copra the dried meat of the coconut (see Coconut Palm). The United States alone consumes some 450,000,000 pounds of this oil in a year. About three-fifths is used for soap and cosmetics, the rest for margarine and confectionery. Most of it comes from the Philippines but some is imported from the Malay Peninsula, Australia, Oceania and other tropical regions.

Copra crushing to secure coconut oil is an important industry in America's west-coast ports chiefly San Francisco, Los Angeles, Portland and Seattle.



Usually the copra is pressed cold first. This produces the best grade of oil, suitable for human food. More grinding and pressing with hot water or steam follows, until perhaps 65 per cent of the oil has been pressed out. The remaining cake provides a fine fertilizer or an excellent food for stock or poultry.

Natives at the coconut groves shake or pick the nuts from the trees and crack them open with machetes. The broken nuts are dried in the sun or on racks over fires of coconut husks. Copra is smoke-dried chiefly where frequent rains prevent natural drying. Other mechanical driers are also used.

Most copra is shipped to America or Europe to be crushed. Marseilles, France, has one of the world's largest copra industries. If it is crushed at the source, the oil is shipped in barrels or drums, in great tanks built into the holds of ships, or even in petroleum tank ships. Tankers which formerly returned from the Orient to America in ballast now find a good profit in this trade. This saving was made possible by a method of cleaning the tanks thoroughly with live steam after the petroleum cargo is discharged. The process removes all trace of the petroleum. The tanks are kept heated by steam or hot water to about 70° F. to prevent the oil from hardening.

**COPYRIGHT AND TRADE-MARKS.** Even as late as the 1700's the law offered no protection to English authors against printers who republished and sold their works without permission. Indeed it was not considered proper that gentlemen should receive pay for literary works, and many of them did not allow their works to be printed during their lifetime. Sir Francis Bacon published his essays only in order to forestall an unauthorized edition, and others of his time took the same course. Unscrupulous printers published Shakespeare's works as copied in shorthand at performances, and the author had no redress. The foundation law for British copyright was passed in 1709, giving authors control of their works for 14 years and renewal rights for 14 years more if still living. A law of 1909 in the United States superseded previous laws. Some amendments to this law have been made since.

Copyrights cover books; periodicals, including newspapers; lectures, sermons, and addresses for oral delivery; dramatic and musical compositions; maps; works of art and models, designs or reproductions of works of art; scientific or technical drawings or plastic works; photographs; prints or pictorial illustrations; and motion pictures, plays, and so on. A United States copyright extends for 28 years, with 28 years' renewal—56 years in all. To copyright a published work, two copies are sent to the Copyright Office at Washington with a \$4 fee; the fee for unpublished work also is \$4; for a photograph, when no registration certificate is asked, 50 cents. The usual form of notice is the word "Copyright," with date and owner's name. On maps, pictorial illustrations, photographs, and similar items, the notice may be merely the letter "C" in a circle, thus: ©. A Canadian or an English copyright lasts

during the life of the author and for a period of 50 years after his death.

Under protection of the copyright laws authors of dramatic or musical works are able to get royalties for motion pictures, radio, television, or other mechanical reproductions. Penalties vary—from \$50 to \$200 fine for reproducing a copyrighted photograph to a maximum fine of \$5,000 for making a motion picture of a play without permission. The damage done and willfulness of the infringement usually decide the penalty.

A convention at Berne, Switzerland, in 1886 provided for international copyrights, but the United States is not included because its laws require works be *manufactured* in this country; that is, plate-making, typesetting, binding, and other work for a book must be done here, unless materials for the work are not available in America. Foreigners whose countries extend protection to American authors receive similar protection in the United States by treaties with most countries. Before these agreements, America was flooded with pirated foreign works.

Trade-marks, unlike copyrights and patents, do not involve monopolies. Everyone has the privilege of making soap; a trade-mark simply gives the public an easy means of identifying a particular soap, thus making advertising more effective and substitution difficult. Trade-marks which have been extensively advertised for long periods are often worth as much to their owners as more tangible assets in the form of real estate and buildings. In the United States, registration of trade-marks is in the Patent Office. It does not create the right to use the trade name or device, although it creates a presumption in favor of the user. Ownership is acquired solely by priority of adoption and continuous use. In some countries the person first to register owns the mark regardless of whether he was the first to use it, and in such countries it is a common practice for unscrupulous persons to register in their own names valuable foreign trade-marks and then force the real owners to buy them out at high prices.

**CORAL.** Among the important land builders of the earth are the corals. They are tiny sea-dwelling creatures whose skeletons by the countless million accumulate to form islands and reefs. On the keys at the southern end of Florida are some of these islands in the making. They look like beautiful ocean gardens below the water surface. In fact, the scientific name of the corals, *Anthozoa*, means "flower animals." There are leaf corals and kinds that look like the tendrils of plants. Some are shaped like vases and others like feathers. Certain fan-shaped kinds are called sea fans.

The corals are delicately colored, but most of them lose their color upon being taken from the water. The red and salmon-pink precious coral from which jewelry is made is found in the Mediterranean Sea and off the coasts of Japan. Coral fishing and jewelry making are important industries in Italy. Common grades of coral are sometimes used with sea water

## BEAUTY AND VARIETY IN A CORAL REEF

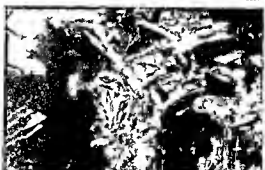


The Great Barrier Reef of Australia fringes the northeastern coast for 1,200 miles. It is built up of the skeletons of count-

less billions of corals. Most of the reef is under water, but the low lying corals may be seen at low tide as shown here.



This close-up of the Great Barrier Reef shows a brain coral at the upper left. In the lower center is a large clam. Over the rest of the area grows a soft, rubbery type of coral.



This museum group gives an idea of the beauty of an under-water scene in a coral reef. The corals are richly colored, and through the many rock glides delicate, colorful schools of fish.

to make concrete. The land-building corals are found only in shallow tropical waters where the temperature never falls below 70° F. Other species are common on the north Atlantic coasts and even in the deep, cold fjords of Norway.

#### Life History

When the coral animal, which is called a *polyp*, is born it is a tiny, jellylike oval, a fraction of an inch long. A fringe of hairs enables it to swim about. Soon it settles on a rock or on a piece of dead coral and begins to grow. The upper part of the body becomes dome-shaped and it develops a stomach and a mouth. Around the mouth grow a number of feelers or tentacles.

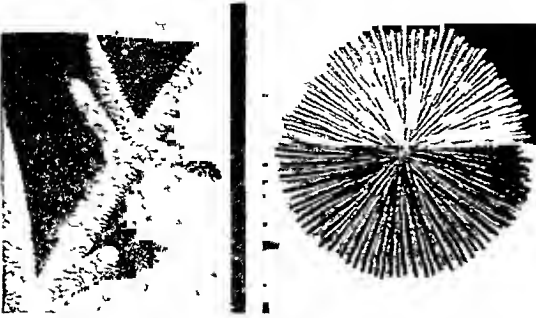
The polyp next builds a limey platform between its body and the rock on which it is standing. Then around its soft body it builds an outside skeleton of lime. Only the mouth and feelers reach out of this protective wall to feed upon the organisms floating in the sea.

The polyp reproduces by sending offshoots (known as buds) from its body. These develop into other polyps. In some kinds of corals the buds break away from the mother polyp to become separate individuals. In other kinds they remain attached and in turn send out still more buds. In this way vast colonies are built up. They are attached to one another by a network of tubes. Food may be passed through the tubes from the outer edges of a colony to the members on the inside. Year by year coral skeletons accumulate, cementing together in one mass until after centuries new land is formed, consisting of the skeletons of billions of dead polyps.

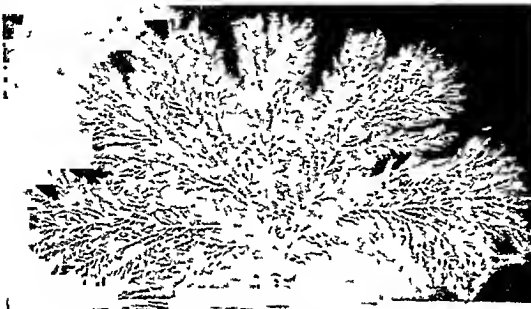
#### How Coral Islands Are Made

Coral islands and reefs are most numerous in the warmer portions of the Pacific and in the Indian Ocean, occurring to a less extent in the Gulf of Mexico and along the shores of the West Indies. They belong to three classes. *Barrier reefs* lie at some distance from the land, the space between being filled by a

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF CORAL



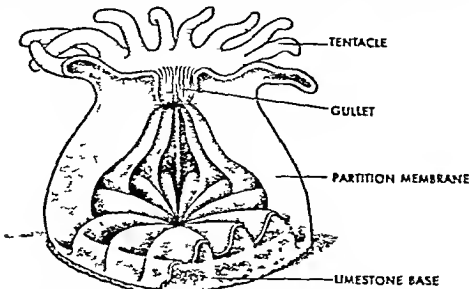
At the left is a branch of elkhorn coral. The polyps live inside the tiny cups. At the right is the skeleton of a solitary coral, showing its beautiful radial symmetry.



This museum model of a sea fan shows better than a living specimen the plantlike form of the colony. It is a deep purple.



This model of a living colony of astrangia shows some of the polyps with their tentacles reaching out of the stony cups.



This cutaway drawing of a stony coral polyp shows the different parts of the body and the outer cup of limestone.

shallow lagoon of salt water. Usually some parts of the reef rise above the ocean as islets, supporting a scanty vegetation, while the greater part is submerged. The Great Barrier Reef of Australia, more than 1,000 miles long and 10 to 90 miles wide, is an illustration of this type.

*Atolls* are not attached to any visible land. They are circular in form, surrounding a central lagoon of placid water. (For pictures of how atolls are formed, see *Pacific Islands*.) When, as usually happens, there are passages through the reefs, they form an excellent harbor for ships during a storm. *Fringing reefs* simply skirt the coast line and extend the beaches.

Corals are closely related to the sea anemones, belonging to the class *Anthozoa* of the division *Celenterata*. Certain polyps of the *Hydrozoa* class, as well as the lime-forming seaweeds, also play a great part in the formation of coral reefs and islands. **CORINTH, GREECE.** No other city in ancient Greece held so commanding a position as Corinth. It was situated on the Isthmus of Corinth, the narrow neck of land connecting northern Greece and the Peloponnesus. On the west lay the Corinthian Gulf and on the east the Saronic Gulf (or Gulf of Aegina). Corinth was long the leading naval power and one of the foremost colonizing states of Greece, founding among others the famous colony of Syracuse on the island of Sicily. Corinth was also noted for its extensive commerce and manufactures. Its richly ornamented vases and metalware were exported to many lands. The most ornate order of Greek architecture is called "Corinthian" and was said to have been invented by a Corinthian architect (see *Architecture*).

The Romans destroyed Corinth after crushing an uprising in 146 B.C. and carried away many of its art treasures. A hundred years later it was rebuilt by Julius Caesar and again became a great trading center. The apostle Paul came as a missionary to Corinth, founded a church there, and to its members he addressed his Epistles to the Corinthians (see *Paul*).

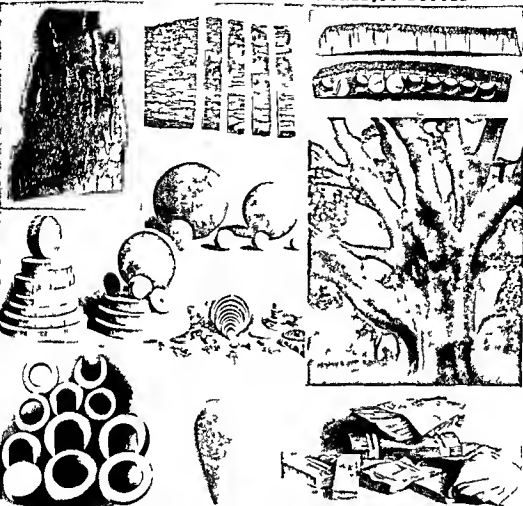
Frequent earthquakes and the looting and destruction by conquering hordes gradually reduced "the light of all Greece" to a heap of rubble. The splendor of old Corinth have vanished, except for occasional ruins uncovered by archaeologists. A fine Roman villa, five temples, and parts of the great theater have been excavated.

After the earthquake of 1858 the ancient site was abandoned. A new city, built on the gulf three miles to the northeast, was almost destroyed by an earthquake in 1928. The present city of 17,728 people (1951 census) is little more than a local trading center.

A four-mile canal through the Isthmus of Corinth was completed in 1893. It provides an essential shipping route between the Ionian and Aegean seas. It is narrow, however, and large vessels have to go around the peninsula.

During the second World War, Corinth was occupied by the Germans from April 1941 until October 1944, when it was freed by British troops.

## HERE'S THE STORY OF CORK FROM TREE TO BOTTLE



Cork is taken from the outer bark of the stately Portuguese and Spanish cork-oak trees like the one shown at the right. When the bark is peeled off in sheets such as you see in the upper left hand corner. These sheets are sliced into strips and the strips are punched with a special machine for centers of bottles. Washers for automobile tires and other uses are also made from cork. The strips are then cut by special machinery for corks and tips are cut by special machinery.

**CORK.** It seems strange that while some kinds of oak trees give us one of our heaviest common woods that the bark of another kind should supply us with a substance so light that life preservers are made of it. Cork comes from Spain, France, Italy, Tunis, Algeria, and Morocco. But the cork-oak forests of Portugal contribute half of the world's annual crop. Thousands of men find work in the deep shade of the gnarled old trees with their evergreen leaves and their rough trunks. After the bark is stripped from the trees, new layers grow back slowly and a fire-hardened sheeting from  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick is ready for cutting every nine or ten years. The trees are about 20 years old when they yield their first crop

which is so rough and coarse that it is worth little. The second stripping gives a better quality, but the best harvests do not come until the oak is about 40 years old.

The stripping is usually done in July or August. With a sharp knife or hatchet a cut is made around the trunk near the base and another just below the branches. These cuts must not injure the inner layer or the trees will stop growing. The two incisions are joined by long lengthwise cuts. Then inserting the wedge-shaped end of his hatchet handle, the workman pries off the sheets. The branches yield a thinner layer, but one of fine quality. Anywhere from 45 to 500 pounds of cork may be taken from a single tree.

After seasoning for a few days, the cork sheets are boiled in great vats to remove the tannic acid and to soften them so the hard outer covering can be removed. At the seaport the bark is pressed into bales and loaded on vessels. At the factory the slabs are softened by steaming, sliced into strips by circular steel knives, revolving hundreds of times a minute, and from these strips the "corks" for bottles are cut by other machines.

The valuable properties of cork—its lightness, elasticity, and impermeability to water—are due to the fact that it is made up entirely of thin-walled cells filled with air. Today the list of useful articles made from cork is a long one. Glass manufacturers polish their wares with cork wheels, artificial limbs are made of cork, and cork paper (so thin that 500 sheets make one inch) is used for the tips of cigarettes. Since cork is a very poor conductor of heat and cold, helmets of cork are worn by white men in the tropics as protection against sunstroke. Ground cork is used as the basis of a number of cements and coatings for insulating steam pipes, and in constructing refrigerators, etc. Another important use is in the manufacture of linoleum, which is made from ground cork, linseed oil, gums, and pigments (see Linoleum). The coarsest grade of cork waste is used to pack china and fresh fruit. Parings of cork, burned in closed vessels, make Spanish black, a beautiful and durable paint.

Scientific name of cork oak, *Quercus suber*. The tree attains a height of from 20 to 60 feet and is sometimes as much as 4 feet in diameter. The leaves are evergreen, oblong, somewhat oval, downy underneath, and waxy green.

**CORK, IRELAND.** Cork is the second city and one of the leading seaports of Ireland. It lies on the southern coast, where the estuary of the river Lee provides a spacious harbor for ships up to 20-foot draft. Transatlantic vessels make regular calls to Cobh, which lies on an island near the harbor's mouth.

The calm island-crowded waters and the wooded shores dotted with resorts make Cork harbor a charming picture.

The city owes its importance largely to trade with Great Britain. It sends large quantities of meat and dairy products in exchange for cereals, coal, and manufactured goods. Cork's chief manufactures include automobiles, leather, iron, glass, gloves, textiles, and fertilizers. It also has large shipyards, distilleries, and breweries. Among its fine buildings are a Protestant and a Roman Catholic cathedral and the University College, a constituent college of the National University. Part of the business section was burned in 1920 after a conflict between the Royal Irish constabulary and Sinn Fein forces.

The name "Cork," which means "swamp," was probably once deserved by the site. The city was founded about A.D. 600. It was frequently pillaged and for a time occupied by the Northmen in the 9th and 10th centuries. Until 1172, when Ireland acknowledged the sovereignty of King Henry II of England, Cork was ruled by native princes. Since 1929 the city has been governed by a lord mayor, a city manager, and an elected council of 21 members. Almost 85 per cent of the inhabitants are Roman Catholic. Population (1951 census), 74,567.

The county of Cork, second largest in all Ireland, is famous for its dairy industries. A few miles from the city are the ruins of the ancient Blarney Castle. One of the stones of the tower is the famous Blarney Stone. Those who kiss this stone are supposed to receive the power of clever flattering speech.

## Where KING CORN Yields BOUNDLESS WEALTH

**CORN.** The farmers of the Mississippi Valley think so much of their corn that they call it "King Corn." The title is most fitting. Corn is the American "king of crops" by any test. Farmers use more land for it than they do for any other crop. It provides more food for animals and men than any other crop. And it brings American farmers more money.

In an average year the corn crop in the United States is about 3 billion bushels and is worth about 4 billion dollars. In some peak years the crop has totaled almost 4 billion bushels, valued at about 5 billion dollars. Farmers use some 90 million acres of land to raise this huge crop.

Most of the corn the farmers grow is the coarser kind called field corn. It is not grown for men to eat. Farmers feed it to hogs, cattle, and other animals. Out of every 100 bushels grown, farmers store between 80 and 90 bushels in silos or in bins for feeding livestock. For this reason we cannot measure the value of the corn crop by what is sold as grain. Most of the yearly crop "goes to market on four legs" as hogs and cattle. Thus a large part of a 4-billion-dollar corn harvest never reaches the grain market.

**Where Corn Grows throughout the World**

Out of every two bushels of corn grown in the world, farmers in the United States produce one. Every state

grows some corn, but most of it is raised in the famous "corn belt." This vast fertile region extends across the north-central plains from western Ohio to eastern Nebraska. The top ranking corn-producing states are Iowa, Illinois, Minnesota, Indiana, Nebraska, and Ohio. They are all in the "corn belt." In the growing season tall, green corn stalks, with their golden-tasseled heads, broad, green leaves, and fat ears, stand in almost every cultivated field in the belt. Neat rows of plants stretch for hundreds of miles and promise harvest-time wealth for the farmers.

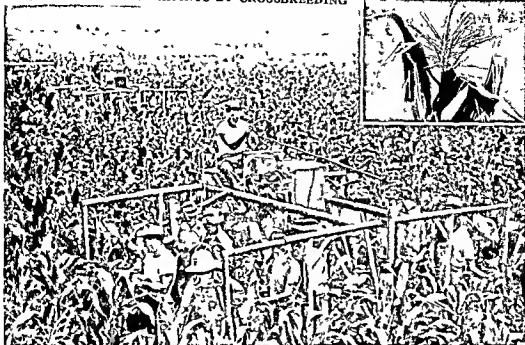
Corn will grow wherever it has suitable soil, freedom from frost and cold nights, and plenty of hot sun when it is maturing. It also needs ample soil moisture during the hot season. These conditions prevail in much of Central and South America, around the Mediterranean, in India, and in South Africa. In South Africa corn is called *mealies*, and it furnishes the principal food of the natives.

**An Obscure Ancestry**

Farmers think of the corn plant as something quite natural, like grass or trees. But it puzzles botanists, particularly because they cannot identify any wild ancestor.

When Columbus first came to America, he found American Indians growing corn. But even in the time

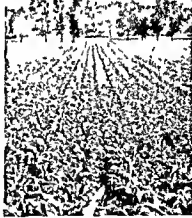
## SELECTING A SEED'S PARENTS BY CROSSBREEDING



This small dry ear of corn is the result of poor seed selection and neglect.



The result of select seed and intelligent cultivation is a full ear like this one.



Hybrid corn is produced in crossbreeding fields (top). Workers ride on tractor drawn scaffolds, pulling the tassels (close up, top right) off certain rows of one kind of corn. The detasselled plants will be fertilized by pollen carried by the wind from the tassels of other rows of another kind of corn. Seed grown on the detasselled plants will be a hybrid with the good qualities of both parents. The bottom pictures show two seeds, one with poor seed corn (left) and one with good corn (right).

of Columbus, corn could not take care of itself like a wild plant or a recent descendant of a wild plant. The greatest weakness lay in the way corn produces its seed. The top of the stalk has a many spiked tassel which grows pollen. The plant also has "ears" with filaments called "silk" which receive pollen. But the ears are completely wrapped with leaves and the ends of the silks protrude only from the tips. Therefore the silks cannot get ample pollen unless the plants have many neighbors as they do in a cultivated field. Botanists think that the plants could

hardly survive in the wild state. Corn was apparently unknown in ancient times in the Old World. No evidence of it has ever been found in archeological remains. There is no reference to it in the Bible or other ancient literature or in primitive art. In the New World, however, all the principal types of corn that scientists recognize today were already in existence and under cultivation by the time the first explorers arrived. It is believed, therefore, that the wild ancestor of corn must also be found in the Western Hemisphere.

## KING CORN

Some botanists think that the plant may be descended from a grass, *teosinte*, which grows wild in Mexico and Guatemala. Another theory is that it originated in South America from a primitive pod corn which was also a popcorn. Pod corn has its kernels enclosed in a pod or chaffy shell. Such a wild corn has not yet been found.

In 1948, scientists of the Peabody Museum, Harvard University, discovered ancient corn in a cave in central New Mexico. The lowest levels of the cave floor contained primitive husks and kernels estimated to be 4,000 years old. This corn bore no relationship to *teosinte*, but it did have the characteristics of pod popcorn. In upper and more recent deposits the scientists found corn that appeared to have been crossed with *teosinte*. Modern corn may therefore be a hybrid of *teosinte* and wild species which no longer exist, but the mystery is still unsolved.

#### The Corn Plant and Its Seed

The tassel-and-silk arrangement works well, however, if men help the plant by giving it care. To see how it works, suppose we get acquainted with the corn plant.

The corn plant is a large member of the grass family (*Gramineae*). It has a fibrous, woody stalk that may grow to be from 6 to 20 feet high. At the top is its spiked tassel. This part grows the male flowers of the plant. (For an explanation of "male" and "female" flowers, see *Flowers*.) Farther down, the stalk grows one or more spikes which develop into ears. Each one grows out from beneath the base of a leaf, and at first it is completely wrapped in leaves. The spikes bear threadlike filaments (silk) which are the female flowers. Each filament grows from a germ on the spike called an *ovule*.

The ovules are arranged in neat rows along the spikes. Each one will produce a seed, called a kernel, if the filament of silk is fertilized by a grain of pollen. To catch pol-

len, the green, tender tips of silk protrude from the top of the leafy wrapping around the spike.

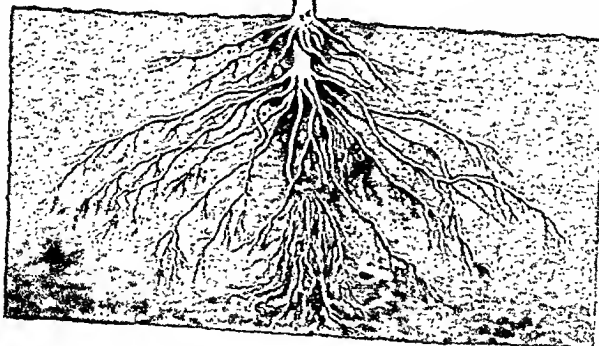
All these parts appear after the stalk and leaves are well grown, and the plant is receiving plenty of summer sunshine. When the flower parts develop, farmers say that the corn is "tasseling out." Soon the tassels produce yellowish dust-like grains of pollen. Each grain of pollen contains two sperms.

Now summer breezes gently shake the pollen-laden tassels, and billions of the tiny, sperm-bearing pollen grains jar loose. The wind carries them to the silk of neighboring plants. Tiny receivers, called *stigmas*, at the ends of the silks, catch the pollen. Promptly the pollen grains send tubes growing down through the silks to the ovules. Then the sperm cells pass down the tubes and fertilize the ovules. Thereupon the spike grows into a large, pithy structure called a cob, while the ovules grow and ripen into seeds (kernels). The growing seeds are made up of a rather soft yellow hull filled with a milky liquid. Corn at this stage is "in the milk." The "milk" has a fine sweet flavor, and field corn in the milk stage may be used for roasting ears. When field corn is ripe, the kernel is hard, firm, and starchy. Sweet corn kernels do not get as hard.

#### Colors of Corn

When white men first came to America, they found corn with different colored kernels. The Indians liked particular colors for certain purposes and tried to grow them.

The pioneers preferred the yellow kind for field corn. About 1779 sweet corn was found in Penn-



Almost all corn plants stand several feet high. At the top of this plant we see the tassel. It contains the male flowers. Below the tassel are broad green leaves. Among them we see ears of corn, wrapped closely in coverlets of leaves. Hundreds of filaments, or silks, protrude from this leafy covering. These are female flowers. Although each corn plant can pollinate itself, nature has made this very unlikely by covering the silks with leafy wrappings. At the bottom of the stalk, we see the long grasslike roots. They reach deep into the soil to get food and moisture for the plant.

sylvania Gradually farmers began to save seed from desirable plants for planting the following year. Thus they developed various kinds or strains of corn.

#### How Experimenters Developed Hybrid Corn

In 1900 George H. Shull and Edward M. East began developing new kinds of corn by placing pollen from one desirable strain of corn onto the silks of another strain. The process produced cross-bred strains called *hybrid* corn. After the first World War Henry A. Wallace (who became secretary of agriculture in 1933) and Lester Pfister began hybridizing experiments. By 1926 they had made hybrid pollinization completely workable.

The hybrid plants are remarkable growers. They commonly grow to be 18 or 20 feet tall, some have grown as high as 28 feet. A more important factor is that they have added millions of dollars to the income of corn farmers.

Before farmers had hybrid corn an average acre of corn yielded 30 bushels. But farmers had to spend the money they received for 25 bushels to pay their costs for each acre they planted. They had only five bushels an acre for profit. Hybrid corn has increased the yield by 30 per cent. It produces 50 or more bushels an acre on many farms. Some farms produce more than 200 bushels an acre.

A hybridizer produces hybrid seed by first *inbreeding*. This fixes the desirable qualities in the seed. He covers the ears of selected plants to keep air borne pollen from the silk. Later he takes pollen from the tassels of a plant and dusts it on the silks of the same plant. After inbreeding each strain for several generations he starts *crossbreeding*. He takes pollen from the tassel of a plant having one desirable strain and dusts it on the silk of a plant with some other strain. The cross-bred product or hybrid has the qualities of each parent strain.

Next comes *double-crossing*. The experimenter dusts pollen from one hybrid onto a hybrid with two other strains. The seed from this cross produces a super corn with four strains bred in. This corn is sold to farmers as seed. The crop cannot be used as seed next year because hybrid corn is not self-perpetuating. Farmers must buy new seed each year. Great use of hybrid corn threatens the supply of corn pollinated naturally. This loss would restrict improving hybrid strains and prevent developing new ones. To preserve seed of native varieties the Federal government stores seed in corn banks.

#### Planting and Cultivating

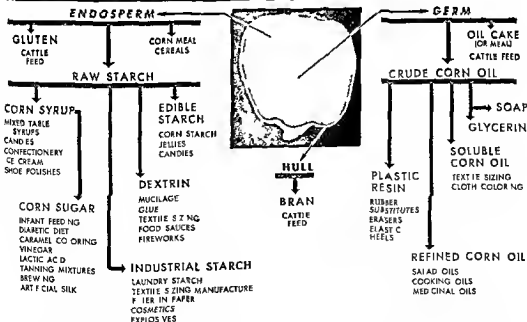
A strong full crop of corn comes from fertile soil, good seed, thorough cultivation and clean culture.

#### A SILKEN EAR



Here is an illustration of corn with the covering leaves at right back. Notice how the diameters of the silk grow out of the rows of kernels.

### THE CORN PLANT GIVES US HUNDREDS OF USEFUL PRODUCTS



Above we see a kernel of corn cut across and shows many times enlarged. (A diagram of the internal structure appears later in the article.) The rest of the diagram lists many useful products we get from the three main parts (endosperm, germ, and hull) of the corn kernel. The whole kernel is also used to produce alcohol and distilled beverages. Many other products come from the cobs and stalks.



For corn, the farmer needs soil that is easily worked, well drained, and rich in plant food (see Soil). The dark loam of Iowa, "the state where the tall corn grows," is particularly adapted for corn. Lighter soils in other states can be made suitable for corn with proper fertilizers (see Fertilizers). For help in choosing fertilizers, a farmer can consult the United States Government farm advisers (often called "soil doctors"). They will test samples of soil to find deficiencies and suggest the kind of treatment to give.

Next, the farmer carefully chooses the seed to suit conditions on his farm. He loosens the soil thoroughly and then plants the seed. In dry regions, he may plant corn in deep furrows. If the rainfall is plentiful, the farmer puts the seed down in hills or in drills. Once the plant starts to grow, cultivation must never be deep, or the tender, grasslike roots will be injured.

Corn has well been described as a "heavy eater." Each crop draws heavily on the plant food in the soil, leaving little for the crops that follow. Production is higher when corn crops are rotated on a three-year cycle. The first year a legume, such as alfalfa or sweet clover, builds up the soil with nitrogen and humus. The next year, corn grows tall on these, its favorite foods. The third year, a small grain is planted. Then the cycle is renewed with a legume (see Alfalfa; Nitrogen).

#### Different Ways of Harvesting

Corn farmers choose their harvesting methods according to how they want to use the corn. If the farmer wants to store the whole plant in a silo, he cuts the plants while they are still green (see Silo). If the corn is to be used for grain, it is not harvested until it is fairly dry. The ears may be picked by hand from the standing corn and husked and thrown into a wagon, or a mechanical corn picker may be used to save time.

Some farmers turn cattle in to feed on the corn stalks after the ears are picked. Others cut the stalks, tie them into shocks, and let the ears get dry before husking. Many livestock raisers turn hogs into the ripe fields to feed and fatten on the corn. This method is called "hogging down."

#### Fighting the Enemies of Corn

The corn plant has many enemies. More than 350 insect pests attack the precious grain. The most destructive are the corn ear worm, the European corn borer, and the corn root worm. Fungus growths, such as smut and various rots, are costly foes. In most cases, insecticides are too expensive to be practical. Therefore the farmer uses the less expensive methods of "clean culture" and crop rotation.

Clean culture means harvesting or destroying every part of the plant. Careful farmers either burn or plow under the stubble. This rids the corn field of pests which live above the ground. Crop rotation suppresses root pests that live on corn by depriving them of food for one or two years.

#### Where Does the Corn Crop Go?

Nearly four-fifths of the corn crop goes to fatten livestock. Much of the remaining grain is made into

human food as corn meal, dry breakfast cereals such as corn flakes, syrup, oil, and starch. Removing the hull and softening the inside of the kernel produces hominy (also called samp). Some people make hominy at home by removing the outer covering with lye and cooking the whole grain. When the kernel is crushed it forms hominy grits.

Countless other products are made from the kernel and the stalk. Let us split a kernel of corn in two. We find three parts—a hard, horny hull, a small germ at the point, and a white "filling" called endosperm.

When the kernel serves naturally as a seed, each part has its use. The hull protects the inner parts. The germ contains the vital parts which produce a new plant. The endosperm provides nourishment

for the growing germ until the new plant grows roots and leaves and can get food from the soil and the air.

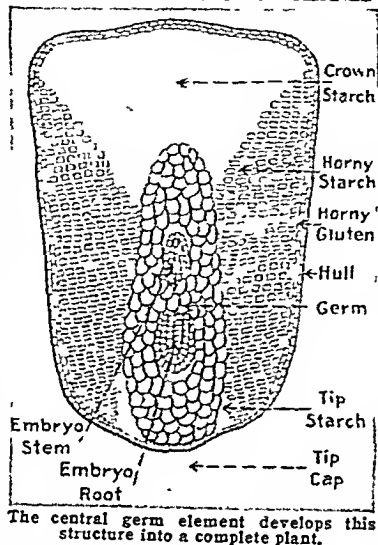
Man has his own uses for the same parts. The hull comes off as bran and has little value except as cattle food. But the rest of the kernel can be made to yield many products. The germ yields corn oil. When oil is squeezed from the germ, a cake is left. It is used to fatten cattle. Corn oil can be refined into oil for salads and cooking. Inferior oil is used for soap and glycerin (and sometimes nitroglycerin, from which dynamite is made). Chemical treatment of the germ yields a gum called "pargol," which is used instead of rubber in many articles such as elastic sponges, rubberoid shoe soles, and erasers.

#### Cornstarch, Syrup, and Gluten

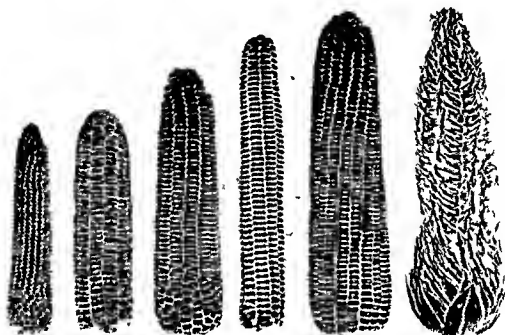
We have many uses for starch from corn. It is a good substitute for talcum powder. It is used in cooking and to stiffen linen. Cornstarch can be treated to produce glucose, corn syrup, and other sugary substances. It also yields gums that are used on envelopes and stamps and for holding together sand in molds for castings.

Corn gluten gives us vegetable glue and gluten meal. Farmers mix the meal with bran for cattle feed. An immense quantity of corn is used for making whiskey and alcohol. Corn cobs are made into tobacco pipes. Millions of tons of corn stalks go into a hard rubber substitute called "maizolith." A large quantity is used for making paper and wall board. The gases from

STRUCTURE OF A CORN KERNEL



## DISTINGUISHING THE SIX PRINCIPAL TYPES OF CORN



From left to right we see ripened ears of popcorn, sweet corn, soft corn (also called flour corn), flint corn, dent corn, and pod corn. The kernels are ready to be shelled and used for seed. Dent corn, which is the most widely produced of all in the United States, gets its name from the small dents which form at the top of the kernels when they dry out. Flint corn, next in importance, has an extremely hard, flinty coating around the starchy interior. The Indians knew and used all six types before white farmers adopted them.

fermenting corn or corn waste are used to make methanol (wood alcohol)

#### Many Varieties of Corn

The Indians had many kinds of corn, and white men have produced more than 1 000 named varieties. The smallest is the golden thumb popcorn plant, about 18 inches high. Some varieties have only eight rows of kernels. Others have as many as 48 rows. Colors include white and shades of yellow, red, and blue.

The chief types of corn are pod, soft, sweet, pop, flint, and dent corn. Pod corn has each kernel enclosed in a pod or husk. Soft corn is used for corn flour and for roasting ears. Sweet corn has the smallest amount of starch, popcorn the highest. Flint and dent corns lead all other varieties on the grain markets and for livestock feeding.

Corn is usually called maize outside the United States and Canada. It may be called Indian corn because the American Indians were first to grow it. In other English-speaking countries the word corn may mean any edible grain. In England it usually

means wheat. The largest exporter of corn is Argentina. Other large corn producing countries are Romania, Yugoslavia, Hungary, Italy, the Soviet Union, Brazil, Mexico, China, India, Indonesia, Union of South Africa, and Egypt. The scientific name of corn is *Zea mays*.

**CORNEILLE** (*kôr na yû*) **PIERRE** (1606-1684) The French playwright Pierre Corneille lives in the history of the theater as the father of French tragedy. In Corneille's time French dramatists were bound by certain rules called *Unités*. All action in plays had to be confined to 24 hours, with as few scene changes as possible; all plays had to have five acts and no violence could take place in view of the audience.

Restricted by these rules, other men wrote second-rate plays. Corneille followed the same rules and wrote what were considered masterpieces in his time. Students today read his plays, but they are rarely produced on the stage. His noble heroes come to tragic ends through the overwhelming forces of fate.

His verses are powerful; his ideas are firm and clear-cut. His greatest work is 'The Cid'. The story is based on the life and exploits of an 11th-century Spanish hero. Corneille's plays were very popular, but he often quarreled with his critics and with his patron, Cardinal Richelieu.

Corneille was born in Rouen, in Normandy, June 6, 1606. His father was a magistrate and the boy was educated to be a lawyer. His first play was produced when he was 23. He was married at 34 and had six children. He lived a middle-class existence, very different from the grand lives portrayed in his plays. He died Sept. 30, 1684.

Corneille's chief works were: 'Médée' (1635); 'Le Cid' (The Cid) (1636); 'Horace' (1640); 'Cinna' (1640); 'Polyeucte' (1642?); 'Le Menteur' (The Liar) (1642); 'Andromède' (1650); 'Don Sanche d' Aragon' (Don Sancho of Aragon) (1650); and 'Oedipe' (1659).

**CORONADO** (*kô-rô-nâ-dô*), FRANCISCO VÁZQUEZ DE (1510-1549). One of the strangest journeys ever made in search of gold was led by the Spaniard Francisco Coronado. He expected to find seven cities filled with treasure in the wilderness north of Mexico. For two years he led an army of men over thousands of miles of unmapped country. Instead of wealth he found nothing but poor Indian villages. But he established Spain's later claim to land which is now about one-third of the United States. It stretched from California into Oklahoma and Kansas.

Coronado made this futile journey more than four hundred years ago. He did so because in his time men were ready to believe almost any wild story about gold. While Coronado was still young, vast stores of gold were found in Mexico and Peru. Captive Indians tried to escape torture by telling the Spaniards that gold was always to be found "somewhere near."

Coronado was born in a noble family of Salamanca, Spain, in 1510. He was a younger son, and therefore had to win his own fortune. He grew up hearing tales of fortune and adventure to be won in the New World. As a young man at court he became friendly with Antonio de Mendoza, one of the king's favorites. Mendoza was appointed viceroy of New Spain in 1535, and Coronado accompanied him to America. In Mexico City Coronado married wealthy Beatriz Estrada, whose father had been royal treasurer of New Spain. In 1538 Mendoza made Coronado an alderman of Mexico City. The next year he became governor of New Galicia, a province in western Mexico.

#### The Seven Cities of Cibola

Explorers returning from the north brought back stories of the wealthy "Seven Cities of Cibola." The news excited all the Spaniards in Mexico, and Mendoza promptly organized an expedition to seize the treasure. He was glad also to send the idle young nobleman and soldiers of his court on the errand before they caused trouble at home.

Mendoza made Coronado the commander of the expedition. It had about 230 horsemen; 60 foot soldiers; about 1,000 Indian warriors and Indian and Negro servants; several Franciscan friars; and two white

women, wives of expedition members. There were hundreds of extra horses and pack animals, and herds of cattle and sheep for meat supply. Their weapons were bronze field pieces for hurling stones,arquebuses (forerunners of muskets), and crossbows, lances, swords, and daggers.

Coronado led his party from Culiacán, a northern outpost of New Galicia, in April 1540. The expedition advanced north and came upon the first of the "seven cities" in July. It proved a vast disappointment. There were no gold and jewels. The "Seven Cities of Cibola" were actually the Indian pueblos of present-day Zuñi in western New Mexico. From here Coronado sent out scouting parties. One party discovered the Grand Canyon. Another found more pueblos in a fertile area of the Rio Grande Valley.

Here the expedition spent the winter. New hope came when a Pueblo slave, a plains Indian, told of a new land to the northeast. He reported that its capital, Quivira, was richer than anything the Spaniards had dreamed of. With 30 men and the slave as guide, Coronado set forth.

On the plains of the Texas Panhandle they saw their first herd of buffalo (bison). After wandering for months they found Quivira in central Kansas. But it held only Indian tepees. The slave confessed that his story was invented to lure the Spaniards to their death on the plains. He was executed. Coronado brought his men back to the Rio Grande.

After spending a second winter in the pueblos, the expedition started homeward. The tattered army followed a weary route over deserts and mountains in blazing summer heat. In the autumn of 1542 Coronado led only about 100 men into Mexico City. The remainder of those who survived trailed in during the next months. In 1544 Coronado was charged with corruption and negligence and removed as governor of New Galicia. He returned to Mexico City, where he retained his post as alderman until he died in 1549.

**COROT** (*kô-rô*), JEAN BAPTISTE CAMILLE (1796-1875). Before the period of the French Impressionists, with their daring use of color, one of the leading painters of the 19th century was Camille Corot. His classic landscapes and figures are still much admired, and his paintings form a part of most large museum and private collections.

Corot was born in Paris on July 17, 1796. His parents operated a successful dressmaking establishment, and they gave the boy a good education. After attending college at Rouen, he was apprenticed to a cloth merchant. Corot did not like the work, and after five years he won his parents' reluctant consent to study art. They had to support him for many years. Long after he had won acclaim from art critics, he still could not sell his paintings.

He studied under teachers in Paris and Rome and later traveled over Europe in search of new scenes to paint. He never married. Late in life he began to earn great sums for his work; but he continued to live simply, and he gave generous help to young painters and others. He died Feb. 22, 1875.

The tranquil land capes Corot loved to paint reflect his own happy life. He never suffered privation or lacked friends. For many years only his pupils and fellow artists found beauty in the quiet tones and shades he used for misty dawns, hazy trees and mirroring waters. In later life honors were heaped upon him. He won several medals and was made an officer of the Legion of Honor. He was one of the greatest of the Barbizon school, a group of artists who did much of their work at the little village of Barbizon on the edge of the forest of Fontainebleau (see Painting section on List of Terms). He has been called the lyric artist and his pictures have been described as painted music.

Corot's paintings are widely distributed. Boston's Art Museum displays the famous Forest of Fontainebleau. The Chicago Art Institute has 'Just before Sunrise'. The New York Metropolitan Museum has 'Villle d'Avray'. The popular 'Dance of the Nymphs' is in the Louvre, Paris.

**CORPORATIONS** Every day each of us does some business with a corporation. Corporations make and distribute most of the things we buy. They supply services such as gas, electricity, telephone and transportation. They publish newspapers and books and furnish radio and television programs. They run private colleges, churches, hospitals, charitable institutions and cooperative enterprises. Even towns and cities are incorporated. Most wage earners are employed by corporations. Many people receive some of the income from lending their savings to corporations.

We usually think of a corporation as a big business. Actually most corporations are small. A small business, however, could function without the corporate form of organization. For the big business it is indispensable. Great sums of money are needed to build a railway or set up a factory using mass-production methods. This money must be secured from many people. No one would invest his savings in a large business if he were responsible for all its debts—as he would be in a personal enterprise or a partnership. He may be willing, however, to risk some of his savings in a corporation because he knows he can lose only the money he puts in. This is called *limited liability*. In England and Canada *Ltd.* (limited) is the last word in a corporation name. In the United States *Inc.* (incorporated) usually follows the name of the corporation.

Suppose three men decide to form a corporation to manufacture shoes. They first apply for a charter from a state government. The charter states the name of the corporation, its purpose, the names of the founders and the amount of money that will be invested in the business. This investment is called the *capital stock*. It is divided into parts called *shares*. The incorporators may buy all the shares of stock or sell some to the public (see Stocks and Bonds).

The shareholders then hold a meeting and elect a board of directors. The number of votes each casts is proportionate to the number of shares he holds. The board of directors then appoints the president of the

corporation and other executive officers. (In a small company such as a retail store the powers of the stockholders' board of directors and president may all be held by a single individual.) The corporation may then set up a factory, buy machinery, hire a manager and workers and start manufacturing. The profits go to the shareholders as *dividends*. The board of directors declares when a dividend should be paid and how much. At stated times usually every year the board calls a meeting of shareholders to vote on certain matters. But the shareholders have little part in running the business.

A corporation is regarded legally as a *person*. It may buy and sell property and it may borrow money (by issuing bonds). But unlike a person it does not die. The original shareholders may all sell their stock, but the corporation goes on unless the business fails or the shareholders vote to dissolve it.

State laws control each class of corporation. Those that deal in interstate commerce or communications come under federal laws as well. Federal antitrust laws forbid industrial corporations to acquire monopolies (unless based on a patent) or to enter into agreements to fix prices (see Monopolies, Trusts). However, certain service corporations—such as telephone, gas and electric companies—are granted monopolies by public franchise. They are called *public utilities* and are subject to strict government control (see Public Utilities). Insurance companies, investment trusts and banks also come under special public supervision.

The idea of a corporate body as a continuing legal personality goes back to very ancient times. Roman law recognized corporate bodies distinct from the individuals comprising them. In the Middle Ages the church regarded monasteries and abbeys as 'fictitious' persons that could own large estates though each monk took an oath of poverty. The first corporation to issue stock was probably the Dutch East India Company in 1602. Its example was soon copied by the famous British East India Company. The Industrial Revolution which demanded larger business units stimulated the growth of joint-stock companies. Today giant corporations form the very center of industrial organization in the United States. They lead in technological research and their wage scales and labor relations set standards for the nation.

**CORPUS CHRISTI, TEX.** The south Texas city of Corpus Christi owes its rapid growth to a fine harbor and to nearby farms, ranches and oil wells. Corpus Christi Bay opens on the Gulf of Mexico and the city stands on a 40- to 50 foot height of the south and western shores 130 miles southeast of San Antonio. The bay is protected from Gulf storms by Padre and Mustang Islands.

The city is the commercial and shipping center for 24 Texas counties and an all year recreation area. Within 150 miles are some 13,000 wells that produce gas and hundreds of thousands of barrels of petroleum a day. The industries include oil refineries, cotton seed, chemical, cement and corn products plants and

a zinc smelter. The farms and ranches of the area produce cotton, corn, winter truck crops, and dairy and beef cattle.

The Corpus Christi port annually ships some 9,000,000 tons. Much of this tonnage goes by ocean oil tanker and freighter; the balance goes by barge up the Intracoastal Waterway to the Mississippi River and thence on to the markets of the central states. Corpus Christi is the seat of Nueces County and the University of Corpus Christi. A great naval air station is close by.

The bay was visited and named Corpus Christi (Body of Christ) by Spaniards in the 16th century. An American trading post was built on the bay in 1839. The shallow barbor did not become a deep-water port until a Gulf storm destroyed Port Aransas on Mustang Island, in 1919. Federal aid was then won for dredging a 21-mile channel to Corpus Christi. The port was opened in 1926. In 1930 the area began to produce petroleum in commercial quantities. The city government is the council-manager form. Special government bodies include water and port authorities. Population (1950 census), 103,287.

**CORSICA.** The island of Corsica lies in the Mediterranean Sea directly south of Genoa, Italy. It is a department of France, but the people speak Italian. The French purchased it from Genoa in 1768—a year before the birth of Corsica's most famous son, Napoleon Bonaparte. The modest house where he was born still stands in Ajaccio, the capital, on the west coast. The largest city is Bastia, a port on the northeast coast.

The climate is balmy and the scenery is spectacular. Densely forested mountains cover the interior. Narrow white beaches edge the shore. The lower mountain slopes are covered with evergreen shrubs (called *maquis*). Tourists can smell the fragrance of them when still miles out at sea. Higher up grow chestnut trees, and still higher, pines.

Fishermen live in rough stone huts along the shore. A few miles back are peasant villages, built like fortresses for defense and clinging to rocky pinnacles. The peasants grow grapes and olives on the slopes and fruit in the valleys. They also raise sheep, cattle, and goats. Those who live still higher up in the mountains graze pigs on chestnuts and make bread of chestnut flour.

The Corsicans were long noted for their vendettas, or blood feuds. The French gradually brought order to the land and built roads, bridges, and schools. Area, 3,367 square miles; population (1946 census), 267,873.

**CORTEZ** (*kôr'tēz*), HERNANDO (1485–1547). The Spanish soldier Cortez became the "conqueror of Mexico" largely because of his habit of doing unexpected things. As a boy he was quiet and modest in appearance but bold and unruly in action. His father, a poor nobleman living in the small town of Medellín in southwestern Spain, thought Hernando would make a good lawyer and sent him to study at Salamanca. But young Cortez was soon expelled from the university for disorderly conduct. Efforts to interest

him in mining and stock raising also failed. What he wanted was a life of adventure.

America had been discovered when he was about seven years old. When he was about 18 he sailed for the island of Hispaniola, then the Spanish headquarters in the West Indies. There he had seven years' experience as a soldier. In 1511 he sailed under Diego Velásquez to help conquer Cuba. For his ability he was made *alcalde* (mayor-judge) of Santiago.

When Juan de Grijalva in 1518 reported his discovery of Mexico, Diego Velásquez picked Cortez as his deputy to establish a colony there. But the young officer went about his preparations in a way that made Velásquez suspect him of ambitions beyond his orders. Velásquez therefore canceled the expedition to Mexico.

Cortez, however, had been waiting too long for such a chance to give it up. He hurriedly assembled what men and equipment he could and set sail. With him were about 600 Spaniards, about 200 island Indians, and several cannon and horses. He rounded the peninsula of Yucatan and touched Mexico first on the coast of what is now the state of Tabasco.

Here he had a sharp battle with Indians. Only his horses and cannon enabled him to win. He took many captives, including a young woman to whom he gave the Spanish name Marina. She became devoted to him and acted as interpreter. Then he continued up the coast. On April 21, 1519, he landed near the site of Vera Cruz (see Vera Cruz). There, to prevent all thought of retreat, he burned his ships.

Leaving a small force on the coast, he led the remainder into the high mountainous interior. The change from tropical heat to bitter cold killed many. The warlike Tlaxcalans attacked—300 Indians to every Spaniard. After three separate battles, the vanquished Indians became allies of the Spaniards and thousands joined the Spanish force when it marched to Tenochtitlán, the Aztec capital (now Mexico City).

The Aztecs were uncertain how to treat the invaders. Were they ordinary enemies bent on conquest? Or were they messengers of the white god Quetzalcoatl? According to Aztec belief, this god had left Mexico ages ago with a promise to return. A detachment of Aztec warriors tried to stop the Spaniards on the road but were driven off. On Nov. 8, 1519, Cortez reached Tenochtitlán and was graciously received by Montezuma, the Aztec emperor. The visitors were amazed at the wealth and civilization they found. They also were horrified by the Aztec custom of offering human sacrifices to their gods (see Aztecs).

Scarcely had Cortez established headquarters in the capital when he learned the Aztecs had plundered Vera Cruz. Swiftly he seized Montezuma and forced him to surrender the attackers. The emperor, closely guarded, watched their execution at the palace gates.

Meanwhile Velásquez had sent a force of 1,400 soldiers under Pánfilo de Narváez to arrest Cortez and bring him back to Cuba. Cortez with only 265 of his men went to meet Narváez, defeated his army, and then

rejoined most of the survivors under his own banner. He returned to the Aztec capital at the head of more than 1,600 Spanish soldiers and a host of Tlaxcalan warriors.

He got back just in time. The leader of the garrison, Pedro de Alvarado, fearing treachery, had slaughtered 600 Mexican nobles at a religious festival. As Cortez and his men reached the Spanish headquarters in the heart of the city, they were attacked by thousands of Aztec warriors. Many Spaniards were killed, hundreds were wounded. Montezuma, brought from his prison to pacify his people, was stoned by them so that he later died. When Cortez asked the attackers to let him leave the city, the Indians replied that not a single life would be spared. To fight their way out was the Spaniards' only hope. The running battle lasted for days. At the end, when his broken army was surrounded and apparently doomed, Cortez and three others hewed their way toward the chief town of the Aztecs, killed him and seized his banner. Dismayed by this miracle, the Aztecs withdrew. With less than 500 of his men left alive, Cortez in July 1519 made his way back to his Tlaxcalan allies.

To the astonishment of his followers, he refused to admit failure. The Aztec capital was protected in great part by extensive lakes, lagoons and canals. So Cortez determined to return to the attack by water as well as by land. To Martin López, expert ship designer and builder, fell the job of constructing 13 brigantines from Tlaxcalan forests. Built 60 miles from water, they were carried through the mountains in sections and reassembled. They were launched the following April. Cortez was able to recruit his forces by winning over a second detachment of Spaniards sent against him by Velásquez. He now had 900 white soldiers and 50,000 Tlaxcalans.

The end of May saw the siege of Tenochtitlán begun. With their food and water supplies cut off, the Aztecs subsisted on rain water and rats. The ships fired incessantly upon the city. House by house, the city was wrecked and burned, until only a quarter of it remained. On August 13, 1521, Guatemoc, the new Aztec emperor, surrendered. So fell the great empire of the Aztecs. Only 70,000 remained alive. More than a quarter of a million had died in battle or from illness and starvation.

The Spaniards ransacked what remained of the city, but nowhere could they find Montezuma's treasure, which they had seen a year before. Furious, angry they poured oil on the feet of Guatemoc and ignited it. Either he did not know its whereabouts or would not tell. The treasure was never found.

The next seven years Cortez spent in establishing peace among the Indians of Mexico and developing mines and farmlands. In 1528 he went home and was received with great honor by Charles V. But he had no gift for courtly politics. When he returned to Mexico, he went merely as a military commander. He explored Lower California in 1534-35 and served as a volunteer



HERNANDO CORTÉZ  
Conqueror of Mexico

against the pirates of Algiers in 1541. The same year he led an expedition against the Mayas of Yucatán. He died near Seville Dec. 2, 1547. He was buried in Mexico but was moved several times. The last interment was in the church of the Hospital of Jesus Nazareno, which he had founded in Mexico City. From 1823 to 1946 the casket was concealed in the walls to prevent desecration due to anti-Spanish feeling.

**COSMOS** Each year the graceful cosmos, a native of Mexico and tropical America, becomes increasingly popular. Its bright aster-like flowers with their tall, filmy-leaved stems are as much desired for bouquets as in flower beds, and the fact that its season of bloom comes in the fall, when al-

most all other outdoor plants are through blooming, adds greatly to its popularity. The plants grow to a height of from three to six or even ten feet with red, purple, yellow or white flowers. In recent years plant breeders have much improved the species, increasing the flower from an inch or two to three or even four inches across and shortening the plant stem.

Cosmos should be grown in rather sandy soil since a very rich loam tends to produce an overabundance of foliage and few flowers. Seeds should be sown in doors in April, then potted and transplanted when the frost time is definitely passed. Unless so treated they do not flower early.

*Cosmos bipinnatus* and *cosmos sulphureus* (yellow) are the species best known. Black cosmos is a tender annual growing only 12 to 15 inches high.

**COSACKS** Fighters, farmers—these are the Cosacks, one of the proudest peoples of Russia. They are descended from pioneers and outlaws. In the 15th century many Russians fled from serfdom and escaped to the islands and frontier lands of the Don, the Dnieper and middle Ural rivers.

They took the name "Cossack" from Kazakh, a district near the Caspian Sea. They formed three hosts or semi-independent states, each governed by an elected council and a *hetman*, or headman. With their reckless love of freedom and adventure, they fought off the troops of the czars and looted caravans. Unable to quell them, Russian rulers decided to allot them land, munitions and some supplies in return for military service as special cavalry troops.

The Cossacks lived in villages and worked their land in common. They were the few who had some democracy in czaristic Russia. They paid very little taxes and gradually developed into a privileged class.

The Cossacks' record as special, ciack cavalry for the czars was savage. Whenever the oppressed people gathered to plead for better living, wildly charging Cossacks galloped through the streets, slashing with leaded whips and sabers. Russians everywhere dreaded the alarm, "The Cossacks are coming!"

In the Russian revolution during World War I the Cossacks lost their privileges. They turned to farming and highly developed their rich grain and pasture lands. They also, however, kept their stern heritage of training for mounted warfare. In World War II they greatly helped to defend Russia and throw back the Nazi forces. Though many Cossack units were mechanized, most served as cavalry.

**COSTA RICA.** The beautiful little Central American republic of Costa Rica is unusual. Unlike other Latin American nations it has had few revolutions and wars. Costa Rica has very few pure-blooded Indians and relatively few *mezizos*. Nearly all its people are of pure Spanish ancestry. It has a high level of literacy—even most peasants can read and write.

With an area of 19,652 square miles Costa Rica is a little larger than Vermont and New Hampshire combined. It is a land of tropical coastal lowlands, cool mountains, and a central plateau of "eternal spring," where the temperature ranges from 59° to 77° F. The plateau, some 3,500 square miles in area, rises from 3,200 to 6,500 feet between the mountains.

Nearly all the people of Costa Rica live on the cool plateau, where the soil is rich with volcanic ash. Most of them own and work small farms. Rising from the plateau, near Cartago, is volcanic Mount Irazú, 11,260 feet high. From it, one can see the coastal jungles and both the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. The highest point in Costa Rica is Chirripo Grande, which rises to 12,533 feet.

The capital, San José, is on the plateau. It is a pleasant, clean city, lying on the Pan American Highway. Rail and air lines connect it with the ports of Limón, on the east, and Puntarenas and others on the west. The architecture is mostly Spanish colonial.

Costa Rica is proud of its learning. Education is free and compulsory from ages 7 to 14. Spanish is the national language; but required subjects include English. Since Costa Rica is an agricultural country it also requires agriculture courses for both boys and girls, even in city schools, where the pupils work school gardens. Geometry is taught in elementary schools. The University is at San José.

For home use, Costa Ricans grow rice, sugar, beans, potatoes, citrus fruit, pineapples, and tobacco, which are carried to market in brightly decorated oxcarts. They also have some dairy and cattle farms. They must, however, import much of their food. Their chief exports and chief source of income are coffee, bananas, cacao, and abacá. Until the 1930's nearly all banana plantations were on the Atlantic coast, and

the fruit was shipped from Limón. "Panama blight" almost wiped out the fruit, and plantations were established on the Pacific lowlands. Two ports were built—Quepos and Golfito. About 75 per cent of Costa Rica is forested; some timber, chiefly cedar, is exported. Other exports include palm oil and gold.

Costa Rica has only light industries, such as processing coffee, and small-scale manufactures of consumer products, such as clothing. It has to import nearly all other manufactured articles. Costa Ricans hope to develop much more water power from their short, swift mountain rivers.

#### History and Government

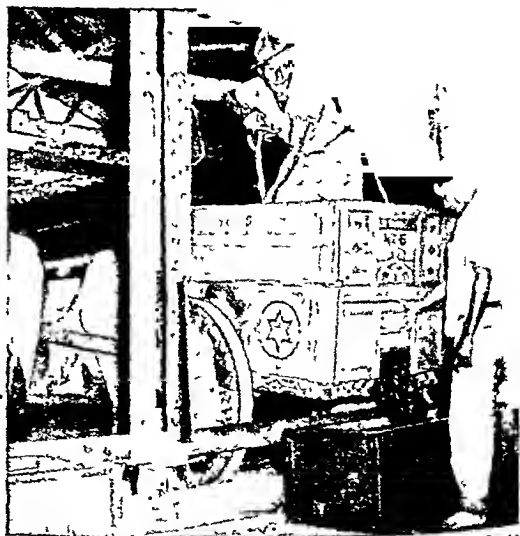
Costa Rica was discovered by Columbus, who landed on the site of present-day Limón, Sept. 18, 1502, on his last voyage to the New World. After centuries of distress under Spanish rule, it joined other colonies in revolt in 1821. In 1824 it joined the four other Central American nations to form the Republic of Central America. It withdrew in 1838.

In 1856 Costa Rica joined the Central American states in a war against William Walker, an American adventurer who sought to restore slavery in Central America. In 1857 Walker escaped and surrendered to the commander of an American sloop of war.

Costa Rican government generally has been stable. Boundary disputes with Panama and Nicaragua were settled by French and American arbitration.

The constitution dates from 1871, with many modifications. In 1948 it abolished the army in favor of a Civil Guard. As modified in 1949, the constitution provides for a president and a one-house legislature, each elected for four years. Both men and women vote. Roman Catholicism is the state religion, but there is full religious freedom. Population (1950 census), 800,875. (See also Central America.)

#### CHIEF CROP GOES TO MARKET



A planter shovels coffee from his oxcart into a bin at a Costa Rican finca. Oxcarts are the chief kind of transport. Each of the seven provinces has its own distinctive cart colors.

## COTTON—The World's CHIEF FIBER

**COTTON** We use cotton in some form every day. In summer we wear cotton clothes because they are cool and easy to clean. Through the year we enjoy cotton towels, sheets, rugs, draperies, gloves and countless other cotton products ranging from sewing thread to cooking oils. The world uses more cotton than any other fiber. Despite the increasing use of synthetic fibers such as rayon and nylon, cotton still provides the world with over half its textiles.

The millions of people in India, Egypt and China wear cotton the year around. Even in the bitter winters of northern China most people wear cotton coats padded with cotton. As the days grow colder they simply add another padded coat, saying it is two-coat weather or three-coat weather.

Some 60 nations grow the cotton plant. The chief producer is the United States. Until shortly after World War II the Southern states grew almost no cash crop except cotton. Southern farmers were so dependent on it that people called it King Cotton.

### New Developments and New Regions

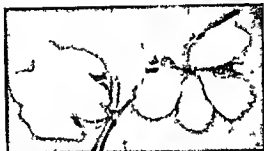
Today cotton is still the chief cash crop in the South, but many Southern farmers no longer put all their land into it. They are rotating and diversifying their crops. A vast new region, however, is now producing cotton—the Far West. Cotton farms still outnumber all others in the nation, and cotton ranks as one of the most valuable agricultural products in the nation—second only to corn.

The parts of our nation where cotton is grown is called the cotton belt. At one time this meant only the Southern states east of the Mississippi River. Today the belt stretches across the Southern United States from the Atlantic coast to the Pacific.

The belt has four great regions: (1) Southeast—North and South Carolina, Georgia and Alabama; (2) Mid-South—Mississippi, Louisiana and Arkansas; (3) Southwest—Texas and Oklahoma; (4) Far West—New Mexico, Arizona and California. The states which grow small amounts of cotton include Florida, Tennessee, Virginia and Missouri.

### How Cotton Is Grown

Growing methods vary with regions. In the semiarid Southwest and Far West cotton is irrigated. The dry level plains and valleys there are suitable for heavy power machinery, and so planters profitably work very large farms which are highly mechanized. Most of their planting, cultivating and harvesting is done with machinery. Elsewhere in the cotton belt fields are usually smaller, fenced and ditched for drainage, and most of the work is done by hand. Some planters, however, are rebuilding their fields and cooperatively buying power machinery.



At the top is the lovely cotton flower. It resembles its relative, the hollyhock. A fuzzy open cotton boll with five locks is in center picture right. At the bottom is the maturing plant.

Cotton is a warm-climate crop. To develop fully, the plant usually needs a growing season of 200 days free from frost. The cotton planting season ranges from March 1 in southern Texas to early June in northern parts of the belt. To get warmth from the sun, the seeds are planted shallow, from one to two inches deep. Some farmers plant their seed in hills, some in furrows, and others in flat seed beds—especially where cotton farming is highly mechanized.

### Planting and Cultivation

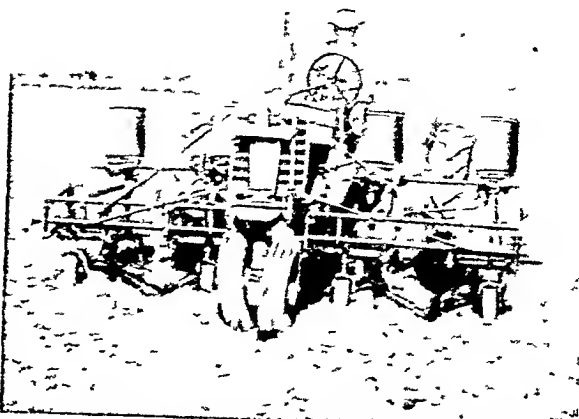
Mechanized planters are steadily increasing, but in the South there are still many mule-drawn planters.



# OLD WAYS SEE NEW WAYS ENTER THE "LAND OF COTTON"



A mule planter makes a furrow, drops the seeds, and covers them. One to two bushels are planted an acre. A good stand of cotton here varies from 15,000 to 20,000 plants an acre.



A four-row tractor mechanically plants seed. It can apply fertilizer simultaneously. On mechanized farms, a profit stand of cotton varies from 50,000 to 60,000 plants an acre.



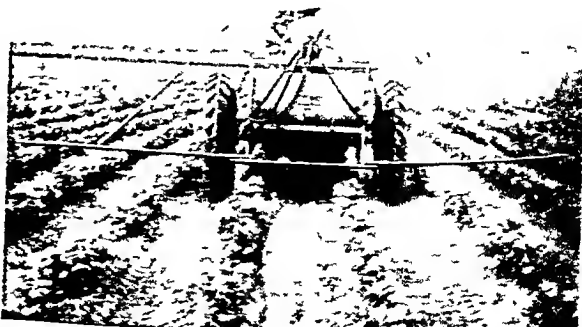
"Chopping," or "chopping out," by hand labor is a hot, tiring task, but it clears the weeds and grass better than mechanized thinning. Notice the young water boy in the foreground.



A two-row tractor stirs the soil to kill the weeds. The best way to kill weeds in a cotton field is to "get them" while still small. Farmers cannot relax their field cultivation.

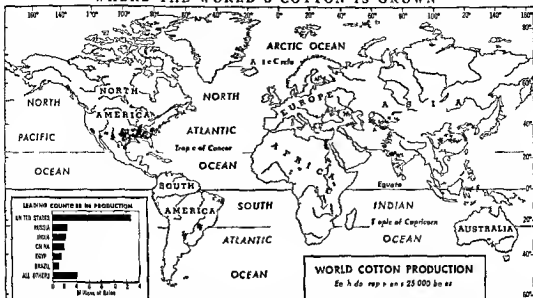


A boll weevil here pierces a cotton boll with its beak to lay eggs in the hole. When the young hatch they eat their way into the boll. The mature weevil is only one fourth inch long.



To control the boll weevil and other insect pests, farmers spray insecticides with hand tanks or, as shown here, with a tractor tank. Boll weevils do three fourths of the insect damage.

## WHERE THE WORLD'S COTTON IS GROWN



Almost all the world's cotton is grown between the equator and 37° north latitude. The notable exceptions are in Brazil and Russia. Cotton is grown farthest north in Russia. Several

Latin American countries have the right soil and climate to grow large cotton crops but are handicapped by lack of labor and capital. (United States Department of Agriculture map)

As young cotton plants are weak, the seed is sown thickly so the early plants can support each other. When the plants are from three to five inches tall they are thinned. On many farms men and women and even children trudge up and down the rows to chop out plants with hoes. This is chopping. On mechanized farms planters use machines with rotary knives or flame throwers. As the plants grow, workers must cultivate to reduce weeds and grass. Some farmers cultivate the crop eight or nine times. Machine power cultivators are increasing. Some planters chemically treat the earth to control or reduce weeds.

To control insect pests, especially the dreaded boll weevil, the plants must be sprayed (see Weevils). Many employ airplanes to dust the plants as one plane can treat as many as 1,500 acres a day.

About two months after planting, when the plant is about a foot high, it blossoms. Each bloom is creamy white. After a day it changes to red. That night or the next day the red petals fall, leaving a flattened green pod. This is the cotton boll.

The boll takes from 45 to 60 days to mature into an egg-shaped pod about an inch in diameter and from an inch to an inch and a half long. Inside are from three

## ADAPTING CLIMATE TO COTTON AND IMPROVING STRAINS

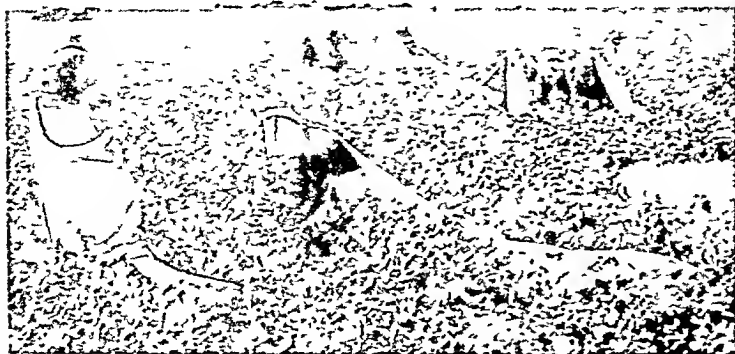


Where rainfall is less than seven or eight inches in summer, cotton must be irrigated as here near El Paso, Texas. All cotton land must be well drained to reduce action of harmful bacteria.



Here at Stoneville, Mississippi, the United States Department of Agriculture has an experimental station to test and improve varieties of cotton. Each row here is labeled.

## MOST OF THE WORLD'S COTTON IS PICKED BY HAND



Men, women, and children trail long bags from their shoulders. When the bags are full of cotton, each empties his at a certain spot in the field for individual weighing. Work hours are short.



Plucking cotton from the boll (right) must be learned. Here a skilled picker plucks all the locks from two bolls at once. He is careful to get all the cotton and avoid leaves and burs.

to five compartments, depending on the cotton variety, each with from seven to ten seeds—each seed sprouting about 10,000 fibers. When the boll splits, out bursts the fluffy white mass of fibers—cotton.

The cotton plant, however, does not ripen all at one time. Blossoms and open bolls may be seen on the same plant. This is because the branches with leaves shade the lower part of the plant. To speed ripening, many farmers *defoliate* the plant in the growing season—they use chemicals to make the leaves fall.

At harvest time, some cotton plants are three to four feet high. Some varieties, especially in the dry Western lands, are much shorter and pickers must stoop or crawl along the rows. Starting in the southernmost part of the belt, harvesting begins in July and lasts, in the northernmost part, into December.

#### Harvesting by Machine and by Hand

Today about 20 per cent of the cotton crop is harvested by machine. The two types of mechanical harvesters are the cotton *picker* and the cotton *stripper*. The picker pulls the cotton from the boll. It can

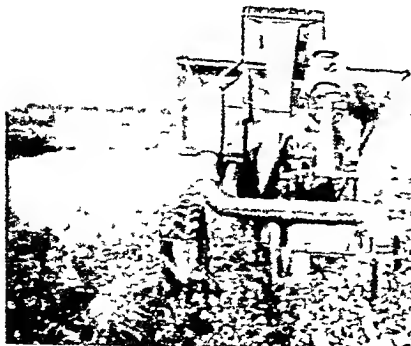
harvest almost 650 pounds an hour where a man can pick only about 15 pounds an hour.

The stripper slices off the bolls, stems, and even part of the stalk. Strippers are chiefly used in the dry Western lands. A stripper can harvest as much cotton as 26 workers can by hand snapping the bolls.

Cotton is largely harvested by hand, especially in the South. There, fields are usually picked three times. Crews of pickers—men, women, and often children—either pluck the cotton cleanly from the boll or “hand snap” it—wrenching off the entire boll, husk, and all. Snapping is much faster than plucking but produces cotton “trashy” with leaves, stems, and bits of burr.

Pickers are paid by the 100 pounds. Skilled, fast adult workers can pick about 300 pounds a day; but most adults pluck only about 200 pounds daily. Wages vary, depending on economic conditions, the market price of cotton, and labor supply. Before World War I pickers got as little as 40 cents per 100 pounds. During World War II some were paid as high as \$5.

#### MECHANICAL PICKER AND A COTTON BUYER



In a defoliated crop a power picker harvests as high as 95 per cent of the bolls in good weather. Dryness lowers the harvest.



Right, a planter anxiously watches a buyer “pull” a sample from his cotton to see its grade (condition) and length of fiber.

Later the price dropped to about \$2 then fluctuated. Many farmers say the cost of hand picking is about one fourth the value of the cotton crop.

#### Owner, Manager, and Tenant Farming

Today more and more Southern cotton farms are being operated by their owners or by managers. They hire their labor. Many, however, are still operated by tenant farmers who share the crop with the owners instead of receiving wages.

The tenant farmers are chiefly either *share tenants* or *sharecroppers*. The share tenant provides labor, tools, animals, feed, seed and fertilizer. He pays the owner from a fourth to a third of the crop. The sharecropper is too poor to own equipment. He can supply only his own labor and borrows the equipment from the owner or credit merchant at interest. He gives half the crop to the owner. His own share often is not enough to pay what he owes.

To aid sharecroppers and share tenants, Congress enacted the Farm Tenant Act of 1937 and the Farmers Home Administration Act of 1946. These provide loans to help tenant farmers buy their own land.

#### Gins Separate Fiber and Seeds

Before cotton can be used, the fibers must be separated from the seeds. Done by hand it takes a day to get a pound. It was done this way till Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin in 1793 (see Whitney, Eli).

Today in motor-driven gins, hook-tooth saws tear the fibers from the seeds. The free fibers called lint are sucked away to a press box.

The seeds are saved—some for seeding next year's crop, others to make products worth millions of dollars a year. Crushing mills squeeze from them tons of oil for a variety of products including cooking and salad oils, soap, margarine and cosmetics. Products from the crushed seeds include kerosene, putty, cattle feed, insulation, medicines, and fertilizer. Even *linters*, the fuzz that clings to the seeds after ginning, are saved. They are used for such varied articles as X-ray films, plastics flare and cargo parachutes, and guncotton for ammunition.

The cotton fibers are pressed into bales, each weighing 478 pounds net and 500 pounds when wrapped in bagging and bound with steel strips. Each is classed in one of nine grades set by the federal government. Official spot markets are Charleston, S. C., Augusta and Atlanta, Ga., Montgomery, Ala., New Orleans, La., Memphis, Tenn., Little Rock, Ark., and Dallas, Houston, and Galveston, Tex. Other cities, however, have organized spot markets. The future markets are New York City, New Orleans, and Chicago.

#### The World Cotton Crop

About a third of the cotton used in the United States goes to industry. Clothing and household items each take about a third. On a five-year average the world cotton crop usually totals some 28,312,000 bales a year. The United States grows, on the average, about 13,400,000 bales a year—nearly five times as much as Soviet Russia, the second largest producer. Other major growers are India, China, Egypt, and Brazil. Texas is the chief producing state.

## RAW COTTON GOES TO THE GIN



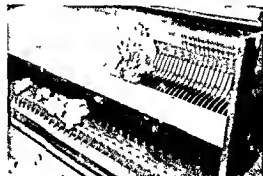
Left to right, almost natural size, are sea-island Egyptian, upland long-staple, upland short-staple, and Asiatic cotton.



The center of every cotton community is a gin, such as this. Modern gins are equipped to remove moisture, trash, and dust.



Up-to-date gins have from three to five "stands" like these. A good gin gets all the valuable lint from clean-picked cotton.



Here is a close-up of the circular steel saws. They are usually 12 inches in diameter and revolve 600-750 times a minute.

## ON THEIR WAY TO THE MILLS—AND PROSPECTIVE BUYERS



The sides of the press box at the gin are opened to let the man take the bale with jute and fasten it with steel straps.



Cottonseed oil streams down as the employee pushes a pan of seed cake from the press in a co-operative oil mill in Texas.

Southern cotton mills manufacture about three fourths of the nation's cotton goods. With the raw material at hand and with cheaper labor, they have surpassed New England, the birthplace of American cotton manufacturing. The chief cotton manufacturing states are now South and North Carolina, Massachusetts, Georgia, Alabama, and Virginia.

#### Manufacturing the Cotton

At the mill, workers open the bales and loosen the fibers. Picking machines clean the blended cotton and make it into rolls, or *laps*. In the carding machine a cylinder with wire points straightens the tangled fibers into a thin web. This is drawn through a funnel, which molds it into a *sliver*, a ropelike strand about as thick as one's finger. For high quality yarn, the sliver is combed to remove short fibers.

A drawing frame draws out six slivers and combines them into a single strand about the size of the original sliver. A roving frame slightly twists and further draws out the cotton into a thinner strand. The rovings go to a spinning machine which repeatedly draws



Storage sheds at the crushing mills house enormous piles of cotton seed like this. Between the workers is a vertical air duct.



Here in the "ring" of the New Orleans Cotton Exchange brokers buy and sell for customers. Note the quotation board at the top.

out and twists them into yarns of desired size and winds them on bobbins for weaving.

#### Weaving the Cotton into Cloth

There are two kinds of yarn. The yarn that runs lengthwise in a fabric is the *warp*. The crosswise yarn is the filling, or *weft*. The warp, which takes the strain, is given a higher degree of twist.

In a weaving loom the ends of the warp yarn are inserted to a roller. For weaving plain fabrics, every other warp thread is lifted, all at once; while the odd threads—first, third, fifth, and so on—are lowered. A shuttle drives the weft threads between the lifting threads. Then the upper threads come down and the lower ones go up, and the shuttle drives back again. On one journey the shuttle lays the filling threads *under* the odd threads and *over* the even ones of the warp. On the way back, this is reversed. It can make 200 trips a minute. (See also Spinning and Weaving.)

The woven cotton is called "gray goods." Most mills do not process it into finished cloth. They

## SPINNING AND WEAVING COTTON INTO CLOTH



Cans of sliver from drawing frames are being fed to slubbers or first roving frames. They draw and slightly twist the cotton. Medium and fine yarns take two or three rovings.



Cotton yarn is being worked on a weaving frame which makes it into cloth. Modern American mills are the outgrowth of one built by Samuel Slater at Pawtucket, R. I. in 1790.

sell the gray goods to *converters* who prepare it for the market.

Among the many processes in finishing are bleaching, dyeing, preshrinking and printing. The finished cloth comes in more than 120 different fabrics ranging from denim and duck to batiste and chambray. Special finishes include glazed chintz, crepe, water repellency, washable wall covering and mercerization (see *Fabrics*, *Mercerizing Textiles*).

Cotton is also knitted. Great machines turn out vast quantities of cotton underwear and sports wear (see *Knitting Machines*). Some cotton is also pressed into a web and bonded together into cheap paperlike fabrics such as disposable diapers.

#### History of Cotton

The use of cotton goes back beyond the records of history. As early as 3000 B.C. cotton was grown and used in the Indus Valley of India. Ancient Egypt and China also spun and wove it.

In the Middle Ages the Arabs brought the cotton plant from India to Spain. They called it *cotun*, from which comes the name cotton. By the 11th century traders brought to Europe the filmy muslins of the East, though growers of wool and flax tried to keep them out. The name *muslin* comes from Mosul, once a great cotton manufacturing city.

The earliest explorers of the New World saw cotton growing in the West Indies. Cortez found the Aztecs skilled in spinning, weaving and dyeing. Ancient mummies in Peru were wrapped in native cotton.

#### History of Cotton in the United States

As early as 1607 planters in the Southeast grew small crops of cotton, but hand picking the lint from the seed took so much labor that there was little profit. Then in 1793 Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin. This revolutionized Southern farming.

Planters turned from tobacco and rice to cotton. To supply the growing demands of mill owners in England and New England they imported more slaves to work the cotton fields. The number soared from about 700,000 in 1793 to nearly 4,000,000 by

1860. Plantations sprang up in Alabama, Mississippi, Missouri, Louisiana, Tennessee and Arkansas. By spreading slavery in the South, cotton helped to bring on the Civil War (see *Civil War*, *American Reconstruction Period*).

Before World War I the United States exported half its cotton crop. Foreign production has so increased that now less than a quarter is exported. Imports are small. They consist chiefly of strong brownish Egyptian cotton for thread and rough Chinese fibers for mixing with wool for rugs and blankets.

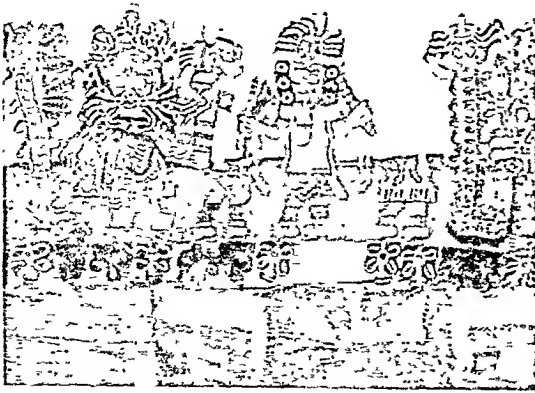
#### The Cotton Plant and Its Varieties

The single cotton fiber is a flattened, twisted tube. The twist helps the fibers to interlock when spun into strong threads. The plant belongs to the mallow family. It is a perennial and in its wild state may grow up to 15 feet high. Cultivated, however, the seeds are planted each year to check pests and to keep the character of the fiber constant.

#### INDIAN CARDING BY HAND



In India's villages cotton spinning and weaving are done by hand. The workeruffs the fibers by plucking the bow's string.



#### ANCIENT TEXTILE FROM PERU

Found at Paracas, this cotton textile was woven about 300 B.C. It may contain some wool. It is in the Brooklyn Museum.

The many kinds of cotton fall into five general classes. *Sea-island cotton* (*Gossypium barbadense*), a native of tropical America, has the longest fibers, from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 inches. Very little is now grown in the United States, but some is produced in Puerto Rico and in the Windward and Leeward islands. *Egyptian cotton* is related to sea-island cotton, with fibers from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches long. A similar variety, *Pima*, is grown in Arizona. Most of the United States crop and about half the world crop is *upland short-staple cotton* (*Gossypium hirsutum*), with staples from  $\frac{5}{8}$  to 1 inch long.

*Upland long-staple cotton*, grown chiefly in the United States, is from  $1\frac{1}{8}$  to  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches long. Asiatic cottons have strong, rather rough, short staples, often only  $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch long. They are being replaced in some Asiatic countries by the American upland type. The scientific names are *Gossypium herbaceum*, *Gossypium indicum*, *Gossypium arboreum*. *Peruvian cotton* (*Gossypium peruvianum*) has a wiry lint which mixes well with wool. *Brazilian*, or *kidney cotton* (*Gossypium braziliense*) has seeds that grow in a kidney-shaped mass. Its staple is from 1 to  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches.

Within the classes are many varieties. Some ripen early; some resist wilt; others resist storms. To keep the quality constant and make ginning more efficient many planters join in a "one-variety community," all growing the same variety. In California the law permits only the *Acala* variety of upland long-staple.

**COUNTERFEITING.** Making imitation coins or bills for use as real money is *counterfeiting*. It is a crime because it threatens the safety of a nation's money system (see Money). It has often been used to weaken a country at war. In 1812 Napoleon printed counterfeit money to circulate in his invasion of Russia.

United States laws forbid many apparently harmless acts, because they might help counterfeiting. It is illegal to alter or to mutilate a coin or a piece of paper money. Except with special permission, it is illegal to draw, paint, or photograph the face of any paper currency. To make or possess a mold of any coin or a metal plate engraved with the likeness

of a bill is also against the law. Since 1951 it has been lawful to publish pictures of coins.

The law forbids anyone to keep counterfeit money in his possession. A counterfeit should be taken to the nearest post office. The United States Secret Service will investigate the case. The Secret Service publishes a booklet, 'Know Your Money', which shows how to tell counterfeits.

**COUNTY.** In 47 of our 48 states the largest division of local government is the *county*. In Louisiana it is called the *parish*. There are over 3,000 counties in the nation. Most states have from 60 to 100 counties. Delaware, however, has only 3; Texas, 254. In size, counties range from the 20,131 square miles in San Bernardino County, Calif., to 22 square miles in New York County, N. Y. The population varies from 52 persons in Armstrong County, S. D., to 4,508,792 in Cook County, Ill. (1950 census). Most counties in the nation have largely a rural population.

County boundaries are set by the state legislature. In most states, the constitution determines the kinds of county officials. In all states but Rhode Island, each county has a board of commissioners, or supervisors, usually elective. Their terms and numbers vary; but in most states the board has three to five members. Except in Rhode Island there are several other elective offices—such as sheriff, prosecuting attorney, judge, clerk, and coroner. There are also many appointive offices. In some counties these are under competitive civil service examination.

The work of most counties is extremely varied. The county board has charge of many institutions, such as the county poorhouse, hospital, and jail. It levies taxes and controls elections. It builds and maintains roads, bridges, and airports. The county clerk issues marriage licenses, birth and death certificates, and records land deeds. The probate court administers wills. The county grand jury indicts criminals and investigates charges of official misconduct.

A county superintendent of schools or a school board manages the school system. Many counties also have civil service and jury commissions, tax boards of review, architects, and surveyors.

This great number of county offices often leads to overlapping and confusion. To reduce such waste, some counties have cut the number of elective offices. These counties use a "short ballot," by which voters elect only a county board of commissioners. The board then employs a professional "county manager," who hires all other county officials except judges. Most state constitutions, however, block such reforms. They also prevent consolidation of counties. Instead, most states now take over considerable county work—such as road building—and make "grants-in-aid" to poorer counties.

The name "county" was given by the Norman conquerors of England to the old Anglo-Saxon shires, because in organization these political districts resembled those in Normandy ruled by counts. English colonists brought the name and unit to America.



This beautiful building bearing the legend "Equal justice under law" is the home of the Supreme Court of the United States, the most powerful and independent court in the world. It stands near the national Capitol in Washington, D. C.

## Securing EQUAL JUSTICE for ALL

**COURTS OF JUSTICE.** To no one will we sell to no one will we refuse or delay right or justice. These words from England's Magna Carta express the ideal of justice for all, one of the basic principles of democratic government. To carry out this goal England, the United States and other freedom-loving nations have established courts of justice. These institutions may consist of a single judge or several judges sitting as a group (*en banc*). Their function is to decide disputes, to interpret and apply the law to specific cases. (The word court may mean the judge alone or the entire institution including the judge and other officers of the court.)

Courts of justice handle two major types of cases—criminal and civil. In criminal cases courts enforce laws by trying and punishing offenders against the people represented by the state. In civil cases they settle disputes between private citizens concerning civil and property rights. Both types of cases are first judged in *trial courts*. These are courts with *original jurisdiction*—that is, where cases are first brought to trial. Sometimes the verdict of a trial court may be appealed to a higher court known as a *court of appeals*.

### The Judicial Branch of Government

In the United States there are two court systems—federal and state. In both systems the judicial branch of government is coequal with the executive and legislative branches and is independent of them (see United

States Government). The federal system consists of the Supreme Court and inferior or lower courts. The powers of federal courts are specified in the Constitution and by acts of Congress.

Each state has its own separate system of courts. All judicial authority not granted by law to federal courts is vested in state courts. Thus state court systems are equal in rank with the federal system.

### The Federal System of Courts

The lowest courts of the federal system are the 86 United States district courts which have some 200 district judges. These courts have original jurisdiction in all matters which involve federal laws and in certain cases which involve citizens of different states. Next in rank are the courts of appeals in 11 circuits with some 65 circuit judges. Circuit courts of appeals handle cases in which decisions of district courts have been appealed.

The highest power administering justice in the United States is the Supreme Court. This tribunal is the most powerful legal authority in the world. It has the power to declare unconstitutional any act of Congress and any state statute thereby voiding such legislation. This power of *judicial review* is not expressly granted in the Constitution. It grew out of a decision of the Court made in 1803 in the case of *Marbury v. Madison* (see Marshall John United States Constitution). The Supreme Court has original jurisdiction in cases in which a state is involved,



and it may review cases from state or federal courts when a question of constitutional law is involved.

The Supreme Court consists of a chief justice and eight associate justices. Like all federal judges, they are appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate. Federal judges hold office for life unless removed by impeachment. They may retire at 70 with full pay if they have served ten years.

The Supreme Court, the courts of appeals, and the district courts are called "constitutional courts" because they were created and organized under Article III of the Constitution. To aid in the administration of justice, Congress has created five United States "legislative" courts. They are:

*Court of Claims*, which determines the validity of certain kinds of claims against the nation.

*Customs Court*, which reviews appraisals and decisions of customs collectors.

*Court of Customs and Patent Appeals*, which reviews cases appealed from the Customs Court and the Patent Office.

*Territorial Courts*, which in general serve as both federal district courts and state courts within the various United States territories.

*Court of Military Appeals*, which reviews certain cases tried by military courts.

#### The Courts of the States

State courts are generally organized on the same lines as federal courts. They deal with most cases of crime arising within the state and settle civil disputes between citizens of that state. States vary widely in the names given to their courts but the system is much the same in all states. Courts of lowest jurisdiction are conducted by a *justice of the peace*. These officials try minor criminal and civil

cases in rural areas and in small towns. They may "bind over" serious offenders to a grand jury. *Magistrate courts*, or *police courts*, try the same type of cases in villages and cities.

Next in rank are the *municipal courts* established in most of the larger cities. These courts help ease the burden of the next higher courts, the *general trial courts*, which have broad jurisdiction in civil and criminal cases. Such courts are usually known as circuit, county, district, common pleas, or superior courts. Above these courts many states have *appellate courts* that operate between the general trial courts and the state supreme court. At the top, each state has a *supreme*, or *high appellate*, court. Its decision is final except for cases which may be appealed to the Supreme Court in Washington, D. C.

Special branches of the state systems include such courts as conciliation (small claims), juvenile, probate, domestic relations, and claims (see *Juvenile Courts*). State judges are usually elected by the people and serve terms of from two to six years.

#### Courts-Martial and Other Court Systems

*Courts-martial* are military courts which try offenses against military law. They are important instruments for enforcing discipline in the armed services. Their composition and procedure are laid down in laws passed by Congress. When *martial law* is proclaimed in an emergency area even civilians may be subjected to courts-martial. (See also *Habeas Corpus*.)

The English court system was the forerunner of American and Canadian colonial courts. At the top were three *common law* courts (see *Law*). The King's (or Queen's) Bench, so named because the king originally was present in person, was a criminal court; the Court of Common Pleas handled civil cases; and the

#### A TYPICAL COURTROOM SCENE DURING A CRIMINAL TRIAL



The judge is sitting on the raised bench in the center. Directly in front of him is the court reporter who records the proceedings. At the right, the prosecuting, or state's, attorney addresses the 12-man jury. Behind him is the witness stand unoccupied. The

defendant and his counsel sit at the left of the long center table, attorneys for the state to their right. At the far left newspaper reporters sit behind a table. Spectators occupy the seats in front of the long railing, or "bar."

## HIGH LIGHTS IN THE HISTORY OF JUSTICE



At the left is an example of the harsh justice found in courts of the Middle Ages. The steward of the district lord acts as judge advised by a council of notables. The 18th-century engraving (center) shows the bifolded classic figure of Justice

illustrating impartiality. The sword represents the strict administration of justice as fairly determined by the scales. In pioneer America (right) judges rode the circuit from one county seat to another holding court wherever they could

**Court of Exchequer revenue cases.** A court of equity known as Chancery tried cases in which the older common law did not apply.

In 1873 these courts were grouped together as the High Court. The Court of Appeals was added at the top. The House of Lords serves as another appeal court although it is not as much used as formerly. Especially qualified peers are appointed for life as *law lords*. These lords also serve as the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. It deals principally with cases appealed from British colonies. English judges are appointed for life and are free from personal or party influence.

The court systems of other nations differ widely from those in England and the United States and offer varying degrees of protection for the accused. The International Court of Justice at the Hague, an organ of the United Nations, tries international disputes. (See also United Nations, Hague Peace Conferences.)

#### The Development of Courts

The need for judges to try disputes and to apply local laws and customs was recognized in earliest times. The first judges were usually the oldest and most experienced men of the tribe—the rulers or the priests. Greece and Rome developed court systems which tended to be reasonable and just. Among the Teutonic tribes that overthrew the Roman Empire, disputes were settled by combat or by magic tests. Medieval courts developed more orderly procedures but usually represented only the rights and privileges of the lords. With the growth of free towns, the king's courts began to uphold the rights of citizens against the nobles.

The law in western Europe was based in part on Roman codes and in part on ancient customs and decisions that formed the common law. Gradually courts, especially in England, gained more power and freedom from the influence of rulers. By the middle 1660s the English common law courts had become champions of a government of laws as opposed to a government

of men. Today all such democratic courts act as bulwarks of the people against tyranny.

#### Court Procedures and Protection

An individual who believes he has been wronged by another may become the *plaintiff* in a civil suit by filing a *statement of claim*. The clerk of the court then issues a *summons* commanding the defendant to appear in court on a certain day. The sheriff or a deputy must serve this writ on the defendant who may file an *answer* or affidavit of defense. If the complaint does not cover a legal cause of action, the judge may uphold a *motion to strike*. The case is then dismissed. If there is ground for a suit, the judge upholds a *motion for a bill of particulars*. The issue has now been stated and the case goes to trial on a date set by the court calendar.

At the trial, the attorneys for each side call witnesses to offer evidence, question and cross-question them and deliver arguments. The judge or the jury, if there is one in the case, finds the facts and presents a verdict. Damages may be assessed if the finding is for the plaintiff.

In a criminal case, an officer of the law arrests the person accused of crime on the authority of a *warrant* issued by a court. At a preliminary hearing in a police or magistrate's court, he may be held for investigation by a *grand jury* (see Jury). After an *indictment* by a grand jury, the accused may be confined in jail or released on *bail*. A *state's attorney* prosecutes the case in trial court. When the accused cannot pay for legal advice, defense counsel may be supplied by the state.

The jury may bring in a verdict of *guilty* or *not guilty*. If the defendant is guilty, the judge pronounces sentence, but the verdict may be appealed (see *Fines and Punishments*). If the verdict is not guilty, the defendant is *acquitted* and the Constitution forbids appeal (*double jeopardy clause*). A jury that cannot reach a decision is said to be *hung*, and a new trial with a new jury may be ordered.

A judge exercises great care in deciding what evidence the jury can properly consider. He will rule out evidence which tends to be unreliable, such as personal opinions and "hearsay." Opposing counsel may object to certain questions or points of evidence. The

judge then *sustains* or *overrules* the objection. Such arguments and decisions are necessary for a controlled disclosure of facts. In a criminal case the judge explains, in his closing charge to the jury, that a verdict of "guilty" must mean certainty "beyond a reasonable doubt." In a civil case, the finding needs only to agree with the "preponderance of evidence."

Throughout the trial the judge uses *precedents* to help him make decisions. He strives to be consistent with himself and with other courts, contemporary and past (*stare decisis*). This helps preserve the people's confidence in their courts. (See table of Legal Terms in Fact-Index.)

**COVENTRY, ENGLAND.** Its long past, crowded with incident and legend, combines with its modern industrial importance to make Coventry one of England's most interesting cities. Situated about 18 miles east of Birmingham, in the heart of the Midlands, it has ready access to raw materials and excellent transportation for its products. Automobile and electrical engineering industries are centered here. Important manufactures include airplanes, machine tools, bicycles, watches, ribbons, and some textiles.

According to tradition, Coventry was founded in the middle of the 11th century, when Earl Leofric established a Benedictine monastery there. Not long after, the story goes, his wife, Lady Godiva, interceded for the townsfolk on whom Leofric had levied a tax so heavy that they would starve if they paid it. Contemptuously the Earl agreed to remit the tax if Godiva would ride naked through the town at noonday. Godiva made this promise known to the people so that they should stay indoors behind drawn blinds. "Peeping Tom" ventured to look out and was struck blind.

The familiar phrase "send to Coventry," meaning to ostracize a person for objectionable conduct, probably came from an incident of the Puritan revolution against Charles I. Citizens of Birmingham captured some followers of the king and sent them to Coventry, which was strong for the revolution.

During the second World War, German bombers devastated the city. They destroyed the historic St.

Michael's cathedral, except the beautiful spire, and demolished many picturesque half-timbered buildings dating from the 15th and 16th centuries. Temporary structures served until the city could be rebuilt. Population (1951 census, preliminary), 258,211.

### THE COWPEA AND ITS PODS



Although it is called a pea, this plant is really a bean. Notice the long pods and the broad leaves.

**COWPEA.** What clover does for the North and the West in providing forage and enrichment of the soil, the cowpea does for the region south of the clover belt. All its parts are rich in nitrogen, and plowing it under enriches a field for succeeding crops. It may be fed to animals as hay, silage, or pasture. Its seeds are also highly nutritious.

The cowpea is more closely related to the bean than to the pea. It varies greatly in form, depending upon soil and climate. Some varieties are erect or bushlike, others are trailing. The leaves resemble those of the common garden bean. The pods vary from five to ten inches and contain numerous roundish seeds.

Though it is grown chiefly in the South, some varieties are cultivated in the North. The "black-eye bean" is one of the several types of cowpea eaten by man.

The cowpea (*Vigna sinensis*) belongs to the family *Leguminosae* of the rose order (*Rosales*). It is a native of Asia and the Malayan region, but is now widely distributed throughout the world. It was brought from Europe to America in the 18th century.

**COWPER, WILLIAM** (1731-1800). Although thousands of people have laughed at his merry ballad of 'John Gilpin', the story of Cowper's life is a pathetic one. A shy, sensitive little lad, he lost his mother when he was six years old and was sent from the rectory in Berkamstead, Hertfordshire, where he was born, to a boarding school. Timid and homesick, he was persecuted by the older boys. He was afraid even to look at one bully of 15. He knew this lad by his shoe buckles and trembled at his approach.

Cowper could hardly have chosen a more unsuitable profession than the one for which he prepared. He studied law and was admitted to the bar. A clerkship in the House of Lords was opened to him, but he was terrified at the thought of the required examination. This mental strain, added to a natural tendency to melancholia, brought him to insanity. He attempted suicide and was confined in an asylum for many months.

On his recovery, feeling himself incapable of an active life, he withdrew to the country, where he was

tenderly cared for by devoted friends especially by Mrs Unwin the beloved My Mary of his poems A lover of nature and especially of animals Cowper passed many pleasant hours in walking through the fields gardening and caring for his pet hares However he lived always in the shadow of a great fear—the fear of a return of the insanity which finally did again overtake him

Cowper would probably never have written poetry had he not been urged to do so by his friends He followed Mrs Unwin's counsels like a child Believing it would occupy his mind she asked him to write poetry He did as she asked With the Rev John Newton he wrote the Olney Hymns some of which such as God Moves in a Mysterious Way are still found in the hymnals of today

It was through the suggestion of another friend Lady Austen that he wrote his longest poem The Task She advised him to write something in blank verse Set me a subject then he said Oh you can write on anything take the sofa was her reply So he sang the sofa and the poem beginning in this way grew into The Task a rambling poem filled with reflections on many subjects The poem is relieved by touches of humor and charming bits of nature description It was Lady Austen too who told Cowper his story of John Gipsy In the poems are hints of deep love of nature and the joys of country life They foreshadowed the treatment of these subjects by such later poets as Burns and Wordsworth

**COWSLIP** The cowslip is a wild flower that blooms in early spring in England and other parts of Europe Its bright yellow blossoms are often mentioned by English poets The flower stalk grows to a height of six to eight inches from a rosette of dark green ovate leaves The rosette grows close to the ground The six to eight tubular shaped blossoms hang downward in a loose cluster from the top of the stalk The flower has five petal-like sepals enclosing numerous stamens and pistils

The cowslip is one of the many species of primroses (see Primrose) Various primroses grow wild in the United States and there are many cultivated garden varieties but the true cowslip (*Primula*

## WILLIAM COWPER



The author of John Gipsy was shy and sensitive

*teris*) has never become naturalized in the Western Hemisphere The marsh marigold and Virginia bluebell are sometimes called cowslips but they belong to different families

**CRAB** The crab is a shellfish It belongs to the class of crustacean creatures (*Crustacea*) closely related to the crawfish lobster and shrimp The crab is enclosed in a jointed shell called a carapace It has five pairs of walking legs The first pair form large pinching claws (chelae) In crabs that swim the last pair of legs are broad and flattened serving as paddles On the abdomen are one to four pairs of very small legs called swimmerets In some species they are

used for swimming but usually the eggs of the female are attached to them

The eyes are mounted on movable stalks that can be drawn into the carapace There are two pairs of antennae The first pair are short and two branched, the second pair are long and single Behind the antennae are the jaws and mouth parts Crabs differ from the other crustaceans in having a small abdomen that is carried folded in a groove under the cephalothorax or united head and chest Crabs that live in water breathe by means of gills Land crabs have organs corresponding to lungs

Many different kinds of crabs live throughout the world They vary in size from the tiny pea crab which lives within the shell of the oyster and the mussel to the giant king or spider crab which may mea-

sure 10 to 12 feet from tip to tip of its claws and has a body as much as 18 inches long and 12 inches across

Most crabs live in the sea on or near the bottom The blue crab however swims very well and is often seen on the surface Some kinds like the fiddler sand rock and stone crabs live on the shore near the high water line or above and dig burrows in the sand Land crabs live several miles from water but return to the sea to lay their eggs One family of crabs found in southern Europe lives in fresh water The land and shore crabs move about by walking or crawling in a peculiar side-long fashion which has given rise to the expression crabbing

The fiddler crab is common along the Atlantic coast The male fiddler has an enlarged

## THE ENGLISH COWSLIP



The slender tubular yellow blossoms of the cowslip cluster at the top of a hairy stalk which rises from a rosette of rather coarse thick leaves

## SOME CRABS OF DEEP SEA AND SHORE

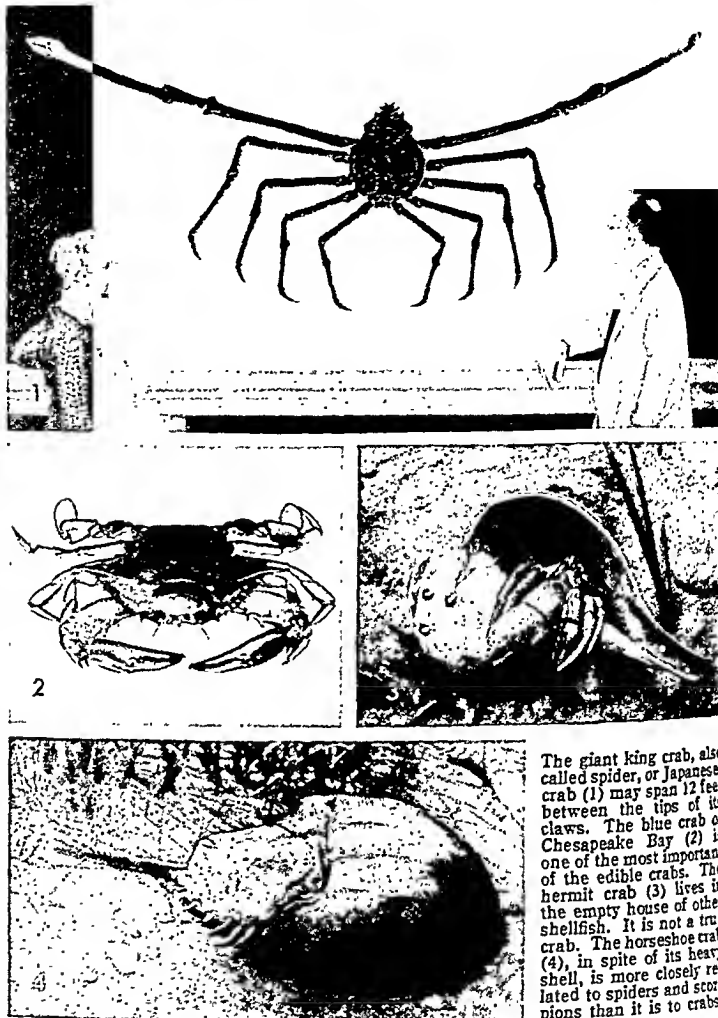
claw on the right one of its first pair of legs. It presents an odd sight as it scuttles sideways along the beach, brandishing the claw back and forth somewhat as a violinist moves his fiddle. It can burrow backward into the sand, and may use the claw for closing the opening to its burrow or as a weapon of defense. The fiddler hibernates in its burrow during the winter.

The tropical land crabs are remarkable for their annual spring migrations to the sea, in which the females lay their eggs. When the migratory instinct seizes them, they assemble in countless thousands, the males in the lead. Nothing stops them or makes them change their course.

Several kinds of sea creatures are called crabs, although they are not true crabs. The hermit crab has a long abdomen which is soft and spirally coiled. It thrusts the abdomen into the empty shell of a snail and holds onto it with the hooks on a pair of leglike organs. It walks about, dragging the shell behind it. As the crab grows in size, it moves into larger quarters. Often the snail shell is covered by a kind of sea animal that enlarges the shell by building up its open end. Thus the hermit is saved the necessity of moving. This is an example of *commensalism*—two animals living in co-operation with each other, and sharing the same food supply.

Closely related to the hermit crab is the coconut, or palm, crab of the Pacific Islands. It lives in holes in the ground and feeds on coconuts. It is believed to climb trees for coconuts. The horseshoe crab, also called king crab, is not a crustacean but is related to spiders and scorpions.

Some crabs feed on vegetable matter; others on smaller living animals; but most of them act as scavengers and devour dead or decaying material. Some forms live as commensals. The pea crab lives within the shell of the mussel and oyster and enjoys protection from its enemies. In turn it destroys organisms that might injure its host. Another crab carries in each of its claws a living sea anemone. This is an animal with stinging tentacles. The crab profits by the protection the tentacles give it, and the sea anemone finds food as the crab crawls about. The big sea crabs are usually covered with dense growths of seaweed and sponges, planted by the crabs themselves. Thus they are disguised from enemies.



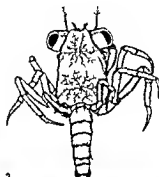
The giant king crab, also called spider, or Japanese, crab (1) may span 12 feet between the tips of its claws. The blue crab of Chesapeake Bay (2) is one of the most important of the edible crabs. The hermit crab (3) lives in the empty house of other shellfish. It is not a true crab. The horseshoe crab (4), in spite of its heavy shell, is more closely related to spiders and scorpions than it is to crabs.

Crabs are striking examples of *metamorphosis*; that is, they pass through several entirely different stages in their development from egg to adult. The female lays eggs, but carries them on the legs of its abdomen until they hatch. Each egg hatches into a larva called a *zoea*. It looks totally unlike a crab. The large body has several long spines; the abdomen is long and narrow; the antennae, large and fringed; the eyes, enormous; and the mouth parts, with which it swims, greatly enlarged. The *zoea* of the fiddler crab molts four times over a period of a month. On the fifth molt it is in the second stage of development, called the *megalops*. The legs appear for the first time, but the abdomen is still long. In another series of molts, the mature crab finally emerges. A crab molts by pulling its body through a crack across the rear of the upper shell.

## Commercial Crab Fisheries

Certain crabs are valued as food. They appear on the market either canned or fresh. The fresh crabs

## METAMORPHOSIS OF A FIDDLER CRAB



The zoea at the larva of the crab. When it first hatches from the egg it is about half a millimeter long. Pictures 1 and 2 show side and front views. 3 The zoea after five molts develops into the megalopa. Legs appear but the abdomen is still long. 4 After about a month the megalopa molts and the adult crab emerges in its first stage. 5 Four or more molts take place before the crab looks like this fiddler with its great claw.

they are killed cleaned cooked and canned in a continuous packing operation.

Various kinds of stone rock and sand crabs are gathered along the coasts for food but they are not important in the commercial fisheries.

## Scientific Classification

Crabs belong to the order Decapoda (meaning ten footed) of the class Crustacea in the phylum Arthropoda. Scientific name of blue crab *Callinectes sapidus* Dungeness crab *Cancer magister* king or spider crab *Paralithodes canaliculata*. Fiddler crabs of which there are several species belong to the genus *Uca* hermit crabs and the palm crab to the genus *Pagurus*. Horseshoe crabs belong to the class Arachnoida scientific name *Limulus polyphemus*.

**CRACOW** (krá kó) or **KRAKOW** (kra kuf) POLAND. During the Middle Ages the ancient city of Cracow was the capital of Poland and a well known center of learning. After Poland lost its independence Cracow's great university continued to be the center of Polish learning. Today the Poles are under Russian domination and are denied the right to their traditional culture.

Cracow is situated on both sides of the Vistula River about 155 miles southwest of Warsaw. The river is navigable below the city and several rail lines intersect here.

The country around it is low and flat but a few miles to the south the great chain of the Carpathian Mountains rises along the border of Hungary. The city serves a rich farming and mining area. About eight miles to the southeast are the famous Wieliczka salt mines (see Salt). Zinc, lead, coal and other minerals are also obtained in the vicinity. Cracow's chief manufactures are machinery, agricultural implements and chemicals.

## The Medieval City

The core of the city is the ancient town. Seven suburbs now surround it and the walls that once enclosed it have been leveled to form a wide parkway with walks, gardens and chestnut trees. The principal square is Rynek (market place). On it stand a Gothic church of St. Mary's and the Cloth Hall, both built in the 13th century. The main building of the university is a 19th-century Gothic structure. The library, built around a beautiful court is a jewel of medieval architecture. In the court stands a

may be either hard shelled or soft shelled. The soft shelled are simply crabs that have shed their shell in the process of growth and the new skin has not yet hardened.

There are three main species of crab meat. Blue crabs are common on the Atlantic and Gulf coasts of the United States. Dungeness crabs are taken exclusively on the Pacific coast of the United States. King spider or Japanese crabs come from the North Pacific Ocean and Bering Sea. Now commonly known as the king crab, this species should not be confused with the horseshoe crab which is also known as the king crab. The king or spider crab is the largest of the edible crabs, producing as much as five pounds of meat. Before the second World War the Japanese and Russians controlled the fisheries. Since the war the United States has developed its own fisheries in Alaskan territorial waters. King crabs are always canned. They are caught by a fleet of trawlers and taken to a mother ship—a floating cannery where

statue of the astronomer Copernicus, who studied here. Southwest of the old town on a rock hill (Wawel) stands the huge royal castle, once the residence of Polish kings. Near it is a 14th-century Gothic cathedral in which Poland's kings were crowned and buried. Other famous Poles, among them Kosciusko, are also buried here.

A legendary Slavic chieftain, Krak or Krakus, is supposed to have founded Cracow around the year 700. The city became the capital of Poland in the 14th century and its university achieved fame throughout Europe in the 15th and 16th centuries. In 1609 the court moved to Warsaw.

At various times, Cracow was ruled by Prussia and Russia before it passed to Austria in the third partition of Poland (1795). In 1815 the great powers made the small Cracow district an independent buffer state and called it the Republic of Cracow. The city passed again to Austria in 1846 and was joined to Galicia, a crownland of Austria-Hungary, from 1849 to 1918, when Poland became independent.

During the second World War, the German occupation forces made the city the seat of their government. The Russian army entered it in January 1945. It suffered almost no war damage. Population (1950 registration), 347,517.

**CRANBERRY.** American Indians first discovered that cranberries were good to eat with roasted wild turkeys. These ruby berries grew wild in swamps from Newfoundland to the Carolinas, and west as far as Wisconsin. Until 1810 no one had tried to grow them as a field crop. Even 40 years later, only a few Cape Cod farmers had learned to raise them successfully.

The low bushes—about a foot high—have long, trailing branches and tough, woody stems. Blossoms appear in June. It is said that the pointed, oval pink bud hanging at the end of an inch-long stem reminded someone of a crane's head and neck. From this circumstance came the name *crane-berry*, later shortened to *cranberry*.

About two-thirds of the annual crop is raised in Massachusetts, where thousands of acres of otherwise useless swamps on Cape Cod produce one of the state's largest export crops. Wisconsin, New Jersey, Washington, and Oregon are also large producers.

The berries ripen by September or October. Those of the highest quality are picked by hand, but large rake scoops are used in harvesting most of the crop. In Wisconsin the cranberry bogs are flooded and the berries are scooped off as they float to the surface. The picking season lasts about six weeks, and an average yield is about 30 barrels an acre. Growers in a region often cooperate to handle the entire crop. The first cranberry cooperatives were organized in Wisconsin, but others now exist in New England

and on the Pacific coast. Cooperatives grade the berries in screening sheds, store them in warehouses, operate canneries, and develop markets. The annual cranberry crop of the United States ranges from 400,000 to over 900,000 barrels in peak years. A large amount of these are canned as sauce or juice.

Preparing land for cranberry growing costs \$300 to \$500 an acre. After the peat bog has been cleared, a reservoir must be built to flood the bog whenever necessary to protect against frost and insects. Ditches are needed for drainage, and a deep layer of fine sand must be scattered to keep weeds down. Cranberry cuttings, set out in rows 12 to 15 inches apart, will bear a first crop in three to four years. In five years they will be in full bearing. A field once prepared needs little cultivation and almost no replanting.

Cranberries, as well as blueberries and huckleberries, belong to the heath family (*Ericaceae*). The familiar cultivated species, native to North America, are the large cranberry (*Vaccinium macrocarpum*), and the small cranberry (*Vaccinium oxycoccos*). The small cranberry is also found in Europe and Asia.

The cowberry (*Vaccinium vitis-idaea*) is sometimes called the "mountain cranberry." But it is not a true cranberry. It is found in northern Europe and Canada. It is also called foxberry, vineberry, and lingonberry. **CRANE.** Through the still waters of open marsh lands the sandhill crane wades on stiltlike legs. His long neck erect, he scans the countryside with keen eyes for signs of danger. Then he lowers his head and searches the water. Out darts his neck, and his long daggerlike beak holds a frog or a salamander,

which he swallows in one or two gulps. At other times he seems to prefer dry land and can be seen striding across fields, catching lizards, mice, and grasshoppers, or making a meal of corn and other grains.

Among the wariest of birds, he detects the faintest sound or sight of danger. With a few long running strides, he takes slowly to the air, flapping his wings in a lazy rhythm. He always flies with his neck and legs stretched out in line with his body so that he resembles

a great flying cross. At the same time he utters a booming tremulous call that can be heard long after he has flown out of sight.

This haunting, trumpetlike voice is produced in a remarkable windpipe, the first part of which is coiled and twisted like a hunting horn within the keel of the breastbone. From the lungs to the throat this windpipe may be fully five feet long.

In spring, the male cranes bow and strut before the females in a strange dance of courtship (for illustration, see *Birds*). A female lays only two or (rarely) three eggs a season in a nest that is often a mere depression in the ground, lined with grass

THE BERRY OF THE BOG



The trailing cranberry carpets the bogs with a mat of foliage. By fall its tiny rose-colored flowers (about life-size in picture) become shiny red berries.

## FLORIDA CRANES STANDING AT ATTENTION

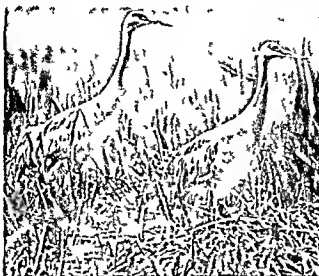
and weed stems. On hatching the young are fully clothed with down and can run about in a few hours. By fall they can take their place with the adults behind the trumpeting leader on the long southward flight in single file or in V formation.

Cranes are often mistaken for herons (see Herons). Though resembling herons outwardly, cranes are built more like their closer relatives the rails and the coots. The crane has compact plumage and the hind toe lies above the level of the three front toes. But the

heron has fluffy plumage, and the hind toe is on the same level as the front toes. The crane flies with neck out straight, the heron, with neck curved. The crane divides its time between land and water, but the heron is rarely found away from the water's edge.

Cranes form the family *Gruidae*. Of the 13 known species two are North American. The sandhill crane (*Grus canadensis*) is slate-gray with a red face and stands three and one-half to four feet tall. It breeds from northeastern California to Wisconsin and Michigan to southern Canada and winters in the Gulf states and Mexico. There are two subspecies of the sandhill crane—the Florida crane and the little brown crane. The latter nests as far north as Alaska. Long threatened with extinction by man's destruction of its breeding grounds, the sandhill crane now trumpets in areas that have not known its voice for 50 years. Its return is a triumph of conservation education.

Less fortunate is its magnificent cousin the whooping crane (*Grus americana*) now one of the rarest of North American birds. A white bird with red cap and face it grows five feet tall. It breeds in the southern Mackenzie River



These were birds are Florida cranes a variety of the sandhill crane. The marshland in the background is in Florida. For details see Alabama and Louisiana and the Okefenokee Swamp of Georgia. The tops of the cranes' heads are covered with a red shield and warty skin. Their plumage is a brownish gray.

**CRAWFISH** The crawfish (also called crayfish) is related to the crab, shrimp and prawn and closely resembles the lobster in general appearance. It has been used as food all over Europe for many centuries,

and in France where it attains a large size it is extensively bred.

The crawfish lives in freshwater ponds, lakes and streams and often burrows in the soft earth of their banks. It feeds upon insects, snails, tadpoles and other animals and devours dead or decaying organisms.

The body is covered with a hard, horny shell of chitin incrustated with lime. The shell is jointed and is thick and hard between the joints but the covering of the joints is thin and flexible so that the hinder part of the body, or abdomen, can be folded like a roll of paper. The tail is jointed and resembles an open fan. It is used with a forward thrust to shoot the crawfish backward through the water. The rounded eyes are on short movable stalks and each eye patch is composed of hundreds of simple eyes.

Just behind the eyestalks are the antennae or feelers—two long ones and two short ones. These are considered to be organs of touch. The mouth is under and in front of

## PARTS OF A CRAWFISH



Here are the different parts of a crawfish. The segments of the body and the fan-like tail (1 to 7), antennae (8), eyestalks (9), legs (10 to 12), mandible (13), maxilla (14), foot (15), and eye (16). The antennae (small antennae) (13), walking leg (14), eye on eyestalk (16).



the base of the feelers, here are the jaws and five other pairs of mouthpieces which assist in biting or holding food. Six pairs of jointed swimmerets are attached to the abdomen.

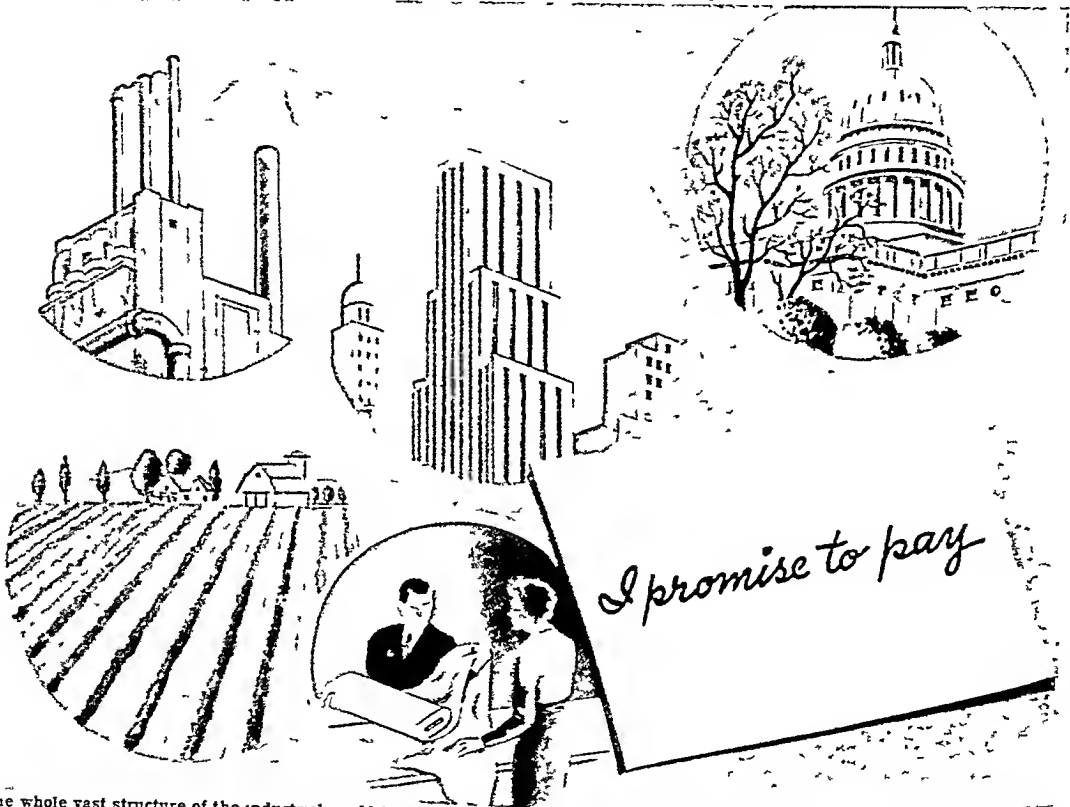
The eggs are attached to the swimmerets of the female and carried for several weeks till they hatch. For some time after hatching the young cling to the mother. At first each looks like a little round white ball. Later the ball becomes oval, with curious pouches on its surface, then this changes to a creature with a big head, short tail, and prominent eyes. Later a shell forms which is molted or shed as the animal

grows, until the adult stage is reached. After the first year the shell is molted and renewed annually.

Several species of blind crawfishes live in caves, one species being found in the Mammoth Cave, Kentucky. There are crawfishes in South America but none in Africa, although one species is found on the island of Madagascar. They are absent in most parts of Asia, but are found in Australia and New Zealand, where some forms attain a large size and are used for food.

Scientific name of European genus (also found on the Pacific coast of North America), *Asiastacus*, of American genus (east of the Sierra Nevada Mountains), *Cambarus*

## CREDIT—the LIFE-BLOOD of COMMERCE



The whole vast structure of the industrial world today rests upon credit. Manufacturing, transportation, commerce, farming, home building—none of these could exist on a modern scale without credit. What does that credit rest upon? We usually think of banks and other great financial institutions as its foundation. But in the last analysis, all credit depends upon the integrity of the average man when he speaks or signs his name under the simple words, "I promise to pay."

**CREDIT.** If you buy a week's supply of food at the grocery store and tell the clerk to "charge it to my account" you are buying goods on credit. If instead, you give him a *check* for the amount, you are using the commonest form of "credit instrument." If you spend a large amount, say several hundred dollars, for new furniture, you may give a check for only part of the amount, but give one or more *notes* for the balance, thus using another form of credit instrument. If you wish to buy a house and lot, you may still use a check for the first payment, and give the seller a

*mortgage* to secure the payment of the balance; the mortgage is evidence of your indebtedness and the holder of it has a claim or lien against the property.

The word "credit" came from the Latin *credere*, which means "to believe or trust." Credit, therefore, has been defined as "belief in the truth of a statement, or in the sincerity of a person." In business transactions, credit means confidence that men will take care of their future obligations. Business men speak of *credit ratings* to indicate the degree of confidence in which a man is held. The common expression A-1,

denoting excellence, was the symbol used by Lloyd's of London for the best wooden shups.

In business the essence of a credit transaction is that goods or money are delivered against a promise to return them or their equivalent value in the future.

Credit is the life-blood of commerce and Credit is the heart and core of the modern business structure. are statements frequently heard. Without credit great business corporations would be impossible for no one man could supply all the capital needed for them. Nor would there be enough money in the world to carry on the ordinary business transactions. It is estimated that 50 to 60 per cent of the retail trade and more than 90 per cent of the wholesale trade of the United States are settled by checks, drafts and other credit instruments. The whole machinery of banking including the use of bank notes as money, is based on credit in its various forms (see Banks and Banking).

#### Credit Instruments Defined

In its simplest form, namely, the purchase of goods against an expressed or implied promise to pay, the use of credit involves no credit instruments. The householder who makes his daily purchases from butcher and grocer, and pays his accounts later is using *book credit*; sometimes he is said to be buying on open account. But if he uses a written agreement or contract of any kind, he is using a *credit instrument*. As a result of the gradual spread of credit in modern business almost all forms of credit instruments are negotiable either by custom or by statute. The terms negotiable paper and credit instrument are not however interchangeable. A credit instrument such as a note, may be drawn in such a way that it is not negotiable, it may be payable only to the payee, without giving him the right to transfer his claim.

To be negotiable, a contract must be transferable by delivery or by indorsement and must be enforceable by the new holder, without notice to the original maker. Under the laws of most states, negotiable paper is restricted to contracts which represent money or perform the functions of money. A warehouse receipt for a thousand bushels of wheat may be assigned and may be the basis of credit, but it is not a negotiable instrument. The law says that the mere possession of a warehouse receipt is no proof of ownership of the goods described. The holder must be able to prove his title, in other words, the finder of a warehouse receipt has no legal claim to the goods. On the contrary the finder or thief who holds a check or note in proper form though his own title is not valid may pass a valid title to a new and innocent holder.

A check (also spelled cheque) like all other forms of negotiable paper, may pass through the hands of several owners either by delivery if it is made payable to bearer, or by 'indorsement' if payable to an individual. The word indorsement comes from the Latin meaning 'in' or 'on' and *dorsum* meaning 'back'. The payee the person to whom the check is payable, signs his name on the back of the check, at the left or upper end, thereby assigning his rights to

the money it specifies. If he signs merely his name, it is a 'blank indorsement', if he wishes payment made to a particular person, he may write 'Pay to the order of John Jones,' and sign his name directly below, this is called 'indorsement in full' or 'restrictive indorsement'. Checks may be indorsed "For deposit" or "For deposit to my account," followed by the signature, such checks are no longer negotiable, and must be credited to the account of the payee by his bank. There is no legal restriction on the number of indorsers. Each indorser releases his rights to the money but he also assumes thereby a full liability for the amount to the next holder.

#### Bills of Exchange or Drafts

A check is legally defined as a bill of exchange drawn on a bank and payable on demand. Bills of exchange arose out of the needs of foreign trade in the Middle Ages (see Foreign Exchange). In its simplest form a bill of exchange is an unconditional order in writing addressed to a person or corporation ordering him or it to pay a sum of money on demand or at a certain time specified. A 'domestic' or 'inland' bill is the same as a foreign bill except that it is drawn and payable within the same country. In ordinary business use the term 'bill of exchange' has been replaced by the word 'draft' or 'draught'.

The drawee (the person who is asked to pay) is under no obligation until he has accepted the draft in writing usually by writing on the face of the bill his name, the date and the word 'accepted'. By accepting the draft the drawee promises to pay the amount and the draft is thereafter negotiable. Sometimes drafts particularly those arising out of the sale of goods, are called 'acceptances' or 'trade acceptances'.

Notes, drafts, bills of exchange, and acceptances are all popularly described as commercial paper. In a strict sense this grouping is incorrect, in banking this term is restricted to such negotiable instruments as arise out of commercial transactions. A note given to cover a speculation in real estate or in the stock market is not commercial paper in the banking sense. In the United States the federal reserve banks make this distinction (see Federal Reserve System).

Drafts or acceptances accepted by a bank are known as 'bank acceptances'. They may arise in various ways. For example, a shoe manufacturer sells a carload of shoes to a retail merchant and draws on him for payment in 60 days. The retailer makes definite arrangements with his bank for payment of the draft at maturity, perhaps out of funds which he already has on deposit with the bank, or out of funds which the bank will lend him. In either case, the bank accepts the draft thereby obligating itself to make the payment. The manufacturer can now discount the bank acceptance at his own bank more readily than it had been merely accepted by the merchant. Bank acceptances are used mostly to finance foreign trade.

A letter of credit is still another form of draft, but instead of specifying an amount to be paid, it sets a maximum not to be exceeded. It is an order from a

bank or banker, addressed to one or more correspondents in the same country or abroad, instructing them to make payment to the holder of the letter upon proper identification. Each payment is noted on the letter, so that any banker may see at a glance how much has been paid against the total credit. Letters of credit, used chiefly by travelers, are not negotiable; payments may be made only to the person named on presentation of the letter. The purchaser arranges so that his bank will be reimbursed for the amount he draws against the letter. Usually the customer leaves money on deposit, but he may arrange a loan to cover money drawn, the loan to be repaid when he returns.

Travelers checks are really a form of letter of credit. They were originated by express companies for the convenience of travelers using small amounts, but are now commonly issued by banks as well. The buyer writes his name on the cover which holds the coupons; when he cashes each coupon, he must sign it in the presence of the correspondent. Banks usually charge a small fee for issuing letters of credit and travelers checks.

#### Credit Instruments Based on Promises

All the credit instruments so far mentioned represent one group; they are all *orders* of some kind, all derived from the draft.

The other large group of credit instruments represents *promises*; they are all derived from the ordinary promissory note (see Percentage and Interest). A promissory note may be indorsed, and is then negotiable. Notes issued by governments, or by banks under government supervision, require no indorsement; presumably their credit is better than the credit of any individual. Almost all kinds of paper money are promissory notes. The face of the United States one dollar silver

certificate, for example, certifies "that there has been deposited in the treasury of the United States of America one silver dollar payable to the bearer on demand." (See Money.)

Simple promissory notes have no security other than the good faith of the borrower. Frequently notes are secured by the deposit of property as collateral. The holder of the note then has a legal claim, called *lien*, against the property until the note is paid; and, if the note is not paid as provided, he may take steps to acquire possession of the property. Collateral notes are the same as collateral bonds except that they are payable in a shorter time. In fact, all notes represent loans of comparatively short duration. Bonds, on the other hand, are for longer terms. Ordinarily bonds are se-

cured by property, although government bonds and certain others may be unsecured. A mortgage bond, secured by a claim on land, buildings, railroads, or other specific physical property, is the highest type of corporate bond. Debentures, or debenture bonds, usually are not secured by a lien on any specific property. (See also Stocks and Bonds; Coöperative Societies; Installment Buying.)

**CREOSOTE.** In American countries most railroad ties are made of wood preserved by treating it with creosote oil, or "dead" oil. This is called "creosoting." This colorless or brownish oil is a product obtained in distilling wood, coal, or shale. Coal-tar creosote is used to preserve railroad ties, telephone and telegraph poles, and other woods exposed to the weather. The wood is placed in airtight tanks, and the oil, heated until it is a heavy vapor, is introduced; the vacuum and heat drive out all the moisture in the wood and saturate it with the oil. Disinfectants and animal dips also are made of creosote oil, and heavier creosote can be used in oil-burning engines. Creosote from beechwood is valuable in dentistry and medicine, especially in lung diseases. Creosote is used to preserve meats, and so gets its name from the Greek words "meat preserver." The wood smoke used to "smoke" hams and bacon in the old "smoke-houses" derived some preserving value from creosote.

#### THE CRADLE OF A LOST CULTURE



These ruins of the palace of King Minos on the island of Crete are among the remains of the ancient city of Cnossos. They stand near the north shore of the island close to the modern city of Candia.

**CRETE.** The rugged island of Crete, in the eastern Mediterranean, was the seat of an ancient culture and one of the steppingstones by which the arts and sciences of Egypt and Asia passed over to Europe (see Aegean Civilization). Excavators have uncovered ruins, telling the story of the wealthy, powerful, and highly developed civilization that arose there nearly 5,000 years ago. At the ancient capital, Cnossos (Knossos), they have laid bare the remains of the great palace of King Minos, which are so intricate and vast as to suggest an explanation of the legend of the labyrinth in which the Minotaur was imprisoned.

Crete 160 miles long and from 7 to 35 miles wide is the fourth largest island of the Mediterranean. A high chain of mountains, snow-capped for much of the year, forms the backbone, falling away in gradual slopes on the northern side, and on the south breaking in precipitous cliffs to a rocky shore. In the center rises Mount Psiloriti (8 000 feet) the ancient Mount Ida where Zeus, according to one Greek legend was born. Numerous springs water the valleys, which would be highly productive if the agriculture were of any but the rudest sort. Vines and groves of olive lemon and orange trees are grown on the lower hills and lowlands.

The Cretan people are primitive and mostly illiterate. Centuries of warfare have left them more backward than their remote ancestors. Under the rule of the Turks most of them became Moslems, but today about two thirds of the island's inhabitants are of the Greek Orthodox faith. The Moslems still predominate in Candia (Khanai), the capital and in Canea (Herakleion), an important trading city with a new and modernized port. The manufacture of toilet preparations and the export of garden products and oils are the principal industries.

Greek invaders overthrew the early Aegean civilization before 1000 B.C. After the breakup of the Roman Empire the island passed to the Saracens and became a nest of pirates. Reconquered by the Byzantine, or East Roman, Empire in 960, it became a part of the spoil of the Venetians in 1204, during the Fourth Crusade. In 1669, after a 20 years' siege—the longest in modern history, in which 150 000 men were killed or wounded—the Turks took Candia and the whole island.

From that day almost until the present, insurrection followed insurrection and the Christian and Moslem population were often fighting each other. In 1813 as a result of the Balkan Wars, Turkey ceded Crete to Greece. In 1941, after the conquest of the Greek mainland, German parachute troops spectacularly invaded the island in the face of British defenses. Germany held Crete until the war ended. Population (1951 census) 462 124. (See also World War Second.)

**CRICKET** The national game of the British is cricket just as baseball is the national game in the United States. In Great Britain and in the British colonies boys learn to play the game as soon as they can hold a bat. Every school, college, and university has cricket teams and later the professionals provide interest for cricket "fans." Cricket is also played by many big amateur clubs.

The cricket field consists of a wide stretch of turf, larger than a baseball park. In the middle of the field are two "wickets," 22 yards apart and facing each other. A wicket consists of three "stumps" (round straight pieces of wood) of equal thickness, standing upright 27 to 28 inches out of the ground. The distance between the two outer stumps is eight to nine inches, the third being midway between. Lying loosely in grooves across the top of the stumps are two pieces of wood called "bails," each four to

## PLAYING POSITIONS FOR CRICKET

● THIRD MAN

● SHORT S&P

● WICKETKEEPER

● BATSMAN

● UMPIRE

● SQUARE LEG

● POINT

● COVER POINT

● MID ON

● BATSMAN

● MID OFF

● BOWLER ● UMPIRE

● DEEP MID-OFF

● DEEP MID ON ●

All fielding positions except the wicketkeeper and bowler are named according to the defensive areas occupied by the players. Positions vary according to the bowler and the type of bowling. Here the black dots show positions for slow bowling.

four and one-half inches long. A whitewashed "crease," eight feet eight inches long, is drawn on the turf in line with the wickets. This is called the "bowling crease." A similar line, the "popping crease," is drawn four feet from the wicket and parallel to the bowling crease. These two lines correspond to the batter's box in baseball.

The bat used in cricket is usually made of willow. Its length is limited to 38 inches, but 36 inches is the usual size. It has a handle 14 inches long, made of spliced cane and a flat blade 4½ inches wide and 22 inches long. Its weight varies between 2½ and 2½ pounds. The ball is made with a core of cork, around which are wound layers of fine twine and thin cork shavings until the proper size is reached. A cover of heavy red leather is sewed on with six parallel seams. The ball, about the size of a baseball, must weigh not less than 5½ ounces nor more than 5½ ounces and must be not less than 9 inches nor more than 9¼ inches in circumference.

The game is played by two teams, each consisting of 11 men. Substitutions can be made only for injured players. The captains "toss up" for munnings and the winning side has the choice of batting or fielding first. Two men are always at bat at the same time, one at each wicket. The batters, or "strikers," must keep one foot between the bowling crease and the popping crease.

The "bowler" comes on to the pitcher in baseball. He "bowls" by releasing the ball after taking a short run from behind the bowling crease at the opposing wicket. Bowling differs from pitching in that the arm must be kept straight when raised above the shoulder—the ball must not be thrown. The object of the bowler is to hit the opposite wicket with the ball after it has bounced once off the ground in front of

the wicket. The batter's object is to protect his wicket by striking the ball out of the way or by letting it glance off his bat out into the field. There are no "foul lines" in cricket and the fielders are scattered around on all four sides of the wickets. After the bowler has pitched six times, the umpire calls "over," and another bowler at the opposite wicket takes the ball and pitches in the reverse direction, while the second batter defends his wicket.

Runs are scored when a batter at one wicket strikes the ball and exchanges places with the other batter, each exchange counting a run. The most runs allowed from one hit, however, are six. A batter is out (1) if the bowler hits the wicket with the ball and dislodges a bail; (2) if the ball, after it is struck by a batter, is caught by any fielder before it touches the ground; (3) if a batter gets outside the popping crease and the wicketkeeper, who corresponds to the catcher in baseball, knocks off a bail with the ball or with the hand holding the ball; (4) if a batter stops with his legs or body a ball which in the judgment of the umpire would have struck the wicket; (5) if a batter knocks a bail from the wicket while batting; (6) if a bail is knocked off the wicket by any fielder who holds the ball, while the two batters are trying to make a run. In the last case, the batter who is nearest the wicket where a bail is knocked off is out.

"Extra runs" are counted by the umpire if the bowler throws the ball beyond the reach of the batter, or if the bowler gets outside the bowling crease, or if he jerks or throws the ball in an overhand pitch. Runs may also be scored if the wicketkeeper fails to stop a ball, letting the batters exchange places.

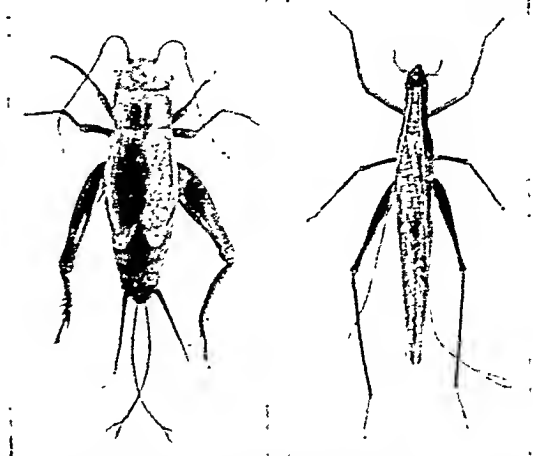
Each team stays at bat until ten men are out, the eleventh man having no partner at the opposite wicket. The game usually consists of two innings for each team, which sometimes makes a match last for three days, piling up enormous scores.

Although cricket is generally considered by Americans a much slower game than baseball, it calls for long training and great skill, especially in batting and bowling. Expert bowlers produce the same effect as a "curve" by giving the ball a twist so that it "breaks" when it strikes the ground. Greater accuracy is said to be required for bowling than for pitching in baseball. Batting in cricket also gives more opportunity for "placing" the ball, since the field on all sides of the batter is "fair ground." No player wears gloves in cricket except the wicketkeeper and the batter.

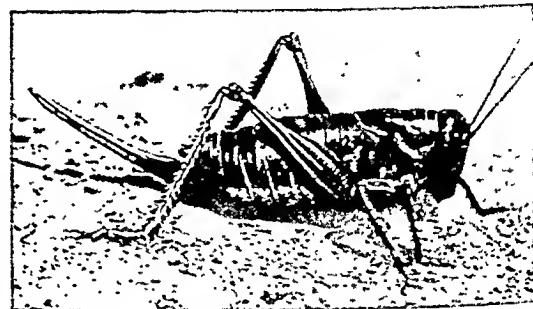
**CRICKET.** The cheerful chirp of these insects is so pleasant to most people that the expression "as merry as a cricket" has become a proverb. In his famous story 'The Cricket on the Hearth', the novelist Charles Dickens makes the plot center about a cricket who sings when things are going smoothly and is silent in times of trouble. The Chinese believe it is a creature of good omen and predict wealth for the house with many crickets.

There are several different kinds of crickets. Most of them do not fly. Hard, shiny wing covers

## FIELD, TREE, AND MORMON CRICKETS



The field cricket (left) is the familiar black insect that sometimes invades houses and chews holes in clothing. This is a female. The slender-bodied tree cricket (right), with its pale green coloring, is almost invisible, but its song is one of the loudest and most persistent of all insect concerts.



This is a female Mormon cricket. The spearlike organ at the end of the body is the ovipositor, by which it lays eggs deep in the ground. Mormon crickets are very destructive of crops.

lie across the back. Under them are a pair of tiny, useless wings which have lost their power for flight though the insects are extremely quick and lively. With their long hind legs they can jump considerable distances, and they scoot through grass and weeds with amazing speed. The antennae are long and slender.

The straw-colored house cricket of Dickens' story is a European insect. It has been introduced into the eastern United States. The common field cricket is found throughout the United States and southern Canada. It is black, about an inch long, with antennae longer than the body. It feeds chiefly on plant foliage but will eat other small insects, and it has a fondness for starched clothing. During the summer it lives in sunny fields. Under a clod of earth or a stone it digs a burrow with a small chamber at the end. Here it takes shelter when it is not foraging for food. It loves warmth and if it can find a cozy corner by the stove or fireplace it will spend the winter in a house. Most adult crickets die in the autumn, however, after the female has deposited her eggs in the ground. The eggs hatch the following

summer. The young, known as nymphs, resemble the adults but they do not have wings. They grow to adult size in a series of molts. The males are quarrelsome especially during the mating season. They strike with their antennae and leap at each other as hails biting furiously.

The familiar song of the cricket is produced by the male who scrapes the roughened surfaces of the wing covers against each other (for illustration see Insects). The female field cricket cannot sing but she is a good listener. The 'ears' are located on the inside of the front legs.

The little brown field crickets, only half an inch long, are even more numerous than the black crickets. Their habits are similar. The snowy tree crickets are a delicate light-green color. Unlike the field and house crickets, they live in elevated positions in high bushes and trees. They feed on aphids, scale insects, and decaying plant tissue. The females lay their eggs in the bark of twigs, causing considerable damage to the plant.

Although the tree cricket is seldom seen, its song is one of the most familiar of night sounds in late summer and fall. It consists of a monotonous high-pitched *treat-treat-treat* repeated indefinitely. The female has no auditory organs to hear this concert. She is attracted to the male by the odor of a gland which exudes a liquid as he sings. Both field and tree crickets vary the speed of their chirps with the temperature. An amusing game is to estimate the temperature of a summer evening by using the following formula for the tree crickets: accurately count the number of chirps per minute, divide by 4 and add 40.

Crickets make interesting pets. Plant grass or clover in a flowerpot and then press a lamp chimney into the soil. Drop in one male cricket and one or more females and cover the top of the lamp with mosquito netting. Pulpy fruit, lettuce, and crumbs of moist bread will keep the prisoners well fed.

One kind of cricket, less than a quarter of an inch long, lives in ant nests. It feeds by cleaning the holes of the ants and the walls of their galleries. Besides the true crickets, there are other insects called crickets. The mole crickets look and act much like tiny black moles. They are covered with fine short hairs. Their forelegs are broadened, turned sideways, and furnished with digging claws. They live underground in wet fields. At night they leave their burrows and fly about. The black western or Mormon crickets, also called western grasshoppers, are more closely related to katydids. They live in the western United States. At times they do great damage to crops. They were the insects that almost destroyed the crops of the pioneer Mormons a Utah before gulls consumed the pests.

Crickets are members of the order *Orthoptera*, to which grasshoppers and roaches also belong. True crickets belong to the family *Gryllidae*. The scientific name of the house cricket is *Gryllus domesticus*, field cricket, *Gryllus assimilis*, brown field cricket, *Nemobius*.

*bius palustris*, snowy tree cricket *Oecanthus nivicus*, ant-loving cricket *Myrmecophila pergamendi*. Mole crickets belong to the family *Gryllotalpidae*. Mormon crickets to the family *Tettigoniidae*.

**CRIMEA** (*kri-n-e-a*) From the south coast of Russia, the Crimean peninsula juts into the Black Sea. It is almost completely surrounded by water because the Perekop Isthmus, which joins it to the mainland, is only three to five miles wide. In the east the peninsula curves around the Sea of Azov, an arm of the Black Sea. (For map see Russia.)

Dry level steppes, a continuation of the steppes of the southern Ukraine, cover three quarters of the Crimea. South of the steppes rise the Crimean Mountains. The highest ridge, about 4,500 feet drops steeply to the Black Sea, shielding the narrow coast from cold north winds. The climate here is subtropical. Sanatoriums and rest homes, some of which were once czarist palaces, line the southern shore.

The largest cities are Simferopol, in the center of the peninsula, Sevastopol, on the southwest coast, an important naval base, and Kerch, in the east.

On the south coast, socialist state farms produce fruit and tobacco. Sheep are raised in the mountains. On the steppes, wheat, cotton, and tobacco are grown. A poor grade of iron ore is mined around Kerch. The chief industry in the towns is fruit canning.

The Crimea was for centuries the home of the Tatars (see Tatars). In World War II the Soviet government accused the Tatars of aiding the German invasion forces. After the war in 1945 the government deported large groups of Tatars to Siberia and central Asia. It also reduced the Crimea from an autonomous republic to an oblast (region) of the Russian Republic. The government brought in thousands of Ukrainians to replace the exiled Tatars. In 1954 the Crimea was made part of the Ukrainian Republic.

The Tatars lost their independence to the Turks in the 15th century. Russia annexed the peninsula in 1783 and in 1826 built the Sevastopol fortress. The first famous siege of this fortress took place in the Crimean War (see Crimean War). In the second World War the Germans overran most of the Crimea late in 1941 but Sevastopol held out until July 1, 1942. Soviet armies entered it again in May 1944. In February 1945, before the war ended, the Allies held a historic conference at the Crimean seaside resort of Yalta. Area 10,000 square miles; population (1947 estimate) 1,050,000. (See also World War, Second, Russia.)

**CRIMEAN WAR** (1854-1856) In 1853 Czar Nicholas I of Russia demanded the right to protect all Christians in Turkish territory. Actually his purpose was to extend Russian influence over the Turkish Balkans and into Turkey itself (see Balkan Peninsula). As a first step the czar's troops occupied that part of the Turkish Balkans north of the Danube River that is now known as Rumania.

The Turkish sultan, counting on the support of Great Britain and France, refused the czar's demands. Great Britain feared its route to India would be cut

off if Russia took Constantinople. Napoleon III, emperor of France, was anxious to show that he was the true successor to his uncle, Napoleon I. War finally began in March 1854. By August, Turkey, with the help of Britain, France, and Sardinia, had driven the Russian forces out of the Balkans.

In order to bring the war to a decisive end, the allied fleets proceeded to the Crimean peninsula (see Crimea). There their troops landed (Sept. 16, 1854) and laid siege to the Russian fortress of Sevastopol. Severe battles were fought in the Crimea at Alma, at Balaklava (immortalized in Tennyson's poem 'The Charge of the Light Brigade'), and at Inkerman. During the siege of Sevastopol disease took a dreadful toll of French and British troops. Florence Nightingale's heroic work as head of the hospital service did much to improve conditions (see Nightin-

gale, Florence). Not until September 1855 was the smoking ruin of Sevastopol in allied hands.

In 1856 the powers signed a treaty at Paris. The new czar, Alexander II, withdrew all claims to Balkan territory. The Black Sea was neutralized. Turkey was admitted to the family of European powers, the sultan promising to treat his Christian subjects according to the public law of Europe. At the peace conference the powers agreed also to the Declaration of Paris abolishing privateering on the sea and allowing trade in neutral goods in time of war, barring, of course, contraband of war.

The Crimean War and the peace that followed it did little to settle the Balkan problem. The sultan soon proved unwilling to treat the Christians as he had promised, and Russia took the first opportunity of resuming its advance to the south.

## DAVY CROCKETT—PIONEER *and* POLITICIAN

CROCKETT, DAVID (1786-1836).

In history and in folklore Davy Crockett stands for the spirit of the American frontier. As a young man he was a crafty Indian fighter and hunter. For many years he was nationally known as a political representative of the frontier. He served two terms in the Tennessee legislature and three terms as a representative in Congress. When he was 49 years old he died a hero's death at the Alamo, helping Texas win independence from Mexico.

In addition to his real achievements, Crockett is the hero of many fanciful stories. He started some of them himself, because he loved to tell "tall stories." Other tales were started by his political supporters. In Crockett's day everyone admired a man who could kill bears or debate in Congress with equal skill. The American people enjoyed all the Crockett stories, real or imaginary.

### Boyhood in the Tennessee Wilderness

David Crockett was born on Aug. 17, 1786, in the eastern part of what is now Tennessee. His father was a Revolutionary War veteran, and Davy was the fifth son. When the boy was about seven, a spring flood washed away his father's gristmill. The family moved to Jefferson County, and John Crockett opened a log-cabin tavern.

In all pioneer families the children had to work as soon as they were able. When Davy was 12 his father hired him out to a Dutch settler who was moving back to Virginia. Davy's job was to drive the livestock



Even as a congressman in Washington, Davy Crockett dressed as a frontiersman in moccasins and fringed buckskin clothes.

over the 400-mile route. When they arrived, the Dutchman persuaded Davy to stay and work for him; but Davy became homesick and ran away. He joined a wagoner carrying goods west and arrived home safely.

The next fall Davy started school; but after only four days he had a fight with a fellow student. Fearing the schoolmaster and his father would punish him for fighting, he ran away. He got a job helping drive cattle to Virginia. In Virginia he worked for farmers, wagoners, and a hat-maker. After two and a half years, he returned home. He had grown so tall that his family did not recognize him.

### Young Man of the Canebrakes

Davy was now nearly 15 and approaching six feet in height. He was very strong. In those days a boy either worked for his father or turned over his pay to him if he worked for someone else. Davy's father promised him freedom from this obligation if Davy would work a year for men to whom his father owed money.

After Davy worked off these debts, he continued with his last employer, a Quaker. He often borrowed the Quaker's rifle, and he soon became an expert marksman. From his wages he bought new clothes, a horse, and a rifle of his own. He began to take part in the local frolics and shooting contests. Neighbors would gather to help a family build a cabin or shed, and a frolic usually followed. The dancing would sometimes last all night. The prizes at the shooting contests were quarters of beef. A contest-

ant would pay 25 cents for a single shot at the target and the best shot won the quarter of beef. Davy's aim became so good that more than once he won all four quarters of beef.

The son of Davy's employer conducted a school near by. For six months Davy went to school four days a week and worked two. Except for the four days of school he had attended when he was 12, this was all the schooling that Davy ever had.

#### Crockett Strikes Out for Himself

By the time he was 18 Davy Crockett was fully grown. Neighbors liked the friendly young man and continued to call him Davy. He fell in love with an Irish girl named Polly Finley and they were married. Polly was a good frontier wife. She could milk a cow, tend the kitchen garden, spin thread, weave cloth, sew garments, and cook the game that Davy brought home from hunting.

The bride's family gave the young couple two cows with calves. Davy's Quaker employer gave them an order on a merchant for \$15. Davy already owned an old horse and two colts. He rented a farm and built rude furniture for their log cabin.

Their attempt at farming did not pay well and Davy began to feel crowded by the people who had settled in the neighborhood. After several years he moved his family, now including two sons, to Lincoln County. He cleared the canebrake from a few acres and built a cabin. Here the Crocketts lived for two years.

Farming did not take all Davy's time. In the tavern a few miles away he won a reputation as a storyteller. His skill with the rifle kept his family well supplied with turkey, deer and bear meat. In 1810 Davy again became restless. He set up a new homestead for his family on Beans Creek, in Franklin County, about ten miles south of Winchester, Tenn.

#### Scout and Indian Fighter

In 1812 war broke out between the United States and Great Britain. The Creek Indians, believing the British would aid them, went on the warpath. On Aug. 30, 1813, they captured Fort Mims in Alabama and killed the settlers who had sought safety there. The Tennesseans were aroused. With other frontiersmen Davy Crockett volunteered for 60 days' service under Andrew Jackson. He helped burn and capture Indian towns. On Dec. 7, 1813, he fought in the battle of Taledago, where 17 white men and 400 Indians were killed.

At the end of the 60-day period Crockett returned to Tennessee. But he stayed only long enough to rest his horse, let his wife and children see he was well, and secure his winter clothing. He rejoined Jackson's army as a member of a company of scouts. After a year of active scouting he returned home. But when he heard that the Americans would attack the British at Pensacola, he rejoined the army. Pensacola

#### WINNING VOTES WITH STUMP SPEECHES



In political campaigns Crockett toured his district and spoke from convenient tree stump platforms. The voters laughed at his stories and agreed with his ideas on government.

cola was taken before he got there. After some further scouting service he went home.

#### Crockett Enters Politics

Crockett's wife died, leaving him with two sons and a baby daughter. In the neighborhood lived Elizabeth Patton, a widow with two small children. Davy and Elizabeth soon married and joined their two households. Not long afterward Crockett moved his family to a new home on Shoal Creek, 80 miles west of Winchester.

A neighbor who had served as an officer under Jackson persuaded Crockett to support him for election as colonel of the state militia. In turn he promised to support Crockett for major. Before the election Crockett learned that the man was actually backing his own son for major. He declared that in that case he would not run against the son for major but against the daddy for colonel. Crockett won the election easily and thereafter he was addressed as Colonel Crockett.

At his homestead on Shoal Creek, Crockett built a grist mill, a powder mill and a distillery. These cost about \$3,000 and he had to borrow most of the money. Not long after they were finished, Crockett was persuaded to run for the state legislature. He



spoke at barbecues and frolics during the campaign, telling homely jokes and stories. The frontiersmen liked him and he won the election.

#### The Last Crockett Homestead

While Crockett was attending the sessions of the legislature in 1822 a spring flood washed away his mills and distillery. He paid as much as he could of the money he owed and moved westward again. This time he settled in northwestern Tennessee, on the Obion River, not far from the Mississippi. His nearest neighbor was seven miles away. Large and small game animals were plentiful. During the first hunting season Davy shot 105 bears.

In 1823 he ran again for the legislature from this new district and was elected. In this campaign Crockett, before an audience of voters, told his opponent: "I'm gonna have me a huntin' shirt made for the electioneerin'. It'll be a buckskin shirt fringed mighty purty and have two big pockets, each o' 'em big enough to hold a peck. In one I'll tote a gallon of whisky. In t'other I'll tote a big twist o' tobacco. When I offer a voter a swig, he'll spit out his cud to swallow. Then I'll pull out the twist so he can go right on chawin'." Such stories as these won the support of frontier voters.

In 1827 he ran for Congress and was elected. In 1829, he was re-elected on a Democratic ticket headed by Andrew Jackson for president. In Washington Crockett's broad, frontier humor proved popular. Most of the time he wore fringed buckskin clothing, moccasins, and a coonskin cap. His rough, backwoods stories and his motto, "Be sure you're right, then go ahead," became nationally known.

Crockett did not agree with Jackson's policies on banking and the treatment of Indians, and he was defeated for re-election in 1831. But his vigorous campaign in 1833 again carried him back to office.

Crockett's fight against Jackson's policies made him a favorite of the Whig party. The Whigs saw in him a chance to create an opponent to Jackson with the same appeal as Jackson—son of the frontier and war hero, a man of homespun virtue and rugged honesty. Crockett did not realize he was being used in this fashion, and he went along believing all that the shrewd Whigs told him. He began to fancy himself a profound political thinker and statesman.

In 1834 he dictated his autobiography, 'A Narrative of the Life of David Crockett, of the State of Tennes-

see'. The book sold well and Crockett dictated another, an account of his trip through the large eastern cities, where the Whigs had warm receptions staged for him. In Philadelphia he was presented with a fine rifle, which he named "Betsy." When Congress adjourned, Davy went home, hoping he might be elected president in 1837. In this he was sadly disappointed. The Jackson forces were too strong for him, and he could not even win re-election to Congress in 1835.

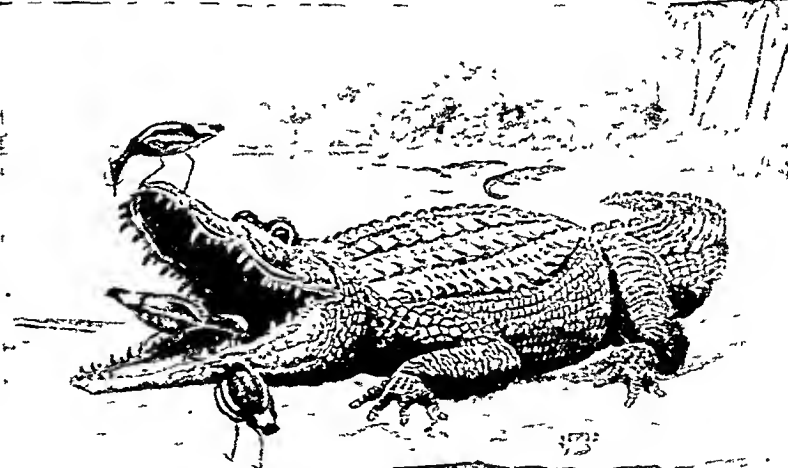
#### Death at the Alamo

The defeat angered Crockett. He declared that he would "quit the states until honest and independent men again worked to the top of the heap." He left Tennessee and set out for Texas to help in the fight against Mexico.

He arrived at the Alamo fortress in San Antonio some time before the Mexican dictator Santa Anna besieged it on Feb. 23, 1836 (see Texas). Crockett and his companions withstood the overwhelming Mexican forces until their ammunition ran out. When the Mexicans swarmed over the fort, Crockett killed more of the enemy with his clubbed rifle butt. But when the battle was over on March 6, Crockett lay dead with the other brave defenders of the Alamo.

**CROCODILE.** In most warm parts of the world deadly danger lurks in the rivers, lakes, and coastal marshes. Both animals and men must beware of crocodiles. They are huge, flesh-eating reptiles. They feed chiefly on fish, turtles, and water birds. They also seize animals that come to the water's edge to drink. Some species are man-eaters. All are dangerous when they

#### THE CROCODILE'S INVITATION TO DINNER



You naturally think that it's the crocodile who is about to dine, but you're wrong. The nuzzar or crocodile bird is a guest and not a dish in this case. He picks leeches and other parasites from inside the crocodile's mouth, and the great monster, in return, resists the temptation to close those terrible jaws. Crocodiles have no lips.

are cornered. On land they can chase their victims with amazing speed and knock them to the ground with a lash of their tails.

In the heat of the day the crocodiles sun themselves ashore. They look like great gray-green logs, 7 to

30 feet long. Close-set, overlapping bony plates cover their backs and necks. A tough, thick skin covers the sides and underparts. This part of the hide makes valuable leather. Their heads are long and narrow, and the snouts pointed. In the Americas, crocodiles may be mistaken for their close relatives, the alligators. In general, alligators are smaller and their heads and snouts are broader (see Alligator). They live in fresh water. The crocodiles prefer salt water.

The crocodile's eyes and nose rise above its flat head. Thus it can breathe and watch for prey while it stays under water. It has no lips and cannot close the mouth tightly. A valve closes off the throat in front of the air passage to keep out water. Then it breathes through a passage that leads from the nostrils to the back of the throat.

The female lays 30 to 60 eggs about the size of large hen's eggs. She digs a shallow hole on land near the water's edge and covers the eggs with mud, sand, or weeds. The warmth of the sun and rotting vegetation hatches them. Just before the young hatch, the mother crocodile bears them "coughing" in the eggs. She pushes away the mound covering the nest. They cut their way out of the tough shells with an "egg tooth" on the end of their snouts. The mother leads them to the water, and thereafter they take care of themselves. Crocodiles are about eight inches long at birth. Some of them live more than 100 years. Men hunt them in great numbers for their hides and use the musk glands in making perfume. The fat has many commercial uses also.

The largest species is the Indian crocodile, or gaviol (*Gavialis gangeticus*), 30 feet long. This is a timid fish-eater. The Nile or African crocodile (*Crocodylus niloticus*) is a man-eater. The ancient Egyptians held it sacred and embalmed its body. Skin hunters have nearly wiped it out on the lower Nile, but many still live elsewhere in Africa. Another man-eater, the salt-water crocodile (*Crocodylus porosus*), lives on the coastal marshes of southern India and Malaysia. It often swims far out to sea. These two species reach a length of 18 to 20 feet. Several species live in Central and South America, the West Indies, and in southern Florida about as far north as Lake Worth. The American crocodile (*Crocodylus acutus*), the species found in Florida, reaches 14 feet in length.

Crocodiles belong to the order *Crocodylia* (or *Loricata*). The order includes the alligators, caimans, and jacars of America.

**CROCUS.** When winter snows are melting and the March winds carry a hint of spring, the crocus is one of the first flowers to brighten northern gardens. Some bloom in the fall, but the spring-flowering species are the best known. They show dainty shades of blue, yellow, and white.

These natives of southern Europe and Asia thrive in almost any climate. In addition to the familiar spring crocus, there are many beautiful cultivated hybrids. The dried stigmas of one species yield yellow saffron. This is used to color and flavor foods, as a dye, and as a medicinal drug.

The **crocus** is a genus of the iris family (*Iridaceae*). There are about 75 species, including the spring crocus (*Crocus vernus*), some of the Dutch hybrids of *Crocus moerhousii* and the saffron crocus (*Crocus sativus*). The flowers are showy, solitary, long funnel-shaped and erect of six nearly equal segments. They have three stamens and the three-celled ovary contains numerous seeds. The grasslike leaves spring up from the corm, a bulblike fleshy stem protected by scale leaves (see Bulb, Tubers and Rootstocks). Crocus corms should be planted in the fall. They should be placed two to three inches apart and three to four inches deep in well-worked, perfectly drained soil free from clay. New corms form on top of the old ones. Thus the plants tend to work out of the ground and must be replanted every two or three years. The blossoms close in the shade.

**CROESUS** (*krōsēs*), KING OF LYDIA. We still say "as rich as Croesus" because the great wealth of this king, who reigned 560-546 B.C., made him legendary. He ruled the fertile land of Lydia in western Asia Minor. Gold from the mines and from the sands of the River Pactolus filled the king's coffers to overflowing. The Lydians in the time of Croesus, it is believed, were the first of all peoples to coin money. Industry and commerce were developed until the power of Lydia extended throughout Asia Minor.

The fame of the splendid court of Croesus at Sardis attracted many visitors. One of these, legend tells, was Solon, the lawgiver of the Greeks. The king proudly displayed his treasures and asked Solon who was the happiest man that he had met. He expected Solon to reply, "Thou, O King." But Solon named two or three obscure men who had lived and died happily. Croesus was surprised and angry, and said: "Man of Athens, dost thou count my happiness as nothing?" "In truth," replied Solon, "I count no man happy until his death, for no man can know what the gods may have in store for him."

There was indeed great misfortune in store for Croesus. Cyrus the Great of Persia, extending his vast domains, was soon threatening the kingdom of Lydia. Croesus consulted the oracle of Delphi in Greece. According to the legend, the oracle replied: "If Croesus goes to war he will destroy a great empire." So Croesus went out to meet the army of Cyrus and was utterly defeated. He had destroyed a great empire, but it was his own.

The old story goes on to relate that Cyrus ordered Croesus to be burned alive. When Croesus saw the flames creeping upward to consume him, he remembered the words of the wise Solon and cried out, "O Solon! Solon! Solon!" Cyrus was so moved by the story of how Solon had warned the proud king that he ordered Croesus to be released and gave him special protection.

**CROMPTON, SAMUEL** (1753-1827). The inventor of the spinning mule was one of three men who revolutionized the English textile industry. His improvements of the machines made by Hargreaves and Arkwright transformed spinning from a hand-operated cottage industry to the machine-operated factory process of today. Crompton was born in Lancashire, England. His father died when the boy was 16 years old, and he went to work as a yarn spinner to support the family. He inherited ambition and perse-

verence from his mother, and after his days of toil tramped to Bolton to attend night school.

The yarn produced by Hargreaves' spinning jenny was too coarse and rough for fine grades of cloth, and young Crompton set about the task of overcoming these defects. For ten years he earned a scanty living by day, and by night worked at his invention, which he was obliged to guard from his suspicious neighbors. Angry mobs at times threatened to destroy it. With no money to pay the fees for a patent or to secure legal advice, he was cheated out of his rights by manufacturers with whom he made contracts for the use of his invention.

It was 20 years before Crompton had the means to set up a small factory in Bolton, and by that time

thousands of his spinning machines were in use, with no profit to himself. He called his machine the "spinning mule," because it was a "hybrid" combining the principles of Hargreaves' "jenny" and Arkwright's "roller frame." It produced a finer, smoother, and more elastic yarn, so Crompton's invention in the end displaced the other. With minor improvements it is used in every textile mill in the world today. Yet all his life this brave genius and world benefactor, who had made wealth for many lesser men, was in needy circumstances. Parliament's tardy grant (in 1812) of \$25,000 was lost in unlucky business ventures. He died in 1827 at the age of 74 in very straitened circumstances. (See also Arkwright; Hargreaves; Spinning and Weaving.)

## The Puritan PROTECTOR of the ENGLISH COMMONWEALTH

CROMWELL, OLIVER (1599-1658). The chief leader of the Puritan Revolution in England was Oliver Cromwell, soldier and statesman. Himself a fervent Protestant, he joined with the Puritans to preserve Protestantism and the law against the tyranny of King Charles I. The king was executed in 1649. Cromwell was made Protector of the Commonwealth of England, Scotland, and Ireland in December 1653 and held that office until his death five years later.

Oliver Cromwell was born at Huntingdon, in eastern England. His father was a well-to-do farmer. When Oliver was 17 he entered nearby Cambridge University, but he had only a short time for study because his father died the next year. Young Cromwell at once returned home to farm the lands he had inherited. He married Elizabeth Bourchier, the daughter of a wealthy London merchant, in 1620.

When he was 29, Cromwell was elected to Parliament. King Charles dismissed this parliament the next year and for 11 years ruled as a despot without calling parliament at all. Finally in 1640 he was forced to call it again. Cromwell was once more a member. He immediately became important to the Puritan cause because of his religious zeal and the vigor with which he defended civil and religious liberties against the king. He was described at this time as "apparelled in a plain cloth suit made by a country tailor, his linen plain and not clean, his hat without a hat-band . . . his voice sharp and untuneable, and his eloquence full of fervour . . .; he was very much hearkened unto."

### Cromwell as a General

The people, particularly the Puritans, were gradually aroused to seek the overthrow of the king's unchecked rule. Early in 1642, when civil war was in sight, Cromwell returned to his home and set about raising, equipping, and training a "troop of horse"



Oliver Cromwell, called Ironsides, ruled Britain when it was a republic.

(cavalry soldiers). His men were full of religious fervor. (Each soldier carried a Bible as an important part of his equipment.) Cromwell would not allow Roman Catholics in his army, but he accepted devout God-fearing believers from all the Protestant churches. For the time in which he lived, this was religious broad-mindedness. This quality was to color his whole career as soldier and statesman.

The quality of Cromwell's troop of horse was first proved at Marston Moor, near York, in July of 1644. Prince Rupert, the most dashing of the royalist leaders, drove the right wing of the Parliamentarians before him, but Cromwell's forces on the left restored the balance and won the battle. Cromwell reported afterward: "We never charged but we routed the enemy. The left wing, which I commanded, being our own horse—saving a few Scots in our rear—beat all the Prince's horse. God made them as stubble to our swords." Little wonder that, after the battle, Prince Rupert gave the name "Ironsides" to Cromwell. This name was soon commonly used for the soldiers that were led by this invincible leader.

As the Civil War dragged on, Cromwell became more and more prominent. He even led a movement for remaking the parliamentary army as a whole, on the model of his own Ironsides. He again won an important and decisive victory over the king's forces at the battle of Naseby in June 1645. King Charles, left almost defenseless, gave himself up early in the following year to the Scots, who had been co-operating with the English to overthrow despotism. Charles, himself a Scot, thought he could come to some agreement with them. The Scots, however, turned Charles over to the English.

England was now ruled by the army and its great leader and by that part of the Parliament of 1640

## CROMWELL SAYS 'TAKE AWAY THAT BAUBLE!'



In 1653 Cromwell went to the House of Commons with some of his troopers and turned out the members. Here we see the Lord Protector pointing to the mace and commanding one of his men to remove it. (The mace is the symbol of Parliament's

authority and is always on the table when Parliament is in session.) This Parliament was called the Rump. It was the remnant of the Long Parliament which had sat almost continuously since 1640. The painting is by Benjamin West.

that was loyal to the Puritan ideals. This remnant of the sitting members of Parliament was jokingly called the Rump. Both the Rump and the army came to feel that Charles was so untrustworthy and autocratic that he must be got rid of. Cromwell himself was finally won over to this belief and he became the chief agent in carrying through under the authority of the Rump Parliament the trial and beheading of the king (1649).

The Rump thereupon proclaimed the whole of the British Isles a republic under the name of the Commonwealth. The Scots however now wanted Stuart rule and crowned the young son of Charles I. Charles II. The Irish who were largely Roman Catholic also resisted Parliament's authority. Cromwell now commanded in chief of the army brought the Scots to submission at the battle of Dunbar (1650) and again the next year at Worcester when the Scots were led by Charles II. He also crushed the Irish in a campaign that came to a climax in the storming of Drogheda (1649). This is a blot on Cromwell's record for all the soldiers and Catholic priests taken at Drogheda were killed.

#### Cromwell as Protector

Cromwell dismissed the Rump in 1653 when it fell out with the army. Not long after he became the head of the Commonwealth under the title of Protec-

tor. For the next five years he ruled the British Isles. Toleration was granted to all Protestants. Even the Jews who had been legally banned from the country for more than 300 years were allowed in England again and permitted to carry on their worship privately. Many reforms were begun. The navy was made more powerful than ever before and the government gained great respect abroad.

Cromwell's rule was not a long one. He died peacefully in his bed Sept. 3, 1658. The office of Protector passed for a few months to his son Richard but 'Tumble-down Dick' lacked his father's force and genius for leadership.

Much that Cromwell fought for was swept away in 1660 when the Stuart rule was resumed by Charles II, yet the Protector's work was not altogether in vain. He had caused the defeat of a tyrannical king and he had given a wider measure of toleration than had been known before. As the British went on in later centuries to move and more liberal views in both church and state the example of Cromwell and his Protectorate was not forgotten by them.

Cromwell was imposing in appearance but not handsome (he had a prominent wart on his nose). Simple in his bearing at once daring and cautious he was hesitant in council yet decisive in action. His state policies were intensely practical and decidedly

liberal for his time. Though deeply religious, he was far from being a gloomy Puritan. He smoked, drank wine and beer, hawked, played bowls, loved horses, and was fond of music. He had an unswerving trust in God. In his last prayer he gave thanks that he had been a lowly "instrument to do God's people some good and God some service." A close associate said of him: "A larger soul, I think, hath seldom dwelt in a house of clay." (See also English History; Charles I; Charles II.)

**CROQUET AND ROQUE.** For a simple but challenging lawn game, people of all ages often choose croquet.

The game is simple in principle, but play can be surprisingly skillful and spirited. The equipment consists of nine arches and two stakes, plus a wooden mallet and ball for each player. Lawns of almost any size serve as a court.

The game begins at the starting stake (which also serves as the home stake). Each player in turn uses his mallet to drive his ball through the arches in proper order. The first player to return his ball to the home stake wins the game. Driving the ball through an arch or striking the turning stake gives a player another stroke at once.

#### How to Gain Extra Strokes

If one player hits his ball so that it strikes an opponent's ball (*roquet*) he may do one of three things. He may lay his ball a mallet's head length away from the other ball and continue play with two extra strokes. Or he may either *croquet* or *roquet-croquet*. After playing either choice, he can take one extra stroke.

To croquet, the player places his ball against the ball of his opponent. Then holding his ball with his foot or hand he strikes it sharply in order to drive the other ball away. To roquet-croquet, the player also places his ball against the opponent's ball and then strikes his ball without holding it. This drives both balls in the direction the player desires. A rover is one who has driven his ball through all the arches but has not yet touched the home stake. He continues play on his ball to assist his partner and to drive back the opponent's balls.

#### The History of Croquet

It is not definitely known where croquet was first played. Most historians believe that it originated in France, where it was known as *paille-maille*, and later imported into England as "pall-mall." It was played as early as the 1600's in both countries but in neither place did it have any great popularity.

Croquet was brought to the United States about 1870 and it soon spread all over the nation. The rules

for the game generally followed 'Routledge's Handbook of Croquet', published in England in 1861. One group of players, however, wanted a game that required more skillful and scientific play. They made changes in the rules until they had devised a new style of play which they called *roque* (the name was taken from "croquet" by dropping the "c" and "t"). After 1900 the two styles of play became two different games. Croquet retained its popularity as a family game, played for relaxation and social amusement. Roque became a game for specialists, demanding fine skill and strategy. Many cities now have roque clubs which sponsor annual tournaments governed by the American Roque League.

#### How Roque Is Played

Each of the four corners of a roque court is cut off by an angle line so that the court has eight sides. A wooden or concrete wall about six inches high encloses the playing area. The curbing enables the players to make *carom shots* against the sides as billiard players do. The surface of the court is made of concrete or hard rolled earth. The principle of the game is the same as croquet except that each player uses two balls instead of one. Roque also requires greater accuracy because the arches are narrower. Each mallet has two striking surfaces—one of ivory or hard rubber and one of soft rubber.

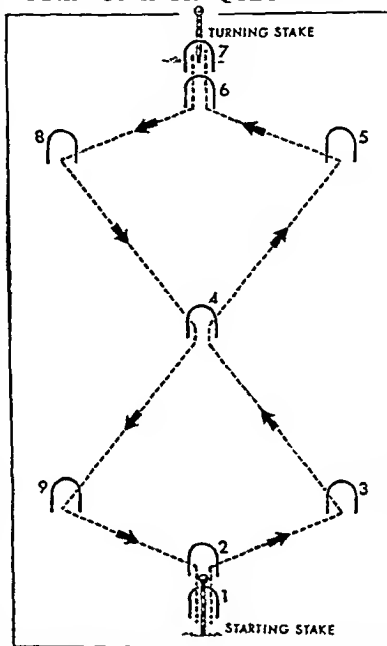
**CROW.** The crow's worst enemy admits that it is clever, probably more so than any other member of the bird family. In the wild state a crow keeps the farmer busy planning "scarecrows" to keep it out of the cornfields. One tame crow can disturb a whole commun-

ity. It is an American citizen and claims as its domain the temperate region north of Florida to the Arctic coast and west to the arid plains.

With jays, ravens, and magpies, the crow belongs to the family *Corvidae*. It is about 20 inches in length and its glossy plumage justifies the adage "as black as a crow." Its appetite is its weakness. Not satisfied with fruits, seeds, toads, frogs, and small snakes, it robs fields of newly sprouting corn, birds' nests of their eggs, and even eats young chickens.

Crows mate early in spring and build a large stick nest in a tall tree. While the female sits on the spotted blue-green eggs (for picture in color, see Egg), the male provides her with food. Young crows eat ravenously and both parents are kept busy satisfying the food demands of their family. Crows do not migrate, but in winter often several thousand will roost at some common center, scattering each morning to their various feeding grounds.

PLAN OF A CROQUET COURT



This diagram shows the route of play through the arches of a croquet court. The ideal distance between stakes is 72 feet.

No wild bird taken into captivity has more readily accommodated itself to domestic life or furnished more interesting entertainment for its captors. A born thief in his wild state, when tamed he becomes a veritable kleptomaniac. He pilfers all sorts of eatable and unestable objects, bright trinkets proving irresistible to him. Pet crows are great imitators, and some may be taught to "talk"—to utter several words and

seem to use them intelligently. Once they are accustomed to a household, crows need not be caged.

The fish-crow is smaller than the common crow and feeds largely on such water creatures as die and float ashore. It is a great egg-eater and is a constant menace in the heron and ibis rookeries. The Florida and western crows are smaller forms of the common crow. Scientific name, *Corvus brachyrhynchos*.

## When CHRISTIAN Fought INFIDEL for PALESTINE

**CRUSADES** When the fierce Seljukian Turks captured Jerusalem from the tolerant Saracens, in 1071, they began a cruel persecution of the Christians who were among the inhabitants of the land. Pilgrims on their way to the Holy City were attacked, robbed, and beaten. The sacred places of the church were profaned or destroyed. To the Christians of

*SPLENDID heroism, religious self-sacrifice and Christian devotion—these light up with an ever memorable resplendence those vivid dramas of the Age of Faith which we name the Crusades. In one aspect they are merely a new phase of the age-long conflict of East and West—of Europe and Asia, in another they anticipate the outburst of colonizing and commercial expansion which characterizes the modern world. At the beginning of the Crusades, Christian Constantinople and Mohammedan Baghdad as much excelled Western Europe in orderly civilization as Europe did barbaric America in the days of Columbus, and every journey had its lessons of wonder. From whatever standpoint we view them, the Crusades are the central point of the Middle Ages, ending the period of the Dark Ages, and leading on to the flowering of Western Europe in the Renaissance of Art and Learning.*

Europe, Jerusalem was a holy spot. The tomb of Christ, the Mount of Olives, Golgotha, and all places and things associated with the life and death of Christ were so sacred that they were believed to possess divine powers of healing and forgiveness. So when news of the capture of Jerusalem came to Europe, great excitement and indignation were felt.

### The Most Important Speech Ever Made

The eastern Emperor Alexius, whose predecessor had been defeated and slain by the Seljukians, feared for the safety of Constantinople itself, and sent an appeal for assistance to Pope Urban II at Rome. A council was called at Clermont in France, in 1095, and there the pope made an eloquent speech, urging his hearers to undertake a crusade to rescue the Holy Land. No speech in history has ever had greater results. Fired with religious zeal, clergy, knights, and people cried, "God will it!" and pressed forward to offer their swords to the cause. On their breasts as they went and on their backs as they returned they wore a cross (in Latin *crux*) of blood red cloth, from which comes their name, "crusaders."

Preparations were immediately begun for the long, difficult journey to Jerusalem, which we call the First Crusade (1096-99). Many of the common people were so deeply stirred that they were unwilling to wait until the time set by the council for the beginning of the crusade. At least four separate bands started for the East in the spring of 1096. A knight named Walter the Penniless successfully led a large number of crusaders to Constantinople. Another company under the leadership of a monk named Peter the Hermit was not so fortunate. Wholly unprepared for

a journey of over two thousand miles, the history of their struggle to the East is one of hardship, starvation, and death. More than half perished or were taken as slaves as they passed through Bulgaria, and few of the many thousands who started under such leadership lived to see the Holy Sepulcher.

In August 1096 the first real armies of knights and princes

began their march toward Palestine. They were in four main companies, under such famous leaders as Godfrey of Bouillon, Robert of Normandy, Raymond of Toulouse, and Bohemond the Norman, son of Robert Guiscard of Sicily. After varying fortunes the crusaders reached Constantinople, and after some delay, moved on toward Jerusalem. After a trying and dangerous march across Asia Minor, the crusaders came at last within sight of the city of Antioch with its hundreds of towers. For seven months the siege of the city dragged on, besiegers suffered almost as much as the besieged. At last the city was captured. But the sufferings of the crusaders did not end. The besiegers were no sooner in the city than they were themselves besieged by a Turkish army under the Seljukian sultan. After three weeks the crusaders were in a pitiable condition. Disease and famine thinned their ranks and despair led to loss of courage and discipline. The outlook seemed hopeless.

### Inspired by a Dream Story

The situation was saved in a strange manner. A priest among them, Peter Barthelemy, announced to the leaders of the army that he had seen in a dream, thrice repeated, the head of the lance which had pierced the side of the Savior. It was hidden under the high altar of the church, and if found would bring victory to the Christians. Although many were skeptical, search was made and Peter himself found the spear. So great was the enthusiasm aroused by this discovery—whether real or feigned—that the crusaders attacked the Turks with fanatical valor and utterly routed them.

The crusaders stayed in Antioch six months. Many

of them had been killed, some had perished from hardships in the long marches, thousands died from the plague. When in June they set out for Jerusalem, only a few thousand of the original hundreds of thousands remained alive. But the hardships and despair of the long march were forgotten when they crossed the last hill, and saw the Holy City before them. Stretching out their arms, they fell on their knees and kissed the ground, while a shout went up on all sides, "Jerusalem, Jerusalem!"

After several weeks of fighting the city was taken. There followed in the streets where the gentle Christ had walked a massacre such as the Turk had not been guilty of in his fiercest moments. Blood flowed in streams, and the bodies of the dead lay thick along the public ways. After the slaughter, the crusaders walked barefooted and bareheaded, and knelt at the Holy Sepulcher.

Most of the crusaders soon returned to their homes. Those who remained in the Holy Land were presently joined by new companies of crusaders who were constantly arriving from Europe. Godfrey was chosen ruler, with the title Defender of the Holy Sepulcher. Legend says he refused the crown and title of king, saying "he would never wear a crown of gold where his Savior had worn a crown of thorns." Castles were built and special orders of knighthood were formed to protect the Holy Land. Chief among these were the Knights Hospitalers, the Knights Templars, and the Teutonic Order (see *Crusading Orders*).

The Second Crusade (1147-49) came 50 years after the first and was one of the greatest failures of history. It was preached by the famous French monk, St. Bernard of Clairvaux. He refused the leadership of the expedition, and under Conrad III of Germany and Louis VII of France it was so mismanaged that it accomplished nothing.

After another 40 years (1187) Jerusalem was taken from the Christians by Saladin, one of the greatest rulers the Mohammedans ever had (see Saladin).

#### RICHARD THE LION-HEARTED ASSAULTS JOPPA



England's famous crusader leads his knights to the attack in the battle which gave the Mohammedan stronghold to the Christian forces.

He was wise in counsel, brave in battle, and as chivalrous in conduct and sincere in his faith as the best of his Christian foes. When Saladin captured the Holy City there was no massacre of captives, as there had been when the crusaders had defeated the Turks. Instead, the greater number of the defeated were allowed to go free on paying a ransom.

Saladin's conquest gave rise to the Third Crusade (1189-91). This was led by the aged emperor of Germany, Frederick Barbarossa (so called from his red beard), Philip Augustus of France, and Richard the Lion-Hearted of England. Frederick, although he was 70 years old, led his army with ability and all went well with the Germans until the old Emperor was drowned in a mountain stream in Asia Minor. The

German expedition then fell apart. In later centuries many of the German people refused to believe the Emperor was dead. They told stories of a lonely cave far up on the mountain side where he slept the long years through, his head resting on his hand, the long red beard growing out among the rocks.

Richard of England and Philip of France, instead of taking the old land route down the Danube valley, went from France in ships by way of the Mediterranean. When they reached the Holy Land they found the Christians besieging Acre. After a weary siege of 23 months, the city was taken; but Philip and Richard quarreled, and Philip soon returned to France. Richard remained in Palestine to wage a hopeless war. Some time later he too left the Holy Land, and after exciting adventures finally reached England. But before leaving Palestine Richard made a treaty with Saladin which permitted Christian pilgrims to visit the Holy Sepulcher without being molested.



When word came from Palestine that Jerusalem, captured for the Christ at the end of the First Crusade, was again in danger, the forces of Christendom sprang to arms. The pope committed to St Bernard of Clairvaux to preach a Crusade, and Bernard's eloquence secured large forces for the effort. This Second Crusade, however, lacked good military leaders and failed completely.



The aim of the Fourth Crusade (1202-04) was to attack the Mohammedans in Egypt. This required transportation across the Mediterranean, and the crusaders bargained with the Venetians for shipping facilities. The Venetians then proposed that the crusaders first assist them in capturing a rival commercial city, Zara, across the Adriatic Sea. This was a Christian city but, oddly enough for knights of the cross, the crusaders agreed. The Venetians then suggested a still more remarkable adventure—the seizure of the great Christian city of Constantinople, which had recently been favoring Genoa at the expense of Venice. Constantinople was taken and pillaged; and the conquerors divided not only the spoils of the city but also the lands of the emperor. In place of the Greek or Byzantine Empire (*see* Byzantine Empire), a “Latin Empire” was set up, which lasted about half a century. In this crusade, commercial and political ambition overshadowed religious zeal.

If we should read about the Children's Crusade (1212) in a fiction story, it would seem absurdly impossible. Bands of French and German children gathered and moved southward, expecting miraculous aid in reaching and conquering the Holy Land. Some returned, some were sold into slavery, and some died of hunger and exposure.

On the Fifth Crusade (1228-29) Frederick II of Sicily, emperor of Germany, secured Jerusalem by negotiating with the Mohammedans, who were now weakened by divisions. In 1244, however, a new horde of Turks made themselves masters of Jerusalem. A Sixth Crusade (1249) followed, led by Louis IX of France against Egypt, now held to be the key to Palestine. The saintly King Louis was taken prisoner, and was obliged to pay a heavy ransom. The Seventh Crusade (1270) was again led by St. Louis of France, and by Prince Edward, afterward Edward I of England. The French king died of the plague, and nothing was accomplished by this adventure. Acre, Antioch, and Tripoli were held by the Templars and other crusading knights for some time; but Acre, followed by the others, surrendered in 1291. By the end of the 13th century the Christians, as crusaders and conquerors, were ousted entirely from the Holy Land; but Christians, as traders, remained throughout the eastern Mediterranean.

#### Lasting Results of the Crusades

Crusaders thought of themselves, no doubt, as soldiers of the cross; but there were other influences at work. Some historians, indeed, regard the Crusades as an early phase of that vastly important movement known as the expansion of Europe.

Up to the time of the Crusades, Christendom had been on the defensive against invaders, and had been busy building an agricultural system centering around the manor and the feudal lord. There was very little town life except in Italy, and trade was mainly local. However, there was a growing need for expansion of territory and of trade to keep pace with the needs of the increasing population. Knights without land and younger sons having no fiefs because of the law of

primogeniture—the right of the eldest son to inheritance—looked eastward in the hope of carving out estates. Also the authorities saw in the Crusades a method of getting rid of the floating population of beggars, vagabonds, and criminals. The townsmen, who were rapidly becoming more numerous and more influential, were stimulated to develop commerce with the East. New foods and textiles began to make an appearance in the markets and fairs of western Europe. Among these were cane sugar, buckwheat, rice, the apricot, the watermelon, the orange, the lemon, the lime, cotton, damask, satin, velvet, and various dyestuffs. The use of spices from the Orient greatly increased. New tastes developed.

The Christians saw large cities, magnificent buildings, highly developed arts and crafts, medical skill, scientific knowledge—in a word, they found in Mohammedan lands of the Near East a civilization in many ways superior to their own. And there also, to stimulate further ambition, they heard reports, true or extravagant, of even greater opportunities for wealth and adventure in the Far East.

The Crusades failed in their primary aim to regain the Holy Land; but they resulted in an intellectual awakening which brought on the Renaissance, and in an expansionist movement eastward, which, blocked by Asiatics, presently turned westward, led to the discovery of America, and culminated in the Europeanizing of the world.

**CRUSADING ORDERS.** The first of the three great military and religious orders that arose from the Crusades were the Knights of St. John, more commonly known as Hospitalers. Formed between the First and Second Crusades, they grew out of an earlier organization for taking care of sick and wounded pilgrims and crusaders. The Knights Templars took their name from the location of their headquarters in the so-called Temple of Solomon in Jerusalem. Somewhat later in origin and similar in purpose were the Teutonic Knights, who were mainly Germans.

The members of these orders conformed to both military and religious discipline. They were soldiers with the obligations and training of knighthood; and they took the usual monastic vows. They were described as “lions in war, lambs in the house, to the enemies of Christ implacable, but to Christians kind and gracious.” They established castles and garrisons as well as hospitals in the region of Palestine, and formed branches in the home countries. In course of time, kings and others conferred upon the orders power and possessions in many lands, until they became important factors in the history of Europe. Their leaders were summoned to the great church councils; their houses were used as strongholds for the royal treasure; and kings, when pressed for money, depended on them for loans.

The wealth of the Templars appears to have been one reason why Philip IV of France resolved to secure from the pope in 1312 an order for disbanding them and for taking over their wealth. The Hospitalers, during the later Crusades, established themselves in

the island of Rhodes. In the 16th century the Emperor Charles V gave them the island of Malta and they came to be known as Knights of Malta. The Teutonic Knights in the 14th and 15th centuries renewed their crusading activities by warring against the heathen

Slavs near the Baltic Sea. Their religious zeal was not unmingled with colonizing and trading enterprise and this is they did much to do with the founding of Prussia. At the time of the Protestant Reformation in 1525 the Teutonic Order was practically dissolved

## ROBINSON CRUSOE in FACT and FICTION



### CRUSOE, ROBINSON

We all know the story of Robinson Crusoe, the hero of Daniel Defoe's famous novel—how he was shipwrecked on an unhabited island where he had many adventures particularly with visiting cannibals how he rescued one of their victims who became his Man Friday and finally how he was taken off the island by a passing vessel.

Perhaps you know also that the story of Robinson Crusoe is based upon the true adventures of a British sailor named Alexander Selkirk who lived from 1676

to 1721. The story island of Crusoe's adventures was placed at the mouth of the Orinoco River in sight of Trinidad. The real island of Selkirk's adventures is

He caught the goats and brought them to use on his back. Swift as the wind Selkirk outran the dog that tried to help him.

in the Juan Fernandez group, 400 miles off the coast of Chile, to which it now belongs as a national park.

#### The "Real Robinson Crusoe"

Selkirk was born in Fifeshire, Scotland. He became a sailor at an early age and took part in privateering expeditions to the South Seas, as the Pacific was then called. In 1704, when he was 28, he embarked as sailing master, or mate, of the English vessel *Cinque Ports*. In the course of this voyage he quarreled with the captain of the vessel, and was left, at his own request, on the uninhabited island which is now called Mas-a-Tierra. The leaky condition of the ship, as well as his quarrel with the captain, was the reason for Selkirk's strange request. Before the ship left, Selkirk repented of his rash intent and begged to be taken on board again, but this was refused. After four years and four months of solitude on the island he was discovered and rescued by the British ship *Duke* in January 1709.

In these four years Selkirk had seen several ships pass by his island. Two had anchored for wood and water, but on discovering that they were Spanish, he had climbed a tall tree rather than fall into their hands. England and Spain were at war, and he feared that he might be killed or sent to work as a prisoner in the mines of South America. When the British vessel *Duke* came to anchor and sent a party ashore for water, they found "a man clothed in goats' skins, who looked wilder than the first owners of them."

The commander of the rescuing vessel, Captain Woodes Rogers, gave an account of Selkirk's adventures in a book entitled 'A Cruising Voyage Round the World,' which he published a few years later.

"He had with him," says Captain Rogers in telling how Selkirk was left on his island, "his clothes and bedding, with a firelock, some powder, bullets, and tobacco, a hatchet, a knife, a kettle, a Bible, some practical pieces (useful articles), and his mathematical instruments and hooks." It was lucky for him that he had his books, for they helped him to fight against lonesomeness and despair. With his tools he built two huts of pimento trees, lining them with the skins of wild goats.

After a short time his powder, of which he had only a pound, gave out. For a time he could kill no more game and could make a fire only by rubbing together two dry sticks. He slept only when he could watch no longer, and "never ate until hunger constrained him." He had no salt to season his fish, which were easy enough to catch, and so lived on crayfish, which better pleased his taste. Gradually Selkirk found ways of overcoming his difficulties. He captured great turtles on the beach, and he learned to take the goats by running them down.

#### How Selkirk Outran Goats

"He ran with wonderful swiftness through the woods," said Captain Rogers, "and up the rocks and hills as we perceived when we employed him to catch goats for us. We had a bulldog, which we sent with several of our nimblest runners, to help him in catching goats; but he distanced and tired both the dog and the

men, caught the goats and brought them to us on his back." Selkirk's lack of salt was forgotten in the use of the fruit of the pimento tree, and of a black pepper called malageta. Nor did he lack vegetable food. "He had enough of good cabbage from the cabbage tree," writes the captain.

His clothes wore out very soon. He found that he could get along without shoes, and that goats' skins served for the making of a coat and cap. "Having some linen cloth by him, he sewed himself some shirts with a nail, and stitched them with the worsted of his old stockings, which he pulled out on purpose." Fortunately, Juan Fernandez Island never has very severe weather. There is a little frost and hail in June and July, when it is winter in the Southern Hemisphere, and in summer the heat is never unbearable.

Defoe describes Robinson Crusoe as amusing himself by taming parrots and kids. Alexander Selkirk found his island infested with rats. By feeding and taming the stray cats whose ancestors had been left on the island by visiting ships, he succeeded in keeping down the number of the rats. Captain Rogers tells us that "he likewise tamed some kids, and to divert himself would, now and then, sing and dance with them and his cats." In the adventures of the real Robinson Crusoe there is nothing which corresponds to the visits of the cannihals to the island and the escape and companionship of "Friday."

It is not at all surprising that Alexander Selkirk's strange life should have left its mark on him. He had kept his body healthy and his mind sane by working hard, by running through the woods and up the heights, and by making companions of the animals on his island. But he could scarcely make himself understood by the crew of the ship that rescued him, and he had lost all taste for English food.

Alexander Selkirk returned to England in 1711, after serving in command of one of the vessels taken by Captain Rogers as a prize, but again embarked and followed the sea until his death in 1721. In 1868 the officers and crew of the British naval vessel *Topaz* erected a monument to Selkirk at a spot called "Selkirk's Lookout" on Juan Fernandez Island.

#### The Robinson Crusoe of Fiction

Two accounts of his adventures were published soon after his landing, one the story by Captain Rogers and another by Edward Cooke. Selkirk also wrote an account of his own, and Sir Richard Steele sketched his story in a magazine. Defoe had access to all this material, and he also met Selkirk and heard of his adventures from his own lips. But 'The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe', published in 1719, is not the authentic autobiography it purports to be. Defoe had a great gift for inventing details and making them seem like authentic history. He owed to Selkirk only the theme for his story—a civilized man, alone on a desert island, successfully pitting his courage and skill against nature. Because this theme has such universal appeal, 'Robinson Crusoe' ranks as one of the world's most popular classics (see Defoe).

**CRYSTALS** Just as a violet seed contains the germ of a beautiful flower waiting for soil and moisture and sunlight to develop it, so most of the world's so-called "dead" substances contain in themselves the possibilities of strange "flowers" we call crystals, which take form as soon as they are given a proper chance. If you watch a window pane on a very cold winter day you will see the "flowers" of water growing upon it in the delicate and shapely designs of frost crystals. Soot certainly has no form or beauty, yet its crystal is the most brilliant of all gems—the hard and glittering diamond.

The commonest crystals are those of sugar and salt. If you dissolve these substances in water the crystals disappear, but as soon as you let the water evaporate, they are formed again. Among other well-known substances which take on crystalline forms are sulphur, camphor, mica, quartz, nearly all the precious stones, the metals, and, in fact, most solid minerals in their natural state. (See Minerals.)

The most important law of crystals is that each substance has its own particular crystal forms different from those of any other substance. Yet all the countless forms may be divided into six or seven groups, based upon certain geometrical designs common to each group.

Chemical elements or compounds which are not in crystalline form are said to be "amorphous" from Greek words meaning "without shape." Carbon, for instance, may exist in the amorphous form of lampblack or in either of two crystalline forms—diamond or graphite.

But there is much more than a mere difference of shape between the crystalline and amorphous forms of a substance, or between two crystal forms of the same substance. Each crystal possesses internal peculiarities which persist even when the shape of the crystal is imperfectly formed, as is usually the case in nature. Thus a crystal will expand more in one direction than in another under the influence of heat, and it has running through it "lines of cleavage" along which it will split most readily, as any one knows who has tried to chip a piece of ice from a large block. Crystals also refract light differently according to the direction in which it passes through them (see Light), and certain crystals of sugars and other organic substances differ in producing right and left rotation of polarized light (see Sugar). The power to conduct

electricity varies also in different directions, a feature useful in radio work (see Radio). A strange example of the electrical influence of crystal forms is the fact that the diamond is a non-conductor while its carbon-brother, graphite, is an excellent conductor.

Crystallography, as the study of crystals is called, is carried on today principally by the X-ray spectrum method developed by Laue, the Braggs, and others after 1912. These men find that the cleavage planes in crystals will diffract X-rays, producing patterns resembling spectra. From these patterns we learn the shape of the molecule and also that crystal structures exist even in cotton and silk, contributing to its character. These methods are among the most powerful used by modern science to discover the nature of atoms (see Chemistry X Rays).

Crystals are usually formed by dissolving a substance in hot water, and letting the solution cool. Cool water will not hold as much dissolved substance as hot, so the surplus "crystallizes out." Mixtures may often be separated because different substances crystallize at different stages of the process.

#### SOME BEAUTIFUL CHEMICAL "FLOWERS"



SALT

TARTARIC ACID  
(Right Handed)TARTARIC ACID  
(Left Handed)BLENDE  
(Zinc ore)

GOLD



AUGITE



GARNET



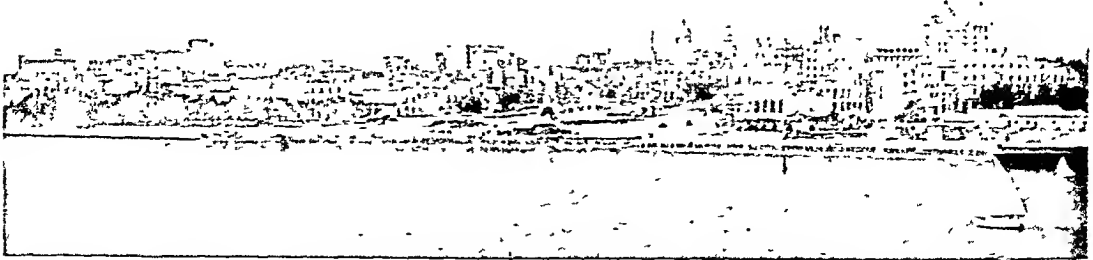
CALCITE

PYRITE  
(Iron ore Crystal)

Did you know that the tiny grains of salt you shake on your food are little cubes, and that some of the gold which miners and prospectors find consists of tiny 8-sided figures like the one you see here? But there are even stranger things about crystals. Some of them are twins "and some are right handed" and some are "left handed." Those two crystals of tartaric acid, for instance, seem exactly alike at first, but a close look will show you that one is the "reverse" of the other, each one being just like the image of the other in a mirror. And the serious thing is that right handed "tartaric acid" is exactly the same in chemical composition as left handed, except for some peculiar internal arrangement which is responsible for the reverse crystals and which makes the two kinds behave differently in many other ways.

The heat treatment and alloying of metals is largely carried on to alter their internal crystal structure and so obtain different degrees of hardness, strength, and so on (see Alloys). The so-called "crystallization" which turns metals brittle under repeated stresses, like the bending back and forth of a wire, consists usually of a rearrangement of existing crystals and a loosening of their lines of cleavage.

# CUBA—the Queen of the ANTILLES



From above the old guns of Morro Castle, which guards the channel leading to the harbor, we are looking across to Havana, the capital. Modern office buildings and hotels have transformed the skyline, which formerly had few tall structures.

CUBA. "The peace of Cuba is necessary to the peace of the United States; the health of Cuba is necessary to the health of the United States; the independence of Cuba is necessary to the safety of the United States." So said President McKinley in 1901, just before Cuba was made an independent nation with the help of the United States. Cuba has since developed from a backward Spanish colony, ridden with disease and bad government, into a respected and progressive member of the American family of nations, closely bound to the United States by trade and friendship.

This long narrow island, "curved like a bird's tongue," lies squarely across the entrance to the Gulf of Mexico. Hence it commands the northwest approach to the Panama Canal, and is vital to United States defense (*see Navy*). It is only 92 nautical miles from Key West, Fla.

With an area of 41,634 square miles—about the size of Virginia—it is the largest of the West Indies. It is 730 miles long and varies in width from 22 to 160 miles. Bordering it are some 1,300 tiny islands. These, with the larger Isle of Pines (about 1,180 square miles) off the southwest coast, bring the total area to 44,164 square miles.

The "Queen of the Antilles" is part of the sunken mountain chain that makes up the West Indies. In the west a low range borders much of the narrow northern coastal plain. In the center are low scattered mountains. In the east the rugged Sierra Maestra range reaches 7,780 feet at Turquino Peak. The southern coast is low and sandy, and in the west, marshy. But most of the island is a rolling plain, like Iowa. Numerous short swift rivers race north or south to the sea. Some "disappear," dropping into caves and then tunnels. Only the

westerly flowing Cauto is navigable for any distance. Light craft can ascend it for 70 or 80 miles.

## Advantages of Climate and Soil

Cuba's greatest gifts are its climate and its rich soil. From them spring its most important industries—its agriculture and its vast winter tourist business. It lies just inside the tropics, in the path of the trade winds, which cool the summer heat to an average temperature of 80° F. In winter, the surrounding seas bring warmth, giving an average winter temperature of about 70° F. Frosts are unknown. Hurricanes, sometimes very destructive, may come in August, September, and October. Rainfall is abundant, with an average of about 55 inches, three-fourths of it in the "wet" summer season from May through October.

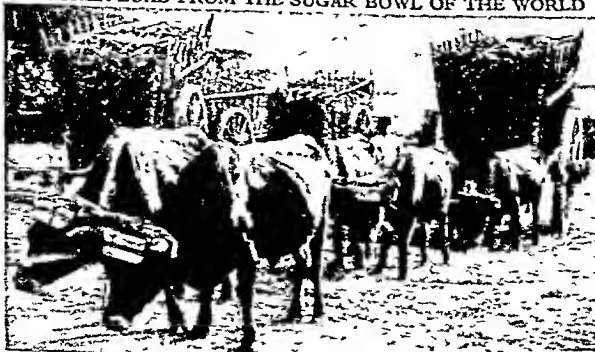
The soil is the most fertile in the Caribbean. Two-thirds of it is rich limestone soil. Plant life is luxuriant. More than 30 types of palm are found. The royal palm furnishes timber for the peasant's hut and thatch for his roof. Ruthless logging and land clearing have so reduced the forests that they now cover only about a tenth of the land. But there are still stands of mahogany, red and black ebony, rosewood, pine, and the towering *ceiba* (silk-cotton tree). They supply charcoal, the chief fuel.

Most of the nearly 300 species of birds are familiar also in the United States. There are no large

animals and few snakes, none poisonous. Crocodiles and lizards provide skins for leather goods.

Despite attempts to diversify crops, economic life revolves around sugar cane. About half the island is in farms, and more than half the cultivated area is planted to cane. Cuba exports more sugar than any other country. The year-around frost-free grow-

## ANOTHER LOAD FROM THE SUGAR BOWL OF THE WORLD



Oxcarts with huge wheels and six or eight oxen are needed to haul the great loads of sugar cane over the rough and often muddy roads.

ing season and the rich soil make from four to six crops possible from one planting.

Sugar has been both a blessing and a curse. It has attracted more than a billion dollars from investors in the United States. But sugar companies own more than a third of the land and control the operation of nearly one-half. And sugar has tremendous ups and downs. Prices have ranged from 21 cents a pound to about 2 and exports from 5 million tons a year to 2 million.

Tobacco is another valuable crop. The best Havana cigar wrappers are made from the tobacco grown on the small Vuelta Abajo (lower turn) district in the west. Upland farmers raise cacao and coffee. The east has banana plantations, and in the east-central districts are large cattle ranches. Vegetables and fruits are raised for winter export to the United States.

#### Other Factors in Cuba's Prosperity

Iron is the most important mineral. The extensive iron deposits are largely owned by United States corporations. Copper, manganese, chromium, asphalt, nickel, and some gold are also mined.

Manufactures other than sugar refining include cigars, cigarettes, meat products, vegetable oils, tex-

#### WHERE SOME OF THE WORLD'S COSTLIEST TOBACCO IS GROWN



The finest grades of the small Havana tobacco are grown under these conditions to protect it from sun and wind on the sandy limestone soil of the Vuelta Abajo in Cuba. The region that produces this famous crop is only about 90 miles by 10.

tile furniture and clothing. From a quarter to a half of the sugar is usually exported to the United States. Fruits and vegetables are the other chief exports. The United States usually takes three-fourths or more of the exports and supplies two-thirds of the imports of food, textiles and machinery.

Good transportation has helped in Cuba's growth. There are so many good harbors that Cuba has been called "The Isle of a Hundred Harbors." More than 3,000 miles of commercial railway link the principal cities and sugar plantations. Another 5,000 miles of sea train or railroad ferry service carries freight cars to several United States ports. Good highways network the island.

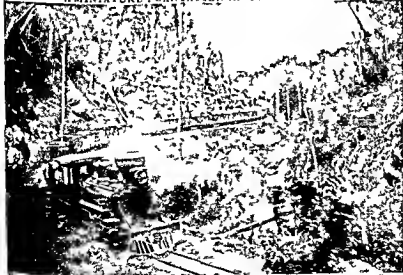
The Central Highway is an engineering triumph running the length of Cuba with few curves and bridging countless streams and ravines. Airplane service is well developed.

Havana is the capital and largest city (see Havana). Near by is Matanzas, second largest city. Santiago in the hilly southeast was the capital until 1826. Here or near by the most decisive battles of the Spanish American War were fought. Camaguey in central Cuba perhaps best keeps the romantic flavor of Old Spain.

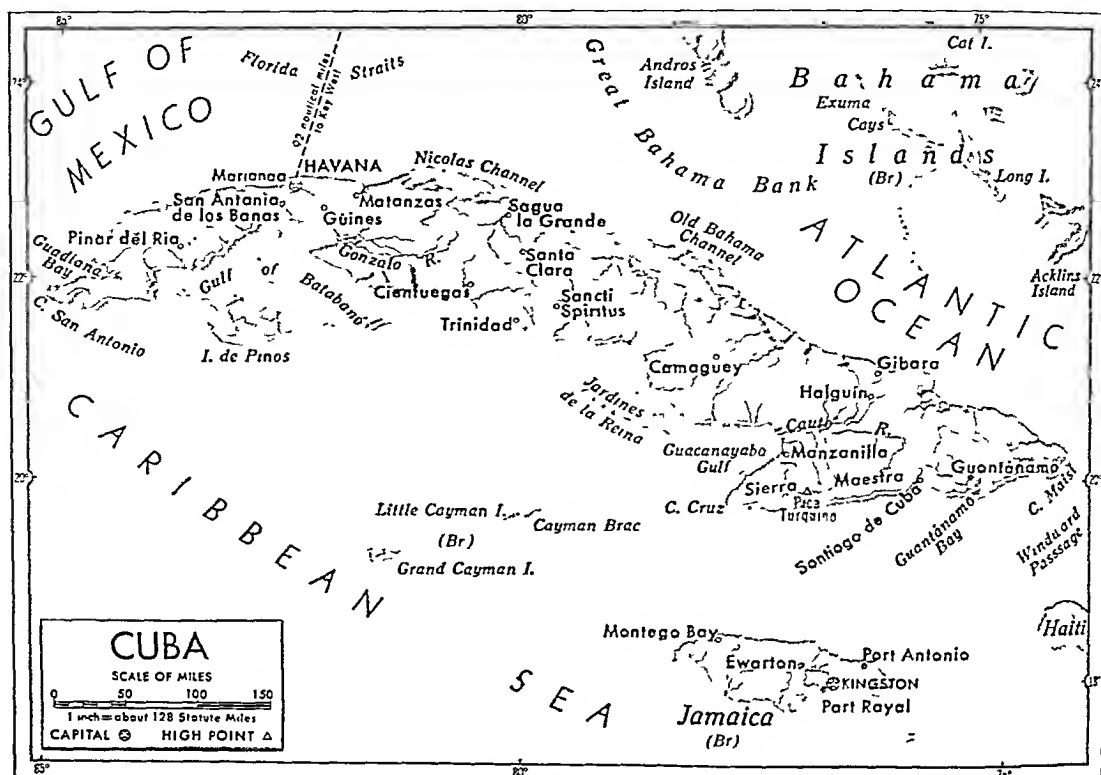
#### The People

In race and customs Cuba is predominantly

#### MINIATURE PLANTATION RAILROAD TRAIN



Many plantations own their own gauge railways. They carry sugar cane to huge mills or centrales where it is crushed and the syrup is boiled into sugar.



Cuba is a land of rolling plains and scattered mountain ranges from which short rivers fall swiftly to the sea. The irregular coast line affords many good harbors. Guantánamo Bay, at the eastern tip, is leased to the United States as a naval base. It controls the entrance from the Atlantic Ocean to the Caribbean Sea through the Windward Passage.

Spanish. Two thirds of the people are white; the others, native or mixed. The typical white Cuban is slender, with small hands and feet. He is charmingly polite and he loves color, music, and dancing. The fast-moving Cuban dance called the *rumba*, and Cuban music, with its characteristic guitar and pebble-filled gourd, became highly popular in the United States.

Education is free and compulsory. The University of Havana was founded in 1721. In literature, Cuba has some notable figures (see Latin American Literature). In science, Dr. Carlos Finlay in 1881 suggested that mosquitoes carry yellow fever (see Mosquito).

#### Landmarks in Cuban History

Cuba was discovered by Columbus in 1492. He called it the "most beautiful land human eyes have ever seen." Spain began its conquest in 1511, subduing the Arawak and Carib Indians. Sugar cane was introduced in the first quarter of the 16th century, and soon African slaves were brought in.

Frequent insurrections failed to end Spain's harsh rule and exploitation. The United States watched sympathetically, and in 1847 President Polk offered to buy the island, but Spain refused. In 1868-78 came the savage outbreak known as the Ten Years' War. "Cuba Libre" (Free Cuba) became the rallying cry for another revolt in 1895. The cruelties of the Spaniards led to protests by the United States. Then on Feb. 15, 1898, the U.S.S. *Maine* blew up in the harbor of

Havana. Public opinion blamed Spain, and the United States declared war April 24, 1898 (see Spanish-American War). The peace treaty forced Spain to surrender claim to Cuba and provided for its temporary military occupation by the United States. During the three years that the island was under American military rule, much was done to help prepare the people for self-government. In 1902 the Republic of Cuba was established. The United States formally renounced its right to intervene in Cuban affairs in 1934.

Fulgencio Batista of the army led a "sergeant's revolt" in 1933 and took over the government. He became president in 1940 and obtained the adoption of a new constitution. It provided for a semiparliamentary government, social insurance, a maximum work week, compulsory voting for men and women.

In the second World War, Cuba worked closely with the United States. On March 10, 1952, General Batista, who had been out of power since 1944, overthrew the government a second time. Suspending the constitution, he made himself chief of state with dictatorial power. He promised that a free national election would be held in 1953. However, on Feb. 27, 1953, he postponed the election until June 1954. He said that the constitution would be restored in September 1954. (See also West Indies.) Population (1953 census), 5,853,898.

**CUCKOO.** Many people know the cuckoo only as a clock from which a bird cries the hours, "Cuckoo, cuckoo, cuckoo." The clock bird imitates the call of the European cuckoo. Since the call is easily reproduced by musical instruments, the European cuckoo has also found a place in music, notably in Beethoven's 'Pastoral Symphony.' There is no similarity to the mournful call of the American birds, a low-pitched cl uk-cl uk, cl uk-cl uk, coo, coo coo.

The yellow billed and black billed cuckoos of North America are long, slim, dove-like birds with a secretive way of slipping silently through the thickest foliage of the trees. They are brownish gray with white breasts. The yellow billed cuckoo may be distinguished from the black billed by its rufous wings, white-tipped tail, and yellow lower bill. Cuckoos nest from southern Canada to Mexico and from coast to coast. They winter in South America. These birds are often called rain crows. They feed on destructive insects being particularly fond of tent caterpillars.

The European cuckoo is bluish gray, with long tail and pointed wings. The female, like the American cowbird, builds no nest but places her eggs in the nests of other birds and leaves the young to be reared by the foster parents.

Related to the cuckoos are the anis. The groove-billed anis is found in southern Texas, the smooth-billed anis in Florida and the West Indies. Both species range southward to South America. Anis are dull black birds with long rounded tails and short wings. The peculiar bills are compressed vertically and are almost as high as they are long. The birds follow cattle and feed on the insects they stir up from the ground and also on the parasites which infest their bodies. The cattle seem to have no objection to the birds perched on their backs.

They have strange nesting habits. They build only one nest in which two to a dozen females lay their eggs. Males and females share in the task of incubating the eggs and rearing the young.

Cuckoos, anis, and road runners belong to the order *Cuculiformes*. The scientific name of the European cuckoo is *Cuculus canorus*, yellow billed cuckoo, *Coccyzus americanus*, black-billed cuckoo, *Coccyzus erythrophthalmus*, smooth-billed anis, *Crotophaga ani*, groove billed anis, *Crotophaga sulcirostris*. (See also Road Runner.)

**CUCUMBER.** Used unripe for pickling and for salads the cucumber is one of our favorite vegetables. Boiled cucumbers are a staple article of diet in the Far East and in Jamaica. For at least 3,000 years the

vegetable has been cultivated in northern India, where it probably originated. It is now grown in all civilized countries as a field and garden crop. Raising cucumbers in hothouses the year round has come to be an important industry.

The fruit is borne on a trailing prickly vine which shows clearly its relationship to the melons, pumpkins, squashes, and gourds. When the fruits are small the skin is spiny, but as they mature it becomes smooth. The skin is still green when they are gathered for use as salads or pickles, and the flesh, which is white and somewhat watery, contains many soft flattened seeds. As they ripen, the skin becomes yellow, the flesh tough, and the seeds large and hard. Some varieties are very small, only two to four inches long when they mature, while a "serpent" cucumber grown usually as a curiosity, twists its slender body in and out among the foliage for nearly a yard. The white spine is probably the most popular group of varieties for garden and hothouse cultivation in the United States.

A variety growing steadily in favor is the lemon cucumber so named because it is about the size and color of a lemon. It will grow in almost every part of the United States. The gherkin cucumber is a native of Jamaica and is grown in the West Indies for pickling. The gherkins of mixed pickles, however, are young cucumbers.

Cucumber vines grow quite long, so it is necessary to plant the hills several feet apart. Sunshine, fresh air and moist rich earth are needed for their successful cultivation. The scientific name of the common cucumber is *Cucumis sativus*.

**CUNEIFORM.** Probably the oldest system of writing in the world—aside from primitive "picture writing"—is "cuneiform" writing. Invented by the ancient Sumerians, it was adopted and used by the Babylonians, Assyrians, and other peoples of western Asia for about 3,000 years. It gets its name from the wedge-shaped marks—usually impressed on soft clay tablets which were then baked—which make up its syllabic signs. Thousands of such tablets and longer inscriptions have come down to us. Since the discovery of the key to this writing, about 1850, our knowledge of the history of the ancient East has been almost completely reconstructed. (See also *Babylonia* and *Assyria*, *Writing*.)

**CUPID AND PSYCHE** (n'īf) According to one of the most charming myths of the Greeks and Romans, Psyche was the youngest daughter of a king. She was so lovely that she aroused the jealousy of Venus, the goddess of love and beauty, who sent her son Cupid (Eros) to the maiden to inspire her with love for some base man. But Cupid himself was so impressed with her charms that he earned her away to his palace. There he visited her every night, earnestly requesting her not to seek to know who he was. Her jealous sisters, working upon her fears and her curiosity, induced her to light a lamp while Cupid was asleep and gaze upon him. When she saw that her lover was the handsomest of the gods, in her

CUCKOO'S FEEDING TIME



This mother bird has her favorite food—a tent caterpillar.



excitement she let hot oil fall on his shoulder. He awoke, reproached her, and abandoned her. Psyche then wandered from temple to temple to find the handsome god. In the temple of Venus, this goddess made her perform many difficult tasks. Cupid eventually rescued her, and the gods made her an immortal.

The Romans often pictured Cupid as a blindfolded mischievous boy carrying bow and arrows. The arrows, which he aimed at living creatures, aroused either love or hate. The Greeks called the god Eros and worshiped him as god of both love and friendship. **CURIE** (*kü-rē*), **MARIE** (1867–1934) and **PIERRE** (1859–1906). By discovering radium, Marie Curie and her husband Pierre did much to revolutionize our theories about matter and the universe. They are an inspiring example of a man and wife who lived together and worked together in perfect harmony.

Pierre was the son of a physician, born in Paris May 15, 1859. When he met Marie he was chief of laboratory work at the School of Physics and Chemistry of the city of Paris. He had already made important studies of crystals, including the discovery in 1880 of the piezoelectric effect (*see* Radio; Watches).

Marie was born in Warsaw, then under Russian rule, on Nov. 7, 1867. Her father, Vladislav Sklodovski, taught physics in a Warsaw high school. Marie finished high school at 15 at the head of her class. After several years as a governess, she enrolled, in the fall of 1891, at the school of science of the Sorbonne in Paris. In 1894 she met Pierre at the home of a friend. They were married July 26, 1895.

At that time Henri Becquerel had just discovered radioactivity of uranium, and all physicists were interested. Marie Curie experimented with various minerals until she became convinced that an undiscovered radioactive element existed. Then Pierre joined in her research. In 1898 they announced two new elements, which they named polonium and radium. Pierre took over research into the properties of radium; Marie tried to isolate the new elements. After four years of work in a crude shed, which was their only laboratory, Marie had produced a decigram of radium chloride.

The Curies shared the Nobel prize for physics with Henri Becquerel in 1903 (*see* Nobel Prizes). Soon afterward Pierre became professor of physics at the Sorbonne. Three years later he was run over by a heavy wagon on a Paris street and killed instantly.

Marie devoted the rest of her life to research on radium and radioactivity and to bringing up two daughters, Irene (born 1897) and Eve (born 1904). **CURLING**. For hundreds of years, Scotsmen have played a game in which they slide granite stones along a level expanse of ice. This is curling, Scotland's national winter sport. It has spread to many lands, including Canada, the United States, and Switzerland. Teams play this game on a narrow rink 42 yards long. Near each end of the rink is a tee. The tee is the center of four circles, the largest having a radius of 7 feet. A line called the "hog score" crosses the rink 7 yards in front of each tee. Four

yards behind each tee is a notch ("hack") to give the players a foothold as they send the stones twisting ("curling") toward the tee at the farther end of the ice (for picture. *see* Winter Sports).

Four men make up a "rink" (team). Each man has two stones and plays each alternately with his opponent. An inning or "head" is counted when both teams have delivered all their stones, and both teams move to the other end of the ice to play the next head. Fourteen heads usually make a game.

To count in the scoring, a stone must rest within the tee's largest circle after all stones have been played. Every stone of one team which is nearer the tee than the nearest stone of the opposition counts one point. A stone failing to cross the hog score is removed until the next head.

A stone weighs between 32 and 44 pounds. It is circular, about a foot in diameter, and flattened at the top and bottom. A handle at the top enables a player to give the stone a twisting motion as it leaves his hands. Two teammates, with brooms, move ahead of the stone to sweep ("scoop") the ice in front of the stone. The captain ("skip") of each "rink" directs play. A match or tournament is called a "bonspiel."

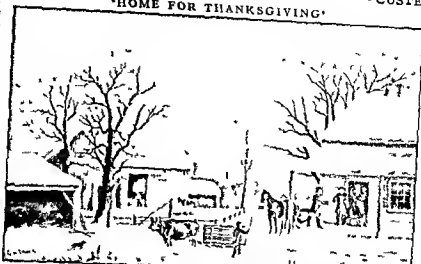
**CURRENTS**. The currants we eat are of two kinds. One kind is a small grape, sweet and seedless, grown chiefly in Greece and Asia Minor, and dried for export. This is the kind we use in cakes and puddings (*see* Raisins). The other kind of currant is not a grape at all; it is a small tart berry grown on shrubby bushes in northern Europe and America. These berries are used for jams, jellies, and pies. The word "currant" is a corruption of the name Corinth. The dried grapes of Greece first came to markets of western Europe from that city. (For illustrations in color, *see* Fruits.)

The currant grape is a variety of the common grape, *Vitis vinifera*. The currant berry, however, belongs to the genus *Ribes*, as does the gooseberry. Two common species of the currant berry are the red (*Ribes rubrum*) and the European black (*Ribes nigrum*). White currants are a variety of the red currant. The United States government is discouraging the growing of black currants, for the bushes are hosts to the white pine blister rust, which kills valuable pine trees.

**CURRIER AND IVES**. What were the exciting news events in 19th-century America? How did Americans look and dress then? Look at a collection of Currier and Ives prints, and you will see the history and people of that time pictured in realistic detail. From 1835 to 1907 the firm of Currier and Ives, lithographers, published about 7,000 different prints that showed nearly every form of American life. The pictures were not offered as great art, but they were very popular. Many Currier and Ives prints sold for as little as 15 cents. Today collectors prize them because they vividly recall bygone days. Some original prints sell for several thousand dollars.

Nathaniel Currier (1813–88) founded the firm in 1835. He was born in Roxbury, Mass., and as a boy was apprenticed to the lithographic house of William

and John Pendleton in Boston. When the company moved to Philadelphia, young Currier went along. Later a branch office was opened in New York City. Currier finished his apprenticeship there, then went into business for himself. In 1840 he proved that lithographic methods could depict current news events. Three days after the burning of the steamboat *Lezington*, Currier's artists and lithographers gave the public a timely and thrilling picture of the burning ship.



One of the most popular of Currier and Ives prints is this picture of a New England Thanksgiving, shown here in the full colors of the original. It was painted by George H. Durrie and first published in 1867. Durrie painted many other New England farm scenes for Currier and Ives.

James M. Ives, (1824-93) entered the firm in 1850 as a bookkeeper. He was a native New Yorker. He had little schooling, but he had taught himself in libraries and art galleries. Ives became a partner in 1857. He knew what the public wanted and had a shrewd eye for technical perfection. After the partners died their sons carried on the business until 1907.

The prints were lithographed from oil paintings or from pen and ink or wash drawings. Some were in black and white only, many others were in color. Most of the colored prints were lithographed in one color, then hand colored later. Often one print was the work of several artists, with further charges by the lithographer directly upon the stone (see Lithography).

**CUSTER** GEORGE ARMSTRONG (1839-1876) The hero of the 'Custer Massacre' was born in New Rumley, Harrison County, Ohio. His grandfather was a Hessian soldier who surrendered with Burgoyne, then settled in Maryland. His father Emmanuel Custer, was a farmer and blacksmith. Young Custer attended local schools until he was ten and divided the next seven years between his parents' home and that of his sister in Monroe, Mich. He wanted to be a soldier and was appointed to West Point. He was an intelligent but careless student and he was graduated in 1861 at the foot of a class of 31.

Assigned to the 2d Cavalry as a second lieutenant, he fought in the battle of Bull Run and helped defend the city of Washington. He soon joined McClellan's staff as a captain. In June 1863 he was given the wartime rank of brigadier general and served gallantly at Gettysburg and in the Virginia campaigns. In 1864 he married his childhood sweetheart Elizabeth Bacon. Shortly afterward he was given command of Sheridan's 3d Cavalry Division with the rank of major general. His conspicuous dress, his fearlessness and endurance made him a celebrity in the Union army.

When the Civil War ended, Custer returned to his regular rank as captain. Promotion was slow. After ten years of Indian campaigns he was only a lieutenant colonel. Rash and headstrong, he was in trouble with his superiors. At a public hearing in Washington in 1876 he offended President Grant by condemning the War Department's Indian policy and the frauds connected with it. Only the pressure of favorable public opinion made it possible for him to take part in the expedition against the Sioux then being organized.

The expedition left Fort Abraham Lincoln, N. D. in May 1876 under Gen. Alfred H. Terry. It was directed against the forces assembled by Sitting Bull in Montana. On June 24 scouts reported an Indian village in a bend in the Little Big Horn River. Terry sent Custer with 600 men to bar their escape to the east until the rest of the troops could get there. The next morning Custer, believing the Indians few in number, decided to disregard his orders. He sent a detachment under Capt. Frederick Benteen toward the left to explore the territory south of the river bend. Shortly afterward Custer, topping a rise, sighted the village. Again he divided his force and sent a column under Maj. Marcus A. Reno to approach the Indian camp along the west bank of the river. With the remainder of his force Custer sped forward.

Unknown to the whites, Sitting Bull's forces numbered about 6,000. Most of them lay in ambush in the hills around the village. Reno was driven back with a loss of 56 men and retreated to a high bluff. Benteen, hearing gunfire, hastened to Reno's assistance. Their combined forces held off the Indians until Terry's column arrived the next day. No word had come back from Custer. When the Indians withdrew on June 27 the soldiers went forward. On a slope to the west of the village they found the bodies of Custer and his 208 men. Not one lived to tell of the battle.

**CUTWORM.** On spring nights, armies of these fat caterpillars crawl from the ground to attack farms and gardens. Some are nearly all black, gray, brown, or green; others are striped or spotted. But all have large pincer-like jaws with which they snip off tender young shoots at or near the ground. A single cutworm clips off four or five plants in a night, destroying far more than it eats. In the United States, these pests have been known to destroy millions of dollars' worth of vegetables, wheat, corn, seedling trees, and other plants within a few months.

Cutworms are the young of certain moths of the family *Noctuidae* (named from the Latin *noctua*, meaning "owl"). The adults are often called "owlet moths" because they fly by night and some have eyes that glow in the dark. Their more popular name is "miller" or "moth miller."

#### Life Cycle of the Cutworm

In late summer the female moth lays from 200 to 500 eggs on plant leaves or on the ground. The *larvae*, or cutworms, hatch out in a few days and feed upon tender shoots. As cold weather nears, they burrow into the ground and sleep during winter. When spring comes they attack the growing vegetation. They hide in the soil by day and eat by night. Sometimes they climb into trees and vines and eat young leaves or fruit. In late spring when they are full grown, they form chambers in the ground and there turn into *pupae*. In summer they emerge as moths. Some species produce two generations in a single year, and a few spend the winter in the pupal state.

Cutworms can be killed with poisoned bran. A mixture of 25 pounds of wheat bran, one pound of Paris green or white arsenic, two quarts of cheap molasses, and two gallons of water is enough to sprinkle three or four acres. This mixture must be kept out of the reach of children, poultry, and live stock. One way to protect a young tomato or cabbage plant from cutworms is to encircle the plant stem in a piece of stiff paper, reaching an inch or so into the ground.

Some of the species are the spotted cutworm (common in the United States and Europe), *Agrotis c-nigrum*; greasy cutworm, *Agrotis ypsilon*; olive-green cutworm, *Neuria procincta*; variegated cutworm, *Peridroma margaritosa* or *Lycophotia margaritosa*.

**CUVIER** (*kü-vi-ä*), GEORGES, BARON DE (1769-1832). During the troubled days of the French Revolution and the Napoleonic era, Cuvier was laying the foundations of the science of comparative anatomy. This science, now called comparative morphology, studies the structure of animals to discover their relationships. (See Anatomy; Zoology.)

Cuvier was so curious about the structure of animals that he undertook to dissect specimens from every important group in the animal kingdom. He did not stop with merely observing details of structure. His main purpose was to discover relationships by comparing the structures of the various groups.

From the time of Linné, animals had been classified by their outward appearance (see Linné). But Cuvier

found that some of the so-called higher animals are less highly developed than some which were placed low in the "scale of being." He therefore reclassified animals on the basis of their *internal* structure.

Another of Cuvier's great contributions was the statement of the principle of "correlation of parts." This means that the parts of an animal are so closely related that a change in one part may involve a change in another. For example, in developing teeth for cropping and chewing grass, cattle and other ruminants have developed a special form of stomach for digesting grass (see Ruminants). But the flesh-tearing teeth of a tiger are associated with a stomach that readily digests flesh.

#### His Life and Chief Works

Cuvier was born Aug. 24, 1769, at Montbéliard, France. He early showed joy in study and a special liking for natural history. While a student at the Carolinian Academy at Stuttgart, he read nearly all the scientific books in the library and learned how to dissect animals. From 1788 to 1794, Cuvier put this art to good use in the study of marine animals. During these years he was tutor with a family living on the coast of Normandy. Here he met the Abbé Tessier, a keen student of natural history, who urged the young man to go to Paris and seek greater opportunities.

In Paris, Cuvier rose rapidly to fame. He was made assistant professor of comparative anatomy at the Jardin des Plantes in 1795 and full professor in 1802. From 1800 to 1805 he issued, in five volumes, his famous treatise on comparative anatomy, the first treatise to systematize this study. His work on the fossil bones of quadrupeds (1812) established the science of vertebrate paleontology. In 1816, he issued his greatest book, the title of which may be translated as "The Animal Kingdom Arranged According to Its Organization". This upset forever the old system of classifying animals. In 1818, he was elected to the French Academy.

Napoleon appointed him inspector of education in 1802, a council member of the Imperial University in 1808, and a councilor of state in 1814. In recognition of his services, he was made a grand officer of the Legion of Honor in 1826 and a baron in 1831. He died in Paris May 13, 1832.

**CYANIDES** (*sí-á-níds*). A cyanide is a salt of hydrocyanic acid, which is also called prussic acid (HCN). The new element or compound replaces the hydrogen of the acid and produces compounds such as sodium cyanide (NaCN) and potassium cyanide (KCN). Cyanides are extremely active chemically. Hence they are useful to industry and also highly poisonous.

Their ability to seize metals is used to extract gold and silver from ore (see Gold). Cyanides make excellent solutions for electroplating gold or silver (see Electroplating). Melted sodium cyanide is used for *case hardening* of iron and steel. The metal is placed in the melted cyanide, and it absorbs carbon into its outer layer. This *cyaniding* gives a hard surface to the metal. Complex double cyanides of iron and

potassium, called potassium ferrocyanide and potassium ferricyanide, are useful in the industries. The latter forms part of the sensitive coating of blueprint papers. Prussian blue is a complex cyanide of iron with or without potassium.

Cyanides are poisonous to both plants and animals because they absorb oxygen even from individual cells. In animals this action causes asphyxiation, heart failure, and death. The only chance to save a victim is to get him into pure air and apply artificial respiration. To kill rats and other vermin and to rid trees of insect pests, hydrocyanic acid is used rather than a cyanide, because it is a gas.

In chemistry, the term cyanide is commonly used for salts of a metal or alkaline element. Compounds with organic radicals such as ammonium are often called *nitriles*. When the cyanogen radical CN combines with OH instead of H, the compound is called *cyanic acid* and its salts are called *cyanates*. Many plants such as sorghum and flax and plant parts such as almonds and peach pits contain cyanogen. It is combined with glucose as a *glucoside* and is harmless, except when decay of the plant breaks up the combination. Then the plant may be poisonous.

**CYCLOMEN** (*sik la men*). Of the potted plants the cyclamen is almost unsurpassed for delicate beauty. When fully opened the flower has turned itself inside out until the face looks downward and the petals point upward. The petals, five in number are red, white, purple, rose pink, or salmon, and sometimes of two colors. The large kidney shaped leaves are mottled like marble or bear attractive designs of stripes and splashes. Each leaf and flower has its own stalk which springs directly from the large tuberous root.

Florists raise the plants from seed sown during August. It takes 15 months for the blooms to appear since the cyclamen may not flower well a second season new plantings are made annually. The plants should be watered every day while in bloom and should be kept in a cool room.

The cyclamen forms a genus of the primrose family (*Primulaceae*). The few species are native to southern Europe and Asia, but florists everywhere have developed handsome varieties. Many of the florists' varieties come from the species *Cyclamen indicum*.

**CYCLONE**. In common speech the word "cyclone" is used to mean a tornado, a hurricane or any destructive wind storm. In weather science the word means a certain definite arrangement of winds over a large area, hundreds of miles wide. The winds all blow spirally inward toward a center where the barometric pressure is low. The winds may be thought of as passing the center around, and the rotation will be counterclockwise in the Northern Hemisphere and clockwise south of the equator (see *Storms*). An *anticyclone* is the opposite of a cyclone. In such a system the winds blow spirally outward from a high pressure center with direction of rotation the reverse of the cyclone.

**CYCLOPS** (*si klōps*), plural form, *Cyclopes* (*si-klō pēs*). In Greek mythology the Cyclopes were giants with a

single round eye in the middle of the forehead. Some legends said they were builders and assistants to Hephaestus, the god of fire and metal making, but older traditions say they were lawless shepherds who devoured human beings and cared nothing for the gods.

The man-eating Cyclopes were said to live in caves high in the mountains of Sicily. In the *Odyssey*, Homer tells what befell Odysseus and his men who blundered into the cave where lived Polyphemus, the most famous of the Cyclopes (see Homer *Odyssey*).

#### The Greeks Meet the Giant Polyphemus

Unaware that the island belonged to the Cyclopes Odysseus with 12 men had gone ashore to learn who lived there. When they reached the cave Odysseus led the way in carrying a huge jar of wine as a present. No one was home but the cave was stored with food so the hungry adventurers fell to feasting.

Suddenly a shadow darkened the entrance. In raced a flock of sheep and goats driven by Polyphemus. He closed the entrance with a stone that 20 horses could not have moved. In the darkness his one eye glared like a ball of fire. He swung a club as big as a ship's mast killed two of Odysseus' men with one blow and ate them for supper. Then he slept.

Odysseus refrained from killing the sleeping monster because no one but the giant could move the stone. Polyphemus ate two more men for breakfast before he went out with his flock. He closed the entrance again, leaving Odysseus and his men prisoners.

A plan of escape now occurred to the crafty Odysseus. After two more of his men had been eaten for supper, he poured wine from his jar into a bowl and offered it to the giant. Polyphemus delighted with this new drink called for more and asked the stranger his name. Odysseus supplied him again and again, and answered: Noman is my name. Soon the giant fell into a drunken sleep. Odysseus and his men took a piece of the monster's huge staff, slung it to a point heated it in the fire and put out his one eye.

Polyphemus bellowed like a hundred bulls. His brother Cyclopes rushed to the door of the cave. When he cried out: Noman is slaying me! they replied: If no man hurts you the blow must be sent by the gods and we can do nothing, so they left him to his fate.

#### How Odysseus and His Men Escaped

Next morning Polyphemus rolled away the stone to let out his sheep and placed himself at the opening of the cave to catch the intruders if they should try to escape. But Odysseus had tied the sheep in threes, and beneath each three he had tied one of his men. He himself hung under the body of a great ram clinging with hands and feet. When the flocks hastened forth to pasture, Polyphemus passed his hands only over the backs of the animals and so Odysseus and his six men escaped to the ship.

Polyphemus made Odysseus pay dearly for his escape. The monster asked his father Poseidon to stir up the waters so that Odysseus could never find his way home to Greece. The sea god heard the plea and made Odysseus a wanderer for ten long years.

## WHERE GIANT CYPRESSES GROW



A cypress swamp like this one of the deep South is a place of mystery and strange beauty. Spanish moss hangs ghostlike from the branches. Notice the curious growths ("knees") that the cypress throws up from its roots.

**CYPRESS.** From the heartwood of southern cypress trees, American pioneers built churches and plantation homes that may be standing long after our own day. Cypress, indeed, is one of the most durable of all woods. It resists insects and chemical corrosion as well as decay. Things made from it range from houses and coffins to acid tanks and butter vats. Other cypress products are boat planking, docks, pilings, poles, railroad ties, garden furniture, and flower boxes.

We get cypress lumber from the southern or bald cypress, a native of coastal swamps from Delaware through Texas, and of Mississippi Valley bottomlands as far north as southern Illinois and Indiana. It grows big enough to be used for lumber in two centuries, and it may live more than 12 centuries. Some specimens are 8 feet in diameter and 150 feet tall, with a limb spread of 80 feet. In swamps, the roots spread

out for support. Some of them send up knks called "cypress knees" above the water to get air. The branches bear light-green needlelike leaves three-quarters of an inch long and round cones the size of walnuts. The leaves are shed in fall (hence the name bald cypress). The heartwood is easy to work yet fairly strong. It varies in color from dark red at tidewater to almost white for inland trees. Florida leads in cypress lumber production, followed by Louisiana, Mississippi, Arkansas, Georgia, and South Carolina.

The Italian cypress, a tall candle-shaped evergreen of Mediterranean shores, also yields wood that lasts for centuries. The cypress doors of St. Peter's Church in Rome served for 1,100 years and were still sound when replaced by doors of bronze.

On the cliffs of the Bay of Monterey in California grows the Monterey cypress, its crown whipped flat by ocean winds. It is too scarce to be a source of lumber.

Other cypresses of the Pacific coast are the Port Orford cedar (Lawson's cypress) that grows 200 feet tall, and the Alaska cedar (Sitka or yellow cypress). Their durable wood is sold as cedar.

Cypress trees are conifers. All those discussed above, except the southern or bald cypress, retain their leaves the year round. Scientific name of southern cypress, *Taxodium distichum*, Italian cypress, *Cupressus sempervirens*, Monterey cypress, *Cupressus macrocarpa*; Port Orford cedar, *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*; Alaska cedar, *Chamaecyparis nothlatensis*.

**CYPRUS.** A world center of commerce and learning in ancient times, but almost forgotten today, this island lies in the Mediterranean Sea, west of Syria. After Sicily and Sardinia, it is the largest of the Mediterranean islands. It covers 3,591 square miles.

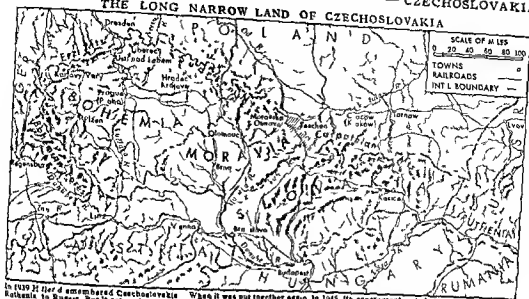
Mountain ranges in the north and south hem in the broad Mesaoria plain. The hot summer sun dries up the soil and much of it must be irrigated for farming. Exports in-

clude carob beans, oranges, raisin and wine grapes, potatoes, mules, copper, iron, pyrites, and asbestos. Cyprus was famous for copper in ancient times, and the metal was named for it (see Copper).

Cyprus was conquered in turn by Egypt, Phoenicia, Greece, Persia, and Rome, and became part of the Byzantine Empire. It was Christianized by St. Barnabas, who visited it with St. Paul. During the Third Crusade it was conquered by Richard I of England and was ruled by members of the crusading orders for three centuries. In 1489, it was taken by Venice, and in 1573, by Turkey. In 1878, England leased Cyprus from Turkey, and, in 1914, annexed it. The island now serves England as an outpost for defense of the Suez Canal.

About four-fifths of the people are Greeks, nearly all the rest are Turks. Population of Cyprus (1946 census), 450,114; of Nicosia, the capital, 34,485.

## THE LONG NARROW LAND OF CZECHOSLOVAKIA



**CZECHOSLOVAKIA** (*chěh-slov-ak-tā*) In 1918 a new nation arose in an important old land in the mountainous heart of Europe. Since prehistoric times, the rugged upland of Bohemia had been an important center and crossroads. For four centuries it had lain under Austrian rule, but even before the end of the first World War the victorious Allies entrusted the land to a new nation named Czechoslovakia.

The name of Czechoslovakia means "land of the Czechs and Slovaks." The Slovaks occupy the eastern part of the country (Slovakia). The Czechs live in the center (Moravia) and the west (Bohemia). Both peoples are Slavs and both are predominantly Roman Catholic. But they differ in culture and in historical background.

The Czechs are the most westerly branch of the Slavs. By the 14th century they had acquired Western cultures and had won a high place in Europe (see Bohemia). After a long and bitter struggle they succumbed to Austrian rule in 1526. The resulting Germanic influence made them an industrial people more advanced in culture than the Slovaks. They boast a long roll call of famous names: John Huss, a religious leader of world renown; Antonín Dvořák and Friedrich Smetana, composers; Jan Kubelík, violinist; Johann Comenius, educational reformer; and Karel Čapek, dramatist and essayist.

The Slovaks fell under the rule of Hungary. Like the rest of the eastern Slavs, they gain their living chiefly by farming.

#### The Land and Its Resources

Czechoslovakia covers an area about the size of New York. Bohemia, in the west, is a fertile rolling plateau, almost enclosed by mountain ranges. Moravia, in the center, occupies a hilly depression open to the north and south. Slovakia, in the east, slopes down

from the Carpathian Mountains in the north to a broad prairie land. The climate is continental with sharp seasonal changes.

Although Czechoslovakia is an inland country, it has easy access to the sea. The Elbe and the Oder rivers flow to the north. The Morava leads south to the Danube along the southern boundary. Railways link the country with all parts of the continent.

Wooded mountains cover a third of the land. Intense cultivation of the lower slopes and valleys makes the nation almost self-sufficient in food. The chief farm products are potatoes, sugar beets, wheat, rye, barley, oats, hops, and fruits.

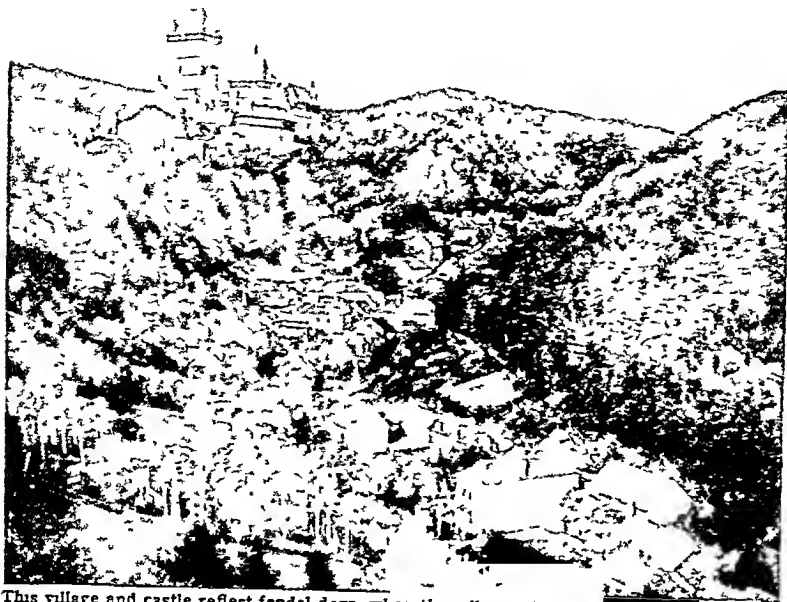
The Erzgebirge (Ore Mountains) in Bohemia and the Silesian basin in the Oder Valley in Moravia are rich in coal and lignite. Mines in Bohemia yield iron, graphite, garnets, and silver. Slovakia has copper, lead, and rock salt. Industry is concentrated in Bohemia and Moravia. The chief products are machinery, munitions, glassware, and fine porcelain. Beer, textiles, costume jewelry, shoes, and gloves. Pilsen (Pilsen) which gave its name to Pilsener beer, is the seat of the huge Škoda armament plant.

Even before Czechoslovakia became Communist in 1948 the government owned nearly all the industries. Farms were privately owned, but the Communists have set up village collectives in an effort to socialize farming. Education is widespread. There are three universities—at Brno in Moravia, at Bratislava in Slovakia, and at Prague, the capital in Bohemia (see Prague). The people like mass gymnastics, which they practice in organizations called *sokols*.

#### History of the Czechoslovak Republic

Czechoslovakia came into being on Oct. 28, 1918, following the collapse of the Austro-Hungarian Em-

## A VILLAGE IN THE FORESTED HILLS



This village and castle reflect feudal days, when the villagers lived along the narrow valley bottom under the eye of the ruler on the hill. The village is near Prague. It was named for the adjoining castle of Karlstein, built by Charles IV in the 14th century.

pire (see Austria-Hungary; World War, First). It owed its birth largely to Thomas Masaryk, who had crusaded among the Allies for the liberation of his people. Masaryk was elected first president in 1920, and he guided the young republic until 1935.

The chief problem of the young republic was its minority peoples. The Czechs numbered some 8 million, the Slovaks about 3 million. More than 3 million Germans, called "Sudeten" from one of the mountain ranges, lived in Bohemia and Moravia. Hungarians were numerous in southern Slovakia. Poles lived in the district around Teschen, a coal-mining town on the Polish border. The eastern tip of the country contained Ruthenia, with a population which felt kinship with the Ukrainians of Russia.

Masaryk began at once to break up the large estates (many of which were owned by Germans) and distributed the land to the peasants. Opportunities for education were widened. The government, modeled on that of the United States, was liberal and democratic. But the Sudeten Germans, who had been the masters in the old empire, could not reconcile themselves to their new rôle as a minority people. When Hitler came into power in Germany, many of them joined a Nazi party to win union with the Reich.

After seizing Austria in March 1938, Hitler turned to Czechoslovakia. In September, Great Britain, France, and Italy met with him in the famous Munich

conference. To avert war, Great Britain and France reluctantly agreed on September 30 to let Germany occupy the Sudeten districts. Within six months, on March 15, 1939, Hitler broke the pact and sent troops into Prague. He incorporated Bohemia and Moravia into Germany and made Slovakia a nominally "independent" German protectorate. He allowed Hungary to take over Ruthenia, and permitted Poland to move into the Czech area of Teschen.

Czechoslovakia remained dismembered throughout the second World War. Eduard Benes, who had followed Masaryk as president, set up a government in exile in London and the Czechs remained defiant, despite stern repression. When Reinhard Heydrich, a German police general, attempted to stamp out resistance, he was assassinated. Sus-

pecting the Bohemian village of Lidice of harboring his assassins, the Nazis razed it and shot all the men and 56 women (June 10, 1942).

In May 1945 the Russian army reached Prague and the American forces occupied western Bohemia. The Americans left in November, but part of the Russian army stayed. President Benes' government, a coalition of Socialists and Communists, pledged cooperation with Russia and transferred Ruthenia to the Russian Ukraine. In 1947 the Hungarian peace treaty gave Czechoslovakia a foothold opposite Bratislava, and Poland gave the Czechs permission to use the port of Szczecin (Stettin). Trying to avoid another Sudeten crisis, Czechoslovakia expelled Germans. After Hungary refused to exchange minorities, the Czechs moved alien Hungarians to the interior.


The Czechs' restored democracy worked well. Then in 1948 Communists seized control. President Benes was forced to resign. Czechoslovakia's plight drove the Western powers to increase aid to democracies (see Europe). Neither the compulsory collective farms nor state-controlled industry equaled Czechoslovakia's production when it was a democracy, and living standards fell. In 1954, however, the Czechs made trade pacts with West Germany and the Netherlands. Area of Czechoslovakia, 49,373 square miles; population (1950 census, preliminary), 12,339,674. (For Reference-Outline and Bibliography, see Europe.)

# THE EASY REFERENCE FACT-INDEX

GUIDE TO ALL VOLUMES FOR SUBJECTS  
BEGINNING WITH

C

---

TO SAVE TIME  
*USE THIS INDEX* 

EDITOR'S NOTE ON NEXT PAGE TELLS WHY

---

## SPECIAL LISTS AND TABLES

PRESIDENT EISENHOWER'S CABINET	540
FACTS ABOUT GREAT CANALS	548
CAT BREEDS AND STANDARDS	560
THE WORLD'S LARGEST CITIES	586
COINS OF THE UNITED STATES	597
AREAS OF CONTINENTS	608
NATIONAL CONVENTIONS	609

*Numerous other lists and tables in the fields of geography history  
literature science mathematics and other departments of knowledge  
will be found with their appropriate articles in the main text*



## EDITOR'S NOTE

EVERY user of Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia should form the habit of *first* turning to the Fact-Index section at the end of each volume when in search of specific information. This index is a miniature work of reference in itself and will often give you directly the facts, dates, or definitions you seek. Even when you want full treatment of a subject, you will usually save time by finding in the index the exact page numbers for the desired material.

All page numbers are preceded by a letter of the alphabet, as A-23. The letter indicates the volume. If two or three page numbers are given for the topic you are seeking, the first indicates the more general and important treatment; the second and third point to additional information on other pages. Where necessary, subheadings follow the entry and tell you by guide words or phrases where the various aspects of the subject are treated.

The arrangement of subheadings is alphabetical, except in major historical entries. In these the chronological order is followed.

The pictures illustrating a specific subject are indicated by the word *picture* or *color picture* followed by a volume indicator and a page number. A picture reference is frequently intended to call attention to details in the text under the illustration as well as to the illustration itself. This picture-text, therefore, should always be carefully read. The pictures are usually on the same page as the text to which you are also referred; sometimes they are found in a different but related article which will add interest and information.

The pronunciations given are those preferred by the best and most recent authorities; alternative pronunciations are indicated where usage is divided.

In recent years hundreds of foreign geographical names have been changed, either officially or by custom. Both old and new names are given at the appropriate places in the alphabet.

Populations are those of the latest census or an official estimate when available if no census has been taken since World War II. Distances between points are map or air distances, not distances by railroad.

# THE EASY REFERENCE FACT-INDEX

See U & P. 001

Our letter C probably started in ancient Egypt as a sign for an angle in a wall (1) Soon after 2000 B.C. a Semitic people called the Sinites adopted a crude version (2) of this picture as an alphabetic sign for the hard sound of g (as in gym) because to them the sign looked like a carpenter's square and their name *gimel* for a square began with this sound

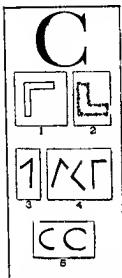
Later the Canaanite Phoenician alphabet simplified the sign to an angle (3) In Hebrew and other Semitic languages the name remained *gimel*

The next change came when the Phoenicians taught the Greeks how to write The Phoenician *gimel* was shaped for writing in Semitic fashion from right to left When the Greeks came to write from left to right they turned the sign around to suit this style They also straightened it up (4) and renamed it *gamma*

The Romans took over this sign into Latin but rounded it (5) This brought into existence our sign C which the Romans at first used for the k sound We still do this when c comes before o or u as in cash and also before consonants other than h as in clean But they also used the letter k for this sound and thus they had two signs for the same sound But they lacked a sign for the hard sound of g and so to meet this need they gave the old C a *g* as told in the history of the letter G This still left the original sign C available for another sound and in medieval times it came to be used for the soft sound of c before e i and y as in cent

NOTE—For the story of how alphabetic writing began and developed see the articles Alphabet Writing

See U & P. 001



Casha or Kaaba Mohammedan shrine M 157 picture M 157

Catlaan (ka n ting an) forest in Borneo B 291 B 271 B 75 map S 255

CAB (Civil Aeronautics Board) See in Index Civil Aeronautics Board

Cabei (ka bei) organization engaged in secret intrigues particularly an unpopular English ministry (1867-73) under Charles II composed of Clifford Ashley Buckingham Arlington and Lauderdale who initiated this happened to form the word Cabel (kab e la) or Kabbala mystical interpretation of Scriptures H 327

Caballero (ka bai pa ro) Fernán pen name of Cecilia Böhl von Faber (Ja bér) (1796-1877) Spanish novelist born Switzerland wrote of native customs folklore (The Sea Gull)

Caballos Hond ras See in Index Puerto Corica

Cabanel (ka ba n e l) Alexandra (1823-89) French painter celebrated and highly popular in his time for portraits and historical paintings academic in treatment

Cabbage C 1 2 pictures A 134 C 1-2 cooking C 488

cultivator protection from C 552

odor S 447

when and how to plant G 13 table G 19

Cabbage butterfly or white butterfly (Pieris rapae) of the order Lepidoptera family Pieridae larva a pest on cabbage and cauliflower color pict rs I 1546

tree picture E 289

Cabbage palm name applied to certain palms such as the coconut palm and royal palm which bear large terminal buds that are eaten like cabbage picture P 49

Cabbage rose R 230

Cabbage worm a caterpillar C 137

Cabell (kab e l) James Branch (born 1879) novelist born Richmond Va engaged in genealogical and historical research works show classical attention to form and

structure subtly humorous ironical fantasies set in imaginary medieval country Politics no (Cream of the East Jürgen Strauss and Prayer Books The Silver Stallion Beyond Life)

Cabera de Vaca (ka ba ta da va ka) Aitor Nolas (1490-1557) Span

ish soldier and explorer C 3

wanderings in Southwest S 307

New Mexico N 181, Texas T 93

Caberton (kab e r t n) explorer

a fish (Scorpaenichthys marmoratus) of the Pacific coast green in

color even to the fins and bones handsome and hardy in French Quar

Cabildo (ka bei do) created 1795

ier New Orleans as seal of governing body (as

seal of governing body (as seal of governing body of Louisiana

islands scene of transfer of Louisiana territory from France to US

Dec 20 1803 following Louisiana Purchase residence of Lafayette

during visit 1828 now a museum of history and art

Cabinda, or Kabininda (ka ba da da) Portuguese possession n of mouth

of Congo River belongs to colony of Angola 3600 sq mi pop 46

324 sq mi H 109 A 47

Cabinet in government, the heads of

departments who act as advisers to

the chief executive of a country or

state C 3-4 A list of members of

the Cabinet of the President of the

US will be found on next page

British C 4 P 37-38

Canadian C 31 P 39

Confederate States of America C 43

United States C 3-4 list U 359

executive departments U 358-47

first Cabinet picture C 3 sala

ries table U 357

Cabinet government See in Index

Parliamentary government (1844-

Cable George Washington (1844-

1925) novelist born New Orleans

La stories of Creole life and old

plantation days in the South (The

Granddames Old Creole Days

Strange True Stories of Louisiana)

see A 239

Cable coaxial R 41 television T 546 d a

gram T 546

In dam building D 11

undersea C 5 8 map C 5 pictures

C 5-8

Atlantic Ocean C 5 map A 452

gutta percha see covering G 235

C's diagram C 8

sending a message C 6 picture

T 38

wire W 191 193 picture W 162

aluminum A 192

Cable railway S 430 pictures C 189

S 418

Cable tool drill for oil wells P 171

Cabheron (ka ba sh da) a method

of gem cutting which gives jewels

a domestic appearance used for

all stones until 14th century when

faced cut became popular still

used for opaque and translucent

stones and for carbuncles J 347

picture J 350

Caboose a railroad car at end of

freight or construction trains used

for iron crew or workmen picture

R 89a

Cabot Frederick R (1668-1832)

lawyer born Brookline Mass

Boston juvenile court J 354

Cabot George (1175?-1823) one of

Federalist leaders in Mass pres

ident of Hartford Convention and

member of Essex Junto

Cabot John (1450-99) Italian ex

plorer sailing under English flag

C 9 C 95

St. George's Cross (flag) F 136a

color picture P 131

voyages map A 189

Cabot Richard Clarke (1868-1939)

physician and writer born Brook

line Mass professor of medicine

and of social ethics Harvard Uni

versity author of books on medi

cine and on ethics

Cabot Sebastian (1476-1557) ex

plorer son of John C 9 A 337

Cabot Strait between Newfoundland

and Cape Breton Island connects

Gulf of St Lawrence with Atlantic

Ocean map C 73

## PRESIDENT EISENHOWER'S CABINET

## Secretary of State

John Foster Dulles. Lawyer and diplomat, born Washington, D.C., 1888; with law firm of Sullivan and Cromwell, New York City, 1911-49, interim U.S. senator 1949, special representative of president of U.S. to negotiate Japanese peace treaty 1950-51.

## Secretary of the Treasury

George M. (Mogoffin) Humphrey. Industrialist and lawyer, born Cheboygan, Mich., 1890, joined M. A. Hanna Company, Cleveland, Ohio, 1918, president 1929-52, chairman of board May-Dec. 1952.

## Secretary of Defense

Charles Erwin Wilson. Industrialist and electrical engineer, born Minerva, Ohio, 1890, with Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company 1902-19; joined General Motors Corporation 1919, became president 1941, chief executive officer 1946-52.

## Attorney General

Herbert Brownell, Jr. Lawyer and political leader, born Peru, Neb., 1901, manager for Thomas E. Dewey's presidential campaigns 1944 and 1948, chairman Republican National Committee 1944-46, played key role as strategist in Dwight D. Eisenhower's presidential campaign 1952.

## Postmaster General

Arthur (Ellsworth) Summerfield. Political leader, born Pigeonwing, Mich., 1899, in 1929 opened automobile agency at Flint, Mich., now one of largest in U.S.; chairman Republican National Committee July 1952-Jan. 1953.

## Secretary of the Interior

Douglas McKay. Public official, born Portland, Ore., 1893; established automobile sales business at Salem, Ore., 1927; mayor of Salem 1933-34; state senator 1935-37, 1939-41, 1943-45, 1947-49; governor 1949-52.

## Secretary of Agriculture

Erza Taft Benson. Farm-marketing specialist, born Franklin County, Idaho, 1899; extension marketing specialist University of Idaho 1930-35, executive secretary National Council of Farmer Co-operatives 1939-44, member, quorum of 12 apostles of Mormon church 1943-52.

## Secretary of Commerce

Sinclair Weeks. Manufacturer, born West Newton, Mass., 1893; president Reed and Barton Corporation, Taunton, Mass., 1925-44, chairman of board 1945-53; mayor of Newton, Mass., 1930-35, interim U.S. senator 1944, chairman Republican national finance committee 1949-53.

## Secretary of Labor

James P. (Paul) McChell. Business executive, born Elizabeth, N. J., 1902, vice-president (personnel and labor relations) Bloomingdale Brothers, New York City, 1947-53; assistant secretary of the army (manpower) 1953, appointed Oct. 1953 to replace Martin P. Durkin, who resigned.

## Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare

Marion (Bayard) Faleom. Business executive and government official, born McRae, Ga., 1893; joined Eastman Kodak Company 1914, treasurer 1935-33; undersecretary of treasury 1933-35; appointed July 1953 to replace Oreta C. Hobby, who resigned.

Cabra (*kā'brā*), Spain, old town 35 mi. s.e. of Cordova; pop. 15,172; captured from Moors 1240; recaptured by them 1381; finally gained by Christians in 15th century; pottery, coarse cloth, wine, olive oil.

Cabral (*kā-brāl*), or Cabreira (*kā-brā'rā*), Pedro Álvares (1460?-1526), Portuguese navigator voyage A-188, D-83, E-293, map A-189.

Cabrera (*kā-brā'rā*), one of Balearic Isles B-20, map E-425.

Cabrillo (*kā-brē'yō*), Juan Rodríguez (died 1543), Portuguese navigator explores California C-45, S-40.

Cabril'lo National Monument, in California N-30, S-40, map N-18.

Cabrinl (*kā-brē'nē*), Saint Frances Xavier (1650-1917), Roman Catholic sister, born in Italy; founded Missionary Sisters of the Sacred Heart, 1880, in Italy; in later years lived in U. S. as head of order; established hospitals in New York and Chicago; first U. S. citizen beatified (1938); canonized July 1946.

Cab'riote lex I-178, 179, picture I-179.

Cacalia. See in Index Emilia.

Cacao (*ka-kā'ō*), tropical American tree; beans yield chocolate and cocoa: C-9, picture C-302, C-9.

beans C-9, C-288; processing for chocolate C-288, pictures C-288, 289.

producing regions C-9, G-134b.

tea made from leaves T-32.

Cacini (*kā-chē'nē*), Giulio (1550?-1618?), Italian singer and composer, one of group of musicians who developed new style out of which opera grew.

Caccio Cavallo (*kāt'chō kā-vā'yō*) cheese C-207.

Cchalot. See in Index Sperm whale.

Chanchacha (*ka-cho'cha*), gay Spanish dance with castanets, usually solo;

music, in triple time, resembles bolero.

Cacomistle, animal. See in Index Bassarisk.

Cactoblas'tis cactorum, moth destructive to prickly-pear cactus A-480.

Cactus (*kāk'tūs*), desert plant C-9-10, picture N-51, color pictures C-11-12.

Arizona A-345.

giant C-9, 10, picture E-213, color pictures C-11, S-384a.

organ pipe N-38.

prickly pear C-9, 10, picture P-299, color picture C-12; control in Australia A-480.

stores water C-9, pictures P-299, N-51.

Cactes family, or Cactaceae (*kāk-tā'sē-ē*), a family of plants, native chiefly to the Americas, including the night-blooming cereus, prickly pear, saguaro, Turk's-cap cactus, and lemon vine.

Cactus State, popular name for New Mexico.

Cactus wren, bird W-305.

state bird, table B-158.

Caddle, in golf G-138.

Caddis fly, an order of insects, *Trichoptera*; found near streams, ponds, lakes; larvae, called caddis worms, are aquatic: N-54, picture I-157, color pictures I-154c, P-420b.

Caddo, Indian tribe that now lives in Oklahoma, map I-106f, table I-107.

Cad'doan, a linguistic group of North American Indians comprising the Arikara in North Dakota, the Pawnee in Nebraska, and the Caddo and Wichita in n. Louisiana, Arkansas, Oklahoma, Texas.

Cade (*kād*), Jack, or John (died 1450), English peasant leader of rebellion; character in Shakespeare's 'King Henry VI': H-336.

Cadence. See in Index Music, table of musical terms and forms.

Cadets, pupils studying at military and naval schools.

Coast Guard C-371.

U. S. Military Academy M-248-9, picture M-248.

U. S. Naval Academy N-70-1, picture N-70.

Caill, or kaill (*kā'dī*), name given by Mohammedans to a judge or magistrate.

Cadillac (*ka-dē-yāk'*), Antoine de la Mothe (1656?-1730), French officer and pioneer in America C-10.

Alabama A-120.

founds Detroit C-10, D-75, M-229.

La Salle and L-104.

Cadillac, Mich., city 81 mi. n.e. of Muskegon, on Lakes Cadillac and Mitchell; pop. 10,425; rubber and wood products, auto accessories, malleable iron; Manistee National Forest nearby; map M-227.

Cadillac Mountain, in Acadia National Park, Maine N-30.

Cadiz (*kā'diz*, Spanish *kā'dēth*), Spain, seaport and naval station on Cadiz Bay, 30 mi. n.w. of Strait of Gibraltar; pop. 100,249, with suburbs, exports wine, figs, olive oil: S-320, maps S-312, E-425, picture S-319.

Drake attacks D-129.

Cadman, Charles Wakefield (1851-1946), composer, born Johnstown, Pa.; studied Indian music and wrote many Indian songs and operas ('Shanewis'; 'A Witch of Salem'; 'At Dawning'; 'From the Land of the Sky-Blue Water').

Cadman, Samuel Parkes (1864-1936), American clergyman, born England; pastor Central Congregational Church, Brooklyn, N. Y., 1901-36; president Federal Council of Churches of Christ in America 1924-25; noted for popular lectures and radio talks ('Charles Darwin and Other English Thinkers'; 'Imagination and Religion').

Cadme'a, acropolis of Thebes T-115.

Cad'mm, a metallic element C-10, 13, tables P-151, M-176, C-214.

alloys A-173, C-10, 13.

electrochemical activity E-315.

meter, length determined by cadmium spectrum M-215.

Cadmus (*kād'mūs*), in Greek mythology, founder of Thebes C-13.

introduces alphabet A-179.

Cadore (*kā-dō'rā*), or Pieve di Cadore, Italy, small town on Piave River, birthplace of Titian.

Cadorna (*kā-dō'r'nā*), Luigi, Count (1850-1928), Italian field marshal, chief of general staff 1914-17, commander in chief of Italian armies in field 1915-17; replaced by Diaz following defeat at Caporetto.

Ca' d' Oro (*kā-dō'rō*) ('The House of Gold'), a magnificent Gothic palace in Venice adorned with marble and gold and beautiful tracery.

Caduceus (*ka-dū'sē-ūs*), magic wand of Hermes; has two snakes twined round a staff topped by wings; became associated with medicine because snakes symbolized wisdom: H-348.

Cae'mm (*sā'f'ūm*) nouch at beginning of large intestine P-245, color picture P-242.

Ca'dmon (*kād'mūn*) (7th century A.D.), earliest English Christian poet C-13, E-375.

Caelian (*sē'lī-ān*) Hill, Rome R-194.

Cæn (*ēān*), city of Normandy, France; pop. 47,835; lace and glove industries; maps F-259, E-425.

abbey N-243.

**Caerleon** (kâr'le on) England town on Usk River near border of a Wales also of ancient Roman town of Isca history and plan of which have been revealed by excavations Many Roman antiquities found traditional site of Camelot seat of King Arthur's court

**larculum** (ar'jū l) ancient name for Aurelius J 319

**Caesar** (sâr'sâr), Gaius Julius (102-44 B.C.) Roman general statesman and author C-13-15 pictures 11 183, C 14

emendar reforms C 22 D 28 V 335  
Cleopatra and C 343, picture 4  
conspiracy against, and death C 14-15

dictator with title of Imperator C 14  
Invades Britain L 357

July named for J 364  
literary style C 15 L-130-1

name as official title C 15  
Pompey and J 368

**Caesarea** (sâr'sâr'ya), or **Caesarea** Maraea ancient town in Asia Minor capital of kings of Cappadocia destroyed by Persians A 260 pop then 400,000 modern town then 400,000

key trade center in Turkey pop 65,492 maps P 158 T 215

**Caesarea**, Philippi town in ancient Palestine on Jordan River at foot of Mt Hermon here Jesus gave his charges to Peter (Matt xvi 13-19) now the village of Banias Syria map B 134

**Caesarius** or **Ptolemy** A 11 (died 80 A.C.) son of Cleopatra and ruler with her of Egypt P 430 C 343

**Caesul** See in Index **Caesul**

**Caesobriga** Spain See in Index **Caesobriga**

**Caesura** da la Relia See in Index **Caesura**

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) also **Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) also **Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya)

drug found in coffee C 372-80 T 30 heart and brain stimulant T 30

**Caesura** C 1358

**Caesura** Paolo See in Index **Caesura**

**Caesura** Paolo

**Caesura** Italy capital and chief city of Sardinia on a coast on Gulf of Cagliari pop 137,040 Roman amphitheater also name of a province of Sardinia maps 1 282 E 423

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) Alessandro Count assumed name of Joseph Barone (1743-95) Italian adventurer traveled widely in Europe and Asia posing as physician alchemist weller freemason implicated in Diamond Necklace affair and exiled from France in 1791 Inquisition charged him with heresy and sorcery and sent him to prison where he died

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) Ala town at junction of Alabama and Cahaba rivers 10 mi. e of Selma state capital 1820-26 now deserted

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) Abraham (1880-1951) American journalist and author born Russia came to U.S. 1892 editor in chief Jewish Daily Forward (Yekl) a Tale of the New York Ghettos White Terror and the Red The Rise of David Levytsky

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) writs of plaintiffs and grievances drawn up by legislative representatives of villages and towns of France shortly before Revolution of 1789

**Caesura** III villages about 5 mi. e of East St Louis pop 794 L 41 map inset I 37

**Caesura** captures C 339

**Caesura** Monnds M 438 1 27 pictures 1 41 M 438

**Caesura** (kâr'sâr'ya) a petrel P 187

**Calaphas** (kâ'pâ'fâs) Jewish high priest, before whom Jesus was arraigned preceding the crucifixion (John xviii 13-15 24)

**Calat** (kâl'at) Bahaman See in Index **Calat**

**Calat** (kâl'at) Calat Islands

**Callia** (kâl'ya) Joseph M A (1862-1914) French premier 1911-12 imprisoned 1917 9 banished 1920-21 for treasonable communication with the German minister of finance

100 and for short period in 1926 and in 1935 became senator 1928

his wife killed Gaston Calmette editor of *Figaro* for printing virulent attacks against Callia

but was acquitted

**Callitrit** (kâl'ya'it) Louis Paul (1870-1913) French chemist succeeded in liquefying oxygen and nitrogen

**Calman** or **calman** reptile of the crocodile type C 315

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

**Calu** (kâl'u) Adam and Eve first born son of his brother Abel (Gen IV)

- balance in body and parathyroids H-425-6  
 calcite C-18, M-262, pictures C-18, M-265  
 carbide C-18, F-317: acetylene source A-7, 8; nitrogen fixation C-18, N-241  
 carbonate A-10, C-18, M-262: chalk C-182, picture M-265; limestone L-244; marble M-92; shells S-138, S-189a  
 chloride A-168: absorbs moisture C-18; mineral forms M-265  
 cyanamide, in nitrogen fixation N-241  
 earth's crust, percentage in diagram C-215  
 electrochemical activity E-315  
 electronic structure, diagram C-213  
 fireworks colored by F-93  
 fluoride: fluorescent properties L-235; mineral form M-265  
 fluorspar (fluorite) M-265  
 food must contain F-217, C-18  
 hydroxide and oxide (lime) L-244, C-18  
 hypochlorite C-288  
 ion, table C-216  
 lime L-244  
 limestone L-244  
 milk contains M-250  
 oxide C-18, L-244  
 oxychloride C-288  
 phosphate C-18; fertilizer F-55; mineral forms M-265; yields phosphorus P-209  
 Portland cement, use in C-165  
 protoplasm contains B-145  
 silicate: mineral forms M-266  
 sulfate: gypsum contains G-236; mineral forms M-265; solubility S-234  
 sulfide: fluorescence L-235; Le-Blanc process produces S-226; phosphorescent properties P-208  
 tungsten: in X-ray fluoroscope X-330; mineral source of tungsten M-265  
 Calcium light, or lime light L-244  
 Calculating machines and devices C-18a-d, pictures C-18a-c  
 abacus A-2-3, picture A-3  
 analogue computers C-18a, c-d, picture C-18b  
 bookkeeping type, picture B-229  
 cash register C-131, picture C-131  
 census recording C-168, picture C-168  
 computing scales W-86  
 digital computers C-18a-c, pictures C-18a, c  
 electronic C-18a, b-c, d, pictures C-18b-c  
 inventions, table I-204c  
 slide rule S-199, picture S-199  
 Calculus, a branch of higher mathematics; fundamental principles developed independently by Sir Isaac Newton (1665) and Gottfried Wilhelm Leibnitz (published 1684): C-18d-20  
 differential C-18e  
 integral C-19-20  
 Calcutta (Kāl-kūt'g), India, 2d largest city in India; capital of West Bengal state; on Hooghly River, a branch of the Ganges; pop. 2,548,677: C-20-1, maps I-54, A-407, A-531, picture C-20  
 banyan tree B-53  
 Black Hole of Calcutta C-352, C-21  
 Ganges River G-10  
 Howrah Bridge B-308, picture C-20.  
 See also in Index Bridge, table  
 Caldecott (Kāl'dē-kūt'), Randolph (1846-86), English artist C-21-2, L-207, pictures C-21, L-207, 208  
 Caldecott medal, awarded annually since 1938 to the illustrator of the most distinguished picture book for children published in America in the preceding year; established by Frederic G. Melcher; named for Randolph Caldecott: L-267, picture L-268. See also in Index Awards, table  
 Calder, Alexander (born 1898), painter and sculptor, born Philadelphia, son of Alexander Stirling Calder; started career as engineer; turned to painting 1923; in 1930 began making abstract sculptural constructions which he termed "mobiles" and "stabiles": S-83  
 mobile, picture S-83  
 Calder, Alexander Stirling (1870-1945), sculptor, born Philadelphia; had charge of sculpture at Panama-Pacific Exposition in San Francisco.  
 Caldera (Kāl-dā'rā), a crater formed by collapse of top of a volcano  
 Crater Lake N-33  
 Calderón (Kāl-dā-rōn'), Phillp Her-mogenes (1833-98), painter of Spanish parentage, born Potters, France, spent most of his life in England keeper of Royal Academy, London, 1887-98; historical, portrait, and genre painter  
 'Ruth', picture R-299  
 Calderón de la Barca, Pedro (1600-1661), Spanish dramatist and poet S-326  
 Caldwell, Erskine (born 1903), writer, born White Oak, Ga.; has been cotton picker, stagehand, professional football player, book reviewer, and screen writer ('Tobacco Road', novel, later dramatized; 'Kneel to the Rising Sun', short stories)  
 Caldwell, Jonathan, captain in American Revolution D-60  
 Caldwell, Idaho, town in s.w. 25 mi. W. of Boise; pop. 10,487; livestock shipping; College of Idaho, publishing house: maps I-21, U-252  
 Caldwell, N. J., post borough, 8 mi. s.w. of Paterson; pop. 6270; Cleveland's birthplace: map W-164  
 Caldwell College for Women, at Caldwell, N. J.; Roman Catholic; arts and sciences, education.  
 Calèche (Kāl-lēsh'), two- or four-wheeled carriage  
 Caledonia, name given by Romans to N. Britain; now used poetically for Scotland: S-64  
 Caledonian Canal, Scotland, picture B-320  
 Caledonians, ancient inhabitants of Caledonia; term now humorously applied to people of Scotland.  
 Calendar (Kāl'ēn-dēr) C-22-4, table C-23  
 almanacs C-24; nautical N-74, O-326  
 American Indian, picture I-108b: "calendar holes" of Pueblo N-31  
 Aztec A-543: Calendar Stone, picture A-543  
 centuries, reckoning C-23  
 Christian Era, reckoning time before and after C-23  
 clock and calendar combined, picture D-24-5  
 Easter, how calculated E-200  
 Egyptian, ancient C-22, Y-334  
 finding day of week for any date, table C-23  
 French Revolutionary calendar C-23, F-294, W-85  
 Greek Olympiad O-381  
 Gregorian C-22-3, Y-335: adopted by Russia R-273  
 Hebrew, at Gezer, table A-178  
 international date line I-187-8, maps P-16-17, T-135, pictures I-187-8, A-413  
 Jewish New Year N-195  
 Julian C-22, D-28, Y-335: Russian church E-273  
 leap year C-22, Y-335  
 Mayan M-144  
 Mohammedan M-329  
 month M-380  
 New Year's Day N-194-5  
 old and new style C-22-3, Y-335  
 origin of name C-22  
 perpetual, table C-23  
 Roman C-22, 23  
 Sabbath S-1  
 week W-85  
 year Y-334-6, pictures Y-335  
 Calendar Holes, at Casa Grande National Monument N-31  
 Calendar Stone, Aztec relic M-210, picture A-543  
 Glander, a machine  
 automobile tire, making R-239, picture R-243  
 paper P-68, 68a  
 Candles, or Klenads, in Roman calendar C-22  
 Calen'dula, or pot marigold M-96  
 Caletti-Bruni, Pietro Francesco. See in Index Cavalli  
 Calf, young of cattle and other ruminants  
 Calfskin L-149  
 vellum B-232  
 Calgary (Kāl'gā-rī), Alberta, a leading inland city of Canadian Northwest; pop. 129,060: C-24, maps C-68, 80  
 climate A-142  
 Callioun (Kāl-hon'), John Caldwell (1782-1850), American statesman and orator C-24-5  
 Statuary Hall. See in Index Statuary Hall (South Carolina), table  
 vice-president. See in Index Vice-president, table  
 Cali (Kāl'ē), chief trade center of rich Cauca Valley, in W. Colombia 50 mi. s.e. of Buenaventura; pop. 259,100, with suburbs; sugar, coffee, rice, gold, coal, cattle: C-388, map S-252  
 Caliban (Kāl'i-bān), in Shakespeare's 'Tempest', deformed savage son of a witch and a devil, enslaved by Prospero T-56  
 Caliber, of firearms. See in Index Bore  
 Calibration, adjustment of different instruments, such as gauges or thermometers, to give identical readings under the same circumstances; also the accurate adjustment of the scale divisions on an instrument.  
 Caliche (Kāl-lēchā), nitrate-bearing rock in Chile C-251  
 Calico, printed cotton cloth; originally white cotton cloth from Calcut, India.  
 Calico bass, the black crappie S-454.  
 See also in Index Crappie  
 Caliro bush, another name for mountain laurel L-137, color picture F-177  
 Calico scnillop (*Pecten gibbus*), clam shell, color picture S-139a  
 Calicut (Kāl'i-kūt'), India port on s.w. coast. In Madras state; pop. 158,724; exports copra, ginger, coffee, tea, rubber; acquired by Great Britain by treaty 1792: map A-407  
 Vasco da Gama visits G-8  
 Calif. See in Index Caliph  
 California (Kāl-i-forn'ya or Kāl-i-fōr'nī-a), a Pacific state of U. S.; 158,693 sq. mi.; pop. 10,586,223; cap. Sacramento: C-25-49, maps C-34-5, C-26, 29, U-252, 303, pictures C-26, 32, 37-46, 47-8  
 agriculture C-39-41, 28: Acala cotton C-498; lettuce L-175; ostrich farming O-427; rabbit raising R-18.  
 See also subhead fruit, below  
 area compared with that of Japan, chart J-296  
 bird, state C-27  
 Capitol, State, pictures S-2, C-44  
 cities C-30-1, map index C-33, 36.  
 See also in Index names of cities  
 Berkeley B-125  
 Fresno F-295  
 Glendale G-126  
 Long Beach L-307

Key: cāpe, āt, fār, fāst, whāt, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; īce, bīt, rōw, won, for, nōt, dē; cāre, būt, rīde, full, burn; out;



- Callière, Louis Hector de (1646-1703), French colonial official, born Cherbourg, France; 1684-99 governor of Montreal; 1699-1703 governor general of New France; known for his wise dealings with the Iroquois.
- Callimachus (kālīm'a-lūs), Greek lyric poet of 3d century B.C.; credited with some 800 works.
- Callimachus (5th century B.C.), Greek sculptor; credited with a group of dancing Laconian maidens and a gold lamp for the Erechtheum; said to be the originator of the Corinthian capital and the running drill for boring in marble.
- Calliope (lā-l'ō-pi), in Greek mythology, Muse of epic poetry M-464
- Calliope, series of steam whistles arranged to give tunes when sounded by keyboard, picture C-311
- Calliopeis. See in Index Coreopsis
- Callippus, or Callippus (4th century B.C.), Greek astronomer, born Cyzicus, Asia Minor; instituted use of Callippic cycle, a period of 76 years (the equivalent of four Metonic cycles minus one day).
- Callisto (kāl-i'stō), in Greek mythology, attendant of Artemis and mother of Arcas, because of love affair with Zeus she was turned into a bear by Hera, or Artemis; mistaken for an ordinary bear, was about to be slain when rescued by Zeus who placed her in the sky as the constellation, Great Bear
- Callistus. See in Index Calixtus
- Callot (kālō), Jacques (1592-1635), French engraver, master of art of design, skilled in putting many figures in small space
- Calloway, Cabell (Cab) (born 1907), Negro composer bandleader, and actor born Rochester, N. Y.; in "Porgy and Bess" 1952.
- Calmar, Sweden. See in Index Kalmar
- Calms, belt of. See in Index Doldrums
- Calomel, mercurous chloride M-174 fireworks, used in F-93
- Caloosahatchee River, in s.w. Florida, 75 mi. long; main outlet of Lake Okeechobee; forms western arm of Cross-State Canal.
- Caloric, imaginary fluid once assumed to be heat H-320
- Calorie (kāl'ō-rī), or calory heat unit C-49, H-319, table E-344c: latent heat of water W-63 measure of food value F-217, chart F-216, table E-344c
- Calorimeter, instrument for measuring quantity of heat Bunsen inventions B-352
- Calosoma beetle, pictures B-104
- Calotype process, photography P-225-6
- Cal'pē, in ancient geography, one of the Pillars of Hercules; modern Gibraltar
- legendary origin H-342
- Calpurnia, wife of Julius Caesar whom she married in 59 B.C. C-14
- Cal'tanissetta (kāl-tā-nē-sēt'ā), city in Sicily; pop. 37,463; center of sulfur industry: map E-425
- Cal'thorp, Samuel Robert (1829-1917), Unitarian minister, born Lincolnshire, England; came to U. S. 1853 streamlined train S-429
- Cal'trop family, or Zygophyllaceae (zī-gō-fī-lā'sē-ē), family of plants, shrubs, and trees, including the lignumvitae and the creosote bush.
- Cal'umet, Mich., town on Upper Peninsula, about 68 mi. n.w. of Marquette; pop. 1256; situated in Calumet township, center of great copper-mining district: maps M-226, U-253
- Calumet, or ceremonial pipe, the "peace pipe," of North American Indians; tobacco pipe with stone bowl and long reed stem ornamented with eagles' feathers: pictures I-104b, 110c
- Calumet and Hecla Mine, in Michigan C-473-4
- Calumet City, Ill., city 16 mi. s.e. of Chicago; pop. 15,799; packing-house products, chemicals, pickles: map, inset I-36
- Calusa, Indian tribe that formerly lived in Florida, map I-106f, table I-107
- Cal'vary, or Golgotha, the place where Jesus was crucified J-340, J-336
- Calvé (kāl-vā'), Em. (1854-1942), French operatic singer of great dramatic power: picture O-394
- Cal'verley, Charles Stuart (1831-84), English humorous poet and barometer ("Fly Leaves": "Theocritus Translated into English Verse").
- Calvert, Barons Baltimore. See in Index Baltimore
- Calvert (kāl'vērt), Leonard (1606-1647), first colonial governor of Maryland, brother of Cecilus, 2d Lord Baltimore B-38
- buys land from Indians M-110, picture M-109
- Calvi (kāl'vē), battle of (1794), named for small seaport in n.w. Corsica; naval battle between English and Corsicans in which Nelson lost his right eye.
- Calvin, John (1509-64), French theologian and Protestant reformer C-49, C-302-3, picture R-92
- French literature influenced by F-287
- Geneva headquarters G-36
- Knox influenced by K-63
- Puritans influenced by P-443
- Reformation, part in R-92, 93
- Calvin College, at Grand Rapids, Mich.; founded 1876 by Christian Reformed church; arts and sciences.
- Calvinists, followers of John Calvin's teachings
- in Thirty Years' War T-118
- witches, persecution of W-180
- Calycanthus, a genus of aromatic shrubs with opposite leaves and large brownish purple flowers; popularly called Carolina allspice.
- Calycanthus floridus, called the strawberry shrub because the crushed flowers yield the fragrance of strawberries, is a common garden shrub.
- Calycanthus family, or Calycanthaceae (kāl-i-kān-thā'sē-ē), a family of plants, native to North America and e. Asia, including Carolina allspice and the meratias.
- Calydon (kāl'ē-dōn), ancient city of Aetolia, Greece; scene of legendary hunt for the monstrous Calydonian boar which Artemis sent to ravage the country because she had been neglected in a sacrifice by the king of Calydon.
- Calypso (kāl'ip'sō), in Greek mythology, nymph who detained Odysseus for seven years O-344
- Calypso music, folk music of the Negroes of Trinidad; became popular as form of jazz music in U. S. 1938; simple, characteristic melodies; words often about persons prominent in current events.
- Calyx (kāl'iks), sepal structure of flower F-184
- Cam (kām), or Cão (kōu), Diogo, Portuguese explorer of 15th century D-82
- Cam, river in Cambridgeshire, England; 40 mi. long, emptying into Ouse.
- Cam, in machinery, picture M-160b
- automobile A-515, diagram A-515: early use A-504
- Camacho, Manuel Avila. See in Index Avila Camacho
- Camagüey (kā-mā-juē'), largest inland city of Cuba, in province of Camagüey, 170 mi. n.w. of Santiago de Cuba; pop. 204,254, with suburbs; cattle products: C-527, maps C-528, W-96
- Camargue Dam, in Spain, at junction of Noguera Pallaresa and Segre rivers. See also in Index Dam, table
- Camargo (kā-mār-gō'), Marie Anne de Cupis de (1710-70), Belgian ballerina, born Brussels, Belgium, where she first appeared as a dancer; made Paris debut 1726; the Camargo Society (founded London 1930 to sponsor ballet) named for her: D-144
- Cambacères (kān-bā-sā-rēs'), Jean Jacques Régis de, duke of Parma (1753-1824), French statesman; 2d consul under Napoleon; played part in compiling Code Napoléon.
- Camber, in airplane A-88
- Camberwell, England, metropolitan borough of s. London; pop. 179,729; Camberwell Green once celebrated for fairs.
- Cambium, "growth layer" between bark and wood of trees B-55, P-292, diagram T-179
- Cambo'dia, free state in s.w. Indo-China on lower Mekong River; about 52,500 sq. mi.; pop. 3,748,000; cap. Phnom-Penh: I-122-6, maps I-123, A-407
- Angkor Vat I-125, pictures A-419, I-121
- cleaning rice, picture I-123
- flag F-136d, color picture F-134
- relationships in continent, maps A-406-7, 411-12
- royal grounds, picture I-126
- Cambodia River, in s.e. Asia. See in Index Mekong River
- Cambon (kān-bōn'), Jules (1845-1935), French diplomat, brother of Pierre Cambon; governor general of Algeria; French ambassador to U. S. 1897-1902, to Spain 1902-7, to Germany 1907-14; deputy prime minister 1917 for the specific purpose of establishing a common Franco-American war policy.
- Cambon, Pierre Paul (1843-1924), French diplomat; prefect departments of Aube, Doubs, Nord successively; minister Tunisia; ambassador to Spain 1886-90, to Turkey: 1890-98, to England 1898-1920; instrumental in setting up the entente cordiale.
- Cambrai (kān-brā'), France, city 31 mi. s. of Lille; pop. 24,550; linen goods, especially cambric, to which it gave name: maps B-111, E-425
- World War I battles W-227, 230
- Cambrai, League of, alliance of Louis XII of France, Emperor Maximilian I, Ferdinand the Catholic of Spain, and Pope Julius II for partition of Venetian territories (1508) V-446, J-364
- Cambrai, Peace of (1529). See in Index Treaties, table
- Camb'ria, ancient name of Wales.
- Cambrian Mountains, highlands of Wales, map B-321
- Cambrian period, in geology G-59, diagrams G-52, 58, picture P-406a, table G-57
- Camb'ric (kām'bril'), originally a fine linen fabric (from Cambrai, France, where probably first made); now usually a soft, closely woven cotton cloth; also a stiff lining fabric of cotton.
- Camb'ric tea T-33
- Cambridge, or Cambridgeshire, agricultural county in e. England; 492 sq. mi.; pop. 140,000; county seat Cambridge: map E-347

Key: cāpe, āt, fār, fāst, whet, fāl; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cāre, bīt, rjde, full, būrñ; out;

Cambridge England seat of Cam  
bridge University on Cam River  
50 mi n of London pop 81 461  
see 11 325  
cemetry US permanent military  
N 165

Cambridge Mass suburb of Boston  
pop 120 740 C 49-50 map (incl  
31 138)

Christmas tree first in America  
C 1846

Camou sellera N 124

first printing in American Colonies  
A 224

Longfellow's home L 306 #16 pic  
ture I-309

Lowell home C picture A 319 C 50  
museums See in Index Museuma  
note

noted men and landmarks C 60

Cambridge Md city on Choptank  
River 37 mi s.e. of Annapolis P 9  
10 351 crab and oyster fishing  
vegetable and sea food processing  
shirts wire cloth lumber products  
boats mfg N 117

Cambridge Ohio city 75 mi e of  
Columbus pop 14 739 glass  
plaster pottery map O 356

Cambridge War or Camel Taron flag  
P 1301 R 233 color picture P 124

Cambridgehire a county in England See  
in Index Cambridge

Cambridge University famous center  
of learning Cambridge England  
established 11th century given  
charter by Henry III (1231) 26  
colleges including two for women  
(women first given degrees 1923)  
library I-163

religious restrictions removed G 114

Camboian Mountains Greece range  
in Thessaly intersecting the Pin  
do Mountains on west culminating  
in Mount Olympus on east

Cambascan (kdm bas kdn or kdm  
bas kdn) king of Sarras in Tarrary  
in Chamer's Aquiles Tale given  
magic horse ring mirror and  
sword by king of Arabia and India

Cambyases (kdm biases) I (6th cent  
BC) king of Persia father of  
Cyrus the Great

Cambyzes II (died 522 BC) king of  
Medes and Persians 550-522 BC  
transmission of Cambyzes I and son of  
Cyrus conquered Egypt reputa  
tion as inhuman and dissolute ruler

Camden Ark city 85 mi s.w. of  
Little Rock on Ouachita River  
pop 11 272 paper furniture pot  
tery map A 386

Camden N J port and railroad cen  
ter on Delaware River opposite  
Philadelphia Pa pop 124 555  
C 50 maps N 185 U 253  
Delaware River Bridge See in Index  
Bridge toffie

Camden S C town 30 mi n.e. of  
Columbia pop 8986 textile and  
lumber mills plastics winter re  
sort scene of battle in Revolution  
11780 map S 251

Gales and De Ka b defeated D 47  
orion plant picture S 254  
second battle See in Index Hob  
kirk's Hill battle of

Camel (ka m'l) or Camell or Kamel  
George Joseph (1861 1706) Morri  
sian botanist, Jesuit missionary to  
Philippines

camel a named for C 33

Camel (kdm d'l) an animal C 50 3  
pic res C 51-2 P 447 Z 356  
age and work map C 52  
at watering trough picture A 287  
caravans S 16 pictures A 404 S 441  
care of young C 52  
dian e covered per day C 52

draft animal in Egypt, pic res A 70  
food C 52

hair picture II 246 uses C 51 53

hump C 51 pictures C 51-2

litter camel N 242b

milk picture M 251

poetrized in art picture D 126

re-historic P 344 pic res P 406d

riding C 52 pictures A 284 295

run inland R 254 C 51 52

uses and value C 50 1 52

Camel bird name given to ostrich by  
ancients O 426b

Camel Corps military police mounted  
on dromedaries for service in desert  
countries especially the Sudanese  
camel corps of the former Anglo  
Egyptian army

Camel Express US 16th century  
L 456c

Camelidae (kdm d'l d'e) the camel  
family including llama alpacas  
guanacos and vicuñas

Camellia (kdm d'l o also ka-mel py)  
a shrub C 53

Camelopard ancient name for giraffe  
G 112

Camelus (kdm d'l) legendary seat  
of King Arthur a court supposedly  
located in Wales

Camel hair cloth fabric woven from  
hair of camel C 51 53

Cammerber (kdm en ber French ka  
m in ber) cheese C 207

Cameo (kdm d'l) gem or sea shell  
carved in relief C 53 S 330b

Camera P 325 331-3 227 C 63 See  
also in Index Photography

astronomical T 49

electron picture P 235

eye resembles mechanism S 100  
E 459

film and plates P 221

lens L-100-9 P 201 S how image  
in formed picture P 225

lightning camera L-241

motion picture M 410 pictures  
M 417 418 Technicolor M 419

pinhole how made P 217

Schilleren picture I 294

spectroscopic S 332 diagram S 333

picture S 333

stereoscopic S 392

stereoscopic arrest motion in hum  
an mind bing wings pic res H 444

television T 92 93 640 color  
T 54c-d

underside pictures O 331 A 77b

Camera 3 kids a device invented by  
Dr William Hyde Wollaston for  
drawing in perspective C 53

Camera obscura a device consisting  
of a dark chamber with a small  
opening by means of which an  
image is formed C 51

Cameralia (ka-ma-ri-ah) The name  
given to group of Italian origins  
born of opera O 366

Cameroon Agnes Deane (1863 1912)  
Canadian writer and educator born  
in Victoria BC made 10 000 mi  
trip from Chicago to Arctic Ocean  
trip from North Outer Trail I

Cameroon David Z 1265-1265 Brit  
Cameroon David Z 1265-1265 Brit  
richer and painter born Scot  
land (The Clyde Set London  
Set)

Cameroon Duncan (1794-1848) Cana  
dian fur trader born Scotland  
died when a child emigrated to Schene  
wady N Y went to Canada dor  
North American Revolution Johned North  
American Revolution 1764 and had  
West Company 1764 and had  
charge of Nilepan region opposed  
charge of Bay Company

Hudson's Bay Company (1654-  
1854) Canadian poet born New Glas  
gow Nova Scotia verse pres by  
Tennyson and Swinburne for fine  
rhythm (Lyrics on Freedom Love  
and Death)

Cameroon Simon (1799 1861) slate

Cameroon Simon (1799 1861) slate

Cameroon Simon (1799 1861) slate

Cameroon Simon (1799 1861) slate

Cameroon Simon (1799 1861) slate

born in American politics born  
Donagel Pa senator secretary of  
war under Lincoln 1861-62  
minister to Russia passed control  
of Republican party in Pennsylvania  
to son James D (1832 1918) S 369

Cameroon or Kamerun a region in  
west central Africa until 1913 a Ger  
man possession then divided as  
mandates of Great Britain and  
France in 1946 became trustees

ships French Cameroons for  
Cameroon 186 469 sq mi pop  
3 072 250 cap Yaounde British  
Cameroons 34 081 sq mi pop  
1 5 000 administered as part of  
Nigeria Pam products rubber  
Ivory coast map A 46

musical P 325 M 459

relationships in continent maps  
A 46-7 41 E 39

Camille (ka-mel) Enallth title of  
play La Dame aux Camellias (The  
Lady of the Camellias) by Dumas  
the Younger an intense love story  
but a round love of Camille (Mar  
guerite Gauthier in original) for  
Armand Duval favorite role of  
Sarah Bernhardt

Camillus Marcus Furius (died 509  
BC) Roman general dictator in  
war against Veii 496 BC

Camilla del Diablo (ka-mi-la so del  
dyablo) FI (The Devil's High  
way) in Ariz ns N 38

Camino Real (r-al) FI also The  
Royal Road or The King's Highway  
highway of ear V Cal form S 191  
S 307 C 30 map P 159

missions on C 46

Camion (ka-mi-on) French motor vehicle for  
freight same as American truck

Camille (ka-mi-la) (same as) Camille  
(1875 1954) Belgian poet went to  
England to live wrote in both  
French and English won wide  
popularity for war poems (Through  
the Iron Bars)

Camões (kdm ó-nes) Luis Vaz de  
(1524-80) greatest Portuguese  
poet largely blind language devel  
oped lyric poetry and greatly in  
fluenced national drama

The Lusitana great national epic  
P 390

Camomile See in Index Chamomile

Camorra Italian secret society organ  
ized in Naples about 1820 to aid  
prisoners of harsh Bourbon regime  
and regenerated into band devoted  
to robbery blackmail smuggling  
and murder cracked in 1912 when  
many Camorristi were imprisoned

Camassia (kdm as-ia) a flower of dis  
tinctive or onionlike smell See also in  
Index Primative color on W 227

warfare C 52 pictures W 227

228 principles adapted from an  
map P 421

Camp Walter (1829 1925) authority  
on sports especially football born  
near Haven Conn in 1829 orial  
nated annual practice of choosing  
All America Team of football  
players American Football Foot  
ball for the Spectator Training for  
Sports) F 231

Campagna (kam-pa-nya) d'l Rome  
large plain around Rome formerly  
made plain rural by Tiber Inunda  
tions and marshes R 169 1 287

Campanella (kam-pa-nel-la) Tom  
maso (1568 1639) Italian monk  
poet and philosopher I City of the  
Sun depicts ideal commonwealth

Campania (kam-pa-ni-a) Italian kam  
pa-nya Italy reg on ad w coast  
5 49 sq mi pop 4 358 659 charm  
ing climate and scenery very fer  
tile chief city Naples 1 267 map  
I 243

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

317 various empts (A b 79) P 366

See French u German u gem so thin then u=French nasal (Jean) ad=French f (s in aura) K=German guttural ch



**Companile** (*kām-pa-nē'le*, Italian *kōm-pō-nē'le*) B-118. *See also in Index* Bell tower

**Campanini** (*kām-pā-nē'nē*), Cleofonte (1860-1919), Italian musical director, manager of Chicago and Philadelphia opera companies.

**Campan'ula**, genus of herbs including the bluebell or bellflower and the harebell B-211, *color picture* F-174 how to plant, *table* G-16

**Campanulaceae**. *See in Index* Bell-flower family

**Campbell, Alexander** (1788-1866), Irish-American theologian; founder with his father Thomas (1763-1854) of Disciples of Christ (Campbellites); also founder of Bethany College, W. Va.; prolific writer.

**Campbell, Sir Alexander** (1822-92), Canadian statesman; a leader in Confederation movement, first postmaster general of Dominion; leader of Conservative party for 20 years in senate.

**Campbell, Sir Colin** (Lord Clyde) (1792-1863), British general; served in Peninsular War, Crimean War, and Sepoy Mutiny recaptures Lucknow L-339

**Campbell, Sir Malcolm** (1885-1949), British auto racer, aviator, broker; began auto racing as hobby in 1910; knighted 1931 ('My Thirty Years of Speed'; 'Romance of Motor Racing').

**Campbell, Mrs. Patrick** (Beatrice Stella Tanner) (1867-1940), English actress ('The Second Mrs. Tanqueray'; 'The Notorious Mrs. Ebb-smith'; 'Magda'; 'Pygmalion').

**Campbell, Robert**, or MacGregor, Robert (1671-1734), celebrated Scottish outlaw Rob Roy R-166

**Campbell, Robert** (1804-79), fur trader and businessman; born in County Tyrone, Ireland; came to America about 1824; joined Ashley's expedition to Rockies; soon led parties organized by the Sub-lettes and others; saved William Sublette's life in battle with Blackfeet at Pierre's Hole in 1832. He settled in St. Louis in 1835 and was active in public affairs, serving twice as Indian commissioner.

**Campbell, Robert** (1808-94), Canadian fur trader and explorer, born Glenlyon, Perthshire, Scotland; with Hudson's Bay Company 1832-71; explored Mackenzie River basin and the Yukon; 1848 discovered Upper Yukon River.

**Campbell, Thomas** (1777-1844), Scottish poet now best known for his stirring lyrics ('Hohenlinden'; 'Ye Mariners of England'; 'Lord Ullin's Daughter'; 'The Battle of the Baltic'); buried in Westminster Abbey.

**Campbell, Thomas** (1790-1858), English sculptor of classical school ('Pauline Bonaparte', 'Duke of Wellington').

**Campbell, William** (1745-81), soldier, born Augusta County, Va.; served with Patrick Henry's Virginia forces; in Virginia House of Delegates; brigadier general under Lafayette.

**Campbell, William Edward March** (1894-1954), pen name William March, writer, born Mobile, Ala. (novels: 'Company K', 'The Tailions', and 'The Bad Seed'; collected short stories: 'Trial Balance').

**Campbell, William Wilfrid** (1860-1919), Canadian poet; retired from Episcopal ministry for literary work ('Lake Lyrics'; 'Sagas of Yaster Britain').

**Campbell, formerly East Youngstown, Ohio**, industrial and residential city on Mahoning River, suburb

of Youngstown; pop. 12,882; iron and steel manufactures: map O-356

**Campbell-Bannerman, Sir Henry** (1836-1908), British Liberal leader, born Glasgow; secretary for war 1886, 1892-95; premier 1905-8; noted for support of Irish home rule, liberal policy toward Boers, campaign against House of Lords.

**Campbell Island**, island s. of and be-longing to New Zealand; area 44 sq. ml.; pop. 9: map W-205

**Campbellites**. *See in Index* Disciples of Christ

**Campbellton**, New Brunswick, town 145 ml. n. of Fredericton on Resti-gouche River in farming region; pop. 7754; fish, lumber, pulp, aerated waters, brick: maps C-69, 73

**Campenchy wood** (from Campeche, Mexico), logwood L-296

**Campeche** (*kām-pē'chē*, Spanish *kām-pā'chā*), Mexico, state on w. side of Yucatán peninsula; 19,670 sq. mi.; pop. 122,087; cap. Campeche (pop. 31,274); chicle, logwood, livestock, henequen: Y-344, maps M-189, Y-345

**Campeche, Mexico**, capital of state of Campeche, on Gulf of Campeche; pop. 31,274: Y-345, maps M-195, Y-345

**Camp'erdoun**, Netherlands, village on North Sea 27 ml. n.w. of Amster-dam; British naval victory over Dutch (1797).

**Camp Fire Girls** C-54-5, *pictures* C-54-5

**Camp fires**, how to make C-60-2

**Camphene** L-89

**Camphor** (*kām'fōr*), an aromatic gumlike substance C-55

**synthetic production** C-55

**Compl Flegrel** ('burning fields'), Italy I-267

**Complinas** (*kām-pē'nās*), Brazil, city in s.e., 60 ml. n.w. of São Paulo; coffee production and trade; pop. 101,746: maps B-288, S-253

**Complng** C-56-63, *pictures* C-56-63, *Reference-Outline* V-425

**back-yard camping**, *Reference-Outline* V-425

**bedding outfit** C-58

**books about** H-397

**Boy Scout campers**, *pictures* B-274, 277

**Camp Fire Girls** C-54

**cellar**, *picture* C-63

**clothes** C-57-8

**cookery and mess kit** C-58-9, C-463, *pictures* B-274, C-61-3

**entertainment at camp**, *picture* C-319b

**equipment** C-57-60; check list C-58; homemade C-59

**fire building; choosing wood** C-60-1; putting fire out C-62; types C-61-2

**4-H camps** F-252, 252a

**Girl Scouts**, *pictures* G-113, 114, C-63

**heating the tent** C-62

**hiking rules** C-63

**hygiene** C-62-3

**leader** C-56

**National Music Camp** B-46o

**packing equipment** C-58

**planning the trip** C-56

**poisons, and insect pests, caution** C-63

**safety suggestions** C-63

**sanitation and drinking water** C-62-3

**site, selection** C-56-7

**tent** C-59, *pictures* B-277, C-56-8, F-237, M-279, S-142, V-425

**tools** C-59-60

**water hazards** C-63

**Camp'ion, Thomas** (1567-1620), English poet and musician; composed words and music for many lyrics ('Four Books of Airs'; 'Observa-

tions in the Art of English Poesie').

**Campion**. *See in Index* Silene

**Campion, rose**. *See in Index* Mullein pink

**Campoformido**, formerly Campo Formio, Italy, village 60 ml. n.e. of Venice

**treaty of Campo Formio** (1797) N-8

**Campos**, the grassland region (or savanna) of central Brazil G-168b, S-275, maps S-255, G-169

**Campo Santo** (*kām'pō sām'tō*), name meaning 'holy field' applied to burial grounds in Italy

**Pisa** I-278

**Camp robber**, popular name for the Canada jay.

**Camp'us**, college, *picture* C-384

**Campo's Martius** (*mar'shūs*), large field on Tiber River near ancient Rome, used for military drills and popular assemblies R-197

**Cam Ranh Bay**, Indo-China, on e. coast; port is city of Cam Ranh; fine harbor; naval base

**Camus** (*kā-mū*), Albert (born 1913), French writer, born near Bône, Algeria; moved to France 1940; active in French resistance movement (novels: 'The Stranger', 'The Plague'; play: 'Caligula'; philosophical essay: 'The Rebel').

**Can**, tin F-220-1

**Cana** (*kā'nā*), of Galilee, a village in Palestine near Nazareth; scene of Christ's first miracle (John ii. 1-25) when water became wine at marriage feast: map B-138

**Cannaa** (*kā'nān*), name of pre-Israelite Palestine, which was peopled by descendants of Canaan, son of Ham J-352, map B-138

**Can'naaites** J-352

**alphabet** A-177, *chart* A-177

**Phoenicians identified with** P-205

**Can'ada**, a nation of North America; 3,845,774 sq. ml.; pop. 14,009,429; cap. Ottawa: C-64-94, maps C-67-9, 72-3, 80-1, 86, 250, P-346, *photo-graph* C-66, *pictures* C-64-5, 70, 76-7, 83-5, 87-92, *Reference-Outline* C-93-4

**agriculture** C-84-6, map N-257; government aid C-86; irrigation I-253; maple sugar and syrup M-83; wheat C-85, W-115, 116, map W-117, *pictures* A-143, C-70, W-116

**air transport** C-76, 84

**animals** C-78, 87, map N-258

**area, other countries compared** C-65, *chart* U-246

**armorial bearings** F-136a, *color picture* F-131

**art** C-90-1

**banks and banking** B-52, 48, 51

**bibliography** C-94

**boundary unfortified** U-377, G-184, C-89

**cable connections** C-5, 8

**canals** C-77, C-109, S-19, maps C-72-3, S-20; Lachine Canal, *picture* C-107; Rideau Canal C-109, O-428, 429, *picture* O-428; Sault Sainte Marie S-49-51; Trent C-109, H-452; Welland Ship Canal W-90

**cities**, list C-65. *See also in Index* names of cities

**citizenship** C-83, C-319

**climate** C-77-8, A-327-8, N-248, 253, P-103; animal and plant life varies with, map N-258

**coast lighting** L-238

**commerce** C-89; exports and imports. *See in Index* Trade, *table*

**education** C-90; illiteracy P-374

**fisheries** C-86-7, *picture* C-70; gov-ernment hatcheries F-109; lobster L-287

**flags** F-136a, *color picture* F-131; historic F-136a, *color picture* F-131

**forests and lumbering** C-78, 87, F-239b, L-340, *picture* C-89; Brit-

- ish C Lund in B 314 New Brunswick  
work N 1380 picture N 138 On  
tario C 388 Quebec Q 7  
French population C 78 83 Q 4  
furs and fur trade F 321 S C 87  
geological history N 284 S L 137  
Ice Age I 4 7  
government C 91-2 C 102 Baldwin's  
work II 20 merit system of gov-  
ernment employment C 378 Lar-  
liament Building pict res C 22  
Q 428  
Central Lakes G 178-85  
history See in Index C nva his-  
tory of  
holidays F 58 88 80  
Hudson Bay II 437  
hydroelectric power C 77 W 70  
table W 88 Niagara Falls N 830  
pictures N 231 Q 387 Ontario  
C 388 pict res G 387 Quebec  
Q-58 St Lawrence Seaway S 80  
21  
immigration and emigration C 78 83  
C 101 S 48 emigration to U.S.  
chart I 311 Lauriers' policy  
L-138 regulations I 48  
Indians C 83 I 108-112 A 8 Ha  
A 8 French and Indian War  
F 285 S 107 Northwest Terri-  
tories N 298 Ontario C 387  
Indians C 83-8 pictograph C 88  
Reference O (Hna C 83  
irrigation I 253 C 86  
labor L 75  
lakes C 77 Hat C 83 picture C 70  
See also in Index names of lakes  
languages official C 83  
Laurier's Plateau L 137 C 75  
N 253-4  
libraries L-189-203 children's L 193  
life-saving service L-228  
Literature C 105-7  
log foot picture S 1440  
minerals G 87 S L-137 map N 256  
ministry A 401 coal and iron  
C 88 75 A 142 Q 7 picture  
A 143 cobalt C 372 nickel pic-  
ture N 235 petroleum C 88  
A 142 S 1 188 B 48 picture C 88  
silver B 314 O 385 uranium  
L 405 S 49 pict res M 271 L 405  
mountains C 87 78 N 247 Hat C 85  
Coast Range and Selkirk B 313  
Rocky Mts F 174 175 C 78 pic-  
ture C 70  
national song N 41  
natural features C 87 78 S 141 C 65  
maps C 87 88 Reference Oulf 88  
C 83  
occupations pictograph C 88  
parks national and provin-  
cial N 289 9 map N 387 pic-  
tures A 141 C 117 N 387 color pict res  
N 28  
people C 78 85 85 children pic-  
tures C 91 D 1100 E 400  
L 395 397 picture F 383 popu-  
lation distribution C 85 75  
population birth and death rates  
graph F 372 growth graph G 182  
products C 84-9 maps N 268-7 Hat  
C 85 Reference Outline C 83  
Provinces and territories Hat C 85  
See also in Index names of prov-  
inces and territories  
public lands L 92  
railroads C 83 88 C 101 Maritime  
Provinces C 76 Peace River dis-  
trict F 103 transcontinental R 60  
relationships in continental maps  
N 245-6 248 250-1 256 e  
regions C 83 United Church of  
Canada C 304  
rivers C 77 Hat C 85 Reference O (f  
line C 83  
roads C 83 4 R 156/ Alaska High-  
way C 84 J 156 f map C 80  
pictures C 84 84 Peace River  
District F 103 signs picture  
P 181  
Royal Canadian Mounted Police  
F 555 pict res F 358 C 80 ori-  
gin C 103  
shields of the provinces F 1580  
color picture F 181  
sports football F 231 233 lacrosse  
L 82 3  
tariff C 102 M 6  
lines and maps U 253 4  
transportation See in Index Can-  
ada eastheads air transport ca-  
nada railroads rivers roads  
United States and C 85 87 88 88  
vegetation C 78 varies with climate  
map N 258  
an suff age W 185  
Canada history of C 95 104 chart  
I 138 pictures C 95 7 101 183  
Reference Outline C 104  
bibliography C 84 C 1088 107  
discovery C 85-86 Cabot C 8  
free chlam A 180 C 88a  
Candler explosives St Lawrence  
C 188 80 C 45a  
Champlain's founds Port Foyal and  
Quebec C 188 C 95a  
Hudson's Bay 437  
Acadians banished A 5-6  
Academy of New France C 95b  
Arpentier C F 301  
Cadillac C 10  
furs and fur trade F 321 S  
Hudson's Bay Company H 438 C 85b  
Marquette and Joliet M 89 J 382  
picture M 82  
La Sa in L 184-5  
Iberville I 1  
Blenville B 143 picture B 143  
I in William War I 47  
Queen Anne's War H 48  
King George's War F 285  
French and Indian War F 285  
Wolfe takes Quebec W 181  
Montcalm M 378  
England gains Canada C 98  
Loyalist immigration from U.S.  
C 98 New Brunswick N 138b  
Nova Scotia N 309 Ontario C 387  
Saint John S 18  
exploration of the West C 98 7  
War of 1812 W 12 13 C 87  
Family Compact government  
C 88  
rebellion of 1837 C 88 Papneau  
P 71 Mackenzie M 18  
union of Upper and Lower Canada  
C 88 B 20  
responsible government granted  
C 88  
Melne boundary dispute M 56  
Baldwin B 20 C 88  
Quebec Resolutions C 88 Turpin  
Lom nion errated C 88 C 88 109  
T 218 MacDonald M 88 C 98-103  
Red River rebellion C 102  
Canadian Pacific bill C 102  
rebellion in Saskatchewan F 444  
Yukon Territory organized Y 444  
Bering Sea controversy C 101  
Alaska boundary dispute and arbi-  
tration on R 224 L-138 C 101 2  
Laurier Sir Wilfrid L-138 C 101 2  
immigration C 101  
merit system of government employ-  
ment C 328  
Borden Sir Robert B 52-3 C 102  
World War I C 102 B 252-3 See  
also in Index World War I chro-  
nology  
bathurst Treen W 223 Viny Ridge  
W 228 Hill 70 W 327 Amiens  
and Cambrai W 239  
conscription C 102  
Hughes minister of militia H 439  
rise of new political parties C 102  
S 48 48  
woman suffrage W 185  
Mackenzie King K 44 E C 100 103  
depression on C 102  
Statute of Westminster C 91 C 102  
reciprocity treaty with U.S. C 102  
World War II C 102-3 Indian al-  
expansion C 88 C 103 See also in
- Index World War II chronology  
postwar problems and progress  
C 103  
St Laurent S 18  
state social in Saskatchewan S 48  
48  
Labrador and Newfoundland become  
provinces L 78 N 140  
complete answer only C 103  
St Lawrence Seaway See in Index  
St Lawrence Seaway  
Canada L 387 Q 387 Q 8  
Canada United Church of the Church  
formed by the union of the Congre-  
gational Methodist and Presby-  
terian churches of Canada in 1905  
membership 824 008 in 1957  
Canada 1999 C 08 Q 387 Q 8  
Canada Act 1791 or Constitutional  
Act C 88 87  
Canada bismarck F 72 Q 334  
used in flexible relation C 282  
Canada Campaigns re on 2nd company  
founded 1824 by John A. L. e  
land to immigrants along Lake  
Huron on a side of Ontario pen-  
insula built roads bridges and  
a house and founded towns of  
Quebec Galt and Orléans  
Canada Day See in Index Dominion  
Day  
Canada Paul former name of Quebec  
provin C 88 89 Q 8  
Canada goldmin G 135  
Canada gold G 140 pictures G-138  
E 221  
Canada Jay a bird J 350  
Canada Lily See in Index Yellow  
Lily wild  
Canada lynx L-635  
Canada medal D 40  
Canada participate F 374  
Canada thistle corn thistle or creep-  
ing plant L 120  
Canada West former name of Ontario  
C 88 89  
Canada Awards of the Year for Chil-  
dren awards medals given annual y  
by the Canadian Library Associa-  
tion for the only and the books for  
children in French and one in  
English written by Canadian au-  
thors Awards are made annual y  
except when no books considered  
worthy of the awards are available  
Before 1950 only one book was  
selected for the award and in each  
instance the medal winner was  
published in English In 1952 it  
was decided that books considered  
worthy of awards must have been pub-  
lished two years previously See  
also in Index Awards table  
Canadian hemlock or eastern hemlock  
H 352 pic re H 352 table W 185b  
H 352 pic re H 352 table W 185b  
Canadian history  
Canada history of  
Canadian Pacific Association L 202  
Canadian literature N 258 map N 258  
Canadian literature C 105-7 pictures  
C 105 106a  
representative writers Hat C 108b 7  
Canadian Mounted Police Royal See  
Index Royal Canadian Mounted  
Police  
Canadian National Exhibition F 13  
Canada National Railway System  
C 83 C 101  
Canadian Northern Railway C 83  
Canadian Pacific Railway  
building of C 103  
completion re embodied picture C 101  
Manitoba re embodied C 81  
Pacific branch C 100  
Vancouver terminus V 437  
Canada in a w. l. S rises in  
N. M. and flows 780 mile to  
Arctics River maps U 252-3  
278  
Canadian sabbat pine martin M 104  
picture M 104  
K (tude range) I re Z 382

# FACTS ABOUT SOME OF THE GREAT SHIP AND BARGE CANALS OF THE WORLD

NAME	COUNTRY OR STATE	LENGTH MILES	DEPTH FEET	WIDTH FEET	YEAR OPENED
Albert	Belgium	79	16.5	116	1939
Baltic-White Sea (Stalin)	Russia	141			1933
Beaumont-Port Arthur (Sabine-Neches)	Texas	40	32	200	1916
Cape Cod	Massachusetts	13.5	32	540	1914, 1941
Chesapeake and Delaware	Delaware-Maryland	19	27	250-400	1829, 1934
Chicago Sanitary & Ship	Illinois	30	22	160	1900
Corinth	Greece	4	26	72	1893
Erie	New York	340	12	45	1825, 1918
Göta	Sweden	240			1832
Houston Ship Channel	Texas	50	34	200-400	1914
Juliana	Netherlands	21	11.8	52.5	1935
Kiel	Germany	52.8	37	144	1895
Manchester	England	35.5	28	125	1894
Moscow-Volga	Russia	79	18	100	1937
Panama	Canal Zone	50.7	41	110	1914
Rhone-Marseilles	France	50.3	10.7	52	1927
Rhone-Rhône	France	197	6.9	17.2	1833
St. Lawrence River Canals	Canada	46	14	45	1825, 1899
Sault Ste. Marie	Canada	1.3	18.25	60	1895
Sault Ste. Marie	Michigan	1.6	25	100	1855, 1919
Suez	Egypt	106 1/2	36	147	1869
Welland Ship	Canada	27.6	30	80	1932

\*Main branch of the New York State Barge Canal.  
†Include channel approaches.

Canadian Shield. See in *Index* Laurentian Plateau

Canalgre (*ka-ná'gér*), a species of dock (*Rumex hymenosephalus*) found in s.w. United States and Mexico, roots used in tanning.

Canalboat, of middle 1800's C-107, picture C-109

Canal du Midi (*ká-nál' dü mé-dé'*), or Languedoc Canal, France, connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Garonne River, which flows into the Bay of Biscay C-108a, F-262

Canaletto (*ká-ná-lét'tó*), or Canale (*ká-ná'la*), Antonio (1697-1768), Venetian artist; famous for his scenes of Venice and London

Canals C-107-9, map C-108, pictures C-107, 108a-9. For list of great canals, see table on this page

Asia C-108-108a, b; China C-261, 272, map C-262, picture C-263

Canada C-109, C-77, S-19, maps C-72-3, S-20; Lachine Canal, picture C-107; Rideau Canal C-109, O-428, 429, picture O-428; Sault Sainte Marie S-49-51; Trent C-109, H-452; Welland Ship W-90

classification C-108

construction: Panama Canal P-56-62

Egypt, ancient E-278b

Europe C-108a-b, R-146

Belgium: Albert B-112

France F-262, C-108a, picture F-374

Germany G-94, B-127, picture G-92; Kiel C-108, map G-88

Great Britain C-108a, I-132, map B-321; Bridgewater C-108a; Caledonian, picture B-320; Leeds and Liverpool L-158; Manchester Ship C-108a

Greece: Corinth C-478, picture G-190

Italy: Venice V-444, pictures V-445-7, I-267, color picture P-29d

Netherlands N-116, 117, pictures N-114-15

Russia R-281, V-523, C-108b; Moscow-Volga, picture R-281

Sweden, picture S-465; Göta S-462

how boats are propelled C-107

locks C-108. See also in *Index* Locks, canal

Nicaragua projects N-233, A-392

Panama P-53-63: map P-62, pictures P-53-5, 57-61

Suez S-442a-b, map S-442b

tunnel, canal T-210

United States C-108b-9, R-157

army engineers help build I-361

Cape Cod C-118, C-108b, map M-124, picture M-135

Chesapeake and Delaware D-58, B-39, C-224, maps D-48, 53, C-108, picture M-120

Chesapeake and Ohio C-224, M-109, C-108b, picture M-120

Chicago Drainage. See in *Index* Chicago Sanitary and Ship Canal

Erie C-108b, N-196, T-172, picture N-208

Florida F-161, 163, R-157, map F-158-9

Houston, Tex., picture H-435

Illinois and Michigan C-237, I-30

Illinois Waterway I-30

Inner Harbor Navigation, New Orleans N-182

Intracoastal Waterway C-109, R-157

Lake Washington, Seattle S-93, picture W-36

New York State Barge N-210-11, C-108b, map G-179, picture H-264

19th century C-108b, map C-108

Ohio O-348

rise and decline T-172

Sault Sainte Marie S-49-51, picture S-50

Canals of Mars P-283, picture P-284

Canal tunnel T-210

Canal Zone, territory including Panama Canal; leased to U.S.: area, 553 sq. mi.; pop. 52,822: P-51-2, 53-63, maps P-62, C-172, pictures P-53-5, 57-61

government P-53

motto on seal P-62

Canandaigua (*kán-on-dá'igá*) Lake, long, narrow lake of w. N. Y., 30 mi. s.e. of Rochester; length 15 mi.; map N-204

Canaries, Islas, off n.w. coast of Africa. See in *Index* Canary Islands

Canary (*ká-nér'i*), a songbird of the finch family C-109-10

brain, proportion to body weight, table B-280

length of life, average, pictograph A-249

pets, care of P-184

wild canary, or goldfinch, picture F-68, color pictures B-184, N-44

Canary-bird flower, an annual twining climber (*Tropaeolum peregrinum*) of the nasturtium family. Leaves 5-lobed, shield-shaped, light green; flowers yellow with green spur; native to Chile and Peru.

Canary grass, annual grass (*Phalaris canariensis*) native to the Mediter-

anean region; its seeds used as food for captive songbirds.

Canary Islands, Spanish Islas Canarias (*es'lás ká-ná're-ús*), group about 60 mi. off n.w. coast of Africa; 2394 sq. mi.; pop. 776,912: C-110, maps A-46, 42

bananas B-46

Blake defeated Spanish fleet B-205

canaries C-109

cochineal dye from C-373

Cañas (*kán'yás*), José (1826-1900), poet of El Salvador L-128

Canberra, Australian Capital Territory, capital of Australia; pop. 15-136: C-110, map A-489

Parliament House, picture A-491

Canby, Edward Richard Sprigg (1817-73), American general; served in Mexican and Civil wars; captured

Mobile, 1863; treacherously slain by the Modoc Indians

Canby, Henry Seidel (born 1878), editor and essayist, horn Wilmington, Del.; editor *Saturday Review of Literature* 1924-36; interprets

life of 90's in 'Age of Innocence', 'Alma Mater'; 'Thoreau', authoritative account of naturalist's life.

Cancer, genus of crab C-505

Cancer, malignant growth D-105

radioactive material in treatment R-52; cobalt C-372; radium R-56

Canace, or Crab, a constellation Z-352, charts S-376, 379, A-434, picture Z-352

Cancer, Tropic of, diagram A-433, maps A-406-7, P-16-17

winds, diagram W-154

Caneer de Barbastro, Luis (flourished 1549), Roman Catholic prelate and Dominican missionary, born Saragossa, Spain; about 1514 headed missionary work among Indians of Vera Paz, Central America. Killed by the Indians while trying to found a mission at Tampa Bay, Fla.

Cancer Institute, National. See in *Index* National Cancer Institute

Candelabra (singular candelabrum), stands for lights, usually candles, sometimes lamps L-90

Candelilla (*kán-dá-lí'l'yá*), an almost leafless shrub (*Euphorbia antisiphilitica*) of spurge family; grows in desert regions of Mexico and Texas; yields useful wax: T-82, W-76

Caadia, island in Mediterranean Sea. See in *Index* Crete

Candia, Crete. See in *Index* Erakleion

'Can'dida', play by George Bernard Shaw; Candida Morell, the heroine, remains faithful to her practical clergyman husband against the entreaties of Marchbanks, a romantic young poet.

'Candide' (*kán-déd'*), philosophical novel by Voltaire, published 1759, recounting the adventures and misfortunes of Candide and satirizing optimism as expressed by his tutor Pangloss, who maintains that this is the best of all possible worlds.

Candle L-89-90

colonial A-193f, 198: mold, picture A-203

fire prevention F-90, 91

flame, cause of B-352-3

kinds of wax used W-76

origin and making L-89-90

radiation of energy from, picture R-29

time told by, picture W-54

Candleberry tree, tropical tree, *Aleurites moluccana*, native to Malay region; its fruit, candlenut, is a source of oil used in soap; nuts are large, rough, and walnutlike. Name candleberry sometimes applied to bayberry

candlenut N-317

**Candlefish** or **celacan** (*op 14n*) a very oily antelike fish of NW coast of America used by Indians as candle by striking through it the pith of a rush or a strip of bark as wick also used as food

**Candle flower** See in Index **Centella**  
**Candlemas church festival** February 2 commemorates presentation of Christ in Temple F 86 Q 219  
**Candle mold** of American colonial picture A 203

**Candlestick** See in Index **Candleberry tree**

**Candle pins** a form of bowling B 286  
**Candle power** light given by a special type of candle used as unit of illuminating power L-226

**Candlestick L-80 picture L 445**  
**Colonial lamp** made from, picture L 185

**Candle tree** tropical tree (*Portia terra cerifera*) of bignonia family native to Panama. Trunk short, usually splay, leaves in groups of 3 oval flowers white to pink in long funnel form. Fruit smooth, whitish yellow to 4 ft long hangs from the branches like candles

**Candle (K&A d6)** **Agostin de (1778 1841)** Swiss botanist introduced natural as opposed to artificial, or Linnæan, system of classification

**Candle Mrs. in Richard Brinsley Sheridan's** *School for Scandal* a slenderer who affects great frankness

**Candy C-110-12 pictures C 110-12**  
**bananas figs B 46**  
**chocolate C 112 C 266 269**  
**glaces in C 111 112**  
**licorice L 221**  
**pura food laws C 119**

**Candytail** a genus (*Asteris*) of annual and perennial plants of the mustard family usually low growing with clusters of small white through purple flowers

**how to plant, table C 16**  
**Cane** names applied to various plants having long reedlike stems including the sugar cane and bamboo also applied to all walking sticks because of use of cane in making them

**Cane Crute** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane palm** See in Index **Raftan palm**  
**Cane sugar S 444 445 picture S 444**  
See also in Index **Sugar**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane palm** See in Index **Raftan palm**  
**Cane sugar S 444 445 picture S 444**  
See also in Index **Sugar**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

**Cane** See in Index **Khanla**  
**Canebrake** thicket of cane G-166  
**Cane fishing pole F-1180, picture F 1180**

1870 Arts and sciences graduate studies

**Cane 350r (Great Dog)** a conste in the constellation Sirius the brightest star C 657 charts S 373 379 381

**Cane Minor (Little Dog)** a constellation charts S 373 379 381

**Cane** an old type of artillery projectile A 409

**Canker** a plant disease which attacks various kinds of trees and causes abnormal growth or decay

**Cankerworm** often called hairy worm or meadow worm caterpillar destructive to trees C 112 color picture C 112

**Canna (14n 9)** plant C 112 13 picture C 112

**Cannabis** genus of hemp plants L 333

**Cannae (14n ad)** ancient village near a coast of Italy L 699

**Cannan Gilbert (born 1864)** English novelist and dramatist, born Manchester translated *Rolland's Jean Christophe* apostle of revolt against conventionalism Round the Corner Young Ernest and Time and Eternity novels *The Release of the Soul* play

**Canned** heat alcohol solidified with aleuric acid A 146

**Cannel coal** (candle) a bituminous noncaking type burning with a bright candlelike flame splits into layers and burns well in open grate C 267 W 106

**Cannes (14n)** France seaport and fashionable winter resort on Mediterranean 16 mi SW of Nice pop 46 647 maps L 662 E 43

**Canibal Islands** name once given to the Fiji Islands F 65-6 picture F 66

**Canibalism** practice of eating human flesh by human beings

**Africa 4 226**  
**Asteca A 644**  
**Fiji Islands F 66**  
**Melanesians P 4**  
**New Guinea N 141 142**

**Canning George (1770-1827)** Irish-Scottish statesman and orator held British secretarial post as foreign secretary recognized federal tendencies of revolted Spanish independence of revolted American colonies in South America

**Canning of food F 219-22**  
**Canning method F 212**  
**cold pack method F 212**  
**distribution of canned goods dic**  
**process E 228**

**factory processes F 219 65 pictures**  
**119 220 U 404**  
**fish salmon B 315**  
**home canning F 212 4 pictures F 212**  
**standardization F 212**

**its canning why used F 137**  
**United States F 212**  
**vacuum canning F 212**

**waste utilized fish F 65**  
**Canis (14n-nad d&ro)** *Stano*

**Canis (1896-1910)** Italian chemist, born Palermo discovered cyanamide and benzyl alcohol defined differences between atomic and molecular weights established Avogadro's law in chemical science

**dro's law in chemical science (1896-1910)**  
**Cannon Anolis Jump (1896-1910)**  
**Cannon** born Dover Del astronomer born Dover

**associated with Harvard discovered 800**  
**years after 1897 discovered 800**  
**variable stars 5 new stars 1**

**aperturescopic binary compiled**  
**lightography of variable stars and**  
**catalog of 225 000 stars spectra**

**Cannon Corolla James (born 1775)**  
**Cannon** born St Paul Minn Can author, born St Paul Minn

**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**

**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**

**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**

**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**  
**non 131 to Glacier National Park**

**pueblo life I Pueblo Girl Red**  
**Rust Lazaro in the Pueblos**

**Cannon Joseph Gursey (1836-1906)**  
**political leader born Guilford**  
**N C Republican member of Con**  
**gress from Illinois 1873-91 1893**  
**1913 1915-23 speaker of House**  
**of Representatives 1903-11**  
**power as speaker restricted T 4**  
**Cannon A 397-400 pictures A 397**  
**400 See also in Index Artillery**  
**Cannon of horse picture H 428a**  
**Cannon Hissaving Lyle gun L-225**  
**picture L-225**

**Cannon Batt River N D rises in SW**  
**and flows E 150 mi to Missouri**  
**Piver maps N 282, 288**

**Cannon ball tree a tree (Conourop**  
**guineensis) bearing large spheri**  
**cal woody shelled fruit native to trop**  
**ical South America timber source**

**Cana (K&A n)** **Attonso (1801 67)**  
**Span sh architect painter and**  
**sculptor chief architect of Granada**  
**cathedral ran gous paintings char**  
**acterized by bold design and pure**  
**flesh tints sculptures vigorous and**  
**skillful for variety of his talents**  
**dubbed Spanish Michelangelo**

**Cano Jaso Sebastian del (1498**  
**1526) Span ish navigator command**  
**ed one of Magellan's vessels on his famous**  
**expedition took command of expedi**  
**tion and completed first circumnavi**  
**gation of the globe (1522) began**  
**another voyage (1561) by Magel**  
**ana route died while crossing**  
**Pacific map B 33**

**Cano de beh or paper birch B 185**  
**picture C 113**  
**Canoe and canoeing C 113-14 B 214**  
**pictures B 214**  
**C 113-14 See also in**  
**Index Boat**

**beaching canoes picture C 56**  
**blanching canoes B 214 C 114**  
**B 155 picture C 113 making**  
**pictures C 115 1 102**

**boats distinguished from B 214**  
**dugout canoes C 114 Indian picture**  
**1 102 Mexico picture M 207**  
**New Guinea war canoes N 142**  
**managing C 113-14 picture C 114**  
**outrigger B 219 pictures B 214**

**Pacific Islands pictures P 13 B 219**  
**sailing canoes C 113 114**  
**sponson type C 113**  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204  
**Canoe** names for tulip tree T 204

beatification is shown. The so-called "Devil's Advocate," the Promotor of the Faith, cross-examines all witnesses.

Canon law, defined L-139-40

Canonsburg, Pa., borough 16 mi. s.w. of Pittsburgh, in rich agricultural, natural gas, and coal region; pop. 12,072; metal and pottery products; center of Whiskey Rebellion 1794: map P-132

Canon's Yeoman's Tale, in 'Canterbury Tales' C-204

Canopled bed, pictures A-210, I-177, 180

Canopus, a star S-372, charts S-373, 375

Canossa (kā-nōs'sā), Italy, ruined castle 80 mi. e. of Genoa, here German emperor Henry IV did penance before Pope Gregory VII (1077): H-334-5

Canova (kā-nō'vā), Antonio (1757-1822), Italian sculptor, works famed for classical form ('Winged Cupid', 'Venus and Adonis', 'Penitent Magdalen'): S-79

Canovas del Castillo (kā-nō-vās dēl kās-tē'yo), Antonio (1828-97), Spanish statesman, author; several times Conservative premier of Spain, planned autonomy for Cuba; assassinated by anarchist; author of historical works, essays, poems.

Can'no, Strait of, passage between Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island.

Cantabile. See in *Index Music*, table of musical terms and forms

Canta'brian Mountains, in n. Spain, extend w. from Pyrenees, highest peak 8743 ft. map S-312

Cantaloupe (kān'tā-lōp), also cantaloup, or rock melon, a muskmelon M-168

farm, picture F-36

when and how to plant, table G-19

Cantata. See in *Index Music*, table of musical terms and forms

Canteen, refreshment booths or stations (officially called post exchange in U. S. Army); name also given to soldier's workman's, or traveler's metal water flask.

Canter, gait of horse, pictures H-428f-g

Canterbury, England, cathedral city 55 mi. from London; pop. 27,778: C-114-15, map B-325, picture C-115

Anselm archbishop of W-138

cathedral C-114, picture C-115

Canterbury bell, a species of campanula B-211

'Canterbury Tales', by Geoffrey Chaucer C-203-4, pictures C-202-4

description of a squire K-56

editions C-202, 204; Kelmscott Press edition, picture B-238

manuscripts C-204

place in English literature E-376

Cantharel'ins cbarlins, or yellow chanterelle (*shān-tē-rē'f*), a mushroom M-457, color picture M-456

Canthar'idin, blistering substance obtained from Spanish-fly beetle and other insects belonging to the same family.

Canticles, or Song of Solomon, book of Old Testament, called also 'Song of Songs'; authorship formerly ascribed to Solomon.

Cantigny (kān-tē-nē'), France, village 18 mi. s. of Amiens W-238, map W-217, picture W-231

Cantlever bridge B-306, pictures B-309, 311. See also in *Index Bridge*, table

suspension combined with, picture B-307

Canton, John (1718-72), British physicist

discovered electrostatic induction E-307-8

Canton, or Kwangchow, China, capital of Kwangtung province and commercial center of s. China; pop. 1,413,460: C-116, maps C-259, A-407, picture C-116

trade restrictions, early C-279

Canton, Ill., manufacturing city 25 mi. s.w. of Peoria; pop. 11,927; agricultural implements; trade in coal and farm products: map I-36

Canton, Ohio industrial center 55 mi. s.e. of Cleveland; pop. 116,912: C-116-17, maps O-356, U-253

Canton, state of the Swiss confederation S-481

Canton crepe, a wool or silk fabric with crinkled surface.

Canton flannel, heavy cotton twilled fabric with soft nap on one side; first made in Canton, China.

Canton Island. See in *Index Phoenix Islands*

Cantonment, in U. S. Army A-383

Canton River, or Chinkiang (Pearl River) main channel of the delta formed by the Si Kiang

Canton on C-116

Hong Kong at mouth H-418

Cantor, Eddie real name Edward Iskowitz (born 1892), radio, stage, and screen actor, born New York, N. Y.; in vaudeville at 14; in Ziegfeld Follies 1917-19; starred in 'Kid Boots' 1923-26; first screen appearance 1926; from 1931, radio and television comedian

Cantor, a directing singer of a choir or a congregation, also a soloist in synagogue J-351

Cantwell, Robert Emmett (born 1908), writer born Little Falls, Wash.; worked in factory, and as laborer, 1925-29; associate editor *Time* magazine 1938-45 ('Laugh and Lie Down'; 'Land of Plenty').

Canusium, city of ancient Apulia, Italy, near Adriatic Sea; subject to Rome 318 B.C.; now town of Canosa di Puglia; pop. 28,000; 12th-century cathedral with tomb of Bohemond; battlefield of Cannae nearby.

Canute (kā-nūt'), or Cnut, also Knut, (995?-1035), great king of Danes and Norwegians, ruler of England 1016-35: C-117

succeeded by son Harold H-270

Canvas, a heavy, close cotton or linen cloth, often waterproof; used for sails, awnings, painting; also a square-meshed fabric used for embroidery: H-332

canoes C-113

Canvasback, a sea duck (*Aythya valisineria*) D-160

nest D-158

Canyon (lān'yōn), a deep gorge with precipitous sides C-117, E-188, picture E-187

Bryce Canyon N-30, color picture N-23, map N-18

Colorado River C-414a, pictures C-414a

deepest in North America O-408

Grand Canyon G-149-51, pictures G-149-50, color pictures N-25, N-260

Rio Grande R-155

Royal Gorge, Arkansas River in Colorado, picture C-413

Snake River I-13, O-408, map I-14, picture I-23

Waimea, Hawaiian Islands H-288a

Yellowstone Y-338, color picture N-24, map Y-338

Canyon de Chelly (dē shē'zā) National Monument, in n.e. Arizona N-30, map N-18

cliff dwellings, picture A-355

Canyon Diablo (dē-āb'īō), gorge in n. Arizona about 30 mi. e. of Flagstaff; 225 feet deep and 500 feet wide; formed by Canyon Diablo River, a

tributary of Little Colorado River map A-352

Canyon Ferry Dam, in Montana, on Missouri River M-377, map M-325

Canzonetta. See in *Index Music*, table of musical terms and forms

Cnoutehouse (kā'chūē), rubber R-241

See also in *Index Rubber*

Cap H-231-2. See also in *Index Hats and caps*

Capacitative coupling, in radio variable condensers used R-34-5

Capacitron F-224

Capacity, electrical, measure of ability of condenser to accumulate an electric charge E-306

effect on resonance E-306

in radio R-34

Capacity, of a receptacle measurement M-151-2, diagrams M-151-2

Cap-and-ball gun F-78, picture F-77

Cap de la Madeleine (kāp dē la mā-dē-lēn'), Quebec, city on St Lawrence River 3 mi. n.e. of Three Rivers; pop. 18,667; saw, flour, and paper mills, shipyard; sand, oxide, clay, and lime in neighborhood; Catholic pilgrimage center.

Cape, a point of land jutting into sea or lake. For capes not entered below, see in *Index Individual names*, as Hatteras, Cape

Cape Ann, promontory of n.e. Mass.; site of Gloucester and Rockport; granite quarries: maps M-124, 133

Cape Barron goose, picture G-140

Cape Breton Highlands National Scenic and Recreational Park, on Cape Breton Island, Canada N-38f, C-117-18, maps N-38f, C-73

Cape Breton Island, Canada, part of the province of Nova Scotia; land area, 3120 sq. mi.; pop. 157,696: C-117-18, N-307, 308, maps C-69, 73, picture C-117

discovered by Cabot C-9

early cable C-7

history C-118, N-309

Louisbourg, Fortress of C-118, N-309, K-46

national park N-38f

Cape buffalo, of South and Central Africa B-341

Cape Chincieriachee. See in *Index Ornithology*

Cape Cod, Mass. L-shaped peninsula between Nantucket Sound and Cape Cod Bay; length 65 mi., width 1 to 20 mi.: C-118, M-137, maps M-124, 133, U-253, picture M-139

cranberry crop C-506

Pilgrims M-147

Cape Cod Canal, in s.e. Massachusetts C-118, C-108b, maps M-124, 133, picture M-135. See also in *Index Canals*, table

lift bridge B-308. See also in *Index Bridge*, table

Cape Cod style, in architecture, picture A-322

Cape Colony. See in *Index Cape of Good Hope*

Cape Colored, a mixed race in South Africa S-243, color picture A-35

Cape Fear River, N. C., rises in n. cent. part and flows 300 mi. s.e. to Atlantic, maps N-268, 274-5

Cape Girardeau (gē-rār-dō'), Mo., city on Mississippi River, in s. about 30 mi. s.w. of Cairo, Ill.; pop. 21,578; shoes, cement, electrical appliances, lumber; Southeast Missouri College: M-308, maps M-319, U-253

Cape Hatteras National Seashore Recreational Area, in North Carolina N-38d, map N-18

Cape Horn. See in *Index Horn*. Cape

Cape Jasmine G-11, picture G-11

Capek (chā'pēk), Karel (1890-1938), Czech writer, born Bohemia; wrote

Key: cape, āt, fūr, fāst, whqt, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ēē, btt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dg; cūrc, būrt, rjde, fūll, būrn; out;



Capuchin (*lap-yu-chin*), or Sapajou, monkey M-350, 353, picture M 349

Capuchins, branch of the Franciscan friars extreme vows of poverty and much attention to learning

Capulet, noble family of Verona, feud with the Montagues forms basis for tragedy of Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet* R-198

Capulin Mountain National Monument, in New Mexico N-31, map N 18

Capibara (*lap-i ba'ra*) largest living rodent (*Hydrochoerus capibara*) about 4 ft long found in large lakes and rivers of S America feeds on reeds and water plants color reddish-brown flesh eaten by natives skin tans into thick soft leather, also called water hog

Caquetá River, in South America See in Index Japurá River

Car, railroad

car lighting G 31

Carabao (*la ra ba o*) Philippine island name of water buffalo B-341, P 197, picture P 196 See also in Index Water buffalo

Carabinieri (*la-ra ben-yari*) the gendarmery or military police of Italy recruited from regular army for term of five years

Carabobo (*la ra-bo bo*) Venezuela plain in state of Carabobo near Valencia, victory of Bolívar over Spaniards (1821) established Colombian independence

Caracal (*lar'a-lal*) or Persian lynx, a species of lynx not to be confused with caracul a breed of sheep

Caracalla (*la-a kal'a*) nickname of Bassianus (168-217) Roman emperor succeeded A.D. 211 recklessly extravagant brutal in his fight for absolute power

baths R 197, map R 190

Caracas (*la-ra'as*, Spanish *la rá-tas*) capital of Venezuela 6 mi from seaport, La Guaira on Caribbean Sea pop 487 903 V-441-2, maps V 442, S-252, pictures V-441, 443

conference on inter-American cooperation (1954) L-122

Caracac See in Index Caracci

Caracacus, or Caracacus, king of Britain defeated by Romans A.D. 51 after 8 years war imprisoned in Rome Tacitus (*Annals*) Book vi chap 37 quotes noble speech he made before Roman emperor

Caracul See in Index Karakul

Carageen See in Index Carrageen

Carmel (*lar'a-mel*) sugar S-447 candy C 112

Carapace (*lar'a-pas*) shell covering the back of certain animals

crab C 503

lobster L 286

turtle T-222

Carat or karat, (1) unit of weight for gems and precious metal 200 milligrams (2) unit of proportion for purity in alloys name originally meant seed or bean used in weighing gold and precious stones

measure of purity of gold G 133

weight of diamonds D 78

Caravaggio (*la ra-rad go*) Michelangelo Amerighi da (1569-1609), Italian painter of religious and genre subjects founder of the naturalistic school made strong use of light and shadow (*Card Players*, *Entombment of Christ*)

Caravans, group of travelers S 16, pictures A 404, S 441

Afghanistan A 31, pictures A-32-3

early trade routes T 164-5, B 16

headquarters khans D-12

Caravan, gypsy, vehicle picture G 236

Caravel, a sailing vessel of the time of Columbus picture S 153

Caraway, Hattie Wunt (1878-1950), public official born Bakerville Tenn elected U.S. senator from Arkansas Jan 12 1932 to fill vacancy caused by death of husband, Thaddeus H. Caraway, reelected for terms expiring 1939 and 1945; became member U.S. Employees' Compensation Commission 1045

first woman elected to U.S. senate W-186

Caraway, herb of the parsley family S 339, 340, picture S-341

Carball (*lar-ba'hal*) Francisco de (1164-1518) Spanish soldier, with Cortez in Mexico and Pizarro in Peru extraordinary valor gave him nickname "Demon of the Andes"

Carbamide See in Index Urea

Carberry Hill, 7 mi se of Edinburgh, Mary Queen of Scots taken prisoner (1567)

"Carbice," trade name for solidified carbon dioxide C-120

Carbide compound of carbon and a metallic element

tungsten carbide A-173

"Carbide lamps" A-7

Carbine a short light rifle used chiefly by cavalry, in World War II used by paratroops and by officers and troops who formerly carried pistols picture F-78

Carbonylates O 424c, B-145

digestion of D 91b E 389, table E-389 time required D-91a

food value F-216

oxidation process B-145

peanut contains P-104

sago contains S-14

sugars S-446-7

Carbolic acid, or phenol C-119-20

antidote F-96a

antiseptic properties C-120

coal-tar product C-371

formula, diagram O 424a

synthetic C-119

Carbon, a chemical element C-120, tables P-151, C-214

alumina reduction A-183, picture A-182

amorphous forms (graphite and lamp-black or carbon black) G-156, G-33, C-120

biochemistry See in Index Biochemistry

carbon dioxide and monoxide C-120

charcoal C-186

coal C 363

compounds (inorganic) O-424, C-120, C-215

carboreundum S 180

tetrachloride C-288

crystalline forms (diamond, graphite) C 525, G-156

cycle in nature P 295

diamonds D-78

dry cell electrode B-80

electronic structure diagrams A-458, C-213

fuels F-313, 314, C-120, C-363, C-186

graphite G 156

iron combined in I-242

isotopes C-120, table C-215

carbon 14 C-120 use in dating ancient substances G-60, picture A-299

life requires B 145, B-148, L-224d, P 295

melting point table F 284

organic chemistry See in Index

Organic chemistry

oxidation numbers C-216

petroleum coke C 380

soot S 201, C-120

steel combined in A-172, 175, I-242, table A-173

telephone transmitter T-40

Carbon are light E-309

metals used A-174

motion-picture projector, diagram S-392, pictures M-424, 425

Carbonari (*lar-bo ná're*), a secret society of Italy I-272

Mazzini a member M-148

Car'bonate, a salt or ester of carbonic acid

ammonium A-236

calcium A-10, V-262; chalk C-182, picture M-265; limestone L 244, marble M-92, shells S 138

ion table C-216

lead (white lead) A-10, P 40

mineral forms M-262

sodium (sal soda) S-226; Searles Lake deposit M-265

Carbonated water, soda water, or seltzer water W-64

Carbon bisulfide, or carbon disulfide a compound of carbon and sulfur

Carbon black, or lampblack G-33 See also in Index Lampblack

Carbon cycle, in plant and animal life P-295

Carbondale, Ill. city 80 mi se of St. Louis Mo., in fruit-growing region pop 10,921, railroad shops railroad tie-preserving plant, Southern Illinois University map I-37

Carbondale, Pa. city 15 mi ne of Scranton, pop 16,296, anthracite region machine shops clothing factories map P-133

Carbon dioxide, or carbonic acid gas C-120

air contains A-73; lime water test L-244, liquid air L-265

bacteria generate B-13

baking powder generates B 18-19

beverages carbonated W-64

blood contains H 311, 312

bread raised by Y-336

breathing excretes from body R 117, 118, L 351; hygiene H-304

calcium compounds from L 244

combustion forms O 435, picture A-75; candle flame B 352-3

dissolves limestone and quicklime C 18

Dry Ice C-120, R-95

fire extinguishers F-91

Ice Age influenced by I 6

photosynthesis use in P-293-4, B-146

plant food P-293, 294, 295, diagram N-46

soda water W-64

Solvay process S-226

sublimation M-142a

volcanic gases V-518

waste product of animal bodies R-117, 116, B-146 L-351

yeast produces Y-336

Carboale acid C-120 See also in Index Carbon dioxide

Carboniferous period or Coal Age G-59, 56, diagrams C-362, table G-57

fish F-107-8

Ice Age I-6

insects I-160, C-373

North America N-264

tree ferns T 52-3

Carbon ink I-150

Carbon monoxide, poisonous gas C 120

gas (illuminating) contains G-30, 31

poisonous effect P-341, S-8

household don'ts H-304

Carbon paper, tissue paper coated so that it will reproduce on paper underneath a copy of anything imprinted on it Special coatings are used to copy writing done by pen pencil and typewriter I 151

Carbon tetrachloride (*tet-ra lo'rid*) a heavy colorless volatile liquid (CCl<sub>4</sub>), vapor is nonflammable employed in fire fighting, vapor blankets flame dissolves fat, wax used in treatment for hookworm and as insect fumigant C-288

Rey: cape at far, fast, what, fall, me yet, fern there, see but row, won for, not, do, cure but, rude full barn out,

ench / (a In azure) K - German gull re



- homely themes, born Hudson Mich. ('Farm Ballads', 'City Ballads').  
**Carleton College**, at Northfield Minn.; charter 1866, opened 1870, founded by Congregationalists, now nonsectarian; arts and sciences, music.  
**Carline thistle**, a genus (*Carlina*) of plants of the composite family; native to Europe; so named because supposed to have cured plague in army of Charlemagne.  
**Carlisle** (*kār-līl'*), England city in n.w. on Eden River near Scottish border; pop. 67,894; cotton, woolen iron manufactures; castle where Mary Queen of Scots was imprisoned: map B-324  
**Carlisle, Pa.**, city 18 mi. w. of Harrisburg in agricultural community; county seat; pop. 16,812; rugs and carpets shoes, Mt. Holly Springs, mountain resort, nearby; headquarters of Washington during Whiskey Rebellion of 1794; Dickinson College; U. S. Army Medical Field Service School: map P-133  
**Carlisle Indian School**, at Carlisle, Pa.; founded by Richard H. Pratt 1879; discontinued 1918  
**football history** F-232  
**Carloman** (died 771), brother of Charlemagne C-187  
**Carlos**, kings of Spain See in Index  
**Charles**  
**Carlos I** (1863-1908), king of Portugal, succeeded 1889; suspended constitution 1907; assassinated while driving in Lisbon  
**Carlos, Don** (1543-68), son of Philip II of Spain; vicious weakling about whose disappointment in love (his father married Carlos' fiancée, Elizabeth of France) and mysterious death Schiller and others have woven romances.  
**Carlos, Don** (1788-1855), uncle of Isabella II of Spain and first Carlist pretender to Spanish throne; called Charles V by followers.  
**Carlo'ta**, or **Charlotte** (Marie Charlotte Amélie) (1840-1927), daughter of Leopold I of Belgium and for three years empress of Mexico; accompanied her husband Archduke Maximilian of Austria to Mexico when empire was established; subsequent fall of the throne and execution of Maximilian shattered her mind; she lived secluded in Belgium for 60 years.  
**Carlowitz**, Yugoslavia. See in Index  
**Carlowitz**  
**Carlsbad**, Czechoslovakia. See in Index  
**Karlovy Vary**  
**Carlsbad, N. M.**, city in s.e. on Pecos River; pop. 17,975; mineral springs; potash mining and refining, oil; tourist gateway to Carlsbad Caverns National Park: maps N-179, U-252  
**Carlsbad Caverns National Park**, in New Mexico C-157, N-31, color picture N-22, maps N-179, N-18  
**Carlskrona**, Sweden. See in Index  
**Karlskrona**  
**Carlsen, Emil** (1853-1932), American artist, born Copenhagen, Denmark; landscapes and marines favorite subjects handled ('The Lazy Sea'; 'Meeting of the Seas'; 'Wild Swan'); also painted still life.  
**Carlsen, (Henrik) Kurt** (born 1914?), American sea captain, born Denmark; as captain of the American freighter, 'Flying Enterprise', won world acclaim Jan. 1952 for heroic but futile effort to save his ship.  
**Carlson, Anton Julius** (born 1875), American physiologist and educator, born Sweden; moved to U.S. 1891; on staff, Univ. of Chicago physiology department 1904-40, as head of department from 1916, research on hunger, gastric secretion, heart and circulation, saliva, lymph, pancreas, thyroids and parathyroids metabolism, immune bodies, and aging process ('The Machinery of the Body', with Victor Johnson).  
**Carlsruhe**, Germany. See in Index  
**Karlsruhe**  
**Carlindiver** (*kār-līn-dō-vī'kq*), genus of tropical American perennial plants with long stalks and large stiff leaves, *Carlidurica palmata*; used in making Panama hats.  
**Carlisle** (*kār-līl'*), Jane Welsh (1801-66), witty, brilliant, sharp-tempered, but devoted wife of Thomas Carlyle; won place in literature with her sparkling letters: C-123, L-98c  
**Carlisle, Thomas** (1795-1881), Scottish essayist and historian C-122-3, picture C-123  
**friendship with Emerson** E-338-9  
**place in English literature** E-382  
**quoted on history** H-360  
**quoted on Shakespeare** S-127  
**Carmann, Albert** (1833-1917), Canadian clergyman and educator; first chancellor of Albert University, Belleville, Ont.; first general superintendent Methodist Church in Canada.  
**Carmann, Bliss** (1861-1929), Canadian poet, born Fredericton, New Brunswick, lived most of life in United States: C-106  
**Carmanna**, Iran. See in Index  
**Kerman**  
**Carmarthen**, Wales, old seaport town in s. on Towy River; pop. 12,121; capital of Carmarthenshire (918 sq. mi.): map B-325  
**Carmarthen Bay**, Wales, large inlet of Bristol Channel on s. coast of Wales, map B-325  
**Carmel**, Mount, ridge in n.w. Palestine near Mediterranean, associated with Elijah and Elisha; Carmelite order founded there by hermits: maps P-45, B-138  
**Carmelites**, mendicant order of "Our Lady of Mount Carmel"; had early claimed the prophet Elias as its founder; modern historians set founding at middle of 12th century; called White Friars in England because of white mantle: M-356  
**nuns** M-358  
**Carmen**, fickle, fascinating gipsy heroine of Mérimée's story; Bizet's opera 'Carmen' founded thereon: C-389-90  
**Enima Calvé** as, picture O-394  
**Carmen Silva** (1843-1916), pen name of Elizabeth, queen of Charles, first king of Rumania; wrote and edited many works, some in collaboration with Ilse Kremitz, her lady in waiting.  
**Carmner, Carl Lawson** (born 1893), writer, born Cortland, N. Y.; taught English at the University of Alabama, where he studied folklore and collected stories for 'Stars Fell on Alabama'; traditions of New York State published in 'Listen for a Lonesome Drum' and 'The Hudson'; coeditor 'Rivers of America' series; 'Deep South', poetry; 'Too Many Cherries' and 'Windfall Fiddle', children's stories  
**'America Sings'** S-417  
**Carmichael, Hoagland** (Hoagy) (born 1899), song writer and actor, born Bloomington, Ind.; studied law, turned to music ('Stardust'; 'Rock in' Chair'; 'Georgia on My Mind'; 'Old Buttermilk Sky').  
**Carmine**, red pigment C-373  
**Carminic acid** C-373  
**Carnac** (*kār-nác*'), France, a Breton village famous for its museum of antiquities and for ancient stone monuments in vicinity S-402, picture F-271  
**Caronllite**, a mineral of calcium and magnesium chlorides M-265  
**Carnarvon**, George Edward Stanhope Molyneux Herbert, 5th earl of (1866-1923), English Egyptologist; codiscoverer, with Howard Carter, of Tutankhamen's tomb. See also in Index  
**Carter, Howard**  
**Carnarvon Bay**, also **Carnarvon Bay**, Wales W-3, map B-325  
**Carnarvon Castle**, Wales, picture C-134  
**Carnarvonshire**, Wales, mountainous county in n.w.; 569 sq. mi.; pop. 124,074; county seat Carnarvon (pop. 9255).  
**Carnatic**, region in Andhra and Madras states, extending along e. coast of s. India.  
**Carnation**, variety of pink C-123, picture C-123  
**state flower of Ohio**, color picture S-384a  
**Carnauba** (*kār-na-o'ba*) palm, a tree (*Copernicia cerifera*) of the palm family, native to moist valleys of Brazil. Grows 30 to 40 ft.; base of trunk slightly swollen; crown fan-like with leaves 4 to 6 ft. long; flowers in clusters. Wood used for building, roots in medicine, fruit as food, leaf fibers for cordage, pith as cork substitute, leaves for wax wax W-76, S-275  
**Carnegie** (*kār-nē'gī*), Andrew (1835-1919), Scottish-American ironmaster and philanthropist C-124, picture C-124  
**Carnegie Trust Fund**, Scotland S-63  
**gives Pan American Union building** H-276  
**Peace Palace**, picture H-242  
**Carnegie, Dale** (born 1886), author, lecturer, teacher of public speaking, born Maryville, Mo.; "self-help" books ('How to Win Friends and Influence People'; 'How to Stop Worrying and Start Living').  
**Carnegie, Pa.**, borough 5 mi. s.w. of Pittsburgh with extensive steel works; center of coal-mining region; pop. 12,105; map, inset P-132  
**Carnegie Corporation of New York**, foundation established by Andrew Carnegie C-124  
**Carnegie Endowment for International Peace**, fund created by Andrew Carnegie in 1910, with an endowment of \$10,000,000.  
**Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching**, a foundation created by Andrew Carnegie with original endowment of \$10,000,000, increased by later gifts; makes surveys of educational work and provides pensions for retired teachers.  
**Carnegie Hero Fund Commission** (Pittsburgh), foundation for the purpose of rewarding persons for heroic efforts to save human life; formed by Andrew Carnegie 1904 with grant of \$5,000,000; similar funds were established in several other countries, making a total of more than \$10,000,000  
**Hero Fund Medal**, picture C-124  
**Carnegie Institute of Pittsburgh** P-275  
**mural by Alexander**, picture U-386  
**museum**. See in Index  
**Museums**, table  
**Carnegie Institute of Technology**, at Pittsburgh, Pa.; founded 1900 by Andrew Carnegie as part of Carnegie Institute of Pittsburgh and independently chartered 1912; college of engineering and science, college of fine arts, Margaret Morrison Carnegie College (for women), library school, school of industrial administration; graduate studies Machinery Hall, picture P-138

Key: cape, át, fár, fóst, what, fáll; mé, yét, fém, there; íce, bít; rów, wón, fór, nót, do; cáre, bútt, fide, fyll, bárrn; out.



after removal from body; during World War I with H. D. Dakin devised Carrel-Dakin antiseptic treatment of wounds, using the so-called "Dakin solution," a solution of sodium hypochlorite and salt; member Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research 1912-39, member emeritus after 1939 ('The Culture of Organs'; 'Man the Unknown'; 'Reflections on Life')  
work with Lindbergh L-253  
**Carreño** (*kár-rán'yó*). Teresa (1853-1917), Venezuelan pianist; great technical virtuosity, insight, and nobility of interpretation; recognized as leading woman pianist of her day; in addition, sang in opera and composed, chiefly for piano  
**Carrière** (*ká-rér'*). John Mervin (1858-1911), American architect, born Rio de Janeiro, Brazil; in partnership with Thomas Hastings designed notable buildings, including the New York City Public Library and Senate Offices, Washington D. C.  
**Carriages**. See in Index Wagons  
**Carrick**, seaman's knot used to join two hawsers.  
**Carriekfergus**, historic Irish seaport in Northern Ireland 9 mi. n. e. of Belfast, pop. 8650; 12th-century castle map B-325  
**Carriekmacross** (*ká-rík-ma-kros'*), or cutwork lace, picture L-79  
**Carrier**, Willis Haviland (1876-1950), mechanical engineer, born Anzola, N. Y., head of Carrier Corporation, developed the theory and techniques of modern air conditioning  
**Carrier**, common. See in Index Common carrier  
**Carrier current**, in telegraphy T-39  
**Carrier pigeon** P-254  
**Carriers**, of disease D-102. See also in Index Disease, subhead carriers  
**Carrier wave**, in radio R-36  
in frequency modulation R-45  
television T-54n  
**Carrian beetle** B-106, 108  
**Carroll** (*ká-ról*). Charles, of Carrollton (1737-1822), patriot, born Annapolis, Md.; member of Continental Congress; drafted Maryland constitution, U. S. congressman and senator; last surviving signer of Declaration of Independence. See also in Index Statuary Hall (Maryland), table  
Homewood House, picture B-41  
signature reproduced D-37  
**Carroll**, Daniel (1730-96), Revolutionary War statesman, born Maryland; delegate to Continental Congress (1781), Constitutional Convention (1787); signed United States Constitution; first senator from Maryland; commissioner of District of Columbia (1791-95).  
**Carroll**, Gladys Hasty (born 1904), novelist, born Rochester, N. H. (novels of life in Maine: 'As the Earth Turns' and 'West of the Hill'; 'Christmas without Johnny').  
**Carroll**, James (1831-1907), American physician, born England; served in U. S. Army Medical Corps from 1898; member of yellow-fever commission in Cuba: M-403  
**Carroll**, John (1735-1815), Roman Catholic prelate, born Maryland; Jesuit and professor theology, Bruges; returned to America; took prominent part in gaining recognition at Rome for American church; secured authorization for a Catholic seminary (Georgetown University); chosen first American bishop 1788; archbishop 1811.  
**Carroll**, John (born 1892), painter, born Wichita, Kan.; first noted for sensitive landscapes; later paintings airy and sensuous, chiefly

fragile, wispy girls in vaporous and luminous color.  
**Carroll**, Lewis (1832-95), pen name of Charles L. Dodgson, English mathematician and story writer C-127-8. See also in Index 'Alice's Adventures in Wonderland' letter facsimile L-171  
**Carroll**, Paul Vincent (born 1900), Irish dramatist, born Ireland; schoolmaster in Scotland, his adopted country, early plays produced by Abbey Theatre in Dublin; success achieved 1938 in U.S. with 'Shadow and Substance'; plays deal with conflicts in Irish society ('The White Steed'; 'Kindred').  
**Carroll College**, at Helena, Mont.; Roman Catholic institution; founded 1910; arts and sciences, nursing.  
**Carroll College**, at Waukesha, Wis.; founded 1840 as Prairieville Academy, reorganized as Carroll College 1846, academic, collegiate, music departments  
**Carromata** (*kár-rō-mō'tā*), public carriage in Philippines, picture P-199  
**Carrot** C-128  
digging machine, picture P-142a  
drying at home, picture F-223  
ornamental plant from, picture P-300  
when and how to plant, table G-19  
wild C-128, Q-11, pictures F-181, Q-11, color picture F-179  
**Carrousel**. See in Index Merry-go-round  
**Carr Trophy**, awarded each year to most valuable player in National Professional Football League. Originated 1928 to honor Joseph (Joe) F. Carr (1881-1939), a founder and first president of league.  
**Carrying**, in falconry F-15  
**'Carrying coals to Newcastle'** N-138b  
**Carson**, Christopher (Kit) (1809-68), famous American guide and trapper C-128-128b, pictures C-128a-b, F-39 in Utah U-409  
**Carson**, Edward Henry, Barnum (1834-1935), Irish Unionist leader; head of Ulster rebellion against British government's Home Rule Bill for Ireland 1912-13; British attorney general, June-October 1915, in Asquith coalition cabinet; First Lord of the Admiralty 1916-17; member war cabinet 1917-18; opposed movement for Irish Republic.  
**Carson**, Rachel (Louise) (born 1907), marine biologist and writer, born Springdale, Pa.; member of zoology staff University of Maryland 1931-36; joined U.S. Bureau of Fisheries (now U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service) in 1936, editor in chief 1947-52 ('Under the Sea-Wind; a Naturalist's Picture of Ocean Life' and 'The Sea Around Us')  
**Carson City**, Nev., state capital, in e., near California border; pop. 3082; C-129, maps N-132, U-252  
Capitol, State, picture N-125  
**Carson Lake**, small body of water in w. Nevada with no outlet; receives main stream of Carson River: N-124, maps N-126, 132  
**Carson-Newmann College**, at Jefferson City, Tenn.; Baptist institution, founded 1851; liberal arts.  
**Carrt**. See in Index Wagons  
**Cartagena** (*kár-tá-gē'ná*), Spanish *kár-tá-há'ná*, Colombia, seaport on Caribbean Sea; pop. 125,600; exports petroleum, coffee, alligator skins, cattle, hides, woods, tobacco: C-388, maps C-387, S-252, pictures C-389  
**Cartagena**, Spain, seaport, manufacturing city, and mining center in s. e. on Mediterranean; pop. 113,160, with suburbs: naval station;

founded 3d century B.C. by Carthaginians; map S-312  
**Carte blanche**, in law. See in Index Law, table of legal terms  
**Cartel**, in Europe, a form of trust, called in U.S. a "pool" M-360  
**Carter**, Hélène, artist and illustrator of children's books, born Toronto, Canada; studied art in Toronto and New York City; illustrated R. L. Dittmars' 'Book of Prehistoric Animals' and 'Book of Zoography' and J. M. Lucas' 'Fruits of the Earth' and 'Earth Changes'.  
**Carter**, Henry Rose (1852-1925), sanitarian and epidemiologist, born Caroline Co., Va.; noted for system of maritime quarantine; important work in world campaign against yellow fever.  
**Carter**, Howard (1873-1939), English Egyptologist, born Norfolk, England; inspector general of antiquities for Egyptian government; with Lord Carnarvon (1922) discovered Tutankhamen's tomb: A-297, picture A-298  
**Carter**, Mrs. Leslie (1862-1937), emotional actress, born Lexington, Ky.; sensational success, 1893, in 'The Heart of Maryland'; other successes include 'Zaza'; 'Du Barry'; 'The Second Mrs. Tanqueray'.  
**Carter**, Lincoln J. (1865-1926), playwright, theatrical producer, born Rochester, N. Y. ('Remember the Maine'; 'The Flaming Arrow'; 'An American Ace').  
**Carter**, Phyllis Ann. See in Index Eberle, Irmengarde  
**Carter**, Russell Gordon (born 1892), author, born Trenton, N. J.; editorial staff *Youth's Companion* (1919-25); historical and adventure stories ('Three Points of Honor'; 'The White Plume of Navarre'; 'Shaggy—The Horse from Wyoming').  
**Carteret** (*kár'tér-ét*), Sir George (1610?-80), English royalist; lieutenant governor of Jersey, Channel Islands (1643-51); N-167  
Radisson and Groselliers sponsored by F-322  
**Carteret**, John, Earl Granville. See in Index Granville, John Carteret  
**Carteret**, Philip (died 1796), English rear admiral and explorer; voyaged round the world (1766-69); discovered Pitcairn Island and rediscovered Santa Cruz Islands; journal of voyage published in Hawkesworth's 'Voyages' (1773).  
**Carteret**, N. J., borough 6 mi. s. of Elizabeth; pop. 13,030; steel and iron products, fertilizers, chemicals; map N-164  
**Cartesinn co-ordinates**, in geometry G-65  
**Cartesianism**, the philosophy of Descartes P-204  
Voltaire derides F-523  
**Carthage** (*kór'thāg*), ancient city and state in n. Africa C-129, T-207  
colonizes Spain S-320  
Hannibal H-259-60  
Punic Wars R-185-6. See also in Index Siege, table  
U. S. national cemetery at site N-166  
Vandal capital V-457-8  
**Cartilage**, Mo., in farming, zinc- and lead-mining, and marble-quarrying region in s.w. on Spring River; pop. 11,188; bedsprings, explosives, shoes, overalls; destroyed during Civil War and rebuilt; map M-318  
**Carthage College**, at Carthage, Ill.; Lutheran; founded 1870; arts and sciences, music.  
**Carthmin**. See in Index Safflower  
**Carthusian Monks** M-355, picture M-356  
book plate B-247

Key: cape, út, fúr, fúst, whet, fgl; mé, yét, fém, thère; ice, bit; rōw, wón, fōr, nót, dō; cūre, bú, rýde, fúll, búrn; out;

Churchill's Richard Carvel in  
of the Revolutionary War pro  
Carvel built. See in Index Na  
term table

born at New York City, American  
broad piano and dept  
concerts at Fontainebleau F  
1915-49 U S debut,  
with V Y Philharmonic Sym  
1935 resident of U S from  
Cort Granda (in ad gr u d i)  
Cort Granda, a son of Phoenix

1 v Case making moth T 368

**Case'ment**, Sir Roger (1864-1916), Sinn Féin leader; knighted (1911) for investigations of Putumayo rubber atrocities; active in Irish "Easter Rebellion" (1916): I-230b  
**Casement**, window. *See in Index*  
**Architecture**, table of terms

**'Casey Jones'**, title of song based on adventures and death in a collision of John Luther Jones (1864-1900), locomotive engineer; he was born in Hickman, Ky., but learned railroading in Cayce (pronounced *kā'sē*), Ky.: L-98b

**Casgrain (kās-grān')**, Henri Raymond (1831-1904), Canadian biographer and historian; was ordained a priest and is known as Abbé Casgrain; wrote, in French, historical studies of French Canada.

**Casgrain, Philippe B.** (1826-1917), Canadian lawyer-historian; brother of H. R. Casgrain in Parliament; a Liberal; wrote on French-Canadian historical subjects

**Casgrain, Thomas Chuse** (1852-1916), Canadian lawyer and statesman, nephew of H. R. Casgrain, born Detroit Mich., member of Parliament; postmaster general.

**Cash**, a Chinese copper coin usually has square hole punched in center for stringing; historical value about one-twentieth of a U. S. cent; name also given to other small coins in East: C-273

**Cash account**, how to keep B-229-30  
**Cashew (kā-shō')** a species (*Anacardium occidentale*) of tropical tree with rose-tinted clusters of fragrant flowers, seed kernel is an edible nut and source of oil, fleshy receptacle of seed is a fruit and source of a beverage; milky juice of tree is a gum used as basis of a varnish: F-304, N-316-17

**Cashew family**, or Anacardiaceae (ān-ā-kār-dī-ā'sē-ē) a family of trees and shrubs including the sumac, varnish tree, smoke tree, kaffir plum, mango, pistachio pepper tree and poison ivy: P-340

**Cashier's check**, B-48  
**Cashmere (kāsh-mēr')**, formerly name of present Kashmir, state n. of Indian peninsula; gave name to several products derived from there, such as Cashmere cloth, shawls, rugs. *See also in Index* Kashmir

**Cashmere cloth**, sometimes Kashmir C-131

**Cashmere goat** G-129, picture C-356  
**Cashmere rugs**, or Kashmir rugs: R-247  
**Cashmere shawls** G-129, K-18

**Cash register** C-131, picture C-131  
**Dayton factory** D-25

**Caslinum, Italy.** *See in Index* Caspua

**Casimir (kās-i-mēr')**, name of several princes and kings of Poland, most important of whom were Casimir III, called "The Great" (1310-70), who added Little Russia and Red Russia to Poland and founded University of Cracow, and Casimir IV (1427-92), a great statesman who added West Prussia to Poland and instituted a high cultural period.

**Casimir-Périer (kā-zē-mēr' pār-yā')**, J. P. F. (1847-1907), fifth president of the Third Republic of France (June 1894-January 1895); resigned because of factional bickering and limitations on presidential power.

**Casino (kā-sē-nō)**, at Monte Carlo M-378

**Casiquiare (kās-ē-kē-ā-rā)** River, navigable stream in s.w. Venezuela; connects Orinoco and Negro rivers, length 240 mi.: map V-442

**Casket Letters** M-106

**Caskoden, Edwin.** *See in Index* Major, Charles

**Caslon, William** (1692-1766), first of a famous family of English type foundry; name is given to type faces still much used  
 type T-230, picture B-235

**Casper, Wyo.**, town on North Platte River on site of old Fort Casper; pop. 23,673; wool and oil center; railroad shops; Casper Junior College: W-326, maps W-323, U-252, picture W-325

**Caspian Sea**, salt sea on borders of Europe and Asia; 760 mi. long, 130 to 270 mi. wide: C-132, maps A-406, 411, E-419. *See also in Index* Ocean, table

shore line and level C-132, D-152  
 size, comparative. *See in Index* Lakes, table

**Caspian snailk**, or peschaultk, animal. *See in Index* Suslik

**Cass, Lewis** (1782-1866), statesman, born Exeter, N. H.; governor of Michigan territory 1813-21; secretary of war 1831-36; U. S. senator 1843-48 and 1849-57; secretary of state 1857. *See also in Index* Statuary Hall (Michigan), table  
 candidate for president T-28  
 relations with Indians M-229

**Casaba melon.** *See in Index* Casaba melon

**Cassady, John H. (ward)** (born 1896), U. S. Navy officer, born Spencer, Ind.; commander of 6th fleet 1952-54; became 4-star admiral 1954; commander in chief of U. S. naval forces in the Atlantic and Mediterranean after 1954

**Cassandra (kā-sān'dra)**, daughter of Priam, king of Troy; prophetic of woe, doomed never to be believed; in vain warned against keeping Helen and admitting the wooden horse; Agamemnon's captive; slain with him by Clytemnestra.

**Cassano (kās-sā'nō)**, Italy, town 16 mi. e. of Milan; French defeated Imperialists 1705; Russians and Austrians defeated French 1799.

**Cassareep**, a condiment T-14

**Cassatt, Mary** (1835-1926), painter and etcher, born in Pittsburgh, lived in Paris; impressionist; favorite subjects, mothers and children.

**Cassava (kā-sā'vā)**, or manioc, plant from which tapioca is obtained T-14  
 natives use S-262, pictures A-185, S-250

starch from S-382

**Cassegrainian telescope**, picture T-49

**Cassel (kās'el)**, or Kassel, Germany, city on Fulda River 90 mi. n.e. of Frankfurt-on-the-Main; pop. 162,132; manufacturing center: maps G-88, E-424

**Cassena.** *See in Index* Yaupon

**Cassia (kāsh'i-ā)**, a genus of the pea, or pulse, family; many species, most of them native to warm regions, include trees, shrubs, and wild flowers such as saffron; most of them with showy clusters of golden or orange-yellow blossoms resembling the sweet pea in form, and with long beanlike seed pods and compound leaves of 6 to 20 leaflets

**cassia bark**, or chinese cinnamon S-339, 340

**Cassian (kāsh'ān)** Way, ancient military road from Rome to Arretium, Florence, and Lucca.

**Cassidy, Hopalong.** *See in Index* Boyd, William

**Cassmere (kās'ē-mēr')**, a plain woven or twilled wool fabric; has soft finish but no nap; used for men's clothing; also a similar fabric of wool mixed with cotton or rayon.

**Cassini (kās-sē-nē)**, Jean Dominique (Giovanni) (1625-1712), French

astronomer; discovered four satellites of Saturn; determined rotations of Jupiter, Venus, and Mars; parallax of sun and eccentricity of earth's orbit; work continued by son, Jacques Cassini (1677-1756)  
 map of world M-91  
 polar projection map, picture R-88g

**Cassini de Thury, César François** (1714-84), astronomer, director of Paris Observatory; grandson of J. D. Cassini; work continued by son, Jacques Dominique de Cassini, Comte (1748-1845): M-91

**Cassini's division**, on Saturn P-285, picture P-281

**Cassino, Italy**, city, 75 mi. s.e. of Rome, ancient Casinum; pop. 9208; Monte Cassino monastery nearly destroyed in World War II but was rebuilt: map E-425  
 World War II W-264, W-280

**Cassiodorus, Flavius Magnus Aurelius** (490?-585?), Latin writer, statesman, and monk ('History of the Goths'; 'Variae', treatise of Ostrogothic Kingdom in Italy): B-236-7  
 established scriptorium L-181

**Cassiopeia (kās-i-ō-pē-yā)**, in Greek mythology, Ethiopian queen, mother of Andromeda.

**Cassiopeia**, a northern constellation, charts S-373-4, 378-80  
 circumpolar stars A-436  
 use in telling time and direction, diagrams A-429

**Cassiterite**, the chief ore of tin; ordinary massive variety called tin-stone: T-137, M-262, table M-76

**Cassius Longinus (kāsh'ūs lōn-gī-nūs)**, Calvus (died 42 B.C.), Roman general, one of Caesar's murderers; called by Shakespeare "lean and hungry Cassius."

**Cassivellanus**, British king, conquered by Julius Caesar (54 B.C.).  
**Cassowary**, bird C-132, picture C-132  
 related to ostrich O-427

**Castagno (kā-sā'nō-yō)**, Andrea del (1396?-1457), Italian realistic painter of early Florentine School.

**Castalia, fountain of**, at Delphi; sacred to Muses; waters supposed source of inspiration; now called Fountain of St. John: D-62

**Castanets** M-472, picture M-471

**Castanheira (kās-tān'yā-rō)**, tropical tree (*Bertholletia excelsa*) of leguminous family, native to S. America. Grows to 100 ft.; leaves to 2 ft. long, oblong, leathery, with wavy margins; flowers, white, in loose spike-like clusters. Fruit is the Brazil nut, also called the Para nut, or castanea.

**Casté**, hereditary division of society according to family, religion, wealth, occupation, etc.

**India** H-357, I-58; sandalwood used for mark S-39  
 Japan J-318

**Castelar y Ripoll (kās-tā-lār' ē rē pōl')**, Emilio (1832-99), Spanish Liberal statesman, orator, and writer; dictator of Spanish republic Sept.-Dec. 1873; author of histories, essays, novels, travel books.

**Castellano (kās-tēl-ē-dār-dō)**, Italy, town 10 mi. s. of Ancona, near Adriatic Sea; Italians defeated papal troops 1860.

**Castellanos (kās-tēl-yā'nōs)**, Julio (born 1903), artist, born Mexico City; noted as easel and fresco painter, etcher, engraver; precise line, finely balanced forms; skillful stage designs.

**Castellón de la Plana (kās-tēl-yōn' dā plā'nā)**, Spain, industrial and trade city 40 mi. n.e. of Valencia, near Mediterranean; pop. 53,531, with suburbs: maps E-425

**Key:** cape, āt, fār, fāst, whet, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, bāt, rŷde, fŷll, bŷrn; out;



## CAT BREEDS AND STANDARDS RECOGNIZED BY AMERICAN CAT FANCIERS

Breed	Type	Class	Color and Markings	Color of Eyes
LONG-HAIRED PERSIAN	Head—Round, wide between ears. Noses short and broad. Cheeks and underjaw well developed. Ears small, thin, rounded at tip. Eyes large, round, full, wide apart. Body—Short and "cobby"; that is, low, deep-chested, massive across shoulders and rump. Back straight and firm. Legs short and straight. Feet rounded and well arched. Tail short, well "feathered," carried without curve. Coat—Long and glossy.		White	Golden to copper; blue and golden
			Black	Golden to copper
			Blue	Golden to copper
			Cream	Golden to copper
			Solid red	Golden to copper
			Peke-faced red†	Blue-green
			Silver (chinchilla)	Blue-green
			Shaded silver	Blue-green
			Silver tabby†	Blue-green
			Smoke (black topcoat, white undercoat)	Golden to copper
			Red tabby†	Copper
			Peke-faced red tabby*†	Copper
			Brown tabby†	Golden to copper
			Tortoise shell (black, orange, and cream)	Golden to copper
			Blue and cream (the two colors clearly defined as in tortoise shell)	Golden to copper
DOMESTIC SHORT HAIR	Head—Similar to long-haired cats but may be less full, with slightly longer nose. Ears may be wider at base. Eyes large, full, round. Body—Inclined to be longer and more slender than long-haired cats, also inclined to stand higher but is not rangy. Feet small and tight. Tail fairly short and tapering. Coat—Close-lying and glossy.		Color of coat and eye color the same as those of long-haired breed.	
SIAMESE	Head—Long and tapering, wide between eyes, narrowing to muzzle, giving impression of a marten face. Ears erect, large, pricked, wide at base. Eyes almond shaped, with oriental slant toward nose. Body—Medium to small, dainty, long, alert. Legs slim and straight, with small, oval feet. Toes close. Tail long and tapering, sometimes having link at tip. Coat—Short, fine textured, glossy.		Seal point‡ (fawn or cream body, seal-brown points)	Clear, vivid blue
			Chocolate point‡ (ivory body, cinnamon-brown points)	Clear, vivid blue
			Blue point‡ (silver-blue body, darker blue points)	Clear, vivid blue
			Lilac (frost) point‡ (glacial-white body, light silver-blue points)	Clear, vivid blue
BURMESE	Head—Similar to Siamese Body—Similar to Siamese Coat—Similar to Siamese		Seal brown shading to lighter color on chest and stomach. Young cats may be lighter in color.	Yellow
ABYSSINIAN	Head—Long and pointed. Ears sharp and comparatively large and wide. Eyes large. Body—Small, long, lithe. Tail fairly long and tapering. Feet small. Gives impression of being dainty but muscular. Coat—Short, fine, close-lying.		Ruddy brown, ticked with black or dark brown like rabbit fur. Inside forelegs and stomach tan or orange brown. Black of pads on feet extends up the backs of the hind legs.	Gold, green, or hazel
MANX	Head—Round. Nose broad. Cheeks full. Chin firm. Ears large, wide apart, open at base. Eyes large and round. Body—Cobby. The Manx has no tail, only a dimple where coccyx ordinarily starts. High hindquarters. Short back. Coat—Open or "double." Double coat gives Manx appearance of having a short fluffy coat like that of a rabbit.		All colors of Manx are recognized in show specimens.	Varies according to color of coat
RUSSIAN BLUE	Head—Skull flat, broad across eyes. Neck and nose fairly long. Ears large, wide at base, round at tips. Eyes round and far apart. Body—Long and graceful. Tail long and tapering. Legs medium length, with small, neat, rounded feet. Coat—Short, thick, fine, stand-off like sealskin. Fur differs from any other breed since it does not lie flat. The coat is double, with outer coat having distinct sheen.		Various shades of blue	Green

\*The Peke-faced cat conforms (except for the head and face) to the standard set for the long-haired cat in general and the color class is particular. The head resembles the Pekinese dog with a short nose, deep "stop" between the eyes, and wide, flat head. Cheeks and jaws are firm. Eyes round, large, and full, set wide apart and prominent.

†The tabby markings consist of "frown marks" on the head extending between the ears and down the neck to meet a "butterfly" design on the shoulders, which divides the head lines from the spine. The back markings, or *spinas*, consist of a distinct, wide, dark center stripe with stripes of the ground color on either side, and these in turn bordered by a second dark stripe. Dark swirls on the cheeks and sides of the body make complete unbroken circles and are centered by a large dark

spot surrounded by the ground color. Legs are evenly barred with the bracelets meeting the body markings. The tail is also evenly barred.

The word "tabby" is from the French, *tabis*, which means a kind of taffeta fabric. Originally this material was made in Attabi, a section of Baghdad. Tabby came to indicate the tabby pattern as well as the material. Then it was used to describe the stripes in the domestic cat's coat. In time the word tabby was used to describe a domestic cat of any kind, a confusion which continues today.

‡The "points" of the Siamese—its face mask, ears, legs, feet, and tail—are of a darker shade than the body. The darker fur of the mask and ears is connected except in kittens.

Frontiers / November 2007



- Museum, Washington, D. C., and American Museum of Natural History, New York City); author of books on Indians and travel.
- Cat'linité**, red pipestone of Pipestone County Minn. quarried by Indians for pipes ornaments; hardens with age, named for George Catlin.
- Catmint**, or catnip, a plant M-292
- Cato** (*kô'tô*), Marcus Porcius (234-149 B.C.), the Censor ("the Elder"), Roman statesman and orator; name a synonym for harsh morality and narrow patriotism
- Carthaginian policy** C-129
- prose writing** L-130
- Cato**, Marcus Porcius (95-46 B.C.), of Utica ("the Younger"), Roman statesman and stoic philosopher, great-grandson of Cato the Elder; opponent of Caesar in war with Pompey; stabbed himself rather than live under the conqueror; hero of Addison's tragedy, 'Cato'.
- Cats** (*kâts*), Jakob (1577-1660), Dutch poet and humorist; twice sent as ambassador to England; his poems, simple and abounding in moral maxims, popular with the Dutch; called "Father Cats" ('Marriage'; 'Age and Country Life').
- Cat's eye**, a chrysoberyl used as a gem, also a lustrous gray, brown, or green gem variety of quartz enclosing asbestos fibers, found in Ceylon, India; J-349
- Cat'skill Aqueduct system** A-283, picture N-210
- Cat'skill Forest Preserve**, New York N-38c
- Cat'skill Mountains**, a picturesque range of low mountains in s.e. New York on west side of Hudson River, highest point Slide Mt. 4204 ft.; famous as resort region; maps N-196, 205, U-265, picture N-207
- New York City water supply** W-73, pictures N-210, W-71. See also in **Index** Catskill Aqueduct
- "Cat's-paw"**, expression F-3
- Cat's-tail grass**, a common name for two European grasses, the burr- and timothy
- Cat-stitch**, in sewing, diagram S-113
- Catt**, Carrie Chapman (1859-1947), woman suffrage leader, and peace advocate; born Ripon, Wis.; after 1890 lectured in U. S. and Europe; founder International Woman Suffrage Alliance, its president 1904-23; president American Woman Suffrage Association after 1915; W-184
- Cattail**, a swamp reed W-67, color picture P-286
- seed dispersal** S-96
- Cattail millet** M-255
- Cattalo**, cattle and buffalo hybrid C-146
- Cattaro**, Yugoslavia. See in **Index** Kotor
- Cattegat**, or Kattegat, strait between Denmark and Sweden; 150 mi. long, greatest width 90 mi.; map D-71
- Cattell** (*kâ'tî'l*), James McKeen (1860-1944), psychologist, writer, and editor, born Easton, Pa.; professor psychology, University of Pennsylvania 1888-91; Columbia University 1891-1917; editor *Science*, *Scientific Monthly*, *American Men of Science*, *American Naturalist*, *School and Society*, *Leaders in Education*; I-114
- Cattermole** (*kât'êr-môl*), George (1800-1862), English painter and illustrator; famed as a watercolorist, but painted also in oils; successful landscape and architectural paintings; illustrated many books including Sir Walter Scott's 'Waverley' novels.
- Cattle C-141-7**, pictures C-141-141b, 143-6. See also in **Index** Cattle raising
- anatomy**: eye, picture E-161; dairy cow, picture D-4; foot F-224; horns H-426; skeleton, picture S-191; stomach R-254-5, S-401
- beef breeds** C-145-6, pictures C-143
- dual-purpose breeds** C-146-7, picture C-145
- branding on the range** C-149-50
- breeders' associations** C-144, 145, 146, 147
- breeding dairy cows** C-143, pictures A-62, C-144, D-4, color picture M-250d; selective breeding C-141a
- care and feeding** M-250a-b, color pictures M-250a, b, c
- classification** C-141
- compared with hog as meat producer** H-403
- cowboy**. See in **Index** Cowboy
- dairy breeds** C-143-5, pictures C-141b, D-4, A-62, C-144, color picture M-250d, table C-142
- dairying** D-2-5, pictures D-2-4
- diseases and parasites** C-147, M-250b
- anthrax** P-96, D-103, V-433b
- botflies** F-169
- dipping vat** C-147, picture C-146
- foot and mouth disease** C-147
- liver fluke** W-302, picture A-250a
- rinderpest** C-147, Z-359
- scabies** S-348
- tapeworm** W-302
- tick fever**, or Texas fever C-147, S-348
- draft animals**, picture C-141a. See also in **Index** Transportation, sub-head oxen and oxcarts
- "dry" cows** M-250a
- dual-purpose breeds** C-146-7, picture C-145
- fattening, or finishing, for market** C-145, picture C-144; dual-purpose breeds C-146
- gestation period** C-141a
- grades** C-141a
- hair**, uses H-243
- heifer** C-141a
- history in America** C-141a-2
- humped**. See in **Index** Humped ox
- hybrids** C-146, B-200, picture C-144
- life span** C-141a
- mavericks on the range** C-150
- meaning of term** C-141
- meat packing** M-153-6b, pictures M-153-6b
- ox** C-141. See also in **Index** Ox
- poisoned by plants** C-147, P-338-9; larkspur L-103; laurel L-137
- polled** C-141a
- producing regions**. See in **Index** Cattle raising
- products from** C-141
- purebred** C-141a
- ranching** C-147-55, pictures C-147-55. See also in **Index** Cowboy; Ranch; Range
- registration in America** A-64
- related species** C-141: bison B-199-201, pictures B-199, 200; buffalo B-341, picture B-341; yak Y-333, picture Y-333; zebu Z-350
- roundup** C-149-50, picture C-85, color picture U-293
- ruminant** C-157, R-254
- sacred to Hindus** I-58, pictures I-61, 66
- scrubs** C-141a
- smallest wild species** B-341
- stampede** C-151-2
- steer** C-141a
- symbiosis**: ani C-529; cattle heron B-341
- teeth** C-141, R-255
- western plains** C-147-55, pictures C-147-55
- Cattle barons** C-150
- Cattle boom** C-154-5
- cattle breeding**. See in **Index** Breeding, animal
- Cattle heron**, cattle egret, or buffalo bird B-341
- Cattle raising**. See also in **Index** Cowboy; Dairying; Meat packing; Ranch; Range
- Africa**, color picture A-36
- Australia** A-483; Queensland Q-12
- Canada** A-142
- Europe**: France F-262; Russia R-276; Switzerland S-475
- India** I-62
- leading cattle producing countries** table C-141a
- Mexico** M-189, 200, picture N-255
- South America** S-267, pictograph S-246; Argentina A-334-5; Brazil B-292; Uruguay U-407; Venezuela V-441
- United States** C-143-7, U-279, 292, map U-289; Alabama, A-114, picture 115; Arizona A-346; breeds first imported A-63; Florida F-151, 152; history, in Far West C-147-55, F-43; Kansas K-13; Montana M-368; Nebraska N-96, picture N-105; Nevada N-124, picture N-154; New Mexico N-171, picture N-172; Oklahoma, picture O-374; South Dakota S-295, picture S-306; Texas T-78, C-142, pictures T-79, 93; Virginia V-480; Wyoming W-316, picture W-326
- Cattle ranching** C-147-55, pictures C-147-55
- Cattle tick** S-348
- Cattle trails** C-150-2
- Okahoma** O-376
- Catullus** (*kâ'tûl'is*), Gaius Valerius (84-54 B.C.), Roman lyric poet, born Verona, Italy; noted chiefly for his famous love poems to "Lesbia"; L-131
- Catwalks**, in airship construction B-31
- Cauca** (*kou'kâ*), river in Colombia, 650 mi. long C-387-8, maps C-387, S-252
- Caucasla**, in Russia. See in **Index** Caucasus
- Caucasoid race**, or white race R-21-3, chart R-22, graph R-22, **Reference-Outline** R-23
- hair** H-243
- numbers** P-373
- racial classification**, chart R-22
- Caucasus** (*kô'kâ-sîs*), or **Caucasia** (*kô'kâ'hiq*), region in Russia between the Black and Caspian seas, divided by the Caucasus Mts. into north Caucasus and Transcaucasus. North Caucasus is part of European Russia; Transcaucasus contains the Russian Asiatic republics of Georgia, Armenia, and Azerbaidzhan: C-155-6
- ancient times** A-418
- Armenia** A-373-5
- folk tales** S-409-10
- Georgia** G-81
- oil** R-277, 280
- people** R-262
- rugmaking** R-248
- Caucasus** (*kô'kâ-sîs*) Mountains, also **Kavkaz** (*kâ'f-kâs*), range between s.e. Europe and Asia extending from sea of Azov to Caspian Sea C-155-6, R-257, maps B-204, E-419, R-259, 267, pictures G-40, R-258. See also in **Index** Caucasus
- Prometheus** chained in C-156
- Caucho** (*kou'chô*), a rubber gum, product of the Mexican rubber tree (*Costilla elastica*) of the mulberry family. Native to Central America and n. South America. Tree grows to 60 ft.; ready for tapping at 8 years; secondary source of rubber. Called also castilloa.
- Caucly** (*kô-shê*'), Augustin Louis (1789-1857), French mathematician; made important contributions to pure and applied mathematics; also wrote successful poetry.
- Can'cus**, a meeting of the leaders of

**Key:** câpe, ât, fâr, fâst, whqt, fâll; mē, yēt, fēr, thēre; ice, bîr; rōw, wōn, fôr, nôt, dō; câre, bûr, rîde, fûll, bûrn; out;

a poll at party to determine in advance the policies and candidates the party will support in a given election C 436  
early presidential candidates named by 1358

possible origin of word A 17  
primary election vs. caucus system T 410

Candill (kādīl) Rebecca (born 1891) writer born Cumberland Ky taught in the de Janeline Frauli books for older girls include *Barrie & Daughter* and *Tree of Freedom*. For younger children she wrote a series of books based on her childhood in the mountains of Kentucky. Her little family school house in the Woods. L. anti w in the River

Candillox (kon-dēlōs) dictators in Spanish speaking countries  
Francisco Franco T 277 pict re T 277

Lalla America L 114 S 278 A 337  
Candice Parks mountain pass in New York 4006 Thomas surrendered 1321 ac in d Sammie War

Candorian vegetable of cabbage type C 1 pictures C 2 N 47  
Cauld how and how to plant fair C 19

Caulk See in Index Nautical terms table

Caura (kauri) three tributaries of the Orinoco River in central Venezuela flows n 450 mi maps V 442 S 332

Cauls a substance which destroys living tissue. Common caustics are household lye (sodium hydroxide), carbolic acid, chromic acid, arsenic silver nitrate

Cauls (kauri) or potassium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

Cauls (kauri) or sodium hydroxide often called soda lye when dissolved in water T 266 390  
antidote for P 96  
mercurizing M 173  
saponifying S 211

1876 Italian composer of sacred and dramatic music O 389  
Cavale Island at mouth of Manila Bay M 77

Cavalry See also in Index Armor 1 4 Army  
ancient W 8 Assyrians B 8 Roman legion W 8

Roman legion W 8  
sahara h 485  
trumpet B 342

1 4 Army A 378  
Cavan (kāvā) inland agricultural and mining county in n part of Ireland 730 sq mi pop 86377  
pop 127

Cavanna Betty (Mrs Elizabeth Cavanna Headley) (born 1899) author born Camden NJ engaged in newspaper work advertising and art wrote short stories and books for teen aged girls (A Girl in a Dream Pencilbox Summer Spring Comes Riding Tasso Your Heart Love Laurie)

Care C 158-8 pict res C 158-7 31 color picture M 22 map N 18  
Pitcairni Cave h 48 map N 18  
Jewel Cave h 48 map N 18

Lehman Cave h 48 map N 18  
Lucky Cave C 158-7 31 maps  
Mammouth Cave C 157  
M 25 h 48 pictures C 157

in story in Huron K 39  
Mammouth Cave h 48 map N 18  
Oregan Cave h 48 map N 18

Shelton Cave h 48 map N 18  
Smyth's Hydrabad H 455  
Timpanogos Cave h 48 map N 18

Wild Cave S D h 48 map N 18  
Care bear prehistoric animal larger than polar bear one of fiercest enemies of cave men fossils in caverns of Europe and Asia F 244

Cave dwellers M 63-4 66 70 A 301-4  
pict res M 64 color picture M 67  
American I 1081  
art M 64 D 145 pictures M 63-4

D 146 color picture M 67  
Basket Makers B 76  
China pict res C 258

China pict res M 63-4 76  
Cave Stagnons M 63-4 76  
Cave and Chilling L 68

in fern C 258  
racial classification chart B 22  
weapons and tools S 401 pict res

A 101  
Cavell (kāvēl) Edith (1869-1915) English nurse attached to hospital in Brussels executed by German in military government of Belgium (during World War I) for aiding wounded Allied soldiers to escape

World War I (1914-1918) Eng  
Cavendish Henry (1731-1806) Irish chemist and physicist born in Ireland valuable discoveries in electricity proved hydrogen an element and water a compound

element and water a compound  
electrical discoveries F 303  
hydrogen theory 138 1  
physical theory 138 1 diagram

weights earth E 192-3 diagram  
C 181  
Cavendish Spenser (1801-1851) See in Index Devonshire Duke of

Index Devonshire Duke of  
Cavendish Thomas (1791-1822) Eng  
naval navigator second English man to circumnavigate the globe

to circumnavigate the globe  
Cavendish Arthur (1814-1891) William 1st duke of Devonshire 10th duke of Devonshire a noble and statesman

See in Index Devonshire Duke of  
Cavendish (kāvēdē) a unit of weight made of iron of aluminum or other metal especially in physics A 434

fish especially in physics A 434  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77  
Cavilla (kāvīl) P 1 300 M 77

Ky (Kestucky Poems Bloom of the Berry Minions of the Moon)

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

Cassare (kāsār) or kōn pur) or kōn pur) Industrial city on Cango River pop 795393 maps 154 64 A 407

- Woodrow Wilson peace prize 1924 and Nobel peace prize 1937
- Cecil**, Lord Hugh, later Baron Quickwood (Richard Heathcote) (born 1869), British political leader and soldier, brother of Robert, in House of Commons 1895-1906 1910-36, Royal Flying Corps 1915
- Cecilia**, Saint, patroness of musicians and the blind; Roman noblewoman who suffered martyrdom either in Sicily about A.D. 176 or according to other authorities in Rome about A.D. 230, festival Nov 22
- Cecropia** (*se-lrô'pi-a*) moth B-367d, color picture I-233
- Caterpillar**, picture C-138
- Cecrops** (*se-l'rôps*), mythical founder of Athens first king of Attica represented as half man half dragon
- Cedar**, a name applied to many trees and to their woods also to trees of the genus *Cedrus* C-158-9, picture C-158
- woods known commercially as cedar C-534, table W-186b
- Cedar**, Japanese. See in *Index* Cryptomeria
- Cedar bird**. See in *Index* Cedar waxwing
- Cedar Breaks National Monument**, in Utah N-32, map N-18
- Cedar City**, Utah town in s.w., pop 6106, livestock, iron farm crops excelsior, branch of Utah State Agricultural College, near Cedar Breaks National Monument and Zion National Park maps U-417, U-232
- Cedar Creek**, small branch of Shenandoah River in Virginia
- Civil War battle S-147**, map C-335
- Cedar Crest College**, at Allentown Pa. for women opened 1867; chartered 1868 arts and sciences.
- Cedar elm** E-335, 336
- Cedar Falls**, Iowa, city on Cedar River 90 mi. w. of Dubuque, pop 14,344 pumps elevator equipment hardware brooms, Iowa State Teachers College map I-215
- Cedar Mountain**, hill, Culpeper Co., Va Confederate victory, Aug. 1862 map C-335
- Cedar Rapids**, Iowa city on Cedar River 62 mi. s.w. of Dubuque; pop 72,296, cereal, packed meat, radio parts road-building equipment; Coe College: I-220, maps I-215, U-253, picture I-218
- Art Association Wood's 'Woman with Plant'** P-35, color picture P-34d
- Cedar River**, tributary of the Iowa River, in Minnesota and Iowa: 400 mi.; maps I-208, 215, picture I-218
- Cedar waxing**, or cedar bird W-76, picture W-76, color picture B-161
- Cedarwood oil** C-159
- Cedric** (*se-d'ril* or *lêd'rik*), of Rotherwood, or Cedric, the Saxon, in Sir Walter Scott's 'Ivanhoe', guardian of Rowena and father of Ivanhoe.
- Cedron**, Valley of. See in *Index* Kedron
- Celba** (*sâ't-bâ* or *sî'bâ*), large tropical tree of silk-cotton family (*Bombacaceae*), with showy bell-shaped flowers and pods filled with seeds which yield the fiber known as *Lapok*: held sacred by Guatemala Indians: K-17-18, picture E-206
- Guatemala G-222b**
- Ceiling**, in aviation, the highest point a given airplane can reach (absolute ceiling). Service ceiling is the altitude at which the rate of climb is reduced to 100 ft. per minute. In aeronautical weather reports "ceiling" refers to the highest level from which fliers can see the ground without interference by fog or clouds: A-83-4, A-98-9
- Ceiling**, in houses decoration, pictures I-177, 182, 184
- Celadon** (*se-l'a-dôn*), or sea green, pottery glaze
- China P-394
- Korea P-396a
- Celandine** (*se-l'an-din*), a perennial herb (*Chelidonium majus*) of the poppy family with clusters of yellow flowers, plant yields a saffron-colored juice used in medicine
- Celanese**, a rayon R-81
- Celastraceae**. See in *Index* Staff-tree family
- Celebes** (*se-l'e-bêz*) large island in Indonesia: 72,000 sq. mi.; pop 1,500,000 C-159, maps E-202, A-407
- relationships to continent maps A-406-7, 411-12
- size, comparative See in *Index* Islands, table
- Celebes Sea**, between Celebes, Borneo and Mindanao, P.I. 320 by 500 mi. greatest depth 20,400 ft. maps A-407, 411, E-202
- Celeriac**, a kind of celery C-159
- Celery**, plant with edible rootstalks C-159, picture C-159
- planter, picture F-152
- when and how to plant, table G-19
- Celery salt** C-159
- Celesta** (*se-l'e-s'ta*) a musical instrument containing steel plates backed by wooden resonators keyboard operates hammers as in a piano, and the instrument looks like a small piano many orchestral compositions call for its use picture M-471
- Celestial equator**. See in *Index* Equinoctial
- Celestial navigation** N-77-8
- Celestial poles**. See in *Index* Poles, celestial
- Celestial sphere**, the apparent spherical surface on which all the stars seem to be located
- Celestine** (*Cnelestinus*), name of five popes best known of whom is Celestine V. Saint (1215-96), pope in 1294, a poor Benedictine monk devoted to monastic rigors; after 6 months abdicated as pope; returned to monastery; founded the Celestines a strict congregation within the Benedictine Order; feast May 19.
- Celestite**, or celestine, white or sky-blue mineral, strontium sulphate; source of strontium compounds.
- Celibacy**, a religious vow C-302
- Luther's attitude toward L-353
- Cell**, in biology, unit structure of living organisms C-159-61, pictures C-160-1
- blood (corpuscle) B-208, 210
- chromatin B-148: heredity carried by H-344, 346, diagrams H-346, picture H-347
- discovery important E-151
- division C-161, B-148, H-346-7, diagrams H-343, pictures B-149, C-161, color picture B-149
- egg E-337-8
- germ cells, diagrams H-346
- human body, number of cells A-250
- life, and cells L-224a-5, pictures L-224a-d
- nerve C-160, N-110-11, pictures C-160, N-111
- nucleus C-160, 161
- plants, structural units of C-159-61, pictures C-160-1
- protoplasm P-422, B-145, C-159-60, B-148
- single-celled, or unicellular, organisms: animals A-236b-7, C-160, L-224-224a, b, c, 225, P-423, pictures L-224d, P-423; plant types A-152-4, B-12-15, C-159, L-224a, b-c, d, 225, Y-336-7, pictures L-224d, 224a-b, B-12-13, Y-336-7
- somatic cells H-346
- water in W-60
- wayward D-105
- Cell**, electric. See in *Index* Electric battery and cell
- Cella**, in architecture, defined A-12
- Cellini** (*che-l'i-ni*), Benvenuto (1500-1571), Italian goldsmith sculptor; brawling braggart, soldier of fortune, and mirror of his time ('Autobiography'): S-78c
- casting process used S-75
- pitcher by, picture E-445
- saltcellar by, picture M-178
- statue of Perseus I-280
- Cello**. See in *Index* Violoncello
- Cellophane** C-161-2
- Celuloid**, a plastic C-163, P-314
- Celulose**, plant substance C-162-3, L-224a, pictures C-163, table C-162
- acetate C-162-3, picture C-163, table C-162: rayon R-81
- cellophane C-161-2
- collodion derived from C-364
- explosives use L-458
- factory in North Carolina, picture U-281
- food of termites T-74
- food value F-217
- nitrate, or nitrocellulose C-163, table C-162. See also in *Index* Nitrocellulose
- paper C-162, P-66
- plants form L-151, P-294
- rayon making R-79-81, pictures R-80
- sponges S-354
- tree, percentage in W-186
- xanthate C-162, table C-162
- Celso**. See in *Index* Cockscomb
- Celsus** (*se-l'se-ûs* or *se-l'shi-ûs*), Anders (1701-44), Swedish astronomer; professor at Uppsala; first to describe Centigrade, or Celsius, thermometer (about 1742).
- Celsus** (2d century A.D.), Platonist philosopher; in his 'The True Word', or 'The True Account', made first attack on Christianity.
- Cellie** (*se-l'ik* or *he-l'ik*) languages and literature C-163
- Arthurian legends A-393-4
- folk tales S-413-14, list S-421
- Ireland I-234
- Wales W-3
- Celtic** or C-141
- Celts** (*se-l'ts* or *he-l'ts*) C-163
- Britain E-357-8, map E-358; baskets B-73
- "Celtic Renaissance" C-163
- France F-258; Brittany B-327, F-259
- Hebrides Islands H-327
- Ireland I-227, 230a
- racial classification, chart R-22
- Scotland S-63, 64
- Wales W-3
- Celtuce** (*se-l'tis*), a vegetable of amaranth family; introduced into United States from China 1942; pale green, slightly bitter stalk usually cooked, young green leaves used in salads; appearance and use suggest celery and lettuce hence its name
- Cement** (*se-mênt*) C-164-7, pictures C-164-6. See also in *Index* Gypsum
- color pigments in C-165-6
- concrete C-431-431b, pictures C-431-431b
- making C-165, 166, pictures C-164-5: early methods C-167
- shipment of C-166
- spray guns for applying P-329
- uses C-165-6, 167
- Cementation** process, of steel manufacture I-247
- Cement rock** C-167
- Cemetery**
- archaeological significance A-299, 301
- U. S. national cemeteries. See in *Index* National cemeteries, U. S.



Centrarchidne (*sên-trâr'ki-dê*), sun-fish family S-454

Centre College of Kentucky, at Danville, Ky.; founded 1819; co-ordinate colleges for men and women; in 1930 Kentucky College for Women merged with Centre; arts and sciences.

Centrifugal force C-178  
formula for computing C-178

Centrifugal machinery, devices that employ centrifugal force C-178, picture C-178

cream separator D-2-3  
hydraulic dredge D-143

hydroextractor L-136  
sugar making S-444

Centrifuges, centrifugal machines C-178

atomic power materials, separation of, diagram A-468

tests on man S-310  
ultracentrifuge C-178, picture C-178

Centripetal force C-178

Centriosome, in cells C-161, picture C-161

Centrosphere, central core of earth E-193

Centurion, in Roman army W-9

Century, a division of the Roman army W-9

Century, calendar reckonings C-23

Century of Progress, world's fair of 1933 and 1934, Chicago C-238, picture F-13

Century plant A-56

Cephalic (*sê-fâl'ik*) Index, or cranial Index R-21

Cephalonia. See in Index Kephallenia

Cephallopods, or head-footed mollusks M-333

place in "family tree" of animal kingdom, picture A-251

Cephalothorax, head and body segments of arthropod when fused crab C-503

spider S-342

Cephheids (*sê'fê-idz*), variable stars S-382

Cephens (*sê'fûs* or *sê'fê-ûs*), in Greek mythology, king of Ethiopia, father of Andromeda

Cepheus, constellation near Cassiopeia, charts S-374, 377-8, 380

Cephæus River, in ancient Attica, flowing into Saronic Gulf just s. of Athens

Ceppo, Italian yule log C-295

Ceracchi (*châ-ra'h'kê*), Glinsepe (1751-1802), Italian sculptor: came to America in 1790, but returned to Europe, guillotined for part in plot to assassinate Napoleon I

bust of Washington, picture W-19

Ceram (*sâ'ram*), Portuguese *sâ-rouh'*, island in Moluccas, Indonesia, w. of New Guinea; 6621 sq. mi.; pop. 83,000; mountainous, with thick forests; sago palm, agricultural products; map E-203

Ceramic engineering E-345

Ceramics, defined P-393. See also in Index Brick; Clay; Porcelain and chinaware; Pottery; Tile

Cerameus (*sêr-d-m'kûs*), district on n.w. side of ancient Athens, so named on account of celebrated pottery industry there.

Cerastium, or mouse-ear chickweed, a genus of annual or perennial plants of the pink family: includes starry grasswort (*C. arvense*) and snow-in-summer (*C. tomentosum*). Often confused with true chickweed of genus *Stellaria*.

Ceratosaurs, prehistoric reptile, picture P-406c

Cerberus (*sêr'bê-rûs*), in Greek mythology, famous many-headed dog of Hades; kept watch at the entrance to Hades to prevent the

living from entering and the dead from escaping

Hercules captures H-342

Cercopithecidae (*sêr-lô-pi-thê'si-dê*), family of monkeys M-353

Cerdic (*sêr'dik*) (died 534), founder of West Saxon kingdom; called ancestor of all sovereigns of England except Canute, Hardicanute, the two Harold, and William the Conqueror.

Cereal crops, those producing food grains. See also in Index Barley; Buckwheat; Corn; Millet; Oats; Rice; Rye; Wheat

adapting to American soil A-66

alcohol made from A-145, 146

animals injurious to, *Reference-Out-line* Z-363

breakfast cereals B-299-300; cooking C-465

developed from wild grasses G-166

hay-yielding types H-295

improvement of varieties A-63

insect pests I-162-5

origin of word "cereal" D-63

rusts and smuts R-297-9, pictures R-297-8

sorghum S-236, picture S-236; kaoliang M-73-4, picture M-74

storage in elevators G-147, picture G-147

threshing T-124-5

Cerebellum, the part of the brain behind the cerebrum and above the pons B-280, picture B-281, color picture P-243

Cerebral cortex. See in Index Cortex, of brain

Cerebrospinal fluid B-280

Cerebrum, chief division of the brain occupying upper part of the cranium B-280, 281-2, pictures B-281, 282

Ceremonies, and rites. See in Index Rites and ceremonies

Ceres (*sê'rêz*) (Greek Demeter), Roman goddess of agriculture D-62-3

Ceres, an asteroid A-426

Cereus (*sê'rê-ûs*), a cactus genus C-9, 10

night-blooming cereus C-10, picture H-288a

Cerignola (*châ-rên-yô'lâ*), city in s. Italy near Adriatic Sea; pop. 37,163; Spaniards crushed French under the Duc de Nemours in 1503.

Cerigo (*chê'rî-gô*), or Kythera (*kyê-thê-râ*), Greek island of Ionian group; 106 sq. mi.; ancient Cythera, sacred to Aphrodite; map G-189

Cerito or Cerrito (*chê'r-ê'tô*), Tnaay (1821-93?), Italian ballerina, born Naples, Italy; made debut Naples about 1835; very popular in London where she danced famous 'Pas de Quatre' with Taglioni, Grisi, and Grahn in 1845; D-14h

Cerium, rare earth element; soft, iron-gray in color; discovered (1803) by Klaproth, also by Berzelius; M-265, tables P-151, C-214

gas mantles need G-31

Cernault, Russia. See in Index Chernovtsy

Cerro Bolivar (*sê'rô bô-lê'rûr*), formerly La Parida (*lâ pâ-rê-dâ*), mountain in e. Venezuela s. of Orinoco River about 300 mi. s.e. of Caracas; about 2000 ft. high, 11 mi. long, 1 mi. wide; more than half of it is high-grade iron ore; one of richest deposits in world; ore discovered April 1947 by steel-industry prospectors from U.S.

Cerro de Mercado (*dâ niêr-kâ'dô*), iron hill near Durango, Mexico M-201

Cerro de Pasco (*pâs'tô*), Peru, mining town; pop. 17,882; P-164, mnps P-164, S-252

Cerro de Punta, Puerto Rico P-431

Cerro Gordo (*gôr'dô*), mountain pass in Mexico, 60 mi. n.w. of Vera Cruz; battle in Mexican War: M-186

Certhiidae (*sêr-thi'i-dê*), creeper family of birds.

Certificate of deposit, bank B-47-8

Certified check, a check that has been stamped by a bank official showing that its payment is guaranteed by the bank B-48

Certified milk D-4, table M-252

Certified public accountant A-7

Cervantes Saavedra (*sêr-vân'têz*, Spanish *thêr-vân'tâs*, *sâ-â-vê-drà*), Miguel de (1547-1616), Spanish writer C-179-80, pictures C-179, S-325

books about C-180

'Don Quixote' C-179-80, S-326

Cervara (*thîr-vâ'râ*). Pasenale (1839-1909), Spanish admiral S-324

Cervical vertebra, one of the seven vertebrae in the neck S-191

Cervidae (*shîr'vî-dê*), family of ruminant mammals; includes deer, elk, mouse, reindeer.

Cervin, Mont. See in Index Matterhorn

Ceryneus (*sêr-i-nê'ûs*) stag, in Greek mythology, slain by Hercules H-342

Cesium (*sê'si-ûm*), or caesium, a rare, silver-white metallic element, discovered spectroscopically by R. Bunsen (1860) and named from its sky-blue spectrum lines A-166, tables P-151, C-214

photosensitivity P-210, 210a

Ceske Budejovice (*chê'skê bud-yâ-yô-vê'tsê*), German Budweis (*bû't'ris*), Czechoslovakia, industrial city in Bohemia on Vltava River, 80 mi. s. of Prague; pop. 37,550; map E-425

Céspedes (*sâs'pâ-thâs*), Carlos Manuel de (1819-74), patriot and revolutionist, born Bayamo, Cuba; leader of Cuban liberals before and during the Ten Years' War (1868-78) against Spanish domination; made president of revolutionist republic of Cuba 1869; killed in skirmish with the Spaniards.

Cetacea (*sê-tâ'sê-n*), an order of aquatic mammals M-62

Cetwyno (*sê-t'-cîn'ô*), or Ketchwano (*chêch-wâ-yô*) (1836?-84), Zulu chief; became king of Zululand 1873; rebelled 1878 against British orders to disband formidable military system he had built, was attacked and defeated by British 1879, and held captive until 1882 when was restored briefly to throne.

Cetinje (*tsê-tîn'jê*), Yugoslavia, town in s.w., formerly capital of Montenegro; pop. 11,094; several times destroyed by Turks; maps E-416, 425

Cette, France. See in Index Sète

Cetus (*sê'tûs*), an equatorial constellation, charts S-378-9

Ceuta (*sê-yu'tâ*, Spanish *thâ-n'tâ*), Spanish port, military station, and penal settlement on n. coast of Morocco; pop. about 69,000; taken from Moors by Portugal 1415; ceded to Spain 1580; M-393, map A-167

Pillars of Hercules G-108

Cévennes (*sâ-vên'*) Mountains, in s. France extending n.e. to s.w. w. of Rhone River; highest point Mt. Mézenc (5754 ft.); F-261, map F-259

Ceylon (*sê-lôn'*), island s.e. of India; dominion in British Commonwealth; 25,332 sq. mi.; pop. 8,103,648; cap. Colombo; C-180, maps I-54, A-407, A-531

animals and plants C-180; bonnet monkey, picture M-351; cinnamon, picture P-147; coconut palm, picture P-48; deer D-45; wasps W-49

flag F-136d, color picture F-134

government C-180

people C-180; Veddahs C-180

Key: câpe, ât, fâr, fâst, whet, fâll; mē, yēt, fêrn, thêre; ice, bit; rôw, wôn, fôr, nôt, dg; câre, bût, ryde, fyll, bûrn; out;

producta C 160 ebony F 209 graph  
in G 156 pearl C 180 spices  
G 339, tea C 160 T 26 27  
relationships (1) civilment maps

A 108-7 411-12  
religion C 160 Hinduism D 330  
Chinese also Singsong or Singsong  
people C 190

Anna (A 1) I 1 and (1833-1906)  
French painter C 181  
I 1108 picture C 181

Influence on cubist sculpture G 92  
Portrait of Louis Guillemin I 34-  
In color plate I 34

C. L. H. See 1/2 in 1/2 meter gram  
second system

Chalant Saint Noel (1616-41) (ana-  
dian Jesuit missionary) in a  
France went to Canada 1641  
worked among Huron Indians  
murdered by one of them 1640

Chalier Emmanuel (1841-34)  
French pianist and composer  
choral piano and symphonic works  
Jazz and popular

Chalchalen See in Index Guay  
(Chalchalen) I 1

Chen (Ch 14) The (Ch 14) also  
Gran Chaco vast alluvial plain (in  
central South America) rivers  
Paraguay and Paraná rivers and  
Andes Mts G 272 map D 335

Armenia A 332 map A 331  
Bolivia D 329  
Paraguay I 76 77

Ches Canyon National Monument in  
New Mexico G 22 map A 16  
Chesera (Ch 14) in 1/2 Guayuan  
volley I 77

Chad Territory in French Equatorial  
Africa See in Index Tchad  
Lake Chad See in Index Tchad Lake  
Chadman a hypocritical clergyman  
in Charles Dickens Bleak House

Chadwick George Whitehead (184-  
1911) musical composer born  
Lower Merion one of leaders of  
American school A 468

Chadwick (1824-1904) Amer-  
ican sports writer born in  
England I 70 See also in Index  
Baseball Hall of Fame table

Chadwick Sir James (born 1891)  
English physicist born Manchester  
England won 1935 Nobel prize for  
discovery of neutron chief British  
scientist on atomic bomb project  
master Gonville and Caius College  
Cambridge University 1946

Chadwick (A 1) ancient town in  
Boeotia birthplace of Plutarch  
scene of ancient battle

Chadwick battle at (336 B.C.) C 201  
A 148

Chadwick (Ch 14) (Ch 14) a  
family of fishes in 1/2 butterfly  
fishes and coral fish

Chadwick (Ch 14) butterfly fish color  
picture C 334

Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) a phy-  
siology of worms Reference Outfit  
of 194 table W 303

Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)

Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)

Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)

Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)  
Chadwick (A 1) (A 1) (A 1) (A 1)

Chadwick a European bird of the finch  
family sought as a cage bird be-  
cause of its beauty of voice and its  
ability to learn to sing tunes

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chagall (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14) (Ch 14)  
I 1 and 1/2 Village P 344 color pic  
ture I 341

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

Chalcid See in Index Chalcid  
Chalcid the chief ore of copper  
known chemically as cuprous sul-  
fide called also copper glance  
C 475

- name was originally applied to a silk and worsted fabric.
- Chalmers, Thomas** (1780-1847), Scottish preacher and economist, one of chief promoters of Free Church of Scotland.
- Chalmers National Historical Park**, in Louisiana N-32, map N-18 military cemetery N-17
- Châlons** (*shā-jōn*'), battle of (A.D. 451) H-451. See also in *Index Battles, table*
- Châlons-sur-Marne** (*shūr-mār-n'*), city in n.e. France, 95 mi. e. of Paris; pop. 28,257; exports champagne; taken by Germans in 1870, 1914, and 1940; gave name to battle of Châlons (A.D. 451).
- Chalon-sur-Saône** (*sōn'*), France, city 80 mi. n. of Lyons on Saône River; pop. 29,831; copper and iron manufactures; medieval churches
- Chalybes** (*kā'i-bē-s'*), also Chalybeans (*kā'i-bē-āns*), an ancient people steelmaking I-246
- Cham**, a tribe of Indo-China, chiefly in s. Annam I-123
- Chamber neld** S-448
- 'Chambered Nautilus, The'**, poem by Oliver Wendell Holmes H-408, N-70
- Chamberlain, (Arthur) Neville** (1869-1940), British statesman, son of Joseph Chamberlain C-183, pictures C-183, W-247
- foreign policy E-371
- Chamberlain, Houston Stewart** (1855-1927), English writer; wrote in German and French; settled in Bayreuth and became a devotee of Richard Wagner; married Wagner's youngest daughter (biography of Richard Wagner: 'Foundations of the 19th Century').
- Chamberlain, Joseph** (1836-1914), English Liberal Unionist statesman C-182-3
- Chamberlain, Sir (Joseph) Ansten** (1863-1937), British statesman, eldest son of Joseph; shared 1925 Nobel peace prize with Charles G. Dawes: C-183
- Chamberlain, Mellen** (1821-1900), historian, born Pemhroke, N.H.; justice of Boston municipal court 1866-78; librarian of public library of Boston 1878-90 ('John Adams, the Statesman of the American Revolution, with Other Essays and Addresses, Historical and Literary').
- Chamberlain, Samuel** (born 1895), photographer and etcher, born Cresco, Iowa (collections of his photographs: 'Beyond New England Thresholds', 'Open House in New England', 'Soft Skies of France').
- Chamberlain, Thomas Chrowder** (1843-1928), scientist, famous as author of planetesimal theory, born Mattoon, Ill.; president University of Wisconsin 1887-92; afterward professor geology, University of Chicago; held various state and federal positions as geologist ('The Geology of Wisconsin'; 'The Origin of the Earth'; 'The Two Solar Families') planetesimal theory P-285, E-177, 194
- Chamber music**, music specially adapted for playing in private house or small hall, especially compositions in sonata form as for trios, quartets, and quintets philharmonic pitch M-468b
- Chamber of Commerce**, an association sponsored by businessmen to promote the mercantile interests of their city and community grain exchange B-213
- Chamber of Commerce of the United States**, a federation of local chambers of commerce with headquarters at Washington, D. C.
- Chambers, Ephraim** (1680?-1740), English encyclopedist; compiled a 2-vol. encyclopedia 1728: B-88d
- Chambers, Robert** (1802-71), Scottish publisher and writer; joint editor *Chambers' Journal* ('Vestiges of the Natural History of Creation').
- Chambers, Robert W.** (1865-1933), novelist and illustrator, born Brooklyn, N. Y.; author of popular novels ('Cardigan'; 'The Red Republic'; 'The Mald-at-Arms'; 'The Sun Hawk').
- Chambers, Sir William** (1726-96), English architect of classical practice; works include grounds and buildings at Kew; architect to King George III; author of 'Treatise on the Decorative Part of Civil Architecture', a standard work.
- Chambersburg, Pa.**, city 46 mi. s.w. of Harrisburg, in Cumberland Valley; pop. 17,212; woolen goods, hydraulic hammers, hosiery; Wilson College; Penn Hall Junior College and Preparatory School; burned by Confederates (1864): maps P-132-3, C-334
- Chambéry** (*shān-bā-r'*), France, historic town 55 mi. s.e. of Lyons; pop. 26,641; capital of Savoie: map E-425
- Chambezi River**, in Northern Rhodesia, Africa, flows into Lake Bangweulu; map B-109
- Chambon Dam**, in France, on Romanche River, picture D-11b. See also in *Index Dam, table*
- Chambray** (*shān-brā'*), a lightweight cotton cloth resembling gingham, usually having dyed warp and white filling.
- Chameleon** (*kā-mē-lē-ūn*), a type of lizard C-183-4, picture C-184
- eye C-183, picture E-461**
- Chamlade** (*shā-mē-nad'*), Cécile Louise Stéphanie (1861-1944), French pianist and composer, for some time resident of England; composed orchestral music, songs, and ballets, but is best known for melodious piano pieces ('The Flatterer'; 'Scarf Dance').
- Chamiso** (*chā-mē-sō*), or chamise, a small evergreen shrub (*Adenostoma fasciculatum*) of the rose family with clusters of small white flowers; it covers large areas, called chamisal zones, on the foothills west of the Sierra Nevada.
- Chamisso** (*shā-mē-sō*), Adelbert von (1781-1836), German naturalist and writer, of French origin; wrote popular lyrics and ballads ('Peter Schlemihl', prose tale).
- Chamois** (*shām'i*), a fleet goatlike antelope C-184
- altitude range, picture Z-362
- Chamois**, a type of leather L-150
- chamoising or shammying L-148
- gloves G-126
- Chamomile** (*kām'ō-mīl*), or camomile, common name of group of herbs forming the genus *Anthemis* of the family Compositae. Garden chamomile (*Anthemis nobilis*) is cultivated for various medicinal uses; flowers and leaves have a sweet aromatic odor and bitter taste.
- Chamomille**, false. See in *Index Boltonia*
- Chamonix** (*shā-mō-nē'*), beautiful valley and village in s.e. France, at foot of Mont Blanc, map S-475, picture E-418
- Chamorro**, natives of Guam G-221
- Champagne** (*shān-pān'*), French *shūn-pān'yū*, former province in n.e. France; great fief in Middle Ages; chief city, Troyes; celebrated for wines: map F-270
- World War I battle** (1915) W-223
- Champagne**, a sparkling white wine; name from Champagne province, France, its place of origin
- Pinot Blanc** grape G-155
- red Catawba** grape G-155
- Champaign, Ill.**, city 48 mi. s.e. of Bloomington; pop. 39,563; trade center for agricultural region; portable bleachers, trailers, machinery, gloves; twin town of Urbana; contains part of the University of Illinois; Chanute Field, U. S. Air Force Technical School, nearby: maps I-36, U-253
- Champ-de-Mars** (*shān dū mōrā'*), park in Paris on Seine River; originally used for military drills: P-83b, map P-83a
- Champlon, Richard** (1743-91), potter of Bristol, England P-398
- Champion**, in dog shows D-120, picture D-117
- Champion**, in sports boxing B-271-2, table B-272
- Champion's Hill**, battle of, fought May 16, 1863, in Mississippi, e. of Vicksburg; Federals under Grant defeated Confederates under Pemberton.
- Champlain, Samuel de** (1567-1635), French explorer C-184-5, C-95a-b, picture C-95b
- at Quebec, color picture Q-10
- explorations C-184-5; Great Lakes G-185; Maine coast M-56, N-30; Saint John River N-138b; St. Lawrence River S-19
- statue, picture S-19
- Champlain, Lake**, between Vermont and New York, discovered by Samuel de Champlain; length 110 mi.; width  $\frac{1}{4}$  to 13 mi.: maps V-457, N-196, U-265
- colonial forts V-461
- Champlain, Lake**, battle of (1614) W-14
- Champlain Canal**, part of New York State Barge Canal N-211, map C-108
- Champlevé** (*shāmp-lē-vā'*), enamel E-341-2
- Champollion** (*shān-pōl-yōn'*), Jean François (1790-1832), French scholar and Egyptologist deciphered Rosetta Stone E-286
- Champs-Élysées** (*shān-zā-lē-sā'*), famous boulevard in Paris, France P-83b, map P-83a
- Channak**, fortress, Asia Minor, picture D-17
- Chancellor, Richard** (died 1556), English navigator; explored White Sea, went overland to Moscow; trade negotiations with Russia forerunner of Muscovy Company: table P-349. See also in *Index Muscovy Company*; Willoughby, Sir Hugh
- Chancellor**, in Roman times meant porter or doorkeeper; in modern times used for various officers of government, e.g., British lord high chancellor, the highest judicial officer of the crown; German chancellor, the premier; in U. S. sometimes used for president of a university.
- Chancellor, Lord Hlgb.** in British cabinet C-4
- Chancellor of the Exchequer**. See in *Index Exchequer*, Chancellor of the
- Chancellorsville**, battle of (May 2 and 3, 1863) at Chancellorsville, Va. C-185, C-335, map C-335
- Stonewall Jackson** killed J-289
- Chan'cery**, court of equity in England C-501
- Chaucery**, Papal P-66
- Chanchan** (*chāu-chōn'*), or Gran Chimú (*grōn chē-mū'*), ruined city, n.w. Peru; was capital of the ancient Yuncas: picture A-301

Key: cōpe, āt, fōr, fāst, what, fāll; mē, yēt, tēra, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, būt, rjde, fūll, būrn; out;





- Chapultepec, Act of (1945) L-122, M-366
- Char, or charr, a type of trout T-193
- Characins, form a family of fishes, the *Characidae*; found in tropical America and Africa; most species have teeth and are covered with scales; include the hatchet fish, head and tail-light, oblique pencil, small-headed characin, and tetra-color picture F-104-5
- Character development, *Reference Outline* P-159d-60. See also in *Index*
- Personality
- Characteristic, in logarithms L-296
- Charade (*sha-rád'*), a game C-186
- Charadriiformes (*la-rád-ri-i-fór-mí-z'*), an order of shore birds comprising oyster catchers, plovers, snipes, sandpipers, curlews, gulls, terns auks
- Charcoal C-186
- adsorbs gas C-385
- animal (bone black) C-186; colloidal action, picture C-385
- art medium D-139
- engine, use in F-314
- fuel, importance as F-314
- gas masks C-208, C-385
- gunpowder G-232-3
- smelting with L-132
- Charcot (*shar-lót'*). Jean Baptiste Etienne Auguste (1867-1976). French Antarctic explorer; son of Jean Martin Charcot; head of clinic, in department of medicine University of Paris; leader of scientific expeditions to the Antarctic, 1903-5 and 1908-10 was lost in a shipwreck near Iceland table F-349
- Charcot, Jean Martia (1825-93). French neurologist, born Paris; noted for work in nervous and mental diseases, also for experiments with hypnotism and mental suggestion; teacher of Sigmund Freud.
- Charcot (*shá-kót'*) Island, in Pacific Ocean in s.w. Antarctica 75° w., 70° s., near Alexander I Island, belongs to Falkland Islands Dependencies; discovered 1910 by Jean B.E.A. Charcot: maps A-259, W-204
- Chard, a beet with edible top B-102 when and how to plant, table G-19
- Chardin (*shar-dán'*). Jean Baptiste Siméon (1699-1779) French painter, born Paris P-29b
- 'Blowing Bubbles' P-29b, color picture P-29b
- Chardin, Père Teilhard de. See in *Index* Teilhard de Chardin
- Chardonnet (*char-dô-né'*). Hilaire de, Count (1840-1924). French chemist, pupil of Pasteur and inventor of the nitrate process of making rayon: R-79, 81
- Charente (*shá-ránt'*) mau, prehistoric man M-70
- Charenton-le-Pont (*shá-rañ-tôn'-lá-pôn'*). France, town 1 mi. s.e. of Paris walls, on Marne River; pop. 20,891; large insane asylum known as Charenton situated at neighboring Saint-Maurice; "Charenton" in French is used like "Bedlam" in English.
- Charge, in heraldry H-341
- Charge, electric E-294-7, 301, 305-6. See also in *Index* Electric charge
- Chargé d'affaires (*shár-zhá' dá-fér'*), diplomatic representative D-93
- Charged water, also carbonated water, or soda water W-64
- 'Charge of the Light Brigade. The,' poem by Tennyson honoring English brigade of light cavalry of about 600 men who unflinchingly obeyed an erroneous command and, at great disadvantage, made an heroic but futile charge against the Russians at the battle of Balaklava in the Crimean War: C-514, T-73
- Charging, of storage batteries B-81
- Charing (*chér'ing*) Cross, in London L-300, map L-301
- Chariot, ancient two- or four-wheeled vehicle used in war, in processions, and in racing
- Egyptian W-120; in warfare W-8
- Roman W-120, pictures E-445, R-180
- Charioteer, or Auriga, a constellation, charts S-373, 379-80
- Charis (*ká'ris*) in Greek mythology one of the three Graces, another name for Aglaia
- Charities. See in *Index* Foundations and charities
- Chariton River, tributary of the Missouri in s. Iowa and Missouri; 250 mi. maps I-214-15, M-318
- Charity F-248-51, pictures F-249. See also in *Index* Foundations and charities, Social service
- Charity, Sisters of. See in *Index* Sisters of Charity
- Charlemagne (*shár'lé-mán'*) (742?-814) C-186-8, E-432, pictures C-187-8, M-237
- builds canals C-108a
- character C-187
- conquers Lombards L-297
- court and tomb at Aachen A-1
- education encouraged by C-188
- empire C-167, map C-187; adds Austria to empire A-496; breakup F-268, C-188, M-238
- Hamburg founded H-251-2
- legends R-179, R-178
- Saxons conquered by S-53
- signature, picture C-186
- statue, picture G-96
- Charleroi (*shar-húr-rá'*). Belgium, railroad and iron-mining center 30 mi. s. of Brussels, pop. 25,894; map B-111
- World War I W-220
- Charleroi (*chár-lé-roí'*). Pa., borough, 22 mi. s. of Pittsburgh on Monongahela River; coal; glass, steel, and iron products; pop. 9872; map P-132
- Charles, Saint (called "le Bon," the Good, and "The Dane") (1084?-1127), count of Flanders, born Denmark; beloved because of his bounty and his holy life.
- Charles I (1687-1922), emperor of Austria-Hungary 1916-18, succeeding Francis Joseph; abdicated on collapse of Central Powers; attempted to regain Hungarian throne 1921; exiled to Madeira.
- Charles I, Holy Roman emperor. See in *Index* Charlemagne
- Charles II, the Bald (823-877), Holy Roman emperor (king of France as Charles I) C-189, C-192
- Charles III, the Fat (839-868), Holy Roman emperor (king of France as Charles II) C-189, C-192
- Charles IV (1316-78), Holy Roman emperor C-189
- Golden Bull H-409, G-97
- Charles V (1500-1556), Holy Roman emperor (king of Spain as Charles I) C-189-90, A-496, S-321, pictures C-189
- exploration: Cortez C-489; Florida F-149-50; Magellan M-31-3
- Hapsburg descent H-262
- provides suit of armor for dog, picture A-376
- Reformation R-91-3, pictures R-91-2; Luther L-352
- Titan T-138
- Wars with France F-275
- Ximenes regent X-328
- Charles VI (1685-1740), Holy Roman emperor C-190
- Pragmatic Sanction A-497, M-96
- Charles VII (1697-1745), Holy Roman emperor C-190
- Charles I (1600-1649), king of England C-190-1, E-366, pictures C-191, E-368, H-279
- Cromwell C-516, 517
- escaped to Isle of Wight W-133
- habeas corpus suspended H-239
- Hampden, John H-254
- Harvey, William H-280, picture H-279
- Maryland charter granted M-110
- Milton upholds execution M-258
- Parliament, war with C-190-1
- Puritans C-190, P-443, A-206, picture E-368
- Scotland rebels S-65
- Star Chamber abolished S-382
- Van Dyck at court V-438
- Charles II (1630-85), king of England C-191-2, E-367, picture C-192
- American colonial grants: Carolina S-284, N-278; Connecticut C-449; Delaware D-60; Pennsylvania P-120
- Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia B-11
- Bombay acquired B-225
- Bunyan imprisoned by B-354-5
- Channel Island home, picture C-185
- coffeehouses C-376
- Cromwell C-192, C-517
- Habascus Corpus Act passed H-239-40
- Hudson's Bay Co. F-322-3, H-438
- new beverages C-289
- Restoration literature D-133
- Scotland S-65
- Virginia colonists' loyalty V-489
- Charles I, the Bald (823-877), king of France (Holy Roman emperor as Charles II) C-192, C-189
- Charles II, the Fat (839-868), king of France (Holy Roman emperor as Charles III) C-192, C-189
- Charles III, the Simple (879-929), king of France
- treaty with Northmen N-243
- Charles IV, the Fair (1294-1328), king of France, last Capetian king, youngest son of Philip IV; succeeded brother Philip V as king of France and Navarre; reigned 1322-26.
- Charles V, the Wise (1337-80), king of France C-192, II-446
- Charles VI (1368-1422), king of France C-192-3, H-446
- Charles VII (1403-61), king of France C-193-4, H-446
- Joan of Arc J-355-6
- Charles VIII (1470-98), king of France C-194
- built Church of the Trinity, Rome, picture R-193
- Invasion of Italy C-194, E-432, S-52
- Charles IX (1550-74), king of France C-194
- Catherine de' Medici M-163
- massacre of St. Bartholomew C-382, C-194, H-442
- Charles X (1757-1856), king of France C-194, picture C-194
- Lafayette helps depose L-86
- Charles I, or Carol I (1839-1914), king of Rumania; elected prince 1866, crowned first king 1881; married Elizabeth of Wied whose pen name was Carmen Sylva.
- Charles I, king of Spain. See in *Index* Charles V. Holy Roman emperor
- Charles II (1661-1700), king of Spain, last of line of Spanish Hapsburgs A-497
- Charles (Carlos) III (1716-88), king of Spain; son of Philip V and Elizabeth Farnese; succeeded his brother Ferdinand VI (1759) king of Two Sicilies S-176; porcelain factory started P-398
- Charles IV (1748-1819), king of Spain 1788-1808; son of Charles III; dominated by his queen, Maria Louisa, and his chief minister, Manuel de Godoy.
- Charles IX (1550-1611), king of Sweden 1604-11, son of Gustavus I. and father of Gustavus Adolphus; aided Protestantism; founded University of Gothenburg: S-465

Key: cape, át, far, fast, what, fall; mé, yét, fêrn, thére; ice, bú, rów, won, fór, nó, dg; cárc, bú, ryde, fyll, burn; out;



- tinguished for their serenity and poise: 'A Goodly Heritage' and 'Goodly Company' are autobiographical.
- Chase, Richard (born 1904) folklorist and authority on English-American dances born Huntsville, Ala.; made home in Charlottesville, Va. His books for children are collections of old stories games etc. 'Jack Tales' 'Grandfather Tales' 'Hullabaloo and Other Singing Folk Games' 'Wicked John and the Devil'.
- Chase, Salmon P. (1808-73), statesman born Cornish N. H.; leading Free-Soiler, early known as "attorney general of fugitive slaves"; secretary of treasury (under Lincoln); as chief justice of U. S. Supreme Court (1864-73) presided at impeachment trial of President Johnson.
- in Lincoln Cabinet, picture L-249 portrait on \$10 000 bill table M-339
- Chase, Samuel (1741-1811), jurist, born Somerset County Md., signer of Declaration of Independence, associate justice U. S. Supreme Court, impeached for partisanship but not convicted; case important in history of American judiciary.
- signature reproduced D-37
- Chase, Stuart (born 1888), economist and writer born Somersworth, N. H.; on staff of Federal Trade Commission and later of Labor Bureau ('The Economy of Abundance', 'Rich Land Poor Land', 'Tomorrow's Trade', 'The Proper Study of Mankind').
- Chase, William Merritt (1849-1916), landscape portrait still life genre painter, born Williamsburg Franklin County, Ind. ('Alice', 'Flying Clouds', portrait of James Abbott McNeill Whistler); successful teacher.
- Chase, in printing. See in Index Form
- Chasing, a type of engraving in metalwork E-337, picture S-187
- Chasins, Abram (born 1903), pianist and composer, born New York City; debut soloist with Philadelphia Orchestra, playing own composition, 1929; taught at Curtis Institute 1926-35 at Berkshire Music Center 1940 ('Concerto in F Minor', 'Parade', 'Three Chinese Pieces').
- Chassis (châssis, French *shâ-sê*), automobile, pictures A-509-10
- Chat, a warbler W-7
- Château (shâ-tô'), French term for castle or manor house C-134-5
- famous French châteaux F-264; Chenonceaux, picture F-271
- Chateaubriand (shâ-tô-brê-ân'), François René, vicomte de (1768-1848), French author and statesman (ambassador to London, Berlin, Rome, foreign minister); opposed excesses of French Revolution; exquisite prose stylist; his 'Atala' (later a part of 'The Genius of Christianity') was one of the works that marked beginning of romantic movement in French literature.
- "Chateau Clique," political clique in Canada Q-8
- Papineau and P-71
- Château d'If (dêf'), island near Marseilles, France, made famous by Dumas' 'Count of Monte Cristo'; M-102
- Châteaudun (shâ-tô-dün'), France, town near Loire River 70 mi. s.w. of Paris; pop. 7309; old castle of counts of Dunois; burned by Germans in Franco-Prussian War 1870.
- Château Frontenac (frôn-tê-nâk, French frôn-tâ-nâk'), hotel in Quebec Q-10, picture Q-9
- Château Gaillard (gâ-yâr'), famous castle in Normandy, 50 mi. n.w. of Paris on Seine River, now in ruins R-150, picture N-243
- Château-Thierry (tyê-rê'), French town 47 mi. e. of Paris; pop. 7283; C-198, W-229, 230, maps W-217, E-425
- monument, picture F-267
- Chatel, Henry Louis Le. See in Index Le Chatelier, Henry Louis
- Chatham (chât'am), William Pitt, first earl of (1708-78), British statesman C-198
- American colonial policy C-198, R-125
- French and Indian War F-285, W-181
- Seven Years' War S-107
- Chatham, England seaport 25 mi. s.e. of London on Medbury River, adjoining Rochester, pop. 46,940; naval arsenal, shipbuilding, map B-325
- Chatham, New Brunswick, port on Miramichi River 35 mi. above Gulf of St. Lawrence in agricultural district, lumber, pulp, fish; pop. 5233; maps C-73, 69
- Chatham, Ontario, farming, fruit-growing and manufacturing center on Thames River 15 mi. e. of Detroit, Mich.; pop. 21,218; canned goods, automobiles, machinery, flour, textiles maps C-72, inset C-68
- Chatham Islands, group of islands 536 mi. e. of New Zealand to which they belong; 372 sq. mi.; pop. 471; sheep grazing; N-227, map P-17
- Châtillon-sur-Seine (shâ-tê-yôn'sür-sên) France, town 125 mi. s.e. of Paris on Seine River; pop. 3860; unsuccessful congress of Napoleon with Allies (1814).
- 'Châtiments', Les' (lâ chât-tê-mân'), lyrical satire by Victor Hugo H-441
- Chatrian, Louis Gratien Charles Alexandre. See in Index Erckmann-Chatrian
- Chattahoochee River, in Alabama and Georgia; 500 mi.; unites with Flint to form Apalachicola; maps A-114, 126-7, G-70, U-274
- Chattanooga, Tenn., railroad and industrial city in s.e. on Tennessee River; pop. 131,041; C-198-9, maps T-67, U-253, C-199, picture T-57
- bridge. See in Index Bridge, table cable railway, picture C-198
- Chattanooga, battle of (Nov. 24-25, 1863) C-199, C-336, map C-199
- Chattanooga, University of, at Chattanooga, Tenn.; Methodist; founded 1886; liberal arts, applied arts, fine arts; graduate studies.
- Chattel, in law. See in Index Law, table of legal terms
- Chattel mortgage B-52
- Chatterji (chât-têr-jê), Bankim Chandra (1838-94), Indian novelist of Bengal I-66
- Chatterton, Ruth (born 1893), actress, born New York City; stage debut 1909; entered motion pictures 1928; stage plays ('Daddy Long Legs', 'Mary Rose', 'The Changelings'); motion pictures ('The Royal Divorce', 'Dodsworth').
- Chatterton, Thomas (1752-70), English poet and literary forger, precocious genius; wrote 'Rowley Poems', which he claimed were old manuscripts of 15th century; starving in a London garret, poisoned himself.
- Chaucer (chô'sêr), Geoffrey (1340?-1400), English poet C-200-4, pictures C-200-1
- 'Canterbury Tales' C-203-4; quoted E-376
- chief works and editions C-202, 204; Kelmscott Press edition, picture B-238
- description of squire, quoted K-56
- language E-374, C-202
- placename P-332
- place in English literature E-376, C-200
- tomb in Westminster Abbey C-202, picture L-304
- Chaudet (shô-dê'), Antoine Denis (1763-1810), French sculptor and painter; favorite of Napoleon I; follower of Canova; combined classic form with romanticism; excelled in graceful subjects.
- Chaudière (shô-d-yêr') Falls, of Ottawa River O-428
- Chauline (shô-lyân'), Guy de (died 1380?), French surgeon; doctor to three popes at Avignon; his 'Great Surgery' was manual for physicians for three centuries.
- Chaulmoogra oil, fixed oil obtained from fruit of chaulmoogra tree of East Indies; has been used in treatment of leprosy.
- Chaumot (shô-môn-ô'), Pierre Joseph (1611-93), Jesuit missionary, born France; labored among Huron Indians in Canada for 40 years (1639-79), with brief period among Iroquois in upper New York (1655-58).
- Chaumont (shô-môn'), France, manufacturing town 120 mi. s.e. Paris; pop. 15,068; treaty of Allies against Napoleon 1814; general headquarters A.E.F. in World War I; map E-425
- Chauncey, Isaac (1772-1840), American commodore P-153
- Chausson (shô-sôn'), Ernest (1855-99), composer, born Paris, France; pupil of Massenet and César Franck ('Le Roi Arthur' and 'Hélène', operas; 'Poème', for violin and orchestra).
- Chautauqua (shâ-tô-tû:ga), N.Y., village on Lake Chautauqua, about 53 mi. s.w. of Buffalo; pop. 500; C-205, map N-204
- Chautauqua, Lake, in w. New York; 8 mi. from Lake Erie; 18 mi. long; maps N-196, 204
- Chautauqua Institution, educational organization C-205
- Chautauqua muckellunge P-256
- Chautauqua University C-205
- Chautemps (shô-tân'), Camille (born 1885), French statesman, radical socialist leader, born Paris, France; premier 1930, 1933-34, 1937-38; in U. S. after 1940.
- Chauveau, Pierre Joseph Olivier (1820-90), Canadian statesman, lawyer, and author, born Quebec; prime minister of Quebec 1867-73; author of poems, novels, and essays.
- Chauvinism (shô-vîn-izm), exaggerated patriotism or "jingoism"; derived from name of a French soldier, Nicholas Chauvin, who was passionately devoted to Napoleon.
- Chaux de Fonds (shô dû fôn), La, Switzerland, town 30 mi. n.w. of Bern in Jura Valley; pop. 33,154; watches and clocks; map S-475
- Chavannes, Pavis de, French painter. See in Index Pavis de Chavannes
- Chavez (châ-vêz), Carlos (born 1899), Mexican composer and conductor, first in his country to attain wide recognition; founder and director Symphony Orchestra of Mexico 1928-49; director National Conservatory of Music; a modernist, he expresses vital national spirit ('H. P.', 'Sinfonia India'); M-204
- Chayote (cha-yô-tê'), also called vegetable pear, a vine belonging to the gourd and melon family; also its edible pear-shaped fruits, white or

Key: câpe, âl, fâr, fâst, what, fêll; mē, yêl, fêrn, thêre; ice, bit; rôw, wôn, tôr, nôl, dō; cûre, bût, ryde, fûll, bûrn; out;



- salts A-10, S-29, 31, *Reference-Out-line* C-223  
 soil S-228  
 solutions S-233-5, *diagrams* S-234  
 space travel, contribution to S-309  
 spectrum analysis S-331-4, A-440, 442, *diagrams* S-331-2  
 stereochemistry T-21  
 symbols and equations C-211, I-205, 206, *table* C-211  
 valence C-215-16, A-460  
 water in chemical compounds W-60, 64  
 wood pulping processes P-67  
 X-ray spectra S-334, X-330
- Chemistry, Agricultural and Industrial, Bureau of, U. S. U-364**
- Chemnitz (kém'nits)**, Germany, industrial city 34 mi. s.w. of Dresden; pop. 250,188; renamed Karl-Marx-Stadt 1953 by East Germany's Communist government; *maps* G-88, E-424
- Chemotherapy**, treatment of internal diseases by means of chemical reagents which destroy the microorganisms that cause the disease without harming the body tissues  
*sulfa drugs* A-266-7, O-24d; *formulas, diagrams* O-424d
- Chemotromism (kê-mot'rô-pizm)**  
 insects I-160  
 plants P-296
- Chemulpo, Korea. See in Index**
- Chemurgy (kém'ûr-gi)**, branch of chemistry for developing new uses for farm products P-303-4
- Chenab (chê-nab')**, ancient Acesines, river of Kashmir and Punjab; 590 mi. long; flows s.w. into Sutlej River; K-18, *maps* I-54, I-127
- Chen Cheng (born 1900)**, Chinese general and statesman, born Cheliang; chief of staff 1946; governor of Formosa 1948; premier of Nationalist China from 1950.
- Cheng Ch'eng-kung. See in Index**
- Koxinga**
- Chengteli, Manchuria. See in Index**
- Jehol**
- Chengt'u (chêng-tg')**, or Chingtu, city in w. China on Min River; pop. 727,422; capital of province of Szechwan; agricultural and mining center; *maps* C-259, A-406
- Chénier (shân-yâ')**, André de (1762-94), French poet, one of greatest of 18th century; guillotined during the Reign of Terror for opposing excesses of the Convention.
- Chenille (shê-nê')**, a soft, tufted or fluffy yarn of cotton, wool, silk, or worsted, made by weaving four warp threads or crossing three warp threads about soft filling threads that are afterwards cut; also cloth made with chenille yarn for filling (from French for "caterpillar")  
 carpets R-252
- Chenuault, Claire Lee (born 1890)**, U. S. Army flier after 1917, born Texas; went to China 1937 to plan aerial defense; commanded American Volunteer Group (Flying Tigers) 1941; chief of U. S. Air Force in China 1942-45; author of "Way of a Fighter"
- Chenouéaux (shû-nôn-sô')**, Château de France *picture* P-271
- Chenopodiaceae. See in Index**
- Goose-foot family**
- Cheops (kê'ôps)**, Egyptian king of 4th dynasty. *See in Index*
- Khufu**
- Chephren. See in Index**
- Khafre**
- Cheque. See in Index**
- Check**
- Cher Ami**, name of an American homing pigeon in World War I P-254
- Cherbourg (shêr-bor')**, France, fortified port on English Channel; pop. 34,034; immense breakwater; landing place for largest liners; naval hospital; shipbuilding, fishing; *maps* F-259, E-425
- Cheribon, Java, port city on n. coast; pop. about 54,000; map E-202**
- Dutch-Indonesian agreement concluded near here I-127**
- Cherimoya**, also cherimoyer. *See in Index*
- Custard apple**
- Chernovtsy (chêr-nôf'tsi)**, German Czernowitz (chêr-nô-rîts'), Rumanian Cernăuți (chêr-na-uts'), Russia, industrial city on Prut River in s.w. Ukrainian S.S.R.; pop. 78,825, formerly capital of Bucovina in n. Rumania; ceded by Rumania to Russia, 1940; *maps* E-417, R-267
- Chernozem (chêr-nô-cêm)**, black soil G-169, S-231, *map* S-230, *picture* S-229
- Cherokee**, Indian tribe of Iroquoian stock; one of the Five Civilized Tribes; originally lived in mountain region of Virginia, the Carolinas, Georgia, Alabama and Tennessee; *map* I-106f, *table* I-107
- alphabet invented S-101**
- Georgia (I-81)**  
 moved to Indian Territory C-148, O-375
- Samuel Houston and II-434**
- Tennessee T-59, C-199**
- Trail of Tears. See in Index**
- Trail of Tears**
- Cherokee, Okla., trade center for agricultural region. 40 mi. n.w. of Enid; pop. 2635; salt plains, now a federal wildlife refuge, nearby; map O-370**
- Cherokee rose R-232**
- state flower of Georgia, color picture S-384a**
- Cherranpuri (chêr-râ-pun'gê)**, India, village of Assam in Khasi Hills; heavy rainfall, usually more than 400 inches a year, sometimes 900 inches.
- Cher (shêr) River**, in central France, tributary to Loire; 200 mi. long; *map* F-259, *picture* F-271
- Cherry C-223a, F-306, color picture F-310**
- gunwood as imitation G-232**
- seeds distributed by birds and animals S-96**
- Tangsi, early ripening A-66**
- Cherry birch, another name for the sweet birch, so called because its bark resembles that of the black cherry F-155**
- Cherry Creek, river in Colorado D-73**
- dam. See in Index**
- Dam, table**
- Cherry laurel, an ornamental evergreen shrub (Prunus Laurocerasus) of the rose family; cherry-laurel water, of a flavor similar to bitter almonds, although poisonous, is used in medicine and sparingly in flavoring.**
- Cherry Valley, N. Y., village 52 mi. w. of Albany; pop. 760; massacre during Revolutionary War (Nov. 1778) by Indians under Joseph Brant aided by Tories and English; map N-205**
- Chersonesus (kêr-sô-uê'sûs)**, Greek word for peninsula, applied especially to Thracian Chersonesus (modern Gallipoli), Tauric Chersonesus (Crimea), and Cimbric Chersonesus (Jutland).
- Chert, rock R-169**
- Cherub (plural Cherubim)**, Hebrew name for a winged creature attendant upon the Deity; variously represented, in the vision of Ezekiel with four wings and four faces, those of a man, a lion, an ox, an eagle. The winged bulls of Babylon are also called Cherubim. In later Jewish and Christian literature the cherubim (or cherubs) are an order of angels, next below the seraphim; often represented by painters as winged infants.
- Chernbini (kâ-rô-bê'nê)**, Marin Luigi (1760-1842), Italian composer and author; "link between classic idealism and modern romanticism"; wrote operas, symphonies, requiems, marches, sonatas; his work on counterpoint still used.
- Chervil (chêr'vîl)**, a common name for two species of plants of the parsley family; both are used as vegetables; salad chervil (*Anthriscus cerefolium*) has curled leaves used like parsley; turnip-rooted chervil (*Chaerophyllum bulbosum*) has root used like carrot.
- Chervonetz (shêr-ôn-yét')**, gold monetary unit of Russia established 1922; historical value about \$5.15.
- 'Chesapeake', U. S. frigate, famous in War of 1812 W-11**
- Lawrence commands L-140**
- Chesapeake and Delaware Canal B-39, C-224, D-58, maps D-48, 53, C-108, *picture* M-120. *See also in Index***
- Canals, table**
- Chesapeake and Ohio Canal C-224, M-109, C-108b, picture M-120**
- part of National Capital Parks system N-20**
- Chesapeake Bay, inlet on e. coast of U. S. C-223a-4, M-108, maps M-110, 117, C-223b, *pictures* C-223a, M-120**
- oyster fisheries C-224, M-108, O-439**
- Chesapeake Bay Bridge, Maryland M-109, picture C-223a. *See also in Index***
- Bridge, table**
- Chesapeake Bay retriever, dog, table D-118**
- Cheshire (chêr'shêr)**, a n.w. county of England bordering on n. Wales and Irish Sea; 1019 sq. mi.; pop. 1,258,050; manufacturing, salt mining; county seat Chester; *map* E-347
- Cheshire Cat, a grinning cat in 'Alice's Adventures in Wonderland'; when leaving Alice's view it disappeared so gradually that the grin was the last part to vanish; suggested to the author, Lewis Carroll, by the saying "to grin like a Cheshire cat," a saying of unknown origin.**
- Cheshire cheese C-206**
- Cheshire Cheese, famous tavern in London, picture C-459**
- Chesnut, Charles Waddell (1858-1932)**, writer, born Cleveland, Ohio; first American Negro novelist ("The Conjure Woman" novel; 'Frederick Douglass', biography).
- Chess, a game C-224-6**
- Chest, furniture**
- colonial A-194, 200, picture A-211**
- Mohammedan, picture W-190**
- period types, pictures I-177, 179, 180, 184**
- tool chest, picture V-440**
- Chest, or thorax, the part of the body between neck and abdomen P-244, R-117, S-191, color pictures P-239-43, *diagram* L-351. *See also in Index***
- Thorax**
- nerves, picture N-113**
- Chester, George Randolph (1869-1924)**, author, born Ohio; wrote many popular stories which appeared in *Saturday Evening Post* ('Get-Rich-Quick Wallingford').
- Chester, England, picturesque old city 16 mi. s.e. of Liverpool on Dee River; pop. 48,229; industrial and railroad center; cheese market; map B-325, *picture* E-364**
- Chester, Pa., port city on Delaware River 14 mi. s.w. of Philadelphia; pop. 66,039; locomotive and railroad shops; oil refineries; shipbuilding; steel and steel products; paper, helicopters; important shipbuilding center during World Wars I and II; Pennsylvania Military College, Crozer Theological Seminary; settled by Swedes 1643; map, inset P-133**

Key: câpe, âl, fûr, fâst, what, fâll; mē, yēt, fêrn, thêre; îce, bît; rôw, wón, fôr, nôt, dō; cûre, bût, rîde, fûll, bûrn; out;



- Ill., a museum of anthropology, ethnology, geology, zoology, botany: map C-231b, picture C-235 excavations at Kish K-51 fish diorama, picture F-101 prehistoric man, color pictures M-67-8 whaling scene picture W-112 Chicago Park District, in Chicago, Ill. P-86c-d Chicago River C-231, map C-230, picture C-230 course reversed C-231a, C-109 Chicago Sanitary and Ship Canal, also called Chicago Drainage Canal C-109, C-231a, M-230, picture I-40. See also in Index Canals, table effect on Great Lakes G-184 Chichén Itzá (*ché-chán' é-tsa'*). Mexican, ancient ruined city in Yucatán has remarkable architectural and other remains of Mayan civilization. M-144, maps M-195, Y-345 pictures E-455, I-108f, M-143b, 144 Chicherin (*ché-chér'in*), or Tchitcherine, Georgiy Vasilievich (1872-1936), Russian statesman; banished 1906, returned 1917, commissioner for foreign affairs 1916-29. Chichester, England town 14 mi. n.e. of Portsmouth pop. 19,110; 12th-century cathedral, noted for double aisles, detached campanile, one time capital of kingdom of Sussex map B-325 Chichicastenango (*chí-ché-cás-tén-nán'gō*). Guatemala, highland Indian village; settled 1524 by refugees from Spanish conquerors, descendants of ruling Mayan tribe, the Quiché, wear sunburst embroidered on costume as symbol of royal blood; name means "place of the tree nettle", pop. 1622: G-222a Chickadee C-238, picture C-238, color picture B-186 feeding habits B-158 state bird, table B-158 titmouse family T-139 Chickahominy River, in s.e. Virginia, flows 75 mi. to James River Seven Days' battles C-334, M-5, map C-335 Smith's exploration S-201 Chickamauga (*chik-á-má'gá*), small river, rises in Georgia, flows n.e. into Tennessee River near Chattanooga, Tenn.; scene of Confederate victory under Bragg (Sept. 1863). Chickamauga, battle of C-336, T-120-1, maps C-334, C-199 Chickamauga and Chattanooga National Military Park, in Georgia and Tennessee; established 1890. Chickaree. See in Index Red squirrel Chickasaw, Indian tribe formerly of n. Mississippi and w. Tennessee; one of Five Civilized Tribes: map I-106f, table I-107 moved to Oklahoma O-375 Chickasaw Bluffs, on Yazoo River, n. of Vicksburg, Miss.; Confederates repulsed Federals under Sherman (December 1862). Chickasha, Okla., trade center of livestock and cotton region, 40 mi. s.w. of Oklahoma City; pop. 15,642; railroad shops, cottonseed oil; immense natural-gas field; Oklahoma College for Women: maps O-370, U-252 Chicken hawks, or hen hawks H-291, 292 Chicken pox, highly contagious disease, with skin eruptions and fever; seldom dangerous. Chickens P-402-3, pictures P-402-402b. See also in Index Poultry Chickens sanke S-208 Chickering, Jonas (1797-1853), piano manufacturer, born at Mason Village N.H.; founded one of first large piano manufactories in America P-249 Chick-pea P-100 Chickweed, herb of genus *Stellaria*, of pink family: white star-shaped flowers, smooth stalk, short narrow leaves; escaped from cultivation, and now a weed Chickweed, mouse-ear. See in Index Cerastium Chicle (*chik'í* or *chik'ic*). basis of chewing gum C-227, picture C-176 Chico (*chí'kō*). Calif. city 80 mi. n. of Sacramento; pop. 12,272, lumber products and matches almond processing, large natural park. Chico State College: map C-34 Chicopee, Mass., city 3 mi. n. of Springfield, on Connecticut River; pop. 49,211; one of largest rubber companies in U.S. tires tubes, sporting equipment cotton cloth; settled about 1673 map M-132 Chicory, or succory, a perennial plant (*Cichorium intybus*) of the composite family: native to Europe and Africa: roots and leaves used for salads: roasted roots used as coffee substitute or adulterant: common wild flower in North America, flowers bright blue; leaves lance-shaped, hairy also called cornflower; belongs to same genus as endive test for C-379 Chico State College, at Chico, Calif.; state institution; chartered 1887; opened 1889: arts and sciences; teacher training. Chicoutimi (*shé-ko-té-mé'*). Quebec, resort on Saguenay River 110 mi. n. of Quebec (city); pop. 23,216; pulp and lumber mills, tanneries, aluminum works: maps C-69, 73 Chidlaw, Benjamin Wiley (born 1900), U.S. Air Force officer, born Cleves, Ohio; commanding general of Air Materiel Command 1919-31, of Air Defense Command 1931-33, of Continental Air Defense Command 1934-35; became 4-star general 1931; retired 1935. Chief Justice, of U.S. Supreme Court C-500. For list of chief justices, see in Index Supreme Court salary, table U-357 Chief of naval operations, U.S. Navy U-362, N-89 Chief of staff, U.S. Air Force A-79, U-362 Chief of staff, U.S. Army A-383, U-361 Chief of staff, Joint U.S. Department of Defense C-361 Chiemsee, also Chiem (*chém'zā*), largest lake of Bavaria, Germany, in Alpine district, 42 mi. s.e. of Munich; 8½ by 6 mi.; G-89 Chieti (*kyé'té*), ancient Teate, Italy, picturesque capital of Chieti province, near Adriatic, 90 mi. n.e. of Rome; pop. 17,575: map E-425 Chiffon (*shi-jón* or *shif'ou*, French *shé-fón'*), thin gauze-like silk fabric (French for "rag"), term also used to indicate light weight and soft finish, as chiffon velvet, chiffon hose. Chiffey, Joseph B. (1883-1951), Australian political leader, newspaper publisher, born Bathurst, New South Wales; member Parliament 1929-31 and after 1940; Commonwealth treasurer 1941-45; prime minister 1945-49. Chigger, also chigoe, or Jigger, a red mite P-78 Chigger, also chigoe, or Jigger, a South American flea, picture P-78 Chignecto (*shí-gnék'tō*) Bay, inlet of Bay of Fundy N-138, map C-73 Chihli. See in Index Hopeh Chihuahua (*ché-tā'wā*), Mexico, state in n. bordering Texas; 94,822 sq. mi.; pop. 815,033; cap. Chihuahua; stock raising, mining (silver, gold, lead, zinc, copper, mercury, coal): map M-194 rainfall R-71 Chihuahua, Mexico, city 225 mi. s. of El Paso, Tex., in silver-mining and stock-raising district; capital of state of Chihuahua; pop. 86,962; makes textiles: maps M-189, 194 Chihuahua, a toy dog D-116c, color picture D-116b, table D-119 Chiklomp, Java. See in Index Tjilat-jap Chills, an inflammation of the feet (sometimes of the hands or other parts of body) caused by exposure to extreme cold or by rapid changes in temperature, accompanied by painful swelling, burning, itching. Child, Lydia Maria (1802-80), author and abolitionist, born Medford, Mass.; published first monthly for children in U.S. ('Appeal for that Class of Americans Called African'; 'Philothea'; 'Frugal Housewife'; 'Mother's Book'). Child, Richard Washburn (1881-1935), writer and diplomat, born Worcester, Mass.; edited *Collier's Weekly* 1919; U.S. ambassador Italy 1921-24; founded Council on Foreign Relations ('Fresh Waters'; 'A Diplomat Looks at Europe'; 'Vanishing Men'; 'Pitcher of Romance'). Child care baby care B-2-4, picture B-2, table B-3 diet B-3, F-211, chart F-211: milk M-250, 252-3, table M-252; vitamins V-494-8 hygiene H-300-7, B-2-4, pictures H-300-1, 307 physical and mental development C-239-48, B-4, pictures C-239-43, 245-8 taught in schools H-410a teeth T-35-6 training. See in Index Child training U.S. government publications B-4 Child development C-239-48, pictures C-239-43, 245-8 adolescence A-22-22b, pictures A-22-22b arts and education. See in Index Arts, subhead education and body control C-240a, b, pictures C-240b competition in leisure-time activities discouraged L-159 dolls D-121, picture D-122 education, basic at home E-238-41, pictures E-238, 240 emotion E-340-340b, pictures E-340-340b games G-8-8f, pictures G-8a-f independence C-245, 245a individual differences I-113-14, chart I-114 intellectual development C-242-3, M-142i-j: learning to read R-82-82c interests and activities C-242 learning ability, growth of L-143, pictures L-143, 144 maturity M-142i-1, pictures M-142i-1 parent-teacher associations P-80 physical growth C-239-40b, A-22, M-142i, charts C-240a: teeth T-34-5, pictures T-35; play, value of P-316 play P-315-20, pictures P-315-20 psychology P-427a, b, B-4, Reference Outline P-429 reflexes R-89-90 repressions in early childhood P-425 social experiences C-240d-1 talking C-240b-c toys T-160-160d, pictures T-160-160d training. See in Index Child training

Key: cape, at, fār, fāst, whāt, fāll; mā, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cāre, bāt, rīde, fūll, hārn; out;

## CHILDE

- vacation activities V 421-32 pic  
lures V 421-31 Reference D films  
V 424 32  
walking C 240b
- Child or Child in age of chivalry a  
youth of gentle birth sometimes  
(especially in old ballads) a title  
of distinction
- Child Harolla Pilgrimage a nar  
rative poem by Byron describes  
the impressions of a world weary  
youth during his wanderings  
makes Byron famous B 373
- Childress See in Index Innocents  
Day
- Child Roland in an old Scottish b l  
had a son of King Arthur Fairies  
carried his sister Iliad Ellen to  
Fifland Childre Italian i the  
dark tower came and rescued her
- Child Health Day (May 1) F 56
- Child labor C 249 U 387  
Arkansas A 371  
China C 269 272  
England C 249 U 133  
United States C 249
- Child Labor Day F 57
- Child martyr ay P 427a Reference  
Orlins F 429 See also in Index  
psychology
- Childography P 429
- Children See also in Index Ad les  
rence Baby care Child care  
Child development Child labor  
Child training Finkler Hoby  
Libraries at schools children and  
children a home libraries Litera  
ture for children Landings Story  
telling Vacation activities  
Africanian pict res B 529  
Africa C 434b pictures C 304  
C 434 435a 436  
Algeria pict re A 165  
American Colonies A 164 pictures  
A 165b 205-6  
Australia pictures A 482  
Aztec A 544  
Dormen pict lures D 255  
Bulgaria pictures B 349  
Burma pict re B 881  
Canada picture C 91  
Chile pictures C 284 285  
China C 287 a pictures C 284 285  
287 288 378  
Colombia pict re C 588  
Congo D 14 14a pictures A 28b  
D 14b  
Coulur pict re L 110  
Egypt E 275-6 pictures F 272 4  
Fotland I 358  
E kilm F 398 pict lures D 863 395  
397 C 354 P 142a  
Fin pla pict re F 401  
family relationships F 18-18 pic  
lures F 18 1a  
farm F 21-30b  
boundaries and charities F 248  
250 251 pictures F 249  
Korea G 8-9 pictures G 8a-  
Germany C 95 pict res B 85 G 81  
84 Nazi training C 99  
Guatemala pict res G 220 e 223  
Kypyr grl pict re G 239  
H kerry pict re H 449  
India a pict res I 82 89  
Indian Ameri an I 95 e A 258 8  
pict res I 80 93 95 302  
Italy I 264 75 pictures I 283 265  
Japan J 301 303 5 pict res J 299  
301 302-4 308 311  
juvenile courts J 368  
juvenile delinquency chief causes of  
A 22b  
juvenile organizations J 368a b pic  
lures J 368a-b  
Korea picture K 64b  
Lapp L 101-2 pict res L 10a P 142c  
Mexico M 197-5 pict res M 187 192  
199 199 203 P 142c  
Netherlands pict re I 142c  
New Zealand pict re N 252b  
Norway N 303 pictures N 300 308
- Philippine Islands P 197 5 pict res  
I 196 197  
play I 213 20 pictures P 313 99  
Puert Rico pict res P 432 484  
I uenit training P 379 4  
Spain pict res P 313 312 320  
Spain B 329 9 picture B 399  
Sweden S 464 pict res S 484  
Switzerland S 476 pictures S 479  
480  
Turkey pictures T 218 217  
Virgin Islands picture V 95  
Yugoslavia picture B 25
- Childre a looks See in Index Litera  
ture for children
- Children's Bureau Federal Security  
Agency I 9 U 187 T 4  
Children's court J 889  
Children's in Cross B C 522  
Children's Day F 59  
Children's Fund of Michigan incorpo  
rated 1925 by gift of \$7,000,000  
from James Couzens to promote  
child welfare especially in Michi  
gan
- Children's Hour The poem by Long  
fellow L 310  
Children's Literature See in Index Lit  
erature for children
- Children's organizations See in Index  
Youth organizations
- Children's rooms of public libraries  
Childre L-193  
opportunities in L 208  
Childre George William (1843-94)  
publisher and philanthropist born  
Baltimore purchased Philadelphia  
Pict re Ledger which he developed  
into influential journal made many  
public gifts and educated about 900  
boys and girls
- Child a Garden of Verses A by Robert  
Louis Stevenson S 393  
Child's own library L 207-17  
Child Study Association of America  
Incorporated organized 1949 to  
study problems of childhood and  
to promote happier family rela  
tionships publishes quarterly mag  
azine Child Study headquarters  
New York City L 887
- Literary awards L 887
- Child training C 245 5 See also in  
Index Behavior human Education  
adolescence A 22 9b pict res  
A 22 9b  
also C 245 See in Index  
Arts and education and  
Arts and education and  
Arts A 444  
habits B 2 4  
biography P 425 B 4  
Boy Scouts D 273 9 pict res D 273-  
7  
Camp Fire Girls C 54 5 pictures  
C 54-5  
China C 287 9  
citizenship C 319-3195 320 C 247  
pictures C 318 19c  
competition in leisure time activities  
discouraged L-159  
convocation C 458-61  
discipline C 246-7  
doles D 121 picture D 122  
education home at home E 235-41  
pict lures E 245 249  
emotion E 340-340b pictures E 340-  
340b  
fables F 1 3  
family relationships F 16-18 class a  
17 pictures F 16-18b class a  
pictures E 232 good manners  
pictures E 232 250b pictures  
E 48 cubs F 252 250b pictures  
F 252 250b  
Gates G 8-9 pictures G 2a-f  
gentleness E 404  
girl Scouts contribution G 113-15  
Gri Scouts pict res G 113 14  
Greece e A 444  
habits H 240 Infancy B 2
- handwriting H 258  
hygiene H 300 7 pictures H 300 1  
307 d e F 211 e leri F 211 fresh  
air H 304 teeth T 35 6  
Independence C 245a  
Indians American I 95-6  
Ind individual differences I 113-14 chart  
I 114  
Intelligence testing I 170-5  
kindergartens and nursery schools  
K 43-4 pict res K 41-3  
kindness E 404 animals P 162-6  
pict res P 182 6 how to attract  
and study birds B 187 95  
language arts L 100-1001 pict res  
L 100a-d  
learning L 143-8 pictures L 143  
144  
leisure time activities L 159 160  
161  
libraries for children L 192-4  
child's own library L 207 17  
literature for children L 289 76 pic  
tures L 263 271 278 5  
love h d need for C 249 245b  
manners or etiquette E 404-11 pic  
tures E 408 9  
memory training B 170 L 145-6  
mental defects M 172 3 babies B 4  
mental hygiene M 172 3  
Mencius' method B 379  
nature study N 44-99 pict res  
N 45 87 97 picture N 44 Refer  
ence Orlins N 8a-88b  
parent teacher associations P 80  
personality P 158b 5 also in Index  
Child development  
play value of P 816  
phys cal training P 237 8  
play P 318 20 pictures P 315 20  
psychology P 427a 6 Reference  
Orlins F 429  
read effect on character F 51  
reading R 62 4 pict res I 9 32a  
c-d 44-44a a children's world of  
books L 283 76  
recreation C 247-8 leisure time ac  
tivities L-159 160 161  
Pousaas influence on R 286  
Puas A R 273-4  
safely education S 4  
security child's need for C 245b  
roulins lustre C 348  
self-confidence C 245b-4 traits that  
help C 247  
self control W 185 D 404  
stories I 25 9 404-5  
study methods S 435 4  
television effect on R 51 T 55  
thrill T 125 8 picture T 125  
toys T 160 1601 pictures T 160-  
160d  
vacation activities V 421-32 pic  
tures V 421 31 Reference Orlins  
V 424-32  
vocations See in Index Vocations
- Child writers  
American Legion activities A 223  
Children's Bureau U S U 887  
Health Department H 310  
juvenile courts J 398  
maternal pensions P 141  
parent teacher associations P 80  
psychiatry and crime P 419  
reform schools P 415  
reform settlements P 418 A 17 19  
pictures A 17 218a  
Society for the Prevention of Cruelty  
to Children H 443  
work of women's clubs W 183  
Chile (child) e republic on w coast  
of South America "88396 sq mi  
pop 5 930 899 cap Santiago  
C 249 55 maps C 250 S 252 3 pic  
tures C 251-6 Reference Outline  
S 279-80  
agriculture C 252 253  
Andean Mountain C 250 A 244-5  
Aconcagua C 10 picture A 10  
animals poudu D 46  
art and music C 256  
child life pictures C 254 255
- u=French s German u gem go laln, Aen a=French nasal (jeau) sh=French j (s in azure) x=German cultural ch



- cities C-254-5, *list* C-249  
Santiago S-436  
Valparaiso V-435  
climate C-251-4, S-258, 259: rain-  
fall C-251, 252, 253, 254  
commerce C-254. *See also in Index*  
Trade, *table*  
earthquake E-197  
Easter Island E-200  
education C-256  
flag F-138, *color picture* F-136  
government C-256  
history C-256, L-114: Incas I-50;  
Argentina boundary dispute A-337,  
*picture* A-295; Tacna-Arica  
P-164-5; Bernardo O'Higgins  
O-346; San Martín aids liberation  
S-43  
illiteracy C-256  
Independence Day F-59  
literature L-126, 124  
manufactures C-253, V-435  
minerals C-249, 251, 252, 253: copper  
C-252, C-473, 474, M-265; nitrates  
C-251, F-55, N-241, *picture* C-253  
national song N-43  
natural features C-249-50, S-258:  
drowned coast I-5  
Patagonia P-96  
people C-251, 252, 253, 254, 255-6,  
*pictures* C-254, 255  
products C-251-4, *list* C-249  
relationships in continent *maps*  
S-252-3, 255-7, *photograph* S-246  
shelter C-253, *picture* C-254  
sports C-255  
transportation C-254  
Vale of (Central Valley) C-250,  
252, S-270  
vegetation *map* S-255  
woman suffrage C-256  
Chilean Archipelago, group of islands  
off the sw coast of Chile *map*  
S-256  
Chile saltpeter, or sodium nitrate. *See*  
*in Index* Saltpeter  
Chilkat (chil'kát), a Tlingit Indian  
tribe at the head of Lynn Canal,  
Alaska; noted for fine blankets.  
Chilkat Pass, in se Alaska about  
50 mi n.w. of Skagway, important  
route to Yukon during gold rush in  
1890's. *map* A-135  
Chilkoot Pass, in se Alaska 60 mi.  
n.w. of Juneau used by gold seek-  
ers in rush of 1896-98; superseded  
by railroad through White Pass.  
Chillán (chē-nān'), commercial city  
in central Chile 50 mi. n.e. of Con-  
cepción; pop. 32,576; sulfur springs  
nearby; founded 16th century;  
*maps* C-250, S-253  
earthquake C-250  
Chili'i, or red pepper P-143  
vitamins V-496  
Chillicothe, Ohio, center of agricul-  
tural region 44 mi s. of Columbus,  
on Scioto River; pop. 20,133; large  
cannery, pulp and paper mills, fur-  
niture, shoes; railroad shops; capital  
of Ohio 1803-9 and 1812-16; *map*  
O-357  
Chillon (shē-yōn'), Castle of G-36,  
*picture* S-482  
Chiloé (chē-lō-ō') Island, off w. coast  
of Chile; area 3241 sq. mi.; pop.  
78,335; C-254, *map* C-250  
Chilon (li-lōn'), one of the Seven Wise  
Men of Greece S-233  
Chilopoda (li-lōp'ō-dā), a class of  
many-legged arthropods, including  
centipedes, *Reference-Outline* S-364  
Chiltern Hills, a range of low chalk  
hills 40 mi. n.w. of London; once  
densely forested.  
Chiltern Hundreds, three districts in  
Buckinghamshire whose steward-  
ship is a nominal Crown office. As  
the acceptance of a Crown office  
disqualifies a member of Parlia-  
ment (who by law may not resign  
his seat), the stewardship of Chil-  
tern Hundreds has become an ave-  
nue of escape for members who  
wish to quit office.  
Chimera (li-mēr'as), a group of  
primitive fish related to sharks;  
have a skeleton of cartilage; body  
tapers to a long tail; most of them  
deep-sea dwellers, various kinds  
named ratfish elephantfish, rabbit  
fish from peculiar shape of head  
and teeth  
rabbit fish (*Chimaera monstrosa*)  
F-100  
Chimborazo (chēm-bō-rā'sō), volcanic  
mountain in Ecuador 100 mi. s. of  
Quito. 20,702 ft.; one of highest  
peaks in Andes: E-230, *maps* P-164,  
S-252  
Chimbote, Peru port about 250 mi.  
n. of Lima; pop. 4243. P-164, *map*  
S-252  
Chime, a set of bells B-119, *pictures*  
M-471, B-119  
Bruges famous for, *picture* B-333  
how rung B-119  
Chimera (li-mēr'a) in art portrayal  
of a monster made up of parts of  
various animals  
cathedral of Notre Dame, *picture*  
S-78  
Chimera, in Greek mythology P-110  
Chimney  
fire prevention F-90  
invention S-144a, S-424  
lamp, invention L-89  
Chimney swift S-459, *picture* S-459,  
*color picture* B-182  
Chimpanzee (chim-pān'zē or chim-  
pān-zē'), an African ape C-256,  
*pictures* A-270, Z-356  
brain, weight of, *table* B-280  
experiments on mentality P-427,  
*picture* P-426  
foot, *picture* F-225  
hand, *picture* A-270  
intelligence and learning C-256,  
L-144, *pictures* L-145, Z-356  
China, country on east coast of Asia;  
area of China proper 1,500,000 sq.  
mi., pop. 385,047,161; area of  
Greater China more than 4,000,000  
sq. mi. pop. 461,006,265; C-257-86,  
*maps* C-259-60, 262, A-406-7, *photo-*  
*graph* C-261, *pictures* C-267-8,  
263-78, 261-4, *Reference-Outline*  
C-285-6. *See also in Index* For-  
mosa; Manchuria; Mongolia; Shan-  
tung; Tibet; Turkestan  
abacus A-3, *picture* A-3  
agriculture C-269-71, 261, 284, 285,  
A-416, *map* C-262; farm life  
C-262-4, *pictures* C-256, 263-4,  
270-2; products, *list* C-257  
education C-271  
hog production H-404  
land available C-258  
loess soil S-227, C-259, 260, *picture*  
C-258  
products, *list* C-257  
rice C-269-70, R-147, *map* C-262,  
*pictures* C-263, 270-1  
tea T-28, 32  
alchemy A-145  
antiquities C-277-8; Peking man  
M-70; pottery in tombs P-394  
architecture C-276, 277; camel-back  
bridge, *picture* C-281; gateway,  
*picture* P-111; Great Wall C-277,  
*picture* C-282; houses C-276, 277;  
pagoda C-277, *picture* C-276;  
temple P-111, *picture* P-112  
area and extent C-258; compared  
with the U. S., *photograph* C-261;  
greatest reached, Ch'ing Dynasty  
C-279; provinces, *list* C-257  
arts C-276-8, S-83, P-394-6a, 401,  
*color pictures* P-395-6  
brush drawing D-139, C-277, *picture*  
D-140  
enameling E-342, *picture* E-342  
lacquer ware L-81  
metalwork M-178-9, C-277-8, S-83;  
ancient alchemy A-145  
painting C-277, P-37a, *picture*  
C-279, *color picture* P-37c  
pottery and porcelain P-394-6a, 401,  
C-277, S-83, *picture* E-342, *color*  
*pictures* P-395-6; Chinese export  
porcelain wrongly identified as  
Lowestoft P-398; firing P-400;  
first true porcelain P-393  
rugs R-250  
sculpture S-83-4, C-277, *pictures*  
C-274, *color picture* S-72  
tapestries T-13, *picture* T-14  
textile design C-278  
wallpaper W-5  
wood carving W-190b  
bibliography C-286  
boats. *See subhead* transportation  
calendar C-267  
canals C-272, 261, *map* C-262; vil-  
lage laundry, *picture* C-253  
child labor C-268, 272  
cities C-260, 261-2, *list* C-257, *Refer-*  
*ence-Outline* C-285; walled C-277.  
*See also in Index* names of cities  
Canton C-116, *picture* C-116  
Foochow F-209  
Hangchow H-258  
Hankow H-258-9  
Nanking N-4  
Peking P-111-12, *pictures* P-111-12  
Shanghai S-133-4, *picture* S-133  
Tientsin T-131  
civilization C-274; ancient C-278-9;  
changing, in education C-275  
climate C-259-60, *list* C-257  
clock, water W-55  
clothing: children C-267, 268, *pic-*  
*tures* C-267-8; city life C-264, 266,  
*pictures* C-116, C-229, C-265, 274,  
284; coolie *pictures* C-257, 272,  
273; rural life C-263-4, *pictures*  
C-263, 264, 265, 266  
commerce C-270-1, 272-3, P-11-14:  
ancient and medieval C-279,  
C-116; exports and imports  
C-272-3, *see also in Index* Trade,  
*table*: open-door policy C-280  
Canton C-116, *picture* C-116  
Foochow F-209  
Hangchow H-258  
Hong Kong H-418  
Shanghai S-133-4, *picture* S-133  
Tientsin T-131  
customs C-262-9, 274; *ginseng*  
as medicine G-109, 110; jade treas-  
ured J-346  
dance D-14g  
dolls, *color picture* D-122d  
drama C-276  
earthquakes E-196  
education C-274-5, *pictures* C-267;  
agriculture C-271; Foochow F-209;  
missionary influences C-280; Nan-  
king N-4; Peking P-112  
emigration. *See in Index* Chinese, in  
other countries  
festivals and holidays C-268-9,  
F-58, 59, *pictures* F-59, C-269,  
"Kites" Day" C-268-9, K-53; New  
Year's Day C-267, 268, N-194, 195  
fisheries C-264, *pictures* C-266  
flags C-278, F-136d, *color picture*  
F-134; Middle Ages F-136d, *color*  
*picture* F-133  
floods F-144, 145, C-271: control  
C-269; Hwang River H-454  
foods C-260, 263, 269-70, *pictures*  
C-264, 267; sorghum S-236  
foot-binding C-266, *pictures* C-263,  
S-162  
forests: destruction C-271, F-239a  
games C-268  
government C-278, 279, 280-3: Com-  
munist C-282-3, 284-5; differences  
in language affect C-262; empire  
and dynasties C-278-81; new con-  
stitution (1947) C-284; reform  
movement, beginnings C-280-1; re-  
public C-281-5  
Greater China C-258  
Great Wall C-277, *maps* C-259,  
M-343, *picture* C-282

Key: cāpe, át, fār, fást, what, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bit; rōw, wón, fōr, nót, dg; cūre, búrt, ryde, fūll, búrn; out;

guilds C 272. Co-hung C 279  
history See in Index China history of  
Industrial Revolution C 272, 279, 287  
itinerary C 269-70, 1 253 pictures  
C 263 276

kite flying C 268-9 R 53  
labor C 272 268 pictures C 273-3  
land tenure C 271 284 ancient C 278  
languages C 275 L-28 different effect  
C 262 literacy revolution C 276

literature C 275-6 C 276-9  
C 435-6 C 274 275-9 Fik tales  
L 409 also L 419-20

living conditions See subheadings in  
conditions  
manufactures C 272 Hist C 257  
paper in 11th Dynasty 1 278  
tugs 11 248 265 See also in Index  
names of cities

marriage customs C 267 268 274  
pictures C 274  
minerals C 272 A 416 Hist C 257  
an 11th cent manufacture 1 246  
and iron A 265 coal C 272 iron  
C 272 tungsten T 266

monasteries C 280  
money C 273  
music 11 tunes C 278  
singing opera and theater C 278  
singing puppets F 439-40

natural science 43  
natural resources C 258-61 Hist C 257  
ways C 258  
north China C 249-60

occurrences C 262-3 264 265 268  
270 272-3 pictures C 255-4 263  
273-1 children C 268  
opium use of C 269, war C 278  
paper P 689 how ink is ancient  
times P 69

petal industry P 107  
people C 259 260-2, pictures C 265  
1 21 References in Index C 265  
children C 267-9 pictures C 264-6  
267-9 278 F 19 family life F 19  
pictures F 19 how the people live  
C 268-9 pictures C 257 3 203-4  
265-7 265 origin C 276 racial  
classification R 23 chart R 22

policy P 272  
political divisions provinces C 258  
Hist C 257 maps C 260  
population graph P 272  
density C 258 A 415-16 map C 262  
photograph C 261 one typed with  
other countries chart L 248

prehistoric man 1 70  
printing ancient P 414  
products C 261 260 270 Hist C 267  
rugs C 262 References in Index  
C 265 See also in Index agriculture  
silk industry

dispute in silk industry  
hair style C 264  
hair C 265  
rivers See subheadings transportation

recreation C 268 278 See also  
sidebands festivals and holidays  
games

relationships in continent, maps  
A 406-7 411-12  
religions C 274 R 101 ancient  
oracles C 276 Buddhism B 336  
Christianity C 280 Confucianism  
C 253 New Year's ceremony  
C 268 Taoism C 274

rice A 415 C 258 Hist C 257  
Hwang 11 454 navigable map  
C 262 Yantze Y 333 map C 259  
roads C 272

satellite C 266  
shell C 278 277 cave dwellers pic-  
ture C 256 cities C 266 river  
dwellers C 264, A 416 C 116 pic-  
tures C 264 Village and farm  
C 262 3 pictures P 242 C 263

ships pictures C 273 S 153  
silk industry C 185-6 C 271 278  
Industrial Revolution C 262  
social conditions C 274 child life  
C 267 9 cities C 264 266 farm  
and village C 268 4 labor conditions

topography C 272 pictures C 278 273  
rules of conduct origin in Orient  
P 404 C 4336 World War II and  
after C 264-5

south China C 259 290 3  
taxation C 272  
ten plex Pelling P 111 pictures P 112  
theater C 278 an 11th puppets  
P 435 40 ancient shadow play  
picture C 275

trade See in Index China a broad  
commerce  
transportation C 272 271 map  
C 262

torii C 264 pictures C 261 266  
273 S 153  
camel picture C 81  
can picture M 75  
cities C 268

railroads C 272 M 75 76 map  
C 262  
roads C 272  
taxi-harrow picture C 264

waterways C 272 281 C 106a map  
C 262  
twenty points C 270 90  
village and farm life C 262-4 268  
water supply C 263 wells W 73  
women C 262 3 264 24n 247 278  
280 foot binding C 268 pictures  
C 245 C 192

writing C 276 277 W 319 319a  
111 re W 319a brush used pic-  
ture C 267 Japanese use J 312  
palm-leaf books from C 277

China See in Index Periods in  
and chronology  
China Great Wall of C 277 maps  
C 259 M 214 picture C 262

China history of C 276-95 pictures  
C 261-4 278 References in Index  
C 261  
ancient civilization C 278 china  
storen C 261 influence on Japan  
J 315 315

century in ancient China C 270  
Confucius C 4336  
empires and early dynasties C 278-9  
Mongols M 245 C 275  
Marco Polo 1 364

Minas overthrow Mongols C 279  
Nanking made capital C 279-30  
collapse of the European C 279-30  
Ming Dynasty M 15 C 276 For  
M 27 F 312

mineral resources C 260  
Opium War C 279 O 398 Hong  
Kong lost H 419  
treaty ports C 279-80 T 27n

T 131  
extraterritorial rights C 280 282 See  
also in Index Treaties table A 41  
Iran Chinese Treaties (1844)  
Taping Rebellion C 280 London  
G 141 Manchuria destroyed  
H 254 Nanking sieged N 4  
war with Japan (1894-95) J 330  
C 260

Yorn's lost P 232a  
Shanghai Germany dominates S 134  
open door policy C 280 M 19  
reform movement C 280-1  
Empire a Tau Hal abolishes reforms  
C 281

Boxer Rebellion C 281  
Nationalist party (Kuomintang)  
founded C 281  
Republic established C 281  
leaders Chiang Kai-shek C 283-8  
C 284 3 Sun Yat-sen C 281 282  
Yao Shih kai C 281

Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281

Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281

Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281  
Yao Shih kai C 281

Mongolia M 344-5 C 283  
Manchuria C 281 243 284 M 76  
Japanese invasion and independence  
war W 252 C 283 C 259 J 321  
S 133 Peking P 111 112

World War II C 283-4 W 259 268  
290 See also in Index World War  
II chronology  
extraterritorial rights abolished  
C 284

Chinese exclusion law repealed 1 48  
economic and social change C 254-5  
treaty with Russia C 284  
Formosa, regent F 284-5  
postwar problems C 284-5 W 299  
new constitution 119471 C 284

Constitution C 284-5 W 361 p 6  
res C 284 labor C 272  
Korea conflict in C 285 A 66  
W 391 United States 1 242 See  
also in Index Korea title of  
Korean Conflict Chronology  
five year plan C 285

China People's Republic of Com-  
munist regime 1 242  
1949 in opposition 1 Nationalist  
government of General Chiang Kai-  
shek

flag F 136d color picture P 134  
China after A 426  
Columbus a sorcerer of a 17 9  
and Mexico the tree 84 1 1  
saporious is evergreen for which  
to 30 ft small whitish flowers in  
7 to 10 clusters appear in Novem-  
ber the berries 2-3-4 in are  
orange-red or red translucent See  
also in Index Botany

China flag See in Index flag  
China snuff also called candle as  
then a fine durable fiber derived  
from a plant (Boehmeria nivea) at  
the nettle family grown in China  
Japan and India and used in silk  
in cloth lines and paper grown  
in S U 9 India F 33

China pink flower F 559  
China rose P 280 282 picture R 281  
China sea See in Index South China  
Sea

China Sea Fast See in Index East  
China Sea  
China silk originally silk made in  
China now a soft thin silk  
China Korea the Huang River  
F 474 W 274 109, C 255

China stone 84 in Index Kailash  
Chu aware 84 in Index Porcelain  
and hardware  
China wool oil See in Index Tongs  
oil tree

Chinese bag C 267 pictures C 267  
nest in Iowa 1 821  
Chinthee (chin 10) a small  
rodent C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267  
Chinthee chin C 267

- Chinese, in other countries C-116  
 Burma B-359, 361  
 Canada C-33: British Columbia B-316  
 Java J-328  
 Malay Peninsula M-58, 60  
 Manchuria M-75  
 Philippines P-195  
 Thailand (Siam) S-169  
 United States I-48, A-391: California S-41a, picture F-59  
 Chinese antelope A-262  
 Chinese architecture. *See in Index*  
 China, subcard architecture  
 Chinese art. *See in Index* China, sub-head art  
 Chinese banana B-46  
 Chinese Changchun Railway M-75, 76  
 Chinese drama C-276  
 Chinese Eastern Railway (North Manchuria Railway) C-282, M-75, 76  
 Chinese exclusion laws, limiting immigration to a country  
 United States I-48, A-391, C-49: repeal I-48  
 Chinese forget-me-not, a common name for several species of plants with hairy grayish leaves and tiny blue, white, or pink flowers *Cynoglossum*, the hounds-tongue genus and *Omphalodes*, the navelwort genus of the borage family, native to Eurasia, have species so named  
 Chinese Gordon (General Charles George Gordon) G-141  
 Chinese jujube. *See in Index* Jujube  
 Chinese juniper J-365  
 Chinese language C-275, L-98  
 differences effect C-262  
 literary revolution C-276  
 Chinese lantern plant, a perennial plant (*Physalis alkekengi*) grown for its bright orange bladderlike calyx in which seeds are enclosed, native to Eurasia also called winter cherry and Alkekengi.  
 Chinese literature C-275-6  
 folk tales S-409, list S-419-20  
 Chinese People's Republic. *See in Index* China, People's Republic of  
 Chinese primrose, a name for several species of the genus *Primula* that grow wild in the Himalayas but are now common greenhouse plants. Stem short, leaves, soft and limp; flowers, showy, salverform.  
 Chinese race. *See in Index* China, subcard people  
 Chinese ring-necked pheasant P-187, picture P-187  
 Chinese rugs R-250  
 Chinese sumac. *See in Index* Ailanthus  
 Chinese Turkestan. *See in Index* Sinkiang  
 Chinese water deer D-45  
 Chinese wax W-76  
 Chinese woodflower, a common name for a variety of cockscomb  
 Chinese writing C-275, W-310, 310a  
 Ching, C. R. S. (S. Mart) (born 1876), industrial relations expert, born Prince Edward Island, Canada; to U.S. 1900; naturalized citizen 1909; lawyer 1912; director of Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service 1947-52.  
 Chingachukook (*chin-gäch'guk*), Indian chief who figures in most of James Fenimore Cooper's tales.  
 Ch'ing Dynasty. *See in Index* Manchu Dynasty  
 Chingtu, China. *See in Index* Chengtu  
 Chinkiang (*chin-ké-äng*), China, treaty port on Yangtze River 150 mi. from mouth; pop. 216,781; Y-333, maps C-260, A-406  
 Chinnampo (*chin-nam-pö*), North Korea, port on w. coast; pop. about 82,000; trade in cotton, silk, rice, timber; map K-65  
 Chinnereth, or Kinneret, Lake, Palestine. *See in Index* Galilee, Sea of  
 Chinook (*chi-nuk*), tribe of Indians of north Pacific area; formerly living about mouth of Columbia River and along its banks: map I-106f, table I-107  
 salmon fishing S-28  
 Chinook salmon, king salmon, or tree salmon S-28, color picture F-118  
 Chinook wind, warm dry wind from e. slopes of Rocky Mts. in n. U. S. and Canada bringing great relief in cold weather. W-150, 153  
 Alberta A-142  
 Montana M-377  
 Peace River valley P-103  
 Chingnapin (*ching'la-pin*), nut of a species of chestnut C-287  
 Chingnapin, water. *See in Index* Water chingnapin  
 Chingnapin ank, yellow oak, or chestnut oak C-287, O-319  
 Chins, Mongol people living in Burma and along the Burmo-Chinese frontier, supposed to have come from Tibet they are known as hunters and treacherous warriors B-359  
 Chintz, a printed cotton fabric T-107, picture T-106  
 Ching-nung-tou (*ching-nung-tou*) seaport of n. China, pop. about 100,000 T-131, map C-260  
 Chingghia (*ching'ghia*) Italy, seaport 18 mi. s. of Venice on an island in Gulf of Venice, pop. 23,577. map E-425  
 Venetians defeat Genoese (1320) G-38, N-91  
 Chios, island in Aegean Sea. *See in Index* Chios  
 Chipewyan (*chip-é-ic'án*), Indian tribe that lives in Northwest Territories and Alberta, Canada, map I-106f, table I-107  
 Chip log, for measuring speed of ship L-294, picture L-295  
 Chipmunk, a ground squirrel C-287, picture C-287  
 Chippawa, village in Ontario, Canada, 2 mi. above Niagara Falls; pop. 1762. Americans under General Scott defeated English 1814: picture map N-231  
 Chippendale, Thimmas (died 1779), famous English cabinetmaker I-178 furniture, pictures I-180, 181  
 Chippewa, Indian tribe. *See in Index* Ojibwa  
 Chippewa (*chip'ché-wá*) Falls, Wis., city on Chippewa River, 83 mi. n. of La Crosse; pop. 11,088; shoe factories, woolen products: map W-172  
 Chippewa River (originally Ojibwa), Wisconsin; rises in n. and flows s.w. to Mississippi River, maps W-166, 172-3  
 Lake Pepin formed by, M-308, picture M-277  
 Chippy, or chipping sparrow S-328  
 Chip slint, in golf, picture G-137  
 club used G-138  
 Chiquito (*chi-ké'tó*), a peaceful agricultural tribe of Bolivian Indians; their name means "little" in Spanish and was given to them because the Spaniards, seeing the low doorways of their houses, supposed them to be dwarfs, although they are of medium height and well built.  
 Chiricahua (*chi-ré-ká'wá*), a division of the Apache Indians of Arizona, once very warlike.  
 Chiricahua National Monument, Arizona N-32, map N-18  
 Chirico (*ké're-kó*), Giorgio di (*jór'gö dē*) (born 1888), surrealist painter, born in Greece of Italian parentage; known for metaphysical works suggestive of dream experiences.  
 Chiromancy. *See in Index* Palmistry  
 Chiron (*chi-rón*), in Greek mythology, a learned centaur C-170-1, A-8  
 Chiropody (*chi-róp'ö-di*), the art of treating corns, bunions, and other ailments of the feet; in earlier definitions, the art of treating bands and feet.  
 Chiropactic, a system of healing based upon principle that all disease is caused or aggravated by some form of disturbance of nervous system; treatment usually manipulation of spine; principle discovered in 1895 by Daniel David Palmer who started the Palmer School of Chiropactic in Davenport, Iowa, 1898; it is a licensed method of drugless healing in 44 states of the United States.  
 Chiroptera (*chi-róp'tér-a*), zoological order comprising the bats B-79  
 Chisel, a tool T-153, B-204a  
 safety in using S-10  
 Chishima Islands, in Pacific Ocean. *See in Index* Kuril Islands  
 Chisholm (*chi'zón*), Jesse (1806?-68), trader and guide, born Tennessee of a Cherokee mother; traded with Comanche and Kiowa Indians in what is now Oklahoma; knew 14 Indian languages and was interpreter at Indian councils in South after 1834; after refugee life in Kansas during Civil War traveled the north-south trail later named for him  
 Chisholm Trail, San Antonio, Tex., to Abilene, Kan. C-152  
 Chisholm vs. Georgia, in United States constitutional law U-348  
 Chishimlo (*chi-shé-mü'yó*), also Kisimayu (*kis-má'yó*), port of former Italian Somaliland; trade with interior; pop. 4500; map E-199  
 Chishnan, Russia. *See in Index* Kishinev  
 Chisos (*chi'sós*) Range, in Big Bend National Park, Texas N-30  
 Chita (*chi-tá*), Russia, administrative region of R.S.F.S.R. in e. Siberia; 278,000 sq. mi.; cattle, furs, gold; chief town, Chita; map P-260  
 Chita, Russia, city in e. Siberia, about 150 mi. n. of Mongolian border and 425 mi. e. of Irkutsk; on Trans-Siberian Railway; pop. 150,000; map A-406  
 Chital, or axis deer D-45  
 Chitimacha (*chi-tí-má'chá*), a remnant Indian tribe speaking a distinct language, living in Louisiana. They are noted basketmakers.  
 Chitin (*chi'tín*), stiffening material in skins of arthropods  
 crawfish C-507  
 insects I-153-4  
 lobster L-286  
 Chitna (*chi'tón*), a mollusk M-334, S-139a  
 Chiton, Greek garment D-144  
 Chittagong (*chi-tá-góng*), a port in East Bengal province, e. Pakistan, on Karnaphuli River, 5 mi. inland; pop. 294,046; ships tea and jute: maps I-54, A-407  
 Chittenden, Thomas (1730-97), first governor of Vermont; born East Guilford, Conn.; V-462  
 Chit'erlings H-403  
 Chivalry, the knightly class of feudal times also the qualities of the ideal knight-gallantry, a high sense of honor, and courtesy R-236. *See also in Index* Knighthood  
 manners and customs E-404  
 Sir Galahad, picture G-2  
 spirit expressed in romances R-179  
 training in F-62  
 Chive (*chiv*), plant allied to onion O-383  
 Chivers (*chi'érz*), Thomas Holley (1809-58), poet, born near Washington, Ga.; accused by Poe of plagiarism, made counter charges; verse used original meters in verse "Donchs of Ruby" "Virginia" Chkalov (*ch'ká'liv*), formerly Orenburg, city in e. European Russia.

Key: cape, át, fār, fast, what, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, there; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dq; cūre, būt, ryde, full, bārn; out;



- Chou En-lai (*gō'ēu'li'*), (born 1898), Chinese Communist leader, born of Mandarin family in Kiangsu province; in 1920 went to study in Paris where helped found Communist group among Chinese intellectuals; in 1924 joined Sun Yat-sen and took leading part in subsequent negotiations to unite Chinese Communists and Nationalists, premier and foreign minister People's Republic of China since 1949. C-285, picture R-292n
- Chough (*chūf*), small Old-World bird of crow family inhabiting rocky cliffs and mountains, the Cornish chough or red-legged crow has red bill and legs, the Alpine chough is yellow-billed.
- Choultsse (*shult'sē*), Ivan F. (born 1874), Russian painter, born St. Petersburg (Leningrad); was court painter to Czar Nicholas II; called "the wizard of light," because he used color so that his paintings fairly glow with radiance.
- Chouteau (*sho-tō'*) family, American fur traders: (René) Auguste (1749-1829) commander of party that founded St. Louis, Mo. in winter of 1763-64, as a trading post; (Jean) Pierre (1758-1849), his half brother, one of founders of Missouri Fur Co., his sons were the following: Auguste Pierre (1786-1838), trader among Arkansas Osages, operator of trading post on Verdigris River frontier baron; Pierre (1789-1865), head of Pierre Chouteau Jr. & Co. which bought out Astor's interests in American Fur Co.
- Chow chow, also called chow dog D-116c, color picture D-115, table D-119
- Chow Dynasty. See in Index Chou Dynasty
- Chrisman, Arthur Bowle (1889-1953), author, born near White Post, Va.; student in electrical engineering; lecturer, storyteller, and writer of Chinese folk tales and legends; awarded Newbery medal for 'Shen of the Sea' (1926).
- Christ. See in Index Jesus Christ
- Christ, Order of. See in Index Order of Christ
- 'Christabel', fragmentary poem by Coleridge about gentle, pious Christabel.
- Christ Church, Boston, "Old North Church" B-260, picture B-259
- Christchurch, England, seaport on s. coast 30 mi. w. of Portsmouth at confluence of Avon and Stour; pop. 20,506; great medieval church: map B-325
- Christchurch, New Zealand, city on South Island 7 mi. from port Lyttelton on e. coast; pop. 174,221, with suburbs; trade in timber, mutton, wool: N-228n, maps N-228, P-16, inset A-489
- Christ Church College, Oxford, England, table O-434
- dining hall, picture O-433
- great bell B-121
- Wolsey founds W-182
- Christian II (1481-1559), king of Denmark and Norway; conquered Sweden 1520; deposed 1523: S-465, S-397
- Christian IV (1557-1648), king of Denmark and Norway C-290
- rebuilt Oslo O-426b
- Thirty Years' War T-119
- Christian VII (1749-1808), king of Denmark and Norway; mentally weak, dominated by schemers.
- Christian VIII (1786-1848), king of Denmark 1839-48; king of Norway in 1814; democratic views.
- Christian IX (1818-1906), king of Denmark C-290
- Christian X (1870-1947), king of Denmark C-290
- World War II D-71
- Christian, hero of Bunyan's 'Pilgrim's Progress'; planned to show the experiences in the life of a Christian: B-355, picture B-354
- Christian Brothers, or Brothers of the Christian Schools M-358
- Christian Church (General Convention of the Christian Church), a religious denomination which grew out of three religious movements inaugurated soon after American Revolution, one in Virginia, one in Vermont, and one in Kentucky; holds Christian character only test of church fellowship and Bible only guide in faith; in 1931 united with Congregational churches under name of General Council of the Congregational and Christian Churches.
- Christian Commercial Travelers Association. See in Index Gideons
- Christian Endeavor, Young People's Society of C-290
- Christian Era, period of time from the birth of Christ to present. The practice of dating time from birth of Christ was begun in 6th century by monk Dionysius.
- Christian flag, originated 1897 by Charles Carleton Overton; field, white with union of blue and cross emblazoned in red; intended for all Christian denominations but actual use confined to some of the Protestant churches.
- Christinnia, Norway. See in Index Oslo
- Christinnity. See also in Index Church, Christian; Jesus Christ; Missions, Christian; Reformation, Protestant
- America C-303-4
- Apostles of A-275, 265
- Arian heresy C-302
- Armenia A-373-4
- Boniface in Germany B-228
- British Isles E-359; Augustine C-114; Columba H-327; Patrick P-97-8
- Charlemagne aids C-188
- Clovis advances C-360
- Constantine legalizes C-456
- Coptic church of Egypt E-273, 277-8
- Crusades C-519-22, pictures C-520-1
- Denmark D-71
- divisions, main churches R-101
- Ethiopia E-403
- Europe E-429a
- Goths G-143
- Greenland N-297, E-391
- history C-301-4
- martyrs M-104
- members, number of R-101
- missionary work C-301, 303-4
- Mohammed influenced by M-320
- moral effects C-304
- name "Christian" first used A-265
- Nicene Creed C-302, C-456
- Northmen N-296, 296b-7
- Paul P-99
- persecutions: by Nero N-110; early, in Rome R-197-8; martyrs M-104
- poor relief P-368
- Reformation. See in Index Reformation, Protestant
- Sabbath S-1
- Salut Patrick P-97-8, I-234
- spread by Roman Empire R-188
- Sunday schools S-453-4
- Teutonic Order in Prussia C-523
- Western civilization and W-210-11
- Xavier in Asia X-327; Japan J-319
- Christinnborg palace, Denmark, picture D-69
- Christian Science, religion founded by Mary Baker Eddy E-232
- Mother Church, picture E-233
- Christinn Socialists, England K-47
- Christie, Agatha (Mrs. Max Edgar Lucien Mallowan) (born 1891), English detective story writer, born Torquay, England; created Belgian detective Hercule Poirot ('Crooked House'; 'A Murder Is Announced'; 'They Came to Baghdad'; 'Mrs. McGinty's Dead'; 'Pocket Full of Rye').
- Christie, John Walter (1865-1944), inventor, born River Edge, N.J.; trained as a machinist and automobile racing driver; in 1904 built front-wheel-drive car; later revolutionized the driving mechanism of army tanks to make them faster and more maneuverable; retained by U. S. War Department for development of gun carriages and other automotive machinery.
- Christina (*kris-tē'na*) (1626-89), queen of Sweden; brilliant, erratic daughter of Gustavus Adolphus; succeeded 1632; abdicated 1654 in favor of her cousin Charles X; founded academy in Rome where she resided after abdication: S-466
- Christina River, Delaware D-56
- 'Christ in the Temple', painting by Hofmann, picture J-339
- Christmas C-291-300, pictures C-293-9, color pictures C-291-2
- American Colonies C-298
- ancient background of customs C-294, 299, S-49
- art and literature C-299-300
- Bethlehem, modern C-291-2, color pictures C-291-2
- bibliography C-299-300
- boar's head procession C-297-8, 299, picture C-297
- business aspect C-293
- carols C-294; books C-300
- Christmas card, first, picture C-299
- December 25 as Christmas, origin of C-298
- electric bulbs used E-311
- England, old English customs C-296-8, 299, picture C-297
- European countries C-294b-5, picture C-294b
- fire hazards F-91
- gifts: origin of custom C-294; Boxing Day C-298
- holly H-407, C-294a
- manger scene in many lands C-293-4, picture C-293, color picture C-292; Italy, picture I-263
- Mexico C-295-6, picture C-296
- mistletoe M-326, C-294a, 296, 297
- minstrelsy and waits C-296-7; minsters' play, picture C-298
- names, national C-298-9
- outdoor decoration, pictures C-294a-b
- puppet shows P-440
- Russia R-273
- Scandinavian C-294a-b, 299; Norway N-302, picture C-297; Sweden S-465
- South America C-296
- tree C-294-294n, pictures C-294a: fire danger F-91
- United States C-292-3
- wassail bowl C-296-7
- yule log C-299, 294b, 295, 296, 297
- Christmasberry, toyon, or California holly, an evergreen shrub or small tree (*Heteromeles arbutifolia*); oblong, pointed leaves; large clusters of white flowers followed by red berries; used as Christmas decoration; native to Sierra Nevada and coastal ranges of s.w. United States
- poison in P-338
- 'Christmas Carol', story by Dickens: Scrooge, a miser, reforms happily.
- Christians daisy, or Michaelmas daisy, species of aster A-426
- Christmas fera F-54
- Christmas Island, British island in Indian Ocean 223 mi. s. of Java; 60

Key: cōpe, āt, fōr, fōst, what, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, bāt, ryde, fūll, bārn; out;



- Protestantism: Reformation, Protestant; Roman Catholic church adherents number of R-101  
Bible E-133-7, pictures E-133-7  
canon law L-139-40  
Christmas C-291-300, pictures C-293-9, color pictures C-291-2  
Church of England E-356  
contributions to art architecture A-311-18, C-139; dance D-14d, c; drama D-131-2; miracle plays M-293; music G-214, M-459, 460, 461; painting (see also in Index Jesus Christ; Madonna) P-24  
Coptic church E-273, 277-8, E-402  
divisions R-101  
Easter E-200  
education E-239-40, S-453-4, picture E-240; Saint Basil M-355  
festivals F-59; Christmas C-291-300, pictures C-293-9, color pictures C-291-2; Easter E-200  
feudalism and F-61  
Great Schism C-302  
Greek Orthodox church R-101; separation of C-302, G-190, B-374  
organization, medieval C-302  
persecutions of Christians C-301-2  
Protestantism, rise of C-302-3  
Russian Orthodox R-272-3; in old Russian R-263  
sacraments C-302  
services in early church B-136, C-302; catacombs R-198  
Church and state  
American Colonies A-206, C-303  
England C-303, W-138; Wales W-3-4; Wycliffe opposes taxes and appointments W-314  
investiture conflict England W-138; Germany H-334-5, G-214  
Philip IV and Boniface VIII P-190-1, B-228  
separation France P-277; Spain S-322a; Turkey T-216, 220a  
Church architecture A-311-18. See also in Index Architecture, Cathedral, Mosque, Pagoda, Temple; and architectural styles below  
baroque, picture B-54  
hasilica A-310, picture A-311  
Byzantine A-310-11, B-374  
early Christian A-311  
Gothic A-313-18, C-139  
interior plan A-312, diagram A-315  
mission C-46, pictures C-45  
modernism A-324, pictures A-319, O-373  
monastic influence M-355  
Renaissance A-318  
Romanesque A-311-13  
Russia, picture R-272  
Spain, picture M-27  
stained glass windows G-125, picture G-125  
steeples, origin A-317  
Church councils (ecumenical or general) C-302  
Clermont C-519  
Constance H-452, C-302  
Nicaea C-302, C-456; Easter E-200  
Trent T-185, R-93, P-277  
Churches of Christ, denomination which resulted from a split in Disciples of Christ in late 19th century; consider Scriptures sufficient rule of faith and practice; membership on general basis of faith in Christ, repentance, and baptism (immersion). For membership, see in Index Religion, table  
Churches of God, name used by many small religious denominations in the U. S.; constituent bodies chiefly Pentecostal, Holiness, and Adventist. For membership, see in Index Religion, table  
Churchill, Charles (1731-64), English poet and satirist, born Westminster; 'The Rosciad', satire on contemporary actors and actresses; 'The Ghost', satire on Dr. Johnson; 'The Author', against Smollett.  
Churchill, John. See in Index Marlborough, John Churchill, duke of  
Churchill, Lord Randolph (1849-95), English statesman; entered Parliament 1874; brilliant Conservative leader, offices included secretary of state for India and chancellor of the exchequer; wife (Jennie Jerome of New York, died 1922) gave him valuable political assistance; C-304  
Churchill, Winston (1871-1947), historical novelist born St. Louis, Mo.; graduated Annapolis; in New Hampshire politics ('Richard Carvel'; 'The Crisis'; 'The Crossing'). Churchill, Sir Winston Leonard Spencer (born 1874), English statesman and writer C-304-6, E-371, 372, pictures C-304-5, H-381  
Allied war strategy and peace conferences R-214, W-259, 297, pictures W-255, 298, R-212  
quoted on Canada C-65; on 1951 election in Britain E-373; on World War II E-371, 372  
Churchill, formerly Fort Churchill, trading post at mouth of Churchill River on w. shore of Hudson Bay, Manitoba, Canada, pop. 500; terminus of Hudson's Bay Railroad; fine harbor C-83, H-437, mops C-68, 81, picture T-176  
Churchill Downs, Louisville, Ky. L-336  
Churchill River, in central Canada; rises in w. Saskatchewan, near Alberta border; flows 1000 mi. to Hudson Bay. H-437, mops C-68, 81  
Church of Christ, Scientist E-232. See also in Index Christian Science  
Church of England. See in Index England, Church of  
Church of God in Christ, Negro sect, organized 1895, pentecostal in character with emphasis on divine healing. For membership, see in Index Religion, table  
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. See in Index Mormons  
Church of the Holy Sepulcher, Jerusalem J-336  
Church of the Nativity, at Bethlehem E-133, color pictures C-291-2  
Christmas celebration C-291-2  
Church of the Nazarene (formerly Pentecostal Church of the Nazarene), name given in 1919 to organization composed of evangelistic religious groups formerly comprising individual Pentecostal and Holiness churches; emphasis on doctrine of sanctification, by which believers are freed from sin. For membership, see in Index Religion, table  
Church schools S-58  
Churidar, tight trousers worn by Indian men I-61  
Churn, for making butter B-364b, D-3  
colonial, picture A-207  
probable origin B-364b  
Churton, Henry. See in Index Tourgee, Albion Winegar  
Churubusco (cho-ro-bos'kō), Mexico, village 6 mi. S. of Mexico City, captured in Mexican War M-186  
Chavash (chv-vash') Republic, an autonomous republic of the R.S.F.S.R. in the middle Volga region; about 7000 sq. mi.; pop. 1,080,000.  
Chu Yüan-chang (chü yün-chang') (1328-99), Chinese emperor as Hung Wo; poor boy, Buddhist priest, bandit leader; freed China of foreign rule; founded Ming Dynasty.  
Chuzzlewit, Martin, hero of Dickens' novel 'Martin Chuzzlewit'; goes to America but returns to England.  
Chyle (kil), a milky substance formed during digestion P-244  
Chyme (kim), food partly digested by stomach D-91a  
Clano (ch'ānō), Galcazzo, Count (1903-44), Italian statesman; in the  
Fascist march on Rome 1922; married Edda, daughter of Mussolini, 1930; posts included foreign minister 1936-43, member Fascist Grand Council Feb.-Aug. 1943; executed by Fascists as traitor Jan. 1944.  
Cibber (sib'er), Colley (1671-1757), English actor and dramatist, born London; hero of Pope's 'Dunciad'; wrote 'Apology', amusing autobiography; poet laureate 1730-57.  
Cibola, Seven Cities of. See in Index Seven Cities of Cibola  
Ciada (si-kā'da), an insect C-306-7  
wasp an enemy, pictures C-306, A-2500, W-53  
Cicatrization (sik-a-tri-zā'shōn), formation of scar tissue as method of tattooing T-23, picture C-434c  
Cicely (sis'i-til), sweet, a tall perennial herb, of genus *Osmorhiza*, of the parsley family with thrice compound leaves and small white flowers in flat-topped clusters; thick edible root; true sweet cicely, a European plant (*Myrrhio odorata*), has anise-scented leaves.  
Cicero (sis'i-rō), Marcus Tullius (106-43 B.C.), Roman statesman, orator, author, and philosopher C-307, picture C-307  
letter writing L-171  
place in Latin literature L-130  
portrait bust, picture R-183  
pronunciation of name L-132  
speeches taken in shorthand S-166  
Cicero, Ill., suburb w. of Chicago; pop. 67,544; large electric shops; map, inset I-36  
Cichlid (sik'lid), any of several species of tropical fish belonging to family Cichlidae; color picture F-105  
Ciconiiformes (si-kō-ni-i-fōr'mēz), an order of long-legged, fish-eating birds, comprising herons, bitterns, storks, ibises, flamingos.  
Cid (sid, Spanish thēd), The (Arabic, El Sid, the lord), popular name of Rodrigo, or Ruy, Diaz de Bivar (1040?-99), Spanish national hero, famous for his victories against the Moors; called also el Campeador, the Champion; S-321  
burial place S-319  
epic poem S-325-6, S-416  
play by Corneille C-486  
Cider, apple juice A-278  
Cider vinegar V-474  
Cienfuegos (se-n-fō-ā'gōs), Cuba, on s. coast, center for sugar and tobacco trade; pop. 97,658, with suburbs; harbor visited by Columbus; blockaded during Spanish-American War; maps C-528, W-96  
Cierva (thē-ēr'vā), Juan de la (1895-1936), inventor of autogiro; started experimenting with air machines at 16; flew first autogiro in 1923; killed in crash of Dutch air liner wingless autogiro A-542  
Cierra y Peñañel (thē-ēr'vā ē pān-yā-jē-ēr'), Juan de la (1864-1938), Spanish political leader; president of Congress of Deputies and Ministers under monarchy; minister of public works 1931 Republican cabinet; father of Juan de la Cierva.  
Cieszyn, Czechoslovakia and Poland. See in Index Teschen  
Cigar T-143, 144  
fire prevention F-90  
Havana H-284  
Tampa, Fla. T-9  
Cigar beetle B-107  
Cigarette T-143, 144  
cork tips C-480, picture C-479  
fire prevention F-90  
machinery, picture T-144  
paper: made from flax P-304, F-141-2; manufacturing company, picture N-277

Key: cōpe, āt, fūr, fāst, whāt, fāll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dā; cūre, būt, rjde, fūll, būrn; out;





offshoot of the Benedictine order; best-known branch of the order is the Trappists: M-355, pictures M-235c, M-355, 358

Citadel, fort in city of Quebec Q-10, picture Q-9

Citadel, The (Military College of South Carolina), at Charleston, S. C.; state control; founded 1842; for men; military training, arts and sciences.

Cithara, an ancient musical instrument, similar to the lyre, having from 4 to 20 strings; forerunner of modern guitar.

Cities of Refuge, six towns mentioned in Bible to which, under Mosaic law, one who had killed another by accident could flee and live without fear of any retaliation from victim's relatives who would otherwise have right of "blood vengeance." Cities were: Bezer, Ramoth, and Golan, east of the Jordan; Kedesh, Shechem, and Hebron, west of the Jordan (Num. xxxv, Josh. xx).

Citium, Cyprus, ancient Phoenician city on s.e. coast, now in ruins.

"Citizen-king" (Louis Philippe of France) L-321

Citizenship, membership in a state C-318-22, pictures C-318-21, Reference Outline C-321-2. See also in Index Americanization; Government; Naturalization; Women's rights

American Indians I-110/  
Americanization of aliens A-217  
bibliography C-322

Canada C-83

Chinese and Japanese I-48

Citizenship Day F-57  
defined C-319  
defined by 14th Amendment C-319f, R-35b, U-354  
education E-242, 243, 260, picture E-243

Hawaiians H-288a  
history C-320; ancient Athens C-320, G-199; ancient Rome C-320, R-185  
I Am an American Day F-58  
jury service J-366  
naturalization N-43  
responsibilities C-319b-d, M-142k, pictures C-319b-d

rights in United States C-319d-f  
social studies develop S-218b  
training C-319-319b, 320, C-247; Boy Scouts B-273-8; Camp Fire Girls C-55; George Junior Republic G-68; Girl Scouts G-113-15

Citizenship Day, in U.S. F-57

Citlaltépetl, peak in Mexico. See in Index Orizaba, Mount

Citral, in perfume making P-148

Citrate (sit'rat), a salt of citric acid, Citric acid, found in citrus fruits L-244, L-162

Citrin, or vitamin P V-496, 498

Citrine, a gem stone J-349. See also in Index Topaz

Citröen (sê-trô-en). André (1878-1935), French manufacturer, called "Henry Ford of France"; built munitions plants during World War I, later reorganized them as automobile plants; illuminated Eiffel Tower with advertising sign.

Cit'ron, fruit C-322

Citronella oil, an insect repellent obtained from citronella grass (Cymbopogon nardus), grown chiefly in East Indies and Ceylon and native in tropical America.

Citron melon, small watermelon; hard white flesh; used for preserving.

Cit'rus fruits, fruit of trees belonging to the genus Citrus of the rue family, Rutaceae  
citron C-322  
grapefruit G-154, pictures G-154  
lemon L-161-2  
lime L-244

orange O-400-2, pictures O-401  
perfumes P-147, picture P-148  
scale pests S-53-4  
vitamins in V-496

City C-323-4, pictures C-323-323b. See also Fact Summary with each state article; also in Index City planning; City-states: Free city; Municipal government; Walled cities; also names of countries, provinces, and states. subhead cities For the world's largest cities, see table on this page

American Colonies A-203  
ancient C-324, B-6-6a  
architectural development A-320-3  
Aztecs, improvement A-545  
bus B-364-364a, pictures B-364a  
Chinese C-264, 266; walled C-277  
colleges U-402  
crafts fostered G-228  
England E-350, C-323  
factory location problems F-10  
farms, movement from U-263, 311, 313-14  
food supply F-211-14  
growth in U. S.: absolute vs. relative growth G-164-6, charts G-165; pioneer days P-269; recent, times C-323, U-377

WORLD'S LARGEST CITIES	
	POPULATION
1. Greater London.....	8,316,137
2. New York.....	7,891,957
3. Tokyo.....	5,385,071
4. Moscow.....	4,500,000
5. Shanghai.....	4,300,630
6. Chicago.....	3,620,962
7. Berlin.....	3,350,785
8. Leningrad.....	3,300,000
9. Buenos Aires.....	2,982,380
10. Bombay.....	2,839,270
11. Jakarta.....	2,800,000
12. Paris.....	2,691,473

\*See population and area of the "Three Londons" L-290.  
†New York-Northeastern New Jersey standard metropolitan area, 12,911,994.

health problems H-308-10, pictograph H-309

housing problems H-430-3, S-144d-5

Industrial Revolution I-132

land use L-95

largest in area L-314

largest of U. S., list U-254

Levittown. See in Index Levittown, Pa.

Mayan development M-144

Middle Ages C-324, F-61-2, M-238c-h, R-106-7; Flanders E-115; free cities D-64; Germany G-96-7; guild influence G-228; Hanseatic League H-260-1

oldest: U. S., St. Augustine, Fla. S-17; world, Damascus D-12

pageant P-19a-b, picture P-19a

parks and playgrounds N-38c-f, P-86a-d, pictures P-86a-d

population of U. S., urban and rural U-312, P-373

power requirements E-312b

prehistoric, archaeological remains A-299, A-418

problems C-323-323a

public utilities P-430-1

Renaissance R-106-7

sanitation S-110

sites, how determined C-323

transportation C-323a, S-429-32, T-209-10, pictures S-429-31, C-321, T-209

water supply and waterworks W-71-4, pictures W-71-3

City College, in New York City, part of the College of the City of New York; municipal control; founded 1847; arts and sciences, business

administration, education, technology: N-223

City Hall Square, New York City N-218, picture N-221

City-manager government, in American cities M-451

City of Bridges (Bruges) B-332

City of Brotherly Love (Philadelphia, Pa.) P-190

City of London L-298-9, 301-2

City planning C-323a-b

Berlin B-126, 127

Canberra C-110

Chicago C-232-3

Detroit D-75

Galveston G-7

gridiron plan of streets, origin P-188

Harrisburg H-273

Indianapolis I-86

Leningrad L-162-3

Levittown. See in Index Levittown, N.Y., and Levittown, Pa.

Los Angeles L-316, picture A-400h

Melbourne M-167

New York City N-217-18

Paris P-81-2, 85, maps P-83a

Philadelphia P-188

St. Louis S-22, picture S-21

San Francisco S-41a, picture C-323

Tokyo T-145

traffic problems R-158a-b

Washington, D.C. W-27-33

City Point, Va., village on James River, 10 mi. n.e. of Petersburg; Grant's headquarters 1864-65; became a part of Hopewell, 1923.

City-states C-324

ancient Sumeria B-6

early development G-145, D-63

Greece G-145, G-197-8; Athens A-449; Sparta S-328-30, picture S-329

International law I-189

Italy I-270, 272, C-324; Florence F-147; Genoa G-37-8; Milan M-247; Rome R-182, C-324; Venice V-445

Ciudad Bolívar (sê-yo-dâd' bô-lê-râr), Venezuela, city on Orinoco River; pop. 31,009; gold, diamonds, cattle, timber: O-424d, maps V-442, S-252

Ciudad Juárez, Mexico. See in Index Juárez

Ciudad Rodrigo (thê-yo-dâth' rôd-rê-gô), fortified frontier town in western Spain; taken by French under Ney in 1810, retaken (1812) by British under Wellington.

Ciudad Trujillo (sê-yo-dâd' try-hê-yô), formerly Santo Domingo (city), capital of Dominican Republic, on s. coast at mouth of Ozama River; pop. 181,553; D-124, maps W-96a, N-251, pictures D-123, 124

Civet cat, mammal related to cat and hyena, member of family Viverridae; gravis with black bands and spots; found chiefly in Asia and Africa; name also applied to bassarisk. See also in Index Bassarisk

perfume P-149

Civic center C-323b

Los Angeles L-316, picture L-315

St. Louis S-22

San Francisco S-41a, picture C-323

Civics, a branch of the social sciences. See in Index Political science

Civil Aeronautics Administration, U. S. U-366

Civil Aeronautics Board (CAB) R-205, A-537, U-366, 368

safety work S-5

Civil Air Patrol (CAP) A-537

Civil Defense Administration, Federal. See in Index Federal Civil Defense Administration

Civil disobedience campaign, in India G-9, I-68

Civil engineering, defined E-345

surveying, branch of S-457, picture S-457



Vicksburg V-467, P-375  
Yorktown V-341

Civil War, England (1642-49) E-366

Admiral Blake B-205

Bunyan in army B-354

Charles I C-191

Cromwell C-516-17

Hampden H-254

Puritans P-443

Rump Parliament C-517, E-366, picture C-517

Scottish rebellion S-65

theaters closed D-132

Civil War, Russia (1918-20) R-289, W-240-1

Civil War, Spain (1936-39) S-322a, B-55, picture S-322b

Civita Lavinia, Italy. See in *Index* Lanuvium

Civitan clubs, organizations of business and professional men in the United States, Canada, and Australia for the rendering of civic and social service to their communities. The first club of Civitan International was founded at Birmingham, Ala., in 1917. Each club is made up of one representative of each business or profession in the community. The motto is "Builders of Good Citizenship."

Clab'orne, or Clayborne, William (1589?-1676?), English colonist, secretary of state for Virginia 1625

Maryland activities M-110

Claims, court of, U.S. C-500

Claiborne, Pa., city on Monongahela

River, 20 mi. s.e. of Pittsburgh;

pop. 19,652; formed in 1922 by

consolidation of boroughs of Clair-

ton, North Clairton, and Wilson;

steel and coke and by-products:

map, inset P-132

Clairvaux (klér-vô'), a village of n.e.

France; site of Cistercian abbey

founded by St. Bernard in 1115.

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

Clam, a mollusk C-338-9, M-334, pictures C-477, C-338-9

pop. 5494; health resort (radium springs and baths); birthplace of Will Rogers; military academy: map O-371

Clarence, George, duke of (1449-78), brother of Edward IV through whom he met his death; in Shakespeare's 'Richard III'.

Clarence River, in New South Wales, Australia; flows into Pacific; 240 mi. long; navigable for 80 mi.

Clarendon, Edward Hyde, first earl of (1609-74), English historian and statesman, chancellor of Charles II. and grandfather of Mary II and Anne ('History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars').

Clarendon, Constitutions of, in English history, a document drawn up at a council at Clarendon in 1164; involved questions on the relations between church and state  
Thomas Becket rejects B-92

Clarinet, musical instrument W-189, picture M-471  
range of diagram M-468b  
reed used R-88a

Clark, Abraham (1726-94), signer of Declaration of Independence; born Elizabeth N. J.  
signature reproduced D-37

Clark, Alvan Graham (1832-97), astronomer and astronomical instrument maker, born Fall River, Mass.; won fame with 40-inch lenses of the Yerkes telescope: S-372

Clark, Ana Natan (born 1898), author and teacher, born Las Vegas, N.M.; taught English in a mining camp and in Indian day school, where children helped to make their own textbooks with a page of English opposite a page of Navajo, Sioux, or Spanish. Children's books: 'In My Mother's House'; 'Looking-for-Something'; 'Secret of the Andes', awarded Newbery medal 1953.

Clark, Barrett H. (1890-1953), writer and editor, born Toronto, Canada; dramatic editor *Drama*; author of books on theater and the drama.

Clark, Catharine Anthony (born 1892), Canadian writer, born London, England; Kootenay Lake district, in British Columbia, where she lived from 1914 to 1951, provided the background for her children's books 'The Sun Horse' (winner of Canadian Library Association Book of the Year for Children award for 1951) and 'The Golden Pine Cone'.

Clark, Champ (James Beauchamp) (1850-1921), political leader, born Lawrenceburg, Ky.; U.S. congressman from Missouri; Democratic leader in House, speaker 1911-19.

Clark, Charles E. (1840-1922), Navy officer, born Bradford, Vt.; helped destroy Admiral Cervera's fleet in Spanish-American War; made rear admiral 1902.

Clark, Francis Edward (1851-1927), Congregational clergyman, born of New England parents at Aymer, Quebec; founder and president of United Society of Christian Endeavor: C-290

Clark, George Rogers (1752-1818), American Revolutionary War soldier and frontiersman C-339  
captures Kaskaskia C-339, picture U-373

founds Louisville L-336

Clark, Mark Wayne (born 1896), U.S. Army officer, born Madison Barracks, N. Y.; named chief of staff for ground forces, later commander U.S. ground forces in Europe 1942; commanded U.S. 5th Army and Allied 15th Army group in Italy 1943-45; chief U.S. occupational

forces in Austria 1945-47; commander U.S. 6th Army headquarters San Francisco, 1947-49; chief of Army field forces 1949-52; appointed U.N. commander in Korea and commander in chief of the U.S. armed forces in the Far East, 1952-53; author of 'Calculated Risk' and 'From the Danube to the Yalu': picture E-287f

Clark, Thomas Campbell (born 1899), lawyer and government official, born Dallas, Tex.; assistant in various capacities in U.S. Justice Dept. 1937-45; attorney general of U.S. 1945-49; appointed justice U.S. Supreme Court August 1949.

Clark, William (1770-1838), Army officer and explorer L-176-8, pictures L-176-7

Lewis and Clark Expedition L-176-7, pictures L-176-7

Clark College, at Atlanta, Ga.; Methodist; Negro; founded 1869 as Clark University; arts and sciences. See also in *Index* Atlanta University.

Clarke, Charles Cowden (1787-1877), English literary critic; authority on Shakespeare ('Tales from Chaucer'; 'Shakespeare's Characters'). His wife, Mary Cowden Clarke (1808-98), was also known as a Shakespearean scholar.

Clarke, Elijah (1733-99), American Revolutionary War soldier and popular leader of Wilkes County, Ga.; received estate for war services; suspected of intriguing with Genét, French minister; set up Trans Oconee state in Creek territory, capitulated to Georgia militia, was acquitted of treason without damage to his popularity.

Clarke, James Freeman (1810-88), Unitarian minister and author, born Hanover, N. H.; pastor and one of founders of Church of the Disciples, Boston; friend of Emerson ('Ten Great Religions'; 'Orthodoxy'; 'Every-Day Religion').

Clarke, James P. (1854-1916), representative, senator, attorney general, and governor of Arkansas; later U.S. senator; born Yazoo City, Miss. See also in *Index* Statuary Hall (Arkansas), table

Clarke, Marcus Andrew (1846-81), Australian author A-493

Clarke College, at Duquaque, Iowa; Roman Catholic; for women; founded 1843; arts and sciences.

Clarke-McNary Act, U. S. P-239, 240

Clarke School for the Deaf D-25

Clark Fork River, rises in Silver Bow Co., s.w. Montana, flows into Pend Oreille Lake, in Idaho. Sometimes included with Pend Oreille River, which flows from the lake and through Idaho and Washington to Columbia River at British Columbia line; total length, including Pend Oreille River, 505 mi.: maps M-374, I-20, W-45, U-296

Clark Hill Dam, in Georgia and South Carolina, on the Savannah River, maps S-283, 290. See also in *Index* Dam, table

Clarkia, a small genus of annual plants of the evening primrose family; stem, fleshy and red; flowers in loose clusters, usually double, white through purple; native to North America.

Clarksburg, W. Va., coal, oil, natural-gas center in n. of state; called "Fuel City of the Fuel State"; pop. 32,014; glass, steel, chemicals, pottery, tin products; birthplace of Stonewall Jackson: maps W-106, U-253

Clarksdale, Miss., city 72 mi. s.w. of Memphis, Tenn.; pop. 16,539; hard-

Key: cape, ât, fâr, fâst, what, fâll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, bāt, rȳde, fȳll, bȳrn; out;



**Clearwater River**, in Idaho, 200 mi. long; enters Snake River at Lewiston: maps I-20, 14

**Cleat**. See in *Index* Nautical terms, table

**Cleavage**, of minerals M-261

**Cleaveland, Moses** (1754-1806), pioneer and soldier, born Canterbury, Conn.; left Yale to fight in Revolutionary War; practiced law and became director of Connecticut Land Co.: C-347

**Cleburne, Patrick Ronayne** (1828-64), American general, born Ireland; strong character; fought for Confederacy during Civil War; called the "Stonewall of the West."

**Cleburne, Tex.**, manufacturing city and trading point for grain, livestock, cotton, 45 mi. s.w. of Dallas; pop. 12,905; planing mills, cotton gins, foundry, railroad shops: maps T-90, U-252

**Clef**, in music, a sign used to indicate the pitch of notes represented on the staff; for voice piano, and other instruments two clefs are used, the G to indicate the treble notes the F for the bass, for viola and some other instruments the C clef is used; the clef characters are much modified forms of the letters they stand for: M-468

**Cleghorn, Sarah Norcliffe** (born 1876), poet and novelist, born Norfolk, Va.; lived in Vermont ("The Turnpike Lady"; "The Spinster"; "Portraits and Protests").

**Cleisthenes**. See in *Index* Cleisthenes

**Clematis**, a vine C-342, picture C-342

**Clematis**, poison in P-338

**Clemenceau** (*klé-man-sô*'), Georges Benjamin Eugène (1841-1929), French statesman C-342

**Peace Conference W-239, pictures U-385, W-145**

**Clemens, Samuel Langhorne**. See in *Index* Twain, Mark

**Clement**, name of 14 popes. For complete list see in *Index* Pope, table

**Clement I**, Saint (90?-99?), pope, known also as Clement of Rome and Clemens Romanus; best known for his epistle to the church of Corinth, dating from about A.D. 96; festival November 23.

**Clement IV** (died 1268), elected pope 1265

beneficiaries Roger Bacon B-11

**Clement V** (1264-1314), first Avignon pope (during "Babylonian Captivity"), elected 1305; abolished order of the Templars.

**Clement VII** (Giulio de' Medici) (1478-1534), pope, besieged in Castel Sant' Angelo during sack of Rome by Constable de Bourbon 1527; refused to divorce Henry VIII of England from Catherine of Aragon, and thus caused separation of Church of England from Rome Henry VIII, England, and H-338

**Clement VII** (1342-94), first antipope of the Great Schism; elected 1378: U-406

**Clement VIII** (1536-1605), pope 1592-1605; revised Vulgate; readmitted Henry IV of France to church.

**Aegidius Muñoz**, antipope 1424-29, was also known as Clement VIII.

**Clement XIV** (1705-74), elected pope 1769; suppressed the Jesuits.

**Clementi** (*klé-mén-té*), Muzio (1732-1832), Italian pianist, composer, teacher, born Rome; first to write for piano in style distinguished from that of harpsichord.

**Clemm, Virginia**, cousin and wife of Edgar Allan Poe P-331, 332

**Clemson Agricultural College**, at Clemson, S. C.; state control; for men; on estate given by Thomas G.

**Clemson, son-in-law of John C. Calhoun**; founded 1889; opened 1893; arts and sciences, agriculture, chemistry and geology, education, engineering, textiles; co-educational in graduate school; students wear uniforms and live in barracks under military discipline.

**Cleobulus** (*klé-ô-bû-lus*) (6th century B.C.), Greek sage and lyric poet, one of "Seven Wise Men" S-233

**Cleome** (*klé-ô-mé*'), a genus of annual plants or shrubs of the caper family identified by spidery stamens of flowers. Flowers white, yellow, or rosy purple. Rocky Mountain bee plant is *C. scrallata*, used as dye plant by Southwestern Indians.

**Cleon** (*klé-on*) (died 422 B.C.), Athenian political leader, opponent of Pericles, and leader of the democracy

**Cleopatra** (*klé-ô-pâ-trâ*, also *klé-ô-pâ-tra*) (69-30 B.C.), queen of Egypt, daughter of Ptolemy XI, Auletes C-342-3, A-269, E-280, picture C-343

**Cleopatra's Needles** A-150, picture N-218, map L-301

**Clepsydra** (*klép-sî-dra*), a water clock W-55

**Clerestory** (*klér-stô-ri*) in architecture A-312. See also in *Index* Architecture, table of terms

**Clergy**, in medieval church C-302

**Clerihew**, type of verse. See in *Index* Bentley, Edmund C

**Clerk, Sir Dugald** (1854-1932), British engineer, born Glasgow, Scotland. Invented Clerk cycle gas engine; author of "The Gas and Oil Engine" and many scientific papers.

**Clerk Maxwell, James**. See in *Index* Maxwell, James Clerk

**Clerk's Tale** of Patient Griseldis, in Chaucer's "Canterbury Tales" C-204

**'Clermont'**, steamship built by Fulton F-315, picture F-315

**Clermont council** C-519

**Clermont-Ferrand** (*klér-môn-fér-ân*'), France, city 85 mi. w. of Lyon, formed by joining of Clermont and Montferrand 1731; pop. 93,695; 13th-century cathedral; birthplace of Pascal: maps F-259, 270, E-425

**council of Clermont** C-519

**Cleve** (*klé-ré*'), Per Theodor (1840-1905), Swedish chemist, discoverer of thulium and independent discoverer of holmium and helium.

**Cleveite** (*klé-î-té*'), a mineral, oxide of uranium and lead; named for Per Theodor Cleve, Swedish chemist: M-265

helium discovered in S-332

**Cleveland, Frances Folsom** (1864-1947), wife of President Cleveland W-128a-b

**Cleveland, Grover** (1837-1909), 22d and 24th president of U.S. C-343-5, picture C-345

**administrations** (1885-89, 1893-97) C-344-5

evil service C-344

currency question C-345

Hawaiian annexation H-291, C-345

Interstate Commerce Commission I-198

labor troubles C-345, C-238

name of 1893 C-344-5, H-277

tariff C-344

Venezuelan dispute W-442, 444, C-345

veto power used C-344

Hall of Fame, table H-249

portrait on \$1000 bill, table M-339

wife and family W-128a-b

**Cleveland, Ohio**, on Lake Erie; largest city in Ohio; pop. 914,808; C-346-7, maps U-253, inset O-357, pictures C-346, O-347

early growth O-348, C-347

Federal Reserve Bank (4th) and district, map F-49

presidential convention. See in *Index* Convention, table

public library: children's rooms L-194, picture L-192

**Cleveland, Tenn.**, industrial city in s.e. corner of state, 12 mi. n. of Georgia border; pop. 12,605; incorporated in 1838; hosiery, lumber: map T-67

**Cleveland, Mount**, loftiest peak (10,438 ft.) in Glacier National Park.

**Cleveland Bny**, an English breed of coach horses H-428a, table H-428e

**Cleveland Foundation**, an aggregation of funds by various donors used for general well-being of mankind; established 1914 under Frederick H. Goff of Cleveland Trust Co.

**Cleveland Heights**, Ohio, residential suburb of Cleveland; pop. 59,141; contains Shaker Lakes, a beautiful natural spot of 300 acres: map, inset O-357

**Cleveland Museum of Art**, at Cleveland, Ohio. See in *Index* Museums, table

**Cleves, Germany**. See in *Index* Kleve

**Clew**. See in *Index* Nautical terms, table

**Clinanthus**, a small genus of trailing plants of the pea family, native to Australia, New Zealand. Flowers scarlet with black spot, crimson, or white, one petal long and beaklike; glory pea (*C. dampieri*); parrot-bill or red Kowhai (*C. paniculatus*).

**Click beetle**, or springing beetle B-106, 108

**Cliff**, a steep, rocky slope

chalk, picture E-346; Dover D-125

**Shetland Islands S-148**

**Cliff Dwellers**, prehistoric race of s.w. U.S. C-347-8, pictures C-347-8

**ruins C-348, picture S-144a; Mesa Verde C-411, N-36-7, map N-18, pictures C-347-8; national monuments N-30, 35, 38, 38c, map N-18, picture A-355**

**Clifford, George**, 3d earl of Cumberland. See in *Index* Cumberland

**Clifford, Nathan** (1803-81), jurist, born Rumney, N.H.; attorney general in President Polk's Cabinet; negotiated treaty after Mexican War; associate justice U. S. Supreme Court after 1858; president Hayes-Tilden electoral commission 1877.

**Cliffside Park, N.J.**, borough on Hudson River; residential suburb of New York City; pop. 17,116: map N-164

**Cliff swallow**, or cave swallow, an insectivorous bird (*Petrochelidon albilrons*), distributed over U.S.; crown, wings, tail, back, and patch on breast steel blue; forehead, neck, and under parts buff; nest a flask-shaped structure made of mud pellets, which is gummed under the eaves of buildings.

**Cliffata, N.J.**, manufacturing city adjoining Passaic on n.; pop. 64,511; textiles, chemicals, iron products: map N-164

**Climate** C-348-51, diagram C-349, Reference-Outline G-47. See also in *Index* Drought; Meteorology; Rainfall; Seasons; Temperature; Winds. For climates of particular regions, see in *Index* region by name; see also Fact Summary with each state article

adapting life to E-221

altitude, effect of C-350; Asia A-413, 414; Mexico City M-210; South America S-259, E-231

Arctic and Antarctic compared A-260

atmosphere A-454, table A-454

changes: continental C-349; cycles C-351; effects of E-218, 220



- Argentina: gauchos A-331, pictures A-332, S-264; Indians, picture A-337
- Armenia, pictures A-374, R-250
- Aztec god, picture A-544
- Bali, picture E-208
- Balkans. See in *Index* Clothing, subheads Bulgaria, Greece, Rumania, Turkey, Yugoslavia
- ballet, pictures B-28-28d, D-14, 14f, A-400f, color picture P-31c
- Bedouin A-286, N-242a, pictures A-284, 286, N-242b
- Belgium, carnival, picture F-57
- Biblical, pictures J-339, M-212, 213, R-299, T-139, V-473, color pictures P-25, 25c-d, 26a, 27, 27b-c
- bibliography C-357
- bleaching B-205
- Borneo, pictures B-254-6
- Boy Scouts B-273-4, 276, 277, pictures B-273-7
- Bulgaria, pictures B-349, B-25
- bullfighter, picture S-317
- Burgundy, 15th century, picture D-146
- Burma, picture B-361
- Bushman, picture E-454
- buttons B-369-72, pictures B-370-2
- Camp Fire Girls, pictures C-54-5
- camp outfit C-57-8
- care C-356f-7: laundry and dry cleaning L-135-6, pictures L-135-6; moth protection B-368-9
- cave dwellers, picture M-64, color picture M-67
- Charlemagne C-186-7, pictures C-187-8
- Chaucer, pictures C-200-1
- children play at dressing up T-160b, picture T-160a
- Chile pictures C-254, 255
- China C-263-4, 266, 267-8, pictures C-257, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 273, 274, C-229
- Cleopatra, picture C-343
- climate influences C-353-4
- clown, picture C-314
- colors, adapting to the individual D-149-50
- conquistador, pictures A-191, C-177
- court costume
- England: Charles II, picture C-192; Edward VII, picture E-265; Edward the Confessor, picture E-265; Elizabeth I, picture E-332; Elizabeth II, pictures E-334a; George V and Queen Mary, picture G-68; George VI and Queen Elizabeth, picture G-68; William I, picture W-138
- France: Charlemagne, pictures C-187-8; Charles VII, picture C-193; Charles X, picture C-194; Louis XIV, picture L-320; Napoleonic times, picture N-9
- Spain: Columbus' time, picture C-418b
- cowboy: Argentine A-331, pictures S-264, A-332; Chile, picture C-265; United States C-154, pictures C-152, 153, 154
- Crete, ancient, picture D-145
- Crusaders, pictures C-520, 521, L-318, R-150
- Denmark, pictures F-192a
- design: factors of age and figure D-148-9; style problems D-150-1
- Dickens' characters, pictures D-84, 84b-5, E-380b
- dolls, pictures D-121, 122f, color pictures D-122a-d
- Dutch. See subhead Netherlands
- dyes and dyeing D-165-6
- Ecuador, pictures L-110, 111
- Egypt E-275, 277, pictures E-272-3, 275-7, C-16; ancient E-282, D-144, S-162, pictures A-298, C-343, D-14c, D-144, E-284, 285, S-162, color picture S-72; defensive coats of woven flax A-376
- England
- medieval, pictures C-520, E-265, E-359, 360, 362, R-150, W-137-8
- 16th century, pictures A-372, B-136, C-297, E-332, M-392, R-73, S-128, color pictures D-122d: shoes S-162, 163, picture S-162
- 17th century, pictures C-191, 192, C-517, D-146, E-368
- 18th century, pictures C-459, E-369, 369a, b, L-378b, H-405, I-130, J-361, W-91, color pictures P-29c-d
- 19th century E-369b, pictures C-294, D-147, E-366, 369d, color picture D-122d
- 20th century Elizabeth II, pictures E-334a; George V and Queen Mary, picture G-68; George VI and Queen Elizabeth, picture G-68
- Esquimo E-393-4, 395; pictures E-393-7, C-354, D-110a, F-321, P-142a
- Ethiopia, pictures E-401, 402, 403
- etiquette, some principles of dress E-410
- Etruscans E-412
- farmer
- Armenia, picture A-374
- Bavaria, picture B-83
- Belgium, picture B-113
- China C-263-4, picture C-263
- Costa Rica, picture C-490
- France, picture F-263
- Greece, pictures G-192
- Hungary, picture H-448
- India, pictures I-59, 61
- Japan, pictures J-299-300, 306, 323
- Java, pictures E-206, T-29
- Manchuria, picture M-74
- Mexico M-197, picture M-198
- Palestine, picture P-46
- Peru, picture L-109
- Philippine Islands, pictures P-106
- Poland, picture P-342
- Portugal, picture P-379
- Rumania, pictures B-25, R-254
- Russia, pictures R-263, 264
- Tibet, picture T-129
- United States, pictures A-65, 67, 68, F-21-32: pioneer woman, picture P-261
- Yugoslavia, picture B-22
- fashion dolls D-122f, color picture D-122d
- feudal times. See in *Index* Middle Ages, subhead clothing
- fireproofing F-92
- Flemish, 15th century, color pictures P-25a-b
- France, picture F-263
- medieval, pictures C-187-8, D-145, 146, L-318, M-238a, S-162, T-105, color picture B-233
- 15th century, picture L-319
- 16th century, picture C-382
- 17th century, pictures D-146, L-320, S-162
- 18th century, D-145, 147, pictures D-146, F-292, 294, N-7
- 19th century, pictures D-147, C-194; Napoleon, pictures N-6, 9, 10, 11
- 20th century: rural dress, picture F-263
- galley slaves, picture S-195
- Germany: Bavaria, pictures B-83; Nazi troops, picture G-100; 16th century, picture D-146
- Girl Scouts, pictures C-63, G-113, 114
- gladiators, picture G-117
- Greece
- ancient D-144, pictures A-30, A-274, A-339, A-446, D-14d, D-67, D-150, D-145, G-198, 199, 208, 209, O-342, 344, S-27, I-202, color picture S-27
- modern, pictures G-192, 194
- Guatemala G-222, 222a, pictures G-222-222b, 224, C-174, L-117
- Hawaiian Islands H-288b, pictures H-288b-9
- headdress. See also in *Index* Hats and caps
- Arab, pictures A-286, 289, 290, L-140, P-44
- Belgium, picture F-57
- Burma, picture B-361
- China C-264, pictures C-265, 274
- Egypt, pictures A-298, E-272-3, 275-6, color pictures S-72
- Ethiopia, picture E-401
- Flemish, 15th century, color pictures P-25a-b
- France, pictures F-294, L-318, 319, M-238a, N-7
- Germany, picture B-83
- India I-62, pictures D-14f, I-55, 56-7, 58, 59, 61, 62, 66, 68b-9
- Indians, North American: Apache color picture I-108c; Eastern Woodland, color picture I-98; Hopi, color picture I-106; Iroquois league, picture I-108d; Plains, pictures I-106c, 110c, color picture I-97; prehistoric, picture I-108e; Pueblo, picture I-95, color picture I-97
- Indo-China I-124, picture I-125
- Japan, picture J-302
- Java, picture J-325
- Korea K-65, picture K-64b
- Lapland, pictures R-97, L-102, N-300
- Madagascar, pictures M-21
- Malay, picture B-255
- Mayas, pictures I-108f
- Mexico, pictures M-198, 207
- New Hebrides, picture P-3
- Russia, pictures R-264, 271, 272, 277, 292a
- St. Nicholas, picture C-294
- Samoa, pictures P-3, 12
- Thailand (Siam), picture S-169
- Tunisia, picture T-207
- turban, pictures A-32, A-286, 289, B-361, C-265, E-208, G-192, I-56, 59, 68b, S-243
- history C-356d-f, pictures C-356d: dress D-144-7, pictures D-144-51
- Hittite warrior, picture H-385
- Hungary, pictures H-449-50, B-25
- hygienic H-306
- Iceland, pictures I-11
- Incas, picture I-50
- India I-60-2, pictures I-55-7, 59-65, 68b-9, D-14f: knob sandal, picture S-162
- Indians, Latin American
- Amazon basin, picture S-260
- Argentina, picture A-337
- Bolivia S-264, pictures B-222a, b, 223, 224, P-142b, S-250
- Ecuador, pictures L-110, 111
- Guatemala G-222, 222a, pictures G-222-222b, L-117, C-174
- Mexico, M-197, pictures M-197, 198; Aztecs A-543; Mayas, pictures I-108f, M-143a
- Peru S-264, pictures I-50, L-109, P-161, 163, S-262
- Tierra del Fuego, pictures S-259
- Indians, North American
- Eastern Woodland I-101-2, picture I-102, color picture I-98; Iroquois, pictures I-89, 108d; Menominee, picture I-100
- Mexico M-197, pictures M-197-8; Aztecs A-543; Mayas, pictures I-108f, M-143a
- Northwest I-106d-c: Nootka, picture I-106c
- Plains I-104b, picture I-110c, color picture I-97; Blackfeet I-104b, pictures I-104b, C-463; Kiowa, picture I-95; Sioux, picture I-106c
- Seed Gatherer I-106b-c: Hupa, picture I-106b; Paiute, pictures I-93; Pomo, picture I-106a
- Southwest: Apache, color picture I-108c; Hopi I-106, picture I-106c, color picture I-106; Nav-

Key: cape, at, far, fast, what, fall; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cāre, būt, ryde, full, būrn; out;

ajó 1 1041 color picture B 1046  
Pueblo 1 106 picture 1 95 color  
picture 1 87

Indo-China 1 184 pictures 1 122 125  
Iran Kulture 1 9  
Iraq pictures 1 243 265 207

medieval picture 1 271  
sardinian women picture 1 271

16th century picture 1 171 color  
picture 1 27

Jamaica picture 1 282  
Japan 1 303 320 pictures 1 289-306

311-12 320 323 D 147 T 32 c 1 r  
picture 1 318

Jaya pictures 1 325 327 1 208  
E 353

Joan of Arc pictures C 183 1 282  
H 447 J 355 R 234

knights 1 65-8 1 104 pictures 1 65 58  
C 520 F 80 C 2

Korea 1 84a 85 pict res 1 84b  
Lapland pict res 1 102-103 1 87

laundry and dry cleaning 1 135-8  
pict res 1 135-8

Marionette picture 1 148  
Madagascar 1 21

Malay 1 58 pict res 1 57 58 58  
B 235

manufacture 1 22-5 C 353-8  
inventions for table 1 204c knit

ting 1 87-8 pictures 1 58 a wins  
S 110-15 pictures 1 110-15 1 11

ring and weaving 1 348-52 pict  
ures 1 348-51 tailoring 1 104

C 358d tessellating W 107 T 120  
pictures T 120 W 188

materials C 354 6 358c-6 vee also  
in Index names of materials

fabrics and color effects 1 4-9  
D 143-50

sources C 358b-6 plants T 301  
Mayan pict res 1 108f M 143a

Megaphis pictures 1 108f O 340  
Mesopotamia ancient dignitary

picture A 490f  
Mezozoic 1 107 pict res 1 107 102

108 103 207 208 color picture  
P 37 Azteca A 543 Mayas

pictures 1 108f M 143a 17th  
century nun picture 1 113

Middle Ages pictures 1 238 237  
238 239a b e see also in Index

110-15 Ages a brief clothing  
Mohammedan pilgrims 1 157

Mongolia 1 343 1 1 res M 342 344  
monks pict res M 354-8 M 238c 0

B 231 G 117  
Morocco picture 1 394

Netherlands 1 120 pictures 1 118  
118 C 354 M 218 M 487 P 142a

P 248 color pictures P 29 29a  
nabot, picture 1 162

New Guinea devil dancers picture  
M 35

New Zealand feathered cloak pic  
ture N 228a

Northern N 286a pictures N 295-  
8a 1 187 1 380 381 Eric 18a

Red picture C 381  
Norway pictures 1 300 304 304c

wedding dress N 304a See also  
in Index Clothing a head Lap

land  
nun in Canadian wilderness in early

days picture C 105 medieval  
nurses picture M 238c 17th

century picture 1 113  
Pakistan P 42b pictures P 42a-b

Palestine pict res P 44 46 U 258  
palla D 144 picture D 145

pass guard Swiss picture P 65  
Parachute troops pictures P 73

A 281 P 255  
People of many lands P 142 142a

Peru Indians S 264 pictures 1 60

L 108 P 181 183 S 260 261

Pe'er Pan pict res B 80 D 133

Philippine islands P 108 pict res

P 108 107 103 200

Pilgrims and Parillans P 258 pict

ures A 182 206-8 E 368 F 58

M 147 P 327 P 443

pioneer American picture B 250 1,  
C 358d P 208 P 280 281 U 275

Poland picture 1 342  
Pope 1 104 XII picture P 279

Portugal pictures P 378 explorers  
16th century picture M 32 color

pict res M 31  
Puritans See a head Puritans and

1 104 pictures above  
Pyramid P 444 pictures P 444

Quaker 1 282 picture A 192  
Rabbi 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

Roman 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

Clothe 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105

R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105  
R 105 1 104 pictures 1 128 R 105



- constitution C-457, P-89  
 farm clubs *See in Index* Farm clubs  
 organization and parliamentary procedure P-89-90  
 origin in coffeehouses C-376  
 parliamentary law P-89-91, *table* P-90  
 women's clubs W-183  
 Club wheat, *picture* W-116  
 Cluj (klo-ch) (German Klausenburg, Hungarian Kolozsvár), Rumania industrial city 200 mi n.w. of Bucharest; pop 117,915 scientific and literary center of Transylvania; university *maps* E-417, B-23  
 Clumber spaniel, dog *table* D-118  
 Clunian monks, an order of Benedictine monks founded at Cluny, France, *picture* M-358  
 Leo IX and L-170  
 Cluny (klu-nē'), town in e-central France; pop 3420 remains of celebrated Benedictine abbey (910); seat of Clunian monks or Congregation of Cluny.  
 Cluny lace L-78  
 Cluny Museum, fine old Gothic structure in Paris, built in 15th and 16th centuries by Benedictine abbots of Cluny on site of ancient Roman palace *See in Index* Museums, *table* *tapestry picture* T-13  
 Clupeidae (klu-pē'i-dē'), a family of soft-finned fishes comprising the herring, alewife, shad, sardine and menhaden.  
 Clutch, automobile A-519-20, *diagrams* A-519  
 overrunning A-522, *diagram* A-527  
 Clyde, Colin Campbell, Baron. *See in Index* Campbell Sir Colin  
 Clyde, Firth of, Scotland estuary of Clyde River, which expands into bay 50 mi long 30 mi wide, part of Greenock near head of the estuary; Arr is on e shore islands of Arran, Bute Great Cumbrae, Little Cumbrae: *maps* B-321, 324  
 Clyde (Llīd) River, in s.w. flows n. and n.w. 106 mi to Firth of Clyde: *maps* B-321, 324  
 Glasgow G-118, *picture* S-63b  
 Clydesdale, a breed of draft horse H-428a, *picture* H-428b, *table* H-428c  
 Clymene (Llīm'ē-nē), in Greek mythology, mother of Phaethon P-167  
 Clymer, George (1739-1813), signer of Declaration of Independence; born Philadelphia, member of the Second Continental Congress, delegate to Constitutional Convention (1787); signed United States Constitution  
 signature reproduced D-37  
 Clytemnestra (kli-tēm-nēs'tra), in Greek mythology, sister of Helen and faithless wife of Agamemnon, whom she murdered; mother of Iphigenia, Electra, and Orestes: F-316  
 Clytie (kli'ti-ē or Llī'ti), in Greek mythology, maiden beloved and deserted by Helios, the sun, at whom she gazed until the pitying gods changed her into a sunflower.  
 Cnidus (ni'dis), ancient Greek city on promontory in Caria, Asia Minor; contained famous statue of Aphrodite by Praxiteles.  
 Cnossus (nō'sūs), also Knossus, ancient capital of Crete; famed in Greek mythology: *map* A-27. *See also in Index* Aegean civilization  
 Aegean remains C-510, A-305, A-29, *pictures* A-28, C-510  
 Cnat (Lnot), Canute, or Knut (994-1035), king of Danes and Norwegians, ruler of England 1016-35 C-117  
 Coach, closed carriage. *See also in Index* Stagecoach; Wagons  
 Coach dog. *See in Index* Dalmatian  
 Coachella (kō-g-chē'lā) Valley, in s. California, joins Imperial Valley to n.w., extensive date industry: C-39, 40  
 Coach whip, a snake S-208  
 Coach-whip cactus. *See in Index* Ocotillo  
 Coagulants, in waterworks, chemicals used to purify water, common ones are ferrous sulfate and lime, ferric chloride ferric sulfate, aluminum sulfate, sodium aluminate and lime: W-72  
 Coagulation, clotting or curdling blood B-209, *picture* B-208; platelets and B-208  
 colloids C-385  
 Coahuila (lō-ā-irē'lā), Mexican state in n. bordering on Texas, 58,062 sq mi; pop 719,518; cap Saltillo *map* M-194-5  
 Coal C-361-70, *pictures* C-361-70. *See also in Index* Coke, Lignite, Peat  
 Anthracite deposits A-260  
 anthracite C-363  
 bituminous C-363  
 by-products C-370-1, D-165, 166  
 cannel coal C-367, W-100  
 coal-tar products C-370-1  
 coke C-380  
 conservation C-454  
 consumption C-368-9; steamship S-156  
 early use F-313  
 formation C-361-3, *diagrams* C-362; geological periods G-59, 56; North America N-264, A-276; not a true mineral M-267; peat P-108-9  
 gas manufacture G-30, 31, F-74  
 geology of G-59, A-276, C-361-3, *diagrams* C-362  
 hard and soft difference C-363  
 heat heating houses H-322, *picture* H-323  
 lignite C-363; mining, *picture* N-292  
 miners, living and working conditions C-365-6, 369-70  
 mining M-270, C-361-70, *pictures* C-361-9, E-354, M-269, I-29, I-85, U-268, K-24  
 Industrial Revolution I-132  
 labor problems C-369  
 overproduction C-369  
 perils faced by miners C-367-8  
 railroads in C-365  
 powdered: for diesel engines D-90; for gas turbine electric engines L-291  
 power source F-313, *chart* F-314  
 producing regions  
 Africa S-243, C-434d  
 Antarctic possibilities A-260  
 Arctic regions N-304b  
 Australia A-484, N-185  
 Belgium B-111, *picture* B-113  
 Canada C-88, 75, C-118  
 China C-272  
 France F-263  
 Germany G-93  
 Great Britain E-354, I-132, N-138b; Scotland S-63b; Wales W-3, 4  
 Japan J-307  
 Manchuria M-74, *picture* M-73  
 Mexico M-201  
 Russia R-277; compared with U.S., *chart* R-280  
 United States U-319, C-363, *map* U-268; Alabama A-116; Alaska A-133; Colorado C-412; compared with Russia, *chart* R-280; Illinois I-28, *picture* I-29; Indiana I-84, *picture* I-85; Iowa I-219; Kansas K-13; Maryland M-109; Ohio O-361; Oklahoma O-373; Pennsylvania P-123-4, H-273; Tennessee T-58; Virginia V-480; West Virginia W-100, 111, *picture* W-110; Wyoming W-316  
 superseded by oil in ships S-156  
 tested by X rays X-331  
 trade names C-367  
 water filter, use as W-72  
 Coal Age G-59, 56. *See also in Index* Carboniferous period  
 Coal gas, illuminating gas obtained by distilling coal G-30. *See also in Index* Gas, for heating and lighting  
 Coalition, union of several bodies; a combination of several parties into one government or an alliance of various powers or states.  
 Coal oil. *See in Index* Kerosene  
 Coal sack, black spot in Milky Way caused by dust cloud, *chart* S-373  
 Coal-tar products C-370-1  
 artificial indigo I-113  
 benzene and benzol B-124  
 carboxylic acid C-119-20  
 creosote C-510  
 distillation C-370  
 drugs C-371  
 dyes D-165, 166, C-370, 371, I-113  
 explosives E-468  
 gas manufacture yields G-30  
 perfumes P-148  
 pitch T-15, C-371  
 plastic materials C-371  
 saccharin S-447  
 sulfa drugs A-266-7, O-424d; formulas, *diagrams* O-424d  
 Coaming. *See in Index* Nautical terms, *table*  
 Coanillas, Dain, in Puerto Rico P-433  
 Coast, drained. *See in Index* Drained coasts and valleys  
 Coastal plain, *map* N-245  
 Atlantic I-186, I-251, 269, 279, *maps* U-250, 265, 275  
 Gulf I-251, 279, *maps* U-250, 274-5, 277, 279  
 Coast and Geodetic Survey, United States I-366  
 flag F-130, *color picture* F-125  
 method of surveying U.S. S-456  
 safety work S-5  
 Coast artillery, United States A-379  
 guns A-397  
 Causter brake B-142  
 Coast Guard, United States C-371-2, L-225-6, L-238  
 academy C-371, *picture* C-448  
 decoration of honor D-39  
 flag F-130, *color picture* F-125  
 safety work S-5, *picture* U-360; iceberg patrol I-8, *pictures* I-8  
 war command C-371  
 Women's Reserve C-371  
 Coast Guard Academy, United States C-371  
 Coast hemlock. *See in Index* Western hemlock  
 Coast Ranges  
 Alaska A-130-1, *map* A-135  
 Canada C-76, B-313, *map* C-80  
 United States U-302, *maps* U-307, 303; California C-26, *maps* C-26, 34-5; Oregon O-408, *maps* O-408, 416; Washington W-54, *maps* W-37, 44  
 Coast rhododendron R-146, *color picture* F-177  
 Coat, a garment  
 development of D-145  
 Coates, Albert (1882-1953), English conductor and composer, born St. Petersburg (Leningrad) of English father and Russian mother; conductor, Russian Imperial Opera, London Symphony Orchestra, and Royal Philharmonic Society; director Philharmonic Orchestra, Rochester, N. Y., 1923-25; exponent of Russian music ('Pickwick', 'Samuel Pepys', operas; 'Lancelot', a symphony).  
 Coates, Eric (born 1886), English composer and viola player, born Hucknall; known especially for light, gay orchestral suites ('Brighton', 'London', 'From Meadow to Mayfair', 'London Again'); also composed ballets and numerous songs.  
 Coatesville, Pa., industrial city 39 mi w. of Philadelphia in rich agri-

Key: cāpe, āt, fār, fāst, whāt, fāl; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; īce, bīt, rōw, wōn, tōr, not, dō; cārc, bāt, īnde, fāl, bīrn; out;



- Cocker spaniel, dog D-110b, color picture D-113, table D-118
- Cockle, bivalved mollusk, especially common in tropical waters; the European cockle (*Cardium edule*) is a valuable shellfish.
- Cocklebur, picture N-49. See also in Index Xanthium
- seedling, poisonous P-338
- Cockney, term of disputed origin used for a Londoner; now applied to uneducated Londoner and his peculiar accent.
- Cock of the rock, South American bird (*Rupicola*), about size of pigeon; orange-colored plumage; prominent crest; orange-red flesh; males woo females by dances and antics
- Cockpit. See in Index Nautical terms, table
- Cockran, (William) Bourke (1854-1923), American lawyer and political leader born Ireland; member of Congress, active in Democratic politics; prominent orator of his day
- Cockroach, an insect C-373-4, picture C-373, color picture I-154a
- Cockscomb, an annual plant (*Celosia*) of the amaranth family. flower heads either plummy or crested red, yellow, or purple, leaves sometimes colored
- Cocoa C-286
- Cocoa butter C-288
- Coconut crab, or palm crab C-504
- genus C-505
- Coconut palm C-374-5, P-47, 50, pictures P-1, P-48, C-375
- nut C-374-5, N-316, pictures C-374, 375 N-417
- oil F-45, C-375, C-475-6
- Pacific Islands color picture P-8; Philippine Islands P-199, 195-6, picture P-200
- Cocoon (*bō-kōn*) P-438
- ant A-255, 256, picture A-254
- Ichneumon fly, picture I-164
- moth C-137
- Silkworm S-182-4
- spider S-343
- webbing clothes moth picture B-368
- Cocopa (*kō'lo-pa*), Indian tribe of the Yuman family living in the valley of the Rio Colorado in Lower California.
- Cocos (*kō-kōs*) Island, in Pacific Ocean, about 600 mi. s.w. of Panama Canal and 500 mi. n. of Galápagos Islands; 18 sq. mi.; belongs to Costa Rica; visited by expeditions in search of pirate treasure said to be buried there; airport: maps N-251, W-205
- Cocos Islands, or Keeling Islands, group of 27 small coral islands in Indian Ocean s.w. of Java; area about 1½ sq. mi.; pop. 1811; incorporated with Singapore 1903; Australia given administration 1951; Australian air base: maps A-407, W-205
- Coco Solo, U.S. naval air base in n. Panama Canal Zone just n.e. of Colón; nearby is the town Coco Solito (pop. 1503).
- Cocoteau (*kō-kō-tō*), Jean (born 1891), French poet, essayist, novelist, and playwright; strikingly original; greatly influenced young writers of his time: F-290
- chief works F-291
- Cod C-375-6, F-114, picture C-375
- eggs O-332
- fisheries: Iceland I-10a; Labrador L-76; Newfoundland N-139-40, C-86; Norway N-302, 304b
- haddock a relative H-240
- place in food chain, picture F-100
- C.O.D. system, of delivery origin E-458a-b
- Coda. See in Index Music, table of musical terms and forms
- Coddington, William (1601-78), American colonial governor, born Lincolnshire, England; came to America 1630; first governor of Rhode Island 1640; founded Portsmouth and Newport, R. I.
- Code, for signaling S-179
- cable messages C-6
- semaphore pictures S-178
- telegraph T-38, picture T-36
- Code, industrial, in U.S. R-206, 208
- Code, of law See also in Index Law
- Justinian J-367
- Napoleonic N-9, L-333, W-184
- Code, of manners. See in Index Etiquette
- Code, plumbing P-322, 323
- Codine (*bō'dē-in*), a narcotic drug (C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>) composed of morphine methyl ether and the equivalent of a molecule of water in chemical combination N-13
- poisoning, treatment P-341
- Codex (*bō'dēks*), or codicillus, ancient manuscript hooks B-231, 235, 236
- Codex Sinaiticus B-236, F-137, picture B-134
- Cod'ell, addition to a will W-134
- Cod'ellus. See in Index Codex
- Codling moth, or codlin moth, insect parent of apple worm C-376
- Cody, William Frederick. See in Index Buffalo Bill
- Cody, Wyo. town on Shoshone River in north, pop. 3872, near Buffalo Bill Dam map W-322
- founded by Buffalo Bill B-342
- Coe College, at Cedar Rapids, Iowa; founded 1881 (incorporated 1851 as Cedar Rapids Collegiate Institute); liberal arts
- Coeuducation, in colleges U-402
- first U.S. college to adopt O-362
- Coelacanth (*se'la-kānth*), a fish F-108, picture F-108
- Coelenterata (*se-lēn-tēr-ā'ta*), or coelenterates, animal phylum including coral, hydra, jellyfish, and sea anemone A-252, picture A-251, Reference-Outline Z-364
- Coelom (*se'lo-m*), body cavity P-244
- Coercive Acts, or Intolerable Acts, against American Colonies R-122, 124
- Coeur d'Alene (*kūr dā-lān'*), Idaho, city 30 mi. e. of Spokane, Wash., on lake of same name; pop. 12,198; lumber manufactures; farming and fruit-raising interests; fishing and hunting resort: maps L-20, U-252
- Coeur d'Alene Mountains, spur of Rockies on n.e. border of Idaho; named ("awl heart") for Indian chief: map I-20, picture W-48
- Coffee C-376-80, pictures C-377-80
- adulterants C-379
- caffeine C-379-80, T-30, H-304
- climate and altitude required C-378
- consumption in United States C-378
- discovery C-376
- gathering, curing, roasting, blending C-379, picture C-377
- Introduced into America C-378
- Mocha and Java C-378
- plant C-378-9, picture C-377, color picture P-288
- plantation: Brazil, pictures B-287, C-378; Guatemala, picture G-222c
- poisonous drug in H-304
- powdered coffee C-379
- preparation of drink C-379
- producing regions C-378, 379, 380: Brazil B-290, 292; Central America C-179, 175, G-222a, S-32; Colombia C-368; Dominican Republic D-123; Haiti H-245; Mexico M-199; Puerto Rico P-433; Venezuela V-442
- settled or clarified by egg A-144
- substitutes C-379; pioneers used P-264
- tea made from leaf T-33
- varieties C-380
- Coffeehouses C-376, 378, C-458, picture E-369
- Button's, London A-18
- Cheshire Cheese, picture C-459
- Lloyd's of London originates in I-170
- Will's D-157
- Cofferdam, a temporary dam D-10, picture D-10
- Coffeyville, Kan., city on Verdigris River near Oklahoma line; extensive trade; pop. 17,113; zinc oxide smelters, oil refineries, brick, tile, and clay plants; oil-field equipment: maps K-11, U-253
- Coffin, Charles Carleton (1823-96), author, born Boscawen, N. H.; war correspondent with Union armies in Civil War; writer of books for youth (*'The Boys of '76'* and *'Daughters of the Revolution'*).
- Coffin, Henry Sloane (1877-1955), clergyman, author, born New York City; pastor Madison Ave. Presbyterian Church, New York City, 1905-26; president Union Theological Seminary 1926-45; moderator Presbyterian Church in U.S. 1943-44.
- Coffin, Robert Peter Tristram (born 1892), writer, teacher, lecturer, born Brunswick, Me.; at Bowdoin College after 1934; Pulitzer prize (1936) for poetry, *'Strange Holiness'* (*'Primer for America'*, *'People Behave Like Ballads'*, poetry; *'Kennebec, Cradle of Americans'*, and *'Yankee Coast'*, books about Maine; *'Lost Paradise'*, autobiography).
- 'Coffin Texts', in ancient Egypt E-286
- Coffman, Lotus D. (1875-1938), educator, born Salem, Ind.; president University of Minnesota 1920-38.
- Coghlan (*kōf'lan*), Rose (1851-1932), Irish actress, born Peterborough, England; came to America 1872 and made her debut at Wallack's Theater, New York City; played Countess Zicka in *'Diplomacy'*, Stephanie in *'Forget-me-not'*, Lady Teazle in *'School for Scandal'*.
- Cognac (*kōn-yāh'*), France, old town in s.w. famous for brandy which bears its name; pop. 16,106; on river Charente: map E-425
- Cogon (*kō-gōn'*), two tough coarse grasses of genus *Imperata*; used for thatching in Philippines; grown in some s. states, chiefly Florida.
- Cohan (*kō-hān'*), George (Michael) (1878-1942), actor, playwright, producer, and song writer, born Providence, R. I.; first stage appearance at age of 9 in *'Daniel Boone'*; songs include *'Over There'*, sung widely during World War I, and *'I'm a Yankee Doodle Dandy'*.
- Cohen, Octavio Roy (born 1891), writer, born Charleston, S. C.; best known for droll stories of Southern Negroes (*'Polished Ebony'*; *'Highly Colored'*; *'Black and Blue'*): A-119-20
- Cohesion (*kō-hē-zhōn*), in physics M-142b, f, pictures M-142b-c
- evaporation E-449
- in liquids L-262; surface tension L-262, diagrams L-263-4
- Cohn (*kōn*), Edwin Joseph (1892-1953), biochemist, born New York City; joined faculty of Harvard University 1922, professor after 1935; made important researches in separation of blood fractions notably the isolation of albumin.
- Cohn, Ferdinand Julius (1828-98), German botanist, born Breslau; often regarded as founder of bacteriology; showed how to study life histories of algae and fungi; proved that bacteria are plants.
- Cohoos (*kō-hōz'*), N. Y., manufacturing city 9 mi. n. of Albany on Mohawk and Hudson rivers and on Erie Canal; pop. 21,272; abundant

Key: cāpe, āt, fār, fāst, what, fñll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, tōr, nōt, do; cūre, būt, rude, full, bīrm; out;

water power from Mohawk Falls  
large cotton and knitting mills  
rolling mills automobile parts  
tractor map P 205  
Co-hong Chinese merchants guild  
C 278

Cobaltum or silver asbestos S 28  
Cobalt black See in *Index Snake*  
root

Coals or at least in geology G 34  
diagram G 54

Coil electric  
alternating current affected by F 308  
radio R 34 39 choke R 39

Coil magnetic R 305

Colombia (kô-lô-bô) Portugal 114  
lateral city 65 ml n of Porto P D  
41 317 map F 418

Colony of Portugal P 380  
Colony and colony M 355-40 U 292 3  
pictures R 335 339 340 1 r a  
lat of colony of U.S. see *Index* n

Colony  
alloys gold G 132-3 silver A 174  
silver R 292 M 339 U 388

China C 275  
collecting M 340 books about H 388  
collecting C 488

embroidering process F 337  
first made by Lydia M 188  
gold amount used G 134 lateral  
standards and values G 133

M 339-40  
milled edges G 337  
mining process M 292

nickel U 334  
proof coins M 340  
silver am int used R 188

standard money M 337  
tken money M 337 picture M 334  
United States adopts decimal system  
F 339

unlike originally names of weights  
M 338

Coleridge or husk fiber C 374 B 330  
C 374 B 330

Coke Sir Edward (1652-1834) Eng  
lsh writer speaker of House of  
Commons 1833 chief justice of  
King's bench 1613 defender of  
liberal measures (Coke upon Little-  
ton or the First Institute au-  
thoritative treatise on English law)

Coke Thomas (1747-1814) first  
bishop of Melchior Episcopate  
church born Brecon Wales super-  
intendent for America of Methodist  
Society active missionary

Coke C 380 F 335  
by products C 380 F 53  
gas manufacture produced in G 30  
used in G 31

iron smelting I 238 239 I 332  
diagram I 238

petroleum coke C 380 of arts F 175  
175-7

Coker Collier at Harleville R C  
for women founded 1808 arts and  
science

Colla is the seed of a large tree  
(*Colla acuminata*) of the sterculia  
family native to Africa and cul-  
tivated elsewhere in tropics also  
called kola or quorra n

contains caffeine T 30  
drinks made from F 301

Colbert (kôl-bêr) Jean Baptiste  
(16 9 63) France a great man  
of state statesman C 380-1  
founded French Academy in Rome  
R 193

Colborne Sir John Baron Seafoe  
(1778 1863) English soldier and  
administrative lieutenant governor  
of Upper Canada 1830 38

Colburn Irving Washburn (1801-  
1917) manufacturer and inventor  
born Fitchburg Mass G 175  
121 2

Colby Bainbridge (1869 1950)  
lawyer and political leader born  
St Louis Mo one of founders of

Progressive (Bull Moose) party  
secretary of state 1920-31

Colby College at Waterville Me  
co-educational division for men and  
women chartered 1813

Colchester England port on Colne  
River 52 ml n of London pop  
87 438 Roman ruins oyster fish-  
eries trade in grain w ap R 325

Colchicine extract of colchicum  
influences plant growth P 307

## COINS OF THE UNITED STATES

Gold Coins

Double eagle 200 eagle 110 half  
eagle 50 quarter 25 50 25 piece  
coin 1837-90 51 piece coined  
1849-90 A few 25 pieces were a  
few 1875 for the Panama Pacific  
Exposition

These coins, based on the former gold  
val at on of 20 00 of a fine ounce are no  
longer in use and the pieces on the  
left by the bank on letters and dealers  
and current on were not used by law  
in 1933

Silver Coins

Dollar 412 5 grs as fine silver  
half dollar (legal tender to \$10)  
to after-dinner legal tender to \$101  
Dime (legal tender to \$10)  
Twenty-cent piece (coined 1875-78)  
Ten-cent piece (coined 1873 1878)  
Five-cent piece (coined 1873 1878)  
Trade dollar (coined 1873-87 400  
grs as fine silver (not legal tender))

Nickel Copper Bronze Coins

Five-cent piece (in 1871 72 73 74)  
first coined 1860 legal tender to 25  
cents

Ten-cent piece 48 grains coined since  
1864

Twenty-cent piece (coined 1865-90)  
Twenty-cent piece (coined 1865-73)  
One-cent piece (first 204 grs as later  
168 grs as coined 1867 1867)

Cent (in 1867 1867 1867 1867)  
Half-cent (first 1867 1867 1867 1867)

These last alloy—75% copper 25%  
nickel (Nikola 1 re of this alloy tem-  
peratures of about 1800 1800 1800 1800)  
first coined 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867  
December 31 1904 1867 1867 1867 1867

avoidance and care H 305 F 98  
mode of infection D 102

Cold drench D 758

Cold frame a glass covered frame to  
protect young plants G 13-14 pic  
1 r F 38 table G 16

Cold Harne Va place 9 ml n of  
Richmond battle of Chancellorsville  
1862 Grand defeated by Lee 1864  
with great loss map C 335

Cold bath E 311 P 206  
Cold pack a method of ranning foods  
P 222

Cold rubber R 246  
Cold storage preserving foodstuffs by  
refrigeration C 381 See also in *Index*  
refrigeration

divinishing from quick freezing  
P 222

eggs and poultry P 402  
fruits F 303-4  
meats M 154 picture R 156a

Cold storage locker C 381 1 r 2 3 R 98  
picture B 222

Coldstream Scotland h storic border  
village on Tweed River near fa-  
mous ford pop 1234 celebrated  
Coldstream Guards raised by Gen-  
eral Monk 1659 map B 324

Cold war (Ru s and China against  
the West) E 438 P 292-292a 292b  
E 289 1

Cold war causes of W 30  
Cold war causes of W 30

Cole George D. (born 1859)  
English economist and writer  
born Cambridge England

professor of political theory Oxford  
since 1884 chairman Fabian So-  
ciety 1939 45 and since 1844 (The  
Daily People 1746 1946 with  
Raymond Poole)

Transition) also wrote detective  
stories with wife Margaret Lamb  
(Poole) Cole (born 1853)

Cole King a myth king of Britain  
said to have reigned in 3d century  
subject of numerous rhymes

Cole Rosalie (1856-1952)  
composer and teacher of music  
born near Clyde Mich composer  
for organ piano chorus  
and orchestra symphonic music  
and opera (The Paving of Summer)

Hawthorne C 370 1 a) American  
painter born Eng and began ca-  
reer as wood engraver known  
chiefly for his landscapes of New  
York State and New England a  
leader in Hudson River School

Cole Timothy (1832-1831) American  
wood engraver greatest of his day  
born London England masterly  
interpretations of Dutch Italian  
Spanish and English old masters  
engravings much used in magazine  
and newspaper illustration

Coleman Arthur P. (1857-1859) Can-  
adian geologist and educator pro-  
fessor geology University of To-  
ronto explored and mapped sec-  
tions of Rockies and other parts  
of Canada

Colemanite a mineral bore of lime  
yield no borax M 285 B 252

Colletes (kôl-ê-tê) the beetle  
order of insects with front wings  
usually horny and chewing mouth  
parts B 104 I 160a See also in  
Index Bees Weevil

Colt Thomas Lord See in *Index*  
Colt Thomas Lord See in *Index*

Coleridge Samuel (1796-1834) Eng-  
lish writer eldest son of Samuel  
Taylor Coleridge wrote scholarly  
literary criticism excellent sonnets  
and Prometheus an unfinished  
lyric drama

Coleridge Samuel Taylor (1772-  
1834) one of English Lake Poets  
C 381 2 E 375

anecdotes about talkativeness C 459  
book annotations B 247

Colchicine a genus of plants of lily  
family native to Europe and Asia  
flowers resemble the crocus some  
species bloom in fall leaves appear  
green in spring a so called meadow  
saffron and autumn crocus corn  
used in medicine P 337

Colchis (kôl-î-s) district of Black Sea in  
S.E. extremity of Black Sea in  
mythology land of Golden Fleece  
A 338 C 156

Colford Lincoln (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

Colchicine (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

Colchicine (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

Colchicine (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

Colchicine (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

Colchicine (Ross) (1863 1847)  
American author born at sea off  
Cape Horn spent boyhood on voy-  
age with father wrote sea stories  
(The Drifting Diamond An In-  
strument of the Gods)

- Charles Lamb and L-88  
home in Bristol B-312  
quoted on: metrical forms P-335;  
moon M-326; Shakespeare S-127  
Wordsworth and W-198
- Coleridge-Taylor, Samuel (1875-1912),  
English composer, born London; of  
African descent through father, a  
native of Sierra Leone; cantata  
"Hiawatha's Wedding" based on  
Longfellow's poem; also chamber  
music, works for orchestra, piano.
- Coles, George (1810-75). Canadian  
statesman, born Prince Edward  
Island; advocated "responsible gov-  
ernment" and worked for Confed-  
eration; member House of Assembly  
1842-68; P-412
- Colet (1477-1516), John (1467-1516),  
English theologian and educator;  
dean of St. Paul's, founder of St.  
Paul's School, London  
friend of Erasmus and More M-391  
in Reformation R-92
- Colette (1874-1934), Sidonie Gabrielle  
(pen name Colette; Willy, later simply  
Colette) (1875-1934). French  
novelist, first wife of Henri de  
Jouvenel; works subjective, subtle,  
penetrating, with precise style  
("Chère", "Claudine at School",  
"Mitsou", "Renée, the Vagabond of  
Love", "Innocent Wife").
- Coleus (1674-1701), annual or perennial  
plants of the mint family, grown for  
their variegated foliage; native to  
tropics of Asia; leaves, yellow  
through purple; flowers, tiny, blue,  
in spike-like clusters.
- Collax, Schuyler (1827-85), journal-  
ist, born New York City  
vice-president of U.S. See in Index  
Vice-president, table
- Colgate University, at Hamilton,  
N. Y.; for men, founded by Baptists  
in 1819 but now nonsectarian; uni-  
versity charter granted 1846; known  
as Madison University until 1921  
when present name was adopted;  
liberal arts.
- Colliroot. See in Index Star grass
- Collinzy (1674-1701), Gaspard de,  
(1819-72), French Huguenot leader  
C-352, picture C-352
- Henry of Navarre and R-359
- Colima (1674-1701), Mexico, state on  
w.-central coast; 2659 sq. mi.; pop.  
112,375; cap. Colima (pop. 25,655);  
map M-194
- Colin Clont, poetic name for a shep-  
herd or countryman, used especially  
by Edmund Spenser.
- Colosseum. See in Index Colosseum
- Collage (1674-1701), French (1674-1701),  
in art P-33. See also in Index  
Montage; Photomontage
- Collamer, Jacob (1792-1865), lawyer,  
statesman, born Troy, N. Y.; U. S.  
congressman 1842-49, postmaster  
general 1849-50, U. S. senator  
1855-65. See also in Index Statu-  
ary Hall (Vermont), table
- Collar bone. See in Index Clavicle
- Collards (1674-1701), a variety of kale  
grown in the southern United  
States; "Georgia collards" popular  
type; when young, it is similar  
in appearance and taste to cab-  
bage.
- Collared lizard L-285
- Collar industry, at Troy, N. Y. T-193
- Collateral, property pledged as se-  
curity for filling financial obliga-  
tions B-49, C-510
- Collation, of books, examination of  
signatures or pages to ascertain  
whether a book is perfect; also, the  
critical comparison of texts. In a  
catalog, the statement of number  
of volumes, pages, illustrations,  
maps, plates, etc.; B-140
- Collecting, hobby, Reference-Outline  
V-427-8
- butterflies and moths B-367d-8  
buttons B-370, picture B-372  
coins M-340; books about H-389  
dolls D-121-2; paper dolls in na-  
tional costumes, Reference-Outline  
V-430  
pottery and porcelain P-401  
shells S-141  
stamps S-363-7, pictures S-363-7,  
V-428; books about H-389  
Collective bargaining. See in Index  
Labor unions, subhead collective  
bargaining
- Collective farming  
Hungary H-448  
Rumania R-253  
Russia R-264, 269, A-70, pictures  
R-264, 271, 276, E-430; farmers  
resist collectivization R-290  
Yugoslavia Y-546
- Collective nouns N-306
- Collectivism, in sociology C-427
- College C-383-4, U-400-4, pictures  
C-383-4. See also Fact Summary  
with each state article; also in In-  
dex individual colleges by name;  
University; also subhead education  
under names of states  
agricultural: Morrill Act E-256,  
A-64; first in Michigan M-230  
athletics A-449-50  
baseball B-70  
boat races B-215  
boxing B-270  
coaches and equipment T-402  
football F-226-34, pictures F-226-  
34; band B-46b, picture B-46a  
choosing a college U-403  
clubs, fraternities, sororities U-402  
courses: adjustment to aptitudes  
U-403  
curriculum experiment E-251-2  
degrees U-400, 404  
development in U. S. E-243, U-402,  
M-140  
dictionaries R-889  
earning one's way U-404  
entrance requirements C-383  
extracurricular activities U-402  
fraternities and sororities U-402.  
See also in Index Fraternities and  
sororities, table  
income awards, chart E-259  
junior college C-383, E-256  
land grants, support by E-256  
libraries: Canadian L-292; United  
States L-196-7  
origin and meaning of word C-384,  
U-404  
scholarships U-403-4  
specialization, reaction against  
E-252-3  
state E-256, U-402  
teachers college E-258-9, C-205  
technical U-400, 402  
"university" distinguished U-400,  
C-384  
value of college training U-402  
vocational education. See in Index  
Vocational education  
women's U-402, M-140
- College of. For names of colleges, see  
in Index the most significant part of  
name, as Pacific, College of the  
College of Cardinals. See in Index  
Cardinals, College of
- College Park, Ga., city 8 mi. s.w. of  
Atlanta; pop. 14,535; Georgia Mil-  
itary Academy; map G-76
- College Park, Md., town 8 mi. n.e. of  
Washington, D.C.; pop. 11,170; map,  
insert M-116  
University of Maryland, picture  
M-121
- Collegiate Church of St. Peter, official  
name of Westminster Abbey.
- Collemola (1674-1701), an order  
of insects I-160a
- Colleoni (1674-1701), Bartolommeo  
(1400-1475), Italian soldier of for-  
tune, chiefly in service of Venice
- Verrocchio's statue S-78b, pictures  
E-444, S-78c
- Collie, a dog, color picture D-116a,  
table D-118a
- war service D-110a
- Collier, Jeremy (1650-1726), English  
clergyman and pamphleteer  
denounces theater D-133
- Collimator, of spectroscopy S-332,  
diagram S-333, picture S-333
- Collingswood, N. J., borough 3 mi. s.e.  
of Camden; suburban residence  
community; pop. 15,800; map N-165
- Collingwood, Cuthbert, Baron (1756-  
1810), British admiral; served at  
battle of Bunker Hill; distinguished  
himself at Trafalgar and assumed  
chief command at death of Nelson.
- Collingwood, Ontario, Canada, port on  
Georgian Bay about 75 mi. n.w. of  
Toronto; pop. 7412; large steel  
shipbuilding yards and dry docks;  
wire nails and fence, flour, lumber,  
canned goods; map C-72
- Collins, Joseph (1856-1950), neurolog-  
ist, writer, born Brookfield, Conn.;  
cofounder New York Neurological  
Institute ("Diseases of the Nervous  
System", "Sleep and the Sleepless",  
"The Doctor Looks at Literature").
- Collins, J. (Joseph) Lawton (born 1855),  
U. S. Army officer, born New Orleans;  
commander 25th Division 1942-44  
(Pacific theater); command- 7th  
Army Corps 1944-45 (prominent in  
breakthrough e. of St. Lo); director  
of information, War Department  
1945-47; deputy chief of staff 1947-  
48; vice chief of staff 1948-49;  
Army chief of staff 1949-50.
- Collins, Michael (1890-1922), Irish  
statesman; Sinn Féin minister of  
finance 1919-22; named chairman  
of provisional government of Irish  
Free State Jan. 14, 1922; killed from  
ambush August 22; I-230b
- Collins, Tom. See in Index Murphy,  
Joseph
- Collins, Wilkie (William) (1824-89),  
English novelist, known for re-  
dramatic mystery stories ("The  
Woman in White", "The Moon-  
stone"); E-361
- Collins, William (1721-89), English  
lyric poet ("The Passions", "Ode  
to Liberty", "Ode to Evening", "How  
Sleep the Brave"); in later years  
became insane.
- Collinsia, a genus of annual plants  
of the firewort family, native to  
western North America. Flowers  
solitary or in whorls, white through  
blue, one lip of the pea-shaped flower  
in contrasting color; blue-eyed  
Mary (C. corae) has bright blue lip  
with upper petals white or purplish.
- Collinsville, Ill., city 8 mi. n.e. of  
East St. Louis; pop. 11,862; map  
insert I-37
- Collision insurance, or upset insurance  
I-168b
- Coll Island, Hebrides H-327, map  
B-324
- Colliodi (1674-1701), C., pen name of  
Carlo Lorenzini (1821-50), born  
Bologna, Italy; author of "Pinoc-  
chio".  
"Pinocchio", picture L-212
- Colloidion C-384
- rayon uses R-81
- Colloidon cotton. See in Index Py-  
roxylin
- Colloidion process, photography P-255
- Colloid, in chemistry C-384-5, picture  
C-385
- clay C-340
- gelatin G-35
- protoplasm colloidal B-145-6
- rubber R-238
- Colloidal gold, a solution of gold par-  
ticles in a solvent or a solid C-385



- bird eggs B-173  
feathers F-47, B-177  
flowers F-168  
heredity, diagrams H-345  
leaves L-152-4
- Coloradas**, Mangas (died 1863), Apache (Mimbreno) Indian chief, leader in raids (1835-63) on whites in Ariz., N. M., and W. Tex. Raids began after white trappers and miners had killed members of his tribe to earn the bounties offered by Mexico for Apache scalps. Wounded and taken prisoner after battle of Apache Pass; killed by his guards
- Colorado** (*kôl-ô-ra-dô*), a Rocky Mt. state of U. S.; 104,247 sq. mi. pop. 1,325,089; cap. Denver; C-401-15, maps C-408-9, 402, 405, U-252, 296-7, pictures C-401, 411-14  
agriculture C-411-12, 404  
archaeological discoveries F-209  
bird, state C-403  
Capitol, State, picture C-414  
cities C-412, 404, map index C-407, 410. See also in Index names of cities  
Denver D-73  
cliff dwellers C-347-8, C-411  
climate C-402, 403; rainfall R-71  
communication C-403  
Continental Divide C-402  
counties, map index C-407  
education C-404  
elevation C-401, 403  
extent C-403  
Fact Summary C-403-6  
flag F-130, color picture F-126  
flower, state C-403, color picture F-384a  
forests, national and state, C-405, map C-405  
Geographic regions in which situated, maps U-250, U-296-7: Great Plains U-291-3; Rocky Mountains U-294-8; Western Basins and Plateaus U-299-301  
government C-403  
history C-414, 406; Pike's expedition F-38; Santa Fe Trail F-41; gold rush C-401, 414  
Industries C-412, 404  
irrigation C-411-12, I-251, pictures C-411  
land use C-403  
minerals C-412, 404  
motto C-403  
mountains C-411: Rocky Mountains R-173-6  
name, origin of, and nickname C-403  
natural features C-401-2, 411, 403  
natural resources C-402, 412, 403  
occupations C-403  
parks, monuments, and other areas C-404, 405, 411, maps C-405, N-18  
Black Canyon of the Gunnison N. M. N-30  
Colorado N. M. N-32  
Dinosaur N. M. N-33  
Great Sand Dunes N. M. N-35  
Mesa Verde N. P. N-36-7, pictures C-347-8  
Rocky Mountain N. P. N-38b, C-402, color picture N-24  
Shadow Mountain N. R. A. N-38d, C-411, C-414b  
Yucca House N. M. N-38d  
places of interest C-405, map C-405  
population C-402, 403  
products C-411, 412, 404  
rivers C-402, 403: Colorado River C-414a-b, map C-414b, pictures C-414a; Rio Grande R-155  
seal C-403  
song, state C-403  
trade, wholesale and retail C-404  
transportation C-412, 414, 403  
tree, state C-403  
woman suffrage W-184
- Colorado**, University of, at Boulder and Denver, Colo.; state control; opened 1877; arts and sciences, business, education, engineering, fine arts, home economics, journalism, law, medicine, music, nursing, pharmacy, physical education; graduate school  
Norlin Library, picture C-414
- Colorado Agricultural and Mechanical College**, at Fort Collins, Colo.; state control; founded 1870; opened 1879, agriculture, engineering, forestry and range management, home economics science and arts, veterinary medicine.
- Colorado beetle**, or potato bug P-392
- Colorado-Big Thompson project** C-414a-b, I-251, picture C-411
- Granby Reservoir** C-414a-b, maps C-408, C-414b
- Colorado Chiquito**, or Little Colorado, river in Arizona, one of chief tributaries of Colorado; map A-352
- Colorado College**, at Colorado Springs, Colo.; founded 1874; arts and sciences, fine arts, social sciences.
- Colorado National Monument** N-32, map N-18
- Colorado Plateau** U-299-300  
desert, map D-73a
- Colorado potato beetle** P-392
- Colorado River**, Argentina, rises in e. slopes of Andes, flows s.e. 620 mi. into Atlantic; maps A-331, S-253, 256
- Colorado River**, in western U. S.; flows 1470 miles through Colorado, Utah, Arizona, and Mexico; C-414a-15, maps C-414b, U-252, 297 pictures C-414a. See also in Index Grand Canyon; Hoover Dam  
California water supply from D-7, A-283, pictures A-283
- Colorado-Big Thompson project** I-251  
exotic river D-73a  
hydroelectric power, map W-70  
river system, map U-256
- Colorado River**, sometimes called Eastern Colorado, in Texas; flows 900 mi. s.e. into Gulf of Mexico through Matagorda Bay; maps U-278-9, 252-3, T-78
- Colorado River Aqueduct** A-283, map C-414b, pictures A-283
- Colorados**, political party in Uruguay U-407
- Colorado School of Mines**, at Golden, Colo.; state control; founded 1874; professional degrees in geological, geophysical, metallurgical, mining, petroleum, and petroleum-refining engineering; graduate school.
- Colorado Springs**, Colo., city at foot of Pikes Peak, about 65 mi. s. of Denver; pop. 45,472; altitude 5000 ft.; health and pleasure resort; center for farming, gold and coal mining; airplane equipment, furniture, advertising film, plastics, tools and dies, pottery; Garden of the Gods nearby; Colorado College; to be site of United States Air Force Academy; maps C-409, U-252
- Colorado spruce**, or blue spruce S-358
- Colorado State College of Education**, at Greeley, Colo.; state control; opened 1890; education; graduate school in education.
- Color blindness** E-462  
at birth C-240
- Colored**, Cape, a mixed race in South Africa S-243
- Color film**, in photography P-224-5
- Color organ**, or clavilux C-400
- Color photography** P-224-5, color pictures P-219, 220  
motion pictures M-418  
relations of colored lights and pigments C-398, 400, color picture C-399
- telephotography** T-45, picture T-45
- Color printing**. See in Index Printing, subhead color printing
- Color ring** C-392, color chart C-393
- Color television** T-54c-d, pictures T-54b, c
- Color wheels** C-398
- Colosseum** (*kôl-ô-sē'um*), or Coliseum, amphitheater in Rome R-197, map R-190, picture R-194
- Colossians**, Epistle to the, the 12th book of the New Testament, addressed by Saint Paul to the Christians at Colossae.
- Colos'sai of Memnon** M-169, E-280
- Colos'saus of Rhodes** S-105, R-144, picture S-105
- Colt**, Samuel (1814-62), firearm inventor, born Hartford, Conn.; laid in New York harbor (1843) first submarine telegraph cable  
revolver F-80, pictures F-77, I-137  
revolving cylinder rifle F-79
- Colt**, a young horse, specifically a young male horse H-428
- Colter**, John (1775?-1813), American explorer and trapper; member of Lewis and Clark Expedition (1803-6); joined Manuel Lisa's party and was sent (1807) as messenger to Indians south of the Yellowstone; traveling alone and on foot, was first white man to explore mountains of Wyoming and the Yellowstone National Park region.
- Colter**, a knife attachment used on plows to cut sod ahead of the plowshare and moldboard.
- Colton**, Calif., city 3 mi. s.w. of San Bernardino; pop. 14,465; railroad yards; fruit packing and shipping; cement, plumbing fixtures; map, inset C-35
- Coltsfoot**, a small herb (*Tussilago Farfara*) of the composite family used in medicine as remedy for coughs; has heads of yellow flowers, similar to dandelion.
- Coltsfoot**, sweet. See in Index Winter heliotrope
- Coluber** (*kôl'yû-bër*), a rat snake S-208
- Colum**, Inderic (*kôl'üm, päd'rik*) (born 1881), Irish writer, born Longford, Ireland; associated with Irish Theatre movement; his wife Mary Makaire Colum, Irish literary critic and author of "From These Roots"; in U.S. after 1914 ("Collected Poems"); books for children: "The Children of Odin" and "The Golden Fleece and the Heroes Who Lived before Achilles"; S-405, I-273, picture R-274
- Columba**, or Colm, Saint (521-597), Irish missionary to Picts and Scots, also called Columkille ("Colum of the churches"), for great number of churches and monasteries he founded; festival June 9
- Iona**, prophecy concerning H-327
- Columba**, a constellation, chart S-379
- Columbia** (from Columbus), the feminine personification of the U. S.
- Columbia**, Mo., city near center, 10 mi. n. of Missouri River; pop. 31,974; University of Missouri, Stephens College, Christian College; maps M-318, U-253  
university, picture M-322
- Columbia**, Pa., commercial and industrial borough about 26 mi. s.e. of Harrisburg on Susquehanna River, in tobacco region; pop. 11,993; silk, stoves, iron and steel products; founded by Quakers 1726; map P-133
- Columbia**, S. C., state capital, in center on Congaree River; pop. 86,914; C-415-415a, S-284, maps S-290-1, U-253, picture C-415
- Capitol**, State, picture S-284
- Sherman burns** S-294
- University of South Carolina** library, picture S-293

Key: cäpe, ät, fär, fäst, what, fäll; mä, yët, fërn, thäre; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, bīt, ryde, füll, bürn; out;





Comic strip N-190  
modernized fable F-3  
Comines, Comynnes, or Commynes (lō-mēn'), Philippe de (1445?-1511), French historian, born near Courtrai, Belgium; was adviser to Louis XI ('Mémoires').  
Cominform C-427. See also in Index Communist Information Bureau  
Comino (kō-mē'nō), Mediterranean island near Malta, about 1 sq mi; belongs to British colony of Malta.  
Comintern (lōm-in-tēr'n) term popularly applied to the Third International (Communist). See also in Index Third International, Antu-Comintern pact  
Comiskey (lō-mis'li), Charles Albert (1859-1931), baseball executive, born Chicago Ill. See also in Index Baseball Hall of Fame, table  
Comiskey Park, Chicago, baseball field C-233  
Comitadj, band of Macedonian revolutionists M-7  
Comitia curiata (lō-mish'i-a lū-ri-ā'-tā), Roman assembly R-182, D-64  
Comitia tribu'ta, Roman assembly R-184  
Comity of nations I-190  
Comma, punctuation P-436, 438  
Command and General Staff College, at Fort Leavenworth, Kan. A-385  
Commander, in U. S. Navy N-89, tables A-384, N-89  
insignia, picture U-237  
Commander in chief, U. S. Army A-382  
Commander in chief, U. S. Navy N-89  
Commander Islands, Russian komandorsk'ie, group of islands in Bering Sea, belong to Russia. map A-406  
fur seals S-88  
Commandments, The Ten, in Bible M-399  
Commaados (Portuguese meaning small bands of armed men), in Boer War guerrilla bands fighting against the English in World War II bands of British volunteers specially trained to raid inside enemy territory  
Commeliaceae. See in Index Spiderwort family  
'Commemoration Ode', by James Russell Lowell L-338  
Commencement, in education college and university U-402  
colonial colleges C-370  
Commendation, a condition of vassalage in feudal times F-61  
Commendation ribbon D-38  
Commensal, a living organism which forms partnership with another C-504. See also in Index Symbiosis  
Commerce. See in Index Trade  
Commerce, Chamber of. See in Index Chamber of Commerce  
Commerce, Department of, U. S. U-365-7, R-223, list U-359  
building, map W-30  
Bureau of the Census C-168-70, pictures C-168  
Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce U-366, T-166  
Bureau of Standards U-365-6, W-87  
Civil Aeronautics Board R-205, A-537; safety work S-5  
Coast and Geodetic Survey U-366, S-458; flag F-130, color picture F-125  
Foreign-Trade Zones Board U-366  
Inland Waterways Corporation U-366, M-310  
Office of Technical Service U-366  
Patent Office P-96, 97; trade-marks C-476  
secretary made Cabinet member T-4, C-3  
Weather Bureau W-82, D-152, U-366  
Commerce Court, a U. S. judicial body of five created by Congress in 1909 to enforce Interstate Commerce regulations; abolished in 1913.  
Commercial arbitration, among business organizations A-294  
Commercial art D-140d  
Commercial associations. See in Index Cooperative societies; Guild; Hand-seatic League  
boards of trade B-213-14, pictures B-213; grain exchange E-227-8; records U-365  
Renaissance period R-107-8  
Commercial bank E-226  
Commercial correspondence L-173-4  
Commercial geography. See in Index Trade; Transportation  
Commercial law, the body of legal rules and usages recognized as governing trade banking B-51-2  
bankruptcy B-46d-7  
boycott B-272  
corporation C-487, E-224  
license T-24b  
liens C-510  
monopolies M-359-60  
mortgages C-510, 508; chattel B-52; farm credit F-20  
negotiable instruments C-508-10  
notes C-508, 509, 510; rediscounts F-50  
origin F-12  
partnership E-224  
trusts T-201-2  
usury B-52  
Commercial paper C-509  
Commercial Revolution I-128-9, T-165, 166  
Commercial treaties T-166  
China C-279-80  
Commines, Philippe de. See in Index Comlmes  
Commisar (kōm-i-sār'), former name of minister in U. S. R. government.  
Commissioned officers ranks and pay in U. S. Air Force, Army, Marine Corps, and Navy compared, table A-384  
U. S. Air Force A-81-81a; insignia, pictures U-238, 239  
U. S. Army A-383-4, table A-380; insignia, pictures U-238; schools for A-385; uniforms U-235, picture U-236  
U. S. Coast Guard C-371  
U. S. Marine Corps M-96-7, table A-384  
U. S. Navy N-89; insignia U-239, pictures U-237; uniforms U-235, 239, picture U-236  
Commission government, in American cities M-450  
Committee clubs and societies P-89-90  
Congress of the U. S. C-435a-6, table C-435a  
Committee for Industrial Organization (C.I.O.) (official name after Nov. 1938 Congress of Industrial Organizations) L-71. See in Index Congress of Industrial Organizations  
Committee of Public Safety, French F-294, R-165  
Committee of the whole, in U. S. Congress C-436  
Committee on Public Information, U. S. (1917) W-235, W-148  
Committees of Correspondence, committees formed in American Colonies to spread information and propaganda L-154, R-124  
Commode, a piece of furniture, picture I-185  
Commodity Credit Corporation (CCC), U. S. R-205, A-69, U-365  
Commodity exchange. See in Index Board of trade  
Commodity Exchange Authority, U. S. B-214, U-365  
Commodity rates R-68  
Commodore, title used in U. S. Navy; rank was abolished 1899, but restored in 1943; table N-89  
Insignia, picture U-237  
Com'modus, Lucius Aelius Aurelius (A.D. 161-192), Roman emperor A.D. 180-192, son of Marcus Aurelius; brutal tyrant; assassinated.  
Common, Boston, famous park B-258, P-86a  
Common bond, pattern in brick laying, picture B-304  
Common carrier, a person or an association of persons who carry, by land, air, or water, people or goods for pay, and who take responsibility for loss or damage in transit I-198. See also in Index Public utilities  
Commoner, The, nickname of William Jennings Bryan.  
Commoner, The Great, nickname of William Pitt the elder C-198  
Common-fern family, or Polypodiaceae (pōl-i-pō-dī-ā'sē-ē), a family of plants including maidenhair fern, spleenworts, walking fern, stag-horn fern, and Christmas fern.  
Common ion effect, in chemistry C-219  
Common law, origin of, England E-361, L-139. See also in Index Law, table of legal terms  
Common-law marriage M-101  
Common Pleas, Court of, in England C-500  
Commons, John Rogers (1862-1944), economist, born Hollandsburg, Ohio; professor of political economy, University of Wisconsin 1904-72 ('Trade Unionism and Labor Problems')  
Commons, House of, in British Parliament P-87-9, C-4, picture P-88  
hat etiquette H-282  
Commons, House of, in Canadian Parliament C-92  
'Common School Journal', semi-monthly periodical edited (1838-43) by Horace Mann M-81  
Common scolops. See in Index Plant-hoppers  
'Common Sense', pamphlet by Thomas Paine P-190, D-32-3, A-226a, picture P-190  
Common stock S-398-398a  
Common suslik, animal. See in Index Suslik  
Common tern G-231, picture G-230  
Commonwealth, in England (1649-59) E-366-7  
Cromwell, Protector C-516-17  
Milton supports M-258  
Commonwealth Avenue, Boston B-258  
Commonwealth Fund, established 1918 by gift of Mrs. Stephen V. Harkness for general welfare of mankind; appropriations for health and medical activities, war relief, child welfare, and education.  
Commonwealth of Australia. See in Index Australia  
Commonwealth of Nations B-320. See also in Index British Commonwealth and Empire  
Communal living experiments S-215-16. See also in Index Amana Society; Brook Farm; New Harmony, Ind.; Oneida Community  
Commune, in Belgium B-115  
Commune, in France, the smallest unit of government, corresponding to the township in U. S.; governed by a mayor and a municipal assembly.  
Commune of Paris (1792), revolutionary city government of Paris, responsible for September massacres.  
Commune of Paris (1871) F-278  
Commune of Paris (1871) F-278  
Communication C-421-5, pictures C-421-49, Reference Outline C-421-5. See also Fact Summary with each state article; also in Index chief topics below; and names of countries, states, and provinces, subhead communication  
alphabet, development A-176-9, pictures A-176-7, 179, table A-178

French / English

u=French u German u dem so thin then u=French

- I-155, diagram I-152, pictures E-461, I-155  
ant A-254  
dragonfly D-127  
drone bee B-96  
Compound fracture, first aid F-96b  
Compound interest P-144b-6, graph G-162, table P-145  
Compound leaves L-154  
box elder M-82  
Compound microscope M-232, 235  
Compound sentence S-101  
Compound steam engines S-390  
Compress, cloth pad, sometimes medicated, applied to cause pressure wound treatment F-96b  
Compressed air A-73, 74, 76. See also in *Index* Pneumatic appliances  
Compressed gases G-28, diagram G-29  
Compressed yeast Y-337  
Compression refrigeration R-94  
Compression wave, sound S-237, diagram S-237  
Compromise of 1850 (U. S. history) C-429-30  
Calhoun's last debate C-25  
Clay author of C-429-30  
Fillmore supports F-67  
fugitive slave provision C-332  
Pierce president P-251-2  
Taylor president T-28  
Webster supports C-430  
Comptosylipidae (*kômp-sôth-lip'tê-dô*), the wood-warbler family W-7  
Compton, Arthur H. (olly) (born 1892), physicist, born Wooster, Ohio; professor of physics, University of Chicago, 1923-45, chancellor of Washington University, St. Louis, Mo., 1945-53, after 1953 distinguished service professor of natural philosophy, with Charles Thomson Rees Wilson shared Nobel prize (1927) for discoveries in X rays and radioactivity, and work on cosmic rays P-235  
atomic-power project, table A-464  
Compton effect R-30f, pictures R-30f  
Compton, Frank E. (bert) (1874-1950), publisher, born Wisconsin Rapids, Wis.; a pioneer in planning and distributing reference books for home and school use; identified with educational publications since 1894: R-88e  
Compton, Karl T. (aylor) (1887-1954), physicist, brother of Arthur H.; born Wooster, Ohio; instructor in chemistry, College of Wooster 1909-10, in physics, Reed College 1913-15; professor of physics Princeton University 1915-30; president, Massachusetts Institute of Technology 1930-48; chairman Research and Development Board of National Military Establishment (Department of Defense) 1948-49; chairman of the Corporation of Massachusetts Institute of Technology after 1948.  
Compton, Calif., city 10 mi. s. of Los Angeles in oil section; pop. 47,991; oil tools, beaters, roofing, aluminum products; Compton District Junior College; map, inset C-35  
Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia' R-88c  
Comptroller A-7  
Comptroller general, United States U-368  
Comptroller of the Currency, United States U-360  
Compulsory education S-57  
Australia A-482  
Central America C-174  
Chile C-256  
Denmark D-70  
Japan J-311  
New Zealand N-228  
Norway N-304a  
Panama, Republic of P-52  
Russia R-274  
Thailand (Siam) S-170  
United States E-258  
Venezuela V-442  
Compulsory service, in army. See in *Index* Conscription  
Compurgation, trial by J-367  
Computing devices. See in *Index* Calculating machines and devices  
Comstock, Ada Louise (born 1876), educator, born Moorhead, Minn.; professor of rhetoric and dean of women, University of Minnesota; dean Smith College 1912-23; president Radcliffe College 1923-43.  
Comstock, Anna Botsford (1854-1930), naturalist and wood engraver, born Otto N. Y.; professor of nature study, Cornell University ('The Pet Book'; 'Handbook of Nature-Study'; with husband, John Henry Comstock, 'How to Know the Butterflies' and 'A Manual on the Study of Insects').  
Comstock, Anthony (1844-1915), crusader against vice, born New Canaan, Conn.; as secretary of the New York Society for Suppression of Vice and postoffice inspector became prominent for attacks against books pictures, etc.  
Comstock, John Henry (1849-1931), entomologist, born Janesville, Wis.; professor of entomology and general invertebrate zoology, Cornell University ('Introduction to Entomology'; 'The Spider Book').  
Comstock Lade N-126, E-458b  
discovery S-186, 188  
Comtat Venaissin (*kôn-tâ vên-nâ-sân*), historic French province, map F-270  
Comte (*kônt*), Auguste (1798-1857), French philosopher, founder of Positivist school of philosophy. See also in *Index* Positivism  
founder of sociology S-222  
quoted F-286  
Comus (*kô'mûs*), in late Greek mythology, god of revelry; in Milton's poetic masque, enchanter, son of Circe, who, like her, offers a brutalizing draft to travelers  
Conant (*kô'nânt*), James Bryant (born 1893), educator, diplomat, and chemist, born Rochester, Mass.; professor of organic chemistry Harvard University 1929-33, president 1933-53; chairman National Defense Research Committee 1941-46; U.S. high commissioner for Germany 1953-55; became ambassador to West Germany 1955 ('Education in a Divided World'; 'Science and Common Sense'; 'Modern Science and Modern Man')  
atomic-power project, table A-464  
quoted I-138  
Conbrío. See in *Index* Music, table of musical terms and forms  
Concave lens L-169, diagram L-169  
reducing glass, diagram L-168  
spectacles S-330  
Concave mirror M-295  
Concentration  
memorizing requires M-170  
study requires S-433  
Concentration camps  
Nazi G-99  
Russia R-270  
Concepción (*kôn-sép-sê-yôn'*), Chile, city on Bio-Bio River, 6 mi. from Bay of Concepción; pop. 119,887; trade center for farm region; several times destroyed by earthquake: C-254, maps C-250, S-253  
Concepción (Villa Concepción), Paraguay, port on Paraguay River; pop. 18,178; hides, Paraguay tea, timber: map S-253  
Concertina, musical wind instrument consisting of two hexagonal keyboards connected by bellows similar to that of accordion.  
reed used R-88a  
Concerto (*kôn-chér'tô* or *kôn-súr'tô*), in music M-462. See also in *Index* Music, table of musical terms and forms  
Concert of Europe E-433, 434  
Concerto grosso (a 'large' or 'great' concerto), in music, a concerto featuring a group of solo instruments, accompanied by orchestra; famous examples: the six Brandeburg Concertos of Bach.  
Concert pitch, in music M-462b  
Concession, a grant of land or property  
China C-279-80; Shanghai S-133  
evolution of a colony C-390  
Conch (*kônk* or *kônch*), a shell S-139b  
Cnacha (*kông'ka*), in anatomy, a spiral structure resembling a shell nasal concha S-192. See also in *Index* Turbinate bones  
Conchos (*kôn'chôs*) River, in n. Mexico, flows 300 mi. to Río Grande; valley populous and well cultivated: maps M-189, 194  
Conciliation, in industry L-74, A-294, 295. See also in *Index* Arbitration, industrial  
Conciliation Service, U.S. A-295  
Conciliation with the Colonies', Burke's speech on B-358  
Concellum plebis (*kôn-sil'i-um plê'b-is*), assembly in ancient Rome R-183  
Conclusion, in geometry G-62  
Concord, Mass., town 20 mi. n.w. of Boston; many literary and historical associations; pop. of township, 8623: C-430, map, inset M-132  
battle of L-178, picture C-430  
Minute Man', statue L-178, F-284  
Old Manse, picture M-130  
Orchard House, picture M-130  
Sleepy Hollow Cemetery, picture M-130  
Concord, N. H., capital of state, on Merrimack River; pop. 27,953  
C-430, N-154, maps N-151, U-253  
Capitol, State, picture N-153  
Concord, N. C., industrial city 20 mi. n.e. of Charlotte in rich farming country; pop. 16,486; cotton goods, hosiery, lumber: map N-274  
Concordat, a type of treaty T-178  
French (1801) N-9  
Lateran Treaty with Italy (1929) I-273, P-277  
Concordat of Worms (1122) H-335  
Concord College, at Athens, W. Va.; state control; founded 1873; arts and sciences, education, music, business, vocational home economics.  
Concord grape G-155  
'Concord Hymn', poem by Emerson A-266  
Concordia, Roman goddess of concord and peace; her symbols, two hands joined and two serpents entwined about a herald's staff.  
Concordia College, at Moorhead, Minn.; Lutheran; founded 1891; arts and sciences.  
Concord stagecoach E-458c, pictures E-458b  
Concrete, a building material C-431-431b, pictures C-431-431b  
building construction B-344, C-17, C-431a-b, pictures B-344, 346a, C-431a  
cement C-164-7, pictures C-164-6  
dams D-10, 11-11b, diagrams D-8-9, 11a-b, pictures D-8-11  
fire resistance B-344  
flooring, in houses B-346  
home building B-345  
massive, in building B-345  
nail, concrete, picture N-1  
precast C-431, pictures C-431a, b  
prestressed C-431a: bridge construction, picture C-431

Key: câpe, ât, fâr, fâst, what, fâll; mē, yēt, fēr, thère; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dē; cūrē, būt, rūdē, fūll, būrē; out;

## CONCRETE

reinforced W 193 C 431a picture  
B 319a bridge construction B 306  
road C 431b pict res H 158 I  
Concrete wall picture N 1  
Concretions in geology I 189  
Confluence (kô: kô bl'ô) a sys-  
tem related to polygamy F 189  
Candé (kô-d'è) Louis I de Bourbon  
prince of (1530-69) French gen-  
eral and Huguenot leader C 362  
Candé Louis II de Bueil on picture of  
(1621-86) called The Great C 3  
dô French general w n victory  
of Poissy 1643 which enl espan  
ish and began French military  
dominance  
Condensation of lead by cities C 235  
Condensation formal n of liq  
from gas occurs when mole ulen  
substance tending to be liq  
longer are hot enough to keep their  
separated in gaseous state F 456  
M 142b L 263 picture M 142 I  
water vapor clouds C 358 Ar  
D 77 fog F 152 rain H 70 water  
cycle W 61 2 diagrams W 8  
C 453  
Condensed milk table M 232  
Condense electrical a devel o for el  
ing electric charge L 306 pict re  
E 306 F 34  
by pass R 89 diagram R 35  
Leyden jar L 307  
rad o L 34-3 35 grid R 57 sym  
for pict re L 40  
variables 1 34 39 diagram R 3  
symbol for pictures F 40  
Condense steam S 390 W 75 di-  
gram W 75  
Condillac (kô: dé ynk) filen  
Bosset de (1715-81) French phi-  
losopher influenced by Engh  
philosopher John Locke in turn  
influenced French philosophy and  
psychology treated all human kno-  
ledge and faculties to sensation  
Condorco S 339-41 pict res S 3  
1 sees also in Index Spices &  
condiments  
Conditional sale in law sn agree-  
ment for the sale of goods under wh  
the possession of the goods is  
delivered at once to the buyer and  
property in the goods is to be tra-  
nsferred to the buyer at a future t  
upon the payment of all or part  
the price which is usually lo-  
paid in installments  
Coast lined reflexes R 20  
Experimental study pict re F 41  
Conditioning ale Sea in Index  
conditioning  
Condensation system of joint in-  
terment by two powers seen in  
Anglo Egyptian rule of the Su  
Anglo French rule of New Hebr  
lands  
Condoo Alters Edwin (Eddie) (b  
1905) jazz guitarist born G  
land Ind directed hol J  
concerts in New York City  
1942 author "We Called It Jazz"  
Condan Edward Thier (born 19  
physicist born Alamogordo N  
Associate director Westingh  
Research Laboratories 1937-45  
researcher radar and on atomic  
World War II director Nat  
Bureau of Standards 1945-51  
ing Glass research director 195  
Condor a gold coin of South A  
frica historical value of Col  
condor about 10 pesos of C  
condor about "5 sucree of  
2 condor piece about 70 pesos  
Condor large vulture C 431b-2  
ture C 432  
altitude range p picture Z 368  
Andean C 431b 432

California B 193 C 4317 432 picture  
C 432 color pict c B 178  
Can forest (kô dôt sê) Marco Jean  
Carlat Marcola de (1763-94)  
French mathematician philosopher  
and revolutionist as member of  
Legislative Assembly and founda-  
tion of French educational system  
Condellier (kôn dêt pî rî) [plural  
of condottieri] leaders of me-  
renary forces of Italy in 13th to 15th  
centuries  
Condottieri Band See i Index  
I four ths  
Con l et See io foler Behavior hu-  
man Eiliqueite Habit Psycho-  
logy Will  
Con lation of heat H 318 H 321  
L 344a  
Con ductility electrical See in Index  
F article con uctors  
Condyle (kôn dil) rounded head of a  
bone which fits into the socket of  
another bone to form a joint  
Con ly e flat M 77  
Con in geometry diagram G 81  
area and Volume M 152 diagram  
M 152  
Con in Meyer G 199  
cone of c lora F 189  
balism fir F 72 pic r F 72  
pne P 250 259 adopted by Main  
es slide flower M 47 color pict  
S 346a  
Co e (v) leano v 519 920 diagr n  
519 19  
Case bearing trees See in Index Cor-  
lifers  
Candelabra common name applied to  
genus E dbeck especially for the  
golden globe and to genus Ech-  
inopsis See also in Ex Lepach-  
e co See also in Ex 662  
Eone of relina E 459 46 462  
gro t E 460  
Co estoga (kô zô lopô) Indian  
also called Moskehanna. It is be-  
lieved to be a rock formerly living  
the Sanguineans and the branches  
Co estoga wasco R 160 F 60  
pict c T 171 S e also in I d  
Covered wagon  
Co ey See i lex Cony  
Coner lalel C 432 mop B 329 2  
For C 432  
Confectioery C 415 12 p of c  
C 110 12 See loo in Index Cand-  
Confederate Congress See i lex  
Congress of the Confederates to Sta-  
Confederal confederation C 433  
Confederale States of Amer-  
C 433-433B map C 333 310 c  
C 433a S See also i lex C  
C 433a S American Reconstruct-  
War American  
period Succession  
Alabama A 128 picture A 128  
cons Jefferson D 22 S  
Davis a attitude A 13 Trent at  
Enked a attitude A 13 Trent at  
T 18a  
Hegs F 130d pic area F 130d c  
pictures P 128  
Georgia G 81  
government C 433  
Houston loyal to Un on H 439  
Lee L 154-T  
Lincoln a attitude L-347 50  
Louisiana L 354  
monry C 433a pict re M 358  
Monagony first exp cal C 433  
lure A 129 Confederat Confed-  
in sem on pict re C 433a  
North Carol na N 290  
President Davis a nat C 433  
Richmond capital C 433 R  
Capitol, pict re C 433a  
Senard prevents foreign recogni-  
S 109  
South Carol na S 384  
Stephens A H S 381  
Confederate Veterans a United States  
patriot organ nation composed  
male descendants of Confederate

French naval (Jean) sh.-1

Civil War veterans founded 1896  
at Richmond Va to preserve the  
memories of Confederate veterans  
and aid their widows and orphans  
*Confederate Artillery of A 395-6*  
See also in Index Articles of Con  
federation  
Confederation Day Canada See in  
Index Dominion Day  
Confederals in Coats C 89  
Confess es n football P 220 30  
Confession service s telephone serv co  
connecting two or more offices  
Confirm s the rite of admitting to  
membership in a religious body  
church sacrament C 368  
Confirmation of the Charles In  
English history E 284  
Conformation in law See in Index  
Law table of legal terms  
Conformal or orthomorphie map  
projected M 45  
Congenitism commonly called a re  
ligion system of eblis taught by  
Confusius C 433b C 874 P 101  
Congress (kongress) S 1 478  
or Chinese philosopher founder  
of Confucianism C 433b  
Confucius Canon L 276 9  
Cons locon See I Jexilus o table  
of music terms and forms  
Congreze (kongrode) River S C  
formed 1 mi n v of Columbia by  
junction of Saluda and Broad  
rivers flows se 60 mi joining  
Waltere to form Santee maps  
S 235 230-1  
Congo ee] E 268  
enemy of Oculopus C 354  
Conglomerate rock of pooding slane  
cementary rock composed  
of pebbles cemented together by limu  
carbonate by an oxide of iron or  
a miller substance then pebbles are  
sharp and angular instead of  
rounded R 188 182 d agrom G 51  
Congo trench See in Index French  
Equatorial Afr ca  
Congo buffalo B 341  
Congo el Congo snake or blind el  
an amphibian of the family Amphi  
midiae genus Amph n s Amph  
n n n s s species found in s s  
US has long eel like body two  
pairs of almost vestigial legs and  
little eyes  
Congo Free State See in Index Bel  
gian Congo  
Congo River Africa 4th longest river  
in world length 3000 ml C 434-  
434 f P res C 434-434 f  
41 s P res C 434-434 f climate  
basin barrier C 434 b  
C 434 C 350 how the people live  
C 434-434 pic res C 434 431  
nervils C 434 products C 434  
tactics Ny T 208-3  
Congo s C 434-d  
length comparative See in Index  
P verse table  
Stanley's explorations R 368 369  
transporation C 434d steamboat  
picul res P 53  
Congo s sh See I Jexilus Congo el  
Congo state See I Jex Belian  
Congo  
Congregationalism a religion de  
nomination maintaining the right  
of each individual church to self  
government and its own style  
management of doctrine in 1931 Congrega  
tional Churches un ed with the  
Christian Church of the Congrega  
tional and Christian Churches For  
n en herish P see in Index Religion  
table  
Amer can Colonies C 363  
orthodox P 443  
Congregation of the Holy Office I 151  
Congo f (in azure) s German cultural ch

- Congregation** of Missionary Priests of St. Paul the Apostle. *See in Index* Paulist Fathers
- Congregation**, Roman, administrative commissions to aid pope P-65-6
- 'Congre-s'**, U S warship, sunk by *Merrimac* M-347
- Congress**, Continental. *See in Index* Continental Congress
- Congress**, Library of. *See in Index* Library of Congress
- Congress** Hall, Philadelphia P-189
- Congressional Medal of Honor**, United States D-38, color picture D-41
- Congressional Record** C-436
- Congressional Union**, woman suffrage organization W-185
- Congressman** at large C-435
- Congress** of Berlin. *See in Index* Berlin, Congress of
- Congress of Industrial Organizations** (C.I.O.), a federation of industrial labor unions in U.S. and Canada Headquarters Washington D.C., president, Walter P. Reuther; L-71-2
- formation** under New Deal R-209
- international affiliation** L-75
- membership** L-72
- Political Action Committee** L-75
- Congress** of Soviets, Russia. *See in Index* Supreme Soviet
- Congress of the Confederate States** C-433
- conscription** C-333, 433n
- in session** at Montgomery, Ala. C-433a
- Congress of the United States**, the legislative branch of the government composed of Senate and House of Representatives C-435-6, pictures C-435, 435b
- apportionment** of representatives C-435
- Articles of Confederation** A-395-6
- Capitol pictures** W-29, 31, U-356; first Capitol, picture U-372
- committees** C-435a-6, table C-435a
- constitution** provides U-349-51
- House of Representatives** C-435-6. *See also in Index* Representatives, House of
- Impeachment** I-49, U-352
- "lame duck"** amendment H-421; text U-355
- laws**, how made C-435a, 436, pictures C-435b
- political party** in control of, table C-435a
- powers** C-435-435a, U-344, 350-1, 353, 354-5
- president** and U-356, P-408a, C-435, 436, pictures C-435b
- Senate** C-435-6. *See also in Index* Senate, U. S.
- territorial delegates** H-278
- territories** U-353
- Congress of Vienna**. *See in Index* Vienna, Congress of
- Con'greve**, William (1670-1729). English dramatist, one of greatest writers of comedy; plots are intricate, characters often gross and heartless, but brilliant (comedy: 'The Double-Dealer', 'Love for Love', 'The Way of the World'; tragedy: 'The Mourning Bride') D-133
- Congreve**, Sir William (1772-1828), English artilleryist
- rocket** R-171-2
- Conicoidia**, a perennial plant (*Conicoidia pugioniformis*) of the carpetweed family, native to South Africa; leaves alternate, long, narrow, 3-sided, soft; flowers large, yellow, in clusters.
- Conic projection**, of maps M-85
- Conic sections**, curves formed by cutting a right circular cone with a plane having one axis at right angles to a perpendicular from the vertex to the base. Cutting parallel to the base gives a circle; cutting parallel to a side of the cone gives a parabola; cutting between these positions gives an ellipse. If the plane is parallel to the perpendicular from vertex to base but not through the vertex, the curve is a hyperbola. Discovered by Menacchmus (4th century B.C.); properties elaborated by Apollonius and Archimedes. *See also in Index* the curves named above
- Con'ifers**, cone-bearing trees T-178, F-186
- classification** T-185, F-186, P-269, 295-6, color picture P-289
- geologic history** G-59, T-184
- not all evergreens** E-450
- world distribution** T-184
- Conjugation**, of verbs V-449-50
- Conjunction**, in astronomy, the position in which two heavenly bodies appear nearest to each other.
- Conjunctin**, in grammar C-436, G-148-9, table G-148
- Conjunctive**, of eye E-459
- Conjunctive adverb** A-23, C-436
- Conjunctive pronoun** P-417
- Conjuring** M-37-40. *See also in Index* Magic
- Conklin**, Edwin Grant (1863-1932), biologist born Waldo, Ohio; professor biology Princeton University 1908-33; emeritus after 1933; did important work in embryology and cytology and in mechanism of heredity and evolution.
- Conkling**, Grace Walcott Hinzard (born 1878), poet, born New York City; associate professor of English at Smith College; instructed daughter Hilda whose 'Poems by a Little Girl' won wide praise ('Afternoons of April')
- Conkling**, Roscoe (1829-88), political leader, born Albany, N. Y.; strong opponent of civil service reform; with T. C. Platt resigned U. S. Senate seat as protest against President Garfield's appointment in 1881 of a political enemy; failed to obtain the "vindication" of re-election A-390
- Conn**, Herbert William (1859-1917), zoologist and bacteriologist, born Fitchburg, Mass.; considered authority on bacteriology of dairy products.
- Connaught** (kō'nāt), Arthur, duke of (1850-1942), English prince, 3d son of Queen Victoria; military officer, commander in chief in Ireland and in Mediterranean; governor general of Canada 1911-16; father of Lady Patricia Ramsay ('Princess Pat').
- Connaught**, also Connaught, province of W. Ireland; area 6611 sq. mi.; pop. 471,895; map I-227
- Conneaut** (kō'nē-āt), Ohio, iron ore and coal port in extreme n.e. on Conneaut Creek, 2 mi. from Lake Erie; pop. 10,230; tin cans, machine tools, leather, molding sand; map O-356
- Connecticut** (kō-nē'ti-kūt), southernmost of New England states; 5009 sq. mi.; pop. 2,007,280; cap. Hartford. C-437-51, maps C-444-5, 438, 441, U-253, 259, pictures C-443, 437, 446-50
- agriculture** C-438, 447, 440
- bird** C-439
- Capitol**, State, picture C-448
- cities** C-438, 441, 448, map index C-443, 446. *See also in Index* names of cities
- Bridgeport** B-312
- Hartford** H-279, picture C-437
- New Haven** N-154
- Waterbury** W-65
- climate** C-438, 439
- communication** C-439
- counties**, map index C-443
- education** C-449, 440
- elevation** C-439
- extent** C-439
- Fact Summary** C-439-42
- fisheries** C-447, 440
- flag** F-130, color picture F-126
- flower**, state C-439
- forests** C-447; state C-441, map C-441
- geographic region** in which situated, maps U-250, 259; New England U-258-63
- government** C-439
- history** C-449-51, 442
- early settlements** C-449; New Haven N-154
- Péquet War** I-110a
- government**, colonial C-450
- Charter Oak** C-450, picture C-450
- western land claims** C-451
- Hartford Convention** W-14
- industries** C-437-8, 440
- land use** C-439
- minerals** C-447
- motto** C-439
- name**, origin of, and nickname C-437, 439
- natural features** C-438, 439
- natural resources** C-438, 439
- occupations** C-439
- parks and other areas** C-440, 441, map C-441
- people** C-448-9
- places of interest** C-441, 448, map C-441
- population** C-439, 449
- products** C-437-8, 440
- rivers** C-438, 439
- scal** C-439
- trade**, wholesale and retail C-440
- transportation** C-437, 439; parkways C-438, picture C-443
- tree** C-439
- Connecticut University** of, at Storrs. Conn.; state control; founded 1881; arts and sciences, agriculture, business administration, education, engineering, home economics, insurance, law, nursing, pharmacy, physical education, physical therapy, social work; graduate school Wilbur L. Cross Library, picture C-448
- Connecticut College for Women**, at New London, Conn.; chartered 1911, opened 1915; arts and sciences, music.
- Connecticut Compromise**, in U. S. Constitution U-343
- Connecticut River**, largest stream in New England; rises in n. New Hampshire, flows s., forming boundary between Vermont and New Hampshire; crosses Massachusetts and Connecticut to Long Island Sound; N-144, maps C-438, 445, M-124, 132, U-259, picture C-447
- flood** F-143
- Hartford** on H-279
- valley** C-438, picture C-447
- Connecticut State Society for Mental Hygiene** M-173
- 'Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court**, A', by Mark Twain T-225
- Connellsville**, Pa., city 36 mi. s.e. of Pittsburgh on Youghiogheny River; pop. 13,293; center of coal and coke regions; metal plants, silk mill, glass and macaroni factories; railroad shops; map P-132
- Connely**, Marc (born 1890), dramatist, born McKeesport, Pa.; began as reporter on *Pittsburgh Sun*; with George Kaufman wrote 'Dulce', 'Beggar on Horseback'; Pulitzer prize (1930) for 'Green Pastures', a religious Negro play.
- Connemara** (kō-nē-mā'rā), Ireland, a coastal district of w. County Galway; mountains contain rich mineral deposits; famed for marble.

Key: cāpe, āt, fūr, fāst, whqt, fqlt; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; īce, bīt; rōw, wōn, lōr, nōt, dg; cūre, būt, rŭde, fŭll, būrn; out;



John Locke S-264  
Magna Carta's Influence M-41  
rigid vs flexible C-457  
state (U. S.) S-384b-5, A-395:  
counties, relation to C-498  
Constitutional Act of 1791, or Canada  
Act C-96, 97  
Constitutional Convention, U.S. (1787)  
U-342-3  
Congress of the U.S. C-343-4, 345  
Independence Hall Philadelphia  
U-342, picture U-343  
leaders U-342, V-490  
limited veto power given president  
V-466b  
signing Constitution, picture U-341  
Washington presides W-22  
Constitutional courts, U. S. C-500  
Constitutional law, defined L-139  
Constitutional monarchy G-146, D-65  
Constitutional Union party, in U. S.  
P-359  
electoral vote, chart P-408b-9  
Constitution Day  
Denmark F-59  
United States (September 17) F-57  
Constitution State (Connecticut) C-437  
Construction Bottolons. See in Index  
Seabees  
Constructive play P-316  
Con'sul, Roman magistrate R-182  
Consular service, U. S. D-93, U-358-9  
exporters advised by I-195  
Foreign Service Institute U-358-9  
immigration restricted by I-48  
Consulate, French N-8  
Consulting engineer E-345  
'Consumer Price Index' L-279, S-385h,  
graph S-385h  
wage contracts tied to I-145  
Consumer problems. See also in Index  
Home economics  
advertising A-23-7, picture A-25  
bank deposit protection F-49  
boycott weapon B-272  
budgets, household H-410, T-126  
Bureau of Standards, U. S. U-365-6,  
W-87, S-6  
chain stores C-181-2  
co-operatives C-469-72  
cost of living L-279, graph L-279  
credit: building and loan associations  
B-342; credit unions B-53; personal  
loans B-52  
fabrics, what buyer should know F-9  
Federal Trade Commission F-50  
food standards P-442-3; bread B-298;  
canning F-221; diet requirements  
F-216-17, H-302-3, chart F-211;  
eggs, color pictures E-268b; meat  
M-154, picture M-156a; milk  
M-250; oleomargarine O-378  
fraud, fight against A-25 F-50  
installment buying I-165-6, T-126  
insurance I-166-70, pictures I-166,  
168-168a, 169  
marketing E-227-8  
pure food, drugs, and cosmetics  
P-442-3  
silk, quality S-185  
social income, distribution of E-228-9  
taxation T-24-5, chart T-24a  
thrift T-125-6  
Wool Products Labeling Act W-193  
Consumers' League. See in Index  
National Consumers' League  
Contact. See in Index Aviation, table  
of terms  
Contact bed, a sewage filter S-110  
Contact lens, for eye S-330  
Contagious diseases. See in Index  
Disease; Infectious diseases  
'Contemporary,' as applied to furni-  
ture I-181-2, pictures F-320, I-176  
Contempt of court. See in Index Law,  
table of legal terms  
Contention, in debating D-27  
Continental Air Command, U.S. Air  
Force A-80  
Continental Association, in American  
Colonies R-124

Continental climate C-349-50  
Canada C-77-8  
Russia R-258  
United States U-247  
Continental Code. See in Index Inter-  
national code  
Continental Congress (U. S.), First  
R-124, 125  
Carpenter's Hall P-189  
leaders: John Adams A-13; Samuel  
Adams A-17; Patrick Henry  
H-340; Washington W-20  
opening session, picture U-371  
Continental Congress (U. S.), Second,  
met Philadelphia May 10, 1775; for  
short period sat at York, Pa., and  
Baltimore; ended 1781 with organi-  
zation of new government under  
Constitution: R-126, 128, A-395  
Declaration of Independence D-33,  
picture R-120  
leaders Samuel Adams A-17;  
Franklin F-280b; Hancock H-255;  
Jefferson J-332a, D-33; R. H. Lee  
L-154; Morris M-395; Washington  
W-20  
veterans' benefits provided for V-466

## AREA OF CONTINENTS

NAME	AREA IN Sq. Mi.
Africa	11,600,000
Antarctica	
between 5,000,000 and 6,000,000	
Asia	17,200,000
Australia	2,948,366
Europe	3,900,000
North America....	9,400,000
South America	
between 7,200,000 and 7,310,800	

Continental Divide, or Great Divide,  
watershed in Rocky Mt. region be-  
tween streams flowing toward Atlan-  
tic and those flowing toward Pac-  
ific: C-255, maps C-414b, M-325a  
Colorado C-402, maps C-402, 408  
Montana M-366, maps M-374, 367  
New Mexico, maps N-178-9, 171  
Wyoming W-315, maps W-322, Y-338  
Continental drift theory E-194  
Continental flag (1775-77) F-130c,  
color picture F-128  
Continental money M-338, R-126  
Continental shelf E-178, O-332  
petroleum supply P-181; tidelands  
oil bill (1953), U.S. E-287c  
Continental system, of Napoleon I  
N-10, W-11, 12  
Continents, the great land masses of  
the globe, in modern geography  
commonly reckoned as 7. For area  
of continents, see table above  
compared N-247  
continental shelf E-178, O-332  
greatest height above sea level, dia-  
gram E-173  
land bridges between. See in Index  
Geology, subhead land bridges  
between continents  
origin of E-193-4  
Contino (also Contini), Antonio  
(1566-1600), Italian architect;  
noted for bridges; designed Bridge  
of Sighs in Venice about 1595.  
Continuation schools S-58, E-255  
Continuity, or script  
motion pictures M-413  
radio R-48  
Continuous spectrum, of light S-331  
Continuous voyage, in international  
law I-191  
Continuous wave, in radio R-34, 36  
Contour map M-89  
Contour plowing D-154, pictures  
A-69, C-452d, E-217  
Contraband of war I-191  
Contrabass. See in Index Double bass  
Contrabassoon, a musical instrument  
W-189, picture M-471

Contract, in law. See also in Index  
Law, table of legal terms  
negotiable C-509  
Contractor, clothing industry G-22  
Contralto, or alto, in music, the lowest  
female voice, diagram M-468b  
Contrapositive theorems, in geometry  
G-63-4  
Controller, in streetcars S-431  
Conundrums R-153  
Convection  
heat H-318, 321, E-344b  
meteorology W-79  
Convector, in steam or hot-water heat-  
ing H-325  
Convent, an establishment for women  
devoted to the religious life  
Middle Ages M-358  
Convention, a form of treaty T-177  
Convention, in U. S. politics P-357-8,  
pictures P-358, 359. For national  
presidential conventions, see table  
on next page  
Chicago, convention city C-233  
Progressives attack system T-4  
Convention, The National, French as-  
sembly (1792-95) F-294  
Louis XVI condemned by L-321  
Napoleon saves N-7  
Robespierre R-163  
Convention and symbol, in map  
making M-91-91b, map M-91b,  
table M-91a  
Convention of Genoa, United Nations  
I-191, U-242  
Conversation C-458-61, picture C-459  
bibliography C-461  
business interview C-461  
good talker, essentials C-459  
masters of the art C-458  
strangers, how to talk with C-460-1  
talking differentiated C-458-9  
telephone etiquette C-461  
what to talk about C-460  
Converse, Frederick S. (1871-1940),  
composer, born Newton, Mass. ('The  
Pipes of Desire', opera; 'Fliver Ten  
Million', fantasy) M-466  
Converse College, at Spartanburg,  
S. C.; for women; founded 1889;  
arts and sciences; coeducational in  
music.  
Converse theorems, in geometry G-63  
Converter, in smelting C-474, 1-243  
Converter, rotary, or rotary trans-  
former, for changing alternating  
current to direct, or vice versa  
street railway systems S-431  
Convertible, automobile A-502  
Convertiplane. See in Index Aviation,  
table of terms  
Convex lens L-169, diagrams L-166,  
169  
in spectacles S-330  
Convex mirror S-295  
Coconvolutions, of brain B-280  
Convolvaceae (kón-vól-vá-lá's-ē-ē), a  
large botanical family—the  
convolvulus or morning-glory family—  
of chiefly twining or trailing herbs  
with large showy flowers; most  
abundant in tropics of Asia and  
America; several species, including  
morning-glory, cypress vine, and  
bindweed, are cultivated for orna-  
mental purposes, another species,  
the sweet potato, for edible roots.  
Convoy, a naval force protecting mer-  
chant ships on voyages in time of  
war, picture W-254  
Conway, Hugh. See in Index Fergus,  
Frederick John  
Conway, Patrick (1865-1929), band  
leader, born near Troy, N. Y.: B-46c  
Conway, Thomas (1735-1800), Revo-  
lutionary War general, born Ire-  
land; served in Continental army;  
intrigued against Washington, whom  
he considered less competent than  
Gates; wounded in duel, went to  
France; later became governor of  
French possessions in India.

Key: cape, dt, fdr, fast, what, fgl; mē, yēt, fērn, there; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dq; cūre, būt, rjde, full, būrn; out;





- Cooney, Barbara (Mrs. Guy Murchie) (born 1917), artist, born Brooklyn, N.Y.; received education at Smith College; studied etching and lithography at Art Students League; served in Women's Army Corps (WAC) in World War II. She has illustrated the following books for children: 'American Folk Songs for Children' and 'Animal Folk Songs for Children', by Ruth Seeger; 'Kildee House' by R. G. Montgomery; 'Where Have You Been' by M. W. Brown
- Coombound, dog D-110b, table D-118a
- Coon oryster O-437-8
- Cooper, Edith Emma. See in Index Field, Michael
- Cooper, James Fenimore (1789-1851), American novelist, famed for vivid stories about Indians and the sea C-468, A-226b, picture C-468
- Hall of Fame, table H-249
- Cooper, Peter (1791-1853), manufacturer, inventor, and philanthropist, born New York City; made fortune in the manufacture of glue and in iron and steel works, influential in early development of cable and telegraph companies, presidential candidate of Greenback party 1876; founder of Cooper Union
- builds first locomotive engine in U.S. L-291, picture L-293
- campaign against: Hayes H-298
- Hall of Fame, table H-249
- Cooper, Thomas (1759-1839) agitator, scientist, educator and writer, born Westminster, England; moved to U.S. in 1794; practiced law and medicine, unsuccessful in politics, turned to teaching, became president of South Carolina College (now University of South Carolina), his political pamphlets highly controversial ('Political Essays'; 'On the Constitution', 'Statutes at Large of South Carolina').
- Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (C. C. F.), Canadian political party C-102, S-48, 49
- Co-operative extension service A-65. See also in Index Federal Extension Service
- Co-operative farms, in Mexico M-200
- Co-operative League of the United States of America C-471
- Co-operative societies, associations of consumers or producers for buying or selling commodities: C-469-72
- agricultural C-469
- Canada C-86
- dairying D-3
- Denmark A-69-70, D-70, C-471, 472
- farm loans help finance F-20
- fruit growers F-304-5, C-506
- Ireland, Republic of I-230
- Sweden S-462
- United States A-66, C-469-70, 471, D-3, N-106; government aid F-20
- building and loan associations B-342
- consumers' co-operatives C-469-72
- credit unions B-53
- economic democracy aspect C-471-2
- education vital to C-471-2
- Elizabethan actors S-124
- England C-469, 470, 472
- Europe C-471
- Finland F-71, C-472
- Iceland I-9, 12
- labor banks B-53
- mutual insurance companies I-167
- mutual savings banks B-43
- national organizations C-471
- news bureaus N-192
- opposition C-471
- origin C-469, S-215
- patronage refunds C-469
- producers' co-operatives C-469-72
- retailer co-operatives C-470
- rules, Rochdale principles C-469
- Russian "artels" R-270
- self-help co-operatives C-470-1
- Sweden S-464, C-471, 472
- United States C-469-71, A-64, 66, N-106
- wholesale C-470
- Cooper-Hewitt mercury lamp E-310
- Cooper River, S. C., stream 50 mi. long connected by canal with Santee River, maps S-283, 291
- bridge See in Index Bridge, table
- Santee-Cooper project S-294
- Cooper's Creek, or Barcoo River, an Australian stream rising in Queensland and flowing into Lake Eyre. In state of South Australia; during rainy season rises 20 ft. and widens to 2 mi.; disappears in dry season; map A-488-9
- Cooper's hawk, or blue darter H-291, pictures H-292, B-159
- head, color picture B-176
- Cooper Union, at New York City; founded 1859 by Peter Cooper; tuition-free day and evening courses in art and engineering; free adult evening courses; museum of the decorative arts.
- Co-ordinate clause, in grammar S-101
- Co-ordinate conjunctions, in grammar C-436
- Coorg (kurǵ), state in s.w. India; area 156 sq. mi.; pop. 229,405; cap. Mercara rice, coffee, tea, oranges; map I-68a
- Cook's, a river in Georgia and Alabama, 250 mi. long, joins Tallapoosa to form the Alabama; maps A-114, 126-7
- Coot, water bird called a "mud hen" C-472, R-57, picture R-57
- Coote (kót), Sir Eyre (1726-83), British soldier, captain of 39th regiment sent to India (1754); joined Clive (1756) as major in battle at Calcutta; made lieutenant colonel after battle of Plassey; later lieutenant general in India; died at Madras.
- Cootie, body louse, or sucking louse P-77-8, picture P-79
- Cop, American policeman P-356
- Copaiba (kô-pa'ib), or Copalva, an oleo-resin obtained from tropical American trees of the genus *Copaifera*; sometimes called copaiba balsam; transparent, yellow to gold in color; used in paints and varnish; in medicine, especially useful as a stimulant and as a disinfectant in various diseases of mucous membranes.
- Copal resin G-232, P-41
- Copán (kô-pân') Honduras, name of a municipal district and a village near Guatemalan border; monuments of Mayan civilization are near the village H-416, map C-172
- Cope, Sir Arthur Stockdale (1837-1940), English painter; known chiefly for his portraits which include King Edward VII, King George V, Archbishop of Canterbury, Lord Kitchener.
- Cope, Charles West (1811-90), English painter, etcher, and illustrator 'The First Trial by Jury', picture J-366
- Cope, Edward Drinker (1840-97), naturalist and paleontologist, born Philadelphia; laid foundation for modern classification of fishes, amphibians and reptiles; did early work on fossil remains of western United States.
- Copeland, Charles Townsend (1860-1932), educator, born Calais, Me.; taught English literature and rhetoric, Harvard University, 1893-1930; author 'Life of Edwin Booth'; editor 'The Copeland Reader'.
- Copeland, Royal S. (1862-1938), physician and senator, born Dexter, Mich.; professor of ophthalmology, University of Michigan, 1895-1909; president Board of Health, New York City, 1912-23; U. S. senator from N. Y. after 1922.
- Copenhagen (kô-pên-hâ'jên) (Danish, København), capital of Denmark; pop. 765,105; C-472, maps D-71, E-416, 424
- Christiansborg Palace, picture D-69
- Grundtvig "pipe organ" church, picture B-346
- porcelain P-398, 399, C-472
- Royal Library L-183
- Thorvaldsen Museum T-123
- Copenhagen, battle of (1801) B-37
- Nelson at N-109
- Copenhagen, University of C-472
- electromagnetic discoveries of Oersted E-308
- Copepod (kô-pê-pôd), a minute crustacean found in fresh and salt water
- place in food chain F-100, picture F-100
- Copernicus (kô-pêr-ni-kûs), Nicolaus (1473-1543), Polish astronomer C-472
- statue at Cracow C-506
- theory of planetary motion A-444; developed by Galileo G-5
- Cophetua (kô-jêf'ûn), a legendary African king of great wealth who fell in love with the beautiful little beggar maid, Penelophon, and married her; story used by poets (Tennyson's 'The Beggar Maid').
- Coping. See in Index Architecture, table of terms
- Copland (kôp'land), Aaron (born 1900), composer, born New York City; leader of group of modern composers; with Roger Sessions organized Copland-Sessions Concerts to introduce new music; composed music for films and radio, as well as symphonic works and chamber music ('Symphonic Ode'; 'El Salon Mexico'; 'Billy the Kid'; 'Appalachian Spring'; 'The Second Hurricane'; 'The Tender Land', opera).
- Copley (kôp'li), John Singleton (1738-1815), portrait and historical painter, born Boston; painted John Hancock, Samuel Adams, John Quincy Adams, and many other notables of his time; went to England 1774; painted portraits of English nobility
- portrait of Paul Revere P-31, color picture P-30
- Copley Square, Boston B-258
- Copolymer (kô-pôli-mêr), in chemistry R-245
- Copland, Alfred (Edgar) (born 1878), English short-story writer and poet, born Folkestone, England; stories fanciful with lyrical quality ('Adam and Eve and Punch Me and Collected Tales', short stories; 'Collected Poems').
- Coppée (kô-pû'), François Léonard Joachim (1842-1908), French poet, dramatist, and novelist, born Paris; called "poet of the humble"; wrote sympathetically of working people ('Le Reliquaire', a poem; 'Le Pénitent' and 'Les Jacobites', plays; 'Contes', stories; 'Toute une Jeunesse', autobiography).
- 'Coppella', a ballet D-144
- Copper C-473-5, pictures C-473-4, tables M-176, P-151, C-211, 214
- alloys A-173; aluminum A-183; brass B-285-7, pictures B-285-6; bronze (with tin) B-328; cadmium C-13; manganese M-77; nickel N-234, 235. See also in Index Brass; Bronze
- ancient use C-473; Egypt E-282, A-301; Indians, picture I-108; Sinai mines M-271; Sumerians B-6a

Key: cape, ât, fâr, fâst, whot, fâll; mē, yēt, fērn, thēre; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, dō; cūre, bāt, ryde, fūll, hūrn; out;



Córdoba, caliphate of, in s Spain; founded by Moors in 8th century, with city of Córdoba as center and 8 other cities subject to its monarch. M-389

Córdova leather L-150

Corduroy, a ribbed cloth of cotton velvet (from French *corde du roi*, king's cord) F-7

Corduroy road R-158b, picture C-84

Corelli (kò-rè'lè), Arcangelo (1653-1713), Italian composer; founder of "Roman School" of violin playing; composed for the violin.

Corelli, Marie (1864-1924), British novelist; numerous melodramatic romances with religious or ethical undertone ('Romance of Two Worlds'; 'The Sorrows of Satan'; 'The Master Christian'; 'The Life Everlasting').

Coreopsis, a genus of plants of the composite family generally with opposite leaves and yellow or brown and yellow flowers. Includes calliopsis; popularly called tickseed planting of, table G-16

Correspondent, in law. See in Index Law, table of legal terms

Corfu (kòr-fu'), also Kerkyra (ancient Corcyra), Greek island, most northerly of Ionian Islands, of strategic importance because of location at entrance of Adriatic Sea, 277 sq. mi., pop. 106,593; olives, fruit, wine, honey; cap. Corfu, pop. 30,739; maps G-189, E-416 sheep in olive grove picture G-191

Coriel (kòr-gi'), Welsh, dog color picture D-116, table D-118b

Cori, Carl F. (born 1896), biochemist, born Prague, he and his wife Gerty T. (born 1896) became U.S. citizens 1928, both at Washington Univ., St. Louis, Mo., since 1931; for revealing mechanism of enzymatic synthesis of glycogen (animal starch), they shared 1947 Nobel prize in medicine and physiology with Bernardo A. Houssay who did research in a related field.

Coriander, a spice S-339, 340

Corinna (kò-rin'na) (about 500 B.C.), Greek lyric poet, famous for her beauty and victory over Pindar in five poetic contests.

Corinth (kò-rin'ti), Lovis (1858-1925), German painter, exponent of German Impressionist school; work bold, well composed, and rich in color, suggestive of Rubens; painted landscapes, still lifes but especially celebrated for portraits.

Corinth, small state in s. central part of ancient Greece; chief city Corinth; map G-197

Corinth, or Korinthos, city in Greece, in n.e. Peloponnesus, on Gulf of Corinth; pop. 10,000; C-478, maps G-197, 189

Acrocorinthus G-197

gives name to currents C-530

in Peloponnesian War G-200

Corinth, Miss., town in n.e. corner; pop. 9785; strategic point in Civil War; taken by Federals May 1862; Confederates repulsed by Rosecrans October 1862; maps M-302, C-334

Corinth, Gulf of, an inlet of the Ionian Sea, map G-189

Corinth, Isthmus of C-478

canal C-478, picture G-190. See also in Index Canals, table

Corinthian architecture A-306, 309, C-478, picture A-308

Corinthians, Epistles to, letters written to the people of Corinth by St. Paul from Philippi C-478

Corinth Ship Canal, Greece C-478, picture G-190. See also in Index Canals, table

Corinto (kò-rén'tó), Nicaragua, town on Pacific, chief seaport of Nic-

aragua; pop. 4766; exports gold, coffee, sugar, hides, and wood; map C-172

Coriolanus (kò-rì-ò-lá'nús), Gaius Marcius (5th century B.C.), Roman patrician, who, legend says, sought revenge for slights by leading an enemy (Volscian) army against Rome, but relinquished vengeance at plea of his mother and his wife; basis of Shakespeare's 'Coriolanus' chronology and rank of drama S-129

Cork, maritime county of Munster, s. Ireland, 2881 sq. mi.; pop. 341,284; chief ports Cork, Cobh; C-480, map I-227

Blarney Castle, picture I-226

Cobh (Queenstown) C-372

St Finbar's Cathedral, picture I-229

Skillbereen, scene near, picture I-228

Cark, Ireland, city on s. coast; pop. 74,567 C-480, map B-325

Cark, a bark C-479-80, pictures C-479

Portugal C-479, P-379

sound absorbed S-237

uses C-480: linoleum C-1255

Corkbark fir. See in Index Alpine fir

Cork elm E-335

Corliss, George Henry (1817-88), inventor, born Easton, N. Y.; improved stationary steam engines; his great "Corliss engine" moved all the machinery of Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia (1876).

Carm, a bulblike stem B-348, pictures P-297, B-348

Cormon (kòr-món'), Fernand (1845-1924), French historical and portrait painter, born Paris, ('Cain'; 'Victors of Salamis'; 'Stone Age').

Cormorant, sea bird of the family Phalacrocoracidae; found in Northern Hemisphere; color blackish, length about 3 ft.; feeds upon fish; dives skillfully and uses both wings and feet in swimming under water trained to bring in fish, picture C-266

Corn, or maize C-480-5, pictures C-481-5

alcohol from A-145

bread: pioneers P-263

canned M-46, picture F-220

cultivating C-484, picture F-26

dextrin D-77, S-382, diagram C-483

dextrose S-446

drought belt D-153-4, map D-153

ears C-481, pictures C-483, 485, N-105: rows of kernels C-482

fertilizers for C-484

glucose, or syrup G-127, S-446, diagram C-483

grain elevator G-147, picture G-147

grinding, primitive, picture I-92

harvesting C-484, pictures A-64, I-29, color pictures F-34a, U-248

hybrid C-483, pictures C-481

Indian cultivation C-480, 482, M-143a-b, picture C-485

industrial uses C-484-5, diagram C-483; alcohol A-145; dextrin D-77, S-382; rubber substitute C-484

kernel C-482, 484, S-98, diagrams C-483, 484, picture S-97: products from, diagram C-483; sprouting of, picture F-296

Mayan culture based on M-143b

oil C-484, F-45, diagram M-483

origin: ancestry C-480-2

parched, Indian method C-464

pests and diseases C-484: chinch bug C-287, pictures C-287; European corn borer I-163, picture I-162; smut R-298, picture R-297; weevil W-85

picker, pictures A-64, I-29, color picture F-34a

pioneers' staple food P-263

plant described C-482

planting C-484: corn planter, picture A-63

popcorn C-485, picture C-485

producing regions C-480, 485

Mexico M-199, picture M-192

South America, pictograph S-246; Argentina A-334

United States U-284, C-480, map U-288; Illinois I-27-8, picture I-29; Indiana I-72; Iowa I-207-8; Minnesota M-277

production: machinery affects A-59, 61, picture A-64, color picture F-34a

products and uses C-484-5, diagram C-483

root P-292, picture C-482

rotation of crops C-484, F-25

rubber substitute C-484, diagram C-483

seed selection C-483, pictures C-481

seed stores food for plant, picture N-47

silage crop S-186

soil for growing C-484

starch S-382, C-484, diagram C-483

sugar C-484, G-127, diagram C-483

sweet corn M-46, C-482-3, 485, picture C-485

syrup, or glucose G-127, S-446, diagram C-483

tassel and silk C-482, picture C-483

use of word in other countries C-485

varieties C-485

yield per acre C-483

Corn, a thickening of the epidermis H-426

Caruncle. See in Index Dogwood family

Caruaro (kòr-ná'rò), Lodavico, or Luigi (1467-1565), Venetian nobleman who practiced and wrote of temperate living as means of prolonging life after almost losing his own at 40 ('Essay on Temperate Living').

Carn Belt, in U. S. C-480

Carn harer. See in Index European corn borer

Carn dance, of North American Indians, color picture I-97

Cornea, part of the eye E-459, 462, diagram E-459

surgical transplantation E-462

Corn earworm, the larva of a moth (*Heliothis armiger*), also called to-mato fruitworm, tobacco budworm, and cotton bollworm, depending on the various plants it infests; larvae on corn first eat the leaves, then the ears; pupation occurs in the ground; winter plowing in north kills many pupae.

Cornelle (kòr-ná'yü), Pierre (1606-84), dramatist, "father of French tragedy" C-485-6

Racine compared with R-24

Cornelia (2d century B.C.), Roman matron, daughter of Scipio Africanus, mother of the Gracchi. "These are my jewels," she said, showing her children to a friend who asked to see her ornaments.

Coraelius (kòr-ná'lè-us), Peter von (1784-1867), German painter; revived mural painting and founded Munich school of art ('Last Judgment').

Corraell, Ezra (1807-74), philanthropist, born Westchester Landing, N.Y.; helped found Western Union Telegraph Co.; endowed (1865) Cornell University.

Cornell, Katharine (born 1898), American actress, born Berlin, Germany, of American parents; married Guthrie McClintic 1921; debut in New York City 1917 ('Candida'; 'The Green Hat'; 'The Age of Innocence'; 'The Barretts of Wimpole Street'; 'Allen Corn'; 'Saint Joan'; 'The Wingless Victory'; 'Anthony and Cleopatra').

In Sophocles' 'Antigone', picture T-113

Key: cape, át, fâr, fást, what, fâll, mē, yēt, fērn, thère; ice, bít; rōw, wón, fôr, nôt, dō; cūre, bŭt, ryde, fŭll, bŭrn; out;

Cornell College at Mount Vernon  
Iowa Methodist chartered 1857  
(founded 1853) as Iowa Conference  
Seminary literary arts  
Cornell University at Ithaca N Y  
founded by Ezra Cornell incor-  
porated 1865 arts and sciences  
agriculture architecture business  
administration law economics  
hotel administration industrial and  
labor relations law medicine nursing  
veterinary medicine and civil  
chemical electrical mechanical  
and metallurgical engineering  
graduate courses picture 1400  
Cornering the market in economics  
B 214  
Cornet a musical instrument II 427  
picture B 475  
Cornflower a common name of several  
plants especially chicory and  
bachelor's button  
painting of G 13 table G 18  
Cornflower saler See in Index 51 keys  
anier  
Cornflower Plate popular name for  
celanthe 50  
Cornice in architecture picture A 308  
See also in Index Architec-  
ture table of terms  
Cornwall N Y industrial city 11 mi  
w of Elmira on Chemung R 15  
pop 7584 (important trade center  
manufactures glassware a chemi-  
cal glass pneumatic tools map  
A 204  
Cornwall ancient language of Corn-  
wall 134  
Corn laws in English history a series  
of laws extending from 1630 to  
1846 regulating grain trade  
repeal P 110  
Corn Laws Roman (Latin *Frumentum  
legibus*) laws by which the  
Roman government controlled the  
grain market and in times of dear-  
city bought grain in surrounding  
countries and sold it at a reasonable  
price to the people of Rome  
Cornas Mount in Apennines A 272  
map I 292  
Corn oil C 484 F 45 diagram C 483  
Corn picker picture A 94 I 29 color  
F 484 F 344  
Corn pone P 283  
Corn poppy P 370  
Corn root aphid (*Aphis maidanica*)  
on Israeli Peas A 273  
Corn salad an annual plant of the  
valerian family grown as a vegetable  
for salad or as a cooked green  
a so called lamb's lettuce lettuce  
and vegetable common plant (*Valeriana  
officinalis*) variety of *officinalis*  
native to Mediterranean  
Corn snake S 208  
Cornstalk Chief (1790-77) a Shaw-  
nee Indian chief treacherously  
murdered by whites V 490  
Cornstalk  
products from C 484  
Cornstarch S 392 C 484 diagram  
C 483  
citrin made from D 77  
glucose made from G 127  
Corn sugar or glucose G 127 C 484  
diagram C 483  
Corn syrup or glucose G 127 C 484  
diagram C 483  
Corn thistle Canada thistle Scotch  
thistle or creeping thistle T 120  
Cornwall Harry See in Index Pro-  
cesses Bryan Waller  
Cornwall county in extreme n.w.  
England 1357 sq mi pop 345  
612 china clay granite copper and  
tin mines famous for earthenware  
E 348 map B 347  
folk tales S 413  
In E 354 T 138  
Cornwall Ontario port on St. Lawrence  
River 55 mi s.e. of Ottawa

pop 18,898 textile mill and  
paper furniture maps C 89 72  
Cornwallis (Charles Mordaunt) (1788-  
1805) British general whose cap-  
ture at Yorktown Va 1781  
ended American Revolution later  
governor general of India  
king a Mountain defeat R 1899  
surrender R 139 celebrated F 57  
Cornwell Dean (born 1892) musical  
pianist and illustrator born Lou-  
ville Ky. music a usually historical  
style illustrations a popular maga-  
zine and books  
painting picture A 886  
Cornwall's structure of a flower  
P 194  
Cornwall's Coast name often given  
to the coast of Andorra and Andorra  
states India principal shipping  
1900, Madras Pondicherry and  
Cuddalore  
Corn a leafy city 42 mi s.e. of Los  
Angeles pop 10,253 citrus fruit  
poultry dairying lemon by  
products map A 35  
Cornus siliqua C 452  
cornography O 328 picture O 328  
seen on during the coronation C 269  
Corn a Borella or Cornic Crown  
a constellation in the northern sky  
charts S 377 380  
Coronado (1494-1548) Francisco  
Vazquez de (1510-49) Spanish  
explorer of N. U. S. C 488 A 190  
route map U 379  
U. S. national memorial N 398  
Coronado Calif city 4 mi s.w. of  
San Diego between bay and ocean  
pop 13,700 (residents) a resort  
map C 35  
Coronado National Memorial near  
Bisbee Ariz. 501  
Coronagraph O 328 picture O 328  
Coronary artery color picture H 354  
diagram A 11  
Coronilla the act of placing the  
crown upon the head of a new king  
or queen, usually performed with  
elaborate religious ceremony  
Charlottenburg C 187  
Florence Charles VII C 184 picture  
C 193  
Ornat Britain coronation char-  
ter W 88 coronation church picture  
W 88 coronation stone S 84  
W 88 crown jewels L 302-3 color  
picture F 347 Elizabeth II B 344  
W 88 crown jewel royal coach wheel  
in picture G 97 Victoria do  
replica color picture D 124  
Holy Roan Empire coronation  
chair A 1  
Coronel (1846-1911) Chile seaport  
13 mi s.e. of Concepcion pop 28  
027 large coal mines naval base  
the 40 mi off coast Nov 1 1914  
in which British cruiser was de-  
stroyed Admiral Crodock was de-  
stroyed and sunk by Germans under  
Admiral von Spee  
Coroner officer whose principal duty  
is the investigation of cause and  
manner of death of persons mur-  
dered found dead suicides etc  
jury J 388  
Corot (1796-1875) French painter C 484-7  
Corvina See in Index Vegetables  
ivory  
Crisp Army table A 384 map  
picture U 238  
U. S. Marine Corps table A 384  
Corporations in economics C 487  
See also in Index Government  
ownership Government regulation  
of industry Monopoly Trusts a  
center a  
Renaissance R 107  
beg a  
United States U 377  
T 165  
United States U 377  
United States U 377

gloria in U. S. I 140 table I 140  
Investment trusts T 201  
monopolies M 359 60  
organization M 224  
stocks and bonds S 398 400 pictures  
S 398-9  
Corpus T 249  
Corporation the form of econ-  
omic organization in some foreign  
countries production in each  
branch of industry and agriculture  
is regulated by a government  
controlled corporation containing  
representative of employers  
labor and the state system origi-  
nated in Italy I 274-5  
Corps (18r) U. S. Army table A 380  
Corpus callosum of brain S 280 picture  
B 281  
Corpus Christi Tex port and com-  
mercial center on Corpus Christi  
Bay 130 mi s.e. of San Antonio  
pop 108,827 C 487 maps T 81  
U 252  
Intraocular Wray T 80  
Corpus Christi (body of Christ)  
Feast of festival in Roman Catholic  
church on Thursday after Trinity  
Sunday 141 picture F 57 S 319  
Corpus Christi College Oxford Uni-  
versity Oxford England O 454  
Corpus of books See in Index Red  
corpuscles W 1 in culture  
Corpuscular theory of light L 352-9  
R 350 N 184  
Corp a civilis (body of civil-  
law) comp ed by Justinian J 287  
Corral  
cattle range C 149 picture C 151  
color picture U 295  
elephant in Kaddah E 327 picture  
E 327  
Corrales (18r) (18r) name given to  
Antonio Alvarado (1494-1534) Italian  
painter master of light and shadow  
and of painting of human flesh  
(Mythic terraces of St. Catherine  
Holy Night Danes)  
Corrales (18r) (18r) Spanish 18r  
rd 18r) (18r) (18r) (18r) (18r)  
fortified in and in Spain la Bay map  
P 195  
Correlation in science the comparison  
of two or more series of facts  
based by study of correlation  
theory of H. S. 154  
elastic S 385-9  
Correlation of parts in morphology  
C 538  
Correll Charles J (Andy) (born  
1890) radio writer and actor born  
Peoria Ill with Freeman F. O'Con-  
nor credited with serials Amos n  
Andy (called Amos n Andy for tele-  
vision serial Amos n Andy for m  
July 1951  
Correus under letter writing  
L 171 4  
Correspondence committees of See  
in Index Committees of Correspond-  
ence  
Correspondence schools  
Chautauque C 295  
Scranton B 89  
Correspondence in Schools International  
See in Index International Corre-  
spondence Schools  
Correspondence banks B 50  
Correspondence in geometry  
G 81 diagram C 61  
Corrido (18r) (18r) type of ballad  
sung in Latin America L 116 31 204  
song in Latin America (San Juan  
de los Rios) Argentina city and  
river port on Paraná R ver 500 mi  
n. of Buenos Aires pop 58,544  
commercial center national col-  
lege maps A 331 S 253  
Corrigan Michael Ave. (1829-  
1902) Roman Catholic prelate and  
scholar born in Ark N J pres-  
ident Selma Hall Seminary South

French u German u gem go thin then u French nasal (Jea) 2h - French f (f) azure) a = German guttural ch

- Orange, N. J., 1868-76; bishop of Newark, 1873-80; became archbishop of N. Y. 1885.
- Corroden'tia**, an order of insects consisting of the psocids and the booklice: I-160a
- Corrosion**, the wearing away of metals or other materials by chemical agents, as in the formation of rust. In some manufacturing processes acids are used as corrosive agents as in the etching of copper plates with nitric acid, or of glass with hydrofluoric acid: R-296-7 alloys that resist A-172, 173, B-329, C-300
- copper C-473  
hard rubber resists R-241
- Corrosive poisons** P-340
- Corrosive sublimate**. See in *Index* Mercuric chloride
- Corrupt bargain**, charge made by Jackson against Clay C-341
- Corrupt Practices Act**, in U.S. P-358
- Cor'air** (from Latin *cursor*, meaning course or run), French name for Barbary coast pirates P-272. See also in *Index* Barbary States, subhead pirates
- Corselet**, ancient armor A-376
- Cor'sica**, Mediterranean island and department of France; 3367 sq. mi., pop. 267,873; cap. Ajaccio: C-488, maps E-416, 419, I-262
- history C-488: revolts against Genoa G-38  
policeman, picture P-356  
sheep S-136
- Corsica'na**, Tex., oil and farm center 52 mi. s.e. of Dallas, pop. 19,211; cotton and machine-shop products, oil-well machinery: maps T-90, U-253
- Cort, Henry** (1740-1800), English inventor and ironmaster I-247
- Corte-Real** (*kôr'tâ-râ-âl'*), Gaspar (1450?-1501?), Portuguese explorer A-190
- Cortes** (*kôr'tâs*) national legislative assembly of Spain S-322a, D-65
- Cortex**, of brain, composed mainly of gray matter B-280-2, pictures B-281, N-112  
silent areas B-282
- Cortex**, of trees, the bark P-292
- Cortez** (*kôr'têz*), Hernando (1485-1547), Spanish explorer, conqueror of Mexico C-488-9, picture C-489  
Aztecs and A-542, C-488-9, picture L-116
- Balboa and B-20
- Central America** C-176  
chocolate demanded from Montezuma C-289
- historic tree, Mexico City T-184
- Honduras H-417
- Keats confuses with Balboa B-20  
quoted M-191, 200  
takes Longhorn cattle to Mexico C-141a
- Corti**, organ of, in human ear, discovered by Bonaventura Corti (1720-1813), Italian anatomist E-171
- Cortinarius caninus**, or dog mushroom, color picture M-456
- Cortines**, Adolfo Ruiz. See in *Index* Ruiz Cortines, Adolfo
- Cortisone**, or compound E, a hormone H-425, 426
- Cortisoz** (*kôr-tê'sôz*), Roy (1869-1948), art critic, born New York City; art editor *New York Herald Tribune* ("Augustus St. Gaudens"; "John LaFarge"; "Personalities in Art").
- Cort'land**, N. Y., manufacturing center 31 mi. s. of Syracuse; pop. 18,132; wire and wire goods, motor trucks, wallpaper, machinery, boats; State Teachers College: map N-205
- Cortona**, Italy, town 50 mi. s.e. of Florence: pop. 30,000; medieval castle and churches; remains of Roman baths and other antiquities Fra Angelico Madonna, picture M-25
- Cortot** (*kôr-tô'*), Alfred (born 1877), French pianist, born Switzerland; foremost pianist of French school.
- Cornia** (*kôr-on'yâ*). In, Spain, seaport on n.w. coast; pop. 133,844, with suburbs; sailing port of "Invincible Armada" (1588); repulse of French by British under Sir John Moore in Peninsular War 1809: maps S-312, E-425
- Cornu'dum**, an oxide of aluminum M-262  
emery, an impure variety E-339  
rubies and sapphires a form of J-350
- Corvallis**, Ore., city on Willamette River, 28 mi. s.w. of Salem; in agricultural and lumbering region; pop. 16,207; Oregon State College: maps O-416, U-252
- Corvée** (*kôr-iâ'*), forced labor on public works; developed under Roman Empire; important feature of medieval feudal system; generally abolished with serfdom; survived in Austrian Empire until revolution of 1848.
- Corvette**, small, fast ship, named for corvette of old sailing navies, which was a flush-decked vessel next below a frigate in gun power: picture W-254
- Corvidae** (*kôr-ri-dê*), a family of perching birds, including ravens, crows, jays, and magpies.
- Corvinus**. See in *Index* Matthias I
- Corvus**, a constellation, charts S-376, 380
- Corvus**, crow genus of family *Corvidae* C-518-19
- Corwin**, Norman Lewis (born 1910), radio script writer and producer, born Boston, Mass.; pioneer in radio as instrument of literary expression ("Thirteen by Corwin" and "More by Corwin", radio plays; "On a Note of Triumph", radio script).
- Cory**, William Johnson (1823-92), English poet and classicist, born Devonshire; classical master at Eton for 25 years; fame rests on "Heracitus"; verse rooted in Greek and Latin tradition ("Ionica").
- Corbantes** (*kôr-i bân'têz*), mythical attendants of goddess Cybele whom they honored by frenzied dancing in mountains and woodlands to the sound of flutes, tambourines, and cymbals: R-132
- Cor'dalis** (*kô-ri-dâ-lis*), a genus of perennial plants of the fumitory family. Leaves finely divided; flowers yellow, blue, or purple; native to North Temperate Zone.
- Cor'don**, Ind., village 25 mi. w. of Louisville, Ky.; pop. 1944; capital of Indiana territory 1813-16; state capital 1816-25: map I-79
- Corydon**, name used in pastoral poetry to designate a shepherd or a rustic swain; used by Theocritus, Vergil, and Spenser.
- Corydora**, any of several species of tropical fish belonging to family of South American armored catfishes, *Callichthyidae*.
- Coryphene**, dolphin, or dorndo, a large bony fish exhibiting beautiful changes in color when dying D-123
- Cory'za**, scientific name for common cold. See in *Index* Cold, common
- Cos** (*kôs*), Italian *Coo* (*kô'ô*), island in Aegean Sea, w. of Asia Minor, in Dodecanese group; area 111 sq. mi.; pop. 18,545; in ancient times, became famous for temple of Aesculapius; birthplace of Apelles and Hippocrates; archaeological findings; ceded by Turkey to Italy after World War I; ceded to Greece under treaty signed in Paris 1947; exports grapes and sultana raisins: maps G-189, 197
- Cosecant** (*kô-sc'tânt*), in trigonometry T-188
- Cosegñina** (*kô-sê-gwê'ng*), Mount, volcano in n.w. Nicaragua; 3800 ft. high; eruption 1835: picture C-173
- Cosette** (*kô-sê'tê'*), little girl in Victor Hugo's "Les Misérables" H-442
- Cosgrave**, William Thomas (born 1850), Irish statesman, born Dublin; became leader in Sinn Féin movement; three times arrested and once sentenced to death; president Executive Council of Irish Free State 1922-32: I-230b
- Coshoc'ton**, Ohio, center of a coal, gas, iron, and oil region, 69 mi. n.e. of Columbus; pop. 11,675; advertising novelties, pottery, iron pipe: map O-356
- Cosimo de' Medici** (*kô'sê-mô dâ mî'-dê-chê*) (1389-1464), Florentine banker, political leader, art patron M-163, picture M-163  
library, founds L-183
- Cosimo I de' Medici** (Cosimo the Great) (1519-74), grand duke of Tuscany (1569-74) M-163. See also in *Index* Pitti Palace
- Cosine** (*kô'sin*), in trigonometry T-188, diagrams T-188
- Cos lettuce**, or romaine lettuce, a variety of the common lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*, variety *longifolia*) distinguished by the long, narrow leaves, uncured, that form the conical-shaped heads: picture L-175
- Cosmati work**, a decorative art created by artists of the Cosmati family in Rome in 12th and 13th centuries; a kind of inlay made by combining in geometrical design mosaics, bits of porphyry, colored marbles, etc., found in ruins of Rome; used in churches, interiors, and furniture.
- Cosmetics**  
care of the skin H-306  
law governing P-443  
"Cosmle" rare L-111
- Cosmic rays**, highly penetrating radiations, reaching the earth from outer space: R-31-2, E-344b  
cloud chamber, picture R-31: track pictures R-32  
detected by electroscope E-315  
hazard to life in space station S-310
- Cosmidium**, a genus (*Thespermio*) of annual or perennial plants of the composite family, closely related to the coreopsis; flowers bright yellow with a circle of orange around the disk or entirely brownish-purple; native to western North and South America.
- Cos'mos**, asterlike plant C-489
- Cos'sacks**, a Slavic people in Russia, daring, cruel, splendid horsemen C-489-90, R-262, picture R-257
- Costa** (*kôs'tâ*), Joaquina (1841-1911), Spanish author S-327
- Costain** (*kôs'tân*), Thomas B(ertram) (born 1885), American writer, born Brantford, Ontario, to U. S. 1920, became citizen 1941 (historical novels: "The Black Rose", "The Moneyman", "The Silver Chalice"; history: "The Pageant of England" series, "The White and the Gold").
- Costa Mesa**, Calif., in Orange County, 31 mi. s.e. of Los Angeles; pop. 11,844; Orange Coast College: map, inset C-35
- Costa Rica** (*kôs'tâ rê'tâ*), republic of Central America; 23,000 sq. mi.; pop. 800,875; cap. San José: C-490, maps C-172, N-251, pictures C-490, T-170b. See also in *Index* Central America

Key: câpe, ât, fâr, fâst, wbat, fql; mē, yēt, fērn, thêre; ice, hît; rôw, wôn, fôr, nôt, dâ; cûre, bûtt, ryde, fûll, bûrn; out;

- flag P 138 color picture F 138  
literature L 126-7  
products C 480  
relationships in continent maps  
245-6 248 250-1 258
- Cosle or Coste (kôst) Alençan  
(born 1892) French aviator in need  
for daring service World War I  
broke several world records in the  
plane speed and range and made  
first nonstop flight from New York  
to New York 1910 can el L 4 1343
- Costello John (Alençan) (b. m. 1811)  
Irish lawyer and statesman born  
near Dublin 1810-1870 can el L 4 1343  
1844 41 member of Dublin 1848  
1848 41 and after 1854 1854 in  
later of Republic of Ireland led  
Kire before 1849 J 1355
- Coster Erik (born 1883) but h  
physical culturist of Baltimore  
with G von Hevesy J 1351
- Coste Laurens Janakian (13 0-  
1443) also Coste 1811 h printer  
section of church of France  
printing considered inventor of  
F 1443
- Coste picture H 236
- Coste John (kôst) John (1833-  
1918) Canadian statesman mem-  
ber House of Commons 1867 to 1875  
and during that period in minister of  
inland revenue secretary of state  
minister of marine and fisheries  
appointed to senate 1877
- Cost of Living See in Index in mg  
costs
- Costume dress in general including  
headdress gloves jewelry weapons  
and styles for hair and beard also  
the dress of a particular industry  
period class calling etc See also  
in Index Clothing
- Costway Michael (1740-1821) most  
brilliant English miniature painter  
of his day painted Miss Du Barry  
and other ladies of fashion
- Coteau in trigonometry T 138
- Coteau de la Rivière (kôst d'riv' r)  
elevated regions in prairie be-  
tween basins of Mississippi and  
Missouri rivers
- Coteau du Missouri the northwest  
extension of Coteau des Prairies  
L 281
- Côte d'Ivoire (kôst d'iv' r) the French  
Mediterranean coast part of the  
eastern end from Maradi to  
Niger so named because the sea  
along this coast is deep blue
- Côte d'Or (kôst d'ôr) a department in  
e. France area 3391 sq mi pop  
833 802 cap Dijon excellent vine  
yards on slopes of Côte d'Or range  
fertile plains and valleys  
mining industries pict re F 258
- Colonia (kôst tô) Norman pen-  
insula of France T 280
- Coté Born Dunne (1862-1923)  
Canadian (journalist) and novelist  
(Clarendon) of Canada "The Story  
of Sonny Sahib" many of her  
novels deal with life in India
- Côte du Nord (kôst du nôr) a de-  
partment in n. France bordering  
English Channel area 2780 sq mi  
pop 828 955 cap St Brève fish-  
ing stock raising grain and fruit  
growing from coal lead mining  
grazing in mountains
- Cotillon or cotillion (kôst'lyô) a  
social dance for many couples  
popular in 18th and 19th centuries  
often local dance of ball name  
French (p. 111) also elaborate  
modern dance of waltz type  
with quick tempo and great variety  
of figures and devices
- Cotman John (1782-1842) Eng-  
lish artist born Norwich England
- noted for etchings engravings  
water color and oils of architec-  
ture and nature subjects
- Cotopaxi (kôst paxi) Mt in ac-  
tive volcanic peak of the Andes in  
Ecuador 19 488 ft E 238 maps  
1 354 4 232
- Cotswold (kôstswôld) Edward (born  
1873) French opera singer born  
Paris France
- Cotswold pict re H 371
- Cotswold a breed of sheep native to  
Cotswold hills L 136
- Cotswold Hills range extending  
from the hills of Gloucestershire  
to the average height about 600  
ft highest point about 1000 ft  
named from sheep bred in this  
region in early times famous for  
Cotswolden sheep which are founded  
by Robert Dover in 17th century  
map B 322
- Cottage close C 208
- Cottage industry See in Index Home  
work and rural
- Cotters Satisfy Night The poem  
by Byron B 362
- Cottian Alps on border of Italy and  
France map 1 262
- Cotta John (1 45-16 2) learned  
and popular Pagan preacher born  
Derby England pastor in Boston  
England until forced to flee to Bos-  
ton New England became pastor  
of First Church of Boston known  
as patriarch of New Eng and  
author of several religious books  
book plate B 357
- Cotton Sir Robert Bruce (1 17 1813)  
English antiquarian and writer  
made wide collection of historical  
manuscripts pamphlets books  
coins etc founded Cottonian Li-  
brary which was now in British  
Museum in 1755 (The Reign of  
Henry III)
- Cotton collecting B 218
- Cotton C 431 8 pict res C 481 8  
table F 13
- ancient use C 487
- bale C 435 pict res C 436 h 183  
bleaching B 205 h 411
- celluloid pulled on C 384
- chemical cotton L 181
- chemicals and parts
- bolt weevil W 35 C 493 picture  
C 492
- holworm I 183
- spinning picture T 62
- dyerine D 181
- Frydian C 568 C 498 picture  
C 435
- spinning as from C 438
- spinning from U S C 497
- fabrica C 498 7 picture C 498 table  
F 6
- burning test for ideal fiber on table  
F 8
- chiloz T 197 pict re T 198
- Inda prints T 19
- flower C 484 picture C 495
- flaming C 495 picture C 495  
W 159
- Whitney inventor  
W 159
- harvesting  
by hand C 494-5 picture A 371  
C 494 E 275 F 34 I 57 S 293  
L 272
- by machine C 484 picture A 115,  
C 494 M 305
- history C 487
- Industrial Revolution I 131 2
- International trade Chinese imports  
C 272 United States recent ex-  
ports C 487
- kind C 487
- liners R 11 uses C 16 173 C 495
- manufacturing C 498-7 pictures  
C 493 497
- conditoning A 77
- early spinning in N R 136 pict re  
T 14
- first power loom in U S T 100
- Industrial Revolution I 131-2
- 1 202-3 picture I 131
- manuf. for cotton  
E 277
- Egypt C 277
- England C 354 L 278, M 71  
1 180 E 263
- India B 205
- Japan J 308 309
- Mexico M 102
- Siam S 34
- United States C 496 Alabama  
A 116 Georgia G 73  
Louisiana L 338 P 15 N 138  
North Carolina N 277 278  
Rhode Island R 13 South  
Carolina C 283 Tennessee M 371
- marking C 485 picture C 496
- mercerizing M 172
- origin of word C 497
- plant C 483-4 497 picture C 491
- color of raw C 488
- producing regions L 498 499 map  
C 493
- incident C 407
- China 270
- Canal C 275 277
- Mexico M 179
- Russia C 378 picture A 374
- sound elerched S 237
- South America pictograph S 248
- Sudan S 442
- curling T 114
- Uganda Protect rate F 298
- Un. ed. M. 101 C 401 U 277-8 Afr.  
hama A 115 14 pict re A 115
- Arizona C 491 Arkansas A 380
- California C 40 Georgia G 78
- Louisiana L 332 Mississippi  
M 284 285 New Mexico N 286  
N 139 Oklahoma O 373 South  
Carolina S 286 Tennessee  
M 172 Texas T 77 81
- product on effect in machinery A 59
- 61 wood cotton L 181 re F 328
- products C 495 picture C 496
- ry in manufacture L 81
- sewing thread C 435
- spinning and weaving C 488 7 pic-  
ture C 497 and on S 442 50
- 490 and in re elerched S 313
- textile industry T 100 I 102
- C 494-7
- thread T 124 manufacturing pic-  
ture I 102
- velvet picture N 184
- cotton boll C 493 4 pictures C 491  
484
- Cotton bollworm the larva of a moth  
(Heliothis orn per) See in Index  
Cotton worm
- Cotton Bawl at Dallas Tex F 230  
picture T 80
- Cotton gin machine invented by Eli  
Whitney W 132 C 495 497 U 160-  
1 I 199 pictures F 483 W 132
- Cotton grass S 88
- Cotton gum See in Index Tupelo gum
- Cottonmho the muscassini snake  
M 378 L 476 pict re S 208
- Cotton picker C 484 pictures A 115  
M 305
- Cotton rat P 77
- Cottonseed products C 495
- meal or off cake F 41
- oil C 495 C 495 pict re C 498 edibia  
through hydrogenation H 459
- oleomargarine O 378
- Tennessee ranks first M 171
- Cotton state popular name for Ala-  
bama
- Cotton striped C 494
- Cottonball a rabbit P 16 picture N 58
- length of leap F 16
- scion 180 name R 19
- Cotton thistle T 220
- Cottonwood tree a poplar P 370  
pict re T 181-3 table W 188
- Cotton worm larva of moth Alabama

*argillocea* (family *Noctuidae*); eats leaves of cotton plant; destroyed by dusting with Paris green  
moth, egg, picture E-269  
Cottony-enshion scale S-53  
Cottony-maple scale S-54  
Cottrell, Frederick Gardner (1877-1948), chemist and inventor, born Oakland, Calif.; invented Cottrell precipitator, reduced cost of extracting helium  
Cottrell precipitator, a device designed to reduce smoke pollution and recover industrial wastes, consists of an electrically charged pipe through which runs a wire of opposite charge, dust and particles in gases are deposited on walls of pipe  
Cotuit (*kō-to'it*) oyster O-437  
Cotula (*kō'tū-lā*), a genus of low growing annual or perennial plants of the composite family, suitable for rock gardens; flowers yellow, buttonlike; at end of stiff stems  
Coty (*kō-tē*), René (Jules Gustave) (born 1882), French political leader (Independent Republican) and lawyer, born Le Havre, France; served as member of Parliament 1923-53 except while France was occupied; president of France 1954-  
Cotyledon (*kōt-i-l'ē-don*), a seed leaf S-98, picture S-97  
bean, germination of, picture B-84  
Couchant, in heraldry H-341  
Couchet (*kō-chē*), Jans, maker of harpsichords picture P-249  
Couch grass Q-1, picture Q-1  
Couté (*kō-ā*'), (Philippe) Emile (1857-1926), French psychotherapist, taught health could be maintained, disease overcome by autosuggestion, his formula "Every day in every way I am getting better and better" became famous  
Cones (*kōuz*), Elliott (1842-99), American naturalist, authority on birds ('Key to North American Birds'; 'Birds of the Northwest')  
Cougar (*kō'gā*), mountain lion, or puma P-435-8, picture P-436, color picture N-260  
ecological relation to deer E-216-17, N-63  
purring C-135b  
Coughing, explosive and noisy expulsion of air from the lungs through the mouth; caused by some irritation of the linings of the respiratory passages; cough is preceded by a short inspiration which closes the glottis; noise of cough caused by opening of the glottis reflex action R-90  
Coulee Dam, in state of Washington. See in Index Grand Coulee Dam  
Coulee Dam National Recreation Area N-38d, map N-18  
Coulomb (*kō-lōn*'), Charles A. (1736-1806), French physicist; founded mathematical theory of electric and magnetic action; practical unit of electric quantity named for him  
Coulomb's law E-308  
Coulomb, unit of electrical quantity E-298  
Coulter (*kōl'tēr*), John Merle (1851-1928), American botanist, born Ningpo, China; son of missionaries; botanist with the U. S. Geological Survey in Rocky Mts. (1872-73) which resulted in development of Yellowstone National Park; taught in several colleges, including University of Chicago (1896-1925); was president of Lake Forest and Indiana universities; adviser, Boyce Thompson Institute of Plant Research, 1925-28; author of many textbooks and other works on botany.  
Cumarin (*kō'mā-rin*), or coumarin, crystalline substance, from sweet

clover, tonka bean, and other plants; used in perfumes and flavors.  
prepared synthetically C-371  
Council, in American cities M-451  
Council, Order in, Great Britain. See in Index Order in Council  
Council, Security, of United Nations. See in Index Security Council  
Council Bluffs, Iowa, city on Missouri River opposite Omaha, Neb.; pop. 45,429; railroad shops; playground equipment, railroad car wheels, truck bodies; named from council of Lewis and Clark with Indians (1804) maps I-214, U-253  
East Omaha Bridge. See in Index Bridge, table  
Council Fire, of Camp Fire Girls, picture C-54  
Council-muninger government, in American cities M-451  
Toledo T-145-6  
Council of Blood, formed 1567 by Duke of Alva to support Spanish claim in Netherlands N-121  
Council of Clermont C-519  
Council of Economic Advisers, U. S. U-358  
Council of Europe, a "parliament" for unification of w. Europe; first meeting 1949 in Strasbourg, France, permanent capital; consultative assembly, made up of representatives of national parliaments, committee of ministers (executive body) made up of foreign ministers of the member nations: table N-16a  
Council of Foreign Ministers, formed by Potsdam agreement, 1945, to draft peace treaties; members: China, France, Great Britain, Russia, United States.  
Council of League of Nations L-142  
Council of Ministers, in Russian government R-282-3  
Council of National Defense, U. S. W-234, 235  
Council of Repnble, France F-285  
Council of Ten (1310-1797), tribunal of 10, afterward 17, which governed republic of Venice V-446  
Council of Trent R-93, T-185, P-277 promotes adoption of surnames N-2a  
Councils, church. See in Index Church councils  
Count, title of nobility D-40  
Counterelectromotive force (counter e.m.f.) E-305  
Counterfeiting, making imitations of money C-498  
Counterpoint, in music M-468a, 460. See also in Index Music, table of musical terms and forms  
Counter Reformation, in Roman Catholic church R-93  
Loyola L-339, R-93  
Plus IV and Pius V P-277  
Countershading, in protective coloration P-420-1  
Counter-sign, secret word or phrase without which no one may pass a guard or sentry.  
Counterweight, a weight used for counterbalancing in elevator E-328, picture E-328  
Counts, in British nobility wife or widow of an earl, also a woman possessing an earldom; in European nobility wife or widow of a count, also, in some countries, the daughter of a duke, a marquis, or a count.  
Counting board, picture N-312b  
'Count of Monte Cristo', novel by Dumas; story of Edmond Dantès, sailor, who is imprisoned on false charge, escapes from prison, gains buried treasure, and returns as the mysterious Count of Monte Cristo to dazzle Paris  
Château d'If M-102

County, political division C-498  
England E-356  
health work H-308, C-454a  
name, origin of C-498  
parks and playgrounds P-86a  
police P-355b  
unincorporated areas governed by M-450  
County agent. See in Index County agricultural agent  
County agricultural agent, a trained agriculturist in the Co-operative extension service. Works through educational programs for better farming methods; aids in soil conservation, insect control, and eradication of plant and animal diseases. County agents employed in 3062 counties in 1954: F-31-2. See also in Index Federal Extension Service  
County attorney. See in Index State's attorney  
County borough, in England E-358  
County council, in England E-356  
County fairs, U. S. F-13, F-30, pictures F-30a, b  
County home demonstration agent. See in Index Home demonstration agent  
County libraries L-189-92  
County muninger system C-498  
Coup d'état (*kō dā-tā*'), bold or brilliant stroke of statesmanship, usually unconstitutional and often accompanied with violence; a famous example is that by which Louis Napoleon made himself emperor; N-11  
Coupé (*kō-pā*'), popular pronunciation *lōp*, automobile A-502  
Couperin (*kōp-rān*'), François (1668-1733), French composer and court musician; master of music for clavichord, a type of harpsichord.  
Couperin, Louis (1863-1923), Dutch novelist, whose stories of human tragedies have an Aeschylean inevitability ('The Smail Souls'; 'The Twilight of the Soul'; 'Old People and the Things that Pass').  
Complete, in poetry P-336  
heroic P-336; Dryden uses D-157; Pope P-369, E-378a  
Coupling, in radio R-37, 40  
Couplings, railroad cars R-64-5, picture R-63  
Con'pou (*kō'pōn*), a dated certificate, attached to bond or other commercial instrument; represents interest due; should be detached and presented independently for payment.  
Courage  
Carnege hero fund C-124  
decorations for D-38-40, picture D-39, color picture D-41  
Courante (*kō-rānt*'), a court dance popular in 16th and 17th centuries; of French or Italian origin; name from French *courir* ("to run"); Italian type rapid with running steps, French slower with complex rhythms; in music, part of suite following allemande. See also in Index Allemande; Suite  
Coubashi, or kurbashi, a whip of heavy hide; term also applied to forced labor under the lash; outlawed in Egypt under British rule.  
Courbet (*kōr-bē*'), Gustave (1819-77), French painter, leader of school of realism; vigorous color in figures and landscape ('Burial at Ornans'; 'Combat of the Stags').  
Courcelle, Rémy, Sieur de (died 1698), governor of New France (Canada) 1665-72; led a successful expedition against Mohawks and brought about peace with Iroquois.  
Coureurs de bois (*kō-rūr' dā bōi*) ('runners of the woods'), French Canadians of early days who explored remote regions, engaged in hunting and trading with Indians,





Cowper (*ko'pēr*, also *kou'pēr*), William (1731-1800) English poet C-502-3, E-379, picture C-503 letters L-171

Cowpox, a mild form of smallpox V-433-433a, J-334

Cowpuncher. *See in Index* Cowboy

Cowrie, cowry, or Venus's-shell, a genus of mollusks map cowrie, color picture S-139 shells used as money S-141

Cowslip, flowering plant of primrose family C-503, picture C-503

Cowslip, American M-103. *See also in Index* Shooting star

Cowslip, Virginia. *See in Index* Lungwort

Cow trees, South American trees yielding creamy juice T-184

Cox, David (1783-1859). English landscape painter proficient with both water colors and oils, one of greatest English water colorists

Cox, Jacob Dolson (1828-1900). American general and statesman, born Montreal major general in Civil War, wrote on Civil War

Cox, James M. (born 1870). political leader and journalist born Jacksonburg, Ohio, member of U S House of Representatives 1909-13, governor of Ohio 1913-15, 1917-21 picture R-204

presidential candidate H-266, W-149

Cox, Kenyon (1856-1919) painter, born Warren Ohio known chiefly for murals in public buildings, sought to uphold classic spirit; author of books on art subjects

Cox, Palmer (1840-1924) American illustrator and author born Granby Quebec, created "Brownies," series of humorous books for children.

Cox, Richard (1500?-81). English Protestant reformer, helped compile Book of Common Prayer; was equally intolerant of Puritans and Catholics P-443

Covey's Army, a band of unemployed who marched to Washington D. C. in the depression of 1894, under the leadership of Jacob S. Covey (1854-1931), to urge the enactment of laws providing money without interest for public improvements so that unemployed might have work.

Coyote (*kī'ōt* or *kī-ō'tē*), the prairie wolf, or brush wolf W-180-1, pictures D-116d, Z-356

enemy of bison B-200

hunter trails, picture H-451a

Coyoteros (*lō-yō-tā'rōs*), a division of the Apache Indians of Arizona.

Coyupa (*ko'pō*), large rodent of South America (*Myopotamus coypus*); makes its burrow in banks of lakes and rivers; eats leaves and roots of water plants; color brownish-yellow with white chin; fur long and harsh but undercoat makes valuable fur called nutria: R-77, R-176

Coxzens (*kūz'ēnz*), James Gould (born 1903), novelist, born Chicago, Ill. ("S. San Pedro", based on *Vestris* disaster: "The Last Adam"; "The Just and the Unjust"; awarded 1949 Pulitzer prize for "Guard of Honor").

C.Q.D., former wireless code signal for ships in distress; replaced by S.O.S.

Crab, a constellation. *See in Index* Cancer

Crab, a crustacean C-503-5, pictures C-504-5. *See also in Index* Crawfish

Chesapeake Bay fisheries V-480 commensals (syphilis) C-504

eye, picture E-461

foot, picture F-225

hibernation C-504

horseshoe crab not a crustacean C-504, T-189, picture C-504

metamorphosis C-504

migrations C-504

soft-shell C-505

Crab apple, any variety of the small Siberian crab (*Pyrus baccata*) common apple derived from A-277

Crabbe (*krāb*), George (1734-1832), English poet whose "The Village", "Tales in Verse", and "Parish Register" with their realistic pictures of common life influenced Wordsworth and other poets

Crabbling, an expression for a kind of cranklike movement C-503

Crabbling, in aviation. *See in Index* Aviation, table of terms

Crabbing, in falconry F-15

Crabtree. *See in Index* Sergeant fish

Crabtree seal A-260

Crab louse, a parasite of man, picture P-79

Crab spider S-345

Crabtree, Charlotte ("Lotta") (1847-1924) actress, born New York City; debut at age of six, notable work in "Little Nell", "Firefly", "The Little Detective", retired in 1891 with \$2,000,000 fortune made by astute investments in real estate.

Cracker Industry B-298

Cracker State, nickname sometimes applied to Georgia

Cracking process, in petroleum refining P-177-8, table I-199

Crackle, or craze, pottery glaze P-394, 396a

Crack willow W-143

Cracow (*krākō*). Polish Krakow (*krak'uf*) German Krakau (*krā-kau*). Poland: pop. 347,517: C-505-6, maps P-344, G-88, E-416

Hanseatic League H-260

university C-505, 506, P-342

Craddock, Charles Egbert. *See in Index* Murfree, Mary N.

Cradle, a baby's bed or cot colonial, picture A-210

Hungarian, picture B-25

Lapp, picture L-102

pioneer P-263

Cradle, a form of scythe W-115, A-59

Craddock, Sir Christopher (1862-1914), English admiral; commanded cruiser squadron which was defeated off Coronel, Chile, Nov. 1, 1914; went down with his ship *Good Hope*.

Craft, any manual occupation requiring training and experience, *Reference*: Outline I-147-8

bibliography H-397-8, I-148

Craft guilds G-228

Crafts, Wilbur Fisk (1850-1922), Presbyterian clergyman and reformer, born Fryeburg, Me.; founder and superintendent of International Reform Bureau; editor *The Twentieth Century Quarterly* ("Dress Reform"; "That Boy and Girl of Yours"; "A History of National Prohibition").

Craft union, in labor L-70d

Craig, Edward Gordon (born 1872), English stage designer, born near London; son of Ellen Terry; acted in Sir Henry Irving's company; founded school of theatrical art (1913) in Florence, Italy; pioneer in modern stage design; notable productions include "Hamlet", and "Macbeth"; wrote "The Art of the Theatre"; "Books and Theatres" influence on theater D-134, T-115

marionettes P-440

Craig, Sir James Henry (1748-1812), British soldier, born Gibraltar; served in American Revolution, commanded division in India 1797-1802; governor general of Canada 1807-11.

Craig, Alaska, town on Prince of Wales Island, in s.e. Alaska, about 60 mi. w. of Ketchikan; pop. 374;

outfitting center for Alaska fishing fleets; salmon cannery; sawmill; customs office: map A-135

Craigavon, James Croft, first Viscount (1871-1940), Irish political leader; prime minister of Northern Ireland from 1921 until his death; worked to keep Northern Ireland united with Great Britain.

Craigie, Pearl Mary Teresa. *See in Index* Hobbes, John Oliver

Craigie House, Cambridge, Mass. C-50, L-509, 310

Crank, Dinah Maria (better known as Dinah Maria Mulock) (1826-87), English novelist and poet; "John Halifax, Gentleman", a story of English middle-class life, was her most famous work; among the many books that she wrote for children are "The Adventures of a Brownie" and "The Little Lame Prince".

Croft, James (1730-1814). American physician, born Scotland; came to America at age of 20; commissioned army surgeon, 1754; chief medical officer in Revolutionary War; intimate friend and physician of George Washington; helped expose Conway Cabal.

Craiova (*krā-yō'vā*), Rumania, trading and manufacturing town 110 mi. w. of Bucharest; pop. 84,574, with suburbs: maps B-23, E-417

Crait, or krait (*krāt*), a snake S-207

Crawak, a Renaissance shoe S-162

Cram, Ralph Adams (1863-1942), architect and writer, born Hampton Falls, N. H.; college and church architect; consulting architect Cathedral of St. John the Divine ("The Gothic Quest"; "My Life in Architecture").

Crampfish, a Pacific coast torpedo fish T-155, 156

Cranach, or Kranach (*krā'nāk*), Lucas (1472-1553), German painter and engraver; founder of Saxon school; active in the Reformation; portraits of Luther and all German reformers and princes of Reformation period; also painted scriptural and mythological subjects

Saint George and the Dragon, picture G-66

Cranberry C-506, picture C-506

Crane, Frank (1861-1928), American clergyman and journalist, born Urbana, Ill.; wrote inspirational "daily sermons" for newspaper syndicate ("The Religion of Tomorrow"; "Footnotes to Life").

Crane, Hart (1899-1932), poet, born Garrettsville, Ohio; symbolist, with involved technique ("The Bridge"; "White Buildings").

Crane, Ichabod, in Washington Irving's "The Legend of Sleepy Hollow", a lank grotesque country schoolmaster, suitor of Katrina Van Tassel: I-254

Crane, Nathalia (born 1913), poet, born Brooklyn, N. Y.; began to write verse at age of eight ("Janitor's Boy", "Venus Invisible", "Singing Crow", verse: "Sunken Garden", "An Alien from Heaven", novels).

Crane, Stephen (1871-1900), novelist, poet, short-story writer, and war correspondent, born Newark, N. J.; served in Greco-Turkish and Spanish-American wars ("The Red Badge of Courage", novel; "Twenty Stories"; "Black Riders" and "War Is Kind", free verse): A-230a-b quoted A-230b

Crane, Walter (1845-1915), English artist, craftsman, designer, social idealist, and writer; born Liverpool, England; distinguished as an illustrator of children's books especially fairy tales; associated with William Morris



Creek, a small stream E-188  
 Creech club, or horned dace D-1  
 Creel, George (1876-1953), journalist, born Blackburn, Mo.; chairman Committee on Public Information (1917-19) during World War I: W-148  
 Creel, in fishing, list F-118g  
 Creeper, an insect-eating bird N-316  
 brown, color picture B-185  
 egg, picture E-269  
 Creeper, Virginia. See in Index Virginia Creeper  
 Creeping bent, a soft, velvety grass (*Agrostis polustris*) of the bent-grass genus. Its long stolons (creeping stems) and stiff blades make it a favorite for permanent, firm lawns and the putting greens of golf courses. With proper care a bent lawn will last for many years. Many forms have been derived from the species; native to Eurasia but has escaped from cultivation in North America.  
 Creeping Charlie, or creeping Jenny. See in Index Loosestrife  
 Creeping thistle, Scotch thistle, corn thistle, or Canada thistle T-120  
 Crefeld, Germany. See in Index Krefeld  
 Creighton (*krá'tón*), Mandell (1843-1901), English clergyman and historian; became bishop of London, 1897; a high churchman; outstanding Anglican divine of 19th century; vigorous personality; active practical intelligence; first editor of *English Historical Review* ('The Age of Elizabeth'; 'History of the Papacy during the Period of the Reformation'; 'Cardinal Wolsey')  
 Creighton University, at Omaha, Neb.: Roman Catholic; founded 1878; arts and sciences, commerce, dentistry, law, medicine, nursing, pharmacy; graduate school.  
 Crémazie (*krá-má-zé*) Octave (1827-79), French-Canadian poet C-109  
 Cremona (*kré-mó'na*), Italian *kré-mó'na*, Italy, city 48 mi. s.e. of Milan on Po River; pop. 54,564; famous for 16th-century school of painting; map E-425  
 violins V-476  
 Creole (*kré'ól*), name used in southern United States and Latin America for pure-blooded descendants of early French, Spanish, or Portuguese settlers; incorrectly used for a mulatto  
 New Orleans residents N-183  
 Creole State, popular name sometimes applied to Louisiana  
 Creolin, antiseptic derived from coal tar C-371  
 Creon (*kré'ón*), in Greek mythology, king of Thebes, uncle of Antigone.  
 Creosote C-510  
 Creosotebush, a small evergreen shrub (*Larrea divaricata*) of the caltrop family *Zygophyllaceae*; resinous leaves yield strong odor of creosote; abundant in deserts of the American Southwest.  
 Crepe, or crape (*kráp*), cloth of silk, cotton, or wool, having crinkly surface M-173  
 wool crepe color picture F-5  
 Crepe de Chine (*dé shén*'), a silk fabric woven of tightly twisted yarns having right- and left-hand twist.  
 Crepe rubber R-238, picture R-239  
 Crepis (*kré'pis*), or hawk's-beard, a genus of annual or perennial plants of the composite family found in north temperate regions; yellow, red, or orange dandelionlike flowers resemble hawkweeds.  
 Crerar (*kré'rér*), Henry D. G. (born 1888), Canadian general, born Hamilton, Ontario; commander Cana-

dian 1st Army in Europe: picture W-271  
 Crerar Library. See in Index John Crerar Library  
 Crescendo. See in Index Music, table of musical terms and forms  
 Crexcent City, popular name for New Orleans N-182  
 Crescent moon M-386, diagram M-385  
 Cre'sol, antiseptic distilled from wood tar or coal tar C-371  
 Crespi (*krás'pé*), Junn (1721-82), missionary and explorer with Portola in California C-46  
 Cress, plant of mustard family C-1, 2  
 Cressida (*krés'si-da*), legendary daughter of Calchas, a Trojan priest who was false to her lover Troilus; the name Cressida has since stood for faithlessness. See also in Index Troilus  
 Crest, in heraldry the figure or device above the helmet or shield (in a coat of arms), or used separately, as on stationery, table silver, etc.; the coat of arms is the device on the shield  
 Crest, on horse picture H-428a  
 Creston, Paul (born 1906), composer and teacher, born New York City; compositions include a symphony, incidental music, chamber music, works for piano, and songs.  
 Cretaceous period, in geology G-59-60, C-182, diagram G-58, table G-57  
 prehistoric animals R-113-14, 115, diagram G-58, pictures P-406a, R-113, 114, 115  
 Crete, or Kreta (*krét*), also Candia, Greek island in Mediterranean; 3330 sq. mi.; pop. 462,124; cap. Canea C-510-11, maps A-27, G-189, E-417, 419, picture C-510. See also in Index Aegean civilization  
 annexed to Greece G-193, V-446  
 architecture A-305  
 costume, ancient, picture D-145  
 early civilization A-27-9  
 Greek mythology T-117  
 Cre'tin, a subnormal person H-425, M-172  
 Creionne (*kré-tón*'), a printed cotton or linen fabric in plain or fancy weave; used chiefly for curtains and furniture covers. Originally it was a white cloth produced in France and named for its manufacturer.  
 Creusot, Le. See in Index Le Creusot  
 Crevasse (*kré-vós*'), in glaciers G-116, picture G-115  
 Crèvecoeur (*kré-v-kür*), Michel Guillaume St. Jean de, called Saint John de Crèvecoeur (1735-1813), American pioneer and essayist, born France; in America after 1759, on farm in New York 1769-80; driven from farm during Revolution; returned to France; French consul in America 1783-90 ('Letters from an American Farmer', sketches of 18th-century America): A-226-226a  
 American, defined A-226a  
 Crew, on ship S-159  
 laws governing S-161  
 Crews, Robert O. A. Crews-Milnes, first marquis of (1858-1945), English statesman, Liberal leader in House of Lords; lord lieutenant of Ireland 1892-95; secretary of state for the colonies 1908-10, for India 1910-15; ambassador to France 1922-28.  
 Crews, England, important railroad town 30 mi. s.e. of Liverpool pop. 52,415; locomotives, rails, and rolling stock; map B-325  
 Crewelwork, embroidery done with "crewels," or worsted yarns, usually on a background of linen, sometimes on other fabrics.

Crews, Laura Hope (1860-1942), actress of stage and screen, born San Francisco, Calif.; made stage debut in childhood ('The Great Divide'; 'Peter Ibbetson'; 'Tea for Three'; 'Mr. Pim Passes By'; 'The Changelings').  
 Cribel'um, of spider S-342, 343  
 Crichton (*krí'tón*), James (1560?-82?), "The Admirable Crichton," Scottish scholar, adventurer, and swordsman of proverbial versatility; said to have been master of 12 languages at 17, and to have "run through" the whole circle of the sciences at 20; killed in a street brawl. 'The Admirable Crichton' is also the name of a play by Sir James Barrie.  
 Cricket, a game C-511-12, E-350, diagram C-511, picture E-351  
 Cricket, an insect C-512-13, pictures C-512  
 chirp, how produced C-513, picture I-155  
 field, color picture I-154a  
 hearing organs, "ears" C-513  
 molting C-513  
 pets C-513, P-185-6  
 singing pets I-155  
 young I-156, C-513  
 Cricket, Mormon. See in Index Mormon cricket  
 'Cricket on the Hearth, The', story by Charles Dickens C-512  
 Crí'oid cartilage, a ring-shaped cartilage surrounding the posterior portion of the larynx V-516, diagram L-351  
 Crile, George Washington (1864-1943), physician and surgeon, born Chillicothe, Ohio; major in Spanish-American War and colonel in World War I; one of founders of the Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, Ohio; important work in development of surgery; author of many books on surgery.  
 Crimen (*krí-mé'n*), or Krim, also Crim, peninsula of S. Russia on the Black Sea C-513, maps B-204, E-417, 419, 420  
 Allied conference (1945) W-298  
 collective farm laboratories, picture R-276  
 Tatars C-513  
 World War II C-513, W-268  
 Crime and criminals. See also in Index Treason  
 capital punishment P-415  
 constitutional provisions  
 double jeopardy U-354  
 excessive bail U-354  
 extradition U-352-3  
 habeas corpus U-351  
 indictment necessary U-354  
 place of trial U-352  
 right to speedy trial U-354  
 treason U-352  
 counterfeiting C-498  
 county grand jury and C-498  
 courts of justice C-499-502, pictures C-499-501; juvenile courts C-499, procedure in criminal cases C-499, 501-2, picture C-500  
 dictograph, detective device D-89  
 extradition U-352-3  
 Federal Bureau of Investigation F-48-9, U-362, pictures F-48, U-362  
 identification P-355-6, pictures P-355; fingerprints F-69  
 juveniles: housing influences H-431-431a; juvenile probation J-368  
 law, criminal L-139  
 lie detector L-221-2  
 lynching L-354-5  
 microscope, uses, picture M-234  
 murder, punishment for P-415  
 pardon P-416, U-352  
 penal settlement C-223, A-486, 491

Key: còpe, át, fúr, fúst, what, fáll; mē, yét, fén, thére; fce, but; rōw, won, fôr, nôt, dō; cūre, būt, ryde, füll, búr; out;

*4 = French u German u gem, so thin then 4 = Frenchman (1800)*

- fecting English Reformation; called "hammer of the monks" bcheaded H-338
- Cromwellian style, in decoration I-177, table I-178
- Cronin, Archibald Joseph (born 1896), British physician and author, born Scotland; began practice of medicine in South Wales 1919, in London 1930; medical inspector of mines for Great Britain 1924 (novels: 'The Stars Look Down', 'The Citadel', 'The Keys of the Kingdom', 'The Green Years', 'Shannon's Way', 'The Spanish Gardener', and 'Beyond This Place'; autobiography: 'Adventures in Two Worlds')
- Croonje (krón'yū), Piet (1840?-1911), Boer general; captured English raiders led by Sir Leander Starr Jameson; February 1900 surrendered to English with 4000 men.
- Cronstedt (krún'stét), Axel Fredrik (1722-65), Swedish chemist, discoverer of nickel; student of Georg Brandt; classified minerals
- Cronus, also Kronos, (krón-nūs), in Greek mythology, Titan ruler of universe R-132
- identified with Saturn S-49
- Croo. See in Index Kru
- Crook, George (1829-90), Civil War general and Indian fighter; 1866-85 subdued Indians of Rocky Mountain region, S. Oregon, N. California, Apaches in Arizona, Sioux and Cheyenne tribes in Platte country; climax of career was victory over Geronimo, Apache chief; understood Indians and made valuable recommendations to government.
- Crookes, Sir William (1832-1919), English chemist and physicist; founder and editor of scientific journals; discoverer of thallium, inventor of radiometer and spintharoscope; research in psychic phenomena; knighted 1897
- X-rays developed from his work S-328-9
- Crookes space, dark space near the cathode of Geissler and Crookes tubes.
- Crookes tube, adaption of Geissler tube invented by Sir William Crookes, for studying electric discharges in highly rarefied gases; design permitted accurate direction and deflection of cathode rays; improved modern forms used in X-ray work generally called Coolidge tubes: E-316, N-328-9
- fluorescent glow E-318, picture E-316
- Crookneck squaw S-359
- Crooks, Richard (born 1900), operatic and concert tenor, born Trenton, N. J.; operatic debut, Hamburg Opera 1927; member Metropolitan Opera from 1938.
- Crop, in zoology, first of a bird's three stomachs; stores and prepares food for digestion by other two; largest in grain-eating birds, missing in fruit and insect eaters.
- Crop control, federal government and A-68-9, R-206, W-118
- Crop Insurance Corporation, Federal (FCIC), U.S. R-205, U-365, A-69
- Crop loans, in U. S., a source of credit for farmers F-20
- Crop rotation F-25, C-452/
- alfalfa A-151
- checks insect pests C-484
- clover C-359
- corn C-484
- cowpea C-502
- medieval, picture M-238
- rust prevented by R-299
- Crops, farm. See in Index Agriculture, subhead crops
- Croquet (krō-két'), a game C-518, diagram C-518
- Creore (krôr), Hindu number 10,000,-000; also a monetary unit.
- Crosby, Bing (Harry Lillis Crosby) (born 1904), radio singer and film star, born Tacoma, Wash.; popular "crooner" of sentimental songs ('Call Me Lucky', autobiography).
- Crosby, Fanny (Frances Jane Van Alstyne) (1820-1915), hymn writer, born Southeast, N. Y., blind from infancy ('Safe in the Arms of Jesus'; 'Rescue the Perishing').
- Crosier (krō'kēr), young fern F-52, picture F-52
- Crosmann, Henrietta (Mrs. Maurice Campbell) (1870-1944), actress, born Wheeling, W. Va.; debut 1889 ('Miss Nell'; 'As You Like It')
- Cross, Mary Ann Evans. See in Index Elliot, George
- Cross, Wilbur Lucius (1862-1948), editor, author, public official, born Mansfield, Conn.; governor of Connecticut 1931-39; professor of English and dean of Graduate School, Yale; editor Yale Review ('Development of the English Novel', 'Modern English Novel')
- Cross, a structure, usually an upright bearing a horizontal beam; common to most cultures from prehistoric times; used primarily as a religious symbol. See also in Index St. Andrew's Cross St. George's Cross; St. Patrick's Cross
- flags—256 in
- Bayonne F-136c, color picture F-132
- Culica F-136c, color picture F-133
- Denmark F-136b, color picture F-132
- Dominican Republic F-138, color picture F-136
- Finland F-136b, color picture F-132
- Great Britain F-136c, color picture F-133
- Greece F-136b, color picture F-132
- Jerusalem F-136d, color picture F-133
- Norway F-136b, color picture F-133
- Red Cross R-87
- Switzerland F-136c, color picture F-133
- Toulouse F-136c, color picture F-132
- Turkey, Middle Ages F-136c, color picture F-132
- United States
- colonial flags F-130c, color picture F-128
- state flags: Alabama F-130, color picture F-126; Florida F-130, color picture F-126; Mississippi F-130a, color picture F-126
- Cross, Celtic, picture I-230a
- Crossbill, a type of finch F-68
- Crossbow, a weapon A-303
- Hundred Years' War H-445
- marks end of knighthood K-57
- weapon of feudal foot soldier W-9
- Crossbreeding, in biology
- animals: cattle B-200, C-146; mule H-428b
- plant life P-305-6, 307. See also in Index Hybrid
- Crosscut, name applied to tunnel in mines M-270
- Crosscut saw
- gasoline, picture T-148
- Cross fit, in navigation N-77
- Cross fox, a darker variety of the North American red fox, generally marked with a dark cross on back and shoulders F-253
- Cross Keys, Va., village 19 mi. n.e. of Staunton, Va.; indecisive battle (1862) in Civil War between Federals under General Fremont and Confederates under General Ewell.
- Cross-pollination, the transfer of pollen from one flower to another, as distinguished from self-pollination P-305-6. See also in Index Pollen and pollination
- Cross-staff, early instrument for determining latitude N-79-80
- Cross-stone. See in Index Staurolite
- Crosssties, railroad R-61
- Cross vine, a species of bignonia. See in Index Bignonia
- Crossways, goddess of H-328
- Crosswind gear. See in Index Aviation, table of terms
- Crosswind landing. See in Index Aviation, table of terms
- Crosswort. See in Index Crucianella
- Cro'nlms, rattlesnake genus R-78
- Crothers, Rachel (born 1878), playwright, born Bloomington, Ill.; produced own plays, chiefly comedies with satirical touch ('A Man's World'; 'Nice People'; 'Let Us Be Gay'; 'Susan and God').
- Crothers, Samuel McChord (1857-1927), clergyman and writer, born Oswego, Ill.; ordained Presbyterian minister 1877; became Unitarian 1882; pastor of First Church, Cambridge, Mass. ('The Gentle Reader', essays; 'Children of Dickens' and 'Miss Muffet's Christmas Party', children's stories).
- Cro'ton Aqueduct, in New York A-283
- dam picture N-210
- Croton bug, or German cockroach C-373, 374
- Crotone (krō-tō'nā) (ancient Croton or Crotone), port, of S. Italy on Gulf of Taranto; pop. 19,163; exports oranges, olives, licorice; medical school of ancient Greek world; home of athlete Milo; maps G-197, E-425
- Pythagoras at P-448
- Croton oil, purgative drug from seeds of plant of spurge family
- poisonous P-341
- Croup (krōp)
- of dog, picture D-110b
- of horse, picture H-428a
- Croupe, Russell (born 1893), playwright, born Findlay, Ohio; co-author and producer with Howard Lindsay of popular dramas. See also in Index Lindsay, Howard
- Crow, Indian tribe that lives in Montana, map I-106f, table I-107
- Sun Dance D-14a
- Crow C-518-19, pictures B-159, color picture P-73
- birds of paradise related to P-72
- egg, color picture E-268a
- fable, 'The Fox and the Crow' F-2
- nest B-172
- speed in flight B-156
- Crowbar T-150
- Crowder, Enoch J. (1859-1932), Army officer, born Missouri; graduated U. S. Military Academy, University of Missouri (LL.B.); provost marshal general U. S. Army 1917-19; judge advocate general U. S. Army; ambassador to Cuba 1923-27; specialist in military law.
- Crow family, or Corvidae C-518
- Crowfoot, a common name for the buttercup B-364b
- Crowfoot family. See in Index Ranunculaceae
- Crowley, La., city 74 mi. s.w. of Baton Rouge; pop. 12,784; rice center; oil and gas fields; beef cattle; processed food; map L-330
- Crown, a coin used in many countries at various periods; English Elizabeth I; worth 5 shillings; not minted 1902-27; Jubilee crown 1935; historical value of silver half crown 2½ shillings
- Crown, of tooth T-35, picture T-36
- Crown, or Keystone, of arch, pictures M-159, A-297
- Crown colonies, British B-324

Key: cape, út, fār, fást, what, fáll, mē, yēt, fērn, thère, íce, bīt, rōw, wón, fór, nót, dg; cūre, bīt, rúde, füll, bú; an; out;

crowned earth (*Alouatta coronata*)  
 snail  
 shell color picture S 132a  
 Crowned crane C 507  
 Crown glass C 122a T 47  
 prism refracts light R 30e  
 Crown Jewels jewels belonging to the ruler of a country by virtue of his office  
 British L-302-3 color picture J 347  
 iron utensils I 245  
 Crown of cups a voltaic battery E 30a  
 Crown Point N.Y. village on Lake Champlain 90 mi. n. of Albany  
 British fort, captured (1755) by Seth Warner map N 205  
 Crow a real pastyly encased look-out platform high on a ship's mast  
 Crow don England accidental suburb 10 mi. s. of London pop. 443  
 592 railroad center its government aerodrome is one of world's busiest airports map B 325  
 Crows (bird ed.) Antoine 1615-1733 French courtier holder of royal grant to Louisiana (1712-17)  
 Crow's Island (bird ed.) a group of 5 tiny uninhabited islands in Indian Ocean in a. Antarctica 48° 30' s 81° e Attached to French government of Madagascar discovered in 1772  
 Cruciaceae (bird ed.) or Cruciferae a low growing plant of the madder family name means little cross from the arrangement of the lower leaves which are in whorls of 3 or more flowers white rose or blue native to Mediterranean  
 Crucible a pot or vessel made of a substance that will stand extreme heat for melting various metals of minerals  
 Cruciferae I 247  
 Cruciferae (key sif ed.) or Cruciferae (bird ed.) a mustard family C 1-2  
 Crucifixion of Jesus Christ J 340  
 Passion Play at Oberammergau C 322 picture C 322  
 Crude mode in statistics S 355e  
 Crude oil P 174  
 storage P 173  
 Cruelty to Animals Society for Prevention of name for various humane societies in all parts of the world supported by popular subscription H 443  
 Cruelty to children  
 societies for prevention of H 443  
 Cruikshank (key shank) George (1792-1878) English caricaturist etcher and illustrator born London illustrated Dickens Oliver Twist Cervantes Don Quixote eminent for caricatures reflecting politics and customs of the day notably Napoleon and the corn laws Illustrations Grimm's Fairy Tales L-271 picture L 273 Marius Vegetables pictures S 462 Oliver Twist part re L 380  
 Cruiser a naval vessel N 88 picture N 85  
 how named table N 82  
 Cruising suitcase C 227  
 Cruising speed See in Index As a table of terms  
 Cruises I journal (1872-1944) American sculptor born France  
 Statue of Bird Woman picture I 377  
 Crusades (key t l) C 512-22 chart H 384 pictures C 520-3  
 First L 512-20  
 Second C 520  
 Third C 520 Cyprus conquered C 534 Pichard the Lion Hearted I 149 picture C 520 R 150  
 Statian S 25  
 Fourth C 522 captures Constantinople B 374 Venetians in V 445

Fifth C 522  
 Sixth and Seventh C 522 Louis IX leads L-310 picture L 518  
 Children C 522  
 effects on Europe C 522  
 arch lecture A 315  
 clothing S 162 new textiles C 522  
 new plants M 331  
 inspired exploration A 187  
 poison gas used C 208  
 Crusades under C 522-3 See also in Index Knights Hospitallers of St John Knights of Malta Knights of the Teutonic Order  
 Crusoe Robinson See in Index Robinson Crusoe  
 Crusonea class of heavily mounted arthropod animals Refer to C 1  
 L 324  
 distributed from mollusks M 333  
 place in family tree of animal kingdom picture A 251  
 Crux See in Index Southern Cross  
 Crux Juana Inez de la Cruz in Index Juana Inez de la Cruz  
 Crusell (key s ed) a monetary unit of Brazil historical value about 20 cents  
 Cruven Richard H. (born 1897) Navy officer born Kansas City Mo. in World Wars I and II with U.S. Army U.S. Navy Expedition 1929-41 headed Arctic cruise 1945 46  
 Antarctic expedition A 261 P 347  
 Cryling  
 why babies cry C 240 of earl C 240  
 Cryolite mineral containing sodium aluminum and fluorine G 224 M 285  
 solvent for aluminum oxide A 383, picture A 182  
 Egypt of Civilization atest and above vault I 1 Ogtheorpe University Atlanta Ga. contains memorials of civilization of 1st half of 20th century wall inscription on door axis wall by left intact to a fine purpose to provide future his torians an epitome of the life of an old generation  
 Cryptomeria (key s ed) or Jap. cedar a coniferous tree (Cryptomeria japonica) native to Japan grows 125 feet tall pyramidal shape has small cones and pointed narrow leaves grows in warmer parts of U.S. n. to New York and New England  
 Cryptoxanthin in plants V 434  
 Crystal detector a radio R 36 dia gram P 35  
 Crystallization of metals C 525 A 173  
 Crystallography study of crystals C 525 M 362  
 Crystalline a crystalline substance exposed to a colloid, in solution crystallize or piezoelectric crystal  
 ch 1 V W 59  
 crystal R 48  
 Crystal Palace building of iron and glass erected in Hyde Park London for great exhibition of 1851 don erected at Sydenham near London 1854 and used for exhibitions with other games etc destroyed by fire 1876 P 13  
 Crystals C 525 V 235 picture C 525  
 silicon A 281  
 atomic structure I 268  
 classification M 362  
 diamond D 78-81 picture D 79-81  
 frost F 302-3 picture F 302  
 graphite G 156 C 525  
 ice I 3  
 ions in I 206 M 242/ C 517  
 metallic crystalline structure A 175 C 535  
 minerals M 282 C 525 color pictures M 343 268  
 piezoelectric quartz radio R 42  
 used in clocks W 59

polarization of light L 234  
 Radio R 32-6 symbol Picture R 40  
 salt diagram I 236  
 snow S 210 I 3  
 solubility diagram S 235  
 sulfur S 448  
 water content W 80  
 X-ray spectra reveal structure S 334 V 30  
 Ctenophora (ten no fo ra) a phylum of jellyfishlike animals Reference C 518 E 2 364  
 Ctesibias (tes si bi as) of Alexandria (2d century B.C.) Greek inventor created a. in invention of a water clock a. a hydraulic organ and a force pump and other devices using air pressure  
 Ctesiphon (tes si fon) ancient city of Babylonia on Tigris 4 mi. n. of Babylon capital of Parthian kingdom 100 B.C. P 158  
 Archol river re A 306  
 Cote d'Ivoire in Africa See in Index Ivoire River  
 Cosses or Cosses (key s) river in Asia 12 mi. Afr. flowing into Atlantic na. table 100 mi. length 700 mi. map B 169  
 Cote d'Ivoire See in Index Cote d'Ivoire  
 Cuba largest and richest island of West India 41° 34' N 1 mi. in el. land a. 100 sq. mi. 44 sq. mi. pop. 5,553,899 s. a. Havana C 526 H 284  
 N 251 I 277 picture C 526-7  
 Cuba C 527 Havana H 282 284 picture H 284  
 climate C 527 H 284  
 flag P 138 color picture P 138  
 government C 526  
 history C 526 Columbus C 416 418 524 C 528 C 488 Oland Mani fest P 532 C 532  
 American War V 224 6 picture V 224-5 Platt Amendment M 20  
 Taff governor T 1-3  
 literature L 127  
 minerals M 527  
 natural features C 526  
 map C 527 3  
 products C 527 7 maps V 256-7  
 pineapples P 259 oranges S 354  
 relationship to continent maps N 245-6 248 250-1  
 transportation C 527  
 yellow fever control M 403 C 142  
 Cui in the See in Index Slach pins  
 Cuba in geometry of diagram C 81  
 measurement of volume M 151 dia gram M 151  
 Cube (key s) plant source of rotenone I 184  
 Cube tower or root of a number P 404-5  
 Cucumber of cucumber proper dried upon berries of Piper C 526 a climbing woody shrub native to Pennsylvania Sinaloa the vol. it is all which it contains has various medicinal uses Cucumbers made of cucumbers are suited to save colds asthma hay fever  
 Cubic measure or solid measure M 151-2 diagrams M 151-2 table W 37  
 Cubism  
 drawing D 1406 Interior by Léger D 138 picture D 138  
 painting P 246 I definition P 38  
 interior with Talk by Braque P 236-1 color picture P 236  
 Three Musicians by Picasso P 346 color picture P 34  
 sculpture S 82 83  
 Cuba Day a. out organization B 273  
 Curtin (key s) a. legendary Irish hero I 234 S 413-14  
 Cuckoo (key s) a bird C 529 picture C 529 color picture B 193  
 all tude range picture S 262

- Cuckoo clock W-55  
 Cucujo (*kū-kū-gō*), a South American firefly F-92, picture F-92  
 Cuculiformes (*kū-kū-lī-fōr'mēz*), an order of long-tailed birds, comprising cuckoos, road runners, anis.  
 Cucumber, a common garden vegetable of the trailing-vine variety C-529 when and how to plant, table G-19  
 Cucumber, sea, bêche-de-mer, holothurian, or trepang S-86  
 Cucumber tree, a magnolia M-43  
 Cucurbitaceae (*kū-kū-bī-tā'sē-ē*), the gourd family G-144  
 Cud, of ruminating animals R-254  
 Cud'ahy, Michael (1841-1910), president of Cudahy Packing Company (1890-1910), born Ireland.  
 Cuduhy, Wis., city on Lake Michigan seven mi. s. of Milwaukee; pop. 12,182; shoes, machine-shop and packing-house products: map, inset W-172  
 Cud-chewing animals R-254-5, S-401  
 Cudworth, Ralph (1617-68), English philosopher, one of Cambridge Platonists ('True Intellectual System of the Universe'; 'Treatise on Eternal and Immutable Mortality').  
 Cue, billiards B-144  
 Cueva (*kū-ā'kū*), a dance L-116  
 Cuenca (*kū-ēn'kā*), city of Ecuador, in s.w.; pop. 39,983; manufacturing, trade center; Panama hats, flour, hides: maps P-164, S-262  
 Cuernavaca (*kū-ār-nā-vā'kā*), a picturesque old city and health resort, capital of state of Morelos, Mexico, 47 mi. s. of Mexico City; in ancient times an Indian village, later became favorite residence of Cortez; pop. 30,607; map, inset M-195  
 Rivera mural, picture L-116  
 Cuesta (*kū-ēs'tā*), a hill with a steep side opposite a sloping side D-730  
 Cufra Oases, also Kufura or Kufuru, group of five oases in Sahara in e. Libya; 7000 sq. mi.; town of Kufura on caravan route: L-218, map A-46  
 Cugnot (*kūn-yō'*), Nicholas Joseph (1725-1803), French inventor A-503  
 Cul (*kū-ē'*), César Antonovitch (1835-1918), Russian composer and military engineer; author of textbooks on fortification; in music, joined Young Russian movement with Balakirev ('Prisoner of Caucasus', 'Captain's Daughter', operas).  
 Culrasser (*kū-ē-rā-sēr'*), mounted soldier who wears a cuirass French, picture F-268  
 Culbertson, Ely (born 1891), bridge expert and writer, born Rumania, of American parents; organized Culbertson bridge system; founded World Federation, Inc., 1943; this in 1946 became known as Citizens Committee for United Nations Reform, Inc. ('Contract Bridge Complete'; 'The World Federation Plan'; 'Total Peace').  
 Culebro (*ko-lē-brā*) cut, former name of Gaillard cut, section of Panama Canal P-63, pictures P-53, 54  
 Culex (*kū-lēks*), a genus of mosquitoes M-404, picture M-400  
 Cullón (*ko-lē-on'*), Philippine Islands, colony on island of same name in western part of archipelago, where lepers are segregated and treated; established 1906: P-198, map P-195  
 Cullen, Conntee (1903-46), Negro poet, born New York City; wrote of comedy and tragedy in life of Negroes with lyric, wistful beauty ('Ballad of the Brown Girl', 'Color', 'Copper Sun', 'On These I Stand').  
 Cullet, in glass manufacture G-121  
 Cullinan, famous diamond D-81, pictures D-79  
 Cullo'den Moor, battle of (1746), in Invernesshire near Moray Fifth P-410  
 Cul'om, Shelby Moore (1829-1914), political leader, born Wayne County, Ky.; governor Illinois 1876-83; U.S. senator (Republican) 1883-1913; author of Interstate Commerce Law; a commissioner 1898, to establish government of Hawaii ('Fifty Years of Public Service').  
 Culp, Julia (born 1881), Dutch contralto, born Groningen; studied violin as child and appeared in concert; at 14 began study of voice; became noted throughout Europe and in the U.S. as concert singer.  
 Cul'peper, or Colepeper, Lord Thomas (1635-89), colonial governor of Virginia V-490  
 Culpeper flog F-130c, color picture F-128  
 Cultivation, in agriculture A-59, pictures A-63  
 corn C-484, F-26  
 Cultivator, an agricultural implement A-59, pictures A-63, F-26, W-47  
 flame-throwing, picture F-32a  
 Cultural geography G-45  
 Culver City, Calif., city 9 mi. s.w. of Los Angeles, pop. 19,720; moving picture studios; aircraft parts, furniture, stoves, machine shops: map, inset C-35  
 Culver Military Academy, at Culver, Ind., founded 1894 by Henry Harrison Culver; 8th grade and college preparation with military training for boys.  
 Culver-Stockton College, at Canton, Mo., founded 1853 by Disciples of Christ church; arts and sciences.  
 Cumae (*kū-mē*), ancient city on west coast of Italy, 12 mi. west of Naples; oldest Greek colony in Italy; supposed home of Cumaeen sibyl; remains of amphitheater, fortifications, and other ruins: map G-197  
 Cumae'an sibyl S-175  
 Cumura (*ko-mō-rā*) nut, or tonka bean V-439, N-317  
 Cumarin. See in Index Coumarin  
 Cumberland, Ernest August, duke of, 5th son of George III. See in Index Ernest Augustus  
 Cumberland, George Clifford, 3d earl of (1558-1605), English privateer; captured San Juan, Puerto Rico, in 1598; but failed to capture fortress; sickness among his men forced him to give up city.  
 Cumberland, William Augustus, duke of. See in Index William Augustus, duke of Cumberland  
 Cumberland, extreme n.w. county of England; 1520 sq. mi.; pop. 285,347; includes part of Lake District; coal, iron, lead; county seat, Carlisle: map E-347  
 Lake District E-346, 348  
 Cumberland, Md., city in n.w. on Potomac River; pop. 37,679; ships coal, sand, clay; railroad shops; auto tires, rayon, glass, brick, steel shafting, electronic instruments, plastics; site of old Ft. Cumberland, built in 1754: maps U-253, inset M-116  
 Cumberland Road R-161  
 Cumberland, R.I., 6 mi. n. of Providence; pop. of township, 12,842; cotton goods, silk, rayon; granite quarries; many points of historic interest in town and nearby; named for William Augustus, duke of Cumberland.  
 'Cumberland', Union warship in battle with Merrimac M-347  
 Cumberland Gap, gorge through Cumberland Mts. where Kentucky, Vir-

Key: cape, ât, fur, fâst, what, fglil; mē, yčt, fērn, thēre; ice, bīt; rōw, wōn, fōr, nōt, do; cūre, būt, rjde, full, būrn; out;





- one fourth Indian on mother's side; congressman 1893-1907; U. S. senator 1907-13, 1915-29; vice-president of United States under Herbert Hoover 1929-33.
- Curtis, Cyrus H. K.** (1850-1933), newspaper and magazine publisher, born Portland, Me.; controlled *Saturday Evening Post, Ladies' Home Journal, Country Gentleman, Philadelphia Public Ledger, New York Evening Post*.
- Curtis, George Ticknor** (1812-94), jurist and writer, born Watertown, Mass.; had Dred Scott and other important cases ('Constitutional History of the United States from their Declaration of Independence to the Close of their Civil War'; 'Life of Daniel Webster').
- Curtis, George William** (1824-92), essayist and journalist, born Providence, R.I.; many years editor of *Harper's Weekly*; strong advocate of civil service reform; wrote 'Nile Notes of a Howadji'; 'The Potiphar Papers', a satire on New York life; 'Prue and I', his most popular book.
- Curtis Cnp** (officially *Woman's International Cnp*), trophy awarded biennially in matches between women's amateur golf team of Great Britain and that of U.S.; donated 1932 by Harriot S. and Margaret Curtis; G-138
- Curtis Institute of Music**, Philadelphia, Pa.; founded with endowment by Mrs. Edward Bok, 1924; students accepted on scholarship basis only after abolishment of tuition fees in 1928
- Curtiss, Glenn H.** (1878-1930), pioneer aviator and inventor, born Hammondsport, N.Y.; designed many flying craft and flying-boat types; invented allerons and seaplane; was first flier Albany to New York; won Gordon Bennett cup 1909; built many army training planes; director in engine- and plane-building firms; designed plane that won Guggenheim prize for safety; A-102 planes, picture A-103
- Curtis turbine** T-212
- Curtius (Kurt'sē-us)**, Ernst (1814-96), German archaeologist, scholar, and historian ('History of Greece').
- Curtius (kūr'shi-ūs)**, Marcus, a legendary Roman hero; an earthquake chasm in the Forum which soothsayers said would not close until it had received Rome's greatest treasure was closed when Curtius, declaring that Rome had no greater treasure than a brave citizen, rode his horse into it.
- Curve**, in baseball B-66, diagrams B-67
- Curve**, in mechanical drawing M-157f
- Curved space**, in Einstein theory R-100-1
- Curwood, James Oliver** (1878-1927), novelist, born Owosso, Mich.; traveled extensively in Canadian Northwest; wrote stirring, adventurous romances of great popularity ('Flower of the North'; 'The Valley of Silent Men'; 'The Alaskan').
- Curzola**, island in Adriatic Sea. See in *Index* Korcula
- Curzon (kūr'zōn)** of Kedleston, George Nathaniel Curzon, Marquis (1859-1925), British Conservative statesman, governor general of India 1899-1905; held various posts in the Lloyd George cabinet; wrote several books on problems of the Far East.
- Curzon line**, Poland's e. border; runs roughly from Grodno s. to Brest-Litovsk; suggested by Lord Curzon 1919; P-345
- Cusco**, also *Cuzco (kos'kō)*, Peru, manufacturing and trade city in s., 11,410 ft. above sea level; pop. 40,657; university; called "Rome of the Americas" because of archaeological remains maps P-164, S-252, pictures P-163
- ancient Inca capital I-50
- Cus'cus**, opossumlike animal K-2, color picture P-6
- Cuscuta**, grass. See in *Index* Vitiver
- Cushing, Cnleb** (1800-1879), diplomat, born Salisbury, Mass.; first American minister to China, negotiated 1844 treaty defining rights of foreigners; one of three American arbitrators of Alabama claims; minister to Spain 1874-77; attorney general, Pierce administration
- Cushing, Frank H.** (1857-1900), ethnologist and author, born Northeast, Pa.; resided among Zuñi Indians and adopted into tribe; authority on habits, folklore, and language of Pueblo Indians stories S-418
- Cushing, Harvey (Williams)** (1869-1939), surgeon and writer, born Cleveland, Ohio, professor surgery Harvard, 1912-33 professor neurology Yale, 1933-37; won Pulitzer prize, 1926 with 'Life of Sir William Osler', also wrote on neurological surgery.
- Cushitic (kūsh-it'ik)**, a Hamitic language A-39
- Cushman, Charlotte** (1816-76) tragic actress, born Boston, called greatest Lady Macbeth of her age; played 'Meg Merrilies' in 'Guy Rannering' Hall of Fame, table H-249
- Cusk**, a fish of the codfish family.
- Cuspid teeth**, canine teeth, or dog teeth T-34
- Cuspid valves**, of heart H-312, color pictures H-312-13
- Castard apple**, also *cherimoya*, or *cherimoya*, a fruit of a tropical tree of genus *Annona*; native to Peruvian highlands; known in prehistoric times; all fruits are conical in shape, but surface varies, sometimes rough, sometimes smooth; common food in tropics; F-304
- Castard-apple family**, or *Annonaceae (ān-ō-nā'sē-ē)*, a family of trees and shrubs, native chiefly to the tropics, including the cherimoya, soursop, sugar apple, papaw, ylang-ylang.
- Custer, George Armstrong** (1839-76), American Civil War general and Indian fighter C-531
- in South Dakota S-296
- massacre C-531, I-110c
- Custer Battlefield National Monument**, in Montana N-33, map N-18
- Custer State Park**, in South Dakota S-298, picture S-305
- Custis, Menmor Parke** (1779-1852), adopted by Washington W-27
- Custis, George Washington Parke** (1781-1857), writer; son of John Parke Custis, Martha Washington's son by her first husband; adopted by George and Martha Washington; owned an estate at Arlington, now Arlington National Cemetery; wrote 'Recollections of George Washington', orations, and plays chiefly about Indians; W-27
- Custis, John Parke ("Jack")**, (1753?-81), stepson of George Washington; colonel in Revolution; W-27
- home at Arlington N-17
- Custis, Martha Dandridge**, wife of George Washington W-125
- Custis, Mary Randolph**, wife of Robert E. Lee L-154
- Customs, Bureau of**, U. S. U-360, T-16
- work of Coast Guard C-371
- Customs, human**. See in *Index* Behavior, human; Etiquette; Habit; Sociology
- Customs and patent appeals**, court of, U. S. C-500
- Customs court**, U. S. C-500
- Customs duty**, tariff on imported and exported goods T-16. See also in *Index* Tariff
- inspection with X rays X-331
- Customshouse brokers** T-16
- Customshouses** T-16
- Customs union** T-16. See also in *Index* Zollverein; Treaties, table
- Custoza (kos-tōd'zā)**, or *Custoza (kos-tōt'sā)*, Italy, village 11 mi. s.w. of Verona; scene of two Austrian victories (1848 and 1866) in the struggle for Italian unity; I-272
- Cutch**, state, India. See in *Index* Kutch
- Cuteli**, used in tanning or dyeing. See in *Index* Catechu
- Cuthbert, Saint** (died 687), English bishop, hermit, and missionary; life by Bede; his bones are in cathedral at Durham; festival March 20.
- Cuticle**, or *epidermis* human skin S-192-3
- leaf picture L-151
- Cutlass**, a short, heavy, slightly curved sword; formerly used by sailors on war vessels in hand-to-hand conflict.
- Cutler, Manassah** (1752-1823), Congregational minister, born Killingly, Conn.; chaplain in Revolutionary War army; became a physician also, did first systematic classification of New England flora; helped form Ohio Company of Associates, draft Ordinance of 1787, and colonize Ohio; lived chiefly in Hamilton, Mass., where he had a parish; served two terms in U. S. Congress.
- Cutlery K-59**
- electroplated E-321, picture E-302
- Sheffield S-138**
- stainless A-172
- Cutter, Charles Ammi** (1837-1903), librarian, born Boston, Mass.; librarian of Boston Athenaeum 1868-1903; helped establish *Library Journal* 1876 ('Catalogue of the Library of the Boston Athenaeum'; 'Rules for a Printed Dictionary Catalogue'; 'Expansive Classification').
- Cotter**, a type of boat.
- Cutthroat trout**, a food fish (*Salmo clarki*) inhabiting the coastwise streams and lakes from Puget Sound to northern California; varies greatly in size; spotted with black; blotch of red at throat.
- Cutting, James Ambrose** (1814-67), inventor, born Hanover, N. H. autotype, in photography P-226
- Cutting, plant**. See in *Index* Slip
- Cuttle, Edward**, Captain, a character in Dickens' 'Dombey and Son', picture D-84b
- Cuttlefish**, a ten-armed cephalopod mollusk O-337-9, M-333, pictures O-338
- egg, picture E-269
- sepia ink I-150
- skeleton M-333
- Cut work**, open-work embroidery; part of fabric is cut away; Italian cut work best known.
- Cutworm**, caterpillar which eats off plant stems at the ground C-532
- Cuvier (kūr'yā')**, Georges, baron de (1769-1832), French naturalist and educator C-532
- Cuxhaven (kuk's-hā'yēn)**, Germany, port and watering place on North Sea 60 mi. n. w. of Hamburg; pop. 46,861; maps G-88, E-424
- Cuyahoga (kī-hō'gā or kī-a-hō'gā)**, Falls, Ohio, manufacturing village 28 mi. s. of Cleveland, on Cuyahoga

Key: cāpe, át, fūr, fāst, what, tǎll; mē, yēt, tērn, thēre; ice, bit; rōw, wōn, tōr, nōt, dō; cūre, būt, ryde, full, bǔrn; out;



Marmara; (2), ancient city of Mysia on Cyzicus peninsula, settled by Greeks from Miletus; celebrated as a commercial city, also for its beauty and wealth.  
**Czar** (zär), title of Russian emperor title taken by Ivan IV R-285  
**Czar Kolokol**, great bell in Moscow B-121  
**Czarniecki** (chärn-yěts'li-ē), Stephen (1599-1665), Polish general; drove Swedes under Charles X from Poland, and restored kingdom to King John Casimir (1655-57).  
**Czechoslovakia** (chēk-ō-slō-vā'li-ā), state of central Europe, created in 1918; area 49,373 sq. mi.; pop 12,339,674; cap Prague: C-535-8, maps C-535, E-416-17, 424-5, picture C-536  
 bibliography A-499, E-449  
 Bohemia B-220-1, C-535, 536

cities: Prague P-405-6, picture P-405  
 famous men C-535. *See also in Index* under each name  
 flag F-136b, color picture F-132  
 history C-535-6: debt to U.S. W-243; French alliance W-243-4; Little Entente B-26  
 literature folk tales S-411, list S-420  
 minerals uranium U-405  
 national songs X-42  
 people C-535, 536  
 relationships in continent, maps E-416-17, 419-20, 429, 429d  
**Czechs** (chēks), or Bohemians, a Slavic people C-535, S-198  
 Bohemia B-220-1  
 folk tales S-411, list S-420  
 language H-452  
 uprising (1848) F-276  
**Czernin** (cher'nin), Ottokar, Count (1872-1932), Austro-Hungarian statesman; as minister to Ruma-

nia at outbreak of World War I made vain effort to win over Rumania to Central Powers; minister of foreign affairs (1916-18); played conspicuous part in negotiations at Brest-Litovsk.  
**Czernowitz**, Russia. *See in Index* Chernovitsy  
**Czerny George**. *See in Index* Kara-George  
**Czerny, Karl** (1791-1857), Austrian pianist and composer, born Vienna teacher of Liszt; exercises for pianoforte still widely used.  
**Czestochowa** (chēn-stō-lō'vā), Polish city 65 mi. n.w. of Cracow; pop. 118,919; textiles: maps E-416, 424  
**Czolgosz** (chōl'gōsh), Leon (1873-1901), anarchist who assassinated President McKinley, born Detroit, Mich.: M-20